TEXT FLY WITHIN
THE BOOK ONLY

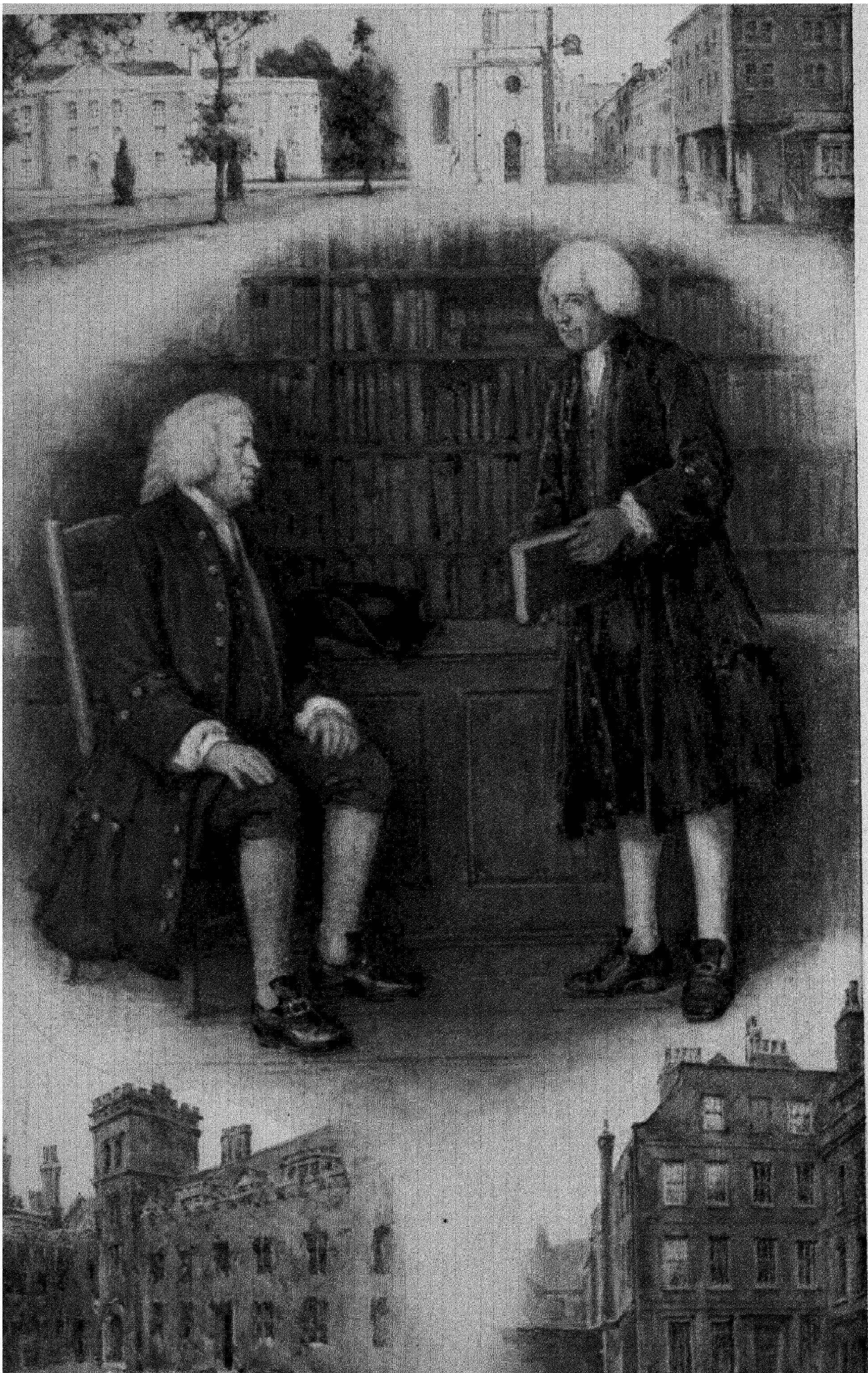
UNIVERSAL
LIBRARY

OU_158160

UNIVERSAL
LIBRARY

The
CHILDREN'S DICTIONARY

VOLUME EIGHT



THE CHILDREN'S DICTIONARY

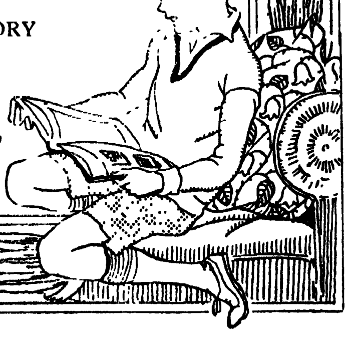
Edited by
HAROLD WHEELER

Associate Editors:
R. WOOD SMITH
ERNEST G. OGAN
A BOLLAERT ATKINS
A. B. GOUGH

VOLUME EIGHT

THE VOCABULARY BUILDER
and
LITERATURE'S GOLDEN STORY

INDIA, BURMA & CEYLON:
The Standard Literature Co., Ltd.,
Calcutta. Rangoon. Colombo.



THE WORD FINDER

An Invaluable Aid in Finding Technical and General Terms

WHEN you are writing you are doubtless often at a loss for a word. You know what you want to say, but cannot think of the correct word. The Word Finder has been devised to supply this need. For example, suppose you want to know the musical term indicating that a passage has to be played feelingly and tenderly. All you have to do is to turn to the Music section and look under the entry **feelingly.** *There you will find the word you want—***affettuoso.**

To facilitate reference the Word Finder has been divided into sections, each containing a selective list of technical and general terms relating to subjects appropriate to the section. Many of these terms could have been included in more than one section, but, in order to save space and in so doing provide room for the largest possible number of entries, they have been put into the most obvious or suitable section. Thus, the various items of naval and military uniform are included in the Army, Navy, Air Force and Nautical section and omitted from the Costume section.

The following is a complete list of the sections of the Word Finder :

Agriculture, Horticulture, and Forestry
Anatomy and Physiology
Architecture
Army, Navy, Air Force, etc.
Art
Astronomy
Aviation
Botany
Business, Commerce, and Industry
Chemistry
Christianity and Judaism
Costume
Drama
Education
Engineering
Foods and Beverages
Geography
Heraldry
History
Language and Literature
Law
Medicine and Surgery
Music
Philosophy
Physics
Politics and Economics
Religions and Mythology
Sports and Pastimes
Wireless Telegraphy and Telephony
Zoology

If you require a term connected with mineralogy you should consult the Chemistry section ; if it is a term used in mathematics that you wish to discover, you should refer to the Education section. Terms used in grammar will be found in the Language and Literature section, terms used in hygiene in the Medicine and Surgery section, and so on.

The following list indicates the section to be consulted for terms connected with the various subjects given. The list of subjects is not intended to be complete, but is sufficiently representative to explain the system of classification.

SUBJECT	SECTION
Acoustics	Physics
Air Force	Army, Navy, Air Force, etc.
Algebra	Education
Archaeology	History
Arms and Armour	Army, Navy and Air Force
Astrology	Astronomy
Broadcasting	Wireless Telegraphy and Telephony
Commerce	Business, Commerce and Industry
Crystallography	Chemistry
Dairy farming	Agriculture, Horticulture and Forestry
Dancing	Music
Dynamics	Engineering
Economics	Politics and Economics
Electricity	Engineering ; Physics ; Wireless Telegraphy and Telephony
Entomology	Zoology
Ethnology	Geography
Farming	Agriculture, Horticulture, and Forestry
Folklore	Religions and Mythology
Forestry	Agriculture, Horticulture, and Forestry
Fortification	Architecture ; Army, Navy, Air Force, etc.
Games	Sports and Pastimes
Gem-stones	Chemistry
Geology	Geography
Geometry	Education
Government	Politics and Economics
Grammar	Language and Literature
Histology	Anatomy and Physiology
Horticulture	Agriculture, Horticulture, and Forestry
Hydraulics	Engineering
Hydromechanics	Engineering
Hydrostatics	Engineering

SUBJECT (*contd.*)	SECTION (*contd.*)
Hygiene	Medicine and Surgery
Industry	Business, Commerce, and Industry
Logic	Philosophy
Magnetism	Physics
Mathematics	Education
Mechanics	Engineering
Metallurgy	Chemistry
Meteorology	Geography
Mineralogy	Chemistry
Mining	Business, Commerce, and Industry
Mythology	Religions and Mythology
Nautical terms	Army, Navy, Air Force, etc.
Navy	Army, Navy, Air Force, etc.
Orders of knighthood, etc.	Politics and Economics
Pastimes	Sports and Pastimes
Peoples	Geography
Petrology	Geography
Pharmacology	Medicine and Surgery
Phonetics	Language and Literature
Photography	Business, Commerce, and Industry
Physiology	Anatomy and Physiology
Precious stones	Chemistry
Prosody	Language and Literature
Psychical research	Philosophy
Psychology	Philosophy
Ships	Army, Navy, Air Force, etc.
Shipbuilding	Engineering
Spiritualism	Philosophy; Religions and Mythology
Stock-raising	Agriculture, Horticulture, and Forestry
Surgery	Medicine and Surgery
Titles	Politics and Economics
Veterinary surgery	Medicine and Surgery
Warfare	Army, Navy, Air Force, etc.

AGRICULTURE, HORTICULTURE, AND FORESTRY

apple. The name of a large deep-red cooking apple is **biffin.**

—. The name of a large red and yellow dessert apple is **Blenheim.**

—. The name of a tapering cooking apple is **codlin.**

—. A name for a cooking apple that has a green skin when ripe is **greening.**

—. The name for a fine dessert variety of russet apple is **nonpareil.**

—. The name of a fine variety of dessert apple which can be kept throughout the winter is **Ribston pippin.**

—. The name of a rough-skinned reddish-brown apple is **russet.**

—. The name of a common dessert apple is **Worcester pearmain.**

barley. A stack of barley is a **barley-mow.**

—. A name given to the four-rowed barley is **bigg.**

bees. A name for a collection of bee hives or an establishment devoted to bee-keeping is **apiary.**

—. The keeping of bees for honey is **apiculture.**

bushes, clipped. The practice of shaping bushes and trees by clipping into fantastic or ornamental shapes is **topiary.**

cattle. The name of the loose folds of flesh on the throats of cattle, and of turkeys, etc., is **dewlap.**

—. To fetter horses or cattle with a rope connecting head and foreleg is to **hamshackle.**

—. A name for a collar with a drag attached, used to prevent cattle from breaking through fences, is **poke.**

—, breed. A breed of small red beef-producing cattle is the **Devon.**

—, —. An Irish breed of small heavily-built black or red cattle is the **Dexter.**

—, —. A breed of hornless black shaggy cattle is the **Galloway.**

—, —. A breed of middle-sized yellow and white dairy cattle is the **Guernsey.**

cattle, breed. A hardy breed of red and white beef-producing cattle is the **Hereford.**

—, —. A breed of small fawn-coloured cattle producing rich milk is the **Jersey.**

—, —. The name of a small hardy black breed of dairy cattle from south-west Ireland is **Kerry.**

—, —. The name given to one of a breed of long-horned west Highland cattle is **Kyloe.**

—, —. A common breed of beef-producing and dairy cattle, usually red or roan, is the **Shorthorn.**

—, —. A breed of hardy chestnut-brown beef-producing cattle is the **Sussex.**

—, bullock. The name given to a bullock on passing its first year is **hogget.**

—, cow. A cow which is kept for milking purposes is a **milch cow.**

—, disease. A kind of fever prevalent among horned cattle is **foot-and-mouth disease.**

—, —. The name of an infectious disease of cattle and sheep is **rinderpest.**

—, farm. In Latin America the name given to a cattle farm or ranch is **estancia.**

—, —. A name given in America to a large establishment for rearing live stock is **ranch.**

—, fattening. To fatten cattle for the market or a show by keeping them in a stall without exercise is to **stall-feed.**

—, herd. A herd of cattle being driven from one place to another is a **drove.**

—, herdsman. A name for a cowboy of mixed Spanish and Indian blood in Uruguay and Argentina is **gaucho.**

—, —. The Mexican name for a herdsman, especially a cow-herd, is **vaquero.**

—, manger. A manger used out of doors for holding hay for cattle is a **cratch.**

—, —. Another name for a manger or feeding-rack for cattle is **hack.**

—, pen. A name in America for a pen for live stock is **corral.**

—, stall. A removable bar, or pair of bars, of a cattle-stall for confining the cattle in the stall is a **stanchion.**

cattle, team. A name given in South Africa to a team of oxen is **span.**

—, food. Names for a clover-like plant much used as fodder are **alfalfa, purple medick,** and **lucerne.**

—. A name for the dried food given to cattle is **fodder.**

—. A name for the chick-pea exported from India to other tropical countries as fodder is **gram.**

—. A name for a variety of beet with large roots, cultivated as a food for cattle, is **mangel-wurzel** or **mangold-wurzel.**

—. A nourishing mixture of boiled bran or meal used as a cattle food is **mash.**

—. A name for a cattle food manufactured from the refuse of palm-nuts after extraction of oil is **palm-nut cake.**

—. The name of a cruciferous plant allied to the turnip, grown as food for sheep, is **rape.**

—. The name of a low-growing leguminous herb cultivated for fodder is **sainfoin.**

—. The name of a kind of clover grown as fodder is **serradilla.**

—. The name of a pit or airtight chamber in which green crops are pressed and preserved for fodder is **silo.**

cheese. A cheese made from rich unskimmed milk and named after an Italian village where it was first made is **Gorgonzola.**

—. A light yellow cheese (filled with holes) made from skim milk is **Gruyère.**

—, mould. A mould for shaping cheese is a **chessel.**

cherry. The name given to a large white-heart variety of cherry is **bigaroo** or **bigarreau.**

—. The name given to a large dark-skinned variety of cherry is **black heart.**

—. The name given to the wild cherry from which the morello and Kentish cherries have been developed is **dwarf cherry.**

—. The name given to a wild variety of cherry from which many cultivated sorts have been developed is **gean cherry.**

—. A popular name for a sour variety of cherry, introduced into England from Medoc, France, is **mayduke.**

—. An old name for the wild black cherry is **merry.**

—. A name for a kind of dark-red cherry having a bitter taste is **morello.**

— The name given to a large variety of cherry with a red and white skin and light-coloured pulp is **white heart.**

cider. The pulp of apples crushed in a cider-mill is **pomace.**

corn. A name given to the grain crop reaped in the spring in India is **rabi.**

—, harvest. The gathering of the leavings of a cornfield, etc., after the reapers have removed the main crop is **gleaning.**

—, —. A stook of corn, etc., is made up of a group of **sheaves.**

—, —. Names for a group of sheaves of corn are **shock** and **stook.**

—, —. A name for a row of corn-sheaves, set up to dry, is **windrow.**

—, storage. Another name for a granary or building where grain is stored is **garner.**

—, —. A building where grain is stored is a **granary.**

—, —. A name for an underground storehouse for grain, often a domed cistern, in use in the East is **mattamore.**

cowshed. A name used in Scotland and in the north of England for a cowshed is **byre.**

crops. To cut corn, beans, etc., with a hook is to **bag.**

—. A crop raised between the rows of another, or one grown in the interval between two regular crops is an **intercrop.**

—. The system by which land in successive years is planted with crops of different kinds in a definite order is **rotation of crops.**

—, rotation. A series of different crops for four years in rotation is the **four-course.**

crops, storage. The preservation of crops as cattle food by storing in pits or air-tight compartments is **ensilage.**

—, —. The name given to a pit or air-tight chamber in which green crops are pressed and preserved for fodder is **silo.**

cultivation. Land which has been, or is capable of being cultivated is **arable.**

—. Land ploughed and harrowed but left unsown for a period is **fallow.**

—. The name given to a system of forcing plants by means of bell glasses or hot frames is **intensive culture.**

—. Cultivation carried out by digging only, as distinct from sub-soil ploughing, is **spade-husbandry.**

—. The low bank enclosing impoverished land near rivers to make a bed for the silt-laden water, which is valuable as a fertilizer, is a **warping bank.**

disease, cereal plants. A small fly destructive to wheat is the **frit-fly.**

—, —. A fly causing the stems of grain to swell is the **gout-fly.**

—, fruit trees. A disease in stone-fruit trees which makes them produce gum too freely is **gumming.**

—, plant. A name for a disease producing blackness in plants is **melanism.**

—, —. The name of a disease which deforms the boughs of trees is **canker.**

—, vegetables. A name given to a disease of turnips and cabbages causing hard lumps to form on the root is **club-root** or **fingers and toes.**

—, —. A fungoid growth which affects the tubers and stems of potatoes is **wart disease.**

drainage. A channel made by a plough to drain the land is a **furrow-drain.**

eggs. A solution of silicate of sodium, used in egg-preserving, is **water-glass.**

electricity. The use of electricity for increasing the yield of crops is **electro-culture.**

estate, manager. A name for one who manages an estate or a farm for its owner is **bailiff.**

farm. A farm where experiments are made with the object of improving yield and stocks is an **experimental farm.**

—. Names for a farming or stock-raising establishment, or a landed estate with a house, in Spanish America are **fazenda** and **hacienda.**

—. An old name for a large country-house with farm buildings attached is **grange.**

—. The name for a French and Italian system of land cultivation, by which the tenant provides labour and skill and the landlord the seeds, implements, etc., each sharing the produce, is **métayage.**

fencing. A name for a sunk fence bounding a garden, park, etc., is **ha-ha.**

—. A zigzag fence used in America, composed of roughly-split wooden rails crossing at their ends, is a **snake-fence.**

—. Fencing made with thin slats of wood, often used for sheep hurdles, is **wattling** or **wattle-work.**

fertilizer. A name for the excrement of sea-fowl and for certain artificial manures is **guano.**

—. A name for an earth containing chalk and clay, used as a fertilizer, is **marl.**

—. The name of a kind of earthy deposit in northern Italy used as a fertilizer is **terramara.**

flies, destructive. *See under* **diseases,** *above.*

flowers. The cultivation of flowers and flowering plants is **floriculture.**

fodder. *See under* **cattle food,** *above.*

forest. The converting of waste land into forest is **afforestation.**

—. The extensive cutting down of forest trees to clear the ground for cultivation or settlement is **deforestation.**

—. The art of planting and cultivating forests and the management of growing timber is **forestry.**

fruit. A fruit sometimes obtained when a twig of one kind of tree is grafted on another kind is a **graft-hybrid.**

—. A name for the science of fruit cultivation is **pomology.**

—, growing. The trellis-work, standing in the open, on which fruit trees or bushes are trained is an **espalier.**

—, pruning. A branch of a fruit tree cut back so as to promote the growth of fruit buds is a **fruit-spur.**

gardening. The art or practice of gardening is **horticulture.**

glass. A bell-shaped glass for protecting young plants is a **cloche.**

graft. To graft a tree by attaching a growing branch without severing it from the parent stock is to **inarch.**

—. In horticulture to graft on by budding is to **inoculate.**

—. A shoot of a plant cut for grafting is a **scion.**

grain. *See under* **corn,** *above.*

grape. The cultivation of the grape-vine is **viticulture.**

grass. A second crop of grass, appearing after the first has been cut, is the **after-math.**

—. A name for the coarse grass growing among stubble or for the second grass crop of the year is **fog.**

—. The name of a coarse tufted grass used as a food grain in India is **ragi.**

—. A name for a narrow strip of grass between a flower bed and a path is a **verge.**

—. A sweet-smelling grass growing in hayfields is **vernal grass.**

greenhouse. A chamber in a greenhouse for destroying insects by chemical fumes is a **fumatorium** or **fumatory.**

harrow. A heavy harrow for breaking up earth is a **brake.**

—. A harrow for cleaning young crops, which has the teeth so arranged that they root out weeds between the rows, is a **drill-harrow.**

hay. A yard for stacking hay and corn is a **stack-yard.**

—. A name for a row of hay, raked together to dry, is **windrow.**

—. *See also under* **grass,** *above.*

hops. The furnace of a kiln in which hops or malt are dried is a **cockle-stove.**

—. A name for a building containing a kiln or kilns for drying hops is **oast-house.**

horse. A strong breed of horse used in heavy farm work is the **draught-horse.**

hotbed. A sunk bed filled with fermenting matter to produce ground-heat for forcing plants is a **forcing-bed.**

hothouse. Another name for a hothouse, or building where plants or fruit are ripened early, is **forcing-house.**

hurdle. A name given to a hurdle of wicker-work is **wattle.**

implement. A threshing instrument consisting of a heavy short stick swinging at the end of a lighter staff is a **flail.**

—. The name of a kind of large rake used in farming is **harrow.**

—. A name for a tool like a pickaxe with a broad adze-shaped blade on one side is **mattock.**

—. An implement with long digging points, used to break up the soil without turning it over, is a **scarifier.**

—. A weeding tool with a narrow blade or forked end is a **spud.**

land. The custom of subletting land in Ireland for a single crop is **conacre.**

—. A name given in the Highlands and islands of Scotland to a peasant holding a small piece of land is **crofter.**

manure. A kind of manure deposited by sea-birds on the coasts and islands of the South Pacific Ocean is **guano**

manure. A coat of manure, etc., applied to the surface of land and not ploughed in is a **top-dressing.**

milk. An apparatus for ascertaining the amount of fat or cream in milk is a **galactometer.**

—. A cow which is kept for milking purposes is a **milch cow.**

—. A name for a type of wooden milking pail having one of its staves lengthened to serve as a handle is **piggin.**

pasture. A name used in Scotland for a range of pasture for cattle is **gang.**

peach. A name for a peach the stone of which parts easily from the pulp is **free-stone.**

pear. An old kind of cooking pear that may be stored for a time without deteriorating is a **warden.**

pig. A name for the smallest pig in a litter is **anthony.**

—. A name for a pig specially fattened for the table is **brawner.**

—. The name given to a boar in its second year is **hogget.**

—. A name for the fruit of forest-trees, such as oak and beech, used as food for swine is **mast.**

plant. A plant whose life does not exceed one year is an **annual.**

—. A plant that ordinarily lives two years is a **biennial.**

—. Plants introduced from a foreign country are **exotic.**

—. A plant that requires shelter in winter but grows out of doors in summer is **half-hardy.**

—. A plant able to grow in the open air all the year round is **hardy.**

—. A plant that lives for an indefinite number of years is a **perennial.**

—. Plants which are unable to fertilize themselves with their own pollen are **self-sterile.**

—, propagation. In gardening, a slip taken from another plant for re-planting is a **cutting.**

—, —. A shoot transferred from one plant to another is a **graft.**

plantation. A West Indian name for a tobacco or sugar plantation is **vega.**

plough, kind. A kind of plough which forms drills or evenly spaced furrows by means of upright shares, behind which seeds are dropped at regular intervals, is a **drill-plough.**

—, —. The name of a kind of American plough used in the cultivation of maize, beet, etc., is **lister.**

—, —. A plough used for breaking up the layer of earth just below the surface of the ground without bringing it to the surface is a **subsoil plough**

—, —. · A kind of plough which cuts deeper into the ground than an ordinary plough is a **trench-plough.**

—, part. An iron blade or knife in front of the share of a plough is a **coulter.**

—, —. A slotted iron piece at the front of a plough, to which the traces are attached, is a **hake** or **clevis.**

—, —. The curved plate behind the share which turns the earth over is a **mould-board** or **breast.**

—, —. The name given to the blade on a plough which cleaves the earth to be turned over is **share.**

—, —. A name for the pivoted crossbar of a plough or cart, to which the traces are attached, is **swingle-bar** or **swingle-tree.**

ploughing. A ridge or piece of land left unploughed is a **balk.**

—. A trench in the earth made by the plough is a **furrow.**

—. A channel made by a plough to drain the land is a **furrow-drain.**

—. A narrow strip of earth turned up by the mould-board of a plough is a **furrow-slice.**

plum. A name for a plum with an undeveloped stone is **bladder plum.**

potato, sweet. The plant of which the sweet potato is the tuber is the **batata.**

poultry, duck. The name of a white plumaged duck largely bred for the table is **Aylesbury.**

—, —. The name of a hardy and prolific duck bred from the Rouen and Indian Runner strains is **Campbell.**

—, —. The name of a fawn-coloured duck of Indian origin, with erect carriage, a very prolific layer, is **Indian Runner.**

—, —.* The name of a cream-coloured duck of upright gait introduced from China, is **Pekin.**

—, —. The name of a breed of domesticated duck with plumage resembling that of the mallard is **Rouen.**

—, fowl. The name of a breed of domestic fowl originally derived from Spain is **Andalusian.**

—, —. A fowl of a dwarf variety of any breed is a **bantam.**

—, —. The name of a breed of fowl, with feathered feet, from which many popular breeds have been derived is **Brahma.**

—, —. The name of a prolific breed of fowl introduced from Belgium is **Campine.**

—, —. An old English breed of domestic fowl having five toes and excellent for the table is the **Dorking.**

—, —. The name of a powerful short-feathered breed of fowl with long legs and neck is **game fowl.**

—, —. The name of a lightly built active Italian breed of fowl, popular as layers, is **Leghorn.**

—, —. A name for a large glossy black breed of domestic fowl with white ear lobes is **Minorca.**

—, —. A name for a popular heavy breed of domestic fowl is **Orpington.**

—, —. A name for an American breed of domestic fowl, popular as a layer and table bird, is **Plymouth rock.**

—, —. The name of a large breed of domestic fowl, popular as a layer is **Rhode Island Red.**

—, —. The name of an old English breed of fowl fattened in large numbers as table chickens is **Sussex.**

—, —. A name for a hardy breed of domestic fowl of medium size, noted for its egg-laying qualities, is **Wyandotte.**

—, disease. A disease in young poultry caused by the presence of a worm and characterized by continual gaping is the **gapes.**

—, —. A name for a disease in poultry and other birds producing a scaly tongue and peculiar hoarseness is **pip.**

—, fattening. The fattening of poultry by forced feeding is **gavage.**

—, rearing. An umbrella-shaped cover for sheltering newly-hatched chickens is a **brooder.**

—, —. A full sitting of eggs or a brood of chickens is a **clutch.**

—, —. The name given to an apparatus in which eggs are hatched by artificial heat is **incubator.**

rabbit. A piece of ground in which rabbits live or are preserved is a **warren.**

rice. A name for growing rice is **paddy.**

seed The hard seeds of cereal plants collectively are **grain.**

—. Plants that grow from seeds falling from the parent plants are **self-sown.**

shed. A name given to an open shed for cattle or wagons is **linhay.**

sheep. The leader of a flock of sheep, which has a bell round its neck, is the **bell-wether.**

—. A name given to the oily secretion of a sheep's skin is **yolk.**

—, breed. The name of a breed of hardy white-faced mountain sheep from the Scottish border is **Cheviot.**

—, —. The name of a breed of large hardy sheep with long wool, bred in western England, is **Cotswold.**

sheep, breed. The name of a hardy breed of sheep with long coarse wool, bred in the Westmorland and Cumberland mountains, is **Herdwick.**

—, —. The name of a foreign breed of sheep, mostly horned, with dense, wavy wool is **merino.**

—, —. The name of a breed of small sheep, producing good, short wool and excellent mutton, is **Southdown.**

—, —. The name of a breed of black-faced, short-fleeced sheep, producing good mutton, is **Suffolk.**

—, disease. The name of an infectious disease of cattle and sheep is **rinderpest.**

—, names. A name given to a lamb born among the earliest of a season is **firstling.**

—, —. The name given to a sheep in its second year is **hoggerel.**

—, —. The name given to a sheep on passing its first year is **hogget.**

—, —. A young sheep when about nine months old is a **teg.**

—, —. A name for a young lamb is **yearling.**

soil. A manure or chemical substance applied to the soil to make it more productive is a **fertilizer.**

—. Soil formed by decayed leaves and other vegetable matter is **humus.**

—. The layer of earth just below the surface soil is the **subsoil.**

—. Soil containing a large proportion of decayed or decaying vegetable matter is **vegetable mould.**

—. Soil cultivated for the first time is **virgin soil.**

sowing. A machine for sowing seeds in even rows is a **drill.**

—. A hand-driven seeding machine, pushed somewhat like a wheelbarrow, is a **drilling-barrow.**

strawberry. The name given to a species of strawberry is **hautbois.**

threshing. *See under* **implement,** *above.*

timber. Decay in timber caused by the presence of fungi is **dry-rot.**

—. A name for timber discoloured by the action of a fungus is **greenwood.**

—. Close-grained wood from deciduous trees, as opposed to pines and firs, is **hardwood.**

—. *See also under* **tree,** *below.*

tree. A collection of trees for ornament or study is an **arboretum.**

—. A thick clump of small trees or bushes is a **brake.**

—. The level in trees to which cattle can reach to feed is the **browsing-line.**

—. The scientific study of trees is **dendrology.**

—. An instrument used in measuring the height and diameter of trees to ascertain the amount of timber they contain is a **dendrometer.**

—. A knot or twisted growth on the branch of a tree is a **gnarl.**

—. A name for a small wood with undergrowth is **spinney.**

trench. A shallow trench for seeds or small plants is a **drill.**

turf. A slice of turf, or earth filled with the roots of grass, etc., is a **sod.**

vine. The cultivation of the vine is **viticulture.**

water, raising. The name given to a primitive apparatus used in the East to raise water, consisting of a balanced pole with a bucket at one end, is **shadoof.**

wheat. An inferior quality of wheat grown in southern Europe is **spelt.**

—. *See also under* **corn** *above, and section* Business, Commerce, and Industry.

winnowing-machine. A machine used in winnowing chaff from corn is a **fan,** a **fanning-machine** or **fanning-mill.**

wool. The short wool of sheep near the neck and belly is **broke.**

—. The wool shorn from a dead sheep or lamb is **pelt-wool.**

—. *See also under section* Business, Commerce, and Industry.

ANATOMY AND PHYSIOLOGY

abdomen. A name for the region of the abdomen immediately over the stomach is **epigastrium.**

—. The serous membrane lining the abdominal cavity is the **peritoneum.**

—. The name of a soft vascular organ in the left upper portion of the abdomen, thought to be connected with the formation of blood, is **spleen.**

—. A collective name for the internal organs in the great cavities of the body, especially the organs of the abdomen, is **viscera.**

alcohol. The name of a complex fatty alcohol, present in most tissues of the body, and found also in bile and in gall-stones, is **cholesterin.**

arm. The scientific name for the arm from shoulder to wrist is **upper limb.**

backbone. Names for the backbone are **spinal column** and **vertebral column.**

—. Each of the bones composing the backbone is a **vertebra.**

bag. The name given to a small bag-like structure is **follicle.**

—. The name given to a bag-like or pouch-like cavity is **sac.**

bile. The name of a complex fatty alcohol found in bile and gall-stones, and present also in most tissues of the body, is **cholesterin.**

blastoderm. Names for the outer or upper layer of the blastoderm of an embryo are **ectoderm** and **epiblast.**

—. The inner or lower layer of the blastoderm is the **entoderm** or **hypoblast.**

blind spot. A name given to the blind spot of the eye is **punctum caecum.**

blood. The name given to the minute cells found in the blood is **corpuscles.**

—. The name given to an insoluble protein in the blood, which causes blood to clot, is **fibrin.**

—. The chemical or physical study of the blood is **haematology.**

—. The name of a crystalline reddish substance in the blood which absorbs oxygen from the air and carries it to all parts of the body is **haemoglobin.**

—. A name for the fluid portion of blood, etc., is **plasma.**

—. The name of a clear fluid which separates from blood, lymph, etc., when coagulation takes place is **serum.**

—. A name given to the ferment in blood which causes coagulation by the formation of fibrin is **thrombin.**

—, circulation. The blood as it flows out from the heart is **excurrent.**

—, —. The study of the dynamics of the blood circulation is **haemodynamics.**

—, clot. A clot of blood formed within a vessel by coagulation is a **thrombus.**

—, corpuscle. Another name for a blood corpuscle is **haematocyte.**

—, —. The name given to a white or colourless blood corpuscle is **leucocyte.**

—, —. The name given to a white corpuscle of the blood, capable of absorbing harmful bacteria, is **phagocyte.**

blood-vessel. Vessels which convey blood, lymph, etc., to an organ are **afferent.**

—. A blood-vessel conveying blood from the heart to the different tissues and organs of the body is an **artery.**

—. The name given to the minute thin-walled blood-vessels which form a connecting network between veins and arteries is **capillaries.**

—. Vessels conveying blood, etc., from an organ are **efferent.**

—. The name given to an obstruction in a blood-vessel caused by a foreign substance in the blood-stream is **embolism.**

—. Blood-vessels lying among or between the cells of a tissue are **intercellular.**

blood-vessel. The name given to each of several large canals in the brain through which blood circulates is **sinus.**

—. The clogging of a blood-vessel by the coagulation of the blood is **thrombosis.**

—. The name given in anatomy to a bunch of small blood-vessels is **tuft.**

—. A blood-vessel which conveys blood towards the heart is a **vein.**

boat-shaped. The term used to denote a boat-shaped part is **scaphoid.**

body. The back portion of the body is **dorsal.**

—. The portion of the body in front of the spinal column is **ventral.**

—, functions. The science of the functions of living organisms is **physiology.**

—, measurement. The scientific measuring of the human body and its physical attributes is **anthropometry.**

—, structure. The science of the structure of living organisms is **anatomy.**

bone. A fixed or movable joint or union between two bones is an **articulation.**

—. The term used to describe a cup-like cavity in a bone which receives the end of another bone is **cotyloid.**

—. Bones such as the scapulars, in which the breadth and length greatly exceed the thickness, are **flat bones.**

—. A shallow pit or depression in a bone is a **fossa.**

—. Bones such as the vertebrae, which have an irregular shape, are **irregular bones.**

— The name given to bones, such as those of the arm or leg, in which the length greatly exceeds the thickness is **long bones.**

—. A name for the soft fatty or spongy substance in the cavities of bones is **marrow.**

—. An anatomical name for a bone is **os.**

— A name for a kind of granular cell which is an active agent of growth in bone is **osteoblast.**

—. A name for the branch of anatomy that deals with the nature, structure, and function of bones is **osteology.**

— Bones such as those of the wrist and ankle, in which the length does not greatly exceed the thickness, are **short bones.**

—. The serrated line of union of two bones joined by their edges, as in the skull, is a **suture.**

—, ankle. Names given to the ankle-bone are **astragalus** and **talus.**

—, —. The name given to a bone on the outer side of the ankle between the metatarsals and the cuneiform bones is **cuboid.**

—, —. The name given to three wedge-shaped bones in the ankle between the metatarsals and the navicular is **cuneiform bones.**

—, —. The scientific name for each of the bony lumps on the sides of the ankle is **malleolus.**

—, —. A name for a boat-shaped bone in the wrist and ankle is **navicular.**

—, —. The name given to the seven bones which together constitute the ankle is **tarsus.**

—, arm. The bone of the upper-arm in man is the **humerus.**

—, —. The joint between the outer bone of the forearm and the carpal bones of the wrist is the **radiocarpal joint.**

—, —. The outer of the two bones of the forearm is the **radius.**

—, —. The inner of the two bones of the forearm is the **ulna.**

—, breast. The scientific name of the breast-bone is **sternum.**

—, cheek. The name given in anatomy to the cheek-bone is **zygoma.**

—, chest. The name given to any of the twenty-four bones connected with the spine and curving round the upper part of the body to enclose the thorax is **rib.**

bone, chest. The name of the flat bone in the front of the chest is **sternum.**

—, ear. The bone in the ear which lies between the stapes and malleus is the **incus** or **anvil bone.**

—, —. The outermost of the three small bones of the ear is the **malleus** or **hammer bone.**

—, —. Names given to a bone in the ear having the shape of a horseman's stirrup are **stirrup bone** and **stapes.**

—, finger. A name for each of the small bones in the fingers and thumb is **phalanx.**

—, foot. The bones which connect the toes to the ankle are the **metatarsals.**

—, —. *See also under* **bone,** ankle; **bone,** heel; *and* **bone,** toe.

—, forehead. The bone which covers the forehead is the **frontal bone.**

—, hand. The bones which connect the fingers to the wrist are the **metacarpals.**

—, —. *See also under* **bone,** finger, and **bone,** wrist.

—, head. *See under* **bone,** skull, *below.*

—, heel. Names for the heel-bone are **calcaneus** and **os calcis.**

—, hip. The three bones of the hip on each side of the body, separate originally, but later united to form the pelvic girdle, are the **ilium, pubis,** and **ischium.**

—, —. A name for the three bones of each hip, comprising ilium, pubis, and ischium, separate in youth, but united later, is **pelvic girdle.**

—, hook-like. A name for a small hook-like portion of a bone is **hamulus.**

—, jaw. The scientific name for the lower jaw-bone is **mandible.**

—, —. The scientific name for the upper jaw-bone is **maxilla.**

—, knee. The scientific name for the knee-cap is **patella.**

—, leg. The bones of the leg, connecting thigh-bone and ankle, are the **fibula** and **tibia.**

—, —. Another name for the fibula, or outer bone of the leg, is **splint-bone.**

—, —. *See also under* **bone,** knee, *above*; and **bone,** thigh, *below.*

—, long. The shaft or middle part of a long bone is the **diaphysis.**

—, —. The name given to a part at either extremity of a long bone, separated from the main portion during growth by a layer of cartilage, is **epiphysis.**

—, mouth. Names for each of the bones in the mouth which form the hard palate are **palatine** and **palate bone.**

—, nose. The name given to each of the two bones which together form the bridge of the nose is **nasal bone.**

—, —. The names given to certain scroll-shaped bones in the nose are **upper, middle,** and **inferior turbinates.**

—, —. The name given to a small bone, resembling a ploughshare in shape, which forms the principal part of the partition between the nostrils is **vomer.**

—, protuberance. The name given to a protuberance on a bone which serves as the point of attachment for a muscle is **tuberosity.**

—, scroll-like. The term used to describe scroll-shaped bones is **turbinate.**

—, shoulder. The bone of the shoulder connecting the shoulder-blade and sternum and lying in front of the first rib is the **clavicle** or **collar-bone.**

—, —. The flat triangular bone of the shoulder, lying behind the upper ribs, is the **scapula** or **shoulder-blade.**

—, skull. The name given to a bone pierced with many small holes, forming part of the ethmoid is **cribriform plate.**

—, —. The name given to a cubical mass of spongy bone between the nasal cavity and the brain is **ethmoid.**

bone, skull. A name for a pyramid-like part of the temporal bone of the skull projecting downward behind the ear is **mastoid process.**

—, —. The name given to a bony plate forming the hinder and lower portion of the skull is **occipital bone.**

—, —. A name for the two large bones forming the sides of the skull is **parietals.**

—, —. The name of a wedge-shaped bone which forms part of the base of the skull is **sphenoid.**

—, —. The name given to a bone at each side of the skull, surrounding the internal organs of hearing, is **temporal bone.**

—, —. *See also* **bone,** ear, etc., *above.*

—, small. A name for any small bone is **ossicle.**

—, spine. The first vertebra, a ring-shaped bone supporting the head and rotating on the second vertebra, is the **atlas.**

—, —. The second vertebra, which has a peg-shaped process on which the atlas rotates, is the **axis.**

—, —. The seven bones of the spine which lie in the region of the neck are the **cervical vertebrae.**

—, —. The name given to the lowest bones of the spinal column, three or four in number, which fuse together to form a single bone, is **coccygeal vertebrae.**

—, —. The seven bones of the spine in the loin are the **lumbar vertebrae.**

—, —. The five bones of the spine in the pelvis, which fuse together to form a single bone, are the **sacral vertebrae.**

—, —. The name of a massive bone formed by the union of the five vertebrae at the base of the spinal column is **sacrum.**

—, —. The twelve bones of the spine situated in the region of the back are the **thoracic vertebrae.**

—, temporal. Names for the portion of the temporal bone surrounding the internal organs of hearing are **petrosal** and **petrous bone.**

—, thigh. The scientific name for the thigh-bone is **femur.**

—, thorax. *See under* **bone,** chest, *above.*

—, thumb. The bones which connect the thumb and fingers to the wrist or carpus are the **metacarpals.**

—, —. A name for each of the two outermost bones of the thumb is **phalanx.**

—, tissue. A name for a jelly-like tissue present in bone is **ossein.**

—, toe. The bones which connect the toes to the tarsus are the **metatarsals.**

—, —. A name for each of the small bones in the toes is **phalanx.**

—, tongue. The name of a Y-shaped bone which supports the tongue is **hyoid.**

—, wrist. A collective name for the eight small bones which compose the wrist, lying between the forearm and the metacarpals, is **carpus.**

—, —. A name for a small pea-shaped bone in the upper row of the carpus, or wrist, is **pisiform bone.**

bone-marrow. The name given to the tiny disks of protoplasm found in bone-marrow, etc., and believed to develop into red blood corpuscles, is **haematoblasts.**

—. The scientific name for the marrow of bones is **medulla.**

brain. The small brain or hinder brain is the **cerebellum.**

— The larger part of the brain, lying above the cerebellum, is the **cerebrum.**

—. A name given to the brain is **encephalon.**

—. The name given to each of the two masses into which the cerebrum is divided by the great longitudinal fissure is **hemisphere.**

—. The name given to each of several parts of the brain divided from the surrounding tissue by deep fissures is **lobe.**

—. The scientific name for the part of the brain joining the spinal cord is **medulla oblongata.**

brain. The name given to a part of the brain which connects the cerebrum with the medulla oblongata, the pons Varolii, and the cerebellum is **mid-brain.**

—. The band of cross fibres uniting the two hemispheres of the cerebellum in the brain is the **pons Varolii.**

—. A conscious impression made on the brain by external objects through the organs of sense and nerves is a **sensation.**

—, depression. The name given to any of certain depressions in the matter of the brain is **fissure.**

—, fold. A name given to each of the many folds in the brain matter is **convolution.**

—, membrane. The middle of the three membranes which clothe the brain and the spinal cord is the **arachnoid.**

—, —. The outermost of the three membranes which cover the surface of the brain and the spinal cord is the **dura mater.**

—, —. Each of the membranes enclosing and protecting the brain is a **meninx.**

—, —. A name for the innermost and very delicate membrane clothing the brain and spinal cord is **pia mater.**

breathing. The exhalation of watery vapour in breathing is **transpiration.**

canal. The name given to a flask-like swelling of a canal is **ampulla.**

cartilage. A name for cartilage, the tough white elastic tissue in animal bodies, is **gristle.**

cavity. A name for a small cavity or recess is **alveolus.**

—. A shallow cavity or hollow in a bone or other part is a **fossa.**

—. The name given to any of a group of small cells or cavities separated by partitions is **loculus.**

—. The name given to a cavity, a canal, or a pouch-shaped hollow is **sinus.**

—. A name for a chamber or cavity communicating with others, especially the first division of the labyrinth of the internal ear, is **vestibule.**

—, body. The part of the body cavity separated from the thorax by the diaphragm is the **abdomen.**

—, —. The lowest portion of the body cavity is the **pelvis.**

—, —. The upper part of the body cavity is the **thorax.**

cell. The science which deals with cells and their structure is **cytology.**

—. A name given to the protoplasm of which cells are composed, especially the part other than the nucleus, is **cytoplasm.**

—. The name given to the protoplasm forming the nucleus of a cell is **karyoplasm.**

—. The name given to any of a group of small cells separated by partitions is **loculus.**

—. The name given to a small body within the nucleus of a cell is **nucleolus.**

—. The main body in a cell, which controls growth and action, is the **nucleus.**

—. A name for a large nucleated cell capable of development into an organism is **ovum.**

—. Names for the fluid or semi-fluid contents of a living cell are **plasma, plasm,** and **protoplasm.**

—. A name given to a viscous substance found in the nuclei of cells is **plastin.**

—. Either of the two extremities of the axis in a cell nucleus is a **pole.**

—, bone-forming. A name for a cell which is an active agent of growth in bone is **osteoblast.**

—, nerve. A nerve-cell having more than two projecting parts or processes is **multipolar.**

—, —. A nerve-cell with its attached fibres, considered as a structural unit, is a **neuron.**

chamber. A term used to describe an organ having three chambers is **trilocular.**

character, inheritance. The tendency of parents to pass on their peculiarities and characters to their children is **heredity.**

cheek. Organs or parts connected with the cheek or cheek-bone are **malar.**

chest. The name given to a muscular partition separating the cavity of the chest from that of the abdomen is **diaphragm.**

—. The name given to the bones which curve round the body towards the breast-bone and enclose the chest is **ribs.**

chin. A scientific name for the chin is **mental prominence.**

chyle. The name given to the vessels which gather chyle from the walls of the small intestine is **lacteals.**

cluster. A name for a ball-like cluster of minute blood-vessels or nerve-fibres is **glomerule.**

connective tissue. The name given to bands or cross-bars of connective tissue found in parts and organs is **trabeculae.**

corpuscle. The name given to an undeveloped red blood corpuscle and to one of the tiny disks of protoplasm believed to develop into a corpuscle is **haematoblast.**

—. The name given to a white or colourless blood corpuscle is **leucocyte.**

—. The name given to a white or colourless blood corpuscle capable of absorbing harmful bacteria is **phagocyte.**

crown-shaped. A term used to describe crown-shaped nerves, ligaments, and vessels is **coronary.**

digestion. The name given to a fatty liquid present in the lacteals of the small intestine during digestion is **chyle.**

—. The name given to partly-digested food in a liquid state discharged from the stomach into the intestine is **chyme.**

—. The name given to an acid fluid, secreted by the stomach, which is the principal agent of digestion is **gastric juice.**

—. The name given to a starchy substance producing sugar in animal tissues during the process of digestion is **glycogen.**

—. The collective name for the organs of digestion into which food passes from the stomach is **intestines.**

—. The name for a gland behind the stomach which produces secretions that aid digestion is **pancreas.**

—. The organ of digestion into which the food first passes after mastication and salivation is the **stomach.**

division. The name used for a division of the brain, lungs, or liver in mammals is **lobe.**

duct. A name for a duct or vessel is **vas.**

ear. The outside part of the ear, projecting from the head, is the **auricle.**

—. The name given to a waxy secretion found in the outer ear is **cerumen.**

—. The name given to the spiral portion of the labyrinth of the internal ear is **cochlea.**

—. Names given to the thin membrane separating the outer ear from the middle ear, and to the cavity behind it, are **ear-drum** and **tympanum.**

—. The clear fluid in the membranous labyrinth of the ear is **endolymph.**

—. Names for the tube running from the throat and supplying the middle ear with air are **Eustachian tube** and **syrinx.**

—. The name given to the part of the ear containing the labyrinth, semilunar canals, etc., is **internal ear.**

—. The part of the ear behind the ear-drum containing the hammer, anvil, and stirrup bones, is the **middle ear.**

—. A name for a salivary gland situated near the ear is **parotid.**

—. A name for the broad upper part of the outer ear is **pinna.**

ear. The name given to a small cavity in the inner ear is **utricle.**

—. *See also under* **bone,** ear, *above,*

embryo. The name given to the bag-like germinal membrane which surrounds an embryo is **blastoderm.**

emotion. Emotions which have an effect on the actions of living tissues of the body are **ideometabolic.**

excretion. The name given to an organ which produces an excretion or secretion is **gland.**

eye. Names given to a part of the retina of the eye insensible to light are **blind spot** and **punctum caecum.**

—. The transparent skin which covers the front of the eye and allows light to pass through it to the retina is the **cornea.**

—. A name given to the transparent tissue behind the iris of the eye, forming a lens that focuses light rays on the retina, is **crystalline humour.**

—. The name of a glassy membrane which partly covers the eye is **hyaloid.**

—. The coloured ring-like membrane which regulates the admission of light to the retina is the **iris.**

—. A name for the study of the structure, functions, etc., of the eye is **ophthalmology.**

—. A term used to describe parts and organs connected with the eye is **optic.**

—. A muscle or gland connected with the eye-socket is **orbital.**

—. The name given to the dark spot at the centre of the eye, formed by the opening in the iris through which light is admitted, is **pupil.**

—. The name given to the net-like layer of nerve-cells and fibres which forms the inner coat of the eye is **retina.**

—. Names given to the purple pigment found in the retina, which fades when exposed to light, are **rhodopsin** and **visual purple.**

—. The membrane which clothes the eyeball is the **sclerotic.**

—. A name given to the transparent jelly-like tissue contained in the ball of the eye, between the lens and the retina, is **vitreous humour.**

eyebrow. A name for the space between the eyebrows is **intercilium.**

—. A name for a ridge in the region of the eyebrow is **superciliary ridge.**

eyelash. The scientific name for the eyelashes is **cilia.**

eyelid. A name for the angle formed by the junction between the upper and lower eyelids is **canthus.**

—. Nerves, muscles, arteries, and veins connected with or controlling the eyelids are **palpebral.**

—. The name given to a cartilage-like structure in the eyelid is **tarsus.**

eye-socket. A name for the bony eye-socket is **orbit.**

farthest. The extremity of a part or organ which is farthest away from the point of attachment or from the middle line of the body is **distal.**

fat cells. A name for a mass of cells in which fat is stored up in the body is **adipose tissue.**

fibre. A name for a bundle of fibres is **fascicle.**

fibrin. A name for the ferment in blood which causes coagulation by the formation of fibrin is **thrombin.**

finger. A name for a finger or toe is **digit.**

—. A name for the tiny conical elevations throwing the surface of the finger-tips into little ridges and forming part of the apparatus of touch is **tactile papillae.**

fissure. A name for a fissure is **sulcus.**

fluid. A name given to a clear fluid found in the body tissues is **lymph.**

—. The stringy fluid secretion which lubricates a joint is the **synovia** or **synovial fluid.**

—. A fluid which has passed through the wall of a vessel or through a serous membrane is a **transudate.**

food. The process of change which food undergoes in the body to render it capable of assimilation is **digestion.**

food. The act of taking food into the body is **ingestion.**

foot. A name for the part of the foot between the ankle or tarsus and the toes is **metatarsus.**

form. The science which deals with the form of organs and parts is **morphology.**

gland. The name given to a lens-shaped gland is **lenticel.**

—. The name for a gland behind the stomach which produces secretions that aid digestion is **pancreas.**

—. A name for a salivary gland situated near the ear is **parotid.**

—. The name of a tiny gland of unknown function near the base of the brain, believed to represent traces of a rudimentary third eye still found in some lizards, is **pineal gland.**

—. The name of a small two-lobed ductless gland at the base of the brain, believed to have an influence on growth, is **pituitary gland.**

—. A name given to the separating of certain materials from the blood by glands, etc., and also to the substance separated, is **secretion.**

—. The name given to a ductless gland, situated at the front of the neck, which exerts an influence upon nutrition is **thyroid gland.**

groin. Organs or parts connected with the groin are **inguinal.**

groove. A name for a groove or furrow is **sulcus.**

grooved. A part or organ which is grooved or channelled is **canaliculate.**

—. An anatomical term meaning grooved or fluted is **sulcate.**

growth. Names for a small, two-lobed, ductless gland at the base of the brain, believed to have an influence on growth, are **pituitary gland** and **pituitary body.**

—, hair-like. The name given to a short, hair-like growth on some of the bodily membranes, especially one of those on the surface of the mucous membrane of the small intestine, is **villus.**

hand. One who is able to use both hands equally well is **ambidextrous.**

—. The scientific name for the part of the hand between the wrist and the fingers is **metacarpus.**

—. A name for a nerve or muscle belonging to the palm of the hand is **palmar.**

—. The action of turning the hand so that the palm is downward is **pronation.**

—. The placing of the hand in such a posture that the palm is upward is **supination.**

—. A name for the palm of the hand is **thenar.**

head. The name of the ring-shaped bone forming the first vertebra, which supports the head and turns on the second vertebra, is **atlas.**

—. Anything relating to or situated near the head is **cephalic.**

—. A name for the bony covering of the brain, and for the bones of the skull collectively, is **cranium.**

—. A name for the back part of the head is **occiput.**

—. The front part of the head or skull is the **sinciput.**

—. The flat portion of either side of the head between the forehead and the ear is the **temple.**

—. An anatomical term for the crown of the head is **vertex.**

heart. The great artery which carries the blood from the heart to all parts of the body except the lungs is the **aorta.**

—. Names given to each of the two upper chambers of the heart are **auricle** and **atrium.**

—. A term used to describe anything relating to the heart is **cardiac.**

—. The name given to the periodic dilatation of the cavities of the heart, occurring alternately with their contraction, is **diastole.**

—. The name given to a thin serous membrane lining the cavities of the heart is **endocardium.**

heart. Cavities within the heart are **intracardiac.**

—. The name of the double membrane which encloses the heart is **pericardium.**

—. The action of the heart in alternately contracting and dilating is **systaltic.**

—. A physiological term used of the contraction of the walls of the heart that serves to force the blood outwards is **systole.**

—. The name given to each of the two lower cavities of the heart is **ventricle.**

hip. The name of the cavity in the pelvis which receives the head of the femur to form the hip joint is **acetabulum.**

—. A name for the hip or hip-joint is **coxa.**

—. A name for the bony girdle at the hips, enclosing the lowest portion of the body cavity, is **pelvis.**

hole. The name given to an opening or perforation in a bone, etc., is **foramen.**

—. The name given to a small pit or depression in either skin or bone is **fovea.**

hollow. The name given to a shallow hollow or cavity in a bone, etc., is **fossa.**

—. A pit or hollow where vessels, ducts or nerves enter an organ is a **hilum.**

—. The name given in anatomy to a cavity or a pouch-shaped hollow is **sinus.**

horn-shaped. A name for a horn-shaped organ or part is **cornu.**

intestine. The blind gut near the point where the large and small intestines meet is the **caecum.**

—. A collective name for the caecum, colon, and rectum is **large intestine.**

—. A collective name for the duodenum, jejunum, and ileum is **small intestine.**

—. A name for the worm-like movements of the small intestines by which food is kept moving along is **vermiculation.**

—. The name given to a small worm-like process, situated at the tip of the caecum, which serves no known function is **vermiform appendix.**

—. The name given to a minute hair-like growth on the surface of the small intestine is **villus.**

—. *See also under* **stomach,** *below.*

jaw. Scientific names for the lower jaw are **mandible** and **inferior maxilla.**

— Scientific names for the upper jaw are **maxilla** and **superior maxilla.**

—. Parts or organs situated in front of the upper jaw or maxilla are **premaxillary.**

—, type. *See under* **skull,** type, *below.*

joint. Parts that are jointed are **articulate.**

— The name given to a joint, such as that of the hip, movable in various directions is **ball-and-socket joint.**

—. Any point of union between two parts or organs is a **commissure.**

—. A hinge-like joint, such as the elbow, which allows movement in two directions only is a **ginglymus.**

— The fibrous tissue that binds together two bones at a joint is a **ligament.**

—. A name for a colourless stringy fluid serving to lubricate the joints is **synovia.**

—. A joint that rotates upon its own axis is **trochoid.**

kidney. Organs or parts belonging to or in close association with the kidneys are **renal.**

knee-joint. The term used in anatomy to describe parts or organs in the hollow behind the knee-joint is **popliteal.**

larynx. The name given to the gristly ring forming the lower part of the framework of the larynx is **cricoid cartilage.**

—. The narrow opening forming the entrance to the larynx is the **glottis.**

—. The name given to a shield-shaped cartilage which forms part of the larynx is **thyroid cartilage.**

—. The elastic folds of the lining membrane of the larynx which are stretched across the glottis are the **vocal chords.**

larynx. The opening in the larynx between the vocal chords is the **vocal glottis.**

leg. A term used to describe parts and organs belonging to the leg is **crural.**

—. The scientific name for the leg, from hip to ankle, is **lower limb.**

lens. A part shaped like a lens is **lentoid.**

life. The science of the study of living organisms is **biology.**

—. The science of the functions of living organisms is **physiology.**

—. The viscid jelly-like substance found in the cells of all living organisms and regarded as the physical basis of life is **protoplasm.**

—. Names given to the force assumed to account for organic life are **vital force** and **vital principle.**

—. The heart, brain, liver, and lungs, being the organs necessary for the continuance of life, are **the vital organs.**

ligament. A ligament, generally of the nature of a membranous fold, that supports or binds certain members of the body is a **fraenum** or **frenum.**

—. The name given to a ring or hook of ligament, etc., through or over which a muscle or tendon slides is **trochlea.**

limb. The end of a limb farthest from the body is **distal.**

—. The end of a limb nearest the body is **proximal.**

liver. Organs or parts belonging to the liver are **hepatic.**

—. The name given to the transverse fissure of the liver, where its vessels enter, is **porta.**

lobe. The name given to a small lobe is **lobule.**

loins. The region of the loins in man is the **lumbar region.**

lung. A name given to any small air space in the lungs is **alveolus.**

—. The name for each of the two serous membranes lining the thorax and enveloping the lungs is **pleura.**

—. Anything relating to the lungs is **pulmonary.**

membrane. The middle membrane of the three which enclose the brain and the spinal cord is the **arachnoid.**

—. The muscular membrane which divides the chest from the abdomen below is the **diaphragm.**

— The outermost of the three membranes that enclose the brain and the spinal cord is the **dura mater.**

—. The name given to a membrane lining the inner surface of the body is **epithelium.**

—. A name for a delicate membrane, the innermost of the three which clothe the brain and spinal cord, is **pia mater.**

—. The name for each of the two thin membranes lining the thorax and enveloping the lungs is **pleura.**

—. Membranes having a surface moistened by serum are **serous.**

—. The name given to a web-like membrane or tissue of the body is **tela.**

—. The passing of a fluid through the pores or interstices of a membrane is **transudation.**

—. An enveloping membrane, especially one enclosing parts of the brain, is a **velamen.**

—. The name given to a membrane or membranous partition is **velum.**

—. *See also under* **heart,** *above.*

mental phenomena. The branch of physiology dealing with mental phenomena is **psycho-physiology.**

mouth. The hinder part of the cavity of the mouth communicating with the pharynx is the **fauces.**

—. A name for the roof of the mouth is **palate.**

—. A name for each of the bones in the mouth forming the hard palate is **palatine.**

—. The name of the muscular tube communicating with the mouth, the throat, and the air passages of the nose is **pharynx.**

mouth. The two saliva glands on the floor of the mouth beneath the tongue are **sublingual.**

—. *See also under* **windpipe,** *below.*

movement. A bending movement of a joint or limb is **flexion.**

muscle. A muscle which draws a part away from the middle line of the body, or of a limb, is an **abductor.**

—. A muscle which draws a part towards the middle line is an **adductor.**

—. A name for a muscle acting in the opposite direction to another muscle is **antagonist.**

—. The name for a muscle having two heads or points of attachment is **biceps.**

—. A muscle which draws an organ or opening together is a **constrictor.**

—. A muscle whose function it is to pull down a part is a **depressor.**

—. A muscle that expands or widens the parts on which it acts is a **dilator.**

—. A thin covering of connective tissue sheathing and binding the muscles is a **fascia.**

—. A muscle which causes a limb or part to bend is a **flexor.**

—. Movements of the muscles which unconsciously carry out in action an idea on which the mind is fixed are **ideo-motor** or **ideo-muscular.**

—. A muscular action not controlled by the will is **involuntary.**

—. The name given to a muscle which raises a part or organ is **levator.**

—. A muscle serving to move some part of the body is a **motor muscle.**

—. A name for the branch of anatomy dealing with muscles is **myology.**

—. A muscle not parallel or vertical to others near it, or to the direction of a limb or of the body, is **oblique.**

—. A name for a muscle whose function is to close an opening of the body is **obturator.**

—. A name given to a muscle which serves to extend a limb or organ is **protractor.**

—. The name given to each of several muscles which run direct from their point of origin to their point of attachment is **rectus.**

—. A muscular action produced independently of the will is a **reflex.**

—. The elastic tubular membrane which surrounds a muscle fibre is a **sarcolemma.**

—. The substance which lies between the fibres of a striped muscle is **sarcoplasm.**

—. A muscle that contracts or closes a tube or orifice is a **sphincter.**

—. Ordinary muscle tissue which has fibres with lengthwise and crosswise markings on them is **striated** or **striped.**

—. Names given to a cord or band of fibrous tissue connecting or attaching the fleshy part of a muscle are **tendon** and **leader.**

—. A muscle which serves to stretch or straighten a part is a **tensor.**

—. The term used to describe a muscle having three points of attachment is **triceps.**

—. The name given to a ring or hook of ligament, etc., through or over which a muscle or tendon slides is **trochlea.**

—. The name for a protuberance on a bone serving as the point of attachment for a muscle is **tuberosity.**

—, arm. The big muscle in front of the upper arm is the **biceps.**

—, calf. The large muscle in the calf of the leg which helps to extend the foot is the **gastrocnemius.**

—, chest. The muscles which cover the upper part of the chest are the **pectoral muscles.**

—, crosswise. A name given to each of several muscles which lie crosswise over a part is **transversalis.**

—, hand. A name given to any of certain worm-shaped muscles in the hand and foot is **lumbrical.**

muscle, jaw. The muscle that raises the lower jaw is the **masseter.**

—, loin. The name given to each of two large muscles in the region of the loins is **psoas.**

—, neck. The term used to distinguish certain oblique muscles of the neck which connect the ribs and spine is **scalene.**

—, —. A neck muscle which serves to turn the head is the **splenius.**

—, scalp. A muscle stretching from the back of the head to the forehead and serving to move the scalp is **occipito-frontal.**

—, square. The name given to a square-shaped muscle in the human thigh and to other square-shaped muscles is **quadrate muscle.**

—, thigh. The name given to a large muscular mass on the outer or inner surface of the thigh is **vastus**

nail. The sensitive part of a finger-nail or toe-nail is the **quick.**

nearest. The extremity of a part or organ which is nearest the point of attachment or the median line of the body is **proximal.**

neck. Anything pertaining to or connected with the neck is **cervical.**

—. The muscles and tendons of the nape of the neck are **nuchal.**

nerve. Nerves that carry impulses to a nerve-centre are **afferent.**

—. A term applied to crown-shaped nerves, ligaments, and vessels is **coronary.**

—. Nerves that convey impulses from a nerve-centre are **efferent.**

—. A nerve transmitting an impulse causing a muscle to move a part of the body is a **motor nerve.**

—. A name for the nerves of the body taken collectively and for their system of distribution is **nervous system.**

—. A name for the study of the functions of nerves is **neurophysiology.**

—. A name for a network of nerves or vessels is **plexus.**

—. The pair of nerves which run from the brain and furnish branches to the heart, lungs, and digestive organs are the **pneumogastric nerves.**

—. A nerve or part which branches off and runs in a direction contrary to its former course is **recurrent.**

—. The name given to a place at which a nerve is believed to originate is **thalamus.**

—. Nerves causing expansion of certain blood vessels are **vasodilator nerves.**

—. Nerves causing the contraction of certain blood vessels are **vasomotor nerves.**

—, diaphragm. The nerve that passes down each side of the body to the diaphragm is the **phrenic.**

—, eye. A name for a nerve connected with most of the muscles that move the eye is **oculomotor nerve.**

—, —. A nerve connected with the eyes is an **optic nerve.**

—, head. The name given to a paired nerve of the head with three main branches is **trigeminus.**

—, nose. A name for a nerve running from the nose to the brain and connected with the sense of smell is **olfactory nerve.**

—, thigh. The name given to each of the two nerves which start from the pelvis and run down the back of the thigh and the calf to the foot is **sciatic nerve.**

nerve-cell. A nerve-cell with its attached fibres, considered as a structural unit, is a **neuron.**

nerve-centre. The name given to a network of nerves situated in the abdomen behind the stomach is **solar plexus.**

nerve-fibre. The name given to a number of nerve-fibres enclosed in a tubular sheath is **funiculus.**

nerve-stimuli. The science of the general relation between physical nerve-stimuli and the mental sensations they produce is **psychophysics.**

nervous system. A small mass of grey matter forming a nerve-nucleus in the central nervous system is a **ganglion.**

—. A name for the study of the nervous system is **neurology.**

network. A name for a network of nerves, fibres, or vessels is **plexus.**

nodule. The name given in anatomy to a nodule is **tubercle.**

nucleus. The name given to the protoplasm forming the nucleus of a cell is **karyoplasm.**

—. A smaller nucleus within the nucleus of a cell is a **nucleolus.**

nutrition. The branch of physiology dealing with nutrition is **threpsology.**

opening. A name for an opening or perforation is **foramen.**

—. The term used for an opening where veins, etc., enter an organ is **porta.**

organ. In anatomy the area of an organ or system is a **tract.**

—. A name for any small hollow organ, such as a cyst, sac, bladder, etc., is **vesicle.**

organism, development. A name for the science of the development of an individual organism is **ontogeny.**

—, properties. The branch of biology dealing with the properties and functions of living organisms is **physiology.**

outgrowth. The name given to a natural outgrowth or projection is **process.**

oval. An oval or olive-shaped part of the body is **olivary.**

palate, hard. A name for each of the bones in the mouth forming the hard palate is **palatine.**

—, soft. The name given to a hanging fleshy part at the back of the soft palate is **uvula.**

perspiration. A scientific term meaning conveying, causing, or secreting perspiration is **sudoriferous.**

pigment, purple. The name given to a pigment of purple colour found in the retina, which fades when exposed to the light, is **visual purple.**

plate. The name given to a shield-like plate, scale, or bone is **scutum.**

pouch. A small closed pouch or sac, especially one holding synovial fluid, is a **bursa.**

—. The name given to a small membranous pouch or cavity in the body is **utricle.**

pulse. The name of an instrument for recording wave-like movements such as those of the pulse, or muscular contractions, etc., is **kymograph.**

projection. The name given to a rounded projecting part of an organ is **lobe.**

prominence. A rounded prominence or protuberance on a bone or other part is a **promontory.**

—. The name given to a small, rounded prominence or a nodule, is **tubercle.**

—. The name given to a swelling or prominence is **tuber.**

rib. The scientific name for the ribs is **costae.**

—. Organs or parts lying between the ribs are **intercostal.**

ridge. A name given to a rounded ridge is **torus.**

rotation. The term used to describe a joint rotating upon its own axis is **trochoid.**

sac. The name given to a pouch-like sac containing synovial fluid is **bursa.**

—. The name given to a small sac or bladder-like structure is **vesicle.**

saliva. A name for a gland secreting saliva, situated in the cheek near the joint of the jaws, is **parotid gland.**

—. The two glands lying beneath the tongue on the floor of the mouth and secreting saliva are **sublingual.**

secretion. The name given to an organ which produces a secretion or excretion is **gland.**

sense-impression. A nerve centre concerned with receiving impressions from the sense-organs is a **sensorium.**

shoulder-blade. A part or organ situated between the shoulder-blades is **inter-scapular.**

—. The scientific name for the shoulder-blade is **scapula.**

skin. Anything belonging to or relating to the skin is **cutaneous.**

—. Names for the under layer of the skin in higher animals are **corium, cutis vera,** and **dermis.**

—. Names for the outer layer of the skin are **cuticle, epidermis,** and **scarf-skin.**

—. A name for the skin, comprising the epidermis and dermis, is **cutis.**

—. The skin of a part or of the body is an **integument.**

—. A name for each of the tiny conical elevations of the skin is **papilla.**

—. The name of a fatty secretion from glands in the skin by which the skin and hair are kept soft is **sebum.**

—. Tissue lying just beneath the skin is **subcutaneous** or **subdermal.**

—. The under layer of the skin is the **true skin.**

—. A name for an elevation of the skin or mucous membrane with a collection of clear liquid beneath is **vesicle.**

skull. A name for that part of the skull which encloses the brain is **cranium.**

—. The inner surface of the skull is the **endocranium.**

—. The strong fibrous membrane enveloping the skull is the **pericranium.**

—. Parts or organs situated in front of the frontal region of the skull are **pre-frontal.**

—. The front part of the skull is the **sinciput,** and the back part the **occiput.**

—, suture. A name for the transverse suture separating the frontal and parietal bones of the skull is **coronal suture.**

—, —. The name given to the suture between the parietal and occipital bones of the skull is **lambdoid.**

—, type. The term used to describe a type of skull relatively short from front to back is **brachycephalic.**

—, —. The name given to a number or a ratio used to express the relative shape of the human cranium or skull is **cephalic index.**

—, —. The term used to describe a type of skull relatively long from front to back is **dolichocephalic.**

—, —. A person having, or a race distinguished by, an abnormally small skull is **microcephalic.**

—, —. The term used to describe a type of skull intermediate between the brachycephalic and the dolichocephalic is **orthocephalic.**

—, —. The term used to describe a type of skull with little projection of the jaw or incisors is **orthognathous.**

—, —. A skull that is unequally developed on its two sides is **plagiocephalic.**

—, —. A skull that is broad and low in proportion to its length is **platycephalic.**

—, —. A term used to describe a type of skull with projecting and prominent jaw is **prognathous.**

spine. The scientific name for the spinal cord is **medulla.**

—. The scientific name for the spine or backbone is **vertebral column.**

—. *See also under* **vertebra** *below, and under* **bone,** spine, *above.*

stomach. The name for a colourless acid secretion of the stomach which is one of the principal agents of digestion is **gastric juice.**

—. The name given to the long tube leading downwards from the stomach is **intestine,** commonly used in the plural, **intestines.**

—. A name for the tube conveying food and drink from the mouth to the stomach is **oesophagus.**

—. The name for a gland behind the stomach which produces secretions that aid digestion is **pancreas.**

—. The opening at the lower end of the stomach leading into the small intestine is the **pylorus.**

swelling, flask-like. The name given to a flask-like swelling of a canal in the body is **ampulla.**

sword-shaped. Terms used to describe a part or organ that is sword-shaped are **ensiform** and **xiphoid.**

synovial fluid. The name given to a pouch-like sac containing synovial fluid is **bursa.**

system. A name for the area of an organ or system is **tract**

tendon. The science which deals with the tendons and ligaments of the body is **desmology.**

—. The name given in anatomy to a ring or hook of ligament, etc., through or over which a muscle or tendon slides is **trochlea.**

thorax. The name for each of the two thin membranes lining the thorax and enveloping the lungs is **pleura.**

—. A part or organ situated in front of the dorsal region or the thoracic vertebrae is **predorsal.**

throat. The name for the muscular tube communicating with the mouth, the throat, and the air-passages of the nose is **pharynx.**

—. *See also under* **windpipe,** *below.*

tissue. A name for the mass of cells in which **fat is** stored up in the body is **adipose tissue.**

—. That process in metabolism—the building up of living tissue—by which a substance is changed into one more complex or more highly organized is **anabolism.**

—. A name for the tissue which serves to support and connect other tissues is **connective tissue.**

—. Names given to the substance of the fibres of the connective tissue of the body are **elastin** and **elasticin.**

—. The science of living organic tissues is **histology.**

—. The process of change by which living matter is broken up into simpler compounds is **katabolism.**

—. The process of continual change going on in living tissue, comprising anabolism and katabolism, is **metabolism.**

—. A name for the soft cellular tissue of glandular and other organs is **parenchyma.**

—, connective. The name given to bands or cross-bars of connective tissue found in parts and organs is **trabeculae.**

toe. A name for a finger or toe is **digit.**

tongue. Parts or organs belonging to the tongue are **lingual.**

—. The two saliva glands lying on the floor of the mouth beneath the tongue are **sublingual.**

tongue-shaped. A tongue-shaped or strap-shaped organ or part is **ligulate.**

tooth. The name given to the bony socket of a tooth is **alveolus.**

—. A name for the large strong pointed teeth in the upper and lower jaw is **canines.**

—. The hard, bone-like tissue forming the body of a tooth is **dentin.**

—. The name given to the hard, white matter forming the cap of a tooth is **enamel.**

—. In man the two long upper canine teeth in the upper jaw, just under the eyes, are the **eye-teeth.**

—. The fleshy tissue enclosing the teeth is the **gum.**

—. The front teeth, used to cut and separate food, are the **incisors.**

—. A name for the back teeth, having large crowns and used for grinding food, is **molars.**

—. A name for the science dealing with the structure and development of the teeth is **odontology.**

—. The permanent teeth in front of the true molars are **premolars.**

— The name given to the connective tissue filling the cavity of a tooth is **pulp.**

—. The name given to a tooth which works with another in the opposite jaw in scissor fashion is **sectorial.**

trunk. The name given to the lower part of the trunk, separated from the chest by the diaphragm, is **abdomen.**

—. A name for the back part of the trunk is **dorsum.**

vein. A name for a kind of trap in a vein, allowing blood to flow in one direction only, is **valve.**

vertebra. A name given to the process by which a vertebra articulates or connects with the next vertebra is **zygapophysis.**

—. *See also under* **bone,** spine, *above.*

vessel. The name given to a network or intricate collection of vessels or nerves is **plexus.**

—. A name for a vessel or a duct is **vas.**

windpipe. Each of the two main divisions of the trachea or windpipe is a **bronchus.**

—. The upper part of the windpipe, containing the vocal chords, is the **larynx.**

—. The scientific name for the windpipe is **trachea.**

—. *See also under* **throat,** *above.*

wrist. The scientific name for the human wrist and for the corresponding part in animals is **carpus.**

ARCHITECTURE

altar. A niche in the south side of an altar for some of the sacred vessels is a **fenestella.**

—. Names for a ledge or shelf at the back of an altar are **gradin** and **predella.**

—. Names for an opening in the wall of a church which gives a view of the altar to people in the aisle or transept are **hagioscope** and **squint.**

—. The platform on which an altar in a church stands, or the highest of several altar-steps, is a **predella.**

—. The name given to an ornamental screen at the back of an altar in a church is **reredos.**

—. A name given to a shelf or panelled frame raised above the back of an altar in a church, on which ornaments are placed, is **retable.**

—. The name given to a space beyond the high altar in cathedrals and large churches is **retrochoir.**

amphitheatre. A name for the wall or platform round the arena of an ancient amphitheatre is **podium.**

apse. The name given to the bishop's throne in the apse of a basilican church, or to the apse containing it, is **tribune.**

arcade. A name for an arcade or a covered gallery which is open on one or both sides is **loggia.**

—. The name given to a gallery or arcade formed in the walls of a church above the arches of the nave, choir, or transepts is **triforium.**

arch. A wedge-shaped brick used in building arches is an **arch-brick.**

—. The removable wooden framework on which an arch is built is the **centering.**

—. The central wedge-shaped stone in an arch which secures the other stones is the **keystone.**

—. The difference in level between the two ends of a rampant arch is the **ramp.**

—. The irregularly triangular space between the shoulders of two adjoining arches is the **spandrel.**

—. Each of the wedge-shaped stones forming an arch is a **voussoir.**

—, curve. The lower curve or interior surface of an arch is its **intrados** or **soffit.**

—, —. The upper or outer curve of an arch is the **extrados.**

—, kind. An arch having its outline formed of four curves, struck from different centres, is **four-centred.**

—, —. An arch used for openings in an embankment, and shaped to bear the pressure of earth, is **geostatic.**

—, —. Arches built from alternate pillars and intersecting each other are **interlaced arches.**

—, —. A name for a pointed arch each side of which is an elongated double curve is **ogee.**

arch, kind. A name for a pointed or Gothic arch is **ogive.**

—, —. An arch which has one abutment or point of support higher than the other is **rampant.**

—, —. The inner arch of a door or window opening, when of different size or form from that of the outer arch, is a **rear-arch.**

—, —. An arch constructed in a wall to take the weight of some part above is a **relieving arch.**

—, —. The name given to a somewhat flat arch, less in extent than a semicircle, is **scheme-arch.**

—, —. A small interior arch across the corner of a square tower to support the side of an octagonal spire is a **squinch.**

—, —. Arches that spring from upright pieces of masonry resting on the imposts are **stilted.**

—, support. The pier or wall, or any part of a pier or wall, supporting an arch is an **abutment.**

—, —. The name for a massive detached support of stone or brick for an arch or roof is **pier.**

—, —. A half-pillar attached to a wall to support an arch is a **respond.**

—, —. Each of the supports of an arch from which it springs is a **springer.**

balcony. The under surface of a balcony is the **soffit.**

—. A light-roofed balcony or portico running along the front or side of a house is a **veranda** or **verandah.**

band. A projecting band of stone on the outside of a building is a **cordon.**

—. The flat band of an architrave is a **fascia.**

—. A decorative band below the cornice of a building, especially the central portion of the entablature of a classical building, is a **frieze.**

base. A term denoting the base of a pillar or column is **patten.**

—. A base block serving to raise a column, etc., above the ground level of the building is a **pedestal.**

—. The lowest division of a base with more than one layer is the **sub-base.**

basilica. The name for a raised floor for the chair of a magistrate in the apse of a Roman basilica is **tribune.**

battlement. A building with battlements like a castle is **castellated.**

—. Each of the notches or openings in a battlement is an **embrasure** or **crenelle.**

—. Names for the part between each pair of openings or notches in a battlement are **merlon** and **cope.**

beading. The beading round the top or bottom of a column is the **astragal** or **tondino.**

beam. In classical architecture the principal beam, resting on a colonnade and forming the lowest part of the entablature, is the **architrave** or **epistyle.**

—. Another name for a tie-beam is **balk.**

—. Two beams running along the inside of a gable's verge form a **barge-couple.**

—. An overhanging beam or girder, or a long bracket is a **cantilever.**

—. A beam connecting two opposite rafters near their upper ends is a **collar-beam** or **collar.**

—. A short timber which helps to support the end of a beam is a **corbel-block.**

—. A large beam stretching from one wall to another or strengthening and holding together the opposite sides of a building is a **cross-beam.**

—. A beam of wood, iron, or steel supporting a superstructure is a **girder.**

—. A beam projecting inwards from a wall to support the timbers of the roof is a **hammer-beam.**

—. A horizontal beam or girder supporting a floor or ceiling is a **joist.**

—. A horizontal beam or stone over a window or doorway is a **lintel.**

beam. Each of the beams or girders which take the chief strain in a roof is a **principal.**

—. A name for a horizontal beam supporting the joists of a floor or roof is **summer.**

—. The name given to a stout timber or block of stone placed under the end of a beam or girder to distribute the weight is **templet.**

—. A term meaning constructed with beams or lintels is **trabeated.**

—. A beam stiffened or strengthened by tie-rods or braces is a **truss-beam.**

—. *See also under* **roof,** *below.*

board, plasterer's. A square board with a handle on which a plasterer carries his plaster or mortar is a **hawk.**

bracket. A name in classical architecture for a bracket or console supporting a cornice is **ancon.**

—. The name given to brackets in the form of colossal figures or half-figures of men is **atlantes.**

—. A bracket supporting a cornice is a **console.**

—. A bracket jutting out from a wall and supporting a weight is a **corbel.**

—. A name for an ornamental bracket beneath a cornice is **modillion.**

brick. A wedge-shaped brick used in building arches is an **arch-brick.**

—. The name for the method of arranging bricks as stretchers and headers in courses so as to bind a wall together is **bond.**

—. A brick or stone in a wall which overlaps so as to bind the courses together is a **bonder** or **bond-stone.**

—. An arrangement of bricks or stones in building by which the joints do not come immediately over each other is a **break-joint.**

—. Brickwork built into a timber framework is **brick-nogging.**

—. A brick laid crosswise to the direction of a wall of which it forms part is a **header.**

—. The name for a filling of brick used to strengthen a timber framework for inside walls, etc., is **nogging.**

—. A brick placed lengthwise in the direction of a wall is a **stretcher.**

building, estimate. An estimate based on the number of cubic feet of space which a building is to enclose is a **cube-estimate.**

—, front. The side of a building facing the street or an open space is the **façade.**

—, —. Another name for a pediment or decorated triangular front crowning either the front or the entrance to a building is **fronton.**

—, plan. The architect's drawing, made to scale, of one side of a building is an **elevation.**

—, —. A horizontal plan of the divisions of a building at ground level is a **ground-plan.**

—, —. In a building a part bending back or receding from the front line is a **return.**

buttress. A buttress or pier supporting a wall or terrace is a **counterfort.**

—. *See also under* **support,** *below.*

canopy. A name for a canopy over an altar, etc., is **baldachin.**

—. A name for the richly-carved canopies and traceries over the pulpit and the stalls in the choir of some old churches is **tabernacle-work.**

capital. The highest member of a capital is the **abacus.**

—. In the Corinthian style of architecture any one of the principal stalks at the upper part of a pillar, from which the scroll springs, is a **caul.**

—. An old name for the capital of a column is **chapiter.**

—. A capital of a column so carved that it resembles a cushion pressed down by a weight, or one shaped like a cube with rounded edges, is a **cushion-capital.**

—. The bell-shaped part of a Corinthian or Composite capital is the **drum.**

capital. A cushion-shaped moulding below the abacus of the capital of a Doric column is an **echinus.**

—. A capital of a column decorated with a floral design or an ornament in the shape of a flower is **floriate** or **floriated.**

—. The name for one of the spiral projections on a capital of the Ionic, Corinthian, or Composite orders is **volute.**

castle. The outer wall of a castle is the **bailey.**

—. An outwork of a castle, defending a gate or drawbridge, is a **barbican.**

—. An Irish name for the bailey of a castle is **bawn.**

—. The name for the central tower of a mediaeval castle is **donjon.**

—. *See also under* **fortification** *and* **castle** *in section* Army, Navy, Air Force, and Nautical.

cave. A name for a picturesque artificial cave, made as a cool retreat in a pleasure-ground, is **grotto.**

ceiling. A name for a domed ceiling is **calotte.**

—. The name given in architecture to a ceiling ornamented by sunk panels is **lacunar.**

—. A name for a flat or arched ceiling, especially one decorated with paintings or other ornament, is **plafond.**

—. A name for a ceiling that is semi-cylindrical in shape, like the tilt of a wagon, is **wagon-ceiling.**

chancel. A name for the sanctuary or inner end of the chancel in an early Christian basilican church is **bema.**

chamber, underground. A name for an underground chamber, especially a burial-place, is **vault.**

chapel. The part of a chapel that is between the western wall and the choir screen is the **antechapel.**

—. A name for a chapel or porch at the entrance or at the west end of some large churches is **Galilee.**

chimney. The top part of a chimney is the **capping.**

—. A group of chimneys is a **stack** or **chimney-stack.**

church. A side division of a church, running parallel to and divided by pillars from the nave, transept, or choir, is an **aisle.**

—. The part of a parish church occupied by the clergy and choir, usually including the sanctuary, is the **chancel.**

—. The part of a large church occupied by the clergy and choristers, between the sanctuary and the nave, is the **choir.**

—. The upper part of a wall of a church, with a row of windows, above the level of the roof of an aisle is the **clerestory**

—. A church built on the plan of a cross, with two transepts forming the arms, is **cruciform.**

—. The name given to the study of church building and decoration is **ecclesiology.**

—. A name for a vestibule in the west end of the nave of a church is **narthex.**

—. The body of a church, between the choir or chancel and the main entrance, usually with an arcade and aisle on each side, is the **nave.**

—. A name for the forecourt of a church, in which mediaeval mystery plays were performed, is **parvis.**

—. The raised part at the end of a church beyond the altar-rails is the **sanctuary** or **presbytery.**

—. In a cruciform church either of the side projections or arms, usually running out north or south between the nave and choir, is a **transept.**

cloister. A cloister or corridor is an **ambulatory.**

—. The grass plot or garden within the cloisters of a monastery is a **garth.**

—. The series of steps leading from the cloisters of a church into the church itself is a **gradatory.**

column. A building with columns in front or at the back only is **apteral,** and a name for it is **amphiprostyle.**

column. Another name for the plinth or bottom part of a column is **base.**

—. The head of a column or pillar is the **capital** or **cap.**

—. A row of columns, generally connected by an entablature, is a **colonnade.**

—. A colonnade or portico with ten columns is **decastyle.**

—. A building having a double row of columns round it is **dipteral.**

—. The part of a classical building that rests on the columns is the **entablature.**

—. The swelling outline given to the shaft of a column is the **entasis.**

—. The name given to a building in which the ceiling is supported by columns is **hypostyle.**

—. A colonnade or portico with eight columns is **octastyle.**

—. A name for a row of columns around a court or building is **peristyle.**

—. A name for the square part of the base of a column or pedestal is **plinth.**

—. A term applied to a building characterized by many columns is **polystyle.**

—. The shaft of a column, or the curved portion at the base or top of the shaft, is a **scape.**

—. A name for a plain, low, rectangular block or plinth forming a base for a column, pedestal, etc., is **socle.**

—. Names given to a cylindrical stone forming a course in a column are **tambour** and **drum.**

—. A courtyard surrounded by open colonnades on all four sides is a **tetrastoon.**

—. A colonnade or portico with four columns is **tetrastyle.**

—, kind. Names given to columns or pilasters in the form of colossal figures of men supporting the tier above them are **atlantes** or **telamones.**

—, —. The name given to a column in the form of a woman's figure is **caryatid.**

—, —. A name for a rectangular column, usually attached to a wall, is **pilaster.**

—, ornament. The beading round the top or bottom of a column is the **astragal** or **tondino.**

—, —. The decoration of columns by rope-shaped mouldings is **cabling.**

—, —. A small band or fillet round the top or bottom of a column is a **cincture.**

—, —. A name for a flat ridge between the flutings of a column is **facet.**

—, —. A long, vertical groove in the shaft of a column is a **flute.**

—, —. A name for a fillet surrounding the shaft of a column is **girdle.**

—, —. A name for a fillet between the flutings of a column is **platband.**

—, spacing. A colonnade in which the columns are arranged at a distance of three diameters of their shafts apart is a **diastyle.**

—, —. In Doric architecture a space between two columns which permits the insertion of two triglyphs, or grooved tablets, in addition to those placed over the columns, is a **ditriglyph.**

—, —. An arrangement of columns in which the spaces between them are equal to one-and-a-half times the thickness of a column is a **pycnostyle.**

—, —. An arrangement of columns in which the columns are set comparatively close together or, strictly, at a distance of twice their diameters, is **systyle.**

See also under **capital,** ***above, and*** **portico,** ***below.***

cornice. A piece of stone shaped like a bent elbow to support a cornice is an **ancon.**

—. A course of heavy stone erected on the back of a cornice or projecting slab of masonry to keep it from toppling over is a **blocking-course.**

—. A projecting cornice or parapet supported by corbels is a **corbel-table.**

—. A name for an ornamental block or bracket beneath a cornice is **modillion.**

cornice. The name for a projecting block or modillion on the under side of a Doric cornice is **mutule.**

—. The under surface of a cornice is the **soffit.**

court. A name for the inner court of an ancient Roman house is **atrium.**

—. The outer court of a mansion or castle is the **base-court.**

—. An Irish name for the courtyard or bailey of a castle is **bawn.**

—. A name for the open inner court of a Spanish or Spanish-American house is **patio.**

—. A name for a court in the centre of an ancient Greek or Roman house, surrounded by a colonnade, is **peristyle.**

—. A courtyard surrounded by open colonnades on all four sides is a **tetrastoon.**

crucifix. The name given to a crucifix set above a screen separating nave and chancel of a church is **rood.**

cupola. A name given to the cylindrical structure which supports a cupola or dome is **tambour.**

cylinder. A short cylinder used to decorate a moulding in Norman architecture is a **billet.**

dais. Another name for a dais or raised platform is **estrade.**

decoration. A name for certain kinds of extravagant and grotesque decoration is **baroque.**

—. Buildings in which the corners are decorated with mouldings etc., are **cantoned.**

—. A style of interior decoration in Gothic architecture made up of leaves and flowers forming diamonds or squares is **diaper-work.**

—. To ornament with relief or raised work is to **emboss.**

—. A capital of a column, etc., decorated with floral designs is **floriated** or **floriate.**

—. A name for a method of decoration by scratching a plaster surface to reveal a different-coloured under surface is **graffito.**

—. A name for a type of decoration formed of small variously-coloured cubes of hard material laid side by side in cement is **mosaic.**

—. A name for an ornamental strip outlining a cornice, arch, capital, etc., is **moulding.**

—. Gothic stonework which has a delicate tracery at its edge is **purfled.**

dome. Another name for a dome is **cupola.**

—. A name given to each of the divisions of a dome formed by the diagonal intersection of arches is **pendentive.**

—. A name given to a circular building with a domed roof is **rotunda.**

door. Each of the upper panels of a six-panelled door is a **frieze-panel.**

—. The name given to a small door, or one that does not reach to the top of a doorway, is **hatch.**

—. A name for a triangular or other ornamental structure over a door, etc., is **pediment.**

—. A name given to a vaulted space between the outer and inner faces of an arched window or door is **rear-vault.**

—. The vertical surface forming the side of an opening such as a door or window is a **reveal.**

—. The name given to the bevelling or splay in the opening of a door or window is **scuncheon.**

—. The name given to a horizontal bar across a window or the top of a door is **transom.**

—. The space between the lintel and an arch over a door or window is the **tympanum.**

drain. A name sometimes used for a drain for carrying off water is **gully.**

—. A pit made to take the discharge from a house drain not directly connected with the main sewer is a **disconnecting-pit.**

dripstone. The name given to a square or horizontal dripstone is **label.**

—. Another name for a dripstone is **weather-moulding.**

earth, building. The name of a method of building with earth rammed between moulds and dried is **pisé.**

earthquake. A method of building construction designed to resist earthquake shocks is **aseismatic.**

edge. The sharp edge in which two flat or curved surfaces meet is an **arris.**

—. The surface made in stone or woodwork by bevelling off a square corner or edge is a **chamfer.**

face. A name for an architectural ornament consisting of a representation of a face, usually grotesque, is **mask.**

fillet. A term used to denote a fillet between the flutings of a column is **platband.**

—. A name for a fillet separating a Doric frieze from the architrave is **taenia.**

floor. Each of the parallel timbers laid on edge from wall to wall on which floor-boards are nailed is a **joist.**

—. A name for a flooring of inlaid wooden blocks is **parquet.**

—. A name for a horizontal beam supporting the joists of a floor or roof, is **summer.**

flower. A name for a flower-shaped ornament is **fleuron.**

—. A name given to a bunch of leaves or flowers forming a boss is **knop.**

fortress. A name for the central fortified part of a Russian town is **kremlin.**

—. The name given to an outwork in the principal ditch in front of the curtain between two bastions is **tenail.**

—. *See also under* **castle** *above; and the section* Army, Navy, Air Force, and Nautical.

foundation. A structure of cross-beams or girders used to support the foundations of a large building on shifting ground is a **grillage.**

—. The solid foundation of a classical building is a **stereobate.**

framework. A name for a filling of brick used to strengthen a timber framework for inside walls, etc., is **nogging.**

frieze. The name given to each of the square panels, often bearing figures, on a Doric frieze is **metope.**

—. A name given to shallow, dish-like ornaments on a frieze is **paterae.**

—. A name for a fillet separating a Doric frieze from the architrave is **taenia.**

—. The name given to a tablet on the frieze of a Doric building ornamented with three upright bands is **triglyph.**

gable. A name for a board running along a gable-end and hiding the rafters is **barge-board.**

—. A name for a course of bricks laid edgewise along the top of a gable wall is **barge-course.**

—. The board or edge running down the end of a gable is a **barge-end.**

—. A name for each of the stones in the upper edge of a gable is **barge-stone.**

—. A name for the step-like projections on some old Flemish and other gables is **corbie-steps.**

—. The ornamental gable surmounting a portico in a classical building is a **pediment.**

gallery. Names for a gallery on the top of the rood-screen of a church are **jube** and **rood-loft.**

—. The name given to a cross gallery or loft in a church, etc., is **traverse.**

—. The name given to a gallery or arcade formed in the walls of a church above the arches of the nave, choir, or transepts is **triforium.**

garland. A name given to an ornament carved in wood or stone, or moulded in stucco, in the form of a garland of fruits, flowers, etc., is **festoon.**

gate. An outwork of a castle or city defending a gate or drawbridge is a **barbican.**

—. A churchyard gate with a roof under which at a funeral the coffin awaits the officiating clergyman is a **lich-gate.**

—. The name given to each of a series of monumental gateways placed before the principal entrance of an ancient Egyptian building is **propylon.**

gate. A name for the massive gateway of an ancient Egyptian temple is **pylon.**

girder. A girder supporting a wall over a shop-front or a bay window is a **breastsummer** or **bressummer.**

—. A horizontal beam or girder supporting a floor or a ceiling is a **joist.**

—. A girder or beam which takes the chief strain is a **principal.**

—. A name for a horizontal girder running lengthwise in a building or other structure is **stringer.**

—. The name given to a stout timber or block of stone placed under the end of a beam or a girder to distribute the weight is **templet.**

Gorgon. A mask or other representations of a Gorgon's head, often used on the keystone of an arch, is a **Gorgoneion.**

Gothic. *For the styles of Gothic architecture see under* **style,** *below.*

grating. A grating or latticed screen, especially in a door or wall, for observing what is going on outside is a **grille.**

—. A strong grating let down to protect a gateway is a **portcullis.**

gutter. A name for a V-shaped gutter is **arris-gutter.**

hall. The name for a large, oblong hall of justice or assembly in an ancient Roman city, with double colonnades and an apse, is **basilica.**

—. The public hall in an ancient Greek city was the **prytaneum.**

heating. A channel for conveying hot air round the walls of a building is a **flue.**

—. The name for a chamber for hot air beneath the pavement of a Roman house is **hypocaust.**

hood. A carved hood over a tomb, niche, etc., is a **canopy.**

house. The name for the central court of an ancient Roman house is **atrium.**

—. A house having a timber framework covered with boards is a **frame-house.**

—. A house having a timber framework and its wall spaces filled in with brickwork or plaster is **half-timbered.**

joist. A name for a horizontal beam supporting the joists of a floor or roof is **summer.**

keystone. A name for a keystone is **arch-stone.**

leaf. A space or pattern in the form of a leaf between the cusps of a Gothic window is a **foil.**

ledge. A ledge or projection between the lower part of a wall and a narrower or receding portion above is a **set-off.**

lintel. A term meaning constructed with beams or lintels is **trabeated.**

lobby. A name for the lobby of an hotel, theatre, or other public building is **foyer.**

—. The name given to a ceiled lobby, intended to prevent draughts, at the entrance to a building is **tambour.**

—. A lobby, hall, or antechamber next to the outer door of a house or public building, from which doors open into various rooms, is a **vestibule.**

loophole. A cross-shaped opening in a castle wall through which bolts were shot is a **balistraria.**

marble. A name for a rich yellow marble used in ancient Roman buildings is **giallo antico.**

—. A name for a variety of red or purplish veined marble used for ornamental purposes is **pavonazzo.**

—. Very fine white marbles used by sculptors are the **Pentelic, Parian,** and **Carrara marbles.**

—. The name of a grey, bluish or greenish marble found in Dorset is **Purbeck marble.**

—. The name given to akind of red marble is **rosso antico.**

market-place. A name for a market-place in an Italian town is **piazza.**

moat. A name for a moat round an old castle or other fortification is **fosse.**

monastery. The name given to a building in a monastery for the distribution of alms is **almonry.**

monastery. A name for a heated room in a monastery is **calefactory.**

—. Other names for the dining-hall of a monastery are **fratry, frater, fratery,** and **refectory.**

—. A name for the writing-room in a monastery is **scriptorium.**

Moorish. A famous palace made of red brick begun by the Moors in 1264, during their occupation of southern Spain, is the **Alhambra.**

mortar. A name for a thin liquid mortar for filling spaces in masonry and brickwork is **grout.**

—. A name for a special kind of mortar which will harden under water is **hydraulic mortar.**

mosaic. The name of a kind of mosaic woodwork used in Italy in the Middle Ages is **tarsia.**

—. The name given to a mosaic pavement composed of little cubes of hard material is **tessellated pavement.**

—. A name for each of the small blocks used in mosaic is **tessera.**

moulding. The horizontal moulding at the top of a wall or entablature is the **cornice.**

—. An instrument used by masons for tracing a cyma, or curved moulding, is a **cymagraph.**

—. A tiny projecting square used in Greek architectural mouldings is a **dentil.**

—. A decoration for a moulding or edging consisting of rounded projections, like inverted fluting, is a **gadroon** or **godroon.**

—. The name given to a series of mouldings is **order.**

—. An acute hollow or recess in or between mouldings is a **quirk.**

—, classical. A curved moulding of a cornice shaped like an *S* opened out is a **cyma.**

—, —. A waved moulding which is hollow in its upper part and swells below is a **cyma recta.**

—, —. A waved moulding which is rounded in the upper part and hollow below is a **cyma reversa.**

—, —. A name for a rounded convex moulding is **ovolo.**

—, —. The name given a hollow moulding used in classical architecture, especially around the base of an Ionic column, is **scotia.**

—, —. The name given to a little square moulding or ornament, especially one over a Doric triglyph, is **tringle.**

—, kind. The moulding or ornamentation on the wall-face of the wedge-shaped stones which are used in building an arch or vault is an **archivolt.**

—, —. A ring-like moulding round a column is a **bandelet.**

—, —. A name for an astragal or round moulding cut or carved in the shape of beads is **beading.**

—, —. A projecting moulding on the framework of panelling is a **bolection.**

—, —. A moulding, used in Early English architecture, which consists of a series of notched pyramids or four-leaved flowers is a **dog-tooth moulding.**

—, —. A projecting moulding on a wall, window, etc., from the under edge of which water drops clear of the wall is a **dripstone** or **drip-moulding.**

—, —. A name for a semi-circular moulding is **half-round.**

—, —. A name for a waved moulding formed like an elongated letter *S* is **ogee.**

—, —. A name given to a flat, rectangular moulding which projects slightly is **platband.**

—, —. The name given to a convex moulding is **roll.**

—, —. A name for a band of flat moulding on a wall is **table.**

—, —. The name given to a large rounded projecting moulding, usually at the base of a column, is **torus.**

—, Norman. A toothed or zigzag moulding found in Norman architecture is a **dancette.**

moulding, Norman. A form of moulding, seen in Norman architecture, in which the face of the stone is cut in wedges resembling the spread tail of a dove is **dovetail-moulding.**

—, —. A kind of moulding, common in Norman architecture, consisting of a flat band ornamented with circular disks is **pellet-moulding.**

niche. A gable-shaped canopy over a niche or over a window or door is a **gablet.**

—. A name for a niche or canopy over a niche for an image in a church, etc., is **tabernacle.**

order. The five classical orders of architecture are **the Tuscan, Doric, Ionic, Corinthian,** and **Composite.**

—, classical. A rude Italian form of the Doric order of architecture is the **Tuscan order.**

—. *See also under* **style,** *below.*

ornament. An ornament at the apex of a roof, pinnacle, gable, etc., is a **finial.**

—. A name for a series of rounded projections, like inverted fluting, is **gadroon** or **godroon.**

—. An architectural ornament consisting of a face, usually grotesque, is a **mask.**

—. A name loosely given to any flat ornament in low relief is **patera.**

—. A form of ornament common in Norman architecture and consisting of a flat band ornamented with circular disks is **pellet-moulding.**

—. A name given to a hanging ornament on a roof or ceiling is **pendant.**

—. The name given to a triangular ornament consisting of three interlaced arcs, common in Early Christian architecture, is **triquetra.**

—, classical. In Roman architecture an ornament resembling an ox-skull is a **bucranium.**

—, —. An ornamental projection in Greek architecture with two channels is a **diglyph.**

—, —. An ornament common in classical work, formed of a continuous combination of straight lines, usually joined at right angles and either raised or incised, is a **fret.**

—, — A classical ornament consisting of intertwining wavy bands is the **guilloche.**

—, —. An architectural ornament in the shape of a drop found in Doric architecture is a **gutta.**

—, —. A form of ornament, consisting of a convoluted scroll-pattern, occurring in friezes of the Composite order, is the **Vitruvian scroll.**

—, flower. An ornament like a ball wrapped round by petals is a **ball-flower.**

—, —. The name of an ornament in the form of a notched pyramid or four-leaved flower, common in Early English mouldings, is **dog-tooth.**

—, —. A name for a flower-shaped ornament is **fleuron.**

—, foliage. An ornament resembling the leaves of the acanthus, used in decorating the capitals of columns, is an **acanthus.**

—, —. A small, carved, leaf-like ornament on a gable, cornice, etc. is a **crocket.**

—, —. A name for a carved or painted ornament in the form of a palm-leaf is **palmette.**

—, —. A pattern with four leaves radiating from a common centre is a **quatrefoil.**

—, —. The name given to an ornament or opening with three leaves or lobes is **trefoil.**

—, —. A flowing ornament of vine leaves and tendrils, common in architecture of the Tudor period, is a **vignette.**

—. *See also under* **decoration** *and* **moulding,** *above, and under* **scroll,** *below.*

painting. A non-glossy method of house-painting in which the colours are mixed with a large quantity of turpentine and little oil is **flatting.**

panel. A projecting moulding round a panel is a **bolection.**

—. A deep panel in a ceiling is a **coffer.**

parapet. A parapet on the top of a building with notches at intervals is a **battlement.**

—. A parapet on a wall with openings or embrasures to shoot through is **embattled** or **crenellated.**

parapet. A parapet with openings in the floor between supporting corbels is **machicolated.**

—. *See also under* **battlement,** *above.*

partition. A name for a cross-piece of wood in a partition to carry laths for plastering is **stud.**

—. A name for a filling of brick used in the timber framework of a partition, etc., is **nogging.**

passage. A name for a covered passage from a cathedral transept to the chapter house or deanery is **slype.**

pedestal. A pedestal on a pediment is an **acroterium.**

—. The cube-shaped part of a pedestal between the base and the cornice is the **dado.**

pediment. Another name for a pediment is **fronton.**

—. The name given to the triangular area forming the field of a pediment is **tympanum.**

pilaster. The square pilasters on each side of the entrance to a temple are the **antae.**

—. A name given to a figure of a man serving as a column or pilaster is **telamon.**

pile. Another name for a pile or large timber driven into the ground to support a foundation is **spile.**

pillar. A short pillar helping to support a rail is a **baluster.**

—. The top part of a pier or pillar upon which an arch rests is the **impost.**

—. A half-pillar attached to a wall to support an arch is a **respond.**

—. *See also under* **column,** *above.*

plaster. A method of decoration by scratching on a plaster surface to reveal a different coloured under surface is **graffito.**

—. A name for plaster applied to laths and sometimes decorated in relief, between the timbers of a structure, is **pargeting.**

—. The name of a fine plaster (of lime and powdered marble) used for cornices, etc., and also of a coarse plaster, containing sand, used for coating the outsides of buildings, is **stucco.**

plastering. A name for a cross-piece of wood in a partition to carry laths for plastering is **stud.**

platform. A name for a low platform at the end of a hall or terrace is **dais.**

—. A name for a low raised platform taking up part of a room is **estrade.**

—. A name for a raised stone platform with the steps leading to it at the entrance of a large building is **perron.**

—. A South African name for an open roofed platform or veranda outside a house is **stoep.**

—, Greek. The platform cut out of rock from which the Greek orators spoke was a **bema.**

—, statue. A platform or series of platforms forming the upper part of a pedestal supporting a statue is an **entablement.**

porch. A name for a porch or chapel at the entrance or at the west end of some large churches is **Galilee.**

—. A porch supported on pillars is a **portico.**

—. A name for a porch or portico in ancient Greek buildings, is **stoa.**

portico. A portico having two columns is a **distyle.**

—. The name for a triangular facing in Greek buildings, and a semi-circular or other formation in Roman or Renaissance buildings which surmounts the portico, is **pediment.**

—. A portico in which the columns, never more than four in number, stand out free from the main building is a **prostyle.**

—. A portico with four pillars or columns is a **tetrastyle.**

—. A classical name for a covered portico used as a place of exercise by athletes is **xystus.**

—. *See also under* **column,** *above.*

post. An upright post forming the chief support of a structure is a **stanchion.**

—. A name for an upright post supporting a beam on which a floor or wall rests is **story-post.**

—. *See also under* **roof,** *below.*

proportion. A name for a unit of length (usually half the width of the column at its base) adopted as an architectural standard for expressing proportions is **module.**

rafter. A name for two rafters in a roof joined at the point of meeting and held together by a tie is **couple.**

—. A rafter placed under another to relieve the strain is a **cushion-rafter.**

—. A rafter that takes the chief strain is a **principal.**

—. The name given to a horizontal board, stood on edge, to which the rafters of a roof slope up and are nailed is **ridge-piece** or **ridge-plate.**

—. *See also under* **roof,** *below.*

recess. A name for a vaulted recess in a wall is **alcove.**

— A name for an arched semi-circular recess, especially that at the east end of the choir of a church, is **apse.**

—. A recess in a wall, etc., for a statue, vase, etc., is a **niche.**

—. A name for a structure, containing a recess, built out from an upper story is **oriel.**

ridge. A name given to a flat ridge between the flutings of a column is **facet.**

rod. A rod with a serpent twined round it, cut out in stone on the front of a building, is an **Aaron's rod.**

— The name given to a steel or iron rod used in a structure to prevent spreading of the parts it connects is **tension-rod.**

roof. A name for the part of a slate or tile roof which projects beyond the gable-end is **barge-course.**

—. A name for the overhanging edge of a roof or thatch is **eaves.**

—. A name for a kind of overlapping joint used in roofing with sheet metal is **flashing.**

—. The triangular end above the level of the eaves of a building with a ridged roof is a **gable.**

—. The outer angle formed by the meeting of the sides of a ridged roof without gables, or a rafter along the edge of this, is a **hip.**

—. The name given to the partly-sloped end of a roof intermediate between a gable and a hip is **jerkin head.**

—. The name given to an arch or moulding supporting a roof or ceiling is **rib.**

—. The coping of a span roof is a **ridge.**

—. A name for the trough formed between two ridges of a roof is **valley.**

—, kind. A roof having each side formed with two slopes or pitches is a **curb-roof.**

—, —. A roof that slopes very steeply is **high-pitched.**

—, —. The name given to a ridged roof without gables is **hip-roof.**

—, —. A name for a type of roof having a flatter top than usual, but sloping steeply just before reaching the line of the outer walls, is **mansard roof.**

—, —. An arched roof of masonry is a **vault.**

—, —. A rounded roof, or part of one in the shape of a rounded vault, is a **dome** or **cupola.**

—, —. A name for a roof semi-circular in section, like the head of a wagon, is **wagon-roof.**

—, —. A roof consisting of one sloping side is a **shed-roof** or **penthouse.**

—, —. A roof which slopes up on both sides to a ridge along the middle is a **span-roof.**

—, timber. A piece of timber placed across an angle in the roof of a house is an **angle-tie.**

—, —. A beam in a roof connected to two opposite rafters near their upper ends is a **collar-beam** or **collar.**

—, —. A beam projecting inwards from a wall to support the timbers of the roof is a **hammer-beam.**

—, —. The name given to the rafters in the angles of a hip roof is **hip rafters.**

—, —. Names given to the middle post of a roof-truss, running from ridge to tie-beam, are **king-post** and **crown-post.**

roof, timber. Each of the upright posts resting on corbels against the upper part of the walls, to support the hammer-beams of a roof and their braces, is a **pendant-post.**

—, —. Each of the beams which take the chief strain in a roof is a **principal.**

—, —. The name of a short upright post forming part of a roof frame is **puncheon.**

—, —. A name given to a horizontal timber resting on the principal rafters of a roof is **purlin.**

—, —. Each of the upright posts resting on a tie-beam of a roof-truss having two such posts is a **queen-post.**

—, —. A sloping timber or beam supporting the covering of a roof is a **rafter.**

—, —. A name for a horizontal beam supporting the joists of a roof or floor, is **summer.**

—, —. Each of the frames placed at intervals in a roof, consisting of a pair of rafters and their supporting timbers, is a **truss.**

—. *See also under* **rafter,** *above, and* **vault,** *below.*

screen, church.—A name for a screen or a railing in a church that encloses an altar, tomb, etc., or separates a chapel from the main building is **parclose.**

scroll. A name for a scroll on the cornice of a column is **cartouche.**

—. The circle in the middle of a volute scroll is the **eye.**

—. A name for a convoluted scroll pattern occurring in friezes of the Composite order is **Vitruvian scroll.**

—. A spiral scroll used on Ionic, Corinthian, and Composite capitals is a **volute.**

seat. One of a series of low steps or a tier of seats in an amphitheatre or similar building is a **gradin.**

—. Names for a ledge on the under side of a hinged seat, acting as a support for a person standing a long time in worship, are **misericord** and **subsellium.**

—. The name given to seats in a chancel, often in the form of recessed niches, intended for the use of the clergy at Mass is **sedilia.**

shrine. The name given to a stone or metal lattice-work enclosing a shrine is **transenna.**

slab. A name for an upright slab or pillar with sculptured designs, used by the ancient Greeks etc., as a memorial, is **stele** or **stela.**

slate. A course of slates or tiles on the overhanging part of a gable is a **barge-course.**

—. The name given to a large roofing slate with a rough surface on one side is **rag.**

slope. A name for the inward slope of a structure such as a retaining wall is **batter.**

spire. A church spire without a parapet is a **broach-spire.**

—. A name given to a slender spire, especially one above the intersection of the nave and the transepts of a church, is **flèche.**

spout. A spout carved to represent a grotesque head or body of a man or animal, projecting from the gutter of a building to carry rain-water clear of the wall, is a **gargoyle.**

square. A name for a square or open space surrounded by buildings is **piazza.**

stair. The step at the bottom of a flight of stairs which has the outer end rounded off is a **curtail-step.**

—. A name for the top or bottom post of a stair hand-rail and for the central pillar supporting the steps of a winding staircase is **newel.**

—. The upward curve of a stair-rail, etc., when changing direction is a **ramp.**

staircase. Each of the side pieces of a wooden staircase which support the ends of the steps is a **string-board** or **string-piece.**

—. An open space from floor to floor in a building for a staircase, lift, etc., is a **well.**

standard. A name for a unit of length (usually half the diameter of the column at its base) adopted as an architectural standard for expressing proportions is **module**

statue. A name given to the statue of a woman serving as a column in a building is **caryatid.**

—. A plain low rectangular block forming the base of a statue, vase, etc., is a **socle.**

—. Names given to a statue of a man serving as a column in a building are **atlas** and **telamon.**

steeple. A name for a hole in a steeple or tower to admit light is **dream hole.**

step. A series of steps leading from the cloisters of a church into the church itself is a **gradatory.**

stone. Squared hewn stone used tor facing a wall is **ashlar.**

—. A stone joining two walls at the corner of a building is a **corner stone.**

—. Each of the wedge-shaped stones forming an arch is a **voussoir.**

—. *See also under* **marble,** *above.*

story. Names for a low-ceilinged story between two loftier ones in a building are **mezzanine** and **entresol.**

style. A name for a kind of rococo architecture which flourished on the Continent in the early and middle eighteenth century is **baroque.**

—. A style of architecture developed by the Greeks of the Eastern Empire, and characterized by the dome, the round arch, and decoration in mosaic is **Byzantine.**

—. The five principal styles of classical architecture —Doric, Ionic, Corinthian, Tuscan and Composite—are the **classic orders.**

—. The style of architecture, characterized by pointed arches, prevalent in Europe in the twelfth to the sixteenth centuries is **Gothic.**

—. A name for a style in classical architecture is **order.**

—. The term used to denote a florid style of architecture and decoration prevalent in the late seventeenth and the eighteenth centuries is **rococo.**

—. The term used to denote a style of architecture in vogue in Romanized Europe between the classical and Gothic periods is **Romanesque.**

—, classical. A style of Roman architecture combining the Corinthian and Ionic is the **Composite order.**

—, —. A style of Greek architecture the principal feature of which is a cluster or series of clusters of acanthus leaves on the capitals is the **Corinthian order.**

—, —. The earliest and simplest of the three Grecian orders is the **Doric order.**

—, —. The second of the Greek orders of architecture, having volutes in the capitals, is the **Ionic order.**

—, —. A rude Italian form of the Doric order of architecture is the **Tuscan order.**

—, Gothic. A term applied to the ornamental, second English style of Gothic architecture, mainly of the fourteenth century, is **Decorated.**

—, —. The earliest form of the Gothic style of architecture, employed in England in the thirteenth century and marked chiefly by lancet windows and plain, slim capitals, is **Early English** or **Early Pointed.**

—, —. A style of architecture marked by wavy, flame-like decorations, which is found in French churches built in the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries, is **flamboyant.**

—, —. A term applied to the profusely ornamented development of the Perpendicular style in the fifteenth century in England is **florid.**

—, —. The late and purely English form of Gothic architecture, characterized by unbroken vertical lines, especially in the tracery of windows, is the **Perpendicular style.**

—, —. A name given to the late Perpendicular style of Gothic in its later stages, containing Renaissance elements, is **Tudor style.**

—, Italian. A name for the Italian Renaissance style of art and architecture of the sixteenth century is **Cinquecento.**

style, Italian. A name for an Italian style of architecture based on the ancient Roman by Palladio (1518-80) is **Palladian.**

—, Mohammedan. A term applied to a decorative style of architecture introduced by the Moors is **Moresque.**

—, —. A name given to Mohammedan architecture, characterized by intricate ornamental arabesques, etc., is **Saracenic.**

—, Romanesque. A variety of the Romanesque style, developed in Normandy and England, is the **Norman.**

—, —. A form of the Romanesque style of architecture in Italy from the seventh to the thirteenth centuries was the **Lombardic.**

—, —. The name given to the rude, simple style of Romanesque which preceded Norman architecture in England is **Saxon.**

summer-house. A name for a summer-house commanding an extensive view is **gazebo.**

support. A long piece of timber, iron, or stone used to support weight in a building is a **beam.**

—. A supporting structure built against a wall is a **buttress.**

—. A half-arched structure, normally between a solid buttress and the wall of the main building, which helps to support a vault or a higher wall, is a **flying buttress.**

—. A name for a massive support of stone or brick for an arch or roof is **pier.**

tablet. A name for an ornamental tablet resembling a scroll of paper, sometimes bearing inscriptions, is **cartouche.**

temple. A kind of temple in which a central space is open to the sky is a **hypaethron.**

—. The name of the temple of the goddess Athene on the Acropolis at Athens, is **Parthenon.**

—. The space in front of the body of a temple enclosed by the portico is the **pronaos.**

—. A name given to the entrance to a Greek temple or other building of architectural importance is **propylaeum.**

terrace. A name for a garden walk or terrace of an ancient Roman house is **xystus.**

thatch. A name for the overhanging edge of a thatch or roof is **eaves.**

theatre. *See section* Drama.

throne. The name given to a bishop's throne is **exedra** or **exhedra,** or, if in the apse of a basilica, **tribune.**

tile. A name for a roofing tile curved crosswise, like a flat letter *S*, is **pantile.**

—. The slope at which weather-tiles are fixed to the side of a house to keep it dry, is **weathering.**

—. Any one of the tiles fixed to the side of a house to keep it dry is a **weather-tile.**

timber. A name for a piece of timber built lengthwise into a wall to strengthen it is **bond-timber.**

—. *See also under* **roof,** *above.*

tomb. A name for a large, monumental type of tomb, is **mausoleum.**

tower. A tower, especially that of a church, in which bells are or may be hung is a **belfry.**

—. A name for a detached bell-tower, especially in an Italian style, is **campanile.**

—. The name given to the main tower of a mediaeval castle is **keep** or **donjon.**

—. A name for a tower or turret in Mohammedan buildings is **minar.**

—. The slender tower of a Mohammedan mosque, from which the muezzin calls the faithful to prayer, is a **minaret.**

—. A name for an Eastern sacred tower, often pyramidal in India, bell-shaped in Burma and Siam, octagonal and tapering in China, is **pagoda.**

tracery. A name for a kind of tracery, moulded and pierced, that developed from the simpler plate tracery is **bar-tracery.**

—. A name for a projecting point between small arcs in Gothic tracery is **cusp.**

tracery. A term applied to leaf-like decoration in window tracery, etc., is **foliate.**

—. The name given to a tracery consisting of openings cut in flat slabs of stone, used at the beginning of the Early English period, is **plate-tracery.**

—. An opening in stone tracery with a divided outline resembling four radiating petals is a **quatrefoil.**

transept. The name given to a covered way leading from the transept of a cathedral is **slype.**

turret. A small turret built out from an angle of a tower or wall is a **bartizan.**

—. A building, usually a turret, from which a view can be seen is a **belvedere.**

—. The name given to a mediaeval turret for the escape of smoke is **louver.**

—. A name for a kind of turret on the top of a flat-roofed house in eastern Spain is **mirador.**

unit. A name for a unit of length (usually half the diameter of the column at its base) adopted as an architectural standard for expressing proportions is **module.**

vault. A knob at the point where the ribs of a vault intersect is a **boss.**

—. A rib in a groined vault which extends from one pier to another opposite is a **cross-springer.**

—. The vaulting produced by the crossing of simple vaults is **cross-vaulting.**

—. A name for a vault beneath a building, especially a church, is **crypt.**

—. Vaulting in which the tracery spreads out like a fan from the vaulting-shafts or wall-supports is **fan-tracery.**

—. A name for the edge formed by intersecting vaults, and also for the moulding covering the edge, is **groin.**

—. The name given to a short rib in Gothic vaulting that connects the bosses and intersections of the main ribs is **lierne.**

—. A name for a diagonal groin or rib of a Gothic vault is **ogive.**

—. A name given to each of the triangular segments of vaulting in a groined roof is **pendentive.**

—. A kind of vaulting in which the ceiling is divided into parts by cross arches decorated with ribs is **rib-vaulting.**

—. A compartment or bay in a vaulted roof is a **severy.**

ventilation. A passage, especially a subterranean one, for ventilation is a **ventiduct.**

vestibule. A name for a vestibule or railed-off portico in the west end of some churches, originally for the use of catechumens, women penitents, etc., is **narthex.**

wall. A name for the method of arranging bricks as stretchers and headers in courses so as to bind a wall together is **bond.**

—. A coating for the outside of walls made of gravel and lime, mortar, or cement is **roughcast.**

—. A wall built entirely of bricks laid lengthwise in the direction in which it runs, and so arranged that the joints of each course are opposite the centres of the bricks above and below, is built with **stretcher-bond.**

—, foundation. A term denoting the foundation of a wall is **pattern.**

—, —. A plain base forming the foundation of a wall is a **socle.**

—, kind. A name for a wall separating two buildings occupied by different owners is **party-wall.**

—, —. A name for a low projecting wall supporting a building is **podium.**

—, —. The name given to a massive wall used to hold back earth, as at the sides of railway cuttings, docks, and reservoirs, is **retaining wall.**

—, part. A name for a course of bricks laid edgewise along the top of a gable-wall is **barge-course.**

—, —. The top of a wall is the **cap.**

—, —. The sloping course on a wall or buttress to throw off water is a **coping.**

wall, part. A stone forming part of a coping or top course of a wall is a **cope stone** or **coping stone.**

—, —. A name for the lower part of the wall of a room when panelled or coloured differently from the upper part is **dado.**

—, —. A layer of material put in a wall to prevent the damp from rising through is a **damp-course.**

—, —. A name for a stone which is placed so that it runs right through a wall is **parpen.**

—, —. A name for a slope connecting two levels of wall-coping is **ramp.**

—, —. A ledge or projection between part of a wall and a narrower or receding portion above is a **set-off.**

—, —. A name for a flat projecting coping stone on a wall is **tablette.**

—, —. A projecting edge to a wall for preventing the rain from running down it is a **water-table.**

—, woodwork. A name for a timber built lengthwise into a brick or stone wall to strengthen or stiffen it is **bond-timber**

—, —. A name for a cross-piece of wood in a partition to carry laths for plastering is **stud.**

—, —. A stout plank or timber let into a wall to distribute the pressure of the roof trusses or rafters is a **wall-plate.**

—, —. An outside covering used in house-building, consisting of horizontal planks overlapping each other and placed so as to keep out wind and rain, is **weather-boarding.**

—. *See also section* Army, Navy, Air Force, and Nautical,

way, inclined. An inclined way connecting two levels is a **ramp.**

well. A wall or curb round the mouth of a well is a **puteal.**

window. An arch of brickwork above the lintel over a window, filled in flush with the wall, is a **discharging arch.**

—. When both the sashes of a window are movable and fitted with lines and weights they are **double-hung.**

—. The groove in a sash-bar into which the glass pane fits is a **fillister.**

—. A name given to a projecting stone moulding above a window to throw the rain clear is **head-moulding.**

—. Names for an upright bar dividing a window into parts are **mullion** and **monial.**

—. A name for a triangular or other ornamental structure over a window is **pediment.**

—, Gothic. Names for a circular window with mullions radiating like spokes from its centre are **catherine-wheel** and **wheel-window.**

—, —. The name of a window in which the stained glass shows the different ancestors of Christ and the tracery joins these up in the form of a genealogical tree is **Jesse-window.**

—, —. The name given to a kind of window, long and narrow, which tapers to a point at the top is **lancet window.**

—, —. A name for a rose-window is **marigold-window.**

—, —. A name for a recessed structure containing a window, built out from an upper story, also a name loosely given to any projecting window, is **oriel.**

—, —. The name given to a circular window filled with stonework tracery and having radiating mullions is **rose-window.**

—, —. The name given to the ornamental open-work pattern produced by piercing and by the crossing of the stone mullions in the head of a Gothic window is **tracery.**

—, kind. A window that curves outwards from the room is a **bow-window.**

—, —. A vertical window projecting from a sloping roof is a **dormer window.**

—, —. A name for a circular window, especially one in the top of a dome or cupola, is **eye.**

window, kind. A name for a window having two bays is **gemel-window.**

—, —. The name given to a small window sometimes found on the south side of the chancel in old churches, and built lower than the others, is **low side window.**

—, —. A name given to a dormer-window or a window in a spire is **lucarne.**

—, —. An arched or semi-circular opening in a concave ceiling or a vaulted roof is a **lunette.**

—, —. A name for a type of window broader than its height, especially one on a low-ceilinged story, is **mezzanine window.**

—, —. The name given to a three-light window is **triplet.**

—, —. A window with three separate openings, the arched central front having a flat-topped part on each side of it, is a **Venetian window.**

window, part. The name given to a small grooved leaden bar used for holding glass in latticed windows is **came.**

—, —. A name given to the space between the outer and inner faces of an arched window or door is **rear-vault.**

—, —. The vertical surface forming the side of an opening such as a window or a door is a **reveal.**

—, —. The name given to the bevelling or splay in the opening of a door or window is **scuncheon.**

—, —. The outward or inward widening of a window by slanting the sides is the **splay.**

—, —. The name given to a horizontal bar across a window or the top of a door is **transom.**

—, —. The name given to a three-lobed opening in a window, etc., is **trefoil.**

—, —. The space between the lintel and the arch over a door or window is the **tympanum.**

ARMY, NAVY, AIR FORCE, AND NAUTICAL

absence, leave of. Leave of absence granted to a soldier is **furlough.**

admiral. *See under* **rank,** *below.*

aeroplane, division. The name denoting a small division of aeroplanes in the Royal Air Force, varying in number, is **flight.**

—, —. The name used of a large division of aeroplanes in the Royal Air Force, consisting of a varying number of wings, is **group.**

—, —. The name denoting a division of aeroplanes in the Royal Air Force, consisting of a varying number of flights, is **squadron.**

—, —. The name used of a division of aeroplanes in the Royal Air Force, consisting of a varying number of squadrons, is **wing.**

—. *See also under section* Aviation.

air-defence. A name given to an air defence barrier, consisting of large nets suspended between the mooring-ropes of captive balloons, used to trap hostile raiders during the World War, is **apron defence.**

ammunition. The name given during the World War to a depot in the fighting zone, containing a store of explosives, etc., was **ammunition dump.**

—. A name for a place where naval and military weapons and ammunition are made and stored is **arsenal.**

—. A name for a vehicle for carrying ammunition-chests, etc., is **caisson.**

—, supply. The name for the branch of the public service that provides the army with arms, ammunition, and equipment other than quartermaster's stores is **ordnance.**

anchor. When a vessel is over her anchor and the chain is hove taut, the anchor is **a-peak.**

—. Terms used to denote that an anchor is hauled clear of the ground are **a-trip** and **weighed.**

—. A large anchor in general use, carried at the bow of a ship, is a **bower.**

—. A nautical term used of a ship coming to anchor is **bringing up.**

—. A name for a stout beam of wood or iron projecting over a vessel's bow, by which the anchor is held clear of the side, is **cat-head.**

—. A boat's anchor having more than two flukes is a **grapnel.**

—. The anchor, cables, etc., used in anchoring a vessel are her **ground tackle.**

—. The name given to the space between a vessel and her anchor when she is anchored is **hawse.**

—. A name for a temporary anchor is **jury-anchor.**

—. A kind of small anchor for use in shallow water, especially to move a vessel by pulling on the cable, is the **kedge.**

—. A name for a small anchor is **killick.**

anchor. Securing a vessel between two anchors planted in opposite directions, or to a buoy, post, etc., is **mooring.**

—. A name for an anchor consisting of a shank running into a large metal bowl or cup, used for securing buoys, etc., is **mushroom-anchor.**

—. The short iron or wooden posts in pairs on a ship's deck, to which the free end of the anchor chain or cable is made fast after anchoring, are the **riding-bitts.**

—. The name of each of two anchors usually carried outside the waist of a ship, and used in emergencies, is **sheet-anchor.**

—. A name for a ship's anchor for temporary use in rivers, etc., is **stream-anchor.**

—, floating. Names for a floating anchor, made of wood or canvas, used in bad weather for keeping a vessel not under control head on to wind and sea, are **drogue** and **sea-anchor.**

—, hoist. The name for an upright ribbed drum or barrel, rotated by an engine or by hand-levers, used to hoist anchor, etc., on a ship is **capstan.**

—, —. The name of the heavy block by means of which a ship's anchor is hoisted to the cat-head is **cat-block.**

—, —. A tackle used to raise an anchor to a horizontal position on the gunwale of a ship is a **fish-tackle.**

—, —. Names for a horizontal drum or barrel, rotated by an engine or by hand-levers, used to hoist anchor, etc., on a ship, are **winch** and **windlass.**

—, hole. A hole in a vessel's bow for the passage of an anchor cable is a **hawse-hole.**

—, part. Names for each of the bars running from the shank of an anchor and bearing the flukes are **arm** and **blade.**

—, —. The point of the fluke of an anchor is the **bill** or **peak.**

—, —. The end of an anchor, where the two arms holding the flukes join, is the **crown.**

—, —. Names for the wide triangular part of an anchor that holds the ground are **fluke** and **palm.**

—, —. The part of the shank of an anchor above the stock is the **head.**

—, —. The main shaft of an anchor is the **shank.**

—, —. The cross-bar of an anchor is the **stock.**

—, —. The end part of an anchor, where the two arms holding the flukes run into the shank, is the **throat.**

archer. The weapon used by English archers at Crécy and Agincourt was the bow called, on account of its length, the **long-bow.**

—. The case in which an archer carried his arrows was a **quiver.**

See also under **crossbow,** *below.*

armour. A name for the complete armour of a soldier of antiquity, including that for the head, legs, etc., or for body-armour only, is **corselet.**

—. The armour of a soldier and his horse, with the arms he carried, comprised his **harness.**

—. The name given to armour constructed of chains, links, or scales, worn by the ancients and in the Middle Ages, is **mail.**

—. The name given to armour consisting of solid, overlapping metal plates, as distinguished from mail, is **plate-armour.**

—, apron. A name for the mailed apron worn with plate-armour is **braconnière.**

—, arm. A name for the plate-armour protecting the entire arm, or the upper arm, is **brassard.**

—, —. The name for the pieces of armour protecting the armpits is **palettes.**

—, —. A name for armour for the upper arm from shoulder to elbow is **rerebrace.**

—, —. The name for plate armour protecting the forearm is **vambrace.**

—, back. A name for armour protecting the lower part of the back is **culet.**

—, body. A name for a breast-plate and back-plate of armour combined, or for the breast-plate alone, is **cuirass.**

—, coat. A name for a mediaeval defensive coat, made of metal plates or rings sewn on or between thicknesses of leather or linen, is **brigandine.**

—, —. A name for a coat of mail for the breast and neck, shorter and lighter than a hauberk, is **habergeon.**

—, —. A name for a long coat of mail reaching from the neck to below the knees, worn in the Middle Ages, is **hauberk.**

—, glove. A name for the mailed gloves worn with mediaeval armour is **gauntlets.**

—, horse. A name for any part of the defensive armour of war-horses in the Middle Ages is **bard.**

—, leg. The name for armour, especially plate-armour, protecting the thighs is **cuishes.**

—, —. Names for pieces of armour protecting the legs from ankle to knee are **greaves** and **jambes.**

—, shoulder. A name for a ridge or ridges of armour, worn on the shoulder in the Middle Ages to turn the point of a lance, is **passegarde.**

—, throat. The name for a piece of armour protecting the gap between the helmet and the cuirass is **gorget.**

—. *See also under* **helmet,** *below.*

armour-bearer. An old name for the esquire or armour-bearer of a knight is **armiger.**

army. The body of troops that marches in front of the main part of an army is the **advance guard, van,** or **vanguard.**

—. The name for the force of regular soldiers in the British Army, trained and ready for fighting service abroad, is **expeditionary force.**

—, arms. The name for the branch of the public service which provides the army with arms, ammunition, and equipment other than quartermaster's stores is **ordnance.**

—, food. A name for the department which supplies food and daily necessities to an army is the **commissariat.**

—, German. The name given to the German national regular army formed after the revolution in 1918 is **Reichswehr.**

artillery, fire. The name given to a large volume of artillery fire falling continuously in the same area, for screening an attack or preventing supplies reaching the enemy, is **barrage.**

—, heavy. A name for heavy artillery is **ordnance.**

—, train. A name for a train of artillery, with ammunition and equipment for an army in the field, is **park.**

—. *See also under* **gun,** *below.*

attack. An old name for a night attack, especially one in which the attackers wore shirts over their armour as a means of identification, is **camisade.**

—. A name for an attack on an enemy is **offensive.**

—. A name for a sally or outrush from a besieged place to attack the besiegers is **sortie.**

—, military. A name given to the precise pre-arranged time of a military attack, etc., from which all movements of troops in connexion with that attack are reckoned, is **zero hour.**

badge. A name for a badge worn on the arm, such as that of a red-cross man, is **brassard.**

—. *See also under* **stripe** *and* **uniform,** *below.*

bag, sailor's. A name for a sailor's or fisherman's bag for odds and ends of personal belongings, such as needles and thread, is **ditty-bag.**

ballast. The name given to blocks of iron fitted in a ship's bottom as permanent ballast, is **kentledge.**

barge. *See under* **boat,** *below.*

barracks. Another name for a barracks, especially for a group of small buildings serving for this purpose, erected between the ramparts and houses of a fortified town, is **casern** or **caserne.**

—. A room in a barracks where the guard assembles, and where military prisoners are kept in custody, is the **guard-house** or **guard-room.**

—. A name for a room in a barracks used as the office of a company for the transaction of business is **orderly-room.**

barrage. A barrage so directed that it falls a short distance in front of advancing troops, in order to screen them from enemy attack, is a **creeping barrage.**

basket. The name for a bottomless basket or cylinder of wickerwork, etc., filled with earth and used formerly for facing earthworks, or for protecting soldiers while digging trenches, is **gabion.**

battalion. Each of the four divisions into which a battalion of infantry in the British Army is divided is a **company.**

battlement. Names for an opening, widening from within, in a battlement or parapet, etc., for firing through, are **crenel** and **embrasure.**

battleship. *See under* **warship,** *below.*

bayonet. A name for the fastening by which a bayonet scabbard is attached to a belt is **chape.**

—. A bayonet with a broad blade, which can be used for digging, is a **spade-bayonet.**

—. The name for any type of bayonet adapted for both cutting and thrusting is **sword-bayonet.**

beef, salt. The salt beef formerly served out to sailors was kept in a **harness-cask.**

belt. A belt or band fitted with loops for holding cartridges or ammunition cases, usually worn passing over one shoulder and under the other, is a **bandolier.**

—. A name for an attachment to a waistbelt of a uniform to support a sword scabbard or a bayonet is **frog.**

—. The leather belt with shoulder straps worn by officers in the British Army is the **Sam Browne.**

block. The name of the heavy block by means of which a sailing ship's anchor is raised to the cat-head is **cat-block.**

—. Rounded, sheaveless blocks of hardwood, for taking the lanyards used in setting up a ship's rigging, are **dead-eyes.**

—. A perforated block, or a cringle, for giving a rope in the rigging, etc., such a direction as will prevent it from chafing or fouling is a **fair-leader.**

—. A block used on board ship, with one pulley wider than the other, so that it may take a thicker rope, is a **fiddle-block.**

—. The name of a block at a masthead for raising and lowering the top-gallant yards is **jack-block.**

block. The name of a block at the yard-arm of a ship through which the halyard of a studding sail passes is **jewel-block.**

—. A name for a block with a single wheel in it, fixed to a swivel on which it can turn in any direction, used in guiding running rigging, is **monkey-block.**

blow-pipe. A name for a long blow-pipe used by the Dyaks of Borneo for shooting arrows is **sumpitan.**

boat, American. A name for a type of large, keelless, flat-bottomed boat formerly much used in Western America for carrying merchandise is **flat-boat.**

—, —. The name for a large, flat-bottomed river-boat of light build, used in America for cargo, is **gondola.**

—, Arab. A name for a type of sailing boat of Arab origin, with a single lateen sail, a long beak, and a large stern, common in the Indian Ocean, is **dhow.**

—, barge. A barge without sails or oars is a **dumb-barge.**

—, —. A flat-bottomed barge fitted with cranes for raising weights or drawing piles is a **pontoon.**

—, —. The name of a flat-bottomed barge or lighter employed in Dutch and Baltic ports is **pram.**

—, Bombay. The name for a surf-boat, fitted with lateen sails and having a cabin, used off Bombay is **bunder-boat.**

—, broad. A boat whose breadth is great in proportion to her length is **beamy.**

—, build. Boats in which the hull is built with planks set edge to edge are **carvel-built.**

—, —. Boats in which the hull is built with horizontal, overlapping planks are **clinker-built.**

—, Canadian. A name for a type of Canadian flat-bottomed boat with one or two masts is **bateau.**

—, canoe. A name for a canoe, hollowed out of a tree-trunk, used in the West Indies, etc., is **piragua** or **pirogue.**

—, —. A name for a type of dug-out canoe used on the rivers of Central America is **pitpan.**

—, —. The name given to a type of partly decked-in canoe, propelled by a double-bladed paddle or having sails, is **Rob Roy.**

—, Chinese. The name given to a light Chinese sailing boat, rigged like a junk, but having a European hull, is **lorcha.**

—, —. The name of a kind of flat-bottomed river boat used in China and Java is **sampan.**

—, collapsible. The name for a type of collapsible canvas-covered boat, carried on many warships and merchant vessels, is **Berthon boat.**

—, Dutch. A name for a type of two- or three-masted Dutch fishing boats used in the herring industry is **buss.**

—, —. A name for a type of large, flat-bottomed Dutch coasting boat is **fly-boat.**

—, —. A name for a small, open, Dutch boat, clinker-built, and rigged as a cutter or yawl, is **pink.**

—, Eskimo. The name for an Eskimo hunter's canoe, made of skins stretched over a wooden frame, and decked except for a hole in which the paddler sits, is **kayak.**

—, —. The name for a large, open Eskimo boat, made of skins stretched over a wooden frame, used for transporting women, etc., is **oomiak.**

—, fender. A name for a permanent fender attached below the gunwale round a heavy boat is **dolphin.**

—, fishing. The name for a broad type of fishing boat of shallow draft, carrying a jib and a mainsail with no boom, common in the Thames estuary is **bawley.**

—, —. The name for a type of long, flattish-bottomed fishing-boat used on the north-east coast, having a flaring bow and square stern, built for launching against heavy seas, is **coble.**

boat, fishing. A name for a type of two-masted fishing smack, with a broad beam, used in the North Sea is **dogger.**

—, —. The name of a Dutch or Danish fishing-boat carrying two spritsails is **koff.**

—, —. The name given to a small sailing vessel used in fishing is **smack.**

—, —. A fishing-vessel having a well, or perforated receptacle for conveying fish alive, is a **well-boat.**

—, flat-bottomed. A kind of large, flat-bottomed bateau used on the Great Lakes of America is the **mackinaw.**

—, —. A name given to a kind of oblong, flat-bottomed boat used in shallow waters and propelled by a pole or paddles is **punt.**

—, —. The name given to a large, flat-bottomed boat with square ends, used as a lighter or a pontoon, is **scow.**

—, gun. A name for a type of low-built iron-clad gun-boat with one or more heavy guns, capable of working in shallow water, is **monitor.**

—, gunwale. Boards fitted above the gunwale of a boat to keep the water out are **washboards.**

—, Humber. The name for a Humber or East Coast boat of barge-like build with bluff bows and a hinged mast is **billy-boy.**

—, Indian. A name for a seaworthy type of Indian sailing boat resembling an Arab dhow and used for trading is **pattamar.**

—, Levantine. A name for a type of light rowing-boat, long and narrow in build, used in the Levant, and also for a small Levantine sailing boat, is **caique.**

—, log. A name for a primitive kind of boat made of two or more logs lashed together, pointed at the bow, and having an outrigger if propelled by sails, is **catamaran.**

—, —. A general name for a boat or canoe formed of a hollowed-out log hewn into shape is **dug-out.**

—, Malay. The name given to a narrow, swift, Malay canoe pointed at both ends and fitted with sails and oars is **proa.**

—, Mediterranean. The name given to a small, single-masted Mediterranean coasting vessel carrying a lateen sail and a foresail is **tartan.**

—, motor. Names given to a fast motor-boat built to skim along the surface of the water are **glider** and **hydroplane.**

—, —. A name for a small motor attached outside a boat at the stern to operate a propeller is **outboard motor.**

—, Nile. The name for a type of large sailing boat with a sharp prow and broad stern, used for passenger traffic on the Nile, is **dahabeeyah.**

—, —. A name for a type of heavily-built, broad-beamed sailing boat used on the Upper Nile is **nugger.**

—, open. A kind of large open boat used in harbours for loading and unloading ships is the **lighter.**

—, —. A name for the space in an open boat to the rear of the rowers' seats is **stern-sheets.**

—, Philippine. A name for a dug-out canoe, with or without an outrigger, used in the Philippine Islands is **banca.**

—, pointed. A name for a type of open boat pointed at both ends, resembling the boats carried by a whaler, is **whale-boat.**

—, racing. A general name for various types of specially built and rigged sailing boats, and also for motor and steam boats, used for racing and pleasure cruising, is **yacht.**

—, rope. The name for a rope attached to a small boat and used to fasten it to a cleat, stake, etc., is **painter.**

—, —. A name for a rope fixed round the outside of a boat as a protection against collision or strain is **swifter.**

—, rowing. A type of flat-bottomed rowing-boat with a sharp bow used by fishermen is the **dory.**

boat, rowing. A name for a long, narrow, light clinker-built pleasure-boat, rowed with a single pair of sculls, is **funny.**

—, —. A rowing-boat having its rowlocks on projecting arms to give greater leverage is **outrigged.**

—, —. The name given to a boat designed to be rowed by three rowers, the middle one having a pair of sculls and the others single oars, is **randan.**

—, —. A name for a small, light rowing or sculling boat is **skiff.**

—, —. A name for a light, shallow rowing boat plying on rivers, etc., is **wherry.**

—, sailing. A name for a type of small sailing boat, having its single mast placed near the bow and carrying one fore-and-aft sail, is **cat-boat.**

—, —. The name for a type of sailing boat having a single mast, the forestay of which runs to the bow, and having a mainsail, gaff-topsail, fore-staysail, and jib, is **cutter.**

—, —. A name for a cutter or sloop rigged with a lug-sail aft, is **dandy.**

—, —. The name given to a sailing boat with a tall mainmast and a shorter aftermast carrying a sail about half the size of the mainsail, is **ketch.**

—, —. The name for a type of sailing boat with two or three masts carrying lugsails is **lugger.**

—, —. A name for a type of two-masted, flat-bottomed sailing boat used in shallow water in the West Indies is **piragua** or **pirogue.**

—, —. A name for a long, sharp flat-bottomed type of sailing boat of American origin, having one or two triangular sails, is **sharpie.**

—, —. The name of a type of single-masted fore-and-aft rigged sailing boat, which carries a foresail and a relatively large mainsail on a mast placed farther forward than in a cutter, is **sloop.**

—, —. The name for a type of barge-like sailing boat of shallow draught used on the Norfolk Broads is **wherry.**

—, —. The name for a type of sailing boat with a tall mainmast and a shorter aftermast carrying a sail about a quarter the size of the mainsail is **yawl.**

—, scouting. A name given to a small scouting boat used in naval warfare to watch the movements of the enemy is **vedette-boat.**

—, seat. A name for a transverse plank in a boat, used as a seat for an oarsman, is **thwart.**

—, ship's. A name for a type of collapsible canvas boat carried on destroyers, etc., is **Berthon boat.**

—, —. A name for a piece of wood shaped to fit and support the bottom of a ship's boat when it is stowed on deck is **boat-chock.**

—, —. The name of the smallest type of ship's boat which may be rowed by one man is **dinghy.**

—, —. A name for a rowing-boat of large size, especially one larger than a gig, usually reserved for the commanding officer of a warship is **galley.**

—, —. The name for a type of clinker-built rowing-boat, for four, six, or eight oars, kept for the use of a ship's captain or commanding officer is **gig.**

—, —. Each of the two broad bands passed round a boat to prevent it from swinging when hanging from the davits is a **gripe.**

—, —. The name given to a small boat, usually clinker-built, used for the general work of a ship is **jolly-boat.**

—, —. The names, in order of size, of the three largest types of ship's boat carried by a warship, all being carvel-built and driven by steam or petrol motor, are **launch, pinnace,** and **cutter.**

boat, ship's. The largest rowing-boat—often from 30 to 40 feet long—carried by a sailing vessel is its **long-boat.**

—, —. A name for a carvel-built, six- or eight-oared boat carried by a man-of-war is **pinnace.**

—, —. A name for a sharp-sterned type of ship's boat, clinker-built and having four or six oars and sails, is **whaler.**

—, —. A name for a small ship's boat, especially a jolly-boat with four or six oars, is **yawl.**

—, side. The strip of wood running along the top of the side of a boat and covering the upper end of the framing-timbers is the **gunwale** or **gunnel.**

—, stern. The name given to a part forming the stern of a square-ended boat is **transom.**

—, surf. A name for a type of surf-boat used on the Pacific coast of South America is **balsa.**

—, towing. A small but powerful boat driven by steam, etc., and used for towing other craft is a **tug.**

—, Venetian. The name for the former state barge of Venice in which the Doge performed the yearly ceremony of wedding the Adriatic Sea is **Bucentaur.**

—, —. The long, flat-bottomed Venetian boat with a high peak at one end, propelled by a single oar at the stern and sometimes having a shelter amidships, is the **gondola.**

—, West Indian. The name for a type of coasting vessel used in the West Indies is **drogher.**

—, wicker. A small wicker-work boat covered with hides, used on the north and west coasts of Ireland, etc., is a **coracle** or **curragh.**

—. *See also under* **ship,** *below.*

bodyguard. The royal bodyguard of veteran soldiers, founded in 1485, now having ceremonial duties in the royal household, is the **Yeomen of the Guard.**

bolt. A bolt or bar with an opening at one end to take a rope or hook is an **eyebolt.**

bomb. A name for a bomb shaped like a torpedo, with metal fins or vanes at the tail-end, for dropping from aircraft, is **aerobomb.**

—. The name for a kind of large bomb, or explosive drum, used during the World War to destroy or disable submerged submarines is **depth-charge.**

—. A general name for a bomb or explosive shell designed to be thrown by hand is **hand-grenade.**

—. A name for a type of bomb or hand-grenade used in trench fighting and infantry attacks by the Allies during the World War was the **Mills bomb.**

—, aerial. A name for a bomb containing combustible substances, dropped from aircraft, is **incendiary bomb.**

—, —. A name for each of the metal fins at the tail of an aerial bomb which tend to make it fall vertically is **vane.**

—, firing. A cord, tube, or casing filled with combustible material for firing a bomb, mine, etc., is a **fuse.**

—, gun. A name for a German trench-mortar used for throwing large bombs is **minenwerfer.**

—, —. A name for a British type of trench-mortar used for hurling bombs during the World War is **Stokes mortar.**

—, —. A name for various types of short gun used for hurling bombs at a high angle into enemy trenches during the World War is **trench-mortar.**

boom. *See under* **spar,** *below.*

bow. A name for a stout beam of wood or iron projecting at a vessel's bow, by which the anchor is held clear of the side, is **cat-head.**

—. The name for the sharp forepart of a ship's bow is **cutwater.**

—. The name for an ornamental carved scroll just above the cutwater at the bows of some vessels is **fiddle-head.**

bow. The end of a ship's hold in the angle of the bow is the **forepeak.**

—. That part of a vessel's bow containing the hawse-holes, for the passage of anchor cables, is the **hawse.**

—. A name for the broadest part of a ship's bow, where the timbers begin to curve in, is **luff.**

— The inward slope of the bow of a vessel from the rail or top to the keel is the **rake.**

—. That part of a passenger vessel, now usually in the bow and on or below the main deck, set apart for those who travel at the cheapest rate, is the **steerage.**

—. The name for the foremost upright part of a ship's hull to which the sides forming the bows are fastened is **stem.**

bow (weapon). *See under* **archer,** *above, and* **cross-bow,** *below.*

bowsprit. The name for a flat, iron ring at the end of a bowsprit to hold the butt end of a jib-boom is **crance.**

—. A rope, chain, etc., for fastening a bowsprit down to the stem of a vessel is a **gammon** or **gammoning.**

—. The upward slope of a bowsprit or other timber at an angle from a horizontal line is its **steeve** or **steve.**

—, extension. A light spar lashed to and reaching out beyond the jib-boom and extending the outermost jib (sail) of a full-rigged ship is a **flying jib-boom.**

—, —. A spar forming the continuation of the bowsprit of a ship and extending the stay carrying the jib (sail) is a **jib-boom.**

—, flag-staff. The name for a staff at the end of a bowsprit from which a small flag or jack is flown is **jack-staff.**

—, jib-boom. The name given to the part of a flying jib-boom extending beyond the outermost rigging attached to it is **pole.**

—, rope. The name for a rope or chain running from the end of a bowsprit to a ship's stem to counteract upward strains is **bobstay.**

—, spar. A spar stretching downwards from the end of a bowsprit to extend stays or ropes running to the jib-boom is a **martingale** or **dolphin-striker.**

—, support. A name for the block on which the inner end of a bowsprit rests is **pillow.**

box, sailor's. A name for a box used by sailors and fishermen for keeping odds and ends in is **ditty-box.**

breakwater. A kind of breakwater of heavy timbers fastened together and anchored to provide protection for ships lying to the leeward is a **floating harbour.**

breastwork. A name for a breastwork protecting a trench or other fortification is **parapet.**

—. A name for a breastwork of loose stones used by hill tribes in Northern India is **sanga.**

bridge. The name for a fortification protecting the end of a bridge towards the enemy is **bridge-head.**

—. A floating vessel used to support the roadway of a floating military bridge is a **pontoon.**

—, ship's. Names for a screen of canvas attached to the rails of a ship's bridge to shelter the officer on duty are **dodger** and **weather-screen.**

—, —. A name for the uppermost bridge of a steamer and for a light bridge running forward from the poop on some sailing vessels is **flying bridge.**

brigade. An infantry brigade to which artillery, engineers, etc., are added for some operation is a **mixed brigade.**

bugle, signal. *See under* **signal,** *below.*

bullet. A name for a type of incendiary bullet used against aircraft is **Brock bullet.**

—. A name for a bullet together with its attached case containing the propelling charge, and also for this case alone, is **cartridge.**

bullet. A name for an expanding bullet, especially one with the lead at its nose exposed, is **dum-dum bullet.**

—. *See also under* **projectile,** *below.*

buoy. A name for a ring-shaped lifebuoy to which leather breeches are attached at the waist, the whole running upon a rope stretched from a wrecked ship to the shore, is **breeches-buoy.**

—. A name for a type of buoy shaped like two cones joined at their bases is **nun-buoy.**

cabin, ship's. A name for a compartment, usually below the cabin floor of a ship, where the more important stores are placed is **lazarette.**

cable, telegraph. A name for a mechanical device for grasping and lifting a telegraph cable from the sea bottom is **grapnel.**

—. *See also under* **rope,** *below.*

calm. A sailor's name for those parts of the ocean near the equator where calms and baffling winds prevail is **doldrums.**

—. A name for the calm zone, or doldrums, where the opposing trade winds neutralize each other is **null-belt.**

cannon. The name for the earliest form of cannon, having a short barrel and a wide mouth, first used in the late Middle Ages for throwing stones, is **bombard.**

—. The name for an iron knob or loop projecting from behind the breech of a muzzle-loading cannon for manipulating it, is **cascabel.**

—. An old name for a long cannon, especially the largest kind in use during the sixteenth century, is **culverin.**

—. A name for a small type of sixteenth century cannon is **falconet.**

—. A name for a plug of oakum for the vent of a cannon is **fid.**

—. A name for an old type of short smooth-bore cannon used for firing shells at a very high angle is **mortar.**

—. A name for an old type of small cannon firing a shot weighing from five to twelve pounds is **saker.**

—. The name for each of the two cylindrical projections from the sides of a cannon, forming an axis on which it could be turned up or down, is **trunnion.**

—. *See also under* **gun, projectile,** *and* **shell,** *below.*

canoe. *See under* **boat,** *above.*

canvas. A name for tarred strips of canvas used to cover caulked seams on a deck, or to wind round ropes to make them waterproof, is **parcelling.**

cap. *See under* **uniform,** *below.*

capstan. The revolving head of the capstan which receives the capstan bars is the **drum-head.**

—. A wooden lever shod with steel used for turning the capstan or windlass on a small ship is a **hand-spike.**

—. A name for a bar inserted in a capstan on which to fasten a cable or rope is **norman.**

—. A name for a strong wooden framework fitted in the deck of a ship round a hole for a capstan is **partner.**

captain. A native captain of an Indian cavalry regiment is a **ressaldar.**

—. A name given to the master or captain of a small merchant vessel is **skipper.**

cargo. The name for a document for customs purposes containing a declaration of the quantity and kind of cargo carried by a ship, together with her destination, is **content.**

—. A name for a kind of crane for handling cargo, consisting of a boom pivoted at its foot to an upright post, is **derrick.**

—. A name given to billets of wood, etc., placed under or among heavy articles of cargo in a ship's hold to prevent shifting or to raise them above the bilge-water is **dunnage.**

—. That part of a ship below the deck used for containing cargo, ballast, etc., is **the hold.**

cargo. Cargo and other goods thrown overboard from a vessel in order to lighten her are **jetsam.**

—. To throw goods overboard in order to lighten a vessel is to **jettison.**

—. A name for a dock hand employed in loading and unloading ships' cargoes is **stevedore.**

—. A name for a person on a merchant ship who looks after the sale of the cargo, etc., is **supercargo.**

cartridge. The small cap of copper containing a detonator in the base of a cartridge is the **percussion-cap.**

—. *See also under* **bullet,** *above, and* **projectile,** *below.*

cask. The name for a small water cask which is part of the equipment of a ship's boat is **breaker.**

—. A small cask used for bringing off water to a ship in boats and also one kept on deck to hold fresh water is a **gang-cask.**

castle. The name for a strip of land between the wall and the moat of a castle or other fortification is **foreland.**

—. Names for a ditch around the outer wall of a castle, etc., usually full of water, are **fosse** and **moat.**

—. A name for an opening between the wall of a castle and a parapet projecting from it, through which missiles, etc., were dropped, is **machicolation.**

—. *See also* **fortification,** *below, and section* Architecture.

catapult. *See under* **engine of war,** *below.*

caulking. A name for the loose fibres of old rope used for caulking seams between a ship's planking is **oakum.**

cavalry. A name for a spiked instrument thrown on the ground in mediaeval warfare to impede the advance of cavalry is **caltrop.**

—. Names given to variously equipped regiments of cavalry are **cuirassiers, dragoons, hussars, lancers,** and **uhlans.**

—. The name for a body of volunteer cavalry, consisting originally of members of the yeoman class, raised in the late eighteenth century, and now absorbed in the Territorial Force, is **yeomanry.**

—. *See also under* **unit,** *below.*

chart, nautical. A name for the circular diagram usually included on a nautical chart, showing the points of the compass, is **compass-rose.**

cloak, fastening. The name for a braided spindle-shaped button and loop used to fasten a military or other cloak or overcoat is **frog.**

clock, ship's. The specially accurate clock upon which calculations in navigating a ship are based is a **chronometer.**

clothes, sailor's. A sailor's name for sea-going clothes is **dunnage.**

club (weapon). *See under* **weapon,** *below.*

coal, ship's. The name given to the space used for keeping a ship's supply of coal in is **bunker.**

coast. The name given to the belt of sea within a distance of three miles from the coast of a state is **territorial waters.**

colours, military. *See under* **flag,** *below.*

column. A column of ships arranged so that the bow of each vessel is abaft the beam of the ship preceding her is in **quarter-line.**

commander-in-chief. The title borne by the commander-in-chief of the army in Egypt is **sirdar.**

commission. A young man training for a commission in any one of the fighting services is a **cadet.**

—. The name given to commissions formerly issued to masters of merchant ships, authorizing them to seize enemy ships, was **letters of marque.**

—. The system (abolished in 1871) by which commissions in most regiments of the British Army could be bought for a money payment was the **purchase-system.**

commissioned officer. *See under* **rank,** *below.*

company. Each of the four divisions into which a company of British infantry is divided is a **platoon.**

compass. The stand or case for a ship's compass, usually placed by the steering-wheel, is the **binnacle.**

—. To recite the thirty-two points of the compass in their order on the compass-card is to **box the compass.**

—. The name for the pair of rings surrounding a compass bowl, so pivoted that the bowl retains a horizontal position, is **gimbals.**

— A name for a type of compass operated by a gyroscope is **gyro-compass.**

—. The name of the black line on a compass bowl indicating the direction of the ship's bow is **lubber's-point.**

—. The type of compass used in navigation, consisting of two or more magnetic needles mounted on the under surface of a circular compass-card, which usually is either balanced on a pivot or floats on a liquid, is **mariner's compass.**

—. A cardinal point of the compass or a region lying in the direction of this is a **quarter.**

—. A name for each of the thirty-two points of the mariner's compass, or for the arcs that separate these, is **rhumb.**

—. The name for the compass by which a ship's course is set is **standard.**

concealment. The name given to a method of concealing military equipment, etc., from enemy observers, by altering its appearance by means of irregular bands or patches of paint, painted screens, etc., is **camouflage.**

contraband. The purchasing at a fair price when seized of articles declared to be contraband of war is **pre-emption.**

cook, ship's. Names for the kitchen occupied by the cook in a ship are **caboose** and **galley.**

corporal. Names given to each of the four junior officers, ranking as corporals, of the Yeomen of the Guard, are **exempt** and **exon.**

course, ship's. *See under* **navigation,** *below.*

court. A judicial court of naval, military, or air officers for the trial of offenders in one of these services is a **court martial.**

court martial. The name for a court martial held on the field in time of war—the officers sitting round an upturned drum—is **drumhead court martial.**

—. The officer who superintends the organization of a court martial is a **judge-advocate.**

—. A name for a fellow-officer acting as defending counsel for an officer of the British Army before a court martial is **officer's friend.**

—. The name given to the master-at-arms on board a ship in which a court martial is held is **provost-marshal.**

crossbow. A name for a crossbow, especially the large type for which a bending machine was required, is **arbalest.**

—. A name for a Roman military engine resembling a huge crossbow is **ballista**

—. Names for the powerful machine used for bending a large crossbow are **gaffle** and **moulinet.**

—. The name of a short, heavy bolt with a square head shot from a crossbow was **quarrel.**

current. An undercurrent moving in a direction contrary to that of the surface water or the wind, is an **underset.**

cutter. A name for a cutter or sloop with jigger-mast aft, on which a lug-sail is set, is **dandy.**

dagger. The name for a short dagger without a guard, formerly carried by Scottish Highlanders inside the stocking, is **dirk.**

—. A name for a small dagger used in the Middle Ages for thrusting between the joints of armour is **misericord.**

dagger. A name for a small slender dagger, especially one with a blade that is square or triangular in section, is **poniard.**

—. A name for a small Italian dagger with a needle-like point is **stiletto.**

davits. The name for each of two broad bands passed round a boat hanging from davits to prevent it from swinging is **gripe.**

deck. A name for a light upper deck without hatches, for sheltering passengers, cattle, cargo, etc., is **awning deck.**

—. An upper deck running at one level for the whole length of a vessel is a **flush deck.**

—. The forward part of a ship's deck, especially an upper deck, is the **fore deck.**

—. A name for the waist of a vessel, and for an open way along one side of a deck, is **gangway.**

—. The name given in a ship with several decks to the one next below the main deck is **lower deck.**

—. The deck below the lower deck of a ship is the **orlop deck.**

—. Names given to decks above the upper deck in large passenger liners are **promenade deck, sun deck,** and **boat deck.**

—. That part of the upper deck of a ship between the mainmast or a midship gangway (in warships, the after-turret or barbette) and the poop or the stern is the **quarter deck.**

—. A name given to a wooden ship with her hull lowered by the removal of her upper deck or decks was **razee.**

—. The holes in a vessel's side along the edges of the decks, by which water is drained away, are **scuppers.**

—. A name for an upper deck of light construction is **spar deck.**

—. The name given to a deck running from stem to stern above the main deck is **upper deck.**

—. That part of the main deck of a ship lying between a raised forecastle and poop is the **well deck.**

—, curve. The name given to the curving line of a ship's deck fore and aft, by which the ends are raised higher above the water, is **sheer.**

—, frame. A name for a strong wooden framework fitted in the deck of a ship round a hole for a mast, capstan, etc., is **partner.**

—, opening. A small opening in a vessel's deck for the passage of an anchor cable into a locker is a **hawse-pipe.**

—, —. A name given to an opening in a vessel's deck to admit fuel for storage is **stoke-hole.**

—, —. The small doors in the bulwarks that open and close with the rolling of a ship, and allow water to escape from the deck, are **wash ports.**

—, partial. The name for a short partial deck placed at about the middle of a vessel is **bridge deck.**

—, —. The name for a short partial deck in the fore part of a ship is **forecastle** or **fo'c'sle.**

—, —. The name for a short partial deck at the after end of a ship is **poop.**

—, poop. The name for the part of a ship's poop deck forward of the cabin bulkhead is **awning.**

—, post. The name for each of the stout upright timbers, usually fastened in pairs to one or more decks of a ship, for making cables, etc., fast, is **bitt.**

—, railing. *See under* **rail,** *below.*

—, skylight. A name for a skylight or window-frame in a ship's deck through which light is admitted to a lower deck or cabin is **companion.**

—, —. A name for a heavy sheet of glass inserted like a window in a deck is **dead-light.**

—, staircase. A name for a staircase or ladder leading down from a ship's deck to a cabin is **companion-way.**

—, support. A name for a short, curved timber supporting a deck is **spur.**

deck, support. A name for a post supporting a deck-beam, railing, awning, etc., is **stanchion.**

—, yacht. Names for a space on a small yacht, lower than the rest of the deck and placed near the stern, are **cockpit** and **well.**

detachment. A detachment of soldiers, etc., picked out from the main body for some special duty or purpose is a **draft.**

display, night. The name given to a spectacular military display, usually at night, is **tattoo.**

dock. The name for a type of off-shore floating dock, by means of which a vessel is raised, moved shorewards, and lowered on to a fixed staging for repairs, is **depositing dock.**

—. The general name for various types of dock from which water may be temporarily excluded, leaving the vessel that has been floated in high and dry, is **dry dock.**

—. The name for a type of buoyant dry dock, consisting of a submersible pontoon base, with one or more high sides and open ends, is **floating dock.**

—. The name for a type of dry dock in which a ship's bottom may be examined, scraped, and repaired is **graving-dock.**

—. The name for a type of floating dock with only one side, the floor being kept level, when supporting a ship, by hinged supports running to the shore, is **off-shore dock.**

—. The name for a type of dry dock having a sloping floor up which a vessel is drawn on wheeled cradles, the water afterwards being removed, is **slip dock.**

—. The general name for the ordinary type of dock, consisting of an area of water partly or wholly enclosed, in which a ship may be loaded or unloaded, is **wet dock.**

—, fees. A name for the fees paid for the accommodation of a ship in dock is **berthage.**

doldrums. A name for the doldrums, or calm zone where the trade winds neutralize each other, is **null-belt.**

dragoons, colour. A name for the narrow crimson silk flag with a forked end which is the standard or colour of the dragoons is **guidon.**

drill. A name given to the movements of a soldier when turning on his heel in military drill is **facings.**

—. The officer who acts as a pivot and regulates the movements of a company in wheeling, etc., is the **guide.**

—. The technical name for drill in which artillerymen are exercised in shifting heavy ordnance is **repository drill.**

—. A name for the turning in drill of a body of troops as if pivoting on an axis—a soldier at the end of the line—is **wheel.**

—, leader. The name for an expert soldier formerly placed in front of a company, etc., as drill-leader to show the movements and time is **fugleman.**

—, rifle. Drill in which a soldier is taught how to carry and use his rifle is **manual exercise.**

drum. *See under section* Music.

—, signal. *See under* **signal,** *below.*

duel. The name of a long two-edged duelling sword of the sixteenth century, represented by the fencing foil of to-day, is **rapier.**

duty. A non-military duty required of a soldier is a **fatigue-duty** or **fatigue.**

—. A plan showing the order in which officers, companies, and regiments are to take turns of duty is a **roster.**

earthwork. A former name for a raised earth platform, now called a fire-step, on which soldiers stand to fire over the top of an earthwork immediately in front, is **banquette.**

—. Names for an earthwork thrown up as a protection against rifle and artillery fire from the front are **breastwork** and **parapet.**

earthwork. A short earthwork to protect the flank of a battery from the cross-fire of the enemy is an **epaulement.**

—. A name for a bundle of sticks, etc., bound together in the form of a cylinder and used formerly in building earthworks is **fascine.**

—. A name for a facing or retaining wall protecting an earthwork is **revetment.**

—. The name given to an earthwork to protect a covered way against enfilading fire is **traverse.**

—. *See also under* **fortification** *and* **trench,** *below.*

embankment. The name for an embankment of earth behind a target, to stop shots that pierce or miss the target, is **butt.**

—. The name given to a defensive embankment with a broad, usually parapeted top is **rampart.**

encampment. A temporary encampment for soldiers, without tents, is a **bivouac.**

engine. A small engine, distinct from the main engine or engines of a ship, used for minor operations is a **donkey-engine.**

—. *See also under section* Engineering.

engine of war. The name for various types of engines of war used in ancient and mediaeval times for hurling stones, arrows, spears, etc., is **ballista.**

—. The name for an engine of ancient and mediaeval war distinguished from the ballista—a heavier weapon—and operated after the principle of the crossbow is **catapult.**

—. Names for a mediaeval engine of war for hurling large stones in the manner of a catapult are **mangonel** and **trébuchet.**

ensign. *See under* **flag,** *below.*

equipment, military. The name for the branch of the public service which provides the army with arms, ammunition, and equipment other than quartermaster's stores is **ordnance.**

—, ship's. Ship's equipment is bought and sold at a **marine store.**

excavation. The name given to an excavation to protect soldiers from enemy fire is **trench.**

exercise. Naval or military exercises carried out by an army or fleet under warlike conditions are **manoeuvres.**

explosive. The name of a high explosive used in large quantities during the World War, made by diluting trinitrotoluene with ammonium nitrate, is **amatol.**

—. The name of a smokeless powder introduced by the Swedish chemist, Alfred Nobel, used as a propellant explosive is **ballistite.**

—. The name of the standard smokeless propellant explosive, prepared from nitro-glycerine, and used in the British services is **cordite.**

—. The name of a high explosive made of nitro-glycerine mixed with an absorbent substance, now usually a nitrate, is **dynamite.**

—. The name of a detonating explosive used in percussion caps is **fulminate of mercury.**

—. The name of the explosive chemical forming part of cordite and other propellant explosives and of the majority of blasting explosives is **nitro glycerine.**

—. The name of the explosive compound produced by the action of a mixture of sulphuric and nitric acids upon cotton, used in the manufacture of smokeless powders, etc., is **gun-cotton.**

—. A name for the delayed explosion of an explosive charge is **hang-fire.**

—. The name for a kind of high explosive made (originally at Lydd, in Kent) from picrate of potash, and used as a bursting charge for shells, is **lyddite.**

—. The name for a kind of smokeless gunpowder invented by Sir Hiram Maxim is **Maximite.**

—. A name for a kind of high explosive, resembling lyddite, used by the French as a bursting charge for shells, is **melinite.**

explosive. A name for any salt of picric acid, some of which are sensitive explosives, is **picrate.**

—. Names of a highly explosive acid prepared from phenol and sulphuric and nitric acids, which is used in bursting charges, are **picric acid** and **trinitrophenol.**

—. The name of a high explosive—a nitro derivative of toluene—which was widely used during the World War for bursting charges, is **trinitrotoluene (T.N.T.).**

—, bursting. A name for the violent and rapid bursting effect of powerful explosives is **brisance.**

—, class. The name given to a class of explosive that detonates or becomes changed into gases with great rapidity, used for bursting charges and other disruptive work, is **high explosive.**

—, —. The name given to a class of explosive which becomes converted into gases at a relatively slow rate, used for discharging projectiles, is **propellant.**

fence. *See under* **fortification,** *below.*

fire-arm. A name for an obsolete smooth-bore muzzle-loading hand gun with a large bore and a bell-shaped mouth is **blunderbuss.**

—. A name for a type of bronzed flintlock musket, formerly used by British infantry is **Brown Bess.**

—. A name for a short hand gun used by cavalry is **carbine.**

—. A name for any type of musket or smooth-bore hand gun discharged by sparks produced by concussion or friction, is **firelock**

—. An old type of firelock musket, in which the touch-powder was exploded by a spark produced by concussion from a flint, was a **flintlock.**

—. A name for a light type of flintlock musket, formerly used in the British Army, is **fusil.**

—. A name for a large musket fired from a swivel-rest, used formerly by Asiatics is **gingal** or **jingal.**

—. Names for an early kind of hand gun which was the predecessor of the musket are **hackbut** and **harquebus.**

—. A name for an early form of musket discharged by a lighted match pressed against the powder in the pan is **matchlock.**

—. A general name for any kind of smooth-bore hand gun formerly used, especially one for infantry, is **musket.**

—. A name for a kind of breech-loading fire-arm in which the cartridge is exploded by a blow from a spring needle, especially the type used in the Austro-Prussian War (1866), is **needle gun.**

—, discharge. A continuous discharge of fire-arms is a **fusillade.**

—. *See also under* **gun, pistol,** *and* **rifle,** *below.*

fishing-boat. *See under* **boat,** *above.*

flag. A name given to a small flag or pennon formerly carried on weapons and at a ship's masthead is **banderol.**

—. The name for the blue flag with a white oblong centre, representing P in the international code, hoisted at the fore-masthead of a ship on the day of sailing, is **Blue Peter.**

—. The name for a small swallow-tailed or tapering flag flown by yachts and merchant vessels is **burgee.**

—. The name of a small flag of the same colour as the facings of a regiment, flown to show the part of a camp occupied by the regiment, is **camp colour.**

—. A name for each of the pair of flags of an infantry battalion is **colour.**

—. A name given especially to a flag flown at the stern of a vessel to denote its nationality is **ensign.**

—. A name for the part of a flag farthest from the staff, and also for its breadth measured from the hoist to its outer edge, is **fly.**

flag. The correct name of the flag commonly called the Union Jack is **Great Union.**

—. The name for the oblong flag with corners rounded at the fly, used as a standard by dragoon regiments in the British Army, is **guidon.**

—. The edge of a flag nearest the staff or halyard on which it is hoisted is the **hoist.**

—. The name for a small flag displayed from a jack-staff, or staff at the end of a bowsprit, is **jack.**

—. The names of the flag consisting of a Union Jack on a blue field, which is one of the military colours in the British Army, are **King's colour** and **royal colour.**

—. A name for a long, narrow, pointed flag or streamer borne at the masthead of a warship, and for a triangular signal flag, is **pennant.**

—. The name for a small tapering or forked flag carried below a lance-head is **pennon.**

—. A name given to the flag of an infantry regiment, generally embroidered with the names of battles, is **regimental colour.**

—. The name for the flag of a cavalry regiment, as distinguished from the colour of an infantry regiment, is **standard.**

—. A name for a flag having three bands of colour in nearly equal proportions, especially the blue, white, and red standard of France, is **tricolour.**

—, Danish. The name of the Danish national flag—the oldest in existence—is **Dannebrog.**

—, ensign. The flag of the Royal Naval Reserve and various public services, having a blue field with the Union Jack in the upper corner next the hoist, is the **blue ensign.**

—, —. The flag flown by ships of the merchant service of Great Britain, having a plain red field with the Union Jack in the upper corner next the hoist, is the **red ensign.**

—, —. The flag flown by ships of the Royal Navy and vessels of the Royal Yacht Squadron, having the red cross of St. George on a white field with the Union Jack in the upper corner next the hoist is the **white ensign.**

—, hoisting. A rope or tackle for hoisting a flag, sail, or yard is a **halyard** or **halliard.**

fleet. A name for a small fleet, or for a fleet of small ships, such as destroyers, submarines, or mine-sweepers is **flotilla.**

—. A division of a fleet under the command of a flag officer is a **squadron.**

fog. A dense mass of fog at sea resembling at a distance the outline of a coast is a **fog-bank.**

foot-rope. Each of the short lengths of rope or wire with an eye for supporting the foot-rope beneath the yards of a ship is a **stirrup.**

force. A name for a force contributed to form part of an army or navy is **contingent.**

—. A part of the naval or military forces which can be called out in time of emergency is a **reserve.**

—. A body of troops used to prevent an enemy force from interfering with larger operations is a **retaining force.**

—. *See also under* **troops,** *below.*

foresail. A name for a light foresail used by yachts in fair weather is **balloon-foresail.**

formation. The name given to a formation of troops in the form of steps, each rank being parallel with the others but not in the same line, is **échelon.**

—, Greek. The name for the close formation of the hoplites, or heavy-armed foot-soldiers of ancient Greece, was **phalanx.**

—, naval. The name for a naval formation in which the ships in a single column are directly behind one another is **line ahead.**

—, —. The name for a naval formation in which a column of ships is arranged so that the bow of each vessel is abaft the beam of the ship preceding her is **quarter-line.**

fort. A small fort made of heavy timber or logs and placed at a strategic position on a line of defence is a **block-house.**

fortification. The name given to a former kind of field fortification, consisting of felled trees placed side by side with their smaller branches removed and their larger branches pointed and facing in the direction of the enemy, is **abatis.**

—. The name for a projecting part of a fortification, formerly in the form of an irregular pentagon with its rear in the line of, or at an angle of the main defences, is **bastion.**

—. A name for a narrow ledge between the ditch and base of a rampart in a fortification is **berm.**

—. A name for a defensive fortification constructed in or across a ditch, and for a passage between two walls in a fortification, is **caponiere.**

—. A fortification made largely or wholly of earth is an **earthwork.**

—. A name for the principal line of a fortification or for the space enclosed by this is **enceinte.**

—. The name for a faggot of brushwood, bound with withes in the form of a cylinder, used in field fortification is **fascine.**

—. The part of a fortification that defends a position by fire along its face is the **flank.**

—. A name for a simple type of redan, or V-shaped fortification, formerly constructed at the foot of a glacis or slope is **flèche.**

—. The name for a strip of land between the wall of a fortification and a moat is **foreland.**

—. The name for a former defence of pointed stakes, arranged horizontally or in a sloping position in a rampart, is **fraise.**

—. The name for a bottomless basket or cylinder of wicker, etc., filled with earth and used formerly in fortification for facing earthworks, etc., is **gabion.**

—. A name for an entrance into a bastion or similar part in a fortification, and for the rear part of a redan, is **gorge.**

—. A kind of fortification consisting of two faces meeting in a projecting angle, open at the rear, and standing by itself to protect a higher work behind is a **ravelin.**

—. The name given to a V-shaped field fortification pointing towards the enemy is **redan.**

—. The name for an enclosed fortification, usually without flanking defences, especially a temporary one designed as an outpost, is **redoubt.**

—. A name for a facing or retaining wall protecting a bank of earth in a fortification is **revetment.**

—. A name given to a projecting point in a line of trenches or other fortification, such as the angle of a bastion, is **salient.**

—. A name for a palisaded defence at an entrance or a road is **tambour.**

—. A name for a low outwork in the ditch in front of a curtain between two bastions is **tenail.**

—, bridge. The name for a fortification protecting the end of a bridge towards the enemy is **bridge-head.**

—, crumbling. A term formerly used in military engineering to denote the crumbling of the wall of a fortification is **éboulement.**

—, ditch. The name for the outer wall or side of a ditch in a fortification is **counterscarp.**

—, —. The name for the inner wall or side of a ditch in a fortification is **escarp.**

—, fence. A name for a fence of strong stakes, pales, or timbers, set firmly in the ground, used in fortification to form an obstacle to an assaulting party, is **palisade.**

—, passage. A name for a covered passage leading from one part of a fortification to another is **gallery.**

—, slope. A name for ground cut away so as to slope steeply about a fortification or position is **escarpment.**

fortification, slope. A name for the slope given to an earthwork or other fortification is **talus.**

—, temporary. A name for any temporary fortification thrown up by an army in the field is **field-work.**

—, wall. A name for a type of fortification used on the Indian frontier and consisting of a sloping wall built of large stones without cement is **sangar.**

—. *See also* **castle** *and* **earthwork,** *above,* **trench** *below, and section* Architecture.

fortress. The name given to an opening in the upper story of a fortress, through which missiles were hurled at attackers, is **machicolation.**

funnel. The inclination of a ship's funnel or mast from the perpendicular is **rake.**

gaff. A name for a sliding hoop, rope, or chain holding a gaff to a mast is **parrel.**

galley. Names for ancient galleys having two, three, four, and five banks of oars respectively are **bireme, trireme, quadrireme,** and **quinquereme.**

—. A name for a large type of galley with three masts, high bulwarks, and thirty or more oars, formerly used in the Mediterranean Sea, is **galleass** or **galliass.**

—. A name for a small galley having both sails and oars, used in the Middle Ages, is **galliot.**

—. A name for a freight galley of ancient Greece having fifty oars, is **penteconter.**

—, cook's. A name for the cook's galley on a sailing-ship is **cuddy.**

game, war. The name of a German war game, used for training officers in tactics and strategy, is **kriegspiel.**

gas. A name given equally to true gases and to other chemicals used for incapacitating troops during the World War is **poison gas.**

—, poison. One of the chemicals used in producing a poison gas during the World War was **bromine.**

—, —. The name of the yellow-green gas with a suffocating odour, employed as a poison gas during the World War, is **chlorine.**

—, —. The name for an asphyxiating, lachrymatory chemical used as a poison gas in filling shells and bombs during the World War is **mustard gas.**

—, —. A name for a dangerous scentless gas (carbon oxychloride) used as a poison gas during the World War is **phosgene.**

—, —. A common name given to various chemicals used as poison gases during the World War, and having the effect of causing violent sneezing, is **sneezing gas.**

—, —. Names given to a noxious chemical or poison gas used in lachrymatory shells during the World War, causing abnormal watering of the eyes, are **tear gas** and **weeping gas.**

general, victorious. The title once given to a victorious Roman general by his soldiers was **Imperator.**

guard, military. A name for a military guard acting as an outpost, etc., or for a detachment sent after absentee soldiers, is **picket.**

gun. The name for the cylindrical cavity running through the barrel of a gun and also for its diameter or calibre is **bore.**

—. The name for the back part of the barrel of a gun is **breech.**

—. The name for the movable piece which closes the aperture in the back end of the barrel of a gun is **breech-block.**

—. A name for a ring of canvas or copper gauze, used to stop up the breech of a gun to prevent gases from escaping, is **obturator.**

—, aiming. The act of giving the barrel of a gun the proper elevation and direction to ensure accurate aim is **sighting.**

—, —. Sideways movement of a gun in aiming it is **traverse.**

gun, bore. A name for the space between a shell and the bore of a gun through which it passes is **windage.**

—, concealed. A gun battery concealed artificially from an enemy is a **masked battery.**

—, diameter. A name for the internal diameter of a gun or cannon used as an indication of its size is **calibre** or **caliber.**

—, —. The difference between half the external diameter of a cannon at the muzzle and at the breech is the **dispart.**

—, discharge. A combined discharge of many guns on a warship is a **salvo.**

—, hauling. A name for harness worn by men when hauling field-guns in places where horses cannot be used is **bricole**

—, loophole. Names for an opening, widening from the inner end, in a parapet, etc., for firing a gun through, are **crenel** and **embrasure.**

—, naval. Names for the rotating armoured enclosure inside which one or more big guns are mounted on the deck of a warship are **barbette** and **turret.**

—, —. A name for a curved projection from a warship's side for training a heavy gun forward or aft is **sponson.**

—, platform. The name for a platform on which guns are mounted in field-warfare is **emplacement.**

—, plug The name of a wooden plug placed in the muzzle of a gun to keep out dust and damp is **tompion.**

—, shelter. A name for the shelter for a gun and its crew during action is **gun-house.**

—, shield. A name for a shield or armoured screen for naval guns is **casemate.**

—, —. Names for a bullet-proof shield on a gun for protecting artillerymen in action is **mantelet** or **mantlet.**

—, ship's. A name for all the guns firing from one side of a warship is **broadside.**

—, —. Names for a gun at the stern of a ship for beating off an attack by a pursuer are **chase gun, chaser,** and **stern-chaser.**

—, —. A name for the system by which all or some of the guns on a warship can be aimed and fired from one place is **fire-control.**

—, sight. The name for the rear sight of a gun is **backsight.**

—, —. The metal block formerly placed on the top of the muzzle of a cannon to bring the line of sight parallel to the axis, used for point-blank firing, was the **dispart-sight.**

—, —. The muzzle-sight of a gun is the **foresight.**

—, type. A general name for any type of gun which is loaded through an aperture at the back end of the barrel, closed by a movable block, is **breech-loader.**

— —. A name for a type of smooth-bore gun with relatively large bore and short barrel, invented in the eighteenth century, is **carronade.**

—, —. Names for a gun mounted on wheels, for use by troops in the field, are **field-gun** and **field-piece.**

—, —. The name of a kind of short gun of relatively large calibre, used to fire projectiles at a high angle, is **howitzer.**

—, —. A name for various short kinds of gun with a large bore for firing shells or bombs at a high angle of elevation is **mortar**

—, —. A general name for any kind of gun or cannon etc., closed permanently at the back end of the tube, and so loaded through the muzzle, is **muzzle-loader.**

—, —. The name given to a gun which is able to fire from fifteen to twenty rounds a minute is **quick-firer.**

—, —. A gun, cannon, etc., having grooves, now always spiral, in the surface of the bore, for giving greater accuracy in aiming by causing the projectile to rotate, is **rifled.**

gun, type. A general name for a gun, cannon, etc., constructed with a plain, unrifled bore is **smooth-bore.**

—. *See also under* **artillery, cannon,** *and* **fire-arm,** *above, and* **machine-gun** *and* **rifle,** *below.*

gun-fire. A name for gun-fire that rakes a trench or a line of troops lengthwise is **enfilade.**

gunnery. The committee of Naval, Military, Air Force, and civil experts advising the three British services as to new inventions in gunnery is the **ordnance committee.**

gunpowder. *See under* **explosive,** *above.*

halberd. A name for a kind of halberd formerly carried by certain British Army officers is **spontoon.**

harbour. A name for a boat enforcing the harbour regulations with regard to customs, quarantine, etc., is **guard-boat.**

—. The title of a navigation expert whose work is to arrange the anchorages of warships when a fleet goes into harbour is **master of the fleet.**

—, fortified. A name for a fortified harbour equipped with docks, repair shops, fuelling stations, and stores for maintaining a fleet is **naval base.**

hat. *See under* **uniform,** *below.*

hatch. The name for the raised edge round the hatches of a ship is **coamings.**

hauling. Names for a machine used for hauling or hoisting, consisting of a cylinder fastened on an axle and turned by a crank, are **windlass** and **winch.**

hawser. A name for a hawser used in towing a ship is **warp.**

helm. When the helm or tiller of a sailing vessel is pushed to leeward, so that the vessel turns to windward, the helm is **a-lee** or **down.**

—. When the helm or tiller of a sailing vessel is pushed to windward, so that the vessel turns away from the wind, the helm is **a-weather** or **up.**

—. The name for a cord by which the motion of a vessel's helm is made to control an indicator showing its position is **spurling-line.**

—. *See also under* **rudder,** *below.*

helmet. A name for a light helmet of the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries, having a visor and neck-guard, is **armet.**

—. A name for a type of high-crowned helmet, to which a visor was added when it became the battle head-dress for knights of the fourteenth century, is **basinet** or **basnet.**

—. A name for a movable part of a mediaeval helmet covering the lower part of the face, often identified with the visor, is **beaver.**

—. A name for a type of helmet worn by foot soldiers and light cavalry in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries, consisting of a cap with brim, neck-guard, and ear-pieces, is **burgonet.**

—. A name for a light kind of open helmet with a rounded top and narrow brim worn in the sixteenth century is **cabasset.**

—. A name for a piece of armour for the head, especially the simple form of helmet, with or without protection for the neck, ears, etc., worn in the Dark Ages and early feudal period, is **casque.**

—. A name for a helmet, especially a heavy type of war helmet, worn resting on the shoulders, which about the fourteenth century became associated with tilting, is **heaume.**

—. A name for a light hat-shaped military helmet of the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries, having no visor, is **morion.**

—. A kind of light helmet with a low rounded crown and a long neck-guard or brim at the back, worn by foot soldiers in the fifteenth century, was the **salade** or **sallet.**

—. Names for the front part of a helmet, often movable, in which there were openings for breathing and seeing, are **visor** and **aventail.**

helmet, woollen. The name for a knitted woollen cap in the form of a helmet, covering the head, neck, ears, and chin, used as a protection from the cold during the Crimean War, is **Balaklava helmet.**

hoist. The name for an upright ribbed drum or barrel rotated by an engine or by hand levers, used for hoisting, hauling, etc., on a ship, is **capstan.**

—. The name for each of a pair of cranes used for hoisting and lowering boats, etc., on a ship is **davit.**

—. A single davit used in hoisting an anchor to a nearly horizontal position on the gunwale of a ship is a **fish-davit.**

—. Names for a horizontal drum or barrel rotated by an engine or by hand levers, etc., used for hoisting, hauling, etc., on a ship, are **winch** and **windlass.**

—. *See also under* **tackle,** *below.*

hold. The foremost part of a vessel's hold under the lowest deck is the **forepeak**

—. A name for a casing or compartment in the hold of a vessel, containing the pump barrel and usually a strainer, is **pump-well.**

—, flooding. A graduated rod lowered into a pump-well to determine the depth of water in a ship's hold is a **sounding-rod.**

hook. A name for a binding of yarn across the opening of a hook to prevent a chain, etc., from slipping from the hook is **mouse** or **mousing.**

horse, cavalry. A name for a horse for the Indian cavalry imported from New South Wales is **waler.**

—, food. Food for horses and other beasts, especially for the horses of an army, is **forage.**

hospital. A temporary hospital close to the battle-line is a **field-hospital.**

—, attendant. A name for an attendant in a military hospital is **orderly.**

hull. The longest beam in a wooden ship's hull is the **beakhead-beam** or **cat-beam.**

—. The name given to the flat or nearly flat part of the hull at the bottom of a ship, outside or in, is **bilge.**

—. The name for a horizontal projecting timber along the side of the hull of a boat to prevent rolling in a rough sea is **bilge-keel.**

—. The name for each of the curved timbers forming a built-up rib in the hull of a wooden vessel is **futtock.**

—. The name given to a framework used to stiffen the hull of light-draught vessels against vertical strains is **hog-frame.**

—. The name of the structure running lengthwise along the bottom of a ship's hull, and projecting downwards in sailing ships and some steamships is **keel.**

—. The name for a curved timber or structure extending outwards and upwards from the side of a vessel's keel, to which the planks or plates of the hull are attached, is **rib.**

—. A name given to the planking or plates forming the outside of the hull of a vessel is **skin.**

—. A name for a line of metal plates extending the whole length of a ship's hull is **strake.**

—. The name for an inside horizontal plank or plate in the sides of a vessel's hull is **stringer.**

—, depth. The depth to which the hull of a vessel sinks below the surface of the water, especially when fully loaded, is her **draught.**

—, partition. The name for each of the partitions dividing a vessel's hull into self-contained and usually watertight compartments is **bulkhead.**

—, shape. A name given to the shape of a hull designed to offer the least resistance to the water is **streamline.**

—, strain. The name for the strain to which the hull of a vessel is subjected when a big wave supports the midships section and the ends are unsupported is **hogging-moment.**

hull, strain. The name for the strain to which the hull of a vessel is subjected when the ends are supported by two waves and there is a hollow in the water amidships is **sagging-moment.**

ice. A name for large broken cakes of ice covering a large area in Polar seas is **ice-pack.**

—. A name for thin flat pieces of ice floating on Polar seas is **pancake-ice.**

infantry. *See under* **soldier** *and* **unit,** *below.*

insurance, marine. The name of a British corporation dealing chiefly with marine insurance, the registration of vessels, and the issue of shipping news is **Lloyd's.**

invasion. An unauthorized invasion in time of peace of the territory of one state by armed subjects of another is a **raid.**

jacket, sailor's. A name for a short outer jacket worn by sailors is **monkey-jacket.**

—. A name for a jacket of thick, closely-woven cloth worn by seamen in rough weather is **pea-jacket.**

—. *See also under* **uniform,** *below.*

javelin. *See under* **spear** *and* **weapon,** *below.*

jib. *See under* **sail,** *below.*

junk. The name given to a light Chinese sailing ship rigged like a junk but built on European lines is **lorcha.**

keel. A name for a keel attached to the bottom of a true keel to protect it and increase a vessel's stability, and also for a keel fastened to a normally keelless boat, is **false keel.**

— A kind of deep keel, like the back fin of a fish, fitted to some racing yachts to serve as ballast and prevent drifting to leeward, is a **fin-keel.**

—. The nearly horizontal inside part of a ship's bottom on each side of the keel is the **floor.**

—. Names for the foremost part of a ship's keel on which the stem is fastened are **fore-foot** and **gripe.**

—. A name for the planking forming a vessel's bottom next to the keel, and for the corresponding plates in an iron ship, is **garboard** or **garboard-strake.**

—. The name given to a beam or a set of plates running lengthwise inside a ship above the keel is **kelson.**

kitchen, ship's. Names for the kitchen or cook-house on board ship are **caboose** and **galley.**

knot. A loop made in tying a knot is a **bight.**

—. Names of some of the knots, bends, and hitches used by sailors are **Blackwall hitch, bowline knot, carrick bend, clove hitch, fisherman's bend, half hitch, reef knot, running bowline, sheep-shank knot,** and **topsail halyard bend.**

—. A double overband knot with the ends crossed the wrong way, as opposed to a reef knot, is a **granny-knot.**

— The part of a rope, etc., held in the hand when tying a knot is the **standing part.**

lancer. The name given to a type of cavalry soldier armed with a lance in German and other Continental armies is **uhlan.**

landing-stage. A name for a post on a landing-stage about which a rope is thrown to check the motion of a boat coming alongside is **snubbing-post.**

lashing. A name for cross turns of rope made to tighten a lashing round two poles, etc., is **frapping turns.**

latitude. The difference between the latitude of a place and ninety degrees is the **colatitude.**

lead, sounding. A name for grease or soap put on the bottom of a sounding lead to enable samples of the sea bottom to be examined is **arming.**

leak. To stop a leak in a ship's hull by drawing a sail, etc., over it from the outside, so that it is held over the aperture by the inward pressure of the water, is to **fother.**

left. The left side of a vessel as one looks forward, distinguished at night when under way by a red light, is the **port side.**

lieutenant. A name for a first-lieutenant or second-lieutenant in the Army is **subaltern.**

life-belt. The name of a vegetable fibre used for filling life-belts, etc., is **kapok.**

life-line. A name for a short cannon from which a life-line is sometimes fired at a high angle to a ship in distress is **mortar.**

light. The light of a lighthouse or buoy that is automatically cut off from view at intervals is an **occulting light.**

—, ship's. A name for a white light displayed at night by a ship at anchor is **riding-light.**

lighter. The name of a flat-bottomed barge or lighter employed in Dutch or Baltic ports is **pram.**

lighthouse. The institution which licenses pilots and deals with the building and maintaining of lighthouses, buoys, etc., in British waters is **Trinity House.**

liner. *See under* **ship,** *below.*

litter. The name for a type of military mule litter formerly used for carrying wounded in the Crimean War is **cacolet.**

loading. The official mark—a circle with a horizontal line through the centre—found on both sides of a merchant vessel, and showing the greatest depth to which she may be loaded, is the **Plimsoll mark.**

—. A name for a charge made for loading goods on to a ship is **primage.**

lodging. The name for an official order for a soldier's lodging and for the lodging itself is **billet.**

look-out. A name given to a look-out platform at a masthead, usually of barrel shape, especially one on a whaling-ship, is **crow's-nest.**

machine-gun. A machine-gun in which the force of explosion or recoil is used to feed the cartridges into the barrel or barrels, fire them, and eject the shells, is **automatic.**

—. An apparatus for loading the belts of machine-guns with fresh cartridges is a **belt-filler.**

—. The name for a type of hand-operated machine-gun with six barrels mounted round a central axis, formerly used in the British Army, is **Gatling gun.**

—. The name of a type of light automatic machine-gun operated by the gases of explosion, adopted in the British service in 1915, is **Hotchkiss.**

—. The name for a type of automatic machine-gun, worked by the gases of explosion, and having a magazine capacity of forty-seven cartridges, much used in the World War, is **Lewis gun.**

—. A name for a light single-barrelled water-cooled quick-firing machine-gun, automatically loaded by the force of the recoil, is **Maxim.**

—. The French name for various types of machine-gun used in the French Army is **mitrailleuse.**

—. A machine-gun in which the operations of loading, firing and ejecting shells are effected by means of a hand-operated crank, is **non-automatic.**

—. A name for a type of hand-operated machine-gun, with barrels placed side by side, once used in the British Army, is **Nordenfelt.**

—. A name given to the loop-holed chambers of reinforced concrete used as machine-gun emplacements during the World War was **pill-box.**

—. A name given to a type of automatic machine-gun firing small explosive projectiles is **pom-pom.**

—. The name of a modified machine-gun of the Maxim type now used in the British service is **Vickers.**

mail, coat. *See under* **armour,** *above.*

manoeuvre. The spreading out of troops from massed formation into line, or the manoeuvring of warships from parallel columns into line ahead, is **deployment.**

manoeuvre, naval. The ship by which others of a fleet or squadron regulate their manoeuvres is the **guide.**

march. A march made at the rate of about 180 paces to the minute is a **double quick march.**

—. A march in which the endurance of the troops concerned is taxed to the utmost is a **forced march.**

—. The name for a ceremonial kind of march step in which the thigh is brought to a right angle with the body at each pace, formerly practised in the Prussian Army, is **goose-step.**

—. A name for a former kind of slow march made at from 60 to 80 paces to the minute is **parade march.**

—. A march made at the rate of about 120 paces to the minute is a **quick march.**

mark. The official mark—a circle with a horizontal line through the centre—seen on the sides of merchant vessels and showing the greatest depth to which they may be loaded, is the **Plimsoll mark.**

marksman. A concealed marksman, detailed to pick off the enemy one by one, is a **sniper.**

mast. The name for the portions of a lower and upper mast that are alongside each other is **doublings.**

—. The mast nearest the bow of a vessel also carrying a mainmast is the **foremast.**

—. The name for the length of a mast from the upper deck to where the rigging is affixed is **hounding.**

—. The name given to a makeshift mast is **jury mast.**

—. The principal mast of a vessel, second from the bow except in yawls, ketches, and galliots, is the **mainmast.**

—. The mast to the rear of the mainmast and nearest the stern in a two- or three-masted vessel is the **mizenmast.**

—. The sliding hoop, rope, or chain by which a yard is attached to a mast is a **parrel.**

—. Names usually given to the additional masts on a six-masted schooner, placed behind the fore, main and mizen masts, are **spanker, jigger,** and **driver.**

—, bottom. The part of a mast below deck and its lower end are respectively the **housing** and **heel.**

—, end. The name given to the part of a mast extending above the rigging is **pole.**

—, hoop. A name for a sliding hoop, rope, or chain holding a boom or gaff to a mast is **parrel.**

—, join. The stout block used to join the top of one section of a mast to the bottom of another is a **cap.**

—, —. The name of a strong crosspiece of wood or iron on the top of a mast to hold the end of an upper mast in place is **fid.**

—, look-out. A look-out platform at a masthead, usually of barrel shape, especially one on a whaling ship, is a **crow's-nest.**

—, platform. The name given to a platform round the head of a lower mast for extending the shrouds of the topmast is **top.**

—, railing. The name for a stout railing round a mast to hold belaying-pins, etc., is **fife-rail.**

—, rope. A name given to a short rope hanging from a masthead and having a block or ring at the lower end is **pendant.**

—, —. The name given to the sets of ropes running from the masthead to the ship's side or to a top, and acting as stays to the masts, is **shrouds.**

—, section. The four sections of a square-rigged mast (sometimes combined in pairs) are the **lower mast, topmast, topgallant mast,** and **royal mast.**

—, shield. A thin wooden shield on a mast, enabling the lower yards to slide easily is a **paunch.**

—, slope. The inclination of a mast or funnel from the perpendicular is **rake.**

mast, small. The small mast at the stern of a yawl' etc., is a **jigger-mast.**

—, socket. A name for a strong wooden framework fitted in the deck of a ship round a mast to take the strain, is **partner.**

—, —. The socket into which the heel or bottom of a mast fits is a **step.**

—, —. A name for an elevated socket or hinged post for lowering a mast of a vessel passing under bridges, etc., is **tabernacle.**

—, stay. Names for a stay running from a lower masthead or from a yard-arm, etc., to the weather side of a vessel, for giving greater security in bad weather, are **jumper-stay** and **preventer-stay.**

—, top. Each of the pieces of wood or iron set across-ship at the top of a mast to support the top or to extend shrouds is a **crosstree.**

—, —. A name for an arrangement of the topmast on a small craft by which it slides up or down the lower mast by means of rings is **gunter rig.**

—, —. The name given to a wooden disk at the top of a mast, through which the signal halyards run, is **truck.**

mat. A thick strong rope mat used to prevent chafing of rigging is a **paunch-mat.**

mess, naval. A name for the mess-room of the junior officers on a warship is **gun-room.**

—, —. The mess-room on a battleship reserved for the use of officers above the rank of sub-lieutenant is the **ward-room.**

messenger. A soldier whose duty is to carry military messages on a bicycle, motor-cycle, etc., is a **dispatch-rider.**

—. A name for a soldier who acts as messenger at headquarters is **orderly.**

—, mounted. A mounted soldier attached to a commanding officer to take messages on the battle field is a **galloper.**

mine. A cord, tube, or casing filled with combustible material for igniting the explosive in a bomb, mine, etc., is a **fuse.**

—, military. Names for a small well-like mine used in land warfare are **fougade** and **fougasse.**

—, —. The name of a military mine with three chambers for explosives at the inner end is **trefle.**

—, submarine. A submarine mine which is exploded by being struck by a ship's hull, etc., is a **contact mine.**

—, —. An area of navigable water strewn with anchored mines to prevent the passage of enemy vessels is a **minefield.**

—, —. The depositing and anchoring of submarine mines from a vessel, etc., is **mine-laying.**

—, —. The name for a type of paravane used in the World War for protecting merchant vessels from submarine mines is **otter.**

—, —. A name for an aeroplane-shaped device towed by a ship for the purpose of cutting the moorings of explosive mines in war-time is **paravane.**

mooring. A place for mooring or anchoring a vessel is a **berth.**

—. A strong vertical post or iron casting on a quay, etc., for securing mooring ropes or cables is a **bollard.**

—. A name for a mooring hawser is **bridle.**

—. A rope rove through a block at the bowsprit end and running down to a mooring buoy is a **bull rope.**

—. A name for a buoy or floating spar held by an anchor and having a ring or hole for a hawser, used in mooring vessels, is **dolphin.**

—. A kind of knot used by sailors for making a cable fast to a mooring ring is a **fisherman's bend.**

—. A ship moored rigidly by two cables running in opposite directions, so that she cannot swing with the wind or tide, is **girt.**

—. *See also under* **rope,** *below.*

mortar, trench. *See under* **bomb,** *above.*

motor-boat. *See under* **boat,** *above.*

musket. *See under* **fire-arm,** *above.*

navigation. A term used of a ship sailing or steaming against the wind is **beating.**

—. A name for the line followed by a vessel when sailing on one tack is **board.**

—. A term denoting coastal navigation, coastal trade, and coast pilotage is **cabotage.**

—. A sailing ship or boat, when she sails as close to the wind as possible, is **close-hauled.**

—. To put a drifting vessel about in an emergency, by letting go the lee anchor, hauling to windward by the hawser, and cutting this when she goes into the other tack, is to **club-haul.**

—. The calculation of a ship's position at sea with log and compass, without astronomical observations, is **dead-reckoning.**

—. In passing out of the mouth of a river, bay, or gulf a ship **disembogues.**

—. The distance a ship drifts sideways from her course, through the influence of currents or winds, is her **driftage** or **leeway.**

—. A sailing ship that forges ahead in stays, when going from one tack to another, **fore-reaches.**

—. A name for a kind of mechanical calculator by which it is possible to solve certain problems in navigation and surveying is **Gunter** or **Gunter's scale.**

—. A ship when moving forward makes **headway.**

—. When a sailing ship points into the wind's eye, loses all headway, and fails to go off on either tack, she is in **irons.**

—. A name for a collection of astronomical and other calculations and tables published under the care of the Admiralty for use in navigation is **Nautical Almanac.**

—. The net distance that a ship travels towards one of the four points of the compass is her **northing, southing, easting,** or **westing.**

—. The art of navigating a ship upon principles which suppose the earth's surface to be a flat surface is **plane sailing.**

—. The line described by a ship's course when she sails constantly towards the same point of the compass is a **rhumb,** or **rhumb-line.**

—. A ship while in the act of going about, as on another tack, is in **stays.**

—. A ship going astern has **sternway.**

—. To change the course of a sailing vessel by bringing her head round across the wind and letting the wind fill her sails on the opposite side is to **tack.**

—. The name given in navigation to a zigzag course taken by a ship owing to contrary winds or currents is **traverse.**

—. To bring a sailing ship round on to another tack by turning her head away from the wind is to **veer,** or **wear.**

—. A ship detained in port on account of bad weather is **weather-bound.**

—. A sailing ship that tends to turn up into the wind carries **weather-helm.**

—. A slight temporary deviation of a ship from her course is a **yaw.**

—, instrument. The name for an instrument formerly used in navigation for obtaining the altitude of planets and stars but now superseded by the sextant is **astrolabe.**

—, —. The name for a specially accurate timepiece upon which calculations in navigating a ship are based is **chronometer.**

—, —. The name for an instrument for measuring the altitude of the sun, resembling the sextant, and formerly used in navigation, is **quadrant.**

—, —. The name of an instrument used to find latitude and longitude at sea by observing heights of heavenly bodies above the horizon is **sextant.**

news, shipping. The name of a British corporation dealing chiefly with marine insurance, the registration of vessels, and the issue of shipping news is **Lloyd's.**

non-commissioned officer. *See under* **rank,** *below.*

oar. To reverse the motion of an oar so as to make a boat back or turn is to **backwater.**

—. A name for a tier of oars in a galley, or for the rowers in such a tier, is **bank.**

—. To slant the blades of an oar at the recovery of each stroke is to **feather.**

—. A name for the inboard end of an oar is **loom.**

—. Names for a forked swivel or other device on the gunwale or outrigger of a boat, for keeping an oar in place and serving as a fulcrum while rowing, are **oarlock** and **rowlock.**

—. Names for the blade of an oar are **palm** and **peel.**

—. A name given to an oar with the blade curved lengthwise is **spoon.**

—. A name for a long oar used to move barges or small ships in a calm is **sweep.**

—. The name for a pin in the gunwale of a boat acting as a fulcrum for an oar is **thole,** or **thole-pin.**

offensive. *See under* **attack,** *above.*

officer. The name for the officer of the day whose turn it is to deal with the domestic business of a regiment, etc., is **orderly officer.**

—. An officer of one of the fighting services next below a commissioned officer, acting under a warrant from a department of state, is a **warrant officer.**

—, allowance. An allowance paid to an officer on active service or during manoeuvres to meet his extra expenses is a **field allowance.**

—, army. The regimental officer who assists the commanding officer by attending to reports, dealing with orders and with discipline generally, is the **adjutant.**

—, —. A military officer who receives and passes on the orders of a general on the field is an **aide-de-camp.**

—, —. An army officer holding a nominal or honorary rank higher than that for which he draws pay is a **brevet officer.**

—, —. The title of a general officer of the highest rank in the French and some other armies is **marshal.**

—, British Air Force. *See under* **rank,** *below.*

—, British Army. An officer holding rank above captain and below general is a **field officer.**

—, —. The prosecuting officer at a court-martial is a **judge advocate.**

—, —. A name for a commissioned officer below the rank of captain is **subaltern.**

—, —. *See also under* **rank,** *below.*

—, British Navy. An officer, usually an expert in signalling, acting as aide-de-camp to an admiral is a **flag lieutenant.**

—, —. An admiral, vice-admiral, or rear-admiral, each of whom is entitled to hoist a flag when in command, is a **flag officer.**

—, —. A first-class petty officer acting as head of the ship's police is a **master-at-arms.**

—, —. The navigation officer whose work is to arrange the anchorage of warships when a fleet goes into harbour is the **master of the fleet.**

—, —. The title of a junior officer ranking between cadet and sub-lieutenant is **midshipman.**

—, —. A non-commissioned officer who is concerned with the maintenance and care of naval guns is an **ordnance artificer.**

—, —. A naval officer who does not hold the king's commission and ranks next below a warrant officer is a **petty officer.**

—, —. The name given to a petty officer who assists in navigation and attends to the making up of the log, etc., is **quartermaster.**

—, —. A petty officer in charge of signalling is a **yeoman of signals.**

—, —. *See also under* **rank,** *below.*

—, commanding. The officer commanding a combined naval and military force or several allied armies is a **generalissimo.**

officer, linking. An officer who acts as a link between the commanders of two allied forces is a **liaison officer.**

—, merchant service. The name for a subordinate officer in the merchant service acting as the officers' right-hand man is **boatswain.**

—, —. The title of a captain of a ship in the merchant service is **master.**

—, —. A name for the officer in a merchant ship ranking next below the captain is **mate.**

—, —. The officer on a passenger ship who keeps the ship's accounts, is responsible for feeding all aboard, and has charge of stores is the **purser.**

—, —. The name for a petty officer in a liner employed in steering and sounding is **quartermaster.**

—, —. The officer on a ship in charge of the supply of provisions and of the passengers' rooms is the **steward.**

—, —. *See also under* **sailor,** *below.*

—, non-commissioned The non-commissioned officer in charge of the horses of a cavalry regiment is the **farrier sergeant.**

—, quarters. A name for a junior officer appointed daily to inspect quarters, food, etc., in a barracks or camp is **orderly officer.**

—, sepoy. A native Indian non-commissioned officer in a sepoy regiment corresponding to sergeant is a **havildar.**

—, —. A native Indian officer ranking next below a subahdar in a company of sepoys is a **jemadar.**

—, —. The chief native officer in a company of sepoys, ranking next above a jemadar, is a **subahdar.**

—, servant. A name given to an army officer's soldier servant is **batman.**

—, supply. The regimental officer who supervises the supply and equipment of his unit is the **quartermaster.**

—, —. The officer who supervises supply and equipment of an army is the **quartermaster-general.**

—, Yeoman of the Guard. The names given to each of the four junior officers ranking as corporals of the Yeomen of the Guard is **exon,** or **exempt.**

officers, army. The official record of the status and rank of officers in the British Army, including the Royal Marines, is the **Army List.**

—, body. A body of officers assisting a commander, whose duties concern an army, regiment, etc., as a whole, is a **staff.**

—, naval. The official record of the status and rank of officers, and names and stations of ships, in the Royal Navy is the **Navy List.**

order. An order for military supplies is a **requisition.**

orders, military. General and regimental orders are entered in a company's **orderly-book.**

outwork. The name given to a detached outwork or field-work with little or no flanking defence is **redoubt.**

pad. A pad hung over the side of a vessel while berthing to prevent collision with the quay is a **fender.**

paddle-box. *See under* **ship,** *below.*

paddle-wheel. A name for a float of a paddle-wheel is **dasher.**

parapet. A name used in fortification for a raised earth platform or bank, now called fire-step, on which soldiers stand to fire from behind a parapet, is **banquette.**

—. Names for an opening, widening from the inner end, in a parapet, etc., for firing through, are **crenel** and **embrasure.**

—. *See also under* **fortification,** *above, and* **rampart,** *below.*

paravane. A name for a type of paravane used on merchant ships in war-time is **otter.**

password. A secret sign or word given in response to a sentry's challenge is a **countersign.**

pay. A name for the reduced pay received by a naval or army officer when retired or not actually employed is **half-pay.**

peak. A nautical term which means to lower the peak and trice up the tack of a sail is **scandalize.**

picket. The armed guard or picket that stays within a camp, in readiness for instant service, is an **inlying picket.**

pilot, air-force. A name given to a pilot in an air force who has brought down five enemy planes, is **ace.**

pin. A strong, fixed iron or wooden pin to which ropes are fastened on a ship is a **belaying-pin.**

—. A pointed, wooden pin for opening the strands of a rope in splicing is a **fid.**

pistol. A name for a heavy pistol, in use in the fifteenth to seventeenth centuries, is **dag** or **dagg.**

—. A name for a type of pistol with a short barrel and large bore, for use at close range, is **derringer.**

—. A name for a heavy cavalry pistol of large calibre, used in the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries, is **petronel.**

—. The name for a single-barrelled pistol with a many-chambered revolving breech, enabling a number of shots to be fired in succession without reloading, is **revolver.**

platform. A name given to a platform on a mast of a battleship, armed with small, quick-firing guns, and also a platform from which the fire of the ship's big guns is directed, is **fighting-top.**

—. A name for a platform round the head of a lower mast, forming an extended base for securing the topmast shrouds of a sailing vessel, is **top.**

plume. A name for a plume or cluster of feathers, as in a general's cocked hat and a life-guardsman's helmet, is **panache.**

poison gas. *See under* **gas,** *above*

pole. A stout pole used as a mast, yard, boom or gaff is a **spar.**

police, military. The officer appointed head of the military police, and to carry out decrees of court martial when an army is in the field, is the **provost-marshal.**

—, ship's. A first-class petty officer acting as head of the ship's police is **master-at-arms.**

port. A tax paid for the room taken up by a ship in port or lying up on a beach is **groundage.**

—. Permission to communicate with a port, granted to a ship after quarantine, etc., is **pratique.**

—. The name for a period during which a ship is isolated in port, if coming from places infected with a contagious disease or having such disease on board, is **quarantine.**

—. A name for an agent of the owners of a ship who takes charge of all business connected with the ship in port—equipping, repairing, procuring freights, etc.—is **ship's husband.**

porthole. A strong shutter for protecting a porthole or cabin window during bad weather is a **dead-light.**

prisoner. The name for a pledge of honour given by a prisoner of war that he will not attempt to escape, or will not take up arms against his captors until exchanged, etc., is **parole.**

—, exchange. A name for a written agreement between belligerent governments relating to the exchange of prisoners of war is **cartel.**

private. The names given to a soldier of the rank of private in the guards, artillery, rifle regiments, engineers, and cavalry, respectively, are **guardsman, gunner, rifleman, sapper,** and **trooper.**

projectile. The glancing off of a bullet or other projectile from its objective is a **ricochet.**

—. The curved path taken in the air by a projectile is the **trajectory.**

—. A name for the space between the inner surface of a smooth-bore gun and the projectile discharged from it is **windage**

projectile, type. The name for a solid projectile consisting of two round shot joined by a bar, formerly used in naval engagements to damage the enemy's rigging, is **bar-shot.**

—, —. Names for various kinds of projectiles consisting of a metal case filled with small lead or iron balls are **canister-shot, case-shot,** and **shrapnel.**

—, —. The name for a solid projectile consisting of two round shot joined by a chain, used in former times for damaging the rigging of an enemy ship, and revived for anti-aircraft work, etc., during the World War, is **chain-shot.**

—, —. Names for a projectile used in smooth-bore guns, consisting of small iron balls held together by perforated plates and scattering in all directions when fired, are **grape-shot** and **tier-shot.**

—. *See also under* **bullet,** *above, and* **shell,** *below.*

protection. The name given to a method of protecting military equipment, etc., from enemy observers by altering its appearance by means of irregular bands or patches of paint, painted screens, etc., is **camouflage.**

provisions. A name for a person who in former times followed an army and sold provisions to the soldiers is **sutler.**

pulley. A name for a single pulley through which a rope is passed to hoist a weight is **whip-gin.**

—. *See also under* **block,** *above, and* **tackle,** *below.*

pump, ship's. A name for the casing or compartment in the hold of a ship containing the pump-barrel and usually a strainer is **pump-well.**

—, —. A graduated iron rod lowered into a pump-well to determine the depth of water in a ship's hold is a **sounding-rod.**

—, —. The name for a contrivance including a barrel with a crank and brakes for working a ship's pumps is **vangee.**

punt. The name for a pole with a flange at the end to prevent it sinking in the mud, used for punting craft in shallow waterways, is **quant.**

quadrant. A name for the index of a quadrant is **alidad.**

raid. The name given to a raid or foray, especially for slaving purposes, as practised by the Mohammedan races in Africa is **razzia.**

rail, ship's. The name for the raised side of a ship above the upper deck, topped by the rail, is **bulwark.**

—, —. The name for a railing across the poop deck of a vessel, and also for a railing around a mast to hold belaying-pins, etc., is **fife-railing.**

—, —. A name for the light rail above a ship's quarter-rail near the stern is **monkey-rail.**

—, —. That part of a ship's rail running above her quarter and guarding the quarter-deck is the **quarter-rail.**

—, —. A name given to the rail running round the stern of a vessel is **taffrail.**

rampart. A name for a narrow level space at the foot of a rampart to prevent material falling from it into the ditch in front is **berm.**

—. A basket made of wicker-work or iron and filled with earth, used to make a rampart, is a **gabion.**

—. A name for a slope in front of a rampart is **glacis.**

—. A name for a rampart which protects a trench or other fortification from fire at the rear is **parados.**

range. A military term used of firing shots first beyond and then short of a mark so as to get the range is **bracketing.**

—. A naval term used of firing shots first beyond and then short of a ship or mark so as to get the range is **straddling.**

range-finder. A name for a simple type of range-finder consisting of two reflectors connected by a cord, formerly used in the British Army, is **mekometer.**

—. The name of an apparatus used by artillerymen for range-finding is **telemeter.**

rank. A former designation of an infantry officer of the lowest rank was **ensign.**

—, British Air Force. The ranks of commissioned officers in the Royal Air Force, beginning with the highest, are **Marshal of the Royal Air Force, Air Vice-Marshal, Air Commodore, Group Captain, Wing Commander, Squadron Leader, Flight Lieutenant, Flying Officer, Pilot Officer.**

—, —. The non-commissioned ranks in the Royal Air Force, beginning with the highest, are **Warrant Officer I, Warrant Officer II, Flight Sergeant, Sergeant, Corporal, Leading Aircraftman, Aircraftman** 1, **Aircraftman** 2.

—, British Army. The ranks of commissioned officers in the British Army, beginning with the highest, are **Field-Marshal, General, Lieutenant-General, Major-General, Brigadier, Colonel, Lieutenant-Colonel, Major, Captain, Lieutenant, Second Lieutenant.**

—, —. The non-commissioned ranks in the British Army, in descending order, are **Regimental Sergeant-Major, Regimental Quartermaster-Sergeant, Company Sergeant-Major, Company Quartermaster-Sergeant, Sergeant, Lance-Sergeant, Corporal, Lance-Corporal, Private.**

—, —. The lowest non-commissioned ranks in the Royal Artillery, corresponding to corporal and lance-corporal in the infantry, are respectively **Bombardier** and **Lance-Bombardier.**

—, —. Names given to soldiers of the rank of private in the guards, artillery, rifle regiments, engineers, and cavalry, respectively, are **guardsman, gunner, rifleman, sapper,** and **trooper.**

—, British Navy. The ranks of commissioned officers in the Royal Navy, beginning with the highest, are **Admiral of the Fleet, Admiral, Vice-Admiral, Rear-Admiral, Commodore, Captain, Commander, Lieutenant-Commander, Sub-Lieutenant** and **Mate, Midshipman.**

—, —. The ratings or non-commissioned ranks in the Royal Navy are, in descending order, **Warrant Officer, Chief Petty Officer, Petty Officer, Leading Seaman, Able Seaman, Ordinary Seaman, Boy.**

—, honorary. Honorary rank in the army is **brevet rank.**

—. *See also under* **officer,** *above.*

recruit. A name given to a number of inefficient recruits grouped together for intensive training in drill is **awkward squad.**

Red Cross. Another name for the Red Cross, the distinguishing sign of naval and military hospitals, etc., is **Geneva Cross.**

regiment. The military unit formed of three regiments of cavalry, four battalions of infantry, or three batteries of artillery, in the British Army, is the **brigade.**

—. The permanent nucleus of a regiment, which can be expanded at need, is a **cadre.**

—, business. Regimental business in a barracks, etc., is carried on in the **orderly-room.**

—, cavalry. Each of the main units into which a cavalry regiment is divided in the British Army is a **squadron.**

—, follower. A woman selling provisions and drink, formerly attached to the French and other Continental regiments, was a **vivandière.**

—, infantry. Each of the main fighting units into which an infantry regiment in the British Army is divided is a **battalion.**

reserve. A name for a former reserve force of British infantry, organized for home defence, now absorbed in the Territorial Army, was **militia.**

reserve, Germany. The name given to a part of the military reserve of the former German Empire was **landsturm.**

—, —. The name of a former second reserve force of the German Army was **landwehr.**

rifle. A name for a short rifle or musket, especially one designed for mounted troops, is **carbine.**

—. The name for a type of muzzle-loading rifle formerly used in the British services is **Enfield.**

—. The name of the standard rifle of the French army is **Lebel.**

—. The name of the standard rifle of the British service is **Lee-Enfield.**

—. A name for a rifle constructed with a chamber for extra cartridges which are brought one by one into position for firing is **magazine-rifle.**

—. The name of the type of rifle used by the Austrians in the World War is **Mannlicher.**

—. The name of the rifle used by the Italian army during the World War is **Mannlicher-Carcano.**

—. A type of breech-loading rifle, used in the British Army from 1871-88, was the **Martini,** or **Martini-Henry rifle.**

—. A name for a type of military rifle with a box-magazine in which cartridges lie one above the other, adopted by the German Army in 1872, is **Mauser.**

—. A name for a small-bore tube fixed in a large-bore rifle for use at short ranges with small targets is **Morris tube.**

—. A name for an early form of breech-loading rifle is **Snider.**

—. The name of the standard rifle in the United States service is **Springfield.**

—, breech. A name for the breech-closing apparatus of a rifle or other fire-arm is **fermeture.**

—, sight. A back-sight of a rifle in the form of a metal disk with a circular hole is an **aperture sight.**

—, —. The sight of a rifle near the stock is the **back-sight.**

—, —. The vertical metal projection in the form of a pyramid, barleycorn, or leaf on the top of a rifle barrel at the muzzle is the **foresight.**

—, —. A rifle sight consisting of a miniature telescope used for long-range firing is **telescopic sight.**

—. *See also* **fire-arm,** *above.*

rigging. A name for a ring, strap, or cleat for holding spars or rigging ropes in position is **becket.**

—. Iron screws with an eye at each end attached in and used for tightening the rigging of ships, are **bottle-screws** or **rigging-screws.**

—. A shield of wood or a thick rope mat used to prevent chafing of a ship's rigging is a **paunch,** or **paunch-mat.**

—. The ropes employed to work the spars or yards and set the sails of a vessel form the **running rigging.**

—, method. A ship or boat having her principal sails set with one edge against the after side of a mast is **fore-and-aft rigged.**

—, —. The method of rigging a ship with a triangular sail set on a long, tapering yard, hung obliquely from a short mast at a point below the centre of the yard, is **lateen rig.**

—, —. A ship having each of her principal sails set on a horizontal yard or spar, slung by its middle to a mast, is **square-rigged.**

—, permanent. The permanent rigging of a ship, which consists of the shrouds, stays, etc., is the **standing gear** or **standing rigging.**

—. *See also under* **block, rope,** etc.

right. The right-hand side of a vessel as one looks forward, distinguished at night when under way by a green light, is the **starboard.**

ring. A name for a ring of rope, metal, etc., attached to a yard, pulley, block, etc., as a purchase for tackle, etc., is **strop.**

roll. A name for an instrument for measuring the extent and frequency of the roll of a ship at sea is **oscillometer.**

rope. Rope sewn round the edge of a sail to strengthen it is **bolt-rope.**

—. A bar of wood or iron with two short arms for making fast ropes on a ship is a **cleat.**

—. A name for a small rope, especially a four-stranded hemp-rope, used in setting up rigging or making objects fast is a **lanyard.**

—. A name for a rope serving as a railing, as on a ship's gangway, is **man-rope.**

—. The name for a rope attached to a small boat and used to fasten it to a cleat, stake, etc., is **painter.**

—. A name for a rope or chain by which a lower yard or gaff is suspended is **sling.**

—. A name for a rope thrown about a post on a landing-stage, etc., to check the motion of a boat coming alongside is **snubbing-line.**

—. To join ends of rope permanently together by interlacing the strands is to **splice.**

—. A rope serving to support a mast or spar and extending from it to another mast or spar, or to the hull of the ship, is a **stay.**

—. A name for each of a pair of guy-ropes running from the peak of a gaff to the deck is **vang.**

—. The binding of the end of a rope with yarn to prevent its fraying is **whipping.**

—, end. A name for the end of a paid-out cable or rope that remains on board ship and is fastened to bitts or posts is **bitter.**

—, hitch. A name for a twisting hitch in the bight of a rope for attaching a tackle is **catspaw.**

—, kind. A name for a strong kind of rope used in ships is **Manila.**

—, —. Thin rope of two strands loosely twisted together is **marline.**

—, loop. A loop formed by a rope when a knot or hitch is being made is a **bight.**

—, —. The name for a loop formed in a rope by bending back the end and splicing it into the rope is **eye-splice.**

—, mooring. A name for mooring ropes running from the forward and quarter parts of a vessel to keep her close alongside a wharf is **breast ropes.**

—, —. The name given to a thick rope used for mooring a ship to a quay, or for towing, is **hawser.**

—, —. The name given to a rope by which a ship is moored at the bows is **headfast.**

—, —. A rope or chain used to moor a ship by the stern is a **sternfast.**

—, pulley. A name for a rope passed through a single pulley to hoist a weight is **whip.**

—, ring. A ring of twisted rope used as a rowlock and for other purposes is a **grommet** or **grummet.**

—, splicing. A tapered piece of hardwood used for splicing rope is a **fid.**

—, —. A tapered steel pin sometimes used instead of a fid for splicing rope, but chiefly used for making seizings and wire splices, is a **marline-spike.**

—, strand. The spiral groove between the strands of a rope is a **cont-line.**

—, tow. Names for a rope by which a boat is fastened to another vessel, and a rope for steadying a ship on tow are **guest-rope, guest-warp, guess-rope,** and **guess-warp.**

—, untwisted. A name for the loose, untwisted fibres of old rope used for caulking seams between a ship's planking is **oakum.**

—, wrapping. A name for a wrapping of tarred strips of canvas wound round a rope to make it waterproof is **parcelling.**

—, —. The covering of a parcelled rope with spun-yarn wound against the lay of the rope is **serving.**

—, —. The winding of spun yarn between the strands of a rope to fill up the spiral groove before parcelling is **worming.**

—. *See also under* **mast, mooring,** *above, and* **sail, yard,** *below*

rowing. The name given to the forward oarsman in a boat is **bow.**

—. A name for one who steers a rowing-boat or has charge of a ship's boat and its crew under an officer is **coxswain.**

—. The name given to the oarsman sitting nearest the stern in a boat, and setting the time for the movements of the oars, is **stroke.**

—. *See also under* **oar,** *above.*

rowing-boat. *See under* **boat,** *above.*

rudder. Names for the bar by which the rudder of many small boats is turned, attached to the top of the rudder or rudder-shank, are **helm** and **tiller.**

—. A name for a pin or bolt, serving as a pivot, for attaching a rudder to the stern post of a boat is **pintle.**

—. The name of a forked metal piece fixed to the back of the rudder of a large vessel to hold the rudder-chains is **rudder-horn.**

—. The apparatus for controlling a ship's rudder, including the steering-wheel and the chains, etc., connecting it with the rudder, is the **steering-gear.**

—. A name for the upright bar in which the lower part of a ship's stern ends, and to which the rudder is attached, is **stern-post.**

—. The name for a curved rack which engages the tiller and holds the rudder in place is **tiller-comb.**

—. The name for the crosspiece on the upper end of a boat's rudder or rudder-stock, to which ropes for steering are attached, is **yoke.**

—. Each of the two ropes which work the rudder of a small boat is a **yoke-line** or **yoke-rope.**

—. *See also* **helm,** *above.*

sail. A narrow piece of canvas sewn across the middle of a sail to strengthen it is a **girth-band.**

—. A triangular piece of sail-cloth inserted at the end of a sail to widen it is a **gore.**

—, corner. The name given to both bottom corners of a square sail and to the after lower corner of a fore-and-aft sail is **clew.**

— —. The name given to either of the lower corners of a square sail when the middle part is furled is **goose-wing.**

— —. The name for the upper and outer corner forming the highest point of a fore-and-aft sail is **peak.**

—, —. The forward lower corner of a sail is the **tack.**

—, —. The name for the forward upper corner of a fore-and-aft sail, near where the gaff and mast join, is **throat.**

—, edge. A rope sewn round the edge of a sail to strengthen it is a **bolt-rope.**

—, —. A ring or loop on the outer edge of a sail through which a rope (the reef pennant) is passed to aid in reefing is a **cringle.**

—, —. The name for the lower edge of a sail running from the tack to the clew is **foot.**

—, —. The name for the upper edge of a sail between the throat and peak, and for the upper corner of a triangular head-sail, is **head.**

— —. The name for either edge of a square sail, and for the after edge of a fore-and-aft sail, joining the peak and clew, is **leech.**

—, —. The name for the forward edge of a fore-and-aft sail next to the mast or stay, is **luff.**

—, fore-and-aft. The name of the chief or only sail set on the after part of the mainmast of a fore-and-aft rigged ship is **mainsail.**

—, —. A fore-and-aft sail extended by two spars on the after side of the mizenmast of a square-rigged ship is a **spanker.**

—, —. Names for a fore-and-aft trapezoidal sail carried on a gaff abaft the foremast or mainmast of a square-rigged ship are **spencer** and **trysail.**

—, —. A sail with no boom or gaff, but extended from the mast by a long diagonal spar (or sprit) resting in a loop on the mast, is a **spritsail.**

sail, fore-and-aft. On a fore-and-aft rigged ship the name given to a square or triangular sail set above the gaff of the mainsail is **topsail.**

—, furl. To furl a sail along a mast by hauling on a rope running from the mast round the sail, is to **brail up.**

—, hoisting. A rope or tackle for hoisting a sail, yard, or flag is a **halyard** or **halliard.**

—, lowering. A nautical term meaning to lower the sails of a ship hurriedly is **douse.**

—, —. A sailor's term meaning to lower the peak and trice up the tack of a sail is **scandalize.**

—, lowest. The name given to a sail set on the lowest yard of any square-rigged mast is **course.**

—, middle. The middle of a square sail when furled is the **bunt.**

—, mizen. The stiff iron bar or spar projecting over the stern of a yawl, to which the sheet of the mizen sail is made fast, is a **bumkin.**

—, position. When the sheet of a sail is to windward, so that the vessel goes astern, the sail is **aback.**

—, reef. A reef in a fore-and-aft sail running diagonally from the throat to the clews is a **balance reef.**

—, rope. A rope used to gather up the furl or leech of a fore-and-aft sail for furling is a **brail.**

—, —. A rope attached to the foot of a square sail and passing up to the masthead and then down to the deck, used in hauling the sail up to the yard, is a **bunt-line.**

—, —. A rope used to haul down a jib, staysail, etc., is a **down-haul.**

—, —. A small line fastened to a loop or eye in the rope running along the side of a sail is an **earing.**

—, —. A rope or plaited cord used to secure the sails to the yard or boom after furling is a **gasket** or **gaskin.**

—, —. Ropes by which sails are hoisted are **halyards** or **halliards.**

—, —. A name for a light rope for hauling a sail to the end of a boom or spar is **outhaul.**

—, —. The name of a rope attached to the clews of a sail by means of which the sail is trimmed to the wind is **sheet.**

—, —. A short rope for emptying the wind from a square sail so that it can be reefed or furled in stormy weather, is a **spilling-line.**

—, —. A rope or purchase for hauling down and making fast the corners of various sails is a **tack.**

—, —. The rope that runs from the lower masthead of a ship to the end of the boom, and serves to raise the boom to the required height and relieve the sail of its weight, is the **topping-lift.**

—, shorten. To reduce the spread of a sail by two reefs is to **double-reef.**

—, —. A horizontal part of a sail, which can be rolled up to shorten the sail, is a **reef.**

—, small. A supplementary sail laced to the foot of a jib in light winds is a **bonnet.**

—, —. A name for a small sail forming an extension to a square sail is **studding sail** or **stunsail.**

—, —. A name for a small sail set under the lowest of a ship's studding-sails, and so close to the water, is **water-sail.**

—, square. The names of the square sails of the mizen mast of a full-rigged ship, beginning with the lowest, are **cross-jack, mizen topsail, mizen topgallant,** and **mizen royal.**

—, —. The names of the square sails of the foremast of a full-rigged ship, beginning with the lowest, are **foresail** or **fore course, fore topsail, fore topgallant,** and **fore royal.**

—, —. The name of the iron or wooden rod running along the top of a yard and serving as an attachment for a square sail is **jack-stay.**

sail, square. The name for a square sail fastened to a yard which is attached to the mast by halyards at about one third of the distance from the forward end, and kept in an oblique position, is **lug-sail.**

—, —. The names of the square sails of the main mast of a full-rigged ship, beginning with the lowest, are **mainsail** or **main course, main topsail, main topgallant, main royal,** and **main skysail.**

—, **triangular.** The largest head-sail on a vessel, only hoisted in fair weather when the boat is running before the wind or when the wind is abeam or on the quarter, is the **balloon foresail** or **balloon jib.**

—, —. A triangular sail set out beyond the standing jib is the **flying-jib.**

—, —. A name for the fore stay-sail of a cutter or sloop is **foresail.**

—, —. A name given to any of the triangular sails—fore stay-sail, jib, etc.—set before the mast is **head-sail.**

—, —. The name of a triangular head-sail, especially one set forward of the fore stay-sail, is **jib.**

—, —. The name for a triangular sail stretched from a long yard attached obliquely to a short mast, much used in the Mediterranean and the East, is **lateen sail.**

—, —. A name given to a triangular fore-and-aft sail with no boom, used as a mainsail in some small boats, is **leg-of-mutton sail** or **shoulder-of-mutton sail.**

—, —. A large three-cornered sail carried on the mainmast of a racing vessel opposite the mainsail, and used when running before the wind, is a **spinnaker.**

—, —. A triangular sail hoisted on a stay is a **stay-sail.**

—, type. A sail set with its edge, instead of its middle, to the mast, is a **fore-and-aft sail.**

—, —. A four-cornered sail suspended from a horizontal yard or spar slung to the mast by the middle is a **square-sail.**

sailing. *See under* **navigation,** *above.*

sailing ship. *See under* **ship,** sailing, *below.*

sailor. The name for a sailor of the rating next above ordinary seaman, having four or more years of service, is **able-bodied seaman.**

—. The name for an East Indian sailor employed on a European ship, especially a British ship, is **lascar.**

—. A sailor who has permission to go ashore is a **liberty man.**

—. The name for a sailor of the lowest rating is **ordinary seaman.**

—, clumsy. A name for a stupid or clumsy sailor is **lubber.**

—, lascar. The name for an East Indian sailor acting as the boatswain of a crew of lascars is **serang.**

—, —. The name for an East Indian sailor assisting a serang in the management of a crew of lascars is **tindal.**

—. *See also under* **officer** *and* **rank,** *above.*

scabbard. A name for the metal tip of a scabbard is **chape.**

—. A name for the loop serving as an attachment for a scabbard is **frog.**

screen. Names for a screen of canvas fixed on the rails of a ship's bridge to shelter the officer on duty are **dodger** and **weather-cloth.**

sea. A rough sea with the waves coming from in front of a ship is a **head sea.**

—. Those parts of the sea that are more than three miles from a coast are the **high seas.**

—. A sailor's name for a choppy sea due to currents meeting in shallow water, and also for a sudden dip in the sea-bottom, is **overfall.**

—. The name given to the belt of sea within a distance of three miles from the coasts of a state is **territorial waters.**

sea, rough. A sailor's name for a place where the sea is rough is **sea way.**

sea-ditty. The name of a rhythmical sea-ditty sung by seamen to aid them in hauling ropes and in other work, is **shanty.**

seaman. *See under* **sailor,** *above.*

seamanship. *See under* **navigation,** *above.*

seat. The name for a seat consisting of a short board slung from a rope, used by a seaman working aloft, etc., is **boatswain's chair.**

—, oarsman's. A name for a transverse plank in a boat used as a seat for an oarsman is **thwart.**

sentinel, mounted. A mounted sentinel stationed in advance of an outpost is a **vedette.**

sergeant. A sergeant in an Indian native infantry regiment is a **havildar.**

—. *See also under* **rank,** *above.*

servant, officer's. A name given to an army officer's soldier servant is **batman.**

sheathing. A name for an alloy of copper and zinc used for the sheathing on ships' bottoms is **Muntz metal.**

shell. A name for the case of cordite or other propellant explosive used to discharge a shell is **cartridge.**

—. The name for the projections near the bases of shells by which they are rotated by the rifling of the gun is **driving-bands.**

—, explosive. A name for a former kind of explosive shell, thrown by hand, of which the fuse had to be lighted before projection, is **grenade.**

—, gas. A kind of explosive shell containing a charge of gas which inflames and brings water to the eyes is a **lachrymatory shell.**

—, high-explosive. A name given by French soldiers to large high-explosive shells is **marmite.**

—, type. The name given to a type of projectile containing bullets which are released by a bursting charge and fall in a shower on the objective is **shrapnel.**

—, —. A name for a type of shell which bursts and sends out a shower of burning stars or one such star, supported by a parachute, for illuminating a position at night. is **star shell.**

—, —. A name for a type of shell fitted with a device to render the course of its passage visible as a guide to artillerymen, etc., is **tracer shell.**

—, —. A name for a type of shell made to contain different kinds of filling, for use either as shrapnel or high-explosive shell, is **universal shell.**

—. *See also under* **projectile,** *above.*

shelter. A name for an underground shelter, sometimes of large size, constructed during the World War as a protection for troops against heavy artillery is **dug-out.**

shield. A name for a small round shield is **buckler.**

—. The name given to a screen made of overlapping shields held above their heads by ancient Roman soldiers was **testudo.**

—, Australian. The name of a narrow shield of wood or bark used by the Australian aborigines is **hielaman.**

—, Greek. The name of a round convex shield of bronze, etc., carried by ancient Greek soldiers is **clypeus.**

—, —. A small shield of wicker or wood covered with leather used by light-armed soldiers in ancient Greece was **pelta.**

—, gun. A name for a shield or armoured screen for guns on a battleship is **casemate.**

—, Scottish. The name of a kind of circular shield or buckler formerly borne by the Scottish Highlanders and others is **target.**

ship. A ship sunk in a channel, such as the entrance to a harbour, to prevent the passage of hostile vessels is a **block-ship.**

ship. A name given to the widest cross-section of a ship is **dead-flat.**

—. A ship freighted with burning combustibles and sent adrift among enemy vessels to set them alight is a **fire-ship.**

—. A name given to the hull and body of a ship, especially when dismasted and no longer fit for sea, is **hulk.**

—. The body of a ship, excluding the masts, yards, rigging, etc., is the **hull.**

—. A vessel, when her iron parts become loose in the timbers, or her rivets become slackened through corrosion, is said to be **iron-sick.**

—, agent. A name for an agent of the owners of a ship who has charge of the proper equipping of a ship, and procures freights, etc., is **ship's-husband.**

—, ancient. A name for a sea-going vessel of the ancients, with fine lines and sharp bow, propelled by one or more banks of oars and sometimes having sails, is **galley.**

—, Arab. The name for a type of two-masted Arab trading ship having a high stern and overhanging bow is **baggala.**

—, bottom. A name for the nearly horizontal rounded part of a ship's bottom inside and out is **bilge.**

—, —. A name for an alloy of copper and zinc used for sheathing the bottoms of ships is **Muntz metal.**

—, bows. The fore part of a ship's stem or bow is the **cutwater.**

—, —. The foremost part of a ship's keel to which the sides of the bows are fastened is the **stem.**

—, captured. A ship captured from the enemy at sea is a **prize** or **prize of war.**

—, Chinese. The name for a large Chinese sailing vessel with a high poop and suspended rudder, carrying one or more large lug sails stiffened with bamboo cross-pieces, is **junk.**

—, dismasted. The name given to a dismasted ship with sheer legs mounted on it so that it can be used as a floating crane is **sheer-hulk.**

—, end. The front or forward part of a ship, usually from the place where the sides begin to curve inward, is the **bow** or **bows.**

—, —. The back end of a ship or boat is the **stern.**

—, Mediterranean. The name for a type of small swift Mediterranean sailing vessel, usually with three masts, having lateen sails and a rudder that may be used at either end, is **felucca.**

—, —. A name for a small type of Mediterranean coasting vessel having two masts and lateen sails is **mistic** or **mistico.**

—, —. A name for a three-masted Mediterranean vessel of the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries, having a long narrow stern, is **pink.**

—, —. A name for a type of square-rigged sailing vessel used in the Mediterranean is **polacca.**

—, —. The name for a type of small, three-masted Mediterranean vessel with lateen and square sails and overhanging bow and stern is **zebec.**

—, movement. The name for the lengthwise up and down movement of a ship at sea, as distinguished from rolling from side to side, is **pitching.**

—, name. A plank attached to a ship's stern and bearing her name and port of origin is an **arch-board.**

—, oil-driven. A name for a large oil-driven ship is **motor-vessel.**

—, paddle-steamer. A name for the angular space in front of and behind the paddle-box against a steamer's side is **sponson.**

—, —. A beam supporting the side of a ship's paddle-box is a **spring-beam.**

—, —. A steamer having a single paddle-wheel in the stern, for navigating shallow water and narrow channels, is a **stern-wheeler.**

ship, part. That part of a ship extending from the dead-flat, or widest cross-section of the hull, to the stern, is the **after-body.**

—, —. That part of a ship between the widest cross-section of the hull and the bows is the **forebody.**

—, —. A name for the part of a ship between the quarter-deck and forecastle is **waist.**

—, partition. A partition forming separate or watertight compartments in the hull of a ship is a **bulkhead.**

—, protection. A name for an aeroplane-shaped device towed by a ship to protect it from explosive mines in war-time is **paravane.**

—, registration. The name of a British corporation dealing chiefly with marine insurance, the registration of ships, and the issuing of shipping news, is **Lloyd's.**

—, repairing. The turning over of a ship upon one side for the purpose of repairing or cleaning her bottom is **careening.**

—, —. A name for a framework of timbers or iron beams on which a ship is supported while in dry dock for cleaning and repair is **gridiron.**

—, rolling. A name for an instrument for measuring the rolling of a ship at sea is **oscillometer.**

—, sailing. The name for a type of sailing ship with three or more masts, the aftermost one being fore-and-aft and the others square-rigged, is **barque.**

—, —. The name for a type of sailing ship with three or more masts, the foremost being square-rigged and the others fore-and-aft, is **barquentine.**

—, —. The name for a type of sailing ship with two square-rigged masts, now very rare, is **brig.**

—, —. The name for a type of two-masted ship having a fore-and-aft mainsail and a square-rigged foremast—a combination of brig and schooner—is **brigantine.**

—, —. A name for a light, fast type of sailing vessel, of rounder and broader build than a galley, originating in Spain and Portugal during the fifteenth century, is **caravel** or **carvel.**

—, —. A name for a large Spanish or Portuguese merchant sailing ship, formerly used in the American and East Indian trade, is **carrack.**

—, —. A name for a type of three-masted ship common in the eighteenth century round the north-east coast as a coal or timber carrier is **cat.**

—, —. A name given to a large sailing ship with a hull designed to give speed, especially a ship formerly engaged in the China tea trade, is **clipper.**

—,—. A sailing ship, such as a schooner, in which all sails are set with one edge, instead of the middle, to a mast, is a **fore-and-after.**

—, —. A sailing ship carrying three or more square-rigged masts and having square sails only, apart from her fore-and-aft head-sails, is **full-rigged.**

—, —. A name for a large ship of the fifteenth to seventeenth century, especially a three-decked Spanish or Mediterranean ship, is **galleon.**

—, —. A name for a former type of Dutch or Flemish merchant ship with one or two masts is **galliot.**

—, —. A name given to a rare type of barque having fore-and-aft sails on the mainmast is **jackass.**

—, —. A name for a type of wooden sailing vessel of the seventeenth century and earlier, usually with an elevation at each end, and having square sails, is **nave** or **nef.**

—, —. A name for a small two-masted sailing vessel, serving as a scout to a fleet before the eighteenth century, is **pinnace.**

ship, sailing. A name for a type of sailing ship having large upright cylinders, turned mechanically, in place of sails, is **rotor-ship.**

—, —. The name given to a sea-going vessel with two or more masts of approximately similar size, and fore-and-aft rigging, is **schooner.**

—, —. A sailing ship in which each of the principal sails is set on a horizontal yard slung to the mast by its middle is a **square-rigger.**

—, seizure. An iron-clawed apparatus used in old naval fights to seize and engage an enemy ship is a **grapnel.**

—, side. The part of a ship's side forming a parapet above the deck is the **bulwark.**

—, —. A name for a flat piece of wood fastened edgewise to a sailing ship's side to spread the shrouds and keep them clear of the bulwarks is **channel.**

—, —. The above-water part of a ship's sides is the **free-board.**

—, —. The upper edge of the side of a ship immediately below the bulwarks and between the quarter-deck and forecastle is the **gunwale** or **gunnel.**

—, —. The side of a ship opposite to that against which the wind blows is the **lee side.**

—, —. The left-hand side of a vessel as one faces the bow is the **port.**

—, —. The extreme after end of a ship's side is a **quarter.**

—, —. The right-hand side of a vessel as one faces the bow is the **starboard.**

—, —. The rail along the top edge of a ship's bulwarks is the **topgallant rail.**

—, —. A name for the inward-sloping upper part of the sides of some ships and boats is **tumble-home.**

—, —. The side of a ship against which the wind blows is the **weather side** or **windward side.**

—, small. The name given to a small ship which attends a larger one, carrying supplies, dispatches, etc., is **tender.**

—, type. A name for a type of ship regularly employed in carrying cargoes of coal is **collier.**

—, —. A passenger or cargo ship plying regularly between certain ports is a **liner.**

—, —. A name given to a type of long cargo steamer built for the carriage of oil or other fluid, usually having the funnel far aft, is **tanker.**

—, —. A type of vessel having a rounded covering to the main deck for navigating rough waters is a **whale-back.**

—. *See also under* **boat, galley,** *and* **navigation,** *above, and* **warship,** *below*; *also names of parts of a ship such as* **deck, hull, keel,** *etc.*

shoal. A name for a shoal in a tideway at the mouth of a river is **swash.**

shot. *See under* **projectile,** *above.*

shrouds. A name for a flat piece of wood or iron fastened edgewise to the side of a sailing ship to spread the lower shrouds and keep them clear of the bulwarks is **channel.**

—. The pieces of thin rope made fast horizontally across the shrouds of a sailing ship and forming ladders for going aloft are **ratlines.**

siege. An old name for a siege, or for the camp of a besieging army, is **leaguer.**

—. The raising of a siege is a **relief.**

—. A name for a sally or outrush by the defenders during a siege is **sortie.**

signal. A name for a signal given formerly by drum or trumpet for a parley with the enemy is **chamade.**

—. A name for a drum signal formerly beaten to warn infantry to be ready to march is **generale** or **general.**

—. An apparatus for sending signals by mirrors which flash the sun's rays is a **heliograph.**

—. The name for the system of flag signals adopted by the principal nations for ships communicating with each other or with the shore, is **International Code.**

signal. A name for a type of fog-signal emitting sounds through large horns pointing in different directions is **megafog.**

—. A name for a system of dots and dashes or long and short signals used for purposes of communication is **Morse code.**

—. The name of an apparatus with movable arms, etc., used for signalling, is **semaphore.**

—. The name of a signal, given by beat of drum or a bugle call, summoning soldiers to their quarters is **tattoo.**

—. A petty officer in the Royal Navy in charge of signals is a **yeoman of signals.**

—, bugle. The first and second bugle calls sounded in camps and barracks as a signal for retirement for the night are the **first post** and **last post.**

sloop. A name for a sloop or cutter with a lug-sail on a small mast aft is **dandy.**

slope. A name for a slope in front of a fortification is **glacis.**

—. The slope of a wall or earth bank in a fortification is a **talus.**

soldier. A name for a soldier serving on a warship and in a dockyard, or employed in a landing party from a warship for fighting on shore, is **marine.**

—. A name for a soldier who attends an officer, and carries messages, etc., is **orderly.**

—, Algerian. The name for an Algerian serving in a native cavalry corps of the French Army is **Spahi.**

—, Australasian. A name popularly given to a soldier of the Australasian forces during the World War was **Anzac.**

—, foot. A name used formerly for a foot-soldier armed with a fusil as distinct from a pikeman or archer, and to-day for a member of certain infantry regiments, is **fusilier.**

—, —. Foot soldiers armed with small arms are **infantry.**

—, French. A name for a soldier serving in the French Foreign Legion is **legionary.**

—, —. A popular name given to the French private soldier is **poilu.**

—, —. A soldier in a French light infantry corps, formerly composed of Algerians and still wearing an Oriental uniform is a **Zouave.**

—, Greek. A type of heavily-armed foot soldier, of which the army of ancient Greece chiefly consisted was the **hoplite.**

—, —. A light-armed soldier of ancient Greece carrying a pelta and a short spear was a **peltast.**

—, hired. A name given to a mercenary or hired soldier of the fifteenth to seventeenth century, especially in France or Germany, is **lansquenet.**

—, —. The name for a soldier who hired out his services to any ruler or state that would employ him is **mercenary.**

—, India. The name given to an irregular native soldier in the Indian Army is **sebundy.**

—, —. The name given to a native soldier in the infantry of the Indian Army is **sepoy.**

—, Irish. The name given anciently to a kind of light-armed Irish soldier was **kern.**

—, irregular. A name for a light infantryman belonging to an irregular corps, especially one who fought with the French Army during the Franco-Prussian War, is **franc-tireur.**

—, Italian. The name for an Italian soldier belonging to a corps of sharpshooters established by Victor Emmanuel in 1850 is **bersagliere.**

—, Japanese. The name for a soldier belonging to the rank and file of the military class in feudal Japan is **samurai.**

—, line. A line of soldiers ranged one behind each other from front to rear is a **file.**

soldier, mediaeval. A name for a soldier belonging to one of the free companies, who after the Crusades wandered about Europe, taking service with the highest bidder, is **free-lance.**

—, mounted. A name for soldiers trained to fight mounted on camels is **camelry.**

—, —. Soldiers trained primarily to fight mounted on horseback are **cavalry.**

—, —. Soldiers mounted on horseback to expedite movements in the field but not primarily intended to make direct cavalry attacks are **mounted infantry.**

—, private. The names given to a soldier of the rank of private in the guards, artillery, rifle regiments, engineers, and cavalry respectively are **guardsman, gunner, rifleman, sapper,** and **trooper.**

—, Turkish. A name for a former class of Turkish irregular volunteer soldier, noted for lawlessness and brutality is **bashi-bazouk.**

—, —. The name formerly given to a soldier in the Turkish Army, especially to a member of the Sultan's bodyguard, abolished in 1826, is **janizary.**

—. *See also* **cavalry, force, officer,** *and* **rank,** *above, and* **troops** *and* **unit,** *below.*

sounding. A small lead attached to a line used for sounding in shallow water is a **hand-lead.**

spar. A ring, strap, or cleat for holding spars or ropes in position is a **becket.**

—. A long spar for keeping the bottom part of a fore-and-aft sail taut is a **boom.**

—. The name of a spar projecting forward and usually slightly upward from a vessel's bow to which the forestays and jib-boom are fastened is **bowsprit.**

—. A spar projecting sideways at each side of the bow or quarter of a ship, on which to haul a tack or brace, or projecting at the stern to extend the mizen sail, is a **bumkin.**

—. A spar connected with the mast and serving to spread the upper end of a fore-and-aft sail not set on stays is a **gaff.**

— A spar reaching downwards from the end of a ship's bowsprit towards the water for extending the rigging of the jib-boom is a **martingale.**

—. A spar which runs obliquely from the mast to the top outer corner of a fore-and-aft sail is a **sprit.**

—. A long spar, almost cylindrical and tapering at each end, slung at the middle horizontally across a mast on a square-rigged ship, and obliquely in a lateen rig, serving to support a sail, is a **yard.**

—, boom. The name for a forked post for supporting the boom of a sailing vessel when the sail is lowered is **crotch.**

—, —. A name for a sliding hoop, rope, or chain holding a boom to a mast is **parrel.**

—. *See also* **bowsprit** *and* **mast,** *above, and* **yard,** *below.*

spear. A name for a long spear for throwing and a short spear for stabbing, used by the Zulus and other African tribes, is **assagai** or **assegai.**

—. Names for a class of fifteenth-century weapon having an axe-head or side projection combined with a spear-head and mounted on a long pole are **bill, glaive, halberd,** and **partisan.**

—. The name of a light kind of spear thrown by the hand is **javelin.**

—. A name for a kind of spear used in mediaeval warfare, for thrusting only, is **pike.**

—. The name for the heavy javelin carried by ancient Roman foot soldiers is **pilum.**

—. *See also under* **weapon,** *below.*

splicing. The name for a tapered piece of hardwood used for separating the strands when splicing rope is **fid.**

—. A tapering iron pin used to separate the strands, etc., in splicing rope is a **marline-spike.**

squadron, Air Force. Each of the divisions of aeroplanes forming a squadron in the Royal Air Force is a **flight.**

—, —. The name of the unit in the Royal Air Force composed of a varying number of squadrons is **wing.**

—, cavalry. Each of the main units into which a cavalry squadron is divided in the British Army is a **troop.**

stage. A name for a stage hung over the side of a ship for the use of painters or caulkers is **flake.**

standard. *See under* **flag,** *above.*

standard-bearer. An old name for a standard-bearer as well as for the ensign or standard he carried was **ancient.**

star. The name given to the Pole star or to another star by which a ship is steered is **lode-star.**

station, military. The name for a permanent military station in India is **cantonment.**

stay. *See under* **mast,** *above.*

steamship. *See under* **ship,** *above, and* **warship,** *below.*

steering-wheel. A cord running from a steering-wheel to a tell-tale, which shows the position of the helm at any moment, is a **spurling-line.**

—. *See also under* **rudder,** *above.*

steps, ship's. The name for a set of steps slung at the gangway of a ship to give access to a boat, etc., alongside is **accommodation ladder.**

stern. A term meaning towards or at the stern of a ship or boat is **aft.**

—. A plank attached to a ship's stern, and bearing her name and port of origin, is an **arch-board.**

—. A name for a hawse-hole in a vessel's stern is **cat-hole.**

—. That part of a ship's stern which overhangs the stern-post and rudder is the **counter.**

—. A name given to the middle of a ship's stern on which her name is painted is **escutcheon.**

—. A name given to each of the timbers in the framework of a wooden vessel's stern, that serve to give shape to the stern, is **fashion-piece.**

—. A name for the stern of a ship, or for a short deck built over the after part of a vessel, is **poop.**

—. The inward slope of the stern of a vessel from the rail or top to the keel is its **rake.**

—. The name for the inner or forward stern-post of a single- or triple-screw steamer is **screw-post.**

—. A name given to a rope for making fast a vessel's stern to a quay, etc., is **stern-fast.**

—. A name for the stern-post, transoms, and timbers at the end of the transom giving the shape to a wooden vessel's stern, and for the corresponding part of an iron vessel, is **stern-frame.**

—. A name for the upright bar in which the lower part of a ship's stern ends, and to which the rudder is attached, is **stern-post.**

—. A name for the upper part of a ship's stern is **tafferel.**

—. A name given to the after part of the poop-rail, or rail running round the stern of a vessel, is **taffrail.**

—. A name for a frame attached to a stern-post and supporting the overhanging stern of a vessel, and also for a timber in a stern-frame, is **transom.**

—, narrow. A term formerly applied to a boat having a long, narrow stern is **pink-sterned.**

stern-post. A name for a pin or bolt serving as a pivot for attaching a rudder to the stern-post of a boat is **pintle.**

stockade. A name for a Sudanese stockade, or enclosure of thorns, etc., used as a means of defence, is **zareba.**

store-room. A name for a store-room for important items, near a vessel's stern, is **lazarette.**

stores. A name for the stores required by an army or fleet is **munitions.**

stripe. The V-shaped stripe worn on the sleeve by non-commissioned officers to denote their rank is a **chevron.**

submarine. The name for the tower-like structure supporting the bridge of a submarine, containing the periscopes, etc., is **conning-tower.**

—. The name for a kind of large bomb, or explosive drum, used during the World War to destroy or disable a submerged submarine, is **depth-charge.**

—. A name for the horizontal rudders and the mechanism controlling them, by which a submarine is made to dive, is **hydroplane gear.**

—. A horizontal rudder projecting from the side of a submarine and used to steer it up or down, is a **hydrovane.**

—. Names for a disguised vessel with concealed guns, used for destroying submarines during the World War, are **mystery-ship** and **Q-ship.**

—. A name for an aeroplane-shaped device with an explosive charge in its nose, towed by a ship and used for destroying enemy submarines in war-time, is **paravane.**

—. The name for the apparatus, consisting of a tube containing mirrors, lenses, etc., projecting above water and enabling observations to be made from a submerged submarine is **periscope.**

—. The name for a projection on each side of a submarine, used as a bearing for the vertical shaft of the lifting or depressing screw, is **sponson.**

—. A name for a German submarine is **U-boat.**

sword. An old name given generally to a sword with a broad blade and obtuse point is **broadsword.**

—. A name for a heavy two-handed double-edged sword, formerly used by the Scottish, sometimes incorrectly applied to an ordinary basket-hilted sword, is **claymore.**

—. A name for a short heavy sword with a wide and sometimes curved blade, used in hand-to-hand naval fighting, is **cutlass.**

—. A name for a broadsword with a slightly curved blade, used in the Middle Ages, is **falchion.**

—. An old name for any broadsword of fine quality, especially one made by an Italian family of armourers named Ferrara in the sixteenth century, is **ferrara.**

—. The name for the straight two-edged sword of the ancient Romans is **gladius.**

—. An old name for a sword and also for a weapon resembling a halberd is **glaive.**

—. A name for a short cut-and-thrust sword, especially a naval cutlass of the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries, is **hanger.**

—. The name for a short sword, broad at the end, used by the Gurkhas, is **kukri.**

—. A name given to a type of sword with a blade tapering to a fine point, used for piercing only, is **rapier.**

—. The name given to a heavy single-edged cavalry sword, usually with a slightly curved point, is **sabre.**

—. The name given to an Oriental sword with a curved blade, having the cutting edge on the convex side, is **scimitar.**

—. The name of a kind of curved sword used by the Sikhs and other Indian peoples is **tulwar.**

—. A name for a Turkish sword with a double curved blade and a handle without a guard is **yataghan.**

table, cabin. A name given to a framework of bars and straps to keep crockery from rolling off a cabin table in rough weather is **fiddle.**

tackle. A light hoisting tackle, especially one kept hooked to the pendant at the topmast head of a sailing ship, is a **burton.**

—. A name for a twisting hitch in the bight of a rope for attaching a tackle is **catspaw.**

tackle. A tackle used to raise an anchor to a horizontal position on the gunwale of a ship is a **fish-tackle.**

—. A name given to a light tackle consisting of a double and a single block, used for various purposes about a ship's decks, is **handy-billy.**

—. A name for a small tackle consisting of a single block and a double block is **jigger.**

—. A name for a tackle used for hoisting heavy weights in or out of a ship's hold, etc., and also for a tackle used in setting up stays, is **stay-tackle.**

—. A name for a ring or closed band of rope, iron, etc., attached to a yard, pulley, or block, etc., as a purchase for tackle, is **strop.**

—. *See also* **block,** *above.*

tank. A name for the wood blocks bolted to the tractor plates of a military tank for travelling over soft ground is **spuds.**

—. The name for the rotating tractor belt on either side of a military tank is **track.**

—. A name given to a light, fast military tank is **whippet.**

target. The name for an embankment of earth behind a target to stop shots that pierce or miss the target is **butt.**

telescope. A name for a short telescope used for observation at sea by night is **night-glass.**

tide. A term used of a vessel that runs aground at the height of a spring tide and has to wait for the following spring tide to refloat her is **neaped.**

—. The low tides which occur in the middle of the moon's second and fourth quarters are **neaps** or **neap tides.**

—. The name for the high tides that occur one or two days after the new and full moon is **springs** or **spring tides.**

tiller. *See under* **helm** *and* **rudder,** *above.*

torpedo. A name for the chamber filled with explosives in the nose of a torpedo is **war-head.**

towing. A name for a hawser used in towing a ship is **warp.**

track. The track of smooth water left behind a moving ship, torpedo, etc., is the **wake.**

training. A young man training for a commission in any one of the fighting services is a **cadet.**

transport. The transport and baggage of a moving army are its **impedimenta.**

—. The transport, supply, and equipment of the British Army is supervised by the **quarter-master-general.**

tree, obstacle. A defence consisting of a screen of felled trees placed side by side with their branches facing the enemy is an **abatis.**

trench. A name for a bomb-proof shelter or dug-out in a trench is **casemate.**

—. Trenches connecting front line and support trenches with the rear of an entrenched position, usually having a zigzag course, are **communication trenches.**

—. A name for a rampart which protects a trench or other fortification from fire at the rear is **parados.**

—. A name for a mound of earth or breastwork of sandbags, etc., protecting the front of a trench is **parapet.**

—. A name given to a projecting point or angle in a line of trenches is **salient.**

—. A name for a deep trench or tunnel driven for purposes of attack, or for mining an enemy position, is **sap.**

—. Trenches to the rear of front-line trenches, providing cover for troops ready to reinforce the front line during an attack, are **support trenches.**

—, floor. A name for the flooring of battens used in the trenches during the World War is **duck-boarding.**

trench, floor. The name for the raised portion of the floor of a trench on which soldiers stand to fire over the parapet or through loopholes at the enemy is **fire-step.**

—, —. The name for the part of the floor of a trench lower than the fire-step, and serving as a means of passage, is **walk-way.**

—, mortar. A name for a German trench-mortar, used for throwing large bombs is **minenwerfer.**

—, —. A name for a British type of trench-mortar used during the World War is **Stokes mortar.**

—, shelter. A name for a bomb-proof shelter in a trench is **dug-out.**

—, tool. A name for a type of jointed tool for digging trenches, having a spade-like blade, with a sharp edge serving as an axe, is **burgoyne.**

—, —. The name for a tool which is a combination of pick and shovel, used for digging trenches, is **entrenching-tool.**

—. *See also under* **fortification,** *above.*

troops. A small body of troops, etc., separated from the main body for special duty is a **detachment,** or **draft.**

—. Each side of a body of troops is a **flank.**

—. According to its size, a body of troops kept constantly on the move, to give assistance wherever needed, or to carry out a special manoeuvre, is a **flying army, flying column, flying squadron,** or **flying party.**

—. The name given to the science of feeding and lodging troops when moving from place to place is **logistics.**

—, movement. A movement which aims at surrounding an enemy by working round his flank is a **flank-movement.**

—, scattered. A collecting and re-forming of scattered troops is a **rally.**

—, withdrawal. A withdrawal of troops from a region or from a strong position is an **evacuation.**

—. *See also under* **force** *and* **regiment,** *above, and* **unit,** *below.*

tunnel. A deep trench or a tunnel driven for purposes of attack is a **sap.**

turret, gun. A name for the large armoured rotating turret with a hood, inside which one or more big guns are mounted on a warship's deck, is **barbette.**

turret-ship. The name of the first turret-ship, which fought the Merrimac in the American Civil War, was **Monitor.**

uniform. The distinctive trimmings on the collars and cuffs of military uniforms are the **facings.**

—. The name for a strip of cloth wound spirally round the leg from the foot to the knee, forming part of many uniforms, is **puttee.**

—, bow. The name of the broad black bow of ribbon with long ends attached at the back of the tunic collar of the Royal Welch Fusiliers is **flash.**

—, cap. The name for the tall furry cap worn by Guards regiments is **bearskin.**

—, —. The name for the fur cap with an upright plume in front and a short bag hanging from the top at the right side, worn by hussar and other regiments, is **busby.**

—, —. The soft low cap of certain infantry undress uniforms is a **forage-cap.**

—, —. A cap, or "bonnet," high in front with ribbons hanging behind, worn as an undress cap by Scottish infantry, is a **glengarry.**

—, —. A name for a light cover for a military cap, having a long flap behind, for protecting the neck, etc., from the sun, is **havelock.**

—, —. A kind of peaked cap with a flat top, worn in the French and other armies, is the **képi.**

—, —. The name of a flat square-crowned Polish cap, from which the characteristic lancer-helmet was derived, is **shapka.**

uniform, cloak. The name for a braided, spindle-shaped button and loop used as a fastening for a military or other cloak is **frog.**

—, cloth. The name of a dust-coloured cloth used for a soldier's service uniform is **khaki.**

—, collar. The name for the distinguishing strips of cloth worn on each side of the collar by various military ranks is **gorget patches.**

—, decoration. A name for a tagged point or braid worn as a shoulder decoration by certain naval and military officers, is **aglet** or **aiguillette.**

—, —. The name for a rosette of leather, etc., or knot of ribbon worn as a decoration on certain naval and military uniforms is **cockade.**

—, feathers. A name for a plume or cluster of feathers, as in a general's cocked hat and a lifeguardsman's helmet, is **panache.**

—, hat. The name of a tall military hat with a sloping back and flat top, usually decorated with a tuft or plume of feathers, and having a peak in front, is **shako.**

—, jacket. A name for the uniform jacket of some Continental hussar regiments, worn like a cape with sleeves hanging loose, is **dolman.**

—, —. A name for a dragoon's jacket with shaggy lining, is **pelisse.**

—, —. The name for the tight-fitting full-dress jacket and for the loose khaki surcoat of military uniform is **tunic.**

—, shoulder-knot. The name for the fringed shoulder-knot of gold lace worn by commissioned officers of the British Navy, and for a similar ornament in the naval and military uniforms of other countries, is **epaulet.**

—, trousers. The name given to the close-fitting tartan trousers worn in Scottish regiments is **trews.**

—, tunic. A name for the distinctively coloured, double-breasted front of a lancer's tunic is **plastron.**

—, Zouave. A name for the sash worn by French Zouaves is **cummerbund.**

—. *See also under* **belt,** *above.*

Union Jack. The correct name of the flag commonly called the Union Jack is **Great Union.**

unit. The second largest unit into which a modern army is divided, consisting of two or three divisions with artillery, engineers, and other auxiliary forces, is the **army corps.**

—. The standard unit of infantry, consisting in the British Army of four companies, is the **battalion.**

—. The military unit next below a division, consisting in the British Army of three batteries of artillery, or three regiments of cavalry, or four battalions of infantry, is the **brigade.**

—. Each of the four units into which a battalion of infantry in the British Army is divided is a **company.**

—. The name of the military unit next below an army corps, and consisting of three brigades together with auxiliary services, is **division.**

—. An infantry brigade to which artillery, engineers, etc., are added for some operation is a **mixed brigade.**

—. Each of the four units into which a company of British infantry is divided is a **platoon.**

—. The name for the largest permanent unit of infantry, consisting in the British army of a varying number of battalions, and for a unit of cavalry consisting of a number of squadrons, is **regiment.**

—. The name for each of the sixteen units into which a company of infantry in the British Army is divided is **section.**

—, artillery. The name for the administrative unit in the artillery corresponding to an infantry company and consisting of a group of four (formerly six) guns is **battery.**

—, cavalry. Each of the main units into which a cavalry regiment is divided is a **squadron.**

unit, cavalry. Each of the lesser units into which a squadron of cavalry is divided is a **troop.**

—, Greek. The name of an ancient Greek division of troops is **taxis.**

—, Roman. The name of a unit of the ancient Roman army, varying from 3,000 to 6,000 men, is **legion.**

—. *See also under* **aeroplane,** *above.*

visor. The lower part of the visor of a helmet is the **beaver.**

wagon. An ammunition wagon is a **caisson.**

—, war. A name for a covered wagon with horses harnessed inside it, formerly used in war to protect troops during an attack, is **pluteus.**

warfare, irregular. An irregular form of land warfare carried on by small bands acting independently of each other is **guerilla** or **guerrilla war.**

warrant, custom-house. A warrant issued by custom-house authorities, enabling goods to be removed from a bonded warehouse without payment of duty for the purpose of provisioning a ship, is a **victualling-bill.**

warrant officer. *See under* **rank,** *above.*

warship. Names of the chief types of warship in a modern navy are **battleship, battle-cruiser, cruiser, light cruiser, aircraft-carrier, destroyer,** and **submarine.**

—. The name for the sharp ram on the prow of an ancient warship is **beak.**

—. Names for an under-water protection against mines, etc., built on some warships, and consisting of an outer air-chamber and an inner chamber containing water, are **blister** and **bulge.**

—. A name given to a warship detailed to destroy enemy merchant shipping on the high seas is **commerce-destroyer.**

—. A name for an armoured chamber raised well above the deck of a modern warship, from which the steering and firing are controlled during action, is **conning-tower.**

—. A name for warships used to protect supply-ships, etc., and for the vessels so protected, is **convoys.**

—. A name for a former type of full-rigged, flush-decked, wooden warship, generally with only one tier of guns, ranking next below a frigate, is **corvette.**

—. A name for an armoured platform in the mast of a warship, from which the firing of the guns is directed, is **fire-control tower.**

—. A warship carrying the flag of an admiral or other flag-officer is a **flagship.**

—. A name for an old type of full-rigged, wooden warship, with a raised quarter-deck and forecastle, carrying from twenty-four to fifty guns, is **frigate.**

—. A name for a Venetian warship in use in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries, with a square stern and two masts, was **frigatoon.**

—. A name for an armour plate on a battleship which causes shells to glance off at an angle is **glacis.**

—. A name for a depot ship in the Royal Navy, for men whose vessels are out of commission, is **guardship.**

—. The largest kind of boat carried by a warship is the **launch.**

—. A name for a type of low-built iron-clad gun-boat with one or more heavy guns, capable of working in shallow water, is **monitor.**

—. The name formerly used to describe a ship owned and fitted out as a vessel of war by private persons, with formal permission of a government, was **privateer.**

—. The name given to a warship with a steel beak for destroying vessels, or to the beak of such a vessel, is **ram.**

—. A name given to a wooden warship with her hull lowered by the removal of the upper deck or decks was **razee.**

warship. The name for a curved projection from a warship's side for training a heavy gun forward or aft is **sponson.**

—. *See also under* **gun** *and* **submarine,** *above.*

watch, ship's. The name for each of the two short watches, lasting two hours, on board a ship between 4 and 6, and 6 and 8 p.m., is **dog-watch.**

weapon. A name for a place where naval and military weapons and ammunition are made and stored is **arsenal.**

—. A name for a kind of halberd with a sharp point and a hook is **bill.**

—. A name for a weapon consisting of a spiked ball or club swinging from a handle, used in mediaeval warfare, is **flail.**

—. A name for a kind of halberd with a broad heavy blade mounted on a long pole is **glaive.**

—. A general name for a class of old weapon having the features of both a battle-axe and a spear, much used in the fifteenth century, is **halberd.**

—. A name for a kind of halberd resembling a pike, with small side projections at the foot of the blade, is **partisan.**

—. The name of a kind of halberd formerly carried by British Army officers is **spontoon.**

—, American Indian. The name given to a kind of hatchet used as a weapon by the North American Indians is **tomahawk.**

—, Australian. The name of a short curved missile which can be made to return to the thrower, used in war and hunting by the Australian natives, is **boomerang.**

—, —. A name for a heavy hardwood club used as as weapon by Australian aborigines, is **nulla-nulla.**

—, —. A name for a kind of war-club used by the Australian aborigines is **waddy.**

—, Dyak. The name for the long blow-pipe used as a weapon for shooting arrows by the Dyaks of Borneo is **sumpitan.**

—, Gurkha. The name of the broad-bladed knife or sword of the Gurkhas is **kukri.**

—, javelin. The name of a kind of wooden javelin with a blunt tip used in sham fights by Eastern horsemen is **jereed.**

—, —. The name for the heavy javelin carried by ancient Roman foot soldiers is **pilum.**

—, Malay. A name for a Malay weapon taking the form of a dagger with a straight or wavy edge to the blade is **kris.**

—, modern. A name given to an apparatus used in the World War for squirting flaming liquids at enemy forces is **flame-projector.**

—, Sikh. The name of a kind of curved sabre used by the Sikhs and other Indians is **tulwar.**

—. *See also under names of specific weapons.*

wedge. A name for a heavy wedge of wood used to keep a ship's boats in position is **boat-chock.**

winch. A sailor's name for a portable hand winch used for moving cargo in sailing vessels is **dolly winch.**

wind. A sailor's word used of the wind when it shifts round in a direction opposite to that of the sun's course is **backing.**

—. A vessel that turns suddenly into the wind, owing to faulty steering, etc., after running before it, is said to **broach to.**

—. A name given to a strip of bunting mounted at a masthead to show the direction from which the wind is blowing is **dog vane.**

—. Those parts of the ocean near the equator where baffling winds and calms prevail are the **doldrums.**

—. A name for a wind blowing more or less from astern is a **fair wind.**

—. In rifle shooting a wind blowing down range and shifting continually to right and left is a **fish-tail wind.**

—. A sailor's name given to a favourable wind that is more than six points of the compass from blowing directly astern, is **free wind.**

wind. A sailor's word used of the wind when it shifts round in the same direction as the sun's course is **hauling.**

—. A wind blowing in the opposite direction to a ship's course is a **head wind.**

—. The sheltered side of a vessel, opposite to that against which the wind blows, is the **lee.**

—. To bring a ship's head closer to the wind is to **luff.**

—. That side of a vessel against which the wind blows is the **weather-board** or **windward side.**

—. *See also under section* Geography.

wood. A stack of waste wood, six feet square in section, sold at dockyards, is **fathom-wood.**

wreck. The proceeds of wrecks, enemy ships, etc., which are sold and the money paid into public funds, are **droits of Admiralty.**

—. A name for an officer appointed by the Board of Trade to take charge of a wrecked vessel is **wreck-master.**

yacht. That part of a yacht which is not decked over and serves as a means of entering the cabin is the **well.**

yard. The name given to either part of a ship's yard from the middle to the end is **arm** or **yard-arm.**

—. The name for a flat iron ring at the end of a yard to receive the spar extending a studding-sail is **boom-iron.**

—. The ropes fastened to the yard-arms from the deck of a sailing ship and used to swing the yard and hold it in place are **braces.**

—. Names for the middle of a yard to which the rigging is attached are **bunt** and **sling.**

—. To swing the head yards and the after yards of a ship in opposite directions, by means of their braces, when heaving to, is to **counter-brace.**

yard. A name for a cleat at the end of a ship's yard-arm to guide a rope when reefing is **coxcomb.**

—. The yards of a square-rigged ship are named after the sails they carry, with the exception of the lower yard of the mizen mast, which is the **cross-jack yard.**

—. The name for a rope hung under a yard-arm or boom for sailors to stand on while reefing or furling a sail is **foot-rope.**

—. A rope or purchase for hoisting a yard, sail, or flag is a **halyard or halliard.**

—. The name of an iron or wooden rod running along the top of a yard and serving as an attachment for a square sail is **jack-stay.**

—. A name for wires running from a masthead to the ends of yards to reduce the weight of them is **lifts.**

—. The sliding hoop, rope, or chain by which a ship's yard is attached to a mast is a **parrel.**

—. The name for a rope or chain by which a lower yard is suspended is **sling.**

—. The name for a rope with an eye at the end hanging from a yard and carrying a foot-rope, is **stirrup.**

—. A name for a ring or closed band of rope, iron, etc., attached to a yard, block, etc., as a purchase for tackle, is **strop.**

—. A spar attached to the end of a yard to carry a studding sail is a **studding-sail boom.**

—. The name given to the tackle by means of which the tilting or topping of a yard is performed is **topping lift.**

—. *See also under* **sail,** *above.*

yawl. The small mast at the stern of a yawl is a **jigger-mast.**

Yeoman of the Guard. Names given to each of the four junior officers, ranking as corporals, of the Yeomen of the Guard are **exempt** and **exon.**

Zulu. A body of armed Zulu warriors is an **impi.**

ART

(See also ARCHITECTURE, DRAMA, MUSIC)

art-lover. A lover or admirer of the fine arts who has no claim to special knowledge is a **dilettante.**

carving. A carving, sculpture, or moulded design in which the figure or ornament is cut or embossed in low relief is an **anaglyph.**

—. A carving, engraved gem, etc., in which the design is sunk into the surface is an **intaglio.**

—, altar. A carving on the front of a shelf or step beneath an altar-piece is a **predella.**

—, circular. A name given to a carving or moulded design filling a circular space is **tondo.**

—, foliage. A name given to carved foliage is **branched work.**

—, relief. A piece of relief carving on a stone or shell having differently coloured layers, so treated that the design is carved in one layer and the background in a layer of another colour, is a **cameo.**

—, three-panelled. The name given to a carving on three panels side by side, sometimes hinged together so that the side ones fold over the central panel, is **triptych.**

—. *See also under* **relief, sculpture,** *and* **statue,** *below.*

cloisonné. A name given to Japanese cloisonné enamel work is **shippo.**

colour. A name for any dry colouring matter that is mixed with a liquid vehicle to form paint is **pigment.**

—. *See also under* **decoration** *and* **painting,** *below.*

crayon. *See under* **drawing,** *below.*

decoration. Decoration in which the pattern is characterized by the interlacing of lines or foliage is **arabesque.**

—. Highly coloured decoration in the elaborate style introduced by the Moors is **Moresque.**

—, animal. A term applied to the introduction of animal forms into decorative art, as in that of ancient Egypt, is **zoomorphism.**

decoration. Chinese. The name of a symbolical bird, resembling a large pheasant with brilliant plumage, much used in Chinese decoration as a symbol of the majesty of the emperor, is **fum.**

—, colour. A term applied to articles decorated or painted in shades of one colour only is **monochrome.**

—, —. A term applied to articles decorated or painted in many colours is **polychrome.**

—, fantastic. Decoration marked by the fantastic interweaving of the shapes of animals, plants, and human beings is **grotesque.**

—, floral. A name given to various conventionalized leaf decoration is **anthemium.**

—, florid. The term used to denote a florid style of decoration prevalent in the late seventeenth and the eighteenth centuries is **rococo.**

—, manuscript. An ornamental flourish round a capital letter of a manuscript is a **vignette.**

—, vase. The name given to the decoration of vases with pigments, as practised by the ancient Greeks, is **vase-painting.**

—, wall. A name for the decoration or embellishment of walls with carvings or paintings is **mural decoration.**

—. *See also under* **metal-work, ornament, painting, picture,** *below.*

distance. The art of indicating the relative distances of objects by gradations of tone and colour is **aerial perspective.**

—. The art of conveying an impression of distance or depth by means of converging or diverging lines is **linear perspective.**

drawing. A drawing executed by the hand alone, unaided by instruments, is **free-hand.**

—. Names for the art of representing solid objects on a plane surface are **perspective** and **stereography.**

drawing, crayon. A substance used to set colours or to prevent blurring of lines in crayon drawings is a **fixative** or **fixer.**

—, dotted. A term used for drawing, engraving, or painting in dots instead of lines is **stippling.**

—, map. A name for the short lines used in hill shading on a map or plan is **hachures.**

—, mechanical. The name given to a method of mechanical drawing which shows objects in solid form but not in true perspective is **isometric projection.**

—, reproduction. The division of a drawing into squares for the purpose of reproduction on a larger or smaller scale is **graticulation.**

—, shading. A name for shading in a drawing or engraving produced by straight or wavy parallel lines crossed by similar lines is **cross-hatching.**

—. *See also under* **engraving, perspective, picture,** *below.*

emotion. Works of art giving prominence or expression to the emotions of their creator, and not merely serving as a representation of external realities, are **subjective.**

enamel. The name of a kind of enamel work in which strips of flat wire are used to outline the pattern, the spaces being filled in with enamel, is **cloisonné.**

—, Japanese. A name given to Japanese cloisonné enamel work is **shippo.**

—, painting. A name for a small piece of coloured foil or metal attached to a picture in enamel painting is **paillette.**

engraving. The name given to a method of engraving on a polished metal plate into which the design is bitten with acid, and to a print taken from this, is **etching.**

—. A name for the corrosive fluid used in etching and allied forms of engraving is **mordant.**

—. A term used in engraving to denote the stage a plate had reached when a print was made from it is **state.**

—. A method of engraving on a metal plate in which the design is produced by means of a succession of small dots instead of lines is **stipple engraving.**

—, copper. The name given to a method of engraving on a copper plate covered with resin, the design being bitten in by acid, and also to a print taken from this, is **aquatint.**

—, —. A name for a print taken from a bare copper plate on which a design has been engraved with a fine needle without the use of acid is **dry-point.**

—, —. A process of engraving on a roughened copper plate by smoothing it to produce light parts, and the name for a print taken from this, is **mezzotint.**

—, Dürer. A name for certain early German engravers working in the style of Dürer but producing small prints is **Little Masters.**

—, tool. Names given to a pointed tool used by engravers on copper are **burin** and **graver.**

—, wax. The art of engraving on wax is **cerography.**

—, wood. Names for a kind of engraving produced on paper from a design cut in a block of wood are **wood-cut** and **wood-block.**

—. *See also under* **drawing,** *above; and section* Business, Commerce, and Industry.

Greece. The term used to describe the art produced by Greeks or under direct Greek influence between the period of Alexander and the end of the ancient world is **Hellenistic.**

inlay. The name for a type of inlay work consisting of veneers of tortoise-shell and chased brass, introduced by André Boule, is **buhl marquetry.**

—. A name for inlaid work with woods of various colours and sometimes metals and other materials is **marquetry.**

Italy. A name given to a style of art of the sixteenth century in Italy in which there was a return to classical forms is **cinquecento.**

—. A name given to the fifteenth century regarded as a period in Italian art is **quattrocento.**

—. The name given to the fourteenth century as characterized by Italian art of that period is **trecento.**

knowledge. Knowledge of the fine arts, as well as cultivated taste for rare and beautiful things, is **virtu.**

landscape. A name for a picture of a country landscape is **paysage.**

master. An Italian name given to a master in any art is **maestro.**

masterpiece. A French name used of a work of art of surpassing excellence is **chef-d'oeuvre.**

metal-work. The name for a Japanese method of working differently coloured metals into a smooth variegated surface is **mokum.**

—. A name for a black alloy for filling the engraved lines in silver, etc., and for the art of decorating metal thus, is **niello.**

—. The name given to a method of decorating metal articles in which the surface is raised into relief by hammering from the under or reverse side is **repoussé work.**

—. The art of ornamenting surfaces especially metal surfaces, in low relief is **toreutics.**

mosaic. The name for each of the small hard blocks of material used in mosaic is **tessera.**

—, wood. The name of a kind of mosaic woodwork produced in Italy in the Middle Ages is **tarsia.**

niello. The name of an alloy of silver, copper, and lead used in niello work is **Tula-metal.**

ornament, small. A name for a number of small ornaments or curios is **bric-à-brac.**

—, surface. Ornamental work laid on a surface of some other material is **appliqué.**

—, —. The art of ornamenting surfaces, especially metal surfaces, in relief is **toreutics.**

—. *See also under* **decoration,** *above.*

paint. *See under* **painting,** *below.*

painter. The great painters of the thirteenth to the eighteenth centuries, and also their paintings, are **Old Masters.**

—, lesser. A name sometimes given to a lesser painter is **petit-maître.**

painting. The art of conveying the impression of solidity and distance in a painting is **perspective.**

—, ancient. A name for a method of painting in wax and fixing the colours by heating, much used by the ancients, is **encaustic.**

—, background. A term used in painting of a background that is uniform in colour or treatment is **flat.**

—, colour. A colour that has thickness and consistency, as distinct from a wash or tint, is a **body colour.**

—, —. A name given to a tone of colour intermediate between two strong tones or shades is **demi-tint.**

—, —. The chief colours—usually regarded as red, yellow, and blue—from which all other colours can be obtained by mixing the pigments are **primary colours.**

—, —. Colours which can be produced by mixing two of the primary colours are **secondary colours.**

—, —. The degree of luminosity of a colour is its **tone.**

—, colour-mixing. The name for a tablet of wood or porcelain, etc., on which an artist mixes his colours is **palette.**

—, —. The name used for a liquid with which artists reduce their pigments to a proper working state is **vehicle.**

—, flesh. A term denoting a life-like quality of flesh-painting in art is **morbidezza.**

painting, implement. A name for the light stick with a pad on one end, which an artist rests against the canvas when painting as a support for his brush hand, is **mahlstick** or **maulstick.**

—, —. A name for a trowel-shaped implement used by painters to mix colours is **spatula.**

—, light and shade. The treatment of light and shade in painting is **chiaroscuro.**

—, —. The general effect of light and shade or of the colours in a painting is the **tone.**

—, —. The relation of one part of a picture to the rest in respect of light and shade is **value.**

—, medium. A preparation of plaster used as a medium in painting is **gesso.**

—, method. A method of painting with opaque colours ground in water and made into a paste with gum and honey is **gouache.**

—, —. A name for a method of painting in shades of grey to show objects in relief is **grisaille.**

—, —. Painting done with pigments mixed with water-glass is **stereochromy.**

—, —. The name of a method of painting in colours mixed with a gummy substance to prevent them from flaking off is **tempera.**

—, oil-colour. The name given to a mixture of linseed oil and mastic varnish used as a vehicle for oil-colours is **magilp.**

—, pigment. A name for a brown pigment extracted from wood soot is **bistre.**

—, —. An intense yellow pigment made from cadmium sulphide is **cadmium-yellow.**

—, —. A pigment consisting of English white lead in the form of flakes is **flake-white.**

—, —. A bright yellow pigment obtained from the gum-resin of an Asiatic tree is **gamboge.**

—, —. A black pigment made of calcined ivory, used by artists, is **ivory-black.**

—, —. A reddish pigment obtained from trees of the genus *Rubia,* or made synthetically, used as the basis for artists' colours, is **madder.**

—, —. The name of various earthy substances, consisting of clay and oxides of iron, used as pigments, varying in colour from light yellow to brown, is **ochre.**

—, —. The name of a dark brown pigment obtained from the cuttle is **sepia.**

—, —. The name of a brownish-yellow earthy clay coloured with iron and manganese, used as a pigment, is **sienna.**

—, —. A blue pigment originally made from lapis lazuli is **ultramarine.**

—, —. The name given to a dark brownish-yellow earthy pigment containing oxides of iron and manganese is **umber.**

—, —. The name of a bluish-green pigment used by artists is **viridian.**

—, —. An impure oxide of cobalt, which is used in making the pigment cobalt blue, is **zaffre.**

—, relief. In painting, the application of a thick layer of paint to a picture to give relief or the effect of solidity is **impasto.**

—, school. A term used of a school of painting in which the traditions of ancient art are followed, as opposed to romanticism and naturalism, is **classical.**

—, —. A modern school of painting in which solidity and depth are obtained by emphasizing geometrical forms latent in objects is the **cubist.**

—, —. A modern school of painting marked by a definite departure from traditional methods, and claiming that its symbolic method of representation will be adopted as the technique of the future, is the **futurist.**

—, —. A modern school of painting in which the spirit of the subjects painted was presented rather than their exact details is the **impressionist.**

—, —. The modern school of painting which aims at recording the emotional effect of things rather than their shape is the **post-impressionist.**

painting, school. The name given to a school of painters, formed in England in 1848, which aimed at capturing the spirit that inspired art before the time of Raphael is **Pre-Raphaelites.**

—, —. A term used of a school of painters belonging to the earliest period of the Renaissance is **primitive.**

—, —. A name for a school of painters who aim at representing things as they are without any attempt at idealization is **realists.**

—, —. A name for the school of painters who claimed to represent events and scenes in an imaginative manner without regard to classical restraint is **Romantics.**

—, varnish. A varnish used by oil-painters, made from the resin of a Mediterranean shrub, is **mastic varnish.**

—. *See also under* **decoration** *and* **drawing,** *above*; *and* **picture,** *below.*

perspective. That kind of perspective by which the relative distances of objects are represented by gradations of tone is **aerial perspective.**

—. The representation in drawing or painting of the apparent shortening of parts of objects in accordance with the laws of perspective is **foreshortening.**

—. In perspective, the level from the foreground to the horizon is the **ground-plane.**

—. That kind of perspective by which an impression of distance or depth is conveyed by means of converging or diverging lines is **linear perspective.**

—. In perspective, the point at which all parallel lines in the same plane seem to meet is the **vanishing point.**

picture. A name for the brightest or lightest parts in a picture is **high lights.**

—. A name for a picture in shades of one colour only is **monochrome.**

—. A name for a blending point of light and shade in a picture is **penumbra.**

—. A name given to the part of a picture illuminated by reflected light or colour from other parts is **reflex.**

—. The harmonious interrelation of the parts of a picture is **rhythm.**

—, altar. A name given to a picture over an altar is **altar-piece.**

—, —. A picture on the front of a shelf or step beneath an altar-piece is a **predella.**

—, circular. A name given to a circular easel-painting is **tondo.**

—, death. The name of a mediaeval picture of a figure of Death leading a group of young and old in a dance to the grave is **danse macabre.**

—, exhibition. The day before the opening of an exhibition of pictures, when artists are allowed to varnish or retouch their work, is **varnishing-day.**

—, flower. A name for a picture of flowers is **flower-piece.**

—, fruit. A name for a picture of fruit is **fruit-piece.**

—, glazing. The glazing of a picture by rubbing on a thin coating of colour with the hand, as practised by early Italian painters, is **velatura.**

—, humorous. A name for a picture, generally of a humorous nature, having reference to some social or political event of the day, is **cartoon.**

—, moonlight. A name for a picture of a scene by moonlight, or other night scene, is **nocturne.**

—, panelled. The name given to a set of three pictures side by side, often on panels hinged together, so that the side ones fold over the central panel, is **triptych.**

—, part. The part of the view in a picture that is behind the figures or objects of chief interest is the **background.**

picture, part. The part of the view in a picture that is nearest the spectator is the **foreground.**

—, —. A name for the central part of a picture, that is, between the foreground and the far distance, is **middle distance.**

—, sacred. A name for a radiance, often oval in shape, surrounding the whole figure of Christ, or of a sanctified being, in sacred pictures, is **aureola** or **aureole.**

—, —. Names for a luminous disk symbolizing glory round the head of Christ or of a saint in sacred pictures are **gloriole, halo,** and **nimbus.**

—, —. A name for a picture of the newly-born Christ is **nativity.**

—, —. A name for a painting representing the appearance of the risen Christ to Mary Magdalene is **noli-me-tangere.**

—, —. A name given to a picture of Christ's sufferings in the Garden of Gethsemane and on the cross is **Passion.**

—, —. A name for a painting representing the Virgin Mary mourning over the dead Christ is **pieta.**

—, —. The union in one composite figure of the attributes of the four evangelists is a **terramorph.**

—, sea. A name for a painting of a view of the sea is **seascape.**

—, type. A picture in which a scene from everyday life is portrayed is a **genre-painting.**

—, —. A picture of inanimate things, such as fruit, flowers, vases, dead game, etc., is a **still life.**

—, wall. A picture done in colour on a surface of fresh plaster is a **fresco.**

—, water-colour. A name for a picture executed in Chinese ink with thin washes of water-colours is **aquarelle.**

—. *See also* **drawing, landscape,** *and* **painting,** *above; and* **portrait, triptych,** *and* **water-colour,** *below.*

pigment. *See under* **painting,** *above.*

porcelain. A name for a variety of porcelain, generally ornamented with rock-work and shell designs, made at Plymouth in the eighteenth century, is **Plymouth china.**

—, Chinese. A name for a kind of blue and white Chinese porcelain is **Ming.**

—, —. A name for a mixture of feldspar and kaolin used by the Chinese in making porcelain is **petuntse.**

—, —. A name for a kind of highly glazed willow-green porcelain of China, made between the tenth and twelfth centuries, is **Sung.**

—, colour. Colours suitable for applying to porcelain before the piece is glazed are **underglaze colours.**

—, glaze. A name for the purplish-pink glaze of certain Oriental porcelain is **peach-blow.**

—, Japanese. A name for a cream-coloured Japanese porcelain is **Satsuma.**

—, Persian. A semi-transparent, white porcelain made by the Persians is **Gombroon.**

—, unglazed. A kind of unglazed porcelain used for statuettes is **bisque.**

portrait. A name given to a portrait of less than half-length which includes the hands is **kit-cat.**

—, small. A very small portrait painted on cardboard, vellum, or ivory is a **miniature.**

pottery. Pottery decorated by a photographic process is **photoceramic.**

—. A kind of chocolate-coloured or blue and white pottery made at Swinton, near Sheffield, in the late eighteenth and early nineteenth centuries is **Rockingham ware.**

—. The name of a fine hard reddish-brown pottery used for statuettes and ornaments is **terracotta.**

—, Dutch. A white pottery decorated in blue with a tin-enamel glaze, first made by the Dutch in the sixteenth century, is **delf** or **delft.**

pottery, enamelled. A variety of Italian pottery coated with opaque white enamel or with coloured enamel is **majolica.**

—, glazed. The name for any kind of glazed pottery, and also for a variety of majolica, is **faience.**

—, jasper. A name for a variety of jasper pottery having a blue-green ground and white raised cameo-like designs is **Wedgwood.**

—, majolica. The name given to a plate of majolica ware with a flat wide decorated brim is **tondo.**

—, red-and-black. A kind of red-and-black pottery made formerly in the isle of Samos and later imitated by the Romans is **Samian ware.**

—, Staffordshire. A name given by collectors to old salt-glazed Staffordshire pottery is **crouch-ware.**

—, tool. A name for a flat tool used for shaping pottery is **pallet.**

—, Wedgwood. A variety of Wedgwood pottery made of a mixture of different coloured clays and somewhat resembling marble is **pebble-ware.**

—. *See also under* **porcelain,** *above; and section* Business, Commerce and Industry.

projection. The projection of a figure above the plane or curved surface on which it is formed, or an appearance simulating this projection, is **relief.**

reality. Works of art which merely represent things as they are without giving expression to the feelings and opinions of the creator are **objective.**

relief. A piece of sculpture or carving in which the more important parts of the design stand far out from the background is an **alto-relievo** or **high relief.**

—. Carving and sculpture in which the subjects project only a little from the background is in **bas-relief.**

—. A piece of sculpture or carving in which a flat surface is hollowed-out so that the figures appear in relief on a sunken ground is a **cavo-relievo** or **hollow relief.**

— Names for a sculpture or carving in which the figures project a moderate distance from the background, ranking between a high and a low relief, are **demi-relief** and **mezzo-relievo.**

—. The application of thick oil-colour to parts of a picture to give an effect of relief is **impasto.**

—. The art of carving or embossing surfaces in relief is **toreutics.**

representation. The art or theory of representing objects occupying different planes so that they appear to the eye to have their true shape, position, and dimensions, is **perspective.**

revival. A name given to the revival of art and letters under the influence of classical models in western Europe between the fourteenth and sixteenth centuries is **Renaissance.**

sculpture, basket-carrier. A name for a sculptured figure of a basket-carrier is **canephorus.**

—, Greek. A name for the sculptures from the Parthenon brought to London by the seventh Lord Elgin and acquired for the British Museum in 1816 is **Elgin marbles.**

—, —. The name given to a famous collection of sculptures found on the site of the Greek city of Xanthus is **Xanthian marbles.**

—, head. A name for a sculptured head and bust ending in a plain stone pillar is **terminal figure.**

—, marble. The fine white and partly translucent marble quarried at Paros, in the Greek Archipelago, and used by ancient and modern sculptors is **Parian marble.**

—, table. A name for a revolving table at which a sculptor works is **banker.**

—, wax. The art of making wax models is **ceroplastics.**

sculpture. *See also under* **carving** *and* **relief,** *above*; *and* **statue,** *below.*

statue. A term used of statues that are bigger than life is **heroic.**

—, trunk. The name given to the trunk of a statue, especially one lacking head and limbs, is **torso.**

—, wooden. A name for an early type of statue, having a wooden body with head, feet, and arms of marble, is **acrolith.**

—, —. A term applied to ancient statues of wood overlaid with ivory and gold to represent flesh and drapery is **chryselephantine.**

—. *See also under* **sculpture,** *above.*

statuette. A name for a statuette, especially one of terra-cotta or ivory, is **figurine.**

—. The name of a fine hard reddish-brown pottery used for statuettes and ornaments is **terra-cotta.**

technical ability. A name for a person having special technical ability in any of the arts is **virtuoso.**

triptych. A name for either of the wings or side panels of a triptych is **volet.**

water-colour. A name for a painting executed in Chinese ink with thin washes of water-colour is **aquarelle.**

wood, design. The art and process of making designs on wood and other substances with a heated point is **pyrography, pyrogravure,** or **poker-work.**

work of art. The name for a curious or rare work of art is **curio.**

—, small. A name for a small article of artistic beauty or rarity is **bibelot.**

ASTRONOMY

allowance. The name given to the allowance made for the time taken by light in travelling to the earth from any heavenly body is **equation of light.**

almanac. A name for an almanac or chart showing the daily change in the position of the planets is **ephemeris.**

angle. The name of the angle between the meridian and a vertical plane passing through a heavenly body is **azimuth.**

—. A name for the angle between straight lines extending from two different points of observation to a heavenly body is **parallactic angle.**

angular distance. The name given to angular distance on the horizon from the east or west point is **amplitude.**

—. The angular distance of a planet from its last perihelion or perigee is **anomaly.**

—. The angular distance of a heavenly body from the north or south point of the horizon is the **azimuth.**

—. The angular distance of a planet north or south of the celestial equator is its **declination.**

—. The distance of a planet from the sun as measured by angles is its **elongation.**

—. The name given to an instrument for measuring the angular distance between two stars is **heliometer.**

—. Angular distance east or west of the meridian is **hour-angle.**

—. The angular distance of a star or other heavenly body from the sun's ecliptic is **latitude.**

—. Angular distance measured east or west of a point on the ecliptic is **longitude.**

—, —. The angular distance between a star and the zenith is the **zenith-distance.**

arc. The arc that a heavenly body appears to traverse from the time it rises to the time it sets is a **diurnal arc.**

Archer. A name for the constellation forming the ninth sign of the Zodiac, usually depicted as a centaur drawing a bow, is **Sagittarius.**

asteroid. *See under* **planet,** minor, *below.*

azimuth. A dial with its rod or gnomon at right angles to the plane of the horizon, showing the azimuth of the sun, is an **azimuth-dial.**

Balance. A name for the constellation forming the seventh sign of the Zodiac, depicted as a balance or pair of scales, is **Libra.**

belt. A name given to any one of the belts or zones encircling a planet is **fascia.**

—. Names given to a luminous belt or band stretching across the night sky, composed of countless stars, are **Milky Way** and **Galaxy.**

—. The name for a belt of the sky about eight degrees each side of the ecliptic, divided into twelve parts or signs, each of which in ancient times contained one of the twelve constellations bearing a corresponding name, is **Zodiac.**

Bull. The name of a constellation depicted as a bull, which forms the second sign of the Zodiac, is **Taurus.**

chart, planet. A name for a chart or almanac showing the daily change in the position of the planets is **ephemeris.**

—, star. A name for a plane, chart, or diagram of the positions of the stars as they appear in the heavens is **planisphere.**

circle. A circle or parallel of altitude—that is, a line drawn through all stars at the same height above the horizon—is an **almacantar.**

—. The part of a circle which the sun or other body seems to traverse from the time it rises to the time it sets is the **arc.**

—. Names for a circle passing through the zenith and cutting the horizon at right angles are **azimuth-circle** and **vertical circle.**

—. The name given to the great circle midway between the celestial poles, dividing the heavens into two celestial hemispheres, is **celestial equator.**

—. The name of each of the two great circles cutting the ecliptic at the equinoctial and solstitial points is **colure.**

—. The great circle on which is measured the angular distance of a star or planet north or south of the celestial equator is the **declination-circle.**

—. The name given to a small circle—whose centre moves along the circumference of a larger circle—in which, according to the Ptolemaic system, each of the planets was thought to revolve, is **Epicycle.**

—. Any meridian or great circle passing through the celestial poles is an **hour circle.**

—. The name given to a great circle drawn through the celestial poles and the zenith of any place on the earth is **meridian.**

—. The name given to the points at which two great circles of the celestial sphere intersect each other is **nodes.**

—. The great circle of the heavens which passes through the east and west points of the horizon and the zenith is the **prime vertical.**

—. The great circle on the celestial sphere, midway between the zenith and the nadir, of which the earth is the centre, is the **true horizon** or **astronomical horizon.**

comet. The hazy outer part of the head of a comet is the **coma.**

—. Anything relating to a comet is **cometary** or **cometic.**

—. The name of the branch of astronomy dealing with comets is **cometology**

—. A name for the bright condensed part in the head of a comet is **nucleus.**

—. The orbit in which a comet travels round the sun is **parabolic.**

—. A name given to the luminous train or slender end of a comet is **tail.**

—. The curved path taken through space by a comet is its **trajectory.**

constellation. The name given to the chief star in a constellation is **Alpha,** followed by the genitive of the constellation.

—. The name given to the second star in a constellation is **Beta,** followed by the genitive of the constellation.

—, northern. Names of the principal northern constellations, omitting those of the Zodiac (*for which see below*), are **Andromeda, Auriga** or **Charioteer, Boötes, Cassiopeia, Corona Borealis, Cygnus, Draco, Hercules, Lyra, Ophiuchus, Pegasus, Perseus, Sagitta, Serpens, Triangulum, Ursa Major** or **Great Bear,** and **Ursa Minor** or **Little Bear.**

—, —. The name of the brightest star in the constellation Boötes and the fourth brightest star in the heavens is **Arcturus.**

—, —. A name given to the star Polaris in the Little Bear constellation is **pole-star.**

—, southern. Names of the principal southern constellations are **Ara, Argo, Canis Major** or **Great Dog, Canis Minor** or **Lesser Dog, Centaurus, Cetus, Corona Australis, Corvus, Crater, Eridanus, Hydra, Lepus, Lupus,** and **Piscis Australis.**

—, —. The name of the chief star of the constellation Canis Major, is **dog-star** (Sirius).

—, —. The name of one of the bright stars in the constellation Canis Minor is **lesser dog-star** (Procyon).

—, —. A cross-shaped constellation clearly seen in the Southern Hemisphere is the **Southern Cross.**

—, Zodiacal. The name of a brilliant red star in the constellation Taurus is **Aldebaran.**

—, —. The name of a group of stars forming the twelfth constellation and eleventh sign of the Zodiac, usually represented by a man pouring water from a vase or urn, is **Aquarius** (the Water-carrier).

—, —. The group of stars forming the second constellation and first sign of the Zodiac is **Aries** (the Ram).

—, —. The name of the fifth constellation and fourth sign of the Zodiac is **Cancer** (the Crab).

—, —. The eleventh constellation and tenth sign of the Zodiac is **Capricorn** (the Goat).

—, —. The name given to the fourth constellation and third sign of the Zodiac, containing the two almost equally bright stars, Castor and Pollux, is **Gemini** (the Twins).

—, —. The name of a star-cluster in the head of the constellation Taurus is the **Hyades.**

—, —. The name of the star-group forming the sixth constellation and fifth sign of the Zodiac is **Leo** (the Lion).

—, —. The eighth constellation and seventh sign of the Zodiac is **Libra** (the Balance).

—, —. The name of the group of stars forming the first constellation and twelfth sign of the Zodiac is **Pisces** (the Fishes).

—, —. The name of the group of stars on the shoulder of the constellation Taurus is **Pleiades.**

—, —. The name of one of the stars in the constellation Leo is **Regulus.**

—, —. The name of the tenth constellation and ninth sign of the Zodiac, usually represented as a centaur drawing a bow, is **Sagittarius** (the Archer).

—, —. The name of the ninth constellation and eighth sign of the Zodiac is **Scorpio** (the Scorpion).

—, —. The name of the third constellation and second sign of the Zodiac is **Taurus** (the Bull).

—, —. The name of the seventh constellation and sixth sign of the Zodiac is **Virgo** (the Virgin).

Crab. The name of the constellation depicted as a crab, forming the fourth sign of the Zodiac, is **Cancer.**

cycle. Another name for a lunar cycle is **Metonic cycle.**

—. *See also under* **moon** *and* **sun,** *below.*

day. The moment when the sun crosses the equator and day and night are equal is the **equinox.**

—. The time elapsing between two successive occasions at which the first point in the constellation Aries begins to cross the meridian is a **sidereal day.**

—. A period of twenty-four hours measured from noon to noon is a **solar** or **astronomical day.**

deviation. The motion of a planet away from its fixed path is its **excursion.**

—. A name for a deviation in the motion of a heavenly body caused by the attraction of a body other than that around which it moves is **perturbation.**

distance, angular. *See under* **angular distance,** *above.*

dog-star. Another name for the dog-star is **Sirius.**

—, lesser. Another name for the lesser dog-star is **Procyon.**

earth, centre. The motion of another planet as viewed from or in relation to the centre of the earth is **geocentric.**

—, representation. The name of an instrument used for showing the relative position of the earth and the fixed stars is **cosmosphere.**

—, rotation. A name given to the rotation of the earth on its axis, which takes twenty-four hours to perform, is **diurnal motion.**

—, shadow. The darkest part of the shadow cast by the earth or moon is the **umbra.**

—, wavering. The name given to the slight wavering movement of the earth's axis, caused by the greater or lesser influences of the sun at certain periods, and a cause of the apparent movements of the stars, is **nutation.**

—. *See also under* **system,** *below.*

eclipse. The name given to an eclipse of the sun in which the complete shadow cast by the moon is not large enough to cover the disk is **annular.**

—. The name given to the end of an eclipse or of a transit is **egress.**

—. The eclipsing of a heavenly body by an apparently larger one is **occultation.**

—. The partly shaded fringe seen during an eclipse round the shadow of an opaque body intercepting the light of a luminous one is a **penumbra.**

envelope. The name given to the envelope of glowing gas surrounding the sun is **chromosphere.**

—. The luminous envelope surrounding the sun or a star is a **photosphere.**

equinox. The name given to the earlier occurrence of the equinox in each star year is **precession of the equinoxes.**

fire-ball. A name for a large meteor which falls as a fire-ball is **bolide.**

Fishes. The name of the constellation forming the twelfth sign of the Zodiac, depicted as two fishes, is **Pisces.**

gas, nebular. A name for an unknown gas assumed from spectrum analysis to be present in certain nebulae is **nebulium.**

Goat. The name of the constellation forming the tenth sign of the Zodiac, depicted as a goat, is **Capricorn.**

Great Bear. The seven chief stars of the Great Bear are the **Triones.**

—. Other names for the Great Bear are **Ursa Major,** the **Dipper,** and **Charles's Wain.**

heavenly body. The name of a luminous heavenly body, with a head and tail, that moves round the sun or travels from and towards it in parabolic motion is **comet.**

—. A name for a luminous cloudy patch of gaseous matter in the heavens is **nebula.**

—. A large heavenly body travelling round the sun in an approximately circular orbit is a **planet.**

heavenly body. A heavenly body appearing as a fixed point and shining with its own light is **a star.**

—, darkening. The name given to the darkening of a heavenly body by its entering into the shadow of another, and also to the total or partial disappearance of the sun when the moon passes between it and the observer, is **eclipse.**

—, deviation. A name for a deviation in the motion of a heavenly body caused by the attraction of a body other than that around which it moves is **perturbation.**

—, —. The deviation of a heavenly body from its mean course is **variation.**

—, displacement. A name for the apparent displacement of a heavenly body's true position, due to the effect of the motion of light and the rotation of the earth about the sun, is **aberration.**

—, entrance. The name given to the apparent entrance of a smaller heavenly body upon the disk of a larger one is **ingress.**

—, face. The face of a heavenly body, which looks round and flat to the observer, is the **disk.**

—, line. The imaginary line about which a heavenly body revolves is its **axis.**

—, —. A line drawn from the centre of a heavenly body to another body revolving round it is a **radius vector.**

—, motion. The daily rotation of a heavenly body on its axis is **diurnal motion.**

—, observation. The name for a building or room used for observing movements, etc., of heavenly bodies is **observatory.**

—, passage. The apparent passage of a heavenly body across a meridian is a **transit.**

—, path. The name for the path described by a heavenly body is **orbit.**

—, position. In astrology, the situation of a heavenly body with respect to another is its **aspect.**

—, —. Two heavenly bodies, when lines from them to the observer are ninety degrees apart, are in **quadrature.**

—, union. The name given to the apparent union of two heavenly bodies is **conjunction.**

heavens. An astrological observation of the sky and the relative position of the planets at any moment is a **horoscope.**

—, part. The name given by astrologers to the point of the ecliptic or degree of the Zodiac that is rising above the eastern horizon, especially at the birth of a child, is **ascendant.**

—, —. The name given to any one of the twelve parts into which astrologers divide the heavens is **house.**

—, point. The name for the point in the heavens directly beneath an observer's feet is **nadir.**

—, —. Another name for the zenith, or the point in the heavens directly above the observer, is **vertex.**

—, —. The point in the heavens exactly above an observer at any given place is the **zenith.**

instrument. The name of an instrument for determining the time of the rising and setting of a star and its latitude is **almacantar.**

—. The name of a telescope for finding the exact position of a star is **altazimuth.**

—. The name of an instrument for measuring the angle between a level line and a line running to the sun, moon, or some high point is **altimeter.**

—. The name of an astronomical instrument formerly used for calculating the times of the solstices and equinoxes is **armilla.**

—. The name of an old astronomical instrument, consisting of a skeleton celestial globe representing the equator, the sun's apparent path, etc., is **armillary sphere.**

—. The name for an instrument formerly used for taking the altitude of the stars or other heavenly bodies is **astrolabe.**

instrument. The name given to an instrument for measuring the brightness of stars is **astrophotometer.**

—. A dial which has its rod or gnomon at right angles to the plane of the horizon, showing the azimuth of the sun, is an **azimuth-dial.**

—. The name of an instrument used for showing the relative position of the earth and the fixed stars is **cosmosphere.**

—. An instrument used by astronomers to discover the exact moment when a star crosses the meridian is a **dipleidoscope.**

—. The name of a vertical pillar from whose shadow the sun's altitude can be found is **gnomon.**

— The name of a kind of instrument for measuring the angular distance between two stars is **heliometer.**

—. The name of a kind of instrument for viewing the sun is **helioscope.**

—. The name of an instrument for reflecting the sun's rays in a fixed direction is **heliostat.**

—. A name for an instrument used for measuring the exact position of a star is **micrometer.**

—. A name for a mechanical device used to demonstrate the motions of the planets and other bodies of the solar system is **orrery.**

—. A name for a combined telescope and camera used for photographing the stars, etc., is **phototelescope.**

—. A name for a device for demonstrating the movements of the planets, etc., is **planetarium.**

—. The name of an instrument for photographing the solar prominences is **spectroheliograph.**

—. Names of an instrument for observing the passage of a heavenly body across a meridian are **transit-circle** and **transit-instrument.**

—. The name of an instrument for measuring the zenith-distance of a star is **zenith-sector.**

—, pointer. A name for the index or pointer of an astrolabe or other instrument showing the degrees cut off on a graduated arc is **alidad.**

—. *See also under* **telescope,** *below.*

light. A name for a circle of light round the moon is **burr.**

—. The name given to the ring of light sometimes seen round the moon, and round the sun at the moment of total eclipse, is **corona.**

—. A circle of light round the sun or moon due to refraction of light through mist is a **halo.**

—. The name of a cone of faint light, sometimes seen at sunrise or sunset, especially in the tropics, is **zodiacal light.**

line. The imaginary line about which a heavenly body revolves is its **axis.**

—. A line drawn from the centre of a heavenly body to another body revolving round it is a **radius vector.**

Lion. A name for the constellation forming the fifth sign of the Zodiac, depicted as a lion, is **Leo.**

map. A name for a plan, map, or diagram of the positions of the stars as they appear in the heavens is **planisphere.**

Mars. A description of the physical features of the planet Mars is **areography.**

—. The science which deals with the substance and structure of the planet Mars is **areology.**

—. A name for the markings on the planet Mars, believed by some to be waterways, is **canals.**

Mercury. A name given to an elongated appearance of the planet seen during the transits of Mercury and Venus is **black drop.**

meridian. The name of the angle between the meridian and a vertical plane passing through a heavenly body is **azimuth.**

—. Any meridian or great circle passing through the celestial poles is an **hour circle.**

—. The apparent passage of a heavenly body across a meridian is a **transit.**

meteor. Other names for a meteor are **bolide, falling star, fire-ball,** and **shooting star.**

meteor. The name of a great swarm of meteors travelling round the earth in an ecliptic orbit and appearing to come from the direction of Leo is **Leonids.**

—. The name given to meteors or shooting stars which in April are seen coming apparently from the constellation Lyra is **Lyrids.**

—. A body of the same nature as a meteor, but passing through outer space, is a **meteoroid.**

—. The name of a swarm of meteors seen at about the middle of August, which appear to come from near a star in Perseus is **Perseids.**

—. A point in the sky from which meteors belonging to the same group appear to come is a **radiant.**

meteorite. Other names for a meteorite, or fallen shooting star, are **aerolite** and **aerolith.**

Milky Way. Another name for the Milky Way is **Galaxy.**

moon. That point in the path of the moon or any of the planets which is most distant from the earth is the **apogee.**

—. Names for a circle of light round the moon are **burr** and **halo.**

—. When the moon is setting it is **cadent.**

—. A name given to the ring of light sometimes seen round the moon is **corona.**

—. The name given to the moon in its first or last quarter is **crescent.**

—. A name given to each of the horns of the crescent moon is **cusp.**

—. That phase of the moon when it appears bisected or only half illuminated is **dichotomy.**

—. The name for an inequality that occurs now and again in the movements of the moon, due to the action of the sun, is **evection.**

—. The moon when shaped like a sickle, as in the first and fourth quarters, is **falcate.**

—. The full moon nearest to September 23rd is the **harvest moon.**

—. The name given to the apparent tilting to and fro on its axis of the moon is **libration.**

—. Anything relating to, influenced or caused by, or like the moon is **lunar.**

—. A name for a cycle of the moon occupying nineteen years is **lunar cycle.**

—. The time elapsing between two returns of the moon is a **lunation.**

—. Anything relating to or formed from the revolutions of both moon and sun is **lunisolar.**

—. The different aspects of the moon, according to the illuminated area of its surface in the course of a lunar month, are its **phases.**

—. A seven-day period of the moon, or one of its four phases corresponding to one of the four periods, is a **quarter.**

—. The name given by astronomers to any of the deep furrows on the moon which indicate the presence of valleys is **rille.**

—. A name given to that part of astronomy which deals with the moon is **selenology.**

—. Names for the time from new moon to new moon are **synodic month** and **synodic period.**

—. When the moon is in line with the sun and the earth, either in conjunction or opposition, it is in **syzygy.**

—. The darkest part of the shadow cast by the earth or moon is the **umbra.**

nebula. Names for the theory that solar and stellar systems existed at one time in the form of nebulae are **nebular hypothesis** and **nebular theory.**

night. The moment when the sun crosses the equator and night and day are equal is the **equinox.**

observatory. The officer in charge of the National Observatory at Greenwich is the **Astronomer Royal.**

—. Names for the rounded roof of an observatory which can be rotated so that the telescope can command a view of any part of the heavens are **cupola** and **dome.**

orbit. The name of that point in the orbit or path of a planet or comet most distant from the sun is **aphelion.**

—. That point in the orbit of the moon or any of the planets most distant from the earth is the **apogee.**

—. A name for the point where a planet's orbit intersects that of the sun is **node.**

—. The point in the orbit of the moon or of a planet where it is nearest to the earth as opposed to the apogee, is the **perigee.**

—. That point in the orbit of a planet or a comet where it is nearest to the sun is the **perihelion.**

path. The name for the path described by a heavenly body is **orbit.**

plane. A plane passing through the zenith at right angles to the horizon is a **vertical plane.**

planet. The point at which a planet is at its greatest or least distance from the sun or from the earth is the **apsis.**

—. The name given to each of the horns or points of a crescent planet is **cusp.**

—. The planet on which we live is the **Earth.**

—. A name given to any one of the belts or zones encircling a planet is **fascia.**

—. A name given to a planet between the earth and the sun is **inferior planet.**

—. The title given by astrologers to the planet whose sign occupies the upper portion of of the ascendant is **lord of the ascendant.**

—. The planet fourth in order of distance from the sun is **Mars.**

—. The planet nearest the sun is **Mercury.**

—. The name of the planet farthest from the sun is **Neptune.**

—. A name for a machine used to demonstrate the motions of the planets and other bodies of the solar system is **orrery.**

—. A planet which does not revolve round another is a **primary.**

—. A term used to denote the apparent backward motion of a planet is **regress.**

—. Names for the motion of a planet when in relation to the fixed stars it appears to be backward are **retrogradation** and **retrogression.**

—. The second largest of the sun's planets is **Saturn.**

—. A planet which revolves round a primary planet is a **secondary.**

—. A name given to a planet farther from the sun than the earth is **superior planet.**

—. A name for either the conjunction or the opposition of a planet with the sun is **syzygy.**

—. The seventh farthest planet from the sun, lying between Saturn and Neptune, is **Uranus.**

—. The name of the second planet from the sun is **Venus.**

—, almanac. A name for an almanac or chart showing the daily change in the position of the planets is **ephemeris.**

—, deviation. The deviation of a planet or other heavenly body from its course caused by another body moving near it is **variation.**

—, largest. The largest planet in the solar system is **Jupiter.**

—, minor. Names for any of the minor or very small planets situated in the solar system between Mars and Jupiter are **asteroid** and **planetoid.**

—, —. The name of the largest asteroid or minor planet and the first to be discovered (1801) is **Ceres**; of the second (1802), **Pallas**; of the third (1804), **Juno**; and of the fourth and brightest (1807), **Vesta.**

—, small. Names given by astronomers to each of the very small planets situated in the solar system between Mars and Jupiter are **minor planet, asteroid,** and **planetoid.**

—, —. A small planet revolving round a larger one is a **satellite.**

—, transit. A name given to an elongated appearance of the planets seen during the transits of Venus and Mercury is **black drop.**

pole-star. The name given to the pole-star is **Polaris.**

position. In astrology, the position of a heavenly body with respect to another is its **aspect.**

—. A name for the apparent change of position of a star or other heavenly body when viewed from two different points of observation is **parallax.**

Ram. The name of a constellation depicted as a ram, forming the first sign of the Zodiac, is **Aries.**

Saturn. The name given to the rings that surround the planet Saturn is **ansae.**

Scales. *See under* **Balance,** *above.*

Scorpion. A name for the constellation forming the eighth sign of the Zodiac, depicted as a scorpion, is **Scorpio.**

shadow. The partly-shaded fringe round the shadow of an opaque heavenly body intercepting the light of a luminous body is a **penumbra.**

—. The darkest part of the shadow cast by the earth or moon is the **umbra.**

ship. A name given to the pole-star or another star by which a ship is steered is **lode-star.**

sky, glow. A name for a luminous glow in the sky when the sun is below the horizon is **gegenschein.**

—. *See also under* **heavens,** *above.*

solar system. Names for the theory that solar and stellar systems existed at one time in the form of nebulae are **nebular hypothesis** and **nebular theory.**

sphere. Each of the two points where a projection of the earth's axis would pierce the celestial sphere is a **pole.**

—, outermost. In ancient astronomy, the name given to a supposed outermost sphere of the universe was **primum mobile.**

spot, sun. A bright spot or streak on the sun's disk is a **facula.**

star. The name given to the chief star in a constellation is **Alpha,** followed by the genitive of the constellation.

— The degree of elevation of a heavenly body above the horizon is its **altitude.**

—. The name given to the second star in a constellation is **Beta,** followed by the genitive of the constellation.

— Names given to two stars revolving round a common centre or round each other are **binary stars** and **binary system.**

— A name given to two stars situated so near together as to look like one, except through a powerful telescope, is **double-star.**

—. The name given to stars which seem to keep their relative positions towards each other is **fixed stars.**

— Anything relating to, of the nature of, or shaped like, a star is **stellar.**

—, altitude. The name of an instrument used by mediaeval astrologers for taking the altitude of the stars and other heavenly bodies is **astrolabe.**

—, belt. Names given to a luminous belt or band stretching across the night sky, composed of countless stars, are **Milky Way** and **Galaxy.**

—, brightest. The brightest star in the heavens is the dog-star **Sirius.**

—, chart. A name for a plan, chart, or diagram of the positions of the stars as they appear in the heavens is **planisphere.**

—, cluster. A name for a remote star cluster is **nebula.**

—, concealment. The concealment of a star by an apparently larger heavenly body passing in front of it is **occultation.**

—, dark. The name given to stars which do not shine, to meteorites, and to other dark heavenly bodies is **dark bodies.**

—, distance. The angular distance of a star north or south of the celestial equator is its **declination.**

star, distance. The angular distance between a star and the zenith is the **zenith-distance.**

—, —. The name of an instrument for measuring the zenith-distance of a star is **zenith-sector.**

— envelope. The luminous envelope surrounding a star is its **photosphere.**

—, evening. A name for the **evening star** is **Hesperus.**

—, falling. *See under* **meteor,** *above.*

—. group. The name for a number of fixed stars grouped within an imaginary outline is **constellation.**

—, mass. The name given to two masses of stars and nebulae near the south celestial pole, resembling the Milky Way, is **Magellanic Clouds.**

—, morning. A name for the **morning star**—the planet Venus—is **Lucifer.**

—, motion. The name given to the common proper motion of a number of fixed stars in the same region of the sky is **star-drift.**

—, movement. The seeming movement of a star in a direction opposite to its actual course is **antecedence.**

—, photography. A name for a combined telescope and camera used for photographing the stars, etc., is **phototelescope.**

—. position. The position of a star on the meridian is **culmination.**

—, —. The vertical angular distance of a star's position below the horizon is its **depression.**

—, —. A name for the apparent change of position of a star or other heavenly body when viewed from two different points of observation is **parallax.**

—, rising. A star that is rising towards the zenith, even if it has not yet appeared over the horizon, is **ascendant.**

—, shooting. A shooting star, or solid body from outer space becoming incandescent through friction with the earth's atmosphere, is a **meteor.**

—, —. Names for a meteor or shooting star that has reached the earth are **meteorite** or **meterolite,** and **aerolite** or **aerolith.**

—. —. A body moving through outer space and having the same nature as those entering the earth's atmosphere and becoming visible as shooting stars is a **meteoroid.**

—, transit. An instrument used to discover the exact moment a star crosses the meridian is a **dipleidoscope.**

—. *See also under* **constellation,** *above.*

stellar system. The theory that the stellar system at one time existed in the form of a nebula or gaseous mass is the **nebular hypothesis.**

sun. The name given to a body that revolves round the sun or that is situated near the sun is **circumsolar.**

—. The name given to each of the points or horns of the sun when partly eclipsed is **cusp.**

— An old astrological term for a traditional failure of the sun's light without the sun being eclipsed is **deliquium.**

—. Anything near or connected with the sun is **heliacal.**

— A planetary system having the sun as its centre is **heliocentric.**

—. The science of the sun's energy and action is **heliology.**

—. Anything relating to or formed from the revolutions of both sun and moon is **luni-solar.**

—. Anything relating to, determined by, or coming from the sun is **solar.**

—. The passage of a heavenly body across the sun's disk is a **transit.**

—, altitude. A vertical pillar from whose shadow the sun's altitude can be determined is a **gnomon.**

—, cycle. The name given to the cycle of the sun, occupying 28 years, is **solar cycle.**

sun, eclipse. An eclipse of the sun is a **solar eclipse.**

—, envelope. The name given to the envelope of glowing gas surrounding the sun is **chromosphere.**

—, —. The luminous envelope surrounding the sun and radiating light and heat is its **photosphere.**

—, flame. The name given to the great flames which issue from the sun is **solar prominences.**

—, halo. A ring of light seen round the sun at the moment of total eclipse is a **corona.**

—, heat. A number expressing the amount of sun-heat falling on a square centimetre of the earth's surface per minute is a **solar constant.**

—, path. The apparent path of the sun in the heavens is the **ecliptic.**

—, spot. The name for a tiny spot on the sun's disk much brighter than the surrounding surface is **facula.**

—, —. The name for one of the dark spots sometimes observed on the sun's surface that change in size and shape and last for varying periods is **sunspot.**

—, stage. The time when the sun is at its greatest distance from the equator and appears to stand still before moving back is the **solstice.**

—. *See also under* **instrument,** *above.*

sunspot. The name given to the central dark spot of a sunspot is **nucleus.**

—. A name for the lighter outer fringe of a sunspot is **penumbra.**

—. The dark central portion of a sunspot is the **umbra.**

system. The name given to the modern astronomical theory that the earth and the other planets revolve round the sun as centre is **Copernican system.**

—. The name given to a small circle—whose centre moves along the circumference of a larger circle—in which, according to the Ptolemaic system, each of the planets was thought to revolve, is **epicycle.**

—. A name for the old theory that the world was the centre of the universe is **geocentric system.**

—. A planetary system having the sun as its centre is **heliocentric.**

—. Names for the theory that solar and stellar systems existed at one time in the form of nebulae are **nebular hypothesis** and **nebular theory.**

—. The name given to the geocentric theory invented by Ptolemy, in which the earth was regarded as the centre of the universe, is **Ptolemaic system.**

telescope. A name for the act of adjusting the line of sight of a telescope, etc., or of bringing the axes of two telescopes into line is **collimation.**

—. A name for a filament of spider's web, used to mark lines across telescopes, etc., is **spide-r line.**

—, kind. Names for a kind of telescope for viewing a large part of the sky, by which a comet can be studied as a whole, are **comet-finder** and **comet-seeker.**

—, —. A name for a combined telescope and camera used for photographing the stars, etc., is **phototelescope.**

—, —. A telescope in which a reflected image seen in a mirror is viewed through the eyepiece is a **reflecting telescope.**

—, —. The name given to the ordinary telescope, in which a direct image of the distant object is formed by lenses which refract the light rays, is **refracting telescope.**

time. A name for the difference between sundial-time and clock-time is **equation of time.**

—. Time measured by the stars is **sidereal.**

—. Time determined by observing the sun is **solar time.**

transit. The name given to the end of a transit or of an eclipse is **egress.**

Twins. A name for the constellation forming the third sign of the Zodiac, containing the two almost equally bright stars, Castor and Pollux, is **Gemini.**

universe *See under* **system,** *above.*

Venus. A name given to an elongated appearance of the planet seen during the transits of Venus and Mercury is **black drop.**

Virgin. A name for the constellation forming the sixth sign of the Zodiac, depicted as a virgin, is **Virgo.**

Water-carrier. A name for the constellation forming the eleventh sign of the Zodiac, depicted as a man pouring water from a vase, is **Aquarius.**

year. The time taken by the earth in describing one complete revolution round the sun is a **sidereal year.**

—. The time elapsing between two successive passages of the sun through the same equinox, or two reappearances on the same tropic, is a **solar year** or **tropical year.**

Zodiac. The signs of the Zodiac are **Aries** (Ram), **Taurus** (Bull), **Gemini** (Twins), **Cancer** (Crab), **Leo** (Lion), **Virgo** (Virgin), **Libra** (Balance), **Scorpio** (Scorpion), **Sagittarius** (Archer), **Capricorn** (Goat), **Aquarius** (Water-carrier), and **Pisces** (Fishes).

—. *See also under* **constellation,** *above.*

zone. *See under* **belt,** *above.*

AVIATION

(See also ARMY NAVY, AIR FORCE, AND NAUTICAL)

aerofoil. The angle between the axis of a propeller and the chord line of an aerofoil is the **angle of incidence.**

—. The relation between the length of an aerofoil and its breadth is the **aspect ratio.**

aeroplane, American. The name of a type of aeroplane and flying-boat used by the U.S.A. during the World War is **Curtiss.**

—, British. Names of smaller types of British biplanes used in the World War are **Airco, Avro, Bristol, B.A.T., Martinsyde, Nieuport, Short,** and **Sopwith.**

—, —. Names of larger types of British biplanes used during the World War are **Handley Page, De Haviland,** and **Vickers-Vimy.**

—, —. The name of a small, light type of aeroplane is **Moth.**

—, —. A type of flying-boat used in the World War, and named after its inventor, was the **Porte.**

—, —. The name of a British triplane used during the World War is **Sopwith.**

aeroplane, direction of nose. An instrument for showing if the nose of an aeroplane is pointed in an upward or downward direction is an **inclinometer.**

—, French. Names of types of aeroplanes used by the French during the World War are **Blerlot, Breguet, Caudron, Farman, Morane, Nieuport, Spad,** and **Voisin.**

—, German. The name of an early type of German aeroplane used during the World War is **Albatros.**

—, —. The name of a type of German military monoplane for use over water, employed during the World War, is **Brandenburg.**

—, —. The name of a fast type of biplane and triplane used by the Germans during the World War, invented by a Dutch aviator, is **Fokker.**

—, —. Names of types of large bombing biplanes used by the Germans during the World War are **Friedrichshafen** and **Gotha.**

aeroplane, German. The name of a type of military monoplane and biplane used by Germany in the World War, and constructed of metal, is **Junker.**

—, —. The name of an obsolete type of German monoplane used in the early part of the World War is **Taube.**

—, Italian. The name of a type of Italian aeroplane used during the World War is **Ansaldo.**

—, —. The name given to a large type of biplane and triplane, having three engines, used by the Italians during the World War is **Caproni.**

—, launching. The name given to an apparatus for launching an aeroplane from the deck of a ship, etc., is **catapult.**

—, passenger. The name given to a large passenger aeroplane is **air liner.**

—, pilot. The owner of an aeroplane who pilots the machine himself is an **owner-pilot.**

—, type. A name sometimes given to a type of light aeroplane which the owner-pilot may use for travelling from place to place is **aerocar.**

—, —. An aeroplane with two planes or tiers of wings, one above the other, is a **biplane.**

—. —. A name for an aeroplane with a boat-shaped body, able to start from, alight, or travel on water, is **flying-boat.**

—, —. The name of an early type of experimental aeroplane having no engine is **glider.**

—. —. The name of a kind of aeroplane having a horizontal air-screw revolving on a vertical shaft, designed to lift and support the machine in the air, is **helicopter.**

—, —. A name for a type of aeroplane with only one supporting plane is **monoplane.**

—, —. A name for a type of monoplane in which the wings are above the pilot's head is **parasol monoplane.**

—, —. A name given to an aeroplane drive by a propeller or propellers at the rear is **pusher.**

— —. A type of aeroplane for use over water, equipped with floats or furnished with a boat-shaped body, is a **seaplane.**

—. —. An aeroplane having its air-screw or air-screws in front, arranged to pull it through the air, is a **tractor-plane.**

—. —. The name given to an aeroplane having three sets of fixed planes in tiers is **triplane.**

—, —. *See also* **flying machine,** *below.*

air, low-pressure area. The name given to an area of low pressure in the air, in which an aeroplane does not find support and drops suddenly, is **air-pocket.**

—, route. A path or route in the air, along which aircraft fly at fixed times from one place to another with passengers and mails, is an **airway.**

aircraft. The science and art of navigating aircraft is **aeronautics.**

—. The name given to a battleship carrying aircraft, — and having a flat, open deck from which aeroplanes can take-off, is **aircraft carrier.**

—, buoyant. A machine, such as a balloon or airship, lifted by the buoyancy of gas in its envelope is an **aerostat.**

—, non-buoyant. Another name for an aeroplane or heavier-than-air flying machine is **aerodyne.**

—. shape. A name for the shape given to the body, planes, etc., of an aircraft, so that they offer the least resistance to air currents is **stream-line.**

air-current. The name given in the science of aerodynamics to the direction or course taken by air-currents as they impinge upon a moving body is **streamline.**

airship. The name given to each of the small balloons inside the envelope of an airship for supporting purposes is **ballonet.**

—. The name given to a type of small non-rigid airship used during the World War for scouting, etc., is **blimp.**

airship. A boat-like cabin suspended from an airship is a **gondola.**

—. The name given to the framework beneath an airship, which carries motors, crew, etc., is **nacelle.**

—. An airship with a collapsible envelope, depending entirely upon the pressure of gas inside to keep it in shape, is **non-rigid.**

—. A name for a German type of non-rigid airship used early in the World War and abandoned for the Zeppelin type is **Parseval.**

—. The name of a large type of rigid German airship used during the World War is **Zeppelin.**

atmosphere. The name of a kind of instrument which indicates the density of the atmosphere is **barograph.**

balance. The name given to a movable hinder edge of a plane, and to a movable wing-tip, used for steering and to maintain lateral balance, is **aileron.**

balloon. The name given to each of several small balloons inside the envelope of an airship, which contain the gas, is **ballonet.**

—. A name for the basket of a spherical balloon is **car.**

—. The name given to a balloon or airship able to direct its course is **dirigible.**

—. The name given to the arrangement of planes at the tail of a dirigible balloon, designed to afford stability, is **empennage.**

—. The name given to a type of observation balloon used for military purposes is **kite-balloon.**

—. A name for an early type of balloon, filled with hot air, is **Montgolfier.**

—. A name for the basket suspended below a balloon, and for a framework carrying the power unit, etc., of a dirigible, is **nacelle.**

—. The name given to a sausage-shaped bag on the envelope of a balloon, to keep it steady in a wind, is **stabilizer.**

biplane. *See under* **aeroplane,** *above.*

body. A name for the framework of an aeroplane body is **fuselage.**

brace. The wires which hold the front wings of an aeroplane in the position which gives them the proper tilt towards their front edges form the **incidence bracing.**

cockpit. A name for the cockpit of an aeroplane is **nacelle.**

control lever. A name given to the control lever of an aeroplane is **joy-stick.**

course. The name given to a course for racing or display by aircraft, and to a landing-ground furnished with hangars, etc., is **aerodrome.**

descent. A sudden forward and downward plunge of an aeroplane is a **nose-dive.**

—. An umbrella-like device for checking the descent of a body falling from a height through the air is a **parachute.**

—. A descent made by an aeroplane at a steeper angle than the natural gliding angle is a **vol piqué.**

—. A steep, gliding descent made by an aeroplane with the engine stopped is a **volplane.**

deviation. The name given to the tendency of an air-screw to make the aeroplane deviate from the direction of the air-screw's rotation is **air-screw torque.**

flight, vertical. The name given to a type of aeroplane designed to rise and descend vertically is **helicopter.**

flying-boat. *See under* **aeroplane,** *above.*

flying-machine. A type of flying-machine designed to lift itself into the air by air-screws on vertical shafts is a **gyropter.**

—. A name for a flying-machine designed to support and propel itself by movements of wings, like a bird, is **ornithopter.**

guide post. A name given to a tapering four-sided structure used as a guide post in an aerodrome is **pylon.**

height. An instrument which shows the height at which an aeroplane is flying is an **altimeter.**

—. The maximum height to which an aeroplane is able to climb is its **ceiling.**

— The greatest height which an aeroplane or an airship can reach under ordinary conditions of load and atmosphere is its **limiting height.**

—. The name given to a barometric instrument used on aircraft to show changes of height, especially in flying tests, is **statoscope.**

helmet. The name given to a special kind of helmet worn by airmen to protect the head in the event of a crash is **crash-helmet.**

impetus, loss. To cause an aeroplane to lose forward impetus to such an extent that the machine is unable to sustain itself is to **stall.**

landing. That part of the structure of an aeroplane on which it rests when leaving the ground or landing is the **chassis** or **undercarriage.**

—. A hasty landing made by an aeroplane, because of engine trouble or other emergency, is a **forced landing.**

—. A name for a landing, usually accidental, made when an aeroplane drops vertically after losing way is **pancake landing.**

landing-place. The name given to a landing-place for aeroplanes, with hangars, etc., is **aerodrome.**

lifting surface. A complete set of lifting surfaces on an aeroplane, comprising a wing at each side of the machine, is a **plane.**

—. A lifting surface at one side of an aeroplane, forming the half of a plane, is a **wing.**

manoeuvre. The name given to an aerial manoeuvre in which an aeroplane flies in a vertical loop-like path is **looping the loop.**

monoplane. *See under* **aeroplane,** *above.*

plane. The foremost edge of an aeroplane wing is the **leading edge.**

—. The hindmost edge of an aeroplane wing is the **trailing edge.**

—, arching. The name given to the arching in the centre portion of an aeroplane wing or plane is **camber.**

plunge. A sudden forward plunge of an aeroplane towards the earth is a **nose-dive.**

propeller. A name given to the propeller or the tractor screw of an aeroplane is **air-screw.**

resistance. A name for the resistance offered to the flight of an aeroplane by the air is **drift.**

— A covering placed on the spars of an aeroplane, serving to diminish resistance to the air, is a **fairing.**

—. The total resistance which an aeroplane or airship opposes to being driven horizontally through the air is its **head-resistance.**

rise and fall. The name given to a hinged horizontal plane at front or rear which causes an aeroplane to ascend or descend is **elevator.**

screw. A name given to an aeroplane propeller or tractor screw is **air-screw.**

seaplane. A name for a seaplane is **supermarine.**

—. *See also under* **aeroplane,** *above.*

shape. The name given to the shape of an aircraft, so designed as to offer little resistance to the air, is **streamline.**

shed. A shed or other structure for housing aircraft is a **hangar.**

spar. A covering on the spars of an aeroplane, serving to decrease resistance to the air, is a **fairing.**

—. A name given to any principal spar of an aeroplane is **longeron.**

—. An aeroplane spar which takes a thrust is a **strut.**

speed. The lowest speed at which an aeroplane is under full control is its **flying speed.**

—. The highest speed at which an aeroplane can land with safety is its **landing speed.**

—. The forward speed at which an aeroplane ceases to sustain itself in the air is its **stalling speed.**

stability. The name given to an arrangement of planes at the tail of a dirigible balloon, designed to afford stability, is **empennage.**

steering. The name given to a movable hinder edge of a plane, and to a movable wing-tip, used in steering and to maintain lateral balance, is **aileron.**

surface, supporting. A name for a supporting surface of an aeroplane is **aerofoil.**

tilting. The tilting inwards of an aeroplane at a high angle when executing a turn is **banking.**

tractor. A name given to the tractor screw or the propeller of an aeroplane is **air-screw.**

trick-flying. A name given to trick-flying is **aerobatics.**

triplane. *See under* **aeroplane,** *above.*

turn. The tilting inwards of an aeroplane at a high angle when making a turn is **banking.**

—. To turn an aeroplane suddenly upward at a sharp angle in order to avoid an obstacle or evade pursuit is to **zoom.**

undercarriage. Another name for the undercarriage on which an aeroplane rests when landing is **chassis.**

varnish. A name given to a varnish applied to the fabric of aeroplane wings is **dope.**

vertical flight. The name given to a type of flying-machine employing air-screws revolving on vertical shafts is **helicopter.**

wing. The name given to the arching in the centre portion of an aeroplane wing or plane is **camber.**

—. The narrowest dimension of an aeroplane wing, in its line of flight, is its **chord.**

—. A pair of wings, one on each side of an aeroplane, is a **plane.**

—. The longest dimension of an aeroplane wing is its **span.**

wing-tip. The name given to a movable wing-tip, and a movable hinder edge on a plane, used in steering and to maintain lateral balance, is **aileron.**

BOTANY

acorn. A tree bearing acorns or other nut-like fruits is **glandiferous.**

agave. The name of a Mexican variety of agave is **istle.**

air. A plant whose roots grow in the air is an **aerophyte.**

— space. Spaces in the tissue of a plant which are filled with air and are often connected by stomata are **intercellular spaces.**

algae. The name given to algae and fungi found in association and living together in symbiosis is **lichens.**

aloe. The name given to the intoxicant distilled by the Mexicans from the fermented sap of the American aloe is **mescal.**

ant. Plants which exude a sugary secretion on their leaves for the purpose of attracting ants, etc., are **myrmecophilous.**

anther. An anther of which the lobe is entirely attached to the stalk is **adnate.**

—. The opening in the mature anther through which the pollen is discharged is the **anther-valve.**

—. An anther having two pollen-sacs is **bilocular.**

— Anthers which have their lobes connected so that they appear like double anthers are **didymous.**

—. Anthers that open on the side farthest from the ovary are **extrorse.**

—. An anther which lies against the inner side of its filament is **incumbent.**

—. Anthers that open on the side towards the ovary are **introrse.**

—. The fertilizing powder contained in the anthers of a flower is **pollen.**

—. An anther having four pollen-sacs is **quadrilocular.**

arum. A name given to various tropical plants of the arum family, used as food in the Pacific islands, is **taro.**

astringent. The name of a shrubby plant of the Andes which has astringent roots used in medicine is **rhattany.**

attachment. An organ attached or growing to another is **adnate.**

—. A slender leafless organ by which a plant attaches itself to another body is a **tendril.**

axil. A fruit borne in the axil or fork of a stem is **alar.**

axis. Plants in which the main axis or stem ends in a flower are **uniaxial.**

bacteria. The name given to bacteria, a class of minute fungi which multiply by division, is **schizomycetes.**

bag. The term used to denote a bag-like structure or receptacle is **sac.**

bamboo. A name for a white, opal-like deposit of silica occasionally found in the joints of bamboo is **tabasheer.**

bark. A name for the ring of tissue within the bark of exogenous plants is **cambium.**

—. Another name for the bark or outer covering of a tree is **cortex.**

—. The middle or green layer in the bark of exogenous plants is the **mesophloeum.**

—. The name given to a bitter white crystalline compound obtained from the bark of willows and poplars is **salicin.**

—, fibrous. A name for the inner fibrous bark of lime and other trees is **bast.**

base, flower. The base on which the organs of a flower are arranged is a **receptacle.**

bast. A name for the bast fibre obtained from China grass is **ramie.**

beak-shaped. The term applied to a beak-shaped part or process is **rostrate.**

bean. The name of a tropical twining shrub of which the parti-coloured bean-like seeds are used as weights and for ornaments is **jequirity.**

beet. A name for an improved variety of beet, with large roots, cultivated as a food for cattle, is **mangel-wurzel** or **mangold-wurzel.**

bending, downward. The downward bending of certain parts of plants is **deflexure.**

—, outward. Those parts of plants which bend outwards or towards the back are **deflexed.**

—, upward. The upward bending of a plant organ or part is **hyponasty.**

berry. Plants that bear berries are **baccate** or **bacciferous.**

—. A name for the berry of the hawthorn is **haw**

— The name given to a fruit-bearing shrub which is a cross between the raspberry and the blackberry is **loganberry.**

—. A succulent fruit, such as the currant or gooseberry, which does not open to liberate the seeds is a **true berry.**

blackness. A name for a disease producing blackness in plants is **melanism.**

blanching. The whitening or blanching of the leaves or stems of a plant produced by the exclusion of light is **etiolation.**

bloom. A fruit covered with bloom of a bluish-green tinge is **glaucous.**

blunt. A part of a plant having a blunt or rounded form is **obtuse.**

—. A part having a blunt rounded end with a shallow depression in it is **retuse.**

boat-shaped. A part of a plant shaped like a boat, such as a glume of canary grass, is **navicular.**

bract. A flower having no bracts is **ebracteate.**

—. A name for a chaff-like bract forming part of the flower of a grass or related plant is **glume.**

—. The whorl of bracts about each of the secondary umbels of a compound umbel is an **involucel.**

—. A ring of bracts around a flower is an **involucre.**

— A name for a bract or chaffy scale at the base of florets in composite flowers is **palea.**

bract. A bract doing duty as a petal is **petaloid** or **petaline.**

—. A term applied to a bract when membranous and dry is **scarious.**

—. Bristles or bracts which are hooked are **uncinate.**

branch. A term meaning of, pertaining to, or growing out of a branch is **ramal.**

—. A name for a trailing or prostrate branch that takes root at the tip and produces another plant is **stolon.**

branching. A branch of a tree which forks into two is **bifurcate.**

—. Plants having pairs of branches nearly at right angles to the stem and crossing each other alternately are **brachiate.**

—. The continued branching of certain plants into two parts is **dichotomy.**

—. Plants which branch out at a wide angle are **divaricate.**

breathing. A name for a breathing organ in the roots of certain tropical trees growing in swamps is **pneumatophore.**

bristle. Bristles or bracts which are hooked are **uncinate.**

bud. Leaves or petals rolled from the back towards the upper side in the bud are **involute.**

—. Leaves which are folded like a fan when in the bud are **plicate** or **plicated.**

—. A bud which is enclosed or protected by small leaf-like scales or stipules is **stipular.**

—. The name given to a short thickened part of an underground stem set with modified buds is **tuber.**

—. A name for a bud on a tree or plant containing the germ of a shoot that will develop when spring comes is **winter-lodge.**

—, flower. The manner in which a flower bud is folded before the petals open is **aestivation.**

—, leaf. The arrangement of leaves in a bud is **vernation.**

budding. Reproduction by means of buds is **gemmation.**

—, chain-like. Fungi which multiply by the production of chain-like strings of buds are **torulose.**

bulb. Plants which produce bulbs are **bulbaceous.**

—. Bulbs, such as the onion, which consist of a number of scales or coats are **tunicate.**

—. A name given to a bulb or bud protecting the germ of a plant or shoot that will develop in the spring is **winter-lodge.**

bundle. Terms applied to parts of a plant that grow in bundles from the same point are **fasciculate** and **fascicular.**

butter, vegetable. The name of a large tree of tropical Africa yielding a vegetable butter is **shea.**

butterfly, resembling. A plant such as the sweet pea, whose flowers resemble butterflies, is **papilionaceous.**

cabbage. The name of a thick-rooted vegetable resembling both turnip and cabbage is **kohlrabi.**

calyx. Flowers lacking both calyx and corolla are **achlamydeous.**

—. Plants in which the petals and stamens grow from the calyx are **calycifloral.**

—. A row of tiny leaves outside the true calyx is a **calycle.**

—. Flowers which have both a calyx and corolla are **dichlamydeous.**

—. The name given to an outer calyx or involucre of a flower is **epicalyx.**

—. A term used to describe a flower with a single envelope, in which usually a calyx is distinguishable but no corolla, is **monochlamydeous.**

—. A name for the downy or hairy calyx of some composite flowers is **pappus.**

—. The name given to the calyx and corolla of a flower collectively, and to the corolla when no calyx is distinguishable, is **perianth.**

calyx. A leaf, segment or division of the calyx of a flower is a **sepal.**

—. A calyx swelling out in the middle is **ventricose.**

capsule. The opening of seed capsules when ripe, to discharge their seeds, is **dehiscence.**

carpel. A name for the line of junction of two opposite carpels is **commissure.**

—. A pistil consisting of a single simple carpel, as in the garden pea, is **monocarpellary.**

—. A pistil consisting of two or more carpels is **polycarpellary.**

case, botanist's. A name for a case in which a field botanist collects his specimens is **vasculum.**

cell. The name given to the substance of which the solid framework of plant-cells chiefly consists is **cellulose.**

—. The science which deals with cell structure and formation is **cytology.**

—. The protoplasm of which a cell body is composed is **cytoplasm.**

—. The name given to a cell or hair on the surface of a plant which secretes oily or resinous matter is **gland.**

—. Cells in the tissues of plants arranged regularly like the bricks in a wall are **muriform.**

—. The walls of cells that curve parallel with the circumference of a shoot, etc., are **periclinal.**

—. The term used to describe a form of cell structure characterized by transverse ridges resembling the rungs of a ladder is **scalariform.**

—. The name given to the cell from which a cryptogamous plant develops is **spore.**

—. A growth from a plant cell into a neighbouring duct is a **tylosis.**

—. A name for a small cell or sac in a plant is **utricle.**

cereal. The name given to an albuminoid substance found as tiny solid particles in the ripening seeds of cereals is **aleurone.**

classification. The name given to the greater of the two divisions of seed-bearing plants, in which the seeds are enclosed in an ovary, is **Angiosperms.**

—. The name given to a group of plants comprising mosses and liverworts is **Bryophytes.**

—. The name given to a group of plants with similar characteristics, placed between a phylum or a subkingdom and an order, is **class.**

—. The name given to a group of plants, including fungi, mosses, lichens, ferns, and algae, in which the reproductive organs are concealed or absent is **Cryptogams.**

—. A name given to a type of plant in which the stem increases by additions in the **interior,** and not by the growth of tissue in concentric rings at its outside, is **endogen.**

—. A name given to a type of plant in which the stem increases by the growth of new tissue in concentric rings at its circumference within the bark layer is **exogen.**

—. The name given to a subdivision of plants between an order and a genus, comprising a single genus or several different genera, is **family.**

—. The name given to a group into which plants with similar main features are classified, consisting of one or many species, is **genus.**

—. The name given to a division of seed-bearing plants with seeds naked (not enclosed in an ovary), comprising the conifers, is **Gymnosperms.**

—. A name for a group of families of plants or animals very closely related, forming a classification below a class or subclass, is **order.**

—. Names given to a group of plants visibly possessing reproductive organs (stamens and pistil), including all the seed-bearing plants, are **Phanerogams** and **Spermatophytes.**

classification. A name for a primary group of plants or animals, regarded as having structural similarities and a common ancestry, ranking below a subkingdom and above an order, is **phylum.**

—. The name given to a group of plants including ferns, horsetails, and club-mosses is **Pteridophytes.**

—. The name given to a group of plants, next below a genus, differing from each other only in minor details is **species.**

—. A primary subdivision of a family in the classification of plants is a **subfamily.**

—. A name for a subdivision of a genus is **subgenus.**

—. A name for one of the primary divisions in the classification of plants is **subkingdom.**

—. The name for a group of plants comprising fungi, algae, and lichens is **Thallophytes.**

—. A name given to a group of plants below an order and above a genus is **tribe.**

—, The following is a list of the natural orders of British plants. with the name of a familiar type-plant for each order. Some large orders embrace genera of varying types and a botanical work should be referred to for fuller information.

GROUP A. PHANEROGAMS (Flowering Plants).

DIVISION I. ANGIOSPERMS.

Class I. Dicotyledones.

Ranunculaceæ : Crowfoot.
Berberidaceæ : Barberry.
Nymphaceæ : Water-lily
Papaveraceæ : Poppy.
Fumariaceæ : Fumitory.
Cruciferæ : Wallflower.
Resedaceæ : Mignonette.
Cistaceæ : Rock-rose.
Violaceæ : Violet.
Polygalaceæ : Milkwort.
Frankeniaceæ : Sea Heath.
Caryophyllaceæ : Pink.
Portulacaceæ : Blinks.
Tamaricaceæ : Tamarisk.
Elatinaceæ : Waterwort.
Hypericaceæ : St. John's Wort.
Malvaceæ : Mallow.
Tiliaceæ : Lime-tree.
Linaceæ : Flax.
Geraniaceæ : Cranesbill.
Aquifoliaceæ : Holly.
Celastraceæ: Spindle-tree.
Rhamnaceæ : Buckthorn.
Aceraceæ : Maple.
Leguminosæ : Furze.
Rosaceæ : Bramble.
Saxifragaceæ : Saxifrage.
Crassulaceæ : Stonecrop.
Droseraceæ : Sundew.
Haloragaceæ : Water Milfoil.
Lythraceæ : Loosestrife.
Epilobiaceæ : Rose-bay.
Cucurbitaceæ : Red Bryony.
Ficoideæ : Mesembryanthemum.
Umbelliferæ : Cow-parsnip.
Araliaceæ : Ivy.
Cornaceæ : Cornel.
Caprifoliaceæ : Honeysuckle.
Rubiaceæ : Madder.
Valerianaceæ : Valerian.
Dipsacaceæ : Teasel.
Asteraceæ : Daisy.
Campanulaceæ: Harebell.
Vacciniaceæ : Bilberry.
Ericaceæ : Heath.
Monotropaceæ : Birds-nest.
Plumbaginaceæ : Thrift.
Primulaceæ : Primrose.
Oleaceæ : Ash.
Apocynaceæ : Lesser Periwinkle.
Gentianaceæ : Gentian.
Polemoniaceæ : Jacob's Ladder.
Boraginaceæ : Forget-me-not.
Convolvulaceæ : Bindweed.
Solanaceæ : Bittersweet.
Scrophulariaceæ : Toadflax.
Orobanchaceæ : Broom-rape.
Lentibulariaceæ : Butterwort.
Verbenaceæ : Vervain.
Lamiaceæ : Mint.
Plantaginaceæ : Plantain.
Illecebraceæ : Illecebrum.
Chenopodiaceæ : Goosefoot.
Polygonaceæ : Bistort.
Aristolochiaceæ : Birthwort.
Thymelæaceæ : Spurge Laurel.
Elaægnaceæ : Sea Buckthorn.
Loranthaceæ : Mistletoe.
Santalaceæ : Bastard Toadflax.
Euphorbiaceæ : Spurge.
Ulmaceæ : Elm.
Urticaceæ : Nettle.
Myricaceæ : Bog Myrtle.
Amentaceæ : Birch.
Salicaceæ : Willow.
Empetraceæ : Crowberry.
Ceratophyllaceæ : Hornwort.

Class II. Monocotyledones.

Hydrocharidaceæ: Frog-bit.
Orchidaceæ: Bog-Orchis
Iridaceæ: Yellow Flag.
Amaryllidaceæ: Daffodil.
Dioscoreaceæ: Black Bryony.
Liliaceæ: Butcher's Broom.
Juncaceæ: Rush.
Typhaceæ: Reed-mace.
Araceæ: Arum.
Lemnaceæ: Duckweed.
Alismaceæ: Water Plantain.
Naiadaceæ: Pondweed.
Eriocaulaceæ: Pipewort.
Cyperaceæ: Sedge.
Graminaceæ: Grasses.

Division II. Gymnosperms.

Conifers:

Pinaceæ: Scotch Fir.

GROUP B. PTERIDOPHYTES.

(Vascular Cryptogams)

Horsetails:

Equisetaceæ: Horsetail.

Ferns:

Polypodiaceæ: Polypody.
Hymenophyllaceæ: Filmy Fern.
Osmundaceæ: Royal Fern.
Ophioglossaceæ: Adder's Tongue.
Marsiliaceæ: Pillwort.
Isoetaceæ: Quill-wort.

Club Mosses:

Lycopodiaceæ: Club Moss.
Selaginellaceæ: Selaginella.

climate. A plant living in water or very wet ground is a **hydrophyte.**

—. A plant living in a very moist climate is **hygrophilous** or a **hygrophyte.**

—. A plant living under medium conditions of heat and moisture is a **mesophyte.**

—. The study of the influence of climate, etc., on the life of plants and animals is **phenology.**

—. A plant able to live in hot, dry climates and in places where there is little moisture is **xerophilous** or a **xerophyte.**

climber, The name of a New Zealand climbing shrub of the screw-pine family is **kie-kie.**

club moss. The name given to a plant of the club moss family is **lycopod.**

—. The name of an inflammable yellow powder found in the spore cases of lycopods is **lycopodium.**

cocoa. The name of a genus of tropical trees including the cocoa-tree is **Theobroma.**

colouring. The name for diversity of colouring in the leaves, petals, etc., of plants is **variegation.**

composite The name given to any of the florets forming the compact mass of the disk of a composite flower is **disk floret.**

—. A marginal floret of a composite flower is a **ray.**

cone. A name for a fir cone or similar fruit is **strobile.**

conifer. The name of a genus of gigantic conifer timber trees found in California is **Sequoia.**

convolvulus. The name of a sweet-scented hard white wood obtained from two shrubby convolvuluses of the Canary Islands is **rhodium.**

cork. A name for a waxy compound of cellulose forming tissue in cork is **suberin.**

—. Substances in a plant resembling or having the nature of cork are **suberose** or **suberous.**

corolla. Flowers which have neither calyx nor corolla are **achlamydeous.**

—. Flowers which have both a corolla and calyx are **dichlamydeous.**

—. A name for the opening of a flower with an undivided corolla is **fauces.**

—. A funnel-shaped corolla is **infundibuliform.**

—. A name given to the lower petal in the corolla of a flower such as an orchid is **labellum.**

—. A corolla having lip-like petals is **labiate.**

—. A flower with a single envelope, usually having a calyx but no corolla, is **monochlamydeous.**

—. A corolla formed of petals joined into one piece, or consisting of a single petal placed at the side, is **monopetalous.**

corolla. When the corolla and calyx of a flower are of the same colour the floral envelope is described as a **perianth.**

—. Each of the leaves making up the corolla of a flower is a **petal**

—. The word used to describe a flower with a labiate corolla is **ringent.**

—. A name for a tubular projection on a corolla or a petal is **spur.**

—. A term used to describe a corolla swelling out in the middle is **ventricose.**

cotyledon. A name sometimes given to a plant without distinct cotyledons is **acotyledon.**

—. Plants which have two seed-leaves or cotyledons are **dicotyledonous.**

—. Plants which have only a single seed-leaf or cotyledon are **monocotyledonous.**

—. Plants in which the cotyledons or seed-leaves are joined together are **syncotyledonous.**

creeping. A term used to describe a plant with stems which grow along the ground just above or below the surface, giving off roots at intervals, is **repent.**

cross. A cross produced by interbreeding plants of different species is a **hybrid.**

cryptogam. Cryptogams, such as ferns, horsetails, and club mosses, containing vessels or ducts are **vascular cryptogams.**

cup. A name for a cup-shaped structure such as that enclosing the hazel nut is **cupule.**

cup-shaped. A term used to describe cup-shaped parts or organs is **cupular.**

development. A name given to the development of complicated forms of plant and animal life from simple forms is **evolution.**

—, unusual. A name for the development of buds from unusual parts, or the production of new individuals otherwise than by seeds, is **proliferation.**

diatom. The flinty covering of the diatom, a minute water-plant, is a **frustule.**

distribution. The science which deals with the distribution of plants and animals is **chorology.**

down. A name for the downy substance on the husk of the bean and certain other fruits is **floss.**

—. A fruit covered with down or bloom of a bluish-green tinge is **glaucous.**

—. Terms used to describe parts of a plant covered with greyish-white down are **hoary** and **pubescent.**

drupe. The name given to a drupe, usually two-celled, with an outer covering which separates and falls away is **tryma.**

duct. The system of ducts in a plant for the conveyance of sap, etc., is the **vascular system.**

dye. The name given to a dye obtained from the down on the fruit of an East Indian tree of the spurge family is **kamala**

—. The name given to the heart-wood of a Central American tree, used as a dye-stuff, is **logwood.**

—. The name of a plant of the genus *Rubia* from which a dye is obtained is **madder.**

—. The name of an annual thistle-like plant from which a red dye is obtained is **safflower.**

—. A name given to the brownish-red dye-wood obtained from trees of the genus *Caesalpina* is **sapan wood.**

—. The name of a plant yielding a blue dye, used by the ancient Britons for colouring their bodies, and in the modern dyeing industry, is **woad.**

eatable. Plants fit for food are **esculent.**

elm. The name of a black gummy alkaline substance which oozes from the inner bark of the elm and other trees is **ulmin.**

embryo. The albumen surrounding the embryo in seeds is the **endosperm.**

—. The growing point of an embryo is a **gemmule.**

—. In flowering plants the cell of the embryo which produces the first root and its cap is the **hypophysis.**

embryo. The name given to that part of the embryo of a plant which develops into the main root when the seed germinates is **radicle.**

end. A part or organ growing at the end of a stem, etc., is **terminal.**

—. tapering. Any detail of plant-life which terminates gradually in a tapering point is **acuminose** or **acuminate.**

eucalyptus. A name for various Australian species of dwarf eucalyptus is **mallee.**

evergreen, Californian. The Spanish name of a large evergreen tree of Northern California is **madrono.**

fan-shaped. A plant or part of a plant shaped like a fan is **flabellate** or **flabelliform.**

feather. A part of a plant that resembles a feather or group of feathers is **plumose.**

fern. The name given to the leaf-like organ of a fern is **frond.**

—. The name given to a cluster of spore cells or sori on a fern is **fructification.**

—. The name given to a kind of fern with tongue-shaped fronds is **hart's-tongue.**

—. A name for the dry scales on the stems of certain ferns is **paleae.**

—. The science of ferns is **pteridology.**

—. The name given to a cluster of spore-bearing cells on a fern is **sorus.**

—. The name given to the cells, borne on the fertile fronds of ferns, from which new individuals develop is **spores.**

—. The name of an edible fern found in New Zealand and Tasmania is **tara.**

fertilization. Flowers that are fertilized by the wind are **anemophilous.**

—. The practice of hanging branches of the wild fig on the cultivated fig as an aid to fertilization by insects is **caprification.**

—. The transferring of pollen from one plant to another of a different species is **cross-fertilization.**

—, Flowers that are fertilized by insects are **entomophilous.**

—. The fertilization of the stigma of a plant by depositing pollen on it, as done by insects or the wind, is **pollination.**

—. Another name for cross-fertilization is **xenogamy.**

fibre. The name of a silky fibre obtained from a tropical American tree, used for stuffing pillows, cushions, etc., and for filling life-belts, is **kapok.**

—, The soft fibre from the leaves of certain palms of the genus *Raphia* is **raffia.**

—. The name given to species of South American agave from which a tough fibre is obtained is **sisal.**

fig. The practice of hanging branches of the wild fig on the cultivated fig, as an aid to fertilization by insects is **caprification.**

—. Scientific names for a multiple fruit, such as that of the fig, are **syconium** and **syconus.**

filament. An anther of which the lobe is attached to its filament throughout the whole length is **adnate.**

flax. The grain or seed of the flax plant is **linseed.**

flesh-brush. The name given to the dried fibrous fruit of an African climbing plant used to make a flesh-brush is **loofah.**

fleshy. A term meaning fleshy and thick is **succulent.**

floral envelope. A name for a floral envelope, especially when it lacks either sepals or petals, or when the calyx and corolla are of the same colour, is **perianth.**

floret. Flower heads having a number of florets or tiny flowers are **aggregate.**

—, A flower which is made up of a number of small florets is a **compound flower.**

—, A floret forming part of the compact disk of a composite flower is a **disk-floret.**

—. Florets which are arranged in two rows are **distichous.**

floret. A flower, such as the common daisy, which bears florets of different colours is **heterochromous.**

—. A marginal floret of a composite flower is a **ray floret.**

—. A floret attached directly to the disk of a flower and having no stalk is **sessile.**

flower. Flowers having petals in place of stamens are **andropetalous.**

—. Flowers in which petals and stamens are inserted in the calyx are **calycifloral.**

—. A flower which is made up of a number of closely-packed florets on a common receptacle is **composite.**

— Flowers that have their parts arranged in pairs or divided into two are **dimerous.**

—. A name for the parts of a flower, usually the calyx and corolla, which enclose the stamens and pistils is **floral envelope.**

—. The flowers of a plant collectively are its **inflorescence.**

—. A flower composed of unequal petals is **irregular.**

—. Plants, such as gorse and broom, whose flowers remain on the stem after withering are **marcescent.**

—. A general name for a plant which flowers and fruits once and then dies is **monocarp.**

—. A plant bearing a number of flowers on one stalk is **multiflorous.**

—. Flowers supported on small stalks or pedicels, which join them to the main stalk, are **pedicellate.**

—, Flowers having petals, as distinguished from apetalous flowers, are **petalous.**

—, That part of a flower where the seeds are fertilized and developed, consisting when complete of ovary, style, and stigma, is the **pistil.**

—. Flowers that bear pistils and not stamens are **pistillate.**

—. Flowers with flat petals are **planipetalous.**

—. A flower composed of equal petals is **regular.**

—. Flowers that bear stamens and not pistils are **staminate.**

—. A flower having four petals and four sepals is **tetramerous.**

—. A flower having its parts arranged in threes is **trimerous.**

—. Flowers in which petals and stamens spring from the receptacle at the top of the peduncle are **thalamifloral.**

—, arrangement on stalk. The arrangement of flowers on the stalk of a plant is its **inflorescence.**

—, bell-shaped. A term applied to a flower having a bell-shaped corolla is **campanulate.**

—, —. A flower in which the petals are united to form a bell-shaped or tubular corolla is **gamopetalous.**

—, borne in pairs. Flowers produced in pairs are **geminate** or **geminative.**

—, composite. The central part of a composite flower is the **disk.**

—, —. The central florets of a composite flower are the **disk-florets.**

—, —. The outer belt of a composite flower-head is a **radius.**

—, cross-shaped. A flower having its petals so arranged that they form a cross is **cruciate** or **cruciform.**

—, —. Plants bearing cruciate or cross-shaped flowers are **cruciferous.**

—, cup-shaped. Terms used to describe flowers which are cup-shaped are **cyathiform** and **poculiform.**

—, drooping. Plants with naturally drooping or pendent flowers are **nutant.**

—, envelope. The outer envelope of a flower, made up usually of several leaves around the stalk, is a **calyx.**

—, evening. Flowers that open in the evening are **vespertine.**

flower, five petals. A flower having five petals is **pentapetalous.**

—, flat petals. Flowers with flat petals are **planipetalous.**

—, four petals. A flower having four petals is **tetrapetalous.**

—, giant. The name of a genus of East Indian plants with giant flowers but no leaves or stem, is **Rafflesia.**

—, lacking petals. Flowers having no petals, or having neither sepals nor petals, are **apetalous.**

—, lacking stamen and pistil. Flowers having neither pistils nor stamens are **neuters.**

—, little. A little flower forming part of a composite one is a **floret.**

—, night-blooming. Flowers that bloom by night are **noctiflorous.**

—, one petal. A flower having a corolla consisting of a single petal placed at the side is **monopetalous.**

—, outer part. A name for the outer part of a flower, especially when it lacks either petals or sepals, or when the calyx and corolla are of the same colour, is **perianth.**

—, parts adherent. Parts of a flower which grow together or are adherent are **adnate.**

—, petals unconnected. Flowers in which the petals are free or unconnected are **choripetalous.**

—, petals united. Plants having flowers with the petals united are **gamopetalous** or **sympetalous.**

—, petals wheel-like. A flower in which the petals are spread out like a wheel is **rotate.**

—, receptacle. Names for the receptacle of a flower are **thalamus** and **torus.**

—, regularity. The regularity of flowers that are usually irregular in form is **pelorism.**

—, seven petals. A flower having seven petals is **heptapetalous.**

—, sheathed. Flowers enclosed by a sheath or spathe are **spathaceous.**

—, six petals. Flowers having six petals are **hexapetalous.**

—, stamens and pistil united. A flower, such as an orchid, in which the stamens and pistils grow together is **gynandrous.**

—, star-shaped. Flowers that are star-shaped are **stellate, stellated,** or **stelliform.**

—, styles united. Those flowers in which the styles are joined together in a single column are **systylous.**

—, twelve petals. Flowers having twelve petals are **dodecapetalous.**

—, two forms. Those flowers which are produced in two different forms by the same species of plant are **dimorphic.**

—, two petals. Flowers having two petals are **dipetalous.**

—, varied form. Those flowers which occur in two different forms on the same plant are **dimorphic.**

—. *See also under* **pistil** *and* **stamen,** *below.*

flower-bearing. A plant which bears flowers is **floriferous.**

flower-bud. The way in which flower-leaves are arranged within the bud is **prefloration.**

flower-cluster. A terminal cluster of florets, surrounded by an involucre, as in the sunflower, is a **flower-head.**

—. For different types of flower-cluster, or manner of flowering, *see* **inflorescence,** *below.*

flower-head. A name for a flower-head is **capitulum.**

—, single. A plant which naturally grows only a single flower-head is **monocephalous.**

flowering. The bursting into bloom of plants is **efflorescence.**

—. The flowering of a plant or the season when this takes place is the **florescence.**

—. A term applied to plants which bloom more than once in the same season is **remontant.**

—, manner. *See under* **flower,** *above*; *and* **inflorescence,** *below.*

flower-leaf. Flowers having ten flower-leaves, that is, five sepals and five petals, are **decaphyllous.**

—. Leaves either of the calyx or corolla which fall early are **fugacious.**

—. The name given to the flower-leaves, usually green, which form the outer whorl or ring of a flower is **sepals.**

flowerless plants. An organ in cryptogamous or flowerless plants which contains a fertilizing element corresponding to pollen is an **antheridium.**

flower-spike. A flower-spike made up of several smaller spikelets is **spiculate.**

—. One of the small groups of flowers arranged on a main stem, as in wheat, is a **spikelet.**

fluid, saccharine. The name given to a saccharine fluid exuding or prepared by decoction from various plants is **treacle.**

foliage. A term used to describe the foliage of a plant which grows gradually smaller from the base upwards is **decrescent.**

—. *See also under* **leaf,** *below.*

form, changing. A name for the process of changing to a new form in plants and animals is **neomorphism.**

—, double. The existence of two different forms of an organ or a flower on the same plant is **dimorphism.**

— modified. A type of plant that has been modified in form or structure by the conditions of recent environment is **neonomous.**

—, plant. The science treating of the forms of plants and animals and their structural development is **morphology.**

—, variation. Plants in which flowers or leaves take two or more different forms are **heteromorphic.**

fossil. The name of a genus of fossil plants, found in the coal measures, having scale-like markings is **Lepidodendron.**

—. A petrified or fossilized seed-vessel or fruit is a **lithocarp.**

—. The branch of botany dealing with fossil plants is **palaeobotany.**

fringed. A part of a plant which has its edge divided so as to form a fringe is **fimbriate** or **fimbriated.**

frond. The axis of a pinnate frond is a **rachis.**

fruit. A hard, dry, one-seeded fruit which does not open when ripe is an **achene.**

—. Fruits with an enclosing envelope or sheath developed from scales which formed no part of the flower are **angiocarpous.**

—. A fruit composed of separate carpels is **apocarpous.**

—. A fruit which bursts when ripe and scatters its seeds with some force is **ballistic.**

—. A succulent syncarpous fruit that does not open to discharge its seeds is a true **berry.**

—. The name given to a dry dehiscent syncarpous fruit or seed-vessel is **capsule.**

—. Fruits which divide up into several distinct parts are **coccoid.**

—. A fruit, such as the mulberry, fig, or pine-cone, formed as the produce of a cluster of separate flowers is a **collective fruit.**

—. Those fruits which are enclosed in a cupule, or cup-like involucre, are **cupulate** or **cupular.**

— A fleshy one-seeded fruit enclosing a kernel-bearing stone is a **drupe.**

—. The name given to each of the little drupes of an apocarpous fruit such as the blackberry is **drupel.**

—. A fruit formed by a single carpel, bursting open only along one suture, is a **follicle.**

—. Fruits not enclosed within a protecting envelope are **gymnocarpous.**

—. A plant which produces two different kinds of fruit is **heterocarpous.**

—. A one-celled fruit with two valves, bearing its seeds along the inner angle, as in the pea, is a **legume.**

fruit. A portion of a fruit which splits away as a separate fruit is a **mericarp.**

—. The name given to a fruit with a hard shell and usually edible kernel is **nut.**

—. Plants having few fruits are **oligocarpous.**

—. A fruit, such as the poppy, which discharges its seeds through holes in the capsule is **porous.**

—. A fruit in the formation of which other parts than the pistil of a flower take part is a **pseudocarp** or **spurious fruit.**

—. A fruit or seed vessel which opens with a transverse suture, the upper half resembling a lid, is a **pyxidium.**

—. The name given to the long, dry fruit or seed-vessel of plants of the mustard family is **siliqua.**

—. A name for a fir cone or similar fruit is **strobile.**

—. The name for a multiple fruit such as that of the fig is **syconus.**

—. A fruit consisting of a large number of little fruits joined together to form a single mass is **syncarpous.**

—. A fruit formed only from the pistil of a flower is a **true fruit.**

—. apple-like. Plants which bear apple-like fruits are **pomiferous.**

—. Burbank. The name of a Burbank fruit produced by crossing the plum and apricot is **plumcot.**

—, —. The name of a Burbank fruit obtained by crossing the raspberry and dewberry is **wonderberry.**

—, collective. A name for a fleshy collective fruit formed, as the pineapple, by the cohesion of numerous flower-envelopes and ovaries is **sorosis.**

—. decaying. A name for a fruit resembling a small brown apple, eaten when it begins to decay, is **medlar.**

—, dog-rose. The name given to the fruit of the dog-rose is **hip.**

—, East Indian. A name for a very sweet yellow-red kidney-shaped fruit about as large as an apple, growing on the East Indian tree *Mangifera indica* is **mango.**

—, —. An orange-like fruit growing on the East Indian evergreen tree *Garcinia mangostana* is a **mangosteen.**

—, fleshy. A botanical term used to describe a fleshy fruit is **succulent.**

—, multiple. Names for a multiple fruit developed from numerous flowers embedded in a fleshy receptacle, like the fig, are **syconium** and **syconus.**

—, pointed. A plant bearing pointed fruit is **oxycarpous.**

—, ripening. The name for a white soluble substance formed from pectose in ripening fruit, which enables vegetable juices to gelatinize, is **pectin.**

—, spiny. A name for a prickly spiny fruit is **caltrop.**

—, stone. Plants bearing a simple one-seeded fruit enclosing a kernel-bearing stone are **drupaceous.**

—, tropical. The name of a kind of tropical fruit similar to the bread-fruit is **jack.**

—, unripe. The name for a white insoluble substance, allied to cellulose, and present in unripe fruit and fleshy roots, is **pectose.**

—, valved. The name given to a fruit with two valves, bearing its seeds on either side of the rear joint, is **legume.**

—, winged. Fruits or seeds from which a number of wings project, enabling them to be scattered by the wind, are **molendinaceous.**

—, woody. A hard, woody fruit is a **xylocarp.**

—. *See also under* **seed-vessel,** *below.*

fruit-bearing. A plant that bears fruit is **fructiferous.**

fruitless. Plants that do not bear fruit are **acarpous.**

fungus. A term applied to a fungus that grows on another plant is **epanthous.**

—. A fungus in which the spores are formed on an exposed surface is a **gymnospore.**

—. The name given to an appendage which hangs from the apex of the stipe in certain fungi is **indusium.**

—. The name giving to fungi and algae found in association and living together in symbiosis is **lichens.**

—. A name for the underground vegetative part of fungi is **mycelium.**

— The branch of botany dealing with fungi is **mycology.**

—. A fungus living on decaying organic matter is a **saprophyte.**

—. The name given to fibrous material, containing filaments of mycelium, used to propagate mushrooms is **spawn.**

—, cap. A name for the cap-like part of certain fungi is **pileus.**

—. cap-like. Certain fungi, such as mushrooms, having a cap-like formation, are **pileate.**

—, cup-shaped. The name of a tough cup-shaped fungus found on elder and elm trees is **Jew's-ear.**

—, edible. The name of an edible fleshy fungus growing underground is **truffle.**

—, jelly-like. The name of a genus of shapeless jelly-like fungi resembling nostoc is **Tremella.**

—, microscopic. A name given to a microscopic rod-like fungus is **bacillus.**

—, —. A name for a minute one-celled fungus or bacterium is **micrococcus.**

—, —. A name given to bacteria—a class of minute fungi which multiply by division—is **schizomycetes.**

—, oak. A name for the tough, white, leathery fungus growing on old oaks is **oak-leather.**

—, spore-cell. The name given to a spore-producing cell of fungi is **basidium.**

gall. The name given to a mossy gall found on rose-trees is **bedeguar.**

genus. Plants which belong to the same genus are **congeneric.**

—. Two genera connected by common characters are **osculant.**

—. A genus which exhibits the essential characteristics of a family or other higher group named after it is a **type-genus.**

ginger-like. The name of an Indian plant, allied to ginger, of which the root-stock is used as a condiment and a dye-stuff is **turmeric.**

gingili. A name given to the gingili, a tropical plant bearing oily seeds, is **sesame.**

gourd. The name of the dried fibrous fruit of an African gourd, used to make a flesh-brush, is **loofah.**

grain. The name given to a disease of rye and other grain plants caused by a fungus, and to the diseased grain, used in medicine, is **ergot.**

grain-bearing. A plant that bears grain, or seeds similar to grain, is **graniferous.**

grass. The beard of corn, barley, oats, and other grasses, is the **awn** or **arista.**

—. Florets which, as in certain grasses, are arranged in two rows on opposite sides of the stem are **distichous.**

—. The name for the grass family is **Gramineae.**

—. A name for a kind of tough grass with creeping roots growing on sea-shores, and used in consolidating sand-dunes, is **marram.**

—. A name for the inner bract of a grass-flower is **palea.**

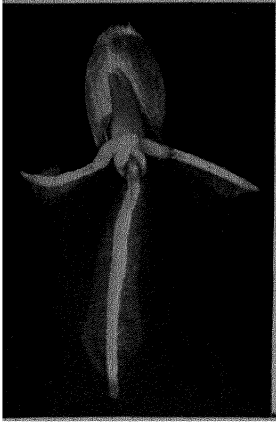
—, Indian. The name of a coarse tufted grass used as a food-grain in India is **ragi.**

—, pasture. The name of a common British pasture grass is **florin.**

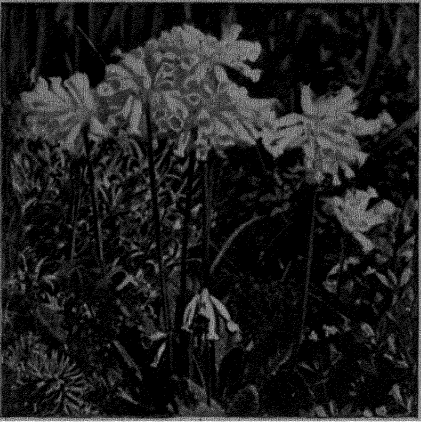
—, ring. A name given to a ring of darker coloured grass in a meadow, caused by the growth of fungi in the soil, is **fairy-ring.**

(*Continued on page* 4737).

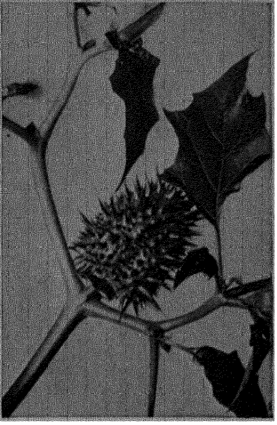
BOTANICAL TERMS IN PICTURES



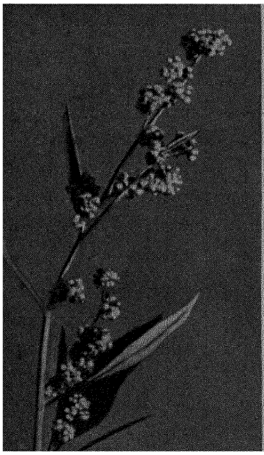
ACOTYLEDON.—Wheat is an acotyledon; it has no distinct seed lobes.



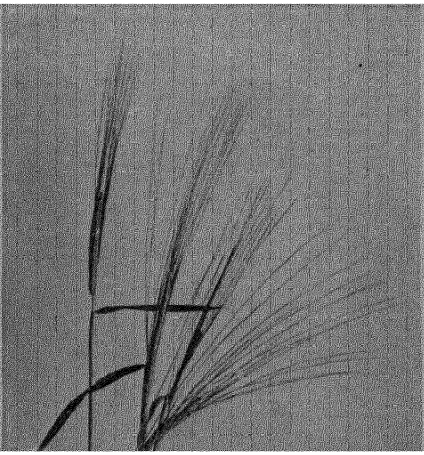
ADNATE.—The short stamens of the cowslip are adnate to the tube of the corolla, growing out from its wall.



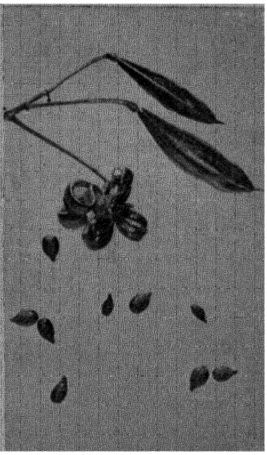
ALAR.—An alar fruit; it is borne in the axil or fork of the stem.



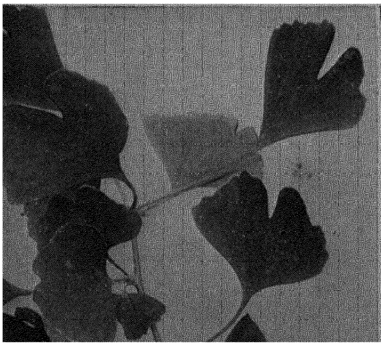
APETALOUS.—These goosefoot flowers are apetalous, or destitute of petals.



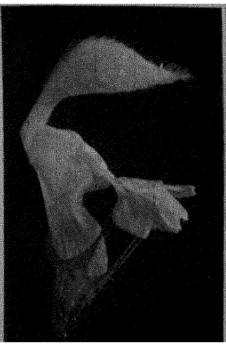
AWN.—The awn, or beard, of barley. It is a bristle-like outgrowth of the bracts enclosing the florets.



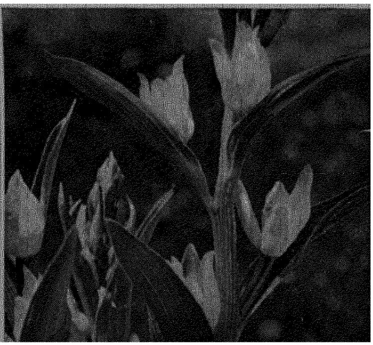
BALLISTIC.—The fruit of balsam is ballistic; it shoots its seeds some distance away.



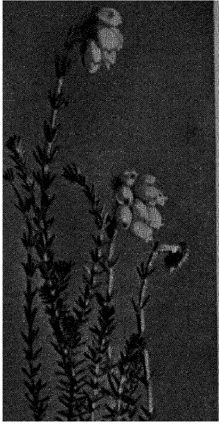
BIFID.—The leaves of the maidenhair tree are bifid; they are divided about half way down into two.

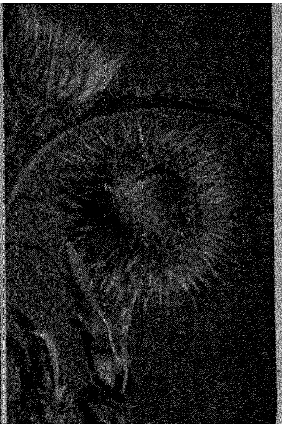


BILABIATE.—The bilabiate, or two-lipped, flower of the dead-nettle.



BRACT.—White helleborine, showing the bracts or leaves in the axils of which the flowers are borne.

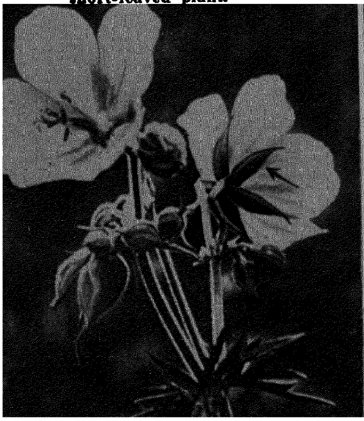


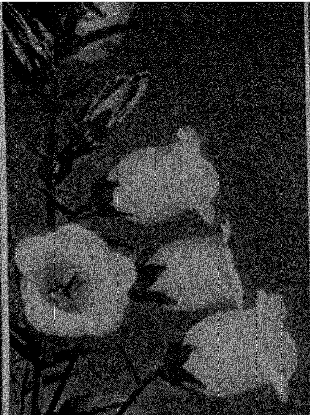


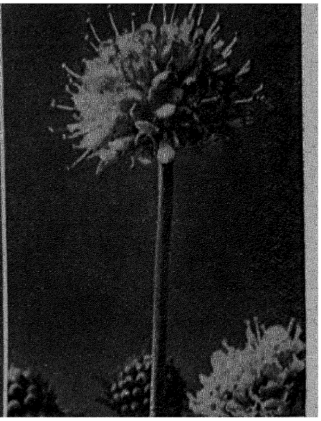
BREVIFOLIATE.—The heath, a brevifoliate or short-leaved plant.

BRIER.—The brier, a prickly wild rose, many kinds of which are familiar and beautiful objects of the English countryside.

CALTROP.—This is a name given to spiny fruits like that of the thistle (illustrated).



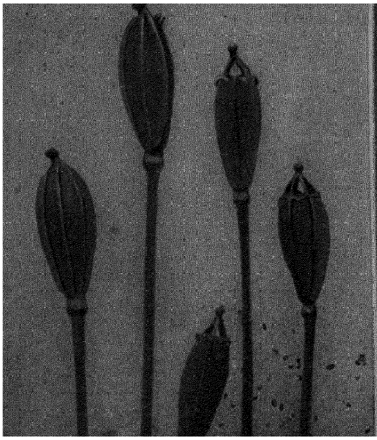


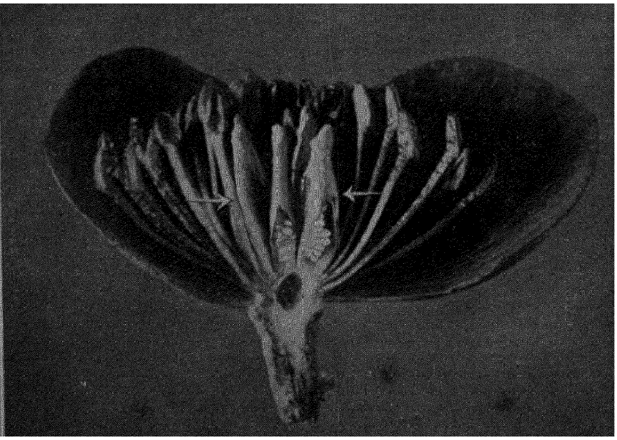


CALYX.—Meadow crane's-bill. The calyx or outer covering of the flower, composed of small sepals, is clearly seen.

CAMPANULATE.—The Canterbury bell has a campanulate or bell-shaped corolla.

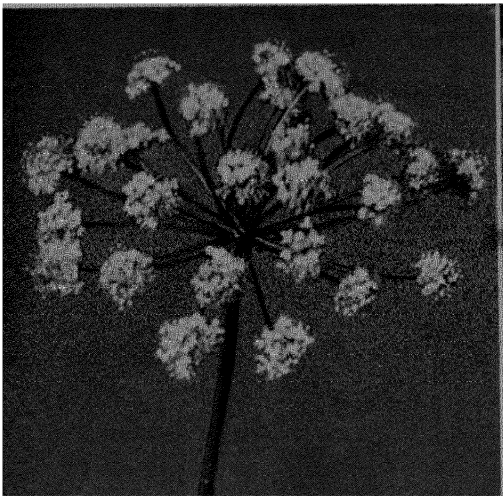
CAPITULUM.—The capitulum, or close cluster of sessile flowers, of the devil's bit.





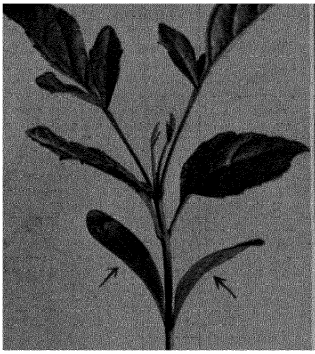
CAPSULE.—Capsules of the Welsh poppy, showing seeds bursting from one of the dry, gaping seed-vessels.

CARPEL.—A section of a buttercup flower, showing the carpels. These are modified leaves which form either a single pistil or else part of a compound one.

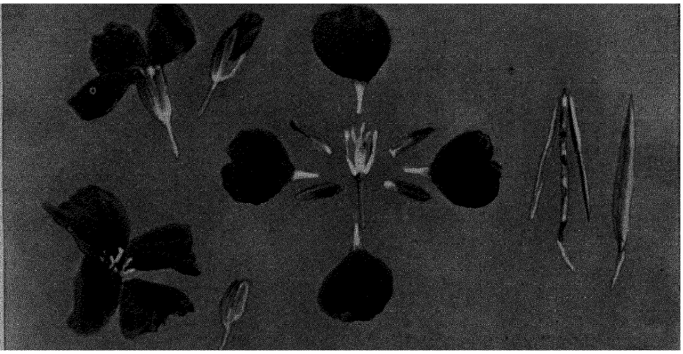


DECOMPOSITE.—The umbels of the water dropwort are decomposite or doubly compound, the flower-heads consisting of many small umbels.

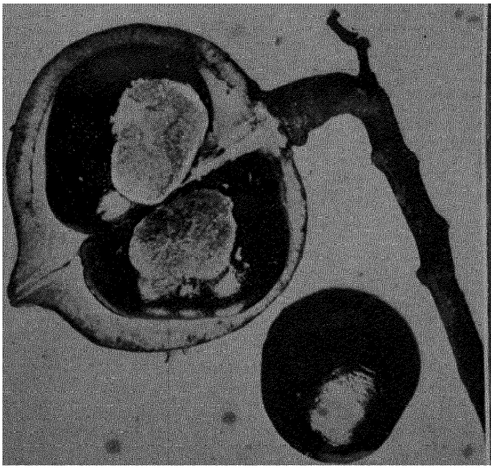
DIAHELIOTROPIC.—The beech is diaheliotropic, its leaves tending to spread themselves at right angles to the light-rays.



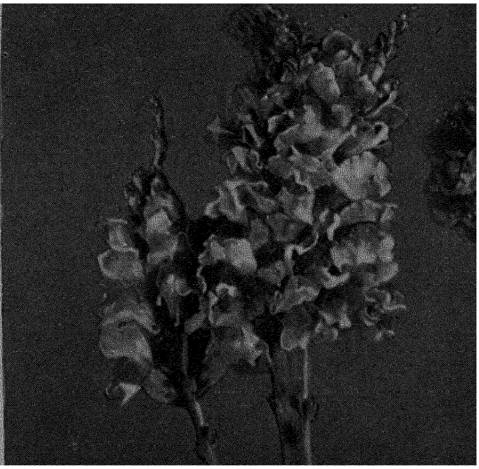
DICOTYLEDON.—The ash is a dicotyledon, its seedling bearing two seed-leaves.



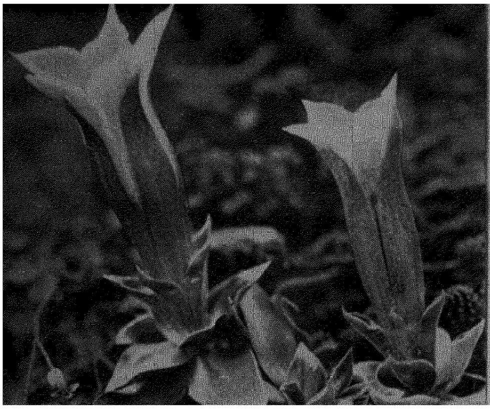
DISARTICULATE.—A blossom of the wallflower disarticulate, or dissected into its component parts and members, in order to show the form and structure of the flower.



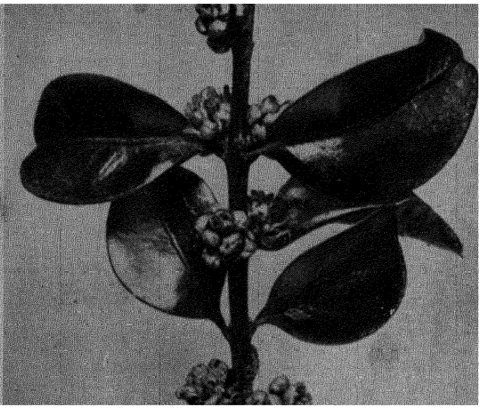
EPISPERM.—In the horse-chestnut, the episperm, or outer skin which covers the seed, is shiny, and of a deep brown or mahogany colour.



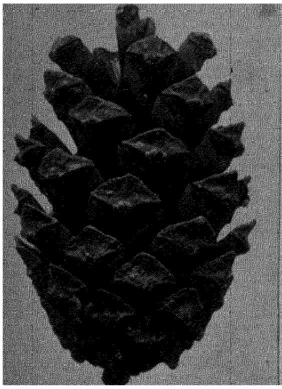
FASCIATION.—An example of fasciation in the snapdragon. This is a malformation in which the stem becomes flattened or ribbon-like in form.



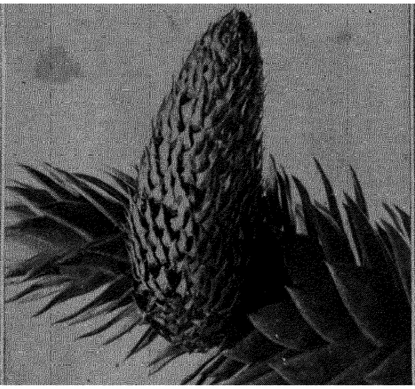
GAMOPETALOUS.—The gentian is gamopetalous, that is, its petals are united. They form a tubular corolla.



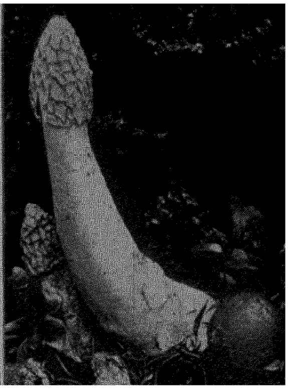
GLOMERULE.—The common box, showing the glomerules, a short-stalked or stalkless type of flower-cluster.



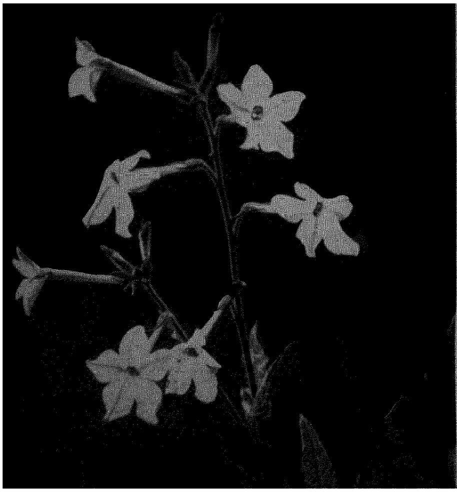
GYMNOCARPOUS.—A cone of the Scotch fir, which, like other conifers, bears gymnocarpous, or unprotected, seeds.



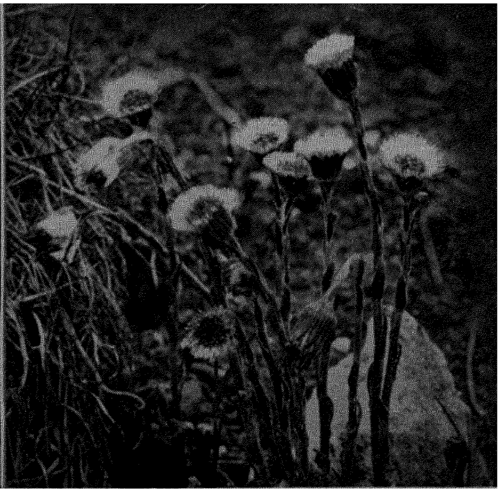
INCUBOUS.—When, as in the Chile pine (illustrated), the leaves overlap, the tip of one lying over the base of the leaf above, the leaves are described as incubous.



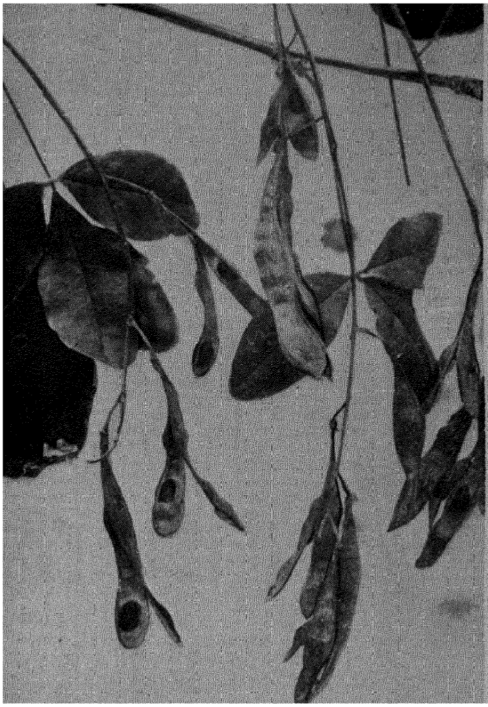
INDUSIUM.—The indusium is an appendage which hangs from the apex of the stipe in certain species of fungi.



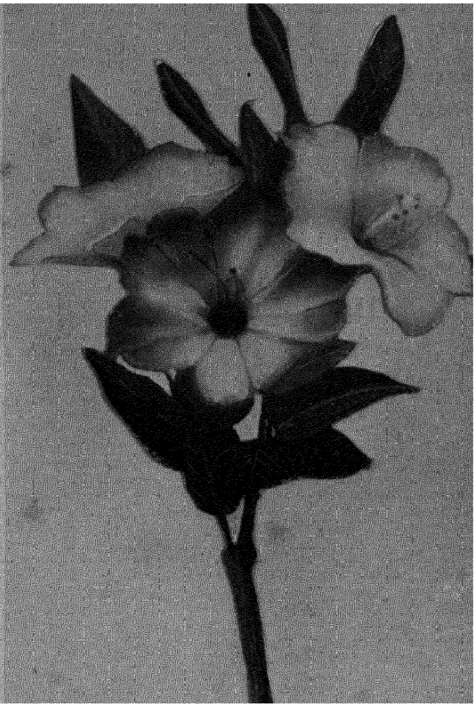
INFUNDIBULIFORM.—The tobacco plant has an infundibuliform, or funnel-shaped, corolla.



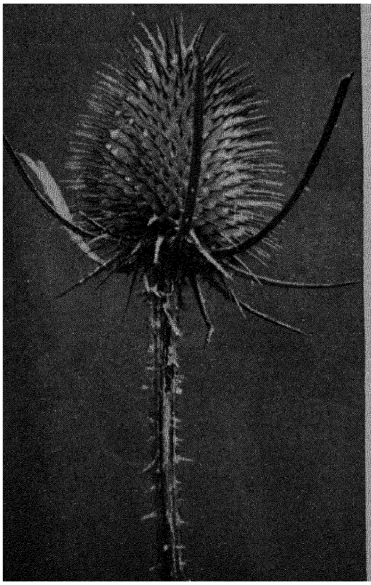
INVOLUCRE.—In the colt's-foot each flower is surrounded by an involucre, or ring of bracts.



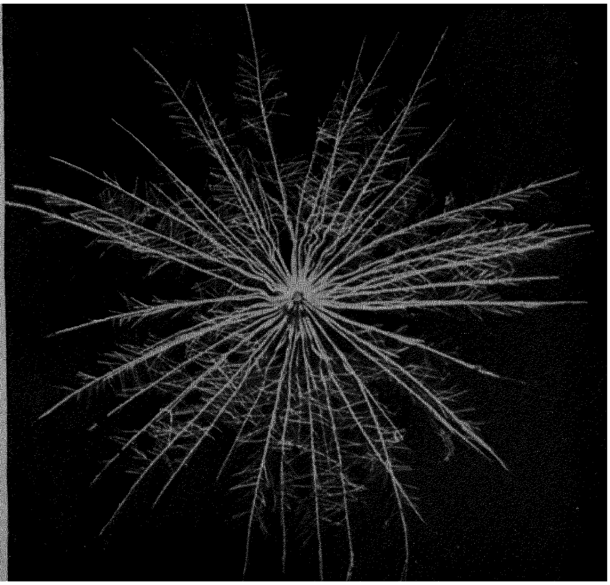
LEGUME.—Seed-pods with a single carpel opening along a dorsal or ventral seam or suture are legumes. The picture shows a legume-bearing tree, the laburnum.



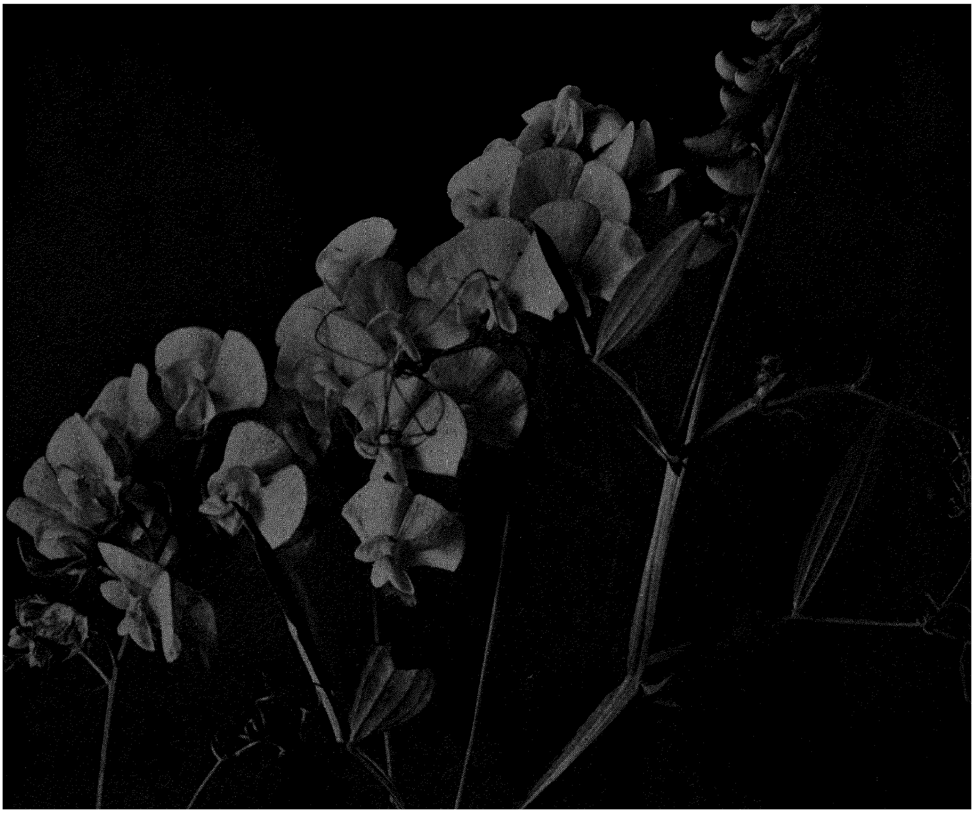
MONOCHLAMYDEOUS.—Flowers with a single floral envelope are monochlamydeous. Usually, as with the marvel of Peru (illustrated), the corolla is missing.



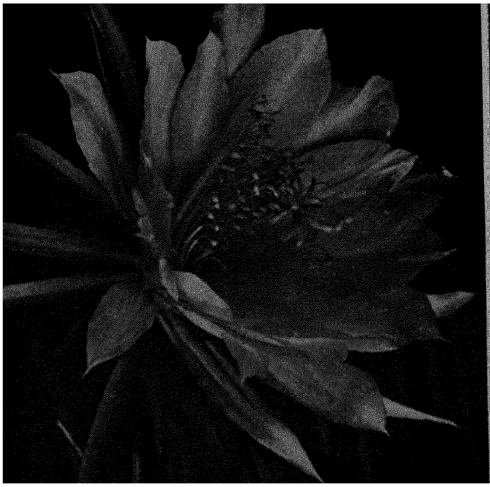
PALEA.—The flower of the teasel (illustrated) bears scaly bracts or paleae at the base of the receptacle.



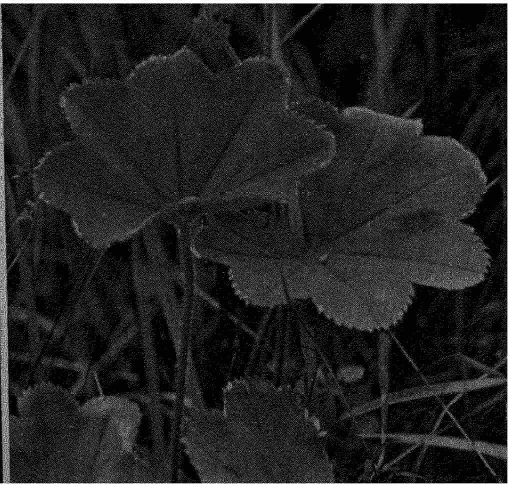
PAPPUS.—The pappus or hairy appendage on the seeds of such plants as the cat's-ear enables the seeds to be scattered far and wide by the wind.



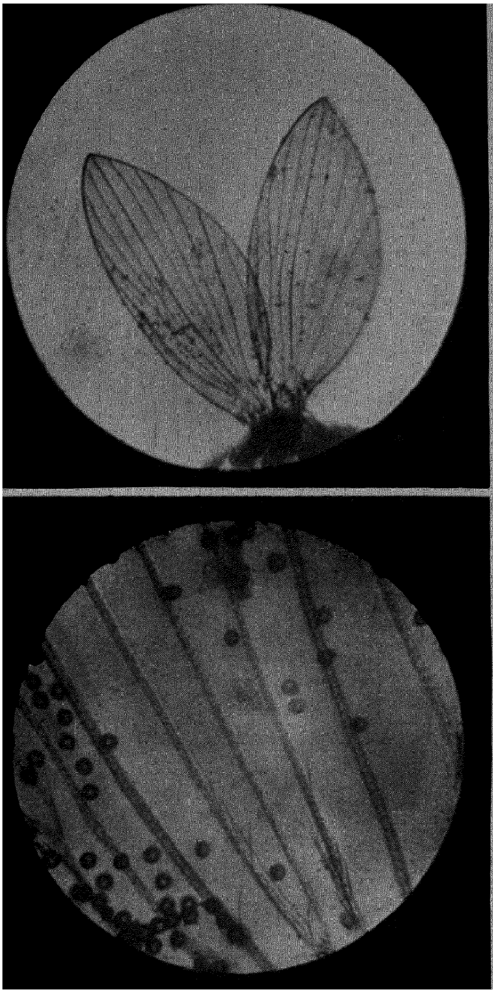
PAPILIONACEOUS.—From a fancied resemblance of their wing-shaped petals to a butterfly with outspread wings, flowers such as the sweet pea, here illustrated, are said to be papilionaceous, or butterfly-like.



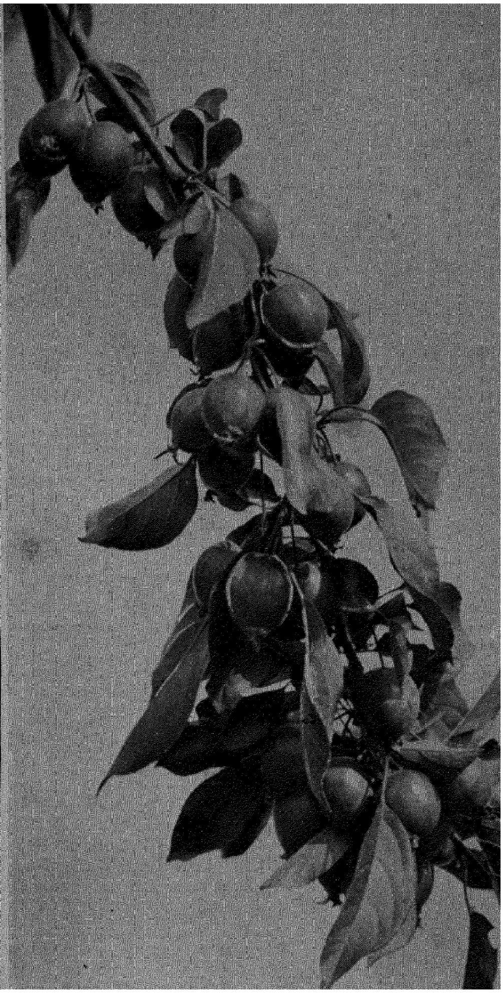
PERIANTH.—The outer ring of floral leaves (sepals) and the inner (petals) together form the perianth of this handsome cactus flower.



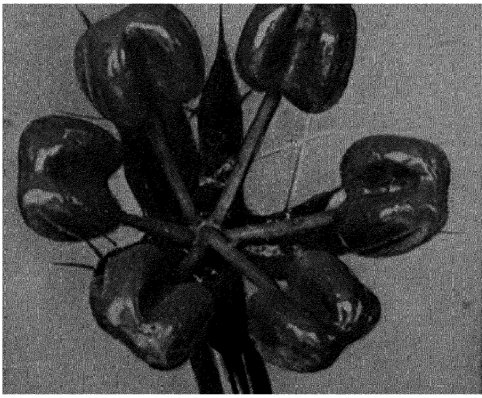
PLICATE.—Leaves such as those of the lady's mantle, shown here, which are folded into fan-like pleats, are described as plicate.



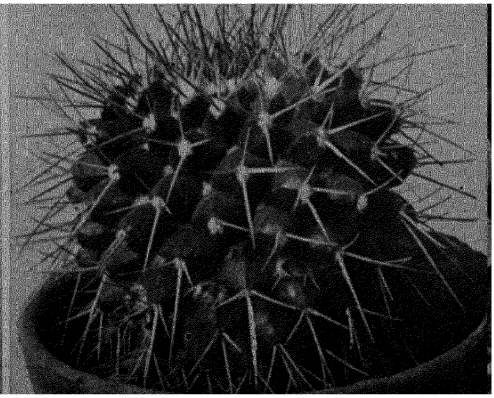
POLLEN.—Pollen-laden wings of a midge which pollinates the arum (top), and a magnified view of part of wing showing pollen-grains.



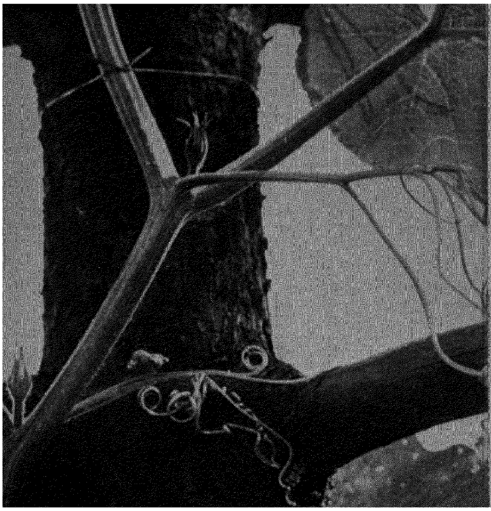
POMIFEROUS.—Any plant bearing apple-like fruit is pomiferous. The illustration shows a fruit-laden branch of the Siberian crab-apple.



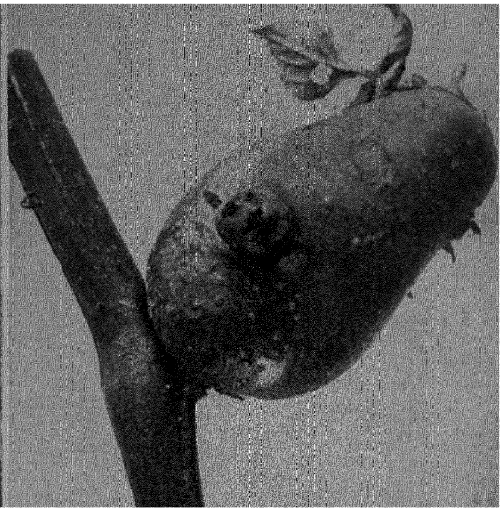
SAC.—Each anther in the male flowers of the oak (shown here) consists of two pollen vessels, or sacs.



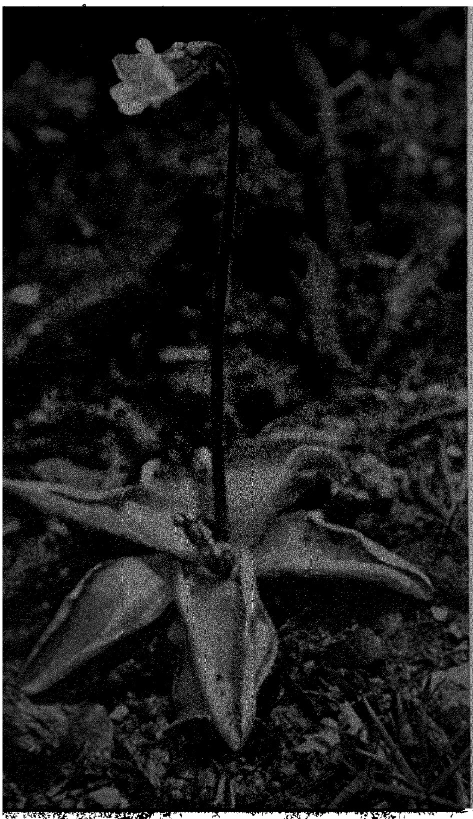
SPINOUS.—The fleshy tubercles of this cactus are armed with spines, and are therefore spinous.



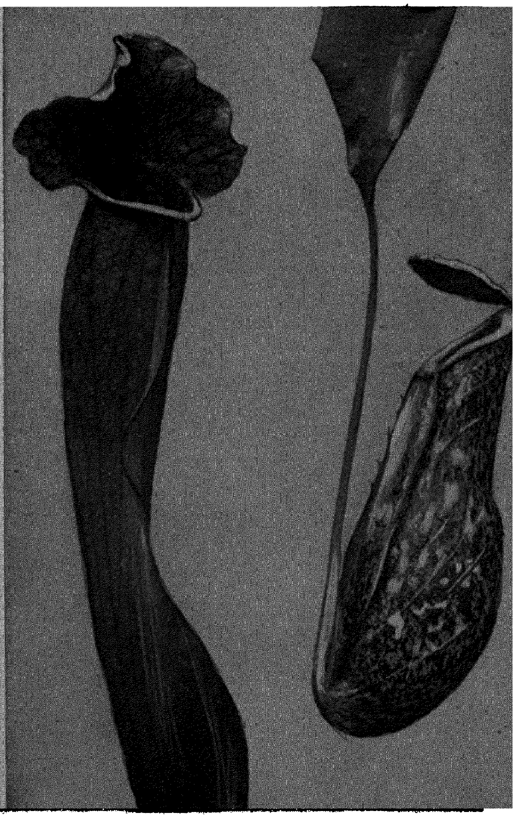
TENDRIL.—By its twining tendrils a plant such as the marrow, shown in the picture, or the sweet-pea attaches itself firmly to a support.



TUBER.—The tuber, from which new plants spring, grows normally underground. In the potato plant shown a tuber has formed on the stem.



UNIAXIAL.—The Butterwort, an insect-catching plant with sticky leaves, has a single unbranched flower stem, and is therefore uniaxial.



VASCULUM.—Insects entrapped by the pitcher-like leaves, or vascula, of Sarracenia and Nepenthes fall into liquid contained in the lower portion.

(*Continued from page* 4728.)

gravity. The tendency of parts or organs of plants to turn towards the centre of the earth through the force of gravity is **geotropism.**

green colouring. The green colouring matter of plants is **chlorophyll.**

groove. A scientific term meaning grooved or fluted, is **sulcate.**

groove. A groove or furrow in the surface of a plant is a **vallecula.**

group. A large group or division of plants sprung from a common stock is a **race.**

—. A name given in botanical classification to a group or a subgenus is **section.**

growing, point. The point at which an embryo begins to grow is the **gemmule.**

—, —. A growing point which arises from a part between the base and apex of a stem is **intercalary.**

—, together. The growing together of certain parts in plants is **concrescence.**

growth. A term used to describe a plant, such as a fern, which grows by additions to the terminal point is **acrogenous.**

—. A name for a plant that grows by developing woody tissue in the interior of the stem is **endogen.**

—. Shoots developed from an internal layer of tissue in the parent plant are **endogenous.**

—. A plant with tissue consisting of bark, wood, and pith, which increases in girth by the growth of wood inside the bark, is an **outside-grower** or **exogen.**

— Shoots or leaves developed directly from a growing point in a plant are **exogenous.**

—. The name given to a form of growth in which a growing point forms between the base and apex, and not at the tip of a stem, is **intercalary growth.**

—, moss-like. The name given to a moss-like gall found on rose-bushes is **bedeguar.**

gum. The name given to an inflammable gummy substance secreted by most plants and exuded from pines and other trees is **resin.**

—. The name of a white or reddish gum-like substance obtained from various Asiatic shrubs of the genus *Astragalus* is **tragacanth.**

gum-resin. The name of a whitish-yellow gum-resin obtained from a north-west African tree is **sandarac.**

—. The name of a Mediterranean species of convolvulus yielding a medicinal gum-resin is **scammony.**

hair. Parts of plants covered with a grey or whitish hair or down are **canescent.**

—. A name given to the hairs on the margins of leaves, etc., is **cilia.**

—. A term used to describe parts of plants which are covered with tufts of hair is **crinite.**

—. A name for the soft, hairy covering found on certain parts of plants is **down.**

—. A term applied to a hairy plant stem is **piliferous.**

—. The surface of a plant covered with long, soft hairs is **pilose** or **pilous.**

—. The name given to a covering of matted, woolly hairs on leaves, stems, seeds, etc., is **tomentum.**

—, forked. The forked hairs which coat certain little dry fruits are **glochidate.**

—, root. A name for a tiny hair on the roots of some plants is **fibril.**

—, short. A name for a short, stiff hair or hair-like scale on a plant is **striga.**

—, soft. The long, soft hairs found on a fruit or flower are **villi.**

—, stinging. A name given to the sharp, stinging hairs on the pods of certain tropical plants, used in medicine, is **cowhage.**

—. *See also under* **down,** *above.*

heart-wood. The name given to the heart-wood of a tree is **duramen.**

helmet-shaped. A term meaning helmet-shaped is **galeate.**

herb, bitter. A name for a herb of the genus *Artemisia*, having bitter, tonic, and aromatic qualities, used in medicine and as a flavouring, is **wormwood.**

heredity. The theory of Mendel relating to the laws of heredity or inherited characteristics in plants, etc., is **Mendelism.**

home, natural. The natural home of a plant is its **habitat.**

honey. Plants producing honey are **melliferous.**

inflorescence. An inflorescence in which the flowers are arranged in grape-like clusters is **botryose.**

—. A flower-head consisting of a cluster of stalkless florets surrounded by an involucre is a **capitulum.**

—. An inflorescence formed of several separate clusters is **compound.**

—. The name given to a raceme in which the stalks of the flowers are of shorter length as they approach the summit, and so the inflorescence has a level, flattish top, is **corymb.**

—. The name given to an inflorescence in which the main axis bears a terminal flower, opening first, and other terminal flowers are borne on lateral branches which in turn subdivide, is **cyme.**

—. A term used to describe a flower-head such as that of the elder, which resembles a cyme, but is not a true cyme, is **cymoid.**

—. A compound inflorescence formed of several clusters of compound flowers is **decomposite.**

—. A name for a ball-shaped cymose inflorescence consisting of stalkless or short-stalked flowers is **glomerule.**

—. A name for an arrangement of the flowers of a plant on short stalks, branching from an axis, as in lilac, is **panicle.**

—. The botanical name for a type of flower-cluster in which the flowers grow singly on pedicels of nearly equal length at intervals along a central stalk is **raceme.**

—. A long, leafless stalk bearing one or more flowers at its top is a **scape.**

—. The term used to describe an inflorescence in which the flowers are arranged on one side of the stem is **secund.**

—. A form of inflorescence which consists of numerous tiny flowers on a fleshy spike, surrounded usually by a spathe, is a **spadix.**

—. An inflorescence in which the flowers are so arranged as to form a spike is **spicate.**

—. A flower-cluster formed of stemless flowers on a common stalk is a **spike.**

—. The name given to a flower-cluster formed by flower stalks of nearly equal length spread out to form a flattish head of flowerlets is **umbel.**

—. An inflorescence having its flowers growing in a row on one side of the stem is **unilateral.**

insect. The name given to a swelling on a plant, especially one caused by insects, is **gall.**

—. Plants which exude a sugary secretion on their leaves for the purpose of attracting ants, etc., are **myrmecophilous.**

—. A name for a plant with jug-shaped leaves used for trapping insects, which are digested in liquid at the bottom, is **pitcher-plant.**

insect-eating. Plants that entrap and feed on insects are **carnivorous.**

joint. A name for a joint of a stem is **node.**

juice. The milky juice of certain plants is **latex.**

—. The watery juice which circulates through the vessels of living plants is **sap.**

knot. A name for a knot on a root or branch is **nodule.**

larch. A name for the American larch is **tamarack.**

late-flowering. A term applied to a plant flowering or developing late in the season is **serotinous.**

latex. Plants which produce a latex are **laticiferous.**

leaf. Leaves growing successively from different sides of the stem are **alternate.**

—. A leaf having its opposite faces or surfaces not alike is **bifacial.**

leaf. The name given to one of a ring of leaves surrounding an inflorescence, or to a leaf on a peduncle from whose axil a flower springs, is **bract.**

—. A leaf that has several blades on a single leaf-stalk is a **compound leaf.**

—. Leaves which fall off at certain seasons are **deciduous.**

—. Leaves in which the base runs down the stem some distance are **decurrent.**

—. Leaves arranged in pairs, successive pairs crossing each other at right angles, are **decussate.**

—. A leaf with inward curved edges, each separated by small, tooth-like projections, is **dentato-sinuate.**

—. Leaves which are produced in two different forms by the same species of plant are **dimorphic.**

—. Leaves which are arranged above each other on an axis in two rows are **distichous.**

—. The back or under surface of a leaf is **dorsal.**

—. Leaves which overlap so that the tip of one lies over the base of another are **incubous.**

—. Trees which retain their leaves throughout the year are **indeciduous.**

—. A leaf having its widest part near the tip is **obverse.**

—. Leaves growing in pairs at the same node with the stem between them are **opposite.**

—. Leaves that turn their edges, instead of their surfaces, in the direction of the sunlight are **paraheliotropic.**

—. A leaf having lateral ribs which branch and usually form lateral leaflets or lobes, as in the plane-tree, is **pedate.**

—. Leaves that are joined at or near the centre to their stalks are **peltate.**

—. A leaf growing about a stem in such a way that it appears to be pierced by the stem is **perfoliate.**

—. A leaf that is joined to the stem of its plant by a little stalk is **petiolate** or **petiolar.**

—. The production of leaves by a plant in unusual numbers or unusual places is **phyllomania.**

—. A leaf having leaflets arranged on each side of a main stalk is **pinnate** or **pinnated.**

—. A leaf consisting of five leaflets is **quinate.**

—. A term used to distinguish a leaf having seven leaflets is **septempartite.**

—. A rounded curve between two lobes of a leaf is a **sinus.**

—. A very small leaf-like outgrowth, or stipule, occurring at the base of the leaflets of a compound leaf is a **stipel.**

—. A small leaf-like outgrowth from a leaf, usually occurring at the base of a leaf-stalk, is a **stipule.**

—. Leaves grouped in whorls of three are arranged **ternately.**

—. A leaf having three leaflets is **trifoliolate.**

—, arrangement. The term for the arrangement of leaves on a plant is **phyllotaxis.**

—, arrow-shaped. The term used to describe arrow-shaped leaves is **sagittate.**

—, axe-shaped. Leaves which are hatchet- or axe-shaped are **dolabriform.**

—, axis. The axis of a pinnate leaf is a **rachis.**

—, banded. Leaves which are marked with dark bands of colour running parallel to the edges are **zoned.**

—, blade. The blade of a leaf is a **lamina.**

—, blunt. A leaf having a blunt or rounded form is **obtuse.**

—, coiled. Leaves that are rolled up from tip to base in the bud are **circinate.**

—, compound. A leaf which is divided into leaflets which are themselves again divided is **decomposite** or **decompound.**

—, —. The name given to one of the small parts which make up a compound leaf is **leaflet.**

leaf, compound. A name for the little stalk of each leaflet in a compound leaf is **petiolule.**

—, —. A compound leaf composed of three leaflets is **ternate.**

—, divided. A leaf having a single deep notch or cleft is **bifid.**

—, —. A leaf divided nearly to its base into two parts is **bipartite.**

—, —. A leaf divided by clefts into many parts is **multifid.**

—, —. Leaves separated into three by deep clefts are **trifid.**

—, —. A leaf divided almost to the base into three segments is **tripartite.**

—, downy. Leaves, etc., covered with down are **pubescent.**

—, extra. The name given to an extra leaf, usually a dwarfed one, growing between two ordinary leaves is **interleaf.**

—, finger-like. Leaves that branch out into distinct leaves or finger-like lobes are **digitate.**

—, —. Leaves that branch out into finger-like lobes which are pinnate, or again divided, are **digitato-pinnate.**

—, five-ribbed. A leaf having five ribs is **quinque-costate.**

—, fleshy. Plants having thick fleshy stems and leaves are **succulent.**

—, floating. A naturally floating leaf, as that of the water-lily, is **natant.**

—, folding. A plant whose leaves fold up or droop at night is **nyctitropic.**

—, —. A leaf which is folded like a fan when in the bud is **plicate** or **plicated.**

—, four-lobed. A leaf which is divided into four lobes is **quadrifid.**

—, hairless. A leaf entirely free from hair or down is **glabrous.**

—, hairy. The surface of a leaf or stem that is covered with short, stiff hairs is **strigose** or **strigous.**

—, —. Leaves, etc., that have a woolly, hairy covering are **tomentose.**

—, hand-shaped. A leaf shaped like a hand with the fingers outspread is **palmate.**

—, heart-shaped. Leaves which are heart-shaped are **cordate.**

—, inwardly rolled. Leaves which have one part rolled on another are **convolute.**

—, juicy. Plants having thick, juicy stems and leaves are **succulent.**

—, kidney-shaped. The term used to describe a kidney-shaped leaf is **reniform.**

—, lance-shaped. Leaves shaped like a lance-head are **lanceolate.**

—, lobed. Leaves, such as those of the oak, characterized by possessing lobes, are **lobate.**

—, marking. A leaf marked with transparent dots is **perforate.**

—, narrow. A plant having narrow leaves is **angustifoliate.**

—, needle-shaped. A needle-shaped leaf is **acicular.**

—, notched. A leaf or petal having a notch at the tip is **emarginate.**

—, pairs. Leaves produced in pairs from the same node are **geminate.**

—, point. The point of a leaf is the **cusp.**

—, —. A name for a sharp-pointed part of a leaf is **mucro.**

—, pointed. A leaf ending in a sharp point is **mucronate.**

—, rib. The main rib running through the central part of a leaf is the **midrib.**

—, —. A name for a rib in a leaf is **vein.**

—, rounded division. A rounded division of a leaf is a **lobe.**

—, seed. The seed-leaf of a plant is a **cotyledon.**

—, —. A general name for a flowering plant which, when it emerges from the seed, has two cotyledons or seed-leaves is **dicotyledon.**

leaf, seed. A general name for a flowering plant which, when it emerges from the seed, has but one cotyledon or seed-leaf is **monocotyledon.**

—, sheathing. A sheathing leaf or pair of leaves enclosing one or more flowers is a **spathe.**

—, shedding. The shedding of their leaves by plants is **defoliation.**

—, sickle-shaped. A leaf shaped like a sickle is **falcate.**

—, smoke-coloured. Leaves that have the greyish-brown colour of smoke are said to be **fumose.**

—, spear-shaped. A term used to describe spear-shaped leaves is **hastate.**

—, speckled. A speckled leaf is **guttate.**

—, spotted. Leaves which bear spots are **maculate.**

—, —. A leaf marked with spots or lines of a different colour is **notate.**

—, stalkless. A leaf that has no stalk but clasps the stem is **amplexicaul.**

—, —. A leaf attached directly by the base and having no stalk is **sessile.**

—, tissue. The name given to the soft inner tissue of a leaf is **mesophyll.**

—, toothed. A crenate leaf in which the rounded edges, or crenations, are themselves notched or indented is **bicrenate.**

—, —. A leaf which has the margin indented or cut up into small rounded curves is **crenate.**

—, —. Leaves having their crenations not quite rounded, but triangular in shape, are **crenato-dentate.**

—, —. Leaves which have their margins indented with tiny tooth-like marks are **dentate.**

—, —. The edges of leaves in which the saw-like indentations are very small are **denticular** or **denticulate.**

—, —. A leaf having segmented edges like the teeth of a comb is **pectinate.**

—, —. The term used to describe leaves toothed like a saw is **runcinate.**

—, unsymmetrical. A leaf in which the part on one side of the midrib is larger than the other is **inequilateral.**

—, —. A term used to describe a leaf the two halves of which are unsymmetrical in shape or size is **oblique.**

—, vein. A leaf in which the veins divide into branches like a two-pronged fork is **furcate.**

—, —. Names for the principal vein of a leaf are **nervure** and **rib.**

—, —. The arrangement of veins in a leaf is its **venation.**

—, velvety. Leaves having a velvety surface are **velutinous.**

—, wavy-edged. A leaf having a somewhat wavy, uneven, or sinuous edge is **repand.**

—, —. A leaf with a wavy edge is **sinuate.**

—, yellowish. Leaves that are yellowish or turning yellow are **flavescent.**

—. *See also under* **plant,** *below.*

leaf-bud. A name for the leaf-bud of certain mosses and liverworts is **gemma.**

—. The way in which young leaves are arranged in the leaf-bud is **prefoliation.**

—. The form taken by young leaves in the leaf-bud is **vernation.**

—, *See also under* **vernation,** *below.*

leaflet. A pinnate leaf in which the leaflets themselves are pinnate, as in the acacia, is twice pinnate, or **bipinnate.**

—. One of the leaflets making up a compound flower is a **foliole.**

—. A name for the little stalk of each leaflet in a compound leaf is **petiolule.**

—. A name for a single leaflet of a pinnate leaf is **pinna.**

—. A compound leaf having leaflets arranged on opposite sides of a stalk is **pinnate.**

—, A name for each of the secondary leaflets forming a pinnate leaf is **pinnule.**

leaflet. Leaflets which are furnished with small stipules, or leaf-like outgrowths from their bases, are **stipellate.**

leaf-like organ. The name given to the leaf-like organ in ferns and other cryptogams is **frond.**

leaf-stalk. The angle between a leaf-stalk and the stem is the **axil.**

leafy axis. Plants which have no leafy axis are **thalloid.**

lens. A part shaped like a lens is **lentoid.**

lichen. The spore-case or fructification of a lichen or a seaweed is an **apothecium.**

—. Lichens that produce no apothecium are **athalamous.**

—. The name given to a kind of lichen which grows on tree-trunks is **lungwort.**

lid. A name for a structure resembling a lid is **operculum.**

life, length. Plants that rise from seed, flower, and die in the same year are **annual.**

—, —. Plants that live for two seasons, springing from seed in one, and flowering and dying in the second, are **biennial.**

—, —. Plants that live several years and flower more than once are **perennial.**

light. Plants that turn or bend away from a strong light are **aphellotropic,** and this tendency is **aphellotropism.**

—. The tendency of plants to spread their leaves at right angles to the direction of light rays is **diaheliotropism.**

—. The turning of plants towards light is **heliotropism.**

—. The tendency of a plant to turn so that the edges of its leaves are presented to the light is **paraheliotropism.**

liverwort. Liverworts and true mosses are **Bryophyta.**

madder. The name of a red colouring matter, obtained originally from the madder plant, and now prepared chemically, is **purpurin.**

mallow. A plant belonging to the genus *Malva,* containing the mallows, or to the mallow family, Malvaceae, is **malvaceous.**

mark, attachment. A name for the mark of attachment of a leaf or bud is **cicatrice.**

marking. A leaf with a markihg of spots or lines of a different colour is **notate.**

moisture. The inclination of plants or their members to turn towards or away from moisture is **hydrotropism.**

—. A part of a plant which contracts or expands in the presence of moisture is **hygroscopic.**

—. The exhalation of excess moisture by the leaves of a plant is **transpiration.**

—. *See also under* **climate,** *above.*

monocotyledon. A monocotyledon which has net-veined instead of parallel-veined leaves is a **dictyogen.**

moss. Names for the science of mosses are **bryology** and **muscology.**

—. True mosses and liverworts are **Bryophyta.**

—. Terms used to describe the hood-like capsules of certain mosses are **cucullate** and **cuculliform.**

—. Those mosses that bear fruit on the sides of their stems are **pleurocarpous.**

—. A name for an underground shoot in mosses, that develops leaves, is **stolon.**

moss-like. Plants resembling the true mosses are **muscoid.**

motion. A vegetable cell capable of motion through a fluid, or a plant stem capable of twining round objects, is **motile.**

movement. The circular movement of the growing tips of plants is **circumnutation.**

—. *See also under* **gravity** *and* **light,** *above.*

mulberry. The name given to a kind of fruit, such as the mulberry, consisting of an aggregation of many small fruits is **collective fruit.**

—. The name of a tough kind of paper made from the bark of the paper-mulberry is **tapa.**

mushroom. A name for the cap of a mushroom or similar fungus is **pileus.**

—. The name given to fibrous material, containing filaments of mycelium, used to propagate mushrooms is **spawn.**

mustard. The name given to the long dry seed-pod of mustard and other cruciferous plants is **siliqua.**

native. Plants native to a region are **indigenous.**

nut. A name for the marking-nut tree is **Malacca-bean.**

—. The name of a substance obtained from the hardened kernels of the corozo nut is **vegetable ivory.**

nut-bearing. A plant bearing nuts is **nuciferous.**

nut-shaped. A nut-shaped part of a plant is **nuciform.**

oak, evergreen. The name given to a small evergreen oak on which the kermes insect feeds is **kermes oak.**

oil-tube. A longitudinal oil-containing canal in the fruit of certain umbelliferous plants is a **vitta.**

one-celled. The name of a genus of simple one-celled plant organisms, masses of which are visible as green films on tree-trunks, etc., is **Protococcus.**

onion. The name of a plant of the onion family, resembling garlic but with a milder flavour, is **shallot.**

opening. The bursting open of an anther or a seed-vessel when ripe to liberate its contents is **dehiscence.**

orange. A name for an oily essence distilled from flowers of the Seville orange tree and used in perfumery is **neroli.**

orchid. An orchid in which the labellum or lip-petal is lacking is **achilous.**

—. The name given to an elastic stalk connecting a mass of pollen grains with the sac in some orchids is **caudicle.**

outgrowth. An unnatural outgrowth on a plant is an **excrescence.**

—. A natural outgrowth or projection is a **process.**

—, sharp-pointed. The name given to a sharp-pointed projection springing from the bark of a plant and not from the wood is **prickle.**

—, —. A stiff, sharply-pointed outgrowth springing from the wood of a plant is a **spine** or **thorn.**

ovary. An ovary or pistil composed of one or more separate carpels is **apocarpous.**

—. Names given to a partition or dividing wall of an ovary are **dissepiment** and **septum.**

—. A name for the cavity enclosed by the walls or partitions of an ovary is **loculus.**

—. An ovary consisting of several loculi separated by dissepiments or partitions is **multilocular.**

—. The name of the envelope enclosing the ripened ovary of a plant is **pericarp.**

—. A name for the narrowed extension of the ovary which supports the stigma in many flowers is **style.**

—. An ovary consisting of several carpels united by their inner edges is **syncarpous.**

—. Plants in which the ovary consists of a single compartment or loculus are **unilocular.**

ovule. A name for the chamber containing the ovules, which develop into seeds, situated at the base of the pistil of a flower is **ovary.**

—. An ovule or seed-embryo borne on the walls of a seed pod, as in the pea, is a **parietal ovule.**

—. A name for the part of a seed vessel to which the ovules are attached is **placenta.**

oxygen. The name given to the process by which a plant absorbs oxygen and gives off carbon dioxide is **respiration.**

palm. The name given to a kind of tropical American palm is **macaw-tree.**

—. The name of a kind of starch used as food and prepared from the soft inner part of the trunk of certain palms is **sago.**

palm. The name of a handsome palm tree of Ceylon and the Malabar coast, which attains a height of one hundred feet and is crowned by a huge tuft of wide fan-shaped leaves, is **talipot.**

—. The name given to a Brazilian palm, or to its fibre, used for cordage, etc., is **tucum.**

—, climbing. The name given to kinds of climbing palms with pliable jointed stems is **rattan.**

parasite. The plant upon which another lives as a parasite is the latter's **host.**

partition. Names given to a partition or dividing wall of an ovary are **dissepiment** and **septum.**

—. A space enclosed between partitions is **interseptal.**

partnership. A name for a kind of partnership in which different organisms live together, each supplying some needs of the other, is **symbiosis.**

perianth. Flowers in which the leaves of the perianth are separate are **polyphyllous.**

pericarp. The inner shell or wall of a pericarp or seed-vessel is the **endocarp.**

—. The outer skin of a pericarp or seed-vessel is the **epicarp.**

petal. A flower without petals or corolla is **apetalous.**

—. The inner whorl of petals of a flower is the **corolla.**

—. Flower petals which are shaped like a hood are **cucullate.**

—. A petal having a deep notch at its lip is **emarginate.**

—. A corolla in which the petals are unequal in size and shape is **irregular.**

—. A part of a flower placed opposite to a petal is **oppositipetalous.**

—. Flowers having petals are **petalous.**

—. A corolla in which the petals are equal in size and shape is **regular.**

—, flat. Flowers having flat petals are **planipetalous.**

—, lip-like. The lower lip-like petal of an orchid or similar flower is a **labellum.**

—, —. A name given to the lower lip-like petal of flowers belonging to the order Labiatae is **labium.**

—, —. A flower having two lip-like petals is **bilabiate.**

—, pea. The name given to the large upper petal of the pea and other papilionaceous flowers is **vexillum.**

—, projection. A name for a tubular projection on a petal or a corolla is **spur.**

—, tubular. Plants having their petals joined into one piece to form a kind of tube, as in primroses, are **monopetalous.**

—. *See also under* **flower,** *above.*

pine, New Zealand. The name of a tall cone-bearing forest tree of New Zealand and Queensland is **kauri.**

pineapple. A name for a very delicate and costly fabric woven from fibres of the pineapple leaf is **pina.**

pistil. A pistil or ovary consisting of one or more separate carpels is **apocarpous.**

—. A simple pistil, or one of the divisions of a compound pistil, is a **carpel.**

—. Plants in which the pistils and stamens of their flowers mature at different times are **dichogamous.**

—. Flowers which have pistils only, or stamens only, are **diclinous.**

—. Plants bearing flowers having pistils on one individual and flowers having stamens on another are **dioecious.**

—. Plants in which some flowers have only stamens, some only pistils, and others have both pistils and stamens, are **heteroclinous** or **polygamous.**

—. A flower with pistil only, or with stamens only, is **imperfect.**

—. The pistil of a flower which consists of a single simple carpel, as in the garden pea, is **monocarpellary.**

—. A flower having both pistil and stamens on the same receptacle is **monoclinous.**

pistil. Plants having staminate and pistillate flowers on the same individual are **monoecious.**

—. The chamber at the base of the pistil of a flower, containing the ovules which develop into seeds, is the **ovary.**

—. A flower having both pistil and stamens in a developed state is **perfect.**

—. Flowers having pistils are **pistillate, pistilliferous,** or **pistilline.**

—. A pistil having two or more carpels is **polycarpellary.**

—. A flower in which the pistil matures before the stamens is **proterogynous.**

— A name for the part of a pistil which absorbs the pollen shed upon it is **stigma.**

—. An ovary or pistil consisting of several carpels united by their inner edges is **syncarpous.**

—. *See also under* **stamen,** *below.*

pith. The scientific name for the pith or central tissue of plant stems, etc., is **medulla.**

plant. A plant which springs from seed, flowers, and dies in the same year is an **annual.**

—. A plant which springs from seed in one year and flowers and dies in the next year is a **biennial.**

—. A general name for a flowering plant which has two cotyledons or seed-leaves on emerging from the seed is **dicotyledon.**

— A plant growing on but not usually fed by another is an **epiphyte.**

—. The name given to a class of plants with seeds unprotected by seed-vessels is **gymnosperms.**

—. A plant which has not a woody stem and which dies down to the ground after flowering is a **herb.**

—. A term used to describe a plant which grows on stony ground is **lapidose.**

—. A general name for a plant which thrives under conditions which are neither wet nor dry is **mesophyte.**

—. A general name for a flowering plant which has but one cotyledon or seed-leaf on emerging from the seed is **monocotyledon.**

—. A name for a plant living on or in another organism, and drawing its food directly from it, is **parasite.**

—. A plant that lives for more than two years is a **perennial.**

— Plants that have leaves and flowers appearing at the same time are **synanthous.**

—, abnormal. A name for a plant which differs notably from the normal type is **sport.**

—, broad-leaved. Broad-leaved plants are **latifoliate.**

—, classification. *See under* **classification,** *above.*

—, colour. Plants which are characterized by or tend towards two of the primary colours, but not the third, are **dichromatic.**

—, dissection. A flower dissected or separated into its component parts, as to display its structure, is **disarticulate.**

—, The cutting up or dissecting of plants in order to examine their form and construction under the microscope is **phytotomy.**

—, distribution. A branch of botany dealing with plants in regard to their distribution over the earth's surface is **geobotany.**

—, flowering. A name for a flowering plant, as a member of one of the two great divisions of the vegetable kingdom, is **phanerogam.**

—, flowerless. The name given to a flowerless plant or cryptogam of the mushroom or mould group, which is devoid of chlorophyll and procures its nourishment from other plants and from animal substances, is **fungus.**

—, fossil. A name for the study of extinct and fossil plants is **palaeobotany.**

—, leaf. A plant which has its leaves opposite each other on the stem is **adversifoliate.**

—, —. A term applied to a plant with short leaves is **brevifoliate.**

plant, leaf. Plants in which the flowers or leaves take two or more different forms are **heteromorphic.**

—, —. Plants with different kinds of leaves on the same stem are **heterophyllous.**

—, —. A plant having many leaves is **myriophyllous.**

—, —. A plant having blunt or rounded leaves is **obtusifoliate.**

—, —. Plants with rounded leaves are **rotundifoliate.**

—, —. A plant with leaves composed of three leaflets is a **trefoil.**

—, —. A plant having three leaves or leaf-like processes is **trifoliate.**

—, —. *See also under* **leaf,** *above.*

—, leaf-bearing. A plant bearing leaves is **foliaceous, foliar,** or **foliate.**

—, leafless. A plant that is naturally leafless is **aphyllous.**

—, mountain. A plant growing in mountainous regions is a **montane plant.**

—, naturalized. A plant not native to a region but naturalized in it is a **denizen.**

—, reproductive parts. A term applied to the reproductive parts of a plant, especially of ferns and mosses, is **fructification.**

—, soft parts. A name for the tissue composing the softer parts of plants is **parenchyma.**

—, stemless. Plants that have their leaves so close to the roots as to appear without a stem are **acauline** or **acaulescent.**

—, swelling. A rounded swelling on some part of a plant is a **gibbosity.**

—, trailing. Plants which trail along the ground are **procumbent.**

plant-life. A term for the vegetation or plant life occurring in a particular region or at a particular period is **flora**

—. A name for the origin and development of plant life, and for the history of this, is **phytogenesis** or **phytogeny.**

pod. A pod divided across into two compartments, each containing one seed, is a **lomentum.**

pollen. The elastic stalk connecting a mass of pollen with the pollen sac in certain orchids is a **caudicle.**

—. The transference of the pollen of one plant to the stigma of another is **fertilization.**

—. The pollen-bearing organ of a flower, comprising filament and anther, is the **stamen.**

—. A name for the cellular surface at the apex of a flower pistil, which absorbs pollen shed upon it, is **stigma.**

poplar. The name given to a hybrid poplar of which the branches grow upwards at a small angle to the trunk is **Lombardy poplar.**

poppy. A name for an acid derived from the poppy is **meconic acid.**

—. The name of a drug obtained from the juice of the unripe seed-cases of the poppy is **opium.**

—. A plant allied to or resembling the poppy is **papaverous.**

pore. The name given to a lens-shaped pore in the bark of a plant is **lenticel.**

—. A name for each of the minute openings, resembling pores, in the outer cell layer of leaves and other parts of plants is **stoma.**

prickle. A name for a prickle of a plant is **aculeus.**

prickly. A botanical term meaning prickly is **aculeate.**

—. A plant armed with rough points or prickles is **muricate.**

projection, tubular. A name for a tubular projection on a petal or a corolla is **spur.**

quality, distinguishing. A name for a quality which distinguishes one species from another is **differentia.**

receptacle, floral. Names given to the floral receptacle of a flower are **thalamus** and **torus.**

regularity. A plant which, contrary to its normal form, has regular flowers is **peloriate** or **peloric.**

—. A name for regularity in the number of stamens, petals, sepals, etc., of a flower is **symmetry.**

resin. The name of an odorous resin exuded from the leaves and twigs of *Cistus* plants is **ladanum.**

—. The name of a soft resin which oozes from several trees of the pine and fir kind, given also to a spirit or oil distilled from this, is **turpentine.**

rib. The main rib running through the central part of a leaf is the **midrib.**

ring. A name for a ring of petals, sepals, leaves, or other plant parts springing from the same level on the stem of a plant is **whorl.**

—, growth. The ring-like marking on the cross section of a tree-trunk, which denotes the age of the tree, is **annulation.**

river. Plants that live in rivers are **fluviatile.**

—. Plants which grow naturally beside a river or other water-course are **riparian.**

rocks. A name used to describe lichens which grow on rocks is **saxicolous.**

rod-like. A name given to a minute rod-like fungus is **bacillus.**

root. Roots which grow from the stem of a plant and not from the radicle of the embryo are **adventitious.**

—. A root which springs from the stem of a plant and does not reach the ground is an **aerial root.**

—. A plant growing entirely in the air, whose root does not touch the soil, is an **aerophyte.**

—. A root composed of numerous separate fibres is **fibrous.**

—. A part springing from or close to the root of a plant is **radical.**

—. A name for a trailing or prostrate branch that takes root at the tip and produces another plant is **stolon.**

—. The main root of a plant which goes straight downwards some distance is the **tap-root.**

—. A root swollen and containing a reserve supply of food substances for the plant, but not bearing buds, is a **tuberous root.**

—, aerial. The name given to the sheath of an aerial root, such as that of the tree orchid, is **velamen.**

—, knotty. A root or other plant part that has numbers of little knots on it is **nodulose** or **nodulous.**

—, nodule. The name given to each of the small tubers or nodules on the roots of leguminous plants is **tubercle.**

—, turning. The tendency of the roots of plants to turn towards the centre of the earth is **geotropism.**

—, turnip-shaped. Roots that are rounded and large above and more slender below, like a turnip, are **napiform.**

rootless. A plant devoid of a true root, stem, or leaves is a **thallus.**

rough. Plants with rough wrinkled bark or stem are **rugose.**

rounded. A term used to describe parts of plants which have a rounded apex or head is **capitate.**

runner. Plants producing runners or trailing shoots are **sarmentose.**

rush. A name for the water rush with triangular flowering stems, from which the ancients made writing material, is **papyrus.**

rye. The name given to a disease in rye and other grasses caused by the presence of a fungus is **ergot.**

salad plant. A term used to describe plants that can be eaten raw, or used for salads, is **acetarious.**

sap-wood. The name given to the sap-wood of a tree is **alburnum.**

saw-like. The name given to a saw-like edge or part is **serra.**

scale. Scales or bracts which overlap like the tiles of a roof are **imbricate.**

scale. A name for the chaffy scale or bract at the base of florets in composite flowers is **palea.**

—. A scale which protects or forms part of the covering of a plant is a **squama.**

scaly. Those parts of plants having rough projecting scales are **squamose.**

seal. A part marked as with a seal is **sigillate.**

seaweed. A seaweed or fresh-water plant of like nature is an **alga.**

—. The name of a variety of seaweed eaten as a table vegetable in Scotland and Ireland is **dulse.**

—. A name for a kind of coral-like seaweed having the power of secreting lime is **nullipore.**

secretion. The name given to a sticky secretion from certain plants which hardens on drying and is usually soluble in water and not in alcohol is **gum.**

—. The name given to an oily secretion from certain plants which is usually soluble in alcohol and not in water is **resin.**

seed. A name given to the feathery seeds of plants like the thistle, dandelion, and groundsel is **arrowlets.**

—. Seeds having a tough, bark-like covering are **corticate.**

—. A term used to describe seeds which have two wing-like appendages is **dipterous.**

—. The undeveloped young plant in the seed is the **embryo.**

—. The name given to a stalk fastening a seed to its seed-pod is **funicle.**

—. The scar upon a seed where it was attached to the ovary is a **hilum.**

—. A name for the seed-germ in the ovary of a plant, developing into a seed after fertilization, is **ovule.**

—. A name for the hair-like or feathery calyx developed after flowering, and persisting as an appendage on the seeds of many composite flowers, is **pappus.**

—. A name for a downy tuft on the seeds of some plants by which they are carried by the wind is **parachute.**

—. A name for the mass of albumen surrounding the embryo-sac in some seeds is **perisperm.**

—. That part of the flower where the seeds are fertilized and developed, consisting when complete of ovary, stigma, and style, is the **pistil.**

—. A name for the beginning of a plant shoot or stem in a seed is **plumule.**

—. The production and dispersion of seeds by plants is **semination.**

—, covering. The covering or husk of a seed is the **episperm** or **testa.**

—, protein granule. The name given to a protein granule found in the cells of ripening seeds is **aleurone.**

seed-leaf. A term sometimes used to distinguish plants without distinct cotyledons or seed-leaves is **acotyledonous.**

—. Each of the seed-leaves of a plant is a **cotyledon.**

—. A plant which has two seed-leaves or cotyledons is a **dicotyledon.**

—. A plant which has a single seed-leaf or cotyledon is a **monocotyledon.**

—. Plants in which the seed-leaves are joined together are **syncotyledonous.**

seedless. Fruits that have no seeds are **aspermous.**

seed-pod. A term used to describe seed-pods when long and knobbed, resembling a chain of beads, is **torulose.**

seed-vessel. A name for the rounded pod, or seed-vessel of the flax-plant or cotton-plant is **boll.**

—. A seed-vessel which is dry when ripe and liberates the seeds by splitting open is a **capsule.**

—. Seed-vessels which split open when ripe to discharge their seeds are **dehiscent.**

seed-vessel. The name given to a seed-vessel consisting of a single carpel which bursts open when ripe along one suture is **follicle.**

—. A ripe seed-vessel with its contents and the parts adhering to it is a **fruit.**

—. Seed-vessels which do not split open to set free the seeds are **indehiscent.**

—. A name for the seed-vessel of a flower is **pericarp.**

—. A name for the part of the seed-vessel of a flower to which the ovules are attached is **placenta.**

—. The central process left in a dehiscent seed-vessel after it has opened and the valves have fallen is a **replum.**

—. A term used to describe seed-vessels which burst with a jagged irregular split is **ruptile.**

—. *See also under* **fruit,** *above.*

sepal. Flowers in which the sepals are free or unconnected are **chorisepalous** or **polysepalous.**

—. A sepal doing duty as a petal is **petaloid** or **petaline.**

—. Sepals furnished with stem-like supports are **stipitate.**

sex. Plants in which either male or female flowers are borne on an individual but not those of both sexes are **dioecious.**

—. Flowers which bear pistils and not stamens are **female.**

—. Flowers bearing organs of both sexes (pistils and stamens) are **hermaphrodite.**

—. A plant with flowers or florets sexually different is **heterogamous.**

—. Flowers which bear stamens and not pistils are **male.**

—. Plants in which both male and female flowers are borne on the same individual are **monoecious.**

—. A plant bearing flowers destitute either of pistils or stamens is **unisexual.**

shade. Shade-loving plants which turn away from sunlight are **heliophobic.**

sheath. The name given to a sheath-like organ or covering is **theca.**

shield-like. A name for a shield-like scale or bract is **pelta.**

shoot. A name for a shoot or slender stem of climbing plants is **bine.**

—. The name given to a type of lateral shoot in some plants which carries on the growth when a flower forms at the apex of a main shoot is **innovation shoot.**

—, underground. A root-like underground shoot growing horizontally is a **rhizome.**

—, —. A name for an underground shoot that develops roots is **stolon.**

shrub. The name of a winter-flowering evergreen shrub found in the south of Europe is **laurustinus.**

—, hop-like. The name of an American shrub of which the leaves and fruit smell like hops is **hop-tree.**

—, Mediterranean. The name of an evergreen Mediterranean shrub with feathery branches and dense spikes of white or pink flowers is **tamarisk.**

—, Polynesian. The name of a Polynesian shrub of the pepper family from which an intoxicating drink is prepared is **kava.**

sieve-like. A term meaning sieve-like or perforated with many small holes is **cribriform.**

skin. The outer layer of skin which covers the surface of plants is the **cuticle.**

—. The name given to the skin of plants is **epidermis.**

—. The name given to pore-like openings in the skin of leaves is **stomata.**

sleep-movement. A name for the sleep-movements of plants, when the leaves fold into a night-position, is **nyctitropism.**

species. A quality which distinguishes one species of a genus from the other species of the same genus is **differentia.**

species. A name for a new and permanent species suddenly produced by a plant is **mutant.**

—. The name for the method by which new species of plants and animals arise, according to the theories of Darwin and Wallace, is **Natural Selection.**

—. Two species connected by common characters are **osculant.**

—, change. A name given to a sudden change of a plant into a new and permanent species is **mutation.**

—, evolution. A name for the evolution of a species, type, or group and for the history of this is **phylogenesis.**

—, origin. A name for the origin of species of plants and animals and for the study of this is **phylogeny.**

specimens. A name for a collection of dried specimens of plants, or the place in which these are kept, is **herbarium.**

spine. Spines or awns having soft or blunt points are **hebetate.**

—. A name given to a tiny spine is **spinule.**

spore. A spore-bearing organ which is covered by a membrane is **angiocarpous.**

—. A name for an elastic filament attached to the spore of the horsetail and other plants is an **elater.**

—. The inner coat of a spore is the **endospore.**

—. A spore-bearing organ which is not covered by a membrane is **gymnocarpous.**

—. Plants in which two kinds of spores are produced are **heterosporous.**

—. The name given to the larger kind of spore produced in certain heterosporous cryptogams is **macrospore.**

—. The name given to the cell in which a macrospore develops is **macrosporangium.**

—. The name given to the cell in which a microspore develops is **microsporangium.**

—. The name given to the smaller type of spore produced in certain heterosporous cryptogams is **microspore.**

—. The name given to the cell or vessel in which a spore develops is **sporangium.**

—. The name given to a tiny spore is **sporule.**

—. The process of producing spores is **sporulation.**

—. A spore capable of independent motion, produced generally by means of hair-like filaments or cilia, is a **zoospore.**

spore-bearing. Plants that bear spores are **sporuliferous**

spore-case. A name for the capsule or hood-like covering enclosing the spores of mosses is **calyptra.**

—. The thin membrane which covers the spore-cases of some ferns is an **indusium.**

—. A name given to the lens-shaped spore-cases of some fungi is **lenticulae.**

—. A cluster of spore cases is a **sora.**

spot. A part marked with points, dots, or spots is **punctate.**

spreading. Spreading or expanding parts of a plant are **patulous.**

spurge. The name given to an orange dye-stuff obtained from an East Indian tree of the spurge family is **kamala.**

stalk. The name given to a little stalk growing from the neck of a root before any leaf appears is **caulicle.**

—. The name given to an enlarged part of the stalk beneath the capsule in some mosses is **hypophysis.**

—. A name for one of the small stalks joining a flower cluster, etc., to the main stalk is **pedicel.**

—. A main flower stalk is a **peduncle.**

—. A leaf stalk is a **petiole.**

—. The central stalk on which a flower head grows is a **rachis.**

—. The name given to the expanded portion of a flower stalk, upon which the flower cluster is borne, is **receptacle.**

stalk. A botanical name for a stalk, stem, or stem-like support is **stipe.**

stamen. That part of a stamen which contains the pollen is the **anther.**

—. A flower having its stamens grouped together in two bundles is **diadelphous.**

—. Plants in which the stamens and pistils of their flowers mature at different times are **dichogamous.**

—. Flowers in which there are two long and two short stamens are **didynamous.**

—. Plants bearing flowers having stamens on one individual and flowers having pistils on another are **dioecious.**

—. Stamens which are attached to the petals of a flower are **epipetalous.**

—. The part of a stamen supporting the anther is the **filament.**

—. Stamens which spring from below the base of the ovary are **hypogynous.**

—. A flower bearing stamens only or pistil only is **imperfect.**

—. Stamens when they number more than twenty are **indefinite.**

—. A plant in which the thread-like stems or filaments of the stamens are united in one bundle, as in mallows, is **monadelphous.**

—. A flower having but one stamen is **monandrous.**

—. Plants bearing flowers with stamens and flowers with pistils on the same individual are **monoecious.**

—. A flower having both stamens and pistils in a developed state is **perfect.**

—. A name for one of the clusters of stamens in diadelphous or polyadelphous flowers is **phalanx.**

—. Flowers having the stamens united in three or more bundles are **polyadelphous.**

—. Flowers having many free stamens are **polyandrous.**

—. Plants in which some flowers have only stamens, some only pistils, and others both stamens and pistils are **polygamous.**

—. A flower in which the stamens mature before the pistil is **proterandrous.**

—. Flowers bearing stamens but no pistils are **staminiferous** or **staminate.**

—. *See also under* **pistil,** *above.*

starch. The name of a starchy food prepared from the tubers of several species of *Canna* is **tous-les-mois.**

stem. The angle between the stem and leaf-stalk is the **axil.**

—. Stems of plants which lie or trail along the ground are **decumbent.**

—. A stem or stalk, as of a potato or a cereal, is a **haulm.**

—. Plants having woody stems are **ligneous.**

—. A name for a joint of a stem is **node.**

—. A stem which lies flat on the ground without throwing off rootlets is **procumbent.**

—. A creeping stem thrown out by a plant and tending to take root is a **runner.**

—. The surface of a stem or leaf that is covered with short, stiff hairs is **strigose.**

—. An organ or part growing at the end of a stem, etc., is **terminal.**

—, **bare.** A name for the bare stretch of a stem between the nodes is **internode.**

—, **bending.** A name given to the bending of a stem in search of light or support is **nutation.**

—, **flattening.** The name given to a malformation in which the stem becomes flattened or ribbon-like in form is **fasciation.**

—, **hairy.** The hairy stems of certain plants, such as chickweed, are **piliferous.**

—, **hollow.** A hollow stem having thickened joints or nodes is a **culm.**

—, **juicy.** Plants having thick, juicy stems and leaves are **succulent.**

stem, underground. The name given to a somewhat spherical underground enlargement of a **stem,** throwing out roots, is **bulb.**

—, —. A name given to the enlarged bulb-like underground stem of plants such as the crocus is **corm.**

—, —. The name given to a short thickened part of an underground stem set with modified buds is **tuber.**

stigma. A flower having many pistils, styles, or stigmas is **polygynous.**

—. Styles bearing stigmas on the sides instead of on the top are **stigmatose.**

—. A name for the narrowed extension of the ovary which supports the stigma in many flowers is **style.**

stipule. A leaf that is without stipules is **exstipulate.**

—. A small stipule occurring at the base of the leaflets of a compound leaf is a **stipel.**

—. Leaves having stipules are **stipulate.**

structure, plant. The science dealing with the structural development and form of plants is **morphology.**

style. Flowers in which the styles are joined together in a single column are **systylous.**

subkingdom. The two subkingdoms into which plants are divided are the **Phanerogams** and **Cryptogams.**

sucker. The sucker or rootlet which some parasitic fungi thrust into their host is a **haustorium.**

sunlight. Plants that turn or bend away from the sun are **aphellotropic.**

—. Plants which turn towards the sunlight are **heliophilous.**

—. *See also under* **light,** *above.*

surroundings. The branch of science dealing with the relation of plants and other living organisms to their surroundings is **oecology.**

swelling. A name for the swelling round or near the hilum of a seed-vessel is **caruncle.**

—. A name for a cushion-like swelling on a plant is **struma.**

symmetry. Symmetry in the parts of a flower is **regularity.**

tea. A name for a Tasmanian tree having aromatic leaves used for making a kind of tea is **manuka.**

—. A Brazilian holly tree the leaves of which are used to make an infusion resembling tea, popular in South America, is the **maté.**

tendril. Plants which bear tendrils are **cirriferous.**

—. Another name for a tendril is **cirrus.**

—. A tendril growing from the base of a leaf-stalk is **stipulary** or **stipulaceous.**

thickening. Parts of plants which show a gradual swelling out or thickening are **incrassate.**

thorn-apple. The name of a drug prepared from the thorn-apple is **stramonium.**

timber tree, Australian. The name of an Australian timber tree related to the eucalyptus is **jarrah.**

—, Indian. The name of a large timber tree growing in the East Indies, the hard, durable wood of which is much used in shipbuilding, etc., is **teak.**

tissue. The flexible fibrous tissue forming the inner bark of the lime and other trees is **bast.**

—. The layer of cellular tissue between the bark and wood of exogenous trees is **cambium.**

—. The soft inner tissue of a leaf is **mesophyll.**

—. A name for the tissue composing the softer parts of plants is **parenchyma.**

—. A name for an element of plant tissue consisting of bast and associated substances is **phloem.**

—. The supporting and connecting tissue of plants is **prosenchyma.**

—. The hard tissue in plants which forms the shells and coats of seeds is the **sclerenchyma.**

—. The name given to a tissue of cells serving to strengthen and support a part of a plant, especially the outer wall of a stem, is **stereome.**

tobacco. The name given to a poisonous alkaloid present in tobacco is **nicotine.**

tree. The outer and younger layer of wood in the trunk or branch of a tree is **alburnum** or **sap-wood.**

—. Trees which have leaves that fall off at certain seasons are **deciduous.**

—. The dark central part of a tree is its **duramen** or **heart-wood.**

—. Trees that retain their leaves throughout the year are **evergreen.**

—. The woody tissue of a tree is **xylem.**

—, evergreen. The name of a large evergreen tree, found in the West Indies and Central America, yielding an edible fruit and durable timber is **sapodilla.**

—, Javanese. The name of a Javanese tree yielding a poisonous milky sap is **upas tree.**

—, leguminous. The name of a tropical leguminous tree the pods of which contain an acid pulp used to make drinks, preserves, etc., is **tamarind.**

—, Madagascar. The name of a Madagascar tree bearing a poisonous fruit is **tanghin.**

—, New Zealand. The name of a New Zealand forest tree belonging to the myrtle family is **rata.**

—, poisonous. A name for a tropical American tree, of the order Euphorbiaceae having poisonous milky sap is **manchineel.**

—, —. The name of a Javanese tree yielding a milky sap used as arrow-poison is **upas tree.**

—, tropical. A name for a tropical tree of the genus *Rhizophora*, throwing out aerial roots which form dense forests in tropical swamps, is **mangrove.**

tuft. A name for a small hair-like tuft resembling the tip of a paint brush is **penicil.**

tufted. A plant whose leaves are covered with hairy or wool-like tufts is **floccose.**

turnip. The name of a thick-rooted vegetable resembling both turnip and cabbage is **kohlrabi.**

—. Roots that resemble a turnip in shape are **napiform.**

turpentine. The name of a Mediterranean tree from which turpentine is obtained is **terebinth.**

type, intermediate. A type in plant classification intermediate between two others is **osculant.**

umbel. A radiating branch of an umbel is a **radius.**

—. A name for each of the small umbels of a compound umbel is **umbellule.**

undeveloped part. An undeveloped or imperfect part is a **rudiment.**

vein. Names for the principal nerve or vein of a leaf are **nervure** and **rib.**

—. The arrangement of the veins on a leaf is **venation.**

vernation. Leaves which in vernation are rolled inwards towards the midrib are **involute.**

—. A type of vernation in which a leaf that is folded in half along its midrib encloses one half of an opposite leaf similarly folded is **abvolute.**

—. Leaves which in vernation are rolled backwards from the edge are **revolute.**

vessel. Plants in which vessels are present in stem and leaves are **vascular.**

vinegar. The name of an aromatic herb allied to the wormwood, used in preparing a kind of vinegar, is **tarragon.**

—. A name for the fungus producing fermentation in vinegar is **vinegar-plant.**

water-lily. A name given to the sacred water-lily of the ancient Egyptians, and of the Buddhists is **lotus.**

water-plant. The branch of botany dealing with seaweeds and with similar fresh water-plants is **algology.**

—. A microscopic water-plant or alga consisting of a single cell enclosed by two valves of silica or flint is a **diatom.**

—. A water plant or a marsh plant is a **hydrophyte.**

—. A term applied to plants growing under water is **submersed.**

—, jelly-like. A name for a lowly form of water-plant forming a greenish scum in damp places, popularly called star-jelly and witches' butter, is **nostoc.**

whitening. A name for the whitening or blanching of green parts of plants, and for the turning green of petals, etc., is **chlorosis.**

whorl. Another name for a whorl or a set of parts of a plant arranged round a stem is a **verticil.**

wood. The central mature part of a tree is the **heart-wood** or **duramen.**

—. Plants bearing or producing wood are **ligniferous.**

—. The younger and outer part of the wood in a tree is the **sapwood** or **alburnum.**

—. sweet-scented. The name of a sweet-scented, hard, white wood obtained from kinds of shrubby convolvulus growing in the Canary Islands is **rhodium.**

—. *See also under* **tree,** *above.*

woody plant. A perennial woody plant, smaller than a tree, whose branches spring directly from the roots or the ground level is a **shrub.**

wrinkled. A term used to describe those parts of plants which are wrinkled or curled at the edges is **crispate.**

—. Plants with rough, wrinkled bark or stem are **rugose.**

yeast. A name for the form of budding seen in the yeast plant is **pullulation.**

—. The yeast plant which produces fermentation in saccharine liquids is **saccharomyces.**

yellow. Leaves and other parts of plants that are turning yellow or are yellowish are **flavescent.**

BUSINESS, COMMERCE, AND INDUSTRY

(See also ENGINEERING)

account. A name for an official inspection of the accounts of a company, etc., is **audit.**

—. A clerk whose duty is to apportion the items of an account to the departments concerned is a **dissecting-clerk.**

—. A name for a subordinate judge trying cases concerning business accounts is **official referee.**

—. *See also* **book-keeping,** *below.*

acknowledgment. A written acknowledgment of money or goods received is a **receipt.**

—, cargo. A document constituting the receipt for, or acknowledgment of, the cargo taken on board by the master of a ship is a **bill of lading.**

air-hole. A name for an air-hole in a mass of metal, glass, or other material is **blow-hole.**

alcohol. The name for the standard of strength for distilled alcoholic liquors is **proof.**

alcohol. The purification of alcohol by distillation is **rectification.**

—. *See also* **spirit,** *below.*

ale. To treat water chemically in order to make it like the water of Burton-on-Trent, with a view to ale-brewing, is to **burtonize.**

—. *See also* **beer** *and* **brewing,** *below.*

allowance. A money allowance or percentage on goods sold is a **commission.**

—. The name given to an allowance made for the weight of wrappings or cases in which goods are packed or weighed is **tare.**

animals, stuffed. The art of preserving and mounting the skins of animals in a life-like way is **taxidermy.**

annuity. An annuity which goes on for ever is a **perpetuity.**

annuity. The name of a form of annuity in which the shares of subscribers who die are added to the profits shared by the survivors is **tontine.**

assets. A term denoting the act or process of bringing a business to an end by selling any assets and settling with the creditors is **winding-up.**

auction. The name for a kind of auction at which goods are first offered at a price above their value and then lowered in price until a purchaser is found is **Dutch auction.**

bagging. The name of a coarse material made of hemp and jute, used for bagging, is **Hessian.**

baker. The long wooden shovel used by bakers is a **peel.**

banana. A name for a cluster of bananas is **hand.**

bank. An Act of Parliament which excuses a bank from payment for a time is a **moratorium.**

—. A co-operative bank run in the interests of the people is a **people's bank.**

—. A bank controlled by the State, though the shareholders may be private individuals, is a **state bank.**

banker. A private banker who keeps the banking accounts of army officers is an **army agent.**

banking. The name of a bankers' institution where cheques and bills are exchanged, the balances only being paid in cash, is **clearing-house.**

—. Money lodged in a bank at interest, and withdrawable only after a certain specified notice, is a **deposit.**

—. The amount of cheques or bills of exchange received by a bank through the clearing-house is the **in-clearing.**

—. A term denoting the cheques and bills of exchange drawn on other banks, which a bank receives and sends to the clearing-house, is **out-clearing.**

—. A name for a draft on a bank of larger amount than the money standing to a customer's credit is **overdraft.**

—. All sums of money paid into or drawn from a bank by a customer are entered in his **pass-book.**

—. The name given to a bank official who pays out money over a counter is **teller.**

—. *See also* **cheque,** *below.*

barley. The grain of barley after being caused to germinate in preparation for brewing or distilling is **malt.**

basket. A name for a basket or tub used for carrying coal in or near a mine is **corf.**

—. Baskets and other articles made from esparto grass are **sparterie.**

beer. Beer which is made from malt by fermentation is a **malt-liquor.**

—. A name for an infusion of malt for fermenting into beer is **wort.**

—. *See also* **brewing,** *below.*

bill of exchange. A slip attached to a bill of exchange to make room for more signatures is an **allonge.**

—. A man who trades in bills of exchange is a **bill-broker** or **bill-discounter.**

—. An amount deducted at a certain rate from money advanced on a bill of exchange not yet due is **discount.**

—. A bill-broker who cashes bills of exchange is a **discount-broker.**

—. The day of the week set apart by banks for the discounting or cashing of bills of exchange is **discount day.**

—. A name for the person who signs a bill of exchange is **drawee.**

—. The name given to the date when a bill of exchange becomes payable is **maturity.**

black lead. Another name for black lead is **graphite.**

blasting. The name of a kind of dynamite used for blasting in Belgian mines and quarries is **forcite.**

—. A name for a cord, tube, or casing filled with combustible material for firing a blasting-charge is **fuse.**

blasting. The name of a high explosive consisting largely of nitro-glycerine, used in blasting, is **gelignite.**

—. A name for several varieties of German safety explosive containing trinitroxylene, used for industrial purposes, is **monachite.**

—. A name for a kind of explosive, used in blasting, in which elements not explosive separately are mixed just before use is **panclastite.**

—. The name of an explosive, used in blasting, made from chlorate of potash, nitro-benzene, and picric acid is **rackarock.**

—. A name given to a tube of gunpowder used to fire a blasting-charge is **squib.**

—. The name of a blasting explosive prepared from guncotton is **tonite.**

—. *See also* **explosive,** *below.*

bleaching. A substance, such as chloride of lime, used to take the colour out of linen, calico, and pulp for paper-making is a **decolorant.**

—. A name given to a vat in which cloth and other materials are bleached is **keir.**

blind. Another name for a Venetian blind is **jalousie.**

—. A blind made of flat, horizontal slats mounted on a tape ladder, with spaces between them to admit air, is a **Venetian blind.**

board. A name given to boards free from knots and cracks is **clear-stuff.**

—. An arrangement of boarding in which the edge of one board overlaps the one next it is **feather-boarding** or **weather-boarding.**

bond. A debt contracted by the issue of bonds is a **bonded debt.**

—. A bond guaranteeing repayment of a loan after the death of a specified person is a **post-obit.**

—. A bond which carries with it the chance of winning a money prize is a **premium bond.**

bone, charred. A substance made by charring bones, and used in filtering, is **bone-black.**

book. A book from the sixteenth century printing-house founded at Venice by Aldus Manutius is an **Aldine.**

—. A book printed by the Elzevirs, a family of Dutch printers who flourished in the seventeenth century and were famous for their small, vellum-bound, clearly printed editions of classical works, is an **Elzevir.**

—, edge. The edge of a book or of the leaf of a book opposite the binding is the **fore-edge.**

—, form. The shape and size of a book is its **format.**

—, illustration. The providing of extra illustrations for a book by inserting pictures, often cut from other books, is **grangerization.**

—, part. A name given to a part of a book issued in serial form is **fascicle.**

—, reference. A name for a book giving the coins, weights, and measures of various countries is **cambist.**

—, —. A reference book containing particulars of people living in a district, their names, addresses, occupations, etc., is a **directory.**

—, size. A book in which each leaf is one-twelfth of one printing sheet is a **duodecimo** or **12mo.**

—, —. A book in which each leaf is one-eighteenth of a printing sheet is an **eighteenmo** or **18mo.**

—, —. A book in which each leaf is made of a printing sheet folded once is a **folio.**

—, —. A book in which each leaf is one-eighth of one printing sheet is an **octavo** or **8vo.**

—, —. A book in which each leaf is one-fourth of a printing sheet is a **quarto** or **4to.**

—, title. A name for the short title of a book on a page preceding the title-page is **half-title.**

bookbinding. The worker who puts the covers on books ready for the finisher is a **forwarder.**

—, style. A book with the cover boards and back encased in cotton-cloth has a **cloth-binding.**

—, —. Books bound in leather are **full-bound.**

bookbinding, style. A delicate design of leaf sprays and interlacing figures on the binding of a book, in the style of the bindings of the French collector Grolier, is **grolieresque.**

—, —. The binding of a book in which the backs and corners are of leather and the sides of paper or cloth is **half-binding.**

—, —. The name given to a style of bookbinding in which the back is of leather, the sides are bound in cloth, the top is gilt, and the other edges of the pages are left rough is **roxburghe.**

—, tool. A name for a tool with which gold-leaf is applied in book-binding, etc., is **pallet.**

—. *See also* **leather,** *below.*

book-keeping. A book in which a record is kept, in order of date, of bills payable or receivable is a **bill-book.**

—. A record of all cash received, paid out, or in hand is a **cash-account.**

—. The book in which a cash-account is kept is a **cash-book.**

—. The right-hand side of an account, on which are entered amounts received or receivable, is the **credit side.**

—. An entry in book-keeping carried to another account or cancelling an entry already made is a **cross-entry.**

—. A book in which the daily record of goods sold is entered is a **day-book.**

—. The left-hand side of an account, on which are entered amounts paid out or to be paid out, is the **debit side.**

—. A method of book-keeping in which each item is entered on both the debit and the credit side of the ledger is **double-entry.**

—. A book in which a daily record of all purchases is kept is a **invoice-book** or **purchase-book.**

—. The book used in the double-entry system for entering a synopsis of the contents of subsidiary books before posting up the ledger is the **journal.**

—. The principal book in the set of account books used in a business is the **ledger.**

—. A name given in book-keeping to unimportant items grouped together to avoid unnecessary detail is **sundries.**

—. The name of a book, used in certain businesses, in which all transactions are entered immediately, before being transferred to the ledgers, is **waste-book.**

bottle. The name given to a large glass bottle enclosed in wickerwork, used for holding acids and other liquid chemicals, is **carboy.**

—. A name for a large bottle with a round body and narrow neck enclosed in basket-work is **demijohn.**

—. A name used in the wine trade for a flattened glass bottle holding nearly as much as two ordinary bottles is **flagon.**

—. The name given to a two-quart wine-bottle, especially of champagne, is **magnum.**

—. A name for an ornamental bottle or case for holding aromatic vinegar or smelling-salts is **vinaigrette.**

box. A name for a thin pasteboard box, such as cigarettes are packed in, is **carton.**

braid. A narrow braid with interwoven metal threads used for binding and edging is **galloon.**

brewing. The name of a large vat or tub used by brewers is **back.**

—. The grain of barley after being caused to germinate in preparation for brewing is **malt.**

—. An infusion of malt with hot water used in brewing beer is **mash.**

—. In brewing beer the malt is steeped in a **mash-tub** or **mash-vat.**

—. A term meaning to sprinkle malt with hot water in brewing is **sparge.**

—. The quantity of liquid by which a brewer's cask, etc., falls short of being full is the **ullage.**

—. A name for an infusion of malt for fermenting into beer is **wort.**

brick. A pile of bricks for burning is a **clamp.**

—. A name for the frame on which bricks are dried is **hack.**

—. The name for a mixture of clay, chalk, and ashes used for making bricks is **malm.**

—. A name for the clay and other materials from which bricks are made, mixed into a thick paste ready for moulding, is **pug.**

brine. The liquid which remains when brine has had the salt removed from it is **bittern.**

brush. A wire brush or toothed instrument for combing flax, wool, etc., is a **card.**

—. A stiff, fibre brush used for cleaning horses is a **dandy-brush.**

building, temporary. A kind of building material consisting of plaster, cement, and fibre, used for temporary buildings, is **staff.**

bullock-cart, Indian. A name for an Indian two-wheeled cart drawn by bullocks is **hackery.**

business. A name for a person who buys and sells for others is **broker.**

—. A name for a building used by brokers, merchants, etc., for the transaction of business is **exchange.**

—. *See also* **trade,** *below.*

butcher. In Scotland, a name for a butcher is **flesher.**

buying. The buying-up of goods by a group or trust in order to raise the price is **coemption.**

cable. The instrument with claws used to seize and hoist broken submarine cables on board ship for repairs is a **grapnel** or **grappling-iron.**

cabling. A name for a system of using words instead of sentences, employed in business cables to give secrecy or save cost, is **code.**

—. To translate a cable, etc., written in code is to **decode.**

cambric. A name for a cambric, and also a muslin, of Oriental make with a coloured printed pattern is **persienne.**

camera. A name for an arrangement which enables the plate in a camera to be kept upright when the lens is pointed upwards or downwards is **swing-back.**

—. The apparatus in a camera that shows on a small mirror the scene towards which the camera is directed is the **view-finder.**

—, instantaneous. A name for a small type of camera, operated like a pistol, for taking instantaneous photographs is **pistolgraph.**

capital. The capital stock of the Bank of England is **bank-stock.**

—. The capital of a fund as opposed to the interest is the **corpus.**

—. A term for that part of the capital of a company represented by buildings, machinery, etc., in continuous use for carrying on the business is **fixed capital.**

—. Capital in the form of money or goods available for use is **floating capital.**

—. Capital used in a business when contributed and held jointly by a number of people is **joint stock.**

—. A capital sum lent or invested is **principal.**

—. A name for the capital of a company divided into shares entitling the holders to a proportion of the profits is **stock.**

cardboard. Thin, white, smooth cardboard of high quality, used by artists, is **Bristol-board.**

cargo. Cargo on which the transport charge is paid according to weight and not to the space occupied is **dead-weight.**

—. In England another name for a ship's cargo is **freight.**

—. A name for a document giving details of a ship's cargo for customs purposes is **manifest.**

—, acknowledgment. The document constituting the receipt or acknowledgment for the cargo taken on board by the master of a ship is a **bill of lading.**

—, charge. A sum of money paid for cargo space in a ship which is reserved but not occupied is **dead-freight.**

carpet. A carpet having an upper surface of wool and a back of strong linen thread is a **Brussels carpet.**

—. A name for a two-ply ingrain carpet with the pattern showing on both sides is **Kidderminster.**

— A name for a kind of carpet resembling a Brussels, except that it has the loops cut open to form a pile, is **Wilton.**

carriage. The name of a closed four-wheeled carriage for two or four persons, formerly much used by doctors, is **brougham.**

—. A name given in different countries to various kinds of light carriage is **buggy.**

—. The name for an old-fashioned light two- or four-wheeled carriage with a folding hood is **calash.**

—. The name given to a small, open carriage for one passenger, formerly very popular on the Continent, is **carriole.**

—. A light, two wheeled carriage drawn by one horse is a **gig.**

—. A small, low pony-carriage having two wheels and two side seats facing each other is a **governess-cart.**

—. The name of a once popular two-wheeled cab in which the driver sat high up behind the body is **hansom.**

—. The name of a four-wheeled carriage for two persons, with a divided top which can be opened and folded back, formerly popular for short pleasure trips, is **landau.**

— The name of a low, light, four-wheeled carriage with a raised seat for the driver, and a low seat for two passengers over the rear axle is **victoria.**

—, framework. A timber set lengthwise in the framework of a carriage to support the splinter-bar and shafts or pole is a **futchel.**

—, funeral. The name given to a carriage used at funerals for taking the dead to a place of burial is **hearse.**

—, Italian. The name for an Italian four-wheeled carriage is **vettura.**

—, Russian. A name for various forms of Russian light carriage is **droshky.**

—, —. The name of a kind of Russian four-wheeled carriage, the body of which rests on two long poles serving as springs, is **tarantass.**

carrier. A carrier's list of the parcels or passengers carried by him is a **way-bill.**

cask. A name for a large cask is **butt.**

— A maker of casks is a **cooper.**

—. One who makes casks intended for dry goods is a **dry-cooper.**

—. A small cask for holding butter and other fats is a **firkin.**

— A small, tapered wooden plug for stopping up the vent-hole in a cask is a **spigot.**

—. A small hole bored in the top of a cask to admit air and allow the contents to run through the tap is a **vent-hole.**

casting. A name for a mixture of charcoal and coal or coke dust very finely ground, used in casting, is **founders' dust.**

—. A name for a fine sand used for the moulds in casting is **founders' sand.**

— Models for shaping moulds in sand for casting replicas in metal are made in foundries in a **pattern-shop.**

cement. A kind of cement made of pulverized granite used to make paving-stones is **granolithic.**

—. The name of a cement made from calcined lime and clay is **Portland cement.**

—. The name of a kind of volcanic ash used for making cement is **pozzolana.**

—. Another name for hydraulic cement is **water-cement.**

certificate. A detachable certificate for the payment of interest on bonds issued for a term of years is a **coupon**

certificate. A certificate issued, after dues have been paid, for the removal of goods warehoused at a dock is a **dock-warrant.**

—. The name given to a provisional certificate issued by a joint-stock company, etc., in return for money invested is **scrip.**

cheque. A cheque with two parallel lines drawn across it, which cannot be cashed, but can only be paid into a bank, is a **crossed cheque.**

—. To sign one's name on the back of a cheque drawn in one's favour, in order that a bank may cash it, is to **endorse.**

—. A cheque which can be transferred to another party than the payee is **negotiable.**

—. An uncrossed cheque payable to bearer or order is an **open cheque.**

—. If the date on a cheque is later than the day on which it is drawn the cheque is **post-dated**

china. *See* **pottery,** *below.*

chisel. A broad-edged chisel used by a stone-mason for shaping stone roughly is a **drove.**

chloride. The commercial name for chloride is **muriate.**

clay. White clay used for making earthenware is **argil.**

—. A soft whitish clay that absorbs grease, used in the process of fulling cloth, is **fullers' earth.**

—. A name for China clay is **kaolin.**

clock. A wheel in a watch or small clock which regulates the beat by being turned repeatedly in one direction by the mainspring and in the other by a hairspring is the **balance-wheel.**

—. The mechanism in a clock or watch which checks and regulates the movement of the wheels is the **escapement.**

—. The art of making clocks and watches is **horology.**

cloth. A soft whitish clay that absorbs grease, used in the process of fulling cloth, is **fullers' earth.**

—, inferior. Inferior cloth made partly from fibre obtained by tearing or shredding old garments is **shoddy.**

—, knot. The name of a little lump or knot in wool, cloth, etc., is **burl.**

—, manufacture. A name for flock torn out of wool and used in the manufacture of cheap cloth is **devil's dust.**

—, nap. A name for a machine used to raise a nap on cloth is **gig-mill.**

—, shrinking. The machine in which newly-woven cloth is shrunk by a saturating and pressing process is a **fulling-mill.**

—, stretching. The name of a frame or machine for stretching cloth to dry or make it set evenly is **tenter.**

—. *See also under* **cotton, fabric, hemp, jute, linen, silk, wool,** *below.*

coach. A name for a public stage coach, formerly an important means of transport, is **diligence.**

coal. A block of compressed coal-dust is a **briquette.**

—. A dealer who buys coal direct from the mines and sells it to customers is a **coal-factor.**

—, kind. Very hard, smooth coal that gives out great heat but little smoke is **anthracite.**

—, —. Names for kinds of coal still showing traces of its woody origin are **brown coal** and **lignite.**

—, —. A name for a hard, bituminous coal giving a bright flame is **cannel.**

—, —. An American name for anthracite or non-bituminous coal is **hard coal.**

—, —. A kind of house coal originally obtained from Wallsend-on-Tyne is **Wallsend.**

coal-mining. The upper side of an inclined seam in a coal-mine is the **back.**

—. The workman at a colliery who attends to the unloading of the coal-tubs from the cage at the top of the shaft is a **banksman.**

—. A name for a column of coal which supports the roof of a coal-mine is **barrier-pillar.**

—. A name for a passage in a coal-mine across the grain of the coal is **board.**

coal-mining. A name for carbonic acid gas in mines, etc., is **choke-damp.**

— A name for a basket or tub used for carrying coal in or near a mine is **corf.**

— A name for the officer who tests the timbering and ventilation of a coal-mine and looks after the safety of the miners is **deputy.**

— The surface of a coal-mine from which coal is being removed is the **face.**

— A machine that carries coal from the working face of the mine to the trucks is a **face-conveyor.**

— A name given to the explosive mixture of carburetted hydrogen and air which accumulates in coal-mines is **fire-damp.**

—. The bottom of a coal seam is the **floor.**

—. The fire-damp that sometimes causes explosions in coal-mines contains the hydro-carbon gas **methane.**

—. A name for the expenses which accrue in running a coal-mine, apart from the actual cost of hewing, is **oncost.**

—. A prop used to support the roof in a coal-mine is a **sprag.**

—. The name given to an official who regularly inspects the underground workings of a coal-mine is **underviewer.**

—. *See also* **mining,** *below.*

coffee. A blue-flowered plant whose root is used for mixing with coffee is **chicory.**

— A name for high-class coffee generally is **Mocha.**

—. The name given to coffee-beans of the lowest grade is **triage.**

colouring matter. *See under* **dye** *and* **pigment,** *below.*

comb. A wire brush or toothed instrument for combing flax, wool, etc., is a **card.**

— Another name for the steel-toothed hackle used in preparing flax for spinning is **flax-comb.**

—. A name for a steel comb for separating the fibres of flax, hemp, etc., is **hackle.**

combination. A German name for a combination of firms to control prices and production of merchandise is **kartell.**

—. A trust formed by the combination of a number of separate enterprises is a **merger.**

— A combination of persons or commercial companies for speculative action, or the fund subscribed for this, is a **pool.**

—. A name for a number of people who combine to control prices is **ring.**

commerce. *See under* **business,** *above*; *and* **trade,** *below.*

committee. A person who is a member of a committee by virtue of some official position is an **ex-officio member**

—. A name for the officer who makes a record of proceedings at a committee or other meeting is **minute secretary.**

—. The name given to the smallest number of members of a committee or other body who must be present to transact business is **quorum.**

—. *See also under* **meeting,** *below.*

company. A name for the regulations for the management of a company is **articles of association.**

— The forming of a public company is its **incorporation.**

— A company of which the capital is contributed and held by a number of persons, not being less than seven, is a **joint-stock company.**

— A kind of company in which a shareholder is liable for the debts and obligations of the concern only up to the amount he has invested is a **limited liability company.**

—. A circular or booklet giving information about a public company to be floated is a **prospectus.**

competition. A name for the buying up by one firm of all its rivals, or for the acquiring by one firm of all stock available, thus abolishing competition, is **monopoly.**

competition. An arrangement between former competitors to fix rates or prices, or to abolish competition, is a **pool.**

concrete. A name for a concrete made of lime, sand, and hydraulic cement is **beton.**

—. Names for concrete strengthened with iron or steel strips or netting are **ferro-concrete** and **reinforced concrete.**

Consols. The name given to any day appointed for the transfer free of charge of Consols or Consolidated Funds at the Bank of England is **transfer-day.**

contract. An offer to carry out a contract at a given sum is a **tender.**

control. A name for the act of gaining control of the supply of a commodity with a view to forcing up the price is **corner.**

— A name for the complete control of an industry, or of the exclusive rights in any commodity or class of business, is **monopoly.**

—. A name for a number of people banded together to control prices is **ring.**

copper, carbonate. A commercial name for a blue or green pigment obtained from carbonate of copper is **verditer.**

—, working. A name for a small mechanical hammer used by coppersmiths is **oliver.**

copy. An exact copy of a piece of writing, printing, etc., is a **facsimile.**

—. A kind of apparatus for making a large number of copies of a drawing or writing is the **hectograph.**

—. A name for one of a number of carbon copies taken of a letter is **manifold.**

— A name for an apparatus for making many copies of typewritten documents is **manifolder.**

—. A name for an apparatus invented by T. A. Edison for making many copies of written or typewritten matter is **mimeograph.**

—. *See also* **duplicator,** *below.*

coral, imitation. An imitation of coral made by treating wood fibre with sulphuric acid is **vegetaline.**

corn. The name of an old-fashioned kind of hand-mill for grinding corn, etc., is **quern.**

cotton. Cotton treated in such a way that it resembles silk is **mercerized.**

—. A name for an assistant in a cotton-mill who keeps the frame of a spinning mule supplied with rovings is **piecer.**

—. The name given to a fine grade of American cotton, originally grown on the islands off the coasts of Georgia, South Carolina, and Florida, is **sea-island cotton.**

—, buying. A certificate from the clearing-house entitling the holder to delivery of cotton goods etc., is a **docket.**

—, —. A name for cotton bought and sold speculatively for future delivery is **futures.**

—, —. Cotton bought when ready for immediate delivery is **spot-cotton.**

—, fabric. A name for various machine-knitted cotton goods is **balbriggan.**

—, —. A name for a cotton fabric with a pile like velveteen is **beaverteen.**

—, —. A name for a thick twilled cotton cloth with a short pile, such as corduroy velveteen and moleskin, is **fustian.**

—, —. A striped cotton cloth used for overalls, children's sailor suits, etc., is **galatea.**

—, —. A stout cotton cloth woven from dyed threads and usually patterned in checks or stripes is **gingham.**

—, —. The name of a strong twilled cotton cloth used for mechanics' overalls, etc., is **jean.**

—, —. The name given to a variety of cotton cloth originally made in long pieces, and formerly manufactured in India, is **long-cloth.**

—, —. A name for a stiff heavy cotton fabric with a raised pattern quilted in the loom is **Marseilles.**

cotton, tabric. A name for a closely woven cotton fabric, more highly finished than muslin, but having no gloss, is **percale.**

—, —. A name for a textile fabric, usually with a cotton warp and woollen filling, used for making women's and children's garments, is **wincey.**

—, raw. A name given in the U.S.A. to raw cotton from which the seeds have not been removed is **seed-wool.**

—, spinning. That part of a machine used in cotton spinning which draws out and twists the sliver, or flat ribbons of cotton, is a **draw-head.**

crocus, autumnal. Colouring matter made from the stigmas of the autumnal crocus is **saffron.**

currency. Paper currency not capable of being exchanged for gold is **inconvertible.**

curtain, bedstead. A short curtain hanging round the frame of a bedstead and reaching to the floor is a **valance.**

custom-house. To acknowledge possession of goods on which duty is payable is to **declare.**

—. The French name for a custom-house is **douane.**

—. The French name for a customs official is **douanier.**

—. A custom-house warrant permitting the passage of goods subject to duty is a **transire.**

cut-glass. The powdered glass used for grinding and polishing cut-glass is **glass-dust.**

cutlery, cleaning. Names for a fine flinty sand prepared in the form of bricks and used for cleaning cutlery, etc., are **Bath-brick** and **Bristol-brick.**

damask. A kind of damask, usually of silk, used for covering furniture is **valance.**

date. To give a date to a document or event earlier than the actual date is to **antedate.**

—. The name given to the date when a bill of exchange becomes payable is **maturity.**

—. If the date on a cheque is later than the day on which it is drawn the cheque is **post-dated.**

debt. The setting tree of a person from debt, or a receipt given for the full payment of a debt, is an **acquittance.**

—. The gradual paying off of a debt by forming a sinking fund from which the payments may be made is **amortization.**

—. An instrument for the transfer of personal property, often given as security for a debt, and authorizing seizure and sale in case of non-payment, is a **bill of sale.**

—. A debt contracted by the issue of bonds is a **bonded debt.**

—. A debt payable on demand or at some stated time is a **floating debt.**

—. A person unable to pay his debts or meet his liabilities is **insolvent.**

deduction. A name for an amount deducted from a bill, or from the price of an article, for prompt settlement is **discount.**

—. A name for a deduction from a sum to be paid is **rebate.**

diamond. A name for small fragments of diamond made in cutting, and for an impure variety of diamond used only for cutting and polishing, is **bort.**

—. A diamond cut in the form of two pyramids joined at their bases is a **brilliant.**

—. A diamond of the purest quality is said to be of the **first water.**

—. A name for a perfect diamond weighing more than one hundred carats is **paragon.**

dictating. A machine allied to the phonograph and used for dictating letters, etc., is a **dictaphone.**

director. Another name for the board of directors of a business or company is **directorate.**

discount. The discount taken by the Bank of England when advancing money is the **bank rate.**

distilling. The grain of barley after being caused to germinate in preparation for distilling is **malt.**

—. The name given to a vessel used for the distillation or decomposition of substances by heat is **retort.**

—. The liquid remaining from the distillation of alcoholic liquors, especially from the distillation of fermented beet molasses, is **vinasse.**

dividend. A dividend on shares paid in between the regular payments is an **interim dividend.**

document. A rough outline or copy of a document is a **draft.**

—. A document which can be passed from hand to hand and stands on the same footing as coined money is **negotiable.**

draft. A draft or written order from one person to another to pay a sum on a given date is a **bill of exchange.**

—. A name for a draft on a bank of larger amount than the money standing to a customer's credit is **overdraft.**

drapery. A name for the smaller kinds of drapery goods is **haberdashery.**

drinking-vessel. A name given to a drinking-vessel formerly made of black leather, but now of japanned metal, is **black-jack.**

drying. A name for an apparatus used for drying sugar, fruits, etc., is **evaporator.**

—. A name for a kiln for drying hops is **oast.**

duplicator. A name for an apparatus used for duplicating copies of writing, drawing, etc., is **cyclostyle.**

—. The name for a gelatine apparatus for making duplicate copies of writings, drawings, etc., is **graph.**

—. *See also* **copy,** *above.*

dye. A name for a red dye prepared from the cochineal insect is **grain.**

—. The general name for a group of blue, black and grey aniline dyes is **indulines.**

—. The name of a crimson dye made from the body of an insect related to the cochineal insect is **kermes.**

—. The name of a violet-blue dye obtained from a compound called resorcin is **lakmoid.**

—. The name of an aniline dye of crimson colour invented in the middle of the nineteenth century is **magenta.**

—. The name of a brilliant green aniline dye is **malachite green.**

—. A name for a yellow dye obtained from coal-tar, resembling the mandarin orange in colour, is **mandarin.**

—. A name given to a coal-tar dye of a red or red-brown colour is **ponceau.**

—, source. A colourless oily liquid first obtained from indigo and later from coal-tar, which is the base of many dyes, is **aniline.**

—. *See also* **pigment,** *below.*

dyeing. A substance for fixing a dye in the fibres of a material is a **mordant.**

—. The name for the acorn-cup of the Turkish or Greek oak used in dyeing and tanning and for making ink is **vallonia** or **valonia.**

dye-stuff. A name given to an orange powder, used as a dye-stuff, obtained from an East Indian tree of the spurge family is **kamala.**

—. The name of a thistle-like plant from which a dye-stuff is obtained is **safflower.**

—. A name of a blue dyestuff used to improve the colour of indigo, etc., is **woad.**

dye-wood. Names given to varieties of brownish-red dye-wood obtained from trees of the genus *Caesalpinia* are **brazil-wood** and **sapan-wood.**

earthenware. A glassy substance forming a smooth surface on porcelain and other pottery is a **glaze.**

—. The oven in which glazed earthenware is fired is a **glaze-kiln.**

earthenware. The name of a fine kind of earthenware, thin and usually translucent, is **porcelain.**

—. *See also* **clay,** *above*; *and* **pottery,** *below.*

egg. A name used for white of egg when used as size or varnish is **glair.**

enamelling. A name for a slab of fire-clay upon which articles are placed, after enamelling, for the purpose of baking is **planch.**

engraving. A name for a pointed tool used by engravers on copper is **burin.**

—. A polished sheet of copper on which a design is etched or engraved is a **copperplate.**

— A needle with a hard steel point used for engraving without the use of acid is a **dry-point.**

—. To engrave on a varnished metal or glass surface with a pointed needle and acids is to **etch.**

—. A sharp pointed needle for engraving on metal or glass is an **etching-needle.**

—. A name given to the process of engraving by the action of light on a plate is **heliogravure.**

—. Engraving by photographic and chemical or mechanical methods is **process engraving.**

—. The name of a gouge-like tool used by an engraver to clear away the spaces between lines is **scauper.**

—. In process engraving, a plate made of zinc on which a design or photographic picture has been etched in relief by acid is a **zinco, zincograph,** or **zincotype.**

—. *See also under section* Art.

envelope. A name for a strong kind of brownish paper widely used in making business envelopes is **Manila paper.**

esparto. Baskets and other articles made from esparto grass are **sparterie.**

etching. *See* **engraving,** *above.*

exchange. Trade by the exchange of one article for another without the medium of money is **barter.**

—, foreign. The practice in foreign exchange of buying in one market and selling immediately at a higher price in another is **arbitrage.**

—, —. The point when bankers find it more advantageous to make foreign payments in gold rather than by bills of exchange is the **gold-point.**

expenses. Trifling expenses not reckoned in an estimate of expenditure are **contingencies.**

—. A name for extra expenses of any kind in a business or industry is **oncost.**

—. A name for the expenses of a business not attributable to any department or product is **overhead charges.**

—. The money kept in most businesses for the payment of small expenses is **petty cash.**

explosive. An explosive made from nitrate of ammonia and nitro-benzene, which can be transported with comparative safety because it does not explode by shock, is **bellite.**

—. A compound explosive powder used to fire powerful explosives and exploded by heat or a blow is a **detonating powder.**

— A name for nitro-cellulose, a powerful explosive made by soaking cotton in a mixture of nitric and sulphuric acids and then drying and pressing, is **gun-cotton.**

— A name for a safety explosive containing nitroglycerine, ammonium nitrate, and about twenty-five per cent sodium chloride to reduce its flame temperature is **monarkite.**

—. A name given to any explosive substance, such as gun-cotton, made by nitrating cellulose, is **pyroxylin.**

—. The name of a powerful flameless explosive is **roburite.**

—. *See also* **blasting,** *above.*

fabric. A fabric that is of the same colour throughout is **self-coloured** or **whole-coloured.**

—. Names for the cross threads woven into the warp of a textile fabric to make the web are **weft** and **woof.**

fabric, chequered. The name of a kind of chequered cotton or silk fabric originally made at Pulicat on the Coromandel Coast, India, is **pullicat.**

—, corded. The name of a corded fabric with a silk warp and a woof or linen or wool is **poplin.**

—, —. A corded fabric made of merino wool is **veloutine.**

—, knitted. A name for various machine-knitted cotton goods is **balbriggan.**

—, —. A name given to a hand-knitted woollen fabric, and to a similar material made in imitation by machines, is **tricot.**

—, open. A name for an open fabric resembling canvas, used for stiffening other materials, is **wigan.**

—, ornamental. The name given to a kind of textile fabric in which the woof is supplied from a spindle and not by a shuttle, having a design made by stitches across the warp, is **tapestry.**

—, pile. The name of a pile fabric of silk or wool in which the loops are not cut is **terry.**

—, ribbed. A name given to a fabric with a ribbed or corded surface is **rep.**

—, —. The name given to a fabric having a surface marked by parallel diagonal ribs is **twill.**

—, silky. A thin light silky fabric largely used in Victorian days for ladies' dresses was **grenadine.**

—, —. A name for a silky kind of cloth made from the hair of Angora goats, and for a wool and cotton imitation of this, is **mohair.**

—, upholstering. The name of an upholstering fabric having alternate stripes of satin and watered silk is **tabaret.**

—, watered. A name for a watered fabric of silk and wool used for curtains is **tabinet.**

—. *See also under* **cotton,** *above*; *and* **hemp, jute, linen, silk, wool,** *below.*

fat. A white, brittle, fatty substance from the head of the sperm-whale used in making candles and ointment is **spermaceti.**

—. A name for a fatty compound present in solid animal and vegetable fats is **stearin.**

fee. A fee for entering a profession or craft is a **premium.**

fibre. Cotton or wool fibre prepared in sheets ready for use in quilting, etc., is **batting.**

—. The fibre of cotton or wool regarded as fixing its quality is the **staple.**

—. Any spun fibre prepared for weaving, knitting, rope-making, etc., is **yarn.**

fire, extinguisher. Names for an apparatus containing chemicals used for putting out fires are **extincteur** and **grenade.**

fireworks. A discharge of fireworks from a revolving wheel is a **girandole.**

—. The making or displaying of fireworks is **pyrotechnics.**

fish, drying. A platform, usually made of hurdles, on which fish are placed to dry is a **flake.**

—, hatching. A large tank where the eggs of fish are hatched out under favourable conditions is a **fish hatchery.**

—, —. A name for a frame holding glass tubes in which fishes' eggs are artificially hatched is **grille.**

fishing. A committee appointed by a government to protect the fishing industry and administer the laws with regard to fishing is a **fishery-board.**

—. A name for a latticework device for catching or keeping back fish in a stream is **heck.**

—. An enclosure of stakes or nets set in a stream in order to catch fish is a **weir** or **wear.**

—, boat. A name for a Newfoundland cod-fishing boat is **banker.**

—, —. A vessel used for fishing with a trawl-net is a **trawler.**

—, —. *See also under* **boat** *in section* Army, Navy, Air Force, and Nautical.

fishing, line. A long fishing line carrying a number of baited hooks and anchored to the sea-bottom is a **set-line.**

—, —. The name given to a long buoyed fishing-line with baited hooks attached at intervals, used to catch cod, ling, etc., is **trawl-line.**

—, **net.** A name for the head-line of a fishing net is **balk.**

—, —. The baggy part of a fishing net is the **bunt.**

—, —. A net thrown into the water and drawn out again, as opposed to a net that is set, is a **casting-net.**

—, —. A strip of string netting six feet wide used for a fishing drift-net is a **deeping.**

—, —. A fishing-net which is drawn along the bed of the sea is a **drag-net.**

—, —. A large fishing-net made to float vertically by weights along its bottom edge and corks along the upper, and allowed to drift with the tide, is a **drift-net.**

—, —. A net with a large mesh set upright on stakes is a **hang-net.**

—, —. A name for the wooden contrivance for keeping open the mouth of a trawl-net is **otter.**

—, —. The name given to a long, encircling fishing-net, buoyed along the top edge and weighted at the bottom so as to hang upright, used to catch herring, pilchard, mackerel, etc., is **seine.**

—, —. A small hand-net used to land fish is a **spoon-net.**

—, —. The name given to a set of three nets fixed upright on the sea-bottom parallel to one another, the middle net being of fine mesh, is **trammel.**

—, —. The name for a large bag-shaped fishing-net tapering to a point at the base, dragged along the sea-bottom, is **trawl.**

—. *See also under section* Sports and Pastimes.

flax A steel comb for separating the fibres of flax, hemp, etc., is a **hackle.**

—. A filament of flax is a **harl.**

—. A name given to a comb used for removing the seed from flax is **ripple.**

—. The process of dressing flax, hemp, etc., by beating is **scutching.**

—. The name given to the coarse and broken fibres of flax and hemp is **tow.**

focus. The exact correspondence of the focus screen to a plate or film in photography is **register.**

foreign exchange. A system—chiefly carried on in foreign exchange, bullion, and stocks and shares—of buying in one market and selling immediately at a higher price in another is **arbitrage.**

fund. The name given to a fund for gradually paying off a debt of a state or corporation is **sinking fund**

fur. The skin of young lambs bred in Russia, having a curly wool like fur, and used for fur coats and as trimming is **astrakhan.**

—. The name given to the fur of the polecat is **fitch.**

—. A soft kind of fur, especially the down of the beaver, is **flix.**

furnace. A furnace for separating metals from cinders and other dross is an **almond furnace.**

—. A name for the raised part of the floor of a glass-melting furnace is **bank.**

—. A name for a type of small blast furnace used by iron founders is **cupola-furnace.**

—. A hollow part in the bottom of a furnace where the molten metal collects is a **crucible.**

—. The hard sandstone used for making furnace hearths is **ganister.**

—. The name given to a type of furnace in which metal is exposed to heat radiated on to it from a roof of fire-clay is **reverberatory furnace.**

—. A name for a pit for collecting the metal when it is fused for the first time is **sump.**

furniture. A coating of superior wood on one of inferior quality is a **veneer.**

gas. An irritating gas used as a preservative and disinfectant is **formaldehyde.**

—. The unit of heating value on which the price charged for gas is based, equal to 100,000 British thermal units, is the **gas therm.**

— A gas present in strata containing petroleum and used for producing light, heat, and power is **natural gas.**

—, making. A man at a gas works who extinguishes the blazing coke from the retorts by throwing water over it is a **douter.**

—, —. An iron structure shaped like a huge drum used for storing gas is a **gasometer.**

gauze. The name of a kind of thin silk gauze or gauze muslin is **tiffany.**

gem. A name given to certain gems cut with six rays on the dome or top is **asteria.**

—. Another name for a facet of a gem, especially an oblique facet of a brilliant, is **bezel.**

— A unit of weight of about three and one-fifth grains troy used in weighing precious stones is a **carat.**

—. Each of the small flat surfaces of a cut gem is a **facet.**

—. The engraving of gems and other stones is **glyptography.**

—. One who cuts, polishes, or engraves precious stones is a **lapidary.**

—. The name for a glass-like substance used for making imitation gems, and for gems made with it, is **paste.**

—. A term for the purity and transparence of a diamond or other precious stone is **water.**

—. *See also under* **diamond,** *above.*

gilding. A kind of glue laid on an object to hold a surface of gold-leaf is **gilding-size** or **gold-size.**

—. A name for an adhesive substance used in certain kinds of gilding to secure gold-leaf is **mordant.**

—. A process which consists of covering a metal surface with an amalgam of gold and mercury and then driving off the mercury with heat to leave a film of gold is **wash-gilding** or **water-gilding.**

glass, kind. The name of a kind of brown glass flecked with gold spangles is **aventurine** or **aventurin.**

—, —. Glass with a surface covered with a delicate tracery of cracks is **crackle-glass** or **crackleware.**

—, —. A fine and hard variety of glass used for windows is **crown-glass.**

—, —. Flint glass which has been cut or ground instead of being moulded is **cut-glass.**

—, —. A kind of pure, lustrous glass made from white sand and formerly from flints is **flint-glass.**

—, —. The name of a variety of glass, especially a red kind, used for coating plain glass is **schmelze.**

—, —. A fine delicate glass often decorated with filigree and made into vases, mirrors, beads, etc., is **Venetian glass** or **Venice glass.**

—, manufacture. A name for the raised part of the floor of a glass-melting furnace is **bank.**

—, —. Old broken glass sent back to the works for remelting is **cullet**

—, —. To take away the transparency of glass by crystallization is to **devitrify.**

—, —. A partly fused mixture of sand and fluxes, from which glass is made by melting is **frit.**

—, —. The powdered glass used for grinding and polishing cut-glass is **glass-dust.**

—, —. The molten materials used in the making of glass are **glass-metal.**

—, —. The name for a large fire-clay pot in which the ingredients for making glass are melted together is **glass-pot.**

—, —. The name of a kind of furnace in which glassware is annealed is **leer.**

glass, manufacture. The changing of sand, soda, and other substances into glass in a furnace is **vitrification** or **vitrifaction.**

gold. Uncoined gold or silver in bars is **bullion.**

—. To cover with a thin layer of gold laid on as gold-leaf or as powder is to **gild.**

—. One whose trade it is to make articles from gold is a **goldsmith.**

—. A mark used at Goldsmiths' Hall and at the Government assay offices to show the standard of gold and silver articles and the place and date of the marking is the **hall-mark.**

—. The name of a process of alloying silver with crude gold, used in the separation of gold from its impurities, is **quartation.**

gold-mining. The obtaining of gold from the rocky beds of old rivers is **gulch-mining.**

—. *See also* **mining,** *below.*

goods. Goods sent out of a country are **exports.**

—. Goods brought into a country from abroad are **imports.**

—, carriage. The price paid for the carriage of goods by water or rail is **freight** or **freightage.**

—, dutiable. A place where goods subject to duty are stored until required, under the care of a customs officer, is an **entrepôt.**

grain. A name for corn that has been ground or is about to be ground is **grist.**

—. The crushed grain of oats or wheat with the husks removed is **groats.**

—, speculation. A name for grain bought and sold speculatively for future delivery is **futures.**

grape. *See under* **wine,** *below.*

grass. A kind of giant tropical grass with a thick woody stem, used to make light furniture, poles, sticks, etc., is **bamboo.**

gravel. Screened or sifted gravel is **hoggin.**

grind. To grind to a very fine, smooth powder is to **levigate**

guarantee. A guarantee given by a seller to a buyer that the goods sold are the seller's, and that they are of good or standard quality, is a **warranty.**

gun. One whose trade is to make or repair sporting-guns and other small arms is a **gunsmith.**

—. *See also section* Army, Navy, etc.

hammer. A name for a small hammer, such as that used by an auctioneer to obtain attention, is **gavel.**

—. A name for various types of massive hammer used in mining, shipbuilding, pile-driving, etc., is **maul.**

—. A name for a small mechanical hammer, worked by steam, or by the foot, used by tinsmiths and coppersmiths is **oliver.**

—. *See also section* Engineering.

harness. The strap in a driving harness that passes under the horse's belly to hold the shafts down is a **belly-band.**

—. The part of the harness of a draught horse that passes round the haunches is the **breeching** or **breech-band.**

—. Each of the two curved wooden or metal bars on the collar of a horse, to which the traces are fastened, is a **hame.**

heat producer. The name of a composition containing finely divided aluminium and a metal oxide, producing intense heat when ignited, is **thermite.**

hemp. A filament of hemp is a **harl.**

—. The name given to the coarse and broken fibres of hemp and flax is **tow.**

—, fabric. A name for a coarse material made of hemp and jute, used for bagging, is **Hessian.**

hide The name for the thickest and most valuable part of an ox-hide is **butt.**

—. A machine with revolving cutters removing the flesh from hides is a **fleshing-machine.**

hoisting. A name for a three-legged frame with a pulley and windlass, used for hoisting, is **gin.**

hoisting. A rope that steadies a load in hoisting is a **guide rope** or **guy-rope.**

—. *See also sections* Army, Navy, Air Force, and Nautical, *and* Engineering.

hop. A name for a kiln for drying hops is **oast.**

horse. A comb used in dressing a horse is a **curry-comb.**

—. A stiff fibre brush used to clean down horses is a **dandy-brush.**

—. A person whose business it is to shoe horses is a **farrier.**

—. A specially powerful bit used in breaking-in young horses is a **gag-bit.**

—. A rein, passing through a loop in the part of the bridle under a horse's chin, which may be used to pull the bit is a **gag-rein.**

—. *See also* **harness,** *above*; *and section* Sports and Pastimes.

◆

illustration. A method of printing illustrations in which the design consists of variously spaced minute dots, produced by photographing through a ruled glass screen, is **half-tone.**

—. An engraved illustration in a printed book not enclosed in a definite border, especially one on a title-page, is a **vignette.**

—. *See also under* **engraving,** *above*; *and* **printing,** *below.*

important. A principal or important article of commerce is a **staple.**

indigo The name of a blue dyestuff used to improve the colour of indigo and other blue dyes is **woad.**

industry, control. A name for the theory of social organization that aims at placing the ownership and control of the various industries in the hands of the corresponding trade unions is **syndicalism.**

ink. The name of a wooden instrument or roller for preparing or spreading printing-ink is **brayer.**

—. The name for the acorn-cup of the Turkish or Greek oak used in making ink, and in dyeing and tanning, is **vallonia** or **valonia.**

inspection. An official inspection of the accounts of a company, etc., is an **audit.**

—. A name for an officer appointed to visit and inspect an institution or corporation for the purpose of seeing whether its regulations are observed is **visitor.**

instalment. Money paid as a first instalment towards purchase of goods, etc., is a **deposit.**

—. A name for a method of purchasing goods by payment in instalments is **hire-purchase system.**

insurance. A name for an official specially skilled in statistics and other work connected with insurance is **actuary.**

—. The name of a British corporation which deals principally with marine insurance, registration, and the issue of shipping news is **Lloyd's.**

—. A writing containing a contract of insurance or assurance is a **policy.**

—. A payment made for insurance is a **premium.**

—. The name given to a person who makes a business of insuring against risks of all sorts is **underwriter.**

interchange. The name of a system by which nations interchange commercial privileges is **reciprocity.**

investment. A French name for a person drawing a fixed income from investments is **rentier.**

invoice. An invoice made out and sent as a matter of form, to show the cost or value of goods proposed to be purchased, is a **pro-forma invoice.**

iron. Wrought iron rolled out into lengths fit for forging and welding is **bar-iron.**

—. A name for a mass of malleable iron from which the slag has been forced is **bloom.**

—. Iron as it comes from the smelting furnace, used for making castings, is **cast-iron.**

iron. A name for a grooved tool on which iron is shaped by a blacksmith, and also for the groove made by this, especially in a horseshoe, is **fuller.**

—. A name for a form of cast-iron in which pure iron and carbide of iron occur in alternate layers, or in granular formation, is **pearlite.**

—. A name for iron that has been run out of the furnace and set in oblong masses is **pig-iron.**

—. To convert molten iron into wrought-iron is to **puddle.**

—. The main channel of a mould used in iron-smelting for receiving the molten metal is the **sow.**

—. A name for very thin sheet-iron coated with tin is **taggers.**

—. Rolled or forged iron, which is malleable and can be worked when heated, is **wrought-iron.**

ivory, imitation. The name given to an imitation of ivory, consisting of the hardened seeds of the corozo nut, is **vegetable ivory.**

—, —. A name for an imitation of ivory made by treating wood fibre with sulphuric acid is **vegetaline.**

jewellery. A name for an alloy of copper and zinc formerly used for cheap jewellery is **pinchbeck.**

journalist. A journalist who writes for any party or paper, retaining his independence, is a **free-lance.**

—. A name given to a journalist who is paid according to the space his articles take up when printed is **space-writer.**

—. A journalist employed by a newspaper to send news from a certain town, district, or country, or to write on special subjects, is a **special correspondent.**

jug. A name of a large black leather jug formerly used for holding liquor is **black-jack.**

juice. The sour juice of unripe apples, crab-apples, sour grapes, etc., sometimes used instead of vinegar is **verjuice.**

jute. A name for a coarse material made of jute and hemp, used for bagging, is **Hessian.**

knife. A name for a machine, having a hinged knife, for trimming paper is **guillotine.**

—. The coarse-grained sandstone on which knives are sharpened is **grit, gritstone,** or **grit-rock.**

knot. A name for a little lump or knot in wool, cloth, etc., is **burl.**

lac. The name of a purified form of lac used for making varnishes is **shellac.**

lace. The delicate network which connects the pattern in lace is the **bride.**

—. A kind of lace with no net or mesh ground, the pattern being held together by threads, is **guipure.**

—. The name of a kind of lace mostly made at Honiton, in Devonshire, in which the decoration consists of flower sprigs, is **Honiton lace.**

—. A name for a kind of flaxen lace having a six-sided mesh, twisted and plaited to resemble embroidery, first made near Brussels, is **Mechlin.**

—. Lace made by twisting and plaiting threads round pins stuck into a leather pillow is **pillow-lace.**

—. Lace made entirely with a needle is **point-lace.**

—. A fine variety of lace in which the pattern is made with the same thread as the ground is **Valenciennes.**

—. A kind of point-lace worked in high relief is **Venetian lace.**

lamp. A name for a miner's wire-gauze safety lamp is **Davy lamp.**

laundry. To give a fluted edge to laundered lace or linen is to **goffer.**

lead. A compound of arsenic, nickel, copper, etc., produced in smelting lead is **speiss.**

leather. A name for the skin of a sheep which has been tanned in bark is **basil.**

leather. The thickest and most valuable part of a tanned ox-hide is the **butt.**

—. A dresser of leather is a **currier.**

—. A preparation of grease used to soften and water-proof leather is **dubbing** or **dubbin.**

—. Leather dressed on the grain-side is **grain-leather.**

—. The side of leather from which the hair has been removed is the **grain-side.**

—. The tools and materials used by a leather-worker are **grindery.**

—. The hides of yearling calves or goats, or the hides of small cattle, are **kips.**

—. The name given to the bark of oak and other trees used to cure leather is **tan.**

—, kind. A name for a kind of leather used in bookbinding, made of sheepskin tanned in oak or larch bark, is **basan** or **bazan.**

—, —. The thickest kind of leather, used for repairing boots and shoes is **bend-leather.**

—, —. Soft leather prepared from buffalo skins or ox-hide is **buff.**

—, —. A thin kind of goatskin leather used for gloves is **chevrette.**

—, —. The name given to a kind of tough, flexible leather made from the skins of sheep and goats is **Levant morocco.**

—, —. A name for a fine kind of leather made from goatskin or sheepskin tanned with sumac is **morocco.**

—, —. A name for a kind of leather used in bookbinding, made of split sheepskin stiffened with paste on the back, is **paste-grain.**

—, —. A name for a variety of leather now made from sheepskin, but originally made from the skin of Persian goats, is **Persian morocco.**

—, —. The name of a soft, flexible kind of leather made from sheepskin tanned with sumac is **roan.**

—, —. The name of a kind of strong and pliant leather, tanned with willow bark and treated with birch bark, is **Russia,** or **Russia leather.**

—, —. The name given to leather made from sheepskin or goatskin, tanned with sumac and dyed a bright colour, is **saffian.**

ledger. Each leaf, or pair of pages numbered as one, in a ledger is a **folio.**

—. To transfer accounts from a day-book to a ledger is to **post.**

lens. A name for a type of photographic lens having a very wide field of view is **pantoscope.**

—. *See also section* Physics.

level. A name for a spirit-level with a short telescope, used in surveying, is **dumpy level.**

light. A brilliant light used in photography, produced by the ignition of an illuminating substance mixed with an explosive, is a **flash-light.**

linen. A coarse linen stiffened with paste, used for the frameworks of women's hats, etc., is **buckram.**

—. A very fine linen named after the town Cambrai, in Northern France, is **cambric.**

—. A name for a fine linen or cambric, and also for a muslin of Oriental make, with a coloured printed pattern is **persienne.**

list. A list of articles arranged alphabetically or under group headings is a **catalogue.**

—. A detailed list of household linen, plate, etc., such as is usually made when letting a furnished house, is an **inventory.**

—. A list with prices and details of goods sent to a purchaser is an **invoice.**

—. A detailed list of construction, workmanship, etc., to be undertaken by a builder or contractor, is a **specification.**

—. A carrier's list of the parcels or passengers carried by him is a **way-bill.**

loan. An instrument issued by a company or public body as security for a loan, on which interest is due until the principal is repaid, is a **bond** or **debenture.**

loan. Money lent on condition that repayment may be asked for without notice is a **call-loan** or **call-money.**

—. A name for the aggregate value at market-price of the different stocks and shares in which a loan is funded is **omnium.**

—, repayment. A rule for finding when a person should pay the whole of a debt contracted in different portions to be paid at different times is the **equation of payments.**

loom. A set of parallel cords or wires stretched between horizontal bars on a loom is a **heddle.**

loss. A term denoting the loss from damage to a ship or its cargo is **average.**

malt. A name for an infusion of malt for fermenting into beer is **wort.**

manager. A name for a native manager of a European firm in the Far East is **comprador.**

manufacture. The manufacture of an article in very large quantities with labour-saving tools and devices is **mass production.**

marble, imitation. One whose trade it is to paint in imitation of the grain of marble or wood is a **grainer.**

match. A name for a large, oval-headed match for outdoor use is **fusee.**

—. The stem of a match before the head is put on is a **splint.**

—. A name for a wax match igniting by friction is **vesta.**

—. A name for a kind of fusee, or match specially made to remain alight in a wind, is **vesuvian.**

measure. A depth measure of six feet, used at sea and in mining, is a **fathom**

—. A name for the official measurement of a load of corn, coal, etc., is **metage.**

meeting. A list of matters for consideration at a meeting is an **agenda.**

—. The record of proceedings at a company or official meeting is written in a **minute-book.**

—. A name for a short summary of the proceedings of a committee or other meeting is **minutes.**

—. A formal expression of opinion by a public meeting, legislative body, etc., is a **resolution.**

—. *See also under* **committee,** *above.*

merchant. A name for an agent, wholesaler, or merchant intermediate between producer and consumer is **middleman.**

metal. A mixture of two or more metals is an **alloy.**

—. Metals other than precious are **base metals.**

—. Metals so pliant that they can be drawn out into threads or wires are **ductile.**

—. Metal rolled into extremely thin sheets is **foil.**

—. To cast molten metals or other materials in a mould is to **found.**

—. A name for the process of extracting metals from their ores is **metallurgy.**

—. Names for an alloy of sixty parts of copper with forty parts of zinc, are **Muntz metal** and **yellow-metal.**

—, alloy. A fusible alloy of metal used to join parts of less fusible metals is a **solder.**

—, casting. A mixture of charcoal and coal or coke dust very finely ground, used in casting, is **founders' dust.**

—, —. A name for a specially fine sand used for moulds in metal casting is **founders' sand.**

—, coated. Metal articles coated with silver or other more valuable metal by means of electric currents are **electro-plated.**

—, edge. The rough edge on metal, etc., after cutting, is a **burr.**

—, mass. A name for an oblong mass of unforged metal is **pig.**

—, melting. The slag or scum formed on molten metal is **dross.**

—, —. A small ladle used to dip out samples of molten metal is a **flux-spoon.**

—, —. The melting or liquefaction of metals by means of intense heat is **fusion.**

metal, polishing. A wheel or stick covered with buff leather for polishing metals is a **buff-wheel** or **buff-stick.**

—, testing. A very delicate balance for testing metals is an **assay-balance.**

—, —. An instrument for testing metals by means of a telephone is a **sonometer.**

—. *See also section* Chemistry.

metal-work. Metal-work of gold, silver, etc., executed in a fine open-work design resembling lace is **filigree.**

—. A machine that shapes metal pots and pans by pressure is a **folding-machine.**

—, embossing. To emboss a metal vase, etc., by hammering the inside with a special tool is to **snarl.**

—, —. A tool used to snarl or emboss metal, consisting of a bar with two tapering arms with upturned points, is a **snarling-iron.**

mine. The surface of the ground at the top of a mine shaft is the **bank.**

—. A partition for ventilation in a mine is a **brattice.**

—. The framework and hoisting gear over the top of a mine shaft is the **head-gear.**

—, drainage. A name for a pit in the lowest part of a mine, used for drainage purposes, is **sump.**

—, lift. A lift-chamber in a mine shaft is a **cage.**

—, passage. A more or less horizontal entrance to a mine is an **adit.**

—, —. A horizontal passage following a lode or vein of mineral is a **drift.**

—, —. A name for a passage in or leading to a mine is **gallery.**

—, —. A short underground passage in a mine connecting the main road with a ventilating passage is a **spout.**

—, respirator. A name for a breathing apparatus used by miners when exploring a mine after an explosion is **pneumatophore.**

—, ventilation. A passage for ventilation in a mine is **airway.**

—, —. A name for a small shaft sunk from one level to another for ventilating a mine or providing means of communication is **winze.**

mining. An oblong inclined vat for washing ore, in mining, is a **buddle.**

— A name for a miner's wire gauze safety lamp is **Davy lamp.**

—. A name given to a lode or layer of rock containing quartz with veins of valuable metal is **reef.**

—. In mining, to break up ore for crushing or sorting is to **spall.**

—. A space dug or cut out between two horizontal mine galleries in a vertical seam of ore is a **stope.**

— The name given to a revolving cylindrical sieve used to clean ore is **trommel.**

—, deposit. A name for an alluvial or other deposit of soil containing valuable minerals is **placer.**

—, output. A name for the output of the workings of a mine is **get.**

—. *See also under* **coal-mining** *and* **gold-mining,** *above*; *and* **tin-mining,** *below.*

minting. The fee charged by a mint for coining money is **brassage.**

—. A plain metal disk used in minting for making into a coin is a **planchet.**

moisture. The process of removing moisture from wood, sugar, wool, etc., is **exsiccation.**

money. Money invested in a business or enterprise for earning interest or profits is **capital.**

—. An employee having charge of cash or of money transactions is a **cashier.**

—. The falling off in value of money is **depreciation.**

—. A name for money lent to a government and forming a national debt is **funds.**

—. An advance of money to carry on some public service is an **imprest.**

—. Money paid at certain periods for the use of capital invested is **interest.**

money. A sum of money kept in hand to meet unforeseen demands is a **reserve.**

—, aid. Aid in money granted by a government to an industry, etc., is a **subsidy.**

—, changing. The rate at which money of one country can be changed into money of another country is the **exchange.**

—, lending. A term meaning the borrowing of money on the security of a ship is **bottomry.**

—, —. The lending of money at interest is **usury.**

muslin. A fine light muslin folded in the piece somewhat like a book is **book-muslin.**

—. A name for a fine translucent kind of muslin is **organdie.**

—. A name for a muslin, and also for a cambric of Oriental make, with a coloured, printed pattern is **persienne.**

—. The name of a thin, transparent muslin originally imported from India is **tarlatan.**

nail. A thin nail with a small projection on one end instead of a head, used by shoemakers, is a **brad.**

—. A long nail with a small head used for holding thick planks together is a **spike-nail.**

national debt. Moneys lent to a government and forming the stock of the national debt are **funds.**

needlework. A kind of needlework of Norwegian origin, having square and diamond patterns, is **hardanger.**

net. *See under* **fishing,** *above.*

newspaper. An article in a newspaper written by or expressing the opinions of the editor or proprietor is an **editorial.**

—. A name for the part of a newspaper devoted to light literature, and for an article or story printed there, is **feuilleton.**

nickel-plating. The art or process of nickel-plating is **nickelage.**

notice. A formal notice concerning a transaction is an **advice.**

oil. An instrument for ascertaining the purity of certain oils is an **elaeometer.**

—. A product obtained in the distillation of petroleum and used as fuel is **gasolene.**

—. A fatty, plastic substance extracted from petroleum and shale-oil is **paraffin** or **paraffin wax.**

—. The name given to an oil obtained from the blubber of whales, especially of the whalebone whale, is **train-oil.**

—, mining. A name for a dynamite cartridge exploded at the bottom of an oil-well to start the flow of oil is **go-devil.**

—, well. A name for an oil-well that gushes out oil with force without the use of pumps is **gusher.**

opinion. A formal expression of opinion by a legislative body. public meeting, etc., is a **resolution.**

order. The name given to an order for goods or stores, especially one from abroad or for government supplies, is **indent.**

—, banker's. An order on a firm's bankers to pay dividend to a shareholder is a **dividend-warrant.**

—, —. An order drawn by a banker on another branch of his own bank, or sent by one banker to another, and payable to a person named on the order is a **draft.**

ore. The name of a clay from which alum and aluminium are chiefly obtained is **bauxite.**

—. A name given to ores too powdery for smelting is **fines.**

—. A name for the process of extracting metals from their ores is **metallurgy.**

—. Ores in which a metal is combined with oxygen—the most important kind of ores—are **oxide ores.**

—, crushing. A name for a percentage of ore paid in some instances to the owner of a crushing mill for grinding is **multure**

ore, iron. The name for an iron ore of very dark colour due to the presence of coal is **black-band.**

—, —. A name for an earthy iron ore containing small particles of silver is **paco.**

—, powdering. The powdering of an ore by heating it and producing a metallic oxide is **calcination.**

—, testing. A name for a rough test of the quality of ore by washing on a shovel is **van.**

outline. A rough outline or copy of a document is a **draft.**

oven. A name for an oven for baking pottery, etc., without exposing it to furnace gases is **muffle.**

overalls. A coarse calico used for engineer's overalls, etc., is **dungaree.**

oyster. A name for the artificial culture of oysters is **ostreiculture.**

—, bed. A name for an artificial oyster-bed is **stew.**

page. A blank page at the beginning or end of a printed book is a **fly-leaf.**

paint. A hard durable paint of which the nitrated cellulose pyroxylin forms the base is a **pyroxylin paint.**

pamphlet. A name for a small pamphlet is **brochure.**

panelling. Wooden panelling or boarding for covering the inner walls of rooms is **wainscot** or **wainscoting.**

paper. A name for a machine for trimming paper is **guillotine.**

—. A large roll of paper used for printing newspapers is a **web.**

—, kind. A name for a fine kind of paper on which bills of exchange are printed is **exchange-cap.**

—, —. A name for thin paper used in the duplication of documents is **flimsy.**

—, —. A specially prepared paper used for the matrices or moulds in stereotyping is **flong.**

—, —. A name for a strong kind of brownish paper widely used in making business envelopes is **Manila paper.**

—, —. Paper having a very high finish is **super-calendered.**

—, —. The name of a tough kind of paper made from the bark of the paper-mulberry tree used in the Pacific islands for clothes, mats, etc., is **tapa.**

—, mark. A semi-transparent design in a sheet of paper is a **watermark.**

—, photographic. A photographic paper with a dull surface, as distinguished from a glossy one, is **mat.**

—, —. The name of a kind of albumenized photographic paper made in Saxony is **Saxe.**

—, rough-edged. Hand-made paper in which the edges are left rough or untrimmed is **deckle-edged.**

—, size. The name for a size of printing paper measuring approximately 20 inches by 15 inches is **crown**; 22½ by 17½, **demy**; 30 by 20, **double crown**; 35 by 22½, **double demy**; 27 by 17, **double foolscap**; 33 by 21, **double large post**; 40 by 25, **double royal**; 17 by 13½, **foolscap**; 30 by 22, **imperial**; 25 by 20, **royal**; 19 by 15½, **small post**; 27½ by 20½, **super-royal.**

—, —. *See also under* **book,** *above.*

—, texture. The smooth or rough texture of paper varying according to the method of manufacture is the **grain.**

paper-making. A frame used in paper-making on which the pulp is spread is a **deckle.**

parchment. A parchment made from specially prepared sheepskins and used principally for covering account books is **forel.**

—. A name for a fine kind of parchment, made originally from the skin of the calf, and for a manuscript written on this, is **vellum.**

partner. The name given to a partner in a business who takes no active share in its management is **sleeping partner.**

patent. A description of a patent, its construction and use, which must be tendered when applying for letters patent, is a **specification.**

paving-stone. A large slab of stone used in paving is a **flag.**

payment. A payment in ready money is a **cash-payment.**

—. A form of payment whereby a debtor arranges to pay a certain proportion of his debts to each creditor is a **composition.**

—. Work paid for by time-wages is **oncost** or **oncost work.**

—, confirmation. A document which confirms a payment or the state of an account is a **voucher.**

—, gradual. The name given to a system by which goods purchased are paid for gradually, and are regarded as being hired until payment is complete, is **hire-purchase system.**

perfumery. A waxy substance formed in the intestines of the sperm-whale, used in making scent, is **ambergris.**

—. A fragrant oil obtained from flowers, especially from roses, is **attar.**

— A fragrant gum from a tree of Java and Sumatra, used for toilet preparations and as a perfume, is **benzoin.**

—. The name of an oily essence distilled from flowers of the Seville orange tree and used in making many perfumes, including eau-de-Cologne, is **neroli.**

petroleum. *See under* **oil,** *above.*

pewter. The name given to an alloy containing lead, tin, bismuth, and antimony, resembling pewter, is **queen's-metal.**

photography, automatic. The name for a machine which automatically takes a series of photographs when a coin is dropped in a slot is **photomaton.**

—, colour. The name given to a kind of photograph representing objects in their natural colours is **heliochrome.**

—, —. A photographic plate that is uniformly sensitive to light of all colours is **panchromatic.**

—, —. A name for a photographic process in which the colouring qualities of light are utilized in reproducing pictures in the tints of the original objects is **photochromy.**

—, contrast. A chemical used to deepen the contrast between the dark and light parts of a negative is an **intensifier.**

—, defect. A defect in a photograph caused by the reflection of a strong light from the back of the plate during exposure is a **halation.**

—, developer. The name of a chemical used as a photographic developer is **hydroquinone.**

— —. A developer commonly used in photography is **pyrogallic acid**—usually abbreviated to **pyro.**

—, distant. The photographing of objects from a distance by means of a special long-focus lens is **telephotography.**

—, instantaneous. An instantaneous photograph taken with the type of camera called a pistolgraph is a **pistolgram.**

—, light. A brilliant light used in photography, produced by the ignition of an illuminating substance mixed with an explosive, is a **flash-light.**

—, —. A name given to various .contrivances for controlling the passage of light through a photographic lens is **screen.**

—, print. Names for the process by which lasting photographic prints are made on paper coated with the salt called platinum chloride, are **platinotype** and **platinum process.**

—, —. A photographic print or plate having the lights and shades as in nature is a **positive.**

—, —. The name given to a print made by long exposure on printing-out paper and toned with a gold solution is **silver print.**

photography, print. A small instrument composed of a rubber roller set in a handle, used for flattening photographic prints, is a **squeegee.**

—, —. The shade or colour of a photographic print is its **tone.**

—, printing. A name for a printing process by which inked prints are obtained from the hardened gelatine film of a photograph is **collotype.**

—, —. A name for a photographic process in which a carbon print is made by contact with a bromide print is **ozobrome.**

—, —. A name for the photographic printing process in which sensitized paper after printing by light is placed in contact with a wet pigment plaster is **ozotype.**

—, process. The name of an early photographic process invented by Fox Talbot is **talbotype.**

—, view. A device attached to a hand camera to show the field of view is a **finder.**

—. *See also under* **plate,** *below.*

pickle. A name for a pickle made of wine and vinegar for preserving meat and fish, and also for food preserved thus, is **marinade.**

pigment. Colouring matter made from the stigmas of the autumnal crocus is **saffron.**

—. The name given to a green pigment prepared from the juice of buckthorn berries is **sap-green.**

—. A brilliant red pigment obtained by grinding cinnabar, or by the chemical treatment of mercury and sulphur, is **vermilion.**

—. *See also section* Art.

plaster. A name given to a lime slaked to a very fine powder and mixed with hair and plaster, used for the inside walls of houses, is **fine-stuff.**

plate, photographic. A photographic plate from which a picture may be made without the use of a sensitizing bath before exposure is a **dry-plate.**

—, —. A kind of sensitive plate which records the relative colour values of objects with great correctness is **isochromatic** or **orthochromatic.**

—, —. A photographic plate on which lights and shadows are reversed is a **negative.**

pledge. Money paid as a pledge that a bargain will be kept is **earnest-money.**

—. The name given to anything given, deposited, or hypothecated as a pledge is **security.**

polish. A polish composed of a solution of gum or shellac in alcohol or wood naphtha and used to give a high polish to cabinet work is **french polish.**

porcelain. *See under* **earthenware,** *above*; *and* **pottery,** *below.*

portrait. A name for a camera portrait showing only the head and shoulders with the edges shading into the background is **vignette.**

pottery. A Chinese pottery veined with colour like tortoiseshell is **bekko-ware.**

—. Pottery baked once but not glazed is **biscuit** or **bisque.**

—. The art of making pottery or earthenware is **ceramics** or **keramics.**

—. China with a surface covered with a delicate tracery of cracks is **crackle-china** or **crackle-ware.**

—. A name for a white porcelain resembling the marble obtained from Paros, in the Greek Archipelago, is **Parian.**

—. A fireclay box or pot in which porcelain is enclosed while in the kiln is a **saggar.**

—. A kind of porcelain produced by Josiah Spode, much decorated with flower designs, is **Spode.**

—. A kind of pottery containing a large proportion of silica is **stone-ware.**

—. To put a thin coating on pottery is **to veneer.**

—. *See also under* **earthenware,** *above*; *and section* Art.

precious stone. *See under* **gem,** *above.*

price. The price charged if ready money is paid is the **cash-price.**

—. The price that goods will fetch in an open market is their **market-price** or **market-value.**

printing. A name for a defect in printing due to broken or damaged type is **batter.**

—. A printer who distributes work to the compositors is a **clicker.**

—. A room in a printing works where type is set up is a **composing-room.**

—. A cloth with which a printer wipes the surplus ink off a plate is a **dossil.**

—. To cut or carve on wood or metal for subsequent printing is to **engrave.**

—. A name for a printer who does miscellaneous printing as distinct from book or newspaper printing is **grasser** or **jobbing-printer.**

—. In printing, paper from the presses which is spoilt is **spoilage.**

—. A printing plate cast in a mould taken from set type is a **stereotype.**

—. A name for a brace is **vinculum.**

—. A large roll of paper used for printing newspapers is a **web.**

—, block. A printing block produced by photographic and chemical or mechanical methods is a **process block.**

—, colour. A name for a process of printing of several colours at one impression is **stenochromy.**

—, lithographic. A name for a method of printing in which an impression from a stone or a metal plate is transferred to a rubber sheet, and thence by offset to the paper, is **offset lithography.**

—, machinery. The name of a kind of machine for moulding stereo plates for printing is **autoplate.**

—, —. A kind of printing machine in which cylinders are used to carry the paper and press it against the type is a **cylinder-press.**

—, —. A vibrating frame with fingers which carries sheets from the cylinder of the printing-press to the delivery-table is a **flyer** or **flier.**

—, —. A machine that folds the printed sheets of newspapers before issue is a **folder** or **folding machine.**

—, —. A name for an attachment on a printing machine for printing news in the Stop Press column of a newspaper is **fudge.**

—, —. A name for a printing press which prints upon both sides of the paper at one operation is **perfecter.**

—, —. A name for a revolving roller which moves backwards and forwards to spread ink evenly on the other rollers is **vibrator.**

—, process. A name for a process of photo-engraving used in printing is **autogravure.**

—, —. A process for reproducing drawings made on gelatine and transferred to metal plates for printing is **autotypography.**

—, —. A process of making a printing plate from a mould coated with metal by electro-plating is **electrotype.**

—, —. A name for a printing process in which an electrotype plate with a raised design is made from an etching is **glyphography.**

—, —. A process of making a relief block for illustrating, by means of a design drawn on a chalk surface with a specially prepared ink, is **graphotype.**

—, —. Printing from a smooth porous stone, or from a grained metal plate, is **lithography.**

—, type. The name of a style of type resembling that used by the earliest printers is a **black-letter.**

—, —. A frame for printing type is a **chase.**

—, —. A printing type with a heavy face is **clarendon.**

—, —. A kind of type consisting of tall, thin letters, such as was used in the seventeenth century for the books printed by the Elzevir family, is **Elzevir.**

printing, type. A wooden or metal wedge placed against the foot of a page to hold the type in place is a **foot-stick.**

—, —. A page or a number of pages of type locked up in an iron frame ready for printing is a **forme.**

—, —. A complete set of printing type of one size and pattern is a **fount** or **font.**

—, —. A long, narrow tray on which the compositors place the type as it is set up is a **galley.**

—, —. A proof taken from type on a galley as distinct from that arranged in pages is a **galley-proof.**

—, —. A name for the ornamental black-letter type resembling the Gothic text used in Germany is **German text.**

—, —. A square-cut printing type without serifs is **grotesque.**

—, —. A name for a thin piece of metal for spacing out printing type is a **hair-lead.**

—, —. A name for a thin-faced printing type is **hair-letter.**

—, —. A name for the thinnest space used by printers in spacing out type is a **hair-space.**

—, —. A printing type having two or more letters cast in one piece is a **logotype.**

—, —. The names of the types most commonly used in English printing, in order of size, are 4¾ point, **pearl**; 6 point, **nonpareil**; 7 point, **minion**; 8 point, **brevier**; 8½ point, **bourgeois**; 9½ point, **long primer**; 10½ point, **small pica**; 12 point, **pica**; 14 point, **English**; 18 point, **great primer.**

—, —. A term used to describe type that is set without spaces between lines is **solid.**

production. The manufacture of an article in very large quantities with labour-saving tools and devices is **mass production.**

profit. The share of profits received by shareholders in a company is the **dividend.**

—. Profit arising from an office or employment is an **emolument.**

—. A small profit near the limit which would make a transaction unprofitable is **marginal.**

—. The profits of an investment or an undertaking are a **return.**

promissory note. A note issued by the government promising to repay a loan after a certain period is an **exchequer bond** or **treasury bond.**

proof, printing. A mark (ʌ) used by writers and correctors of proofs to show an omission is a **caret.**

—, —. A term in printing meaning to omit something put in in error, and for which a sign like a " d " is used by the proof-reader, is **dele.**

—, —. A proof taken from type on a galley as distinct from that arranged in pages is a **galley-proof.**

property. A name for property or effects liable to be applied to satisfy debts or legacies is **assets.**

proportion. A statement or expression of proportion between two quantities or sets of things is a **rate.**

publican. A publican with a licence to sell intoxicating liquors is a **licensed victualler.**

purchase. To offer to purchase goods at a given price is to **tender.**

purification. An apparatus for removing certain impurities from liquids and air is a **filter.**

—, alcohol. The purification of alcohol by distillation is **rectification.**

railway. The name of an institution where railway accounts are adjusted by setting off one against the other and paying only the balances is **clearing-house.**

—. Loaded vehicles on railways have to conform in width and height to a **loading-gauge.**

—. A name for all the wheeled stock belonging to a railway is **rolling-stock.**

—. *See also section* Engineering.

receipt. *See* **acknowledgment,** *above*

record. That part of a cheque, dividend warrant, etc., which is kept by the drawer or purchaser as a record is a **counterfoil.**

—. A name for the record or summary of proceedings at a company meeting, etc., is **minutes.**

refreshment-house. A name given in France and Belgium to a refreshment-house where light meals and drink may be obtained is **estaminet.**

right. A name for the right to acquire or refuse to acquire land, goods, or securities at an agreed rate in an agreed time is **option.**

rope. Rope twisted in an anti-clockwise direction, that is, to the left, is **water-laid.**

—. *See also section* Army, Navy, Air Force, etc.

rubber. Rubber which has been treated with a large proportion of sulphur in the vulcanizing process is **vulcanite.**

— The process of treating raw rubber with sulphur, to increase its strength and elasticity, is **vulcanization.**

sacking. Heavy, coarse sacking made from jute or hemp is **gunny.**

saddle. The upward turn at the rear of a saddle to prevent the rider slipping back is a **cantle.**

—. The band that fastens the saddle to a horse's back is the **girth.**

sale. The sale of goods in small quantities is **retail.**

—. The sale of goods in large quantities is **wholesale.**

—, public. A public sale at which intending buyers bid against each other, the one bidding the highest price obtaining the article that is put up for sale, is an **auction.**

—, —. A public sale at which goods are put up at a price above their value and gradually lowered in price until a purchaser is found is a **Dutch auction.**

saw. The name of a kind of saw with large teeth used to cut wood in the direction of the grain is **rip-saw.**

—. *See also section* Engineering.

screw. Names given to a metal screw used for fastening pieces of wood together, or for screwing metal parts to wood, are **carpenter's screw** and **wood-screw.**

seaweed. An impure carbonate of soda made in France by burning seaweed is **varec.**

secretary. A name for a secretary or one employed to write what another dictates is **amanuensis.**

security. Stocks and bonds not entered in any name, which can change hands without formal transfer, are **bearer securities.**

—. The change of one kind of security into another is **conversion.**

—. A security or pledge in the form of bonds, share-certificates, etc., placed with a banker in return for a loan is a **deposit.**

—. The sum of money between the price at which a security is bought and sold is the **difference.**

—. Securities for which no provision for redemption or paying off is made are **irredeemable.**

—. The name for the pledging of immovable property as security for a debt, with a proviso that it shall be redeemed on payment of the debt within a certain period, is **mortgage.**

—. A British Government security issued as part of a loan raised in June, 1919, to reduce the floating debt incurred during the World War was a **Victory bond.**

selling. A money allowance or percentage on goods sold is a **commission.**

—. A person who sells goods for another and receives a percentage or commission on what is sold is a **commission agent.**

share. An extra share issued to holders of shares in a limited liability company is a **bonus-share.**

—. *See also under* **stocks and shares,** *below.*

sheepskin. A name for sheepskin that has been tanned in bark is **basil.**

sheepskin. A kind of parchment made from specially prepared sheepskins and used principally to cover account-books is **forel.**

ship. The document constituting the receipt of the cargo taken on board by the master of a ship is a **bill of lading.**

—. The name for a written agreement to let the whole or part of a ship on hire for carrying goods is **charter-party.**

—. A name for a document giving details of a ship's cargo for revenue purposes is **manifest.**

—. *See also section* Army, Navy, Air Force, etc.

shipping. The merchant shipping fleet of a country, its passenger-boats, cargo-boats, fishing craft, etc., is its **mercantile marine.**

shoddy. A name for a woollen cloth made of second-hand and pure wool, of better quality than shoddy, is **mungo.**

shoemaking. A name for a thin nail, much used by shoemakers, with a small projection on one end instead of a head is **brad.**

—. A name for a tool used by shoemakers to stretch boot-uppers on a block is **flounder.**

—. A small, headless, wedge-shaped nail, used by shoemakers for the soles and heels of boots, is a **sparable.**

—. The upper part of a boot or shoe in front of the ankle seams is the **vamp.**

—. A strip of leather sewn round the upper of a boot or shoe, so that it may be attached to the sole, is a **welt.**

shop-plate. A plate over a shop showing the proprietor's name, etc., is a **facia** or **fascia.**

shorthand. Another name for shorthand is **stenography.**

show-case. A name for a glass show-case in a shop or museum is **vitrine.**

signature. A person's own handwriting, especially his signature, is an **autograph.**

—. To write one's signature on the back of a document or cheque is to **endorse.**

silk. An embroidery silk made from untwisted fibres of silk is **filoselle.**

—. The silk enveloping the silkworm's cocoon, which is carded and spun for commercial purposes, is **floss.**

—. Cotton treated in such a way that it has the sheen of silk is **mercerized.**

—. A name for a silk thread made by twisting together several smaller threads in a direction opposite to that of the strands composing them is **organzine.**

—. The name of a kind of coarse, strong, fawn-coloured silk is **tussore.**

—, Chinese. The name of a soft, unbleached, Chinese silk is **pongee.**

—, fabric. A twilled dress material, usually of silk and worsted, fashionable in the middle years of the nineteenth century was **bombasine** or **bombazine.**

—, —. A silk fabric with a raised pattern either in silk or in metal thread is a **brocade.**

—, —. The name of a fabric with a warp of silk and a woof of wool or linen, having a corded surface, is **poplin.**

—, —. The name given to a silk fabric, composed of differently-coloured warp and woof, which appears to change colour with every change of position is **shot-silk.**

—, —. A name given to a light, stiff, glossy silk fabric having a plain texture is **taffeta.**

—, —. The name of a stout twilled silk used for making dresses is **tobine.**

—, manufacture. The process of reeling silk from cocoons is **filature.**

—, —. The operation of moistening silk thread with steam to give it a lustre is **glossing.**

—, —. A name for the process of twisting and doubling raw silk is **moulinage.**

silver. Uncoined silver or gold in bars is **bullion.**

silver, alloy. A name for silver alloyed with a large proportion of copper, used in making medals and coins, is **billon.**

—, imitation. Names for various mixtures of metals having the appearance of silver and used in place of it are **Britannia metal, white alloy,** and **white metal.**

—, mark. A mark used at Goldsmiths' Hall and at the Government assay offices to show the standard of gold and silver articles, and the place and date of the marking, is a **hall-mark.**

skin. The skin or hide of an animal, especially when covered with the hair, is a **fell.**

—, dealer. A dealer in the hides and skins of animals is a **fellmonger.**

slaughterhouse. A name for a public slaughter-house is **abattoir.**

sleeping-car. The name given to a sleeping-car on a Continental railway is **wagon-lit.**

smelting. A name for a thick bar rolled out of an ingot of steel or other metal is **billet.**

—. A name for an impure product of the smelting of ore, especially copper, is **matte.**

—. A name for a passage or hole through which molten metal is poured into a mould, and also for a corresponding projection formed on the casting, is **sprue.**

soap. The process of combining an alkali with animal or vegetable fats to make soap is **saponification.**

soda, carbonate. An impure carbonate of soda made in France by burning seaweed is **varec.**

soda-water. A name for an apparatus used to make soda-water is **gazogene** or **gasogene.**

soldering. To solder with an alloy of brass and zinc is to **braze.**

—. A piece of copper mounted in a handle used to apply heat in soldering metals is a **copper-bit, soldering-bit,** or **soldering-iron.**

—. A powder or liquid used to facilitate fusion of solder is a **flux.**

—. A white, scaly mineral used as a flux in soldering is **spalt.**

sorter. A sorter of wool, cotton, etc., who classifies these according to the quality of their fibre is a **stapler.**

speculation. A name for cotton, grain, and other commodities bought and sold speculatively for future delivery is **futures.**

spinning. A name for a type of spinning-machine produced by Samuel Crompton in 1779 is **mule.**

—. The name for a type of spinning-machine invented about 1764 by James Hargreaves is **spinning-jenny.**

spirit. A spirit containing more than the standard amount of alcohol is **over-proof.**

—. Spirit that contains the standard amount of alcohol is **proof-spirit.**

—. A spirit containing less than the standard amount of alcohol is **under-proof.**

—, impure. An impure spirit collected at the beginning and end of the process of distilling whisky, etc., is **faints.**

staining. A name for a bright red resin used for colouring and staining is **dragon's blood.**

state-aid. A name for financial aid given by the State to an industry, etc., is **subsidy.**

steel. A name for a hard variety of steel with a low proportion of carbon, having a structure of tiny interlacing, needle-like parts, is **martensite.**

—. The name given to a kind of steel intended for the manufacture of cutting instruments is **shear steel.**

—, fine. A name for a kind of steel of fine quality, made in India, and imported into Europe and America for edge-tools, is **wootz.**

—, manufacture. A process of making steel from pig-iron by blowing air through it as it comes from the furnace until all the impurities except a very little carbon disappear is the **Bessemer process.**

steel, manufacture. An alloy of iron, manganese, and carbon used in the manufacture of steel is **spiegeleisen.**

steward. In Scotland a name for a steward or agent of an estate is **factor.**

still. A name for the spiral pipe of a still in which the vapour is cooled and condenses is **worm.**

stock. The name by which British Government consolidated stock is known is **Consols.**

—. Certain stock issued by a company, the interest on which is the first charge on the company's dividend, is **debenture-stock.**

—. On the Stock Exchange, a name for a stock or bond generally accepted as security is **floater.**

—. Stock for which no certificates are issued, the names of the holders and their holdings being simply registered, is **inscribed stock.**

Stock Exchange. A term used of a person expelled from membership of the London Stock Exchange for non-payment of his debts is **hammered.**

stocks and shares. The apportionment of stocks or shares, as well as the amount of stocks or number of shares apportioned, is **allotment.**

— The fee that a seller of stocks or shares has to pay for being allowed to delay the transfer of stocks to the buyer is **backwardation.**

—. A premium paid by a buyer of stocks or shares for the privilege of being allowed to complete purchase after settling-day is a **contango**

—. Stocks or shares when quoted at a price below the nominal value are at a **discount.**

—. A name for the aggregate value at market-price of the different stocks and shares in which a loan is funded is **omnium.**

—. Stocks and shares that can be re-sold for the price at which they were first issued are at **par.**

—. Shares and stocks entitled to dividend before ordinary shares and stocks are **preference shares** or **preference stocks.**

—. Shares or stocks so much in demand that people pay more than the price at which they were issued are at a **premium.**

—. To apply for shares or purchase stocks in a new issue with the object of selling immediately at a profit is to **stag.**

—, buying. To buy stocks or shares in the expectation of re-selling at a profit before being obliged to take them up is to **bull.**

—, selling. A name for a broker who sells stocks and shares not in his possession, hoping the price will fall and enable him to buy cheaply before he has to deliver, is **bear.**

sugar. The name for a vegetable sugar manufactured commercially from starch and sulphuric acid is **grape-sugar.**

—. A name for a kind of broad-bladed knife used by natives of tropical America for cutting down sugar-canes is **matchet** or **machete.**

—. The name for the uncrystallizable syrup obtained in manufacturing or refining sugar is **molasses.**

—. A name given by Spanish planters to unrefined cane sugar is **muscovado.**

summary. A summary of a letter or other document is a **précis.**

supply. The supply of any commodity for sale in excess of its demand is a **glut.**

surveying. A name for an index or pointer on a theodolite or other surveying instrument showing the degrees cut off on a graduated arc is **alidad.**

—. A name for the line from which a surveyor divides an area into triangles for the purpose of measurement is **base.**

—. A name for a spirit-level with a short telescope, used in surveying, is **dumpy level.**

—. A point or line assumed in surveying as a fixed basis of comparison is **fiducial.**

—. The name of an instrument used by a surveyor for measuring angles is **graphometer**

surveying. A kind of mechanical calculator used for solving certain problems in surveying and navigation is a **Gunter** or **Gunter's scale.**

—. In surveying, a point from which measurements are made is a **station.**

—. The name of an instrument used by surveyors for measuring horizontal and vertical angles is **theodolite.**

—. A name for a surveying instrument used to measure horizontal angles is **transit-compass.**

—. To divide a country or area into a number of triangles for the purpose of surveying is to **triangulate.**

—. A name for the horizontal sliding part of a surveyor's levelling-staff is **vane.**

—. A Y-shaped level used by surveyors is a **Y level.**

syrup. A name for a syrup used in sweet-making and fruit-preserving, prepared by boiling starch with diluted sulphuric acid, is **glucose.**

tanning. An alkaline solution used in tanning soft leathers for the uppers of boots is **bate.**

—. A name for a tool used to strip the hair from hides is **depilator.**

—. A solution used in tanning, in which skins are steeped, is a **drench.**

—. A burnishing tool of glass or agate used to give leather a polished finish is a **glassing-jack.**

— Skins with the wool or fur taken off ready for tanning are **pelts.**

—. The name for the acorn-cup of the Turkish or Greek oak used in tanning and dyeing and for making ink is **vallonia** or **valonia.**

tap. A name for a tap or spout for drawing liquid from a barrel is **faucet.**

tapestry. A kind of tapestry used for door and wall hangings, named after the town in Artois, where a similar richly-coloured tapestry was first made, is **arras.**

—. A superior kind of French tapestry made, or imitated from that made, at the State factory in Paris, founded by the Gobelin family in the fifteenth century, is **Gobelin.**

tax. The taxes imposed on imports and exports are **customs** or **custom-duties.**

—. The taxes or duties on imported goods which are charged according to the origin of the goods are **differential duties.**

—. Taxes payable by the owner of a vessel using a dock are **dock-charges** or **dock-dues.**

tempering. The process of tempering or toughening metals and other substances by first heating and then cooling slowly is **annealing.**

thread A number of threads gathered together from the ends of a warp is a **beer.**

—. A wooden cylinder on which thread is wound is a **bobbin.**

—. The conical roll of thread formed on the spindle of a spinning-machine is a **cop.**

timber. A name for a piece of timber roughly trimmed and squared is **balk.**

—. A name for a length of wood from two to eight inches wide, and not more than two inches thick, is **batten.**

—. The arrangement and direction of the fibres in wood is the **grain.**

—. Timber with a hard, close grain is **hardwood.**

—. A name given to a small beam, especially one less than five inches square, is **scantling.**

—. A name for timber that is easily worked is **softwood.**

—, distortion. A distortion produced in timber by uneven shrinking is a **warp.**

—, grain. The grain of wood when running across the regular grain is **cross-grain.**

—, —. The grain of wood when running from the pith to the bark is a **felt-grain.**

tin-mining. In tin-mining, to search for a metal-bearing lode by sinking small pits down to the bed-rock is to **costean.**

—. In tin-mining, a shallow pit dug through the surface soil to the metal-bearing rock is a **costean-pit.**

tin-mining. A name given to a tin-mining district in Cornwall or Devon is **stannary.**

—. *See also under* **mining,** *above.*

tin-plate. The name given to an inferior kind of tin-plate is **terne.**

tinsmith. A name for a small mechanical hammer, worked by steam or by the foot, used by tinsmiths is **oliver.**

tire. A bicycle tire made of rubber tubing stuffed with shreds of rubber is a **cushion-tire.**

tobacco. A name for a bundle of tobacco leaves tied on the stem is **hand.**

—. A name for a strong-flavoured, dark-coloured grade of tobacco grown and manufactured in Louisiana, U.S.A., and chiefly used for blending, is **Perique.**

—. A name for a low grade of fine-cut tobacco is **shag.**

—, French. The name of a coarse kind of tobacco used in France is **caporal.**

—, Turkish. The name of a strong kind of Turkish tobacco, usually blended with other kinds, is **latakia.**

tools. *See section* Engineering.

trade. Trade in which goods are sold in small quantities to the public is **retail.**

— Trade in which goods are sold in large quantities, to be retailed by other dealers, is **wholesale.**

—, centre. A name given to a town or district which is a centre of trading activity is **emporium.**

—, station. A name formerly used for a trading station in a distant country was **factory.**

—. *See also under* **business,** *above.*

trimming. A flat trimming made of silk, wool, or cotton, interwoven with cord or wire, used in furniture covering, etc., is a **gimp.**

trust. The buying up of goods by a group or trust, in order to raise the price, is **coemption.**

—. A trust or combine in which a number of separate enterprises are absorbed is a **merger.**

tub. A name for a large tub or vat used by brewers, dyers, etc., is **back.**

typewriter. The bar in front of a typewriter which is pressed down to allow the carriage to move the space of one letter is the **space-bar.**

—. A name for a device on a typewriter for spacing out columns of figures side by side is **tabulator.**

value. Anything which is below the value it ordinarily has, or is supposed to have, is at a **discount.**

—. Stocks or shares, etc., that have risen above their nominal or usual value are at a **premium.**

—, equality. A name for equality of value, as when the value of a stock or share in the market equals its nominal value, is **parity** or **par.**

—, nominal. The value printed on a bank-note, share certificate, bond, etc., as opposed to the actual value in the market, is the **face-value.**

varnish. A name for a varnish made from acetone, alcohol, and other substances, for painting aeroplane wings is **dope.**

—. The name of a whitish yellow gum resin obtained from a north-west African tree, and used to make varnish, is **sandarac.**

—. The name of a purified form of lac used for making varnishes, etc., is **shellac.**

—. A transparent varnish used to give lustre to gilt is **vermeil.**

vinegar. The refuse of grapes after the wine has been extracted, used in the manufacture of vinegar, is **rape.**

wage. An extra wage given over and above what is due by contract or arrangement is a **bonus.**

—. Wages paid at a fixed rate for a certain quantity of work done are paid at a **piece-rate.**

warehouse. A Government storehouse where imported goods are kept in bond until the importer pays the tax due on them is a **bonded warehouse.**

warehouse. A name in India and China for a warehouse is **go-down.**

warp. Names for the cross threads woven into the warp of a textile fabric to make the web are **weft** and **woof.**

warrant. A customs warrant certifying that duty has been paid on goods is a **docket.**

watch. The name of the cone round which the driving chain of a watch or clock is wound is **fusee.**

—. A name for the fine spring in a watch regulating the balance wheel is **hairspring.**

—. The name of the principal spring of a watch is **mainspring.**

—. A name for an alloy of copper and zinc, formerly used for cheap watch-cases and jewellery, is **pinchbeck.**

—. *See also under* **clock,** *above.*

water. To treat water chemically in order to make it like the water of Burton-on-Trent, with a view to ale brewing, is to **burtonize.**

—. Another name for the ball-valve used in cisterns to control the supply of water is **globe-valve.**

—. A name for a wooden rod used in a waterworks to listen for the sound of water passing through the pipes is **stethoscope.**

—, aerated. An apparatus for making aerated water is a **gazogene** or **gasogene.**

weaving. A beam used in weaving to beat up the weft is a **batten.**

—. The name given to a machine for weaving thread or yarn into a fabric is **loom.**

—. The threads running lengthwise in a woven fabric are the **warp.**

—. Names for the cross threads woven into the warp of a textile fabric to make the web are **weft** and **woof.**

weighing. A portable steelyard suspended in a frame, used for weighing heavy objects, is a **weigh-beam.**

—. A large iron platform on which loaded trucks, etc., can be weighed is a **weigh-bridge.**

weight. The weight of an unloaded railway wagon or other vehicle is its **tare.**

—. The name given to deductions made from the gross weight of certain kinds of merchandise for the weight of wrappers or packing, and for dust, rubbish, etc., is **tare-and-tret.**

—, allowance. The name given to an allowance made for the weight of wrappings or cases in which goods are packed, or in which they are weighed, is **tare.**

—, standard. The standard system of weights in Britain and the U.S.A. for goods, except gold, silver, gems and drugs, is **avoirdupois.**

welding. The name of a flame, burning a mixture of hydrogen and oxygen, used in welding is **oxyhydrogen flame.**

whale. The name given to a fatty substance secreted in the intestines of the sperm-whale, used in making scent, is **ambergris.**

—. A brittle, fatty substance contained in the sperm-oil in the head of a sperm-whale is **spermaceti.**

—. The name given to an oil obtained from the blubber of whales, especially of the whalebone whale, is **train-oil.**

whalebone. A commercial name for whalebone is **whale-fin.**

whaling. A name given to a person who removes the blubber from the whale is **flencher.**

—. The barbed spear used to catch whales is a **harpoon.**

—. A strong rope attached to the harpoon used in whaling is a **whale-line.**

—. A gun which fires a heavy harpoon and line, now used in place of the hand-thrown harpoon, is a **whaling-gun.**

wheat. The process of removing the husk and germ from wheat is **degerming.**

wheat. A name for the coarse part of wheat meal that is left after grinding the grain into flour is **manna-croup.**

Wheat bought when actually ready for immediate delivery is **spot-wheat.**

window. One whose trade it is to fix glass in windows is a **glazier.**

wine. A name used in the wine trade for a flattened glass bottle holding nearly as much as two ordinary bottles is **flagon.**

—. The refuse of grapes after pressing for making wine is **marc.**

—. A name used in wine-making for the fresh juice of the grape before it has fermented is **must.**

—, deposit. Names for a hard deposit left in vessels in which wine is fermented are **argol, tartar,** and **wine-stone.**

—, making. To stop wine from fermenting, or from fermenting further, by adding chemicals is to **stum.**

—, —. A name for any apparatus used in making wine is **vinifacteur.**

—, —. A name for an apparatus for condensing the alcoholic vapours in wine-making is a **vinificator.**

—, measure. A wine measure of one hundred and twenty-six gallons is a **butt.**

—, strength. An instrument for measuring the alcoholic strength of wine is a **vinometer.**

—, superior. A wine not used merely for blending with other wines, but matured separately, as being of superior merit, is a **vintage wine.**

wire. A steel plate drilled with holes of decreasing size through which wire is passed for the purpose of reducing or equalizing its thickness is a **draw-plate.**

wood, measure. A measure of one hundred and eight cubic feet of wood, is a **stack.**

—. *See also under* **timber,** *above.*

wood-work. Wood-work pierced with decorative patterns, especially that cut with a fret-saw, is **fretwork.**

wool. The refuse of woollen fabrics, either in the form of loose tufts or as powder from the cloth-shearing machine, is **flock.**

—. A name for the knots and short fibres removed from wool by the combing machine is **noil.**

—. The wool shorn from a dead sheep or lamb is **pelt-wool.**

—. A name for a machine for beating, picking, and cleaning raw wool is **willow.**

—. The fibre of wool considered especially with regard to its length is **wool-staple.**

—, fabric. A woollen fabric made chiefly from the fleece of a South American llama is **alpaca.**

—, —. A woollen fabric made from the long, silky wool of the Angora goat is **Angora.**

—, —. A coarse woollen cloth, usually green or red, used for linings, coverings, etc., is **baize.**

—, —. A thick, closely-woven cloth, fulled and milled until almost waterproof, is **box-cloth.**

—, —. A name for a kind of fine, black cloth used mostly for men's clothes is **broad-cloth.**

—, —. A coarse, woollen cloth with a rough nap on one side only is **frieze.**

—, —. A fine variety of serge is **gaberdine.**

—, —. A name for a woollen cloth made from second-hand material mixed with pure wool is **mungo.**

—, —. A name for a heavy woollen cloth with a rough surface is **petersham.**

—, —. The name of a special kind of woollen cloth used for making gaiters and the uppers of some boots is **prunella.**

—, —. Woollen material obtained by shredding old garments is **shoddy.**

—, —. A name of a textile fabric, usually with a cotton warp and woollen filling, used for women's and children's garments is **wincey.**

—, —. A name for a fabric made of yarn, with parallel fibres, spun from long staple wool is **worsted.**

work. Work paid for at a fixed rate for a certain quantity is **piece-work.**

—. Work paid for by the hour or day is **time-work.**

—, record. A name for an instrument which keeps a record of work done at night in mines and factories is **nocturnograph.**

yarn. A name for the yarn used for the warp in weaving is **abb.**

yarn. A wooden cylinder on which yarn is wound is a **bobbin.**

—. A standard length of certain yarns, differing with each, is a **hank.**

—. Yarn made of long staple wool spun so that the fibres lie parallel is **worsted.**

zinc. A name given to an alloy of zinc and copper, used for hard soldering, and also in commerce to zinc itself, is **spelter.**

CHEMISTRY

acetate. The name given to a clear colourless liquid distilled from acetates and from sugar and other organic substances is **acetone**

acid. An instrument which measures the strength of acids is an **acidimeter.**

—. An acid, or a substance which neutralizes alkalinity, is an **antalkali.**

Any element or substance which is able to form a salt with an acid is a **base.**

— Acids which contain two replaceable atoms of hydrogen in the molecule are **dibasic.**

— An acid which is a combination of hydrogen and elements other than oxygen is a **hydracid.**

— An acid present in unripe apples, gooseberries, and other acidulous fruits is **malic acid.**

—. The name of a fatty acid made artificially from animal and vegetable fats and having a pearly appearance is **margaric acid.**

An acid having only one replaceable hydrogen atom in each molecule is **monobasic.**

— An acid derived from wood-sorrel and other plants and prepared commercially from sawdust is **oxalic acid.**

— A name for an acid containing oxygen is **oxyacid.**

— Acids that contain four replaceable atoms of hydrogen in the molecule are **tetrabasic.**

— Acids that contain three replaceable atoms of hydrogen in the molecule are **tribasic.**

—, acetic. The name given to the radical of acetic acid is **acetyl.**

—, combining power. The combining power of an acid is its **basicity.**

—, cork. A white crystalline acid formed by treating cork, etc., with nitric acid, is **suberic acid.**

—, stannic. The name given to a salt of stannic acid is **stannate.**

—, sulphuric. A name for sulphuric acid or any of its salts is **vitriol.**

acidity. Anything which counteracts acidity is an **antacid.**

activity. In chemistry, to produce activity is to **react.**

alcohol. An instrument for measuring the amount of pure alcohol in spirits is an **alcoholometer.**

—. The name given to any compound obtained from alcohol by oxidation is **aldehyde.**

— The name given to an organic compound formed from an alcohol and an acid is **ester.**

— A name for a colourless light volatile liquid produced by the action of sulphuric and other acids on alcohol is **ether.**

—. A spirituous mixture which contains 49·3 per cent of absolute alcohol by weight is **proof-spirit.**

alkali. An alkali not easily evaporated is a **fixed alkali.**

—. A name given to an alkaline solution used in manufacturing processes or in cleansing is **lye**

alkalinity. Anything which reduces alkalinity is an **antalkali.**

alkyl radical. The name given to an alkyl radical consisting of five atoms of carbon and eleven atoms of hydrogen is **amyl.**

—. The name given to an alkyl radical made up of four atoms of carbon and nine atoms of hydrogen is **butyl.**

alloy. The name of a light, tough alloy consisting chiefly of aluminium is **aeleral.**

alloy. An alloy or mixture of mercury with another metal is an **amalgam.**

—. The name given after its inventor to a soft alloy composed of copper, antimony, and tin is **Babbit-metal.**

— An alloy or mixture of metals compounded in definite proportions so as to melt at a given temperature is a **fusible alloy** or **fusible metal.**

— The name given to a white alloy composed of nickel, copper, and zinc, largely used for table ware and for the resistance coils in electrical apparatus is **German silver.**

— A name for an alloy of copper, brass, and tin used for making cartridge cases is **gilding-metal.**

- An alloy of copper, zinc, lead, and tin largely used by engineers is **gun-metal.**

— A name for an alloy resembling German silver but containing more nickel is **nickel silver.**

—. A name for a tough alloy of phosphorus with bronze used in the manufacture of machinery is **phosphor-bronze.**

—. A name for an alloy of copper and zinc formerly used for cheap watch-cases and jewellery is **pinchbeck.**

—. A name given to an alloy of copper, zinc, tungsten, and nickel that resembles platinum is **platinoid.**

—. The name of an alloy of gold and rhodium found in Mexico is **rhodite.**

—. The name given to a hard, white alloy of copper and tin capable of taking a high polish and used for reflectors is **speculum metal.**

alum. The name given to a kind of alum containing iron oxide found in the old volcanic craters near Naples is **halotrichine.**

ammonia. The name given to a compound of which ammonia is the base is **amide.**

—. The name given to a radical, supposed to exist in ammonia salts, containing one more atom of hydrogen than ammonia is **ammonium.**

—. A name for a solution of ammonia in water is **hartshorn.**

— The name of a chemical compound, derived from ammonia, in which the hydrogen atoms are replaced by metals or by organic radicals is **imide.**

ammonium, carbonate. The common name of an aromatic solution of ammonium carbonate, used as a remedy against fainting attacks, is **sal-volatile.**

—, chloride. A name for ammonium chloride is **sal-ammoniac.**

analysis. The examination or analysis of a substance to discover its qualities is **qualitative analysis.**

—. The examination or analysis of a substance to determine the amount of each constituent present is **quantitative analysis.**

—. The process of determining the amount of some component of a substance by finding out the quantity of a standard reagent needed to produce a given reaction is **titration.**

animal and vegetable. The branch of chemistry dealing with animal and vegetable organisms, or substances formed from them, is **organic chemistry.**

animal body. The branch of chemistry dealing with the substances found in and composing an animal body is **zoo-chemistry.**

aromatic. The name given to a radical derived from organic aromatic substances is **aryl.**

arsenic. The name given to an orange-red resinous-looking sulphide of arsenic found in the earth is **realgar.**

asbestos. The terms applied to asbestos in different forms which suggest cork, leather, and silk are **rock-cork, rock-leather,** and **rock-silk.**

atom. The weight of an atom of a substance as compared with that of an atom of hydrogen is **atomic weight.**

—. The smallest particle into which a substance can be divided whilst still retaining its identity, comprising like and unlike atoms, is the **molecule.**

—. A compound having many replaceable hydrogen atoms to the molecule is **polyatomic.**

—. An atom or group of atoms which passes unchanged through combinations and determines the character of the molecule is a **radical.**

—. The branch of chemistry which deals with the composition of matter as affected by the spacing of atoms in the molecule is **stereochemistry.**

—. The name given to the combining power of the atom of an element or a radical as compared with that of the hydrogen atom is **valence.**

—, combining power. *See under* **combining power,** *below.*

baking powder. The name given to a form of crude bicarbonate of sodium or potassium used as baking powder is **saleratus.**

bottle. The name given to a large wicker-covered bottle for holding liquid chemicals is **carboy.**

—. A bottle in which chemists wash gases by passing them through a liquid is a **wash-bottle.**

bromine. Each of the elements bromine, fluorine, chlorine, and iodine is a **halogen.**

burning. A substance not able to be burned by ordinary means is **incombustible.**

—. A substance which takes fire and burns readily is **inflammable.**

calcium tungstate. A name for native calcium tungstate is **scheelite.**

carbon. The term used to describe substances made up of carbon and nitrogen is **carbazotic.**

—. A compound of carbon with hydrogen and oxygen is a **carbohydrate.**

—. A substance containing only hydrogen and carbon is a **hydrocarbon.**

—. The branch of chemistry dealing with the compounds of carbon and hydrogen and their derivatives is **organic chemistry.**

casein, vegetable. The name given to a substance, similar to the casein of milk, found in peas, beans, and other plants is **legumin.**

caustic soda. A commercial name given to caustic soda, caustic potash, and other like substances is **alkali.**

chalk. To remove the chalky matter or lime from a substance is to **decalcify.**

—. The name given to a mineral consisting of iron and sulphur, found in English chalk rocks, is **marcasite.**

change. The name given to a chemical change that is hastened or slowed down by the presence of a foreign substance which is found unchanged in the end is **catalysis.**

—. The name given to an organic substance, found in plants and animals, which causes chemical change without itself suffering alteration is **enzyme.**

—. Change in a substance produced by the action of a living organism or a chemical agent is **fermentation.**

chlorine. The name given to a compound in which two atoms of chlorine are combined with one atom of another element is **bichloride.**

—. Each of the elements, chlorine, fluorine, bromine, and iodine is a **halogen.**

chlorine. The chloride of an element that contains the largest quantity of chlorine is a **perchloride.**

coal-gas. The process of manufacturing coal-gas by heating coal in a retort to a very high degree so that it gives off an inflammable vapour is **destructive distillation.**

coal-tar. The name of a liquid alkaloid obtained during the distillation of coal-tar, bone-oil, and other substances is **pyridine.**

—. The name of an oily alkaline liquid present in coal-tar is **quinoline.**

combining power. An element or a radical of which one atom combines with two atoms of hydrogen is a **dyad,** and is **divalent** or **bivalent.**

—. Elements that combine with or displace each other in the same proportions are **equivalent.**

—. An element or a radical having a combining power of seven is a **heptad,** and is **septivalent.**

—. An element or a radical having a combining power of six is a **hexad,** and is **sexivalent.**

—. An element or a radical having a combining power of one is a **monad,** and is **monovalent** or **univalent.**

—. An element or a radical having a combining power of five is a **pentad,** and is **quinquivalent.**

—. An element or a radical having a combining power of four is a **tetrad,** and is **quadrivalent.**

—. An element or a radical having a combining power of three is a **triad,** and is **trivalent.**

combustion. The rapid combustion of a substance, generally for the purpose of producing some change in its composition, is **deflagration.**

compound. The name given to any of a class of compounds soluble in water, and forming caustic solutions, which are able to turn red litmus blue and to neutralize acids is **alkali.**

—. A compound that is made up of two different elements is **binary.**

—. A term used to describe a group of compounds having a common basic radical is **family.**

—. Compounds having like elements in like proportion but differently grouped are **isomeric.**

—. Elements that form more than one compound with hydrogen or another monovalent are **polygenic.**

—. A compound in which the hydrogen of an acid is replaced wholly or partially by a metal is a **salt.**

—. The name given to a compound formed from the union of an electro-negative and an electro-positive element or radical is **salt.**

—. A chemical compound which illustrates the grouping of atoms in other compounds is a **type.**

—, splitting up. The splitting up of a compound into its elements or constituents is **decomposition.**

—, —. The splitting up of a compound into parts so that the elements of water are added on to one or more of the substances is **hydrolysis.**

—, unstable. An unstable compound is **labile.**

copper. The name given to an ore containing copper, first found in Ireland, is **erinite.**

—. The name of a green ore of copper composed mainly of the carbonate, used as an ornamental stone, is **malachite.**

cork. A name for a waxy compound of cellulose forming tissue in cork is **suberin.**

crushing. The name given to a wood, metal, or earthenware bowl in which substances are pounded or crushed is mortar.

—. The name given to an implement used in pounding or crushing substances in a mortar is **pestle.**

crystal, angle measurement. The science dealing with the measurement of the angles between the faces of crystals is **crystallometry.**

—, cleavage. Substances having crystals which split right across diagonally from corner to corner are **diatomous.**

crystal, form. Crystals in which two of the three axes are perpendicular to each other and at an oblique angle to the third are **diclinic.**

—, —. A property possessed by certain crystals of assuming or crystallizing into two distinct forms is **dimorphism.**

—, —. A crystal having only half the possible number of planes is **hemihedral.**

—, —. A crystal having the full number of flat faces symmetrically arranged is **holohedral.**

—, —. Substances of which the crystals have faces arranged differently from crystals of other members of the same family are **idiomorphic.**

—, —. Substances which crystallize in the same or nearly the same form are **isomorphic.**

—, —. A crystal having less than the number of faces usual to its type is **merohedral.**

—, —. A crystal having three unequal axes, two of which intersect at an oblique angle and are intersected by the third at a right angle, is **monoclinic.**

—, —. Compound crystals formed of a series of twin crystals are **polysynthetic.**

—, —. A crystal having three unequal axes inclined at an angle to each other is **triclinic.**

—, —. A mineral which crystallizes in three distinct forms is **trimorphic.**

—. refraction. A shape of doubly refracting crystal giving single refraction in two directions and having two optic axes is **biaxial.**

—, —. A shape of doubly refracting crystal giving single refraction in one direction only—that of its optic axis—is **uniaxial.**

—, study. That branch of science which deals with the way in which crystals form is **crystallogeny.**

—, —. The study dealing with the classification and description of crystals is **crystallography.**

—, twin. A name given to a twin crystal is **macle.**

crystalline substance. A crystalline substance which, when dissolved, will pass readily through membranes is a **crystalloid.**

—. Crystalline substances, such as carbonate of soda, which give up their moisture on exposure to air and crumble into a fine powder are **efflorescent.**

crystallization. The growth of a crystal by the adherence of tiny particles when it is hung in a saturated solution of the same substance is **accretion.**

—. A substance which crystallizes after fusion by heat is **pyromorphous.**

—. The name given to the tendency of substances when crystallizing to separate from a mass and collect around certain points or lines is **segregation.**

decomposition. Substances not capable of being broken up into constituent parts are **indecomposable.**

—. A substance unstable or easily decomposed is **labile.**

—. A substance not readily decomposed is **stable.**

—, electrical. The decomposition of chemical compounds by electricity is **electrolysis.**

distillation. A name for a glass or metal apparatus formerly used in distillation is **alembic.**

—. A process of distillation in which the substance is decomposed and gives off substances radically different from the substance being treated is **destructive distillation.**

—. The separation of a mixed liquid into portions having different boiling points or degrees of volatility is **fractional distillation.**

—. A name for a long-necked round or oval glass vessel used in distillation is **matrass.**

—. The name given to a vessel used for the distillation or decomposition of substances by heat is **retort.**

egg. The name given to an organic substance, containing oxygen, nitrogen, hydrogen, carbon and sulphur in varying proportion, which is the chief constituent of white of egg is **albumin** or **albumen.**

electricity. The branch of science dealing with the effects of electricity on chemical compounds is **electro-chemistry.**

element. The property possessed by some elements or their compounds of existing in two or more isomeric forms with different properties is **allotropy.**

—. A substance of which the molecule contains two or more unlike atoms is a **chemical compound.**

—. The property possessed by an element or a radical of uniting with or replacing the hydrogen atom in a chemical compound is **combining power** or **valence.**

—. An element containing two replaceable hydrogen atoms is **diatomic.**

—. An element one atom of which is capable of combining with two atoms of hydrogen is a **dyad,** and is **bivalent** or **divalent.**

—. Elements that combine with or displace each other in the same proportion are **equivalent.**

—. Each of the non-metallic elements fluorine, chlorine, bromine, and iodine is a **halogen.**

—. An element with a combining power of seven is a **heptad,** and is **septivalent.**

—. An element having a combining power of six is a **hexad,** and is **sexivalent.**

—. Chemical compounds which possess the same number of atoms grouped differently in the molecule are **isomeric.**

—. A general name for any of the non-metallic elements is **metalloid.**

—. An element one atom of which will combine with one atom of hydrogen is a **monad,** and is **monovalent** or **univalent.**

—. An element one atom of which will combine with five atoms of hydrogen is a **pentad,** and is **quinquivalent.**

—. An element containing more than one replaceable hydrogen atom in the molecule is **polyatomic.**

—. Elements that form more than one compound with hydrogen or another monovalent are **polygenic.**

—. The property of certain chemical compounds of having the same elements in the same proportion but with different molecular weights is **polymerism.**

—. An element of which one atom can unite with or replace four atoms of hydrogen is a **tetrad,** and is **quadrivalent.**

—. An element with a combining power of three is a **triad,** and is **trivalent.**

—, attraction. The attraction by which elements unite to form a new compound is **affinity.**

—, radio-active. The name of a silver-white metallic element with great radio-active power, present in minute quantities in pitchblende and other minerals, is **radium.**

—, —. The name of a rare, metallic radio-active element found in the cerium group of minerals is **thorium.**

—, smallest particle. The smallest conceivable particle of an element, which still retains the properties of the element and goes in and out of combination unaltered, is an **atom.**

—, union. A substance formed by the chemical union of elements is a **compound.**

—, —. The property by which an element unites with or replaces the hydrogen atom in a compound is **combining power** or **valence.**

—, volume. The space occupied by a quantity of an element in proportion to its atomic weight is its **atomic volume.**

element.

The following list contains all the chemical elements recognised, with the symbol for each.

Element.	*Symbol.*	*Element.*	*Symbol.*
*Actinium	Ac	*Magnesium	Mg
*Aluminium	Al	*Manganese	Mn
*Antimony	Sb	*Mercury	Hg
†Argon	A	*Molybdenum	Mo
Arsenic	As	*Neodymium	Nd
*Barium	Ba	†Neon	Ne
*Beryllium	Be	*Nickel	Ni
*Bismuth	Bi	*Niobium	Nb
Boron	B	†Niton	Nt
Bromine	Br	†Nitrogen	N
*Cadmium	Cd	*Osmium	Os
*Caesium	Cs	†Oxygen	O
*Calcium	Ca	*Palladium	Pd
Carbon	C	Phosphorus	P
*Cassiopeium	Cp	*Platinum	Pt
*Cerium	Ce	*Polonium	Po
†Chlorine	Cl	*Potassium	K
*Chromium	Cr	*Praseodymium	Pr
*Cobalt	Co	*Radium	Ra
Columbium. *See* Niobium.		Radon. *See* Niton	
		*Rhenium	Re
*Copper	Cu	*Rhodium	Rh
*Dysprosium	Dy	*Rubidium	Rb
*Erbium	Er	*Ruthenium	Ru
*Europium	Eu	*Samarium	Sa
*Florentium	Fr	*Scandium	Sc
†Fluorine	F	Selenium	Se
*Gadolinium	Gd	Silicon	Si
*Gallium	Ga	*Silver	Ag
*Germanium	Ge	*Sodium	Na
Glucinum. *See* Beryllium.		*Strontium	Sr
*Gold	Au	Sulphur	S
*Hafnium	Hf	*Tantalum	Ta
†Helium	He	Tellurium	Te
*Holmium	Ho	*Terbium	Tb
†Hydrogen	H	*Thallium	Tl
Illinium. *See* Florentium.		*Thorium	Th
		*Thulium	Tm
*Indium	In	*Tin	Sn
Iodine	I	*Titanium	Ti
*Iridium	Ir	*Tungsten	W
*Iron	Fe	*Uranium	U
†Krypton	Kr	*Vanadium	V
*Lanthanum	La	†Xenon	Xe
*Lead	Pb	*Ytterbium	Yb
*Lithium	L	*Yttrium	Yt
Lutecium. *See* Cassiopeium.		*Zinc	Zn
		*Zirconium	Zr

*Metallic element. †Gaseous element.

elm. The name of a black, gummy, alkaline substance that oozes from the inner bark of the elm and other trees is **ulmin.**

enzyme. The name given to an enzyme found in germinating seeds is **diastase.**

—. The name of a ferment or enzyme found in almonds is **emulsin.**

—. The name of a ferment or enzyme found in yeasts and some other substances is **lactase.**

—. The name given to the alcoholic ferment or enzyme formed by the yeast-cell is **zymase.**

ester, decomposition. The term used for the decomposition of an ester into an alcohol and acid is **saponification.**

evaporation. An instrument for measuring the rate at which a liquid evaporates is an **evaporimeter.**

feldspar. The name given to kinds of feldspar is **orthoclase.**

ferment. *See* **enzyme,** *above.*

fermentation. The name given to an active principle found naturally in plant or animal tissues, which brings about fermentation, is **enzyme.**

—. The yeast plant which produces fermentation in saccharine liquids is **saccharomyces.**

filter. That portion of a liquid that has passed through a filter is a **filtrate.**

—. That portion of a liquid, or of substances held suspended in it, which is retained by a filter is a **precipitate.**

fire. A substance not capable of being burned readily is **incombustible.**

—. A substance which takes fire easily is **inflammable.**

flint. The name of the crystalline form of silicon dioxide of which flint, sand, and quartz essentially consist is **silica.**

fluorine. Each of the elements fluorine, chlorine, bromine, and iodine is a **halogen.**

food. The name given to a complex compound which is one of the necessary foods for a living animal is **protein.**

—, decaying. The name given to any of a class of alkaloids—often poisonous—present in decaying foods is **ptomaine.**

formula. The letter or groups of letters representing chemical formulae are **symbols.**

—. *See also list of elements under* **element,** *above.*

fruit. An acid present in unripe apples and other acidulous fruits is **malic acid.**

fungus. The name given to a cellulose substance found in fungi and lichens is **fungin.**

fusion. A substance that promotes the fusion of minerals or metals is a **flux.**

—. A substance, such as plumbago or platinum, not readily fusible is a **refractory.**

gas. The name given to a gaseous hydrocarbon formed by direct combination of hydrogen and carbon and used for illuminating purposes is **acetylene.**

—. The name of a pungent, strong-smelling gas with a strong alkaline taste is **ammonia.**

—. The name of a rare gas, found in minute quantities in the atmosphere, which does not appear to combine with any other element is **argon.**

— The name given to an inflammable gas, allied to paraffin, found beneath the earth's surface is **butane.**

—. The name given to a gas present in the atmosphere and expired by the lungs in respiration is **carbonic acid** or **carbon dioxide.**

—. The name given to a highly poisonous gas formed by the incomplete combustion of carbon is **carbon monoxide.**

—. The name of an inert colourless gas used for inflating airships is **helium.**

—. The lightest chemical element known is the gas **hydrogen.**

—. The name of a very rare gas found in the atmosphere is **krypton.**

—. The chemical name of a light inflammable gas commonly called marsh-gas is **methane.**

—. A name of a rare gas, of which small quantities are found in the air, is **neon.**

—. The name given to a colourless, tasteless gas present in and forming about four-fifths of the atmosphere is **nitrogen.**

—. The name of the tasteless, odourless, colourless gas forming about one-fifth of the atmosphere is **oxygen.**

—. The name given to a heavy, inert gas present in small quantities in the air is **xenon.**

—, analysis. The name given to a method of separating mixtures of gases by diffusion through a porous substance is **atmolysis.**

—, —. The name given to a device for measuring the density of gases is a **dasymeter.**

—, —. The name given to a thick-walled glass tube with electrical terminals in which a charge of gas may be exploded for analysis is **detonating tube.**

—, —. The name given to an unglazed porcelain tube used to study the rate of blending or diffusion of one gas with another is **diffusion-tube.**

—, —. The name given to a kind of apparatus for analysing and measuring gases is **eudiometer.**

—, —. The name of a kind of instrument for measuring the volume of a body of gas is **volumeter.**

gas, illuminating. The name given to a gas, composed of hydrogen and carbon monoxide, made by passing dry steam through red-hot fuel is **water-gas.**

—. *See also list of elements under* **element,** *above.*

gelatine. The name of a kind of gelatine prepared from the swim-bladder of various fish is **isinglass.**

gem-stone. The name given to a translucent kind of quartz containing differently coloured layers is **agate.**

—. The name given to a bluish-violet variety of quartz is **amethyst.**

—. The name given to a transparent bluish-green form of emerald is **aquamarine.**

—. The name given to a pale green or yellowish stone of the same composition as the emerald is **beryl.**

—. The name given to a dark green kind of chalcedony streaked or spotted with red is **bloodstone.**

—. The name given to the garnet when cut in a certain way to the shape of a boss is **carbuncle.**

—. The name given to a greenish-gold variety of quartz—or to the chrysoberyl—when cut to a lens shape so that it appears to give out flashes of light is **cat's-eye.**

—. The name given to some varieties of quartz used as gems is **chalcedony.**

—. The name given to a yellowish-green opalescent mineral found in Brazil, India, and the Urals is **chrysoberyl.**

—. The name given to a transparent green mineral found associated with basalt, trap and meteoric iron in different parts of the world is **chrysolite.**

—. A name for a green kind of chalcedony is **chrysoprase.**

—. The name given to a dull red or a reddish-white variety of chalcedony is **cornelian.**

—. The name given to an intensely hard mineral composed of pure carbon in a crystalline form, usually pale or colourless, is **diamond.**

—. Another name for the fire opal, which reflects a reddish glow, is **girasol.**

—. The name given to a dark green variety of quartz with spots or veins of red jasper is **heliotrope.**

—. The name given to a red or yellow variety of zircon is **jacinth.**

—. The name given to a variety of zircon found in Ceylon is **jargon.**

—. The name given to a siliceous mineral of a rich azure-blue colour used for gem-stones is **lapis lazuli.**

—. The name given to a bluish opalescent variety of orthoclase is **moonstone.**

—. The name given to a dark green translucent kind of chrysolite is **olivine.**

— The name given to a kind of quartz resembling agate and having differently coloured layers is **onyx.**

— A name for a variety of silica having a vitreous lustre, varied colour, and no crystalline structure, some kinds of which are used as gem-stones, is **opal.**

—. A name for olivine or chrysolite is **peridot.**

—. A name for a greenish-white variety of topaz is **physalite.**

—. A name for a chalcedony naturally coloured green by the action of copper or nickel oxide is **plasma.**

—. The name of a deep red variety of garnet is **pyrope.**

—. The name given to a greenish-white or yellowish-white variety of topaz is **pyrophysalite.**

—. The name given to pure transparent colourless quartz is **rock-crystal.**

—. The name of a variety of spinel ruby used as a gem-stone is **rubicel.**

—. The name given to a kind of corundum of a red colour is **ruby.**

gem-stone. The name given to a variety of corundum of a bright blue colour is **sapphire.**

—. The name given to a blue kind of spinel is **sapphirine.**

—. The name of a yellow or orange variety of cornelian is **sard.**

—. The name given to a variety of agate which contains layers of sard or cornelian is **sardachate.**

—. The name of a kind of onyx composed of layers of brownish sard alternating with milk-white chalcedony is **sardonyx.**

—. A name for black tourmaline is **schorl.**

—. The name given to a translucent or tranparent silicate of aluminium found in various colours and used as a gem-stone is **topaz.**

—. The name given to a yellow or green variety of garnet resembling topaz is **topazolite.**

—. The name given to a mineral with powerful electric properties, some varieties of which are used for gem stones, is **tourmaline.**

—. The name given to an opaque, greenish-blue or sky-blue mineral composed principally of alumina and phosphoric acid is **turquoise.**

—. The name given to a transparent or semi-transparent coloured silicate some varieties of which are used as gems is **zircon.**

—. *See also under* **mineral,** *below.*

glass. The name of an acid which eats away glass is **hydrofluoric acid.**

glucose. The name given to a vegetable substance yielding glucose when decomposed is **glucoside.**

—. The name of an acid formed by the action of nitric acid on glucose is **saccharic acid.**

—. *See also under* **sugar,** *below.*

glucoside. The name of a glucoside found in the indigo and certain other plants is **indican.**

gold. Ores containing gold are **auriferous.**

—. The name of an alloy of gold and rhodium found in Mexico is **rhodite.**

graduation. Anything graduated or marked at regular intervals as a guide to grading or classifying is a **scale.**

grapes. The name of an acid contained in certain grapes is **racemic acid.**

gypsum. Names given to a kind of gypsum with a pearly lustre are **satin-stone, satin-spar,** and **satin-gypsum.**

heat. The name given to a chemical change in a substance accompanied by heat and generally light, and sometimes also by flame, is **combustion.**

—. Substances not able to be liquefied by heat are **infusible.**

—. Substances not readily fused or liquefied by heat are **refractory.**

—. The branch of chemistry which deals with the connexion between chemical reactions and heat liberated is **thermo-chemistry.**

hemp. The name given in the East to a narcotic prepared from dried leaves and stalks of Indian hemp is **hashish.**

hydrogen. The name given to any salt of hydrogen is **acid.**

—. A combination of hydrogen with another element or a radical is a **hydride.**

—. A substance containing only hydrogen and carbon is a **hydrocarbon.**

—. The branch of chemistry dealing with the compounds of hydrogen and carbon and their derivatives is **organic chemistry.**

ignition. The ignition of a substance by heat arising from chemical action is **spontaneous combustion.**

—, spontaneous. A substance which ignites spontaneously is **pyrophorous.**

inactive. A substance which is inactive at ordinary temperatures and does not combine readily with other substances is **inert.**

indigo. The name of a reddish crystalline substance obtained from indigo by turning it into an oxide is **isatin.**

iodine. Each of the elements iodine, fluorine, chlorine and bromine is a **halogen.**

iron. A salt containing iron as a trivalent radical, that is, in its highest combining power, is **ferric.**

—. A salt containing iron as a bivalent radical, that is, in its lowest combining power, is **ferrous.**

—. The name given to a native sulphide of iron is **pyrites.**

—. A term used to describe iron which is brittle when red-hot, owing to an excess of sulphur, is **red-short.**

—, arsenate. The name given to a native vitreous arsenate of iron is **scorodite.**

—, cast. A name for a form of cast iron in which pure iron and carbide of iron occur in alternate layers or in granular formation is **pearlite.**

iron ore. The name of a reddish iron ore used in the making of steel and for other commercial purposes is **haematite.**

—. The mineralogists' name for brown haematite or iron ore is **limonite.**

—. An old name for magnetic iron ore is **loadstone.**

—. The name given to a blood-red earthy iron ore is **red ochre.**

iron oxide, red. The name given to a red oxide of iron used for polishing plate and glass is **rouge.**

jade. A scientific name for the hard green silicate known as jade is **nephrite.**

lava. The name given to a hard glassy compound of silica and other minerals found originally in the lava of Mount Vesuvius is **Vesuvian** or **Vesuvianite.**

lead. A popular name for graphite, an allotropic mineral form of carbon, is **black-lead.**

—. A name for protoxide of lead is **litharge.**

—. A name for a yellow oxide of lead having the same chemical composition as litharge is **massicot.**

—. Names given to the red oxide of lead are **minium** and **red lead.**

—. A name given to lead chlorophosphate, which crystallizes after its fusion by heat, is **pyromorphite.**

—. The name given to a mixture of lead carbonate and hydrated lead oxide, used as a pigment, etc., is **white lead.**

Leclanché battery. The common name of the substance—ammonium chloride—used to make the solution in Leclanché batteries is **sal-ammoniac.**

lichen. The name given to a cellulose substance found in fungi and lichens is **fungin.**

life. The branch of chemistry that treats of non-living substances or those which have never been alive is **inorganic chemistry.**

—. The branch of chemistry which deals with substances found in animal and vegetable matter, or with like substances prepared artificially, is **organic chemistry.**

light. Those light rays which have the power of exciting chemical action are **actinic rays.**

—. A chemical change produced in a substance by the action of light is **photochemical.**

—. The name of a non-metallic element which varies in electrical resistance according to the intensity of light is **selenium.**

lignite. The name of a black form of lignite which takes a brilliant polish is **jet.**

lime, sulphate. A name given to a variety of sulphate of lime occurring in transparent crystals or flakes is **selenite.**

limestone. The scientific name for the mineral limestone, from which lime is prepared by calcination, is **calcium carbonate.**

—. The common name for a white, earthy kind of limestone is **chalk.**

—. The name given to a kind of limestone composed chiefly of the flat coin-shaped shells of fossil animals is **nummulitic limestone.**

linseed oil. A term used to describe substances derived from linseed oil is **linoleic.**

liquid. The rising or falling of liquids in very small tubes when dipped into liquid is **capillarity.**

—, distilling. The separating of a liquid by distillation into portions having different boiling points or degrees of volatility is **fractional distillation.**

—, measuring. The name given to a small pipette or tube used to measure liquids in drops is **stactometer.**

—, separation. The separation from a liquid of particles held in suspension by passing the liquid through a porous substance is **filtration.**

—, specific gravity. The name given to a device for measuring the specific gravity of a liquid is **areometer.**

—, thickening. The thickening of a liquid, as by evaporation, is **inspissation.**

manganese. A compound containing manganese combined with oxygen in its highest valency is **permanganic.**

matter, composition. That branch of chemistry dealing with the composition of matter as affected by the spacing of atoms in the molecule is **stereo-chemistry.**

melting vessel. The name given to a cup-shaped vessel in which solids are heated or melted in a furnace is **crucible.**

mercury. A name for mercury is **quicksilver.**

metal. The name of a rare white metal used in making incandescent mantles is **cerium.**

—. The investigation of the composition and structure of metals, and of processes of extracting metals from ores, is **metallurgy.**

—. A compound in which the hydrogen of an acid is replaced wholly or partially by a metal is a **salt.**

—, alkali. The names of the alkali metals are **caesium, lithium, potassium, rubidium** and **sodium.**

—, alkaline earth. The metals of which the oxides form the alkaline earths are **barium, calcium** and **strontium.**

—, cerium group. The name of a rare metallic radio-active element found in the cerium group of minerals is **thorium.**

—, liquid. The only metal that is liquid at ordinary temperatures is **mercury.**

—, melting. The melting or liquefaction of metals by means of intense heat is **fusion.**

—, —. The name of a greyish-white metallic element belonging to the platinum group of metals is **rhodium.**

—, —. The name of a hard, brittle, steel-grey metallic element of the platinum group is **ruthenium.**

—. *See also list of chemical elements under* **element,** *above.*

mica. A name for a kind of mica occurring with the mineral emery and having a pearl-like lustre is **margarite.**

milk. The protein substance, found in milk, which forms the basis of cheese is **casein.**

—. The name given to the kind of sugar found in milk is **lactose.**

—, testing. Instruments for testing the quality, etc., of milk are the **lactobutyrometer, lactometer,** and **lactoscope.**

mineral. The name of a variety of carbonate of lime dimorphous with calcite is **aragonite.**

—. The name given to a common rock-forming mineral, green, greenish-black or black in colour, found among volcanic rocks is **augite.**

—. A term used to describe certain minerals which consist of small globules clustered together like a bunch of grapes is **botryoid.**

—. The name given to native carbonate of lime is **calcite.**

—. The name given to the solid of definite geometrical shape formed by a chemical substance when it grows from a supersaturated solution is **crystal.**

mineral. The name given to that solid geometrical form, constant for its kind, into which a particular crystalline substance shapes itself when growing from a supersaturated solution is **crystal.**

—. Names given to transparent almost colourless quartz are **crystal** and **rock-crystal.**

—. A term used to describe a mineral with branching or tree-like markings is **dendritic.**

—. Crystalline minerals which appear to show two different colours according to the direction of light passed through them are **dichroic.**

—. The property possessed by some minerals of occurring in two distinct forms is **dimorphism.**

—. A mineral found embedded in the crystal of another mineral is an **endomorph.**

—. A brittle type of mineral composed of silicates of lime and alumina, found in crystalline rocks, is **epidote.**

—. The name given to any of a group of crystalline rock-forming minerals consisting chiefly of silicates of alumina is **feldspar.**

—. Minerals, like mica, that split easily into thin plates are **foliaceous.**

. The name given to a chalk-like sulphate of lime one kind of which is known also as alabaster is **gypsum.**

—. The name given to a dark green variety of quartz with spots or veins of red jasper is **heliotrope.**

—. The name of a brittle mineral substance found in crystalline igneous rocks is **hypersthene.**

—. The name of a transparent kind of calcite found in Iceland is **Iceland spar.**

—. The name of a glassy mineral found first in the lava of Mount Vesuvius is **ice-spar.**

—. The name of a transparent vitreous dichroic silicate of alumina, iron, and magnesia is **iolite.**

— The name of a hard greenish mineral, composed of silica, lime, and magnesia, used for ornaments, is **jade.**

—. The name given to an impure kind of quartz occurring in many colours is **jasper.**

—. The name of a mineral found in Saxony composed of sulphate of magnesium and chloride of potassium is **kainite.**

—. The name of a kind of feldspar found especially in Labrador is **labradorite.**

—. The name of a vitreous blue mineral found as pyramid-shaped crystals embedded in quartz and limestone is **lazulite.**

—. The name of a blue mineral forming the essential part of lapis lazuli is **lazurite.**

—. The name of a glassy silicate of aluminium and potassium found in volcanic rocks is **leucite.**

—. The name of a mineral containing the element titanium is **ligurite.**

—. The name of a green stone composed chiefly of carbonate of copper and used largely for ornamental purposes is **malachite.**

— A name for a mineral consisting of iron and sulphur found in English chalk rocks is **marcasite.**

—. A name for a flaky pearly green mineral containing magnesiun, iron, and silica is **marmolite.**

—. A name for any of a group of silicates cleaving into thin transparent plates is **mica.**

—. A name for the science treating of minerals is **mineralogy.**

—. The name of a mineral phosphate from which are obtained cerium and thorium is **monazite.**

—. Names for a glassy red, yellow, green or colourless silicate found chiefly in volcanic parts of Italy, producing cloudiness when immersed in nitric acid, are **nepheline** and **nephelite.**

—. The name given to kinds of potash feldspar, which cleave at right angles, is **orthoclase.**

—. A name for a greenish mineral composed of magnesia and protoxide of iron, found near Mount Vesuvius, etc., is **periclase.**

mineral. Names for the black mineral which is the chief source of radium and uranium are **pitchblende** and **uraninite.**

—. Those minerals which split obliquely and not at right angles are **plagioclastic.**

—. A name for a green variety of quartz coloured by the action of copper or nickel oxide is **plasma.**

—. A mineral having the external crystalline form of another is a **pseudomorph.**

—. A name for native manganese dioxide is **pyrolusite.**

—. The name of a common form of silica (dioxide of silicon) occurring either massive or in crystals is **quartz.**

—. The name of a variety of serpentine which has a resinous appearance is **retinalite.**

—. A name for the pure silicate of magnesia, which is of a rosy-pink colour, is **rhodonite.**

—. The name given to a soft yellowish mixture of alum and iron oxide, exuded from rocks containing compounds of aluminium, is **rock-butter.**

—. The name given to a dark blue or black silicate of aluminium, of a greasy nature, found in Bohemia and used to make crayons, is **rock-soap.**

—. A name given both to kinds of calcite and aragonite is **satin-spar.**

—. The name given to any one of a group of rock-forming minerals composed largely of silicates of aluminium, sodium, and calcium is **scapolite.**

—. The name given to a hydrous silicate of alumina found near Scarborough is **scarbroite.**

—. Names given to a soft variety of talc are **soapstone** and **steatite.**

—. A name given to several non-metallic minerals which occur in crystalline form and split easily is **spar.**

—. A term used to describe minerals which split in much the same manner as spar is **spathic.**

—. A name given to a hard vitreous crystalline mineral composed of alumina and magnesia is **spinel.**

—. The name given to a mineral composed of tin, copper, and iron sulphide, found in tin mines, is **stannite.**

—. The name of a fibrous magnesium silicate which usually occurs in transparent plates or prisms is **talc.**

—. The name given to a rare variety of zoisite, of a rose-red colour, found in Norway, is **thulite.**

—. The name of a glossy mineral, composed mainly of silica and alumina, which has powerful electric properties is **tourmaline.**

—. The name given to a mineral composed of hydrous silicates which occurs in the cavities and veins of lava and other eruptive rocks is **zeolite.**

—. The name given to a translucent silicate of calcium and alumina is **zoisite.**

—, elements. *See list of elements under* **element,** *above.*

—, gem-stones. *See under* **gem-stone,** *above.*

moisture. The absorption of moisture from the atmosphere by certain substances so that they become liquefied is **deliquesence.**

molecule. A molecule containing two atoms is **diatomic.**

—. A molecule containing more than one atom is **polyatomic.**

—. A chemical element having more than one replaceable hydrogen atom to the molecule is **polyatomic.**

—. An atom or group of atoms which passes unchanged through combinations and determines the character of the molecule is a **radical.**

—, rearrangement. The name given by chemists to a rearrangement of the molecules in organic substances such as occurs when starch or sugar is boiled with diluted acid is **inversion.**

mortar. The name given to an implement used for crushing or pounding chemicals in a mortar is **pestle.**

neutralization. A substance which neutralizes acidity or alkalinity in another is a **saturant.**

nickel. Names for the copper-coloured ore, a native arsenite of nickel, are **niccolite** and **nickelite.**

nitre. A common name for nitre (crude potassium nitrate), or for sodium nitrate, is **saltpetre.**

nitrogen. A compound containing nitrogen in its highest combining power is **nitric.**

—. A compound containing nitrogen in its lowest combining power is **nitrous**

nitrogenous compound. The name given to a nitrogenous compound forming the chief constituent of raw silk, spider's web, etc., is **fibroin.**

oil. The name given to a volatile oil containing in concentrated form the active properties of the plant from which it is obtained is **essential oil.**

—. An oil not easily evaporated is a **fixed oil.**

opal. A name for a spongy variety of opal light enough to float on the surface of water is **float-stone.**

—. The name given to a semi-transparent kind of opal which becomes transparent when dipped in water is **hydrophane.**

ore. A name for the matrix of earthy or stony matter in which ores are embedded is **gangue.**

—. Ores or metals which cannot be melted or worked except at very high temperatures are **refractory.**

oxide. An oxide containing two equivalents of oxygen to one of a metal or a metalloid is a **dioxide.**

—. An oxide containing one atom of oxygen in combination with either one atom of a bivalent element or two atoms of a monovalent element is a **monoxide.**

—. The oxide of an element or a base that contains the largest quantity of oxygen is a **peroxide.**

—. That oxide of a series which contains the lowest relative amount of oxygen is a **protoxide.**

—. The name given to an oxide in which two radicals of a base are combined with three atoms of oxygen is **sesquioxide.**

—, metallic. The name given to a group of metallic oxides whose metals are exceedingly scarce is **rare earths.**

oxygen. The name for a binary compound of oxygen with another element or with an organic radical is **oxide.**

—. A name for an acid containing oxygen is **oxyacid.**

—. The name for an allotropic form of oxygen found in the atmosphere is **ozone.**

—. *See also under* **oxide,** *above.*

palm-oil. The name of an acid present in palm-oil is **palmitic acid.**

pestle. A bowl-shaped vessel in which chemicals are pounded or crushed with a pestle is a **mortar.**

pitchblende. The name of a hard, white metallic element found in pitchblende and other ores is **uranium.**

plaster of Paris. The name given to the hydrous sulphate of lime from which plaster of Paris is prepared is **gypsum.**

potassium nitrate. Common names given to potassium nitrate are **nitre** and **saltpetre.**

potassium oxalate. A name given to acid potassium oxalate, used to remove stains from fabrics, is **salts of lemon.**

pounding. The name given to a wooden, metal or earthenware bowl in which substances are pounded or crushed is **mortar.**

—. An implement used in pounding or crushing substances in a mortar is a **pestle.**

powder. The reduction of a substance to a powder by burning is **calcination.**

precipitate, fleecy. A fleecy precipitate of indissoluble matter in a solution is **flocculent.**

protein. The name given to any of a group of protein substances found in animal bodies and coagulable by heat is **albumen.**

—. The name given to a protein substance found in milk is **casein.**

—. The name of an insoluble protein substance contained in the blood, causing it to clot is **fibrin.**

—. The name given to a protein substance, found in the blood, which resembles albumen but is indissoluble in water is **globulin.**

putrefaction. The name of a soluble poison formed during the putrefaction of protein substances and present in the blood in sepsis is **sepsine.**

quartz. The name of the crystalline form of silicon dioxide of which flint, sand, and quartz essentially consist is **silica.**

radical. A name given to one of a class of radicals having no separate existence but entering into the composition of the paraffin hydrocarbons is **alkyl.**

—, combining power. *See under* **combining power,** *above.*

radium. The three distinct kinds of ray given out by radium are **alpha, beta,** and **gamma rays.**

—. The immediate parent substance of radium, changing directly into radium, is **ionium.**

—. Names given to the gaseous emanation from radium, regarded as a chemical element, are **niton** and **radon.**

—. Names of the black mineral which is the chief source of radium and uranium are **pitchblende** and **uraninite.**

—. The name given to a kind of instrument in which one may see the rays emitted by a tiny speck of radium it contains is **spinthariscope.**

ray. A substance which emits rays able to pass through opaque substances is **radio-active.**

resin. The name of a white crystalline compound obtained from certain resins and used in dyes and in medicine is **resorcin.**

—. The name of a yellowish liquid hydrocarbon obtained by the dry distillation of resin is **retinol.**

resistance, electrical. The name of a non-metallic element which varies in electrical resistance according to the intensity of light is **selenium.**

rock. A cavity in a rock lined with crystals or the crystalline lining of such a cavity is a **druse.**

—. A vein of metal-bearing rock is a **lode.**

—. The name given to the branch of geology that treats of the origin, mode of occurrence, and constituents of rocks is **petrology.**

—. *See also* **mineral,** *above.*

saffron. A name given to the colouring matter of saffron because of its various changes of colour under chemical action is **polychroite.**

salt. The name given to any salt of hydrogen is **acid.**

—. An electro-positive compound substance that combines with an acid to form a salt is a **base.**

—. A salt having two replaceable hydrogen atoms in each molecule is **dibasic.**

—. A salt made by the union of a halogen with a metal is a **haloid.**

—. A salt having only one replaceable hydrogen atom in each molecule is **monobasic.**

—. A salt of nitric acid is a **nitrate.**

—. A substance containing common salt (chloride of sodium) is **saliferous.**

—. A salt formed from a tribasic salt is **sesquibasic.**

—. The names for the salts of sulphurous and sulphuric acid are respectively **sulphite** and **sulphate.**

—. A salt having four replaceable hydrogen atoms in the molecule is **tetrabasic.**

—. A salt having three replaceable hydrogen atoms in the molecule is **tribasic.**

sand. The name of the crystalline form of silicon dioxide of which sand, flint, and quartz essentially consist is **silica.**

seaweed. The name of a non-metallic bluish-black crystalline element obtained originally from the ashes of seaweed is **iodine.**

seed. The name given to an enzyme found in germinating seeds and capable of converting starch into sugar is **diastase.**

separation. The name given to a method of separating gummy ingredients from crystalloid ingredients in a solution by straining through a membrane is **dialysis.**

shapeless. A substance which has no definite shape or structure is **amorphous.**

silk. The name given to a nitrogenous compound found in raw silk and spider's web is **fibroin.**

sodium chloride. The name commonly given to sodium chloride is **salt.**

sodium sulphate. A name given to unpurified sulphate of sodium, used in the manufacture of glass and of soap, is **salt-cake.**

solid, dissolving. The act of dissolving a solid into liquid form by mixture with a liquid is **solution.**

solution. The name given to the solid of definite geometrical shape formed by a substance when it grows from a supersaturated solution is **crystal.**

—. A substance incapable of being dissolved is **insoluble.**

—. A substance deposited in a solid form from solution in a liquid is a **precipitate.**

—. A solution which contains as much of the matter dissolved in it as it will normally take up is a **saturated solution.**

—. A solution made with hot liquid and so caused to take up more of a salt than it will contain at a lower temperature is a **supersaturated solution.**

stain, removing. A name given to acid potassium oxalate, used to remove stains from fabrics, is **salts of lemon.**

starch. The name given to that part of a starch granule which can be dissolved in water is **amidin.**

—. A term meaning starch-like or containing starch is **amyloid.**

—. The name of a gum obtained by treating starch with diluted acids is **dextrin.**

—. The name given to an enzyme, found in germinating seeds, capable of converting starch into sugar is **diastase.**

substance. A substance that cannot be decomposed into unlike constituents is an **element.**

—, non-crystallizing. The name given to any of a class of substances that do not crystallize and will not pass through membranes is **colloid.**

—, pure A substance which is pure and free from mixture is **absolute.**

—, smallest particle. The smallest portion into which a substance can be divided while still retaining its composition and properties is the **molecule.**

—, sour. The name given to any of a class of chemical substances, sour to the taste, which neutralize alkalis and turn blue litmus red is **acid.**

—, sweet. The name of a sweet crystalline substance obtained from coal-tar is **saccharine.**

sugar. Names given to a kind of sugar found in sweet fruits that rotates the plane of polarized light to the right are **dextrose, glucose,** and **grape sugar.**

—. Names given to a sugar found in fruits which rotates the plane of polarization to the left are **fruit sugar, fructose,** and **laevulose.**

—. The name of a sugar produced by the action of malt on starch is **maltose.**

—. Names given to a kind of sugar or glucose present in small quantities in a number of plants are **mannite** and **mannitol.**

sugar. The conversion of one kind of sugar (fructose) into another kind (glucose) is an example of **metathesis.**

—. The name of an instrument for determining the amount of sugar in a liquid is **saccharimeter.**

—. A name for cane sugar and beet sugar, as distinguished from glucose, is **saccharose.**

—. A name for cane sugar or any compound sugar of the same chemical composition and properties is **sucrose.**

—, substitute. The name of an intensely sweet crystalline substance obtained from coal-tar and used as a sugar-substitute is **saccharine.**

sulphur. A compound containing sulphur in its highest combining power is **sulphuric.**

—. A compound containing sulphur in its lowest combining power is **sulphurous.**

sun. The property of certain rays of the sun to excite chemical action is **actinism.**

—. An instrument which records the variations of chemical influence in the sun's rays is an **actinograph.**

symbol. An expression by symbols of the constitution of a substance is a **formula.**

—, chemical. *See list of elements under* **element,** *above.*

tea. The name of an astringent acid present in tea, hops, and other vegetable products is **tannin.**

test. The name given to a test solution or test paper is **indicator.**

—, solution. The name of a blue colouring matter obtained from lichens which has the property of being turned red by acids and restored again to blue by alkalis is **litmus.**

tin. A compound containing a high proportion of tin is **stannic.**

—. A compound containing a low proportion of tin is **stannous.**

tobacco. A name for a poisonous alkaloid present in tobacco is **nicotine.**

tube. The name given to a vertical tube with a stop-cock at the bottom, used for measuring liquids, is **burette.**

—. The name given to a thick-walled glass tube with electrical contacts used in gas analysis, in which a charge of gas is exploded to determine its composition, is **detonating tube.**

—. A name for a glass tube used by chemists for measuring or transferring small quantities of liquid is **pipette.**

turpentine. The name of a liquid obtained by the action of sulphuric acid on turpentine is **terebene.**

uncrystallized. A substance which is not made up of crystals and has no definite shape or structure is **amorphous.**

unstable. Unstable substances, which easily undergo change, are **labile.**

valence. *See under* **combining power** *and* **element,** *above.*

vaporization. The vaporizing of a substance by heat and the collecting and condensing of vapours thus driven off is **distillation.**

—. The conversion of a solid substance into a state of vapour by heat, and to solidity again by cooling, without apparent liquefaction, is **sublimation.**

—. A substance readily changing into vapour at an ordinary temperature is **volatile.**

vapour, ignition. The temperature at which the vapour of an oil or spirit ignites is the **flash-point.**

vegetable. The branch of chemistry dealing with vegetable and animal organisms or substances formed from them is **organic chemistry.**

—. The name given to a substance separated unchanged from vegetable matter is **educt.**

water. A substance that is entirely free from water is **anhydrous.**

—. The removal of water or its elements from a substance is **dehydration.**

water. A compound containing water combined with an element or another compound is a **hydrate.**

—. A substance or a mixture containing water is **hydrous.**

weight. The relative weight of a substance compared with the weight of an equal bulk of water is the **specific gravity.**

wheat. The name given to an albumenous substance present in the flower of wheat is **gluten.**

wine. The name of a deposit formed in wine casks during the fermentation of wine is **tartar.**

wood, fossil. Names for a fossil wood impregnated with silica are **wood-agate** and **wood-opal.**

wood-spirit. The chemical name for the spirit obtained in an impure form by distilling wood is **methyl alcohol.**

wool. The name of a fatty substance extracted from wool is **lanolin.**

yew. The name of a poisonous resinous substance obtained from the leaves of the yew is **taxin.**

zinc. The name given to a native sulphide of zinc is **blende.**

—. The name given to an ore of zinc consisting mainly of the silicate is **hemimorphite.**

—. The name of a rare silvery-white metal found in zinc ores is **indium.**

CHRISTIANITY AND JUDAISM

abbey. The office, state, privileges, and term of office of an abbot are an **abbacy.**

—. The female superior of an abbey is an **abbess.**

—. The head of an abbey of monks is an **abbot.**

abbot. A superior abbot or head of a religious order in the Eastern Church is an **archimandrite.**

—. A name for an abbot's stall is **tabernacle.**

Advent. The belief that Christ's second Advent will be followed by His reign for a thousand years is **chiliasm.**

alms. An official appointed to distribute alms for a religious house, etc., is an **almoner.**

altar. A name for a canopy over an altar, etc., is **baldachin.**

—. An altar-piece in the form of two leaves hinged together and richly carved or painted is a **diptych.**

—. An altar-piece in the form of three leaves hinged together and richly carved or painted is a **triptych.**

—, hangings. A veil used for covering the front of an altar is an **antependium.**

—, —. A name for an ornamental hanging at the back of an altar is **dossal.**

—, —. An embroidered cloth or panel hung in front of an altar is a **frontal.**

angel. The nine orders of angels in mediaeval theology are **Seraphim, Cherubim, Thrones, Dominations, Principalities, Powers, Virtues, Archangels** and **Angels.**

anoint. To anoint with oil is to **anele.**

Aquinas, St. Thomas. A name given to the religious doctrines of St. Thomas Aquinas or his followers is **Thomism.**

archbishop. That which belongs or relates to the archbishopric of Canterbury is **Cantuarian.**

—. The seat or jurisdiction of an archbishop is a **see.**

archdeacon. In the Roman and Anglican Churches the designation of an archdeacon is **The Venerable.**

Ascension Day. The three days immediately preceding Ascension Day are observed in certain Churches as **Rogation Days.**

assembly. An assembly of cardinals for the purpose of electing a new Pope is a **conclave.**

—. An assembly of the cardinals in council under the presidency of the Pope is a **consistory.**

—. A name formerly given to a secret assembly or meeting-place of Nonconformists was **conventicle.**

—. An assembly of the clergy of a province of the Church of England is a **convocation.**

—. Names for a deliberative assembly of the clergy of a church, nation, province, etc., are **council** and **synod.**

—. A name for the annual assemblies or gatherings of religious and charitable bodies in London during May is **May meetings.**

—. *See also under* **council,** *below.*

baptism. One who is being instructed in the Christian religion before receiving baptism is a **catechumen.**

—. The vessel containing the water for baptism is the **font.**

baptism. A name for the baptism of children, as distinguished from adult baptism, is **paedobaptism.**

barefooted. Certain orders of friars and nuns, the members of which go without shoes, are **discalced, discalceate,** or **discalceated.**

basin. A name for a basin containing holy water near the entrance of a Roman Catholic church is **stoup.**

benefice. The right to nominate a priest to a living or benefice is **advowson.**

— An order nominating a person to a benefice of the Roman Catholic Church is an **expectative.**

—. The ceremony of installing a clergyman in a benefice is **induction.**

—. The name given to an ecclesiastical benefice without the cure of souls is **sinecure.**

—. The vacancy of a church benefice, or the ejection of the holder from a benefice, is **voidance.**

Bible. A method of explaining the Bible by a spiritual meaning underlying the literal meaning is **anagogy.**

—. The name for the list of accepted books of the Old or New Testament is **canon.**

—. An ancient written volume of the Scriptures or of part of them is a **codex.**

—. One who travels about selling Bibles and other religious books for some society is a **colporteur.**

—. The branch of theology which explains the meaning of passages in the Bible is **exegetics.**

—. The divine inspiration that keeps the Bible free from all error, in the views of certain theologians, is **plenary inspiration.**

—. The study and interpretation of types in the Scriptures is **typology.**

—, version. A translation of the Bible into English, published at Geneva by Coverdale and other English refugees during the Marian persecution, is the **Geneva Bible.**

—, —. The name of a revision of the Old Syriac version of the Bible is **Peshito.**

—, —. A Latin version of the Bible made at the end of the fourth century, which became the standard version used by the Latin Church, was the **Vulgate.**

—. *See also under* **New Testament** *and* **Old Testament,** *below.*

bishop. The transmission of authority, by the consecration of bishops in an unbroken chain from the time of the Apostles, is the **apostolic succession.**

—. The pastoral staff of a bishop or abbot is a **crosier.**

—. That part of a country under the spiritual jurisdiction of a bishop, who has authority over the clergy and members of his Church living therein, is a **diocese.**

—. A name for a bishop's throne is **exedra** or **exhedra.**

—. The name for a bishop's official head-dress is **mitre.**

—. The name in the Roman Catholic Church for the public approval by the Pope of the appointment of a bishop is **preconization.**

bishop. The diocese or seat of a bishop or archbishop is a **see.**

—. A part of a diocese managed for the diocesan bishop by an assistant bishop is a **suffraganate.**

—. The small piece of silk or linen attached to and usually wound round a bishop's crosier is the **vexillum.**

—. An officer, layman or priest, assisting a bishop or archbishop in his jurisdiction is a **vicar-general.**

—. A name given to a bishop's or archdeacon's inspection of the churches of the diocese is **visitation.**

—, title. A name for a bishop in the Syriac and Coptic Churches is **abba.**

—, —. A bishop of the Orthodox or Greek Church is an **eparch.**

—, —. A title of a Roman Catholic bishop next to the Pope in episcopal rank is **patriarch.**

—, —. The title borne by the presiding bishop in the Scottish Episcopal Church is **primus.**

—, —. A name for a bishop consecrated to assist a diocesan bishop is **suffragan.**

—, —. In the Roman Catholic Church, a titular bishop appointed where there is no bishop's see is a **vicar apostolic.**

Bonaventura, St. A title given to St. Bonaventura, a learned Franciscan friar, is **Seraphic Doctor.**

book. A list of books the reading of which is forbidden to Roman Catholics is the **Index.**

bread. The cake of unleavened bread used at the Passover meal is **azyme.**

—. The name given to the twelve loaves of bread which were placed on a table in the Hebrew tabernacle and temple is **shew-bread** or **show-bread.**

brotherhood. A name given by certain Churches to a religious brotherhood of men not under monastic vows is **confraternity.**

—. A brotherhood formed in the Roman Catholic Church for devotion and good works is a **sodality.**

burial. One of the inferior clergy who in the early Christian Church were charged with the burial of the dead was a **fossor.**

calendar. In the Church Calendar the season before the Nativity, or birth of Christ, is **Advent.**

—. The number denoting the year's place in the Metonic lunar cycle of nineteen years, used in calculating the date of Easter and other movable feasts of the Church, is the **golden number.**

—. The Church fast of forty week-days before Easter is **Lent.**

—. The months of the Hebrew sacred year, beginning in or about April, are **Nisan** or **Abib, Iyyar, Sivan, Tammuz, Ab, Elul, Tishri, Hesvan, Chisleu, Tebeth, Sebat,** and **Adar.**

—. The names of the three Sundays before Lent are **Septuagesima, Sexagesima,** and **Quinquagesima.**

—. The name given to the few days immediately preceding Lent is **Shrovetide.**

—, letter. One of the letters A to G used in the Church Calendar to denote the Sundays in any year is a **dominical letter** or **Sunday letter.**

—, week-day. An ordinary week-day in the Church Calendar, as opposed to one appointed for a festival or fast, is a **feria.**

—. *See also under* **festival,** *below.*

candle. A wax candle carried in religious processions is a **cierge.**

candlestick. The name given to a three-branched candlestick, symbolizing the Trinity, used by an Orthodox bishop in giving benediction is **tricerion.**

canon. The stipend granted to the canon of a collegiate church or a cathedral is a **prebend.**

—. A title borne by an honorary canon is **prebendary.**

canonization. A name given to an official of the Roman Catholic Church appointed to oppose the canonization of a person is **Devil's advocate.**

—. *See also under* **saint,** *below.*

canopy. The canopy carried in religious processions, or that over an altar, is a **baldachin.**

cardinal. A title of honour given to cardinals is **Eminence.**

cathedral. A name for a cathedral, or other large and important church, is **minster.**

—. The name given to a church used temporarily as a cathedral is **pro-cathedral.**

Catholic, Roman. The name given to a Roman Catholic who, in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries, refused to submit to the authority of the Church of England was **recusant.**

chalice. The name given in mediaeval legend to a chalice, said to have been used by Christ at the Last Supper, for which search was made by King Arthur and his knights is **Holy Grail.**

chapel. Names sometimes used for a Nonconformist chapel or place of worship are **Bethel** and **Bethesda.**

—. A name for a small chapel, especially one used for private prayers, is **oratory.**

—. A royal chapel controlled only by the sovereign was a **royal peculiar.**

—. A chapel-of-ease which is dependent upon a parish church is **succursal.**

Christ. One who held that Christ is of a substance like or similar to, but not the same as, that of the Father was a **homoiousian.**

—. One who held that Christ is of one and the same substance with the Father was a **homoousian.**

—. A name given by theologians to the voluntary laying aside by Christ during His earthly life of His divine power and glory is **kenosis.**

—. The name given to the traditional sayings of Christ is **logia.**

—. The name for the period of a thousand years during which some Christians believe that Christ will reign on earth, is **millennium.**

—. A name for the birth of Christ is the **Nativity.**

—. The doctrine or teaching that Christ was a mere man is **psilanthropism.**

—. A name for a miraculous portrait of Christ, especially that upon the legendary handkerchief of St. Veronica, is **sudarium.**

Christian. A term of reproach applied to early Christians was **Nazarene.**

Church. Attachment to the ceremonies of the Church is **ecclesiasticism.**

—. One who supports the principle of a State or Established Church is an **establishmentarian.**

—. A name for a Church free from State control or a Church that supports its ministry by voluntary effort, especially an English Nonconformist Church, is **Free Church.**

—. The land going with a church benefice, which yields a revenue, is **glebe.**

—. A name for a member of a Protestant religious body that does not conform to the doctrine or discipline of the Established Church is **Nonconformist.**

—. The division of a Church into two Churches, or the breaking away of a Church, is a **schism.**

—. A name for the belief that the Church should be independent of State support and should be maintained by the contributions of its members is **voluntarism** or **voluntaryism.**

—. A name often used figuratively to represent the Church of Christ is **Zion.**

—, Eastern. The name of the supreme governing body of the Russian branch of the Eastern Orthodox Church was **Holy Synod.**

—, —. A title held by the heads of certain Eastern Churches is **patriarch.**

Church, Eastern. The name given to a member of any Oriental Church which acknowledges the supremacy of the Pope but uses its own liturgy, rites, and ceremonies, is **Uniat.**

Church of England. The doctrines, principles, and practices of the Church of England are **Anglicanism.**

—. That party in the Church of England which lays stress on Catholic authority and tradition is the **Anglo-Catholic party** or **High Church party.**

—. A party in the Church of England interpreting doctrines in a liberal sense is the **Broad Church party.**

—. The body administering the revenues of the Church of England is the **Ecclesiastical Commissioners.**

—. The Courts that administer the disciplinary law of the Church of England are the **ecclesiastical courts.**

—. That party in the Church of England which lays stress on its Protestant character is the **Evangelical party** or **Low Church party.**

—. The name of the religious revival in the Church of England beginning at Oxford in 1833, in which J. H. Newman (later a cardinal in the Roman Catholic Church) took part, is **Oxford Movement** or **Tractarian Movement.**

clergy. The spiritual care or charge of a clergyman is a **cure.**

—. To deprive a clergyman of his clerical office for some serious offence is to **disfrock** or **unfrock.**

—. Another name for a clergyman, particularly one learned in theology, is **divine.**

—. The entire body of clergy of a Church is its **hierarchy.**

—. The act of forbidding a clergyman to exercise his clerical functions is **inhibition.**

—, Armenian. A member of an order of teaching clergy in the Armenian Church is a **vartabed** or **vartabet.**

—, collegiate. An ecclesiastical dignitary who presides over the chapter of a cathedral or collegiate church is a **dean.**

—, —. The name given to a clergyman who takes part in the daily service of a cathedral but is not a member of the chapter is **minor canon.**

—, —. A clergyman in a collegiate church whose nominal duty is to lead the singing is a **precentor.**

—, —. A name for a deputy precentor is **succentor.**

—, dress. The square or three-cornered cap worn by clergy is a **biretta.**

—, —. A brimless cap worn by clergy is a **calotte.**

—, —. A long, close-fitting robe worn by the clergy and others connected with the Church is a **cassock.**

—, —. A name for a priest's cassock is **soutane.**

—, —. A name for the girdle of a cassock is **surcingle.**

—, —. A name for the skull-cap worn by certain ecclesiastics in the Roman Catholic Church is **zucchetta.**

—, title. A name on the European continent for a Roman Catholic priest holding no benefice, but engaged in teaching, or attached to a particular household, is **abbé.**

—, —. A name given in France to a Roman Catholic parish priest is **curé.**

—, —. A cleric next below a priest in the Roman Catholic and Anglican Churches is a **deacon.**

—, —. A clergyman holding a benefice is an **incumbent.**

—, —. An exalted dignitary of the Church, such as a archbishop or bishop, is a **prelate.**

—, —. The name given to the chief prelate, or the highest in rank, in certain Churches is **primate.**

—, —. In the Church of England a parish priest who receives the full tithes is a **rector.**

clergy, title. A Roman Catholic priest living in a community under a rule is a **regular.**

—, —. The title borne by a clergyman in the Church of England ranking next below an archdeacon, and charged with the inspection of a district, is **rural dean.**

—, —. A Roman Catholic priest not bound by monastic vows is a **secular.**

—, —. In the Church of England the priest of a parish of which the greater tithes belong to a chapter or other body or to a layman is a **vicar.**

collection. A name for a collection of money during a religious service is **offertory.**

college. A name for a college at which young men are trained for the Roman Catholic priesthood is **seminary.**

Commandments. A name for the Ten Commandments is **Decalogue.**

Communion, Holy. The introductory part of the eucharistic service is the **ante-communion.**

—. A name for the cup or vessel in which the wine is placed in the service of Holy Communion is **chalice.**

—. A name for a small side table or shelf on which the bread and wine are kept before consecration in the service of Holy Communion. is **credence-table.**

—. A name for a small vessel for wine or water used in the service of Holy Communion is **cruet.**

— Other names for Holy Communion are **Eucharist, Lord's Supper,** and **Mass.**

— The name for that part of the service of Holy Communion at which offerings are made of the elements, and also for the collection of money during the service, is **offertory.**

—. A name for the shallow plate on which the bread is placed in the service of Holy Communion is **paten.**

—. That part of the Eucharistic service which follows after the act of receiving the bread and wine is the **post-communion.**

—. The preparation of the bread and wine to be used in the sacrament is known in the Greek Church as the **prothesis.**

—. The doctrine which teaches that Christ is objectively present in the Mass or Eucharist is that of the **Real Presence.**

complaint. A formal complaint made by parish authorities to a visiting archdeacon or bishop is a **presentment.**

confession. A priest who hears confession is a **confessor.**

—. The Roman Catholic form of prayer used in confession is the **Confiteor.**

— The principal confessor attached to a Roman Catholic cathedral is the **penitentiary.**

—. A name for a tribunal in the papal court deciding questions relating to confessions and dispensations is **penitentiary.**

Convocation. The title given to the chairman of either of the Lower Houses of Convocation is **prolocutor.**

council. A council of clergy of a cathedral or collegiate church is a **chapter.**

—. The name of the two great councils of the Christian Church held in 325 and 787 at Nicaea, in Asia Minor, is **Nicene Councils.**

—. A name for a council of the whole Christian Church in early times, or later of the whole Roman Catholic Church, is **Oecumenical Council** or **General Council.**

—. The name for the supreme council and court of justice in ancient Jerusalem was **Sanhedrim.**

—. A name for a council, called together by a bishop, of all the clergy in his diocese, is **synod.**

—. A name for a Presbyterian council between the presbyteries and the General Assembly is **synod.**

council. The name given to the general council of the Roman Catholic Church (1869-1870) which proclaimed the doctrine of papal infallibility was **Vatican Council.**

—. *See also under* **assembly,** *above.*

court, Anglican. An ecclesiastical court of a Church of England bishop is a **consistory.**

—, —. The court of appeal in the Church of England is the **Court of Arches.**

—, —. A name given to a former college of doctors of law in London, where certain ecclesiastical and other courts were held, now used as a centre for the issue of marriage licences, is **Doctors' Commons.**

—, Papal. The court at Rome which includes the Pope, cardinals, and other authorities constituting the papal government is the **Curia Romana.**

—. —. The papal court at Rome from which bulls are issued and other business of the Roman Catholic Church is dealt with is the **Dataria.**

—, —. The supreme law court of the Roman Catholic Church is the **Rota.**

creed. The names of the three great creeds of the Christian Church are the **Apostles', Nicene,** and **Athanasian creeds.**

deacon. *See under* **order,** holy, *below.*

dead. A name for the Roman Catholic vespers for the dead is **placebo.**

—. A special mass said or sung for the repose of the souls of the dead is a **requiem.**

demon. The religious practice by which evil spirits are expelled from persons and places is **exorcism.**

denomination. The name of a group of denominations which recognize adult baptism only is **Baptist.**

—. The name of a member of a denomination which follows the teaching of Mrs. Eddy, that disease has no real existence and can be cured by faith, is **Christian Scientist.**

—. Names for the members of a Nonconformist denomination which arose in the sixteenth century, and in which each congregation maintains its independence, are **Independents** and **Congregationalists.**

— A service or meeting in which persons of different Churches take part is **interdenominational.**

—. The name of an adherent of any of the denominations which arose from the teaching of the Wesleys and Whitefield is **Methodist.**

—. A name for the members of a small Protestant Church, originating in Moravia and adhering to the doctrines of John Huss (1373-1415), is **Moravians** or **Moravian Brethren.**

—. Names for a member of an American religious body—the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints—founded by Joseph Smith and based on alleged revelations made to him. are **Mormon** and **Latter-day Saint.**

—. The name of a denomination, founded in England by George Fox about 1650, which cultivates great simplicity of worship and manners, is **Society of Friends** or **Quakers.**

—. A member of the denomination called the New Church, based on the mystical teaching of Emanuel Swedenborg, is a **Swedenborgian.**

—. The name of one of the principal Methodist denominations is **Wesleyan.**

—. *See also under* **heresy** *and* **sect,** *below.*

deputy. A deputy for a bishop in the remote parts of his diocese is a **commissary.**

—. A name for the deputy of a bishop or his chancellor, appointed to grant marriage licences, etc., is **surrogate.**

devotion. A devotion said three times a day by Roman Catholics in honour of the birth of Christ is the **Angelus.**

—. A short devotion used by Roman Catholics is the **Ave Maria, Ave,** or **Hail Mary.**

discipline. The name given to the rule of conduct and good living formerly enforced by the Church courts is **canon law.**

discipline, monastic. A name for any of several methods or devices for relaxing the discipline in a monastic institution is **misericord.**

disease. The cure of disease by faith and prayer without medical aid is **faith-healing** or **faith-cure.**

doctrine. A doctrine opposed to Calvinism, held by the majority of Protestants, that man's ultimate salvation is determined by his free-will is **Arminianism.**

—. The doctrine opposed to Arminianism, held by some Protestants, that certain men are pre-ordained for salvation, is **Calvinism.**

—. A religious doctrine which rests on the authority of its propounder, especially of a Church, is a **dogma.**

—. The science which deals with the statement and definition of Christian doctrine is **dogmatics.**

—. The doctrine that the Church should be controlled and ruled by the State is **Erastianism.**

—. A religious doctrine, maintained by a member of a Church in opposition to its declared teaching is a **heresy**

—. A religious doctrine opposed to what is accepted as true by a Church is, from the point of view of that Church, **heterodox.**

—. The doctrines of Cornelius Jansen, Archbishop of Utrecht, who taught that salvation is attained only by the grace of God, are **Jansenism.**

—. A religious doctrine accepted as true by a Church is, from the point of view of that Church, **orthodox.**

—. The doctrines of a seventeenth century group of mystics who practised contemplation and cultivated mental passivity are **Quietism.**

—. The doctrine that salvation is obtained by faith alone is **solifidianism.**

—. Doctrine believed to have divine authority, but not found in the Scripture, is **tradition.**

—. *See also under* **denomination** *above, and* **heresy** *and* **sect** *below.*

doxology. The name of one of the doxologies of the Greek Church in which the word "Holy" is thrice repeated is **trisagion.**

dress, ritual. A name for any of the ceremonial garments worn during divine service by the clergy or choir, especially the chasuble of a priest, is **vestment.**

Easter. A name for a large wax candle burnt in Roman Catholic churches at Eastertide is **paschal candle.**

epistle. A name given to the epistles of SS. Peter, James, and John, because mostly addressed to the whole Church, is **catholic epistles.**

Eucharist. The name given to the sacrament of the Eucharist administered to dying persons is **viaticum.**

—. A round thin piece of unleavened bread used in the Eucharist is a **wafer.**

—. *See also under* **Communion, Holy,** *above, and* **Mass** *below.*

evensong. A bell rung to summon worshippers to vespers or evensong in the Roman Catholic and Greek Churches is the **vesper-bell.**

—. A service in the Roman Catholic and Greek Churches, sung or said towards evening and corresponding to evensong in the Anglican Church is **vespers.**

excommunication. A final warning to repent, given to Roman Catholics before excommunication, is a **reaggravation.**

Fall. The name given to one of those Calvinists who believed that God predestined each man after the Fall is **infralapsarian.**

—. The name given to one of those Calvinists who believed that God predestined each man before the Fall is **supralapsarian.**

Fathers. Those Christian writers of the first century who immediately followed the Apostles were the **Apostolic Fathers.**

Fathers. The study of the writings of the Fathers, or early authoritative writers, of the Christian Church, is **patristics.**

feast. A feast held by the early Christians before or after the celebration of the Eucharist was an **agape.**

festival, Christian. The name of a Roman Catholic festival held on the fifteenth of August to celebrate the taking up of the Virgin into heaven is **Assumption.**

— —. The name of a Roman Catholic festival held on the Thursday after Trinity Sunday in honour of the Real Presence is **Corpus Christi.**

—, —. The name of a festival on the sixth of January, commemorating the manifestation of Christ to the Gentiles, is **Epiphany.**

—, —. The day before a church festival is the **eve.**

—, —. A Church festival the date of which depends upon that of Easter is a **movable feast.**

—, —. A name for the period of eight days beginning with the feast day of a great Church festival is **octave.**

— —. A day marked with a red letter or letters in the Church Calendar as a festival is a **red-letter day.**

—, —. The eve of a Church festival, especially the eve that is a fast preceding one of the more important festivals, is a **vigil.**

—, —. The great Christian festival held seven weeks after Easter to commemorate the outpouring of the Holy Ghost is **Whitsunday** or **Pentecost.**

—, Jewish. The name of a Jewish festival held in the winter to commemorate the dedication of the Temple is **Feast of Dedication,** or **Chanuca.**

—, —. The name of a Jewish festival commemorating the wanderings of Israel in the wilderness, and also the completion of the harvest, is **Feast of Tabernacles.**

—, —. The great Jewish festival which commemorates the Exodus and is celebrated at a full moon in the spring is the **Passover.**

—, —. The name of a Jewish festival celebrating the beginning of harvest is **Pentecost** or **Feast of Weeks.**

—, —. The name of a Jewish festival held about March 1st to commemorate the frustration of Haman's plot is **Purim.**

fish. The name of a religious symbol, in the form of a fish, much used by the early Christians, is **ichthys.**

font. A name for a font for holy water near the entrance to a Roman Catholic church is **aspersorium.**

forms, external. A name given to one who attaches great importance to ritual observances, or the external forms in religion, is **ritualist.**

Franciscan. The name of a friar of a reformed branch of the Franciscan order is **Capuchin.**

—. The name of a friar of that branch of the Franciscan order which does not observe strictly the vow of poverty is **Conventual.**

—. Names for the order of Franciscan friars, founded in 1208 by St. Francis of Assisi, are **Friars Minor** and **Minorites.**

—. A name for a member of a reformed order of Franciscan friars, founded early in the sixteenth century, is **Minim.**

—. A name for a friar of that branch of the Franciscan order which keeps most strictly to the rules laid down by its founder is **Observant** or **Observantine.**

—. The name of a religious order of women following the Franciscan rule is **Poor Clares.**

—. The name given to St. Bonaventura, a learned Franciscan friar, is **Seraphic Doctor.**

friar. The chief orders of friars are the **Franciscans, Dominicans, Carmelites, Augustinian Hermits** or **Austin Friars,** and **Servites.**

friar. A name for a mediaeval friar sworn to poverty and to begging for subsistence, is **mendicant.**

Friends, Society of. A name given to the religious body founded in England by George Fox about 1650, and properly called the Society of Friends, is **Quakers.**

future life. Names for Hell or the final abode of wicked spirits are **Gehenna and Tartarus.**

—. A general name for the unseen world of spirits is **Hades.**

—. A name given in mediaeval theology to a region on the borders of Hell occupied by the souls of just men who lived before Christ, unbaptized infants, and others, is **Limbo.**

—. The name for an intermediate state in which the blessed dead await Heaven is **Paradise.**

—. In the Roman Catholic Church the name of a place or state of spiritual cleansing by temporary suffering is **Purgatory.**

—. In Jewish theology the place of the dead is **Sheol.**

Gloria. Another name for the Gloria in Excelsis is **Greater Doxology.**

—. Another name for the Gloria Patri, or "Glory be to the Father," sung at the end of a psalm, is **Lesser Doxology.**

God. That which is made known to man by divine power is **revelation.**

—. The name for a group of four letters signifying the Deity, such as that used by the Jews for the sacred name Jahveh, is **tetragrammaton.**

—. Close union of the soul with God during contemplation of Him is **theocrasy.**

Gospel. The arrangement of the four Gospels in the form of a continuous story is a **diatessaron.**

—. A name for the writers of the first three Gospels, who write from nearly the same point of view, is **Synoptists.**

grace. The doctrine that God's grace depends upon the disposition and merits of the recipient is **congruism.**

—. The name of a theological doctrine according to which God appointed beforehand certain persons to grace and eternal life is **predestination.**

heresy. The name of a heresy, denying the full divinity of Christ, that arose in the fourth century and to contest which the Council of Nicaea was called in 325, is **Arianism.**

—. The heretics in early Christian times who claimed a peculiar knowledge of spiritual mysteries were **Gnostics.**

—. The name of an early heretical sect, connected with the Gnostics and revering the serpent as the incarnation of divine wisdom was **Ophites.**

—. The name of an ancient heresy that denied original sin is **Pelagianism.**

—. The name of a heresy of the third century, according to which the Holy Trinity is merely a threefold manifestation of God to man, is **Sabellianism.**

—. The name given to a heresy according to which each Person of the Trinity is a distinct God is **tritheism.**

hermit. A hermit, or one who devotes his life in solitude to God, is an **anchorite, anchoret,** or **eremite.**

—. Names given to a hermit of old who lived on the top of a column are **pillar saint, pillarist,** and **Stylite.**

Holy Spirit. A name used in theology of a doctrine of the Holy Spirit is **pneumatology.**

holy water. *See under* **water,** *below.*

Holy Week. The name given in the Roman Catholic Church to the office of matins and lauds of the last three days of Holy Week is **Tenebrae.**

Host. A name for a receptacle used to contain the consecrated Host for reservation is **ciborium.**

Host. Names for a vessel in which the Host is carried in procession, or exposed on the altar, in Roman Catholic churches are **monstrance** and **ostensory.**

—. The name of a vessel in which, in the Roman Catholic Church, the Host is reserved in the tabernacle on the altar, and also the name of a box in which it is taken to the sick, is **pyx.**

—. The name of the receptacle on the altar in a Roman Catholic church for the pyx or the consecrated element is **tabernacle.**

hours, canonical. The canonical hours of prayer in the Roman Catholic Church are **matins, lauds, prime, tierce, sext, none, vespers.** and **compline.**

house. The house of a Presbyterian or Nonconformist minister is a **manse.**

hunter. The "mighty hunter before the Lord" was **Nimrod.**

hymn. An ancient non-metrical hymn, appointed for use in churches, such as the Te Deum, Magnificat, Nunc Dimittis, Venite, and Benedicite, is a **canticle.**

—. A name for a metrical hymn sung in unison, especially one set to a tune of the Reformation period, used in the Lutheran Church, is **chorale.**

—. A short hymn of praise to God is a **doxology.**

—. An ancient Hebrew hymn used both by Jews and Christians, especially one of those in the Old Testament, is a **psalm.**

—. *See also under* **Gloria,** *above.*

idol. The name given to the household gods of the ancient Hebrews was **teraphim.**

image. An image of the infant Saviour in swaddling clothes is a **bambino.**

—. A term applied in the eighth and ninth centuries to those who opposed the use of images and pictures in Christian worship was **iconoclasts.**

incense. A name for an incense-boat is **nef.**

—. Another name for a censer is **thurible.**

—. An acolyte who carries a censer is a **thurifer.**

Inquisition. The name of a loose garment worn by a heretic tried under the Spanish Inquisition was **sanbenito.**

Israel. The departure of the Israelites from Egypt was the **Exodus.**

judge, ecclesiastical. A bishop or his chancellor sitting as an ecclesiastical judge is an **ordinary.**

justice. The name given to a vindication of God's justice and holiness in view of the evil existing in the world is **theodicy.**

kiss. Names for a tablet bearing a picture of Christ, the paschal lamb, the Virgin Mary, etc., which in former times was kissed by the priest and congregation during Mass, are **pax** and **osculatory.**

knee. The bending of the knee in adoration or worship is a **genuflexion.**

land, church. A portion of land going with a clergyman's benefice is a **glebe.**

law, Church. Church law relating to morals and discipline, as laid down by Church councils is **canon law.**

—. The disciplinary laws and regulations of the Church of England derived from the old canon law and civil law is **ecclesiastical law.**

—. The supreme law court of the Roman Catholic Church is the **Rota.**

—, Jewish. A name for the second part of the Talmud, which explains that portion of the Jewish law not contained in the Pentateuch, is the **Gemara.**

—. The legendary part of the Talmud or Jewish law is the **Haggadah.**

—. The collection of oral Jewish traditions and law which forms part of the Talmud is the **Mishna.**

—. The old Jewish law contained in the Pentateuch is the **Mosaic Law.**

law. The name given to the collection of Jewish civil and religious law, other than that contained in the five books of Moses, is **Talmud.**

Lent. *See under* **calendar,** *above.*

letter, circular. A letter sent by the Pope to all the bishops of the Church of Rome is an **encyclical** or **encyclic.**

licence. An exemption granted by a religious authority from the need to obey a rule or law is a **dispensation.**

—. A licence granted by an archbishop's court to a clergyman to do something not otherwise allowed is a **faculty.**

—. In the Roman Catholic Church a permission exempting from performance of a religious duty, or allowing performance of an act not ordinarily allowed by Church law, is an **indult.**

liturgy. *See under* **Communion, Holy,** *above, and* **Mass** *and* **service, divine,** *below.*

living. The living held by a priest or the endowment attached to a church is a **benefice.**

Lutheran. The party of Lutherans in the seventeenth century who wished to introduce a spirit of deeper devotion into the Church were the **Pietists.**

marriage licence. A name given to a former college of doctors of law in London where certain courts were held, now used as a centre for the issue of marriage licences, is **Doctors' Commons.**

—. A marriage licence issued by the Archbishop of Canterbury, enabling a marriage to take place anywhere without banns, is a **special licence.**

—. A deputy of a bishop or his chancellor appointed to grant marriage licences, etc., is a **surrogate.**

martyr. To both St. Stephen, the first recorded martyr, and St. Alban, first to be martyred in Britain, is given the title **protomartyr.**

Mass. A name given to one holding the highest of the four minor orders of the Roman Catholic Church, and to a layman performing duties at Mass associated with this order, is **acolyte.**

—. That part of the Mass which includes the words of consecration is the **canon.**

—. An endowment for priests to say Mass daily for the dead is a **chantry.**

—. A short verse or sentence sung between the Epistle and the Gospel is the **gradual.**

—. A Mass with music, incense, and considerable ceremony is a **High Mass.**

—. A Mass said and not sung by the priest is a **Low Mass.**

— The name for a Roman Catholic service book containing the order of Mass for the whole year is **missal.**

—. A name for the fixed part of the Mass used on all occasions is **ordinary.**

—. The part of the Mass that varies is the **proper.**

—. A Mass for the dead is a **Requiem Mass.**

—. The name given to a prayer recited in a low voice by the celebrant at Mass is **secret.**

—. A particular purpose for which a Mass is celebrated is a **special intention.**

—. *See also under* **Communion, Holy,** *and* **Host,** *above.*

matins. The name of a division of matins in the Roman Catholic Church, recited during the night, is **nocturn.**

minister. A name for the house of a Presbyterian or Noncontormist minister is **manse.**

missionary. A member of a Roman Catholic congregation, the Society of Mary, devoted to missionary work, etc., is a **Marist.**

monastery. The head of an abbey of monks is an **abbot.**

—. A register containing the records of a monastery is a **cartulary.**

monastery. A handbook of rules or customs observed in monasteries or other church establishments is a **consuetudinary.**

—. A name for a church attached to a monastery is **minster.**

—. The title borne by the superior in certain monasteries and other religious houses, or the officer next below the abbot, is **prior.**

monastic orders. Among the chief monastic orders of the Roman Catholic Church is the **Benedictine order,** and its offshoots, the **Cluniacs, Carthusians,** and **Cistercians.**

monk. A name for a wandering monk of the Middle Ages who visited holy shrines in distant lands, living on alms which he obtained by the way, is **palmer.**

Moses. The mountain from which Moses viewed the Promised Land before his death was **Pisgah.**

—, law. The revealed will of God, as laid down in the law of Moses, is the **Torah.**

mysticism. A Jewish system of mystical religious philosophy handed down by word of mouth is the **cabbala** or **cabala.**

—. The name given to groups of men in Spain in the sixteenth century who claimed to have special knowledge about the mysteries of religion was **Illuminati.**

New Testament. A name for the last book of the New Testament, the Revelation of St. John, which is akin to the older Jewish prophecies, is **Apocalypse.**

—. Those books of the New Testament which were admitted into the canon later than the rest are **deuterocanonical.**

—. The name applied to those books of the New Testament which the early Church accepted as genuine was **homologumena.**

—. The oldest known Western canon of books of the New Testament is the **Muratorian fragment.**

Nonconformist. A name given to a Nonconformist, or one who refuses to conform to the doctrines and practices of the Church of England, is **dissenter.**

offering. The name given to an offering among the ancient Jews which was consecrated by being lifted up was **heave-offering.**

office. The office of the Roman Catholic breviary, recited daily by all priests and members of religious orders, is the **Divine Office.**

—. *See also* **hours,** canonical, *above.*

officer, Church. An attendant who lights and extinguishes the candles in the Roman Catholic Church is an **accensor.**

—. A member of a minor order instituted in early times to attend on the priests, and whose duties later were extended to include the care of the altar lights and sacramental wine, was an **acolyte.**

—. A lay officer who sings portions of the divine service in an Anglican cathedral is a **lay-vicar** or **vicar-choral.**

—. A name for a sub-treasurer of a cathedral or collegiate church, and also for an official having charge of church vestments is **vesturer.**

—. *See also under* **bishop** *and* **clergy,** *above.*

oil. Oil blessed by a bishop and used in certain ceremonies of the Roman Catholic and Greek Churches is **chrism.**

Old Testament. Those books which are not accepted by Jews or Protestants as authoritative but are included in the Old Testament by Roman Catholics compose the **Apocrypha.**

—. The name of a mystical interpretation of the Jewish Scriptures is **gematria.**

—. The third section into which the Jews divide the Old Testament, consisting of those books not included in the Law or the Prophets, is the **Hagiographa.**

—. The first seven books of the Old Testament compose the **Heptateuch.**

Old Testament. The first six books of the Old Testament compose the **Hexateuch.**

—. A name for a collection of notes, etc., on the Hebrew Scriptures compiled in the tenth and preceding centuries is **Masorah.**

—. The received Hebrew text of the Old Testament is the **Masoretic.**

—. A name for an ancient collection of Hebrew commentaries on the Old Testament is **Midrash.**

—. The first five books of the Old Testament form the **Pentateuch.**

—. The name given to any one of various Aramaic or Chaldee paraphrases of the Old Testament is **Targum.**

—. A name for the Mosaic Law as recorded in the Pentateuch is **Torah.**

—, version. The name of a text of the Old Testament in six versions, compiled by Origen, is **Hexapla.**

—, —. The name of the translation of the Old Testament made from Hebrew into Greek in the third century B.C. is **Septuagint.**

order, holy. In the Roman Catholic Church, the holy orders which rank as minor are those of **acolyte, exorcist, reader,** and **door-keeper.**

—, —. In the Roman Catholic Church the four greater holy orders are **bishop, priest, deacon,** and **sub-deacon.**

—, —. In the Anglican Church the three holy orders are **bishop, priest,** and **deacon.**

—. The name given in the Roman Catholic Church to the interval required between receiving two consecutive degrees of holy orders is **interstice.**

—. A name for a man about to be ordained deacon is **ordinand.**

—. A name for a newly-ordained deacon is **ordinee.**

order, religious. A member of one of the four great mendicant orders, the Franciscans, the Dominicans, the Augustinians, and the Carmelites, all established in the late Middle Ages with the purpose of preaching to the poor, was a **friar.**

—. The name for the head of a religious order with authority over all the congregations under its rule is **general.**

—. The name given to a candidate for admission to a religious order is **postulant.**

—. The title given in the Roman Catholic Church to the chief of a religious order in a particular district or province is **provincial.**

—. A person belonging to the third or secular grade of a religious order is a **tertiary.**

—. *See also under* **friar** *and* **monastic order,** *above.*

ordination. A name for a book containing the rules for the ordination of a priest or consecration of a bishop is **ordinal.**

parish. A former type of parish or church not under the control of the bishop in whose diocese it lay, was a **peculiar.**

Passover. The lamb sacrificed and eaten at the Jewish Passover was the **paschal lamb.**

peace. A measure or proposal intended to restore peace, especially in the Church, is an **eirenicon.**

Peter, St. A name for the teaching of St. Peter, as set out in his Epistles, is **Petrinism.**

picture, sacred. In the Eastern Churches a picture or image of a sacred personage is known as an **icon.**

pilgrim. A name for a pilgrim to the Holy Sepulchre at Jerusalem in the Middle Ages is **palmer.**

plate. A name for a shallow plate or dish used to lay the bread upon in the Church of England Communion Service and the Roman Catholic Mass, is **paten**

Pope. An address given by the Pope to the cardinals in consistory is an **allocution.**

—. A name for the first year's revenue of a see or living formerly paid to the Pope is **annates.**

—. A name for the dignity and office of the Pope, and for the system of Church government by the Pope, is **Papacy.**

Pope. The name given to a body of people in the Roman Catholic Church who support the absolute supremacy of the Pope in matters of faith and Church discipline is **ultramontanes.**

—, officer. The Pope's delegate acting as bishop of the diocese of Rome is the **cardinal-vicar.**

—, —. The officer who arranges for the signature of the papal bulls and other documents is the **datary.**

—, —. The name given to a papal ambassador of lesser importance than a nuncio is **internuncio.**

—, —. The name given to an ecclesiastic authorized to represent the Pope in a foreign country is **legate.**

—, —. A name for an ambassador of the Pope at a foreign court is **nuncio.**

—, —. The title borne by twelve prelates attached to the Pope's court at Rome is **prothonotary-apostolic.**

—, —. The cardinal at the head of the branch of the Pope's Chancery dealing with bulls and briefs is the **vice-chancellor.**

—, pronouncement. A Papal edict is a **bull.**

—, —. A collection of decrees, mandates, etc., published by the Papal Council and recording decisions on points in ecclesiastical law is a **decretal.**

—, —. The name given to a Papal decree depriving communities or places of the functions and privileges of the Church is **interdict.**

—, —. A name for an order or rescript of the Pope is **mandate.**

—, —. A name given to the decretal epistle of a Pope in answer to a question of law is **rescript.**

prayer. The name of a form of Jewish prayer and thanksgiving especially used in times of mourning is **kaddish.**

—. *See also under* **devotion** *and* **hours,** canonical, *above.*

prayer-desk. A name given to a movable prayer-desk is **faldstool.**

preacher. A name given to a lay preacher, especially one engaged in home missions, is **evangelist.**

—. A name for one engaged in preaching, used especially of a Dominican friar, is **predicant.**

—. A minister of the Dutch Reformed Church, especially in South Africa, is a **predikant.**

Presbyterian. The name of a junior administrative official in a Presbyterian Church, and in some other Churches, is **deacon.**

—. The name given to certain persons holding office in the Presbyterian Church is **elder.**

—. The annual meeting of the body which represents the Church of Scotland is the **General Assembly.**

—. The lowest court in the Presbyterian Churches of Scotland, consisting of a minister and elders, is a **kirk-session.**

—. A Presbyterian minister who presides over any Church assembly is a **moderator.**

—. The process of opening legislative negotiations between two assemblies of a Presbyterian Church is an **overture.**

— The name of a Presbyterian court in Scotland next above a kirk-session, and of a district represented by this, is **presbytery.**

—. A name for a council of Presbyterians between the presbyteries and the General Assembly is **synod.**

property, church. Church properties or revenues granted to laymen are **impropriate.**

prophecy. A name for one who believes that the Biblical prophecies, especially those in the Book of Revelation, have yet to be fulfilled is **futurist.**

Protestant. The name given to members of the early Protestant party in England which sought to simplify religion and demanded stricter standards of behaviour is **Puritan.**

Protestant. The name of a form of Protestantism occurring in south Russia after the publication of a translation of the Bible into modern Russian in 1861 is **Stundism.**

Puritan. The Puritan petition presented to James I in 1603 was the **Millenary Petition.**

recluse. The name of an order of Cistercian recluses established at La Trappe, in France, in the twelfth century is **Trappists.**

Reformation. A member of any Christian Church which upholds the principles of the Reformation is a **Protestant.**

relic. A kind of shrine containing the relics of saints sometimes carried in processions is a **feretory.**

religion. The forsaking of religious faith and the renunciation of religious vows is **apostasy.**

—. A name for a stage in the religious history of mankind is **dispensation.**

—. The systematic study of religion, especially of Christianity, is **theology.**

remission. The name given in the Roman Catholic Church to the remission of punishment which may remain due to sin after its guilt has been forgiven is **indulgence.**

ring. A name for a signet ring worn by the Pope as successor to St. Peter is **piscatory ring.**

rites. A book of ritual or forms of religious ceremonies is a **formulary.**

—. The performance of rites, especially in an elaborate manner, is **ritual.**

royal supremacy. The doctrine or principle of royal supremacy in Church affairs is **regalism.**

rule. A name for the rule of life laid down in Matthew vii. 12 that "Whatsoever ye would that men should do to you, do ye even so to them" is **Golden Rule.**

sacrament. The seven sacraments recognised by the Roman Catholic Church are **baptism, confirmation, the Eucharist, penance, extreme unction, holy orders,** and **matrimony.**

—. The two generally necessary sacraments recognized by the Church of England are **baptism** and **the Lord's Supper.**

—. The exclusion of a Christian from the sacraments of his Church is **excommunication.**

saint. The declaration by the Pope that a deceased person is among the blessed, which is the first step in canonization by the Roman Catholic Church, is **beatification.**

—. The title given by the Roman Catholic Church to one recognized as having attained the second of the three degrees of sanctity is **Blessed.**

—. The official list of canonized saints is the **canon.**

— The official declaration by the Roman Catholic Church that a person is a saint is **canonization.**

—. A popular name given to an official of the Roman Catholic Church appointed to oppose the canonization of a person is **Devil's advocate.**

—. A collection of lives of saints is a **hagiography** or **legend.**

—. All the literature relating to the lives and legends of saints is **hagiology.**

— A term used by opponents for the worship of saints or of holy things generally is **hierolatry.**

— The calendar of the Greek and other Orthodox Churches in which the festivals of saints and martyrs are recorded is a **menology.**

—. In the Roman Catholic Church the name given to the advocate who pleads for the inclusion of some holy person in the roll of saints is **postulator.**

—. The title given by the Roman Catholic Church to one recognized as having attained the first of the three degrees of sanctity is **Venerable.**

salvation. The name given to the doctrine that God has fixed a limit in the life of every man beyond which he loses the opportunity of salvation is **terminism.**

salvation. The name given to a doctrine held by some Christians, according to which all men will be saved in the end and inhabit a world free of evil, is **Universalism.**

scarf, praying. The name of a scarf worn by Jews during prayer is **tallith.**

Scotland, Church. *See under* **Presbyterian,** *above.*

Scriptures. *See under* **Bible, New Testament,** *and* **Old Testament,** *above.*

sect. The members of a religious sect in Languedoc in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries, which rejected the authority of both Church and State and against whom a crusade was preached by Innocent III, were the **Albigenses.**

—. A name given to a member of a Protestant sect that arose in Saxony in 1521 and denied the validity of infant baptism was **Anabaptist.**

— A sect or organized body of persons holding the same religious beliefs is a **denomination.**

—. The members of a Russian sect somewhat resembling the Quakers are **Dukhobors.**

—. The name of a sect which arose in Italy in the sixteenth century, and rejected the doctrine of the Holy Trinity, is **Socinians.**

—. A name for one of a body of Russian dissenters, prominent in south Russia after the publication of the Bible in Russian (1861), is **Stundist.**

—. The members of a Puritan sect which has existed in south-eastern France since the twelfth century are **Waldenses.**

—, Jewish. The name of an ancient Jewish sect, the members of which led a very ascetic life, is **Essenes.**

—, —. The name given to a member of a Jewish sect which rejects rabbinical traditions is **Karaite.**

—, —. The name of an ancient Jewish sect which strictly observed the written and traditional law is **Pharisees.**

—, —. The name of an ancient Jewish sect which denied the resurrection of the dead and the existence of angels is **Sadducees.**

—. *See also under* **denomination** *and* **heresy,** *above.*

service, divine. A sentence said or sung by one side of a choir in response to the other is an **antiphon.**

—, —. The complete forms of public worship in a Christian Church are its **liturgy.**

—, —. A name for the service of Morning Prayer in the Church of England and for a corresponding office in the Roman Catholic Church is **matins.**

—, —. The manner of performing divine service prescribed by a particular Church or religious body is a **ritual.**

—, —. A rule for the conduct of the service in a liturgy or prayer-book is a **rubric.**

—, —. One of a series of sentences or short verses said or sung by priest and people alternately during the Church service is a **versicle.**

service-book. A book containing the daily office to be recited by Roman Catholic priests is a **breviary.**

—. A name given to a service-book used in the Greek Church is **Euchologion** or **Euchology.**

—. A name for a service-book used by priests in the Middle Ages is **manual.**

shaving. The shaving of the crown or of the whole head on admission to the priesthood or to a monastic order is **tonsure.**

sin. In the Roman Catholic Church sins that do and do not endanger the salvation of the soul are respectively **mortal** and **venial.**

soul. The doctrine that every human soul is created at birth is **creationism.**

—. The doctrine that the human soul is implanted in man by a part of God's nature passing into man at birth is **infusionism.**

—. The doctrine that the human soul as well as the body is propagated is **traducianism.**

staff. The pastoral staff of a bishop is the **crosier** or **crozier.**

Sunday. A word meaning belonging to the Lord's Day or Sunday is **dominical.**

—. The name used to denote one who practises an unusually strict observance of Sunday or regards it as the Sabbath is **Sabbatarian.**

symbol, religious. Undue regard for the symbols of religion is **externalism.**

—, —. The name of a religious symbol in the form of a fish, much used by the early Christians, is **ichthys.**

Syria. A member of a partly independent Catholic Church in Syria is a **Maronite.**

tabernacle. The name for the inmost part of the tabernacle and of the temple of Israel is **Holy of Holies.**

—. A name for the large basin used for priestly ablutions which stood in the courtyard of the Jewish tabernacle is **laver.**

—. The name for the golden covering of the ark in the tabernacle and temple of Israel is **mercy-seat.**

— A term used in Jewish theology for the visible glory of Jehovah above the mercy-seat in the tabernacle and in the temple is **Shekinah.**

table. A small table or shelf on which the bread and wine are kept until consecrated is a **credence-table.**

tablet. Names for a tablet carved or painted with the Crucifixion or other sacred emblems, formerly used for the kiss of peace at Mass, are **pax** and **osculatory.**

teach. The power and function of the Christian Church to teach its members is its **magisterium.**

teacher, Jewish. The name given to a Jewish teacher of the law, especially one empowered by ordination to deal with legal and ritual questions, is **rabbi.**

temple, Jewish. *See under* **tabernacle,** *above.*

theology. The branch of theology which deals with the doctrine of the nature of man is **anthropology.**

—. The branch of theology which deals with the Person of Christ is **Christology.**

—. The branch of theology which deals with Christian doctrines generally is **dogmatics** or **systematic theology.**

—. The branch of theology which deals with the doctrine of the Church is **ecclesiology.**

—. The branch of theology which deals with death, judgment, Heaven and Hell, and with the future life generally, is **eschatology.**

—. The branch of theology which explains obscure texts, more particularly texts of the Scriptures, is **exegetics.**

—. The branch of theology which deals with the duties of the Christian ministry is **pastoral theology.**

—. The branch of theology which deals with the doctrine of the Holy Spirit is **pneumatology.**

—. The branch of theology which deals with the doctrine of redemption is **soteriology.**

Trinity. A name for the doctrine that the Holy Trinity is but three different manifestations of one Divine Person is **modalism.**

—. The heresy that each Person of the Holy Trinity is a distinct God is **tritheism.**

—. The name given to one of a religious body which rejects the doctrine of the Holy Trinity is **Unitarian.**

union, Church. The name given to a movement for the union of the Churches is **Reunionism.**

vespers. A name for the Roman Catholic vespers for the dead is **placebo.**

vessel. A vessel for consecrated bread or sacred wafers is a **ciborium.**

—. A small vessel used to contain wine or water for the Eucharist is a **cruet.**

—. A vessel used to contain relics or other sacred objects is a **custodial.**

vessel. The name given in mediaeval legend to a vessel, said to have been used by Christ at the Last Supper, for which search was made by King Arthur and his knights is **Holy Grail.**

— The name given to a place in a church where the sacred vessels are kept is **sacristy.**

vestment. A long white robe worn by priests is an **alb.**

—. A vestment of white linen worn about the neck and shoulders at Mass is an **amice.**

—. The robes worn by a Church of England clergyman at divine service are **canonicals.**

—. The outer garment worn by bishops and priests while celebrating Mass is the **chasuble.**

—. A long, sleeveless, black or scarlet silk robe worn by bishops on ceremonial occasions is a **chimer.**

—. A long cloak, generally richly embroidered, worn by clergy on solemn occasions is a **cope.**

—. A name for a short surplice is **cotta.**

—. An elaborate robe worn by bishops and deacons at High Mass is a **dalmatic.**

—. A vestment worn by the Jewish high priest is an **ephod.**

—. A silk apron placed on the lap of an officiating bishop, originally for the purpose of protecting his other vestments, is a **gremial.**

—. The name of a scarf worn by priests and subdeacons in certain rites of the Roman Catholic Church is **humeral veil.**

—. A name for a vestment consisting of a narrow strip of cloth worn over the left arm of an officiating priest is **maniple.**

—. The name for the tall curved cap of a bishop, deeply cleft from side to side at the top, is **mitre.**

—. The brooch or clasp by which an ecclesiastical cope is fastened at the top is a **morse.**

—. The name of a short vestment open in front, resembling a cape with a small hood, worn by the Pope and other Roman Catholic dignitaries is **mozetta.**

vestment. A name for a band of gold or other rich embroidery on a church vestment is **orphrey.**

—. The name for a narrow band of white cloth embroidered with crosses, worn by the Pope and, on special occasions, by archbishops and bishops, is **pallium.**

—. The name given to a kind of surplice worn under the chimer by Anglican and other bishops is **rochet.**

—. A name for a vestment consisting of a long, narrow strip of linen or silk worn round the back of the neck and hanging over the front of both shoulders is **stole.**

—. A name for a loose, white linen vestment with full sleeves, worn at divine service by clergy and choristers, usually over a cassock, is **surplice.**

—. The name for a close-fitting tunic worn by Roman Catholic bishops under the dalmatic and by sub-deacons is **tunicle.**

—. A name for an official having charge of church vestments, and also for a sub-treasurer of a cathedral, etc., is **vesturer.**

—. The name for the cross embroidered on the back of a chasuble is **Ycross.**

vow. An offering made in accordance with a vow is **ex-voto.**

—. A name for a Hebrew who vowed to abstain from wine, cutting his hair, touching corpses, etc., is **Nazarite.**

—. A name for a person on probation before taking the final vows and becoming a member of a religious community is **novice.**

water, holy. Names for a basin containing holy water near the entrance of a Roman Catholic church are **stoup** and **aspersorium.**

wine, sacramental. The name of a deep red Spanish wine used especially for sacramental purposes is **tent.**

writer, early. A name given to the Christian writers prior to the seventh century is **Fathers of the Church.**

year, Jewish. *See under* **calendar,** *above.*

COSTUME

apron. A name for a small apron or part of a woman's dress resembling an apron is **tablier.**

armour. A name for a loose garment worn over armour is **surcoat.**

—. *See also section* Army, Navy, etc.

bag. The name of a canvas bag carried on the back by soldiers and travellers is **haversack.**

ball. A name given to an ornamental ball or tuft on clothes or uniforms is **pompon.**

bead. Small shell beads used as ornaments and as money by North American Indians are **wampum.**

blouse. A loose blouse formerly worn by women and children, in imitation of the shirts worn by Giuseppe Garibaldi and his followers, is a **garibaldi.**

bodice. A name for an ornamental covering formerly worn by women under the lacing of the bodice is **stomacher.**

bodice and skirt. A name given to a dress of Polish origin, consisting of a combined bodice and short skirt, is **polonaise.**

border, pointed. A name for one of a series of large points forming an ornamental border to lace or linen is **vandyke.**

bow. The name given to a bow of black silk ribbon worn at the nape of their tunics by the Royal Welch Fusiliers is **flash.**

breeches. A kind of loose breeches or hose worn by men in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries were **galligaskins.**

—. A name for breeches, often slashed, reaching from the waist to the middle of the thighs, worn in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries, is **trunk-hose.**

cap, brimless. A name for the brimless felt cap worn by the ancient Greeks and Romans is **pileus.**

—, —. A name for a high, round, brimless cap, usually of red felt, worn by Mohammedans is **fez.**

—, Canadian. The name of a kind of knitted cap worn in Canada is **tuque.**

—, college. Names given to the square-topped cap worn at universities and some schools are **mortar-board** and **trencher.**

—, Irish. The cone-shaped cap originally worn by countrymen in Ireland is a **barrad.**

—, knitted. A knitted woollen cap covering the whole of the head and neck, except the face, is a **Balaklava helmet.**

—, Mohammedan. Another name for the fez worn by Mohammedans is **tarboosh.**

—, Polish. The name of a flat, square-crowned, Polish cap from which the characteristic lancer helmet was derived is **shapka.**

—. *See also* **hat** *and* **head-dress,** *below.*

cape. The name of the short cape with a small hood, worn by the Pope and other Roman Catholic dignitaries is **mozetta.**

—. The name of a large cape or full cloak, usually with a hood, worn by men and women in the first half of the nineteenth century, is **talma.**

—, judge's. The fur cape which forms part of the official dress of a judge is a **tippet.**

cloak. A name for a loose cloak and half mask worn at masquerades, etc., as a disguise is **domino.**

—. The name of a large cape or full cloak, usually with a hood, worn by men and women in the first half of the nineteenth century is **talma.**

cloak, Afghan. The name of an Afghan cloak, generally made of sheepskin with the fleece left on, is **posteen.**

—, African. The cloak or rug of skin with the fur left on, worn by many African tribes, is a **kaross.**

—, Greek. A name for a square woollen cloak in the Greek fashion, sometimes worn by ancient Romans instead of the toga, is **pallium.**

—, Roman. A name for an ancient Roman military cloak, usually of purple, worn by generals and their chief officers is **paludament.**

—, —. The short military cloak worn by ancient Roman soldiers was the **sagum.**

—, —. The name given to a loose cloak which formed the principal outer garment of an ancient Roman citizen is **toga.**

—, South American. The name of a South American cloak, consisting of a woollen blanket with a slit for the head, is **poncho.**

coat. The name of a close-fitting upper garment worn by men from the fourteenth to the seventeenth centuries is **doublet.**

—. The name of a kind of defensive coat of leather in common use from the fourteenth to the seventeenth centuries is **jack.**

—. The name of a short upper garment of leather or wool worn by men in the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries is **jerkin.**

—, herald's. The short, loose coat, with short, wide sleeves, embroidered with the royal arms and worn by heralds, is a **tabard.**

—, part. The name given to the turned-back part of a coat front is **revers** or **lapel.**

collar, pleated. The name of a stiff, pleated collar of muslin or linen, encircling the neck, worn by both sexes in the sixteenth century, is **ruff.**

—, pointed. Names for a broad deep collar of lace or linen with pointed or scalloped edges are **vandyke** and **vandyke collar.**

cravat. The name of a kind of lace cravat worn loose, much in vogue towards the end of the seventeenth century, is **steenkirk.**

dress, distinctive. A name for any distinctive dress such that as of a monastic order, or the costume worn by a woman for horse-riding, is **habit.**

doublet. The name given to a kind of quilted doublet of leather or cloth worn in the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries is **pourpoint.**

frill. The name of a frilled or tucked front worn by women and formerly by men is **jabot.**

girdle. A kind of girdle hanging from one shoulder across the body and over the opposite hip, and used either as an ornament or to carry a dagger, sword, bugle, etc., is a **baldric.**

—. A name for the girdle of a cassock is **surcingle.**

—. A girdle worn by Roman women as a symbol of maidenhood was a **zone.**

gown. A long, loose gown of coarse cloth, worn in the Middle Ages, principally by Jews and pilgrims, was a **gaberdine** or **gabardine.**

—. A name for a loose gown worn by women in Stuart and Georgian times is **mantua.**

hand-bag. An American name for a traveller's hand-bag is **grip-sack.**

handkerchief, coloured. A name for a brightly-coloured, spotted, or figured handkerchief is **bandana.**

hat, dervish. A name for the tall, conical hat of a Mohammedan dervish is **taj.**

—, Grecian. The name for a hat with a broad brim and low crown worn by heralds and travellers in ancient Greece is **petasus.**

—, Spanish American. The name of a felt hat with a very wide brim worn especially in Spanish America is **sombrero.**

—, wide-brimmed. A name for a woman's wide-brimmed hat, of the kind seen in certain portraits by Reynolds and Gainsborough, is **picture-hat.**

—. *See also* **cap,** *above, and* **head-dress,** *below.*

head-band. A narrow band worn as an ornament round the head is a **fillet.**

—, classical. A name for the head-band of an ancient Greek or Roman is **taenia.**

head-dress. A name for a woman's out-door brimless head-dress with strings, and also for a Scotsman's cap, is **bonnet.**

—. A name for a head covering of linen, etc., worn by some nuns, and formerly by other women, arranged about the cheeks, chin, and neck is **wimple.**

—, Arab. The long strip of woollen or cotton cloth worn over the head and body as an outer garment by the desert Arabs is a **haik.**

—, Oriental. The name of an Oriental man's head-dress, consisting of a long piece of material wound round a cap, is **turban.**

—, Spanish. A lace covering used as a head-dress by women in Spain and Spanish America is a **mantilla.**

—, tropical. A name given to a kind of covering for the head and neck to protect the wearer from sunstroke is **havelock.**

—. *See also* **cap** *and* **hat,** *above.*

kilt. The Scottish name for the kilt worn by Highlanders to-day is **filibeg, fillibeg,** or **philibeg.**

leg. A name for a strip of cloth wound spirally round the leg from ankle to knee is **puttee.**

linen, strips. The two white linen strips worn at the neck with certain legal, academic, and clerical garments are **bands.**

lip ornament. A kind of lip ornament worn by some savage races is a **labret.**

loin-cloth. A name for a Hindu loin-cloth worn by the lower classes is **dhoti.**

mask. A name for a half mask and loose cloak worn at masquerades, etc., as a disguise, is **domino.**

monastic dress A name for the distinctive dress worn by members of a monastic order is **habit.**

—. The name of a broad woollen band having a hole for the head, worn as an upper garment in certain monastic orders, is **scapular.**

opera-hat. A name for a collapsible top-hat worn by men in the evening is **gibus.**

overcoat. A name for a kind of long, close-fitting overcoat is **Newmarket.**

—. A name for a kind of short fur-trimmed overcoat formerly worn by men is **polonaise.**

—. A name for a short, tailless overcoat worn in the eighteenth and early nineteenth centuries is **spencer.**

petticoat. The name of a kind of hooped petticoat worn by women in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries is **farthingale.**

plume. A name for a plume of feathers worn on the head, and for a jewelled ornament of the same shape, is **aigrette.**

pocket. The name given to a small pocket in the waistband of men's breeches to hold a watch, common in the eighteenth century, is **fob.**

pouch. The ornamental pouch worn in Scottish Highland costume in front of the kilt is the **sporran.**

riding-habit. A kind of riding-habit worn by women in the eighteenth century was the **joseph.**

robe, ceremonial. The name of a ceremonial robe worn by a king at his coronation or on other great occasions is **dalmatic.**

—, Japanese. The name of a kind of loose robe worn by women in Japan is **kimono.**

—, Oriental. The name of a tunic with wide, loose sleeves, and a girdle at the waist, worn in the East is **caftan.**

—, Turkish. A long robe with narrow sleeves worn by the Turks is a **dolman.**

sash, Japanese. The name for a broad sash worn round the waist by Japanese women and children is **obi.**

shawl. A lace shawl used as a head-covering for women in Spain and Spanish America is a **mantilla.**

shoe, dress. The name given to a kind of low-heeled light shoe, usually of patent leather, worn by men for dancing and with evening dress is **pump.**

—, light. A name for a light shoe without heels, made of untanned hide, is **veldt-shoe** or **veldt-schoen.**

—, Red Indian. The name of a shoe worn by North-American Indians, usually made from a single piece of deerskin, is **moccasin** or **mocassin.**

—, wooden. A shoe made from a single piece of wood, worn in France, Belgium, and Holland, is a **sabot.**

—, —. A clog or overshoe, with a wooden sole mounted on an iron ring, worn as a protection from wet and mud, is a **patten.**

skirt. A very wide skirt, on a frame of whalebone and steel hoops, worn by English women from about 1850 to 1880, was a **crinoline.**

—, Malay. The name of a garment of cotton or silk, draped round the waist to form a skirt, and worn by both men and women in the Malay Archipelego, is **sarong.**

—, Polish. A name given to a Polish costume consisting of a combined bodice and short skirt is **polonaise.**

toga. The name of a white toga with a purple border worn in ancient Rome is **praetexta.**

trousers, Mohammedan. A name given to loose trousers worn by Mohammedan men and women in India is **pyjamas.**

tuft. A name given to an ornamental ball or tuft worn on the clothes of women and children, or on a soldier's or sailor's cap, is **pompon.**

tunic. A kind of tunic worn by the ancient Romans was the **indusium.**

uniform. *See under section* Army, Navy, Air Force, and Nautical.

veil, Mohammedan. A double veil hiding the face from the eyes downwards, worn in public by Mohammedan women, is a **yashmak.**

vest. A name for a light gauze vest worn by athletes is **zephyr.**

vestment, church. *See under section* Christianity and Judaism.

waist-band. A name for a waist-band of cloth or muslin worn in the East is **cummerbund.**

wig. A wig with back and side flaps of curls, as worn by judges and King's Counsel, is a **full-bottomed wig.**

—. A name for a tie-wig, less cumbrous than the full-bottomed wig, worn from the time of Charles II until late in the eighteenth century, is **peruke.**

—. The name given to a small wig formerly worn to cover a bald part of the head is **scratch-wig.**

DRAMA

(See also MUSIC)

acting. A name given to the gestures, facial expressions, etc., by which an actor interprets the character he is representing, is **business.**

actor. The actors in a play constitute the **cast.**

—. A name given to an actor who performs the part of villain is **heavy man.**

—. A name for an actor who is cast for the rôle of a youthful hero is **juvenile lead.**

—. A name given to an actor or actress who takes the chief part in a play is **lead.**

—. A name for an actor in dumb-show is **mime.**

—. A name given to a prominent actor is **star.**

—. A name for an actor not belonging to the regular company, who appears on the stage, but has no words to speak, is **super.**

—. The name for an actor able to take any number of small parts as required is **utility-man.**

—. A name given to a minor actor who is required to have a good appearance and deportment, but no dramatic skill, is **walking gentleman.**

—, appearance. A name for the wig, paint, clothes, etc., by means of which an actor alters his appearance to suit his part is **make-up.**

—, Greek. The actor next in importance to the protagonist in ancient Greek drama was the **deuteragonist.**

—, —. The chief actor in the cast of an ancient Greek play was the **protagonist.**

—, signal. The closing phrase of an actor's speech, which serves as a signal for another actor to speak, or enter, is the **cue.**

—, summons. The name given to the assistant whose duty is to warn actors of their approaching appearance on the stage, and see they are in their proper places in time, is **call-boy.**

actress. A name sometimes given to a woman comic-singer or to an actress in comedy is **prima buffa.**

—. A name given to a prominent actress is **star.**

—. A name given to a minor actress who is required to have a good appearance and deportment, but no dramatic skill, is **walking lady.**

applause. A name for a number of persons hired to applaud at a theatre is **claque.**

—. A name given to applause after the curtain has fallen, generally answered by the reappearance of the actor or actors applauded, is **curtain-call.**

audience. The part of a theatre, etc., occupied by the audience is the **auditorium.**

ballet. *See section* Music.

box, theatre. A name for a box next the stage in a theatre is **front box.**

character. A name for a list of the characters taking part in a play and for the characters themselves, is **dramatis personae.**

chorus, Greek. The name for the citizen responsible for the assembling, hiring, training, and costuming of the chorus in the ancient Greek theatre is **choragus.**

—, —. A name for the leader of the chorus in the ancient Greek theatre, who sometimes took an actor's part, is **coryphaeus.**

—, —. A name for the song of the chorus in a Greek play, accompanied by music and figured dance, is **ode.**

—, —. A name for the semicircular space in front of the stage in an ancient Greek theatre, where the chorus danced and sang, is **orchestra.**

comedy, ancient. A name for a simple comic play of ancient Greece and Rome, chiefly or wholly in dumb-show, is **mime.**

—, Greek. A name for a choral part in an ancient Greek comedy, expressing the poet's opinions and addressed to the audience, is **parabasis.**

—, Italian. A grotesque character in Italian comedy, the prototype of Punch, is **Punchinello.**

dancing. *See section* Music.

dialogue. A name for the dialogue between the choric parts of a Greek tragedy is **episode.**

doll. Names for jointed dolls suspended and moved by strings, used in miniature dramatic performances—the words being spoken from behind the stage—are **fantoccini, marionettes,** and **puppets.**

drama. The name for the branch of drama representing ordinary persons in everyday life, and employing familiar language, is **comedy.**

—. The employment of supernatural or divine beings in drama or epic poetry is **theotechny.**

—. The name for the branch of drama employing elevated themes and language in prose or verse, with a pathetic or terrible ending, is **tragedy.**

—, Greek. The traditional founder of Greek drama was **Thespis.**

—. *See also under* **comedy,** *above*; *and* **play** *and* **tragedy,** *below.*

dumb-show. A name for a dramatic performance or episode in dumb-show is **mime.**

entertainment. A name for a light song-and-dance entertainment given while refreshments are served, and also for the place where such entertainment is given, is **cabaret.**

—. A form of entertainment in dancing and dumb-show, sometimes with poetical dialogues and always accompanied by music, popular at the Elizabethan court, was the **masque.**

—. The name given to a form of light theatrical entertainment consisting of songs, dances, and sketches, purporting to review current foibles and topics, and now usually linked together by a simple plot, is **revue.**

—. A light entertainment consisting of a number of different and distinct items by a succession of performers is a **variety entertainment** or **variety show.**

film-play. *See under* **kinema,** *below.*

gesture. A name for a kind of acting in which gesture and mimicry take the place of speech, is **miming.**

grease-paint. The name for a small stick of grease-paint used for making wrinkles, eyebrows, etc., is **liner.**

harlequinade. *See under* **pantomime,** *below.*

instructions. The instructions on a player's part which refer to his movements, actions, etc., are **stage-directions.**

interval. The name of a short performance given between two acts of a play is **entr'acte.**

introduction. A name given to an introduction, usually in verse, prefixed to a play is **prologue.**

—. The first or introductory part of a classical drama was the **protasis.**

kinema. A name for an enlarged view of some detail in a kinematograph film, especially of an actor's facial expression, is **close-up.**

—. Names for a kinematographic play are **film-play, motion picture,** and **screen-play.**

—. Names for types of kinematographic play in which the voices of the actors and other sounds are reproduced by synchronized phonographic apparatus are **movietone** and **phonofilm.**

—. The instrument, descended from the magic lantern, by means of which an enlarged image of a kinematograph film is thrown on to a screen is the **projector.**

—. The written text of a kinematographic play is a **scenario.**

—. The name given to the flat and vertical surface upon which the image of a kinematograph film is projected is **screen.**

light. The name for a theatrical lighting apparatus having a larger opening than a spotlight, and no lens, used for throwing a more diffuse light over a wider area, is **flood-light.**

—. The name for a row of lights with reflectors along the front of a stage is **footlights.**

—. The name of a lighting apparatus, used in theatres, in which a brilliant light is produced by an incandescent cylinder of hard lime in a jet of burning gas is **limelight.**

—. The name for a theatrical lighting apparatus with a lens throwing a concentrated beam of light is **spot-light.**

limelight. The name of the flame generally used in theatrical limelight apparatus is **oxyhydrogen flame.**

maid-servant. A name for the character of maid-servant in a comedy or opera is **soubrette.**

melodrama, sensational. An epithet sometimes used of sensational melodrama is **transpontine.**

monologue. Another name for a monologue is **soliloquy.**

moving picture Names for a moving-picture play in which by the projection on to a screen of a number of instantaneous photographs an illusion of continuous motion is produced are **film-play, motion picture,** and **screen-play.**

novel, dramatized. A person who alters the form of a novel, etc., to make it suitable for dramatic representation is the **adapter.**

ode, choral. The first part of an ode recited by the chorus in ancient Greek drama was the **strophe.**

opera. A name given to a scene or part of an opera is **scena.**

—. *See also section* Music.

pantomime. The name of a buffoon in pantomime, constantly victimized by harlequin, is **clown.**

—. The name of a female character in pantomime, pantaloon's daughter, is **columbine.**

—. The name of a fantastic character in pantomime, who plays tricks on the clown, is **harlequin.**

— The name of a lean, foolish old man who acts as a butt in the modern harlequinade is **pantaloon.**

—. The name for an elaborate scene in former pantomimes in which the chief characters appeared to change into those of the harlequinade that followed is **transformation scene.**

part. A name for a part or character played by an actor is **rôle.**

—, instructions. The instructions on a player's part which refer to his movements, actions, etc., are **stage-directions.**

pause. A pause or break in an entertainment is an **interlude.**

play, director. A name for the person who directs the staging of a play, interprets the playwright's intentions, coaches the actors in their parts, and secures unity of effect, is **producer.**

—, Greek. The name given to a group of four ancient Greek plays made up of three tragedies followed by a comic play is **tetralogy.**

—, Japanese. A name for a type of short, serious Japanese play, incorporating quotations from poetry and the Buddhist scriptures is **No** or **No play.**

—, kind. A name for a mock-serious, or humorous play caricaturing serious events or parodying a serious play is **burlesque.**

—, —. A name for a short, humorous play is **comedietta.**

—, —. A name for a play of a light, amusing character, usually with events taken from everyday life and having a happy ending, is **comedy.**

—, —. A name for a short opening play performed before the principal play is **curtain-raiser.**

—, —. A name for a type of play intended only to excite laughter by the presentation of easily recognizable character-types in ridiculous situations is **farce.**

—, —. A name given to a short dramatic sketch is **impromptu.**

—, —. A romantic type of play that is full of sensational and startling situations is a **melodrama.**

—, —. A play in verse or prose dealing in an elevated manner with a pathetic or terrible subject is a **tragedy.**

—, —. A name given to a play in which tragic and comic elements are combined is **tragicomedy.**

—, music. The music performed during the course of a play is **incidental music.**

—, musical. The name given to a light and somewhat brief play, in which the dialogue is interspersed with songs and dances, is **vaudeville.**

—, —. *See also* **opera,** *above*; *and under section* Music.

—, part. A continuous part of a play, during which there is no change of place or time, is a **scene.**

—, performance. The name for the stage-manager's assistant who holds the book of the play during performances, gives cues to actors who forget their lines, and signals for off-stage noises, lights, etc., is **prompter**

play, performance. The name for the official who superintends all details on the stage during a performance, and is in charge of the production in the producer's absence, is **stage-manager.**

—, production. The name given to the visual elements in a stage production—the scenery costumes, and lighting—is **decor.**

—, religious. Names for a mediaeval religious play performed in church, etc., by craftsmen or members of one of the trade guilds are **miracle-play** and **mystery-play.**

—, setting. A name for the setting of a play is **mise en scène.**

—, short. The name given to a short play performed between the scenes of a longer one is **intermezzo.**

—, stock. A stock of plays that a company is prepared to give—especially a company performing a succession of different plays and not relying upon a single piece to have a long run—is a **repertoire.**

—. *See also under* **kinema,** *above.*

plot. The part of a play or novel towards the end, when the complications of the plot are unravelled, is the **dénouément.**

prologue. A name given to a kind of prologue formerly spoken by an actor before the presentation of a play is **induction.**

Punch. The name of a grotesque character in Italian comedy who was the prototype of Punch is **Punchinello.**

puppet. *See* **doll,** *above.*

puppet-show, shadow. A miniature shadow pantomime in which the figures of puppets are cast on a wall or screen is a **galanty show.**

representation. A theatrical representation is a **presentment.**

rope, performer. A name for a performer on the slack or tight rope is **funambulist.**

scene. An outline of the scenes and main points of a play, kinematograph film, or opera is a **scenario.**

scenery. A general name given to a suspended piece of scenery serving as a background is **back-cloth.**

—. A name for a flat piece of suspended scenery, serving as a ceiling, hinged down the centre for folding up after use, is **book ceiling.**

—. Names for a strip of suspended scenery running from side to side and masking the top of the stage are **border** and **fly.**

—. A name for a scenic curtain that encloses the whole stage, forming a semicircle, and curving over at the top towards the proscenium arch, is **cyclorama.**

—. A name given to the scenery, lighting, and costumes, regarded as a single visual element in a stage production, is **decor.**

—. A name for a wide, painted curtain, hanging from above the stage to the floor, forming a background, especially for outdoor scenes, is **drop.**

—. A name for the space above and behind the proscenium arch of a theatre, from which scenery, etc., is lowered, is **flies.**

—. Scenery that is hauled up above the stage when not in use is **flying scenery.**

—. The name for the large metal grating or rack fixed above a stage, on which blocks and pulleys are fastened for hauling up scenery, and from which lights are directed, etc., is **gridiron** or **grid.**

—. A name for a low strip of scenery representing the horizon, serving to conceal the meeting-place of a sky background and the floor, and often hiding a row of lights, is **ground roll.**

—. The name given to scenery and fittings of a solid kind arranged round the stage of a theatre is **set scene.**

—. A name for scenery projecting partly from the sides of a stage is **wings.**

speech. A name for a part of an actor's speech audible to everyone, but supposed not to be heard by the other actors, is **aside.**

—. A name for a short speech or poem addressed to the audience by one of the actors at the end of a play is **epilogue.**

—. A name for a preliminary speech addressed to the audience by one of the actors at the beginning of a play is **prologue.**

—. A name for a speech spoken by one of the characters in a play when no others are present, or spoken regardless of their presence, is **soliloquy.**

stage. A name for a stage constructed in front of the main stage and projecting into the auditorium is **apron stage.**

—. An actor moving towards the audience moves **down stage.**

— The name for a curtain lowered at the front of a stage to hide changes of scene from the audience is **drop-curtain.**

—. A name for everything movable upon the stage, except the scenery, platforms, and the clothes worn by the cast, is **properties.**

—. The name given to the fittings and decorations of a stage is **scene.**

—. An actor moving away from the audience moves **up stage.**

—, direction. A word used in stage directions to note that a character is on the stage alone is **solus.**

—, Elizabethan. A name for the canopy, supported by pillars, covering the middle part of an Elizabethan stage is **shade** or **shadow.**

—, front. The part of the stage in a modern theatre which lies between the curtain and the orchestra is the **proscenium.**

—, sides. A name for the sides of a stage, and for scenery projecting partly from them, is **wings.**

—, under. A name for the floor immediately below the stage of a theatre is **mezzanine floor.**

theatre. The part of a theatre, etc., occupied by the audience is the **auditorium.**

—. A name for a large room or gallery in a theatre, opera-house, etc., for the use of the audience during the intervals is **foyer.**

—. The room in a theatre in which the players wait for their turn to go on the stage is the **green-room.**

— The name for a door into a theatre used by the performers and officials concerned with the production is **stage-door.**

—, Greek. A name for a roofed theatre in which trial performances or musical contests were held in ancient Greece is **odeum.**

—, —. The name for the semicircular space in front of the stage in an ancient Greek theatre where the chorus danced and sang is **orchestra.**

—, —. The name for the wall, often containing three doorways, forming a background for the actors in the ancient Greek and Roman theatre is **proscenium.**

—, Roman. The name for the space in front of the stage in an ancient Roman theatre, where the senators and other prominent people sat, is **orchestra.**

—, —. A name for an awning stretched over the seats in an ancient Roman theatre is **velarium.**

tragedy. Names for the thick-soled boot giving extra height to an ancient Athenian tragic actor are **buskin** and **cothurnus.**

—. The name of the ancient Greek muse of tragedy is **Melpomene.**

—. A name for a mournful ode or song for a single voice in a Greek tragedy is **monody.**

—. The name given in ancient Athens to a set of three related tragedies, each complete in itself, to be performed in succession, is **trilogy.**

voice, production. The production of the voice in such a way that the sounds appear to come from a source other than the person speaking is **ventriloquism** or **ventriloquy.**

EDUCATION

absence, leave. A name used for a permission to be absent from college or school for a short time is **exeat.**

addition. The symbol denoting addition (+) is the **plus, plus sign,** or **positive sign.**

algebra. A name given generally to any method of calculating or investigating in which algebraic symbols are used, and especially to advanced methods for dealing with variable quantities, is **calculus.**

—. A combination of symbols having an algebraic meaning and expressing a quantity is an **expression.**

—. The branch of algebra dealing with quadratic equations is **quadratics.**

—. Any of the parts of an algebraical expression that are joined to the rest by a plus or minus sign is a **term.**

—. *See also* **equation** *and* **expression,** *below.*

alphabet. A name given to a sheet containing the letters of the alphabet, mounted on wood and protected by a leaf of horn, formerly used as a child's primer is **horn-book.**

angle. An angle that is less than a right angle is **acute.**

—. An angle contained within each of two curves that intersect each other is **cissoid.**

—. The difference between an angle and ninety degrees is the **complement of the angle.**

—. A name for one of a system of angles or lines by means of which the position of a point is determined in relation to certain fixed angles or lines, is **co-ordinate.**

—. The secant of the complement of an angle or arc is the **cosecant.**

—. The sine of the complement of an angle or arc is the **cosine.**

—. A straight line or plane joining two angles or edges of a figure which are not next to one another is a **diagonal.**

—. Acute and obtuse angles are **oblique.**

—. An angle that is greater than a right angle is **obtuse.**

—. A name for the angle between straight lines drawn from two different points of observation to an object is **parallactic angle.**

—. A kind of graduated instrument for measuring or laying down angles is a **protractor.**

—. An angle of ninety degrees is a **right angle.**

—. The exterior angle, opposite to a cissoid angle, formed by two curves that intersect each other, is **sistroid.**

—. An angle of one hundred and eighty degrees is a **straight angle.**

—. A name for an angle that, added to another angle, makes the sum of two right angles is **supplement** or **supplementary angle.**

—. The extreme point of an angle is its **vertex.**

—. A name for each pair of opposite angles made by two intersecting lines is **vertical angles.**

arc. A straight line joining the two extremities of an arc or connecting two points in a curve is a **chord.**

—. The difference between an arc and ninety degrees is the **complement of the arc.**

—. The secant of the complement of an arc or angle is the **cosecant.**

—. The sine of the complement of an arc or angle is the **cosine.**

—. A name for an instrument used for describing an arc of a circle when the centre is not known and a compass cannot be used is **cyclograph.**

—. A straight line drawn from one end of the arc of a circle perpendicular to the radius at the other end is a **sine.**

area. An area or quantity contained in certain limits is a **content.**

—. A name for an instrument for measuring the area of any plane surface is **planimeter.**

arrangement. A name for the arrangement of a number of things with reference to their order of sequence, and for each of the arrangements so made, is **permutation.**

arts, mediaeval. The name of a mediaeval course comprising arithmetic, geometry, music, and astronomy, the first section of the course for Master of Arts degree, is **quadrivium.**

—, —. The name given to the three primary liberal arts, grammar, rhetoric, and logic, which were mastered by mediaeval scholars before the quadrivium, is **trivium.**

base. A quantity or symbol taken as a base in any system of numbering is a **radix**

blind. The name for a system of printing letters as groups of raised dots, now generally used as a means of enabling the blind to read, is **braille.**

—. A name for an apparatus by which the blind are able to read ordinary type by means of sounds is **optophone.**

Blue-coat School. *See under* **Christ's Hospital,** *below.*

body, solid. *See under* **figure,** *below.*

book, reading. A name for an elementary reading book for children is **primer.**

—, school. A name for a school reading-book containing a selection of passages from classical authors for translation, etc., is **delectus.**

brace. A name for a brace uniting several algebraic terms to show that they are to be treated as a whole in relation to what follows or precedes them is **vinculum.**

calculation. *See under* **calculus,** *below.*

calculus. That branch of mathematical analysis in which the infinitesimal changes of quantities are investigated when the relations between the quantities are known is the **differential calculus.**

—. A name for the form of infinitesimal calculus invented by Sir Isaac Newton is **fluxions.**

—. That branch of mathematical analysis, usually denoted by the word calculus, comprising the differential and integral calculus, is the **infinitesimal calculus.**

—. That branch of mathematical analysis in which the relations among quantities are deduced from the relations among the infinitesimal variations of the quantities is the **integral calculus.**

Cambridge University. A name for a student or graduate of Cambridge University is **Cantab.**

certificate. The name given at universities to a certificate stating that a candidate has satisfied the examiners is **testamur.**

Charterhouse School. A name for a past or present pupil of Charterhouse is **Carthusian.**

Christ's Hospital. A name given to Christ's Hospital, from the long blue girdled coat worn by the boys, is **Blue-coat School.**

—. A name for a boy in the highest class at Christ's Hospital is **Grecian.**

circle. A portion of the circumference of a circle or other curve is an **arc.**

—. The line bounding a circle is the **circumference.**

—. Two or more circles having a common centre are **concentric.**

—. The name for a straight line passing through the centre of a circle and bounded at each end by its circumference is **diameter.**

—. A circle that rolls upon the circumference of another circle, producing either an epicycloid or a hypocycloid, is an **epicycle.**

—. Circles having the same centre are **homocentric.**

—. The eighth part of the circumference or area of a circle is an **octant.**

—. The Greek letter (π) used to represent the number of times the diameter of a circle is contained in the circumference, representing 3·14159, or roughly 3⅐, is **pi.**

circle. An arc of the circumference of a circle equal in length to a radius of the circle is a **radian.**

—. A straight line joining the centre to any point in the circumference of a circle or sphere is a **radius.**

—. A name for a portion of a circle or ellipse enclosed by two radii, and for the part of the circumference between them, is **sector.**

—. A straight line drawn from one end of the arc of a circle perpendicular to the radius at the other end is a **sine.**

—. A straight line meeting a circle without intersecting it even if produced is a **tangent.**

—, area. The name for the area enclosed between two circles which have the same centre is **zone.**

—, measuring. The art or process of measuring circles is **cyclometry.**

classics. The name given in university circles to Greek and Latin classics and related studies is the **humanities.**

college. The name for a university official superintending discipline, for a head of a faculty in some universities, and for the master of the college at Christ Church, Oxford, is **dean.**

—. A name given to a head, fellow, or tutor of a college is **don.**

—. A name for the body of instructors or for the governing body of a college, and for a department of learning at a university, is **faculty.**

—. A title borne by the head of some universities and colleges is **principal.**

—. The name for the heads of Exeter College and Lincoln College, Oxford, and of certain universities, etc., is **rector.**

—. A name for a college at which young men are trained for the Roman Catholic priesthood is **seminary.**

—. The title of the head of certain Oxford colleges is **warden.**

—, entertainment. A name used in some English colleges for an entertainment or a celebration of some event in the college history is **gaudy.**

—, provisions. At Oxford University bills for food and drink obtained from college kitchens and butteries are **battels.**

—, refreshments. At Oxford and Cambridge colleges the name for a room where students obtain light refreshments is **buttery.**

—, servant. A name given to a college servant in the Universities of Cambridge and Durham is **gyp.**

—, —. A name given to a college servant at Oxford University is **scout.**

—, —. A name for a college servant at Dublin University is **skip.**

—, steward. A name for a steward at some colleges or at one of the Inns of Court is **manciple.**

—. *See also under* **university,** *below.*

commemoration. A name given to the annual commemoration of the founders and benefactors of Oxford colleges is **encaenia.**

compasses. A name for a pair of compasses, the points of which slide on a rod, used for drawing very large circles, is **beam-compasses.**

—. A name for a pair of compasses having the legs formed of pliable strips joined at the top and not jointed, a screw being used to separate them, is **bow-compasses.**

—. A name for a pair of compasses whose legs can be expanded for the purpose of drawing a spiral is **volute compasses.**

cone. Any curve formed by the intersection of a right circular cone by a plane is a **conic section.**

—. The surface of a cone is its **conic surface.**

—. The part that is left of a cone, pyramid, or other solid after cutting off the upper part by a plane parallel to the base is a **frustrum.**

—. A cone the point of which is not perpendicularly over the centre of the base is an **oblique cone.**

cone. A name for a section of a cone formed by a cut made parallel to its slanting edge, is **parabola.**

—. A cone the point of which lies in a perpendicular line from the centre of the base is a **right cone.**

—. A cone or cylinder having the axis inclined to the base is **scalene.**

—. A cone whose vertex is cut off by a plane, usually parallel to the base, is a **truncated cone.**

—. The hoof-shaped portion of a cone or cylinder included between a part of the base and a plane intersecting the base obliquely is an **ungula.**

—. That part of a cone, cylinder, or sphere lying between two parallel planes perpendicular to the axis is a **zone.**

counting. A frame with beads sliding on wires used by young children when learning to count is an **abacus.**

cube. The problem of finding a cube whose volume is twice that of a given cube is the **Delian problem.**

—. A solid formed from a cube by joining four equilateral triangles above each face is a **four-faced cube** or **tetrahexahedron.**

—. A ratio expressed by the cubes of quantities is **triplicate.**

cube root. A ratio expressed by the cube roots of the quantities is **subtriplicate.**

curvature. A surface having opposite curvature in different directions, concave in one direction and convex in another, is **anticlastic.**

—. A curved surface having the same kind of curvature—convex or concave—in all directions is **synclastic.**

curve. A portion of the outline of a curve, especially a circle, is an **arc.**

—. The name for a heart-shaped curve, generated by a point in the circumference of a circle which rolls round another circle of the same size, is **cardioid.**

—. A straight line connecting two points in a curve, or joining the extremities of an arc, is a **chord.**

—. A flattened curve resembling the cross section of an oyster shell is a **conchoid.**

—. A curve, such as an ellipse, parabola, or hyperbola, formed by the intersection of a plane by a right circular cone is a **conic.**

—. A curve described by a point in the plane of a circle that rolls along a straight line is a **cycloid.**

—. A plane curve of such a nature that the sum of the distances of any point in it from two given points called the foci will be a constant is an **ellipse.**

—. A curve traced by a point on the circumference of a circle that rolls on the inner side of the circumference of another circle is an **epicycloid.**

—. A curve from which another curve, the involute, is described by the end of a thread gradually unwound from it is an **evolute.**

—. A curve made by cutting a cone with a plane, making a greater angle with the base than the side of the cone makes, is a **hyperbola.**

—. A curve traced by a point on the circumference of a circle that rolls on the outer side of the circumference of another circle is a **hypocycloid.**

—. A curve described by a point within the circumference of a circle that rolls along a straight line is an **inflected cycloid** or **prolate cycloid.**

—. A curve traced out by a point in a straight line which rolls upon another curve is an **involute.**

—. A curve or surface regarded as traced by a point or line moving under specified conditions is a **locus.**

—. A name for the contact of a given curve with another having the same curvature, and for the fact of two curves touching at three or more points, is **osculation.**

curve. A name for a closed convex curve of greater curvature at the ends than at the middle part is **oval.**

—. A curve formed by the intersection of a cone with a plane parallel to its side is a **parabola.**

—. A curve, every point of which is in the same plane, as opposed to a tortuous curve, is a **plane curve.**

—. A curve employed in advanced mathematics in the process of squaring other curves is a **quadratrix.**

—. To find the length of a curve is to **rectify.**

—. A curve traced by a point in one curve rolling on another curve is a **roulette.**

—. A straight line which meets a curve but does not intersect it, even if produced, is a **tangent.**

—. The name given to a curve, such that a solid body rolling down by gravity will always reach the same point in the same time, from whatever point it may start, is **tautochrone.**

—. A curve of which no finite portion lies wholly in the same place is a **tortuous curve,** or **twisted curve.**

—. A curve or surface cutting a system of curves or surfaces at a given angle is a **trajectory.**

—. A curve traced by a point in the plane of a curve or circle rolling upon another curve or circle is a **trochoid.**

cylinder. A cylinder having its axis at right angles to the base is a **right cylinder.**

—. A cylinder or cone having the axis inclined to the base is **scalene.**

—. The hoof-shaped portion of a cylinder or cone included between a part of the base and a plane intersecting the base obliquely is an **ungula.**

—. That part of a cylinder, cone, or sphere, lying between two parallel planes perpendicular to the axis is a **zone.**

decimal. Decimal fractions in which a set of figures is repeated continually are **circulating decimals.**

—. The name for the decimal part of a logarithm, as opposed to the characteristic, or integral part, is **mantissa.**

—. A name used of both circulating and repeating decimals is **recurring decimals.**

—. Decimal fractions in which one figure is repeated continually are **repeating decimals.**

—. The part of a decimal fraction which keeps on recurring is the **repetend.**

—. A decimal fraction which is capable of being expressed in a finite number of terms, and so is non-recurring, is **terminate.**

degree. The title conferred by a university degree preliminary to that of doctor or master is **bachelor.**

—. The title conferred by the highest university degree in faculties other than arts is **doctor.**

—. A person who has obtained a university degree is a **graduate.**

—. A university degree conferred as an honour, without the recipient passing an examination or fulfilling the usual requirements, is an **honorary degree.**

—. The title conferred by the highest university degree in arts and some other faculties is **master.**

—. To pass a preliminary examination entitling one to be enrolled or admitted as a student at a university or college and qualify for a degree is to **matriculate.**

—. A university student who is reading for or who obtains a degree without honours is a **passman.**

—. A term used collectively of those students at Cambridge University who take their degree without honours is the **poll.**

—. The name given to an essay written by a candidate for a degree is **thesis.**

—. *See also under* **examination** *and* **graduate,** *below.*

denominator. A name for both the denominator and numerator of a fraction is **term.**

diagram. A diagram showing the relationship between certain facts or quantities by means of dots and lines is a **graph.**

distance. In geometry the term for an immeasurable distance is **infinity.**

division. A number or quantity that has been, or is to be, divided into equal parts is a **dividend.**

—. A name for a number or quantity by which another number is divided is **divisor.**

—. The result obtained by dividing one quantity by another is the **quotient.**

education. The education of pupils of both sexes in the same classes or in the same institution is **co-education.**

—. The form of education in which instruction is given in the methods of modern industry, etc., for students taking up a business career is **commercial education.**

—. The form of education given in graduate and post-graduate courses at universities and colleges is **higher education.**

—. The form of education given in kindergartens, elementary, and preparatory schools, in which the first elements of knowledge are imparted, is **primary education.**

—. The form of education that fits the student for a particular career is **professional education.**

—. The form of education given in central schools, grammar schools, or their equivalents, and public schools is **secondary education.**

—, aid. A Scottish name for a grant paid to a student for a fixed period from the funds of a school or college is **bursary.**

—, —. An allowance given for a stated period to a student from the funds of a college or school is an **exhibition.**

—, —. A general name for a sum of money paid to, or used on behalf of, a successful entrant in a competitive examination, enabling him to pursue his studies at a college or other educational institution, is **scholarship.**

—, system. A name for an individualistic system of education by which each pupil follows a prearranged course of study, referring to the teacher only for guidance, etc., is **Dalton plan.**

—, —. Names for the educational system according to which little children are given object lessons, instructive diversions, and games at a kindergarten, are **Froebelism** and **kindergartenism.**

—, —. Names for the system of education based on the theories of the German philosopher, J. F. Herbart, now chiefly important in connexion with the development of moral character, are **Herbartianism** and **Herbartian system.**

—, —. Names for a system of education formerly adopted in primary schools, by which the more advanced pupils, called monitors, taught the less advanced pupils, are **Lancasterian system, monitorial system,** and **mutual system.**

—, —. The name for a system of child education developed by Dr. Maria Montessori, in which spontaneity on the part of the child is obtained by the absence of rigid rules and artificial restraints is **Montessori method.**

—, —. The educational system of the Swiss reformer, Pestalozzi, employing object-teaching and manual training to develop the perceptive powers, is the **Pestalozzian system.**

—, —. A name for a system of manual training originating in Finland as part of a child's general education, and regarded as a continuation of kindergartenism, is **sloid** or **sloyd.**

—, —. The method of education by means of questions and answers, enabling the pupil to develop his ideas and recognize their full meaning, is the **Socratic method.**

—. *See also under* **teaching,** *below.*

ellipse. Each of two points having a definite relation to an ellipse or other curve is a **focus.**

ellipse. A portion of a circle or ellipse enclosed by two radii and the part of the circumference between them is a **sector.**

equation. An equation in which the unknown quantity is present in its fourth power is **biquadratic** or **quartic.**

—. The clearing of fractions from an equation is **conversion.**

—. An equation in which the highest power of the unknown quantity to be found is a cube is a **cubic equation.**

—. An equation with a fixed number of solutions is a **determinate equation.**

—. The removal of a quantity from a system of equations is **elimination.**

—. Names for an equation that is true for all values of the quantities it contains are **identical equation** and **identity.**

—. An equation composed partly of an indicated root of an unknown quantity is an **irrational equation** or **radical equation.**

—. An equation in which the unknown quantity appears only in the first power is **linear** or **simple.**

—. An equation in which the unknown quantity is present in its second power or square is **quadratic.**

—. The clearing of all root signs from an equation is **rationalization.**

—. The moving of a term to the other side of an equation, its sign being changed also, is **transposition.**

Eton College. A name for a boy at Eton College who is not a foundation scholar, but boards in the town, is **Oppidan.**

Euclid. A name given jocularly to the fifth proposition of the first book of Euclid, because of the difficulty of its demonstration to beginners, is **pons asinorum** or **asses' bridge.**

examination. A student who has taken first class honours in two university examinations is a **double-first.**

—. A familiar name given to the final examination for the Cambridge B.A. is **Great-go.**

—. A name for the final honours examination for the Oxford B.A. when taken in ancient philosophy or history is **Greats.**

—. A name for an alternative examination for a university degree, conferring special distinction in the subject taken, is **honours.**

—. The name of an intermediate examination taken between matriculation and the final examination for an arts degree is **inter-arts examination.**

—. A familiar name given to the preliminary examination at Cambridge University which all students must pass, unless otherwise qualified, before taking a degree, is **Little-go.**

—. A name for a preliminary examination entitling a person to be enrolled or admitted as a student at a university or college, and to qualify for a degree, is **matriculation.**

—. The intermediate examination for the Oxford B.A. is **moderations** or **mods.**

—. The official name for Little-go, the first examination for the B.A. degree at Cambridge, is **Previous Examination.**

—. The name given at Oxford University to the first of the three examinations that must be passed to obtain the B.A. degree is **responsions.**

—. A name for the examination for an honours degree at Oxford University is **schools.**

—. A familiar name given at Oxford University to responsions, the first of the examinations for the B.A. degree, is **Smalls.**

— A name for a certificate that a person has passed an examination at certain universities is **testamur.**

—. A name for the honours examination at Cambridge University, in any one of certain subjects, especially mathematics, is **Tripos.**

—. Examinations in which questions are put and answered orally are **viva voce examinations.**

—. *See also under* **degree,** *above.*

expression. An algebraic expression consisting of two terms is **binomial.**

—. A number or letter, especially the former, placed before an algebraic expression to indicate that the expression is to be multiplied by the number so used is a **coefficient.**

—. An algebraic expression that contains one or more variable or indeterminate quantities is a **function.**

—. An algebraic expression consisting of a single term is **monomial.**

—. An algebraic expression consisting of many terms is **polynomial.**

—. An algebraic expression consisting of four terms is **quadrinomial.**

—. A name used in mathematics for an algebraic expression in which all the terms contain two or more variables in equal degree is **quantic.**

—. An algebraic expression consisting of three terms is **trinomial.**

fellow. A name given to a fellow or tutor of a college is **don.**

—. A name for a fellow or graduate receiving an income at Christ Church, Oxford, is **Senior Scholar.**

figure. A geometrical figure having all its angles equal is **equiangular.**

—. A geometrical figure having all its sides equal is **equilateral.**

—. A name for a geometrical figure that has a perimeter equal to that of another figure is **isoperimeter.**

—. A figure resembling a rhomboid in shape but having its corners rounded is **ovorhomboidal.**

—. A figure represented by a drawing on a flat surface, having length and breadth only, as opposed to a solid figure, is a **plane figure.**

—. A geometrical figure, usually plane and rectilinear, with more than four sides and angles, is a **polygon.**

—. A figure in geometry which remains unchanged by projection is said to have **projective property.**

—. A figure having sides and angles equal is **regular.**

—. A part divided off from a figure by a line or plane is a **segment.**

—. A geometrical figure that has length, breadth, and thickness is a **solid.**

—, eight-sided. A plane figure with eight angles and eight sides is an **octagon.**

—, —. A solid figure contained by eight plane faces is an **octahedron.**

—, eleven-sided. A geometrical figure having eleven sides and eleven angles is a **hendecagon.**

—, —. A solid figure bounded by eleven plane faces is a **hendecahedron.**

—, fifteen-sided. A figure with fifteen sides and fifteen angles is a **quindecagon.**

—, five-sided. A plane figure, usually rectilinear, having five sides and five angles is a **pentagon.**

—, —. A solid figure having five faces is a **pentahedron.**

—, four-sided. The name of a four-sided figure formed by two unequal isosceles triangles with equal bases, set base to base, is **deltoid.**

—, —. A name for a four-sided figure, the opposite sides of which are equal and parallel, is **parallelogram.**

—, —. A four-sided figure, especially a square or a rectangle, is a **quadrangle.**

—, —. A figure having four sides and four angles is **quadrilateral.**

—, —. A plane four-sided figure with all its angles right angles is a **rectangle.**

—, —. The name for a four-sided figure in the form of a parallelogram with equal sides and oblique angles is **rhomb** or **rhombus.**

—, —. The name given to a four-sided plane figure having only its opposite sides and opposite angles equal is **rhomboid.**

—, —. Any flat figure having four angles and four sides is a **tetragon.**

figure, four-sided. A solid figure bounded by four flat triangular faces is a **tetrahedron.**

—, —. A plane figure bounded by four straight lines, no two of which are parallel to each other, is a **trapezium.**

—, —. A plane four-sided figure with two only of its sides parallel is a **trapezoid.**

—, **moving.** A moving figure, line, or point that is conceived as tracing out or generating a figure is a **generant** or **generatrix.**

—, parallelogram. A name for the figure remaining when a parallelogram is taken from the corner of a larger parallelogram of the same form is **gnomon.**

—, plane. A plane figure produced from the section of a cone by a plane intersecting it obliquely is an **ellipse.**

—, seven-sided. A figure, especially a plane figure, having seven sides and seven angles is a **heptagon.**

—, —. A solid figure bounded by seven plane faces is a **heptahedron.**

—, six-sided. A solid figure bounded by six equal squares, having all its angles right angles, is a **cube.**

—, —. A plane figure having six angles and six sides is a **hexagon** or **sexangle.**

—, —. A solid figure having six sides is a **hexahedron.**

—, —. A name for a solid figure bounded by six parallelograms, the opposite pairs of which are equal and parallel, is **parallelepiped** or **parallelepipedon.**

—, solid. A solid figure generated by a symmetrical closed curve rotating about a line parallel to its axis of symmetry is an **annular solid.**

—, —. A solid figure generated by the revolution of a conic section about an axis is a **conoid.**

—, —. The process of finding the cubical contents of a solid is **cubage.**

—, —. A solid figure generated by the revolution of a parallelogram about one of its sides is a **cylinder.**

—, —. A solid figure, every plane section of which is an ellipse or a circle, is an **ellipsoid.**

—, —. The part that is left of a solid figure, usually a cone or pyramid, after cutting off the upper part by a plane parallel to the base, is a **frustrum.**

—, —. A solid figure bounded by many plane faces is a **polyhedron.**

—, —. The name given to a solid figure with parallel, equal, and similar plane ends, and with its sides similar parallelograms, is **prism.**

—, —. A solid body standing on a flat base with three, four, or more sides, and tapering to a point at the top, is a **pyramid.**

—, —. A solid figure whose axis is perpendicular to its base is a **rectangular solid.**

—, —. A solid figure bounded by six equal rhombic planes is a **rhombohedron.**

—, —. A solid figure generated by the revolution of a curve around an axis is a **solid of revolution.**

—, —. A solid body generated by a semicircle revolving about its diameter is a **sphere.**

—, —. A solid figure whose vertex, or one of whose edges or corners, is cut off by a plane is **truncated.**

—, —. The point where three or more faces of a solid figure meet is the **vertex.**

—, spherical. A solid figure, not perfectly spherical, generated by an ellipse revolving about either of its axes is a **spheroid.**

—, ten-sided. A figure, usually a plane figure, having ten sides and ten angles is a **decagon.**

—, —. A solid figure having ten sides is a **decahedron.**

—, three-sided. A figure bounded by three lines and containing three angles is a **triangle.**

—, —. A figure consisting of three lines in the same plane, not all intersecting in the same point, is a **trigram.**

figure, twelve-sided. A plane figure having twelve sides is a **dodecagon.**

—, —. A solid figure bounded by twelve plane faces is a **dodecahedron.**

—, twenty-sided. A solid figure having twenty plane faces is an **icosahedron.**

—, unsymmetrical. A figure with sides of different lengths, or one whose parts are not symmetrical, is **irregular.**

—. *See also under* **circle, cone,** *and* **cube,** *above*; *and* **sphere, surface,** *and* **triangle,** *below.*

formula. A mathematical formula affirming the identity of two expressions is an **equation.**

fraction. A fraction in which either the numerator or the denominator is a fraction is a **complex fraction.**

—. A fraction of a fraction is a **compound fraction.**

—. A fraction whose denominator is ten or a power of ten, the numerator only being written, is a **decimal.**

—. The name for the number below the line in a vulgar fraction, showing the number of equal parts into which the whole is divided, is **denominator.**

—. A fraction in which the numerator is greater than the denominator is an **improper fraction.**

—. A name for the number above the line in a vulgar fraction, showing how many parts of the whole are to be taken, is **numerator.**

—. A true fraction, one which is less than unity, and so has the numerator less than the denominator, is a **proper fraction.**

—. A fraction in which both the numerator and the denominator are whole numbers is a **simple fraction.**

—. A name for both the numerator and the denominator of a fraction is **term.**

—. A fraction that becomes zero for a particular value of the variable which enters it is a **vanishing fraction.**

—. A fraction expressed by a numerator above and a denominator below is a **vulgar fraction.**

—. *See also under* **decimal,** *above.*

frame, counting. A frame with beads of different colours sliding on wires, used for counting, is an **abacus.**

geometry. The thirteen books of "The Elements of Geometry," compiled by the Greek mathematician Euclid, are known collectively as **Euclid.**

—. A self-evident statement regarding the possibility of a geometrical construction is a **postulate.**

—. A statement in geometry setting forth a truth to be proved or an operation to be performed is a **proposition.**

—, branch. That branch of geometry which deals with curves produced by cutting a cone across is **conic sections.**

—, —. That branch of geometry which is based upon the axioms and postulates of Euclid is **Euclidean geometry.**

—, —. That branch of geometry which deals with figures that lie entirely in surfaces determined by any three points not in a straight line is **plane geometry.**

—, —. That branch of geometry in which all three dimensions of space (length, breadth, and thickness) are taken as a basis of reasoning is **solid geometry.**

—, —. That branch of geometry that deals with figures drawn upon the surface of a sphere is **spherical geometry.**

—. *See also under* **proposition,** *below.*

graduate. A graduate receiving an income from the revenue of a college for a period of years to aid him in making further studies is a **fellow.**

—. A former name for a graduate who obtains second or third class honours in the Mathematical Tripos at Cambridge University is **optime.**

graduate. An advanced course of studies after taking a degree is **postgraduate.**

—. A name formerly given to a graduate of the University of Cambridge who had taken first class honours in the Mathematical Tripos is **wrangler.**

—. *See also under* **degree** *and* **examination,** *above.*

instruction. A name for the art or science of instruction or education is **didactics.**

lecturer. The name given to certain lecturers at some universities and in the Inns of Court is **reader.**

likelihood. In mathematics, the likelihood of the occurrence of any one of a number of possible events is a **probability.**

line. A mathematical line which continually approaches a curve but does not meet it within a finite distance is an **asymptote.**

—. The name for one of the principal lines through a plane or solid figure, especially the longest or shortest line, or a line to which the figure is symmetrically related, and also for a fixed line to which positions are referred or along which distances are measured, is **axis.**

—. A straight line joining the ends of an arc or two points in a curve is a **chord.**

—. A name for one of a system of lines or angles by means of which the position of a point is determined in relation to certain fixed lines or angles is **co-ordinate**

—. The straight line passing through the centre of a circle or other plane or solid figure, and bounded at either end by the circumference or surface, is the **diameter.**

—. In mathematics, to mark off or include a certain space between two lines or points is to **intercept.**

—. A line or surface formed by a point or line moving in accordance with a fixed rule or condition is a **locus.**

—. A line perpendicular to a curve or to a tangent at the point of contact is a **normal.**

—. A name for a line that helps to determine the position of a point, drawn from a point in the abscissa, is **ordinate.**

—. The bounding line of a plane surface, or the sum of all its lines, is the **perimeter.**

—. A straight line intersecting another line, curve, or figure is a **secant.**

—. A bounding line of a plane figure is a **side.**

—. A straight line drawn from one end of the arc of a circle perpendicular to the radius at the other end is a **sine.**

—. A straight line which meets a curve but does not intersect it, even if produced, is a **tangent.**

—. A line cutting a series of lines is a **transversal** or **traverse.**

—. A line conceived as having a fixed length and direction in space, but not a fixed position, is a **vector.**

— algebraic. A straight line or brace drawn over several algebraic terms to show that they are to be treated as a whole in relation to what follows or precedes them is a **vinculum.**

—, moving. A moving line, point, or figure that is conceived as generating or tracing out a figure is a **generant** or **generatrix.**

logarithm. The name for the integral part of a logarithm is **characteristic.**

—. The name for the decimal part of a logarithm is **mantissa.**

—. A name for a number used as a multiplier to convert Napierian logarithms into ordinary logarithms is **modulus.**

Manchester Grammar School. A name for a past or present student of Manchester Grammar School is **Mancunian.**

measure. Quantities which have no common measure are **incommensurable.**

measurement. In mathematics, a property determinable by measurement of some kind, and capable of being expressed by symbols, is a **quantity.**

mixture. A name for the method of finding the relation between the prices and proportions of ingredients in a mixture and the price of the mixture is **alligation.**

monitor. Names for an educational system formerly used in primary schools, by which the less advanced pupils were taught by monitors, or advanced pupils, are **Lancasterian system, monitorial system,** and **mutual system.**

multiplication. A name for a number or letter, especially the former, placed before an algebraic expression to indicate that the expression is to be multiplied by the number so used is **coefficient.**

—. Each of two or more products obtained when different quantities are multiplied by the same multiplier is an **equimultiple.**

—. A name for a constant number or coefficient used as a multiplier for converting Napierian into ordinary logarithms is **modulus.**

—. A number produced by the multiplication of two or more numbers is a **multiple.**

—. A number or term to be multiplied by another is a **multiplicand.**

—. In mathematics, the product of a number multiplied by itself is a **power.**

—. A result obtained by multiplication is a **product.**

museum. A name for a person having charge of a museum is **curator.**

—. A name for the making of catalogues of objects in a museum is **museography.**

—. A name for the science of managing and arranging objects in museums is **museology.**

number. Numbers, including decimal fractions, from which all figures after a certain place, chosen arbitrarily, have been discarded are **abbreviated numbers.**

—. A number which is contained in another an exact number of times is an **aliquot** or **aliquot part.**

—. Simple numbers, such as one, two, three, which merely enumerate, are **cardinal numbers.**

—. A number whose powers end with the same figure or figures as the number itself is a **circular number.**

—. A number or letter, especially the former, placed before an algebraic expression to indicate that it is to be multiplied by the number so used is a **coefficient.**

—. A divisor, or dividing number, which is contained in two or more numbers without remainder is their **common divisor.**

—. A number into which two or more numbers can be divided without remainder is, in its relation to them, a **common multiple.**

—. A number expressing more than one denomination or unit, as shillings and pence, is **compound.**

—. A dividing number, or divisor, such as the number below the line in a fraction, is a **denominator.**

—. A number or quantity that has been or is to be divided into equal parts is a **dividend.**

—. A name for a number or quantity by which another number, etc., is divided, and for a number contained in another an integral number of times, is **divisor.**

—. The highest number that is contained in two or more numbers without remainder is their **greatest common divisor.**

—. A whole number or an undivided quantity is an **integer.**

—. The turning of a number into its reciprocal is **inversion.**

—. The raising of a number or quantity to any power is **involution.**

—. A definite number that cannot be expressed by a definite number of digits, such as a root not capable of exact extraction, is **irrational.**

—. The smallest number which contains each of two or more different numbers without remainder is their **least common multiple.**

number. The number or quantity from which another is to be subtracted is the **minuend.**

—. A name for an integer that leaves the same remainder when used as the divisor of different numbers, and for a number or quantity that measures a force, effect, or function, is **modulus.**

—. A number or term to be multiplied by another is a **multiplicand.**

—. Numbers used to show the order of anything in a series, such as first, second, third, are **ordinal numbers.**

—. A number divisible only by itself and unity is a **prime number**

—. A succession of numbers or quantities each of which is derived from the one preceding it by a constant law is a **progression** or **series.**

—. A number indicating how often a number or quantity is contained in another is a **quotient.**

—. The result obtained by dividing unity by a number is, in relation to that number, a **reciprocal.**

—. A number which, multiplied by itself one or more times, produces a certain other number is a **root.**

—. A number or quantity that has to be subtracted from another is a **subtrahend.**

—. Numbers capable of being expressed in a finite number of terms are **terminate.**

—. *See also under* **quantity,** *below.*

numerator. A name for both the numerator and denominator of a fraction is **term.**

Oxford University. A name for a student or graduate of Oxford University is **Oxonian.**

parallelogram. A name for the figure remaining when a parallelogram is taken from the corner of a larger parallelogram of the same form is **gnomon.**

—. An oblique parallelogram with equal sides is a **rhomb** or **rhombus.**

perimeter. Geometrical figures having equal perimeters are **isoperimetrical.**

plane. The cutting of a solid figure by a plane or the figure produced thus, is a **section.**

—. *See also under* **figure,** *above.*

point. A point of a curve at which the generating point stops and reverses its motion is a **cusp.**

—. Each of two points having a definite relation to an ellipse or other curve is a **focus.**

—. A moving point, line, or figure that is conceived as tracing out or generating a figure is a **generant** or **generatrix.**

—. To mark off or include a certain space between two lines or points is to **intercept.**

—. A name for a line that helps to determine the position of a point, drawn from a point in the abscissa, is **ordinate.**

—. A system of lines or planes running through a point is a **pencil.**

—. Lines meeting at a point but not intersecting are **tangent.**

—. Each angular point of a triangle, polygon, or other geometrical figure is a **vertex.**

power. Names for a symbol indicating a power, written above and to the right of the algebraic quantity to be raised to that power, are **exponent** and **index.**

—. The raising of a quantity or number to any power is **involution.**

—. The power to which a number must be raised so as to produce a given number is its **logarithm.**

product. The continued product of a series of numbers differing by unity, or of functions of qualities so differing, is a **factorial.**

—. *See also under* **multiplication,** *above.*

professor. A name for the office held by a professor at a university is **chair.**

—. A professor who has retired from his chair but retains his association with his university is a **professor emeritus.**

professor. In the universities of Oxford and Cambridge a professor appointed to one of the various chairs founded by Henry VIII is a **regius professor.**

progression. A progression in which a series of numbers increases or decreases by a constant difference is an **arithmetical progression.**

—. A name for a progression consisting of a series of numbers increasing or decreasing in the same ratio, or else by a constant multiplier (either greater or less than 1), is **geometrical progression.**

—. A progression of fractions consisting of unity divided successively by a series of numbers in arithmetical progression is a **harmonic progression.**

property. In mathematics, a property determinable by measurement of some kind and capable of being expressed by symbols is a **quantity.**

proportion. The expression of identity or equality between arithmetical ratios or differences is **arithmetical proportion.**

—. A proportion in which the ratio of the first term to the second is the same as that of the third to the fourth, but differs from the ratio of the second term to the third, is a **discrete proportion.**

—. The first and fourth numbers or quantities of a proportion are the **extremes.**

—. The expression of identity or equality between geometrical ratios or quotients is **geometrical proportion.**

—. The second and third numbers or quantities of a proportion are the **means.**

—. A name for the arithmetical rule for finding any one term of a proportion, the others being given, is **rule of three.**

—. Each of the four numbers or quantities forming a proportion is a **term.**

—. *See also under* **ratio,** *below.*

proposition. A proposition following so obviously from another proposition that it needs little or no demonstration is a **corollary.**

—. The name given in mathematics to a preliminary or subsidiary proposition employed in demonstrating another is **lemma.**

—. A geometrical proposition requiring something to be done is a **problem.**

—. A geometrical exercise that supplements a proposition is a **rider.**

—. A proposition or truth to be proved by successive steps in reasoning is a **theorem.**

pupil. *See under* **student,** *below.*

pyramid. The part that is left of a pyramid, cone, or other solid after cutting off the upper part by a plane parallel to the base is a **frustrum.**

—. A pyramid whose vertex is cut off by a plane, usually parallel to the base, is a **truncated pyramid.**

quantity. Names for a quantity of fixed value used in a mathematical calculation are **constant** and **invariable.**

—. A quantity or condition supposed to be given or known in order to solve some problem, etc., is a **datum.**

—. To find a numerical expression for an unknown quantity is to **evaluate.**

—. A number or symbol placed to the right of and above an algebraic quantity to denote the power to which the quantity is to be raised is an **exponent** or **index.**

—. A combination of symbols having an algebraic meaning and expressing a quantity is an **expression.**

—. Each of two or more quantities that, when multiplied together, make up a given quantity is a **factor.**

—. A quantity conceived as being less than any assignable quantity is an **infinitesimal.**

—. The name for an immeasurable quantity denoted by the symbol ∞ is **infinity.**

quantity. A quantity, especially a root, not capable of being expressed by a whole number or a common fraction is **irrational.**

—. A quantity that is less than zero, or that is to be subtracted, is **negative.**

—. A quantity that is greater than zero, or that is to be added, is **positive.**

—. A quantity or symbol taken as a base in any system of numbering or calculation is a **radix.**

—. A quantity which can be expressed as the ratio of two whole numbers or entire quantities is **rational.**

—. Each of the quantities forming a ratio or fraction is a **term.**

—. A quantity that can have a continuous change of value, or is supposed to change in value while others remain constant, is a **variable.**

—, variable. A variable quantity whose value depends upon another variable quantity is a **dependent variable.**

—, —. A name for an infinitesimal difference between two values of a variable quantity and for an infinitesimal increment of such a quantity is **differential.**

—, —. The name for the variable quantity in fluxions is **fluent.**

—, —. A quantity whose value depends upon a variable or variables, and so varies or remains constant in relation to them, is a **function.**

—, —. The amount by which a variable grows at any one of its stages of increase is its **increment.**

—, —. A variable quantity upon which other related variables are regarded as being dependent is an **independent variable.**

—. *See also under* **number,** *above.*

ratio. The ratio of the first term of a proportion to the third, or that of the second to the fourth, is an **alternate ratio.**

—. The first term or quantity of a ratio is the **antecedent.**

—. A ratio made up of other ratios is **compound.**

—. The second term or quantity of a ratio is the **consequent.**

—. A ratio of ten to one is **decuple**

—. The ratio of two quantities themselves as opposed to an inverse ratio, is a **direct ratio.**

—. A ratio in which the antecedent is double the consequent is **duple.**

—. The ratio of squares is **duplicate.**

—. The ratio of the reciprocals of two quantities is an **inverse ratio.**

—. The ratio of the sum of the antecedent and the consequent to their difference is a **mixed ratio.**

—. A ratio of a quantity to an integral factor of the quantity is a **multiple ratio.**

—. The ratio of nine to one is **nonuple.**

—. The ratio of eight to one is **octuple.**

—. Ratios that are equal are **in proportion.**

—. The ratio of four to one is **quadruple.**

—. The ratio of five to one is **quintuple.**

—. A quantity which can be expressed as the ratio of two whole numbers or entire quantities is **rational.**

—. The ratio of seven to one is **septuple.**

—. The ratio of three to two is **sesquialteral.**

—. A ratio in which the first quantity is the cube and the second quantity the square of a number is **sesquiplicate.**

—. The ratio of five to four is **sesquiquartal.**

—. The ratio of six to five is **sesquiquintal.**

—. The ratio of eight to seven is **sesquiseptimal.**

—. The ratio of seven to six is **sesquisextal.**

—. The ratio of four to three is **sesquitertial.**

—. The ratio of six to one is **sextuple.**

—. A ratio of first powers is **simple.**

—. The ratio of one to ten is **subdecuple.**

—. The ratio of one to two is **subdouble.**

—. A ratio in which the antecedent is half the consequent is **subduple.**

—. The ratio of the square roots of two quantities is **subduplicate.**

ratio. A ratio of an integral factor of a quantity to the quantity itself is a **submultiple ratio.**

—. The ratio of one to eight is **suboctuple.**

—. The ratio of one to four is **subquadruple.**

—. The ratio of one to five is **subquintuple.**

—. The ratio of one to seven is **subseptuple.**

—. The ratio of two to three is **subsesquialterate.**

—. The ratio of three to four is **subsesquitertial.**

—. The ratio of one to six is **subsextuple.**

—. The ratio of one to three is **subtriple.**

—. A ratio expressed by the cube roots of the quantities is **subtriplicate.**

—. Each of the quantities forming a ratio is a **term.**

—. The ratio of three to one is **triple.**

—. The ratio of cubes is **triplicate.**

—. *See also under* **proportion,** *above.*

relation. The relation between two similar numbers or magnitudes measured by the number of times one is contained in the other is a **ratio.**

root. A term denoting the extraction of roots from a power is **evolution.**

—. In mathematics, a quantity expressed as, or forming the root of, another is a **radical.**

rule. The expression of a general rule in algebraic symbols is a **formula.**

—. Names for the arithmetical rule for finding any one term of a proportion, the others being given, are **proportion** and **rule of three.**

—. The name given to a rule or law in mathematics is **theorem.**

—, graduated. A graduated rule or scale in which smaller divisions are made by lines running obliquely across larger divisions, thus enabling very small distances to be measured, is a **diagonal scale.**

—, —. The name given to a mathematical rule made of two hinged arms marked with tangents, sines, etc., is **sector.**

St. Paul's School. A name for a past or present pupil of St. Paul's School, Hammersmith, is **Pauline.**

scholar. *See under* **student,** *below, and names of schools.*

scholarship. The name for a certain scholarship at Magdalen College, Oxford, formerly having half the yearly allowance of a fellowship is **demyship.**

school. A school giving primary education and governed by a board under the Education Act of 1870 was a **board school.**

—. A school to which boys and girls in elementary schools are transferred at about the age of eleven for a specialized course of study is a **central school.**

—. A school in which instruction is given to both boys and girls, either according to the mixed system or to the dual, is **co-educational.**

—. A school providing part-time education for young persons between the ages of fourteen and eighteen years, after leaving an elementary school, is a **continuation school.**

—. A school in which there are separate departments for boys and girls under one principal, separate entrances, classrooms, and playgrounds being provided, is a **dual school.**

—. A school supported by an endowment is a **foundation school.**

—. A name for an English school founded during the Renaissance for the teaching of Latin, where secondary education is given to-day, is **grammar school.**

—. A school in which neglected or vagrant children are lodged and taught a trade as well as given ordinary school lessons is an **industrial school.**

—. The name given to a school for very young children, in which object lessons, instructive diversions, and games are important features, is **kindergarten.**

—. A school in which for most subjects boys and girls are taught together by the same teacher is a **mixed school**

school. The name given formerly to an elementary school supported by voluntary contributions of members of the Church of England was **national school.**

—. A name given to a school where instruction is given in the practical application of the arts and sciences is **polytechnic.**

—. A school in which children receive elementary education is a **primary school.**

—. A name given to certain large schools for boys, in which the monitorial or prefectorial system is used, and in which the teaching of the classics is given prominence, is **public school.**

—. A name for a school in which juvenile offenders are lodged and given an industrial training is **reformatory school.**

—. A school for boys and girls who have received elementary instruction but have not yet proceeded to a university or occupation is a **secondary school.**

—, French. The name of a French classical secondary school is **lycée.**

—, German. A name for an upper school in Germany, corresponding to English grammar and public schools, and preparing students for the universities, is **gymnasium.**

servant, college. A name given to a college servant in the Universities of Cambridge and Durham is **gyp.**

—, —. A name for a college servant in Oxford University is **scout.**

—, —. A name given to a college servant in Dublin University is **skip.**

society, learned. A name for a member of certain learned societies is **fellow.**

solid. *See under* **figure,** *above.*

space. The branch of mathematics dealing with space whether linear, solid, or superficial is **geometry.**

sphere. A slightly flattened sphere generated by the revolution of an ellipse about its shorter or minor axis is an **oblate spheroid.**

—. A slightly lengthened sphere generated by the revolution of an ellipse about its greater or major axis is a **prolate spheroid.**

—. A straight line joining the centre to any point in the circumference of a sphere or circle is a **radius.**

—. The name given to the solid figure generated when a plane sector is revolved round one of its radii, as on a pivot, is **sector of a sphere.**

—. The geometry and trigonometry of the sphere is **spherics.**

—. That part of a sphere, cylinder, or cone lying between two parallel planes perpendicular to the axis is a **zone.**

square. A number that is the square of a square is **biquadratic** or **quartic.**

—. A ratio expressed by the squares of quantities is a **duplicate ratio.**

—. The squaring of a curved figure or the finding of a square of equal area is **quadrature.**

square root. A ratio expressed by the square roots of quantities is a **subduplicate ratio.**

statement. In mathematics, a formal statement of a theorem or problem is a **proposition.**

steward. A name for a steward at some colleges or at one of the Inns of Court is **manciple.**

student. A name for a woman student who has graduated from a university or college is **alumna,** and for a man student, **alumnus.**

—. A student belonging to a hall at a university, as distinguished from a member of a college, is an **aularian.**

—. An old name for a resident student in a college at Oxford University is **batteler.**

—. A name for a first-year student or freshman at some Scottish universities is **bejan.**

—. A name for a woman student at Aberdeen University is **bejanella.**

student. A name given to certain university students holding a bursary or grant for maintenance is **bursar.**

—. A name given to certain students holding a scholarship at Magdalen College, Oxford, is **demy.**

—. A university student who is placed in the first class in two final honours examinations is a **double-first.**

—. A name for a student who lives away from his college or school, and for a non-resident member of a teaching staff, is **extern**

—. The university name for an undergraduate student in his first term is **freshman.**

—. A name given to a member of a former class of privileged undergraduates or students at Oxford and Cambridge was **gentleman-commoner.**

—. A general name for a student or graduate of a university is **gownsman.**

—. A name for a senior student in his fourth year at the Universities of Aberdeen and St. Andrews is **magistrand.**

—. A name for a young student who is appointed to assist in keeping discipline, etc., in his class is **monitor.**

—. A student at a university who is not attached to any particular college is a **non-collegiate.**

—. A name for certain students holding a scholarship at Merton College, Oxford, is **postmaster.**

—. At certain public schools names given to a senior student with authority over others are **prepositor** or **prepostor, monitor,** and **prefect.**

—. A German name for a group of students at a university taking an advanced or special course, usually under a professor, is **seminar.**

—. The name given at Cambridge University or at Trinity College, Dublin, to a student who pays lower fees than the ordinary student is **sizar.**

—. A name used at Cambridge University and Trinity College, Dublin, for a student who has completed his first year is **sophister.**

—. A name for a second-year student at an American college having a four-year course is **sophomore.**

—. A name for each of the eight students holding an open scholarship at Queen's College, Oxford, is **taberdar.**

—. A university student before taking his degree is an **undergraduate.**

—, merry-making. A name sometimes used for a merry-making among students is **gaudeamus.**

—. *See also under* **degree, examination,** *and* **graduate,** *above, and names of schools.*

study. A fixed course of study in a school or college is a **curriculum.**

subtraction. The number or quantity from which another is to be subtracted is the **minuend.**

—. The symbol denoting subtraction (−) is the **minus, minus sign,** or **negative sign.**

—. A quantity or number that has to be subtracted from another is a **subtrahend.**

surface. In mathematics a surface or line formed by a line or point moving in accordance with a fixed rule or condition is a **locus.**

—. A surface generated by the motion of a straight line two consecutive positions of which always intersect each other is a **torse.**

—. A curve or surface cutting a system of curves or surfaces at a given angle is a **trajectory.**

—, curved. A surface that is convex in one direction and concave in another is **anticlastic.**

—, —. A curved surface having the same kind of curvature—convex, or concave—in all directions, is **synclastic.**

—. *See also under* **figure,** *above.*

teacher. A name for a native language-teacher or secretary employed by Europeans in India is **moonshi,** or **munshi.**

—. The name given to a teacher of the highest rank in a branch of learning is **professor.**

teacher. The name for a college official acting as teacher to a number of undergraduates entrusted to his care is **tutor.**

—. *See also* **tutor,** *below.*

teaching, mediaeval. The name for the intellectual, scientific, and literary teaching opposed to scholasticism in the late Middle Ages, involving a widening of the field of knowledge, is **humanism.**

— —. The name for the teaching in mediaeval universities which was dependent upon the authority and rationality of theological dogma is **scholasticism.**

term, algebraic. A name for a line drawn over several algebraical terms to show that they are to be treated as a whole in relation to what follows or precedes them is **vinculum.**

—, mathematical. The first and last terms of a mathematical progression and of a proportion are the **extremes.**

—, —. To find the intermediate terms of a series by calculation from the particular terms which are stated is to **interpolate.**

—, —. The second and third terms of a proportion are the **means.**

—, university. The names of the three terms during which instruction is given at Oxford University are **Hilary** or **Lent, Trinity,** and **Michaelmas.**

—, —. The names of the three terms during which instruction is given at Cambridge University are **Lent, Easter,** and **Michaelmas.**

—, —. A name given to a half-year term in some European and American universities is **semester**

title. The title conferred by a university degree preliminary to that of doctor or master is **bachelor.**

— A title or mark of distinction conferred by a university on such members as have passed the required examinations is a **degree.**

— The title conferred by the highest university degree in certain faculties other than arts is **doctor.**

—. The title conferred by the highest university degree in arts and certain other faculties is **master.**

total. A name given in mathematics to the total of all numbers satisfying a given condition is **aggregate.**

training. A name given to the art or science of training, especially that of training the young, is **pedagogics.**

treasurer. A name for a treasurer of a school or college is **bursar.**

triangle. A triangle having each of its angles smaller than a right angle is **acute-angled.**

— A triangle with all its angles equal is **equiangular.**

—. A triangle with all its sides equal is **equilateral.**

— A geometrical figure formed by two equilateral triangles base to base and overlapping is a **hexagram.**

—. The side of a right-angled triangle opposite the right angle is the **hypotenuse.**

—. A triangle having two sides equal is **isosceles.**

—. A triangle no angle of which is a right angle is **oblique-angled.**

—. A triangle having one of its angles greater than a right angle is **obtuse-angled.**

—. A triangle having one of its angles a right angle is **right-angled.**

—. A triangle having unequal sides and angles is a **scalene triangle.**

— A triangle formed on the surface of a sphere by the intersecting arcs of three great circles is a **spherical triangle.**

— The branch of mathematics which deals chiefly with the relations to each other of the sides and angles of triangles is **trigonometry.**

—. The name for the point of intersection of the sides of a triangle is **vertex.**

Tripos. A former name for a graduate who obtained second or third class honours in the Mathematical Tripos at Cambridge University was **optime.**

Tripos. A name formerly given to a graduate who obtained first class honours in the Mathematical Tripos at Cambridge University was **wrangler.**

tutor. The term used in certain Continental countries to describe a university tutor recognized by the authorities, but not a member of the salaried staff, is **privatdozent.**

undergraduate. *See under* **student,** *above.*

unity. In mathematics, each of two quantities whose product is unity is a **reciprocal.**

university. A popular name for the sworn constables in attendance on the proctors is **bulldogs.**

—. A name for the office held by a professor at a university is **chair.**

— A name for the titular head of an English university is **chancellor.**

—. A name for a person on a board having the general superintendance of certain universities is **curator.**

—. A name for a college officer in charge of executive affairs, especially one superintending discipline at Oxford and Cambridge, and for the head of a faculty at some universities, is **dean.**

— A university term meaning to deprive a tradesman of the privilege of serving undergraduates is **discommons.**

—. A name given to a department of learning or instruction at a university, and to the body of instructors or the governing body of a college, is **faculty.**

—. A name for an act, vote, or decree of the governing body of a university, college, or hall, and also for the decree, privilege or licence so conveyed, is **grace.**

—. A title borne by the head of some universities and colleges is **principal.**

—. The name given to a university official charged with keeping order and discipline is **proctor.**

— A name for a lecturer in a university or in one of the Inns of Court is **reader.**

—. A name for the head of certain Scottish and French universities and of Exeter College and Lincoln College, Oxford, etc., is **rector.**

—. A name for the presiding officer of some universities is **regent.**

—. A half-year course or term at German and some other universities is a **semester.**

—. A German name for a group of students at a university taking an advanced course, usually under a professor, is **seminar.**

—. The name given to the governing body of Cambridge University and some other British universities is **senate.**

—. The University of Paris, formerly a famous theological college, is the **Sorbonne.**

—. A name for a member of a special committee of the Senate at Cambridge University is **syndic.**

—. The officer responsible for the greater part of the administration of a university is the **vice-chancellor.**

—, institution. A name given to a university institution governed by a head and fellows is **college.**

—, —. A name for a university institution governed by a head without fellows is **hall.**

—. *See also under* **college, degree, examination, graduate,** *and* **student,** *above.*

value. A quantity or an equation not having a fixed value or solution is **indeterminate.**

variable. *See under* **quantity,** *above.*

Winchester College. A name given to a past or present member of Winchester College is **Wykehamist.**

zero. A quantity that is less than zero is a **negative quantity.**

—. A quantity which is greater than zero is a **positive quantity.**

ENGINEERING

air. A name for the charging of a liquid, etc., with air or carbonic acid gas is **aeration.**

—. Tools, such as a drill or a riveting hammer, worked by air pressure are **pneumatic.**

air-current. A current of air in a chimney, etc., is a **draught.**

—. The air-current produced by a rotating fan, as opposed to one produced by a blowing engine, is a **fan-blast.**

—. A draught in a furnace, etc., induced by a current of air or steam is a **forced draught.**

—. *See also under* **blast,** *below.*

air-tight chamber. A name for an air-tight chamber through which workmen and materials may pass, used in engineering operations carried out under high air-pressure, is **air-lock.**

angle. A name in carpentry for an inclination of two planes at an angle that is not a right angle is **bevel.**

—. Names given to an adjustable implement used by the carpenter to set out and test angles are **bevel** and **bevel-square.**

—. The name given to an L-shaped or T-shaped instrument used for testing or laying out right-angles is **square.**

apparatus. A mechanical apparatus for using or applying power is a **machine.**

axe. The name given to a kind of axe with a thin arched blade set at right angles to the handle, used to cut away the surface of wood, is **adze.**

—. The name given to a light, short-handled type of axe is **hatchet.**

axle. A name for an axle or spindle on which a wheel revolves is **arbor.**

axle-box. A kind of axle-box which permits an axle to adapt itself to a curve traversed by the vehicle of which it forms part is a **radial axle-box.**

balance. The name given to an apparatus comprising a rapidly spinning horizontal wheel attached to an aeroplane, torpedo, car, etc., to keep it in equilibrium is **gyroscope.**

—, weighing. The name given to a kind of balance for weighing objects, in which the weight compresses or extends a steel spring, is **spring-balance.**

bank. The name given to a bank of earth or masonry is **embankment.**

bar. The name given to a type of machine for cutting metal bars is **bar-shear.**

—. The name given to a flat metal bar with a loop or eye at one or both ends, such as is used for the chains of suspension bridges, is **eye-bar** or **eye-plate.**

—, coupling. The name given to a heavy bar fixed to a railway carriage and connecting the coupling with the carriage is **draw-bar.**

—, lever. The name given to a bar of iron, usually with a beaked or pointed end, used as a lever, is **crowbar.**

base-line. A name used in surveying for a horizontal base-line from which heights and depths are measured is **datum-line.**

basket. A basket made of wicker-work or iron and filled with earth or stones, used for the foundations of an under-water structure, is a **gabion.**

battery. The name given to a secondary or storage battery for electricity is **accumulator.**

—. A set of batteries, etc., having all the positive terminals joined to one conductor and all the negative terminals to another conductor is **in parallel.**

—. A battery which generates a current of electricity is a **primary battery.**

—. A battery which stores up energy is a **secondary battery.**

—. A set of batteries, etc., having the positive pole of each connected to the negative pole of the next is **in series.**

beam. A name for the upward curvature given to a beam, etc., so as to secure that it is horizontal when fully loaded is **camber.**

bearing. The name given to a type of bearing in which a number of small balls are used to lessen friction is **ball-bearing.**

bell. The name given to a lever shaped like the letter L, which enables the motion of one bell-wire to be communicated to another at right angles, is **bell-crank.**

blast. The name given to an apparatus worked by a descending column of water, for producing a blast in a furnace is **trompe.**

boiler. The name given to an early type of cylindrical boiler with flat ends and only one flue tube is **Cornish boiler.**

—. A tube or channel through which hot gases or smoke can escape from a furnace, or one in a steam boiler for heating the surrounding water, is a **flue.**

—. The name given to a metal plug placed in a steam boiler at such a position as to melt and allow the escape of water when a dangerous heat is reached is **fusible plug.**

—. The name given to an early type of boiler, cylindrical in form, resembling the Cornish boiler, but having two flue tubes side by side, is **Lancashire boiler.**

—. A name for the opening near the bottom of a steam-boiler for the removal of sediment is **mud-valve.**

—. The name given to a long rod running from end to end of a boiler to prevent the ends being pushed outward by the steam pressure is **stay-rod.**

—. A recording instrument attached to a steam-boiler to show the pressure of the steam is a **steam-gauge.**

—. The name given to a type of steam-boiler in which the hot furnace gases pass through tubes surrounded by water is **tubular boiler.**

—. The name given to a glass tube fixed to a boiler which shows the level at which the water stands is **water-gauge.**

—. The name given to a type of steam boiler in which water circulates through a number of tubes in contact with the hot furnace gases is **water-tube boiler.**

bolt. The sideways strain on a bolt passing through two parts which slide over one another is **shear.**

boring. A name for a narrow boring down to a point where water or oil pressure is so great that the liquid rises to the surface, is **Artesian bore.**

brake. An automatic brake in which motion is imparted to the brake-rod by compressed air is an **air-brake.**

—. The name given to a type of brake in which a concentric ring is made to expand and grip a flange or the rim of a wheel is **band-brake.**

—. The name given to a mechanism worked by the momentum of a vehicle, or by hydraulic pressure, which serves simultaneously to apply the brakes to several wheels of a vehicle, is **servo-mechanism.**

—. An automatic brake in which the pressure is obtained by exhaustion of the air from the cylinder operating the brake-rod is a **vacuum-brake.**

brazing. The name given to a tube for sending a current of air into a flame in order to concentrate the heat on a certain spot for welding, soldering, or brazing is **blow-pipe.**

breakwater. A name for a large stone breakwater or jetty is **mole.**

bricklaying. A name for the bench on which bricks or stones are trimmed is **banker.**

—. The name given to a broad chisel used to cut bricks is **bolster.**

bricklaying. The name given to a brick set across a wall at right angles to the face of the wall is **header.**

—. The name of a wooden straight-edge with a lead plummet, used to test the uprightness of brickwork, is **plumb-rule.**

—. The name given to a brick set lengthwise in a wall is **stretcher.**

—. The name of the flat steel tool with which a bricklayer lays and sets bricks is **trowel.**

bridge. A bridge in which part of the roadway is hinged and may be drawn up when desired is a **bascule bridge.**

—. The name given to a type of bridge supported on brackets or cantilevers fastened to piers is **cantilever bridge.**

—. The construction of bridges, roads, and other works of public utility is **civil engineering.**

—. The angular edge of the lower part of a bridge pier is the **cutwater.**

—. In the building of bridges, etc., the ratio of the greatest load the structure is likely to bear to its probable breaking load is the **factor of safety.**

—. A bridge made of pontoons, rafts, or timbers floating on the surface of the water is a **floating bridge.**

—. A name for a temporary bridge, such as one to allow the rapid passage of a river by troops, is **flying bridge.**

—. A name for a strong, light bridge supported by timber frames is **frame bridge.**

—. A bridge supported by beams resting on piers is a **girder bridge.**

—. A name for a cross-beam supporting the floor of a bridge is **needle-beam.**

—. A name for the full length of a bridge, and for any part of a bridge or similar structure between two supports is **span.**

—. The name given to a type of bridge in which the roadway hangs from chains passing over piers is **suspension bridge.**

—. The name given to a kind of bridge used to carry passengers and vehicles across a waterway in a suspended car is **transporter bridge.**

—. The name given to a type of bridge, usually of wood, supported on trestle piers, is **trestle bridge.**

—. The name given to a bridge constructed of tubes, usually rectangular in section, through which the roadway runs, is **tubular bridge.**

—. A bridgelike structure, especially a series of arches of masonry, carrying a road or railway across a valley or dip in the ground is a **viaduct.**

bulb, electric light. A name for the thread raised to incandescence in an electric light bulb or wireless valve is **filament.**

cable. A strong steel cable, supported at its ends or at points in between, on which a trolly runs to carry loads across valleys, rivers, and rough country is an **aerial ropeway** or **aerial cableway.**

cam. A cam shaped like a heart and used in machinery for changing a turning movement into a straight-line movement is a **heart-cam** or **heart-wheel.**

—. The name given to a lever, cam, or projection on a machine that is moved by or moves another part intermittently is **tappet.**

carburettor. A name for a tube or pipe with many branches leading gas and air from the carburettor to the cylinders of an internal combustion engine is **manifold.**

carding machine. A name for a comb or revolving cylinder with a toothed surface which strips cotton or wool from the main wheel of a carding machine is **doffer.**

case, watertight. The name given to a watertight case for laying foundations of bridge piers, etc., under water is **caisson.**

cell. The name for a number of electric cells connected together is **battery.**

chain-wheel. Each of the teeth of a chain-wheel is a **sprocket.**

channel. The name given to an artificial channel, especially an elevated one, for conveying water from one place to another is **aqueduct.**

—. The name given to an arched channel built under a railway or road to convey water, pipes, cables, etc., is **culvert.**

chisel. A name for a chisel with a bent shank, used for smoothing out grooves, is **dog-leg chisel.**

—. A name for a kind of strong, thick chisel for cutting socket holes in wood is **framing-chisel.**

—. A chisel with a concave blade is a **gouge.**

—, blacksmith's. A name for a square-shanked, blacksmith's chisel fixed in a socket in an anvil and used for cutting metal is **hardy.**

—. *See also under* **tool,** cutting, *below.*

circuit, electrical. A continuous electric circuit is a **closed circuit.**

—, —. A connexion between two electric circuits is a **coupling.**

—, —. A device for automatically breaking an electric circuit when the current is above or below that required is a **cut-out.**

—, —. The name given to a piece of easily fusible metal in an electrical circuit, which melts and thus interrupts the circuit in case of an overload of current, is **fuse.**

—, —. An electric circuit broken at some point and therefore not continuous is an **open circuit.**

—, —. An electric circuit taking current from a battery, generator, or other source of supply is a **primary circuit.**

—, —. A circuit in which an electric current is induced by an adjacent primary circuit is a **secondary circuit.**

—, —. A connexion which offers a path of low resistance between two conductors is a **short circuit.**

—, —. The name given to a conductor connecting two points of an electrical circuit, through which a greater or less amount of current may be diverted, is **shunt.**

—, —. The name given to a device which bridges a gap in an electrical circuit and so permits current to flow when a lever is in a certain position is **switch.**

—, —. Any one of the free ends of an open electrical circuit is a **terminal.**

clock. The name given to a notched wheel which regulates the striking mechanism of a clock is **count-wheel.**

—. The name given to the mechanism of a clock connecting the motive power with the balance wheel or pendulum is **escapement.**

—. The name given to the wheel in a clock which imparts motion to the pendulum or the balance wheel is **escape-wheel** or **'scape-wheel.**

—. A name for the set of wheels in a striking clock which imparts motion to the hands is the **going-train.**

cloth, spinning. The name given to a kind of machine in which newly woven cloth is shrunk by a saturating and pressing process is **fulling-mill.**

cog-wheel. *See under* **gear,** *below.*

collar. A name for a collar fixed on a shaft is **collet.**

compass. The name given to a pair of compasses used for measuring diameter or calibre is **callipers.**

condenser. The quantity of current an electric condenser will take up and store is its **capacity.**

connecting-rod. A name for a projecting pin serving as an attachment for a connecting rod is **wrist-pin.**

cotton cloth, stamping. A machine for stamping and finishing cotton cloth and other fabrics is a **beetle.**

crane. A crane having a jib or arm which can be lowered to alter the reach is a **derrick-crane.**

crane. The framework in which a travelling crane is carried is a **gantry.**

—. A name for the claw-like implement with which objects are grasped and lifted by some cranes is **grapnel.**

—. The name given to the movable arm of a crane which can be raised or lowered to alter the reach is **jib.**

—. A name for a simple form of crane of the wheel-and-axle type, in which the wheel is turned by a rope running to a winding barrel, is **whip-crane.**

crank. The position of a crank when the axle, pin, and connecting-rod are all in a straight line, and the connecting-rod has no power to turn the crank, is **dead-centre** or **dead-point.**

current, electrical. An electrical current of which the direction is regularly and continually changing is an **alternating current.**

—, —. A machine which produces an oscillating current is an **alternator.**

—, —. The name given to a device in a motor or a dynamo which regularly alters the direction of the electric current produced is **commutator.**

—, —. A substance which allows the passage of an electric current, or presents low resistance to it, is a **conductor.**

—, —. A complete sequence in the pulsations of an alternating electric current, involving one flow of current in each direction, is a **cycle.**

—, —. An electric current flowing continuously in one direction is a **direct current** or **continuous current.**

—, —. The number of complete sequences through which an alternating electric current passes in one second is its **frequency.**

—, —. Two alternating currents of the same frequency, and in the same circuit, having their greatest positive or negative value at the same moment, are in **phase.**

—, —. The period of maximum intensity of the electric wave in an alternating current is its **phase.**

—, —. The conversion of alternating electrical current into direct current is **rectification.**

—, —. An electrical device for making a weak current bring a stronger one into action is a **relay.**

—, —. The name of an apparatus for controlling the volume of an electrical current is **rheostat.**

—, —. The name given to an apparatus for changing electrical currents from one voltage to another, or for changing continuous currents into alternating currents, is **transformer.**

curve. The name given to a curve such as that made by a chain or rope suspended freely from two points not in one vertical line is **catenary.**

—. A name for the theoretical curve made by a missile travelling in vacuo is **parabola.**

—. The curved path taken by a missile is its **trajectory.**

cylinder. A name for a barrel or cylinder in a machine over which a belt passes, or on which a rope is wound, is **drum.**

—. A name for a tube with many branches leading gas and air into the cylinder of a petrol motor, or conducting exhaust gases away, is **manifold.**

—, steam. That cylinder of a compound steam-engine into which steam first passes from the boiler is the **high-pressure cylinder.**

dam. Names for a dam built across a watercourse to raise the level of water above it are **barrage** and **weir.**

—. The name given to a temporary dam enclosing an area, pumped dry to enable building or other operations to be carried out, is **coffer-dam.**

—. A dam or mound constructed to prevent low-lying lands from being flooded is a **dike.**

—. An engineer's name for the quantity of water which a dam will hold back is **pondage.**

dam. A passage constructed somewhat lower than the top of a dam to take the overflow of surplus water is a **spillway.**

—. A name for a temporary dam or embankment built across a river is **sudd.**

digging machine. A machine for digging and removing earth is an **excavator.**

—. Names given to a power-driven digging machine for excavating material from a road-bed or railway cutting are **mechanical navvy** and **mechanical shovel.**

discharge. The discharge of spent steam, gas, or vapour from an engine is **exhaust.**

distance. The seeing by electrical means of distant objects or things happening at a distance is **television.**

diving. The name given to a hollow vessel shaped like a bell in which a diver may remain in safety under the water is **diving-bell.**

— A name for a type of diving-bell which is made to sink or rise by the use of compressed air is **nautilus.**

dock. The name given to a floating chamber used to close a dock's entrance is **caisson.**

—. The name given to any dock from which the water can be excluded or removed is **dry dock.**

—. The name given to a type of dock which floats on the water and can be submerged so as to permit the entrance of vessels and raised to lift a vessel clear of the water is **floating dock.**

—. The name given to a dock which can be emptied of water after a ship is admitted, so as to leave all the lower parts of the vessel to be examined, painted, or repaired is **graving dock.**

—. The name given to a dock comprising an inclined way up which a vessel may be hauled clear of the water is **slip dock.**

—. A dock which is kept full of water approximately at a constant level is a **wet dock.**

drainage. A drain carried along the side of a hill or embankment to intercept surface-water is a **catch-drain.**

—. An opening in a roadway to conduct rainwater into a sewer is a **gully-hole.**

—. The name given to a chamber in which sewage from house drains is rendered innocuous by the action of bacteria is **septic tank.**

—. The name given to a main pipe or conduit which receives the contents of house and rain-water drains is **sewer**

—. A chamber or bend in a pipe which retains water and so prevents foul air rising from a drain is **trap.**

draught. The natural draught of a furnace is **chimney draught.**

—. A draught in a furnace induced by the use of a blast of air or steam is a **forced draught.**

—. A draught in a furnace caused by a fan in the base of the chimney which sucks in air is an **induced draught.**

drawing. Names for an instrument for making copies of plans or designs on a different scale are **eidograph** and **pantograph.**

—. A name for a strip of flexible material used in mechanical drawing as a guide for laying down curves, etc., is **spline.**

drill. The name given to the engine which sucks in air and passes it into a reservoir under pressure to supply an air-driven drill or other like tool is **air-compressor.**

—. Names given to a kind of drill worked by a bow whose string passes round a pulley on the drill stock are **bow drill** and **fiddle drill.**

—. The name given to a tubular or circular drill, the cutting edge of which is set with impure or black diamonds, used for boring through very hard substances, is **diamond-drill.**

—. The name given to an upright drilling-machine in which the bit is pressed against the work by a screw or by gravity is **drill-press.**

—. The part of a brace or drilling-machine in which the drill is gripped is the **drill-stock.**

dynamics. That branch of dynamics dealing with the relations between motions of bodies and the forces acting on them is **kinetics.**

—. That branch of dynamics which deals with bodies at rest and forces in equilibrium is **statics.**

dynamo. The name given to a kind of dynamo used to raise the voltage of a current, generally to compensate for loss in transmission over a long cable, is **booster.**

—. A dynamo in which are combined both series and shunt methods of winding is **compound-wound.**

—. A dynamo or other electrical apparatus in which the current passes successively through all the wirings is **series-wound.**

—. A dynamo or other apparatus in which the current is divided between two circuits, one of which serves to excite the coils of the field magnet, is **shunt-wound.**

earthquake. Methods of building construction that are designed to resist earthquake shocks are **aseismatic.**

electrical energy. A machine which converts mechanical power into electrical energy is a **dynamo.**

electromotive force. The name given to an instrument used for measuring the voltage or electromotive force of a current is **voltmeter.**

embankment. A facing of masonry, etc., to retain the softer material of an embankment, etc., is a **revetment.**

energy. The amount of energy needed to raise one pound avoirdupois one foot is a **foot-pound.**

—. An appliance giving out mechanical energy is a **power.**

—. Mechanical energy as contrasted with manual energy is **power.**

—, conversion. A machine, such as a dynamo, which transforms mechanical energy into electrical energy is a **generator.**

engine. An engine which derives its power from the combustion of fuel inside the working cylinder is an **internal combustion engine.**

—. A name for a circular plate or plunger fitting closely in a cylinder or tube and receiving or imparting pressure in an engine or a machine is **piston.**

—. An engine which derives its motion from the moving to and fro of a piston is a **reciprocating engine.**

—. The name given to a kind of engine driven by water is **water-engine.**

—, internal combustion. A premature explosion of the charge of gas in the cylinder of an internal combustion engine is a **back-fire.**

—, —. The name given to the chamber of a petrol engine in which petrol is vaporized and mixed with a proportion of air before going to the cylinder is **carburettor.**

—, —. A name for a tube or pipe with many branches, which conducts exhaust gases from the cylinder of a petrol motor is **manifold.**

—, —. A failure to explode of the charge of gas in an internal combustion engine is a **misfire.**

—, —. A name for a chamber at the bottom of a crank-case in an internal combustion engine, used as a reservoir for lubricating oil, is **sump.**

—, —. A name given to an enclosed space surrounding the cylinder of an internal combustion engine, through which water is circulated to keep the cylinder cool, is **water-jacket.**

—, steam. The name of an early type of steam-engine in which the piston was moved in one direction by the pressure of the atmosphere and in the other by steam admitted to the cylinder is **atmospheric engine.**

—, —. A device for regulating a steam-engine, containing two balls at the end of levers, made to revolve by the steam pressure, which is automatically reduced when a certain speed is reached, is a **ball-governor** or **centrifugal governor.**

engine, steam. The name given to an old form of steam-engine having a hinged or pivoted beam connecting the piston-rod with the crank of the fly-wheel is **beam-engine.**

—, —. Spent steam which passes out of a cylinder after doing its work is **exhaust steam.**

—, —. The name given to an old-fashioned type of steam-engine in which the working beam was pivoted at the end instead of at the middle is **grasshopper engine.**

—, —. The openings in the wall of a cylinder which allow entrance and exit of steam are the **ports.**

—, —. The admission of a small quantity of steam into a cylinder before the piston has returned completely is **preadmission.**

—, —. The name given to the sliding plate in the steam-chest which regulates admission of steam to a cylinder is **slide valve.**

—, —. The name given to the box-like chamber which admits steam from the boiler to the cylinder of a steam engine is **steam-chest.**

ferry boat. A name given to a ferry boat guided by chains passing over wheels turned by machinery is **floating bridge.**

fire-engine. An old-fashioned type of fire-engine with a pump worked by hand is a **manual.**

flax. The name given to a toothed instrument for crushing flax or for peeling the bark from willows is **brake.**

flow, control. A device for controlling the flow of air, liquid, gas, or vapour through a pipe or passage is a **valve.**

foot. A name for a mechanism through which the foot or feet generate motive power is **pedometer.**

force. The name given to the tendency of a revolving body to fly off from the centre of rotation is **centrifugal force.**

—. The force which draws a revolving body towards the centre of rotation is **centripetal force.**

—. The branch of science dealing with the action of force—including statics and kinetics—is **dynamics.**

—. An apparatus for measuring force or power is a **dynamometer.**

—. The name given to the force which moves or impels a body is **impetus.**

—. That property of a body by which it continues in an existing state of rest or resists the communication of motion is **inertia.**

—. That branch of dynamics which treats of the relation between motions of bodies and the forces acting on them is **kinetics.**

—. The name of the science which deals with the action of force upon material bodies is **mechanics.**

—. The name for the force that is the product of the mass and the velocity in a moving body, through which the body overcomes resistance, is **momentum.**

—. A name for a figure used to find the magnitude and direction of a single force having the same effect as two forces acting at an angle to one another is **parallelogram of forces.**

—. A force exerted on a body by another in contact with it is **pressure.**

—. The original force which sets a machine in motion is a **prime mover.**

—. To exert an equal and opposite force to that exerted by another body is to **react.**

—. The replacing of a single force by two forces jointly equal to it is **resolution.**

—. The combined effect of two or more forces acting in different directions at the same point is a **resultant.**

—. That branch of dynamics which deals with bodies at rest and forces in equilibrium is **statics.**

—. A term denoting the exertion of force in overcoming resistance or in the production of molecular change is **work.**

force-pump. A metal chamber containing air, connected with the delivery pipe of a force-pump, is an **air-chamber.**

fortress. The construction of fortresses, roads, and bridges for military operations is **military engineering.**

friction. The name given to parts of a machine that bear the friction is **bearing.**

—. The name of a sled-like apparatus for measuring the friction between two sliding surfaces is **tribometer.**

furnace. A furnace into which a current of compressed hot air is driven to aid combustion is a **blast furnace.**

—. The natural draught of a furnace is **chimney draught.**

—. A draught in a furnace produced by a blast of air or steam is a **forced draught.**

—. A draught in a furnace caused by a fan in the base of the chimney which sucks in air is an **induced draught.**

gas. A substance, such as a gas or a liquid, consisting of particles that move freely and give way to the slightest pressure is a **fluid.**

—. The science which deals with the behaviour of liquids and gases moving under the action of force is **hydrokinetics.**

—. The science which deals with the pressure and equilibrium of liquids and gases at rest is **hydrostatics.**

gate, waterway. A gate or sluice door in a waterway which is opened when the water reaches a certain level to prevent damage by flood is a **flood-gate.**

gauge. The principal gauges to which wire and sheet metal are manufactured in Great Britain are the **Imperial Standard Gauge (S.W.G.)** and the **Birmingham Wire Gauge (B.W.G.).**

gear. The name given to a recoil of gear-wheels or other moving parts of a machine when subjected to sudden strain or pressure, and to the amount of loose play in such parts, is **backlash.**

— Names for a pair of gear-wheels with bevelled edges, set at right angles to one another, used to change horizontal motion into vertical motion, are **bevel-gear** and **mitre-gear.**

—. The name given to a gear placed in the centre of the back axle of a motor vehicle which allows the two driving wheels to turn at different speeds when rounding a corner is **differential gear.**

—. When sets of gear-wheels engage they **mesh.**

—. A name for the smaller of two cog-wheels engaged with one another is **pinion.**

—. A name for a kind of wheel which transmits motion at right angles by means of pins set at right angles to its face is **pin-wheel.**

— Gearing consisting of spur-wheels with parallel axes, used to transmit motion in a straight line, is **spur gearing.**

—. A gear-wheel with teeth projecting radially from its edge is a **spur-wheel.**

—. The name given to a form of gearing consisting of a pinion with a spiral thread engaging with a cog-wheel set at right angles to it is **worm-gear.**

generator, electrical. An electric generator used in long circuits to keep up the pressure is a **booster.**

—. —. The name given to a machine for generating electricity is **dynamo.**

—, —. The ratio of the actual output of energy of a generator producing an alternating electric current to the apparent output is the generator's **power-factor.**

gibbet. The name given to a supporting framework shaped like a gibbet is **potence.**

girder. A name for a horizontal girder running lengthwise in a structure is **stringer.**

— The thin part that connects the flanges of an I-section girder is the **web.**

grappling iron. A name for a grappling iron is **crampon**

groove. A groove or track for the moving part of a machine is a **guideway.**

hammer. Names given to a heavy type of hammer or mallet used to drive stakes or posts are **beetle** and **maul.**

—. The loose hammer of a pile-driver or steam-hammer is a **ram.**

—. The name of a heavy kind of hammer wielded with both hands is **sledge.**

hauling. Names for a machine used for hauling and hoisting, consisting of a drum or cylinder fastened on an axle and turned by a crank, are **windlass** and **winch.**

heat. A chamber where intense heat is produced by burning fuel or by electricity is a **furnace.**

—. A device for using waste heat to warm up gas, air, or water entering an apparatus is a **regenerator.**

—. The branch of science which deals with the relation between heat and mechanical work is **thermodynamics.**

—. The name given to an automatic device which regulates the heat of a furnace, stove, etc. is **thermostat.**

hoisting. The name given to a hoisting apparatus consisting usually of two poles fastened at the top and separated at the foot is **sheers.**

—. Names for a machine used for hauling and hoisting, consisting of a cylinder fastened on an axle and turned by a crank. are **windlass** and **winch.**

implement. *See under* **tool,** *below.*

indicator, electrical. The name of a kind of electrical apparatus used in hotels for indicating the wants of a person in any room is **teleseme.**

instrument, measuring. The name given to a graduated steel rod with fixed jaw at one end and sliding jaw parallel to the first is **caliper-square.**

—, —. A name for a carefully graduated instrument for measuring very small distances is **micrometer.**

iron, smelting. The name given to a machine used to press slag and air-bubbles out of puddled iron is **squeezer.**

joint. The name of a kind of joint permitting two shafts, etc., to turn freely in various directions is **universal joint.**

—. A joint made watertight so that no water can enter or be let out is a **water-joint.**

key, door. A notch in a door-key corresponding to a projection in a lock is a **ward.**

—, machinery. A key or wedge for keeping parts of a machine in place is a **cotter.**

lathe. Names given to a type of lathe in which a number of tools are fixed in a rotating holder and may be brought into operation as desired are **capstan lathe** and **turret lathe.**

— The name of a device on a lathe for holding objects to be shaped or turned is **chuck.**

—. The name given to a disk with adjustable clamps used to hold work in a lathe is **face-plate.**

—. A name for the forked centre in a wood-turning lathe is **fork-chuck.**

— The revolving centre in a metal turner's lathe is the **headstock.**

—. A name for a revolving spindle in a lathe to which work is fixed for shaping is **mandrel** or **mandril.**

—. The rod connecting the treadle and crank of a foot lathe is the **pitman.**

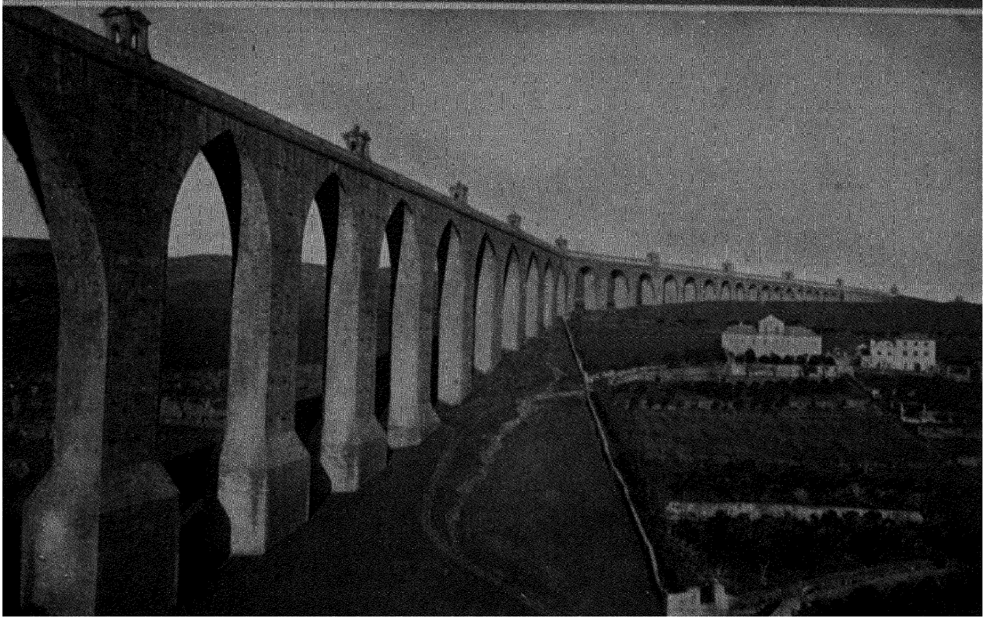
—. The non-revolving centre of a lathe, opposite to the headstock, is the **poppet** or **tailstock.**

—. The name of a tool-holder in a lathe which permits of movement in various directions is **slide rest.**

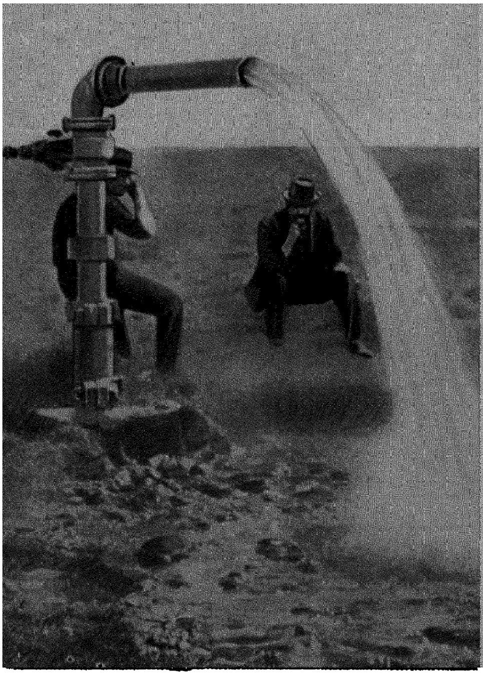
level. The rate at which a road or sloping track changes level, or the amount of such slope, is the **grade** or **gradient.**

(*Continued on page* 4809.)

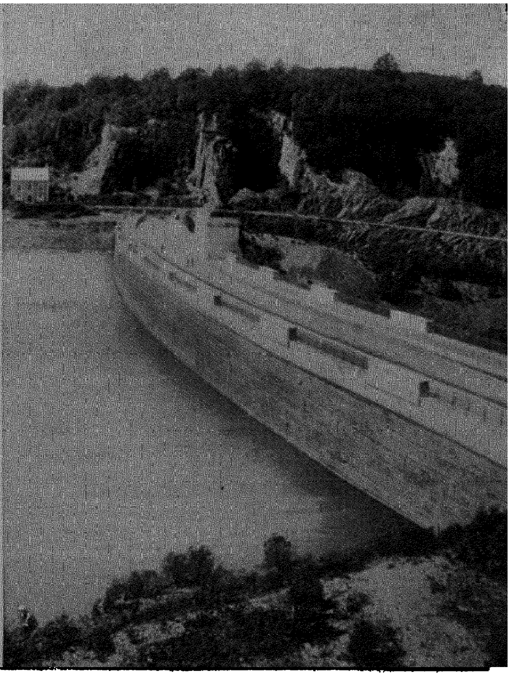
ENGINEERING TERMS IN PICTURES



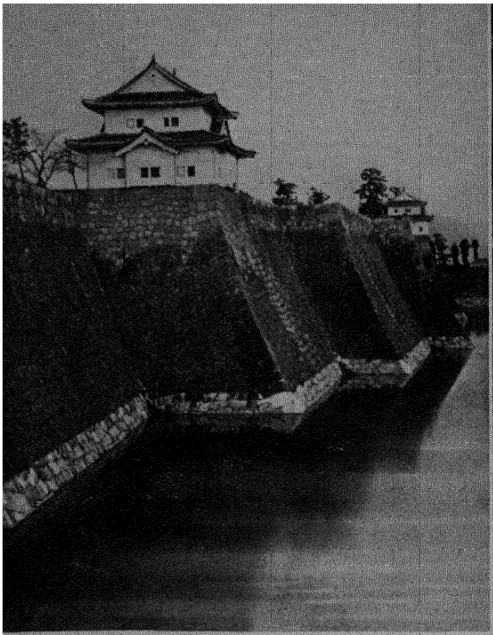
AQUEDUCT.—The Aguas Livres aqueduct near Lisbon, Portugal. The use of aqueducts, which are artificial channels for conveying water, dates back to very early times. The Romans built many aqueducts. There is a notable example of their work in this branch of engineering at Nîmes, in France.



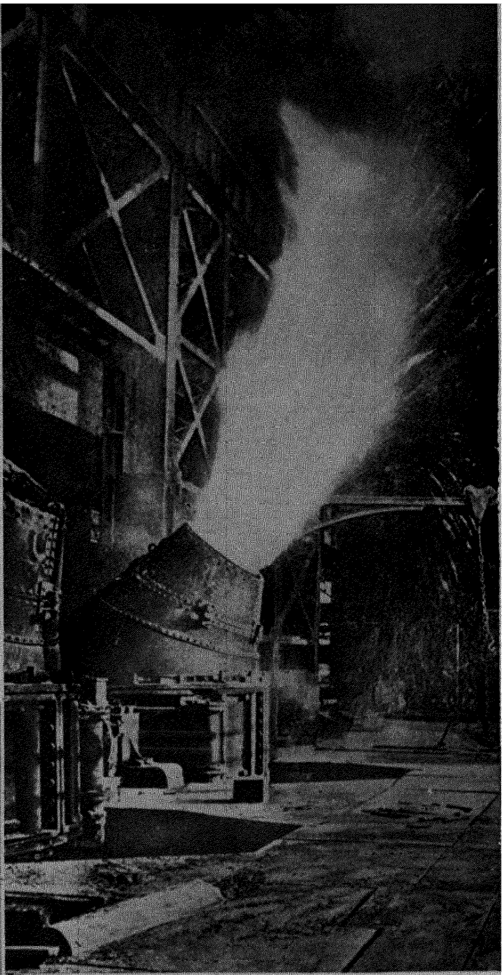
ARTESIAN BORE.—Water emerging from a bore carried down to the underground basin where it has collected.



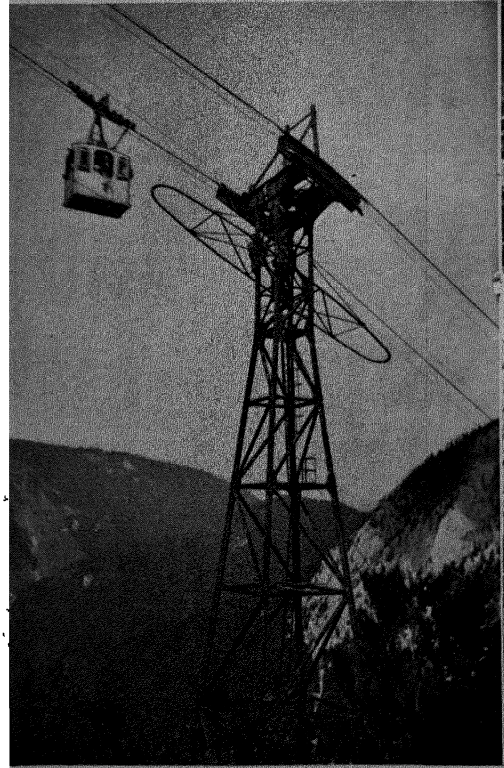
BARRAGE.—The great barrage or dam at La Gileppe, Belgium, which ensures water supply for mills.



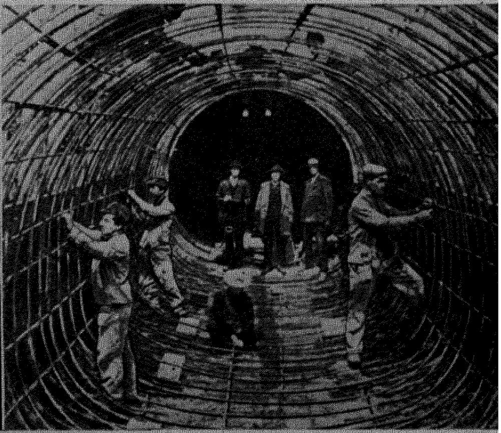
BATTER.—A castle in Japan, showing the batter, or backward slope, of the embankment walls.



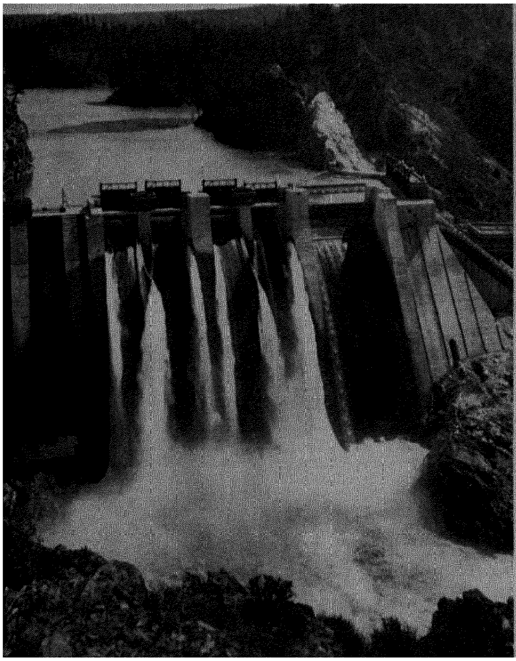
BESSEMER CONVERTER.—A device used in making steel, containing molten iron through which air is forced.



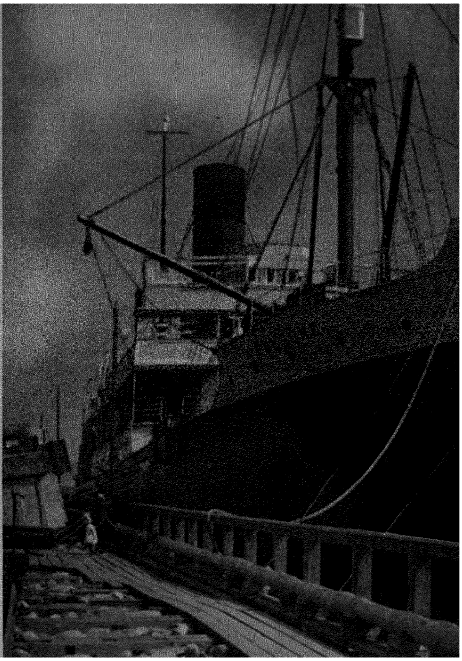
CABLE-WAY.—A wire cable carried on standards conveying a load across the Feuerkogel, Austria.



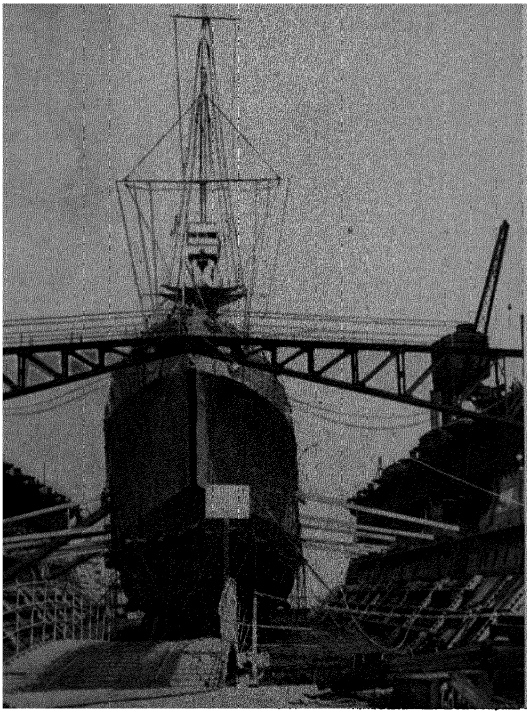
CULVERT.—Workmen repairing a culvert, or arched channel built under roads or canals to carry water.



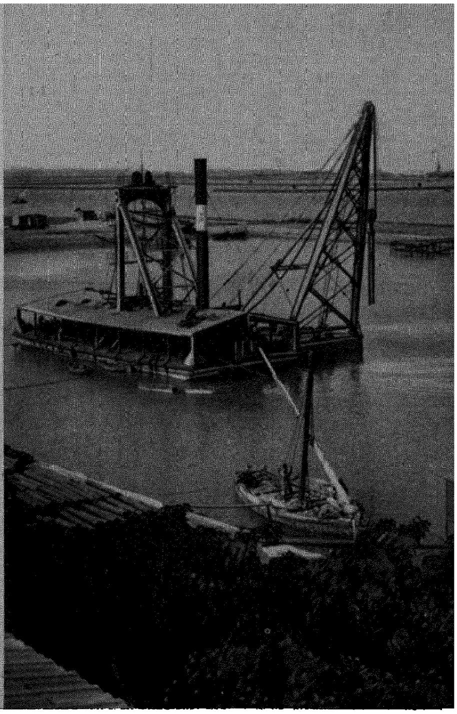
DAM.—The dam on the Spokane River, U.S.A. It provides a head of water for generating electricity.



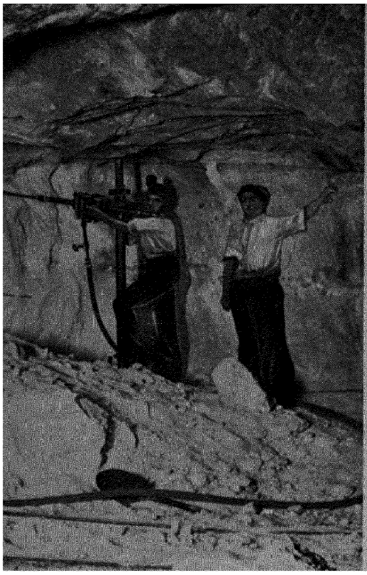
DERRICK.—A steamer loading cargo by means of a derrick, or crane having a pivoted arm.



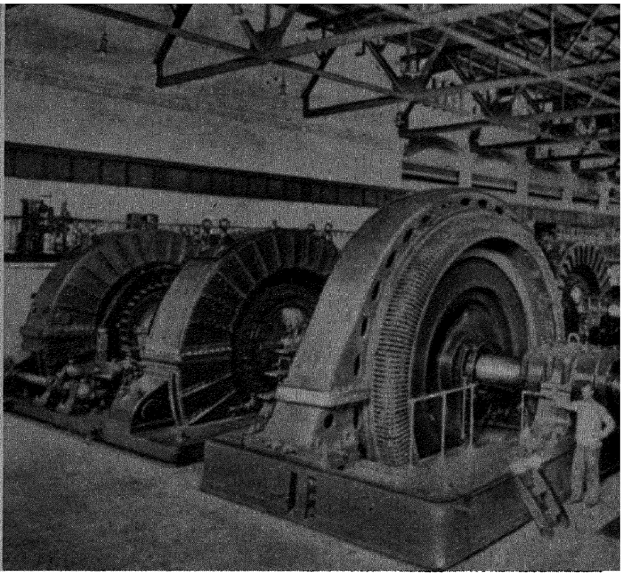
DOCK.—A warship ready for repairs in a dry dock, from which water has been pumped out.



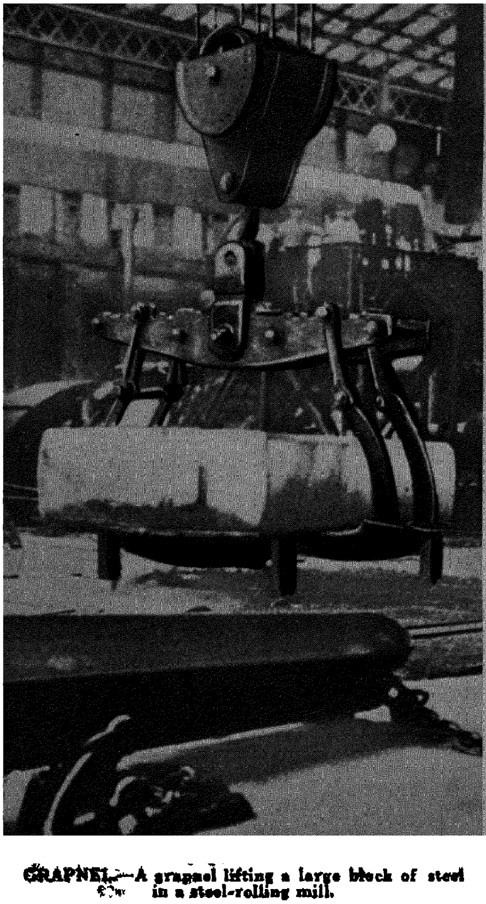
DREDGER.—A dredger is used to deepen a channel by removing the silt from the bottom.



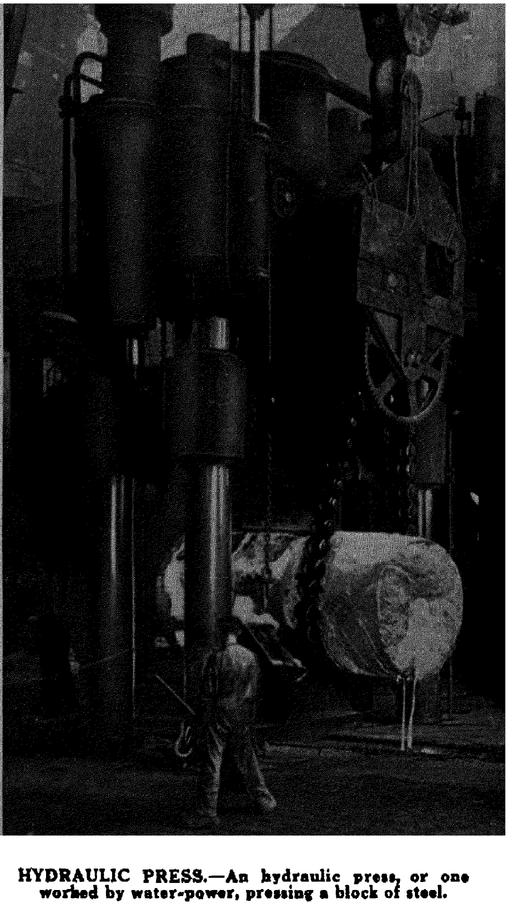
DRILL.—Workmen using a drill, or boring tool, in a salt mine.



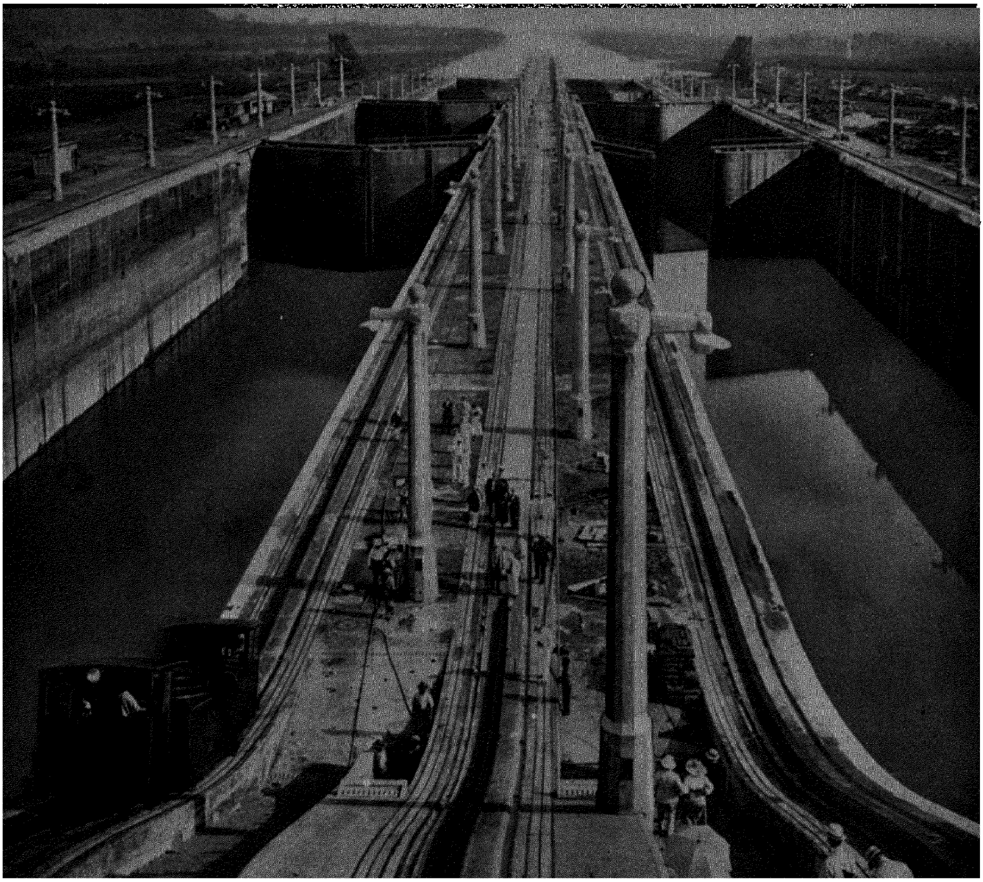
DYNAMO.—The hydro-electric plant at Niagara Falls, showing the dynamos used for generating the electric current.



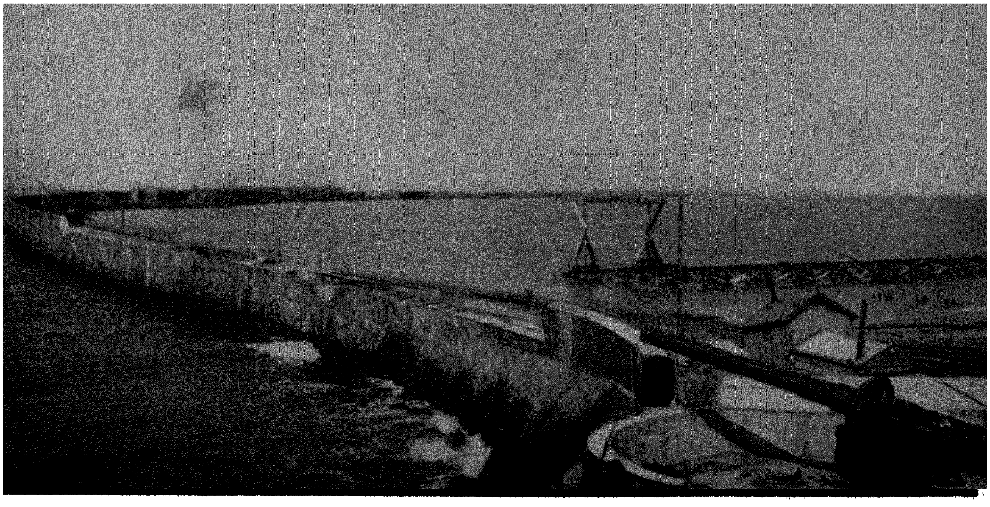
GRAPNEL.—A grapnel lifting a large block of steel in a steel-rolling mill.



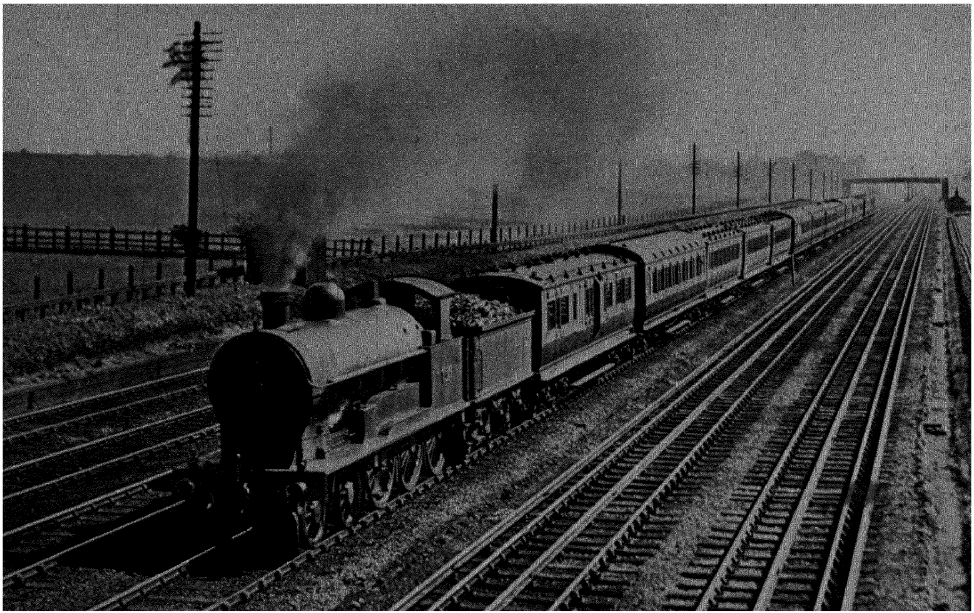
HYDRAULIC PRESS.—An hydraulic press, or one worked by water-power, pressing a block of steel.



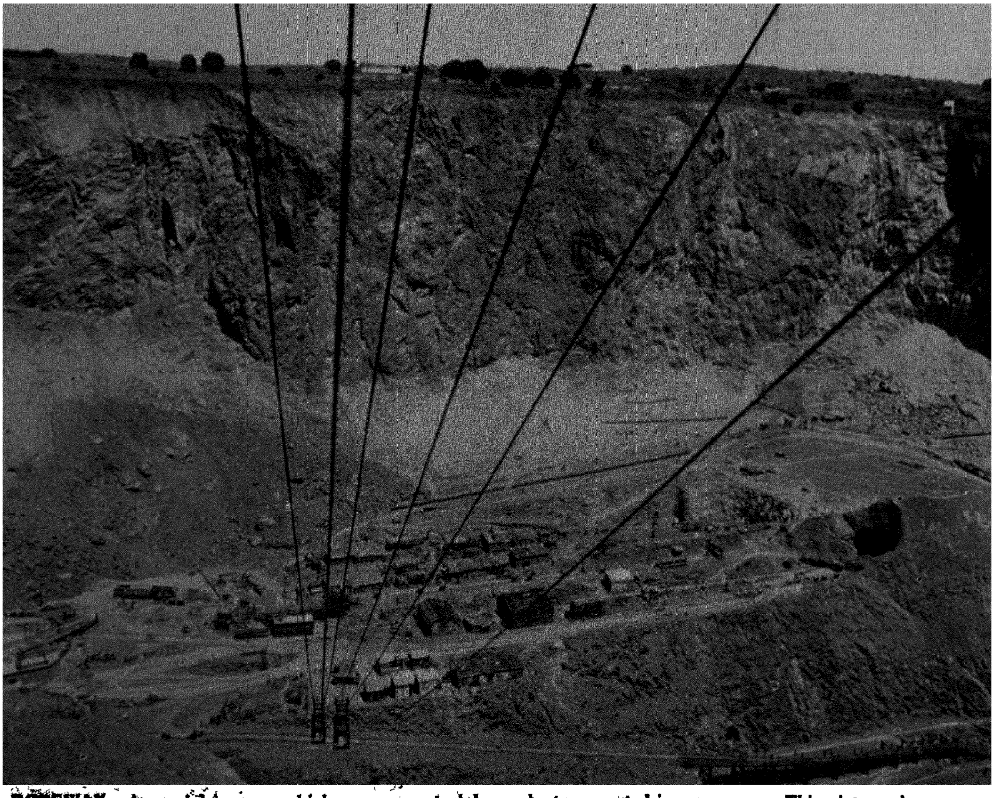
LOCK.—The Gatun Locks on the Panama Canal. Such locks provide a series of steps by which vessels are able to mount or descend from one level to another. The invention of the lock enabled canals to be cut through districts that were unlevel and hilly.



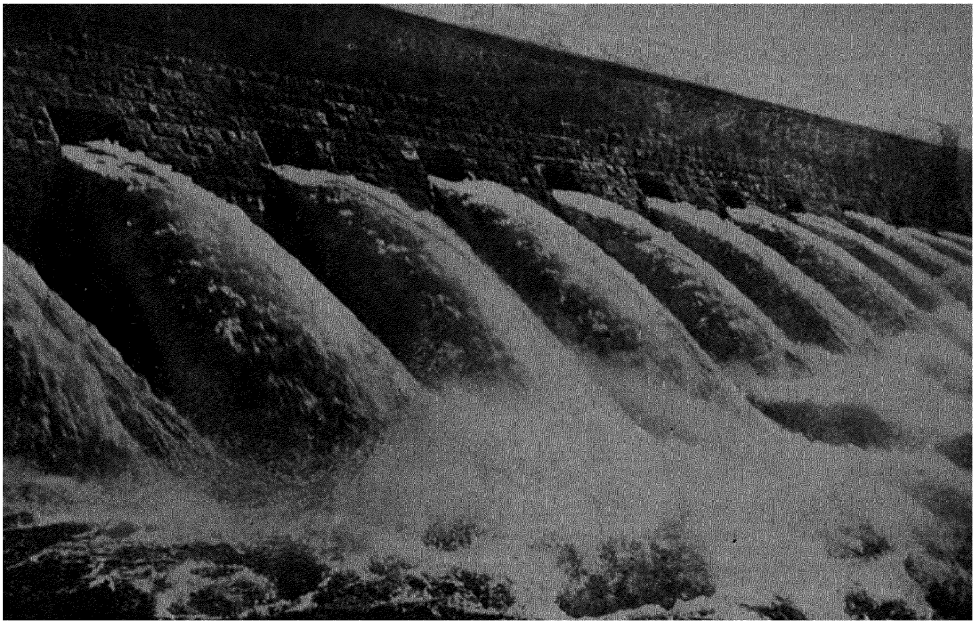
MOLE.—A mole is a large stone jetty or breakwater to protect docks or a harbour. The Zeebrugge Mole, illustrated, was the scene of an historic attack by British sailors and marines in April 1918.



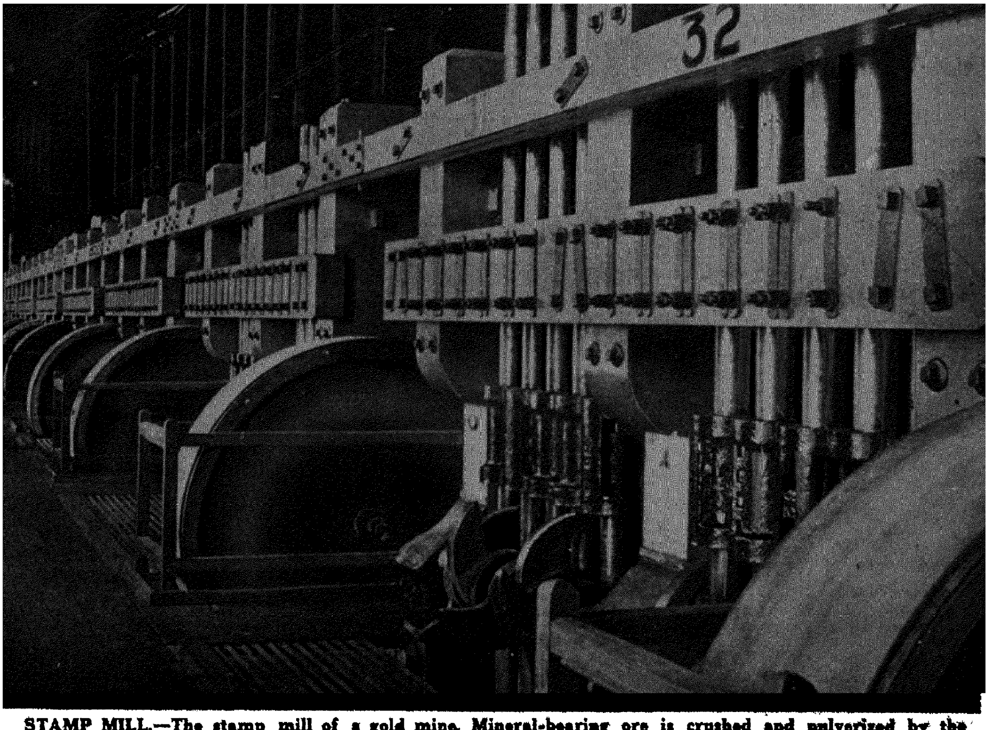
PERMANENT WAY.—The finished road-bed of a railway, with its tracks, bridges, signals, switches, etc., is the permanent way. This picture shows a section of a permanent way, with three pairs of roads. The two on the left are for steam trains and that on the right for electric trains.



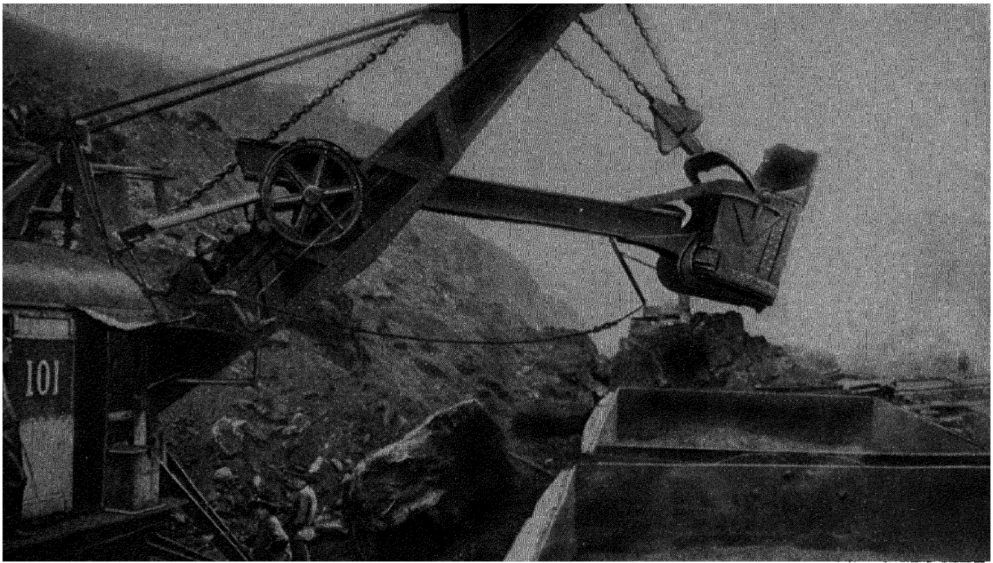
ROPEWAY.—An aerial rope on which men or materials can be transported is a ropeway. This picture shows the [illegible]-fold ropeway connecting the excavation of a Transvaal diamond mine with the surface.



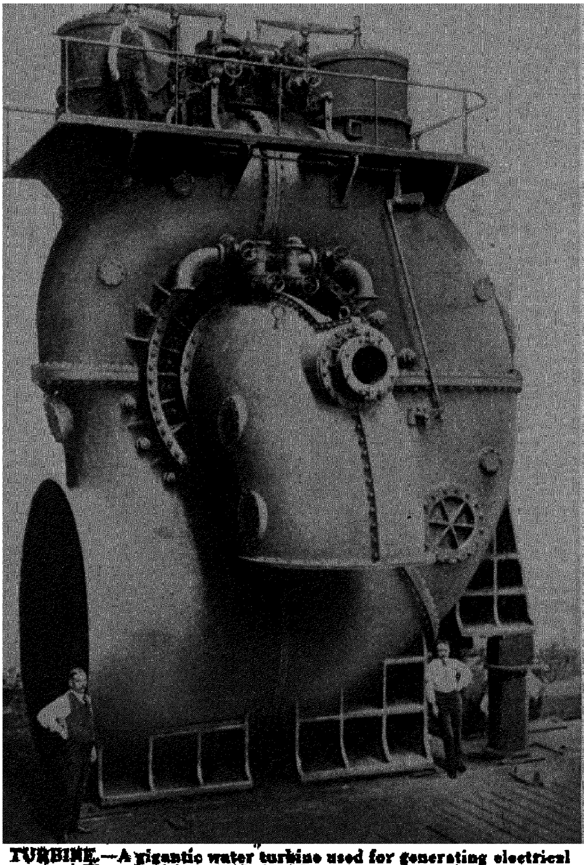
SLUICE.—By means of sliding gates or sluices the level of a body of water in a lock or behind a dam may be regulated. This picture shows water pouring through the open sluices of the great dam across the Nile at Assuan.



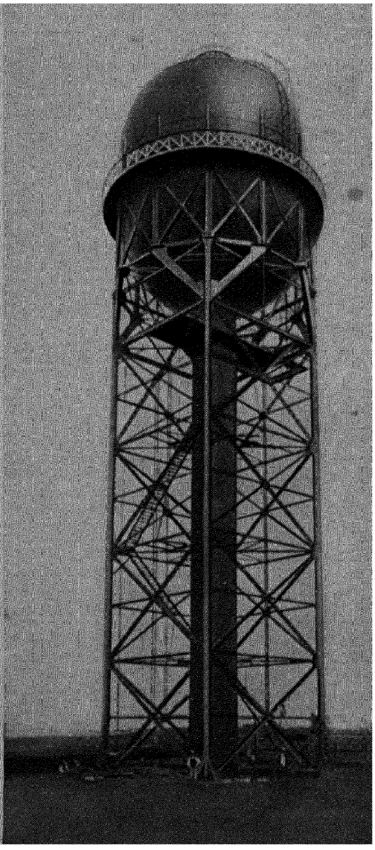
STAMP MILL.—The stamp mill of a gold mine. Mineral-bearing ore is crushed and pulverized by the heavy stamps or plungers, which, raised and let fall in succession by the action of cams, quickly reduce the ore to a powder, ready for treatment by other processes.



STEAM-NAVVY.—A steam-navvy, or excavating machine, nearly one hundred tons in weight, digging out rock in a cutting for the Panama Canal. Machines of a similar kind are used to dig out the beds for roads, railways, and docks, scooping up the earth or rock with a large bucket on the end of an arm.



TURBINE.—A gigantic water turbine used for generating electrical power. The wheel is provided with many vanes, and is turned by means of water pressure.



WATER TOWER.—Water is pumped up into an elevated tank such as this one, and descends by gravitation at high pressure.

(*Continued from page* 4800.)

lever. A balanced lever, like that of a weighing machine, is a **bascule.**

—. The name given to a bar of iron bent at one end and used as a lever is **crowbar.**

—. A lever or catch which checks the action of a mechanism is a **detent.**

— The point on which a lever turns or is supported, or one against which it is placed for a purchase, is a **fulcrum.**

—. The name given to a lever, cam, or projection on a machine moved by or moving another part intermittently is **tappet.**

—. The name given to a kind of jointed lever, shaped something like a knuckle, used in presses and punching machines to exert pressure at right angles, is **toggle.**

lining. The metal lining of a hole in which an axle turns is a **bush.**

liquid. A substance, such as a liquid or a gas, consisting of particles that move freely and yield to the slightest pressure is a **fluid.**

—. The science which deals with liquids in motion or under pressure is **hydraulics.**

—. The science which deals with liquids in motion or at rest is **hydrodynamics.**

—. The science which deals with the behaviour of liquids and gases moving under the action of force is **hydrokinetics.**

—. The science of using liquids as a source of power, or of moving liquids mechanically, is **hydromechanics.**

—. The principle that a force, however small, applied to an imprisoned body of liquid, can be made to balance another force, however great, is the **hydrostatic paradox.**

—. The science which deals with the pressure and equilibrium of liquids and gases at rest is **hydrostatics.**

lock. A lock in which the bolt has to be turned in each direction by a key and not by a handle is a **dead-lock.**

—. A lock with a spring bolt which can be drawn back on the inside of the door by a knob is a **drawback-lock.**

—. A lock which fits into a cavity hollowed out in the thickness of a door is a **mortise-lock.**

—. A lock secured to the surface of a door by screws and not inserted in a mortise is a **rim-lock.**

—. Names for a lock which snaps to automatically are **snap-lock** and **spring-lock.**

—. The box-shaped part of a lock which receives the bolt is the **staple.**

—. A projection inside a lock to prevent any key but the right one from turning is a **ward.**

—, waterway. The name given to the lower gate of a river or canal lock which may be opened to allow surplus water to pass is **flood-gate.**

locomotive. Names given to a locomotive for helping trains up steep gradients are **bank-engine** and **pusher-engine.**

—. The bar joining the wheels of a locomotive with the driving wheel is the **connecting rod.**

—. The name given to a strong wedge-shaped frame on a locomotive designed to throw cattle, etc., clear of the track is **cow-catcher.**

—. A name for a locomotive which has ten driving wheels coupled together is **decapod.**

—. Any wheel of a locomotive turned by the piston through a connecting rod is a **driving-wheel.**

—. The bogie truck at the front part of a locomotive is the **leading bogie truck.**

—. The carriage containing water and fuel attached to a locomotive is the **tender.**

—. Wheels of a locomotive situated behind the driving wheels are **trailing wheels.**

—. Names given to a hollow iron pillar with revolving arm and hose at the top, used to supply a locomotive with water, are **water crane** and **water pillar.**

loom. The name of a kind of loom for weaving figured fabrics is **Jacquard loom.**

lubricant. A name given to a thick lubricating grease for machinery is **dope.**

machine. Names given to the branch of science dealing with machinery are **applied mechanics** and **mechanology.**

—. The solid metal casting forming the bottom part of an engine or a heavy machine is a **base-plate.**

—. A canvas, leather, or balata band connecting pulleys on a shaft and a machine is a **belt.**

—. The name given to a device by which friction is applied to a running wheel in order to retard or stop its motion is **brake.**

—. The name given to a device on a machine which permits it to be connected or disconnected readily with a moving wheel or pulley, and so set in motion or stopped, is **clutch.**

—. A name for a guard fixed to a machine to keep the operator's hands, etc., from coming in contact with moving parts is **fence.**

—. A heavy wheel which by its inertia regulates the speed of a machine is a **fly-wheel.**

—. Any device for regulating automatically the speed of a machine is a **governor.**

—. Anything done by a machine is **mechanical.**

—. The construction of power engines and machinery generally is **mechanical engineering.**

—. The rate or capacity of a machine is its **power.**

—. The name given to a revolving drum or wheel on a machine or shaft, used to transmit power by means of a belt running over it, is **pulley.**

—. A machine in which the main moving part revolves is **rotary.**

—. Names for an elastic bar used as a spring in a machine such as a tilt hammer or jig saw are **spring pole** and **spring beam.**

—. The name given to a forked lever by which a moving belt is shifted from a fast to a loose pulley and vice versa is **striker.**

—, excavating. A name for an excavating machine used to deepen rivers, harbours, etc., or to remove accumulated mud or sand from their beds, is **dredger.**

—, —. A name for a powerful type of excavating machine worked by steam is **steam-navvy.**

—, glazing. A machine consisting of several heavy rollers, used to glaze linen, cloth, or paper is a **calender.**

—, hoisting. A machine for hoisting objects by winding a rope or chain on to a drum is a **crane.**

—, —. A name given to kinds of hoisting machine having an adjustable arm pivoted at its foot to a support is **derrick.**

—, —. Names for a machine used for hauling or hoisting, consisting of a cylinder fastened on an axle and turned by a crank to wind up a rope or chain are **windlass** and **winch.**

—, main beam. A name given to the main beam of a machine or to an axle or support on which a wheel revolves is **arbor.**

—, working parts. The wheels of a machine, etc., which work on one another by means of teeth, etc., are the **gears.**

mallet. Names given to a heavy kind of mallet used to drive pegs, stakes, or posts are **beetle** and **maul.**

measurement. The name given to a pair of compasses used for measuring diameters, etc., is **caliper.**

—. Names given to a graduated rule with one sliding and one fixed jaw, by means of which diameters may be measured are **caliper rule** and **caliper square.**

—. The name given to an instrument, of which there are many different types, for measuring objects in accordance with a specified standard is **gauge.**

—. A name for a carefully graduated instrument for measuring very small distances and angles is **micrometer.**

melting. A cup-shaped vessel, made to withstand great heat, in which solid substances are melted, is a **crucible.**

metal, sheet. The principal gauges to which wire and sheet metal are manufactured in Great Britain are the **British Imperial Standard Gauge (S.W.G.)** and the **Birmingham Wire Gauge (B.W.G.).**

metal-working A machine for rolling metal into thin sheets or strips is a **flatting mill.**

—. An instrument by means of which solder is applied to a surface is a **soldering iron.**

—. The joining of two metal surfaces by heat and blows or some other form of pressure is **welding.**

milling. A machine used in milling wheat to remove the husk and germ is a **degerminator.**

—. The name given to a kind of sieve for separating the fine white flour from the coarser parts of the grain is **flour-bolt** or **flour-dresser.**

mining. *See under section* Business, Commerce, and Industry.

mixer. A name for a machine used for mixing and shaking substances is **agitator.**

mortar. A name for mortar that will harden under water is **hydraulic mortar.**

motion. The rate of motion of a body or a point moving in an arc and measured by an angle, is the **angular velocity.**

—. A disk or curved plate which by means of a pin or projection imparts eccentric or alternating motion is a **cam.**

—. An arm bent at right angles used to change rotary into reciprocal motion is a **crank.**

—. A regular pause in the motion of a machine for some operation to be effected is a **dwell.**

—. A disk in a machine revolving on an axis which is not its centre, used to change circular movement into backwards-and-forwards movement, is an **eccentric.**

—. The resistance that a body meets with in moving over another is **friction.**

—. A piece in a machine that regulates its motion or acts as an indicator is a **guide-bar** or **guide-block.**

—. The science which treats of motion without regard to the forces producing it is **kinematics.**

—. The branch of dynamics which deals with the relation between motion and the force that produces it is **kinetics.**

—. A pinion that merely transmits motion between cogs geared on either side of it is a **lazy-pinion.**

—. A name for a pawl or projection on a part of a machine for converting reciprocating motion into rotary, and vice versa, is **pallet.**

—. A small hinged member used in conjunction with a ratchet to secure motion in one direction only is a **pawl.**

—. Motion from a centre outwards in a straight line is **radial motion.**

—. A mechanism consisting of a rack or toothed wheel, in conjunction with a pawl, by which motion in only one direction is permitted is a **ratchet.**

—. Motion backwards and forwards or up and down is **reciprocal** or **reciprocating.**

—. Motion in a straight line is **rectilinear.**

—. Motion of a part which turns on its axis is **rotary.**

—. The imparting of motion to a body without rotation is **translation.**

—. The extent, rate, or mode of motion of a part is its **travel.**

—, **transmission.** A name for the bands for transmitting a turning motion from an engine to a machine, or from one part of a machine to another, is **belting.**

—, —. Gear for transmitting motion from one shaft to another at an angle by means of bevel-wheels is **bevel-gear** or **bevel-gearing.**

—, —. *See also under* **gear,** *above.*

motive power. Any apparatus which imparts motive power, especially one other than a steam-engine, is a **motor.**

motor. The name given to a motor having a revolving wheel or drum driven by water pressure is **water-engine.**

—, electric. An electric motor which does not run in step with the machine that creates the current is **asynchronous.**

motor vehicle. A device which mixes an inflammable gas with a regulated amount of air for driving an internal combustion engine, as in a motor vehicle, is a **carburettor.**

—. The name given to the shaft that transmits power from the engine to the axle of a motor vehicle is **cardan shaft.**

—. A sloping board in front of the driver in a motor-car on which the gauges, indicators, switches, etc., are placed is a **dash-board.**

—. The name given to a mechanism by which all four brakes of a motor vehicle are simultaneously brought into action, through hydraulic or other power, when the brake pedal is depressed, is **servo-mechanism.**

—. The name given to the sprocket axle of a chain-driven motor vehicle is **transversal.**

—. *See also under* **brake, gear,** *and* **engine,** internal combustion, *above.*

movement. The moving of a body so that all parts follow the same direction is **translation.**

—, intermittent. The name given to a lever, cam, or projection on a machine that is moved by or moves another part intermittently is **tappet.**

—, sideways. Sideways movement of a tool or part of a machine is **traverse.**

nail The name of a tool used to withdraw nails, grasp objects, etc., is **pincers.**

navvy. Names given to a power-driven digging machine used to excavate material from a road-bed or railway cutting are **mechanical shovel** and **mechanical navvy.**

oil. A name for a narrow boring down to a point where oil or water pressure is so great that the liquid rises to the surface is **Artesian bore.**

oil-well. The name given to a tall, four-sided framework used in drilling an oil-well is **derrick.**

ore, crushing. A machine used to crush ore to a powder before extracting the metal from it is a **stamp-mill.**

paddle-wheel. The name for each of the boards of a water-wheel or paddle-wheel is **float-board.**

pattern. The name given to a pattern used as a guide in marking out wood and metal is **templet.**

pause, in motion A regular pause in the motion of a machine for some operation to be effected is a **dwell.**

pawl. A name for a pawl or projection on a part of a machine for converting reciprocating motion into rotary, and vice versa, is **pallet.**

photograph. The name of an electrical apparatus for reproducing photographs at a distance is **telephote.**

pier. A pier or jetty that rises and falls with the tide is a **floating pier** or **floating jetty.**

pile. The name given to a kind of interlocking, flat steel pile, driven close to others to form a compact sheet or wall to shut out water, is **sheet-pile.**

pin, bearing. A name for an iron pin at the end of a wooden shaft on which it pivots is **gudgeon.**

pinion. A pinion which merely transmits motion between cogs geared on either side of it is a **lazy-pinion.**

pipe. A pipe through which the spent steam, gas, etc., from an engine pass into the air is the **exhaust pipe.**

—. A pipe carrying water to the boilers of a steam-engine is a **feed pipe**

pipe. One of the principal pipes of a system supplying water or gas is a **main.**

— A name for a pipe with many branches for conducting steam, exhaust gases, etc., is **manifold.**

—. A pipe carrying water from a supply channel down to a water-turbine is a **penstock.**

—. A body of water retained by siphonage in the bend of a pipe to prevent air or gas passing through is a **water-seal.**

piston. The pin connecting the piston rod of an engine with the connecting rod is a **gudgeon.**

—. An engine which derives its motion from the moving to and fro of a piston is a **reciprocating engine.**

—. A name for a chamber packed with material to prevent the escape of steam, etc., through which a piston-rod passes is **stuffing-box.**

plan. One who makes plans, mechanical drawings, etc., is a **draughtsman.**

plane. The name given to a kind of plane having the cutter set close to the front edge is **bull-nose plane.**

—. The name given to a carpenter's plane longer than a jack plane and shorter than a jointing plane is **fore plane.**

—. The name given to a long type of carpenter's plane used to true the edges of boards which are to be joined edge to edge is **jointing plane.**

—. The name given to a kind of plane used for making or trueing rabbets, etc., in which the cutter is flush with the sides, is **rabbet plane.**

—. Names of planes used for trueing or smoothing wood are **smoothing plane, jack plane,** and **trying plane.**

pole, electric. That pole of an electric battery, etc., having the lower potential, towards which the current flows, is the **negative pole.**

—, —. That pole of an electric battery, etc., having the higher potential, from which the current flows, is the **positive pole.**

potential. Difference of potential between the poles of a source of electricity measured or expressed in volts is **voltage.**

power. The name given to any mechanical apparatus for using or applying power is **machine.**

—, mechanical. The names of the three primary mechanical powers are **lever, inclined plane,** and **pulley.**

—, —. The names of the three secondary mechanical powers, derived from the primary powers, are **wheel-and-axle, wedge,** and **screw.**

press. A press worked by water power is an **hydraulic press.**

—. A name for the piston of an hydraulic press is **ram.**

pressure. When the pressure of steam is more than fifty pounds to the square inch it is at **high pressure.**

—, electrical. Difference of pressure between the poles of an electrical apparatus is **potential difference** or **potential.**

—, —. The unit by which electrical pressure is measured is the **volt.**

pressure-gauge. A name for a pressure-gauge is **manometer.**

projectile. The curved path taken in the air by a projectile or by a comet through space is its **trajectory.**

protective device, electrical. A piece of wire which melts readily and so interrupts the electric current in a circuit when the current exceeds a predetermined strength is a **fuse.**

pull. An instrument for measuring the pull required to move vehicles over various kinds of surface is a **peirameter.**

pump. A name for an independent pump for feeding a boiler with water is **donkey-pump.**

— A pump, working under pressure, for supplying the boiler of a steam engine with water is a **feed-pump.**

pump. A pump that lifts water and ejects it under pressure is a **force-pump.**

—. A pump which sucks up water and allows it to escape by gravity is a **lift-pump.**

—. The name for the circular plate or plunger fitting closely in the cylinder of a pump is **piston.**

—. The name of a kind of vacuum-pump is **pulsometer.**

pumping station. An upright pipe in a pumping station which serves as a buffer and absorbs changes in pressure is a **stand-pipe.**

purchase. A name for a simple purchase, consisting of a rope sling, for raising or lowering a round object is **parbuckle.**

railway. The post marking the beginning and end of a railway incline is a **gradient post.**

—. A name for a movable ticket barrier controlling entrance to or exit from a railway platform is **passimeter.**

—. The finished bed and track of a railway constitute the **permanent way.**

—. A man employed to keep in order the permanent way of a railway is a **plate-layer.**

—. The general name for all the wheeled vehicles on a railway is **rolling stock.**

—. A tunnel-like structure of timber erected over a railway to protect the track from heavy snowfalls is a **snow-shed.**

—. A circular platform capable of being rotated, and bearing a short length of railway track, by means of which a locomotive can be transferred to any of several lines, or reversed in position, is a **turn-table.**

—, carriage. A frame with two or three pairs of wheels fastened by a pivot below a railway carriage or locomotive, to enable it to pass easily round a curve, is a **bogie.**

—, —. A railway carriage with a passage from one end to the other is a **corridor carriage,** or, in America, a **vestibule car.**

—, —. A double-ended screw with links at each end, or a chain and hook, used to connect railway carriages, is a **coupling.**

—, —. The name for a roomy and commodious type of railway carriage without the usual compartments, used as a saloon, dining, or sleeping car, is **Pullman car.**

—, coupling. A kind of extra coupling used on railway wagons as a safety device is a **chain-coupling.**

—, —. A name for the couplings of railway carriages is **draw-gear.**

—, kind. A railway having an overhead rail from which carriages are suspended is an **aerial railway** or **suspension railway.**

—, —. A mountain railway worked by a cable, which passes round a stationary drum at the top, and on which two carriages ascend and descend alternately, is a **funicular railway.**

—, —. A railway with light rolling stock running on a narrow-gauge track is a **light railway.**

—, —. A name for a railway with a track consisting of a single rail is **monorail.**

—, —. The name of a kind of mountain railway on which the train is furnished with cog-wheels driven by the locomotive, which fit into a rack between the rails, is **rack railway.**

—, —. A kind of railway used in mountainous districts, in which single carriages are hauled or propelled up and down inclines through the air, hanging from a fixed cable, is a **rope-way.**

—, —. A name for a kind of underground railway which consists of two tunnels of circular section lined with iron, for trains running in opposite directions, is **tube.**

—, rails. An iron block used for keeping railway lines in position is a **chair.**

—, —. The iron rails of railways that bear the wheels of rolling stock on their edges are **edge rails.**

railway, rails. A name given to a joint connecting the rails of a railway track is a **fish-joint.**

—, —. Each of the two flat plates of metal joining the ends of rails together in line is a **fish-plate.**

—, —. A name for the space (actually four feet eight and a half inches) between the rails of a railway track is **four-foot way.**

—, —. A rail fixed on the outside of a railway line at curves and points to guard against the derailment of trains is a **guard-rail.**

—, —. A name for each of the wooden beams or other supports under the rails of a railway is **sleeper.**

—, —. A name for a longitudinal sleeper sometimes used instead of cross-sleepers beneath rails on bridges is **stringer.**

—, shunting. A name for a number of parallel tracks for shunting in a railway goods-yard is **grid-iron.**

—, —. A name given to a small locomotive used for shunting is **pony-engine.**

—, signals. A system of railway signalling by which the line is divided into sections and no two trains are allowed on the same section at the same time is the **block system.**

—, —. A signal reached before the home-signal, and indicating whether there is danger or not, is a **distance-signal.**

—, —. A signal placed at the beginning of a block or section of a railway line to show whether it is clear or not is a **home-signal.**

—, —. The system by which railway points and signals are linked and connected together for safe working is the **interlocking system.**

—, station. A railway station at which trains stop only when signalled is a **flag station.**

—, —. A small railway station without offices or staff is a **halt.**

—, —. A railway station at the end of a line is a **terminus.**

—, tank. A tank carried on a locomotive or tender to supply the boiler with water is a **feed-tank.**

—, —. A long shallow tank or trough in the track of a railway, from which a moving engine scoops up water, is a **feed-trough** or **track-tank.**

—, track. The broken stone, slag, gravel, and cinders used to form a bed for a railway track are **ballast.**

— —. The gauge of a railway track which exceeds the usual measurement of fifty-six and a half inches is a **broad gauge.**

—, —. The gauge of a railway track less than fifty-six inches and a half across is **narrow gauge.**

—, —. A short railway track connected by two branches to another track, and used for reversing the position of a locomotive, is a **Y track.**

ratchet. A small hinged catch in a machine, which engages with a ratchet to secure motion in one direction only, is a **pawl.**

resistance, electrical. A substance, such as one used as an insulator, which offers a high resistance to the passage of an electric current is a **dielectric.**

—, —. The opposition which a resistance offers to an alternating electric current is **impedance.**

—, —. A material which offers a very high resistance to the passage of the electric current is an **insulator.**

—, —. The name given to a kind of electrical resistance which can be varied in strength is **rheostat.**

rest. The property by which an inanimate body remains at rest, or continues to move in a straight line unless acted upon by some outside force, is **inertia.**

reversing gear. The kind of reversing gear generally used in locomotive engines and steam winding gear is Stephenson's **link-motion.**

right angle. The name of a carpenter's tool used to set out lines at right angles is **try-square**

road. A kind of bituminous concrete used to form a layer below the surface layer of a road is **binder.**

—. A crosswise convex curve of a road's surface, used to give good drainage, is a **camber.**

—. The construction of roads, bridges, and similar works of public utility is **civil engineering.**

—. A name for the solid foundation used in road-making, composed of broken stones, brickbats, etc., is **hard core.**

—. The name of a kind of road surface made with broken stone rolled in layers is **macadam.**

—. A name for broken stone used in road-making is **metal** or **metalling.**

—, kind. A wide road specially intended for long-distance traffic is an **arterial road.**

—, —. A raised road or path over marshy or low-lying land is a **causeway.**

—, —. A road of which the surface consists of rounded stones packed together is a **cobbled road.**

—, —. A kind of road made of logs or tree trunks laid crosswise is a **log road** or **corduroy road.**

rod. A name for the forked end of a rod, used to form a connexion in machinery by means of a pin running across the fork, is **fork-head.**

roller. The name for a metal box or cradle supporting the end of a roller or revolving shaft is **plummer block.**

rope. The name given to a rope or wire more than ten inches round is **cable.**

—, tension. An apparatus that depends on the tension of a rope or cable is **funicular.**

rotation. An instrument consisting of a rapidly revolving heavy-rimmed disk supported freely by gimbals, which maintains the same axis of rotation while it revolves at the same speed, is a **gyroscope.**

—. An instrument invented by Lord Kelvin for illustrating the laws of rotation is a **gyrostat.**

rule. Names given to a kind of rule with sliding jaws, used to measure internal or external diameters, are **calliper rule** and **calliper gauge.**

—. A rule or other graduated instrument for measuring or calculating is a **scale.**

running-gear. The foremost running-gear of a vehicle is the **fore-carriage.**

saw. An endless band of steel with teeth cut in one edge, running over two large pulleys, used for cutting either wood or metal, is a **band-saw.**

—. Names of kinds of saw used to cut curved outlines are **bow-saw** and **compass-saw.**

—. The name of a kind of saw with teeth adapted for cutting across the grain is **cross-cut saw.**

—. A saw with a thin narrow blade stretched in a frame is a **frame-saw.**

—. A very narrow saw stretched in a frame and used for cutting thin wood into ornamental patterns is a **fret-saw.**

—. The name of a saw used by a carpenter for general purposes is **hand-saw.**

—. The name of a kind of machine saw used to cut out curves is **jig-saw.**

—. The name of a kind of saw used for cutting key-holes and for like purposes is **pad-saw.**

—. The name of a kind of saw with large teeth used to cut wood in the direction of the grain is **rip-saw.**

—. The name of a saw stiffened with a metal back and having fine-cut teeth is **tenon-saw.**

scale A small sliding scale on a rule for measuring fractional distances is a **vernier.**

screw. A grooved hole for taking the head of a wood screw is a **countersink.**

—. A curve having a form like the thread of a screw is a **helix.**

screw-cutting. A rod used in screw-cutting, having a socket in the middle for the die and two long handles by which it is turned, is a **die-stock**

screw-propeller. A name for each blade of a screw-propeller is **vane.**

sea, encroachment. A timber framework or low wall run out from a beach to stop the encroachment of the sea is a **groyne.**

sea-wall. The timber work along the face of a sea-wall is the **wharfing.**

shaft. A mine shaft used in emergency only is an **escape shaft.**

—. A shaft for light or ventilation is a **funnel.**

—, revolving. A device which changes the turning movement of a shaft is a **cam.**

—, —. A shaft which transmits motion from a main shaft to a machine is a **counter-shaft.**

—, —. A bend in a revolving shaft or a bent arm at the end of it by which the shaft is turned is a **crank.**

—, —. A name for a metal box or cradle supporting the end of a revolving shaft or roller is **plummer block.**

shipbuilding. A device used in a shipyard for transferring curves in the design of a ship under construction from one place to another is a **banjo-frame.**

—. An artificial basin from which water can be pumped out for repairing and building ships is a **dry dock.**

— A name for a large chamber in a shipyard, on the floor of which full-sized patterns or drawings of a ship's frames and members are laid out is **mould-loft.**

—. The name given to any of the timbers curving outwards and upwards from either side of the keel of a ship, to which the planking is attached is **rib.**

— The name of a long narrow strip of timber used to hold the ribs of a ship in position is **ribband.**

— The name given to an extra strengthening timber in a ship's framework is **rider.**

— A name for the collective dimensions of the plates, flooring, or any other parts of a ship is **scantling**

shipping. The name given to an artificial basin to receive shipping, generally one in which a constant level of water can be maintained independently of tidal variations, is **dock.**

—. *See also section* Army, Navy, Air Force, and Nautical.

shock, reduction. A mechanical device attached to machinery for lessening or deadening the shock when parts strike each other is a **buffer.**

shovel. Names given to a power-driven digging machine for excavating material from a road bed or railway cutting are **mechanical shovel** and **mechanical navvy.**

slope. A receding slope from the ground upwards given to a wall is a **batter**

sluice. A name for a sluice for returning water to a channel after a flood is **clough.**

—. A groove consisting of two long pieces of timber in which a sluice gate moves is a **coulisse.**

—. A sluice which regulates the supply of water running to a water-wheel is a **penstock.**

soldering. A tube through which air or some other gas is blown into a flame to increase the heat in soldering, etc., is a **blowpipe.**

—. Fluxes in common use for soldering are **borax, resin, spirits of salts,** and **tallow.**

— A kind of soldering with an alloy of brass and zinc is **brazing.**

—. A soldering iron with a copper point is a **copper-bit.**

—. A substance spread over the surface of a metal to be soldered to promote fusion and prevent oxidization is a **flux.**

—. The usual kinds of soldering are **soft soldering, hard soldering,** and **silver soldering.**

sound. The name given to an apparatus for deciding the direction of sounds coming through water is **hydrophone.**

spade. A kind of strong curved spade used to dig drains is a **graft.**

speed. A name for an instrument for recording the speed of a vehicle, etc., and usually containing a separate mechanism for recording the distance travelled, is **speedometer**

spinning. The pin of a spinning wheel on which the thread is wound, or the pin which carries a bobbin in a spinning machine, is a **spindle.**

square. The name of a carpenter's tool used to test and set out mitres is **mitre-square.**

—. The name of a carpenter's tool used to set out lines at right angles is **try-square.**

staircase. A name for a moving staircase is **escalator.**

stamping. A metal block used in embossing, cutting, or shaping is a **die.**

standard. A device that tests and regulates the size and shape of a mechanical tool, part, or fitting according to a fixed standard is a **gauge.**

steam. A large vessel of riveted wrought-iron plates and tubes in which steam is raised under pressure is a **boiler.**

—. A name for a steam-gauge or instrument for measuring the pressure of steam in a boiler is **manometer.**

—. A hollow casting round a steam cylinder, through which steam is passed to keep the cylinder hot, is a **steam jacket.**

—, pressure. Steam pressure which does not allow the passing of heat is **adiabatic.**

steam-engine. *See under* **engine,** *above.*

steel, retort. The name given to an iron retort used in making Bessemer steel is **converter.**

strain. A device for distributing the strain equally among the parts of a machine is an **equalizer.**

—. The kind of sideways strain such as that on a bolt passing through two parts which slide over one another is **shear.**

—. The name of a device for measuring strains in buildings by means of the tones given out by a wire subjected to the same strain is **taseometer.**

strength. The ratio of the greatest load a structure is likely to bear to its probable breaking load is the **factor of safety.**

stress. In mechanics, the term for a stress drawing or tending to draw apart the particles forming a body is **tension.**

submarine, boat. A horizontal rudder projecting from the side of a submarine boat and used to steer it up or down is a **hydrovane.**

—, telegraph. The name of a delicate instrument used for receiving messages sent through a submarine cable is **siphon recorder.**

surface. An instrument for measuring the pull required to move vehicles over various kinds of surface is a **pelrameter**

tap. An automatic tap in a boiler or cistern in which a floating ball attached to a lever serves to turn the water off and on is a **ball-cock.**

telegraphy. The system of telegraphy by which many messages can be sent in either direction along the same wire at the same time is the **multiplex system** or **multiple system.**

—. A name for an apparatus for transmitting facsimiles of writing, photographs, etc., by means of the telegraph is **photo-telegraph.**

—. A system of telegraphy by which a single circuit may be used for four separate messages simultaneously is a **quadruplex system.**

—. A device in telegraphy which allows communications to be read by sound alone is a **sounder.**

—. The name of a kind of telegraphic apparatus which actuates a distant type-printing machine is **telescriptor.**

—. A leakage of current from one telegraph wire to another, caused by wet weather, is a **weather-contact** or **weather-cross.**

telephone. A kind of telephone used to find out whether two metal parts of a machine touch each other is a **detectophone.**

telephone. The name of a powerful form of telephone receiver invented by Edison in 1878 is **motograph.**

—. A name for an apparatus attached to a telegraph wire and allowing a telephonic conversation to be made without interfering with the telegraphic transmission is **phonopore.**

tool. A name for a set of tools, such as bits, used for a particular purpose, is **gang.**

—. Sideways movement of a tool or part of a machine is **traverse.**

—, boring. The name of a tool for boring large holes in wood is **auger.**

—, —. The name given to the tool inserted into a hand-brace to bore a hole in wood is **bit.**

—, —. The name of a handled tool with a small chisel-shaped end used to bore holes in wood is **bradawl.**

—, —. The name of a tapering angular tool used to enlarge holes in metal, etc., is **broach.**

—, —. The name of a tool used for making or enlarging a hole to take the head of a screw is **countersink.**

—, —. The name given to a flat, fluted, or grooved tool used in making holes in metal or wood is **drill.**

—, —. The name of a tool with a cross-handle and a screw point used for boring holes in wood is **gimlet.**

—, —. The name of a cranked tool for boring holes in wood or metal is **hand-brace.**

—, —. The names of geared tools, turned by a handle, used to bore holes in metal or wood are **hand-drill** and **breast-drill.**

—, —. The name of a tapering or cylindrical tool used to enlarge holes in metal is **reamer.**

—, bricklayer's. *See under* **bricklaying,** *above.*

—, clamping. The name of a tool having movable jaws which may be brought together to hold an object securely is **vice.**

—, compositor's. The name given to the adjustable box in which type is set up by hand is **composing stick.**

—, cutting. The name of a kind of plane for cutting grooves or rabbets, especially on the sash-bars of windows, is **fillister.**

—, —. The name of the tool used by a carpenter to cut rectangular holes in wood is **firmer chisel.**

—, —. The name of a tool used to cut or shape hollows is **gouge.**

—, —. The name of a tool used in shaping or paring wood is **paring chisel.**

—, —. The name of a tool used in different forms for truing, smoothing, or shaping wood is **plane.**

—, —. The name of a cutting implement having a flat, circular, or ribbon-like blade furnished with a sharpened, serrated edge, is **saw.**

—, —. The name of a tool with scissor-like blades, used to cut metal bars and plates, is **shears.**

—, engraving. The name of a pointed steel tool used for engraving on copper is **burin.**

—, —. A steel tool tipped with a diamond splinter, and used by etchers, engravers, etc., is a **diamond point.**

—, —. The name of a steel tool, angular in section, used in engraving is **graver.**

—, grooving. The name of a kind of plane for cutting grooves is **plough.**

—, metal-working. The name given to a solid mass of iron on which metal objects are hammered, forged, or shaped is **anvil.**

—, —. The name given to a pincer-like tool used in grasping, bending, or cutting metal is **pliers.**

—, piercing. The name of a tool used to pierce holes in leather, etc., is **awl.**

—, shaping. Names of cutting tools used for shaping wood are **draw-knife** and **spokeshave.**

—, smoothing. The name of a file-like implement for smoothing wood, etc., is **rasp.**

tool, smoothing. The name of a steel tool used for smoothing the surface of wood **is scraper.**

—, splitting. A steel wedge on a wooden handle for splitting stone, ore, etc., is a **gad.**

—. *See also under* **axe, chisel, hammer, plane,** *and* **saw,** *above.*

tooth. The name given to an extra tooth on a cog-wheel which prevents the number of teeth on one wheel being a multiple of that on another is **hunting-cog.**

toothed bar. A toothed bar engaging with a gear-wheel or worm is a **rack.**

transformer, electrical. In an electrical transformer the coil or winding fed from the source of supply is the **primary coil** or **primary winding.**

transport, cable. The name of a system of transport for goods by electric motors hung from and running along cables is **telpherage.**

truck. A truck or frame, usually with two pairs of wheels, pivoted below the front of a railway locomotive or the front or rear of a railway carriage is a **bogie** or **bogey.**

turbine. A pipe carrying water from a supply channel down to a water-turbine is a **penstock.**

twist. The force with which a twisted bar or wire tends to return to its untwisted state is **torsion.**

type-setting. The name given to the adjustable box in which printing type is set up by hand is **composing stick.**

unit, electric. The unit of electric current strength is the **ampère,** the quantitative unit being the **ampère hour.**

—, —. The amount of current given by one ampère in one second is a **coulomb.**

—, —. Units used to measure the capacity of an electric condenser are the **farad,** and its one-millionth part the **microfarad.**

—, —. The unit of inductance is the **henry,** its millionth part being the **microhenry.**

—, —. Electric frequency is measured by the unit of one thousand cycles, the **kilocycle.**

—, —. The unit of electric power equivalent to 1,000 watts is the **kilowatt,** energy being measured by the **kilowatt hour.**

—, —. The unit of measurement for electric resistance is the **ohm,** one million ohms being a **megohm.**

—, —. The unit by which electric pressure is measured is the **volt.**

—, —. The units by which electric power is measured are the **watt,** and its thousandfold multiple the **kilowatt.**

—, force. The unit of force, equal to the amount that, acting for one second on a mass of one gramme, gives it a velocity of one centimetre a second, is the **dyne.**

—, work. The unit of work done in overcoming the resistance of a dyne through a centimetre of space is the **erg.**

valve. A ball of gun-metal, etc., moving up and down in a seating and acting as a valve in a pump is a **ball-valve.**

—. A valve on an internal combustion engine which opens to allow the escape of spent gases is an **exhaust-valve.**

—. A valve that admits of passage in four directions is a **four-way valve.**

—. A valve hung by a hinge and opening by its own weight is a **hanging-valve.**

—. A valve fitted to a steam cylinder for the escape of air, or to the air vessel of a pump, is a **snifting-valve.**

—, wireless. A name for the thread raised to incandescence in an electric light bulb or wireless valve is **filament.**

vehicle. A name for a vehicle propelled by power transmitted mechanically from the hands of the rider to the driving wheels is **manumotor.**

—. A name for a vehicle worked by the foot or feet is **pedomotor.**

vehicle. An instrument for measuring the pull required to move vehicles over various kinds of surface is a **pelrameter.**

velocity. The branch of dynamics which considers velocity or the motion of bodies is **kinematics.**

—. A name for an instrument for recording the velocity or speed of a vehicle, etc., is **speedometer.**

—. An instrument for measuring velocity, especially of inanimate things, is a **velocimeter.**

vibration. The greatest departure of a vibrating body from its position when at rest is the **amplitude of vibration.**

— The name for a point of rest in a vibrating body is **node.**

vice. A strip of lead for lining the jaws of a vice is a **clam.**

walking. An instrument for recording the number of steps made during a walk and for showing the distance walked is a **pedometer.**

wall. A receding slope from the ground upwards given to a wall is a **batter.**

watch. The name given to the mechanism in a watch or clock for checking and regulating the movement of the wheels is **escapement.**

—. The name given to the wheel in a clock that moves the pendulum, or one in a watch that moves the balance wheel, is **escape wheel** or **'scape wheel.**

—. A name for the stud in which the pivot of the balance wheel of a watch turns is **potence.**

—. The name of a machine used to decorate the backs of watches with a network of curved lines crossing one another is **rose-engine.**

—. A name given to a keyless watch is **stem-winder.**

water. A name for an artificial channel raised on pillars or arches for conveying water is **aqueduct.**

—. A name for a narrow boring down to a point where water or oil pressure is so great that the liquid rises to the surface, is **artesian bore.**

—. A large watertight steel case or chamber used for laying foundations under water is a **caisson.**

— A temporary wall or dam surrounding a spot where a pier or foundation is built up from the bed of a body of water is a **coffer dam.**

—. The weight of an amount of water displaced by a floating body which equals the weight of the floating body at rest is the body's **displacement.**

—. The supply of water and water-power is **hydraulic engineering.**

— A name for mortar that will harden under water is **hydraulic mortar.**

—. The name of a whirling apparatus used to extract water from objects is **hydro-extractor.**

—. The science which deals with the properties of water and the laws that govern its behaviour is **hydrology.**

—. A kind of electrical device for detecting the presence of water is the **hydrostat.**

—. The principle that a force, however small, applied to an imprisoned body of water or other liquid, can be made to balance another force, however great, is the **hydrostatic paradox.**

—. A name for a device in hydraulics for regulating the flow of water is **module.**

—. The name for a hydraulic apparatus for raising water is **ram.**

—, flow. A gate built for controlling the flow of water is a **water-gate.**

—, measuring. A device by means of which water is measured is a **water-meter.**

—, supply. A tower carrying a large tank for the supply of water under pressure to buildings in the neighbourhood is a **water-tower.**

—, —. A place where water is collected, filtered, and pumped by machinery for the supply of a district is a **water-works.**

water-channel. The name given to a water-channel with a sliding gate or valve for controlling the level of the water is **sluice.**

watercourse. Names for a dam built across a watercourse to raise its water level are **barrage** and **weir.**

water-mill. *See under* **water-wheel,** *below.*

waterway. An enclosure on a waterway, shut off by sluice-gates, by means of which boats are raised or lowered is a **lock.**

water-wheel. A name for a float-board of an undershot water-wheel is **awe.**

—. A name for a hatch releasing water in the conduit conveying water to a mill or water-wheel is **flash-board.**

—. Each of the buckets or paddles of a water-wheel or a paddle-wheel is a **float-board.**

—. A water-wheel driven by water flowing over it is **overshot.**

—. The channel through which water reaches a water-wheel is a **race-way.**

—. A water-wheel driven by water flowing beneath it is **undershot.**

way, inclined. An inclined way connecting two levels is a **ramp.**

weighing. The name of a platform on the level of a road or railway, on which a vehicle can be weighed, is **weigh-bridge.**

weight. A weight placed on each driving wheel of a locomotive to ensure perfect balance is a **balance-weight.**

—. The weight of the amount of water displaced by a ship when entering the water, and which equals the weight of the ship, is the **ship's displacement.**

well. A well having a narrow bore up which water rises by its own pressure to the surface is an **artesian bore** or **artesian well.**

—. A well sunk to carry off surface-water is a **dumb well.**

—. A name for a large tubular bit used for boring wells through soft or clayey ground is **miser.**

—. The top of a well, or a structure built over it, is a **well-head.**

wheel, kind. A toothed wheel whose axis forms an angle with that of a similar wheel is a **bevel-wheel.**

—, —. A toothless wheel that drives another by contact of bristles, cloth or leather is a **brush-wheel.**

—, —. A toothed wheel which has the teeth projecting parallel to the axis instead of radially is a **contrate-wheel** or **crown-wheel.**

—, —. A heavy wheel attached to machinery to regulate speed or accumulate power is a **fly-wheel.**

—, —. A wheel that rotates another wheel—or is itself rotated—by friction instead of by cogs, etc., is a **friction-wheel.**

—, —. A wheel used in order to transmit motion in the same direction from one wheel to another is an **idler-wheel.**

—, —. A pair of wheels set at right angles, with teeth set at half a right angle, are **mitre-wheels.**

—, —. A name for a small toothed wheel in gear with a larger one is **pinion.**

—, —. A name for a kind of wheel which transmits motion at right angles by means of pins set at right angles to its face is **pin-wheel.**

—, —. A kind of toothed wheel in which the teeth fit in the links of a chain is a **sprocket-wheel,** and its teeth are **sprockets.**

—, —. A gear-wheel with teeth projecting radially from its edge is a **spur-wheel.**

—, —. The name given to a vaned wheel or drum, enclosed in a casing and made to revolve by the impact or reaction of a flow of water, air, or steam, is **turbine.**

—, —. A name for a toothed wheel the teeth of which engage with a revolving spiral in a worm-gear is **worm-wheel.**

wheel, part. The pin or shaft on which a wheel works, or which turns with the wheel in sockets or bearings, is the **axle.**

—, —. A tooth on the rim of a wheel or on a rack for giving motion to another wheel or rack which it engages is a **cog.**

—, —. A projecting flat rim to guide or strengthen a wheel or to confine a wheel to a rail is a **flange.**

—, —. The name given to a rectangular key fitting in a slot in a wheel and shaft to fasten them together is **spline**

—, —. The name given to that part of a spokeless wheel which lies between hub and rim is **web.**

—, potter's. A name for the table of a potter's wheel is **churn.**

—, revolutions. An instrument used to measure the number of times a wheel turns is a **cyclometer.**

wheel, revolutions The name of an instrument used to show the distance travelled by a road wheel is **hodometer.**

—. *See also under* **gear,** *above.*

windmill. Each of the blades of a windmill is a **vane.**

wire. The principal gauges to which wire is manufactured in Great Britain are the **British Imperial Standard Gauge (S.W.G.)** and the **Birmingham Wire Gauge (B.W.G.).**

—. Pliant, insulated wire, used in electrical work is **flex.**

—. Wire which is drawn when cold to secure the required thickness is said to be **hard-drawn.**

—. The name of a pincer-like tool used in various forms for holding, bending, or cutting wire is **pliers.**

work, unit. *See under* **unit,** *above.*

writing, distant. The name of an electrical device for transmitting words and designs to a distance is **telautograph.**

FOODS AND BEVERAGES

absinthe. The name of a herb with a bitter taste, used to flavour absinthe, is **wormwood.**

agave. The name of a drink made in Central America from the sap of an agave is **pulque.**

ale. The name given to a special brew of ale prepared for the audit day of a college at certain English universities is **audit ale.**

—, spiced. A kind of spiced ale drunk at the feast bearing the same name was **wassail.**

bacon. A side of bacon is a **flitch.**

—. The lower end of a flitch of bacon, including the hind leg, is a **gammon.**

—. The lean part of the loin of a bacon pig is the **griskin.**

—. To insert strips of bacon into meat before cooking is to **lard.**

ball. The name of a seasoned ball of meat or fish made up in a kind of paste, usually served as an entrée, is **quenelle.**

—. The name of a fried ball of minced meat or fish and bread-crumbs is **rissole.**

beer. A name for a kind of strong beer brewed in East Anglia is **nog.**

—. A name for a beverage made of hot beer mixed with gin, spices, and sugar is **purl.**

—, light. The name of a kind of light beer first made in Germany is **lager.**

bird's nest, edible. The kind of swift which builds nests of a glutinous substance, made into soup by the Chinese, is the **salangane.**

biscuit. The name for a thin crisp kind of biscuit, as well as the general name for biscuits in the U.S.A., is **cracker.**

—. The name of a kind of fancy biscuit made up of fine powdery crumbs is **cracknel**

—. The name of a round sweet biscuit made of flour, pounded almonds, white of egg, and sugar is **macaroon.**

—. The name of a crisp salted biscuit made of wheat-flour, a favourite relish in Germany, is **pretzel.**

bread. The name given in the southern states of the U.S.A. to any bread or biscuit made from maize-flour is **pone.**

—. A name for each of the small pieces of fried bread or toast served with mince or with soup is **sippet.**

—, German. The name of a kind of bread made in Germany from wholemeal rye is **pumpernickel**

—. Indian. The Anglo-Indian name for a cake of unleavened bread, usually made of coarse wheaten flour patted flat and baked on a griddle, is **chupatti.**

butter. A butter made from buffalo milk clarified to resemble oil, used by the natives of India and China, is **ghee**

cabbage. The name of a German dish of pickled cabbage is **sauerkraut.**

cake. A cake made of spiced pastry filled with mincemeat called after the town in Oxfordshire where it has long been made is a **Banbury cake.**

—. The name used in Scotland and Northern England for a flat round or oval cake made of pease-meal or barley-meal and baked on an iron plate is **bannock.**

—. The name of a kind of sweet finger-shaped iced cake containing cream or custard is **éclair.**

—. A thin batter cake stamped with a honeycomb pattern from the iron plates between which it is baked is a **gofer.**

—. The name of a small crisp cake made of flour, sugar, eggs, and butter, and flavoured with lemon, etc., is **jumble.**

—. The name for a kind of cake made of white of egg and sugar is **meringue**

—. The name of a thin, crisp, rectangular cake made of gingerbread is **parliament-cake.**

—. The name of a rich raised cake formerly eaten specially on Mid-Lent Sunday, Easter Day, and Christmas Day is **simnel cake.**

—. The name of a thin cake made of batter, stamped with a pattern from the plates between which it is baked, is **waffle.**

—, Mexican. The name given to a thin flat cake made of maize and baked on a hot iron plate, eaten by the Mexicans, is **tortilla.**

—, treacle. A name for a cake made of gingerbread or oatmeal and treacle, popular in the north country and Scotland, is **parkin.**

cheese. The name of a method of cooking in which the material is sprinkled with grated cheese or crumbs and then baked a light brown is **au gratin.**

—. The name of a soft unpressed cheese originally made at Camembert in Normandy is **Camembert.**

—. A rich cheese made in Scotland from unskimmed milk is **Dunlop.**

—. The name of an Italian cheese made from rich unskimmed milk, having, when ripe, a blue mould running through it, is **Gorgonzola.**

—. The name of a French or Swiss light yellow cheese pitted with large holes, made from skim-milk, is **Gruyère.**

— A name for a cheese of delicate flavour made in Northern Italy, especially at Parma, is **Parmesan cheese.**

— The name of a French kind of cheese made from goat's and sheep's milk is **Roquefort.**

—. The name of a rich cheese originally sold largely at Stilton, in Huntingdonshire, is **Stilton.**

cheese. The name for a savoury made of cheese melted and spread on toast is **welsh rabbit** or **welsh rarebit.**

cook. A name for a professional male cook is **chef.**

—. A name sometimes given to a first-rate cook, especially a woman cook, is **cordon bleu.**

cooking. The art of cooking is the **culinary** art.

—, implement. The name of an instrument used for turning a spit in roasting meat is **jack.**

—, —. The name for a short-legged, long-bodied dog formerly used to turn the spit is **turnspit**

—, method. The name of a method of cooking in which the material is sprinkled with crumbs or grated cheese and then baked a light brown. is **au gratin.**

—, —. To cook or stew meat in a vessel with a tightly-fitting lid, especially with herbs and vegetables, is to **braise.**

—, —. To grill kidneys, bones, etc., with hot condiments is to **devil.**

—, —. To insert strips of bacon into meat before cooking is to **lard.**

—, utensil. The name for an earthenware vessel with a close-fitting lid in which food is cooked and served up is **casserole.**

—, —. A name for a vessel with heat below for heating food or keeping it warm is **chafing-dish.**

—, —. The vessel in which stock for soup is made or kept is the **stock-pot.**

cordial. The name of a sweet spiced wine much used in the past as a cordial is **hippocras.**

—. A name for a cordial made with brandy flavoured with orange peel, bitter almonds, etc., is **noyau.**

—. A name for a cordial made by steeping apricots, peaches, or nectarines in spirit is **persicot.**

—. A mild cordial made in Italy and France from white wine flavoured with wormwood and other aromatic herbs and taken to promote the appetite is **vermouth.**

cream. The name of a dish made of cream or milk mixed with wine or cider and formed into a soft curd is **sillabub.**

deer, flesh. The flesh of the deer when used as food is **venison.**

delicacy. A name given to table delicacies, particularly those which are popular in Germany, is **delicatessen.**

dish. A name for a dish consisting of slices of beef or veal rolled and stuffed with onions is **beef olive.**

—. The name for a dish consisting of fruit, especially gooseberries, stewed, crushed, and mixed with milk or cream, is **fool.**

—. The name for a dish of chicken, rabbit, or other meat cut into small pieces and stewed or fried, served usually in a thick sauce, is **fricassee.**

—. A name given to any tasty dish eaten before the first course at dinner is **hors d'oeuvre.**

— A name for a European dish of stewed rice, recooked fish, and eggs is **kedgeree.**

—. A dish concocted of various ingredients is a **made-dish.**

—. A name for a dish made by mixing minced meat and onion, covering with a crust of mashed potatoes, and baking, is **shepherd's pie.**

—, Chinese. The name of a sea-slug or of its dried flesh eaten as a delicacy by the Chinese is **bêche-de-mer** or **trepang**

—, Indian. The name of a highly flavoured Indian dish of rice, beans, onions, eggs, etc., is **kedgeree.**

—, Irish. The name of an Irish dish consisting of greens and potatoes pounded and stewed is **colcannon.**

—, Italian. The name of an Italian porridge or pudding made of ground chestnuts or maize is **polenta.**

dish, Oriental. The name for an Oriental dish made of rice boiled with mutton or other meat, poultry, or fish, and seasoned with raisins, spices, and herbs, is **pilau.**

—, sailor's. A kind of sailor's dish made with meat, vegetables, and ship's biscuit is **lobscouse.**

—, Scottish. The name of a Scottish dish made by pouring boiling water, milk, or broth on to oatmeal or oatcake, stirring the mixture, and seasoning with salt and butter, is **brose.**

—, —. The name of a Scottish dish consisting of soup made from fowl boiled with leeks is **cocky-leeky.**

—, —. A boiled pudding composed of the heart, lungs, and liver of a sheep, minced with suet, onions, oatmeal, and seasoning, and packed in the stomach of a sheep is a **haggis.**

—, side. The side-dishes served between the main courses of a dinner are the **entremets.**

drink. The name for a drink flavoured with some bitter substance, to aid appetite or digestion, is **bitters.**

—. The name for a warm drink of gruel, wine, spice, etc., is **caudle.**

—. A name for a liquor flavoured with a small species of Chinese orange is **mandarin.**

—. A name for a drink made of wine, water, lemon, and spices is **negus.**

—. A name for a kind of strong beer brewed in East Anglia is **nog.**

—. The name given to a mixed drink generally consisting of some spirit or wine as a basis, with water, lemon, spice, and sugar, is **punch.**

—. The name of a beverage made of hot milk curdled with wine, ale or other liquor and flavoured with sugar and spice is **posset.**

—. The name of a spirituous liquor distilled from fermented cane-sugar is **rum.**

—. The name of a drink made by mixing beer and ginger-beer is **shandygaff.**

—. The name of a drink made of spirit and sweetened fruit juices is **shrub.**

—. The name given to a beverage made of spirit diluted with hot water and sweetened is **toddy.**

—, African. A kind of fermented beer drunk by the natives of Central and East Africa is **pombe.**

—, Central American. The name of a drink made in Central America from the sap of an agave is **pulque.**

—, Eastern. The name of an Eastern cooling drink made from fruit juices and water, applied also to an effervescing European drink made in imitation, is **sherbet.**

—, Greek. A name for an ancient Greek beverage consisting of wine and honey is **oenomel.**

—, honey. The name of a beverage made of honey and water is **hydromel.**

—, —. A favourite beverage of the Middle Ages, made by fermenting honey and water with yeast, was **mead.**

—, Japanese. The name of a Japanese fermented drink made from rice is **saké.**

—, Mediterranean. The name of a sweet drink made from raisins, alcohol, and sugar in Mediterranean countries is **rosolio.**

—, Mexican. A highly intoxicating spirit distilled from pulque, and a common beverage in Mexico, is **mescal.**

—, pear. A fermented liquor made from the juice of pears is **perry.**

—, Russian. The name of a Russian fermented beverage resembling beer is **kvass.**

—, —. A fiery alcoholic liquor distilled from rye, potatoes, or maize in Russia is **vodka.**

—, South American. A beverage popular in South America, made from the leaves or buds of the Brazilian holly, is **maté.**

—, Tartar. The name of a fermented beverage made from milk is **kumiss.**

—. *See also under* **ale, beer, cordial,** *above, and* **gin, liqueur, mead, palm sap, rum, tea, milk, whisky, wine.** *below.*

eating. One who is fond of eating, who enjoys quantity rather than quality, is a **gourmand.**

—. One who is a judge of food and wines, who puts quality before quantity, is a **gourmet.**

—, science. The science or art of good eating and also the preparation of appetizing food is **gastronomy.**

fish. Names for a small fish which is exported dried and salted from Bombay and eaten as a relish, are **Bombay duck** and **bummalo.**

—. To divide fish into thick boneless slices is to **fillet.**

—. The name given to cod and other fish split and dried in the sun without salt is **stockfish.**

food-stuff, Indian. A name of the chick-pea eaten in India is **gram.**

—, —. The name of a coarse tufted grass used as a food grain in India is **ragi.**

fruit. The name for fruit simmered whole in syrup is **compote.**

—. The name for fruit, especially gooseberries, stewed, crushed, and mixed with milk or cream, is **fool.**

—, candied. A name for candied fruits preserved in syrup is **succades.**

gin. Another name for gin, the intoxicating liquor distilled from grain and flavoured with juniper berries, is **geneva.**

— The name given to a kind of gin largely manufactured by the Dutch is **Hollands.**

—. The name of a variety of Dutch gin is **Schiedam.**

—. The name of a variety of Hollands gin is **Schnapps.**

haddock, smoked. A smoked haddock, especially one cured with the smoke of peat or green wood, is a **finnan haddock.**

honey, drink. A favourite beverage of the Middle Ages, made by fermenting honey and water with yeast, was **mead.**

ice, cream. A name for an ice-cream containing crushed fruit or flavoured with fruit-juice is **sundae.**

—, water. A name for a flavoured water-ice is **sorbet.**

jelly. The name for a highly flavoured dish of game, meat, etc., embedded in jelly is **aspic.**

—. The name of a tropical tree of the myrtle family yielding a luscious fruit used in making jelly and other preserves, is **guava.**

junket. The name of a substance prepared from the lining of a calf's stomach and used to curdle milk is **rennet.**

lentil. The name of a food made from lentil meal is **revalenta.**

liqueur. A green, aromatic liqueur flavoured with wormwood, drunk in France and other Continental countries, is **absinthe.**

—. A liqueur made in France from brandy and aniseed is **anisette.**

— A liqueur named after the monks of the Benedictine order, who first made it at Fécamp, in Normandy, is **Benedictine.**

—. The name of a pale green, yellow, or white liqueur formerly made by the monks of the Grande Chartreuse is **Chartreuse.**

—. A kind of liqueur made by distilling the fermented juice of cherries is **kirsch.**

—. The name of a perfumed and sweetened liqueur usually flavoured with caraway seeds and cumin is **kummel.**

—. A name for a sweet liqueur distilled from cherries is **Maraschino.**

—. The name of a liqueur flavoured with the kernels of the peach, cherry, etc., is **ratafia.**

macaroni. The name of a kind of macaroni thinner than ordinary macaroni but thicker than vermicelli, is **spaghetti.**

—. The name of a kind of macaroni slenderer than spaghetti is **vermicelli.**

maize. Maize soaked to remove its outer covering and then ground coarsely is **hominy.**

maize. The name given in the southern states of America to any bread or biscuit made from maize-flour is **pone.**

—. The name given to maize that has been heated on an iron tray until it bursts and shows the inner white heart, is **pop-corn.**

mead. A kind of mead flavoured with mulberries, drunk in Anglo-Saxon England, was **morat.**

meat, chopped. The name given to a mixture of chopped meats, herring, anchovies, eggs, onions, olives, etc., served with oil and vinegar is **salmagundi.**

—, cold. A dish of white meat or fowl, boned, spiced, boiled, and covered with jelly, for serving cold, is a **galantine.**

—, dried. Lean meat from a South African ox, buffalo, or antelope, cut into strips and dried in the sun, is **biltong.**

—, —. The name for a preparation of dried meat, pounded, mixed with melted fat, and pressed into cakes, used by North American Indians, etc., is **pemmican.**

—, seasoned. Meat and other ingredients finely chopped and highly seasoned, used as a stuffing or as a separate dish, is **forcemeat.**

milk. The name for milk soured with a special ferment, regarded as useful in destroying harmful intestinal bacteria, is **yoghourt.**

nest, edible. The kind of swift which builds nests of a glutinous substance, made into soup by the Chinese, is the **salangane.**

palm sap. A name given to a drink prepared by fermenting the sap of certain palms is **toddy.**

pastry. A pastry made with cream, pounded almonds, and sugar is **frangipane.**

—. A kind of rich raised pastry into which minced game, meat, or fish is placed after baking is **volauvent.**

patty. The name for a patty made from the liver of a specially fattened goose is **pâté de foie gras.**

pickle. Fish pickled or preserved in spiced vinegar is **marinated.**

pilchard, smoked. A name for a smoked pilchard is **fumade.**

potato. Potatoes lightly and quickly fried in a hot pan with little grease are **sauté.**

preserve. A tropical tree of the myrtle family yielding a luscious fruit much used in making jelly and other preserves is **guava.**

—. Fish preserved in spiced vinegar is **marinated.**

quality. Anything used to lower the quality of food, etc., is an **adulterant.**

relish. Names for a small fish which is exported dried and salted from Bombay and eaten as a relish, are **Bombay duck** and **bummalo.**

—. The name given to the roe of certain large fish, especially the sturgeon, dried in the sun and salted, and eaten as a relish, is **caviar** or **caviare.**

—. The name of a relish in the form of a paste, often used in sandwiches, made from the liver of a specially fattened goose, is **pâté de foie gras.**

roe. The name given to the roe of various large fish, especially the sturgeon, dried in the sun and salted, and eaten as a relish, is **caviar** or **caviare.**

rum. A name for an inferior kind of rum distilled from molasses of low grade is **tafia.**

sauce. The name of a sauce made from mushrooms, tomatoes, walnuts, etc., is **ketchup.**

savoury. The name of a savoury made of cheese, breadcrumbs, eggs, etc., or of a dish in which such a savoury is cooked, is **ramekin.**

soup. The name of a Scottish soup made from fowl boiled with leeks is **cocky-leeky.**

—. The name for a clear concentrated soup made of meat and vegetables, as distinct from thick soup, is **consommé.**

—. The name of a clear meat soup containing various chopped or shredded vegetables, especially carrots, is **julienne.**

soup. The name of a highly seasoned East Indian soup flavoured with curry powder is **mulligatawny.**

— A thick soup consisting of vegetables, etc., boiled to a pulp and strained is a **purée.**

— The name for the liquor from stewed meat, bones, etc., used as a basis for soups, is **stock.**

—. The name for the vessel in which stock for soup is made or kept is **stock-pot.**

starch. A name given to a flour or meal obtained by grinding grain, nuts, or starchy roots is **farina.**

— The name of a kind of starch, used as food, prepared from the soft inner part of the trunk of certain palms is **sago.**

— The name of a starchy flour made from the roots of certain plants of the orchis family used in the East as a food, is **salep.**

—. The name of a white granular starchy substance obtained by heating the root-stock of the cassava and used for puddings, etc., is **tapioca.**

—. The name of a starchy food prepared from the tubers of several species of *Canna* is **tous-les-mois.**

stew. A name for a stew, usually of mutton and various vegetables, is **haricot.**

—. The name given to a highly flavoured stew of meat, fish, poultry, or game is **ragout.**

—. The name of a kind of stew of partially roasted game birds, flavoured with wine and spices, is **salmis.**

sweetmeat. The name for a candied sweetmeat made from the root of the angelica plant, often used for decorating cakes and other confections, is **angelica.**

—. The general name for sweetmeats in the U.S.A. is **candy.**

—. A name for a kind of sweetmeat filled with some soft creamy substance is **fondant.**

—. The name of a sweetmeat in the form of a paste, made with almonds, nuts, sugar, and flour, is **marzipan** or **marchpane.**

tea A name for black China tea of low quality, formerly used for the finest black China tea, is **bohea.**

— A name for tea softened by steam and compressed into blocks is **brick-tea.**

—. A name for a strong green tea, each leaf of which is rolled into a little ball, is **gunpowder-tea.**

— A name for a kind of green tea with a straight twisted leaf is **hyson**; **young hyson** has a smaller leaf, and **hyson-skin** has the leaf less well rolled.

— A name for a kind of black China tea produced in the province of Hupeh, is **oopak.**

— A name for the delicate tip of a young tea-shoot is **pekoe.**

—. The name of the grade of tea next below pekoe is **souchong.**

tea-urn, Russian. The name of a Russian tea-urn heated by burning charcoal, is **samovar.**

turtle-soup. The name for the greenish gluey tissue found next the upper shell of the turtle is **calipash.**

—. The name for the light yellow gluey tissue found next the lower shell of the turtle is **calipee.**

wheat. The name given to the coarse particles into which wheat kernels are broken when ground is **semolina.**

whisky. A kind of Scotch whisky named after a district in Banffshire, where it was first distilled, is **Glenlivet.**

—. The old name for whisky is **usquebaugh.**

—, Irish. The name of a raw, strong whisky made in Ireland in an illicit still is **poteen.**

wine The name for a film that grows on some old wines, as port, and also for such wine, is **beeswing.**

wine. The name for the strength or substantial quality of a wine is **body.**

—. The name for the subtle and distinctive aroma of wine, due to the presence of esters, is **bouquet**

—. A term used to describe wine that tastes of the cork is **corked.**

—. A term used to describe wine that is not sweet is **dry.**

—. A wine made from wild fruit and flavoured with juniper berries is **genevrette.**

—. Wine that is not sparkling is **still.**

—. A wine matured separately as one of superior merit is a **vintage wine.**

—, cup. A cup of wine passed round at the end of a banquet for drinking the concluding health or healths is a **grace-cup.**

—, French. A red Burgundy wine, taking its name from a town in Cote d'Or, is **Beaune.**

—, —. A name for a claret or light wine grown in the Gironde district is **Bordeaux.**

—, —. A white wine from the muscat grape, made at Frontignan in France, is **Frontignac** or **Frontignan.**

—, —. The name of a kind of red, full-flavoured Burgundy wine is **Pomard.**

—, —. The name of a fruity red wine resembling Burgundy, made from grapes grown in the south of France, is **Roussillon.**

—, —. The name of a kind of sweet white wine produced in the district of Sauterne near Bordeaux is **Sauterne.**

—, —. The name of a still white wine made in the neighbourhood of Rheims is **Sillery.**

—, German. A general name for Rhine wine is **hock.**

—, —. The name of a kind of German white wine is **Johannisberger.**

—, —. The name of a light dry white wine made in the neighbourhood of the River Moselle is **Moselle.**

—, —. The name of a kind of German white wine made from grapes grown around Nierstein, near Mainz, is **Niersteiner.**

—, —. The name of a white wine made from grapes grown in the province of Hesse-Nassau on the Rhine is **Rüdesheimer.**

—, Hungarian. The name of a kind of sweet, aromatic Hungarian wine is **Tokay.**

—, Italian. The name of a dry red Italian wine is **Chianti.**

—, —. A kind of Italian wine produced from grapes grown on the slopes of Mount Vesuvius is **Lachryma Christi.**

—, —. A name for a sweet white Italian wine produced in Sicily is **Marsala.**

—, —. A name for kinds of sweet white or red wine produced in France, Spain, and Italy from the muscat grape is **muscadel, muscatel,** or **muscat.**

—, Maltese The name of a Maltese red wine is **rosolio.**

—, mediaeval. The name of a sweet spiced wine which was much used in the past as a cordial is **hippocras.**

—, Portuguese. The name of a kind of red wine first shipped from Oporto in Portugal is **port.**

—, Spanish. The name of a sweet full-bodied sherry is **Amontillado.**

—, —. The name of a sweet white wine produced in southern Spain is **Malaga.**

—, —. A name for a dry, light, bitter sherry from vines grown in Andalusia is **Manzanilla.**

—, —. The name of a kind of Spanish red wine of the Burgundy type produced from grapes grown in Logroño is **Rioja.**

—, —. The name of a white wine from the south of Spain is **sherry.**

—, sweet. A name for kinds of sweet white or red wine produced in France, Spain, and Italy from the muscat grape is **muscadel, muscatel,** or **muscat.**

GEOGRAPHY

Afghan. A name for one of an Afghan people living on the north-west frontier of India, or for any Afghan, is **Pathan.**

age. *See under* **geology,** *below.*

air. Another name for the air or envelope of gas surrounding the earth is **atmosphere.**

—. A body of air moving in a certain direction is a **current.**

—. *See also under* **atmosphere, barometer,** *and* **wind,** *below.*

Altaic. The name of an Altaic people widely spread over the extreme north of Europe and Asia is **Samoyeds.**

America, Central. The name for an agricultural people dominant in Central America from very early times until the time of Columbus is **Maya**

animal. The name given to the remains or traces of an animal or plant embedded in the rocks is **fossil.**

—, distribution. Regions which contain similar forms of plant or animal life are **homoeozoic.**

—, —. That branch of geography which deals with the distribution of animal life over the world is **zoogeography.**

—. *See also under* **region,** *below.*

Arab. The name given to a hardy Arab people who live in the Nile valley in the Sudan is **Baggara** or **Cattle Arabs.**

—. A name for an Arab belonging to a nomadic or wandering tribe is **Bedouin.**

—. The name of an ancient Arab tribe originally in possession of the shrine at Mecca is **Koreish.**

Arabia. A name given to a member of certain races, including the Arabs, Jews, Syrians, and Assyrians, which had their origin in or near Arabia is **Semite.**

Archaeozoic. The term applied to a formation of stratified rocks north of the River St. Lawrence in North America, belonging to the oldest-known or Archaeozoic era, is **Laurentian.**

Arctic. Regions to the immediate south of the Arctic Circle are **subarctic.**

—. *See also under* **region,** *below.*

area. A name given to an area or region, usually of indefinite extent, is **tract.**

ash, volcanic. The name given to a fragmental rock, consisting of volcanic ashes, lava, etc., is **tuff.**

Asia, Central. A name for a member of the yellow race living in Mongolia and parts of central Asia is **Mongol** or **Mongolian.**

atmosphere. An instrument which records changes in the pressure and heat of atmosphere is a **barothermograph.**

—. An instrument used for measuring the depth of tint in the atmosphere is a **cyanometer.**

—. The temperature at which the amount of vapour present in the air saturates it and begins to be condensed as dew is the **dew-point.**

— Space outside the atmosphere surrounding the earth is **extra-atmospheric.**

—. The name of an instrument for showing the quantity of dust in the atmosphere is **koniscope.**

—. The science which deals with the motions and phenomena of the atmosphere is **meteorology.**

—. The lessening of density in the atmosphere as one ascends is **rarefaction.**

—, pressure. A revolving outflow of air from a region of high air-pressure is an **anti-cyclone.**

—, —. The standard of atmospheric pressure is the **bar.**

—, —. An aneroid barometer which records atmospheric pressure is a **barograph.**

—, —. An instrument for measuring the pressure of air is a **barometer.**

—, —. The science of measuring changes of atmospheric pressure is **barometrography.**

Australia. A name for a part of the Australian desert country, especially in Queensland, is **Never Never Land.**

avalanche. Another name for an avalanche is **snow-slip.**

axis. The axis of a crest formed by strata sloping upwards towards the same line is an **anticline.**

—. The axis of a trough in the earth formed by strata sloping downwards towards the same line is a **syncline.**

barometer. The name of a kind of barometer that measures atmospheric pressure by the movements of the elastic lid of a box exhausted of air is **aneroid.**

—. A fall in the mercury of a barometer, indicative of bad weather, is a **depression.**

—. A line on a map joining places where the barometer stands at the same level at a given time is an **isobar.**

—. A name for a kind of barometer in which the pressure of the atmosphere is measured by means of confined air or other gas pressing against a column of liquid is **sympiesometer.**

—. The name of a kind of barometer which by means of an electric circuit shows its readings at a distant point is **telebarometer.**

—. Another name for a barometer is **weather-glass.**

bay. The name in the southern U.S.A. for a shallow outlet or inlet of a bay or lake is **bayou.**

—. A large bay between two capes or headlands is a **bight.**

—. A name for a small bay or inlet in the Orkneys and Shetlands is **voe.**

beach, raised. A name given in geology to a raised beach, marking a former water level, is **terrace.**

block. A block or boulder found out of its proper stratum is an **erratic.**

Bohemians. The race of Aryan speech of which the Poles, Wends, Bohemians, Moravians and Slovaks form the western section is the **Slav race.**

bone. A name for a thick layer of bones of extinct animals, such as fishes, is **bone-bed.**

boulder. The name given to a large sandstone boulder, such as those found on chalk downs in the south of England, is **sarsen.**

branching The branching out of an arm of a river from the main stream is an **embranchment.**

brook. Other names for a brook are **beck** and **watercourse.**

Burma. The Burmese name for one of a race of Mongolian origin living on the eastern frontier of Upper Burma and in Southern China is **Shan.**

calm. The name given to a belt of calms about thirty degrees north and south of the equator is **horse latitudes.**

—. Names for the calm zone where the trade winds neutralize each other are **null-belt** and **doldrums.**

Canada. A name for one of the descendants of the original French colonists of Canada and Louisiana is **habitant.**

cape. A name for a rocky cape, especially on the Yorkshire coast, is **nab.**

—. Names for a cape or headland are **naze** and **ness.**

—. A hilly or mountainous cape or a high point of land jutting out into the sea is a **promontory.**

Carboniferous. A geological formation of the Carboniferous period, found typically in Bohemia and South Germany, is the **Hercynian.**

cave. A name for an old cave or excavation consisting of a narrow shaft leading down to one or more chambers in the chalk is **dene-hole.**

cave. A small, picturesque cave is a **grotto.**

—. A mountain cave or hollow filled with ice which remains unmelted during the summer is a **glacière.**

—. An icicle-like deposit of mineral, usually calcium carbonate, hanging from the roof of a cave is a **stalactite.**

—. A mineral deposit in the shape of a cone on the floor of a cave is a **stalagmite.**

cavity. A name for a deep cavity in a mountain is **abyss.**

—. A name for a cavity in rock, filled with another substance, is **pocket.**

Celt. A branch of the Celtic-speaking people that includes the Irish, the Gaels of Scotland, and the Manx, but not the Welsh or Bretons, is the **Gadhelic.**

—. A name used for a Scottish Celt, and more rarely for an Irish Celt, is **Gael.**

Ceylon. The name given to the native inhabitants of Ceylon is **Cingalese** or **Sinhalese.**

change, geological. Changes of the earth's surface produced by forces working in the open-air are **subaerial.**

—, —. The name given to a theory that all changes in the earth's surface have been brought about by the forces of Nature acting uniformly, and not by sudden catastrophes, is **uniformitarianism.**

channel. A name given in the Fen district to a narrow channel for draining or irrigation is **drain.**

—. The navigable channel of a river, harbour, etc., is the **fairway.**

—. A name for a narrow channel or strait is between sandbanks, etc., is **gat.**

—. Names for a channel or ravine worn by running water are **gully** and **gutter.**

—. A name for a narrow channel or water passage, such as a strait or a sound, is **gut.**

—. A Scottish name for a narrow channel or passage of water is **kyle.**

—. A narrow channel of water separating the mainland and an island, or connecting two larger sheets of water, is a **sound.**

chasm. A name for a deep chasm found in many mountain ranges is **abyss.**

circle, great. A great circle imagined as being drawn through the poles—terrestrial or celestial—and the zenith is a **meridian.**

city. A name for a suburb, given especially in Paris to certain districts once outside the city walls, is **faubourg.**

clay. A kind of greasy clay, coloured yellow or red by the presence of iron, and found in holes in rocks, is **bole.**

—. Names given to a glacial formation composed of clay and sand, with a mixture of rounded rocks, are **boulder formation** and **drift-clay.**

—. The name of the beds of brick-clay, of the lower Cretaceous epoch, occurring between the Lower and Upper Greensand is **gault.**

—. The name of a porous red or brownish clay occurring over vast areas in some tropical countries is **laterite.**

—. The name given to the blue-grey strata belonging to the Lower Eocene epoch, upon which most of London is built, is **London clay.**

—. A name for a soft, oily clay, resembling yellow ochre is **melinite.**

—. The name given to clay in the form of thin layers, sometimes containing oil, is **shale.**

—. A name for a long, narrow ridge of boulder clay is **sow-back.**

—. The name of the clay found in the upper beds of the Wealden strata between the Hastings Sand and the Lower Greensand is **Weald clay.**

cliff. The sudden breaking away of parts of cliffs is **abruption.**

—. A cliff with a broad, precipitous front is a **bluff.**

cliff. An old name for a steep cliff or the side of a hill is **cleve.**

—. A name for a gap in cliffs is **gat.**

—. A name for a steep face of rock or cliff is **scar.**

—. The name given to a sloping mass of fragments at the base of a cliff is **talus.**

climate. The five climatic zones are the **arctic, north temperate, torrid, south temperate,** and **antarctic.**

—. The scientific study of climate is **climatology.**

—. A climate which is either very hot or very cold, or one that exhibits violent changes from heat to cold, is **intemperate.**

—. A name for an apparatus for making records of rainfall, sunshine, temperature, winds, or other climatic conditions is **meteorograph.**

—. The study of the influence of climate, etc., on the life of plants and animals is **phenology.**

—. A zone or region in which a mild climate prevails is **temperate.**

—. Any one of the five climatic divisions of the earth bounded by parallels of latitude is a **zone.**

cloud. A bright ring formed on a cloud opposite the sun is an **anthelion.**

—. A name for an instrument for measuring the speed and height of clouds is **nephoscope.**

—, form. A form of cloud broken up into small, separate, fleecy masses is **cirro-cumulus.**

—, —. A form of cloud in fleecy masses, broken into small separate pieces, and arranged in layers, is **cirro-stratus.**

—, —. A form of cloud in light, detached, feathery masses is **cirrus.**

—, —. A series of dome-shaped, white clouds with flat bases, seen in calm, mild weather, is a **cumulus.**

—, —. A name for a thunder-cloud, or any cloud from which continuous rain or snow falls, is **nimbus.**

—, —. A form of cloud which is spread out in a continuous sheet horizontally, usually at a low altitude, is **stratus.**

coal. A layer of coal in the earth is a **coal-seam.**

—. A name given to brown coal is **lignite.**

—. A name given to hard, black, mineral coal, as found in Britain, is **lithanthrax.**

—. A bed of clay underlying a coal-seam is a **seat-earth.**

—. The name given to the stratum of clay underlying a bed of coal is **under-clay.**

coast. A name given to those parts of the sea that are more than three miles distant from a coast is **high seas.**

—. The region bordering the coast-line of a country is its **littoral.**

column. A column of clay, usually under a large stone, from which the surrounding earth has been washed by rain is an **earth-pillar.**

continent. A name for a large part of a continent is **sub-continent.**

convulsion. A name for a violent upheaval such as that caused by an earthquake convulsion is **cataclasm.**

—. Names for a great convulsion which brings about changes in the relative position of land and water are **cataclysm** and **catastrophe.**

coral reef. A low ring-shaped coral reef is an **atoll.**

—. A coral reef forming a barrier between the mainland and the ocean is a **barrier-reef.**

—. A platform of coral that has formed near the shore of an island is a **fringing-reef.**

country. A large tract of country is a **region.**

—. A name for a tract of country or a region is **terrain.**

—, open. A name for a tract of open, uncultivated country, usually a down or moor, is **wold.**

—, wooded. A tract of open, wooded country, especially that portion of Kent, Surrey, Sussex, and Hants between the North and South Downs, is a **weald.**

county. An ancient division of an English county is the **hundred**

crack. A crack in the ground due to an earthquake or other violent disturbance is a **fissure.**

creek. An old name for a creek or inlet of a small river is **fleet.**

Cretaceous. The name of the beds of sand and limestone, of the Lower Cretaceous epoch, between the Weald clay and the chalk is **Greensand.**

—. The name of the strata seen typically in Purbeck, Dorset, and belonging to the lowest part of the Cretaceous system, is **Purbeck beds.**

—. The name given to the Lower Cretaceous freshwater strata found in the Weald between the oolite and chalk is **Wealden.**

current. A current of water or air moving in a circular direction is an **eddy.**

—. A warm ocean current flowing out of the Gulf of Mexico, and having a modifying effect on the winter climate of western Europe, is the **Gulf Stream.**

—. A name given to a swift or strong current of water is **race.**

cyclone. A region of low pressure in a cyclone, caused by rising air and winds circling round this, is a **cyclonic depression.**

—. The name of a kind of violent cyclone occurring in the China Sea is **typhoon.**

dell. A name for a shady dell between hills is **dingle.**

deposit. Deposits of sand, gravel, or mud formed in the comparatively still water of a river, lake, etc., are **alluvial** and form **alluvium.**

—. Deposits of sand, rock, etc., formed by drift or glacial action are **diluvial.**

—. Deposits formed in rivers are **fluviatile.**

—. Deposits formed in lakes are **lacustrine.**

—. The name given by geologists to a yellowish-grey or brownish loamy deposit left by melting glaciers or blown by the wind is **loess.**

—. A mound or bank formed of broken rock that has been carried on the surface of a glacier is a **moraine.**

—. A miner's name for an alluvial or other deposit of soil containing valuable minerals is **placer.**

depression. A name for a depression or hollow between two mountain peaks is **col.**

desert. A name for a part of the Australian desert country, especially in Queensland, is **Never Never Land.**

—. A fertile tract in a desert is an **oasis.**

dew-fall. An instrument for measuring the dew-fall is a **drosometer.**

diamond. Earth which yields diamonds is **diamantiferous.**

diatom. The name given to a grey or brown earth found on the sites of ancient lakes and made up of the flinty remains of diatoms is **kieselguhr.**

dictionary, geographical. A geographical or topographical dictionary is a **gazetteer.**

discharge, electrical. The natural electric discharges in the air are **atmospherics.**

—, —. A kind of electrical discharge observed about the masts and spars of ships at sea in stormy weather is a **corposant.**

displacement. The amount of displacement of a stratum is the **heave.**

distance, angular. The angular distance of a place north or south of the equator is its **latitude.**

—, —. The angular distance of a place east or west of a given meridian is its **longitude.**

division. The name given to a large territorial division of a state is **province.**

—, climatic. Any one of the five climatic divisions of the earth bounded by parallels of latitude is a **zone.**

doldrums. A name for the doldrums or calm zone, where the trade winds neutralize each other, is **null-belt**

Dravidian. The names of the chief Dravidian peoples, inhabiting South India, are **Tamil, Telugu, Kanarese** and **Malayalim.**

dwarf. A name for a member of one of the dwarf or pygmy races of the interior of Africa is **negrillo.**

—. A name for a member of a dwarfish race in the Philippine and Andaman Islands and the Malay Archipelago is **negrito.**

—. Races in which the adult male is about four feet eleven inches in height or less are **pygmy.**

dyke. A miner's term for a dyke of igneous rock penetrating the sedimentary strata in south-west England is **elvan.**

earth. The latent forces stored up in the earth are **geodynamic.**

—. A name given to the semi-fluid, molten mass supposed to lie beneath the earth's crust is **magma.**

—, crust. The edge of a layer of the earth's crust where it comes to the surface is a **basset** or **outcrop.**

—, —. The study of the formation of the earth's crust is **geogeny.**

—, —. The science dealing with the composition and structure of the earth and the changes in and development of its crust is **geology.**

—, —. The solid matter underlying the soil and forming the earth's crust is **rock.**

—, —. The name of a hard crystalline form of silicon dioxide which forms the chief constituent of the earth's crust is **silica.**

—, —. An opening in the earth's crust through which heated matter is discharged, usually surrounded by a conical hill built up by the accumulation of ejected matter, is a **volcano.**

—, formation. The theory that the earth and other planets were formed from a central revolving gaseous mass extending outwards from the sun is part of the **nebular hypothesis.**

—, heat. A line on a map connecting places where the heat of the earth is the same is an **isogeotherm.**

—, movement. A name for the slightly wavering movement of the earth's axis is **nutation.**

—, surface. The description or mapping of the general features of the earth is **cosmography.**

—, —. Each of two points where the axis of rotation of the earth meets its surface is a **geographical pole.**

—, —. The science of the surface of the earth, its natural and political divisions, and its products and population is **geography.**

—, —. A study of a country when concerned with its mountains, minerals, winds, climate, and other physical features, is **physico-geographical.**

—, —. The scientific study and description of the natural features of the earth's surface and the causes by which they have been modified is **physiography.**

—, —. The name given to any particular part of the earth's surface with definite characteristics is **region.**

—, —. Modifications and alterations of the earth's surface, due to agents, such as frost, wind, etc., working in the open air, are **sub-aerial.**

earthquake. A line drawn on a map through all the points affected at the same time by an earthquake is a **coseismal line** or **coseismal curve.**

—. The point at which an earthquake begins is the **epicentrum.**

—. A line on a map connecting places which an earthquake affects equally is an **isoseismal.**

—. A name for a very slight earthquake that is simply a faint earth tremor is **microseism.**

—. The scientific study of earthquakes is **seismology.**

—. The name of an instrument for detecting and measuring very slight earthquakes is **tromometer.**

East. China, Farther India, Korea, Japan, and the neighbouring islands are included in the **Far East.**

—. India, Persia, Afghanistan, Central Asia, and Tibet are included in the **Middle East.**

— The countries round the eastern Mediterranean, with Arabia, Irak, and Caucasia, constitute the **Near East.**

East Indies. A name for the dominant race of the East Indian Archipelago and the peninsula in southern Asia adjoining it is **Malays.**

Egypt. An Egyptian peasant, especially one engaged in agriculture, is a **fellah.**

electricity. *See under* **discharge,** electrical, *above.*

embankment. A term used chiefly in the U.S.A. for an embankment alongside a river or a bay is **levee.**

England. A name for England used by the ancient Greeks and Romans is **Albion.**

epoch. *See under* **geology,** *below.*

equator. A name given to each of the parallels of latitude about 23½ degrees north and south of the equator is **tropic.**

era. *See under* **geology,** *below.*

Eskimo. The name given to an Eskimo tribe of Alaska is **Malamutes.**

estuary. A name given in Scotland to a broad estuary is **firth** or **frith.**

Europe, South. A general name for the inhabitants of southern Europe is **meridionals.**

European. A contemptuous Indian name for a European, especially an Indian-born Portuguese, is **Feringhee.**

fault. The thrust or push of strata on one side of a fault over those on the other is an **overthrust.**

Finn. Names given to a group of Ural-Altaic peoples including the Finns and Magyars are **Ugrian** or **Ugric group,** and **Ugro-Finnic,** or **Finno-Ugric group.**

fissure. A very deep fissure in a mountain side by which it may be climbed is a **chimney.**

flint. A name given to flint from which sparks are easily obtained is **fire-stone.**

flood. A name for a great flood is **cataclysm.**

—. A flood suddenly caused by heavy rains or melting snow is a **spate** or **freshet.**

fold, earth. *See under* **axis,** *above*; *and* **stratum,** *below.*

forest. A name for the open space made in a forest or wooded region by cutting down trees is **clearing.**

— A name for a small forest along the borders of a river in South America is **monte.**

—. A name denoting a coniferous forest region stretching across sub-arctic America, Europe, and Asia to the south of the tundra is **taiga.**

—. A large tract of pine forest on swampy land in Siberia is an **urman.**

formation. *See under* **geology,** age, *below.*

fossil. A fruit which has become covered with a stone deposit, and so in time has become as hard as stone, is known as a **carpolite.**

— A fossilized plant in which the vegetable matter has been gradually replaced by mineral is a **dendrolite.**

—. A name for a fossilized insect is **entomolite.**

—. A name for a fossil footprint is **ichnolite.**

—. A fossil fish, or the cast or impression of one is an **ichthyolite.**

—. Rocks or other strata containing fossils of animal life are **zoic.**

frontier. A name for the region adjacent to the frontier between states or countries is **border.**

—. Countries whose boundaries on the frontiers adjoin one another are **limitrophe states.**

gas. A region that produces natural gas is a **gas-field.**

—. A bore that produces natural gas is a **gas-well.**

—. A name for an escape of gas from the earth, or a vent for this, especially from a nearly extinct volcano, is **mofette.**

geology. The names of the divisions of geological time, beginning with the most comprehensive, are **era, period, epoch,** and **age**

geology. A name given to rocks of the same origin, composition, and age is **formation.**

—, age. Formations of rock or fossils belonging roughly to the same age are **equivalent** or **coeval.**

—, classification of strata. Each of the five great divisions of geological time is an **era,** and the rocks in it form a **group.**

—, epoch. Each of the divisions of a geological epoch is an **age** and the rocks in it form a **stage.**

—, —. The four epochs of the Tertiary period, in order of time, are the **Eocene, Oligocene, Miocene,** and **Pliocene.**

—, —. The four epochs of the Jurassic period, in order of time, are the **Lias, Lower, Middle,** and **Upper Oolite.**

—, —. The two epochs of the Cretaceous period are the **Lower** and **Upper Cretaceous.**

—, —. The two epochs of the Quaternary or Post-tertiary period, in order of time, are the **Pleistocene** or **Glacial,** and the **Holocene** or **Recent.**

—, —. The name applied by geologists to a division of the Recent epoch, including the later Stone Age, the Bronze Age, and the Iron Age is **Prehistoric.**

—. era. The earliest of the geological eras is the **Archaeozoic** or **Azoic.**

—, —. The fifth and most recent geological era is the **Cainozoic.**

—, —. The fourth of the geological eras, between the Palaeozoic and Cainozoic, is the **Mesozoic** or **Secondary.**

—, —. A name sometimes used for distinguishing the later eras or groups of rocks, as the Cainozoic and Mesozoic, from the Palaeozoic, is **Neozoic.**

—, —. The third geological era, in which the earliest traces of living organisms are found in the rocks, is the **Palaeozoic** or **Primary.**

—. —. The second of the geological eras, in which probably the lowest forms of life existed, is the **Proterozoic.**

—, —. Each of the divisions of a geological era is a **period,** and the rocks in it form a **system.**

—, period. The five periods of the Palaeozoic era, in order of time, are the **Cambrian, Ordovician, Silurian, Devonian** and **Carboniferous.**

—, —. Each of the divisions of a geological period is an **epoch,** and the rocks in it form a **series.**

—, —. An old name for the strata of the Devonian period is **Old Red Sandstone.**

—, —. The two periods of the Cainozoic era, in order of time, are the **Tertiary,** and **Quaternary** or **Post-tertiary.**

—, —. The three periods of the Mesozoic era, in order of time, are the **Triassic, Jurassic,** and **Cretaceous.**

—. *See also under* **rock** *and* **stratum,** *below.*

Germanic. A name given to a member of any of the Germanic peoples of Europe is **Teuton.**

glacial. The accumulated debris of rock, gravel, etc., caused by the wearing away of rocks by glacial action is **detritus.**

—. A loose deposit of sand, rock, etc., deposited over a surface by glacial action is a **drift.**

— A ridge of glacial deposit, known as drift, found near the foot of a mountain is a **drum.**

—. A name given in Ireland to a bank of gravel deposited in a river valley after one of the glacial periods is **eskar.**

— Anything belonging to or formed during a warm period between two prehistoric glacial periods is **interglacial.**

—. The period following the Ice Age is **post-glacial.**

—. *See also under* **glacier,** *below.*

glacier. The melting of the surface of a glacier is **ablation.**

—. A deep crack or fissure in a glacier is a **crevasse.**

glacier. The lower part of a glacier, which moves downwards, is a **defluent.**

—. An instrument for measuring the speed at which glaciers move is a **glaciometer.**

—. The name for broken rock carried on the surface of a glacier, or deposited at its foot in a mound, is **moraine.**

—. A deep pit in a glacier down which surface water flows is a **moulin.**

—. A name for a mass of frozen snow partly compacted into glacial ice is **névé.**

—. The name given to knobs or humps of rock rounded by the action of glaciers is **roches moutonnées.**

—. The name given to one of the towering angular masses into which a glacier breaks up when passing down a steep slope is **sérac.**

—. A projecting end of a glacier is a **snout.**

glen. Another name for a glen or small valley, often with a rivulet running through it, is **dean** or **dene.**

gneiss. The name given by geologists to a very ancient formation of gneiss in central Europe, of the Proterozoic era, is **Hercynian.**

gold. Mineral which bears or yields gold is **auriferous.**

—. A name for the hard, gold-bearing rock occurring in reefs in the Transvaal is **banket.**

gorge. A steep gorge formed by erosion is a **canyon** or **cañon.**

—. A name for a steep gorge or gully in a mountain-side is **couloir.**

—. A name for a deep, narrow gorge or gully is **ravine.**

gradient. The name of an instrument for measuring the gradient of a hill is **inclinometer.**

grass-land. A range of pasture or grass-land on a slope of the Alps is an **alp.**

—. The Spanish name for the vast grassy plains of tropical South America is **llano.**

—. The name of the great treeless grass-lands of Argentina and other southern parts of South America is **pampas.**

—. A name for a great stretch of grass-land, especially in North America, is **prairie.**

—. A name for a large expanse of grass-land, especially one of the treeless plains of tropical America, is **savanna.**

—. An open, almost treeless tract of high grass-land used for pasture in South Africa is the **veldt** or **veld.**

Greek. The name given to a citizen of modern Greece is **Hellene.**

group. A group or division of human beings sprung from a common stock is a **race.**

—. *See also under* **geology,** *above.*

gulf weed. *See under* **seaweed,** *below.*

halo, lunar. A name for a bright spot in a lunar halo is **paraselene.**

—, solar. A name for a bright spot in a solar halo is **parhelion.**

headland. A headland with a broad, precipitous front is a **bluff.**

— A name for a headland or piece of land jutting out into the sea is **foreland.**

—. A name given to a long headland or promontory on the west coast of Scotland is **mull.**

—. *See also* **cape,** *above.*

heat. A period of very high temperature is a **heat-wave.**

—. Rocks produced by volcanic action or by the action of great heat are **igneous.**

— A line on a map connecting places showing the same average heat for the year, or for a given period, is an **isotherm.**

height. Elevation or height above sea-level is **altitude.**

— The name given to a line on a map connecting continuous points of the same altitude is **contour-line.**

—. The branch of geography dealing with heights above sea-level is **hypsography.**

height. The level from which all heights are reckoned in the ordnance survey is the **ordnance datum.**

—. A name for an instrument for measuring heights, consisting of an aneroid barometer with a graduated scale, is **orometer.**

hill. A local name for a hill or hillock is **barrow.**

—. A Scottish name for a hill or a mountain is **ben.**

—. A hill or peak rising abruptly, especially in the Rocky Mountains, is a **butte.**

—. A formation of hills which are very steep on one side and slope gently away on the other is **crag-and-tail.**

—. A low hill lying at the base of a range of mountains is a **foot-hill.**

—. A name given to a long ridged hill is **hog-back** or **hog's back.**

—. A name for a small hill or mound with a rounded top is **knoll.**

—. The South African name for a small, isolated hill is **kopje.**

—. A name for an isolated rounded hill or mound is **mamelon.**

—. A name in Scotland and northern England for an outstanding hill or part of a hill is **nab.**

—. A name for a hill with a pointed summit, especially in the north country, is **pike.**

—. A name given to a long range of hills is **ridge.**

—. The steep face of a hill, especially where the strata are cut across by the surface, is **scarp.**

—. *See also under* **mountain,** *below.*

Himalayas. Those regions of India lying a little to the south of the Himalayas are **sub-Himalayan.**

Hungary. The name of the Ugrian people living in Hungary is **Magyars.**

ice. Ice formed at the bottom of fast-moving water is **anchor-ice.**

—. Loose blocks of floating ice which are carried away by the currents are **drift-ice.**

—. A sheet of floating ice detached from an ice-field is a **floe.**

—. A French-Canadian name for anchor-ice or ice formed at the bottom of a stream or lake is **frazil.**

—. A pre-historic period during which large areas of the present temperate regions were covered with an ice-sheet was a **glacial period.**

— A slowly-moving mass or river of ice which has been formed by an accumulation of snow on higher ground is a **glacier.**

—. Ice forming at the bottom of the water before the surface freezes is **ground-ice** or **anchor-ice.**

— A ridge or pile of ice on an ice-field is a **hummock**

—. A name for large, broken cakes of ice covering a wide area of sea is **ice-pack.**

—. A name for thin flat pieces of ice floating on Polar seas is **pancake-ice.**

iceberg. A name for a piece of an iceberg which has broken away is **calf.**

inlet. A small inlet or opening in the coast or in the shore of a river or lake is a **creek.**

interior. The inner or interior region of a country, especially in Africa, is its **hinterland.**

Ireland. Things relating to Ireland are **Hibernian.**

iron-rust. Water containing iron-rust is **ferruginous.**

island. A name for a small island in a river or lake is **ait.**

—. The name for a group of islands is **archipelago.**

— A ring-shaped coral island enclosing a lagoon is an **atoll.**

—. A Scottish name for an island is **inch.**

—. Anything relating to an island is **insular.**

—. The name given to a low islet, especially one of coral, off the coast of Florida or in the West Indies is **key.**

Jurassic. The name of a group of strata of the upper Jurassic system, below the Purbeck rocks and above the Kimmeridge clay, is **Portland Beds.**

Jurassic. The name given to strata occurring at the junction of the Triassic and Jurassic systems, typical of the beds found in the Rhaetian Alps, is **Rhaetic.**

Kent. Each of five divisions of the county of Kent, formerly administrative divisions, is a **lathe.**

lake. A name for a shallow outlet or inlet of a lake in the southern U.S.A. is **bayou.**

—. A name in East Anglia for a lake formed by the widening of a river is **broad.**

—. A lake formed in the mouth of a valley by a glacier is a **glacier-lake.**

—. Deposits of silt, etc., formed in lakes are **lacustrine.**

—. The name given to a shallow lake of fresh or salt water close to a river or the sea is **lagoon.**

—. A name given to the study of the physical features of lakes is **limnology.**

—. The Scottish name for a lake or a partly land-locked arm of the sea is **loch**

—. A name given in Ireland to a lake or an arm of the sea is **lough.**

— A name for a small lake, especially in northern England is **mere.**

—. The name given to a periodic tide-like movement which occurs in large lakes is **seiche.**

—. A name for water which drains from land containing compounds of sodium and forms a lake is **soda-lake**

land. Land formed by the silt or soil deposited by the water of a river or lake is **alluvium.**

—. A tract of land more or less surrounded by higher land, and usually drained by a single river-system, is a **basin.**

—. In Scotland, a name for a tract of low-lying, fertile land is **carse**

—. The levelling of land through the gradual removal of rock and soil from a higher to a lower level by the action of water is **degradation.**

—. A name given to a level stretch of swampy ground near the shore or by a river is **flats.**

—. A name for a tract of low-lying meadowland by a river in Scotland and the north of England is **haugh.**

— A tract of land lying far above the level of the sea is a **highland.**

— A term used of land which lies within a few hundred feet of sea-level is **lowland.**

— A name for a tract of land, lying below the level of the sea or of rivers, which has been drained and cultivated, especially in Holland and Belgium, is **polder.**

—. A relatively flat tract of land high above sea-level is a **table-land** or **plateau.**

—, form. A name for a long projecting tongue of land is **bill.**

—, —. A piece of land projecting into a sea or lake is a **cape**

— —. A very large, continuous mass of land, wholly or partly detached from other similar land masses, is a **continent.**

—, —. The name for a neck of land connecting two larger parts is **isthmus**

—, —. A projecting piece of land almost surrounded by water is a **peninsula.**

—, —. A name for a great area of land that is smaller than a continent, or for a large part of a continent, especially South Africa, is **sub-continent.**

—, —. A well-defined belt of land distinguished by climate, the character of its flora and fauna, or by other characteristics is a **zone.**

—. *See also under* **cape** *and* **headland,** *above.*

landing-place. An Indian name for a landing-place on the bank of a river is **ghaut.**

lightning. A mass of rock or sand fused or vitrified by the action of lightning is **fulgurite.**

—. A name for a fire-ball, or form of lightning in which a sphere of brilliant light appears for several seconds, is **globe-lightning**

limestone. The name of a dark grey Irish limestone is **calp.**

—. A name given to a division of the Jurassic rocks formed of coralliferous limestone is **coral-reef.**

—. The loam-like beds found in the limestone formation of Portland between the limestone and sandstone are **dirt-beds.**

—. Limestone composed of the fossil remains of sea-lilies or encrinites is **encrinital limestone.**

— Limestone containing iron carbonate is **ferro-calcite.**

—. A local name for the soft calcareous limestone that separates the beds of Kentish rag is **hassock.**

—. The name given to a rough, hard limestone found in Kent which breaks up into thick slabs is **Kentish rag** or **ragstone.**

—. Limestones composed chiefly of coin-like fossil organisms are **nummulitic.**

—. A name for limestone which is made up of rounded grains resembling the roe of a fish is **oolite.**

—. A name for a variety of oolitic limestone having unusually large grains is **peastone.**

—. The name given to a greyish-green limestone used in ornamental architecture, and quarried from beds at Purbeck, in Dorset, is **Purbeck marble.**

loam. The name of a loamy deposit formed in river valleys and plains by wind-borne particles or debris from melting glaciers or ice-fields is **loess.**

Madagascar. The name given to the natives of Madagascar is **Malagasy.**

magnesium, silicate. A name for hydrated silicate of magnesium, a soft durable rock used in building and sculpture, is **serpentine.**

magnetism. A line on a map connecting continuous points where the magnetic needle has the same angle of dip is **isoclinal.**

—. A line on a map connecting places characterized by the same degree of declination of the magnetic needle is **isogonic.**

—. The name given to an imaginary line round the earth, roughly half-way between the magnetic poles, marking the zone where there is no dip of the magnetic needle, is **magnetic equator.**

—. The magnetic force inherent in the earth is **terrestrial magnetism.**

Magyar. Names given to a group of Ural-Altaic peoples including the Finns and Magyars are **Ugrian** or **Ugric group,** and **Ugro-Finnic** or **Finno-Ugric group.**

Malay. A name for a Mohammedan Malay living in the southern Philippines is **Moro.**

man. By scientists man is classed among the higher animals as **Homo sapiens.**

—. The term applied to one of the main divisions of the human species, distinguished by common characteristics, is **race.**

—, prehistoric. The names of two races of the Palaeolithic period, probably ancestors of modern Europeans and Negroes respectively, are **Cro-Magnon** and **Grimaldi.**

—, —. A name given to a type of primitive man represented by the Piltdown skull is **Eoanthropus.**

—, —. The name of a type of man or man-like animal (probably of the second inter-glacial period) a jawbone of which was found near Heidelberg, Germany, is **Homo** (or **Palaeoanthropus**) **heidelbergensis.**

—, —. The name given by scientists to the remains of a man-like creature found in 1921 in the Broken Hill district of Rhodesia is **Homo rhodesiensis.**

— —. A name for a member of a prehistoric race typified by remains found at Neanderthal, Germany, is **Neanderthal man.**

man, prehistoric. The name given to the prehistoric human skull found as a fossil at Piltdown, Sussex, and supposed to belong to the Palaeolithic period, is **Piltdown skull.**

—. *See also under* **race,** *below.*

Man, Isle of. The people of the Isle of Man are **Manx.**

Manchester. A name for a native or citizen of Manchester is **Mancunian.**

map. The short lines representing the slopes of hills or mountains on a map are **hachures.**

—. A name for a system of map production in which lines of latitude and longitude are parallel and straight, so that the whole surface of the globe may be shown in a single rectangle, is **Mercator's projection.**

—. A name for a device for measuring distance on a map is **opisometer.**

—. A method of drawing details on a map in accurate proportion, the eye being supposed to be at an infinite distance, is **orthographic projection.**

—. Any method of representing the surface of the earth on a plane or flat surface is a **projection.**

—. The proportional size or ratio of a map or drawing, or a graduated line showing this, is a **scale.**

—. A map of a large area of sea or land showing the barometric pressure and wind direction in different places is a **weather-map** or **weather-chart.**

map-making. A mark cut by surveyors to indicate an observed level or height above the sea is a **bench-mark.**

—. The art or business of making maps and charts is **cartography.**

—. The art of describing and mapping various regions or countries is **chorography.**

—. The name of an instrument used to draw enlargements of maps is **diagraph.**

—. A name for operations undertaken by the government for preparing maps of the country is **ordnance survey.**

—. A surveying instrument consisting of a board marked off in degrees from the centre for necessary angles in map-making, etc., and mounted on a tripod on which it can be revolved in a level plane, is a **plane-table.**

marble. The natural process by which limestone is turned into marble under the action of heat, pressure, and moisture is **marmorosis.**

marsh. A name given in North America to a tract of marshy land covered with grass is **everglade.**

—. A tract of low-lying marshy land, or land frequently flooded, is a **fen.**

—. A name for low, marshy land near a seashore, especially such a district in Tuscany, is called **maremma.**

—. A name for a piece of boggy or marshy ground is **quag.**

—. A name given to low-lying land near the sea covered by very high tides is **salt-marsh.**

Mediterranean. A name applied to the Eastern Mediterranean, together with the adjoining islands and countries, is **Levant.**

meridian. Angular distance from the equator measured in degrees of a meridian is **latitude.**

—. Angular distance east or west of a given meridian is **longitude.**

—. That meridian from which longitude is measured is the **prime meridian.**

Mesozoic. Another name for the Mesozoic strata of the earth's crust is **Secondary strata.**

metal. A name for a mineral or rock substance from which metal may be extracted in paying quantities is **ore.**

Mexico. The name of the Indian people that was dominant in Central Mexico at the time of the Spanish conquest is **Aztec.**

—. The name given to a race said by tradition to have ruled in Mexico before the Aztecs is **Toltec.**

mirage. A name given by the Sicilians to a mirage seen from the harbour of Messina and neighbouring places is **Fata Morgana.**

moisture. An instrument for measuring the rate of evaporation from a moist surface is an **atmometer.**

—. The study of atmospheric humidity or moisture is **hygrology.**

—. The name of an instrument to show the degree of moisture in the air is **hygrometer.**

—. A thermometer used to measure the moisture of the air, having a bulb kept moist and chilled by evaporation, is a **wet-bulb thermometer.**

Mongol. The name of a Mongol or Tatar people living in parts of Siberia and China is **Tunguses.**

moon, mock. A mock moon or bright spot in a lunar halo is a **paraselene.**

mound. A name given to a mound or a little ridge is **hummock.**

mountain. A name for a sharp-pointed mountain peak is **aiguille.**

—. A Scottish name for a mountain or mountain peak is **ben.**

—. The downward slope of a mountain on either side of the summit or ridge is the **declivity.**

—. The South African name for the precipitous side of a mountain is **krantz.**

—. A name used for the central or main mass of a mountain range or mountainous region is **massif.**

—. The scientific study of mountains and mountain ranges is **orography** or **orology.**

—. A name for a mountain peak is **piton.**

—. A French name for a conical mountain peak of volcanic origin is **puy.**

—. A region lying at the foot of, or about the lower slopes of a mountain or mountain-range, is **submontane.**

—. A name for the slope of a mountain or mountain chain is **versant.**

—, chain A name given to a chain of mountains, especially the Andes and a continuation of these in Central America and Mexico, is **cordillera.**

—, —. The name given in Spain and Spanish America to a long mountain chain with many saw-like peaks or ridges is **sierra.**

—, ridge. A name for a sharp mountain ridge or spur is **arête.**

—, —. A split or gorge in a mountain ridge is a **gap.**

—, —. A ridge running at right angles to a mountain chain is a **spur.**

mud. Mud or sand deposited in a channel, harbour, etc., by water is **silt.**

—. The mud or sediment from turbid water, especially that caused to flood barren land in order to enrich it, is **warp.**

Naples. An inhabitant of Naples is a **Neapolitan.**

native. The original inhabitants of a country, or their descendants, are **autochthones** or **aborigines.**

—. A name given to natives friendly to explorers and traders who visit their country is **friendlies.**

neck. A narrow neck of land joining two larger portions is an **isthmus.**

New Guinea. A name for one of the dark-skinned, frizzy-haired people living in New Guinea and its surrounding islands is **Papuan.**

New Zealand. The name of the Polynesian people inhabiting New Zealand at the time of its discovery is **Maori.**

Nile. A name for a gauge, usually a stone pillar, for measuring the rise of the Nile at the flood season is **Nilometer.**

—. A name for a floating mass of vegetation impeding navigation on the White Nile is **sudd.**

nomad. A general name for the nomadic Arabs is **Bedouins.**

nomad. The name given to a race of Mongol nomads living in central Asia is **Kipchak.**

—. The name given to the nomadic Berbers of the Sahara is **Tuaregs.**

—. A name given to a member of any of the nomadic Turkish or Tatar hordes found in Turkistan, Afghanistan, Persia, and Russia is **Turkoman.**

north. Anything relating to the north or the north wind is **boreal.**

—. A name given by the ancient Greeks to a mythical people living in the far north was **Hyperboreans.**

—. A name vaguely given since early Greek times to a land in the far north of Europe is **Thule.**

Northumberland. A native of Northumberland is a **Northumbrian.**

ocean. A part of an ocean with a depth of more than 18,000 feet is an **abyss** or **deep.**

—. An ooze from the ocean bed composed of the shells of dead diatoms is **diatomaceous.**

—. The branch of science which relates to the ocean, its saltness, currents, temperature, physical features, etc., is **oceanography** or **oceanology.**

—. A name for the slimy deposit, consisting chiefly of the tiny, chalky shells of diatoms, on the ocean bed is **ooze.**

—. A collective name for the plants and animals drifting at various depths in the ocean is **plankton.**

—. *See also under* **sea** *and* **tide,** *below.*

Orkney. A name for an inhabitant or native of the Orkney Islands is **Orcadian.**

outcrop. A name for an outcrop of strata is **basset.**

Pacific. A general name for the islands and the island regions of the Pacific Ocean is **Oceania.**

Palaeozoic. A name for the Palaeozoic era in geology is **Primary era.**

Parsee. Another name for a Parsee is **Guebre.**

pass, mountain. A long, narrow mountain pass is a **defile.**

—. A South African name for a mountain pass or a ravine is **kloof.**

pasture. *See under* **grass-land,** *above.*

pebble. The name given to rock composed of pebbles embedded and cemented together in another substance, somewhat like raisins in a pudding, is **pudding-stone.**

peninsula. Another name, of Greek origin, for a peninsula is **chersonese.**

period. *See under* **geology,** *above.*

Philippines. A name for a Mohammedan Malay living in the Southern Philippines is **Moro.**

plain. The name of the uncultivated sandy plains of south-western France, south of the Gironde, is **landes.**

—. A name for a cold, windy, treeless upland plain in tropical South America is **paramo.**

—. A term used to denote an elevated plain or table-land is **plateau.**

—. The name given to a marshy, treeless plain in Russia and Siberia is **tundra.**

—. A Spanish or Spanish-American name for a fertile plain is **vega.**

—. *See also under* **grass-land** *and* **land,** *above*; *and* **table-land,** *below.*

plant. The name for the remains or traces of a plant or animal embedded in the rocks is **fossil.**

—, distribution. Regions which contain similar forms of plant or animal life are **homoeozoic.**

— —. That branch of geography which deals with the distribution of plant life over the world is **phytogeography.**

—. *See also under* **region,** *below.*

plateau. *See under* **table-land,** *below.*

Pliocene. A name for strata lying immediately over the Pliocene is **Post-pliocene.**

—. Those strata of the Pliocene Age which resemble or are found as formations on the flanks of the Apennine mountains in Italy are **subapennine.**

pole. Lands or seas near the earth's poles are **circumpolar.**

Pole. The race of Aryan speech of which the Poles, Wends, Bohemians, Moravians, and Slovaks form the western section is the **Slav race.**

pond. A high-lying pond found on the higher levels of the chalk districts, and thought to be formed by the condensing of dew or mist, is a **dew-pond.**

pressure, atmospheric. *See under* **atmosphere,** *above.*

promontory. *See under* **cape,** *above.*

pygmy. *See under* **dwarf,** *above.*

race. The science dealing with the character, customs, and institutions of the various races of mankind is **ethnography**

—. The science dealing with the origin and distribution of the various races of mankind is **ethnology**

—, jaw. Classification of races according to the measurements of their jaws is **gnathism.**

—, —. The type of skull formation in which the jaws are straight, with little forward projection, is **orthognathous.**

—, —. The type of skull formation in which the jaws project is **prognathous.**

—, skull. Races in which the width of the skull is more than four-fifths of its length are **brachycephalic**

—, —. Races in which the width of the skull is less than four-fifths of its length are **dolichocephalic.**

—, —. Races in which the width of the skull is about four fifths of its length are **mesocephalic.**

—, type A name for the fair, broad-headed, often brown-haired Caucasian race living in parts of central Europe and western and central Asia is **Alpine race.**

—, —. The primitive black race of Australia and some neighbouring islands is **Australoid.**

—, —. A name for a member of an aboriginal short, yellow-skinned race of South Africa, living in caves and existing by their prowess in hunting, is **Bushman.**

—, —. The white-skinned usually wavy-haired race of Europe, western Asia, and northern Africa is the **Caucasian.**

—, —. The name of a dark, pre-Aryan or aboriginal race of central and southern India is **Dravidian.**

—, —. A name given to the dark-skinned division of the human race is **Ethiopian** or **Ethiopic.**

—, —. The name of a brown-skinned, wavy-haired race akin to the Mediterranean, inhabiting north and north-east Africa, is **Hamite**

—, —. The name of a Mongoloid race inhabiting the East Indian Archipelago is **Malay.**

—, —. Names given to the dark-haired long-headed Caucasian race of southern and western Europe are **Mediterranean** or **Iberian race** and **Melanochroi.**

—, —. A name for one of a black frizzy-haired race of negroid character inhabiting New Guinea, Fiji, and neighbouring islands is **Melanesian.**

—, —. A general name for a member of the yellow, straight-haired race, one of the three great divisions of mankind, is **Mongolian** or **Mongoloid.**

—, —. A general name for a member of any dwarfish Negroid race is **Negrito.**

—, —. A name for a member of the dark-skinned, woolly-haired, thick-lipped races inhabiting Africa south of the Sahara is **Negro.**

—, —. Peoples of a racial type whose characteristics resemble those of Negroes are **Negroid.**

—, —. A name for the tall, fair-haired, long-headed Caucasian race to which Scandinavians and allied northern peoples belong is **Nordic race.**

—, —. The name given to a member of a brown-skinned race with handsome features inhabiting New Zealand, Hawaii, Samoa, and other Pacific islands is **Polynesian.**

race, type. The name given to one belonging to a branch of the Caucasian race, akin to the Mediterranean, including the Arabs, Syrians, and Jews, is **Semite.**

—, —. The term used by anthropologists to describe the woolly-haired races of mankind is **ulotrichous.**

—, —. A name sometimes given to the fair-haired, blue-eyed races is **Xanthochroi.**

—, —. Mongolians and other yellow-skinned races are **xanthous.**

rain. A very heavy, unexpected downpour of rain is a **cloud-burst.**

—. The name given to an apparatus for measuring the rate at which rain finds its way down through soil is **lysimeter.**

—. The action of rain in washing away soil or wearing away rock is **pluvial.**

—. The name given to a very fine rain falling from a cloudless sky after sunset in tropical countries is **serein.**

rainfall. The unit used to measure rainfall is the **inch.**

—. A name for the branch of meteorology dealing with rainfall is **ombrology.**

—. A name for a rain-gauge that keeps a record of rainfall by drawing a line or moving an index is **pluviograph.**

—. Names for an apparatus for measuring rainfall are **rain-gauge, udometer, pluviometer,** and **pluvioscope.**

ravine. A local name given to a deep, narrow ravine is **chine.**

—. A native South African name for a ravine is **donga.**

—. A name for a ravine or watercourse in India is **nullah.**

region. The six regions in the distribution of animals and plants, according to Sclater and Wallace, are the **Palaearctic, Ethiopian, Oriental, Australian, Nearctic,** and **Neotropical.**

—, forest. A name used of a coniferous forest region stretching across sub-arctic America, Europe, and Asia, to the south of the tundra, is **taiga.**

ridge. A ridge formed by strata sloping upwards towards the same line is an **anticline.**

—. A name for a ridge of rocks is **cay** or **key.**

—. A name given in Scotland and Ireland to a long, narrow ridge separating two valleys is **drum.**

—. In geology, the name given to a ridge, bank, or mound of gravel left by an ancient glacier is **kame.**

—. A ridge of rock, coral, or shingle at or near the surface of the water is a **reef.**

—. A ridge in which strata slope or dip downwards away from a central line is a **saddle.**

ring. The bright ring formed on a cloud opposite the sun is an **anthelion.**

river. The land drained by a river and its tributaries forms its **basin, drainage-basin, catchment-basin,** or **catchment-area.**

—. The bottom of a river is the **bed.**

—. A name for a level tract or terrace between a river and hills or cliffs is **bench.**

—. The natural process of erosion by which the upper course of a river is diverted into another river-system is **capture** or **beheading.**

—. Rivers which flow together are **confluent**

—. The wearing away of the bed of a river by the rocky fragments carried downstream by water is **corrasion.**

—. An instrument for measuring the rise and fall in a river is a **fluviometer.**

—. A shallow part of a river where it can be crossed on foot is a **ford.**

—. A name for the source of a river or stream is **fountain** or **fountain-head.**

—. A name for the region that feeds a river and its tributaries is **gathering-ground.**

—. The name of the scientific study of rivers is **potamology.**

river. A South African name for the high land on either side of a river valley is **rand.**

—. A name for a steep fall and for a swift current in a river is **rapid.**

—. A straight stretch of river between two bends is a **reach.**

—. The spring or fountain-head from which a river issues is the **source.**

—. The relatively high ground separating two river-systems is a **watershed.**

—, mouth. A name given in the southern part of the United States to the marshy outlet of a river forming a delta is **bayou.**

—, —. The deepest part of the estuary of a river is the **channel.**

—, —. An alluvial tract more or less triangular or fan-shaped round the mouths of a river is a **delta.**

—, —. The tidal mouth of a river is an **estuary.**

—, —. Earth, stones, or rock deposited at a river mouth by the joint action of river and sea are **fluvio-marine.**

—, —. A barrier across the mouth of a river formed by a sand-bank is a **sand-bar.**

rock. A ridge of rocks is a **cay** or **key.**

—. A steep and rugged rock is a **crag.**

—. A wall-like mass of cooled and hardened volcanic rock filling a large crack in the earth's crust is a **dike** or **dyke.**

—. A hollow in a rock lined with crystals is a **druse.**

—. A name for a fall of rock in a mountainous district is **éboulement.**

—. A stretch of rocky ground or a rocky hill is a **fell.**

—. The irregular surface produced by the breaking, as opposed to the splitting, of a rock or mineral is a **fracture.**

—. The line along which a rock splits when struck or subjected to pressure is the **line of cleavage.**

—. The name given to knobs or humps of rock rounded by the action of glaciers is **roches moutonnées.**

—. A name for a steep face of rock or cliff is **scar.**

—. The name given to loose fragments of rock on a slope, or to a slope thus covered, is **scree.**

—. A layer or bed of rocks spread out more or less horizontally, especially one deposited by water, is a **stratum.**

—. The name for a crack or fissure in rock filled with deposited matter is **vein.**

—. A name for a small cavity caused by a gas bubble in volcanic rock is **vesicle.**

—, kind. A kind of fine-grained dark-coloured igneous rock containing iron, lime, and magnesium is **basalt.**

—, —. A clayey limestone which produces a soil on which corn grows well is **corn-brash** or **cornstone.**

—, —. Rock formed of beds of sand or gravel containing shell is **crag.**

—, —. The name of a brown, grey, or green crystalline rock, composed of calcium magnesium, iron, and silica is **diallage.**

—, —. Rock formed by the collected fossils or dead shells of diatoms is **diatomite.**

—, —. A name for any of a group of igneous rocks which have slowly cooled and are made up of large crystals of hornblende and feldspar is **diorite.**

—, —. The name given to a hard crystalline rock consisting of feldspar and pyroxene is **dolerite.**

—, —. The name of a mineral rock composed of carbonate of lime and magnesia, occurring in crystalline and granular masses, is **dolomite.**

—, —. An igneous rock resembling granite composed of feldspar and diallage is **gabbro.**

—, —. A kind of metamorphic rock consisting of quartz, mica, and feldspar crystallized in layers is **gneiss.**

rock, kind. A hard granular igneous rock consisting of quartz, feldspar, and mica confusedly crystallized is **granite.**

—, —. The name of a foliated rock composed of quartz and feldspar is **granulite.**

—, —. A name for a number of kinds of eruptive rock which have a dark green tinge is **greenstone.**

—, —. The name given to a greenish-grey rock formed of feldspar and augite is **greystone.**

—, —. The name of a blue or grey limestone rock bearing many fossils is **lias.**

—, —. A name for a hard brown or black glass-like lava is **obsidian.**

—, —. A name for a volcanic rock with spots and markings like those of a snake is **ophite.**

—, —. A name for an ash-coloured porous rock of volcanic origin is **peperino.**

—, —. The name of a kind of igneous rock consisting of feldspar or quartz crystals, embedded in a compact ground mass is **porphyry.**

—, —. The name of a kind of granite having a foliated structure is **protogine**

—, —. The name given to a variety of pitchstone which has a resinous lustre is **retinite.**

—, —. The name given to a soft rock containing silica, used as a polishing agent, is **rottenstone.**

—, —. The name given to a white variety of feldspar having a texture resembling that of loaf-sugar is **saccharite.**

—, —. The name given to a kind of rock, laminated or foliated in structure, which splits easily is **schist.**

—, —. The name of a fine-grained rock that splits readily into thin plates with an even surface is **slate.**

—, —. A name for a black glassy form of basalt is **tachylyte.**

—, —. The name of a volcanic rock of recent formation allied to basalt is **tephrite.**

—, —. The name given to a light-coloured, rough-surfaced, volcanic rock containing glassy feldspar crystals is **trachyte.**

—, —. The name of a soft, porous, chalky rock formed by deposit from springs in many parts of Italy is **travertine.**

—, —. The name given to a soft, cellular, chalky rock deposited usually by springs and streams is **tufa.**

—, —. The name given to a fragmental rock consisting of volcanic ashes, lava, etc., is **tuff.**

—, —. A name for a kind of sandy or clayey rock produced by the decomposition of volcanic rocks is **wacke.**

—, material. Rocks that contain a high percentage of silica are **acidic.**

—, —. Rock formed of sandstone is **arenaceous.**

—, —. Rocks without fossils or other indications that life existed when they were formed are **azoic.**

—, —. A rock containing a relatively small proportion of silica is **basic.**

—, —. Rocks containing lime or limestone are **calcareous.**

—, —. Rocks consisting of coal-bearing strata are **carboniferous.**

—, —. Rock containing hornstone is **corniferous**.

—, —. Rocks of a chalky nature are **cretaceous.**

—, —. Limestone rock studded with the broken joints of crinoids is **crinoidal.**

—, —. Rocks formed of thin, slaty anthracite coal are **culmiferous.**

—, —. Rocks containing iron ores are **ferriferous.**

—, —. Igneous rocks which are intermediate in composition between acidic rocks and basic rocks are **intermediate rocks.**

—, —. A rock containing an unusually small proportion of silica is **ultra-basic.**

—, origin. Volcanic fragments of rock united by heat are **agglomerate.**

rock, origin. Rock, such as granite, composed of different minerals is **aggregate.**

—, —. Rock formed by the action of water is **aqueous.**

—, —. Names for rock formed by the cementing together of pebbles rounded by the action of water are **conglomerate** and **pudding-stone.**

—, —. A rock that was formed on the earth's surface is **epigene.**

—, —. A name for rocks composed of small fragments cemented together is **fragmentary rocks.**

—, —. A rock that was formed below the earth's surface is **hypogene.**

—, —. Rocks produced by volcanic action or by the action of great heat are **igneous.**

—, —. A rock the substance of which has undergone transformation by natural agencies is **metamorphic.**

—, —. A name for the theory that the origin of rocks was due to the action of water is **Neptunism.**

—, —. A name for the theory attributing most of the changes in the rocks of the earth's crust to internal heat is **Plutonism.**

—, —. Rocks composed of varied materials are **polygenic.**

—, —. Rocks composed of strata deposited from water are **sedimentary rocks.**

—, —. Rocks, such as limestone and chalk, formed beneath the water are **subaqueous.**

—, science. The study of the distribution and character of particular rocks is **geognosy.**

—, —. A name for the branch of geology dealing with the texture, composition, and physical character of rocks is **petrography.**

—, —. The branch of geology dealing with the origin, struture, and chemical composition of rocks is **petrology.**

—, —. The division of geology dealing with the arrangement and successive order of strata or layers of rock is **stratigraphy.**

—, structure. Rock containing almond-shaped lumps of some mineral is **amygdaloid.**

—, —. Certain forms of rock that look like attempts to crystallize are **crystallites.**

—, —. Rocks that can be split easily along certain natural planes of cleavage are **fissile.**

—, —. A rock or stone having markings on its surface is **glyptic.**

—, —. The name given to a mass of molten rock which has forced its way between strata and caused dome-like swellings is **laccolite.**

—, —. A structure of vitreous rock made up of masses of glassy substance is **spherulitic.**

—, —. Rocks having parallel furrows or grooves in their surfaces are **striated.**

—, —. A name given to any dark-coloured volcanic or igneous rock, columnar or of stair-like structure, is **trap.**

—, —. Rocks resembling glass in lustre, hardness, and brittleness are **vitreous.**

—, wearing away. The wearing away of rocks by water constantly flowing over them is **ablation**

—, —. Underlying rocks laid bare by the action of rain, etc., are **denudate.**

—, —. The exposure of underlying rocks by the action of water is **denudation.**

—, —. The wearing away or breaking up of rocks by glacial action is **detrition.**

—, —. The wearing down of rocks by the rain and other weather conditions is **disintegration.**

—, —. The wearing away of rocks by the action of water or wind-blown sand is **erosion.**

—. *See also under* **stone** *and* **stratum,** *below, and under section* Chemistry.

Russian. The race of Aryan speech of which the Russians form the eastern section is the **Slav race.**

salt. Salt deposited in solid layers or strata is **rock-salt.**

salt. The name given to strata of the Triassic period in Europe, on account of their rich salt deposits, is **saliferous system.**

sand. Names for a ridge of sand drifted by the wind along the sea-shore are **dune** and **dene.**

—. Mud or sand deposited in a channel, harbour, etc., by water is **silt.**

sand-bank. A ridge of sand-banks is a **cay** or **key.**

—. A name for a narrow passage between sand-banks is **gat.**

—. The name given to a submerged sand-bank is **shoal.**

—. A long, narrow sand-bank projecting into the sea is a **spit.**

sandstone. A hard sandstone found under certain coal-beds in Yorkshire, Derbyshire, etc. is **ganister.**

—. Erratic blocks of sandstone found on the chalk downs of Wiltshire, etc., are **grey wethers** or **sarsens.**

—. The upper strata, consisting largely of red sandstone, of the Palaeozoic series, are the **Permian.**

—. Sandstone in which the pores between the original grains have been filled in with silica is **quartzite.**

Scotland. The name given to the high-lying region of Scotland, situated roughly north-west of a line from Stonehaven to Dumbarton, is **Highlands.**

—. The name given to the relatively low-lying region of Scotland, situated roughly south-east of a line from Stonehaven to Dumbarton, is **Lowlands.**

sea. The bottom of the sea is the **bed.**

—. That part of the sea which extends along the shore below low-water mark is **circumlittoral.**

—. A name given to those parts of the sea that are more than three miles distant from a coast is **high seas.**

—. Any sea that is enclosed, or almost enclosed, by land is a **mediterranean sea.**

—. Anything belonging to the open sea is **pelagic.**

—. The part of the sea just below the shore-line is **sublittoral.**

—. That part of the sea in which whales are hunted is a **whale-fishery.**

—, depth. A delicate spring-balance for measuring the depth of the sea without a sounding line is a **bathometer.**

—, —. The art of measuring the depth of the sea is **bathymetry.**

—, —. To measure the depth of the sea is to **sound.**

—, —. That part of the sea near the shore where the depth of the water can be measured is a **sounding.**

—, heavy. A heavy sea without apparent cause is a **ground-sea.**

—, —. A heavy sea after a storm, or as the effect of a distant storm or earthquake, is a **ground-swell.**

—, part. An inlet or arm of the sea is a **bay.**

—, —. A large, broad inlet of the sea or a small recess in a bay is a **bight.**

—, —. A name for a narrow inlet of the sea deeper and with a narrower mouth than a bay is a **gulf.**

—, —. A name for a narrow inlet of the sea is **sound.**

—, —. A narrow part of the sea between two portions of land is a **strait.**

—. *See also under* **ocean,** *above.*

seaweed. The name given to a region of the Atlantic to the north-east of the West Indies where enormous tracts of floating gulf weed are found is **Sargasso Sea.**

Serbo-Croats. The race of Aryan speech of which the Serbo-Croats, Slovenes, and in part the Bulgars form the southern section is the **Slav race.**

series. *See under* **geology,** *above.*

shallow. The name given to a tract of water of little depth, or to a submerged sand-bank, is **shoal.**

Siberia. The name of a Mongol Tatar people living in parts of Siberia and China is **Tunguses.**

Silurian. The name of certain rocks belonging to the middle series of the Silurian system is **Wenlock.**

sky. A name for the illumination seen in the sky of the northern hemisphere at night in autumn and spring is **aurora borealis,** and the name of that in the southern hemisphere is **aurora australis.**

snow. A fall of snow, ice, rocks, etc., singly or together, down a mountain slope is an **avalanche.**

—. A snow-storm accompanied with high wind is a **blizzard.**

—. A mountain snow-field of Iceland is a **jokul.**

—. A name for frozen snow partly compacted into ice is **nevé.**

— The name given to a very fine rain or snow falling from a cloudless sky after sunset in tropical countries is **serein.**

—. The luminous reflection over the horizon from a permanent expanse of snow seen in Arctic regions is **snow-blink.**

—. A permanent expanse of snow such as exists in mountainous or Arctic regions is a **snow-field.**

—. The height above which snow is always found in a range of mountains is the **snow-line.**

soapstone. Another name for soapstone is **steatite.**

South Seas. A name for a South Sea islander, especially one employed on a plantation, is **kanaka.**

—. A member of the dominant race of the South Sea Islands between New Guinea and Fiji is a **Melanesian.**

—. A member of the light-brown, wavy-haired, fine-featured race inhabiting most of the South Sea Islands, except those of Melanesia, is **Polynesian.**

spray. Another name for the fine spray blown from the waves is **spindrift.**

spring, hot. A hot spring throwing up a fountain of water, which comes into action at intervals, is a **geyser.**

—, —. A spring of naturally hot water is a **thermal spring.**

—, mineral. A mineral spring, or the place where such a spring exists, is a **spa.**

stage. *See under* **geology,** *above.*

stone. A name for any stone that splits easily in all directions and has no distinct cleavage is **freestone.**

—. A stone showing marks like writing on the surface is **graphic.**

—. The name of a light, porous, volcanic stone is **pumice.**

—. The name given to a hard limestone quarried in the Isle of Purbeck in Dorset is **Purbeck.**

—, rocking. A Cornish name for a natural rocking stone is **logan-stone** or **logan.**

—. *See also under* **limestone, rock,** *and* **sandstone,** *above.*

strait. A wide strait between two larger pieces of water is a **channel.**

—. A name for a strait, or narrow passage of sea, or a narrow part of a river, is **narrows.**

stratum. A name for a succession of strata or beds which contain fossils of the same type is **assise.**

—. A geological name for the arrangement of rocks of rocks in strata, beds, or layers is **bedding.**

—. A break in a rock-formation causing lack of continuity in the strata is a **fault.**

—. Layers of matter found embedded in some rocky formations are said by geologists to **interbed.**

—. Strata which lie between others specified are **interstratified.**

—. The forcing of molten masses of rock between strata is **intrusion.**

stratum. A name for a portion of a stratum of rock exposed to the surface is **outcrop** or **crop.**

—. The direction of a horizontal line in a stratum or bed of rock is its **strike.**

— Rocks or strata which link one geological period to another are **transitional.**

—, bending. The axial line of a rock-fold with the convex side upward like an arch is an **anticline.**

—, —. In geology, a region in which the strata slope downwards on all sides towards a centre is a **basin.**

—, —. Layers of strata of rock which are twisted and bent are **contorted.**

—, —. The bending of strata under pressure is **flexure.**

—, —. A stratum the under part of which has been pushed over an upper part forms an **overfold.**

—, —. Dome-shaped formations of rock sloping away on all sides from a common centre are **periclinal** or **quaquaversal.**

—, —. The axial line of a rock-fold with the concave side upwards like a trough is a **syncline.**

—, —. The name given to an upheaval of strata causing an upward bend is **uplift.**

—, kind. Beds of sandstone, shale, limestone, and coal separated by different layers of other rock are **coal-measures.**

—, —. A cross-bedding of rock in which the different layers are not parallel is **false bedding.**

—, —. An isolated portion of an underlying rocky stratum surrounded by rocks of a later formation is an **inlier.**

—, —. A layer of a different kind dividing two layers of normal strata is an **intercalary layer.**

—, —. A name for a detached part of a stratum of rock is **outlier.**

—, —. The name given to a thin stratum of rock between thicker strata, and also to the line of separation between two strata is **seam.**

—, slope. An instrument for measuring the angles at which strata slope is a **clinometer** or **anglemeter.**

—, —. The sloping of a stratum or layer of rock is a **dip.**

—, —. The sinking of a stratum or layer of rock on one side of a fault is a **downthrow.**

—, —. Strata that slope or dip together in one main direction are **monoclinal.**

—, —. The rising of a stratum or layer of rock on one side of a fault is an **upthrow** or **upcast.**

—. *See also under* **Archaeozoic, Carboniferous, clay, Cretaceous, geology, gneiss, Jurassic, rock,** *and* **sandstone,** *above.*

stream. A stream which flows into a larger stream or river is an **affluent** or **tributary.**

—. A name for a piece of water with little or no current, away from the main stream, is **backwater.**

—. The bed of a stream is the **channel.**

—. A stream which joins another stream is a **confluent.**

—. A name given in Australia and America to a tributary stream is **creek.**

—. A stream flowing out of a larger stream or a lake is an **effluent.**

—. The spring from which a stream issues is the **source, fountain-head,** or **well-head.**

—. Another name for a stream is **watercourse.**

—, bed. A name used in Arabic-speaking countries for the bed of a stream that is dry except in the rainy season is **wadi.**

—, large. A large natural stream flowing in a channel and discharging itself into the sea, a lake, a marsh, or another like stream is a **river.**

—, small. A small stream, especially a winter stream of a chalk district, is a **bourne.**

—, —. Names for a small stream are **brook** and locally **beck** and **burn.**

—. *See also under* **river,** *above.*

sun. The reflection of the rising or setting sun on the snow-capped tops of the Alps is the **alpen-glow.**

—, mock. The name given to a mock sun or luminous ring on a cloud or fog-bank opposite the sun is **anthelion.**

—, —. A name for a mock sun or bright spot in a solar halo is **parhelion.**

surroundings. The branch of science, connected with geography, which deals with the relation of living organisms to their surroundings is **oecology.**

Sussex. The name given to each of the six divisions of the county of Sussex is **rape.**

Swiss. Another name for Swiss is **Helvetian.**

system. *See under* **geology,** *above.*

table-land. The name given to a large table-land in South Africa is **karoo.**

—. A name for a high, steep-sided, American table-land, separated from a plateau by the action of rivers is **mesa.**

—. The name given to a bleak, lofty table-land in the Andes is **puna.**

Tatar. The name of a Mongol Tatar people living in parts of Siberia and China is **Tunguses.**

tidal wave. A high tidal wave in the estuary of a river is a **bore** or **eagre.**

tide. A name for a level assumed to be the mean low-water mark in tidal reckonings is **datum** or **datum-line.**

—. The backward movement of the tide is the **ebb.**

—. A rising tide is a **flood-tide.**

—. The rise of the tide as opposed to the ebb is the **flow.**

—. The state of the tide when it has either half risen or half flowed back is **half-tide.**

—. The name given to the lengthening of the interval between tides is **lag.**

—. The low tides which occur in the middle of the moon's second and fourth quarters are **neaps** or **neap-tides.**

—. The name given to the diminishing of the interval between tides, opposed to the lag of the tide, is **priming.**

—. A high tide which occurs about the time of a new moon or a full moon is a **spring-tide.**

tin. Rocks that contain tin are **stanniferous.**

township. A township in modern Greece is a **deme.**

tribe, wandering. A member of a wandering tribe living in tents, etc., and moving in search of new grazing grounds for its flocks and herds is a **nomad.**

tributary. Another name for a tributary of a river is **affluent.**

tropic. A belt of the earth's surface lying within or between the tropics is **intertropical.**

—. The broad belt round the earth between the tropics of Cancer and Capricorn is the **torrid zone.**

Turk. Names for a Turk of the tribe of Osman I, founder of the Turkish Empire, are **Osmanli** and **Ottoman.**

—. A name given to a member of any of the nomadic Turkish or Tatar tribes found in Turkistan, Afghanistan, Persia, and Russia is **Turkoman.**

universe. The description or mapping out of the universe is **cosmography.**

upheaval. A violent upheaval, such as is caused by an earthquake, is a **cataclasm.**

upland. A grass-covered, chalky upland is a **down.**

valley. The head of a valley hollowed out by glacial action, and forming a more or less circular recess in a mountain side, is a **cirque.**

—. A name given in the south-west of England to a small valley in the side of a hill is **combe.**

—. A name given to a valley in the north of England and lowlands of Scotland is **dale.**

—. A name for a small and usually wooded valley is **dell.**

—. A name for a narrow valley is **glen.**

valley. A name used in America for a rocky valley or ravine due to the action of running water is **gulch.**

—. A name for a broad valley in Scotland is **strath.**

—. A valley lying in the hollow between strata sloping downwards towards the same line is a **synclinal valley.**

—. A valley formed by a river sinking below the level of its old banks after having hollowed out a rocky bed is a **valley of denudation.**

vein. A name for a portion of a vein or stratum exposed to the surface is **outcrop.**

—. Names for minerals containing no metal mixed with valuable ores in the veins of rocks are **veinstone** and **gangue.**

village. A name for a small village, especially one without a parish church, is **hamlet.**

—. The name given to a small native village in South or Central Africa surrounded by a fence is **kraal.**

volcano. A circular opening at the top of a volcanic mountain from which eruption takes place is a **crater.**

—. A volcano which has been inactive for a long period but is not extinct is **dormant.**

—. An outburst of fluid lava or other substances from the crater of a volcano is an **eruption.**

—. A hole in a volcano or in the ground near a volcano from which vapours escape is a **fumarole.**

—. A name for an escape of gas from the earth or a vent for this, especially in volcanic regions, is **mofette.**

—. General names for volcanic phenomena are **vulcanism** and **vulcanicity.**

—. The name of the branch of science which deals with volcanoes is **vulcanology.**

—, kind. The name given in South America to a small volcanic mound is **hornito.**

—, —. A type of volcano caused by bubbles of subterranean gas forcing their way up through masses of liquid mud is a **mud-volcano.**

—, —. A name given in central France to an extinct volcano is **puy.**

—, —. A volcanic vent which only discharges hot vapours, often charged with sulphur, is a **solfatara** or **soufrière.**

—, product. More or less globular masses of rock thrown out by a volcano are **bombs** or **volcanic tears.**

—, —. Small pieces of lava flung out by a volcano are **lapilli.**

—, —. The melted rock which flows from a volcano during an eruption is **lava.**

—, —. A light spongy stone, full of gas-bubbles, thrown out by volcanoes is **pumice.**

—, —. The name given to the cinder-like lava or fragments thrown out from a volcano is **scoria.**

Wallachian. Another name for a Wallachian is **Vlach.**

waste. Names for an open space of waste or uncultivated country are **heath** and **moor.**

water. A body of water moving in a certain direction is a **current.**

—. The branch of science which deals with the surface waters of the earth is **hydrography.**

—. The oceans, underground and surface water, and atmospheric moisture surrounding the earth make up the **hydrosphere.**

—. A natural fountain of water issuing from the earth is a **spring.**

—. A pillar of water drawn up from the sea or from another body of water to the clouds by a whirlwind is a **waterspout.**

watercourse. A native African name for a watercourse with steep sides is **donga.**

—. A name for a watercourse in India is **nullah.**

—. *See also under* **stream** *and* **river,** *above.*

waterfall. A name used in the north of England for a waterfall is **force.**

weather. In Canada and parts of the U.S.A., a name given to a spell of dry hazy weather coming just before winter is **Indian summer.**

—. A place equipped with apparatus for recording temperature, rainfall, and other climatic conditions, is a **meteorological station**

—. A name for the science which deals with the phenomena of the atmosphere, especially in connexion with the weather, is **meteorology.**

—. The name given to a spell of fine weather that sometimes occurs late in November or early in December is **St. Martin's summer.**

West Indies. A name for a West Indian negro descended from runaway slaves is **maroon.**

whirlpool. The name of a whirlpool among the Lofoten Islands, off the west coast of Norway, is **maelstrom.**

wind. Those oceanic winds blowing in a contrary direction to the trade-winds—that is, south-west in the northern hemisphere and north-west in the southern—are the **anti-trade winds.**

—. A light wind which just ripples the surface of the water is a **cat's-paw.**

—. The north-westerly winds blowing in summer in the Mediterranean region are the **etesian winds.**

—. The name for a seasonal south-westerly or north-easterly wind prevalent in south-west Asia and the Indian Ocean is **monsoon.**

—. A wind blowing regularly at a certain season of the year is a **periodic wind.**

—. A name given to those parts of the southern oceans near the fortieth degree of latitude south, in which the sailor often encounters boisterous westerly winds, is **roaring forties.**

—. The name given to tropical winds blowing constantly from the north-east in the northern hemisphere and from the south-east in the southern hemisphere towards the equator is **trade-winds.**

—, ancient names. The classical names for the north, east, south and west winds were respectively **Boreas** or **Aquilo, Eurus, Notus** or **Auster,** and **Zephyrus.**

—, —. An ancient name for a stormy north-easterly wind that blows in the early spring in the Mediterranean is **Euroclydon.**

—, cold. The name of a strong, cold, north-westerly wind sweeping in winter over the Rhone delta and the Riviera is **mistral.**

— —. A name for a piercing westerly or south-westerly wind blowing over the pampas of South America is **pampero.**

—, —. The name given to a cold northerly wind blowing over the Alps to Italy or over the Balkans to Greece is **tramontana.**

—, high. A wind storm in which the winds blow spirally round an area where the barometer is relatively low is a **cyclone.**

— —. The strong winds blowing about the time when the sun crosses the equator are the **equinoctial gales.**

—, —. A wind blowing from thirty-eight to fifty-five miles an hour is a **gale.**

— —. A kind of wind storm of great violence, occurring chiefly in tropical regions, especially the West Indies, also any wind blowing more than seventy-five miles an hour, is a **hurricane.**

—. —. A wind storm which consists of a succession of gusts of wind, with rain, hail or snow, is a **squall.**

—, —. A wind blowing from fifty-six to seventy-five miles an hour is a **storm.**

—. —. The name given to a whirlwind occurring over a limited area, experienced in America and parts of Africa, is **tornado.**

—, —. The name of a violent storm-wind occurring in late summer and autumn in the China seas is **typhoon**

wind, hot. A name for the hot dusty wind that in summer blows outwards and southwards from the interior of the Australian continent is **brickfielder.**

—, —. The name of a warm, dry west wind that blows from the Rocky Mountains in Canada and the U.S.A. is **chinook.**

—, —. The dry, warm wind which blows down the slopes of the Alps is the **föhn.**

—, —. The name of a hot, parching, dust-laden, West African wind is **harmattan.**

—, —. The name of a hot, southerly wind in Egypt, blowing from the desert during March, April, and May, is **khamsin.**

—, —. The name usually applied in Arabia and northern Africa to a hot, sand-laden desert wind is **simoom.**

—, —. The name given to a hot wind which blows from the Sahara across to Italy is **sirocco** or **scirocco.**

wind, measuring. An instrument for measuring the force of the wind is an **anemometer.**

—, —. The art of measuring the force, and direction of the wind is **anemometry.**

—. *See also under* **calm,** *above.*

Yorkshire. The name given to each of the three districts into which Yorkshire is divided for administrative purposes is **riding.**

zone. The two cold zones situated inside the Arctic and the Antarctic circle are the **frigid zones.**

—. The zone between the Arctic circle and the tropic of Cancer is the **north temperate zone.**

—. The zone between the Antarctic circle and the tropic of Capricorn is the **south temperate zone.**

—. The name given to the broad belt round the earth between the tropics of Cancer and Capricorn is **torrid zone** or, popularly, the **tropics.**

HERALDRY

animal. The name for a representation of a fabulous animal with the wings, legs, and crest of a cock and the tail of a serpent is **cockatrice.**

—. The name for a representation of a fabulous animal with four legs, wings, and scaly body is **dragon.**

—. An heraldic representation of an animal with the forepart of a lion or other beast and the hinder part of a dragon is **dragonné.**

—. An animal represented with a collar or crown round its neck is **gorged.**

—. The name for a fabulous animal, half eagle and half lion, used as an heraldic charge, is **griffin.**

—. The name for a representation of a fabulous animal, half goat and half stag, used as a heraldic charge, is **hircocervus.**

—. The name of a fabulous creature depicted with a horse's head bearing a single horn, the legs of a stag, and the tail of a lion, is **unicorn.**

—. *See also under* **bird,** *below, and names of animals*

antlers. The heraldic name for antlers and horns is **attires.**

arm. A name for a hand and arm cut off squarely at the elbow is **cubit-arm.**

arms. The art of describing coats of arms in heraldic terms, so that a correct drawing can be made from the description, is **blazonry.**

—. Names for a device or charge for distinguishing the arms of different branches of a family, etc., are **brisure** and **difference.**

—. A coat of arms containing an allusion to or a pun on a family name is **canting.**

—. Any single heraldic device on a shield or escutcheon of a coat of arms is a **charge.**

—. A name for a coat of arms or family escutcheon is **coat armour.**

—. The combination of two halves of different armorial shields to form a new coat of arms is **dimidiation.**

—. A coat of arms, usually on a lozenge- or diamond-shaped panel, blazoned to show the rank, sex, etc., of a dead person, and formerly displayed on the tomb, etc., is **hatchment.**

—. In heraldry, to place a coat of arms by the side of another on one shield is to **impale.**

arrow-head. The name of the heraldic charge representing an arrow-head, as on British Government stores, is **pheon.**

ball. *See under* **disk,** *below.*

band. A figure formed of two bands sloping upwards from opposite sides at the bottom of a shield and meeting in a point is a **chevron.**

—, diagonal. A diagonal band crossing a shield from dexter chief to sinister base is a **bend.**

—, —. A diagonal band crossing a shield from sinister chief to dexter base is a **bend sinister.**

band, diagonal. A diagonal band in the same position as a bend sinister, but only half as wide, is a **scarp.**

—, horizontal. A horizontal band occupying one-fifth of the field is a **bar.**

—, —. A horizontal band occupying one-fourth of the field is a **barrulet.**

—, —. A shield striped with horizontal bands is **barry.**

—, —. A horizontal band of a different tincture occupying the upper third of the field is a **chief.**

—, —. A name for a horizontal band half as broad as a bar is **closet.**

—, —. A horizontal band crossing the middle of a shield and occupying one-third of the field is a **fesse.**

—, interlaced. The name for a device formed of two narrow diagonal bands crossing a shield and interlaced at the centre with a diamond-shaped frame, or mascle, is **fret.**

—, vertical. A narrow vertical band one-half or one-quarter the width of a pale is an **endorse.**

—, —. A vertical band down the middle of a shield, occupying one-third of the field, is a **pale.**

—, —. A name for a vertical band half the width of a pale is **pallet.**

—, —. A shield striped with an even number of equal vertical bands differing in colour from the field is **paly.**

—, Y-shaped. A Y-shaped band crossing a shield from top to bottom, composed of the upper part of a saltire joined to the lower part of a pale, is a **pall.**

bar. Each of a pair of bars placed parallel to each other on a shield is a **gemel.**

—. The name given in heraldry to a bar, usually with three pendants, painted across the top of a shield to distinguish an eldest son's heraldic arms from those of his father, is **label.**

bell. A term used of a field covered with bell-shaped divisions in horizontal rows, resembling the fur vair, but of different colours, is **vairy.**

bend. *See under* **band,** diagonal, *above.*

bent. An heraldic device that is bent and re-bent, either with two sharp angles or with two curves like the letter S, is **revertant.**

bird. A name for a bird, originally an eagle, depicted without claws or beak is **allerion.**

—. The small bird (originally a martin or swallow) without feet depicted on the arms of a fourth son is a **martlet.**

—, wings. A term applied to a tame bird depicted with its wings extended is **disclosed.**

—, —. A bird, especially a bird of prey, depicted with its wings and legs extended is **displayed.**

—. *See also under specific names.*

black. The heraldic term for the tincture or colour black, represented by a cross-hatch of horizontal and perpendicular lines in uncoloured engravings, is **sable.**

blue. The name for the tincture or colour blue, represented by horizontal hatched lines in uncoloured engravings, is **azure.**

boar. A name for a representation of a wild boar is **grice.**

border. The name for a border, one-fifth of the width of and surrounding a field of a different tincture or colour, is **bordure.**

—. An ordinary, etc., having a narrow border of contrasting tincture is **fimbriated.**

charge. A charge added to a coat of arms as an honour is an **augmentation.**

—. A name for any of the oldest heraldic devices, of simple outline and geometrical form, upon which other devices may be placed is **ordinary.**

—. Any heraldic charge depicted in its natural colour and not in one of the conventional heraldic tinctures or colours is **proper.**

—. A name for certain subordinate heraldic devices resembling ordinaries, but not usually bearing other charges, is **subordinary.**

—. A charge having the inner portion cut away to show the field is **voided.**

chevron. A name for a narrow chevron, never used singly on a shield, is **chevronel.**

coat, herald's. The short, loose coat open at the sides, with short wide sleeves, and embroidered with the royal arms, worn by heralds is the **tabard.**

coat of arms. *See under* **arms,** *above.*

collar. An heraldic figure represented with a collar or with a crown about the neck is **gorged.**

colour. The names of the five colours, used as heraldic tinctures—blue, red, purple, black, and green, respectively—are **azure, gules, purpure, sable,** and **vert.**

—. The names given to the metals gold and silver when used as heraldic tinctures, and to their colours, yellow and white, when represented in painting, are, respectively, **or** and **argent.**

—. An animal, etc., represented on an heraldic shield in its natural colour and not in one of the conventional tinctures is **proper.**

—. Each of the metals, furs, or colours used in heraldry is a **tincture.**

—. *See also under* **fur,** *below.*

crescent. A crescent with its horns turned to the sinister side (observer's right) is a **decrescent.**

—. A crescent with its points turned to the dexter side (observer's left) is an **increscent.**

cross. A cross that does not extend to the margin of the shield is **couped** or **humettée.**

—. A cross with each of its extremities ending in a trefoil is a **cross botonnée.**

—. A cross with small crosses at each of its ends is a **cross crosslet.**

—. A cross with each of its ends terminating in a fleur-de-lis is a **cross fleury.**

—. A cross with each of its extreme ends turned outwards on both sides, 'serving to distinguish the arms of an eighth son, is a **cross moline.**

—. A cross having three points at each of its extremities is a **cross patonce.**

—. A cross the limbs of which are narrow at the centre and widen out towards the ends is a **cross pattée.**

—. A cross having T-shaped ends is a **cross potent.**

—. A cross having each limb pointed is a **cross urdé.**

—. A cross depicted with steps at each end or joined to the sides of the shield and diminishing towards the centre is **degraded.**

—. A cross the base of which ends in a point is **fitché.**

—. The name for a cross having wide double-pointed ends, narrowing towards the centre, is **Maltese cross.**

cross. An heraldic ordinary consisting of a bend and a bend sinister combined in the form of the letter X, as in the St. Andrew's cross, is a **saltire.**

description. A description of a coat of arms in heraldic terminology from which a correct drawing could be made is a **blazon.**

diamond. The name for a figure formed of two narrow diagonal bands crossing each other and interlaced at the centre of a shield with a mascle or diamond-shaped frame is **fret.**

—. The name for an elongated lozenge or diamond-shaped charge is **fusil.**

—. A diamond-shaped charge is a **lozenge.**

—. The name for a diamond-shaped charge with the centre voided or cut out to show the field is **mascle.**

—. A diamond or lozenge with a circular opening in the centre is a **rustre.**

disk. A disk on an heraldic shield is a **roundel.**

—, black. Names for a black disk, or roundel sable, on a shield are **ogress** and **pellet.**

—, blue. A name for a blue disk, or roundel azure, on a shield is **hurt.**

—, gold. A name for a gold disk, or roundel or, on a shield is **bezant.**

—, green. A name for a green disk, or roundel vert, on a shield is **pomme.**

—, red. A name for a red disk, or roundel gules, on a shield is **torteau.**

—, silver. A name for a silver disk, or roundel argent, on a shield is **plate.**

—, striped. A name for a disk or roundel striped with six wavy bars of silver and blue is **fountain.**

dragon. A name for an heraldic representation of a two-legged dragon with erect wings, eagle's feet, and long, forked tail is **wyvern.**

drop. A field covered with representations of raindrops is **gutté** or **guttée.**

eagle. An eagle depicted on a shield with its wings displayed or spread out is a **spread-eagle.**

ermine. *See under* **fur,** *below.*

face. A sun, crescent, bezant, or other device represented as having a human face is **figured.**

—. An heraldic animal presenting a full face to the spectator is **gardant.**

field. A charge having its inner part cut away so that the field shows through is **voided.**

figure. An heraldic figure at the side of a shield and appearing to support it is a **supporter.**

—, small. An heraldic term meaning covered with small figures is **semé.**

fish. The "king of fish" in heraldry, usually represented with the body curved, is the **dolphin.**

—. A fish drawn with the body bent is **embowed.**

—. A fish drawn in a vertical position on a shield is **hauriant.**

—. The name for a fish, strictly a full-grown pike, used as an heraldic charge is **luce.**

—. A fish drawn in a horizontal position as a charge on a shield is **natant.**

flag. *See section* Army, Navy, Air Force, etc.

flame. A term used of an heraldic device from which tongues of flame are depicted as issuing is **inflamed.**

fleur-de-lis. An heraldic device terminating in or else decorated or strewn with fleurs-de-lis is **fleury.**

flower. A field or ordinary charged with flowers or leaves is **verdée.**

flying. An heraldic bird or beast represented as flying is **volant.**

fur. The name of the fur used as a tincture, represented by black streaks and dots on a white field, is **ermine.**

—. The name given to the heraldic fur represented by white streaks and dots on a black field is **ermines.**

fur. The name of the heraldic fur resembling ermine, but represented with a red hair on each side of the black streaks, is **erminites.**

—. The name of the heraldic fur represented with black streaks and dots on a gold field is **erminois.**

—. The name of the heraldic fur represented with a black field and gold streaks and dots is **pean.**

—. The name for a fur, resembling vair, but represented by T-shaped divisions of blue and white, is **potent.**

—. Each of the metals, colours, or furs in heraldry is a **tincture.**

—. The name of the fur used as a tincture represented by bell-shaped divisions, coloured blue and white alternately, in horizontal rows is **vair.**

goat. The name of a fabulous creature depicted in heraldry, half goat and half stag, is **hircocervus.**

gold. The name for the tincture or metal gold, represented by yellow in painting and by dots in uncoloured engravings, is **or.**

—. The name for the tincture or, when used in the representation of a planet, as on royal coats of arms, is **sol.**

green. The name for the tincture green, represented by a hatching of parallel diagonal lines from dexter chief to sinister base in uncoloured engravings, is **vert.**

head. A stag's head drawn full-faced with none of the neck visible is **cabossed.**

—. A representation of a head cut straight off is **couped.**

—. A representation of a head cut off with a jagged edge is **erased.**

helmet. Names for a representation of a scarf or mantle appearing to hang down from a helmet placed above an armorial shield are **lambrequin** and **mantling.**

herald. The names of the collegiate body of heralds incorporated in 1483 to control the use of heraldic devices in England are **College of Arms** and **Heralds' College.**

—. The head of the Heralds' College (an office hereditary in the family of the Duke of Norfolk) is the **Earl Marshal of England.**

—. The title of each of the three chief heralds of the Heralds' College under the Earl Marshal is **King-of-Arms.**

—. The name for an officer of the third and lowest rank in the College of Heralds and for an attendant upon a herald is **Pursuivant.**

—, English. The names of the six heralds under the Kings-of-Arms of the Heralds' College are **Chester, Windsor, Lancaster, Richmond, York,** and **Somerset.**

—, Irish. The arms of the two Irish heralds under Ulster King-of-Arms are **Dublin** and **Cork.**

—, —. The name borne by the chief of the Irish heralds is **Ulster.**

—, King-of-Arms. The chief King-of-Arms of the Heralds' College, and the chief herald of the Order of the Garter, is the **Garter King-of-Arms.**

—, —. The names borne by the two heraldic Kings-of-Arms under Garter, having jurisdiction north and south of the Trent respectively, are **Norroy** and **Clarenceux.**

—, —. The name formerly borne by Clarenceux, the heraldic King-of-Arms having jurisdiction south of the Trent, is **Surroy.**

—, Pursuivant. The names borne by the two Pursuivants of the Irish Heralds' College are **Athlone** and **Cork.**

—, —. The titles borne by the four Pursuivants of the English Heralds' College are **Bluemantle, Portcullis, Rouge Croix,** and **Rouge Dragon.**

—, —. The names of the three Pursuivants of the Scottish heraldic court are **Carrick, Falkland,** and **Unicorn.**

herald, Scottish. The name borne by the chief of the Scottish heralds is **Lyon.**

—, —. The names of the three Scottish heralds under Lyon King-of-Arms are **Rothesay, Marchmont,** and **Albany.**

heraldry. An old name for heraldry is **armory.**

horse, winged. The name of a mythical creature, half griffin and half horse, represented on armorial bearings is **hippogriff.**

indentation. *See under* **line,** *below.*

King-of-Arms *See under* **herald,** *above.*

leaping. An animal depicted with both hind legs on the ground and the body and forelegs raised is **salient.**

leaves. A field or ordinary charged with leaves or flowers is **verdée.**

left. The side of a shield on the left of the bearer, or to the right of one who looks at it from the front, is the **sinister.**

leg. A term used of the three legs joined at their tops in the escutcheon of the Isle of Man is **conjoined.**

—. Names for a drawing of the whole foreleg of a lion or other beast are **gamb** and **jambe.**

lily. An heraldic lily, probably a representation of the iris, is a **fleur-de-lis.**

line, partition. A partition line of an ordinary, etc. having large angular indentations is **dancetté.**

—, —. A partition line of an ordinary having square indentations is **embattled.**

—, —. A partition line of an ordinary, etc., consisting of a series of small arcs with the points turned outwards is **engrailed.**

—, —. A partition line on a shield when toothed like a saw is **indented.**

—, —. A partition line of an ordinary, etc., consisting of a series of small convex arcs, with the points turned inwards, is **invected.**

—, —. A wavy partition line on a shield consisting of a series of narrow-necked loops is **nebulé.**

—, —. A wavy or undulating partition line on a shield is **undé.**

lion. A figure of a lion represented with its head turned to face the observer is **gardant.**

—. A figure of a walking lion with the right forepaw raised and the other paws resting on the ground is **passant.**

—. A figure of a lion with erect tail, standing upright on its left hind leg, all the other legs being raised, is **rampant.**

—. A lion represented on a heraldic shield as looking backward is **regardant.**

—. A figure of a seated lion is **sejant.**

lozenge. *See under* **diamond,** *above.*

lying. A figure of an animal lying down with the head raised is **couchant.**

—. A figure of an animal lying down as if asleep is **dormant.**

metal. Each of the metals, colours, or furs in heraldry is a **tincture.**

moon. A representation of the new moon with its horns turned upwards is a **crescent.**

oblong. A name for a short, oblong figure placed perpendicularly on a shield is **billet.**

officer, heraldic. *See under* **herald,** *above.*

or. A name for the tincture or (gold) when used in the representation of a planet, as on royal coats of arms, is **sol.**

orange. The name given to a deep orange colour used in heraldry, and represented in uncoloured engravings by horizontal lines crossed by diagonals from sinister chief to dexter base, is **tenné.**

ordinary. Names of heraldic ordinaries are **bar, bend, bend-sinister, bordure, chevron, chief, cross, fesse, pale, pile, saltire.**

parrot. The heraldic term for a parrot is **popinjay.**

peacock. A peacock depicted facing the observer with tail outspread is in his **pride.**

pelican. A pelican depicted in her nest feeding her young with blood from her breast is in her **piety.**

pike. The name given to a representation of the pike (fish) on a shield is **luce.**

point. A term used of an ordinary, such as a band, having a point projecting is **urdé.**

purple. The name for the tincture or colour purple represented by a hatching of parallel diagonal lines from sinister chief to dexter base in uncoloured engravings, is **purpure.**

Pursuivant. *See under* **herald,** *above.*

quarter. A name for a space smaller than a quarter, in the upper dexter corner, unless otherwise specified, of a shield is **canton.**

red. The name for the tincture or colour red, represented by a hatching of perpendicular lines in uncoloured engravings, is **gules.**

—. Names given to a blood-red colour in heraldry, represented in uncoloured engravings by lines crossing diagonally at right angles, are **murrey** and **sanguine.**

right. The side of a shield on the right of the bearer, or to the left of one who looks at it from the front, is the **dexter.**

ring. A name for a ring as a distinguishing charge on the arms of a fifth son of a family is **annulet.**

—. An heraldic beast or bird depicted with a ring, crown, etc., round its neck is **gorged.**

roundel. *See under* **disk,** *above.*

sheaf. A name for a sheaf of wheat depicted on a shield is **garb.**

shield. The name for a shield of arms, together with its external ornaments, the helmet, supporters, etc., is **achievement.**

—. Any single device upon a shield or escutcheon is a **charge.**

—. A term meaning to divide two shields down the centre and combine one half from each to form a new coat of arms is **dimidiate.**

—. A shield adorned with heraldic devices is **emblazoned.**

— The shield or similar device on which the charges of a coat of arms are depicted is an **escutcheon** or **scutcheon.**

—. The whole space within the bounding lines of a shield or one of its divisions, if quartered, is the **field.**

—. A name for a projection inwards from either side of a shield, bounded by an arc, is **flanch**

—. The grouping of two or more coats of arms on one shield to denote an alliance between families, etc., is **marshalling.**

—. A term used of a shield covered, or strewn over, with small devices is **semé.**

—, background. Names for a representation of a mantle or scarf serving as a background to some armorial shields are **lambrequin** and **mantling.**

—, bottom. The name for the lower part of a shield is **base.**

—, —. The name for the bottom corner of a shield to the right of the wearer is **dexter base.**

—, —. The name for the bottom corner of a shield to the left of the wearer is **sinister base.**

—, centre. The name for a point in the exact centre of a shield is **fesse point.**

—, corner. The name for the upper corner of a shield on the wearer's right hand side and observer's left is **dexter chief.**

—, —. The name for the upper corner of a shield on the wearer's left hand side and observer's right is **sinister chief.**

—, divided. A term applied to a shield divided into parts of different tinctures or colours is **party.**

—, —. A shield divided horizontally across the middle, usually with one tincture or colour above and another below, is **per fesse** or **parted per fesse.**

—, —. A shield divided into four or other specified number of sections by horizontal and vertical lines is divided **quarterly.**

—, —. A term used of a shield divided into three differently coloured parts is **tiercé.**

shield, frame. The name for a narrow shield-shaped frame or border on an armorial shield is **orle.**

—, —. The name for a modified orle, or shield-shaped frame, generally decorated with fleurs-de-lis, is **tressure.**

—, middle. Names for a point in the middle of a shield between the fesse or centre point and the middle chief, at the top, are **collar point** and **honour point.**

—, —. Names for a point or position in a shield between the fesse, or centre point, and the base point are **nombril** and **navel point.**

—, part. A name for a part of a shield in the upper dexter corner resembling but smaller than a quarter is **canton.**

—, —. The upper dexter part of a shield bounded by a vertical and a horizontal line meeting at the centre of the shield is the **quarter.**

—, side. The side of a shield towards the bearer's left hand and the observer's right is the **dexter side.**

—, —. The side of a shield towards the bearer's right hand and the observer's left is the **sinister side.**

—, —. The name for figures depicted on each side of an armorial shield, and appearing to hold it up, is **supporters.**

—, slanting. A term applied to a shield in a slanting position, with the sinister chief, or top angle, higher than the other, represented as though suspended from a helmet, is **couché.**

—, small. A small shield used as a charge on an armorial shield is an **inescutcheon.**

—, top. The top part of a shield is the **chief.**

—, —. The name for a point or position in the middle at the top of a shield is **middle chief.**

silver. The name for the tincture or metal silver, represented by white in painting and left plain in uncoloured engravings, is **argent.**

sitting. An animal depicted as sitting up with its forelegs erect is **sejant.**

sleeping. A term used of an animal depicted on a shield in an attitude of sleep is **dormant.**

son. The name for certain small figures placed on the armorial shields of the different sons of a family to show their order of descent is **marks of cadency.**

—, eldest. The distinguishing bar painted across the top of the shield of an eldest son is a **label.**

—, second. The distinguishing device on the shield of a second son is a **crescent.**

—, third. The five-pointed star depicted on the arms of a third son is a **mullet.**

—, fourth. The small bird (a martin or swallow) without feet depicted on the arms of a fourth son is a **martlet.**

—, fifth. The name for the ring depicted on the arms of a fifth son is **annulet.**

—, sixth. The conventional flower depicted on the arms of a sixth son is a **fleur-de-lis.**

—, seventh. The name of the conventional flower depicted on the arms of a seventh son is **rose.**

—, eighth. The name for the cross, with its ends turned outwards on both sides, depicted on the arms of an eighth son is **cross moline.**

—, ninth. The device having eight leaves or petals, depicted on the arms of a ninth son, is an **octofoil.**

spiral. The name for a silver or white spiral on a blue field is **gurges.**

S-shaped. An S-shaped heraldic device, and also one that is bent and rebent, with two sharp angles, is **revertant.**

stag. A stag or hart represented as standing with its head turned to face the observer is **at gaze.**

—. A stag's head drawn full-faced with none of the neck visible is **cabossed.**

—. The name of a fabulous creature depicted in heraldry, half goat and half stag, is **hircocervus.**

—. A stag or hart represented as though trotting slowly is **trippant**

star. The heraldic name for a star-shaped figure with six wavy points, used to represent a heavenly body, is **estoile.**

—. The name for a five-pointed star as a distinguishing charge upon the arms of a third son is **mullet.**

stripe. *See under* **band,** *above.*

subordinary. Names of heraldic subordinaries are **flanch, fret, gyron, inescutcheon, lozenge, mascle, mullet, orle, roundel, rustre,** and **tressure.**

sun. The sun when depicted on a shield surrounded by rays, and generally having a face, is in his **splendour.**

tincture. *See under* **colour** *and* **fur,** *above.*

tree. A tree represented on a shield as having been torn up by the roots is **eradicated.**

triangle. A name for a charge resembling a triangle, formed of two lines running from the edge of a shield to the centre, where they meet at an acute angle, is **gyron.**

undulation. *See under* **line,** *above.*

walking. A beast walking with three paws on the ground and the right forepaw raised is **passant.**

—. The term used in heraldry to describe an animal, especially a stag or hart, shown walking or trotting is **trippant.**

wedge. An heraldic ordinary shaped like a wedge and supposed to represent an arrow pointing downwards from the top of a shield is a **pile.**

white. The name for the tincture silver and for white when representing it in painting is **argent.**

yellow. The name for the tincture gold and for the colour yellow representing it in painting is **or.**

HISTORY

Act. The Act of Parliament passed in 1701, which settled the succession to the British throne on the Hanoverian line, was the **Act of Settlement.**

address, parliamentary. The name given in history to an address of expostulation presented to Charles I. by the House of Commons in 1641 is **Grand Remonstrance.**

advance, military. A name used in classical history for a military advance, especially the march in 401 B.C. of the younger Cyrus into Asia to attack his brother Artaxerxes, narrated by Xenophon, is **anabasis.**

adventurer. A name given to the seventeenth century naval adventurers who attacked Spanish merchant ships of the American coast is **filibusters.**

Africa, South. A Boer name for the aliens settled in South Africa before the time of the South African War is **uitlanders.**

age, prehistoric. The name of the prehistoric age intervening between the Neolithic Age and the Iron Age, when men used bronze tools and weapons, is **Bronze Age.**

—, —. The name given to the prehistoric age in which men first learned to use iron in place of bronze or stone is **Iron Age.**

—, —. The name given to the middle part of the prehistoric stone age, between the Palaeolithic and Neolithic Ages, is **Mesolithic Age.**

—, —. A name for the later phase of the prehistoric stone age is **Neolithic Age.**

—, —. The name given to the early part of the prehistoric stone age in which men first shaped stones as tools and weapons is **Palaeolithic Age.**

—, —. *See also under* **culture,** *below.*

alliance. The alliance, in the eighteenth century, of the Bourbon rulers of France, Spain, and the two Sicilies against England and Austria was the **Family Compact.**

—. The alliance, made after Napoleon's final abdication, between the Emperors of Russia and Austria and the King of Prussia was the **Holy Alliance.**

America. The name of the early civilized Indian people dominant in Central America, between A.D. 400 and 600, is **Maya.**

—. A name for a tribe of North-American Indians formerly occupying the territory between the St. Lawrence and Delaware rivers, and siding with England in the War of Independence, is **Mohawks.**

—. A name for an extinct warlike tribe of North-American Indians formerly inhabiting Connecticut and Massachusetts is **Mohicans.**

—, Civil War. A name given to the Southern slave-holding states during the American Civil War is **Confederates.**

America, Civil War. The name given to the Northern States which supported the principles of union and the abolition of slavery during the American Civil War is **Federal States.**

—, —. The name of the campaign waged in eastern Virginia by Generals Grant and Lee during the American Civil War is **Wilderness Campaign.**

Angles. The group of seven kingdoms founded in Britain by the Angles and Saxons was the **heptarchy.**

antiquities. Names for the varied studies of antiquities are **archaeology** and **palaeology.**

Apennines. The name of an ancient Italian race which inhabited the Apennines is **Sabines.**

aristocrat, French. A name given to a French aristocrat after the abolition of titles during the French Revolution is **ci-devant.**

—, Greek. A member of the aristocracy in a Greek city state was an **eupatrid.**

—, Roman. Names for a member of the aristocracy in ancient Rome are **optimate** and **patrician.**

—, Venetian. A name given to a grandee or aristocrat of the old Venetian Republic is **magnifico.**

assembly, divines. The assembly of divines called together by the Long Parliament, in 1643, to revise the government and services of the Church of England on lines acceptable to the Puritan party was the **Westminster Assembly.**

—, French. A name given to the assembly of representatives of the estates of the realm in France before the Revolution of 1789 is **States General.**

—, Greek. The assembly of the free citizens of a Greek city state was the **ecclesia.**

—, Roman. The assembly of citizens of ancient Rome was the **comitia.**

—, Saxon. An assembly for the transaction of public business during the Saxon period was a **gemot.**

—, Spartan. The name given to the assembly of citizens of ancient Sparta, corresponding to the ecclesia of other Greek states, is **apella.**

—. *See also under* **French Revolution** *and* **parliament,** *below.*

Athens, division. An electoral division in ancient Athens was a **deme.**

athletics. A building in ancient Greece where young men exercised themselves in athletics was a **gymnasium.**

Baltic. The name given to an ancient race which dwelt on the western coast of the Baltic is **Teutons.**

—. The Baltic race that in the fifth century overran Gaul, Spain, and North Africa, destroying many works of art, libraries, etc., was the **Vandals.**

banker. A name given to an Italian merchant in the Middle Ages who settled in England and acted as a banker is **Lombard.**

banner. The name for the standard or banner of the Knights Templars is **beauseant.**

—. A banner, usually with streamers, hung from a crossbar on the end of a pole, especially such a banner as the standard of a mediaeval Italian republic, is a **gonfalon.**

—, French. The name of an early royal banner of France is **oriflamme.**

—. *See also* **standard,** *below.*

barbarians. The barbarian race that conquered Gaul in the sixth century was the **Franks.**

—. A barbarian race that overran southern and western Europe in the third to sixth centuries, founding kingdoms in Spain, Italy, and France, was the **Goths.**

barge. The name of the state barge or galley of the Venetian Republic was **bucentaur.**

bath, ancient. The name given to an ancient Greek or Roman public bathing establishment containing hot baths is **thermae.**

—, Roman. The room for the hot bath in an ancient Roman bath was the **caldarium.**

—, —. The room for the cold bath in an ancient Roman bath was the **frigidarium.**

—, —. The channels through which heated air was conducted to an ancient Roman bath were **hypocausts.**

—, —. The room heated with steam or hot air in an ancient Roman bath was the **sudatorium.**

—, —. The chamber in an ancient Roman bath with slightly heated air was the **tepidarium.**

beverage. A favourite beverage of the Saxons, made by fermenting honey and water with yeast, was **mead.**

body-guard. A name given to a body-guard of enfranchised Caucasian slaves in Egypt, members of which seized the throne and reigned as sultans between 1257 and 1517, is **Mameluke.**

—. The body-guard of the Byzantine emperors, which was partly formed of Varangians, was the **Varangian Guard.**

border. A former name for a district lying on the border or frontier of a country, especially between England and Scotland or Wales, is **march.**

bowmen, mounted. The name of the race of mounted bowmen which conquered a large part of ancient Persia is **Parthians.**

bracelet. The name given to a twisted bracelet or necklace of gold or other metal, worn by the ancient Gauls and other races of northern Europe, is **torque.**

brigand. A name for one of the Greek brigands menacing the Turkish frontier during the Greek War of Independence (1821-28) is **klepht.**

burial-place. A heap of stones or earth over an early burial-place forming a grave mound is a **barrow.**

—. An underground gallery used as a burial-place by the ancients was a **catacomb.**

—. A name for an ancient underground burial chamber is **hypogeum.**

—. An ancient burial chamber made of stone slabs and shaped like a chest is a **kistvaen.**

—. A name given to a mound of earth raised over a burial-place or as a memorial is **tumulus.**

calendar. The day inserted in the calendar each leap year, according to the chronology introduced by Pope Gregory in 1582, is an **intercalary day.**

—. The calendar in use before the present one—the Gregorian calendar—was introduced by Pope Gregory in 1582 was the **Julian calendar.**

—. Dates reckoned according to the Gregorian calendar, used in England since 1752, are in the **new style.**

—. Dates reckoned according to the Julian calendar, used in England until 1752, are in the **old style.**

calendar, Revolutionary. *See under* **French Revolution,** *below.*

—, Roman. The first day of any month in the ancient Roman calendar was the **calends** or **kalends.**

—, —. In the ancient Roman calendar the name given to the fifteenth of March, May, July, and October, and to the thirteenth of the other months was the **ides.**

—, —. In the ancient Roman calendar the name given to the ninth day before the ides—the seventh of March, May, July, and October, and the fifth of the other months—was the **nones.**

camp, Roman. A name given to the main gate of a Roman camp near which the tenth cohort of the legion was stationed is **decuman gate.**

—, —. The palisaded bank round a Roman camp was a **vallum.**

cap. The name given to a cap carried before a king at his coronation is **cap of maintenance.**

Carthage. The name given to the wars waged between Rome and Carthage in the third and second centuries B.C is **Punic wars.**

catapult. A name for a mediaeval engine of war for hurling large missiles in the manner of a catapult is **mangonel.**

—. The name of a mediaeval engine of war for hurling stones is **trebuchet.**

cement. A name for a cement containing bitumen, used in ancient times, is **maltha.**

census. In ancient Rome a name given to the census, and to a purificatory sacrifice made after this every five years, was **lustrum**

chain. A chain of links shaped like the letter S, formerly a badge of the House of Lancaster, and now worn on ceremonial occasions by certain royal and municipal officers, is a **collar of esses**

chariot. An ancient two-horse chariot is a **biga.**

—. The name of a kind of ancient Roman four-horse chariot is **quadriga.**

—, race. Each of the contesting parties in the chariot races under the Roman Empire was a **faction.**

Charles I. A name given by the Puritans to supporters of Charles I was **Malignants.**

Charles II A name given to those who favoured the claim of Charles II to summon Parliament only when he wished was **Abhorrers.**

—. The anniversary of the day (May 29, 1651) on which Charles II escaped from his pursuers at Boscobel is **Oak-apple Day.**

charter. A name for a former charter from a Spanish sovereign granting privileges to a town or province is **fuero.**

chieftain, Irish. The name given to the chosen successor of an Irish chieftain was **tanist.**

Christian, early. The name given to those early Christians who delivered sacred books or church property to the officers of Diocletian, or betrayed fellow Christians to save their own lives, is **traditors.**

—, Spanish. A name for one of the Spanish Christians who were allowed by their Moorish conquerors to practise Christianity is **Mozarab.**

Church of Scotland. The secession of members of the Established Church in Scotland in 1843 was the **Disruption.**

cipher. The name for a kind of staff used by the ancient Greeks for putting despatches into cipher is **scytale.**

circus. A name given to a man trained to fight with the sword or other weapon in the ancient Roman circus is **gladiator.**

cistern. The cistern to receive rain-water let into the floor of the atrium in an ancient Roman house was an **impluvium.**

citizen, Athens. A member of the ecclesia or general assembly of the free citizens of Athens was an **ecclesiast.**

city, independent. A name for a city of the Holy Roman Empire subject only to the Emperor was **free city** or **free town.**

civilization, Greek. A name for a pre-Hellenic civilization of ancient Greece and the adjacent islands and coast of Asia in the third millenium B.C. is **Early Aegean.**

—, —. A name for a pre-Hellenic civilization of ancient Greece and the adjacent islands and coast of Asia in the second millenium B.C. is **Mycenaean civilization.**

—. *See also under* **culture,** *below.*

clan, Roman. A clan or group of families in ancient Rome was a **gens.**

club, revolutionary. A club composed of moderate revolutionaries which met in the Convent of the Feuillants in Paris during the early years of the French Revolution was the **Feuillant Club.**

—, —. The name of a club or party of extreme revolutionaries in France during the Terror was **Jacobin Club.**

coastguard. A coastguard service instituted in 1816 to prevent smuggling was known as the **preventive service.**

coffin. A name for a stone coffin, usually ornamented with inscriptions and designs, is **sarcophagus.**

coin, ancient. A natural or artificial mixture of gold and silver used for coins by the ancients was **electron** or **electrum.**

—, —. A name given to various coins of antiquity, especially the standard gold coin of ancient Greece, is **stater.**

—, Austrian. An old Austrian copper coin, worth about one fifth of a penny was the **kreutzer.**

—, English. An old English gold coin worth from 6s. 8d to 10s., bearing a representation of the archangel Michael fighting the dragon, was the **angel** or **angel-noble.**

—, —. An old English silver coin value fourpence was the **groat.**

—, —. An old English gold coin, minted in the seventeenth century for the African trade and at first of fluctuating value, though later standardized at twenty-one shillings, was the **guinea.**

—, —. A gold coin of the time of James I, varying in value from twenty shillings to twenty-five shillings, was the **Jacobus.**

—, —. The name for an old English gold coin, value six shillings and eightpence, is **noble.**

—, —. An old English gold coin first struck in the reign of Edward IV, and worth six shillings and eightpence, was the **rose-noble.**

—, —. An eighteenth century gold coin which had a spade-like shield on its reverse side bearing the royal arms was a **spade-guinea.**

—, —. An old gold coin, minted in the reign of James I, bearing a design like the rowel of a spur, was a **spur-royal.**

—, European. A name for an old gold or silver coin once current in most European countries is **ducat.**

—, French. An old French gold coin, varying in value from sixteen shillings to nineteen shillings, was the **louis.**

—, Gallic. The name of an alloy of copper, lead, tin, and silver, used in making ancient Gallic coins, is **potin.**

—, German. An old German silver coin worth slightly more than a penny was a **groschen.**

—, Greek. The name of a small ancient Greek coin, equalling one-sixth of a drachma, is **obolus.**

—, Indian. A name for a gold coin used formerly in India and nominally worth fifteen rupees is **mohur.**

—, Irish. The name of a small counterfeit coin circulated in Ireland in the early eighteenth century is **rap.**

—, Jewish. The name of an ancient Jewish coin and standard of weight is **shekel.**

coin, Netherlands. A coin once current in the Netherlands, worth about one shilling and eightpence, was the **guilder** or **gulden.**

—, Portuguese. The name of a former Portuguese gold coin in use in the British West Indies and in Ireland until the eighteenth century is **double moidore.**

—, —. An old Portuguese gold coin, representing about thirteen and sixpence in English money, was the **moidore.**

—, Roman. An ancient Roman silver coin worth about eightpence was the **denarius.**

—, —. The name of an ancient Roman coin made first of silver and later of bronze is **sesterce.**

—, —. A Roman gold coin introduced by Constantine was a **solidus.**

—, Scottish. An old Scottish copper coin worth about a halfpenny in English money was a **bawbee.**

—, Spanish. An old Spanish gold coin formerly worth about thirty-three to thirty-six shillings was a **doubloon.**

—, —. A name for an old Spanish silver coin, marked with the figure eight denoting eight reals, is a **piece-of-eight.**

college, French. The name of the theological college of Paris founded in the thirteenth century which grew into the University of Paris is **Sorbonne.**

colony, Greek. A name for ancient Greek colonists on the mainland of southern Italy is **Italiots.**

combat. The practice in Norman England by which an accused person was required to prove his innocence by victory in a personal combat, and the demandant in a suit about land to establish his case through the victory of a champion, was **wager of battle.**

commoner, Roman. A citizen of ancient Rome not a member by birth or adoption of one of the noble families, but with full civil rights and a vote in the assembly, was a **plebeian.**

condemnation. A proclamation in ancient Rome of the names of outlawed persons was a **proscription.**

conqueror, Spanish. A name given to a Spanish conqueror of the New World in the sixteenth century is **conquistador.**

constabulary, Roman. A member of the military constabulary in ancient Rome was a **stationary.**

convert, Jewish. A name given to a Jewish convert in the early Christian Church who still kept the law of Moses is **Ebionite.**

corn, gift. A gift of corn to the Roman people during the later years of the Republic and under the Empire, to secure their votes or to allay their discontent, was a **frumentation.**

couch, Roman. The name given in Roman antiquity to a set of three couches arranged round a four-sided table, leaving one side open, is **triclinium.**

council. A name given to a council or assembly holding its meetings from day to day, is **diet.**

—, Athenian. The highest judicial court of ancient Athens was the **Areopagus.**

—, —. The council of ancient Athens instituted by Solon to prepare the business for the assembly was the **Council of the Four Hundred.**

—, Church. The name given to the general council of the Roman Church (1869-1870) which proclaimed the doctrine of papal infallibility is the **Vatican Council.**

—, imperial. The personal council of the Emperor in the Holy Roman Empire, as distinguished from the imperial chamber, was the **Aulic Council.**

—, Saxon. Names for a council in Anglo-Saxon times with whom, in conjunction with the king, lay the decision in all important matters, are **witan** and **witenagemot.**

—, Spartan. The council of elders in ancient Sparta was the **gerousia.**

count palatine. A name for a count palatine of the Holy Roman Empire is **palsgrave.**

court. A court of civil and criminal jurisdiction which met in Westminster palace from 1487-1641 was the **Star Chamber.**

—, Jewish. The highest court of justice and national council of the Jews until the year A.D. 425 was the **Sanhedrim.**

—, manorial. In early feudal times the court of the lord of the manor, attended by both freemen and villeins, was the **hall mote.**

Crete. A name for one of the ancient Cretan people and for their language is **Minoan.**

Cromwell. The title taken by Oliver Cromwell from 1653 to 1658 was **Lord Protector.**

—. A name for the followers of Oliver Cromwell is **Oliverians.**

crown, Egyptian. The ancient double crown of Egypt was the **pschent.**

culture, prehistoric. The type of culture prevailing at the end of the earlier period of the Paleolithic Age, and characterized by remains found near St. Acheul, France, is the **Acheulian.**

—, —. The type of culture prevailing at the beginning of the later period of the Paleolithic Age and characterized by remains found in the cave of Aurignac, France, is the **Aurignacian.**

—, —. The type of culture represented by remains found at Mas d'Azil. Ariège, France, succeeding the Magdalenian, and regarded as linking the Palaeolithic with the Neolithic Age, is the **Azilian.**

—, —. The type of culture of the Paleolithic age represented typically by the specimens of chipped flint found at Chelles, near Paris, is the **Chellean.**

—, —. The type of culture of the Paleolithic Age succeeding the Solutrian and represented typically by articles found in cave deposits at La Madeleine, Dordogne, France, is the **Magdalenian.**

—, —. The type of culture of the early Paleolithic Age, represented typically by flint implements, having one flat side, found at Le Moustier, France, is the **Mousterian.**

—, —. The type of culture prevailing during the middle period of the later Paleolithic Age and characterized by the flint and bone implements found at Solutré, France, is **Solutrian** or **Solutrean**

—, —. The name given to a type of culture of the Mesolithic Age characterized by the use of tiny flint implements (pygmy tools), such as those found typically at Tardenois. Aisne, France, is **Tardenoisean.**

culture, revival. A name given to the revival of classical culture in western Europe from the fourteenth to the sixteenth centuries is **Renaissance.**

cup, Roman. A small vessel or cup used by the ancient Romans for holding vinegar is an **acetabulum.**

customs union. A customs union formed in the early part of the nineteenth century among German states for acting as one state in commercial relations with other countries was the **Zollverein.**

dancing mania. The name given to an epidemic of dancing mania which prevailed in Italy in the sixteenth century is **tarantism.**

date, approximate. A word used in conjunction with dates to show that they are approximate is **circa.**

—, —. A word used in connexion with dates to show that they represent the approximate period during which an historical personage was alive is **floruit.**

—, arrangement. An arrangement of dates of historical events in order of time is a **chronology.**

dead, famous. A name for a building serving as a memorial or burying-place for the famous dead of a nation is **Pantheon.**

decree, royal. The name given to decrees issued by Charles II and by James II granting liberty of worship to certain religious bodies is **Declaration of Indulgence.**

—, Russian. The name given to an order or decree issued by the former Imperial Russian Government is **ukase.**

democrat, French. A name for an extremist in the French democratic party of 1848 is **montagnard.**

ditch. A name for a ditch running by the side of an old Roman road is **fosse.**

drinking-vessel, Greek. The name given to a large two-handled drinking-cup without a foot, used in ancient Greece, is **scyphus.**

—, mediaeval. A name for a wide-mouthed mediaeval drinking-vessel is **beaker.**

—, Saxon. Names for the drinking-vessel out of which wassail was drunk at Anglo-Saxon feasts are **wassail-bowl, wassail-cup,** and **wassail-horn.**

drowning. A name for a wholesale drowning of prisoners during the French Revolution is **noyade.**

dungeon. A name for a secret underground dungeon in a mediaeval castle is **oubliette.**

dye, blue. The blue dye used by the ancient Britons to colour their bodies was **woad.**

dynasty, Frankish. The Frankish dynasty founded by Charlemagne was the **Carolingian** or **Carlovingian.**

—, —. The Frankish dynasty which governed Gaul, or France, from the fifth to the eighth centuries was the **Merovingian.**

—, Greek. The name of a Greek dynasty ruling in Syria and Asia Minor from 312 to 65 B.C. is **Seleucids.**

—, Turkish. The name given to a Turkish family which ruled in western and central Asia during the eleventh to the thirteenth centuries is **Seljuks.**

earthwork. An Irish name for a ring-shaped earthwork, used in ancient times as a fort, is **lis.**

edict, imperial. An edict issued by the Emperor Charles IV in 1356 to settle the law of imperial elections was the **Golden Bull.**

—, Turkish. An edict formerly issued by the Turkish government, countersigned by the sultan, was a **hatti.**

—, —. A name given to a former written edict of the Sublime Porte, or Turkish government, is **irade.**

Empire, French. The period from 1804 to 1815, during which Napoleon Buonaparte ruled France and her foreign possessions as Emperor, was the **First Empire.**

—, —. The period from 1852 to 1870, during which Louis Napoleon Buonaparte, the nephew of Napoleon I, ruled the French as Emperor, was the **Second Empire.**

—, Roman. The title of a Roman Emperor as constitutional head of the state was **princeps.**

English birth. Before the English and their Norman conquerors were subject to the same laws the term used for the fact of being English, or Anglo-Saxon, was **Englishry.**

European. A name used for all Europeans during the Crusades and for centuries after by the Mohammedan peoples was **Frank.**

Federal party. The name given by the Confederates to a member or soldier of the Federal party during the American Civil War of 1861-65 was **Yankee.**

feudal, ceremony. The ceremonial acknowledgment of allegiance paid by a feudal vassal to his lord was **homage.**

—, estate. Names given to land held from a superior in return for homage and the performance of certain services, under the feudal system, are **fee, feud,** and **fief.**

feudal, estate. A name for a piece of land of a certain size, held by a feudal tenant from a superior, and involving certain economic and judicial rights, is **manor.**

—, payment. The contributions due to be paid by a vassal to his lord on the occasion of the knighting of the lord's eldest son, the marriage of his eldest daughter, and, if necessary, for the ransom of the lord's person, was an **aid.**

—, —. A payment made in feudal times to the lord of the land when a tenant died was **heriot.**

—, right. The feudal right entitling a villein to pasture his swine in woods or forests belonging to the lord of the manor was **pannage.**

—, —. The feudal right to cut green and growing wood was **vert.**

—, tenant. A name for one holding land from a superior by feudal tenure is **vassal**

—, vow. The vow of a feudal vassal to be personally faithful to his lord was **fealty.**

fine. A fine imposed under Anglo-Saxon law as a penalty for murdering or maiming a person was **wergild.**

flints, prehistoric. *See under* **implement,** *below.*

fort. The name for a small circular fort built to defend the southern coast of England against invasion by Napoleon is **martello** or **martello tower.**

fortification. *See under section* Army, Navy, Air Force, and Nautical.

Franco-Prussian War. A name for a French irregular who fought in the Franco-Prussian War is **franc-tireur.**

Frank. The name given to the ancient Franks who lived near the Rhine is **Ripuarians.**

—. The Franks who lived on the lower Rhine, and from whom the Merovingian kings were descended, were the **Salian Franks** or **Salic Franks.**

freeman. In Saxon times a name for a freeman holding lands by military service was **thane.**

French Revolution. The name given to a body of persons appointed in 1793 to enforce the decrees of the National Convention was **Committee of Public Safety.**

—. A council of five members set up in 1795 and entrusted with the task of restoring order in France and re-establishing credit abroad was the **Directory.**

—. The body of representatives of the French people elected in 1791 was the **Legislative Assembly.**

—. At the outbreak of the French Revolution the name taken by the States-General on assuming political power was the **National Assembly.**

— The French Revolutionary political body, elected in 1792, which abolished the monarchy was the **National Convention.**

—. The title of certain commissioners in the French revolutionary armies was **pro-consul.**

—, calendar. According to the republican calendar appointed for use in France in 1793 a period of four years was a **Franciade.**

—, —. The names of the twelve months of the republican calendar substituted for the Gregorian calendar in 1793 were **Vendémiaire, Brumaire, Frimaire, Nivôse, Pluviôse, Ventôse, Germinal, Floréal, Prairial, Messidor, Thermidor, and Fructidor.**

frontier. A former name for a district lying on the frontier of a country, especially between England and Wales or Scotland, was **march.**

—. A former name for a frontier or border territory in mediaeval Germany was **mark.**

—, defence. A name for the nobles formerly entrusted with the defence of English frontier districts is **Lords Marchers.**

—, —. The title of a military governor of a German border province in the Middle Ages was **margrave.**

games, Roman. The name given to games held at long intervals by the ancient Romans to mark the beginning of new eras was **secular games.**

garment, Greek. An outer garment worn by both sexes in ancient Greece was the **himation.**

—. *See also section* Costume.

general, Roman. The title given to a victorious general of ancient Rome by his soldiers was **imperator.**

—, —. A ceremony and procession in honour of a victorious Roman general was a **triumph.**

German Empire. The federal council of the former German Empire, in which the twenty-six states were represented in proportion to their political importance, Prussia having the preponderence of votes, was the **Bundesrat.**

gold-rush. A name for one who took part in the great gold-rush to California in 1849 is **forty-niner.**

Goth. The Goths that settled to the east of the Roman Empire on the northern shores of the Black Sea were the **Ostrogoths.**

—. The Goths that overran Europe in the fourth and fifth centuries and settled in southern Gaul and Spain were the **Visigoths.**

government, French. A name for the system of government in France before 1789 is **ancien régime.**

—, Greek. The name for a system of government in an ancient Greek city-state, according to which power was vested in a few persons only, is **oligarchy.**

—, —. A name given to a monarchy in a Greek city-state, in which the supreme power had been seized by a popular leader without hereditary right, is **tyranny.**

—, Turkish. A designation applied to the former Turkish Government at Constantinople, or to its central office, is the **Porte.**

—. *See also section* Politics and Economics.

governor, Algerian. The name given before the French conquest of Algiers, in 1830, to the Turkish governor was **dey.**

—, Byzantine. The governor of a province under the Byzantine Emperors was an **exarch.**

Greece. The name given to an ancient Greek is **Hellene.**

—, supporter. A name for a person of another nation who supported the Greek cause during the war of independence against Turkey (1821-33) is **Philhellene.**

guard. The name given to the regular guard, night and day, shared by all citizens under the Norman and Angevin kings, to prevent the escape of fugitives from justice, is **watch and ward.**

guild. The building where a mediaeval guild had its meetings was a **guild-hall.**

—, merchant. A mediaeval guild of merchants or a confederation of commercial towns was a **hanse.**

gymnasium. The part of a Greek gymnasium where discussions took place was the **exedra.**

head-dress, Egyptian. The name given to an emblem in the form of a serpent placed on the head-dress of ancient Egyptian divinities and kings is **uraeus.**

heir-apparent. The title given to the heir-apparent to the French throne before the Revolution was **dauphin.**

hieroglyphics, Egyptian. *See under section* Language and Literature.

hill-fort. The name given to a kind of prehistoric hill-fort or earthwork found in Ireland is **rath.**

holiday. A name given in ancient Rome to a public holiday was **feria.**

Huguenots. The name given in French history to adherents of the Holy League against the Huguenots in 1576 was **Leaguers.**

image. A term applied in the eighth and ninth centuries to those who objected to the use of images and pictures in Christian worship was **iconoclasts.**

implement, prehistoric. A name for a prehistoric implement of either stone or bronze is **celt.**

implement, prehistoric. A bone implement used by prehistoric men in fashioning their weapons and implements is a **flaker.**

—, —. A name given to an implement of chipped flint or stone, probably used for shaping and finishing other utensils, is **grattoir.**

—, —. The name given to a flint implement of the Chellean period which somewhat resembles a flat fish in shape is **limande.**

—, —. A general name given to any rough flint implement of the Old Stone Age is **palaeolith.**

—, —. A name for a wedge-shaped bronze implement made in the Bronze Age is **palstave.**

—, —. The name given to a prehistoric flint implement having a three-branched form is **tribrach.**

—, —. *See also under* **culture,** *above.*

India. The empire established in India by the Mongolians under Baber in 1526 was the **Mogul Empire.**

—. The name formerly given to one of the great divisions of territory administered by the East India Company was **presidency.**

inland revenue. An old name for an officer of inland revenue is **exciseman** or **excise officer.**

Inquisition. A name for a sentence pronounced by the Inquisition, and for the execution of such a sentence, is **auto-da-fe.**

—. The officer of the Inquisition who arrested prisoners was a **familiar.**

—. A name for a garment worn by persons in the hands of the Inquisition is **sanbenito.**

inscription. Names for an ancient inscription on rock are **petroglyph** and **petrograph.**

insurrection, Chinese. The Chinese rebellion of 1850-64, suppressed by General Gordon, was the **Taiping rebellion.**

—, French. The French Protestants, living in the Cevennes, who took up arms against Louis XIV after the revocation of the Edict of Nantes (1658) were the **Camisards.**

—, —. The insurrection directed against the regency of Cardinal Mazarin during the minority of Louis XIV was the **Fronde.**

—, —. An insurrection of the French peasants in 1358 was the **Jacquerie.**

—, —. The insurrection of the royalists (1793-95) of La Vendée, a maritime province in Western France, against the French revolutionary government was the **Vendean rising.**

—, Jacobite. The names given to the insurrections of the Jacobites against the Hanoverians in 1715 and 1745 are respectively the **Fifteen** and the **Forty-five.**

invader, Tatar. The Tatar race which overran eastern and central Europe in the fourth and fifth centuries was the **Huns.**

Iron Age. Relics of the Iron Age, showing the transition from the Bronze age, found at Hallstatt, in Upper Austria, are **Hallstattian.**

Italy. The Teutonic race which invaded Italy in the sixth century, was the **Longobardi** or **Lombards.**

—. A name for a member of one of the primitive races of South Italy is **Oscan.**

—. The name of a warlike ancient Italian people of Sabine origin is **Samnites.**

James I. The name given in history to a party which James I tried to form within the House of Commons in 1614 is **Undertakers.**

Japan. The former hereditary commander-in-chief of the Japanese army, and virtual ruler of that country, was the **shogun.**

jar, Greek. A two-handled jar used for oil, wine, and other liquids by the ancient Greeks and Romans is an **amphora.**

—, —. A kind of slender jar or vase with a narrow neck used by the ancient Greeks and often found in tombs, is a **lecythus.**

jester. The parti-coloured costume worn by court jesters was the **motley.**

Jew. The name given in Jewish history to an official copier and explainer of the law is **Scribe.**

journey, judicial. A name for the journey or circuit of the itinerant judges sent out by Henry II, and for the courts held by them, is **eyre.**

justice, Roman. The name of the rock or cliff of the Capitoline Hill from which traitors were hurled in ancient Rome is **Tarpeian rock.**

king. A name given to Richard Neville, Earl of Warwick (1428-71), was **king-maker.**

—, Abyssinian. The name of a legendary ruler of a Christian kingdom in Abyssinia or somewhere in the interior of Asia is **Prester John.**

—, Egyptian. A name for a king of ancient Egypt is **Pharaoh.**

—, —. The name given to the Hyksos kings that ruled over ancient Egypt at Memphis is **shepherd kings.**

—, Saxon. A title given to certain of the Saxon kings who had a nominal authority over the rest was **bretwalda.**

knight. A title given to a knight created on the field of battle is **banneret.**

—, attendant. An attendant of a knight whose duty it was to prepare his lord for battle was a **squire.**

knighthood. In conferring a knighthood, the touch on the shoulder with the flat of a drawn sword is the **accolade.**

—. A name for the ideals of feudal knighthood is **chivalry.**

knot. The intricate knot made, according to legend, by Gordius, king of Phrygia, and cut by Alexander the Great on being told that whoever undid the knot would be master of Asia, was the **Gordian knot.**

lake-dwelling. A name for a kind of ancient lake-dwelling found in Ireland is **crannog.**

—. A name for a prehistoric lake-dwelling built on piles is **palafitte.**

land, grant. Under the feudal system the granting of land in return for homage was **enfeoffment.**

—, measure. A name used in Danish England, and regarded by some as a measure of land corresponding to the hide is **carucate.**

—, —. The name for an Anglo-Saxon measure of land representing the area ploughable by a team of eight oxen is **hide.**

—, —. An old measure of land, usually thirty acres, the customary holding of a villein in feudal times, was the **virgate.**

—, owner. In the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries a man holding free from any obligation to serve a superior lord was a **franklin.**

—, register. The land register compiled by order of William the Conqueror was the **Domesday Book.**

—, tenure. In feudal law the tenure by which lands were held by religious bodies, spiritual service being substituted for military service, was **frankalmoin.**

—, —. A non-military tenure by which a freeman held land on payment of rent or by rendering personal service to his lord, but which did not oblige him to fight, was **socage** or **soccage.**

—, —. The name of a former system of land tenure in Ireland, by which a Celtic chief had only a life interest in his estate, is **tanistry.**

—, —. The tenure by which a feudal serf held land on condition of performing whatever services his lord required was **villeinage.**

law, code. A name for the code of laws of the Gothic kings of Spain is **fuero.**

—, Frankish. The system of laws compiled in the fifth century by the Salian Franks is the **Salic law** or **Salic code.**

law, mediaeval. The mediaeval law which required all fires and lights to be extinguished at a stated hour was the **curfew.**

leader, mercenary. A name for a leader of a company of mercenaries in the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries is **condottiere.**

league. The name given to each of two leagues or alliances formed between England and other European states against France in 1689 and 1701 is **Grand Alliance.**

—, commercial. A league between certain of the commercial towns of North Germany, existing in the Middle Ages, was the **Hanseatic league.**

—, religious. A league of ancient Greek states whose representatives met in council for religious and later for political purposes was an **amphictyony** or **amphictyonic league.**

legion. The name for a tenth part of a Roman legion was **cohort.**

—. An officer of a Roman legion commanding ten men was a **decurion.**

—. A name for a subdivision of a cohort of a Roman legion is **maniple.**

—. The legions which Rome left to guard Britain were **presidiary legions.**

letter. A name for a free letter which Members of Parliament were formerly permitted to receive and send and also for the signature distinguishing such a letter is **frank.**

lictor. The name for the bundle of rods with an axe-blade projecting from the side, carried by a lictor in ancient Rome as an emblem of authority is **fasces.**

loan. A name for a forced loan of the kind extorted from their subjects by English kings from the reign of Edward IV to that of James I without consent of Parliament is **benevolence.**

lord, feudal. Names for a feudal vassal holding lands from a superior and having other vassals under him were **mesne lord** and **vavasour.**

magistrate, Athenian. A chief magistrate of ancient Athens was an **archon.**

—, —. A name given to one of the three senior magistrates in ancient Athens was **polemarch.**

—, English. The chief magistrate of an English mercantile town before the eleventh century was the **portreeve.**

—, Genoese. The chief magistrate in the republic of Genoa was the **Doge.**

—, mediaeval. Titles of chief magistrates in certain of the mediaeval Italian cities are **gonfalonier** and **podestà.**

—, Roman. The title of an ancient Roman magistrate having charge of public buildings and possessing certain police powers was **aedile.**

—, —. The title of each of the magistrates of ancient Rome who drew up the register of citizens and supervised public morals was **censor.**

—, —. The title of each of the two chief magistrates in the republic of ancient Rome was **consul.**

—, —. Each of the ten Roman magistrates appointed in 451 B.C., during the agrarian disturbances, to frame a code of laws acceptable to both patricians and plebeians was a **decemvir.**

—, —. Under the Roman Empire, the title of a magistrate in a provincial city, whose duty was to see that the governor ruled fairly, was **defensor.**

—, —. Each of a pair of Roman magistrates exercising joint powers was a **duumvir.**

—, —. A magistrate appointed in ancient Rome to govern during a vacancy in the throne or the consulate was an **inter rex.**

—, —. A Roman magistrate second in importance to the consuls was the **praetor.**

—, —. A title borne by certain magistrates or commanders in ancient Rome was **prefect.**

—, —. The title borne by a Roman magistrate given consular powers as governor of a province, with command of an army, was **proconsul.**

—, —. The title borne by one who, after holding the office of praetor in ancient Rome, was given the administration of a province not under military control was **propraetor.**

—, —. The name given to one of a class of magistrates in ancient Rome who assisted the consuls in criminal jurisdiction was **quaestor.**

magistrate, Roman. Each of the magistrates chosen by the plebeians of ancient Rome to protect their rights against the patricians was a **tribune.**

—, Spartan. A Spartan magistrate exercising a controlling power over the two kings who jointly ruled the state was an **ephor.**

—, Venetian. The name of the chief magistrate in the republic of Venice was **Doge.**

manor. A name in feudal times for a group of manors owned by one lord was **honour.**

—. The steward of a manor or of a number of manors in feudal England was the **seneschal.**

manuscript. A name for an ancient manuscript from which one writing has been erased to make room for another is **palimpsest.**

—. The name given to a cylindrical box used by the ancient Romans to hold manuscripts is **scrinium.**

market-place. The public square or market-place of an ancient Greek town, where the popular assembly met for business, was the **agora.**

—. The market-place of ancient Rome, where public assemblies were held and justice was administered, was the **forum.**

massacre. A name for an organized attack or massacre, especially upon Jews in Russia, made or instigated by the central authorities, is **pogrom.**

—. The name given to a massacre of the French in Sicily, which began at the hour of vespers on Easter Monday, 1282, is **Sicilian Vespers.**

measure, Persian. The name for an ancient Persian measure of length, approximately three miles and a quarter, is **parasang.**

Merrimac. The name of the small turret-ship which fought the Merrimac in the American Civil War was the **Monitor.**

Mexico. The name given to a race said by tradition to have ruled in Mexico before the Aztecs is **Toltecs.**

middle class. The members of the middle class in ancient Rome who originally provided the cavalry and later managed the provincial taxation were the **equites.**

military honour. A name for the battlemented crown awarded in ancient Rome to the first soldier to scale the walls of a besieged city is **mural crown.**

militia. A member of the American militia during the War of Independence who held himself ready to march against the British at a minute's notice was a **minute-man.**

mob. A name given to the Republicans of the Paris mob during the French Revolution was **sans-culottes.**

Mohammed. The flight of Mohammed to Medina, from which Islam dates its era, is the **Hegira.**

monarchy. The name given in history to the re-establishment of the monarchy in 1660, when Charles II returned to England, is the **Restoration.**

money. A name for a piece of metal in the shape of a ring or horse-shoe formerly used as money by West African natives is **manilla.**

—. The name of an ancient Roman money of account worth one thousand sesterces is **sestertium.**

—. *See also under* **coin,** *above.*

Mongolian. A name for a Mongolian, especially a follower of Baber, who conquered Hindustan in 1526, is **Mogul.**

Monitor. The name of the large steam-frigate, armoured with railroad iron, which fought the Monitor in the American Civil War was the **Merrimac.**

monument. Names given to a prehistoric monument of one large stone laid across two or more upright ones are **cromlech** and **dolmen.**

—. A name for a single large monumental stone erected by the ancients is **monolith.**

mound. The name given to a prehistoric mound or site in northern Italy, or to the type of culture represented by articles found therein, is **terramara.**

name, Roman. An additional name given to an ancient Roman to keep in memory some fact connected with him was his **agnomen.**

—, —. The last name or family name of an ancient Roman was a **cognomen.**

—, —. In ancient Rome, the first or personal name of a person was a **prenomen.**

Napoleon. A name for extreme devotion to the Napoleonic ambitions for France is **chauvinism.**

naval defence. The title of the officer entrusted with the naval defence of England before the formation of the Royal Navy, surviving as a title of the governor of Dover, is **Warden of the Cinque Ports.**

necklace. The name given to a kind of twisted necklace or bracelet of gold or other metal, worn by the ancient Gauls and other races of northern Europe, is **torque.**

Netherlands. The governor of a province in the Netherlands under Spanish rule and subsequently was a **stadt-holder.**

noble, Etruscan. The name for the head of a noble family in ancient Etruria who exercised priestly rights is **lucumo.**

notary. A name for an official notary in France before the Revolution is **tabellion.**

oath. The Anglo-Saxon practice by which an accused person was allowed to prove his innocence by calling on twelve people to swear to their belief in his innocence was **compurgation.**

officer, chief. The chief officer of a town or district in England in early times was the **reeve.**

—, mediaeval. A name for an officer who had charge of a mediaeval castle is **castellan.**

—, Roman. The title of an officer who attended the chief Roman magistrates and carried the fasces was **lictor.**

official, forest. An official who looked after the pasturage of forests in the days of the forest laws was an **agister.**

—, Roman. The title of an official under the Roman Empire having financial duties in an imperial province was **procurator.**

Orange Free State. The name of the law-making body of the Orange Free State and of that of the South African Republic prior to the union with Great Britain is **Volksraad.**

ornament, Roman. The circular ornament worn by children in ancient Rome was a **bulla.**

outlaw, Indian. A name for an outlaw belonging to one of the bands that lived by plunder in India in the eighteenth century is **Pindari.**

page. A mediaeval page preparing to be a squire was a **varlet.**

parliament. The name given to the parliament which met in 1614 and was dissolved without passing a single measure is **Addled Parliament.**

—. A name given to the assembly of barons and knights which in 1258 passed the Provisions of Oxford is the **Mad Parliament.**

—, Long. The expulsion of those members of the Long Parliament who were opposed to the trial of Charles I in 1648 by Colonel Pride and a body of soldiers has since been known as **Pride's Purge.**

—, —. The name given to the remaining members of the Long Parliament after Colonel Pride had purged that body of its moderate members is **Rump Parliament.**

—, Russian. The Russian Parliament of 1906-1917 was the **Duma.**

—. *See also section* Politics and Economics.

party, American. An American political party, founded by Alexander Hamilton after the War of Independence, which aimed at the maintenance of a strong national Government, was the **Federal Party.**

party, French. The name given to a supporter of the militarist policy advocated by General Boulanger in France, from about 1886 to 1889, was **Boulangist.**

—, —. A name given to a member of a party of French politicians under the restoration of the monarchy who advocated a monarchy with limited powers is **doctrinaire.**

—, Imperial. The name given to a member of the party in Italy supporting the German Emperor in the Middle Ages is **Ghibelline.**

—, Italian. A member of a party which aimed at freeing all Italian land from foreign rule was an **Irredentist.**

—, moderate. A name given to a member of the moderate party in the French Legislative Assembly (1791-1793) is **Girondin** or **Girondist.**

—, papal. A name for a member of the party in Italy supporting the Pope against the German Emperor during the late Middle Ages is **Guelph.**

—, political. The political party which fought for the privileges of Parliament in the reign of Charles II, and opposed the King, was the **country party** or **Whigs.**

—, —. A name given to a member of the political party which in 1688 supported the Stuarts is **Tory.**

—, republican. A name for a member of the advanced republican party (1792-1793) in the French Legislative Assembly is **montagnard.**

period. The period of republican government in England lasting from the execution of Charles I in 1649 until 1653, when Cromwell assumed the protectorate, was the **Commonwealth period.**

—. A period of ten years is a **decade.**

—. A period of time marked by memorable events is an **epoch.**

—. A term used for the period during which a famous person, the dates of whose birth and death are uncertain, is assumed to have been alive, is **floruit.**

—. The name given in history to the period from March 20th, 1815, when Napoleon arrived in Paris from Elba, to June 28th, when Louis XVIII was restored to the French throne, is **Hundred Days.**

—. The name of a period of fifteen years used by the Roman emperors for purposes of taxation or for reckoning dates was **indiction.**

—. A name given to the period in English history between the beheading of Charles I in 1649 and the Restoration of Charles II in 1660 is **Interregnum.**

—. The usual name for the Bronze Age of Crete, the period between 2700 B.C. and 1225 B.C., is **Minoan period.**

—. The name for the period of four years elapsing between each celebration of the ancient Olympic Games, used as a means of calculating time in ancient Greece, is **Olympiad.**

—. A term used of the period of Jewish history after the exile or captivity in Babylonia is **post-exilian** or **post-exilic.**

—. The name given to the period between 1810 and 1820 during which George, Prince of Wales, was empowered to govern for his father, George III, is **Regency.**

persecution. The name given to the persecution of the Huguenots in France by quartering dragoons in suspected houses and villages is **dragonnade.**

Persia. The dynasty which ruled the Persian Empire from A.D. 226 to 651 was the **Sassanian** or **Sassanid dynasty.**

—. The civil governor of a province of the ancient Persian Empire was a **satrap,** and his province a **satrapy.**

Peru. The title of the sovereign of Peru before the Spanish Conquest was **Inca.**

petition. The petition presented by the Puritans to James I in 1603, supposed to have been signed by one thousand clergymen, was the **Millenary Petition.**

phalanx. The commander of an ancient Greek phalanx was a **tetrarch.**

pirate. A name for the Algerian pirates who in the late Middle Ages terrorized the trading ships using the Mediterranean is **Algerines.**

pitcher. The name of a kind of Greek pitcher or water jar with two or more handles is **hydria.**

plague. The plague that ravaged Europe in the fourteenth century was the **Black Death.**

platform. The name of a platform formerly used at parliamentary elections is **hustings.**

police. A name for the Russian secret police under the rule of the Tsars is **okhrana.**

policy. The name given to the policy of Strafford and Laud to make Charles I "the most absolute prince in Christendom" is **Thorough.**

pound. The Roman pound, the unit of weight and value, was the **libra.**

power, absolute. The absolute power, both at home and abroad, vested in the chief magistrates of ancient Rome in times of emergency was the **imperium.**

Presbyterian. The name given in Scottish history to a group of zealous Presbyterians who in 1650 refused to join the Royalists is **Protestors.**

pretender. The son and grandson of James II, heirs to the throne, excluded from the succession by Parliament, are known in history respectively as the **Old Pretender** and the **Young Pretender.**

priest. The name given to a priest of the ancient Britons and Gauls is **druid.**

—. A member of a college of priestly heralds of ancient Rome who presided over the ceremonies connected with the declaration of war and the ratification of peace was a **fetial.**

—. A priest of ancient Rome devoted to the service of a particular deity was a **flamen.**

—. The name given to a member of one of the priestly families of the ancient Medes and Persians was **magus.**

—. The title borne by a member of the most important college of priests in ancient Rome, and afterwards adopted by the popes, was **pontifex.**

—. In ancient Rome, a member of the college of fifteen priests who had the care of the Sybilline books was a **quindecemvir.**

prime minister. The prime minister of the former Turkish Empire was the **Grand Vizier.**

prison. The prison fortress of Paris under the monarchy, destroyed by the revolutionaries in 1789, was the **Bastille.**

prisoner. A name given to a French prisoner detained in England and to an English subject detained in France during the Napoleonic Wars was **détenu.**

promissory note. A promissory note issued as currency by the revolutionary government of France on the security of state lands was an **assignat.**

Protestant. The name given to members of the extreme Protestant party in Ulster is **Orangemen.**

—, French. The name given by Roman Catholics to French and Swiss Protestants in the sixteenth century and after was **Huguenots.**

province, Byzantine. The name of an administrative division of a province in the ancient Byzantine Empire was **theme.**

— Roman. The name given to the governor of the fourth part of an ancient Roman province, and also to a subordinate prince under Roman suzerainty, was **tetrarch.**

punishment. A mode of punishing a mutiny in the ancient Roman army by executing every tenth soldier was **decimation.**

purchase. The right of prior purchase of provisions for the royal household, enjoyed by sovereigns up to the time of Charles II, was the right of **pre-emption.**

Puritan. A name given to the Puritans in the Civil War (1642-1649) by the Cavaliers was **Roundheads.**

rampart. The rampart of earth round a Roman camp was an **agger.**

reform. A name for the principles and demands of a group of reformers set out in the People's Charter in 1838 is **Chartism.**

republic, French. The French republic of 1793-1805 is the **First Republic.**

—, —. The French republic of 1848-1852 is the **Second Republic.**

—, —. A name for the French republic since 1871 is **Third Republic.**

revels. A title formerly given to the master of the Christmastide revels in a great house was **lord of misrule.**

revenue. A name used before the Reformation for the first year's revenue of a see, paid by the ecclesiastic holding it to the Pope, was **annates.**

review. A periodical gathering or review of armed retainers formerly held in certain districts in Scotland was a **wapinshaw.**

revolution. A name given to a colonist who supported the struggle for independence in the American Revolution was **Whig.**

Rhine. The name given to the ancient Franks who lived near the Rhine is **Ripuarians.**

rioter. The bands of rioters who destroyed industrial machinery in the early years of the nineteenth century were the **Luddites.**

robber. A name given in olden times to a robber who wandered about in search of plunder was **freebooter.**

Roman Catholic. The name given in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries to a Roman Catholic who refused to submit to the authority of the Church of England was **recusant.**

Rome. The name given to a commission of three magistrates in ancient Rome, between whom the supreme power was divided is **triumvirate.**

room, inner. The name given to an inner or private room in an ancient Greek house, especially to a woman's apartment, is **thalamus.**

royalist. A royalist who fled from France at the time of the French Revolution was an **emigré.**

running-course. An ancient Greek course for foot-racing was a **stadium.**

Russia. The title of the former emperor of Russia was **Tsar,** and that of his wife **Tsarina.**

Scotland. An ancient people speaking a Celtic language and living in eastern Scotland were the **Picts.**

scribe, Hebrew. The Hebrew scribes whose duty it was to copy out and interpret the meaning of the Jewish Law were the **Sopherim.**

—, Roman. A name for an official scribe under the Roman Empire is **tabellion.**

seafarer. The most powerful seafaring race of antiquity was the **Phoenician.**

seal. The study of engraved seals is **sphragistics.**

sea-rover, Norse. The Scandinavian sea-rovers of the ninth to the twelfth centuries who roamed the Baltic and conquered parts of Russia were the **Varangians.**

—, Scandinavian. A name for the Scandinavian sea-rovers who ravaged the coasts of England and other parts of Northern Europe from the seventh to the tenth centuries is **Vikings.**

Semitic. The name used to distinguish an ancient Semitic race of Saba in southern Arabia is **Sabaean.**

senate. A name for the senators of ancient Rome is **conscript fathers.**

—. A name given to the ancient Roman senate-house is **curia.**

senate. The name of a badge of an ancient Roman senator, consisting of a purple stripe down the edges of the tunic, is **laticlave.**

Serbia. The former national assembly of Serbia, when a separate country, was the **Skupshtina.**

serf, feudal. The name for a serf attached to a feudal lord or to an estate is **villein.**

—, Sparta. The name for a serf in ancient Sparta is **helot.**

shaft, stone. A name for a square stone shaft, tapering slightly and of pyramidal form at the top, common in ancient Egypt, is **obelisk.**

shield. The name given to the shield of an ancient Roman legionary is **scutum.**

shire. An old division of some English shires corresponding to a hundred, and surviving to-day in Yorkshire, etc., is the **wapentake.**

shrine. A shrine or sanctuary of the ancient Romans was a **delubrum.**

—. The name given to a stone or metal lattice-work surrounding a shrine is **transenna.**

Sicily. The name given to one of the aboriginal inhabitants of Sicily is **Sicanian.**

—. The name given to an ancient race supposed to have entered Sicily about the eleventh century B.C. is **Sicels.**

siege-tower. A name for a wooden tower on wheels used to protect the besiegers of a castle or town is **belfry.**

signal. A signal made of two crossed sticks with charred ends, used to summon Scottish clansmen, was the **fiery cross.**

slave. The name given to the slave who carried a torch before a consul and other important people in ancient Rome was **lampadary.**

—. A slave attached to landed property, who might only be sold with the property, was a **predial slave.**

—, trade. An agreement between the King of Spain and another power for the supply of slaves to the Spanish colonies in America, especially such an agreement between Great Britain and Spain at the Peace of Utrecht (1713), was an **assiento.**

smoke-chamber. A smoke-chamber in a Roman house where wood was dried and food and wine matured was a **fumarium.**

social system. The mediaeval social system based on tenure of land in return for military service was **feudalism.**

society, anarchist. The name of a member of a Russian anarchist society that was responsible for the assassination of Tsar Alexander II in 1881 is **nihilist.**

—, Chinese. A name for a member of the Chinese society that took a leading part in the rising against foreign residents in 1900 is **Boxer.**

—, Irish. The Irish secret society formed about 1858 to overthrow British rule in Ireland and establish an independent republic was the **Fenians.**

—, republican. A name for members of a secret republican society in France and Italy during the early part of the nineteenth century is **Carbonari.**

—, revolutionary. A Neapolitan secret society organized early in the nineteenth century was the **Camorra.**

—, secret. The name of a Sicilian secret society professing enmity to the law is **Mafia.**

sovereignty. A name for joint sovereignty in a state is **condominium.**

Spanish Inquisition. *See under* **Inquisition,** *above.*

staff. The name of a kind of staff used by the ancient Greeks for putting dispatches into cipher is **scytale.**

standard, French. The charge on the old royalist standard of France is the **fleur-de-lis.**

—, imperial. The military standard of the Emperor Constantine, adopted after his conversion to Christianity, was the **labarum.**

—. *See also under* **banner,** *above.*

stick, notched. A stick in which notches or marks are made as a means of keeping accounts is a **tally.**

Stuarts, supporter. The name given to a supporter of the Stuarts after the abdication of James II is **Jacobite.**

sultan, Egyptian. A name for a member of a dynasty of sultans that ruled in Egypt from 1257-1517 is **Mameluke.**

tapestry. A piece of tapestry on which is worked scenes connected with the Norman conquest of England, and supposed to date from that period, is the **Bayeux tapestry.**

tax. The name given to a tax of two shillings on every hearth, levied in England from 1662 to 1689, is **hearth-money.**

—. The name of an unpopular tax levied by Charles I without the consent of Parliament for the equipment of ships of the navy is **ship-money.**

—, poll. The name given to a rising in 1381 of the peasants and artisans of England, incensed by the poll-tax, is **Peasants' Revolt.**

—, salt. A name for a tax on salt in France before the Revolution is **gabelle.**

temple, Roman. The national temple to Jupiter, which was also a fortress, on the Capitoline hill in ancient Rome was the **Capitol.**

Teuton. The name of a Teutonic people inhabiting northern Germany in the early centuries of Christianity, numbers of whom invaded southern Britain, is **Saxons.**

theatre. An awning stretched above the seats in an ancient Roman theatre as a protection against sun and rain was a **velarium.**

throne, succession. A name given in the reign of Charles II to one who wished to prevent James, Duke of York, from succeeding to the throne was **exclusionist.**

—, —. The oath abjuring allegiance to the Pretender, which all those holding public office were obliged to take after the ascent of William III to the throne, was the **Oath of Abjuration.**

tilting match. A tilting match between knights or men-at-arms with lances was a **joust.**

toll. The name of a toll formerly levied for the repair of town walls is **murage.**

—, gate. The name given to bands of rioters who destroyed toll-gates in Wales in the disturbances of 1843-44 was **Rebeccaites.**

tomb, Egyptian. The name given to a secret passage or chamber, containing a statue of the dead in an ancient Egyptian tomb is **serdab.**

—, —. A name for a narrow tunnel or gallery cut through living rock in ancient Egyptian rock-tombs is **syrinx.**

—, prehistoric. A prehistoric tomb in the form of a stone chest is a **cist.**

torture. The name of a mediaeval instrument of torture contrived to stretch the joints of a person is the **rack.**

tower, fortified. A name for a fortified and usually square tower of the kind built between the thirteenth and sixteenth centuries on the borders of England and Scotland is **peel.**

town-hall, Greek. The public hall of an ancient Greek city was the **prytaneum.**

trade, association. A name for a mediaeval association of persons for religious, trade, or other purposes is **guild.**

Transvaal. The law-making body of the Transvaal prior to the union with Great Britain was the **Volksraad.**

treasury. A name for the section of the King's court that functioned as the royal treasury in the Norman and Angevin periods, and later became a court of law dealing with national finance, is **Exchequer.**

treaty. A name given to two eighteenth century treaties regarding certain fortified cities between France and Holland is **barrier treaty.**

treaty. A name for a treaty or agreement made between the Pope and the sovereign of a country regarding the rights of the Church in that country is **concordat.**

tribunal, religious. The name of a Roman Catholic tribunal established to discover and suppress offences against religion is **Inquisition.**

tribune, Roman. The name for the power possessed by a tribune in ancient Rome to prohibit any legislation considered injurious to the plebeians was **veto.**

tribute, Welsh. The name for a tribute formerly demanded by a king or prince on first entering Wales is **mise.**

triumph, Roman. A name of a lesser triumph accorded to a victorious general in ancient Rome is **ovation.**

Troy. The name for a member of the warlike tribe of Thessaly that followed Achilles to the Trojan War is **Myrmidon.**

—. A name given to the ancient inhabitants of Troy is **Teucrians.**

trumpet. The straight trumpet of the ancient Romans was the **tuba.**

Turk. A name for a Turk of the family or tribe of Osman I, founder of the Turkish Empire, is **Osmanli.**

underground building. A popular name given to the crude underground buildings of stone found in many parts of Scotland is **Picts' houses.**

United States. July 4th, the anniversary of the adoption by Congress of the Declaration of Independence in 1776, is celebrated in the United States as **Independence Day.**

vase. The name given to an ancient box-like vase used to hold toilet preparations is **pyxis.**

—, Egyptian. An ancient Egyptian burial vase with a lid in the form of a head is a **canopus.**

vase, Roman. A small vase with a slender neck used for perfumes and oils by the ancient Romans is an **ampulla.**

vassal. A name for a feudal vassal-in-chief who held land directly from the king and in turn had sub-vassals holding land from him is **suzerain.**

veto. The name of a right of veto possessed by members of the Polish diet before 1791 is **liberum veto.**

vote. A parliamentary vote formerly obtained by the nominal transfer of property to a person not qualified as a voter was a **faggot-vote.**

Wales. The name of an ancient British people of South Wales is **Silures.**

wall-writing. A writing or drawing scratched on an ancient wall is a **graffito.**

weapon, flint. *See under* **implement,** *above.*

woman, revolutionary. A name for one of the women of the poor classes who instigated riots in Paris during the French Revolution is **poissarde.**

writing, ancient. A name for the study and reading of ancient writings is **palaeography.**

—, instrument. A name for a pointed implement with which the ancients wrote on wax-coated tablets is **style** or **stylus.**

—, material. A name for a sheet of writing material made from a water-rush with triangular stems, used by the ancient Egyptians, Romans, and Greeks, is **papyrus.**

—, tablet An ancient writing tablet of two leaves hinged together was a **diptych.**

—, —. An ancient writing tablet of three leaves hinged together was a **triptych.**

Wycliffe. A name for a follower of John Wycliffe is **Lollard.**

LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE

ablaut. Another name for ablaut is **gradation.**

abusive. A name for an abusive speech or writing is **diatribe.**

—. A name for abusive language or violent expression of censure is **invective.**

—. A name given to a grossly abusive satire against a public individual is **lampoon.**

—. *See also under* **satire** *below.*

accent. The name of an accent (´) applied to vowels, especially in French, sometimes showing that the vowel so marked should be uttered sharply, is **acute.**

— The name of an accent (ˆ) placed over a vowel to indicate contraction, length, etc., is **circumflex.**

— The name of an accent (`) applied to vowels, especially in French, indicating a low pitch, is **grave.**

—. A word attached so closely in pronunciation to the following stressed word as to have no accent itself is **proclitic.**

—. *See also under* **emphasis** *and* **Greek,** accent, *below.*

adjective. Names for an adjective that denotes quantity are **adjective of quantity** and **numeral adjective.**

—. An adjective expressing a higher degree of quality, quantity, etc., than the simple word is a **comparative.**

—. To give the inflexions of adjectives is to **decline.**

—. A name used for the distinctive adjective " the " is **definite article.**

— An adjective that describes is a **descriptive adjective** or **adjective of quality.**

—. Names given to adjectives which distinguish one noun from another, and which are so closely connected with pronouns that sometimes that word is used for them, are **distinctive adjective** and **pronominal adjective.**

— A name for an adjective that expresses a quality or attribute is **epithet.**

adjective. A name used for the distinctive adjective " a " or " an " is **indefinite article.**

—. Adjectives and verbal substantives not limited by person, number, etc., are **infinite.**

—. A name for a word that partakes of the qualities of a verb and an adjective is **participle.**

—. In grammar, the simple or uncompared degree of an adjective is its **positive.**

—. An adjective, when it is used with the verb " to be " to make a statement about the subject, is **predicative.**

—. An adjective expressing the highest or utmost degree of quality, quantity, etc., is a **superlative.**

adverb. An adverb expressing a higher degree of quality, quantity, etc., than the simple word is a **comparative.**

—. In grammar, the simple or uncompared degree of an adverb is its **positive.**

—. An adverb expressing the highest or utmost degree of quality, quantity, etc., is a **superlative.**

—, phrase. A name for an adverbial phrase consisting of a noun combined with a participle or adjective is **nominative absolute.**

Afghan. The native name of the language spoken by the Afghans is **Pushtu.**

Africa, East. The name of a Bantu language containing a great number of Arabic, Indian, and European expressions, spoken in a large part of East Africa, is **Swahili.**

—, South. The modified form of Dutch, known as **Afrikaans,** is also sometimes called **Taal,** See **Afrikaans.**

agreement. Breach of the rules of agreement in grammar is **false concord.**

alphabet. A system of signs made with the fingers of one or both hands, and representing letters and ideographs, as used by the deaf and dumb, is a **manual alphabet.**

alphabet. A name for an ancient British and Irish alphabet, the characters of which consist of thin strokes cut on the sides of or across a continuous line, is **Ogham**.

—. A letter or character of the earliest Teutonic alphabet is a **rune.**

— A list of characters representing syllables used in some languages instead of an alphabet is a **syllabary.**

—, Japanese. The name given to the symbols of the Japanese alphabet is **kana.**

—, Runic. A name for the Runical phabet, formed of its first six signs, used by the Teutonic peoples before the introduction of the Roman alphabet, is **futhorc.**

American. The name for an American idiom or form of expression is **Americanism.**

and. A name given to the sign & is **ampersand.**

anecdote. A name given to collections of interesting anecdotes or gossip about people or places is **ana**

animal. A name given to a mediaeval natural history is **bestiary.**

antecedent. A part of speech relating or referring to an antecedent is **relative.**

anthology. Other names for anthology are **florilegium, garland,** and **treasury.**

anticipation. The representation of something future as having taken place is **prolepsis.**

Aramaic. The name of an ancient dialect of Western Aramaic is **Samaritan.**

arrangement. *See under* **order,** *below.*

Aryan. The two branches of the Aryan or Indo-Persian group of languages are the Persian or **Iranian** branch, and the Indian branch, which is **Indic** or **Indo-Aryan.**

aspirate. Names for the aspirate in Greek grammar are **rough breathing** and **spiritus asper.**

—. Names given in Greek grammar to the unaspirated sound of an initial vowel and also to the symbol for it are **smooth breathing** and **spiritus lenis.**

Bacchus, hymn. A name for an ancient Greek hymn of a wild character sung in honour of Bacchus is **dithyramb.**

ballad. A name given to a ballad printed on a single sheet was **broadside** or **broadsheet.**

Baltic. The languages of the Baltic branch of the Indo-European family are **Lithuanian, Lettish,** and the extinct **Old Prussian.**

Basque. The name given to the language of the Basques of the Pyrenees is **Euskarian.**

Belgium. The Romance language or dialect, akin to French, spoken in the east and south of Belgium is **Walloon.**

Bible. *See under section* Christianity and Judaism.

blunder. The name of an amusing, self-contradictory blunder in speech or writing, associated especially with the Irish, is **bull.**

Boer. The modified form of Dutch used in South Africa and known as **Afrikaans,** is also sometimes called **Taal.** See **Afrikaans.**

book. A book from the press founded by the famous Venetian printer, Aldus Manutius (1450-1515), is an **Aldine.**

—. To remove the objectionable parts of a book is to **bowdlerize** or **expurgate.**

—. The name of a book of tales, riddles, rhymes, ballads, etc., sold in bygone days by chapmen is **chapbook.**

—. A name for a number of passages from various authors gathered together in a book is **collectanea.**

—. A name for a book in which notable passages, facts, and statements are entered, usually under general headings, is **commonplace-book.**

—. Names for a book used for keeping a daily record of events are **diary** and **journal.**

—. A book printed by the Elzevirs, a family of Dutch printers who flourished in the seventeenth century and were famous for their beautifully printed, small, vellum-bound editions of the classics, is an **Elzevir.**

book A name for a book that gives information about every subject or about all branches of a particular subject, especially one arranged in alphabetical order, is **encyclopaedia.**

—. The name given to early printed books, especially those printed before the year 1500, is **incunabula.**

—. A name for a book containing pieces of poetry and prose on various subjects drawn from many quarters is **miscellanea** or **miscellany.**

— Names given to a small book, consisting of a few sheets stitched together but not bound, especially on a subject of current interest, are **pamphlet** and **brochure.**

—. A name given to a book written in several languages, especially to such editions of the Bible or New Testament, is **polyglot.**

—. A name for a large or heavy book is **tome.**

—. A name for a book, especially one of a set, is **volume.**

—, description. The methodical description and history of books is **bibliography.**

—, licence A name used for official licence to print books, especially those sanctioned by the Roman Catholic Church, is **imprimatur.**

—, list. The name for a classified list of books on a certain subject or by a certain author is **bibliography.**

—, —. A name for a complete list of books, either alphabetical or arranged in groups, often with particulars added to the items, is **catalogue.**

—, lover. A lover or collector of rare books is a **bibliophile.**

—, study. The scientific study of books is **bibliology.**

—, tail-piece. A name for an inscription printed at the beginning or end of a book, giving the printer's name, address, etc., is **colophon.**

—. *See also under section* Business, Commerce, and Industry.

breaking off. The name for a sudden breaking off of a sentence for the sake of effect is **aposiopesis.**

breathing. A name for the rough breathing in Greek grammar is **spiritus asper,** and for the smooth breathing **spiritus lenis.**

Buddhist. A name for the ancient language, allied to Sanskrit, in which the Buddhist scriptures are written, is **Pali.**

caesura. The name given to a slight pause after an unaccented syllable in a line of poetry is **feminine caesura.**

Carthage. The name given to the Semitic language of the people of ancient Carthage is **Punic.**

case. The case that expresses the agent, instrument, cause, or source of an action is the **ablative.**

— In inflected languages, the case used for the direct object of a verb is the **accusative.**

— The case in grammar that denotes the remoter or indirect object is the **dative**

—. The case of nouns which shows that the person or thing named is the possessor or source is the **genitive.**

—. The case denoting place where is the **locative.**

—. The case used as, or agreeing with, the subject of a verb is the **nominative.**

—. That part of a sentence which is governed by a transitive verb is in the **objective case.**

—. The case that denotes either possession or the relation of one thing to another is the **possessive**

—. The case used in addressing or invoking a person or thing is the **vocative.**

—, change. The name given to the changing of the case-forms of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns is **declension.**

Castile. A name of the old language of Castile was **Ladino.**

Celtic. The two branches of Celtic are **Goidelic,** including **Gaelic, Irish,** and **Manx;** and **Brythonic,** including **Welsh, Cornish,** and **Breton.**

censorship. The formula of licence to print a book or paper granted by the authorities where censorship of the Press exists is an **imprimatur.**

character. The name given to a character used in picture-writing, expressing the idea of a thing without spelling it, is **ideograph** or **ideogram.**

— A written character or sign which stands for different sounds is a **polyphone.**

— A system of written characters is a **script.**

—. The list of characters used in some languages to represent syllables is a **syllabary.**

Chinese The literary language of modern China is the **Mandarin dialect.**

—. The study or knowledge of the Chinese language, literature, or history is **Sinology.**

cipher. Another name for a secret writing, or cipher, is **cryptogram.**

clause. Names for the principal clause of a conditional sentence are **apodosis** and **conclusion**

—. A name for the stringing together of clauses without showing, by means of connecting words, the relation between them, is **parataxis.**

— A name for a qualifying or explanatory clause or sentence inserted in another sentence which is grammatically complete without it is **parenthesis.**

—. The introductory clause of a conditional sentence is the **protasis.**

Coleridge. Names given to Coleridge, Wordsworth, and other poets who lived among the lakes of Cumberland in the early nineteenth century are **Lakers, Lakists, Lake Poets.** and **Lake School.**

collection. A name given to a collection of a person's memorable sayings, or of interesting gossip about persons or places, is **ana.**

— A name for a collection of poems or other selected literary pieces is **anthology.**

—. The name given to a poem or other literary work made up of passages collected from other works is **cento.**

— A name for a collection of documents or other writings is **corpus.**

— A name sometimes given to a collection of poems by a single author, especially Persian, is **divan.**

—. *See also under* **book,** *above.*

compare. To compare or examine critically the texts of old books or manuscripts is to **collate.**

comparison. The name of a higher degree of quality, quantity, etc., than that expressed by the simple or positive adjective or adverb is **comparative.**

— The name of each of the three grades of comparison of adjectives and adverbs is **degree.**

— A figure of speech in which a thing or idea is put in the place of another to suggest comparison or resemblance is a **metaphor.**

— The name of the simple or uncompared degree of an adjective or adverb is **positive.**

—. The name for a comparison made as an illustration is **simile.**

—. The name of the highest or utmost degree of quality, quantity, etc., of an adjective or adverb is **superlative.**

composition, form. The name for a literary composition in which the first, last, central, or other agreed letters, when read successively in the order of the lines, makes a word or sentence, is **acrostic.**

—, —. The name given to a form of composition in which a subject is described under the guise of another that resembles and suggests it is **allegory.**

— —. A name given to a ballad or sensational narrative, especially a dying speech of a criminal, printed on a single sheet, is **broadside** or **broadsheet.**

—, —. The name given to a short prose composition, either critical or familiar and chatty, intended to illustrate some subject, is **essay.**

composition, form. A name given to a fantastic form of composition is **extravaganza.**

—, —. The name for a short narrative pointing a moral, especially one with animals for characters, is **fable.**

—, — The name of the form of prose composition in which characters and actions representing real life are portrayed is **novel.**

—, —. A name given to a form of speech or writing in praise of a person is **panegyric.**

—, —. The name for a short narrative, usually religious, of real or fictitious events, used to point a moral, is **parable.**

—, —. A name given to a composition in prose that has some of the features of poetry, especially rhythm and feeling, is **prose-poem.**

—, —. *See also under* **metre,** verse, *and* **poem,** *below.*

condensation. Names given to a condensed account or version of a book, story, etc., are **abridgment, compendium, epitome, summary,** and **synopsis.**

conjugation. A conjugation formed by combining a simple verb with an auxiliary is a **periphrastic conjugation.**

—. Verbs which form their past tense by a vowel change are verbs of **strong conjugation.**

—. Verbs which form their past tense by adding -d, -ed, or -t are verbs of **weak conjugation.**

conjunction. The name given to conjunctions that make their clauses show cause or reason is **causal.**

—. The name given to conjunctions that make their clauses grant something is **concessive.**

—. The name given to a conjunction that shows that there is a condition attached to the principal sentence is **conditional.**

—. The name given to conjunctions that join together two sentences of equal value is **co-ordinating.**

—. A conjunction which joins two or more thoughts is a **copulative.**

— The name given to a conjunction which, while joining sentences, separates their sense is **disjunctive.**

—, omission. The omission of conjunctions from a sentence or verse to secure emphasis is **asyndeton.**

consonant. Consonants, such as *d, t, th,* which are pronounced by touching the upper teeth with the tip of the tongue are **dentals.**

— To deprive consonants of their voiced or vibrating quality is to **devocalize.**

— Names given to a consonant, such as *p,* pronounced by stopping the breath and then suddenly releasing it, are **explodent, explosive, mute,** and **stop.**

— The name given to a sound, or the consonant representing it, formed by the lips is **labial.**

— A name in phonetics for the consonants *n, m,* and *ng,* which are partly sounded in the nose, is **nasals.**

— The name given to a consonant, such as *s* or *z,* pronounced with a hissing sound, is **sibilant.**

— Names given to a consonant, such as *b* or *d,* the sounding of which is accompanied by vibration of the vocal chords, are **sonant** and **voiced.**

— A consonant pronounced without entirely stopping the breath is a **spirant.**

— A consonant, as *p, f, s,* sounded with the breath without vibration of the vocal chords, is **surd** or **voiceless.**

—. *See also under* **sound,** *below.*

continuation. The name for a novel which continues the history of characters mentioned in an earlier novel is **sequel.**

contrast. The name given to a contrast of ideas, or to words, clauses, or sentences set in contrast, is **antithesis.**

conversation. A name given to conversation, or to written work in conversational form, or to the conversational part of a novel is **dialogue.**

conversation. A name given to a conversation between two persons, or to a dramatic piece with two actors, is **duologue.**

—. A name, often used as the title of a book, for familiar or miscellaneous conversation is **table-talk.**

couplet. A couplet in classical verse made up of a dactylic hexameter and pentameter is **elegiac.**

—. The name used for the carrying over of a sentence or clause from one heroic couplet to another is **enjambment.**

—. In English, the two rhymed lines, each of ten syllables, used in heroic verse are **heroic couplets.**

critical. A name sometimes given to a very severe literary critic is **aristarch.**

cuneiform. Another name for cuneiform writing is **sphenographic.**

dead. *See under* **lament,** *below.*

deaf and dumb. A system of signs, made with the fingers of one or both hands, and representing letters and ideographs, as used by the deaf and dumb, is a **manual alphabet.**

derivation. Another name for the derivation of words is **etymology.**

description. An adjective or phrase used descriptively is an **epithet.**

dialect. The name given to the study of dialects is **dialectology.**

—. A name for a dialect spoken in a rural district or by uneducated persons, or for a corrupt form of speech in a district where different languages have intermingled, is **patois.**

dialogue. A name for a dialogue in alternating metrical lines is **stichomyth.**

dictionary. A dictionary of Latin poetical words and phrases useful in writing Latin verse is a **gradus.**

—. A name sometimes used for a dictionary, especially a Greek, Arabic, or Hebrew one, is **lexicon.**

discourse. Other names for a formal discourse on any subject are **dissertation, treatise,** and **sermon.**

double meaning. Names for a term or phrase which has a double meaning are **equivoque** and **double-entendre.**

Dravidian. A Dravidian language spoken on the west coast of south India, in the south of the Bombay province, is **Kanarese.**

—. A Dravidian language, related to Tamil, spoken in Malabar, is **Malayalam.**

—. The language spoken by Dravidian people inhabiting south India and part of Ceylon is **Tamil.**

—. The name of a Dravidian language spoken chiefly in the north-eastern part of Madras and in Hyderabad is **Telugu.**

Dutch. The form of Dutch spoken in Flanders and other parts of Belgium is **Flemish.**

—. The modified form of Dutch used by the Boers in South Africa is sometimes called **Taal.**

edition. A name given to a specially handsome edition of a book is **édition de luxe.**

—. The first or original edition of a book is sometimes described as the **editio princeps.**

—. An edition of a work with notes of the various commentators or editors inserted is a **variorum edition.**

emotion. Poetry and prose that primarily give expression to the emotions, idiosyncrasies, or individual points of view of their writers are **subjective.**

emphasis. Emphasis given to a syllable of a word by laying stress on it, or by a different pitch or tone of the voice, is **accent.**

—. The omission of conjunctions from a sentence or verse for greater emphasis is **asyndeton.**

—. In grammar, a word adding emphasis or force to a sentence is **intensive.**

emphasis. A regular or significant recurrence of emphasis in prose or verse is **rhythm.**

—. Another word for emphasis is **stress.**

end. The name of a separate stanza or set of verses at the end of a poem or group of poems or of a play, containing a message or moral, is **envoy.**

—. A name given to a speech or short poem recited by an actor at the end of a play, or to the concluding portion of a literary work, is **epilogue.**

—. A name for the closing part of a speech is **peroration.**

ending. A change of ending in a word to show difference of person, number, case, tense, mood, etc., is an **inflexion.**

English. A name for an English idiom or form of expression is **Anglicism.**

—. A foreign word adopted into the English language and spelt or pronounced as English is **Anglicized.**

—. A name applied to the language spoken in England between about 1150 and 1500 is **Middle English.**

—. A name applied to English as affected by Norman-French is **Norman-English.**

—. Names applied to the language spoken in England before about 1150 are **Old English** and **Anglo-Saxon.**

entreaty. A word applied to words or forms in grammar which express entreaty is **precative.**

epic. The name of the Roman poet Virgil's great epic poem relating the adventures of the Trojan hero Aeneas after the fall of Troy is the **Aeneid.**

—. The name of a famous Old English epic is **Beowulf.**

—. Other names for epic are **epopee** and **epos.**

—. The name given to a form of English epic and other poetry consisting of lines, each of ten syllables, rhyming in pairs, is **heroic couplets.**

— The name given to any form of verse used in epic poetry is **heroic verse.**

—. The name of a celebrated epic poem, ascribed to Homer, describing the Trojan war is the **Iliad.**

—. The names of two great epics of ancient India are **Mahabharata** and **Ramayana.**

—. The name of a famous mediaeval German epic is **Nibelungenlied.**

—. The name of the ancient Greek epic relating the adventures of Odysseus or Ulysses after the fall of Troy is **Odyssey.**

—. The name given to a minstrel or reciter of epic poems in ancient Greece was **rhapsode.** or **rhapsodist.**

—. A famous Old French epic is the **Song of Roland.**

error. The name given to the error of referring to or introducing an incident or object which does not belong to the period is **anachronism.**

—. An error in a printed work which needs correction is a **corrigendum.**

— The mistake of writing a letter, word, or phrase twice instead of once is **dittography.**

—. A name for an error either in the writing or the printing of a book is **erratum.**

—. The name given to an error in the grammatical rules of agreement is **false concord.**

—. The name given to the error of using a long instead of a short vowel or syllable in Greek or Latin poetry, or vice versa, is **false quantity.**

—. The mistake of writing a letter, word, or phrase once that should be written twice is **haplography.**

—. An error in printing is a **misprint.**

—. A name given to an error in grammar is **solecism.**

essay. A name for an essay written in easy, conversational style, either on a literary subject or dealing chattily with men and things, is **causerie.**

exaggeration. The name for an exaggerated statement not intended to be taken literally is **hyperbole.**

exclamation. A name given to a form of exclamation in which the absent are addressed as if present, and inanimate things as if capable of replying, is **apostrophe.**

—. The name for an exclamation regarded as a part of speech is **interjection.**

explanation. A name for an explanation, especially a note explaining the meaning of something written, is **comment**

— The name for a series of notes explaining a book, such as an edition of a Latin author, is **commentary.**

— A name for a short comment or explanatory note is **gloss.**

— A list containing explanations of rare, obsolete, or technical words occurring in a work is a **glossary.**

— The writing of glosses or comments on a text is **glossography.**

— A name for a complete series of explanatory notes written on the margins of a book or manuscript is **marginalia.**

— The name given to an ancient commentator, who made notes on the writings of classical authors is **scholiast,** his annotations being **scholia.**

expression The name for an American idiom or form of expression is **Americanism.**

— A name for an English idiom or form of expression is **Anglicism.**

— A name for a French idiom or form of expression is **Gallicism.**

—. A Greek idiom or form of expression, especially when imitated in another language, is a **Graecism.**

— Names for an Irish idiom or form of expression are **Hibernianism, Hibernicism,** and **Irishism.**

—. A form of expression peculiar to a certain language is an **idiom.**

fable. A short fable with a moral, especially one with animals for characters, is an **apologue.**

fall. Names for a fall from the lofty or noble in speech or writing to the commonplace or absurd are **bathos** and **anticlimax.**

fantastic. A name given to a fantastic play, poem book, etc., is **extravaganza.**

fiction. The name for a work of prose fiction is **novel.**

—. A work of fiction in prose or verse, in which people and events are emotionally idealized is a **romance.**

— sentimental. An epithet applied to long-winded sentimental fiction thought to resemble the works of Samuel Richardson is **Richardsonian.**

figure of speech. A name for a figure of speech describing a subject under the guise of another which resembles and suggests it is **allegory.**

— A name given to the figure of speech by which successive sentences begin with the same word or words is **anaphora.**

The name for a contrast of ideas, or for contrasting words, clauses, or sentences, is **antithesis.**

— The sudden breaking-off of a sentence for the sake of effect is **aposiopesis.**

— A name for the figure of speech in which the order of words in two phrases that come together is reversed is **chiasmus.**

— A figure of speech in which a number of different arguments are all brought to bear upon one subject is **diallage.**

A figure of speech by which one or more words are omitted for the reader or listener to supply is an **ellipsis.**

· A figure of speech in which the contrary to what is meant is stated is **enantiosis.**

—. A figure of speech in which a sentence begins and ends with the same word is **epanadiplosis.**

—. A figure of speech in which the same word or clause is repeated after other words coming in between is **epanalepsis.**

figure of speech. A figure of speech in which the second part of the sentence consists of the first part in the opposite order is **epanodos.**

— A figure of speech by which a word is recalled in order to substitute a more correct or more forcible one is **epanorthosis**

— A figure of speech in which several successive sentences or clauses end with the same word or phrase is an **epistrophe.**

— A figure of speech in which an agreeable or mild expression is substituted for a harsh or offensive one is **euphemism.**

—. A figure of speech in which one idea is represented by two words connected by a conjunction is **hendiadys.**

— A name given to the changing over of the natural relation between two words or phrases in a sentence is **hypallage.**

— A figure of speech by which words are changed from their natural or grammatical order for the sake of emphasis is **hyperbaton.**

— A figure of speech in which more is expressed than the truth is **hyperbole.**

— A figure of speech in which a word or phrase which ought to come last comes first is **hysteron proteron.**

—. The name of a figure of speech in which a mild expression is used ironically, or a statement is made by denying its opposite, is **litotes.**

—. The substitution of one word, used figuratively, for another is **metalepsis.**

—. A figure of speech in which a thing or idea is put in the place of another to suggest resemblance or comparison is a **metaphor.**

—. A name for an abrupt change to another point in speaking or writing is **metastasis.**

—. The figure of speech in which a thing is described, not by its own name, but by that of something connected with it, is **metonymy.**

—. A figure of speech in which contrary ideas are combined is **oxymoron.**

—. A name for a figure of speech in which a point is emphasized by being introduced in a seemingly casual way is **paralipsis.**

— A figure of speech by which, in pretending to ignore something, attention is called to it, is **preterition.**

— A rhetorical figure by which words are put into the mouth of an imaginary being or, of an abstract idea personified is **prosopopoeia.**

—. The name for a comparison made as an illustration is **simile.**

— A name for a figure of speech in which a word is used in two different senses at once is **syllepsis.**

— Any striking figure of speech is a **trope.**

—. The use of tropes, or figures of speech, is **tropology.**

—. The name of a figure of speech in which a single verb or adjective is made to refer to two nouns, while applying logically only to one, is **zeugma.**

finger. The art of conversing in sign-language by means of the fingers is **dactylology.**

—. A system of signs made with the fingers of one or both hands, and representing letters and ideographs, as used by the deaf and dumb, is a **manual alphabet.**

Finn A name given to a group of Ural-Altaic languages which includes those spoken by the Finns and Magyars is **Ugrian.**

foot, metrical. *See under* **metre,** *below.*

form. The study of the form, structure, and development of words and language is **morphology.**

French. The dialect of the French language which was used at Court and officially in England after the Norman Conquest was **Anglo-Norman** and later **Anglo-French.**

—. A name for a French idiom or form of expression is **Gallicism.**

—. The two Romance languages spoken in mediaeval France were the **langue d'oil** or **Old French,** and the **langue d'oc** or **Old Provençal.**

French. The name of the French dialect which was spoken by the early Normans is **Norman-French.**

—. A name for the spoken language of old France, and in a wider sense for all the languages developed from Latin, is **Romance.**

funeral. *See under* **lament,** *below.*

gender. The gender of nouns, etc., that are neither masculine nor feminine is **neuter.**

German. A phrase or idiom peculiar to the German language is a **Germanism.**

—. The dialect of German spoken in the highlands of the south, from which standard German is mainly derived, is **High German.**

—. The dialect of German spoken in the lowlands of the north is **Low German.**

—. An ancient form of Low German, closely akin to Anglo-Saxon, is **Old Saxon.**

—. The name of a dialect or modified form of German used by German and other Jews is **Yiddish.**

Gipsy The name given to the language of Indian origin used by the Gipsies is **Romany.**

gossip. A name given to collections of interesting gossip or anecdotes about people and places is **ana.**

grammar. A name for that part of grammar that deals with inflexions is **accidence.**

— To break up a sentence into the parts of speech of which it is made and show their grammatical relationship is to **analyse.**

—. That part of grammar that deals with the history and derivation of words is **etymology.**

—. A name for the branch of grammar that deals with correct pronunciation is **orthoepy.**

—. A name for that part of grammar which treats of spelling is **orthography.**

—. To describe the words of a sentence grammatically, stating inflexion, relation to each other, etc., is to **parse.**

—. The name for that part of grammar that deals with articulate sounds is **phonology.**

—. The name for that part of grammar which deals with the arrangement of words in sentences is **syntax.**

—, mistake. A mistake in grammar is a **solecism.**

Greek. The principal dialects of ancient Greece were **Aeolic, Doric, Ionic** and **Attic.**

—. The spoken language of modern Greece is **Romaic.**

—, accent. A name for a Greek word that has an acute accent on the last syllable is **oxytone.**

—, —. A name for a Greek word having an acute accent on the last syllable but one is **paroxytone**

—, —. A name in Greek grammar for a word having a circumflex accent on the last syllable is **perispome** or **perispomenon.**

—, —. A Greek word having an acute accent on the last syllable but two is a **proparoxytone.**

—, —. A Greek word having a circumflex accent on the last syllable but one is a **properispomenon**

—, idiom. A Greek idiom or form of expression, especially when imitated in another language, is a **Graecism.**

—, minstrel. Names for a minstrel or reciter of epic poems in ancient Greece are **rhapsode** and **rhapsodist.**

—, mood. The name of the mood of a verb in Greek grammar that expresses wish or desire is **optative.**

—, number. The name of the number in Greek that expresses two persons or things is **dual.**

—, pronunciation. The pronunciation of the Greek *e* as the English *a* is **etacism.**

—, —. The name given to the pronunciation of the Greek *e* like the English *e* in " be " is **itacism.**

—, tense. The name for an indefinite (usually past) tense in Greek is **aorist.**

group. A name given to a brilliant group of persons (usually seven), especially to the group of sixteenth-century French poets that included Ronsard and Du Bellay, is **Pleiad.**

guide. A name given to a person who acts as guide and interpreter to travellers in the Near and Middle East is **dragoman.**

Hamitic. The Hamitic family of languages includes ancient **Egyptian, Coptic, Somali** and **Berber.**

hand. The name for a book, document, etc., written by hand, not printed, is **manuscript.**

heading. A name for a heading of a chapter, section, etc., in a book or newspaper is **caption.**

Hebrew. In Hebrew grammar a consonant written but not sounded is a **quiescent.**

— The name given to a later and corrupted form of Hebrew is **Rabbinic.**

—. The name used for the small mark placed near a character in printed Hebrew to indicate a vowel sound is a **vowel-point.**

height The name for a gradual increase in impressiveness in speaking or writing, and for the highest point so reached, is **climax.**

hieroglyphics. The study of hieroglyphics is **hierology.**

—, Egyptian. The name for an oval device on ancient Egyptian monuments and documents, enclosing the names and titles of kings, gods, etc., is **cartouche.**

—, —. The name of a tablet of black basalt found in the Nile delta, having inscriptions in Egyptian and Greek characters and giving the key to the hieroglyphics, is **Rosetta stone.**

—. *See also under.* **writing,** Egyptian, *below.*

hissing. A letter or combination of letters pronounced with a hissing sound is a **sibilant.**

history. A name for history recorded year by year, or in order of date, is **annals.**

—. A name for a history of events arranged in the order of time in which they occurred is **chronicle.**

Hungary. The name of the language of the Hungarians is **Magyar.**

hymn. A name given to an ancient Greek hymn of a wild character sung in honour of Bacchus, and so for any wild, impetuous poem, is **dithyramb.**

—. A name for a hymn sung by the ancient Greeks before battle, after a victory, and on other occasions is **paean.**

—. A name for a sacred song or hymn is **psalm.**

—. *See also under section* Religion.

iambic. Names given to an iambic verse, the last foot of which is a trochee instead of an iambus, are **choliamb** and **scazon.**

ideal. The name of the imaginary island with a perfect social and political system, described by Sir Thomas More (1478-1535) in a book named after the island, is **Utopia.**

idiom. *See under* **expression,** *above.*

Illyrian. The only surviving language of the Illyrian group is **Albanian.**

imitation. Names given to the imitation of natural sounds in the formation of words relating to them are **onomatopoeia** and **echoism.**

—, humorous. A name for a humorous imitation of a literary work, ridiculing its manner, is **parody.**

India. The name of an Aryan language spoken in northern India, chiefly on the upper Ganges, is **Hindi.**

—. The official language used by the Government in India is **Hindustani** or **Urdu.**

—. A name given to any of a group of ancient, mediaeval and modern literary dialects of north and central India, of Aryan origin, allied to Sanskrit, is **Prakrit.**

—. The name of the ancient classical language of the Hindus, in which the Vedas were composed, is **Sanskrit.**

—. *See also under* **Dravidian,** *above, and* **Indo-Aryan,** *below.*

Indo-Aryan. The chief ancient Indo-Aryan languages are **Sanskrit** and **Pali,** and the modern languages include **Hindi, Bengali, Marathi, Gujarati,** and **Hindustani** or **Urdu.**

Indo-Chinese. Among the Indo-Chinese languages are **Chinese, Siamese, Burmese,** and **Tibetan.**

Indo-European. A name properly applied to the Indo-Persian group of languages, but by some writers applied to the whole Indo-European family, is **Aryan.**

—. The chief branches of the Indo-European family of languages are **Aryan, Armenian, Greek** or **Hellenic, Illyrian, Celtic, Italic, Teutonic** or **Germanic,** and **Balto-Slavonic.**

Inflexion. The name of that branch of grammar which deals with the inflexion of words is **accidence.**

—. A name for a noun which has no inflexions is **aptote.**

—. A language or word that has no inflexions is **aptotic.**

— To give the inflexions of a verb is to **conjugate.**

— To give the inflexions of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns is to **decline,** and the name of the process is **declension.**

— Words, such as conjunctions, adverbs, and prepositions, having no inflexions or variations to express differences in meaning are **indeclinable.**

—. In grammar a part of speech not inflected in a usual way is **irregular.**

— A name for the change in the form of nouns to show number, gender, or case is **nominal inflexion.**

—. A name for an example or pattern of the inflexions of words is **paradigm.**

—. A word which follows a usual mode of inflexion is **regular.**

—. A part of speech forming inflexions by internal vowel-change, and not by the addition of suffixes, is **strong.**

—. A part of speech inflected by consonant additions to the stem, and not by vowel-change, is **weak.**

Inscription. The wedge-shaped characters in inscriptions of the ancient Assyrians, Babylonians, and Persians are **cuneiform.**

—. A name for an inscription on a monument, building, or coin, etc., is **epigraph.**

—. The study of inscriptions is **epigraphy.**

—. A name for an inscription on, or written for, a tomb or monument is **epitaph.**

Inspiration. A name for inspiration or poetic impulse is **afflatus.**

Interpreter. A name given in the Near and Middle East to embassy officials, interpreters, guides, and other persons who act as intermediaries between Europeans and Orientals is **dragoman.**

Introduction. The introduction to a speech or serious writing is the **exordium.**

—. A name for an introduction or preface to a book is **foreword.**

—. A name for something written or spoken by way of introduction to a book or speech is **preface.**

— A name for an introductory statement at the beginning of a book or speech is **proem.**

— A name for a preliminary discourse, or for an introduction to a play, usually in verse, is **prologue.**

Iranian. The chief Iranian languages are **Old Persian** or **Zend, Middle Persian** or **Pahlavi, Modern Persian, Kurdish,** and **Pushtu.**

Irish. The name of an amusing, self-contradictory blunder in speech or writing, associated especially with the Irish, is **bull.**

—. Names for a phrase or mode of speech used by the Irish are **Hibernianism, Hibernicism,** and **Irishism.**

Island. The name of the imaginary island with a perfect social and political system, described by Sir Thomas More (1478-1535) in a book named after the island, is **Utopia.**

Italic. The chief Italic languages are **Latin,** the extinct **Oscan, Sabine, Umbrian,** etc., and the modern **Romance languages.**

Italy. A name given to the sixteenth century considered as a period in Italian literature and art is **Cinquecento.**

—. The name for the language of the Osci, one of the very ancient races of South Italy, is **Oscan.**

—. A name given to the fifteenth century considered as a period in Italian literature and art is **Quattrocento.**

—. A name given to the fourteenth century considered as a period in Italian literature and art is **Trecento.**

Jews. The name of a dialect or modified form of German used by German and other Jews is **Yiddish.**

—. *See also section* Christianity and Judaism.

Koran. A name for a chapter of the Koran is **sura,** or **surah.**

lament. A name for a funeral song or dirge in Scotland and Ireland is **coronach**

—. A name for a song sung at a funeral or in commemoration of the dead is **dirge.**

—. A song or poem of lament for the dead is an **elegy.**

—. Names for a dirge or poem of a funereal character are **epicedium** and **epicede.**

—. The name for an Irish song of lamentation for the dead is **keen.**

—. A name given to a poetical lament for a dead person is **threnody.**

language. Languages in which the roots, suffixes, and prefixes are very rarely changed, no matter how they are placed together, are **agglutinative.**

—. Languages that are losing, or have lost, inflexions are **anaptotic.**

—. A language without inflexions is **aptotic.**

—. A language, as ancient Greek and Latin, which has passed out of use is a **dead language.**

—. Languages in which several words are frequently run together to make one long word, as in Basque and the languages of the North American Indians, are **incorporative** or **polysynthetic.**

—. The original mother-language spoken late in the Neolithic age, from which most European, the Armenian and Persian, and many Indian languages have developed is **Indo-European.**

—. The most important families of languages are the **Indo-European** or **Indo-Germanic, Semitic, Ural-Altaic, Indo-Chinese, Malayo-Polynesian** or **Austronesian, Dravidian, Hamitic,** and **Bantu.**

—. A name for a person who knows several languages is **linguist.**

—, form. A form of language which is peculiar to a certain part of a country or to a certain section of people is a **dialect.**

—, —. The study of the form, structure, and development of words and language is **morphology.**

—, —. A name for a dialect or a language spoken in a rural district, or by uneducated persons, or for a corrupt form of speech in a district where different languages have intermingled, is **patois.**

—, mixture. The name given to a mixture of two or more languages is **jargon.**

—, —. The name applied to a mixture of languages used by people speaking different tongues is **lingua franca.**

—, —. A name for a mixture of English and other languages used as a means of communication between natives and Europeans in the Far East, etc., is **pidgin-English.**

—, —. The name given to words or language gathered from many sources, commonly used but not regarded as correct, is **slang.**

—, —. A name used for a secret language of thieves is **thieves' Latin.**

—, number. An epithet applied to anything written or spoken in two languages, or to a person who knows two languages, is **bilingual.**

language, number. A person who can speak his own native language and no other is a **monoglot.**

—, —. A name applied to things expressed or written in several languages, and to persons who can speak several languages, is **polyglot.**

—, —. A document written in three languages, or a person who knows three languages, is **trilingual.**

—, science. The scientific study of the origin, development, and structure of language, or of separate languages, is **philology.**

—, universal. The name of a language designed as a medium for people of all nations, published in 1887, is **Esperanto.**

—, —. The name of a language to be used as a medium for people of all nations, published in 1902, is **Idiom Neutral.**

—, —. The name of a kind of reformed Esperanto, invented about 1907, is **Ido.**

—, —. The name of a system of universal language published in 1880 is **Volapuk.**

—, use. The branch of knowledge dealing with the use of words and the combinations of words in language is **grammar.**

Latin. An epithet applied to the golden age of Latin literature in the days of the Emperor Augustus is **Augustan.**

—. Ungrammatical or barbarous Latin is **dog Latin.**

—. Names given to the kind of Latin spoken during the Dark Ages and Middle Ages are **Late Latin** and **Low Latin.**

—. The name given to the group of mediaeval and modern languages derived from Latin is **Romance languages.**

—. A name given to the age of Latin poetry that followed the Augustan Age is **Silver Age.**

legend. The name given to a collection of legends written round some mythical character, hero, or event, is **cycle.**

—. The name for a mediaeval legend or tale of the Norsemen written in prose is **saga.**

letter. A term used of the Greek letter iota when written after a letter and not below, or subscript, is **adscript.**

—. A name for that part of grammar which treats of letters and spelling is **orthography.**

—. A word or root consisting of four letters, especially a Semitic root consisting of four consonants, is **quadriliteral.**

—. A term used of a letter written below another, as the iota in certain Greek words, is **subscript.**

—. A word or root consisting of three letters, especially the root of a word in Semitic languages consisting of three consonants, is **triliteral.**

—, addition. The addition of a letter or a syllable to the beginning of a word, as *be* in the word becalm, is **prosthesis.**

—, capital. Another name for a capital letter is **majuscule.**

—, combination. The name for a combination of two letters to represent a single sound, such as *ph* for *f*, is **digraph.**

—, —. The name for the running together of two vowels in a single syllable, as in the words boy and cow, is **diphthong.**

—, —. The name for a group of three letters making one sound is **trigraph** or **trigram.**

—, first. The name of the first letter of the Greek alphabet is **alpha.**

—, h. A name for the letter *h* and its sound is **aspirate.**

—, insertion. The name for the insertion of a letter or letters in a word, usually for the sake of the sound, as *b* in humble, is **epenthesis.**

—, last. The name of the last letter of the Greek alphabet is **omega.**

—, manuscript. A name used in palaeography for a large manuscript letter, whether capital or uncial, is **majuscule.**

letter, manuscript. A name used in palaeography for a small manuscript letter is **minuscule.**

—, omission. A name for verse or prose in which a particular letter is left out is **lipogram.**

—, r. The pronunciation of the letter *r* like *l* is **lallation** or **lambdacism.**

—, —. A word denoting the undue trilling or burring of the letter *r*, or, in philology, the change of *s* into *r*, is **rhotacism.**

—, same. A name for the device of using words beginning with the same letter, especially in early Teutonic poetry, is **alliteration.**

—, silent. A letter which forms no part of the root of a word, and is not sounded when the word is spoken, but modifies the sound of another letter, is a **servile letter.**

—, small. A name for a small letter, as opposed to a capital, is **minuscule.**

—, transposition. The name given to a word or sentence formed by changing the order of letters in another word or sentence is **anagram.**

—, —. A name given to the accidental changing about of the initial letters, etc., of two or more words is **Spoonerism.**

—. *See also under* **consonant,** *above, and* **sound** *and* **vowel,** *below.*

library. A name for a library or collection of books is **bibliotheca.**

—. The name for the list of the books contained in a library is **catalogue.**

—. A library which lets out books to read for an annual subscription, or for a small sum for each book, is a **circulating library** or **lending library.**

—. A library whose books may be consulted but, usually, not taken away is a **reference library.**

life. The story of a man's life, written by himself, is an **autobiography.**

—. The written story of a person's life is a **biography.**

—. An old name for a story of a saint's life or for a collection of such stories is **legend.**

line. A name for two lines that rhyme is **couplet.**

—. A name for a pair of lines that rhyme and contain a complete thought is **distich.**

—. A name for a poem or epigram consisting of a single line of verse is **monostich.**

—. A stanza or complete poem of four lines is a **tetrastich.**

—. The name given to a metrical line is **verse.**

—. *See also* **metre,** verse, *below.*

lip. A sound or the letter representing it, formed by the lips, is a **labial.**

list. The name for the list of books contained in a library is **catalogue.**

—. The name for a list of all or of the most important words of a language, arranged alphabetically, with their meanings and usually their derivations and pronunciations, is **dictionary.**

—. The name of a list containing explanations of rare, obsolete, or technical words occurring in a book is **glossary.**

—. The name for an alphabetical list of the contents of a book, giving references to pages, is **index.**

—. A name for a list of words used in a science, profession, book, etc., usually arranged in alphabetical order with explanations, is **vocabulary.**

literature. A name applied to literature showing a classical standard of taste is **Augustan.**

—. A name applied to the reign of Queen Anne, when Swift, Pope, Addison, and Steele flourished, is **Augustan Age.**

—. A name given to literature that calls for taste and imagination and not only for knowledge is **belles-lettres.**

—. A term applied to the literature of the ancient Greeks and Romans, to literature in the style of these, and, generally, to literature of acknowledged excellence, is **classic** or **classical.**

literature. To publish as one's own the thoughts and ideas of another is to **plagiarize.**

—. The name given to literature that is in verse or metrical form is **poetry.**

—. The name given to written or spoken language not in metre, as opposed to verse, is **prose.**

—, revival. A name given to the revival of art and literature, under the influence of classical models, in Western Europe from the fourteenth to the sixteenth century is **Renaissance.**

—, school. A name for a modern literary movement whose adherents sacrifice beauty of form and expression to intensity is **futurism.**

—, —. Names given to novelists, such as Sir J. M. Barrie and Ian Maclaren, who write, often rather sentimentally, and with a free use of dialect, of humble Scottish life, is **kail-yarders and kail-yard school.**

—, —. A name applied to a school of writers who describe persons and scenes according to actual fact and detail, as opposed to the romanticists and classicists, is **realistic school.**

—, —. A name applied to the school of writers who prefer wonder, splendour, and passion to formal perfection, is **romantic school.**

—, —. *See also under* **poetry,** school, *below.*

long. The name of the short horizontal line placed over a vowel to show that it has a long sound is **macron.**

lyric. The German name for a lyrical poem is **lied.**

—. A name for a kind of lyric, necessarily having a tone of sustained rapture, is **ode.**

Madagascar. The name given to the chief language spoken by the inhabitants of Madagascar is **Malagasy.**

Magyar. A name given to a group of Ural-Altaic languages, including those spoken by the Finns and Magyars, is **Ugrian.**

Malayo-Polynesian. The Malayo-Polynesian or Austronesian family of languages includes the **Malay, Malagasy, Melanesian, Micronesian,** and **Polynesian groups.**

Man, Isle of. The old language of the people of the Isle of Man is **Manx.**

manuscript. A name given to an old manuscript, especially of Bible or classical texts, is **codex.**

—. A name for the study of ancient manuscripts, such as records and charters, is **diplomatics.**

— A name given to the study of ancient manuscripts is **palaeography**

—. A name given to a manuscript from which one writing has been erased to give place to another is **palimpsest.**

—. A name for an ancient Egyptian paper manuscript is **papyrus.**

mark, pronunciation. The name of the mark (˘) placed over a vowel to show that it has a short sound is **breve.**

—, —. The name of the mark (ˆ), used to regulate the pronunciation of syllables, is **circumflex.**

—, —. Marks placed over letters to show how they should be pronounced are **diacritics** or **diacritical marks.**

—, —. The name for a mark (¨) placed over the second of two vowels in a word to show they must be pronounced separately is **diaeresis.**

—, —. The name of the short horizontal line placed over a vowel to show that it has a long sound is **macron.**

—, —. The name of the mark (˜) placed over *n* in Spanish to show that it should be pronounced as if followed by *y* is **tilde**

—, —. *See also under* **accent,** *above.*

—, punctuation. *See under* **stop**, *below.*

—, reference. The name of the mark (*), used to draw attention to a footnote or marginal note, especially the first, is **asterisk.**

—, —. The names for the reference mark (†) used in books to refer readers to a footnote or marginal note, especially the second, and also after a person's name to show that he is dead, are **dagger** and **obelisk.**

mark, reference. Names for the mark (‡), employed generally after the asterisk and dagger have been used, to indicate a footnote or marginal note, are **diesis, double dagger,** and **double obelisk.**

meaning. The parts of a book or speech that precede or follow a particular passage and fix its meaning are the **context.**

—, same. A word having the same or nearly the same meaning as another in the same language is a **synonym.**

—, opposite. The name given to the use of a word in a sense opposite to its proper meaning is **antiphrasis.**

—, —. A word which is opposite in meaning to another is an **antonym.**

metre. To indicate the metrical structure of a verse in feet is to **scan.**

—, foot. The name of a metrical foot consisting of a long syllable between two short ones is **amphibrach.**

—, —. Names for a metrical foot consisting of a short syllable between two long ones are **amphimacer** and **cretic.**

—, —. The name of a foot consisting of two short or unaccented syllables followed by a long or accented one is **anapaest.**

—, —. The accented part of a metrical foot is the **arsis.**

—, —. The name of a foot in classical poetry consisting of one short and two long syllables is **bacchius.**

—, —. The name for the dividing of a metrical foot between two words, especially at certain places near the middle of a line, is **caesura.**

—, —. A less usual name for a trochee is a **choree.**

—, —. The name of a metrical foot consisting of one long syllable followed by two short ones is **dactyl**

—, —. A metrical foot composed of two syllables is a **disyllable** or **dissyllable.**

—, —. A metrical foot made up of two trochees is a **ditrochee.**

—, —. A metrical foot of five syllables—one short, two long, one short, one long—is a **dochmius.**

—, —. A metrical foot consisting of three long syllables and one short one in any order is an **epitrite.**

—, —. A metrical foot consisting in Greek and Latin of one short and one long syllable, or in English of one unaccented and one accented syllable, is an **iambus** or **iamb.**

—, —. The name of a metrical foot consisting of four syllables—two long and two short, or two short and two long—is **Ionic foot.**

—, —. A metrical foot consisting of four short syllables is **proceleusmatic.**

—, —. A metrical foot consisting of two short syllables is a **pyrrhic.**

—, —. A metrical foot of two long or two accented syllables is a **spondee.**

—, —. A group of four metrical feet is a **tetrapody.**

—, —. The unaccented part of a metrical foot is the **thesis.**

—, —. A metrical foot of three short or unaccented syllables is a **tribrach.**

—, —. The name given to a metrical foot of two syllables, the first long or accented, and the second short or unaccented, is **trochee.**

—, unit. A name for a metrical unit with a varying number of syllables, one of which is accented, is **foot.**

—, verse. A line of verse with its number of syllables complete is **acatalectic.**

—, —. A line of verse of twelve syllables, with stress on the even syllables, is an **alexandrine.**

—, —. Unrhymed verse, especially five-foot iambic verse, is **blank verse.**

—, —. A verse ending with an incomplete foot is **catalectic.**

—, —. Names for an iambic verse in which the last foot is a trochee instead of an iambus are **choliamb** and **scazon.**

metre, verse. A metre consisting of four iambic lines of alternately eight and six syllables is **common metre.**

—, —. In poetry, a verse of two feet, or one in which there are two syllables especially accented, is a **dimeter.**

—, —. A verse consisting of two feet is a **dipody.**

—, —. A verse in poetry having twelve syllables, such as an alexandrine, is a **dodecasyllable.**

—, —. A dactylic hexameter containing an extra syllable in the last foot is a **dolichurus.**

—, —. A metre consisting of alternate classical hexameters and pentameters is **elegiac verse.**

—, —. A form of classical verse, used in the " Attis " of Catullus and imitated in Tennyson's " Boadicea," is the **galliambic.**

—, —. The name of a line of classical verse consisting of three trochees and a dactyl is **glyconic.**

—, —. A metrical line consisting of six feet, the first four being dactyls or spondees, the fifth usually a dactyl, and the sixth a spondee or trochee, is a **hexameter.**

—, —. In prosody a line having one or more syllables too many is **hypermetrical** or **hypermetric.**

—, —. A name for a mediaeval Latin verse in hexameter or elegiac metre, having an internal rhyme, is **Leonine.**

—, —. In prosody the name given to a line or to metre in which dactyls and trochees are combined is **logaoedic.**

—, —. A line of verse consisting of eight metrical feet is an **octameter.**

—, —. A line of verse having five feet—in English, usually five accentual iambuses—is a **pentameter.**

—, —. Verse consisting of arrangements of long and short syllables, as opposed to accents, is **quantitative.**

—, —. The name used to denote a metrical device consisting of an agreement in sound between syllables, especially at the endings of lines of verse, is **rhyme.**

—, —. The name of a classical verse consisting usually of six iambic feet is **senarius.**

—, —. The name given to a Latin verse of seven metrical feet is **septenarius.**

—, —. The name given to a verse which begins and ends with the same word is **serpentine verse.**

—, —. A name given to an arrangement of verses in groups of three, rhyming a b a, b c b, c d c, etc., is **terza rima.**

—, —. A verse of four feet or, in classical poetry, of four measures of two feet each, is a **tetrameter.**

—, —. A metrical line of three measures, each of two or three feet, is a **trimeter.**

minstrel. A name used for a Celtic minstrel, for a poet recognized at the Eisteddfod, and as a general term for a poet, is **bard.**

—. A name for a mediaeval minstrel, juggler, and jester is **jongleur.**

—. The name for a member of a guild of poet-musicians that flourished in German towns from the fourteenth to the sixteenth century is **meistersinger.**

—. A name for a German lyric poet and minstrel of the twelfth, thirteenth, and early fourteenth centuries is **minnesinger.**

—. Names for a minstrel or reciter of epic poems in ancient Greece are **rhapsode** and **rhapsodist.**

— The name given to an ancient Scandinavian poet or minstrel is **scald.**

— The name given one of a class of lyric poets that sprang up in Provence in the eleventh century is **troubadour.**

— The name given to one of a class of poets of northern France at the time of the troubadours, composing narrative poems in Old French, is **trouvère.**

misrepresent. To make selections from statements in order to convey a false impression is to **garble.**

Mongolic. The family of agglutinative languages which includes Mongolic, Finno-Ugrian, and Turkic is the **Ural-Altaic family.**

mood. *See under* **verb,** *below.*

More, Sir Thomas. The name of the imaginary island with a perfect social and political system, described by Sir Thomas More (1478-1535) in a book named after the island, is **Utopia**

mutual relationship. A part of speech expressing mutual relationship or action is **reciprocal.**

name. The name of a person invented to account for the name of a country or people is **eponym.**

—. Terms for a name, other than his own, under which a person writes are **nom de guerre, nom de plume,** and **pseudonym.**

—. A family or personal name derived from a father or ancestor is a **patronymic.**

native. The native tongue or dialect of a country or district, as opposed to that of foreign or learned origin, is the **vernacular.**

newspaper. The name of a column in a newspaper containing advertisements for missing relatives and the like is **agony column.**

—. A name given to the magazine page or serial story of a newspaper is **feuilleton.**

—. The name for an article in large type in a newspaper expressing the opinion of the editor on some question of the day is **leading article** or **leader.**

—. The name for a newspaper article running on to a second page is **turnover.**

New Zealand. The Polynesian language of the race inhabiting New Zealand at the time of its discovery is **Maori**

Norman. A name given to the form of Norman-French developed in England is **Anglo-Norman.**

—. The name of the French dialect with marked peculiarities spoken by the mediaeval Normans is **Norman-French.**

Norsemen. The name used to denote a mediaeval legend or tale of the Norsemen written in prose is **saga.**

Norway. The name of the tongue spoken in mediaeval Norway, Iceland, and the Hebrides is **Old Norse.**

note. The making of notes to explain difficult passages in a book is **annotation.**

—. A name for a series of notes explaining a book, such as an edition of a Latin author, is **commentary.**

—. An explanatory note or comment on the margin or between the lines of a book is a **gloss.**

—. A name for a complete series of notes written on the margins of a book or manuscript is **marginalia.**

—. *See also under* **explanation,** *above.*

noun. A noun that denotes a quality, state, or action is an **abstract noun.**

—. The placing together of two nouns, or a noun and pronoun, of which one explains or completes the other is **apposition.**

—. A noun, such as " crowd," used to denote a group is a **collective noun.**

—. A noun which is used not for any particular person or thing but for any one of the same kind is a **common noun.**

—. A noun that denotes a thing, as opposed to a quality, state, or action, is a **concrete noun.**

—. To give the inflexions of nouns is to **decline,** and the process is **declension.**

—. A noun, like sheep, that has the same form for both sexes is **epicene.**

—. The name of a verbal form used as a noun, but capable, if transitive, of governing an object, is **gerund.**

—. A noun in Greek and Latin which is irregularly inflected is **heteroclite.**

noun. In grammar the noun or pronoun in the dative case which signifies a person or thing affected by the action, though not the direct object of the verb, is the **indirect object.**

— Verbal nouns and adjectives not limited by person, number, etc., are **infinite.**

—. A name for the change in the form of nouns to show number, gender, or case is **nominal inflexion.**

—. A noun which names a particular place, person, etc., is a **proper noun.**

—. A name for a noun is **substantive.**

novel. A name for the stage in a novel when the plot is unravelled is **dénouement.**

—. Names for a short novel are **novelette, conte,** and **short story.**

—. A word applied to a type of novel dealing with the adventures of a rogue, and generally written in a comic vein, is **picaresque.**

—. The name for the plan or series of events round which a novel is written is **plot.**

—. The name for a novel which relates the further history of characters mentioned in an earlier novel is **sequel.**

—. A plot of a secondary nature in a novel, etc., running concurrently with the main plot, is an **underplot.**

number. In Greek and some other languages certain words (nouns, adjectives, pronouns, verbs) are inflected to indicate two persons or things, and are then said to be in the **dual number.**

objectionable. To remove the objectionable parts of a book is to **bowdlerize** or **expurgate.**

ode. The name of the second movement of a classical ode is **antistrophe.**

—. The third and last part of a classical ode is the **epode.**

—. The name given to an ode in supposed imitation of the odes of the Greek poet Pindar is **Pindaric.**

—. One of two or more sections of an ode or other lyric poem that correspond exactly in metre is a **strophe.**

old-fashioned. Words which are old-fashioned or have dropped out of use are **archaic.**

omission. The name of the mark (‸) used by writers and proof correctors to show that something has been omitted is **caret.**

—. A figure of speech in which one or more words are omitted for the reader or listener to supply is **ellipsis.**

onomatopoeia. Another name for onomatopoeia is **echoism.**

order. A name for the figure of speech in which the order of words in two phrases that come together is reversed is **chiasmus.**

—. A figure of speech in which the second part of the sentence consists of the first part arranged in the opposite order is **epanodos.**

—. A name given to the changing over of the natural relation between two words or phrases in a sentence is **hypallage.**

— A figure of speech in which words are changed from their natural or grammatical order for the sake of emphasis is **hyperbaton.**

— A figure of speech in which the logical order of words or phrases is changed, those which should come last coming first, is **hsyteron proteron.**

—. The order or arrangement of words in grammar and rhetoric is **taxis.**

outline. The name for the outline or plan of a novel, play, etc., is **plot.**

pause. The name for a pause at about the middle of a line of verse is **caesura.**

—. Poetry in which there is a pause or stop in the sense at the end of each line is **end-stopped.**

—. A slight pause in a line of verse after an unaccented syllable is a **feminine caesura.**

—. A pause in a line of poetry or in rhetoric is a **rest.**

personal. Poetry and prose that give prominence to the personal point of view of the writer are **subjective,** and those from which it is absent are **objective.**

personification. The rhetorical figure by which words are put into the mouth of an imaginary being, or of an abstract idea personified, is **prosopopoeia.**

phrase. A phrase or word that serves as a distinctive name, such as " Invincible Armada," is **denominative.**

— The name given to a short phrase expressing some moral maxim or sentiment, especially one adopted as a rule of life or conduct, is **motto.**

—. *See also under* **saying,** *below.*

picture-writing. *See under* **hieroglyphics,** *above; and* **writing,** *below.*

plan The name for the plan or skeleton of a novel, play, etc., is **plot.**

pleasing. The name for a pleasing combination of sounds in spoken language is **euphony.**

plot. That part of a novel or play, etc., towards the end, when the complications of the plot are unravelled, is the **dénouement.**

—. A plot of a secondary nature in a novel, etc., running concurrently with the main plot, is an **underplot.**

poem. A name for a short, impersonal poem concerned with a single episode, usually a tragic incident or an heroic exploit leading up to a dramatic climax, is **ballad.**

—. A name for a poem of three stanzas and an envoy, each ending with a refrain, with the rhymes of the first stanza repeated throughout is **ballade.**

—. A name for a type of personal reflective poem with the main themes of sorrow and love is **elegy**

—. A name given to an unwritten narrative poem handed down by word of mouth among primitive people is **epos.**

—. A name for a poem on rural life, especially on farming, is **georgic.**

—. A poem of seven lines is a **heptastich.**

— The name given to a highly-wrought work of romantic verse or prose, or to a short poem dealing with country life and scenes, is **idyll.**

—. The name given to a short poem, usually in stanzas, expressing the emotions of the writer, is **lyric.**

—. A name for a poem mourning the death of a person is **monody.**

—. A poem or epigram consisting of a single line of verse is a **monostich.**

—. A name for a poem, especially one of some length, in which a story is told, is **narrative poem.**

—. A series of eight lines of verse is an **octastich.**

—. A name for an ancient form of verse meant to be sung to a musical accompaniment, is **ode.**

—. A name for a poem retracting remarks made in a previous one is **palinode.**

—. Names used to describe poems about shepherds and country life are **pastoral** and **bucolic.**

—. A poem or stanza consisting of fourteen lines is a **quatorzain.**

—. A name for a form of rhymed or unrhymed poem with six stanzas, each of six lines, and a final triplet, the lines of each stanza ending with the same words but in different order, is **sestina.**

—. The name of a poetic form, usually satirical, used by the troubadours is **sirvente.**

— A poem of fourteen iambic lines, each of ten syllables, forming two sections of eight and six lines, with a special arrangement of rhymes, or else having three quatrains and a couplet, is a **sonnet**

—. A poem written in groups of three lines having the rhyme scheme a b a, b c b, c d c, etc., is in **terza rima**

poem. A complete poem or stanza of four lines is a **tetrastich.**

—. A poem of eight lines on two rhymes, arranged in a particular way, is a **triolet.**

—, collection. A name for a collection of short poems is **anthology.**

—, —. A name sometimes given to a collection of poems by a single author, especially in Persia, is **divan.**

—, division. A division of a long poem is a **canto.**

—, —. Names for a group of lines usually rhyming in fixed order, the form being repeated throughout the poem, are **stanza** and **verse.**

—. epic. Other names for epic poems are **epopee** or **epos.**

—, French. The name of a French form of poem of thirteen lines, having only two rhymes and with the opening words repeated twice as a refrain, is **rondeau.**

—, —. The name of a French form of poem resembling a rondeau, often in fourteen lines is **rondel.**

—, —. A form of verse of nineteen lines based on two rhymes is a **villanelle.**

—, —. An old French form of verse having two rhymes to a stanza and usually a refrain is a **virelay.**

—, Italian. The name of an elaborate form of verse in Italian poetry, something like a sonnet, is **canzone.**

—, —. The name of a short form of canzone is **canzonet.**

—, narrative. A poem in the heroic style, written round the adventures of a central character, is an **epic.**

—, pastoral. A name for a pastoral poem is **bucolic.**

—, —. A pastoral poem, generally introducing dialogue, is an **eclogue.**

—, Persian The name given to a Persian lyric poem, amatory ode, drinking song, or religious hymn is **ghazal.**

—, —. A name for a Persian quatrain, especially of an epigrammatic nature, is **rubai,** and for a collection of them **rubaiyat.**

—, postscript. A stanza or poem added as a postscript to a poem or set of poems is an **envoy.**

—, wedding. A name for a wedding song or poem is **epithalamium.**

poet. A poet who has been recognized at the modern Welsh Eisteddfod is a **bard.**

—. The name given to a band of Greek poets in the Ionian island of Chios, supposed to be descended from Homer, was **Homeridae.**

—. A name for a writer of poor verse is **poetaster.**

—. The name for a poet's freedom to take certain liberties with the general rules that govern writing is **poetic licence.**

—. The title of an officer of the British royal household whose nominal duty is to compose poems in celebration of great national occasions is **poet laureate.**

—. *See also* **minstrel,** *above.*

poetry. Poetry in which some accented syllables begin with the same or a similar letter, as in early Teutonic poetry, is **alliterative.**

—. The name for that kind of poetry which aims at instructing the mind or improving the morals is **didactic poetry.**

—. The name for the rhythmical arrangement of syllables in poetry is **metre.**

—. Poetry in the style of the Greek pastoral poet Theocritus is **Theocritean.**

—, collection. A name for a collection of poetry or prose drawn from various authors is **anthology.**

—, school. A name for a school of English poetry founded by English poets living in Florence in the late eighteenth century, characterized by sentimentality and affectedness, is **Della Cruscan School.**

—, —. A name given to the school of poetry in which Wordsworth and Coleridge—dwellers among the Cumberland lakes—were prominent is **Lake School.**

poetry, school. The name for a French school of lyric poetry, existing between 1850 and 1890, and including Leconte de Lisle, Gautier, and Baudelaire, is **Parnassian School.**

—. *See also under* **poem,** *above, and* **verse,** *below.*

praise. A name given a poem or a formal speech expressing praise or appreciation is **encomium.**

—. A name for a speech or writing in praise of a person or his actions is **eulogy.**

—. A name given to a form of speech or writing in praise of a person is **panegyric.**

particle. A name given to a particle or other small word, such as *-que* and *-ve* in Latin, which cannot be used alone but is attached to a preceding word, is **enclitic.**

predicate. A name used in grammar for an extension or amplification of the predicate is **adjunct.**

—. A word or phrase which extends or completes the action of the predicate is **prolative.**

pronoun. The name of the word to which a relative pronoun refers is **antecedent.**

—. To give the inflexions of pronouns is to **decline,** and the process is **declension.**

—. The name of a pronoun which serves to point out the person or thing to which it refers is **demonstrative.**

—. The name of a pronoun which indicates vaguely or generally one or more of a class of persons or things is **indefinite pronoun.**

—. Each of the three classes of a personal pronoun, or pronominal adjective, and the corresponding distinction in the tense of a verb, is a **person.**

—. The name given to a pronoun which denotes the person speaking, the person spoken to, or the person or thing spoken of, is **personal pronoun.**

—. The name of a pronoun which denotes either possession or the relation of one thing to another is **possessive.**

—. A word related to or having the nature of a pronoun is **pronominal.**

—. A pronoun that relates to or is connected with a noun or pronoun preceding it called the antecedent is a **relative pronoun.**

—. The name given to a pronoun used as the object of a sentence in which subject and object are the same person or thing is **reflexive pronoun.**

pronunciation. The name for an accent, especially that used by the Irish in speaking English, is **brogue.**

—. The name for a rough, guttural pronunciation of the letter *r*, as used by the Northumbrians, is **burr.**

—. The name given to the pronunciation of the Greek ē like the English ā is **etacism.**

—. A term applied to a letter that is pronounced gutturally or that is voiceless or aspirated is **hard.**

— A word pronounced and perhaps spelt like another, but which has a different meaning, is a **homonym.**

— A word pronounced like another but differing from it in spelling and meaning is a **homophone.**

—. The name given to the pronunciation of the Greek ē like the English *e* in "be" is **itacism.**

—. The pronunciation of the letter *r* like *l* is **lallation** or **lambdacism.**

—. The twang known as "speaking through the nose" is **nasal.**

— A name for correct speech or pronunciation, and for the branch of grammar dealing with this, is **orthoepy.**

—. The undue trilling or burring of the letter *r* in pronunciation is **rhotacism.**

—. A popular term for sibilant, voiced, or unaspirated sounds is **soft.**

—. The name given to a consonant pronounced without vibration of the vocal chords is **surd.**

—. *See also* **accent, consonant,** *and* **mark,** pronunciation, *above, and* **sound** *and* **vowel,** *below.*

proof-correcting. The name of the mark (Λ), used to show that something has been left out, is **caret.**

—. A sign, not unlike a "d," used to show that something should be taken out, is **dele.**

—. A term meaning "let it stand," used in proof-correcting to cancel an alteration, is **stet.**

prose. Polished or classic prose, in the style of the Roman orator Cicero, is **Ciceronian.**

—. The name of a short literary prose composition, either critical or familiar and chatty, intended to illustrate some subject, is **essay.**

—. The name for that form of prose composition in which characters and actions representing real life are portrayed is **novel.**

—. The name given to a work or passage in prose that has some of the features of poetry, especially rhythm and feeling, is **prose-poem.**

—. *See also under* **composition,** form, *above.*

proverb. Other names for proverb are **adage** and **saw.**

pun. Names for punning—the use of the same word in different senses, or of words of similar sound in connexion—are **paronomasia** and **play upon words.**

punctuation. *See under* **stop,** *below.*

puzzle. The name for a kind of word puzzle in which the first, last, central, or some agreed letter, when read successively in the order of the lines, makes a word or sentence, is **acrostic.**

—. A name for a dark saying whose meaning is concealed by obscure language is **enigma.**

—. *See also under* **riddle,** *below.*

Pyrenees. The language of the Basques of the Pyrenees is **Euskarian.**

quatrain. A quatrain in which the outside or first and fourth lines rhyme, and the inside, or second and third lines rhyme is **introverted.**

quotation. Another name for a quotation is **citation.**

—. The parts of a book or speech that precede or follow a passage quoted and fix its meaning are the **context.**

— A name used for a quotation from a book or writing is **excerpt.**

—, marks. Another name for quotation marks is **inverted commas.**

record. A name for history recorded year by year or in order of date is **annals.**

- A name for a record of things in the order of time in which they occurred is **chronicle.**

—. A record of daily events, generally written down in a book, is a **diary** or **journal.**

reference. A reference in one part of a book showing that the subject is dealt with in another part is a **cross-reference.**

—. *See also under* **mark,** reference, *above.*

repetition. The accidental repetition in writing of letters or words is **dittography.**

—. The repetition of the last syllables of a line of poetry in the next line is **echo.**

—. Names for the unnecessary repetition of ideas or the use of superfluous words in speaking or writing are **pleonasm** and **redundancy.**

—. The useless repetition of the same idea or meaning in different words is **tautology.**

resemblance. The name for a partial resemblance between two different things is **analogy.**

—. A figure of speech in which a thing or idea is put in the place of another to suggest resemblance or comparison is a **metaphor.**

—. A figure of speech by which a matter is compared with something resembling it is a **simile.**

rewriting. A name for the rewriting of a passage or text, so as to render its meaning in different words, is **paraphrase.**

Rhine. The name of a dialect spoken chiefly in the upper valley of the Rhine is **Romansch.**

rhyme. Poetry in which the vowels in the end syllables are similar but the consonants do not rhyme is **assonant.**

—. A name given to two rhyming lines that complete a meaning in themselves is **couplet.**

rhyme. A name for two lines that rhyme and contain a complete thought is **distich.**

—. A quatrain or four-lined stanza in which the first and fourth, and the second and third lines rhyme in pairs, is **introverted.**

—. Names for a group of lines usually rhyming in fixed order, being repeated in the same form throughout a poem, are **stanza** and **verse.**

—. Names for a set group of three lines rhyming together are **tercet, tiercet,** and **triplet.**

—, ending. Names for a rhyme of two syllables, the second of which is unaccented, are **double rhyme** and **feminine rhyme.**

—, —. A rhyme between final accented monosyllables is a **masculine rhyme.**

—, internal. A name for a mediaeval Latin verse in hexameter or elegiac metre, having an internal rhyme, is **Leonine.**

rhythm. A line of poetry having its full number of syllables to give perfect rhythm is **acatalectic.**

—. A name given to rhythm in speaking is **cadence.**

—. A line of poetry having the metrical foot at the end incomplete, thus making the rhythm imperfect, is **catalectic.**

—. The name for the arrangement of syllables in poetry so as to form regular rhythms is **metre.**

riddle. A name for a riddle based on some resemblance between unlike things or their names, or upon some difference between like things or their names, often depending on a pun, is **conundrum.**

—. The most famous riddle—"What creature is four-footed, two-footed, and three-footed?" the answer being "Man," because a child crawls on hands and feet, a grown man walks upright, and an aged man uses a stick—is the **riddle of the Sphinx.**

ridicule. A name for a literary composition that treats of something in a manner that excites good-natured ridicule is **burlesque.**

—. A kind of literary composition in which persons, actions, or manners are held up to ridicule, especially for the purpose of exposing or discouraging folly or abuses, is a **satire.**

—. *See also under* **satire,** *below.*

Romance. The chief Romance languages are **Italian, Rhaeto-Romanic, Rumanian, French, Walloon, Provençal, Catalan, Spanish,** and **Portuguese.**

rondeau. The name of a form of rondeau, a thirteen-line or fourteen-line poem with two rhymes, is **rondel.**

root. A name for a word derived from the same root as another is **paronym.**

—. A name given to a root in philology is **radical.**

—, Semitic. A Semitic root containing four consonants is a **quadriliteral.**

—, —. A Semitic root containing three consonants is a **triliteral.**

Sanskrit. The name of the ancient language, akin to Sanskrit, in which the Buddhist scriptures are written, is **Pali.**

—. The name given to any of a group of literary dialects of north and central India, allied to Sanskrit, is **Prakrit.**

satire. A name given to a grossly abusive satire against a public individual is **lampoon.**

—. A name given to a lampoon, especially one displayed in public, is **pasquinade.**

—. A name given to a short satirical piece of writing is **squib.**

saying. Names given to a short, pithy saying in general use, handed down from old time, are **adage, proverb** and **saw.**

—. A name given to a collection of a person's memorable sayings is **ana.**

—. A name given to a terse, pithy saying containing an important truth is **apophthegm.**

—. A name for a short, witty, pointed, or antithetical saying or mode of expression is **epigram.**

saying. The name for a short saying embodying an important truth or principle, especially one used as a rule or guide to conduct, is **maxim.**

school, literary. *See under* **literature,** school, *and* **poetry,** school, *above.*

Semitic. The chief South Semitic languages are **Arabic** and **Abyssinian.**

—. The chief North Semitic languages are the ancient **Aramaic** (with **Syriac**), **Assyrian, Hebrew, Phoenician,** and the form of Phoenician spoken in ancient Carthage, **Punic,** and its modern form, **Maltese.**

sentence. A word or sentence formed by changing the order of letters in another word or sentence is an **anagram.**

—. A name for the inversion of the natural order of the words in a sentence or clause is **anastrophe.**

—. A sentence or phrase in which the letters forming Roman or other numerals give a particular date is a **chronogram.**

—. That part of grammar which deals with the proper use and arrangement of words in sentences is **syntax.**

—, conditional. Names for the principal clause of a conditional sentence are **apodosis** and **conclusion.**

—, —. The introductory clause of a conditional sentence is a **protasis.**

—, construction. A sentence in which the grammatical construction is suddenly changed is an **anacoluthon.**

—, dissection. To break up a sentence into the parts of speech of which it is made and show their relation is to **analyse.**

—, part. That part of a sentence which is governed by a transitive verb, or is affected by the action of the verb, is the **object.**

—, —. The name given to all the words of a sentence, including modifying ones, which express what is affirmed or denied is **predicate.**

—, —. A noun or its equivalent with which the verb of a sentence is made to agree in number and person is the **subject.**

—, reversible. A name for a reversible sentence or word, reading the same backwards as forwards, is **palindrome.**

sentimental. An epithet sometimes applied to long-winded sentimental fiction, from the name of the novelist Samuel Richardson, is **Richardsonian.**

separation. The separation of the parts of a compound word by placing one or more words between them is **tmesis.**

short. Names given to a short, condensed account or version of a book, story, etc., are **abridgment, compendium, epitome, summary,** and **synopsis.**

—. The name of the mark (˘) placed over a vowel to show that it has a short sound is **breve.**

showy. Names for showy and empty language are **bombast,** and **fustian.**

sign. The name for the sign & meaning "and," is **ampersand.**

— A picture-sign used to represent a sound or a word is a **hieroglyph.**

—. A sign or picture representing an idea is an **ideograph.**

—. A name for a system of printed signs representing all the speech sounds in use is **visible speech.**

—. *See also* **mark,** pronunciation, *above, and* **stop,** *below.*

sign-language. The art of conversing in sign-language by means of the fingers is **dactylology.**

slang. Other names for slang are **argot** and **cant.**

—. A name used for a secret language of thieves is **thieves' Latin.**

Slavonic. The chief modern Slavonic languages are **Russian, Polish, Czech** or **Bohemian, Slovakian, Serbo-Croatian, Slovenian,** and **Bulgarian.**

sonnet. Names for the first eight lines of a sonnet are **octave** and **octet.**

—. The name given to the last six lines of a sonnet is **sestet.**

—. A sonnet consisting of three quatrains, each with different alternating rhymes, and a final couplet is a **Shakespearean sonnet.**

sound. The name for a combination of two letters to represent a single sound, such as *ph* for *f*, is **digraph.**

—. The name for the running together of two vowels in a single syllable is **diphthong.**

—. The use of words that suggest by their sounds the ideas that the writer is intending to convey is **onomatopoeia.**

—. A sound capable of being given with vibration of the vocal chords—that is, voiced—is a **sonant.**

—. A sound produced without vibration of the vocal chords is a **surd.**

—. A group of three letters making one sound is a **trigraph** or **trigram.**

—. The name given in phonetics to a sound produced by the vibration of the vocal chords, and not by breath alone, is **voice.**

—, combination. A name for the use of unpleasing combinations of sounds in spoken language is **cacophony.**

—, —. A pleasing combination of sounds in spoken language is **euphony.**

—, correspondence. Verse marked by a correspondence of the terminal sounds is **rhyme.**

—, division. The division of sounds into syllables and words is **articulation.**

—, guttural. Guttural sounds produced by the aid of the velum or soft palate are **velar.**

—, hissing. A letter or set of letters sounded with a hiss, such as *s*, *sh*, is **sibilant.**

—, lip. A sound, or the letter representing it, formed by the lips is **labial.**

—, long. The name of the short horizontal line placed over a vowel to show that it has a long sound is **macron.**

—, palate. A name for a sound formed by pressing the tongue against the hard palate is **palatal.**

—, short. The name of the mark (˘) placed over a vowel to show that it has a short sound is **breve.**

—, spoken. A name for any single complete spoken sound, as a vowel or consonant, is **phone.**

—, teeth. Consonants, such as *d* and *t*, pronounced by touching the upper teeth with the tip of the tongue, are **dental.**

—, —. Sounds, as *f* and *v*, formed by the teeth and lips, are **dentilabial.**

—, —. The sound represented by *th*, formed by bringing the teeth and tongue together, is **dentilingual.**

—, —. A sound enunciated while placing the tongue between the teeth is **interdental.**

—, throat. A sound produced in the throat or by the back of the tongue and the palate is **guttural.**

—, tongue. Sounds or letters produced chiefly with the tip of the tongue are **lingual.**

—, vocal. The science that treats of vocal sounds and their symbols is **phonetics.**

—, —. The science of the sounds made by the human voice is **phonology.**

—, —. Each of the vocal sounds which can be uttered without any obstruction by the organs of the mouth is a **vowel.**

—. *See also under* **consonant,** *above, and* **vowel,** *below.*

Spanish. The name of a Spanish dialect spoken by Jews living in Turkey is **Ladino.**

speaking. Names for a fall from the lofty or noble in speech or writing to the commonplace or absurd are **bathos** and **anticlimax.**

—. The name for a gradual increase in impressiveness, and for the highest point so reached, is **climax.**

speaking. The art of speaking persuasively in public is **rhetoric.**

—. *See also under* **speech,** *below.*

speech. Roundabout speech is **circumlocution.**

—. A name for an abusive speech or denunciation is **diatribe.**

—. A name for abusive speech or violent expression of censure is **invective.**

—. Names for words or statements stated in the reported form and not in the words of the original speaker are **oblique narration, oblique oration, indirect speech,** and **reported speech.**

— Exaggerated or affected speech or use of language is **rhetoric.**

—, beginning. Names for the beginning or introduction of a speech are **exordium** and **preface.**

—, end. A name for the closing part of a speech is **peroration.**

—, part. The parts of speech comprise **noun, adjective, pronoun, verb, adverb, conjunction, preposition,** and **interjection.**

—, —. A name used to denote a word that partakes of the qualities of both a verb and an adjective is **participle.**

—, —. A name for a part of speech, such as conjunctions, prepositions, and interjections, which cannot be conjugated or declined, and for a prefix or suffix of definite meaning, is **particle.**

spelling. An unusual word for incorrect spelling is **cacography.**

—. A word spelt in the same way as another but differing from the latter in sound and meaning is a **heteronym.**

— An alteration of the spelling of a word by transposing certain letters in order to make pronunciation easier is **metathesis.**

—. A name for correct spelling is **orthography.**

stanza. A quatrain or four-lined stanza in which the first and fourth, and the second and third, lines rhyme in pairs is **introverted.**

—. A name for a type of stanza composed of eight lines, of which the first six rhyme alternately and the last two form a couplet, is **ottava rima.**

— A stanza or poem consisting of fourteen lines is a **quatorzain.**

— A stanza of four lines, usually rhyming alternately, is a **quatrain.**

— A name given to a seven-lined stanza, rhyming a b a b b c c, used by Chaucer and attributed to James I of Scotland, is **rhyme royal.**

— The name given to a stanza with six lines is **sestet.**

— A stanza consisting of nine iambic lines, eight having ten syllables and the ninth twelve, is a **Spenserian** or a **Spenserian stanza.**

—. Another name for a stanza is **stave.**

—. A stanza or complete poem of four lines is a **tetrastich.**

statement. In grammar, the entire statement that is made about the subject of a sentence is the **predicate.**

steal. To steal another's thoughts and ideas and use them as one's own is to **plagiarize.**

stop. Names of the stops used in punctuation are **full stop** or **period** (.), **colon** (:), **semicolon** (;), **comma** (,), **dash** (—), **question mark** (?), **exclamation mark** (!).

story. A name for a short story pointing a moral, especially one with animals for characters, is **fable.**

— A name for a poem, especially one of some length, in which a story is told, is **narrative poem.**

— The name for a story, usually religious, of real or fictitious events, used to point a moral is **parable.**

—. A story in which the characters and events are emotionally idealized is a **romance.**

—. The name for a story published in instalments is **serial.**

—, part. That part of a story in which the plot is unravelled is the **dénouement.**

story, plan. The name for the plan or skeleton round which a story is written is **plot.**

—, summary. The name given to a summary prefixed to an instalment of a serial story giving a concise account of the story up to date is **synopsis.**

—. *See also under* **life,** *above.*

stress. In prosody, the name for the stress or accent on a particular syllable in a verse is **ictus.**

—. A stress on a syllable is a **tone.**

—. *See also under* **emphasis,** *above.*

style. Polished or classic prose, in the style of the Roman orator Cicero, is **Ciceronian.**

—. An epithet applied to wild, impetuous writing or speech that disregards the rules of composition is **dithyrambic.**

—. A name for an artificial or affected style of writing, especially one full of antithesis and simile, is **Euphuism.**

—. A name given to pompous writing or speech containing many words of Latin origin is **Johnsonian.**

—. A name for a peculiarity of literary style or language favoured by a particular speaker or writer is **mannerism.**

— An affected style of writing abounding in extravagant metaphors, as used by the Italian poet Marini and other Renaissance writers, is **Marinism.**

— A name for an affected over-precise style in writing, applied by Hazlitt to certain works of the Romantic School, is **miminy-piminy** or **niminy-piminy.**

—. A poem imitating and making fun of the heroic style of Homer's Iliad or a similar work is a **mock-heroic.**

subject. A name used in grammar for an extension or amplification of the subject is **adjunct.**

substitution. In grammar, the substitution of one person, number, case, tense, mood, or voice, of the same word for another is **enallage.**

supplement. A name for a supplement to a book is **appendix.**

Switzerland. The name of a dialect of the Rhaeto-Romanic language spoken in parts of Switzerland and Tyrol is **Ladin.**

— The Romance language spoken in parts of eastern Switzerland and Tyrol is **Rhaeto-Romanic.**

—. A Rhaeto-Romanic dialect spoken by many people in the canton of Grisons in Switzerland is **Romansch.**

syllable. A line of verse containing ten syllables is **decasyllabic.**

—. A word composed of two syllables is a **disyllable** or **dissyllable.**

—. Incorrect length of a syllable in classical verse or pronunciation is a **false quantity.**

—. A name for a metrical unit with a varying number of syllables, one of which is accented, is **foot.**

— A line or verse of poetry having eleven syllables is a **hendecasyllabic.**

— A line of poetry containing seven syllables is **heptasyllabic.**

— Greek and Latin nouns which have more syllables in the genitive than in the nominative are **imparisyllabic.**

— A word of one syllable is a **monosyllable.**

— A line of verse containing eight syllables is **octosyllabic.**

— A word in Greek or Latin having the same number of syllables in all cases of the singular is **parisyllabic.**

— A word having many syllables, or a language characterized by such words, is **polysyllabic.**

— A letter or syllable prefixed to a word, as in Hebrew, for declension, conjugation, etc., is a **preformative.**

— The addition of a syllable or a letter to the beginning of a word is **prosthesis**

syllable. The substitution of two short syllables for a long one is **resolution.**

—. A word of three syllables is a **trisyllable.**

— accented. A name for an accented syllable in English poetry is **arsis.**

—, added. A syllable inserted in a word to give it a slightly different meaning is an **infix.**

—, —. A syllable or syllables added to the beginning of a word to form a new word is a **prefix.**

—, —. A syllable or syllables added to the end of a word or to a root to form a new word is a **suffix.**

—, extra. In prosody, an extra syllable at the end of a line is **hypercatalectic.**

—, —. Those languages in which words are modified by the insertion of extra syllables in the middle of the word are **intercalative.**

—, joining. A term used to denote the joining of two syllables to form one sound, as in e'er, is **synaeresis.**

—, omission. The omission of a syllable, etc., from the middle of a word is **syncope.**

—, position. The name given to the last syllable but two of a word is **antepenultimate.**

—, —. The name for the last syllable but one of a word is **penultimate.**

—, stressed. The vowel or syllable coming next before a stressed syllable is a **pretone.**

—, unaccented. A name for an unaccented syllable in English poetry is **thesis.**

tale. The name given to an amusing tale in verse dealing with everyday life, composed by the poets of Northern France in the late Middle Ages is **fabliau.**

—. A traditional story told by primitive people is a **folk-tale.**

— The name given to a mediaeval tale of chivalry, usually in verse, is **romance.**

— The name for a mediaeval tale or legend of the Norsemen written in prose is **saga.**

—. *See also under* **story,** *above.*

teeth. *See under* **sound,** teeth, *above.*

tense. *See under* **verb,** *below.*

term. The name given to the science of the correct use of terms and also to the set of terms used in a particular science or art is **terminology.**

Teutonic. The chief West Teutonic languages are **German, Dutch, Flemish, Frisian,** and **English.**

—. Another name for Teutonic is **Germanic.**

—. The chief East Teutonic language is the extinct **Gothic or Moeso-Gothic.**

— . The chief North Teutonic or Scandinavian languages are **Old Norse, Icelandic, Swedish, Danish,** and **Norwegian.**

thought. A set of words expressing a complete thought is a **sentence.**

three. The name of a Welsh form of literary composition in which statements are grouped in threes is **triad.**

—. A group of three letters making one sound is **a trigram** or **trigraph.**

—. A set of three verses rhyming together is a **triplet.**

—. A word of three syllables is a **trisyllable.**

tomb. A name for an inscription on or written for a tomb or monument is **epitaph.**

tongue. Sounds or letters produced chiefly with the tip of the tongue are **lingual.**

translation. A name used in the Near and Middle East for travellers' interpreters and guides, and for other persons who act as intermediaries between Europeans and Orientals is **dragoman.**

—. A word-for-word or literal translation from one language into another is a **metaphrase.**

treatise. Another name for a treatise or spoken or written discourse is **dissertation.**

treatment. The treatment by the author of a literary subject without giving his own personal feelings expression is **objectivity.**

— The treatment by the author of a literary subject in which prominent expression is given to his personal feelings is **subjectivity.**

triplet. The name given to an arrangement of triplets used by Dante in the "Divine Comedy" is **terza rima.**

troubadour. The language in which the troubadours composed their lyrical poetry was the **langue d'oc,** or **Old Provençal.**

— The name of a poetic form, usually satirical, used by troubadours in the Middle Ages is **sirvente.**

— The name given to a contest in verse between troubadours was **tenson.**

trouvère. The language in which the trouvères composed their lyrical poetry was the **langue d'oil,** or **Old French.**

Troy. The ancient Greek epic describing the siege of Troy is the **Iliad.**

Turkic. The chief language of the Turkic group is **Osmanli Turkish.**

—. The family of agglutinative languages to which Mongolic, Ugrian, and Turkic belong is the **Ural-Altaic family.**

Tyrol. The name of a dialect of the Rhaeto-Romanic language spoken in parts of Tyrol and Switzerland is **Ladin.**

Ugrian. The Ugrian or Ugro-Finnish group of languages includes **Finnish, Esthonian, Lappish,** and **Magyar.**

Ulysses. The ancient Greek epic relating the adventures of Ulysses or Odysseus after the fall of Troy is the **Odyssey.**

ungrammatical. An expression that is ungrammatical is a **solecism.**

Ural-Altaic. The name given to certain Asiatic languages that are neither Aryan nor Semitic, especially the Ural-Altaic group, is **Turanian.**

—. The Ural-Altaic family of languages includes the **Ugrian, Ugro-Finnish,** or **Finno-Ugric** group, **Mongolic, Samoyedic, Manchu,** the **Turkic** group, and **Japanese.**

verb. A verb used to form the moods and tenses of other verbs is an **auxiliary.**

—. To give the inflexions of a verb is to **conjugate.**

—. A Latin or Greek verb passive in form but active in meaning is **deponent.**

—. A verb formed from another verb and expressing a desire to perform the action implied by the original verb is **desiderative.**

—. A transitive verb that needs a complement as well as an object is **factitive.**

—. A name given to a verb that expresses frequent repetition or intensity of action is **frequentative.**

—. A verbal form used as a noun but capable, if transitive, of governing an object, is a **gerund.**

—. The name of a Latin verbal adjective formed from the gerund is **gerundive.**

—. A verb whose subject is not expressed, or one whose subject is the pronoun "it," is **impersonal.**

—. A verb which does not take a direct object is **intransitive.**

—. A verb used to express a complete idea, as distinguished from an auxiliary verb, is **notional.**

—. A name for a word that partakes of the qualities of a verb and an adjective is **participle.**

—. A verb which denotes an action done to the doer is **reflexive.**

—. A verb that makes its past tense and past participle by internal vowel-change and not by the addition of suffixes is **strong.**

—. A verb which requires a direct object, expressed or implied, to complete the sense, is **transitive.**

—. An English verb which makes its past tense and past participle by adding *-ed* or *-t* is **weak.**

—, form. The name for a form of a verb expressing action, being, or state is **mood.**

—, —. The word denoting the distinction in the tense of a verb corresponding to any one of the three classes of a pronoun or pronominal adjective is **person.**

verb, form. The form assumed by a verb to show the time of an action or state, and sometimes also its completeness or continuance, is its **tense.**

—, —. A name for the form of a verb indicating the relation of the subject to the action expressed by the verb is **voice.**

—, mood. Those moods of a verb that are limited by number and person, as opposed to the infinitive, are **finite.**

—, —. The name given to the mood of a verb expressing command, entreaty, or exhortation is **imperative.**

—, —. The name given to the mood used to make definite statements is **indicative.**

—, —. The mood of a verb that expresses only its action or notion without regard to person, number, etc., is the **infinitive.**

—, —. The name of the mood of a Greek verb that expresses wish or desire is **optative.**

—, —. The mood of a verb used to express doubt, possibility, supposition, condition, etc., is the **subjunctive.**

—, tense. In Greek grammar, the tense of a verb that expresses time (usually past) of an indefinite date, and without limitations as to continuance, is the **aorist.**

—, —. The name of a tense indicating an event yet to happen is **future.**

—, —. The name of the tense that denotes an event as completed in the future is **future perfect.**

—, —. The name of a tense indicating past action as incompleted or continuous with some other action is **imperfect.**

—, —. The future perfect tense in Greek grammar is the **paulo-post-future.**

—, —. The tense which expresses or relates to action completed and therefore past is the **perfect tense.**

—, —. The tense denoting an action or event completed before another point of time specified or alluded to is the **pluperfect.**

—, —. The tense which expresses being or doing actually in progress, or considered without reference to time, is the **present tense.**

—, —. The tense denoting completed action or a past state is the **preterit** or **past.**

—, —. The change of a vowel in a verb to alter its tense is **vowel-gradation** or **ablaut.**

—, voice. The voice of a verb whose subject is the doer of the action expressed is the **active voice.**

—, —. In Greek grammar, the voice between active and passive, in which the action of the verb is regarded as affecting its subject, is the **middle voice.**

—, —. The voice of a verb expressing the condition of being acted upon or affected by an external agent or force is the **passive voice.**

verse. Verse in the metre reputed to have been invented by the Greek lyric poet, Alcaeus, is **Alcaic.**

—. Verse in the metre or manner of the Greek poet, Anacreon, is **Anacreontic.**

—. The name for a pair of successive lines of verse is **couplet.**

—. The name given to a metre used by the Greek poetess Sappho, and imitated in Latin by Horace, is **Sapphic.**

—. The term used to denote a kind of rude verse, measured by accent, used by early Roman poets, is **Saturnian.**

—. Another name for a verse or metrical line is **stave.**

—, collection. An old name for an anthology or collection of verse is **garland.**

—, crude. Crude, irregular verse which lacks proper rhythm is **doggerel.**

—, emphasis. A regular or significant recurrence of emphasis in verse or prose is **rhythm.**

verse, extempore. The composition of verse or other literary work on the spur of the moment is **improvisation.**

—, form. *See under* **metre,** verse, *and* **poem,** *above.*

—, humorous. Verse in which two or more languages are intermixed, or in which native words are given Latin or Greek forms, is **macaronic.**

—, Latin. A dictionary of Latin poetical words and phrases useful in writing Latin verse is a **gradus.**

—, laws. That part of the study of language which deals with the laws and nature of verse is **prosody.**

—, light. The French name for society verse, which is light, witty verse dealing with topical subjects, is **vers de société.**

—, nonsense. The name of a kind of nonsense verse of five lines is **Limerick.**

voice. *See under* **verb,** *above.*

vowel. A vowel sounded with both the nose and mouth passages open is **orinasal.**

—. The vowel or syllable coming next before a stressed syllable is a **pretone.**

—, change. The name for the changing of one root vowel into another showing a change of tense or meaning is **ablaut** or **gradation.**

—, —. A part of speech forming inflexions by internal vowel-change, and not by the addition of suffixes, is **strong.**

—, —. In Germanic languages, the name given to a change of vowel in a syllable due to the influence of an original *i* or *u* in the following syllable is **umlaut** or **mutation.**

—, duration. The length or shortness of a vowel, determined by its duration when spoken, is its **quantity.**

—, omission. The suppression of a vowel in the pronunciation of a word for the sake of rhythm is **elision.**

—, —. The leaving out of the first vowel of a word is **prodelision.**

—, slurring. A name for the slurring or suppression of a vowel at the end of a word before a vowel at the beginning of the next is **synalaepha.**

—, union. The name for the union or running together of two vowels in one syllable is **diphthong.**

wedding. A poem or hymn in honour of a bride and bridegroom is an **epithalamium.**

Welsh. A name for the Welsh language, and also for the language group that comprises Welsh, Breton, and Cornish, is **Cymric.**

—. The name of a Welsh form of literary composition in which statements are grouped in threes is **triad.**

witty. A name for a brief, witty expression of an idea either in prose or verse is **epigram.**

word. A word or sentence formed by changing the order of letters in another word or sentence is an **anagram.**

—. The name for a word that is derived from another word is **derivative.**

— A word denoting that only a part or division of a whole is being spoken of or considered is a **partitive word.**

—. A word in which the last stressed vowel and any following sounds are the same as those of another word having different sounds preceding the stress is a **rhyme.**

—. A word or part of a word not derived from any other is a **root.**

—. A speech or lesson repeated word for word is repeated **verbatim.**

—, arrangement. A name given to an unusual arrangement of the words or clauses of a sentence is **anastrophe.**

—, —. That part of grammar which deals with the proper arrangement of words in sentences is **syntax.**

—, change. The grammatical change of words in declension or conjugation is **inflexion.**

word, choice. The choice of words in expressing ideas is **diction.**

—, classification. Words are classified in eight distinct **parts of speech.**

—, compound. A form of language which combines several words of a sentence in a compound word is **incorporative** or **polysynthetic.**

—, —. The separation of the parts of a compound word by placing one or more words between them is **tmesis.**

—, corresponding. The name given to words that correspond to each other and are used together, such as either and or, is **correlative.**

—, derivative. A derivative word whose root has been given a depreciatory or inferior meaning by a suffix, etc., is a **pejorative.**

—, derived. A name for a word derived from another or from the same root as another is **paronym.**

—, deriving. The name in philology for the process of deriving words from compounds by adding a particle is **parasynthesis.**

—, description. To describe the words of a sentence grammatically, stating inflexion, relation to each other, etc., is to **parse.**

—, diminishing. The name given to a word formed from another word, generally by adding a suffix, to express something little, is **diminutive.**

—, emphasizing. A name given to a derived word or an affix which expresses with greater force the idea of the original word is **augmentative.**

—, form. The name given to the existence of a word in more than one form, such as church and kirk, is **dimorphism.**

—, —. The study of the form, structure, and development of words and language is **morphology.**

—, —. A word, especially with regard to its form rather than its meaning, is a **vocable.**

—, formation. The name of a formative element inserted in the body of a word is **infix.**

—, —. The principle of forming words in imitation of natural sounds is **onomatopoeia.**

—, —. A name for the formation of a word from another in the same language, or from one in another language with but little change, is **paronymy.**

—, —. A letter, syllable, or syllables placed at the beginning of a word or root to form another word is a **prefix.**

—, —. A letter, syllable, or syllables added to the end of a word or to a root to form a new word is a **suffix.**

—, joining. The name given in French to the joining of the final consonant of one word to a following word beginning with a vowel or silent *h* is **liaison.**

—, list. The name for a list of all or of the most important words of a language arranged alphabetically with their meanings and often derivations and pronunciations, and also for any alphabetically arranged work of reference dealing with a department of knowledge is **dictionary.**

—, —. The name for a list containing explanations of rare, obsolete, or technical words occurring in a book is **glossary.**

—, —. A list or collection of words used in a language, science, profession, book, etc., usually arranged in alphabetical order with explanations, is a **vocabulary.**

—, meaning. The use of a word in a sense opposite to its proper meaning is **antiphrasis.**

—, —. A word whose meaning is the reverse of the meaning of some other word is an **antonym.**

—, —. A mode of speaking or writing in which words are used not in their literal meaning is **figurative.**

—, —. The process by which the form of a word is altered in accordance with its supposed origin is **folk-etymology.**

word, meaning. A word having the same or nearly the same meaning as another of the same language is a **synonym.**

—, name. A word or phrase that serves as a distinctive name, such as "Invincible Armada," is **denominative.**

—, —. A word which is used as the name of a person, thing, or idea is a **noun** or **substantive.**

—, new. Prefixes and suffixes, which, although no part of the root, help to make new words, are **formatives.**

—, —. A name for a new word or phrase is **neologism.**

—, omission. A figure of speech in which one or more words are omitted for the reader or listener to supply is **ellipsis.**

—, origin. The science dealing with the origin and formation of words is **etymology.**

—, play. A name for a play upon words as in punning is **paronomasia.**

—, pronunciation. A word pronounced and perhaps spelt like another, but which has a different meaning, is a **homonym.**

—, —. A word pronounced like another, but differing in spelling and meaning, is a **homophone.**

—, puzzle. The name for a kind of word puzzle in which the first, last, central, or some agreed letters, when read successively in the order of the lines, makes a word or sentence, is **acrostic.**

—, —. A word in a puzzle sharing some or all of its letters with other words crossing it is a **crossword.**

—, reversible. A name for a reversible word or sentence, reading the same backwards and forwards, is **palindrome.**

—, root. The name given to the original or primary root form of a word and also to its original meaning is **etymon.**

—, same. A figure of speech by which successive sentences or clauses begin with the same word or phrase is **anaphora.**

—, —. A figure of speech by which several successive sentences or clauses end with the same word or phrase is an **epistrophe.**

—, shortened. Words that are shortened by the omission of one or more syllables or letters from the middle are **syncopated.**

—, spelling. A word spelt in the same way as another but differing from the latter in sound and meaning is a **heteronym.**

—, stock. A name for the stock of words at a person's command is **vocabulary.**

—, superfluous. Names for the use of superfluous words or the unnecessary repetition of ideas in speaking or writing are **pleonasm** and **redundancy.**

—, —. Another name for wordiness or the use of superfluous words in speech or writing is **verbiage.**

—, syllable. A word composed of two syllables is a **disyllable** or **dissyllable.**

—, —. A word of one syllable is a **monosyllable.**

—, —. A word having more than three or many syllables is a **polysyllable.**

—, —. A word of three syllables is a **trisyllable.**

—, —. *See also under* **syllable,** *above.*

—, unaccented. Words without accent are **atonic.**

—, underived. A word not derived from any other word is **primitive.**

Wordsworth. Names given to Wordsworth, Coleridge, and other poets who lived among the lakes of Cumberland in the early nineteenth century are **Lakers, Lakists, Lake Poets,** and **Lake School.**

writing. A name used for handwriting, especially for beautiful or decorative handwriting, is **calligraphy.**

—. Writing in a running hand is **cursive.**

—. A name for writing cut in stone or metal or impressed on clay is **inscription.**

writing. A name used by students of ancient manuscripts for the large or capital letters found in Latin writings before the introduction of minuscules or small letters is **majuscule.**

—. A name for the small running script, or kind of writing, used in manuscripts of the seventh to ninth century is **minuscule.**

—. A name for a system of written characters is **script.**

—. A name given to a kind of writing with large rounded characters, somewhat like modern capitals, used in manuscripts from the fourth to the eighth century is **uncial.**

—, ancient. A name for the study and reading of ancient writings is **palaeography.**

—, —. The name given to a pointed instrument used by the ancients for writing on wax-coated tablets is **style** or **stylus.**

—, art. The art of writing impressively or persuasively is **rhetoric.**

—, Assyrian. Names for the wedge-shaped writing of the ancient Assyrians are **cuneiform** and **sphenographic.**

—, Egyptian. The name of the form of writing used by the people of ancient Egypt as distinct from the hieratic writing of the priests is **demotic** or **enchorial.**

—, —. The name given to the style of script or cursive writing used by the priests of ancient Egypt is **hieratic.**

writing, Egyptian. The name used for the figure of an animal or other object employed to represent a word, syllable, or sound, as used in ancient Egyptian and other writing, is **hieroglyphic.**

—, —. The name for the writing material used by the ancient Egyptians, made from the stem of a water-plant of the sedge family, and for a manuscript written on this, is **papyrus.**

—, —. *See also under* **hieroglyphics,** Egyptian, *above.*

—, Greek. A term applied to early Greek writing running from left to right and right to left alternately is **boustrophedon.**

—, picture. A name for a character used in picture-writing expressing the idea of a thing without spelling it is **ideograph** or **ideogram.**

—, —. A name for a picture or sign used in picture-writing is **pictograph.**

—, rapid. The art of rapid writing by signs representing sounds is **phonography.**

—, sacred. A name given to a sacred character, symbol, or piece of writing is **hierogram.**

—, secret. A name given to secret writing, to anything so written, and to the key to it, is **cipher.**

—, —. A name for anything written in cipher or secret writing is **cryptogram.**

Zanzibar. A name for a Bantu language mixed with Arabic, etc., spoken on the island of Zanzibar and the adjoining mainland, is **Swahili.**

LAW

accomplice. The accomplice of a criminal or a person who facilitates a crime by act or advice is an **abettor.**

— A person who knows that a crime has been committed and either assists the escape of the criminal or takes no steps for his capture is an **accessory after the fact.**

—. A person who is aware a crime is to be committed, and takes no actual steps to prevent it, is an **accessory before the fact.**

accounts. A name for an officer of the High Court trying cases concerning business accounts is **official referee.**

accusation. The accusation before a court of a person charged with a criminal offence is **arraignment.**

—. *See also under* **charge,** *below.*

accused. The person accused or summoned to a court to answer a civil charge is the **defendant.**

—. In Scots law, a name for an accused person in a criminal trial is **panel.**

accuser. In the Scottish courts of justice, the name for a person bringing an accusation against another is **delator.**

—. The person bringing an accusation against another in a civil court is the **plaintiff.**

acknowledgment. The acknowledgment and justification of the taking of the goods in an action of replevin is **avowry.**

action. An action brought by a defendant against the plaintiff on points arising out of the original action is a **cross-action.**

—. A name for an action in a court of law to enforce a right or claim is **suit.**

adjournment. The day on which legal proceedings are due to be resumed after an adjournment is a **continuance.**

adviser. An expert called in by a judge to advise on technical matters, such as damages, is an **assessor.**

—, State. The Minister of the Crown, appointed by letters patent, who is leader of the Bar, conducts State prosecutions, and advises heads of government departments on legal matters, is the **Attorney-General,** next below him being the **Solicitor-General.**

age. A person of full legal age is a **major.**

—. A person below the age of twenty-one is a **minor** or an **infant.**

agency. Agency deputed to a substitute is **proxy.**

agent. A name for an agent appointed under written authority to act on behalf of a principal during his absence is **attorney** or **attorney in fact.**

—. A name given to a legal instrument authorizing a person to act for another is **procuratory.**

agreement. A secret agreement or collusion between two persons to the prejudice of another person is **covin.**

— The name of the legal agreement between an apprentice and his master is **indenture.**

—. A promise or agreement when it comes into effect **inures.**

—, international. The agreement by representatives of the leading powers at Geneva in 1864-65 to neutralize hospitals and ambulances and their personnel during war is the **Geneva Convention.**

aid. The action of aiding someone in a lawsuit without good reason is **maintenance.**

alderman. The name for an alderman in Scotland is **bailie.**

allegiance. Violation by a subject of his allegiance to the sovereign or the chief authority of the State is **treason.**

ambassador. The privilege of an ambassador and his suite of being free from the jurisdiction of the country of residence is **exterritoriality.**

animal. Animals in the wild state are said to be **ferae naturae.**

annulment. An instrument which annuls or defeats the force or operation of another deed is a **defeasance.**

answer. The answer of an accused person to the claims or charges brought against him in court is the **defence.**

army. The name given to the rules of discipline to which the army is subject is **military law.**

assize. A name for the authority given to judges of assize to try civil causes is **nisi prius.**

assumption. An assumption recognized in the interest of justice or convenience in both English and Roman law, even if contrary to fact, is a **legal fiction.**

—. The name given to the assumption of the truth of a given statement or proposition until it is proved untrue, and to an inference established by law as being applicable to certain circumstances, is **presumption of law.**

attestation. A public official appointed to attest documents, certify deeds, etc., is a **notary.**

authority. A document giving a person authority to act for another is a **power of attorney.**

banishment. The banishment of an alien from Great Britain for breaking certain laws is **deportation.**

bankruptcy. The name for the agreement by which a bankrupt pays a fractional part of the assets to the creditors, and also for the money so paid, is **composition.**

—. A fractional part of the assets of a bankrupt paid to a creditor is a **dividend.**

—. The name for an official appointed by the Board of Trade to take over a bankrupt's property and distribute the assets among the creditors is **official receiver.**

—. An order vesting the property of a bankrupt in the hands of the official receiver is a **receiving order.**

bargain. A bargain made between a party in a lawsuit and another (not directly interested but providing funds for the action) for a share of the property in dispute is **champerty.**

barrier The barrier in a criminal court railing off the space in which a prisoner stands is the **bar.**

barrister. The name for the written summary of the facts and points of law of a case drawn up for counsel is **brief.**

—. The name for a barrister occupied in a particular case is **counsel.**

—. The expulsion of a barrister from one of the four Inns of Court is **disbarment.**

—. Barristers appointed counsel to the Crown by the Lord Chancellor, and who wear a silk instead of a stuff gown, are **King's Counsel,** or **Queen's Counsel.**

—. The name for an extra fee paid to counsel in a long case is **refresher.**

—. A fee paid to a barrister to engage his services before a law case actually begins is a **retainer** or **retaining fee.**

—. The name given to a barrister formerly appointed to revise the list of those entitled to vote at Parliamentary elections was **revising barrister.**

—. When a barrister becomes a King's Counsel he is said to **take silk.**

—, Scotland. In Scotland the collective name for barristers is **Faculty of Advocates.**

bill of exchange. To mark or note a bill of exchange through a notary for non-payment or non-acceptance is to **protest.**

body. A body of persons legally empowered to act as an individual is a **corporate body** or **corporation.**

bond. A bond guaranteeing repayment of a loan after the death of a specified person is a **post-obit.**

—. A bond or agreement entered into in a court of law obliging a person to act in a particular way is a **recognizance.**

Canada. The name of an old French system of feudal land tenure which existed in Quebec till 1854 is **seigneury.**

cancellation. The act of setting aside a law or declaring a legal decision, grant, etc., to be void is **annulment.**

care. Failure to exercise due care or precautions in any action is **negligence.**

case. The removal of a case to a higher court is **evocation.**

—. The name used to denote a law case left over till another day or another term is **remanet.**

—. The examination and deciding of a case by legal process is **trial.**

—, civil. A name for the hearing of civil cases by judges of assize is **nisi prius.**

—, hearing. A case heard privately—that is, in a judge's private room, not in open court—is heard **in camera.**

challenge. A challenge by an accused person to any member of the jury, on the ground that the juror himself has committed a crime, is a challenge **per delictum.**

Chancery. A person appointed to administer a business in Chancery is a **manager or manager and receiver.**

—. The name of a court formerly attached to the Court of Chancery, and dealing chiefly with cases concerning clergy and lawyers, was **Petty Bag.**

—. A minor or other person in charge of the Court of Chancery is a **ward.**

charge. A charge brought in answer to another charge is a **countercharge.**

—. The part of the charge which is considered to have the greatest weight is the **gravamen.**

—. The name given to the document in which a charge is written out is **indictment.**

—. *See also under* **accusation, accused,** and **accuser,** *above.*

— (custody). One who has charge of the person and property of another not legally capable of managing his own affairs is a **guardian,** and the person so cared for is a **ward.**

child. A child born after the father's death is **posthumous.**

church. Church properties or revenues granted to laymen are **impropriate.**

circuit. An old name for a judge's journey on circuit or for a court of itinerant justices is **eyre.**

citizen. A foreign-born person who becomes a British subject by letters patent is a **denizen.**

—. The admission of an alien to the full rights of citizenship in his country of domicile is **naturalization.**

claim. The right to keep the goods of another until a claim has been satisfied is a **lien.**

—. A formal renunciation of a claim is a **quitclaim.**

—. A legal or just claim or title is a **right.**

—, right. The name given to a suit to decide which of two claimants has the right to claim from a third party is **interpleader.**

clause, saving. A name given to a saving clause in a legal document providing that in certain circumstances an engagement shall be void is **salvo.**

clergy. A name for the former exemption of the clergy from the jurisdiction of the secular courts is **benefit of clergy.**

clerk of the peace. The official in the Channel Islands equivalent to the British clerk of the peace is the **greffier.**

complaint. A complaint made in court as the first step in legal proceedings is an **information.**

concession. A name for the settling of a legal dispute by the making of mutual concessions is **transaction.**

confinement. The name for confinement or restraint in war-time of enemy aliens by a combatant, and for similar restraint of armed forces taken in neutral territory or territorial waters, is **internment.**

consent. An action done with full consent and agreement is **voluntary.**

contract. The strict fulfilling of the terms of a contract at the order of a court of equity, no damages being allowed as alternative, is **specific performance.**

—. A bond or contract which binds one party only is **unilateral.**

conveyance. The conveyance of a right or property is a **transfer.**

copy. A copy of a document in large, distinct handwriting, made for legal record, is an **engrossment.**

—. A copy, especially of the record of a fine or other legal penalty, is an **estreat.**

—, certified. A manuscript or document certified to be a true copy of the original is an **exemplification.**

copy, rough. An outline or rough copy of a legal document, submitted to the persons concerned for amendment before drawing up the real document, is a **draft.**

corporation. A corporation consisting of several individuals is a **corporation aggregate.**

—. A corporation consisting of a single individual, such as a bishop, is a **corporation sole.**

court. One of the three divisions of the High Court of Justice, comprising a court of common law and a court of equity, is **Chancery.**

—. A court for the hearing of minor civil cases and for the recovery of debts is a **county-court.**

—. A name for the court at an assize where only criminal cases are conducted is **crown-court.**

—. The court of a duchy, such as that held under the jurisdiction of the Chancellor of the Duchy of Lancaster, to determine questions affecting land tenure, is a **duchy-court.**

— The name of a court now held infrequently at the Guildhall, London, to register gifts made to the City is **hustings.**

—. A name for one of the three divisions of the High Court of Justice is **King's Bench** or **Queen's Bench.**

—. A sitting of a court of summary jurisdiction presided over by justices of the peace or by a stipendiary magistrate is a **petty-sessions.**

— One of the three divisions of the High Court of Justice is that of **Probate, Divorce,** and **Admiralty.**

— Law courts held usually four times a year, at which justices of the peace preside in counties and the recorder in boroughs, are **quarter-sessions.**

—. *See also under* **sessions,** *below.*

—, ancient. The special courts in Cornwall and Devon which formerly dealt with the regulations concerning tin-mining in these districts were the **stannary courts.**

—, criminal. The barrier railing off the dock is the **bar.**

—, —. The enclosure where the accused is placed during trial is the **dock.**

—, final. The final court of appeal from the superior courts in Great Britain is the **House of Lords.**

—, —. The final court of appeal from the courts of the King's dominions outside Great Britain and from the Church courts is the **Judicial Committee of the Privy Council.**

—, French. A written statement of facts supporting a charge in a French court of law is a **procès-verbal.**

—, manorial. The old manorial court where the lord of the manor or his steward decided disputes between the tenants was the **court-baron.**

—, —. The court presided over by the lord of the manor or his steward to try petty offences was the **court-leet.**

—, merchant. A name for an ancient court held at fairs to settle disputes between merchants and their customers and to punish brawling is **piepowder court.**

—, superior. A division of the Supreme Court of Judicature for reviewing cases tried previously in any of the three divisions of the High Court, or, rarely, certain cases tried on assize is the **Court of Appeal.**

—, —. The court for reviewing the cases of persons previously convicted on indictment is the **Court of Criminal Appeal.**

court martial. The officer who superintends the organization of a court martial is the **judge-advocate.**

courtyard. A name for a courtyard adjoining a dwelling-house, or any area surrounding it, and within the same fence, is **curtilage.**

crime. The central and most important fact of a crime which has to be proved in order to convict is the **corpus delicti.**

crime. The name given to a crime of a kind graver than misdemeanour is **felony.**

—. The name given to a crime of a less grave type than felony is **misdemeanour.**

—, concealment. The concealment of a crime is **misprision.**

criminal. A name used in law for a person who has committed one of the more serious crimes is **felon.**

crops. The name given to crops produced by the labour of a cultivator is **emblements.**

custody. The name used for the retaining in custody of an accused person after the partial hearing of his case is **remand.**

damage. Damage to property done purposely and not by accident is **malicious damage.**

daylight. The name for the legal right to a direct flow of daylight to a window or windows, after freedom from interruption by adjacent buildings for twenty years, is **ancient lights.**

dead body. The removal of a dead body from the grave on an official order is **exhumation.**

death, sudden. A Crown officer appointed to inquire into cases of sudden death, treasure trove, and fires is a **coroner.**

debate. A name for a debate on an imaginary case by students in the Inns of Court is **moot.**

debt. An order to a person or body holding funds of a debtor, requiring these to be paid either to the creditors or into court, is a **garnishee order.**

—. The bringing of a debtor's entire property into one fund, for dividing it among the creditors, is **marshalling.**

—. A debt which has priority of payment in law is a **preferred debt.**

—. The name given to a law which decrees that debts cannot be collected after a certain lapse of time is **statute of limitations.**

—, acknowledgment. A written acknowledgment of a debt under a seal is a **bond.**

—, public. The name of an official of the High Court of Justice whose duty it is to collect all debts due to the Crown is **King's Remembrancer.**

—, repayment. A debt for which the creditor has obtained a judicial order for repayment is a **judgment-debt.**

decision. The name for a decision in the Admiralty and Divorce Courts is **decree.**

—. A judicial decision not capable of being upset or reversed by a higher court is **irreversible.**

—. The name for a decision in the courts, other than the Admiralty and Divorce Courts, is **judgment.**

—. An order or decision made by a court of law is a **rule,** or a **ruling.**

—. A decision pronounced by a judge is a **sentence.**

—, previous. A previous decision or custom that may be brought forward as an example or rule to be followed in similar cases is a **precedent.**

declaration. A solemn declaration made in lieu of an oath is an **affirmation.**

—. The name given to a person making a declaration or formal statement required by law is **declarant.**

decree, interim. Names for an interim decree made by a court before a final decision can be given are **interlocution** and **interlocutory decree.**

deed. A deed made and executed by one person only is a **deed-poll.**

—. A term used in Scots law for the making legal of a defective deed is **homologation.**

defect. A defect which renders a legal document invalid is a **flaw.**

defence. The name given to the form of defence setting out to prove that an accused person was in some other place when the offence was committed is **alibi.**

defendant. The name for an acknowledgment by a defendant, to save expense, that the case brought against him is just is **cognovit.**

—. The formal statement by or on behalf of the defendant in answer to the plaintiff's allegations is a **plea.**

—. A defendant's reply to a plaintiff's surrejoinder is a **rebutter.**

— The reply made by a defendant to the plaintiff's replication is a **rejoinder.**

—. *See also under* **plaintiff,** *below.*

delay. A delay permitted in the execution of a sentence or discharge of a duty is a **respite.**

denial. A denial of an allegation made formally by the opposite party is a **traverse.**

deposit. A person who holds the money deposited by two parties to a transaction until this is completed is a **stakeholder.**

discussion. Discussions which take place between parties to an action in order to decide the real points of disagreement before the case is heard in court are **interlocutory proceedings.**

disorder. The suspension of ordinary law in a time of disorder, and the placing of a disturbed town or district under the government of the military authorities, is **martial law.**

dispossession. An old term for the unlawful dispossession of a person of something, especially of land, is **disseisin.**

dispute. The method of settling disputes between nations by submission to the judgment of another nation or tribunal of nations is **arbitration.**

disturbance. The right possessed by the sheriff, on demand by the justices of the peace, of calling out all males, except clergymen and peers, between the ages of fifteen and seventy, in order to put down a disturbance, is the **posse comitatus.**

divorce. A decree of divorce which takes effect after a certain period, unless reason against this is shown in the meantime, is a **decree nisi.**

— The officer who represents the Crown in the Probate and Divorce Courts is the **King's Proctor.**

document. The name given to a certificate attached to or written on a legal document explaining the circumstances in which it was executed is **caption.**

—. A document recording the transfer of real property from one person to another is a **conveyance.**

—. A sealed document relating to a contract or agreement is a **deed.**

—. A name given in France to a collection of documents relating to a law case, especially a record of a person's antecedents, is **dossier.**

—. A legal document which is an exact copy of another, and has the same force and authority as the original, is a **duplicate.**

—. The signing and sealing of a legal document is **execution.**

—. A document entirely in the handwriting of the person in whose name it appears is a **holograph.**

—. A name for a deed, charter, or other legal document is **instrument.**

—. A name for a written addition to a document is **interlineation.**

—. A name for a document defending or upholding a claim to property, rights, or privileges is **muniment.**

—. The defacing of a document in such a way as to make it useless as evidence is **spoliation.**

—. A duty on certain legal documents, collected by means of stamps of the required value, and necessary to make the documents valid, is **stamp-duty.**

dower. The name given to a widow's interest in the copyhold lands of her husband, corresponding to dower in freeholds, is **free-bench.**

edict. The name given in Roman law to an edict which corresponded to an injunction in English law is **interdict.**

effect. A promise or agreement when it comes into effect **inures.**

ejectment. A name for the ejectment of the holder of land by a person who has a better claim to it is **ouster.**

endowment. A name for a legacy, donation, or investment used to endow an institution is **foundation.**

engrossing. A name given to a person who engrosses or writes out legal documents is **chirographer.**

estate. One who, in default of an executor, is appointed to wind up the estate of a deceased person is the **administrator.**

—. A name for the benefits of that portion of her husband's estate which a widow is entitled to enjoy during her life-time is **dower.**

—. The settlement of the succession of a landed estate so that it cannot be bequeathed at pleasure is **entail.**

— Land and buildings which can be willed by the owner to anyone he pleases is held in **fee-simple.**

—. Land and buildings, the succession to which is restricted by conditions made at the time of granting, is held in **fee-tail.**

—. An estate or landed interest belonging to the owner absolutely, but of which the proprietary right may be modified by limitation of descent, is a **freehold.**

—. An estate whose title lapses at the death of the holder is a **life-estate.**

— The absorbing of one estate into another, so as to form a single estate, is a **merger.**

—. That which remains of the estate of a dead person after all charges, debts, and bequests have been paid or deducted is the **residue.**

—. The coming back of an estate to the grantor or his heirs after the expiry of the grant by the grantee's death, etc., is **reversion.**

—. The lordship which remains to the person who grants an estate in fee-simple is a **seignlory.**

—. A name for an estate or interest in land to be enjoyed for a fixed period is **term.**

—, transfer. A legal term for the transfer of an estate from one person to another is **alienation.**

—. *See also under* **freehold, land, possession, property, succession,** *below.*

evidence. Evidence which provides a good reason for assuming a thing to have happened, though not giving actual proof, is **circumstantial.**

—. Anything produced in a law court and referred to in the depositions is an **exhibit.**

—. Evidence which a judge or magistrate will not allow to be given in a court is **inadmissible.**

— A case that seems to be proved by the evidence is a **prima facie case.**

—. A person who gives evidence on oath in a court of law is a **witness.**

—, convincing. Convincing evidence of the truth or falseness of a charge submitted in the trial of a case is **proof.**

—, criminal's. A criminal who, to obtain a pardon, bears witness against his accomplices, is said to turn **King's evidence.**

—, false. The crime of giving false evidence in a court of law after swearing to tell the truth is **perjury.**

—, sworn. The sworn evidence of a witness reduced to writing and signed by the judge before whom it is given is a **deposition.**

—, written. Anything printed or written which can be used as evidence is **documentary evidence.**

examination. An examination of a witness in a lawsuit made by counsel for the opposite party is a **cross-examination.**

execution. Execution by an electric shock, as in the U.S.A., is **electrocution.**

—, order. An order for the execution of a criminal found guilty of a crime punishable by death is a **death-warrant.**

expenditure. A law regulating expenditure, especially to restrain excess in dress, food, etc., is a **sumptuary law.**

faith, bad. In law, the term used for bad faith, or the intention to deceive, is **mala fides.**

felony. The act of attempting to depose the sovereign, levying war to compel a change in the laws, intimidating Parliament, or stirring up foreign invasion is **treason-felony.**

fine. Punishment by a fine is **amercement.**

fire. The wilful setting on fire of another's building or property, or of one's own with intent to defraud the insurers, is **arson.**

—. The malicious setting fire to property is **incendiarism.**

fishing. The right or privilege of fishing in waters belonging to someone else is **common of piscary**

foreigner. The handing over by one nation to another of a fugitive from justice is **extradition.**

Franks. The name of a system of laws set down in writing in the fifth century by the Salian Franks is **Salic law** or **Salic code.**

fraud. A secret understanding for purposes of fraud, or to evade the law, is **collusion.**

—. The fraudulent appropriation to a person's own use of funds or goods entrusted to his care is **embezzlement.**

—. The fraudulent alteration of a document is **falsification.**

freehold. The possession of land by freehold, as well as the taking possession of such land, is **seisin.**

—, transfer. An old method of transferring a freehold estate accompanied by some token of delivery is **feoffment.**

—. *See also under* **estate,** *above, and* **land, possession, property, succession,** *below.*

fund. A fund or property settled as a gift to make permanent provision for some person or object is an **endowment.**

gathering, unlawful. A gathering of three or more persons for the purpose of executing an unlawful and violent act is, in law, a **riot.**

goods, seizure. The seizure of a debtor's goods to satisfy his creditors or to secure the debt is **attachment.**

—, —. The seizure of a tenant's goods for non-payment of rent is **distraint.**

guardianship. In Scots law, a name given to a boy below fourteen or a girl below twelve who is in the care of a guardian is **pupil.**

—. A minor or other person in charge of a guardian or of the Court of Chancery is a **ward.**

heir. An heir who succeeds to a property jointly with another is a **coheir.**

—. A name for joint heirship is **parcenary.**

holiday. A legal holiday, that is, a day on which the courts do not sit, is a **dies non.**

homage. In feudal law the name for transference of homage and allegiance to a new lord was **attornment.**

house. The crime of breaking into a house, with intent to commit a felony, between the hours of 9 p.m. and 6 a.m. is **burglary.**

—. The crime of breaking into a house, with intent to commit a felony, between the hours of 6 a.m. and 9 p.m. is **housebreaking.**

—. A legal term for a house, together with its outbuildings and the land immediately around it used by the household is **messuage.**

imprisonment. The form of punishment introduced in place of transportation to the colonies, and taking the form of imprisonment for three or more years, is **penal servitude.**

indictment. The name for a bill of indictment endorsed by a grand jury as being justified by the evidence is **true bill.**

inference. An inference drawn from a known fact or facts is a **presumption of fact.**

information. The laying of an information before the Attorney-General, as a result of which a lawsuit is begun, is a **relation.**

informer. The term applied to an action brought by a common informer is **qui tam.**

inheritance. Right of inheritance or succession vested in the youngest son is **Borough-English** or **ultimogeniture.**

— A title or estate descending by legal inheritance is **hereditary.**

— The right of inheritance or succession that belongs to the eldest son or eldest child is **primogeniture.**

injunction. The name given to an injunction in Scots law is **interdict.**

injury. An action done with the intention of causing injury is done with **malice prepense.**

inn of court. A member of the governing council of an inn of court, which has the power to admit candidates to the bar, is a **bencher.**

—. A name for a steward or caterer at one of the inns of court is **manciple.**

inquiry. An inquiry by the coroner and a jury is a **coroner's inquest.**

—. An inquiry into facts in a court of law by the taking of evidence on oath is **examination.**

—. A legal or judicial inquiry to decide a question of fact, as in a case of death, fire, or treasure trove, is an **inquest.**

interest. The interest of a person in a property he is likely to inherit is **expectant.**

invalid. A document, ceremony, etc., that is invalid or without legal force is **null**

invention. The copying of a patented invention without leave is an **infringement.**

judge. A term used for the office of judge and for the judges collectively is **bench.**

—. The title of one of the two judges in the Isle of Man is **deemster.**

—. Common law judges other than the chief justice are **puisne judges.**

— A decision pronounced in court by a judge is a **sentence.**

—, ecclesiastical. A bishop or his chancellor sitting as an ecclesiastical judge is an **ordinary.**

—, Scottish. Each of the five judges of the Scottish Court of Sessions is an **ordinary.**

—, —. A judge of a county court in Scotland is a **sheriff.**

—. *See also under* **officer,** judicial, *below.*

judgment. The name for a judgment of the Admiralty or Divorce Courts is **decree.**

—. A name for a legal judgment given against the plaintiff owing to his non-appearance, the insufficiency of his evidence, etc., is **nonsuit.**

jurisdiction. In Scots law, the refusal to acknowledge, or the right of refusing to acknowledge, the jurisdiction of a court is **declinature.**

—, freedom. The privilege of an ambassador and his suite of being free from the jurisdiction of the country of residence is **exterritoriality.**

juror. The name given to a juror summoned by writ to make up a deficiency in a jury is **talesman.**

jury. A jury that decides whether there is sufficient ground for sending an accused person for trial before a petty jury is a **grand jury.**

—. A jury which tries cases for which a grand jury has found a true bill is a **petty jury** or **common jury.**

—. A statement made on oath by a jury of a fact within their knowledge is a **presentment.**

—, decision. The decision of a jury on the issue of fact in a civil or criminal action is the **verdict.**

—, finding. The finding by a jury that a crime has been committed without specifying the guilty party is an **open verdict.**

—, —. The finding by a jury that certain facts are proved, but leaving the court to draw the conclusion from them, is a **special verdict.**

—, grand. A bill of indictment endorsed by a grand jury as being justified by the evidence is a **true bill.**

jury, inspection. The term for an inspection by a jury of the place, property, etc., concerned in a crime, or of a dead body is **view.**

—, place. The name for the place where the jury is summoned for a trial is **venue.**

juryman. A name used in Scotland for a juryman is **assizer.**

justice, administration. The right or power of administering justice, or the region or extent within which such power may be exercised, is **jurisdiction.**

killing. The act of killing a human being is **homicide.**

—. Any act of killing a human being unintentionally is **manslaughter.**

—. The unlawful and wilful killing of a human being is **murder.**

King. A power exercised by the King in virtue of the prerogative to dispense with the operation of the law in particular cases, now limited specifically by the Bill of Rights, is the **dispensing power.**

land. A name for the formation of new land by the action of a river or flood is **alluvion.**

—. The removal of land to another person's estate by the flooding or diversion of a river, etc., is **avulsion.**

—. A name for land owned by the State is **Crown-land.**

—. A legal term applied to land and houses is **fixed property.**

—. Property consisting of lands or farms, and dues or tithes paid in respect of such property, are **predial.**

—. The right to purchase public lands at a fixed price, granted to settlers in the U.S.A., is **pre-emption.**

—. The name given to a book in which are recorded the sites and boundaries of the lands of private persons or corporations is **terrier.**

—, dispossession. The act of dispossessing an owner of his land, especially for public purposes, is **expropriation.**

—, holding. The name of an ancient Scottish form of tenure under which a nominal rent was paid is **blanch holding.**

—, —. Names for a form of land tenure in England in which the land passed to the youngest son are **Borough-English** and **ultimogeniture.**

—, —. An old method of holding land by a tenant having no documents to prove his rights but the copy of the court-roll of the lord of the manor is **copyhold.**

—, —. Conversion of copyhold land, or land held by copy of the manorial court-roll, into freehold is **enfranchisement.**

—, —. In Scotland, the holding of land on payment of a perpetual fixed rent is **feu.**

—, —. A system of holding land, still prevalent in Wales and Kent, whereby the land of a person dying without a will is divided among all his sons, is **gavelkind.**

—, —. Land held on a lease is **leasehold.**

—, —. A form of land tenure in which the land and apanages pass to the eldest son or, alternately, the eldest child is **primogeniture.**

—, owner. The owner of land leased for building is the **ground-landlord.**

—, rent. The rent paid for land leased for building is **ground-rent.**

—, transfer. The transfer of land to a corporation for all time is **amortization.**

—, —. The act of transferring land from one person to another is **conveyance.**

—, *See also* **estate** *and* **freehold,** *above, and* **possession, property, succession,** *below.*

law The name given to the rule of conduct and good living formerly enforced by the Church courts is **canon law.**

—. Law based upon precedents or previous decisions, as distinct from statute law, is **case law.**

law. Law relating to the private rights and duties of individuals is **civil law.**

—. All those laws or principles which define the powers and duties of the King, Parliament, and other branches of the sovereign body form **constitutional law.**

—. A name for that section of the common law which is applied to criminal cases is **Crown-law.**

—. A system of English law designed to supplement and amend the common law and statute law is **equity.**

—. A law when no longer in force is **inoperative.**

—. The body of customary and conventional rules considered legally binding by civilized states in their intercourse with each other is **international law.**

—. The science or philosophy of law is **jurisprudence.**

—. A set of laws stating the punishments to be inflicted on persons who commit certain crimes or offences is a **penal code.**

—. A law which forbids the doing of some act or acts, and states what is the penalty for breaking it, is a **penal statute.**

—. A law which forbids, in the interests of the community, something that is not wrong in itself is a **positive law.**

—. The revocation of a law is its **repeal.**

—. A law which applies to actions done before the law was passed is **retrospective** or **retroactive.**

—. A law enacted by a legislative body is a **statute.**

— Law embodied in Acts of Parliament, as distinguished from common law and equity, is **statute law.**

—, drafting. A name for the art of drafting laws according to proper forms, or for a treatise on this, is **nomography.**

—, officer. The title borne by a law-officer of the City of London is **common serjeant.**

—, Roman. A name used for the exposition of Roman law compiled about A.D. 533 by order of the Emperor Justinian is the **Institutes.**

—, —. The name of a licensed counsel in ancient Rome who answered questions relating to law was **jurisconsult.**

—, —. A name for the supplementary laws promulgated by the Emperor Justinian after his great code of Roman law was completed is **Novels.**

—, —. A name for the complete codification of Roman civil law in fifty books, made by order of the Emperor Justinian, is **Pandects.**

—, —. The name given to the recorded opinions of the leading Roman jurisconsults, corresponding to English case law, is **responses.**

—, treatise. The usual name for the treatise on the English law of his day written by Sir Edward Coke (1552-1634) is **The Institutes,** and for its first volume **Coke upon Littleton.**

—, unwritten. The unwritten law of England, based on custom and defined in the decisions of the judges, is the **common law.**

lawsuit. A lawsuit between two parties with the object merely of obtaining a decision on a certain point is a **friendly suit.**

—. One who interposes in a lawsuit, so as to become a party to it, is an **intervener.**

—. The part of the proceedings in a lawsuit between the service of the writ or summons and the final issue is the **mesne process.**

—. The omission of one party to join with another in a lawsuit is **non-joinder.**

—. To be successful in a lawsuit or to obtain by a process of law is to **recover.**

lawyer. A person who has been admitted to membership of one of the inns of court with the right of practising as an advocate in the superior courts is a **barrister.**

—. A name given to a lawyer engaged by the Crown in criminal cases is **Crown lawyer.**

—. A member of the legal profession who advises clients and prepares cases for barristers to plead or defend is a **solicitor.**

lawyer, Scotland. In Scotland the chief Crown lawyer is the **Lord Advocate.**

— *See also under* **barrister** *and* **judge,** *above,* and **solicitor,** *below.*

lease. A lease of land which allows the lessee to build, but stipulates that the building becomes the property of the freeholder when the lease expires, is a **building lease.**

— A person to whom a lease is granted is a **lessee,** and the grantor a **lessor.**

—. A lease which the lessee has the option of renewing when its term expires is a **perpetual lease.**

licence. The name for the annual meeting of magistrates in counties and boroughs for considering applications for licences made by retailers of intoxicating liquors is **Brewster Sessions.**

magistrate. A term used for the office of magistrate and for the magistrates collectively is **bench.**

—. The chief magistrate of a German, Dutch, or Flemish town is a **burgomaster.**

—. A name for the whole body of magistrates in a county or borough is **commission of the peace.**

—. A name given to a magistrate of a small town in South Africa is **field-cornet.**

—. A paid magistrate, as distinguished from an unpaid justice of the peace, is a **stipendiary.**

—, Scotland. The chief magistrate of a Scottish borough or corporation is a **provost.**

manor. Names for that part of an estate which a lord of a manor keeps for himself are **barton** and **demesne.**

—. An annual rent-charge, deduction, or other payment due in respect of a manor is a **reprise.**

—. The lordship which remains to the person who grants an estate in fee-simple, as that of a lord of a manor, is a **seigniory.**

marriage. The status or condition of a married woman living under the protection of her husband is **coverture**

—. The name given to a false boasting of marriage is **jactitation.**

— A marriage between a man of exalted rank and a woman of less exalted station, involving no change of either's rank or status, is **morganatic.**

—, licence. A licence granted by the Archbishop of Canterbury enabling a marriage to take place at any time or in any place is a **special licence.**

meaning. A legal term for the true construction or meaning of a clause or a document is **intendment.**

medicine. Names for the science of medicine in its relation to law are **medical jurisprudence** and **forensic medicine.**

merchantship. A term sometimes applied in international law to a neutral merchant-ship not liable to capture unless carrying contraband, is **free ship.**

money. Money in such a form as a person is bound to accept in payment of a debt is **legal tender.**

mortgage. To bar a person, upon non-payment of money due, of his right of redeeming a mortgage is to **foreclose.**

— The repayment of a mortgage on property is **redemption.**

—. A term denoting the right of the holder of a mortgage on a property to claim priority over the holder of a previous mortgage, of which notice was not given, is **tacking.**

mutilation. A legal name for the mutilation or defacement of a document in such a way as to make it useless for evidence is **spoliation.**

name, assumed. A name assumed instead of a person's own, usually the name assumed by a criminal in an effort to evade arrest, is an **alias.**

nationality. The admission of an alien to the full rights of citizenship in his country of domicile on his renouncement of his former nationality is **naturalization.**

negligence. Negligence in doing one's legal duty, such as failing to appear in court on the day assigned, is **default.**

—. The name given to culpable negligence or inexcusable delay in carrying out a statutory duty is **laches.**

oath. A solemn declaration made in lieu of an oath is an **affirmation.**

—. A written or spoken statement made on oath or affirmation is a **testimony.**

offence. An offence which must be tried before a judge and jury is **indictable.**

—. The name given to any offence against the law other than treason, felony, or concealment of either is **trespass.**

—. *See also under* **crime,** *above.*

officer, judicial. The highest judicial officer in the kingdom is the **Lord Chancellor.**

—, —. The second judicial officer in the kingdom is the **Lord Chief Justice.**

—, —. The third judicial officer in the kingdom is the **Master of the Rolls.**

omission. A term used of the omission of some act demanded by law is **non-feasance.**

operation. A promise or agreement when it comes into operation **inures.**

opinion. A personal opinion expressed by a judge on a point of law which may not necessarily bear on the case being tried is a **dictum.**

—. An opinion offered by the judge not bearing on the case he is trying is **extra-judicial.**

order. An order or warrant issued by a judge or other authority permitting certain proceedings is a **fiat.**

—. A judicial order requiring someone to do or to refrain from doing certain acts is an **injunction.**

—. A judicial order from a superior court to an inferior one is a **mandate.**

—. An order made by a court of law which, following a rule nisi on the same point, comes into force unconditionally, is a **rule absolute.**

—. An order made by a court of law which shall come into force conditionally on a certain date, if a certain thing be not done meanwhile, is a **rule nisi.**

ownership. The legal right to ownership of property, or the evidence establishing this, constitutes a **title.**

partnership. The name given in law to a limited partnership for a single object is **joint adventure.**

passport. The official endorsement on a passport, showing that it has been examined and found correct, is a **visé** or **visa.**

past. A law which applies to times past as well as to the future is **retrospective** or **retroactive.**

pasture. The legal term for the practice of taking in live stock to pasture is **agistment.**

payment. A sum paid by a defeated state as one condition of peace is an **indemnity.**

perishable. Things that perish in use but may be replaced by others of the same class are **fungible.**

perjury. The act of inducing or procuring a person to commit an unlawful act, especially perjury, is **subornation.**

persons, body. A body of persons legally empowered to act as an individual is a **corporate body** or **corporation.**

persuasion. The legal term for improper persuasion or pressure used by one person to obtain an advantage from another is **undue influence.**

plaintiff. The reply that a plaintiff makes to a defendant's plea is a **replication.**

—. The reply by a plaintiff to a defendant's rebutter is a **surrebutter.**

—. The reply by a plaintiff to a defendant's rejoinder is a **surrejoinder.**

—. *See also under* **defendant,** *above.*

plea. A plea which has no legal force is **invalid.**

pleading. A word or phrase used in pleading to explain a previous one is an **innuendo.**

pledge. The pledging of goods or property while still retaining possession of them is **hypothecation.**

police. The title of the chief of police in some British colonies is **provost-marshal.**

position. The legal position of an individual in relation to others is **status.**

possession. The name for the taking possession of land or buildings by the lawful owner is **entry.**

—. Real or immovable property in the possession of a corporation, who cannot alienate it, is held in **mortmain.**

—. All a person's possessions except real property are his **personal estate** or **personalty.**

—. The name for the acquisition of a title to property through undisputed use or possession from time immemorial or for a fixed term of years is **prescription.**

—. In Roman law, the acquisition of a title to property by undisputed use or possession for a term of years is **usucapion.**

practice. A practice which is so old that it is regarded as having force of law is a **custom.**

—. A legal term for a practice that is habitual but not necessarily immemorial is **usage.**

precedence. The right of one person to take precedence of others in regard to claims is **priority.**

premium. A premium paid by a tenant for the renewal of his lease is a **foregift.**

previous decision. A previous decision or custom that may be brought forward as an example or rule to be followed in similar cases is a **precedent.**

prisoner. The barrier in a criminal court railing off the space in which the prisoner stands is the **bar.**

—. The enclosure where the accused is placed during trial is the **dock.**

privilege. A privilege conferred by royal grant on an individual or more usually a corporation is a **franchise.**

—. A name for a document under the Great Seal authorizing some privilege or dignity is **letters-patent.**

proceedings. The institution of legal proceedings against a person is **prosecution.**

—, suspension. The name for the suspension of judicial proceedings in a court is **stay.**

profits. Profits or rent from land, when received by a person in wrongful possession of it, are **mesne profits.**

promise. A promise that awaits acceptance and so may be revoked is a **pollicitation.**

—. A stamped, dated, and signed promise to pay is a **promissory note.**

—, fulfilment. An undertaking that the promise of another shall be fulfilled is a **guarantee.**

proof. A formal offer to prove a plea, as well as the proof so offered, is **averment.**

property. A name for the previous possessor of a property is **antecessor.**

—. A general term for the transference of property is **assignment.**

—. A term for a transfer of property, especially by lease, is **demise.**

—. The transmission of property by inheritance is **descent.**

—. The unlawful keeping of property which does not belong to one is **detinue.**

—. A burden borne by a property in the shape of a mortgage or other legal claim is an **encumbrance.**

—. The return of property to the Crown when the owner dies leaving no heir and not having made a will is **escheat.**

—. One who succeeds or is entitled to succeed another in the possession of property or rank, etc., is an **heir** if a man, or an **heiress** if a woman.

—. The person who succeeds to property which is entailed, or which cannot be left by will, is **heir-at-law.**

property. A legal term for the bringing together of property in order that it may be divided is **hotchpot.**

—. Property which may not legally be transferred to another is **inalienable.**

—. A term denoting the division of property, especially land, into small portions among the heirs of a deceased owner is **morcellement.**

—. In law, any method of acquiring property other than by inheritance is described as **purchase.**

—. A name for the making over of property to someone else is **remise.**

—. A name for the formal delivery of property is **tradition.**

—. Property placed in the hands of a person as nominal owner for the benefit of another is a **trust.**

—, conveyance. A name for the formal conveyance of property by deed is **grant.**

—, disputed. A person appointed by a court to hold and look after property about which people have gone to law is a **receiver.**

—, —. The taking charge by an appointed trustee or bailiff of property in dispute pending the settlement of a lawsuit is **sequestration.**

—, forfeited. A name used in old law for any personal property forfeited for having caused the death of someone was **deodand.**

—, holding. The act, right, mode, or period of holding property, especially lands or houses, is **tenure.**

—, immovable. Immovable property, such as houses and land, is **real estate.**

—, injury. Injury to property by neglect or improper use is **waste.**

—, neutral. The destruction or seizing of neutral property by a country at war is **angary.**

—, permanent. In law, a name for any kind of permanent property, such as lands, houses, etc., is **tenement.**

—, personal. A person who leaves personal property by will is said to **bequeath.**

—, —. A name for the personal property of a married woman, apart from her dower, and including clothes and jewels, is **paraphernalia.**

—, real. A person who leaves real property by will is said to **devise.**

—, —. Any real property which can be inherited is a **hereditament.**

—, rented. The name given to the retaining possession of a rented property after the expiration of the term for which it was let or leased is **holding over.**

—, settled. Property settled on a woman at the time of her marriage, which will be hers after her husband's death, is a **jointure,** she herself being a **jointress.**

—, unclaimed. A property or inheritance that awaits the appointment of someone entitled to its possession is in **abeyance.**

—. *See also* **estate, freehold, land, possession,** *above, and* **succession,** *below.*

prosecutor. The public prosecutor in the Scottish sheriff courts is the **procurator-fiscal.**

punishment. An Act passed by Parliament to prevent persons from being punished for deeds which, although illegal, were deemed necessary at the time is an **act of indemnity.**

—, capital. Capital punishment carried out by an electric shock is **electrocution.**

purchase. The right to absolute possession of goods of whatever origin purchased in certain places, provided that they were exposed publicly, is **market overt.**

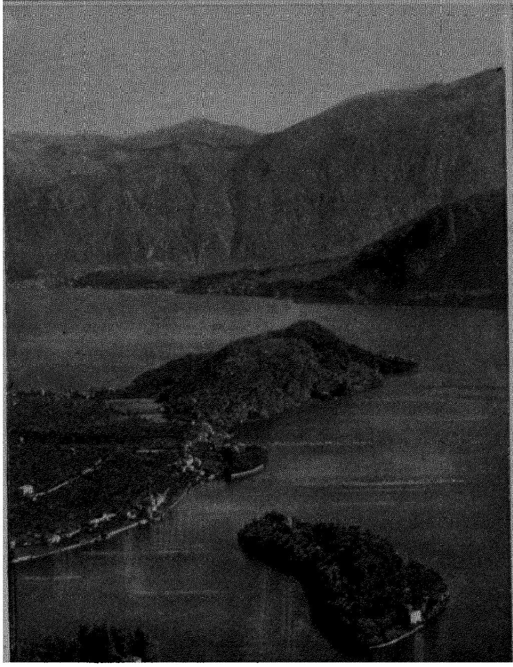
—. The right of purchasing in preference to others is **pre-emption.**

question. The name given to a formal question or set of questions usually put in writing and read to the party concerned is **interrogatory.**

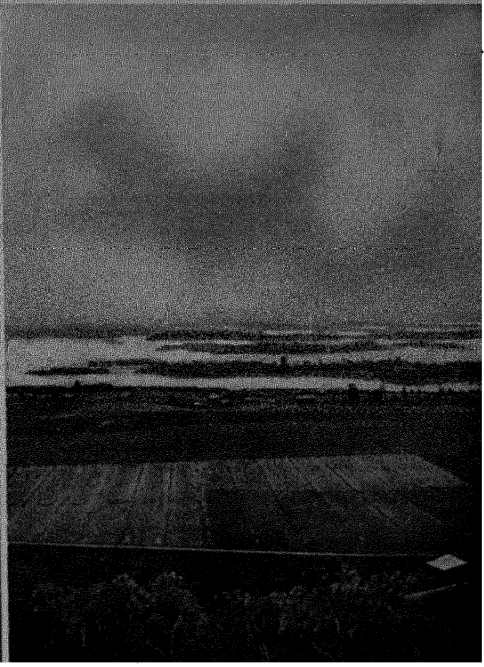
records. A judicial officer ranking next after the Lord Chief Justice and acting as keeper of public records is the **Master of the Rolls.**

(*Continued on page* 4881.)

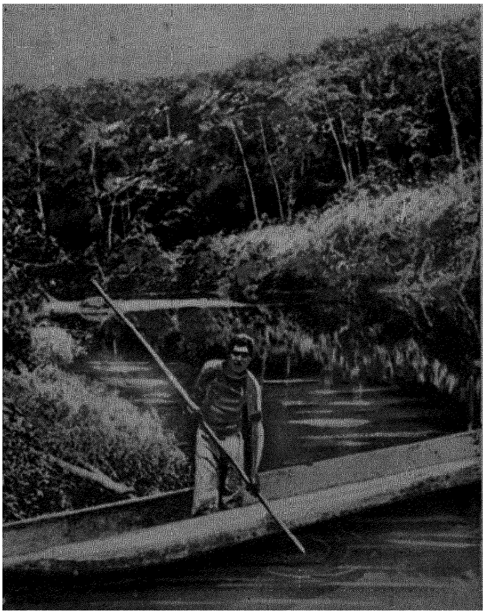
GEOGRAPHICAL TERMS IN PICTURES



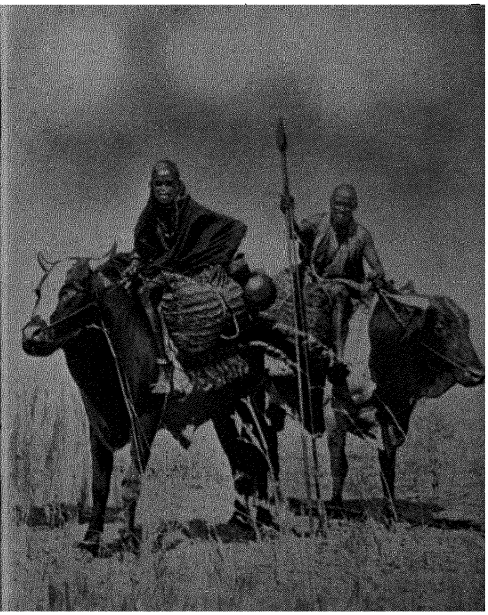
AIT.—This small island is an ait, that is, an island in a river or lake. Chiswick Ait is a well-known point in the course of the Oxford and Cambridge boat race.



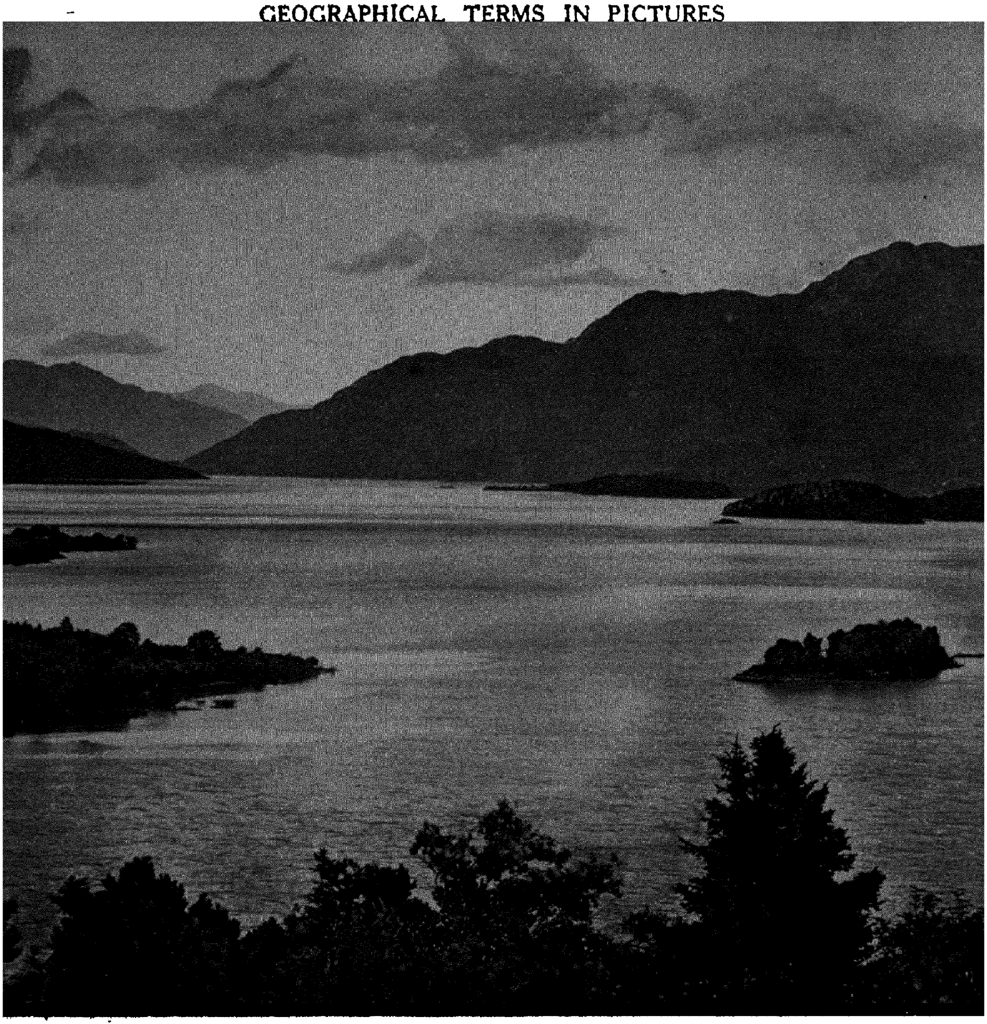
ARCHIPELAGO.—A view from Palkane Island, Finland, which shows an archipelago or group of islands. The name was originally applied to the Aegean Sea.



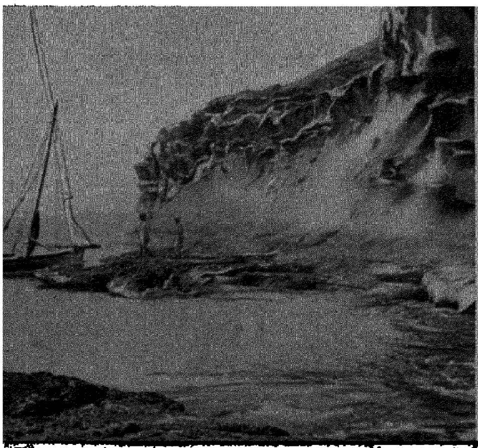
BACKWATER.—A backwater of the river Amazon, Brazil, a quiet stretch of water away from the main stream.



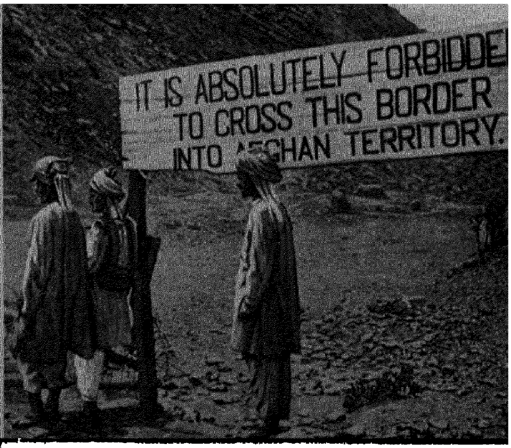
BAGGARA.—The Baggara, or Cattle Arabs, a hardy Arab people who live in the Nile valley in the Sudan.



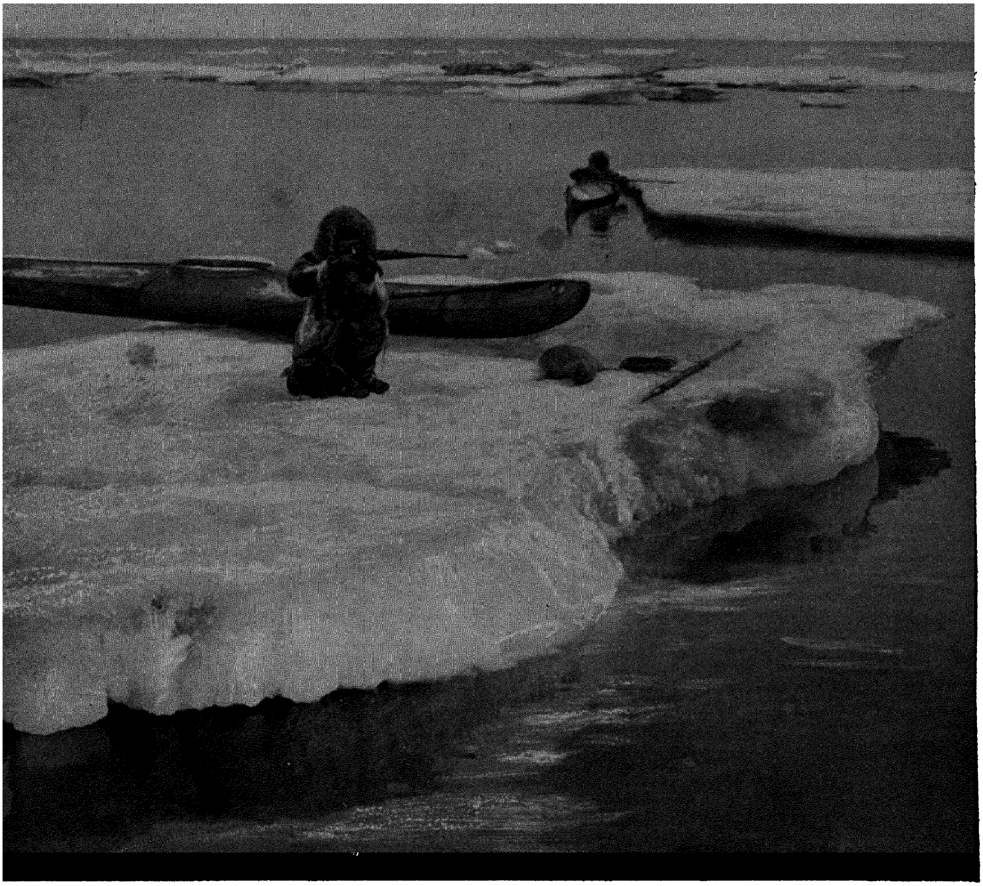
BEN.—Beautiful Loch Lomond, with Ben Lomond rising in the background. In Scotland ben means mountain or hill. The height of Ben Lomond is 3,192 feet.



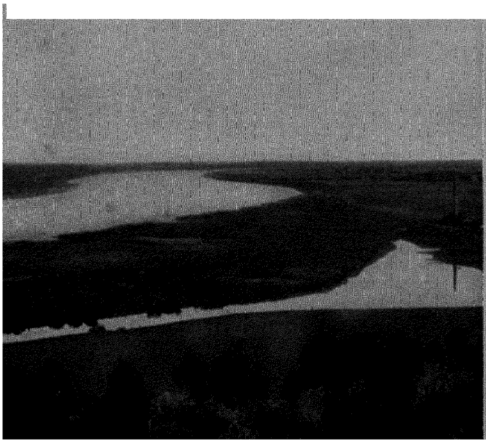
BENCH.—Terraces, or benches, on the coast of Sind, near Karachi, North-West India.



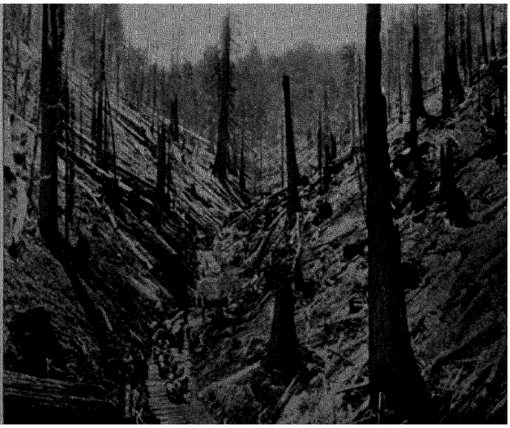
BORDER.—One of the barriers erected on the border of India and Afghanistan.



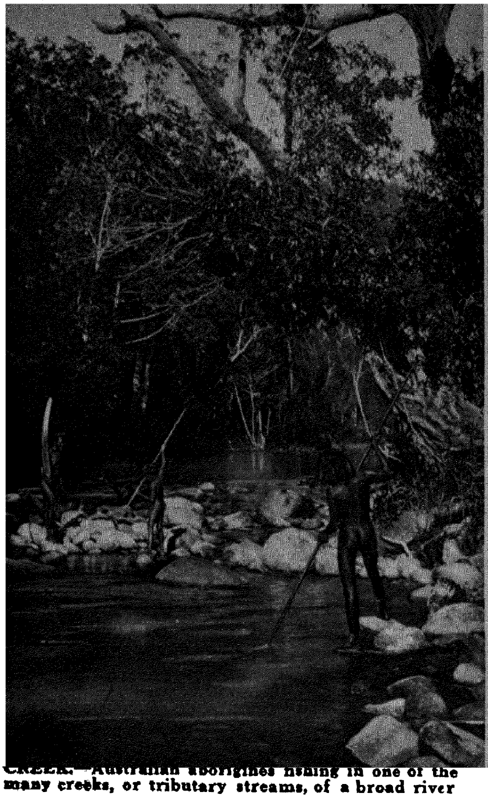
CALF.—An Eskimo seal hunter shooting from a calf, or piece of an iceberg which has broken away. Although useful for this purpose, calves are dangerous to navigators.



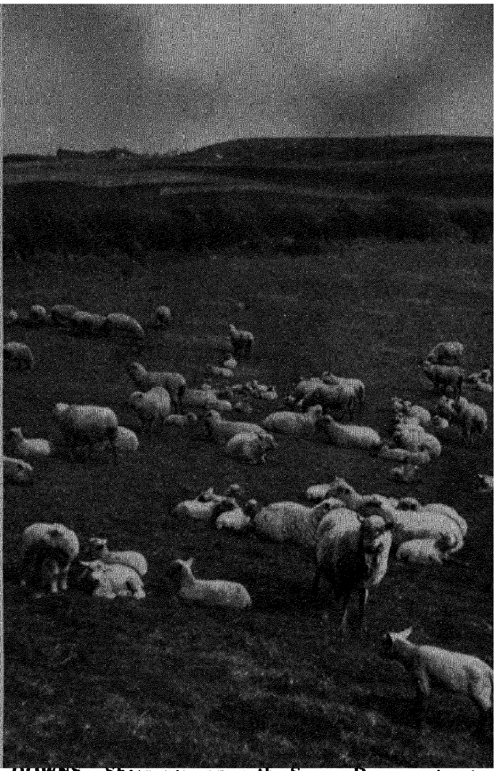
CATCHMENT.—Part of the catchment area of the Vistula, from which water drains into the river.



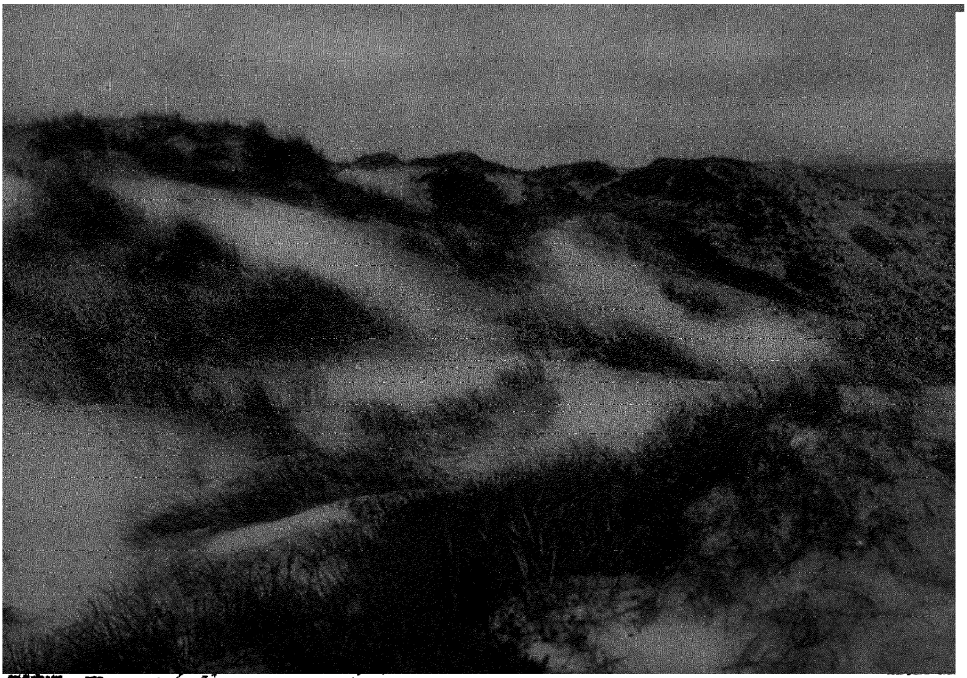
CLEARING.—A clearing made in a Californian redwood forest by cutting down the trees.



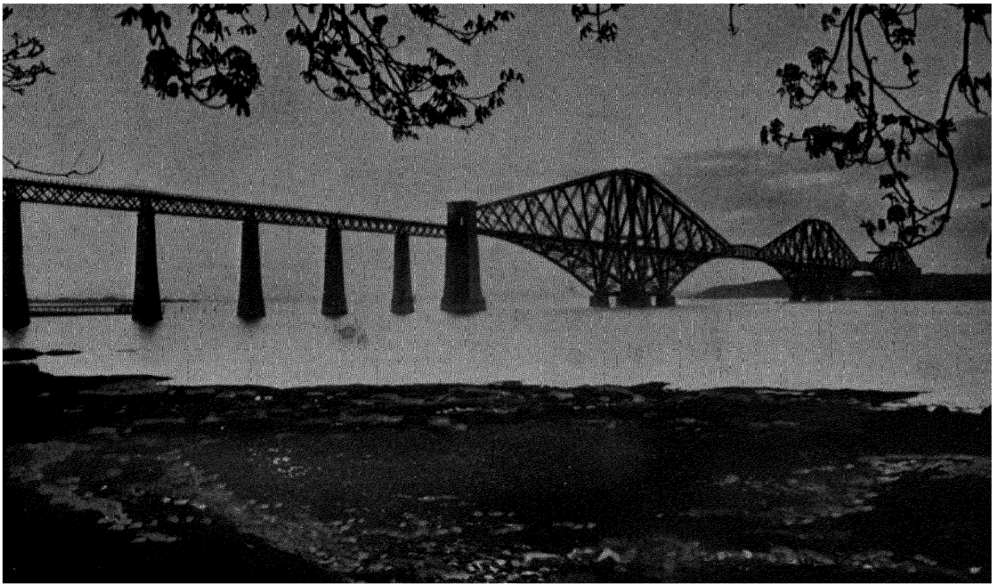
CREEK.—Australian aborigines fishing in one of the many creeks, or tributary streams, of a broad river



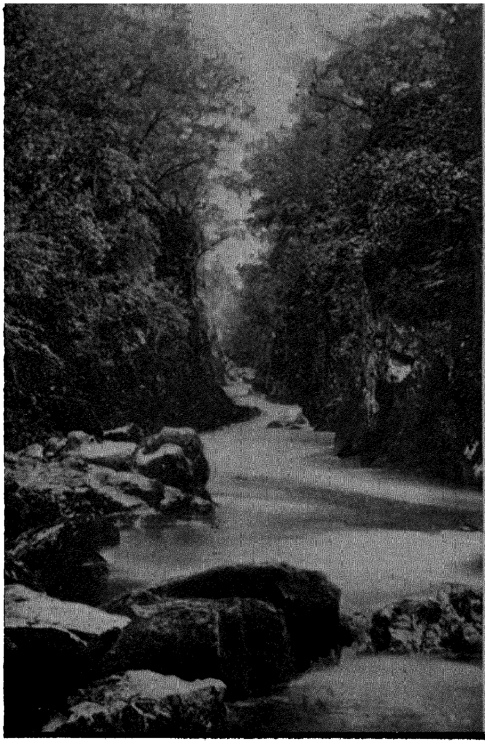
DOWNS.—Sheep grazing on the Sussex Downs, a tract of grassy upland sloping towards the English Channel.



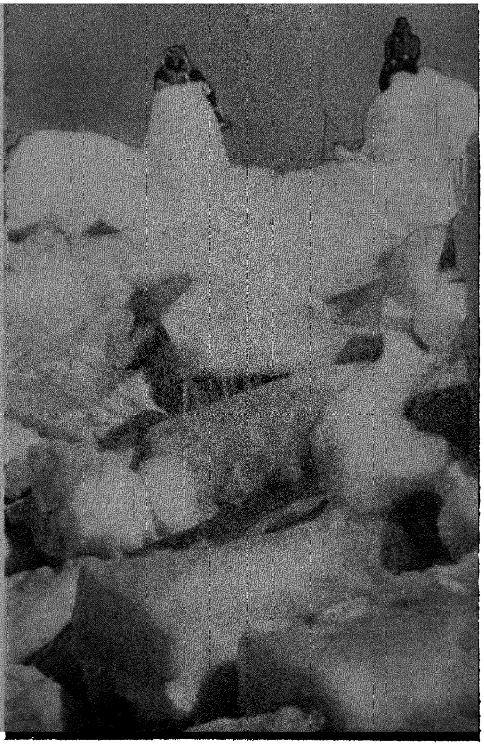
DUNE.—The sand dunes at Norderney, Germany. Such mounds of drift sand, thrown up by the sea and carried inland by the wind, are a familiar feature of parts of the English coastline.



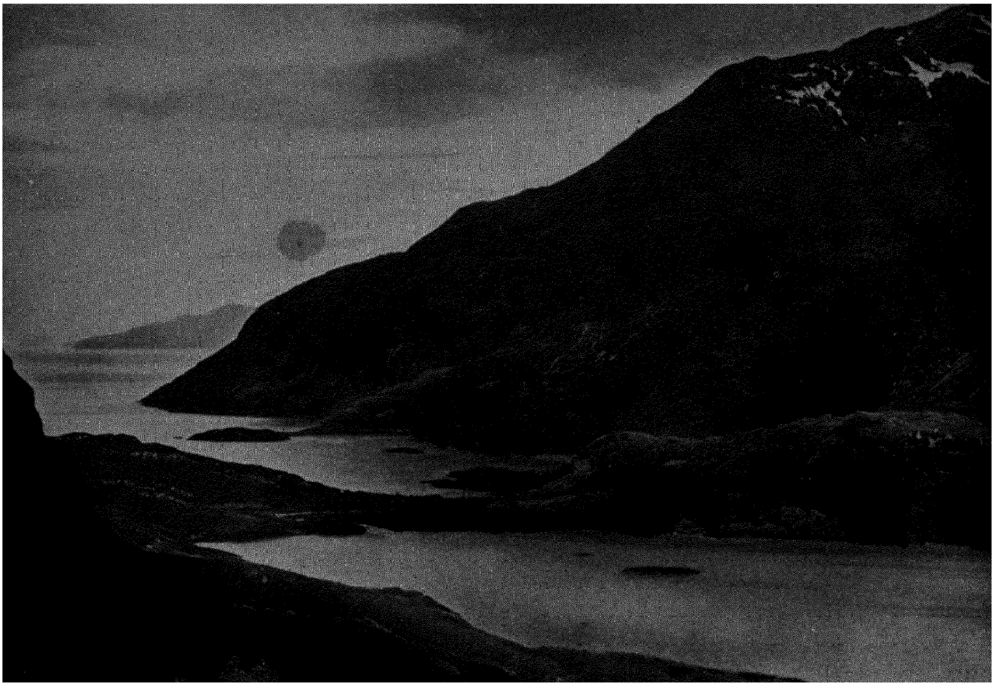
FIRTH.—In Scotland a narrow inlet or arm of the sea is called a firth. The Firth of Forth, shown here, is spanned by a cantilever bridge, with enormous spans and a total length of over a mile and a half. The Forth bridge is the largest cantilever bridge in the world. It carries a double railway track.



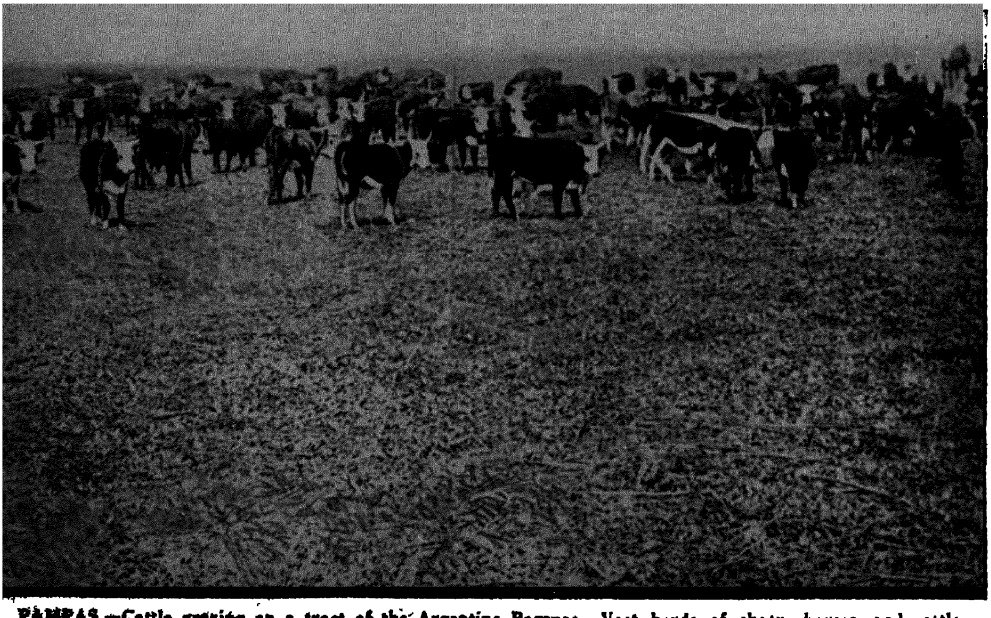
GLEN.—This is a name given to a narrow valley. The picture shows the beautiful Fairy Glen near Bettws-y-Coed in Carnarvonshire.



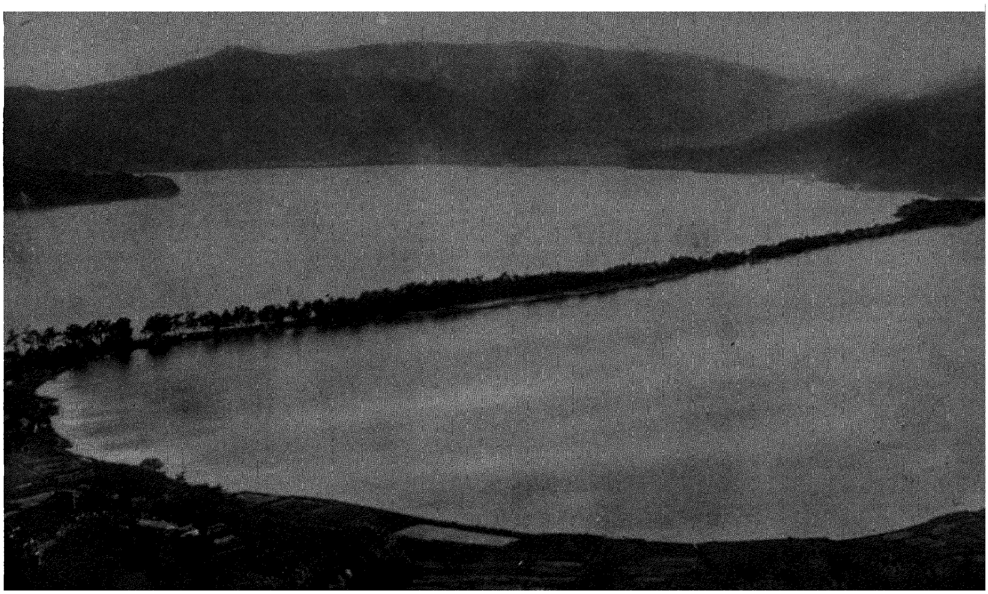
HUMMOCK.—When a floating ice-field breaks up under the pressure of the wind, many detached masses are piled up on end in hummocks or mounds.



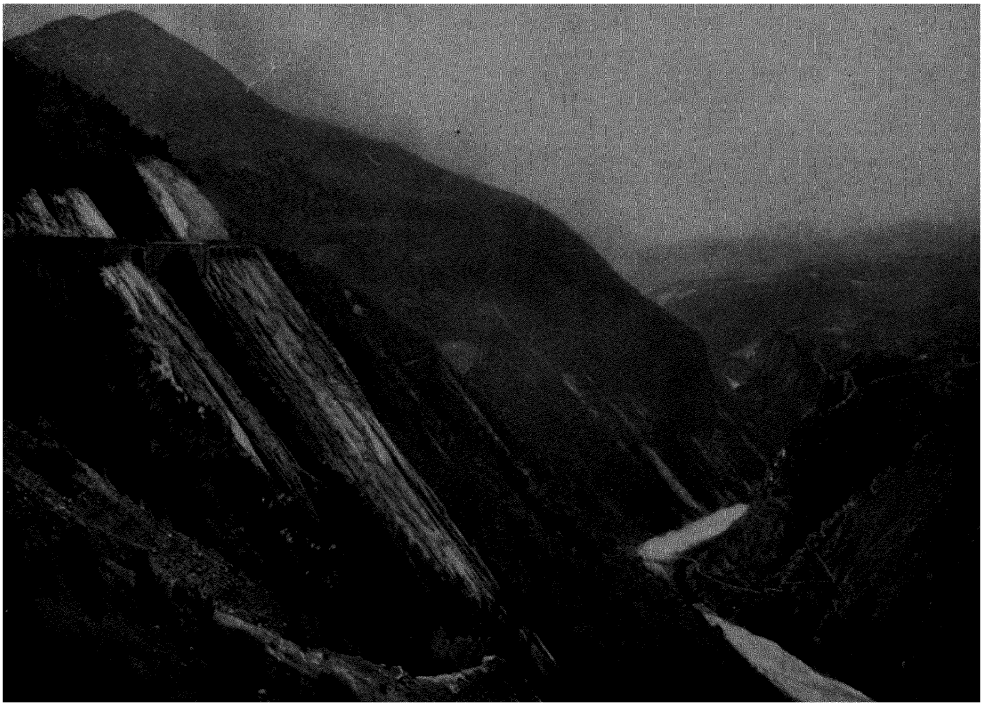
MULL.—This is a Scottish name for a long headland. Beyond Loch Scavaig, in the island of Skye, here illustrated, may be seen a rocky mull. One of the best-known mulls is Galloway, which forms the western shore of Luce Bay, and is the southernmost point of Scotland.



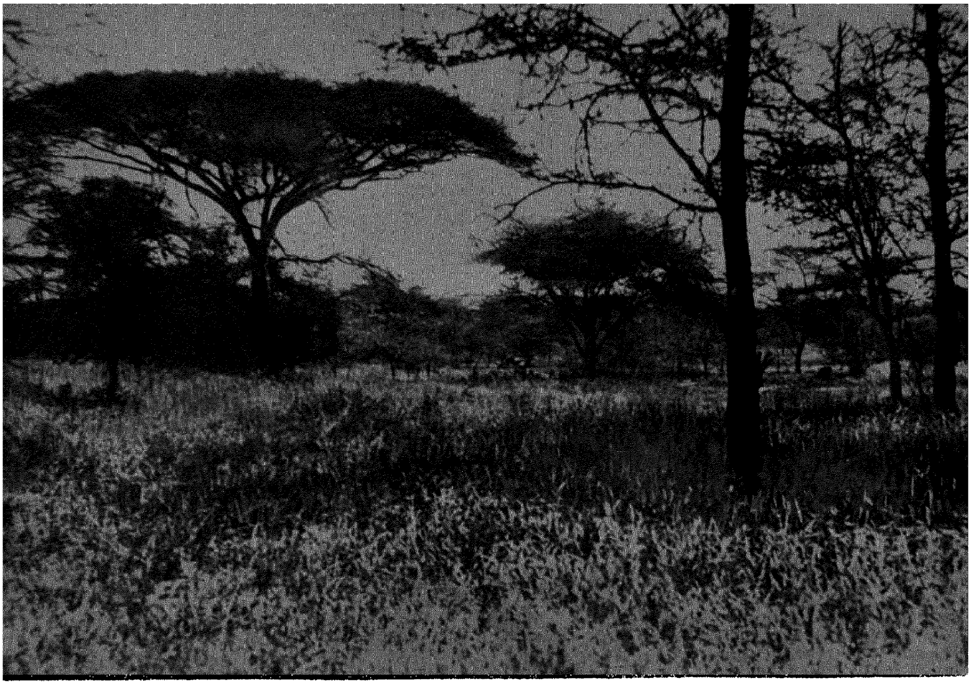
PAMPAS.—Cattle grazing on a tract of the Argentine Pampas. Vast herds of sheep, horses, and cattle roam over these immense level expanses of grassy land, which extend for hundreds of miles. In the more westerly region these plains are mostly barren.



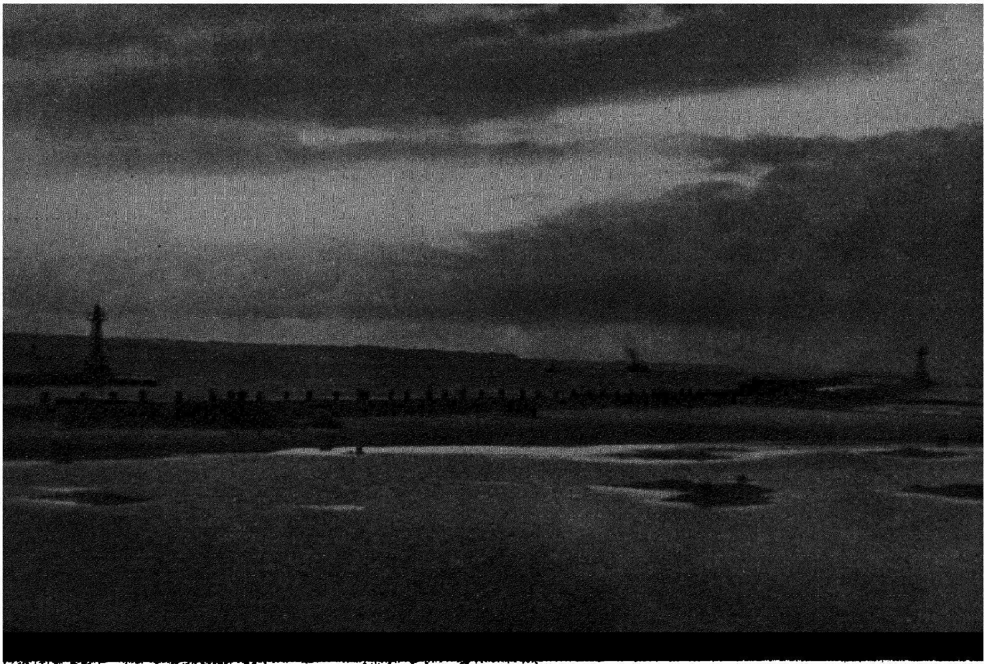
PENINSULA.—The Ama-no-Hashidate Peninsula at Tango, Japan, a pine-clad tongue of land formed by a narrow sand-bar. The name Ama-no-Hashidate means Heaven's Bridge. The peninsula is 200 feet in width, and two miles in length.



RAVINE.—The name given to this deep and rugged ravine, near the French town of Grenoble, through which the river Isère flows, is Gorges du Drac.



SAVANNA.—This name is given to large level grassy tracts in tropical America, or to similar regions elsewhere. The picture shows typical savanna country near Tabora, in Tanganyika. In Australia savannas are called downs and in Africa park lands.



SILT.—But for the constant removal of sand and mud by dredgers, river-mouths would soon become blocked up. The illustration shows the silting up of the River Vistula at Westerplatte, Danzig.

(*Continued from page 4872.*)

recovery. The name of an action for the recovery of personal property or its value, wrongly converted by another to his own use, is **trover.**

regulation. A regulation made by a corporation or company, in accordance with powers conferred on them by Act of Parliament, royal charter, etc., is a **bye-law.**

rejection. The constitutional right of a sovereign, president, governor, or upper house of legislature to reject a legislative enactment is the **veto.**

release. The release of a person from a charge brought against him is his **acquittal.**

renewal. The name for the proceeding for the revival of a legal action which has lapsed is **revivor.**

rent. The seizure of a tenant's goods for non-payment of rent is **distraint.**

—. A name for a yearly rent formerly paid by tenants for the right to drive cattle through a manor is **drift-land.**

—. A term for the periodic payment of rent, customs, or duty is **gale.**

—. A term for a nominal rent is **peppercorn rent**

—. A small rent which a freeholder or copyholder pays instead of performing services is a **quit-rent.**

—. A rent which is equal or nearly equal to the yearly value of the land is a **rack-rent.**

—. One who rents land or houses is a **tenant.**

—, charge. An annual rent-charge, deduction, or other payment due in respect of a manor is a **reprise.**

report. An official or legal report of proceedings is a **record.**

representative *See under* **agent,** *above.*

reputation. Any writing, print, publication, or picture damaging to the reputation of a person is a **libel.**

—. Spoken words damaging to the reputation of a person are **slander.**

residence. The country in which a person has his permanent residence is his **domicile.**

resistance, armed. One who engages in armed resistance to the government to which he owes allegiance is a **rebel.**

restraint. Restraint placed on a person in order to make him perform some act is **duress**

—. An order placing restraint on the shipping or merchandise of a foreign power is an **embargo.**

—. The name for confinement or restraint in war-time of enemy aliens by a combatant, and for similar restraint of armed forces taken in neutral territory or territorial waters, is **internment.**

retaliation. An act performed by way of retaliation, especially by a state after an act of hostility on the part of another state, is a **reprisal.**

— In international law, a term used for the retaliation of one state on the subjects of another without actual resort to arms is **retortion.**

— The name given to an ancient law by which an offender was treated as he had treated his victim is **talion.**

re-trial. To ask for the re-trial of a law case in a higher court on the ground of an error in law or fact is to **appeal.**

revocation. The revocation of a law is its **repeal.**

right. The exclusive right of an author of a literary or artistic work to prevent copies being sold or made against his will is **copyright.**

—. A right, privilege, or liberty which one proprietor has on or over the estate of another, such as a right of way, is an **easement.**

—. A right or liberty enjoyed by a person or more usually a corporation based on a royal grant is a **franchise.**

—. A right that cannot legally be given up or taken away is **imprescriptible.**

right. A right which cannot be annulled or made void is **indefeasible.**

—. The name given to the legal right to keep the goods of another until a claim has been satisfied is **lien.**

—. The name given on the Continent to the right by which the eldest son succeeds to the property of his father if the father dies without having made a will is **majorat.**

— The right to resume rights or privileges which have been lost is **postliminy.**

—. A special right or power conferred by law is a **privilege.**

—. One who has a legal right or title to anything, whether in possession of it or not, is the **proprietor.**

—. A claim for the surrender of rights is, in international law, a **revendication.**

—. A name given to an act affecting a person's legal rights is **transaction.**

—. The act of foregoing a legal right or claim is **waiver.**

right of way. A right of way across a property rented to a company or public authority by the owner is a **wayleave.**

river. The right to convey passengers and goods across a river in a boat or barge in return for toll is **ferry.**

—. The rights which the owner of property on the banks of a river enjoys over the river and the part of the bank owned are **riparian.**

road. Any road that is open to the public is a **highway.**

Rome. The answer of a Roman emperor to a question of law was a **rescript.**

—. In ancient Rome, a law proposed before the people by a consul or tribune was a **rogation.**

saving clause. Another name for saving clause is **salvo.**

sea. A name for wreckage found floating on the sea is **flotsam.**

— A name given to goods thrown overboard to lighten a ship and afterwards washed ashore is **jetsam.**

—. A name for wreckage or for goods lying at the bottom of the sea, usually marked by a floating buoy, is **lagan.**

—. A sea that is closed to the warships of other nations is a **mare clausum.**

—. A sea that is open to the ships of all nations is a **mare liberum.**

search. The boarding of a foreign vessel in time of war by one of the combatants, to learn her nationality and the nature of her cargo, is **visitation.**

security. The name for the pledging of immovable property as security for a debt, with a proviso that it shall be redeemed upon payment of the debt within a certain period, is **mortgage.**

—. A legal term used of a person who acts as security for another is **vouchor.**

seller The seller of goods is the **presumptive owner.**

sentence. A delay in the carrying out of a capital sentence, or the warrant authorizing this, is a **reprieve.**

sessions. The periodical sessions held in various counties for the administration of justice are **assizes.**

—. The name given to a paid magistrate who presides at quarter-sessions in a borough is **recorder.**

—. *See also under* **court,** *above.*

settlement. A money settlement by a husband on his wife is a **post-nuptial settlement.**

sheriff. The sheriff's officer who deals with writs and arrests is a **bailiff.**

ship. Wilful wrong-doing of the master and crew of a ship which causes injury to the ship or cargo is **barratry.**

shipping. An order placing restraint on the shipping and merchandise of a foreign power is an **embargo.**

shore That part of the shore that lies between high-water and low-water marks or between the water and land cultivated or built on is the **foreshore.**

signature. A name for a signature affixed to a document in the writing of the person executing it is **sign manual.**

slave. The liberation of a slave is **emancipation** or **manumission.**

society. A society founded for the mutual insurance of its members against illness, old age, or distress is a **friendly society.**

solicitor. A name for a solicitor who prepares the case for the prosecution when the offence is against the State or Crown is **Crown-solicitor.**

—, Scotland. In Scotland, the solicitor acting under the Lord Advocate in criminal proceedings when the offence is against the State is the **Crown Agent.**

—, —. A name in Scotland for a solicitor who is a member of a certain Edinburgh law society and has various privileges is **writer to the signet.**

sovereign. A name given to certain offences against the sovereign power is **lese majesty.**

—. Violation by a subject of his allegiance to the sovereign or the chief authority of the State is **treason.**

statement. A statement in writing declared on oath to be true is an **affidavit.**

—. An unproved statement believed to be true by the person making it is an **allegation.**

—. A name for a written statement of the evidence against an accused person for submission to a grand jury is **bill.**

—. A statement of facts explaining or introducing other more important facts is an **inducement.**

—. A name for a statement made on oath by a jury of a fact within their knowledge is **presentment.**

—, joint. A joint statement of agreed facts placed before the court by the contesting parties in a civil action is a **special case.**

stealing. A term formerly applied to the stealing of goods worth twelve pence or less was **petty larceny.**

—. *See also under* **taking,** unlawful, *below.*

steward. A name for a steward at one of the inns of court and at some colleges is **manciple.**

stop. A stay of proceedings after a verdict on the ground of error is **arrest of judgment.**

stray animal. A domestic animal found straying is an **estray.**

—. An enclosure for stray cattle, etc., is a **pound.**

substitution. A name for the substitution of one person for another, with the succession of the latter's rights as creditor, etc., is **subrogation.**

succession. One who, if he lives, will succeed to a title or estate is the **heir apparent.**

—. One who will succeed to a title or estate if nobody is born with a better claim is the **heir presumptive.**

—. A name for a tax paid by an heir on succeeding to property is **succession duty.**

suicide. A legal term for one who deliberately kills himself, and also for the act of suicide, is **felo-de-se.**

suit. In law, a suit or process is an **instance.**

summary. A summary of the main points of a title to a house or land is an **abstract of title.**

summons. A summons to a defendant to appear in court is a **process.**

supplies. Supplies which a tenant may take from his landlord's estate are **estovers.**

surety. The term used of the money deposited as surety for the appearance of a prisoner at his trial, and also of the person who gives such surety, is **bail.**

surety. A sum deposited as surety for the fulfilment of a bond entered into in a court of law is a **recognizance.**

— The act of becoming surety for another is **sponsion.**

surrender. In Scots law, the surrender of property or goods by a debtor as protection against punishment is **cessio bonorum.**

—. A surrender or conveyance of property, rights, etc., is a **release.**

— A claim for the surrender of international rights is a **revendication.**

taking, unlawful. The unlawful taking away of another person's goods, with the intention of permanently depriving the owner of them, is **larceny.**

—, —. The unlawful and forcible taking of goods or money from the person of another by violence or threats of violence is **robbery.**

term. The names of the old terms into which the legal year was formerly divided, still observed by the inns of court, are **Michaelmas, Hilary, Easter,** and **Trinity.**

territory. The taking possession of territory belonging to one country by another State is **annexation.**

—. The yielding up of territory by one country to another is **cession.**

theft. *See under* **stealing** *and* **taking,** unlawful, *above.*

title. One who has a legal title or right to anything, whether in possession of it or not, is the **proprietor.**

town. A town having a population of 50,000 or more is a **county borough**

—. A name for a town which ranks as a county, having sheriffs and other magistrates of its own, is **county corporate.**

treason. An act that is regarded in law as equivalent to treason, though not intended or realized as such, is **constructive treason.**

—. The act of attempting to depose the sovereign, levying war to compel a change in the laws, intimidating Parliament, or stirring up foreign invasion is **treason-felony.**

treaty. One who signs a treaty with another is a **cosignatory.**

—. The name for an original draft of a treaty, dispatch, etc., is **protocol.**

trial. The sending of a prisoner for trial or to prison is **commitment.**

— The name for a trial in which the Commons are the accusers and the Lords the judges is **impeachment.**

—. A name for the hearing or trial of a case in open court is **oyer.**

—, place. The place where the jury is summoned for a particular trial is the **venue.**

trust, abuse. The name given to abuse of a position of trust by accepting bribes or appropriating public funds is **malversation.**

—, property. The enjoyment of benefit or profit from lands and tenements held in trust by another is **use.**

trustee. Another name for a trustee or one who holds property in trust is **fiduciary**

usage. A right established by long usage is **prescriptive.**

use A name for the continued use or enjoyment of a privilege and for the presumptive right arising from this enjoyment is **user.**

—. The right to use and enjoy the property of another without subjecting it to damage or waste is **usufruct.**

verdict A recommendation added to a verdict by a jury is a **rider.**

wall. A name given to a wall separating two buildings occupied by different owners, both of whom have a partial right to it, is **party-wall.**

war. Property captured from an enemy in war-time is **prize of war.**

warning. A warning to stop proceedings until the opposition has been heard is a **caveat.**

warrant. A warrant issued to all sheriffs, etc., to retake an escaped prisoner is an **escape-warrant.**

—. A warrant allowing the seizure of a debtor's goods in default of payment is an **execution.**

—. A name for a warrant authorizing the jailer to receive a person sent to prison is **mittimus.**

—, judge's. A written authority for the arrest of a person issued by a judge at an assize or by two justices at quarter sessions is a **bench-warrant.**

wild animals. Animals living in the wild state are said to be **ferae naturae.**

will A person who leaves personal property by will is said to **bequeath.**

—. Something added to a will is a **codicil.**

—. A person who leaves landed property by will is said to **devise.**

— The person who carries out the provisions of another's will is the **executor.**

—. A person who dies without making a will dies **intestate.**

— Anything bequeathed by a testator in his will is a **legacy.**

—. A person to whom property is left by will is a **legatee.**

—. The name of a document granted to someone by a court, enabling him to deal with the estate of a person who dies without making a will, is **letters of administration.**

—. An oral will, delivered by word of mouth only, is **nuncupative.**

—. A request in a will that certain things be done is known in law as **precatory words.**

—. The official proving of a will is **probate.**

—. One to whom the residue of an estate is bequeathed is a **residuary legatee.**

—. A person who has made and left a will dies **testate.**

witness. A witness for the Crown in a case where the Crown prosecutes is a **Crown witness.**

—. Another name for a witness, particularly one who gives sworn evidence in writing for use in court, is **deponent.**

—. A witness giving evidence on the side of an opponent is a **hostile witness.**

—. A person who, after having taken an oath in a court of law to tell the truth, gives false evidence is guilty of the crime of **perjury.**

woman, married. A name used in law for a married woman is **feme covert.**

—, single. A name used in law for a single woman, or for a married woman having a separate estate, is **feme sole.**

wreckage. *See under* **sea,** *above.*

writ. A writ sent to a sheriff for the arrest of some particular person is a **capias.**

—. The name given to the writ in which a superior court calls up the records of a case or removes a case from a lower court is **certiorari.**

writ. The name of the writ ordering the sheriff to seize the goods of a debtor who disobeys the order of a court is **fieri facias.**

—. The name of the writ requiring a prisoner to be brought before a court, with a statement of the day and cause of his arrest is **habeas corpus.**

—. The name for a writ issued by the King's Bench Division of the High Court of Justice, ordering an inferior court to hear cases within its jurisdiction, is **mandamus.**

—. The name given to the writ commissioning judges on circuit to hold courts is **oyer and terminer.**

— The name of a writ ordering the sheriff to proceed against a person accused of asserting or upholding the jurisdiction of the Pope in England is **praemunire.**

—. The name of a writ which requires a person to show by what right or warrant he holds lands or exercises offices or privileges is **quo warranto.**

—. The name given to a writ allowing the recovery or restoration of goods seized under a distress warrant, on security given that the goods will be surrendered on the order of a court, is **replevin.**

—. The delivery of a writ to the officer of a court is a **return.**

—. The name given to a writ to enforce or annul a grant or judgment is **scire facias.**

—. A name for a writ commanding the attendance of a witness or defendant at a court of justice is **subpoena.**

—. A name given to a writ, the object of which is to stay proceedings in a court of law, is **supersedeas.**

—. The name of a writ for summoning jurors to make up a deficiency is **tales.**

—. A writ to procure reversal of the judgment of a lower court in a higher court because of an error in law or fact is a **writ of error.**

—. A writ requiring a privileged person to be released from custody when arrested in civil proceedings is a **writ of privilege.**

—. The name for a writ issued by the King's Bench Division of the High Court of Justice to prevent an inferior court from interfering in matters beyond their jurisdiction is a **writ of prohibition.**

wrong, private. A private or civil wrong, for which a person must be sued in the civil courts, is a **tort.**

wrong-doing. A term for wrong-doing or improper use of lawful powers by a local authority or by an officer of a joint-stock company is **misfeasance.**

MEDICINE AND SURGERY

(See also ANATOMY AND PHYSIOLOGY)

abdomen. A name for severe pain in the abdomen or region of the stomach is **colic.**

absorption. The absorption or taking up of a part within itself or within a neighbouring part is **intussusception.**

ague. *See under* **fever,** *below.*

alcoholism. Another name for alcoholism or an insatiable craving for alcoholic liquor is **dipsomania.**

anaesthetic. The name of a limpid, volatile, colourless liquid widely used as an anaesthetic is **chloroform.**

—. The name of an alkaloid, obtained from the coca plant, which acts as a local anaesthetic, is **cocaine.**

—. A name for a colourless, light, inflammable fluid produced by the action of certain acids on alcohol and used as an anaesthetic is **ether.**

anaesthetic. A name given to the gas nitrous oxide, used as an anaesthetic, is **laughing-gas.**

—. A name for a local anaesthetic derived from cocaine is **novocaine.**

—. A name for a white crystalline compound of sulphur used as an anaesthetic is **sulphonal.**

animals. The name given to one qualified to treat the diseases and injuries of domestic animals and cattle is **veterinary surgeon.**

antiseptic. A name for an antiseptic lotion for cleansing wounds is **abstergent.**

aperient. A name for a medicine which has a mild aperient action is **laxative.**

—. A strong aperient having a purging action is a **purgative.**

appetite. Lack of or deficiency in appetite for food is **anorexia**

artery. An abnormal swelling or bulging of the walls of an artery is an **aneurism.**

—. The normal tension of the arteries and muscles is **tonicity.**

—. A permanent abnormal dilatation of a vein or an artery is a **varix.**

artificial part The supply of artificial parts of the body to remedy defects is **prosthesis.**

bacteria. The name of a jelly-like substance prepared from sea-weeds, used in the laboratory for the cultivation of bacteria, is **agar-agar**

bacterial poison. The name given to a poisonous substance produced by micro-organisms is **toxin.**

balsam. The name of an aromatic balsam obtained from a South American tree, used in medicine, etc., is **tolu.**

bandage. A name for a surgical bandage shaped like a helmet is **galea.**

—. The name given to a spiral bandage with the turns reversed, or crossed like a letter V is **spica.**

bark A name given to several American trees producing a bark used in medicine is **quebracho.**

—. The name given to an intensely bitter alkaloid prepared from the bark of the cinchona tree, used as a tonic and a fever remedy, is **quinine.**

—. The name given to a bitter, white crystalline compound obtained from the bark of willows and poplars, and used as a medicine, is **salicin.**

barley. The name given to a mild, nourishing infusion or decoction, usually of pearl barley, is **ptisan.**

baths. The treatment of disease by means of baths is **balneotherapy.**

birth. A disease or defect existing from birth is **congenital.**

bleeding. Names for a substance or preparation that checks bleeding are **astringent** and **styptic.**

—. A name for a constitutional tendency to bleeding is **haemophilia.**

—. A violent bleeding from the heart or the blood vessels is a **haemorrhage.**

—. A plug of lint, etc., used to stop bleeding is a **tampon.**

—. The name of a device for checking bleeding by means of a tightened pad or bandage is **tourniquet.**

blindness. Partial blindness or dim sight due to faulty functioning of the optic nerve is **amblyopia.**

—. A name given to the commonest form of colour-blindness is **Daltonism.**

—. That form of colour-blindness in which only two of the three primary colours can be distinguished is **dichromic.**

—. A form of partial blindness in which the patient can see objects in front but not those lying to one side is **hemianopsia.**

—. A name for an instrument enabling the blind to read by means of distinctive sounds produced according to the pattern of the letters is **optophone.**

—. The name given to a form of blindness caused by the reflection of sunlight from a large expanse of snow is **snow-blindness.**

blister. The name given to an acute skin eruption in which clusters of blisters develop is **herpes.**

blood. The bad state of health caused by deficiency of blood is **anaemia.**

—. A name for a mass of clotted blood is **coagulum.**

—. Another name for anaemia or poorness of blood is **exsanguinity.**

—. The name given to an instrument for measuring the specific gravity of blood is **haemabarometer.**

—. A name given to a medicine that acts on the blood is **haematic.**

blood. The name given to an instrument for determining the richness or poorness of blood by a measurement of the number of corpuscles in a known volume is **haematocytometer.**

—. An abnormal condition of the blood due to an excess of red corpuscles is **plethora.**

—. The name given to a state in which the blood contains poisonous substances is **toxaemia.**

—. The transference of blood from the veins of one person to those of another is **transfusion.**

—, clot. The name given in medicine to a blood-clot is **thrombus.**

—, letting. A name for blood-letting, or the opening of a vein for medical purposes, is **phlebotomy.**

—, —. The opening of a vein in a patient's body for the purpose of allowing a quantity of blood to escape is **venesection.**

—, poisoning. The name given to a form of blood-poisoning due to the absorption of pus or its constituents is **pyaemia.**

—, —. The medical term for blood-poisoning or infection from pus-producing organisms is **sepsis.**

—, —. The name given to a general infection of the body from disease germs or toxins in the blood is **septicaemia.**

blood-vessel. The name given to a condition of the tissues in which the blood-vessels expand and the part swells is **inflammation.**

—. *See also under* **artery,** *above*, and **vein,** *below.*

body fluids. The flowing of the body fluids out of their proper channels is **extravasation.**

boil. A name used in pathology for a boil is **furuncle.**

—. A name for a boil or a carbuncle is **phlegmon.**

bone. A diseased bone which breaks away in scales is **exfoliate.**

—. A name for the death or mortification of bone in the human body is **necrosis.**

—. A name for the operation of fracturing a bone intentionally to cure a deformity is **osteoclasis.**

—. A name for a disease causing soft or misshapen bones is **osteomalacia.**

—. A name for the cure of a bone disease or deformity by manipulation of adjacent parts is **osteopathy.**

—. A name for the operation of transferring a bone and its surrounding membranes to another part of the body is **osteoplasty.**

—. Names for a disease of children and young animals in which the bones do not harden properly are **rachitis** and **rickets.**

—. A piece of dead bone detached from living bone but not dislodged is a **sequestrum.**

bone-setting. The branch of surgery concerned with the treatment of bone injuries and deformities by manual methods is **manipulative.**

bowel. Names for a medicine which promotes the excretory action of the bowels are **aperient** and **laxative.**

—. A name for a medicine which expels wind from the bowels and lessens colicky pains is **carminative.**

—. A name for a medicine having a purging action on the bowels is **purgative.**

brain. The name given to inflammation of the meninges, or membranes of the brain, is **meningitis.**

— The name given to a disease in which the brain becomes affected with inflammation and the patient suffers from lethargy is **sleepy-sickness.**

breathing. Names given to types of instruments used for measuring the amount of air passing into and out of the lungs in breathing are **pneumatometer** and **spirometer.**

—. An apparatus which records the movements of breathing is a **spirograph.**

breathlessness. The name given to a disease characterized by breathlessness and a feeling of suffocation is **asthma.**

caecum. The name given to inflammation of the caecum, as distinguished from appendicitis, is **typhlitis.**

cassia. The name given to the dried leaflets of several species of cassia, used in medicine, is **senna.**

cattle disease. The name given to a disease, affecting the skin and inner organs of cattle, horses, etc., which may attack humans constantly handling the hair of animals, is **anthrax.**

cavity. The name given to a hollow or cavity produced in the body tissues by disease is **sinus.**

cell. In pathology the name given to an abnormal increase in the number of cells in a tissue or organ is **hyperplasia.**

change, morbid. A morbid change in an organ or a tissue is a **lesion.**

cheese. The name given to a poisonous ptomaine produced in stale cheese, milk, etc., by a microbe is **tyrotoxicon.**

chest. A name for a medicine tending to relieve chest complaints is **pectoral.**

chicken-pox. The scientific name for chicken-pox is **varicella.**

children's ailments. Ailments common or peculiar to childhood are **infantile.**

—. A name for the pathology and treatment of children's ailments is **paediatrics**

chill. The name given to a feeling of chill attended with a slight stiffening of the muscles is **rigor.**

clot. The clogging of a blood-vessel by the formation of a clot of blood is **thrombosis.**

clotting. The clotting of blood is **coagulation.**

club-foot. The scientific name for the deformity known as club-foot is **talipes.**

cocoa. The name of a bitter alkaloid, resembling caffeine, obtained from the seeds of the cocoa tree is **theobromine.**

coffee. The name given to a white, bitter alkaline substance which is the stimulating principle of both coffee and tea is **caffeine.**

colic. A name for a medicine which expels wind from the bowels and lessens colicky pain is **carminative.**

consumption. The scientific name for consumption, or tuberculosis of the lungs, is **phthisis.**

contraction. Anything that causes contraction of the tissues is **astringent**

—. A spasm characterized by alternate contraction and relaxation is **clonic.**

— A pathological name for a contraction of a duct or passage in the body is **stricture.**

— A spasm characterized by continuous muscular contraction is **tonic.**

cough. A name for a compound tincture of opium used as a sedative for irritant coughs is **paregoric.**

—. A name for a cough is **tussis.**

cutting away. The process of cutting away or paring down a bone, etc., is **resection.**

dead body An examination of a dead body is an **autopsy.**

death. The death or mortification of tissue, especially bone tissue, is **necrosis.**

—. Anything taking place after death or in a dead body is **post-mortem.**

—. The name given to a stiffening of the body which takes place a few hours after death is **rigor mortis.**

decay. Decay of the bones or teeth is **caries.**

—. The death and decay of a part of the body is **gangrene.**

decaying food. The name given to any of various alkaloids, often poisonous, present in decaying food is **ptomaine.**

deformity. A name for the treatment of diseases and deformities of the joints, especially in children, is **orthopaedics.**

delirium. A state of delirium caused by excessive drinking of alcohol is **delirium tremens.**

delusion. *See under* **mental disorder,** *below.*

development, abnormal. Abnormal development or enlargement of parts or organs is **hypertrophy.**

diabetes. The name of a preparation obtained from the pancreas of the sheep, etc., and used in the treatment of diabetes is **insulin.**

diaphragm. An instrument employed for registering the expansion of the diaphragm in breathing is a **phrenograph.**

diet. The science of the regulation of diet is **dietetics.**

—. A prescribed diet or way of life undertaken to improve or restore health is a **regimen.**

disease. The study of the causes of disease is **aetiology.**

—. A disease which is able to be communicated from one person to another by contact is **contagious.**

—. A disease which has developed to such an extent that it is difficult to cure is **deep-seated.**

—. The art of deciding the nature of a disease by its symptoms is **diagnosis.**

—. A predisposing tendency towards a certain disease is a **diathesis.**

—. A disease prevailing in or peculiar to a certain district or class of people is **endemic.**

—. A widely spread disease that breaks out at intervals is an **epidemic.**

— A disease in which the working of an organ is disturbed, as distinct from a disease where the organ itself is impaired, is **functional.**

—. A disease not caused by or not following another is **idiopathic.**

—. Persons not liable to be affected by certain diseases or poisons, especially when rendered so artificially, are **immune.**

—. A disease caused by the entrance of germs into the body, as opposed to one communicated by contact, is **infectious.**

—. The name given to the science and art of curing or alleviating disease and preserving health is **medicine.**

—. A name for the changing or shifting of a disease from one part or organ to another is **metastasis.**

—. Names for a minute plant or animal, especially a bacterium, causing disease are **microbe** and **germ.**

—. The study of the changes in the structure of the human body caused by or giving rise to disease is **morbid anatomy.**

—. That which causes or produces disease is **morbific.**

—. A name for the scientific description of diseases is **nosography.**

—. A name for the scientific classification of diseases is **nosology.**

—. A disease in which there is a structural change in an organ or organs is **organic.**

—. Any organism or substance that produces disease is **pathogenic.**

—. The forecasting of the probable course and ending of a diseased state is **prognosis.**

—. The prevention of disease is **prophylaxis.**

—. A disease that occurs again after it has subsided is **recurrent.**

—. A disease of which the intensity decreases and increases alternately, although the symptoms never disappear entirely, is **remittent.**

—. A term applied to an intermediate stage or period of a disease is **stadium.**

—. The science and art of applying remedies for disease is **therapeutics.**

—. A preparation of dead disease germs specially modified for introduction into the body for the purposes of cure or immunization is a **vaccine.**

—, animal. A disease prevailing among animals in a certain district is **enzootic.**

—, —. An infectious disease that breaks out periodically among animals is **epizootic.**

—, contagious. The name given to a type of contagious disease occurring as an epidemic, formerly believed to be caused by a process resembling fermentation, is **zymotic disease.**

—, development. The manner in which a disease or bodily affection originates or develops is its **pathogenesis** or **pathogeny.**

disease, first stage A disease in its first stages is **incipient.**

—, mental. *See under* **mental disorder,** *below.*

—, recurrent. A disease recurring at intervals, or one occurring during the course of another disease, is **intercurrent.**

—, science. The usual name for the science of the nature of disease is **pathology,**

—, treatment. *See under* **treatment,** *below.*

—. *See also under* **medicine** *and* **symptom,** *below.*

dislocation. A name for the dislocation of a joint is **luxation.**

displacement. A name used for the displacement of some part of the body is **prolapse.**

doctor. The violation or neglect of duty by a doctor or surgeon is **malpractice.**

—. A doctor who has satisfied certain examining bodies of his fitness and has been permitted to be registered is a **qualified practitioner.**

dog. The name of an acute disease in dogs and other animals which, when communicated to man, is known as hydrophobia is **rabies.**

dose. The branch of medicine dealing with the quantity and proportion in which drugs should be prescribed is **posology.**

drowsiness. The name given to an unnatural drowsiness is **lethargy.**

drug. A name given to any drug or other agent which produces a partial or complete loss of feeling is **anaesthetic.**

—. Names for the science of preparing and dispensing drugs are **pharmaceutics** and **pharmacy.**

—. The science of the knowledge of drugs or medicines and their action on living organisms is **pharmacology.**

—. The name for a book describing the properties of drugs and medicines, and giving the formulae for official preparations in medical use, is **pharmacopoeia.**

—. *See also under* **medicine,** *below.*

ear. The name given to an instrument for examining the inner parts of the ear is **auriscope.**

—. One who specialises in the treatment of diseases of the ear is an **aurist.**

—. The name given to a sensation of ringing in the ears is **tinnitus.**

electricity, medical. *See under* **treatment,** electrical, *below.*

exhaustion. The name given to a state of physical exhaustion is **inanition.**

extract. An extract prepared by boiling a substance in water is a **decoction.**

—. An extract prepared by steeping a substance in water or in alcohol is an **infusion.**

—. *See also under* **solution,** *below.*

eye. A name for the study of diseases of the eye is **ophthalmology.**

—. A name for an instrument used for examining the interior of the eye is **ophthalmoscope.**

—. The name given to a disease of the eye marked by granular excrescences on the inner surface of the eyelids is **trachoma.**

—, dilation. The name of a white, crystalline alkaloid prepared from atropine, used to dilate the pupil of the eye, is **homatropine.**

—, inflammation. A name for inflammation of the membrane of the iris of the eye is **ophthalmia.**

eyeball. A name for the rapid oscillation of the eyeballs is **nystagmus.**

eyelid. The name given to an inflammation of the eyelids is **tylosis.**

eyesight. A name for a surgeon skilled in treating defective eyesight is **oculist.**

—. A name for an instrument for testing eyesight is **optometer.**

fainting. The common name of an aromatic solution of ammonium carbonate used as a remedy against fainting attacks is **sal volatile.**

—. A term denoting fainting or unconsciousness due to a weakening of the heart's action is **syncope.**

false perception. An erroneous apprehension or interpretation of external objects which really exist is an **illusion.**

—. An erroneous sensory or mental perception without any external object existing to give rise to it is a **hallucination.**

feeling, loss. The name given to a condition in which the body or part of it loses all sense of feeling is **anaesthesia.**

feet. A name for the surgical treatment of the feet is **pedicure.**

fever. A name for intermittent fever, and loosely for malaria, is **ague.**

—. Names for a medicine used to allay fever are **antipyretic** and **febrifuge.**

—. An habitual or continual fever, or the high colour which usually accompanies it, is **hectic.**

—. A fever or other ailment which ceases or slackens at intervals is **intermittent.**

—. The name of a fever due to a blood parasite introduced by the bites of mosquitoes, but originally believed to be caused by foul air, is **malaria.**

—. The scientific name for fever or rise of body temperature above the normal is **pyrexia.**

—. A medicine or an ailment producing fever or inflammation is **pyrogenetic.**

—. A fever or an ague recurring on the fourth day from the preceding attack is **quartan.**

—. The name given to a bitter alkaloid obtained from the cinchona bark, used to reduce fever, and given as a specific in malaria, is **quinine.**

—. A fever recurring at intervals of five days is **quintan.**

—. A fever recurring daily is **quotidian.**

—. The name given to an acute, epidemic, infectious fever marked by frequent relapses is **relapsing fever.**

—. A fever in which the symptoms increase and decrease in intensity but do not cease altogether is **remittent.**

—. A fever, etc., in which the paroxysms recur every other day is **tertian.**

—. The scientific name of the dangerous contagious disease which used to be called jail fever is **typhus.**

—. Names given to a kind of fever prevalent in Central America, the West Indies and tropical Africa are **yellow jack** and **yellow fever.**

fish. The name of a liquid, used in skin affections, distilled from a bituminous shale containing fossilized fish is **ichthyol.**

flush. The flush or high colour which accompanies fever is **hectic.**

fomentation. A name for a fomentation or a poultice is **epithem.**

—. A name for a piece of cloth dipped in a liquid, wrung, and used as a fomentation is **stupe.**

food. The ordinary and usual food of a person is his **diet.**

—. The science of the regulation of diet is **dietetics.**

forecast. A forecast of the probable course of a disease is a **prognosis.**

fracture. A fracture in which a bone is broken into several pieces is a **comminuted fracture.**

—. A fracture of a bone in which the skin is lacerated is a **compound fracture.**

frost. Inflammation of the skin or of the parts under the skin due to severe cold is **frost-bite.**

fungus. A name given to a microscopic rod-like fungus some species of which are found in diseased tissues is **bacillus.**

—. The name given to a genus of microscopic fungi some of which cause disease is **Bacterium.**

germ. A substance which has the power to kill disease germs is a **disinfectant.**

—. The communication of a disease by germs, or a disease so communicated, is **infection.**

—. To introduce the product of a disease germ into a man or an animal is to **inoculate.**

germ. The name given to a preparation of the dead bodies of germs or bacteria, injected into the blood to procure immunity from or cure a disease, is **vaccine.**

giddiness. The scientific name for giddiness is **vertigo.**

gout. A name for gout, especially when affecting the joints of the foot, is **podagra.**

growth. An abnormal decrease in the size of a tissue or an organ is **atrophy.**

—. An abnormal increase in the size of a tissue or an organ is **hypertrophy.**

—, malignant. A malignant growth composed of fleshy tissue is a **sarcoma.**

—, morbid. The name given to a swelling on some part of the body, due to a growth of tissue different from that in which it appears, is **tumour.**

gum-boil. The scientific name for the abscess often called a gum-boil is **alveolo-dental abscess.**

gums. A term used to describe ailments or affections of the gums is **gingival.**

hardening. The state or process of becoming hard is **induration.**

healing. *See under* **wound,** *below.*

health. Names for a departure from a state of health in mind or body are **disease** and **disorder.**

— The name given to the science of preserving and promoting health is **hygiene.**

—. One who worries unduly about his health is a **hypochondriac.**

heart. A name for the branch of medicine dealing with the heart is **cardiology.**

—. A name for fainting or unconsciousness due to a weakening of the heart's action is **syncope.**

hip. The term applied to affections of the region of the hip is **sciatic.**

—. The name given to neuralgia of the hip and thigh is **sciatica.**

horse, disease. A name for a disease of horses akin to glanders is **farcy.**

—. A name for a contagious disease affecting horses, etc., is **glanders.**

hypnotism The treating of disease by hypnotism, suggestion, etc., is **psycho-therapeutics.**

illness. An illness, disease, or defective condition of mind or body is a **malady.**

—, consequence. A name given to an unhealthy state following illness or injury is **sequela.**

, temporary. A name given to an illness of a merely passing and temporary nature is **indisposition.**

—. *See also under* **disease,** *above.*

inflammation. A medicine or an ailment producing inflammation or fever is **pyrogenetic.**

—. The abating of an inflammation is its **resolution.**

injury. A state which is caused by mechanical injury is **traumatic.**

—, consequence. The name given to an unhealthy state following injury or illness is **sequela.**

insanity. The name given to any form of insanity except idiocy is **lunacy.**

—. The scientific name for any form of mental disease, commonly called insanity, is **psychosis.**

—. *See also* **mental disorder,** *below.*

insensibility. The name given to a state in which a person is insensible and unconscious and the muscles are rigid is **catalepsy.**

—. The name given to a state of deep insensibility, from which a person can be roused only with difficulty, or cannot be roused at all, is **coma.**

instrument. An instrument used for burning away unhealthy formations on the skin is a **cautery.**

—. The name given to a surgical instrument, like a spatula, for pushing back an obstructing part is **depressor.**

—. A surgical instrument used to expand the walls of a cavity is a **dilator.**

—. The name given to a pincer-like instrument used for grasping or extracting is **forceps.**

—. The name given to a pointed, two-edged knife used for opening veins, etc., is **lancet.**

instrument. The name given to an instrument used to probe wounds, etc., is **sound.**

—. The name given to a spoon-like surgical instrument having various uses is **spatula.**

—. The name given to a surgical instrument, fitted with a mirror reflector, used for examining internal parts of the body is **speculum.**

internal organs. That branch of medical science dealing with the study of the internal organs or viscera is **splanchnology.**

isolation. The compulsory isolation of persons or ships infected with contagious disease or coming from infected places is **quarantine.**

joint. The formation of a stiff joint by the growing together of the bones of a joint is **ankylosis.**

—. Inflammation of a joint is **arthritis.**

—. The name given to the branch of surgery dealing with the treatment of deformities and diseases of the joints is **orthopaedics.**

—. A common name for arthritis and other painful affections of the joints or muscles is **rheumatism.**

—. A name for inflammation of the thin, strong membrane that lines the interior of joints is **synovitis.**

kidney. A name for inflammation of the kidney is **nephritis.**

—. A name for the branch of medical science dealing with the kidneys is **nephrology.**

lancet. The name given to a spring lancet used for bleeding is **fleam.**

law. The science of medicine in its relation to law is **forensic medicine.**

lead-poisoning. A name for a severe form of lead-poisoning to which plumbers, painters, and others who have to handle lead or material containing lead are subject is **painter's colic.**

lessening. A temporary and incomplete lessening in violence of a pain or a disease is a **remission.**

lethargy. The name given to a disease in which the brain is affected by inflammation and the patient suffers from lethargy is **sleepy-sickness.**

light. The name given to a kind of light containing no red and yellow rays, used in the treatment of tuberculous skin disease, is **Finsen light.**

—. The use of the light and heat of the sun for curative purposes is **heliotherapy.**

—. The sending of a strong light through a part as an aid to diagnosis is **transillumination.**

—, aversion. A name for an aversion to light, a symptom of optical disease, is **photophobia.**

liniment. A name for a liniment is **embrocation.**

lip, deformity. The name given to a deformity in which the upper lip is cleft is **hare-lip.**

lockjaw. The scientific name for the form of tetanus commonly known as lockjaw is **trismus.**

lotion. The application of a hot or cold lotion or a pad soaked in such a lotion to an affected part of the body is **fomentation.**

lozenge. The medical name for a lozenge is **troche.**

lunacy. *See* **insanity,** *above.*

lung. The name given to consumption, or tuberculosis of the lungs, is **phthisis.**

—. Inflammation of the pleura or serous sac which invests the lungs is **pleurisy.**

—. Names for instruments of differing type used for measuring the amount of air breathed into and out of the lungs are **pneumatometer** and **spirometer.**

—. A name for inflammation of the lung or lungs is **pneumonia.**

madness. *See under* **mental disorder,** *below.*

malaria. A name given to the parasite of malaria, which usually develops in or outside red blood corpuscles, is **plasmodium.**

measure. The system of weights and measures used in compounding medicines is **apothecaries' weight** and **measure.**

medicine. A medicine or a drug which produces partial or complete loss of sensation is an **anaesthetic**

medicine. A medicine to relieve or reduce fever is an **antipyretic** or **febrifuge.**

— A name for a medicine which acts as a purgative is **cathartic.**

—. A substance used in a medicine to modify the action of a drug or take away its unpleasant qualities is a **corrigent.**

—. A medicine or treatment which tends to empty the vessels of the body is a **depletive.**

— A name for medicine or treatment which has a lowering effect on the system is **depressant.**

—. The quantity of a medicine intended to be taken at one time is a **dose.**

—. A substance from which a medicine is prepared or one used as an ingredient in a medicinal preparation is a **drug.**

—. A medicine made of powders or other substances mixed with honey or syrup in order to render them palatable is an **electuary.**

—. The name given to a medicated preparation applied to the skin by rubbing is **embrocation** or **liniment.**

—. A medicine given to cause vomiting is an **emetic.**

— A remedy applied locally for soothing pain or softening the tissues of the body is an **emollient.**

—. A liquid medicine containing oil or other fatty matter held in suspension is an **emulsion.**

—. A name given to a calming or soothing medicine is **lenitive.**

—. The name given to a medicated liquid preparation applied to the skin or to a wound to allay inflammation, etc., is **lotion.**

— A medicine which produces stupor or insensibility is a **narcotic.**

—. A name for a medicine used to cause the apertures of ducts or vessels to close is **obstruent.**

—. A medicine which has a composing or steadying effect is a **sedative.**

—. A medicine or drug that causes sleep is a **soporific.**

—. A medicine or other agent that gives vigour to the system is a **tonic.**

— A name given to a substance used to dilute a medicinal preparation or render its taste more agreeable is **vehicle.**

—, legal aspect. The science of medicine in its relation to law is **forensic medicine.**

—, preparing. The preparing of medicines from prescriptions is **dispensing.**

—, —. Names for the science of preparing and dispensing medicines are **pharmaceutics** and **pharmacy.**

—, system. The name given to a system of medicine which seeks to relieve a morbid condition by inducing in the body another action of a different kind is **allopathy.**

—, —. The name given to a system of treating illness by seeking to reverse the conditions that cause the illness is **heteropathy.**

—, —. The name given to a system which aims at curing a disorder by giving a minute dose of a drug which, in a healthy person, would produce such a disordered state is **homoeopathy.**

—. *See also* **drug,** *above.*

medicinal substance. The name given to any medicinal substance and, loosely, to any crude material from which a medicine is made is **drug.**

memory. Loss of memory is **amnesia.**

mental disorder. Names for the treatment and study of mental disorders are **alienism** and **psychiatry.**

—. The false association of ideas, a symptom in some kinds of mental disorder, is **delusion.**

—. The name given to a disordered mental state in which a person has apparent perception of an object not actually present is **hallucination.**

mental disorder. An abnormally weak-minded person incapable of rational conduct is an **idiot.**

—. A name for any form of mental disorder characterized by great excitement, hallucinations, and violence is **mania.**

—. A name for a mental state characterized by depression of spirits is **melancholia.**

—. A name for a mental disease, especially one in chronic form, accompanied by delusions and illusions, is **paranoia.**

—. Any mental disease, especially one not due to organic derangement, is a **psychosis.**

mental excitement. The name given to a state of mental excitement accompanied by delusions, restlessness, and incoherence of speech is **delirium.**

mental weakness. The name given to a kind of weak-mindedness existing from birth or from very early in life is **idiocy.**

morphine. The name of an alkaloid prepared from morphine is **heroin.**

muscle. Names given to the state in which muscles do not work well together are **ataxia** and **inco-ordination.**

—. A kind of instrument which registers muscular activity is an **ergograph.**

—. A name for the dissection of muscles is **myotomy.**

—. A name for a slow wasting away of the muscles is **tabes.**

—. The normal tension of the muscles and arteries is **tonicity.**

mustard plaster. A name for a mustard plaster is **sinapism.**

narcotic. The name given to a narcotic made from dried leaves and stalks of Indian hemp is **hashish.**

—. Names given to a narcotic drug prepared from opium are **morphia** and **morphine.**

—. A name for narcotic poisoning is **narcosis.**

—. A name for a narcotic, especially one containing opium, is **opiate.**

nerve, activity. The name given to a change in the activity of a nerve or muscle under the action of electricity is **electrotonus.**

—, disorder. A name for a disorder of the nerves is **neurasthenia.**

—, —. A functional disorder of the nerves, especially if unaccompanied by organic change in the bodily structure, is a **neurosis.**

—, —. A nervous disorder due to mental disturbance is a **psychoneurosis.**

—, —. The name of a nervous affection in which the patient has muscular spasms is **tetany.**

—, dissection. A name for the dissection of nerves is **neurotomy.**

—, pain. A sharp, stabbing pain in the nerves is **neuralgia.**

nodding. A medical term denoting the nodding of the head through illness is **nutation.**

nodule. The name given in pathology to a small granular nodule formed in the substance of an organ is **tubercle.**

normal condition. A term used in medicine for the normal condition of the bodily organs is **tone.**

nose. The term used to describe things relating to the nose is **rhinal.**

—. The term used to describe an ailment affecting the nose and pharynx is **rhino-pharyngeal.**

—. Plastic surgery of the nose is **rhinoplasty.**

—. The name of an instrument for examining the interior of the nose is **rhinoscope.**

nutrition. A medical term meaning of or connected with nutrition is **trophic.**

oath. The oath taken by medical undergraduates at Edinburgh to preserve inviolate all professional confidences, etc., is the **Hippocratic oath.**

old age. The medical name for old age or the mental and physical weakness due to old age is **senility.**

one-sided. An ailment affecting one side of the body or of a specified organ is **unilateral.**

opium. The name given to an alcoholic tincture of opium, used in medicine, is **laudanam.**

—. A name for an acid present in opium is **meconic acid.**

—. The name of a narcotic drug prepared from opium is **narcotine.**

—. The name of a poisonous alkaloid produced from opium is **thebaine.**

organ. The part of the body round a particular organ is a **region.**

organism, minute. Names for a minute organism such as those which cause disease are **germ** and **microbe.**

pad. A name for a small compress or pad of lint, etc., applied to a wound is **piedget.**

pain. Loss of sensitiveness to pain without loss of the sense of touch is **analgesia.**

— A name for a remedy which relieves pain is **anodyne.**

— Pain or inflammation affecting only a limited area of the body is **local.**

—. A name for a drug for dulling pain, especially one containing opium, is **opiate.**

—. A name for a medicine for relieving a pain or a disease without curing it is **palliative.**

painless. In pathology a tumour of a kind which causes no pain is **indolent.**

paralysis. Paralysis affecting one side only of the body is **hemiplegia.**

—. Paralysis of both legs is **paraplegia.**

—. Incomplete or partial paralysis is **paresis.**

parasite. A parasite that lives inside the body of its host is an **endoparasite.**

— The study of parasites in connexion with medical science and biology is **parasitology.**

peculiarity. A name for a physical or mental peculiarity is **idiosyncrasy.**

pharmacopoeia. Medicines listed in or recognized by a pharmacopoeia are **official.**

pharynx. The term used to describe an ailment affecting the nose and pharynx is **rhino-pharyngeal.**

pimple. A pimple or small bladder-like swelling on the skin containing pus or a watery liquid is a **pustule.**

plants, medicinal. One interested in the study or collection of plants as medicines is a **herbalist.**

plug. The name given to a plug of lint, etc., used to stop bleeding is **tampon.**

poison. A name for a medicine which, when administered, counteracts the harmful effect of a poison is **antidote.**

—. A substance which prevents poisons from forming in the body or destroys them if already there is an **antitoxin.**

—. The science of the nature and action of poisons and the preparation of their antidotes is **toxicology.**

—. The name given to a vegetable poison, to one produced by micro-organisms, or to an animal venom is **toxin.**

—. The poison produced by the germs of a disease and absorbed into the body is a **virus.**

poultice. A name for a poultice or fomentation is **epithem.**

—. The name given to an absorbent material used as a poultice, made of sponge and fibre with a waterproof backing, is **spongiopiline.**

preventive. A preventive medicine is a **prophylactic.**

prostration. The name given to a state of prostration following a disturbance of the system or the access of violent emotion is **shock.**

protrusion. A protrusion of a part or organ from its natural position is a **hernia.**

—. The protrusion of an internal organ through an opening in the wall of the containing cavity is a **rupture.**

pulse. A name for an apparatus which records the beating of the pulse is **sphygmograph.**

—. The scientific study of the pulse is **sphygmology.**

pulse. An instrument used to make audible the variations and rhythm of the pulse is a **sphygmophone.**

purgative. A name for a medicine which acts as a purgative is **cathartic.**

pus. A name for a collection of pus formed in a cavity of the body is **abscess.**

—. A wound or sore containing or developing pus is **purulent.**

—. Poisoning due to the absorption of pus or its constituents into the blood is **pyaemia.**

—. Bacteria which cause the formation of pus are **pyogenic.**

—. A discharge of pus is **pyorrhoea.**

putrefaction. A name for a substance which prevents putrefaction or infection with sepsis is **antiseptic.**

—. The absence of putrefaction or of bacteria, septic material, etc., which cause putrefaction, is **asepsis.**

—. The name of a soluble poison formed during the putrefaction of protein substances, and present in the blood in sepsis, is **sepsine.**

race improvement. The science relating to the physical and moral improvement of the human race is **eugenics.**

rash. The breaking out of a rash on the skin is an **eruption.**

redness. Redness of the skin accompanied by inflammation is **erythema.**

remedy. A remedy against poison or disease is an **antidote.**

—. A name for a vegetable remedy or medicine as opposed to one compounded from chemicals is **Galenic** or **Galenical.**

—. A general name for the substances used as remedies in medicine is **materia medica.**

—. The branch of medicine dealing with the science and application of remedies for disease is **therapeutics.**

—. *See also under* **medicine,** *above.*

respiration. A name for the state of suspended animation which comes about when respiration is interfered with is **asphyxia.**

restorative. A name for a restorative medicine is **analeptic.**

rheumatism. The name given to a form of rheumatism affecting the region of the loins is **lumbago.**

ribs. A name for severe pains in the muscles between the ribs is **pleurodynia.**

rickets. The scientific name for the disease called rickets is **rachitis.**

Röntgen rays. Names given to an image produced on a sensitive plate by the action of Röntgen rays are **radiograph, radiogram,** and **skiagraph.**

scrofula. Another name for scrofula is **struma.**

sensitiveness. Excessive sensitiveness, especially of the nerves, is **hyperaesthesia.**

sepsis. A name for a substance which prevents putrefaction or infection with sepsis is **antiseptic.**

sight. The name given to a defect of sight due to irregular refraction in the eye is **astigmatism.**

—. A defect of vision in which the eyes are long-sighted is **hypermetropia.**

—. A scientific name for short-sightedness is **myopia.**

—. The name given to a form of long-sightedness due to advancing age is **presbyopia.**

skin. A name for a state of the skin in which it becomes bluish in colour is **cyanosis.**

—. A name for a soothing substance which allays irritation of the skin is **demulcent.**

—. Pain in the skin is **dermalgia.**

—. Inflammation of the skin is **dermatitis.**

—. That branch of science which deals with the study of the skin and its diseases is **dermatology.**

—. The shedding of the skin surface in scales is **desquamation.**

skin. The name given to a discoloration of the skin caused by the bursting of small blood-vessels is **ecchymosis.**

—. A remedy applied to the skin is an **endermic.**

—. Redness of the skin with accompanying inflammation is **erythema.**

—. The name given to an acute skin eruption in which clusters of blisters develop is **herpes.**

—. An injection of a drug made under the skin is **hypodermic** or **subcutaneous.**

—. The name of an unhealthy condition in which the skin becomes yellow is **jaundice.**

—. Names given to a curative liquid preparation, usually containing oil, applied to the skin by rubbing are **embrocation** and **liniment.**

—. The name given to a medicated liquid preparation applied to a wound or to the skin to allay inflammation, etc., is **lotion.**

—. An eruption on the skin marked by red spots, pimples, or minute blisters is a **rash.**

—. The term applied to a condition in which the skin hardens in patches is **sclerodermatous.**

—. The name given to an eruptive skin disease, accompanied by neuralgic pains is **shingles.**

skull. The name given in medicine to a condition in which fluid collects between the skull and the covering of the brain is **hydrocephalus.**

—. The term used to describe a type of skull abnormally small and imperfectly developed is **microcephalous.**

—. The term used to describe a skull that is unequally developed on its two sides, as in some idiots, is **plagiocephalic.**

sleep. The condition of being unable to sleep is **insomnia.**

—. A name for a drug producing deep sleep or stupor is **narcotic.**

—. A name for a drug producing sleep, especially one containing opium, is **opiate.**

sleepiness. A name for a nervous disease characterized by attacks of sleepiness is **narcolepsy.**

smallpox. The scientific name for smallpox is **variola.**

smell. Loss of or deficiency in the sense of smell is **anosmia.**

smoke. To subject to the action of smoke or vapour in order to destroy disease germs is to **fumigate.**

sneezing. A name given to the act of sneezing is **sternutation.**

soften. To soften or separate a substance by steeping or by a digestive process is to **macerate.**

solution. The name given to a solution of a volatile oil in alcohol is **essence.**

—. The name given to a solution, usually in alcohol, of some vegetable or other principle used in medicine is **tincture.**

soothing medicine. A name for a medicine which calms the nerves or alleviates pain is **lenitive.**

sound. The act of listening to sounds given out by the lungs and heart, to find out the state of these organs, is **auscultation.**

—. The act of tapping on a part of the body to find out its condition from the sounds given out is **percussion.**

—. A name for an instrument used by doctors to detect faint sounds inside the human body is **phonendoscope.**

—. The rattling sound which a doctor hears through his stethoscope from a patient's chest, etc., in disease, is a **râle.**

—. The name given to a whistling or snoring sound in breathing, caused by the bronchial tubes being partially obstructed is **rhonchus.**

—. The name given to an instrument with ear-tubes, used by a doctor in listening to sounds in the body is **stethoscope.**

sore. The medical name for an open sore, other than a wound, secreting pus or other morbid matter is **ulcer.**

spasm. The name of a disease, often fatal, marked by continuous muscular spasms is **tetanus.**

—. *See also under* **contraction.** *above.*

speech. Loss of the power of speech, due to an injury or disease of the brain, is **aphasia.**

squinting. The scientific term for squinting or a squint is **strabismus.**

sticking-plaster. The name given to a sticking-plaster made by mixing oil with oxide of lead, or glycerine with lead salts, and spread on linen is **diachylon.**

stomach. A name for severe pain in the abdomen or region of the stomach is **colic.**

—. Inflammation of the stomach is **gastritis.**

—. The division of pathology dealing with diseases of the stomach is **gastrology.**

stone. Names given to a stony mass formed in certain organs of the body are **calculus** and **concretion.**

strangulation. A name for the state of suspended animation which comes about when respiration is impeded, as by strangulation, the inhaling of deleterious gases, submersion in water, etc., is **asphyxia.**

suggestion. The treating of disease by suggestion, hypnotism, etc., is **psycho-therapeutics.**

sun. The use of the light and heat of the sun for curative purposes is **heliotherapy.**

—. A name for an apartment, so constructed that the sun's rays have free access, where patients are therapeutically treated, is **solarium.**

sunstroke. A name for sunstroke is **heliosis.**

surgery. The branch of surgery concerned with the treatment of injuries and deformities by manual methods is **manipulative.**

—. A name given to the branch of surgery concerned with the grafting of tissue, etc., to repair defective or injured parts of the body is **plastic surgery.**

—, manipulative. A name for the kind of surgery in which bone diseases or deformities are cured or corrected by manipulative methods is **osteopathy.**

—, —. The reducing of displaced parts of the body by manipulation is **taxis.**

swelling. A small hard swelling in the sheath of a tendon, containing a sticky fluid, generally occurring in the tendons on the back of the wrist, is a **ganglion.**

—. A name for swelling produced by abnormal accumulation of serous fluid in the tissues is **oedema.**

symptom. A symptom of approaching disease is a **prodrome.**

—. A name given to the occurring together of symptoms indicating a condition or a disease and to the group of symptoms itself is **syndrome.**

teeth. The scraping away of the chalky tartar from the teeth is **decalcification.**

—. The name given to inflammation of the fibrous membrane of the teeth causing discharge of pus and loosening is **pyorrhoea.**

temperature. A rise of body temperature above the normal is **pyrexia.**

tendon. The surgical operation of dividing a tendon is **tenotomy.**

tension. The normal tension of the muscles and arteries is **tonicity.**

tetanus. A name for a drug having the power to cure or alleviate tetanus is **anti-tetanin.**

thigh. The name given to neuralgia of the hip and thigh is **sciatica.**

throat. The name given to a morbid growth of spongy tissue at the back of the nose and throat which interferes with breathing and speech is **adenoid.**

—. Inflammation of the pharynx, often described as sore throat, is **pharyngitis.**

tissue. A piece of living tissue transplanted from one animal or person to another is a **graft.**

—. Death or mortification of tissue, especially bone tissue, is **necrosis.**

—. A name for an abnormal formation of new tissue in the body is **neoplasm.**

trance. A sudden trance or coma with insensibility, unconsciousness, and rigidity of the muscles is **catalepsy.**

treatment. The treatment of disease by the application of violet and ultra-violet rays, or the rays from X-rays or radium, is **actinotherapy.**

—. The treatment of disease by seeking to reverse the conditions that cause the illness is **allopathy.**

—. The treatment of disease by means of baths is **balneotherapy.**

—. The treatment of disease by electricity is **electrotherapy.**

—, —. Treatment which consists only of removing the conditions unfavourable to health is **expectant.**

—. The treatment of disease by exposure of the body to the light and heat of the sun is **heliotherapy.**

—, —. The treating of disease by giving medicines which, in health, would produce conditions resembling that diseased state it is desired to cure is **homoeopathy.**

—. The treatment of disease, etc., by the application of water is **hydrotherapy.**

—. To order or advise a course of treatment is to **prescribe.**

—. A name for an establishment in which invalids and convalescents receive health-promoting treatment is **sanatorium.**

—, electrical. The treatment of disease by means of heat generated in the body by a current of electricity is **diathermy.**

—, —. Treatment by the application of induced electric currents is **faradization.**

—, —. The treatment of disease by introducing drugs into the body through a medicated, moistened pad, by means of the electrolytic action of a galvanic current, is **ionization.**

—, —. Treatment by the application of galvanic electricity is **galvanism** or **galvanization.**

—. *See also* **disease** *and* **medicine,** *above.*

tube. A surgical tube inserted after an operation to drain a wound is a **drainage-tube.**

—. Names for a narrow tube-like passage which may form in the body through injury or disease are **fistula** and **syrinx.**

tuber. A word meaning affected with or characterized by tubers is **tuberose.**

tumour. The name of a kind of tumour growing in any of the internal mucous canals is **polypus.**

—. A name for the membranous envelope of a tumour is **sac.**

—. The name given to a hard tumour, especially one of a malignant kind, is **scirrhus.**

—. A name for a non-malignant tumour occurring on the scalp, etc., is **wen.**

ulceration. The term used to describe an ulceration which spreads gradually is **serpiginous.**

unconsciousness. *See* **insensibility,** *above.*

union. A surgical name for the union of divided or broken parts is **synthesis.**

vaccine. A special name for a needle used in introducing a vaccine into the body is **vaccine point.**

vegetable poison. A general name for a vegetable poison, for an animal venom, and for a poison produced by micro-organisms is **toxin.**

vein. An injection made into a vein is **intravenous.**

—. Inflammation of the walls of a vein is **phlebitis.**

—. A name for a stone-like formation in a vein is **phlebolite.**

—. A name for the surgical opening of veins in the once common practice of blood-letting is **phlebotomy.**

—. A vein permanently swollen and distended is a **varicose vein.**

—. A permanent abnormal dilatation of a vein or an artery is a **varix.**

venom. The name given to the venom secreted by an animal is **toxin.**

vibration. The name given to a vibration in the body perceptible externally, regarded as an aid to diagnosis, is **fremitus.**

violence. External violence producing a wound or injury is **trauma.**

volatile oil. An alcoholic solution of a volatile oil is an **essence.**

wakefulness. A name given to a condition in which a person is unable to sleep is **insomnia.**

wasting. The wasting away of any part of the body is **atrophy.**

—. A name for a wasting away of the body without apparent disease is **marasmus.**

water. The therapeutic use of water is **hydropathy** or **hydrotherapy.**

—. The name of a disease, caused by a dog bite, in which great difficulty is experienced in swallowing, and an attempt to drink causes convulsions is **hydrophobia.**

—. The science of the remedial use of water is **hydrotherapeutics.**

weakness. Bodily weakness or loss of strength is **asthenia.**

weight. The system of weights and measures used in compounding medicines is **apothecaries' weight** and **measure.**

worse. An illness which becomes worse and worse is **ingravescent.**

wind. Names for wind in the bowels are **flatus** and **flatulence.**

wound. The uniting of the cut edges or surfaces of a wound at once, without festering, is healing by **first intention.**

—. A wound that does not reach the bone or any vital part is a **flesh-wound.**

—. The union or closing up of a wound by the formation of granulation tissue is healing by **second intention.**

—. A term used for the pulling together of the edges of a wound by stitching is **suturation.**

—. The name given to a small roll or bunch of lint, linen, etc., inserted in a wound to keep it open is **tent.**

—. A wound or injury is a **trauma.**

—. The morbid condition resulting from a serious wound is **traumatism.**

writing, reversed. A name for reversed writing, appearing normal when reflected in a mirror, and due to a nervous disease, is **mirror writing.**

MUSIC

(See also DRAMA)

accelerate. Musical directions denoting that the speed of performance is to be accelerated are **accelerando** and **stringendo.**

accented strongly. Musical directions denoting that a chord or note is to be strongly accented are **forzato, marcato,** and **sforzando.**

accompaniment. Variation or elaboration of the accompaniment as a means of embellishing a melody is **figuration.**

—. A musical term denoting that the playing of an accompaniment is to be adapted to the soloist's style is **suivez.**

accompaniment, essential. A name for an accompaniment or part that is essential to a composition and must not be omitted is **obbligato.**

accordion. A form of accordion having hexagonal ends, finger studs and not keys, and an improved reed action is a **concertina.**

agitated. A musical direction denoting that the style of performance is to be agitated and restless is **agitato.**

alpenhorn. The name given to any of the traditional melodies played by Swiss peasants on the alpenhorn is **ranz-des-vaches.**

alternative. A musical term used to denote an alternative note or passage, which is generally printed in smaller notes, is **ossia.**

always. An Italian word meaning " always," used in musical directions, is **sempre.**

Amen. The chord progression from the subdominant chord to that of the tonic, to which " Amen " is usually sung in church, is a **plagal cadence.**

animated. Musical directions meaning animated or spirited are **spiritoso** and **vivo.**

ardent. Musical terms denoting that the style of performance is to be ardent, or impassioned, are **appassionato** and **zeloso.**

aria, short. A name for a short aria is **arietta.**

arrangement. An arrangement of a musical work for a voice or instrument other than that for which it was originally written is a **transscription.**

bagpipe. The name for the melody pipe of the bagpipe is **chanter.**

—. The tubes always giving the same notes, fixed to the wind-bag of the Scottish bagpipe, are the **drones.**

—. The name of a small kind of bagpipe formerly used in France is **musette.**

—. A name for an elaborate series of variations for the bagpipe, following certain traditional rules, is **pibroch.**

—. A name given to ornamental notes embellishing a melody on the bagpipes is **warblers.**

ballet. *See* **dance** *and* **dancing,** *below.*

band. A name for a band of musicians in which stringed instruments predominate is **orchestra.**

—. *See also under* **instrument** *and* **orchestra,** *below.*

bass. A bass part with figures accompanying the notes to indicate the chords to be played is a **continued bass, figured bass,** or **thorough bass.**

—. A short bass theme repeated throughout a composition with varied tunes and harmonies above is a **ground bass.**

—. A bass or other note sustained through changes of harmony is a **pedal-point.**

bassoon. Names for an ancient double-reed instrument that preceded the bassoon are **bombard** and **pommer.**

—. The metal tube connecting the body of a bassoon, etc., with the reed is a **crook.**

beat. The temporary displacement of the regular beat in music is **syncopation.**

—. *See also under* **time,** *below.*

beginning. A direction written at the end of a musical composition or passage to denote that the music is to be repeated from the beginning is **da capo.**

bell. A name for the science of casting bells, or for the art of ringing bells, is **campanology.**

—. A set of bells, controlled by a keyboard, on which tunes and harmonies can be played, is a **carillon.**

—. A name for a form of bell-ringing practised in England, in which all the possible arrangements of a series of bells are sounded without repetition, is **change ringing.**

—. The technical name for sounding a bell by swinging it mouth downwards so that the clapper just touches the side is **chiming.**

—. A name for the note an octave below the fundamental, heard when certain bells are sounded, is **hum-note.**

—. The technical name for sounding a bell by swinging it with its mouth uppermost through nearly a full circle, so that the clapper strikes the side forcibly, is **ringing.**

—. Bells rung in the same order from the highest to the lowest, over and over again, are rung in **rounds.**

—. A name for the tufted portion of a bell rope is **sally.**

—. A name for the thick curved edge of a bell against which the tongue strikes is **sound-bow.**

bell. The name for the bell having the lowest tone in a set of bells is **tenor.**

—. The name for the bell having the highest tone in a set of bells is **treble.**

boat-song. A name for a boat-song in imitation of a song of the Venetian gondoliers, and for an instrumental composition of a similar character, is **barcarole.**

bow, violin. *See under* **violin,** *below.*

brace. A name for the brace or bracket joining two or more staves at the left hand side of a page of music is **accolade.**

brilliant. A name for a brilliant style of execution, and also for a musical passage requiring such a style, is **bravura.**

brisk. Musical terms denoting that a brisk and lively performance is needed are **allegro, con brio, vivace,** and **vivo.**

cadence. A cadence, or closing harmony, ending on a weakly accented beat is **feminine.**

—. Names for a cadence consisting of a dominant chord preceded by that of the tonic are **half close** and **imperfect cadence.**

—. A deceptive cadence consisting of a dominant chord followed by some chord other than that of the tonic is an **interrupted cadence.**

—. A cadence ending on a strongly accented beat is **masculine.**

—. A cadence consisting of a dominant chord followed by a tonic chord is a **perfect cadence.**

—. A cadence consisting of a sub-dominant chord followed by that of the tonic is a **plagal cadence.**

calm. A musical direction denoting that the style of performance is to grow calmer is **calando.**

—. A musical direction denoting that a calm style of performance is required is **tranquillo.**

canon. The theme or subject with which a canon begins is the **antecedent.**

—. The repetition of the subject of a canon by another voice after a rest is the **consequent.**

—. A canon that is not designed to be repeated without a break is **finite.**

—. A canon, such as a catch or round, that can be repeated as often as desired without a break is **infinite** or **perpetual.**

—. A canon that may be sung forwards and backwards at the same time is **retrograde.**

cantata. Names for a cantata based upon rustic incidents are **pastorale** and **serenata.**

carol. A name for a Christmas carol, especially a French one, is **noël.**

'cello. The full name of the 'cello is **violoncello.**

chant. The name for the notes following the reciting note in each phrase of a chant is **cadence.**

— The arrangement of the words and syllables of psalms, etc., for chanting is **pointing.**

—. The first note of each phrase in a chant is the **reciting-note.**

choir. Names for a leader or conductor of a choir, especially a church choir, are **cantor** and **precentor.**

—. A name for the choristers on the cantor's side of a church choir, generally the north, is **cantoris.**

—. A name for the choristers on the side of a church choir opposite to the cantoris is **decani.**

—. A choir containing female and male singers is a **mixed choir** or **mixed voice choir.**

—. *See also under* **chorus,** *and* **composition,** choral, *below.*

chord. The name for a common chord on the subdominant (or fourth note of the scale), sounded together with the supertonic (or second note of the scale), is **added sixth.**

—. A chord played with its notes occurring in succession instead of simultaneously is an **arpeggio.**

— A name given to a chord consisting of a note and the fifth above only, without an intervening third, is **bare fifth.**

chord. A chord consisting of a root note and the third, fifth and seventh notes above is a **chord of the seventh.**

—. A chord consisting of any note with the third (major or minor) and the perfect fifth above it is a **common chord.**

—. A chord that is an inversion of another chord, and so has some other note than the root as its bass, is a **derivative chord.**

—. A chord consisting of three minor thirds is a **diminished seventh.**

—. A chord consisting of the dominant or fifth note of the scale and the third, perfect fifth, and minor seventh above is a **dominant seventh.**

—. Chords that are alike in sound but are written differently are **enharmonic.**

—. A chord comprising a major third, an augmented fourth, and an augmented sixth is a **French sixth.**

—. The note on which a chord is built is its **fundamental** or **root.**

—. A name for a chord consisting of an augmented sixth, major third, and perfect fifth is **German sixth.**

— Arrangements of the notes of a chord in which a note other than the root is in the bass are **inversions.**

—. Two chords which have no note in common are **irrelative.**

—. A name for a chord comprising an augmented sixth and a major third is **Italian sixth.**

—. A common chord with its third major (or two whole tones above the root) is a **major chord** or **major triad.**

—. A common chord with its third minor (or three semitones above the root) is a **minor chord** or **minor triad.**

—. A chord composed of the subdominant or fourth note of a scale and the notes a minor third and sixth above is a **Neapolitan sixth.**

—. A name for the passing from one chord to another, and also for a series of chords, is **progression.**

—. A group of chords repeated more than twice by regularly ascending or descending steps is a **sequence.**

—. A common chord having the fourth note above the tonic as its bass note is a **subdominant chord.**

—. A chord consisting of the first, third, and fifth notes of a scale is the **tonic chord** or **tonic triad.**

—. A chord common to two keys, when used in a modulation from one of the keys to the other, is a **transmutation chord.**

—. A term denoting a rapid alternation of the notes of a chord in music for the piano is **tremolo.**

—. A chord of three notes consisting of any note and the third and fifth notes above it is a **triad.**

—, dissonant. A name for a dissonant chord, or one requiring resolution by being followed by another chord, is **discord.**

—, final. A name for the final chords of any composition, generally conveying an impression of completion or repose, is **cadence.**

—, triad. A triad with its fifth a semitone greater than a perfect fifth is an **augmented triad.**

—, —. A triad with its fifth one semitone less than a perfect fifth is a **diminished triad.**

—. *See also under* **cadence,** *above; and* **discord** *and* **harmony,** *below.*

chorus. A chorus intended to be sung by half, or a few only, of the available voices is a **semi-chorus.**

—, opera. A name given to the leader of an opera chorus is **coryphaeus.**

—. *See also* **choir,** *above.*

church music. The form of church music, based upon the authentic and plagal modes, sung in unison in free rhythm depending upon the normal accent of the words is **plain chant** or **plain song.**

—. *See also under* **hymn, Mass,** *and* **mode,** *below.*

clarinet. A tenor instrument of the clarinet kind, having a long bore with a curved and bell-shaped metal end, is the **basset horn.**

clef. The clef—having the note middle C on its middle line—used for music for the viola is the **alto clef.**

—. The clef—having the note F on its fourth line—used for music for the bass notes of the piano, etc., is the **bass clef** or **F clef.**

—. A general name given to the alto and tenor clefs, and to others in which middle C is the guiding note, is **C clef.**

—. The clef—having the note G on its second line—used for music for the higher instruments of the orchestra, the soprano and tenor voices, and the treble notes of the piano, is the **G clef** or **treble clef.**

—. The clef—having the note middle C on its fourth line—used for music for the upper tones of the violoncello is the **tenor clef.**

compass. *See under* **voice,** *below.*

composer, lesser. A name sometimes given to a lesser composer is **petit-maître.**

composition. The respective names for compositions for two, three, four, five, six, seven, eight, and nine performers are **duet, trio, quartet, quintet, sestet** or **sextet, septet, octet,** and **nonet.**

—. A name for the structure or plan of a composition is **form.**

—. A name for a complete division or section of an extended composition, such as a sonata, having a distinct structure and rhythm of its own is **movement.**

—. The composition of interesting and independent tunes to be heard in combination is **part-writing.**

—, choral. A general name for a type of choral composition resembling the motet, but usually having solo passages, used in English churches is **anthem.**

—, —. A name for a choral composition resembling, but shorter than, an oratorio, and having either a sacred or secular subject, is **cantata.**

—, —. A name for a choral composition of moderate length dealing with a sacred theme, set usually to Latin words, and written in contrapuntal style, is **motet.**

—, —. *See also under* **composition,** vocal, *below.*

—, classification. A word denoting a composition or group of compositions, used in classifying a composer's work, is **opus.**

—, dramatic. A name for a dramatic composition intended to accompany spoken words in a drama is **melodrama.**

—, —. A dramatic composition for voices and instruments, with action, designed to be performed on a stage with scenery, is an **opera.**

—, —. *See also under* **opera,** *below.*

—, end. A name for a passage added towards the end of a composition to form an impressive or extended ending is **coda.**

—, extempore. The composition and performance of music without previous study or preparation is **improvisation.**

—, instrumental. A form of instrumental composition in which a theme is either merely embellished, or modified by introducing changes of rhythm and harmony, through a series of movements is the **air with variations.**

—, —. A name for an instrumental composition or a song associated with dawn, or morning, as opposed to a serenade, is **aubade.**

—, —. Names given to instrumental compositions of a fanciful or unconventional nature, in which the ordinary rules of form are not strictly observed, are **capriccio, caprice, fantasia,** and **impromptu.**

composition, instrumental. A name for an instrumental serenade, comprising several distinct movements, as in a suite, is **cassation.**

—, —. A name for an extended composition, generally in sonata form, for a solo instrument or instruments with orchestral accompaniment, is **concerto.**

—, —. A name given to an instrumental composition of a fantastic nature is **extravaganza.**

—, —. A name for an instrumental composition having a peaceful, pastoral character is **idyll.**

—, —. The name given to a piece of instrumental music played to fill a gap in the action of a play or during a church service is **interlude.**

—, —. The name given to a short movement connecting the main parts of an instrumental composition, or played between the acts of an opera, is **intermezzo.**

—, —. A name for a gentle, poetical type of instrumental composition, introduced by John Field, and perfected by Chopin, is **nocturne.**

—, —. A name for a melody and for a simple piece of instrumental music in rustic style, generally in six-eight time, is **pastorale.**

—, —. A name for a short, introductory, instrumental work, such as a short overture, an opening movement in a suite, or an introduction to a fugue, is **prelude.**

—, —. Names for a short and simple instrumental composition of a romantic character are **romance** and **song without words.**

—, —. The name for a type of instrumental composition in which a main tune occurs at least three times in the same key, with subordinate episodes between the repetitions, is **rondo.**

—, —. The name given to an instrumental composition having a lively or humorous nature, often included as the third movement of a sonata or symphony, etc., is **scherzo.**

—, —. A name for an instrumental composition or a song associated with the evening is **serenade.**

—, —. An instrumental composition for one or two instruments, having its first movement in binary form, followed by a slow movement, and a finale which is often preceded by a minuet or scherzo, is a **sonata.**

—, —. The name for a short instrumental composition resembling a sonata is **sonatina.**

—, —. A name for an instrumental composition for developing, testing, or displaying the performer's skill is **study.**

—, —. A name for an instrumental composition consisting of a set or series of contrasted pieces, formerly always in the same key, is **suite.**

—, —. *See also under* **dance,** *below.*

—, keyboard. A name given by J. S. Bach to certain keyboard compositions of a fanciful and spontaneous character is **invention.**

—, —. A name given to a piano or organ composition requiring brilliant execution is **toccata.**

—, orchestral. A name for an independent orchestral composition, generally of a descriptive or romantic character, that follows the plan of the first movement of a sonata, is **concert overture.**

—, —. The name for a short orchestral composition in the style of a symphony is **sinfonietta.**

—, —. Names for an extended orchestral composition, following no fixed plan, but generally of a descriptive or romantic nature, are **symphonic poem** and **tone poem.**

—, —. A name for a long musical work for an orchestra, in three or more movements, following the plan of a sonata, is **symphony.**

—, sacred. The name for a semi-dramatic sacred composition for solo voices, chorus, and orchestra, usually having a Biblical subject, is **oratorio.**

composition, sacred. A name for a sacred composition for choir and solo singers, resembling an oratorio but having as its text the Gospel account of Christ's sufferings in Gethsemane and on the cross is **Passion.**

—, —. *See also under* **composition,** choral, *above; and* **Mass,** *below.*

—, type. A type of composition in which two or more parts, beginning at different moments, have the same tune, either at the same pitch (as in the round), or at different pitches, is a **canon.**

—, —. A name for a type of composition constructed from one or more short themes heard in all the parts in turn, and developed according to the rules of counterpoint, each part being equally important, is **fugue.**

—, vocal. The name for a type of vocal solo having a short contrasted section in the middle, followed by a repetition of the first part, is **aria.**

—, —. The name for a vocal composition resembling the madrigal, but with a chorus to "Fa-la" or similar words, is **ballet.**

—, —. The name for a vocal composition—a humorous variety of the round—in which the singers take up each other's words with a punning effect is **catch.**

—, —. An English type of vocal composition less elaborate than the madrigal, for three or four voices, generally in more than one movement, and often having an accompaniment, is the **glee.**

—, —. The name for a secular vocal composition for three or more voices, each having an elaborate imitative part, especially characteristic of sixteenth and early seventeenth music, is **madrigal.**

—, —. A type of vocal composition simpler than the glee and usually choral, for voices in three or more parts, consisting of a melody to which the remaining parts supply harmony, is a **part-song.**

—, —. The name for a form of vocal composition, used largely in oratorio and early Italian opera, in which the natural accent and inflexions of the speaking voice are retained by the use of musical declamation not bound by the strict rules of time, is **recitative.**

—, —. A vocal composition in which two or more voices, beginning at different moments, sing the same tune and form a complete harmony is a **round.**

—, —. The name given to a large and elaborate vocal solo, consisting generally of a recitative, cavatina, and aria, written either as an independent work or as part of an opera, is **scena.**

—, —. *See also under* **composition,** choral, *above; and* **opera** *and* **song,** *below.*

concertina. The name of an instrument resembling the concertina is **accordion.**

concerto. A brilliant solo instrumental passage (formerly always improvised), introduced near the end of a movement in a concerto, and designed to display the soloist's technique, is a **cadenza.**

—. A passage in a concerto for all the orchestral instruments, as distinguished from one for the solo instrument alone or with a light accompaniment is a **ritornello** or **tutti passage.**

contrabass. Another name for the contrabass is **double-bass.**

counterpoint. The melody to which a counterpoint, or additional melody or melodies, is added is the **canto fermo** or **theme.**

—. A name for the earliest medieval attempts at written counterpoint is **descant.**

—. Counterpoints consisting of two, three, four, or five tunes that may be combined in any order above or below one another are, respectively, **double, triple, quadruple, and quintuple.**

—. *See also* **tune,** *below.*

coupler. A name for a device for coupling octaves on keyboard instruments is **polychord.**

dance. A dance for any number of persons hand in hand is a **chain dance.**

—. A dance for two rows of persons facing each other is a **line dance.**

—. A dance for several persons joined in a circle is a **ring dance.**

—. A dance for numbers of linked couples who circle about among each other is a **round dance.**

—. A dance for sets of four persons facing inwards is a **square dance.**

—, ballroom. A ballroom round dance, a variety of the old-fashioned waltz, fashionable in the early years of this century, was the **Boston.**

—, —. A name for a compound ballroom dance of French origin for four couples, similar to the quadrille, is **cotillion.**

—, —. The name of a nineteenth century ballroom round dance, with two beats to the bar, and a springing rhythm, is **galop.**

—, —. The name of an elaborate ballroom dance, a form of cotillion, made up largely of waltzes, is **German.**

— —. The name of a ballroom dance, a form of quadrille, popular in the nineteenth century is **The Lancers.**

—, —. The name of an old-fashioned ballroom dance of Bohemian origin, with two beats to the bar, and many divided beats, is **polka.**

—, —. A kind of square, ballroom dance consisting of five separate figures, alternately of six and two beats to the bar, in which four couples take part is a **quadrille.**

—, —. The name of a ballroom dance resembling the polka, with many divided beats, is **schottische.**

—, —. The name of a ballroom dance for couples, originating in Spanish America, and allied to, but quicker than the habanera, is **tango.**

—, —. The name for a former ballroom dance in triple time, designed to imitate the mazurka, is **varsovienne.**

—, Bohemian. An impetuous and exciting Bohemian dance with many changes of rhythm and accent is the **furiant.**

—, —. The name of a lively Bohemian dance resembling the mazurka is **redowa.**

—, Cuban. The name of a Cuban dance in duple time and of a slow Spanish dance in duple or triple time is **habanera.**

—, English. A lively old English dance in triple or sextuple time, elaborated by musicians, and often used to conclude a suite, is a **gigue** or **jig.**

—, —. A sixteenth century English round dance was the **hay.**

—, —. The name of a favourite old English line dance in nine-eight time is **Sir Roger de Coverley.**

—, French. The name for an old French dance with a gliding step, originally in duple, and later in triple time, is **basse danse.**

—, —. Names for an old French dance in four-four time for a group of four men in armour, are **bouffons** and **matassins.**

—, —. The name for a lively French dance with two or four beats to the bar, that commences with the up beat, and is often included in instrumental suites, is **bourrée.**

—, —. The name of a lively French dance, resembling "follow my leader," popular in sixteenth century England is **branle** or **brawl.**

—, —. The name of an old French dance in quick six-eight time, resembling the gigue, is **canarie.**

—, —. A name for a lively French line dance of English origin in two-four or six-eight time is **contredance.**

—, —. The name of an old French dance in moderately quick triple time, often included in the suite, generally after an allemande, is **courante.**

dance, French. The name of an old French dance for two dancers, in spirited but not rapid triple time, often following a pavan in the suite, is **galliard.**

—, —. A name for an old and lively dance of French origin, usually in four-four time, beginning in the second half of the bar, is **gavotte.**

—, —. The name of an old French dance in slow triple or sextuple time, associated with the bagpipe, is **loure.**

—, —. A name for a piece of old French dance music with a drone-like bass imitating the bagpipe, sometimes serving as trio to a gavotte, is **musette.**

—, —. An old French round dance in quick triple time, sometimes included after a saraband in the suite, is the **passepied.**

—, German. A name for a lively old German dance in duple time, and later for a dance in four-four time with a flowing melody, often included in suites, is **allemande.**

—, Greek. The name of a warlike dance among the ancient Greeks, in which the movements of fighting warriors were imitated, is **pyrrhic.**

—, —. A national dance of modern Greece is the **romaika.**

—, —. The name of a dance used in the chorus of a satyrical drama of ancient Athens was **sicinnis.**

—, Hungarian. The name of a Hungarian national dance, consisting of a slow, sad movement (called the lassu), alternated with a rapid marchlike movement (the fris), is **czardas.**

—, —. A name for a brisk dance of Hungarian origin in double measure is **gallopade.**

—, Indian. A name for an East Indian spectacular performance of which the chief feature is a dance by professional woman dancers is **nautch.**

—, Irish. A name given loosely to a quick Irish dance and to similar English dances is **jig.**

—, —. A name for a lively Irish dance tune, played in triplets on the harp, but not so rapidly as a jig, is **planxty.**

—, Italian. An old Italian country dance with a vocal accompaniment, named after the city of Bergamo, is the **Bergamask.**

—, —. The name of a lively old Italian dance in duple time is **calata.**

—, —. The name of an old Italian round dance in triple time, in which the dancers took high leaps, popular in sixteenth century England, is **lavolta.**

—, —. An Italian dance in slow triple time with a repeated bass, often included in the suite, is the **passacaglia.**

—, —. The name of a light, springing Italian dance, usually in six-eight time, is **saltarello.**

—, Moravian. The name of a Moravian dance resembling but quicker than the polonaise is **hanacca.**

—, Neapolitan. The name of a rapid, whirling Neapolitan dance in six-eight time, with gradually accellerated tempo, is **tarantella** or **tarantelle.**

—, Norwegian. The name of a Norwegian national dance, allied to the reel and strathspey, but characterized by changes of speed, is **halling.**

—, Polish. A Polish dance in quick duple time with many syncopations is the **cracovienne.**

—, —. The name for a lively national dance of Poland, in triple time, with the musical accent falling on the second beat, is **mazurka.**

—, —. The name of a Polish national dance, allied to but wilder and more boisterous than the mazurka is **obertas.**

—, —. A stately national dance of Poland in slow triple time is the **polacca** or **polonaise.**

—, Provençal. A name for a gay Provençal chain dance in rapid six-eight time, popular among the peasants of Southern France and Northern Italy, is **farandole.**

dance, Provençal. The name of a Provençal dance for a single couple, in two-four or four-four time, beginning with an up beat, and characterized by a leaping step, is **rigaudon.**

—, —. The name of a lively Provençal dance in two-four time, originally accompanied by the tabor and pipe, is **tambour.**

—, Russian. The name of a lively Russian peasant dance is **gopak.**

—, rustic. Names given loosely to any rustic line dance are **contredance** and **country dance.**

—, —. A name for a rustic dance in four-four time, popular in Tudor England, is **morris** or **morris dance.**

—, sailor's. The name of an old English dance for a single dancer, in duple or triple time with many divided beats, now associated with sailors, is **hornpipe.**

—, Scottish. A name given to a lively line dance of Scottish origin, in duple time, is **écossaise.**

—, —. A lively Scottish dance in quadruple time, characterized by many knee thrusts or flings, is the **fling** or **Highland fling.**

—, —. The name of a spirited Scottish dance in which the couples face each other and describe a series of figures of eight, using gliding steps, is **reel.**

—, —. A name for a Scottish dance and its music, somewhat slower than the reel and abounding in jerky steps which match the unevenly divided beats of the music, is **strathspey.**

—, Sicilian. The name given to a slow, graceful peasant dance of Sicily, in six-eight time, with a smooth flowing movement is **siciliana.**

—, slow. The name for a slow dance in triple time, resembling the passacaglia, is **chaconne.**

—, Spanish. The name of a Spanish dance in lively triple time, derived from the seguidilla, is **bolero.**

—, —. A Spanish dance in moderate triple time, resembling the bolero, is the **cachucha.**

—, —. The name of an old Spanish dance that was a forerunner of the fandango, bolero, and cachucha, is **chica.**

—, —. A name for a lively Spanish dance in triple time, allied to the seguidilla, is **fandango.**

—, —. A lively Spanish dance in two sections, one in triple, the other in duple time, is a **guaracha.**

—, —. A name for a slow Spanish dance in triple time for a single dancer is **jaleo.**

—, —. The name of a Spanish dance for couples, somewhat resembling a waltz, is **jota.**

—, —. The name of an old Spanish dance in stately triple time, included in the instrumental dance suite, is **saraband.**

—, —. The name of an old Spanish dance for dancers in couples, the music being in triple time, is **seguidilla.**

—, stage. The name given to a dance or series of dances by one or more performers in an opera, etc., and to a dramatic story represented on the stage by means of dancing and pantomime, is **ballet.**

—, stately. A name for a stately dance of the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries for two dancers, with the music in three-four time, is **minuet.**

—, —. A slow stately dance, with music in two-two or three-two time, common in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries, was the **pavan.**

—, Styrian. The name of the slow Styrian peasant dance from which the waltz developed is **ländler.**

—, suite. The names of the chief ancient dance movements occurring in the classical suite are **allemande, bourrée, courante, gavotte, gigue, minuet, passepied,** and **saraband.**

—, Swedish. The name of a Swedish national dance in slow triple time with the beats much divided is **polska.**

dance, Venetian. A name for a quick Venetian dance in six-eight time, formerly a favourite of the gondoliers, is **forlana.**

dancer, ballet. A name for a woman dancer in a ballet is **ballerina.**

—, Indian. Names for a professional Indian girl dancer taking part in a nautch are **bayadère** and **nautch-girl.**

—, Japanese. A Japanese girl trained from early youth to dance, sing, and otherwise entertain guests at private parties, etc., is a **geisha.**

dancing. A gliding step in dancing is a **glissade.**

—, A name for the art of dancing is **orchesis** or **orchestics.**

—, ballet. A rapid whirling movement of the body while balanced on one foot, as performed by ballet dancers, is a **pirouette.**

dash. A vertical dash above or below a note indicates that it is to be played sharply detached or **staccatissimo.**

dead. The name given to a musical setting of the Roman Catholic Mass for the dead, and to other solemn choral and instrumental works written as tributes to the dead, is **requiem.**

decreasing. Musical directions meaning decreasing in force and speed, or dying away, are **morendo, perdendosi,** and **smorzando.**

—, force. Musical directions meaning decreasing in force or loudness are **decrescendo** and **diminuendo.**

—, speed. Musical directions meaning decreasing in speed are **meno mosso, rallentando,** and **ritardando.**

detached. A musical direction denoting that each note is to be somewhat detached and held for about three-quarters of its normal length is **mezzo-staccato.**

—. A musical direction indicating that each note is to be sharply detached and sounded for about one quarter of its normal length is **staccatissimo.**

—. A musical direction denoting that each note is to be detached or separated in performance, and given about one half of its normal length, is **staccato.**

discord. The progression of a discord or dissonant note to some other chord or note, according to the laws of harmony, is a **resolution.**

—. A discord produced by holding on a note from a previous chord while the notes of a fresh chord are sounded is a **suspension.**

—. *See also under* **chord,** *above.*

doleful. Musical directions meaning doleful or sad are **doloroso** and **mesto.**

dot. A dot with a short horizontal line above, placed over a note, indicates that it is to be played **marcato.**

—. A dot placed above or below each of a group of two or more notes connected by a slur indicates that they are to be played somewhat detached or **mezzo-staccato.**

—. A dot above or below a note indicates that it is to be played detached or **staccato.**

double-bass. Another name for the double-bass is **contrabass.**

—. The name of the largest instrument of the viol class, which was the precursor of the double-bass, is **violone.**

drum. Names for a very large, two-headed drum played with a single stick ending in a soft round knob are **bass drum** and **big drum.**

—. The name for a form of bass drum, resembling a large tambourine, sometimes used in orchestras, is **gong drum.**

—. A metal drum of a bowl-like shape, over the top of which a parchment head is stretched, is a **kettle drum.**

—. A small drum with two heads, gut cords being stretched across the lower head, the upper being played upon by two small drum-sticks, producing rhythmic effects and continuous rolls, is a **side drum** or **snare drum.**

drum. The name for a long, narrow, cylindrical drum, used in Provence, beaten with a single stick while the player performs upon a three-holed pipe with the other hand, is **tambourin.**

—. A large side drum, without gut strings across the lower head, used for rolls in military bands is a **tenor drum.**

—, Hindu. The name given to a kind of Hindu drum is **tom-tom.**

—, kettle. An old name for the kettle drum, used by Sir Walter Scott, is **naker.**

—, orchestral. The name given to an orchestral kettle drum, capable of being tuned to notes of definite pitch, is **timpano.**

—, rustic. A name for a small drum formerly used in rustic music to accompany a pipe, is **tabor.**

—, side. The name for the cords of catgut stretched across the lower head of a side drum, and rattling against the parchment at every stroke, is **snares.**

drumstick. The name for a drumstick with a soft round knob at the end, used for producing rolls on a bass drum, is **tampon.**

duet. Another name for a duet is **duo.**

—. The first part in a duet, especially the higher part in a piano duet, is the **primo.**

—. The second part in a duet, especially the lower part in a piano duet, is the **secondo.**

dulcimer. The name of a kind of dulcimer of Turkish origin is **kanoon.**

emphasis. Musical directions indicating that a single note or chord is to be given emphasis or increased accent are **forzato, rinforzando,** and **sforzando.**

end. A name for an independent passage introduced at the end of a movement to form a more decisive conclusion is **coda,** or, if very short, **codetta.**

—. A name for the movement at the end of a sonata, symphony, or similar work, for the last number in each act of an opera, and for the last composition in a concert programme, is **finale.**

evening. The name given to evening music, especially that sung or played as a compliment outside a person's house, is **serenade.**

expression. *See under the name of the particular feeling or emotion, as* **gentle, sad,** *etc.*

falsetto. A name given to a falsetto tenor singer is **tenorino.**

fanciful. A name for a musical composition of a fanciful or humorous character is **humoresque.**

fanfare. An old name for a trumpet fanfare or flourish is **tucket.**

fast. Musical directions meaning fast are **allegro, presto,** and **vivace.**

—, moderately. Musical directions indicating that a composition is to be performed moderately fast are **allegretto,** and **poco allegro.**

—, very. Musical directions meaning very fast are **allegro assai, allegro molto,** and **prestissimo.**

faster. A musical term meaning "faster" when used alone, and "more" when used with other terms, such as lento, forte, etc., is **piu.**

—. Musical directions meaning faster are **piu allegro, piu mosso,** and **veloce.**

—, gradually. Musical directions meaning gradually faster are **accelerando** and **stringendo.**

feelingly. Musical terms denoting that a passage is to be performed feelingly or expressively are **affetuoso** and **expressivo.**

festival, Irish. A name for an Irish festival at which there are singing and dancing contests, etc., is **feis.**

—, Welsh. A name for a competitive musical festival held in Wales, especially a periodical assembly of Welsh bards and musicians, with the object of cultivating national poetry, music, and customs, is **eisteddfod.**

fifth. Fifths, or notes three tones and a semitone apart, sounded alone, without an accompanying third, are **bare fifths.**

fifth. Two or more successive fifths sounded in the same parts in a progression of harmonies are **consecutive fifths.**

—. *See also under* **interval,** *below.*

fingerboard. Each of the small ridges across the fingerboard of certain stringed instruments to regulate the pitch of the notes is a **fret.**

—. The projecting part to which the fingerboard of a violin and certain other stringed instruments is fastened is the **manche** or **neck.**

—. The name for the ridge at the scroll end of the fingerboard of a violin and similar instruments is **nut.**

flourish. A flourish of trumpets, bugles, etc., is a **fanfare.**

flute. A small wood-wind instrument of the flute kind, with a mouthpiece leading into one end, the only survivor of the recorders, is a **flageolet.**

—. A name for a player on the flute is **flautist.**

—. The name for a small shrill flute with a pitch eight notes above that of the ordinary orchestral flute, is **piccolo.**

—. The name for a member of a family of sixteenth and seventeenth century instruments of the flute kind, blown at one end, and ranging in pitch from bass to treble, is **recorder.**

folk-song, German. The German name for a folk-song is a **volkslied.**

—, Tyrol. A name for a folk-song of the Tyrol, of which the yodel is a characteristic feature, is **Tyrolienne.**

force. Musical directions indicating that a chord or note is to be performed with force, or increased accent, are **forzando, forzato, rinforzando, sforzando,** and **sforzato.**

form. The chief musical forms, or set plans of composition, include the **aria, canon, fugue, minuet, overture, rondo, sonata, song, suite,** and **air with variations.**

—. A musical form in which there are two divisions or sections, is **binary form.**

—. A common form of composition consisting of three connected strains, the first and third being similar and the second contrasted in style and in a different key, is **song-form.**

—. A musical form in which there are three divisions or sections is **ternary form.**

fourth. *See under* **interval,** *below.*

freely. A musical direction denoting that a piece is to be played freely with the notes distinct and detached is **scioltamente.**

fugue. The repetition of the subject of a fugue by another voice and in another key is the **answer.**

—. The part which accompanies the answer of a fugue at its first entry is the **countersubject.**

—. A connective passage between the main divisions of a fugue is an **episode.**

—. The first section of a fugue in which the theme is sounded by each of the voices in turn is the **exposition.**

—. The section towards the end of a fugue where the subject and answer overlap and are brought closer and closer together is the **stretto.**

—. The theme, usually short and definite, with which a fugue opens is the **subject.**

—. Each of the distinct parts allotted to one singer, instrument, etc., in a fugue, is a **voice.**

gavotte. A name for the trio or alternative section of a gavotte, when the trio has a drone-like bass, is **musette.**

gay. A musical direction meaning gay is **giojoso.**

gentle. Musical directions meaning gentle, or gently, are **dolcemente** and **piacevole.**

gliding. Musical directions meaning gliding are **glissando, portamento,** and **portando.**

gong. A name for a kind of gong used as an orchestral instrument of percussion is **tam-tam.**

graceful. Musical directions meaning graceful, or with grace, are **con grazia** and **grazioso.**

gradually. Italian phrases meaning gradually, used with various other words in musical directions, are **poco a poco** and **poi a poi.**

gramophone. The name of a forerunner of the gramophone, invented by Edison in 1877, and having cylindrical records, is **phonograph.**

grandly. A musical direction which denotes that a passage is to be performed grandly or majestically is **maestoso.**

guitar. The name for a key on a guitar, which is pressed to raise the pitch of a string a semitone, is **dital.**

—. The name for a medieval Spanish guitar of simple form is **olhuela.**

—, Hawaiian. The name of a small, four-stringed Hawaiian instrument of the guitar type is **ukelele.**

—, Indian. The name of a plucked instrument of the guitar type common in Northern India, and usually having three strings, is **sitar.**

half. An Italian word, meaning half, used in musical directions relating to loudness or softness, etc., is **mezzo.**

harmonium. A general name for a type of harmonium in which air is forced inwards past sets of reeds is **American organ.**

—. Names given to certain early instruments of the harmonium class are **melodicon,** and **seraphine.**

—. A kind of harmonium having broad reeds vibrated by a high wind pressure, is a **vocalion.**

—, stop. The stop which cuts off the air reservoir of a harmonium, and renders the wind pressure directly dependent upon the action of the pedals, is the **expression stop.**

harmony. That species of harmony in which a definite key feeling or tonality is avoided is **atonal.**

—. The lowest part in harmony is the **bass.**

—. Harmony in which the notes of each chord are near together in pitch is **close harmony.**

—. Harmony in which the notes of the chords are far apart in pitch is **open harmony.**

—. That species of harmony in which more than one key is employed at once is **polytonal.**

—. A piece of harmony or melody repeated more than twice by regularly ascending or descending intervals is a **sequence.**

—, final. A final harmonic progression, generally giving an impression of completion or repose, with which a composition or section of a composition ends, is a **cadence.**

—, key. A harmony consisting of a succession of chords leading from one key to another is a **modulation.**

—. *See also* **cadence, chord,** *and* **discord,** *above*, *and* **interval** *and* **modulation,** *below.*

harp. An ancient Welsh harp-like instrument allied to the Greek lyre, some specimens being adapted to be played with a bow, was the **crowd** or **crwth.**

—. The orchestral harp, which has pedals for raising the pitch of the strings by one or two semitones, as required, is a **double-action harp.**

—. The name of an ancient stringed instrument resembling the harp is **lyre.**

harp tune, Irish. A name for a lively Irish harp tune played in triplets but not so rapidly as a jig, is **planxty.**

hastening. A musical term indicating that a passage is to be played in hastening time, usually with increasing loudness, is **stringendo.**

heavy. A musical term meaning heavy, and denoting that the tone is to be impressive, is **pesante.**

horn. Another name for the orchestral horn is **corno.**

—. An accessory piece of tubing used to change the pitch of a horn is a **crook.**

—. A name for the natural French horn without valves is **waldhorn.**

humour. A musical direction indicating that humour is required in performance is **capriccioso.**

hymn. A name for a non-metrical hymn or psalm, usually taken from the Bible and chanted during certain church services, is **canticle.**

—. Names for a kind of hymn sometimes sung in the Roman Catholic Church between the Epistle and the Gospel are **prose** and **sequence.**

—. A hymn sung in church when the clergy and choir return to the vestry from the chancel at the end of a service is a **recessional.**

hymn-tune. A name for a hymn-tune, especially for any of the Protestant hymn-tunes of the Reformation period, is **choral.**

imitation. *See under* **tune,** *below.*

impetuous. A musical direction indicating that a passage is to be played in an impetuous or noisy manner is **strepitoso.**

improvisation. The name for a Welsh form of improvisation by a singer and a harpist is **pennillion-singing.**

increasing force. A musical direction indicating that a passage is to be performed with increasing force or loudness is **crescendo.**

increasing speed. Musical directions denoting that a passage is to be played with gradually increasing speed are **accelerando** and **stringendo.**

—, —. Musical directions indicating that a passage is to be played with increasing speed are **piu allegro, piu mosso,** and **veloce.**

instrument. A general name for metal wind instruments having cup-shaped mouthpieces against which the lips act as reeds is **brass.**

—. A general name for instruments that are beaten or struck—drums, cymbals, triangle, etc.—is **percussion.**

—. A general name for stringed orchestral instruments played with the bow—violins, violas, violoncellos, etc.—is **strings.**

—. A general name for wooden wind instruments—especially orchestral instruments, such as flutes, clarinets, oboes, bassoons, etc.—is **wood-wind.**

—. *See also under names of instruments.*

—, bowed. *See under* **instrument,** stringed, *and* **viol,** *and* **violin,** *below.*

—, Egyptian. The name of an ancient Egyptian rattling or jingling instrument of metal, used in the worship of Isis, is **sistrum.**

—, five-stringed. A name for a five-stringed instrument is **pentachord.**

—, glass. An instrument having tuned pieces of glass of various shapes, vibrated by the moistened fingers, hammers, etc., and sometimes having a keyboard, is a **harmonica.**

—, Hebrew. The name of a Hebrew wind instrument of the trumpet kind, having a curved tube, still used in Jewish festivals, is **shofar.**

—, Indian. An Indian stringed instrument with a parchment-covered belly, corresponding to the European violin, is the **sarangi.**

—, —. The name of a small stringed instrument of the guitar type, common in Northern India, is **sitar.**

—, —. One of the most common stringed instruments of India, resembling the vina but having no gourd, is the **tambur.**

—, —. The chief stringed instrument of India, consisting of a bowl with a hollow neck to which a gourd is attached, and having seven strings stretched over a fretted keyboard, is the **vina.**

—, Japanese. A Japanese three-stringed musical instrument somewhat resembling the banjo is the **samisen.**

—, keyboard. A keyboard instrument in which steel plates are struck by hammers, used in some orchestral works, is the **celesta.**

—, —. A keyboard instrument which preceded the piano, but had metal wedges to vibrate the strings instead of hammers, was the **clavichord.**

Instrument, keyboard. Names for a wing-shaped keyboard instrument, one of the forerunners of the grand piano, having its strings plucked by quills, are **clavecin, clavicembalo,** and **harpsichord.**

—, —. An early keyboard instrument resembling the spinet, but having the sounding board and strings vertical, was a **clavicytherium.**

—, —. The name given to a small, early keyboard instrument resembling the harpsichord, but having a rectangular or pentagonal case, is **spinet.**

—, —. The name given in England during the sixteenth century to any keyboard instrument with plucked strings, especially one with a rectangular case, is **virginal** or **pair of virginals.**

—, —. *See also under* **piano,** *below.*

—, mechanical. A name for a large automatic machine which produces the effect of various orchestral instruments is **orchestrion** or **orchestrina.**

—, mouthpiece. A name for the mouthpiece of a wind instrument, and for the method of adjusting the mouth, teeth, etc., to produce tone on a wind instrument, is **embouchure.**

—, name. A name given to various instruments with a compass between bass and alto, especially the viola, is **tenor.**

—, neck. A name for the neck of a stringed musical instrument, such as the guitar, violin, etc., is **manche.**

—, percussion. The name of a percussion instrument consisting of a pair of small concave clappers of wood, ivory, or iron, used for rhythmic effects in Spanish and other music, is **castanets.**

—, —. A name for an instrument of percussion consisting of a pair of concave metal plates, either clashed together or struck by a drumstick, is **cymbals.**

—, —. A name given to a set of tuned bells or metal rods in a framework, used as a percussion instrument in orchestras, is **glockenspiel.**

—, —. An instrument of percussion resembling the xylophone but having a number of metal plates which are struck with wooden hammers is the **metallophone.**

—, —. A name for a gong when used as an instrument of percussion in an orchestra is **tam-tam.**

—, —. The name for an instrument of percussion consisting of a metal rod bent into a triangular shape, suspended by a string and struck by a metal bar, is **triangle.**

—, —. A percussion instrument consisting of a series of wooden bars, tuned to the notes of the scale, and played with two small hammers, is a **xylophone.**

—, —. *See also under* **drum,** *above.*

—, range. A name for the range or compass of a musical instrument is **diapason.**

—, reed. The name for a small portable free-reed instrument, with collapsible bellows between two blocks, on which are keys or finger studs for each hand, is **accordion.**

—, —. A portable free-reed instrument resembling the accordion but having hexagonal ends, finger studs only, and an improved reed-action, is a **concertina.**

—, —. The general name for members of a group of brass wind instruments of various sizes, having a conical bore and a double reed, is **sarrusophone.**

—, —. An instrument with a conical metal tube and a single reed, invented by Adolphe Sax and made in several pitches from soprano to bass, is a **saxophone.**

—, —. A name for a metal tube for holding the reeds of an oboe or similar instrument is **staple.**

—, —. *See also under* **instrument,** wood-wind, *below.*

—, Russian. The name of a family of Russian stringed instruments of the guitar type, having a triangular body, is **balalaika.**

Instrument, Spanish. The Spanish stringed instrument resembling but smaller than the guitar, and played with a plectrum, is the **bandurria.**

—, —. The name of the chief Spanish stringed instrument having a flat back with incurved sides, a fretted keyboard, and catgut strings plucked with the fingers, is **guitar.**

—, stringed. An ancient toy instrument consisting of an oblong box across which thin strings tuned in unison are stretched, harmonics being produced by the action of the wind, is an **Aeolian harp.**

—, —. Names for varieties of cither, resembling but larger than the mandoline, are **bandora** and **mandora.**

—, —. The name for a plucked stringed instrument with a body like a drum-head, and a long neck, is **banjo.**

—, —. A name for a kind of small banjo with a somewhat soft tone is **banjulele.**

—, —. A popular stringed instrument of the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries, having a pear-shaped body with a flat back, played with a plectrum, was the **cither.**

—, —. An ancient stringed instrument consisting of wires stretched over a resonance box, played with small hammers held in the hands, and regarded as a forerunner of the piano, is the **dulcimer.**

—, —. Each of the small ridges on the finger-board of certain stringed instruments to regulate the pitch of the notes is a **fret.**

—, —. A name for a stringed instrument resembling a harp or guitar, the strings being vibrated by turning a rosined wheel, is **hurdy-gurdy.**

—, —. A small bowed, stringed instrument, shaped like a miniature violin, used by dancing masters in the eighteenth century, was the **kit** or **pochette.**

—, —. The name of an ancient pear-shaped instrument of the guitar family having a fretted keyboard, with catgut strings plucked with the fingers, is **lute.**

—, —. The name of one of the most ancient of stringed instruments, resembling a harp, but having fewer strings, usually seven in number, is **lyre.**

—, —. The name of a small stringed instrument of the lute kind, with a fretted keyboard and strings tuned in pairs and played with a plectrum, is **mandoline.**

—, —. The name of an ancient stringed instrument resembling the dulcimer, but played with the fingers or with a plectrum, is **psaltery.**

—, —. The name of a bowed stringed instrument formerly played in India and Ceylon and regarded as the earliest instrument of the violin class is **ravanastron.**

—, —. The mediaeval bowed instrument with three strings, a pear-shaped body, and small round sound holes, was the **rebeck.**

—, —. The name of a small, four-stringed Hawaiian instrument of the guitar type is **ukelele.**

—, —. The general name of members of the family of bowed stringed instruments with flat backs, sloping shoulders and C-shaped sound holes, that preceded the violin family, is **viol.**

—, —. A modern stringed instrument, consisting of many strings stretched over a flat resonance box and played with a plectrum —popular in Bavaria, Styria, and Tyrol—is the **zither.**

—, —. *See also under* **viol** *and* **violin,** *below.*

—, Turkish. A Turkish instrument resembling the dulcimer is the **kanoon.**

—, Welsh. An ancient Welsh stringed instrument allied to the Greek lyre, later adapted to be played with a bow, was the **crowd** or **crwth.**

—, wind. The largest and deepest toned wind instrument of the saxhorn type used in brass bands is the **bombardon.**

instrument, wind. A treble wind instrument allied to the horn and trumpet, having a somewhat short conical tube provided with three valves with pistons is a **cornet.**

—, —. The name for a tube which can be fitted to a wind instrument to change the pitch is **crook.**

—, —. The name for the brass wind instrument of the saxhorn family, regarded as the highest in pitch of the tubas, is **euphonium.**

—, —. One of the chief orchestral brass wind instruments, having a very long conical tube bent spirally, with a funnel-shaped mouthpiece and a wide bell, now always provided with valves, is the **horn.**

—, —. A name for a small, egg-shaped, toy musical instrument blown through a mouthpiece is **ocarina.**

—, —. A bass wind instrument of the bugle class, having a conical brass tube doubled on itself like the bassoon, and holes stopped by keys, now superseded by the tuba, was the **ophicleide.**

—, —. The name given to a vibrating part in certain wind instruments is **reed.**

—, —. A mediaeval wind instrument of the trumpet class, having a slide like the trombone, was the **sackbut.**

—, —. The general name for members of a family of brass wind instruments having a broad cup-shaped mouthpiece, and a conical bore with valves, invented by Adolphe Sax, is **saxhorn.**

—, —. An old bass wind instrument of conical bore, named from its S-shaped leather-covered tube, with a cup mouthpiece on a projecting metal crook, was the **serpent.**

—, —. The use of the tongue to produce rapidly iterated notes in playing certain wind instruments is **tonguing.**

—, —. A large deep-toned brass wind instrument of the trumpet class, having a slide for producing chromatic notes, or else provided with valves, is the **trombone.**

—, —. One of the chief orchestral brass wind instruments, having a conical bore for the greater part of its length, and a cup-shaped mouthpiece, now always provided with valves, is the **trumpet.**

—, —. A general name for bass wind instruments of the saxhorn type, having a wide bore, is **tuba.**

—, —. A name given to each of the finger holes or keys of a wind instrument is **ventage.**

—, —. An old wind instrument having a slightly conical leather-covered wooden tube pierced with finger-holes and a cup-shaped mouthpiece, was the **zinke.**

—, wood-wind. A tenor wood-wind instrument of the clarinet class, with a curved bell-shaped metal end, is a **basset-horn.**

—, —. A bass wood-wind instrument of the oboe class, having a long conical tube doubled back upon itself, and blown through a curved pipe, is a **bassoon.**

—, —. Names for an ancient double-reed wood-wind instrument which was a bass member of the shawm class and a forerunner of the bassoon are **bombard** and **pommer.**

—, —. A treble wood-wind orchestral instrument of cylindrical bore with a single reed, having a smoother tone than the oboe, is a **clarinet.**

—, —. A tenor wood-wind instrument of the oboe class sounding a fifth lower than the oboe, and having an upward curved end, is a **cor Anglais, corno Inglese,** or **English Horn.**

—, —. A large bassoon having a gruff tone and extending nearly an octave lower in pitch than the ordinary bassoon is a **double bassoon.**

—, —. A name for a simple wood-wind instrument allied to the piccolo, used with drums in some military music, is **fife.**

instrument, wood-wind. A small wind instrument of the whistle type, having a mouthpiece at one end, is a **flageolet.**

—, —. The tubular wood-wind instrument played by blowing across a hole in the side near the left end, and producing the three octaves above middle C, is the **flute.**

—, —. The name of a small wood-wind instrument resembling the oboe is **musette.**

—, —. A treble wood-wind orchestral instrument, with a conical tube, having a double reed, and producing a penetrating tone, is an **oboe.**

—, —. The name of a wood-wind instrument of the oboe class, sounding a minor third lower than the ordinary oboe, and employed by J. S. Bach is **oboe d'amore.**

—, —. A small, shrill, wood-wind instrument less than half the size of the flute, and closely resembling it, is a **piccolo.**

—, —. The name for members of a family of wood-wind instruments of the whistle type (popular in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries), ranging from bass to treble, of which the flageolet alone survives, is **recorder.**

—, —. The general name for a family of old wood-wind instruments having a conical tube with a flaring bell and a double-reed enclosed in an ivory cup is **shawm.**

—, —. *See also under* **instrument,** reed, *above.*

interval. Any interval greater by a semitone than the corresponding perfect or major interval is **augmented.**

—. The interval between a natural note and its sharp, a sharp note and its double sharp, and a flat note and its natural, etc., is an **augmented prime, chromatic semitone,** or **minor semitone.**

—. Two intervals which together make up an octave are **complementary.**

—. Any interval greater than an octave is **compound.**

—. Any interval less by a semitone than the corresponding perfect or minor interval is **diminished.**

—. The interval of an octave and a fourth is an **eleventh.**

—. Intervals between pairs of notes that have only a nominal difference of pitch, such as D sharp and E flat, on a keyboard instrument are **enharmonic.**

—. When both the notes forming an interval are sounded together the interval is **harmonic.**

—. An interval greater by one semitone than the corresponding minor interval is a **major interval.**

—. An interval of a whole tone between successive notes is a **major second.**

—. An interval containing five tones and one semitone is a **major seventh.**

—. An interval containing four tones and a semitone is a **major sixth.**

—. An interval between any note and the next but one, if containing two whole tones, is a **major third.**

—. When the two notes of an interval are sounded in succession the interval is **melodic.**

—. An interval less by one semitone than the corresponding major interval is a **minor interval.**

—. The interval between a natural note and the flat note next above, etc., is a **minor second.**

—. An interval containing four tones and two semitones is a **minor seventh.**

—. An interval containing three tones and two semitones is a **minor sixth.**

—. An interval between any note and the next but one, if containing three semitones, is a **minor third.**

—. The interval of an octave and a second is a **ninth.**

—. An interval of an eighth, containing twelve semitones, is an **octave.**

interval. The intervals of a fifth, containing three whole tones and one semitone, a fourth, containing two whole tones and one semitone, and an octave, containing five whole tones and two semitones, are **perfect.**

—. An interval of three whole tones and a semitone, equalling seven semitones, is a **perfect fifth.**

—. An interval comprising two whole tones and a semitone, equalling five semitones, is a **perfect fourth.**

—. The interval between two notes of the same pitch and same name is **prime** or **unison.**

—. An interval of half a semitone is a **quarter-tone.**

—. The interval between a note and that next above it or below it in the diatonic scale is a **second.**

—. An interval of a minor second, the smallest in general use in European music, is a **semitone.**

— An interval that does not exceed an octave is **simple.**

—. The interval of an octave and a sixth is a **thirteenth.**

—. An interval of a major second, or two semitones, is a **tone.**

. An interval of three whole tones, making an augmented fourth, is a **tritone.**

—, measuring. A name for a scientific instrument consisting of a single string stretched over a sound board with a movable bridge, used for measuring musical intervals, is **monochord.**

—, small. The name used in the analysis of musical sounds for the small interval that is the difference between three true major thirds and an octave, is **diesis** or **enharmonic diesis.**

—, smallest. A name used in the analysis of musical sounds for the smallest audible interval of tone, representing about one fifth of a semitone, is **comma.**

introduction. A phrase, theme, or short movement which serves as an introduction to a musical composition is a **prelude.**

key. The sharp or flat, or group of sharps or flats, placed at the beginning of a composition to indicate the key in which it is written is the **key signature.**

—. A key in which the intervals of a third and sixth above the keynote are major is a **major key.**

—. A key in which the intervals of a third and sixth above the keynote are minor is a **minor key.**

—. The key of C major is the **natural key.**

—. Major and minor keys having the same signature are **relative keys.**

—. To write or play music in a key different from that in which it is scored is to **transpose.**

—, change. Any change of key is a **modulation.**

—, —. A name for a sudden change of key, and also for a brief modulation, is **transition.**

—, —. *See also under* **modulation,** *below.*

keyboard. A name for a keyboard used in playing a carillon or chime of bells is **clavecin.**

—. Names for each of the keyboards played with the hands, on an organ, are **clavier** and **manual.**

keyboard instrument. *See under* **instrument,** *above*; *and* **piano,** *below.*

keynote. A name for the keynote with which a diatonic scale begins and ends is **tonic.**

lamentation. A name given to a song of lamentation is **threnody.**

less. An Italian word used in musical directions and meaning less is **meno.**

light. Musical directions indicating that a composition or passage is to be performed with lightness and nimbleness are **leggiero** and **sciolto.**

line. An upright line crossing the staff is a **bar** or **bar line.**

—. A short line placed above or below the staff for marking the position of higher or lower notes is a **ledger line** or **leger line.**

line A short horizontal line with a dot below, placed over a note, indicates that it is to be played **marcato.**

—. The group of five parallel horizontal lines on or between which notes are written to show their relative pitch is the **staff.**

—. The vertical line extending either upwards or downwards from the head of a note is the **stem** or **tail.**

—, curved. A curved line connecting two or more notes of the same pitch to show that the first note is to be sustained for the time of the whole group is a **bind** or **tie.**

—, —. A curved line connecting two or more notes of different pitch to show that they are to be sung to one syllable, phrased together, or played smoothly is a **slur.**

lively. Musical directions meaning lively are **allegro, vivace,** and **vivo.**

loud. A musical direction meaning loud is **forte.**

—. A musical direction indicating that a chord or note is to be suddenly loud and then soft is **fortepiano.**

—. Musical directions denoting that a chord or note, etc., is to be performed with special emphasis or loudness are **forzato, rinforzando, sforzando** and **sforzato.**

—, half. The musical direction indicating that the tone produced is to be moderately loud, or half loud, but not so soft as mezzo piano, is **mezzo forte.**

—, less. Directions denoting that the music is to decrease in loudness and speed are **decrescendo** and **diminuendo.**

—, —. A musical direction meaning less loud is **meno forte.**

—, very. A musical direction meaning very loud, usually abbreviated to *ff*, is **fortissimo.**

louder. A musical direction denoting that the tone is to be made louder is **crescendo.**

lute. Names for the largest form of lute are **archlute** and **theorbo.**

—. A player on the lute is a **lutanist.**

—. A name for a lute maker, and for a maker of violins, is **luthier.**

—. The name of the system of notation employing letters, etc., instead of notes, formerly used for the lute is **tablature.**

lyre. An ancient harp-like instrument of Wales, allied to the Greek lyre, later adapted to be played with a bow, was the **crowd** or **crwth.**

madrigal. A name for a madrigal with a chorus to "Fa-la" or similar words, is **ballet.**

—. A name for the highest voice part in a madrigal is **cantilena.**

majestic. Musical directions meaning majestic are **maestoso** and **pomposo.**

major. An Italian word meaning major, used in music, is **maggiore.**

mandolin. Names for each of the small ridges across the fingerboard of a mandolin, against which the strings are pressed to obtain different notes, are **fret** and **stop.**

—. The name of an old stringed instrument shaped like a mandolin, but of larger size, the strings being plucked with the fingers, is **lute.**

—. The small piece of ivory, quill, wood, etc., used for plucking the strings of the mandolin and other instruments, is a **plectrum.**

march. Names for a march played during an introductory procession, as at the beginning of a ballet, are **entrée** and **intrada.**

—. A march in rapid time is a **quickstep.**

—. A name for the middle contrasting section of a march, which is followed by the repetition of the first section, is **trio.**

—. *See also under section* Army, Navy, Air Force, and Nautical.

Mass. The name for a response sung after the epistle in the Roman Catholic Mass is **gradual.**

Mass. In the Roman Catholic Church the name given to the part of a psalm or an antiphon sung at the beginning of the Mass is **Introit.**

—. The main musical divisions of the Mass—each generally subdivided—are the **Kyrie, Gloria, Credo, Sanctus,** and **Agnus Dei.**

—. Names for a kind of hymn sometimes sung in the Roman Catholic Mass between the Epistle and the Gospel are **prose** and **sequence.**

—. A musical setting of the Mass for the dead is a **Requiem.**

melody. *See under* **tune,** *below.*

minor. An Italian word meaning minor, used in musical directions, is **minore.**

minstrel. The name for an early Celtic minstrel-poet is **bard.**

—. A mediaeval minstrel of Provence and Northern France who made a trade of song, poetry, and narrative, as distinguished from the knightly minstrels, was a **jongleur.**

—. The name for a member of a German guild of poet-musicians or minstrels following humble trades in the fourteenth to sixteenth centuries is **meistersinger.**

—. The name for a class of mediaeval German poet-composers, generally of knightly birth, who sang as minstrels in the houses of great nobles is **minnesingers.**

—. The name given to an ancient Scandinavian or Norse poet or minstrel is **scald.**

—. A knightly mediaeval minstrel or poet-musician of Provence who sang lyrics in the *langue d'oc* or Provençal was a **troubadour.**

—. A knightly mediaeval minstrel or poet-musician of northern France who sang narrative poems in old French was a **trouvère.**

minuet. The name given to a sonata movement having a lively or humorous nature, developed from the classical minuet, is **scherzo.**

—. The name given to the middle contrasting movement of a minuet, march, etc., is **trio.**

mode. Names given to the eight modes, four authentic and four plagal, used in early church music are **church modes, ecclesiastical modes,** and **Gregorian tones.**

—. The scales used in ancient Greek music, having similar names to the ecclesiastical modes but different intervals, are the **Greek modes.**

—, church. In addition to the Ionian, the later authentic church modes, having their intervals as on the white keys of the piano, beginning at A and B, respectively, are the **Aeolian** and **Locrian.**

—, —. The four chief ecclesiastical modes or scales said to have been introduced by St. Ambrose, and having their final note or tonic on the first degree of the scale, are **authentic modes.**

—, —. The four authentic church modes, having their intervals as on the white keys of the piano, beginning at D, F, G, and E, respectively, are the **Dorian, Lydian, Mixolydian,** and **Phrygian.**

—, —. The four plagal church modes, having their intervals as on the white keys of the piano, beginning at A, C, D, and B, respectively, are the **Hypodorian, Hypolydian, Hypomixolydian,** and **Hypophrygian.**

—, —. The sixteenth century authentic church mode that is identical with the modern C major scale is the **Ionian mode.**

—, —. The four chief ecclesiastical modes or scales said to have been introduced by Gregory the Great, distinguished by having the final note or tonic on the fourth degree of the scale, are **plagal modes**

—, Greek. Ancient Greek modes having a semitone between the second and third, and fifth and sixth notes are **authentic.**

—, —. The ancient Greek authentic mode beginning on the note D is the **Dorian mode.**

mode, Greek. The names of the ancient Greek plaga modes, beginning on the notes A, C sharp, D, and B respectively, were the **Hypodorian, Hypolydian, Hypomixolydian,** and **Hypophrygian.**

—, —. The ancient Greek authentic mode beginning on the note F sharp is the **Lydian mode.**

—, —. The ancient Greek authentic mode beginning on the note G is the **Mixolydian mode.**

—, —. The ancient Greek authentic mode beginning on the note E and associated with martial music is the **Phrygian mode.**

—, —. Ancient Greek modes having a semitone between the first and second, and fifth and sixth notes are **plagal.**

moderate speed. A musical direction indicating that a composition is to be performed at a moderate speed is **moderato.**

—. *See also under* **fast,** *above; and* **slow,** *below.*

modulation. A modulation in which a chord common to two keys is used as a connecting link in passing from one to the other is a **diatonic modulation.**

—. A modulation in which the letter names only of a chord are changed, the pitch remaining unaltered when passing into the new key, is an **enharmonic modulation.**

—. A name for a brief modulation followed by a return to the original key, and also for a sudden change of key, is **transition.**

more. The musical term meaning "more" when used with other terms—such as lento, forte—and denoting "quicker" when used alone, is **piu.**

morning. A name for a song or piece of music associated with dawn or the morning, as opposed to a serenade, is **aubade.**

mournful. Musical directions meaning mournful or plaintive are **doloroso, lagrimoso,** and **mesto.**

mouthpiece. The curved tube connecting the body of a bassoon, saxophone, etc., with the mouthpiece or reed is a **crook.**

—. A name given to the mouthpiece of a wind instrument, and also to the method of adjusting the mouth, etc., to produce tone on a wind instrument, is **embouchure.**

movement. Movement in music imparted by the regular or significant recurrence of emphasis is **rhythm.**

—, rhythmical. The art and practice of rhythmical movement, especially in connexion with dancing to music, is **eurhythmics.**

mute. Another name for the mute of a violin or related instrument is **sordino.**

necessary. A musical term meaning necessary or indispensable is **obbligato.**

neck. A name for the neck of a guitar, violin, or other stringed musical instrument is **manche.**

nimble. A musical direction meaning nimble is **sciolto.**

noisy. The musical term indicating that a passage is to be played in a noisy or impetuous manner is **strepitoso.**

notation. The form of notation introduced in the twelfth century and indicating the length as well as the pitch of musical sounds is **mensural notation.**

—. A name for a dot, dash, or other sign used in the notation of ancient church music is **neume.**

—. The name for an old system of notation in which pitch was shown by letters, numbers, etc., instead of notes, is **tablature.**

—. The name of a system of musical notation by the use of the syllables doh, ray, me, fah, etc., or their initial letters, for the notes of the scale, is **Tonic Sol-fa.**

note. The oval part of a written or printed musical note is the **head.**

—. Names for the crook or stroke attached to the stem of a quaver or smaller note are **hook** and **pennant.**

note. The name for the group of five parallel horizontal lines on or between which notes are written to define their relative pitch is **staff.**

—. The vertical stroke, pointing either upward or downward, attached to a written or printed musical note is the **stem** or **tail.**

—, connected. Names for a curved line connecting two or more notes of the same pitch, to show that the first note is to be sustained for the time of the whole group, are **bind** and **tie.**

—, —. A curved line connecting two or more notes of different pitch to show that they are to be sung to one syllable, phrased together, or played smoothly is a **slur.**

—, group. An artificial group of two equal notes to be played in the time of three of the same kind is a **couplet, duole,** or **duplet.**

—, —. A name for a small group of notes having a distinct character or significance is **figure.**

—, —. An artificial group of four equal notes to be played in the time of three of the same kind is a **quadruplet.**

—, —. An artificial group of five equal notes to be performed in the time of four, three, or six of the same kind is a **quintuplet.**

—, —. An artificial group of seven equal notes to be performed in the time of six or four of the same kind is a **septuplet.**

—, —. An artificial group of six equal notes to be performed in the time of four of the same kind is a **sextolet** or **sextuplet.**

—, —. An artificial group of three equal notes to be played in the time of two of the same kind is a **triplet.**

—, high. A high bell-like note or overtone obtainable on some stringed instruments by touching a string lightly so that it vibrates in parts is a **flageolet tone** or **harmonic.**

—, —. High notes of the scale above the highest line of the treble clef, but below the G an octave above, are in **alt.**

—, —. High notes of the scale above F in alt (an octave above the treble clef) are in **altissimo.**

—, linking. A note which serves to link other notes but is not itself a part of the harmony to which they belong is a **passing note.**

—, lowered. A note lowered by half a tone below the note from which it gets its name is a **flat.**

—, name. The musical note twice the value of a semibreve, written as an open oval without a stem, but with one or two short upright lines at each end, is a **breve** or **double-note.**

—, —. The black-headed note with a stem, half the value of a minim and twice that of a quaver, is a **crotchet** or **quarter-note.**

—, —. The black-headed note with a stem and three hooks, half the value of a semiquaver, is a **demisemiquaver** or **thirty-second note.**

—, —. The black-headed note with a stem and four hooks, half the value of a demisemiquaver, is a **hemidemisemiquaver, semidemisemiquaver,** or **sixty-fourth note.**

—, —. The musical note—twice the duration of a crochet and half that of a semibreve—written as an open oval with a stem is a **minim** or **half-note.**

—, —. The black-headed musical note with a stem and one hook, half the value of a crotchet, is a **quaver** or **eighth-note.**

—, —. The musical note twice the value of a minim, written as an open oval without a stem, is a **semibreve** or **whole-note.**

—, —. The black-headed note with a stem and two hooks, half the value of a quaver, is a **semiquaver** or **sixteenth-note.**

—, ornamental. A name for an ornamental note used to embellish a melody is **grace-note.**

—, prolonged. The sign placed over or under a note or rest, indicating that it is to be prolonged, is the **pause.**

—, raised. A note raised half a tone above the note from which it gets its name is a **sharp.**

note, run. A diatonic run of notes filling an interval between two main notes of a melody is a **tirade.**

—, scale. The names for each of the seven notes of a diatonic scale in ascending order, beginning with the keynote, are **tonic, supertonic, mediant, subdominant, dominant, submediant,** and **leading note.**

—, small. A small note, generally a quaver or a semiquaver, with a slanting stroke through its hook, written before an ordinary note and played with great rapidity is an **acciaccatura.**

—, —. A small note written before an ordinary note and given half the value of the principal note, or two thirds if that note is divisible by three, is an **appoggiatura.**

—, sustained. A note, usually in the bass, which is sustained through several harmonies is a **pedal, pedal-note,** or **pedal-point.**

—. *See also under* **ornament** *and* **scale,** *below.*

obligatory. A musical term meaning obligatory or essential is **obbligato.**

oboe. The name for a kind of oboe a minor third lower in pitch than the ordinary instrument, employed by J. S. Bach, is **oboe d'amore.**

—. The general name for members of a family of double-reed instruments that preceded the oboe, English horn, and bassoon, is **shawm.**

octave. Another name for an octave is **eighth.**

opera. A name for opera proper, in which there is no spoken dialogue, is **grand opera.**

—. A name for a form of opera with light music, including comic scenes, is **opéra bouffe.**

—. A name for a type of opera in which there is spoken dialogue is **opéra comique.**

—. An opera in one act, generally of a humorous nature, is an **operetta.**

—, introduction. A name for an extended instrumental piece introducing the first act of an opera is **overture.**

—, —. A name for an introductory orchestral piece shorter than an overture, placed before the first or succeeding acts of an opera, and written in the style of a tone-poem, is **prelude.**

—, manager. A name given to one who manages, conducts, or organizes opera companies, etc., is **impresario.**

—, music. A name given to a piece of music performed between the acts of an opera is **intermezzo.**

—, outline. An outline of the scenes and main points of an opera, etc., is a **scenario.**

—, singer. A name given to the principal woman singer in a comic opera is **prima buffa.**

—, —. A name given to the principal woman singer in an opera is **prima donna.**

—, —. A name given to the principal male singer in a comic opera is **primo buffo.**

—, solo. The name for a type of vocal solo developed in early Italian operas, etc., having a short contrasted section in the middle followed by a repetition of the opening part, is **aria.**

—, —. A name for a brilliant vocal passage (formerly improvised) introduced near the end of a solo in some operas to display the singer's voice, and generally sung to the sound ah, is **cadenza.**

—, —. A name for a solo consisting of a smooth, melodious air with no contrasting second strain, forming part of an operatic scena, is **cavatina.**

—, —. The name for a solo part in an opera in which the accent and inflexions of natural speech are retained by using a kind of musical declamation not bound by the strict rules of time is **recitative.**

—, —. The name given to an elaborate vocal solo, consisting generally of a recitative, cavatina, and aria, either forming part of an opera or written as an independent work is **scena**

opera, words. The book of words of an opera, oratorio, etc., is a **libretto.**

operetta. Another name for a comic operetta or musical farce is **burletta.**

oratorio. The name for a short choral composition resembling an oratorio, but of a lyrical nature, with a sacred or secular subject is **cantata.**

—. A name given to a type of oratorio in which the Gospel account of Christ's sufferings in Gethsemane and on the Cross is set to music is **Passion.**

—, words. The book of words of an oratorio, opera, etc., is the **libretto.**

—. *See also* **composition,** vocal, *above.*

orchestra. A name used of all or any of the metal wind instruments with a cup-shaped mouthpiece (horns, trumpets, trombones, tubas, etc.) in an orchestra is **brass.**

—. A name used of those instruments in an orchestra which are struck or beaten (drums, cymbals, triangle, etc.) is **percussion.**

—. A name used of all or any of the stringed instruments played with a bow (violins, violas, violoncellos, and double-basses) in an orchestra is **strings.**

—. A name used of all or any of the wooden wind instruments (flutes, clarinets, oboes, bassoons, etc.) in an orchestra is **wood-wind.**

organ. That division of a large organ having stops of soft and delicate tone, used for accompanying solo singing, etc., is the **choir organ.**

—. That division of some large organs, the pipes of which are placed at a distance from the rest of the instrument, is the **echo organ.**

—. The main division of an organ, operated by its own keyboard, and having loud flue and reed stops, is the **great organ.**

—. That division of an organ which is operated by pedals, contains pipes of deep pitch, and supplies the main bass notes, is the **pedal organ.**

—. A name for a division of some large organs having a number of pipes constructed to imitate the sounds of orchestral instruments is **solo organ.**

—. That division of an organ having pipes enclosed in a swell-box and capable of modification of tone power is the **swell organ.**

—, American. A name for an early type of American reed organ is **melodeon** or **melodion.**

—, bellows. A reservoir or box filled with compressed air by the bellows for sounding the pipes of an organ is a **wind-chest.**

—, —. The passage connecting the bellows of an organ with the wind-chest or air reservoir is the **wind-trunk.**

—, coupler. The name given to a coupler causing the pedals of a small organ to operate the notes of the manual keyboard is **tirasse.**

—, description. A tabulated description of an organ, giving the number, arrangement, and names of the stops, couplers, pedals, etc., is a **specification.**

—, discord. A name for a discord heard in certain keys on an organ not tuned in equal temperament is **wolf.**

—, fixed. An old name for an organ which is fixed and not portable is **positive organ.**

—, gallery. The name for the raised gallery in which some organs are placed is **organ-loft.**

—, inventor. The legendary inventor of the organ, and the patron saint of music, is **Saint Cecilia.**

—, key. A name for a wooden key played by the foot on an organ, and for a foot-lever controlling stops, is **pedal.**

—, keyboard. That part of an organ under the immediate control of the performer, including pedals, manuals, draw-stops, etc., is the **console.**

—, —. Names for each of the keyboards for the hands on an organ are **manual** and **clavier.**

organ, mechanism. A name for a lever operated by a sticker, employed in the mechanism of an organ to change an upward motion into a downward one, is a **backfall.**

—, —. A name for a mechanical device by which the keys of an organ manual or pedal are made to operate those of another keyboard is **coupler.**

—, —. A name for a wooden rod used to transmit a push or forward pressure in the mechanism of an organ is **sticker.**

—, —. A name for a thin wooden rod in the mechanism of an organ operated by pulling only is **tracker.**

—, pedal. A name for a mechanical pedal on an organ for opening or closing a group of stops is **composition.**

—, —. A name sometimes given to an organ pedal is **foot-key.**

—, pipe. An organ pipe from which sound is produced by the wind passing through a shaped hole or flue and striking against a lip above is a **flue-pipe.**

—, —. A thin metal tongue in a reed pipe of an organ that produces sounds by means of rapid vibrations is a **free reed.**

—, —. An ordinary organ flue-pipe (as opposed to a stopped pipe, which sounds an octave lower) is an **open pipe.**

—, —. A name for a spring valve which admits air into an organ pipe, or pipes, is **pallet.**

—, —. The main type of organ pipe besides the flue-pipe is the **reed pipe.**

—, —. A term used of the sounding of a note on an organ pipe is **speech.**

—, —. Names for a set of pipes in an organ, all having the same tone quality, is **stop.**

—, —. An organ flue-pipe that is plugged or covered at the top and sounds an octave lower than an open pipe of the same length is a **stopped pipe.**

—, —. A chamber containing certain organ pipes, and having movable slats at the front with which the sound can be decreased and increased is a **swell-box.**

—, —. The name given to a stopper for the top of a stopped organ pipe is **tampion or tompion.**

—, —. The method of adjusting an organ pipe to obtain the proper pitch and tone quality is **voicing.**

—, portable. An old name for a kind of organ which can be carried about is **portative.**

—, —. A type of portable organ with beating reeds formerly in use was the **regal.**

—, solo. One of the chief musical forms used for organ solos is the **fugue.**

—, —. A solo part for an organ between the stanzas of a hymn, or between portions of a church service, is an **interlude.**

—, —. An organ solo played at the end of a church service is a **postlude.**

—, —. An organ solo played at the beginning of a church service is a **prelude.**

—, —. A name for a short organ solo used as a prelude or interlude is **verset.**

—, —. A general name for an organ solo played before, during, or after a church service is **voluntary.**

—, —. *See also under* **composition,** keyboard, etc., *above.*

—, stop. An organ stop with stopped wooden pipes, usually of sixteen-foot tone, sounding an octave lower than the keys pressed is the **bourdon.**

—, —. A name for an eight-foot organ stop having open wooden pipes giving a soft, sweet tone is **clarabella.**

—, —. A name for an organ stop having reed pipes producing a tone like a clarinet is **cremona, cromorna,** or **cromorne.**

—, —. The chief foundation stop of the organ is the **diapason.**

organ, stop. The name for an eight-foot organ stop of soft, sweet tone is **dulciana.**

—, —. A compound organ stop having two or more pipes to each key, used to supply harmonies to the diapasons, is a **furniture** or **mixture stop.**

—, —. A name for an organ stop resembling the oboe in tone is **musette.**

—, —. A name for any organ stop that sounds a fixed interval higher than the note of the key pressed down is **mutation stop.**

—, —. A name for a powerful organ stop with reed pipes of eight- or fifteen-foot tone is **posaume.**

—, —. The chief organ stop with metal pipes, which covers the whole compass of the keyboard and sounds an octave higher than the other diapasons, is the **principal.**

—, —. The name of an organ stop sounding five notes higher than the key pressed down is **quint.**

—, —. A name for the row of pipes belonging to an organ stop is **rank.**

—, —. A name for an organ stop with flue-pipes, having a soft, reedy tone is **salicional.**

—, —. An organ mixture stop in which the fifth or twelfth note above the key pressed down is prominent is a **sesquialtera.**

—, —. A two-foot organ stop that sounds two octaves above the key pressed down is a **superoctave.**

—, —. The name given to an organ stop two octaves and a third above unison, used in mixtures, is **tierce.**

—, —. A name of a powerful reed organ stop played with a high wind pressure is **tuba.**

—, —. An organ stop with short capped pipes producing tones resembling the voice of a singer is the **vox humana.**

—, swell-box. A name for each of the movable slats at the front of an organ swell-box is **louver** or **louvre.**

—, wind supply. The name for the valves in some organs which control the wind supply to the various groups of stops is **ventils.**

—. *See also* **harmonium,** *above.*

ornament. An ornament consisting of a small quaver or semiquaver with a slanting stroke through its hook, written before an ordinary note and played with the utmost rapidity is an **acciaccatura.**

—. An ornament consisting of a small note written before an ordinary note and given half the value of the principal note, or two thirds if that note is divisible by three, is an **appoggiatura.**

—. Ornamenting a melody with grace notes, florid passages, etc., or embellishing it by adding varied forms of accompaniment is **figuration.**

—. An ornament consisting of a single rapid alternation of the principal note with the note next above is an **inverted mordent.**

—. An ornament consisting of a single rapid alternation of the principal note with the note next below is a **mordent.**

—. The ornament in the form of a shake beginning slowly and gradually quickening, often used in cadenzas, is the **ribattuta.**

—. An ornament consisting of the quick alternation of two notes a tone or a semitone apart is a **shake** or **trill.**

—. The name given to an ornament consisting of the alternation of a written note with those next above and below is **turn.**

—, vocal. A series of rapid notes sung to one syllable is a **division** or **roulade.**

Pan-pipes. Another name for the Pan-pipes, or Pandean pipes, is **syrinx.**

part. A name for the highest part in a madrigal is **cantilena.**

—. A name for the solo part or for the highest part in vocal music is **canto.**

part. A name for one of the parts or sections of an opera, oratorio, or similar work is **number.**

—, instrumental. A name for an instrumental part or accompaniment that must not be omitted from a composition is **obbligato.**

part-song. The highest and lowest parts or voices of a part-song are the **extremes.**

—. An eighteenth century English type of part-song, having three or more voices in harmony, usually with two or more contrasted movements, is a **glee.**

—. The middle parts or voices of a part-song are the **means.**

—. *See also* **composition,** vocal, *above.*

passage. brilliant. A name for a brilliant vocal or instrumental passage (formerly always improvised) designed to display the performer's skill, and introduced near the end of a solo, etc., is **cadenza.**

—, instrumental. A short introductory, connecting, or concluding instrumental passage in a song is a **ritornello.**

—, ornamental. A name for runs and trills or other ornamental passages in vocal music is **coloratura.**

passion. Musical directions denoting that a movement or passage is to be performed with passion are **appassionato, furioso, impetuoso,** and **passionato.**

pastorale. A name given to a pastoral cantata, or pastorale, is **serenata.**

patron saint. The patron saint of music, and the legendary inventor of the organ, is **Saint Cecilia.**

pause. A pause for silence in music is a **rest.**

pedal. The complete mechanism with which pedals are connected in any instrument is the **pedal-action.**

—. *See also under* **organ,** *above, and* **piano,** *below.*

performer. A name given to a performer on a musical instrument is **executant.**

piano. Names for a small piano, especially one with a reduced range of notes, are **cabinet piano, cottage piano, pianette,** and **pianino.**

—. A grand piano of the largest size is a **concert grand.**

—. A wing-shaped piano with a horizontal frame is a **grand piano** or **grand.**

—. A name for a kind of piano with tuned steel bars instead of strings, and for a xylophone with metal bars, is **metallophone.**

—. A name for a kind of piano giving sustained sounds by means of rapidly repeated blows on the strings is **organ-piano.**

—. A piano in which the lower strings are arranged to cross part of the others diagonally, so as to distribute the strain, is **overstrung.**

—. The term used to describe pianos having three strings tuned in unison for each of the higher notes is **trichord.**

—, mechanical. A name for an apparatus for controlling the time and tone of music played on a player-piano is **metrostyle.**

—, —. An independent automatic apparatus in which a perforated paper roll operates finger levers which are placed in contact with the keys of the piano, thus producing music mechanically, is a **piano-player.**

—, —. A general name for a mechanically operated piano in which a pneumatic apparatus worked by a perforated roll is contained within the piano-case is **player-piano.**

—, —. A name given to the rolls having perforations corresponding to notes of music, used in operating a mechanical piano, is **player-roll.**

—, part. The name for each of the small pieces of wood covered with felt that check the vibration of the strings of a piano directly the keys connected with them are released is **damper.**

—, —. Names for the complex mechanism which gives a thrust to the hammer and raises the damper when a key is pressed are **escapement** and **hopper.**

piano, part. The elaborately constructed wooden part immediately behind or beneath the strings of a piano is the **soundboard.**

—, —. The plate to which the lower ends of the strings of a piano are fastened is the **string-plate.**

—, —. The adjustable pin to which the upper or nearer end of each string of a piano is attached is a **tuning-pin.**

—, —. The part of the piano frame in which the tuning pins are set is the **wrest-plank.**

—, pedal. A name for the right or "loud" pianoforte pedal, which raises the dampers and allows the strings to continue vibrating, is **damper pedal.**

—, —. Names for the pedal of the pianoforte, which modifies the quality of the tone by interposing felt between the hammers and the strings, or raising the hammers nearer the strings, etc., are **harp-pedal** and **soft pedal.**

—, —. The complete mechanism of which the pedals are a part in the piano and other instruments is the **pedal action.**

—, —. A name for the soft pedal of a piano when devised to shift the hammers sideways, so that only two strings of the trichord, and one of the bichord portion are struck, is **shifting-pedal.**

—, —. A name for a pedal provided in some pianos, serving to hold up only those dampers that are raised at the moment the pedal is used is **sustaining pedal.**

—. *See also* **instrument,** keyboard, *above.*

pitch. A difference of pitch between two musical sounds is an **interval.**

—. Accordance or unity of pitch in music is **unison.**

plain-song. The name for the scales on which plain-song is based is **ecclesiastical modes.**

—. A name for the opening notes commonly sung by a single voice in plain-song is **intonation.**

—. A name for a part sung four, five, or eight notes above or below a plain-song melody in mediaeval music is **organum.**

—. *See also* **mode,** *above.*

plaintive. Musical directions meaning plaintive or mournful are **doloroso, lagrimoso,** and **mesto.**

playful. Musical directions meaning playful are **giocoso** and **scherzando.**

pluck. A musical direction indicating that the strings of a violin, etc., are to be plucked and not bowed is **pizzicato.**

—. A name for a small piece of ivory, bone, metal, etc., used to pluck the strings in playing various musical instruments is **plectrum.**

polka. The name of a kind of dance resembling the polka is **schottische.**

quadrille. A name for a lively square dance for four couples resembling the quadrille is **cotillion.**

quick. *See under* **fast,** *above.*

quiet. Musical directions indicating that the style of performance is to be quiet or tranquil are **placido, quieto,** and **tranquillo.**

range. A name for the range of a voice or instrument, and also for the high, middle, and low divisions of a voice, is **register.**

rapid, time. *See under* **fast,** *above.*

recite. To recite with a single musical note is to **intone.**

reed. A reed having a vibrating tongue which strikes against the edges of the slot in which it is placed, as in the clarinet, is a **beating reed** or **striking reed.**

—. Two reeds striking against each other, as in the oboe and bassoon, are a **double reed.**

—. A reed the vibrating tongue of which does not strike the edges of its slot, as in the harmonium, is a **free reed** or **vibrator.**

—, tube. A name for a metal tube holding the reed of an oboe or similar instrument is **staple.**

repeat. A musical direction denoting that the passage or composition so marked is to be repeated from the beginning is **da capo.**

repetition. The frequent repetition of some musical theme, note, or chord is **repercussion.**

—. The repetition more than twice of a melodic or harmonic pattern by regularly ascending or descending intervals is a **sequence.**

—. The rapid repetition of a note, or the rapid alternation of notes of a chord, is **tremolo.**

rhythm. Music written in the system of notation introduced about 1150, expressing rhythm as well as pitch, is **mensural music.**

romantic. A name given to a song or instrumental piece, of romantic character, designed for or appropriate to performance in the evening is **serenade.**

rondo. The form or structure of the rondo, in which the main tune appears three or more times, is **ternary form.**

round. The name for a humorous variety of round in which the singers take up each other's words with a punning effect is **catch.**

run. A name given to a rapid run filling an interval between two melody notes is **tirade.**

sad. Musical directions meaning sad are **dolente, doloroso, malinconico, mesto,** and **tristo.**

same. Terms meaning "same" and "the same," respectively, used in musical directions, are **stesso** and **l'istesso.**

saxhorn. Names for bass wind instruments of the saxhorn family, beginning with the deepest in pitch, are **contrabass bombardon, bombardon,** and **euphonium.**

—. A general name for bass wind instruments of the saxhorn family having a wide bore and including the euphonium and bombardon is **tuba.**

saxophone. The metal tube connecting the body of a saxophone with the reed is the **crook.**

scale. A scale proceeding by semitones is a **chromatic scale.**

—. Scales proceeding mostly by steps of a tone, including the modern major and minor scales, as opposed to the chromatic scale, are **diatonic.**

—. A scale composed of intervals smaller than a semitone is **enharmonic.**

—. The name given to the method of distributing the sounds of an octave among the twelve notes of the chromatic scale so that they will sound in tune in all keys is **equal temperament.**

—. A name for the entire musical scale from the lowest to the highest audible note, and also for the note G on the bottom line of the bass clef, is **gamut.**

—. A scale of seven notes is a **heptachord.**

—. A diatonic scale of six notes is a **hexachord.**

—. A diatonic scale in which there is an interval of a semitone between the third and fourth and between the seventh and eighth notes, the other notes being separated by whole tones, is a **major scale.**

—. A diatonic scale in which there is always an interval of a semitone between the second and third notes, and sometimes between the fifth and sixth, and seventh and eighth notes, is a **minor scale.**

—. A name for any scale, and also for the order and arrangement of the intervals in a scale, is **mode.**

—. The scale of C major is the **natural scale.**

—. A scale of eight notes in diatonic succession is an **octave.**

—. A name for a diatonic scale of five notes is **pentachord.**

—. The name given to a scale of five notes corresponding to the modern major scale with the fourth and seventh notes omitted, forming the basis of many old Scottish tunes, is **pentatonic scale.**

scale. The name given to a scale of four diatonic notes within the interval of a perfect fourth is **tetrachord.**

—, minor. The diatonic minor scale in which there is a step of a semitone between the third and fourth, fifth and sixth, and seventh and eighth notes—there being three semitones between the sixth and seventh notes, is the **harmonic minor.**

— —. The diatonic minor scale in which there is a semitone step between the second and third, and between the seventh and eighth notes when ascending, and between the sixth and fifth, and the third and second when descending is the **melodic minor.**

—, notes. The names for each of the seven notes of a diatonic scale in ascending order, beginning with the keynote, are **tonic, supertonic, mediant, subdominant, submediant,** and **leading note.**

—, solmization. The syllabic names for notes of the scale (ut, re, mi, fa, sol, la), introduced by Guido d'Arezzo, are the **Aretinian syllables,** or **Guidonian syllables.**

—, —. The seven syllabic names for the notes of the scale in ascending order, used in continental singing, are **ut** or **do, re, mi, fa, sol, la, si.**

—, Tonic Sol-fa. The syllabic names given to the notes of the major diatonic scale in ascending order, according to the Tonic Sol-fa system, are **doh, ray, me, fah, soh, lah, te.**

—. *See also under* **mode,** *above.*

scale passage, rapid. A rapid scale passage or roulade is a **run.**

school. A name given to a public school or college for the teaching of music and elocution is **conservatoire.**

score. A musical score in which all the parts of a composition for voices or instruments, or both, are written on separate staves is a **full score.**

—. A general name for a score showing each part on a separate staff, as opposed to a short score, is **open score.**

—. A score in which the orchestral accompaniments of a composition are condensed into a pianoforte part is a **piano score.**

—. A name for a score with two or more parts to each staff is **short score.**

—. A score containing the complete voice parts of a choral composition, with the accompaniment usually compressed into a piano or organ part, is a **vocal score.**

sea song. A sea song or chant formerly sung by sailors when hauling or working the capstan, to aid them in pulling together, is a **chantey** or **shanty.**

semitone. A semitone between a note and its flat or sharp is a **chromatic semitone** or **augmented prime.**

—. A name for an interval of approximately one quarter of a semitone is **comma.**

—. A semitone between two notes of different letter names is a **diatonic semitone** or **minor second.**

—. Other names for a semitone, either chromatic or diatonic, are **half-step** and **half-tone.**

—. An interval of half a semitone is a **quarter-tone.**

serenade. A name for a kind of instrumental serenade in several movements is **cassation.**

seventh. *See under* **chord** *and* **interval,** *above.*

showy. A name for a showy musical passage requiring brilliant execution, and also for such a style of performance, is **bravura.**

similarly. Terms meaning "similarly," used in musical directions are **segue, simile,** and **similiter.**

simple. A musical direction denoting that a piece is to be played in a simple manner without exaggeration or embellishments is **semplice.**

singer. An Italian word meaning goddess, often used of a famous woman singer, is **diva.**

—. A name sometimes given to a leading woman comic singer is **prima buffa.**

—. A name for the principal woman singer in a serious opera is **prima donna.**

—, Egyptian. The name for a singing girl in Egypt hired for festivals and funerals is **alme** or **almai.**

—, Japanese. A Japanese girl trained from early youth to sing, dance, and otherwise entertain guests at private parties, etc., is a **geisha.**

—. *See also under* **voice,** *below.*

singing. A musical direction denoting a singing or gently flowing style of performance is **cantabile.**

—. The use of monosyllables for names of notes as an aid to singing at sight is **solmization.**

—. The name for the peculiar method of singing practised by Swiss and Tyrolese peasants, in which the natural and falsetto voices are rapidly alternated, is **yodelling.**

—, leader. The leader of the singing of a church choir is a **cantor** or **precentor.**

sixth. *See under* **interval,** *above.*

slow. Musical directions meaning slow are **adagio, lento, lentamente,** and **tardo.**

—. A musical direction originally meaning slower than andante, but now generally meaning not quite so slow as andante, is **andantino.**

—, rather. Musical directions meaning rather or somewhat slow are **andante, adagietto,** and **moderato.**

—, very. Musical directions meaning very slow are **adagio molto, grave,** and **largo.**

slower. Musical directions denoting that the rate of performance should become gradually slower are **lentando, rallentando, ritardando,** and **slargando.**

—. Musical directions indicating that the speed of performance is to become gradually slower and the tone gradually softer are **morendo, perdendosi,** and **smorzando.**

—. A musical direction indicating that the time is to become suddenly slower is **ritenuto.**

smooth. A musical direction denoting that the flow of notes must be smooth and connected, as opposed to staccato, is **legato.**

society. A name often given to a society for the encouragement of musical performances, especially choral and instrumental, is **philharmonic society.**

soft. A musical direction meaning soft is **piano.**

—, half. The musical direction indicating that the tone produced is to be moderately or half soft but not so loud as mezzo forte is **mezzo piano.**

—, very. The musical direction indicating that a very soft tone is required is **pianissimo.**

softer. A musical direction meaning softer is **meno forte.**

—. Musical directions indicating that the tone is to be made gradually softer and the time slower are **morendo, perdendosi,** and **smorzando.**

solmization. An exercise for the voice used in solmization is a **solfeggio.**

solo. *See under* **composition** *and* **organ,** *above, and* **song,** *below.*

sonata. The movements generally occurring in a sonata, sometimes preceded by a slow introduction, are the **Allegro, Slow Movement, Scherzo** or **Minuet and Trio,** and **Finale.**

—. A form of composition frequently used for the finale or last movement of a sonata is the **rondo.**

—. A name used especially for the plan adopted for the first movement of a sonata, and loosely for the plan of a sonata as a whole, is **sonata form.**

sonata form. The first part of a movement in sonata form, in which the themes or subjects are introduced, is the **exposition.**

sonata form. The second part of a movement in sonata form, in which the themes or subjects in the exposition are developed, repeated, interwoven, etc., is the **free fantasia.**

—. The third and concluding part of a movement in sonata form, in which the subjects in the exposition are repeated, often concluding with a coda, is the **recapitulation** or **reprise.**

song. A name for a song or piece of music associated with dawn or morning, as opposed to a serenade, is **aubade.**

—. A name for a simple type of song in which each verse is sung to the same melody, formerly usually in narrative or descriptive style, is **ballad.**

—. A name for a Venetian boat-song and for a piece of music resembling this is **barcarole.**

—. A name for a short simple song, especially one having a melody without any contrasting section, is **cavatina.**

—. A French name for a simple ballad song, for a part-song, and for an accompanied song resembling the lied is **chanson.**

—. A name for an old song that has been handed down among the people by word of mouth is **folk song.**

—. The German name for a song, and for a musical work of song-like character, is **lied.**

—. The name given to a short introductory, connecting, or concluding passage in a song is **ritornello.**

—. A name for a folk song of the mountaineers of the Tyrol, in which the yodel generally occurs, is **Tyrolienne.**

—. An early French convivial or topical type of street song, which has given its name to musical comedy and variety entertainment, was the **vaudeville.**

—, revolutionary. A wild, revolutionary song and dance popular in Paris during the French Revolution was the **Carmagnole.**

—, sailor's. A song or chant with a rhythmic chorus formerly sung by sailors when hauling or working the capstan, to aid them in pulling together, is a **chantey** or **shanty.**

—, short. A short song in the form of an aria is an **arietta** or **arioso.**

—. *See also* **composition,** vocal, *and* **hymn,** *above.*

sound. An instrument by which the harmonic relations of sounds can be measured is the **harmonometer.**

—. The quality of the sound of an instrument or voice is its **timbre.**

—. A name for a definite sound, especially when considering its quality, pitch, and volume, is **tone.**

—, modifying. Names for various devices for softening and modifying the sounds of musical instruments, are **damper, mute,** and **sordino** or **sourdine.**

—. *See also under* **loud** *and* **soft,** *above.*

speed. The speed of a composition is the **tempo.**

—, moderate. The musical direction denoting that a composition is to be played at a moderate speed is **moderato.**

—. *See also under* **fast** *and* **slow,** *above.*

sprightly. A musical direction indicating that a piece is to be played in a sprightly way, like a scherzo, is **scherzando.**

staff. The sign placed at the beginning of the staff to enable the name and pitch of the notes to be determined is the **clef.**

—. A short line above or below the musical staff is a **ledger line.**

—. Another name for the musical staff is **stave.**

stock. A stock of musical or other pieces which a company or person is ready to perform is a **repertoire.**

string. A name for the highest string on certain stringed instruments, especially the E string of a violin, is **chanterelle.**

string A name for an instrument for testing the quality of musical strings by means of a changing weight is **phonoscope.**

style. The style of composition in which one principal tune is supported by a simple succession of harmonics, as opposed to polyphony, is **monodic.**

—. The style of composition in which there are several combined voices or parts, each having an independent melody and all being of equal interest, is **polyphonic.**

subject. *See under* **theme,** *below.*

suite. Names of the chief dance pieces occurring in the classical suite are **allemande, bourrée, courante, gavotte, gigue, minuet, passepied,** and **sarabande.**

—. Another name for a suite is **partita.**

sustained. Musical directions indicating that each note in a passage is to be sustained for its full length are **sostenuto** and **tenuto.**

symbol. The name for the symbol which causes a note to be lowered a chromatic semitone is **flat.**

—. The name for the symbol which cancels a preceding sharp or flat is **natural.**

—. The name for the symbol which causes a note to be raised a chromatic semitone is **sharp.**

symphonic poem. Another name for a symphonic poem is **tone poem.**

symphony. A short, moderately quick movement in three-four time, with a contrasting middle section, often occurring as the third movement of a classical symphony is a **minuet.**

—. A playful or animated movement developed from the classical minuet, and included in symphonies by Beethoven and others, is the **scherzo.**

—. A name for a short or little symphony is **sinfonietta.**

—. A name for the general plan of a classical symphony, and especially for the plan of its first movement, is **sonata form.**

tempo. *See* **fast, slow,** *and* **speed,** *above.*

tenderly. Musical directions meaning tender and tenderly, respectively, are **dolce** and **teneramente.**

theatre. A name for a roofed theatre used in ancient Greece for musical contests is **odeum.**

theme. A name given to a melody or theme occurring repeatedly in a musical work and representing some special idea is **leitmotif.**

—. A name for a short theme from which a longer theme is developed is **motive.**

—. Another name for a theme is **subject.**

third. *See under* **interval,** *above.*

time. A name for any duple or quadruple time, especially four-four time with four crotchet beats in a bar, is **common time.**

—. Any species of time in which each beat can be divided by three, or represented by three of the notes next smaller in value, is **compound.**

—. That species of time consisting of two beats or divisions of equal value in each bar is **duple time.**

—. That species of time consisting of four beats or notes of equal value in each bar is **quadruple time.**

— Any species of time in which each beat can be divided by two, or expressed by two notes next smaller in value, is **simple.**

—. The unequal division of time or notes by binding a weak beat to a strong beat is **syncopation.**

—. An Italian word meaning time, and also speed or rate of movement, is **tempo.**

— A musical direction denoting that the time is to be strict, accurate, or suitable is **tempo giusto.**

—. A musical direction used after a slowing or quickening of the time, denoting that the original time is to be resumed, is **tempo primo.**

time. That species of time consisting of three beats or divisions of equal value in each bar is **triple time.**

—, beating. The name for a mechanical instrument for beating the time at which a musical work is to be played is **metronome.**

—, note. A name for the lengthening of the time value of one note in a bar with a corresponding reduction of the length of another note, for purposes of expression, is **rubato.**

together, sounding. A musical direction indicating that a part of a composition is to be performed with all the instruments or voices sounding together is **tutti.**

tonality. *See under* **key** *and* **modulation,** *above.*

tone. The quality of tone distinguishing different instruments and voices is **timbre.**

—, tremulous. A name for a tremulous, undulating effect in the singing voice, and also for a slight wavering of the pitch of a note of a bowed instrument, is **vibrato.**

—. *See also under* **interval,** *above.*

tranquil. Musical directions meaning tranquil are **placido** and **tranquillo.**

tremulous. Musical directions meaning tremulous are **tremolando** and **tremoloso.**

triad. *See under* **chord,** *above.*

trill. A name for the note of a trill which is alternated with the principal note is **auxiliary.**

— Another name for a trill is **shake.**

—. A name for the ending usually given to a trill, consisting of the upper note, the principal note, the note below it, and the principal note again, is **turn.**

—. *See also under* **ornament,** *above.*

trio. A name given to a trio, especially one for voices, is **terzetto.**

trombone. The name of an early form of the trombone is **sackbut.**

troubadour. *See* **minstrel,** *above.*

trumpet, Hebrew. The name of an ancient type of ceremonial Hebrew trumpet, still used at certain festivals, is **shofar.**

—, Roman. The name of the ancient Roman trumpet, usually having its tube bent in a circle, is **buccina.**

tube. A bent tube for altering the key of a trumpet or similar instrument is a **crook.**

tune. A tune the notes of which rise or fall by adjacent degrees of the scale, without skips, is in **conjunct motion.**

—. Combined tunes that move in an opposite direction to each other, one rising when the other falls, etc., are written in **contrary motion.**

—. Combined tunes that rise or fall together are written in **direct motion** or **similar motion.**

—. A tune the notes of which rise or fall by skips or intervals greater than diatonic tones is in **disjunct motion.**

—. A tune that rises and falls against a sustained or repeated note remaining at the same pitch is written in **oblique motion.**

—. A name for each of several tunes which together form an artistic combination of sounds is **part.**

—. A name for a definite musical thought forming part of a tune but complete in itself, often of four bars in length, is **phrase.**

—. A tune lying principally between the dominant of a scale and its octave above is a **plagal melody.**

—. The division of a tune into sections, sub-sections, and figures is **rhythm**

—. Names for a tune or motive which is used as a basis of a composition are **subject** and **theme.**

—, combined. A name for the combination of two or more tunes, and also for the tune or tunes added to any given tune, especially when in accordance with certain strict rules, is **counterpoint.**

tune, combined. A name for the writing of interesting and independent tunes to be heard in combination without strictly following the rigid rules of counterpoint is **part-writing.**

—, —. *See also* **counterpoint,** *above.*

—, imitation. A term used in counterpoint to denote the imitation of a tune in notes of longer time value is **augmentation.**

—, —. A term used in counterpoint to denote the imitation of a tune in notes of smaller time value is **diminution.**

—, —. A term used in counterpoint for the imitation of a tune by writing it in contrary motion is **inversion.**

—, —. A term used in counterpoint for the imitation of a tune by writing it backwards is **retrograde imitation.**

—, repetition. A form of sequence in which a tune or passage is repeated one degree of the scale higher each time is **rosalia.**

—, —. The repetition of a tune or harmony more than twice at regularly ascending or descending intervals is a **sequence.**

—, Swiss. A name for a traditional Swiss tune played by peasants on the Alpine horn is **ranz des vaches.**

tuning. The name given to an unusual method of tuning stringed instruments adopted in order to simplify the playing of difficult passages is **scordatura.**

turn. The notes above and below the principal note, which are alternated with it in the performance of a turn, are respectively the **upper auxiliary** and the **lower auxiliary.**

tutti. An instrumental tutti in a concerto is a **ritornello.**

very. A word meaning "very," often used to qualify other musical terms, is **molto.**

vigour. A musical direction indicating that the performance is to be vigorous and energetic is **vigoroso.**

viol. A name for the high treble viol with five strings is **quinton.**

—. The tenor viol corresponding to the modern viola was the **viola da braccio.**

—. The name for a tenor viol having additional strings passing under the fingerboard and bridge, and intended to vibrate in sympathy with the upper strings, is **viola d'amore.**

—. The bass viol corresponding to the modern violoncello was the **viola da gamba.**

—. The name of the largest and deepest in pitch of the viols, closely resembling the modern double-bass, is **violone.**

viola. Another name for the viola is **tenor violin** or **tenor.**

violin. The strip of wood under the belly of instruments of the violin family, which takes the pressure of the bridge and spreads the vibrations, is the **bass bar.**

—. The upper part of the body of the violin and other instruments, over which the strings are stretched, is the **belly.**

—. A name for the incurved parts of the ribs forming the waist of instruments of the violin family is **bouts.**

—. The small, movable, wooden support with two legs, over which the strings of instruments of the violin family are stretched, and which serves to transmit vibrations to the belly, is the **bridge.**

—. Names for the doubly curved openings in the belly of a violin are **f-holes** and **sound-holes.**

—. The strip of wood fixed to the neck of the violin, and similar instruments, on which the strings are pressed by the fingers is the **finger-board.**

—. The part at the end of the neck of instruments of the violin family, including the peg-box and the scroll, is the **head.**

violin. Names for that part of a violin and similar instruments, running from the head to the body, on which the fingerboard is fixed are **manche** and **neck.**

—. The ridge forming a fixed bridge upon which the strings rest at the upper end of the fingerboard of a violin and similar instruments is the **nut.**

—. The curved sides of instruments of the violin family, serving to hold the belly and back together, are the **ribs.**

—. The name for the curve in the head of instruments of the violin family is **scroll.**

—. The small prop inside instruments of the violin family, placed nearly under the bridge and transmitting vibrations from the belly to the back, is the **sound-post.**

—. The piece of wood, usually ebony, to which the strings of instruments of the violin family are attached is the **tailpiece.**

—. The violin, viola, violoncello, and double-bass are instruments of the **viol class.**

—, bass. The largest and deepest-toned instrument of the violin family, closely resembling the violoncello but with sloping shoulders, is the **contrabass** or **double-bass.**

—, —. The bass instrument of the violin family, having its strings tuned an octave lower than the viola, and played rested on the ground between the player's knees, is the **violoncello.**

—, bow. Names for the movable piece of wood to which the hair of a violin bow is fastened at the nut end are **frog** and **head.**

—, —. The head of the screw used to tighten or loosen the hair of a violin bow, etc., is the **nut.**

—, —. The substance applied to the hair of violin bows, etc., to make them grip the strings is **rosin.**

—, bridge. A small pronged attachment of metal, ebony, etc., fixed on the bridge of instruments of the violin family to reduce and modify the tone is a **mute.**

—, defect. The name for a jarring noise produced by certain notes and due to a defect in a string or in the structure of a violin, etc., is **wolf.**

—, earliest. The name of a bowed, stringed instrument formerly played in India and Ceylon, and regarded as the earliest instrument of the violin or viol class, is **ravanastron.**

—, early. The mediaeval bowed instrument with three strings, a pear-shaped body, and small, round sound-holes, regarded as an early form of violin, was the **rebeck.**

—, —. An early stringed instrument resembling the violin but with a flat back, sloping shoulders and C-shaped sound-holes, is a **viol.**

—, Indian. A native instrument of the violin type played in India is the **sarangi.**

—, Italian. A name given to any violin made by one of the Amatis or by Stradivari or Guarneri at Cremona, in Italy, is **Cremona.**

—, —. A name for any of the highly-prized Italian violins made by Antonio Stradivari is **Stradivarius** or **Strad.**

—, maker. A name for a violin maker, and for a maker of lutes, is **luthier.**

—, playing. A name for a movement of the left hand along the fingerboard so that different fingers are used for stopping notes in playing the violin, etc., is **shift.**

—, small. A very small violin used by dancing masters in the eighteenth century was the **kit** or **pochette.**

—, string. A name for the E string (the highest) of a violin is **chanterelle.**

—, tenor. The tenor violin somewhat larger than the ordinary violin, having its strings tuned a fifth lower but played in the same way, is the **viola.**

violin, tuning. A name given to an unusual method of tuning the violin and other stringed instruments, adopted in order to simplify the playing of a passage, etc., is **scordatura.**

violoncello. A familiar name for the violoncello is **bass viol.**

—. An abbreviated name for the violoncello is **'cello.**

—. The name for a small, five-stringed violoncello invented by J. S. Bach is **viola pomposa.**

voice. A name for the point at which one register or quality of the voice changes to another is **break.**

—. The lower register of a singing voice is the **chest register** or **chest voice.**

—. The upper register of a singing voice is the **head register** or **head voice.**

—. A name for the high, low, or middle division of a voice, regarded as having a distinctive quality, and for the range of a voice, is **register.**

—. A name for the distinctive tone quality of a voice is **timbre.**

—. A name for a slight obscuration of the singing voice, sometimes giving great richness of tone, is **veil.**

—. A name for a tremulous undulating effect in the singing voice, and for a slight wavering of the pitch of a note of a bowed instrument, is **vibrato.**

—. A score in which the different parts of a composition for several voices are written on separate staves is a **vocal score.**

—, accompaniment. A musical direction indicating that the accompanist is to adapt his playing to the tempo of the vocalist is **colla voce.**

—, type. The name for a type of human voice between tenor and treble, and for a singer having such a voice, is **alto.**

—, —. The name for a male voice between bass and tenor, and for a singer having such a voice, is **baritone.**

—, —. The name for the deepest adult male voice, and for a singer having such a voice, is **bass.**

—, —. The name for a woman's voice of the deepest kind, corresponding to the male alto, and for a singer having such a voice, is **contralto.**

—, —. A name for a high tenor or alto voice, and for a singer having such a voice,is **countertenor.**

—, —. The name for artificially produced tones of the male voice higher than the natural tones, and for a singer employing such tones, is **falsetto.**

—, —. The name for a woman's voice between soprano and contralto, and for a singer with such a voice, is **mezzo-soprano.**

—, —. Names for a woman's or boy's voice of the highest kind and for a singer with such a voice, are **soprano** and **treble.**

—, —. The name for the highest adult male voice, and for a singer having such a voice, is **tenor.**

—, —. Another name for a singer having a falsetto voice is **tenorino.**

—. *See also* **singing,** *above.*

wavering. A musical direction meaning wavering is **tremolando.**

wedge. A name for each of the metal wedges by means of which the strings of a clavichord are vibrated is **tangent.**

whispering. A musical direction meaning whispering or "in an undertone" is **sotto voce.**

wild. Musical directions indicating that a wild or fierce style of performance is required are **feroce** and **furioso.**

without. An Italian word meaning "without," used with other terms in musical directions, is **senza.**

words. The name for the words of an opera, oratorio, or musical play, and for a book containing the words, is **libretto.**

zither. The name of a kind of zither or dulcimer played in the East is **kanoon.**

PHILOSOPHY

action. A term used in psychology for a particular responsive action which always follows a particular stimulus is **reflex** or **reflex action.**

—, good. The philosophic doctrine that the greatest happiness of the greatest number should be the sole test of whether an action is good or bad is **utilitarianism.**

—, involuntary. A psychological term used for all involuntary action is **automatism.**

—, unconscious. Movements of the muscles which unconsciously carry out instinctive and habitual actions are **sensori-motor.**

affirm. To assume or state as a fact in logic or philosophy is to **posit.**

—. In logic, a proposition definitely affirmed, as opposed to a hypothesis, is a **thesis.**

argument. An argument which forces an opponent to choose one of two or more alternatives, all unfavourable to him, is a **dilemma.**

—. A method of argument by which an opponent is made to contradict himself is **elenchus.**

—. A name given to a false argument used with the intention to deceive is **sophism.**

—. *See also under* **fallacy** *and* **reasoning,** *below.*

Aristotle. A name for a follower of Aristotle is **Peripatetic.**

assumption. In logic, the assuming of something without proof is **postulation.**

attributes, human. The ascribing of human attributes to a Deity or to animals or inanimate things is **anthropomorphism.**

automatic. The belief that all action of living beings is automatic, and not due to the mind, is **automatism.**

beauty. The philosophy of the beautiful or of the principles underlying beauty is **aesthetics.**

behaviour. An acquired tendency to behave in a particular way, resulting from physiological traces left in the brain by past behaviour, is **habit.**

being. The name of the branch of metaphysics dealing with the nature of being and reality is **ontology.**

—, and knowing. The science of being and knowing, and of the real or essential nature of things is **metaphysics.**

causation. The philosophy of causation is **aetiology.**

cause and effect. The name for the necessary connexion between a cause and its effect is **causal nexus.**

chance. The philosophic doctrine that all things happen by chance is **casualism.**

change. A term used in psychology for psychic change, as distinct from a change in the physical basis of consciousness, is **psychosis.**

character. A name for the science dealing with the formation of character is **ethology.**

class. In Aristotelian logic, each of the ten classes—substance, quality, quantity, relation, time, place, posture, action, possession, passion—embracing all objects of thought or knowledge is a **category.**

Comte. The name given to the teaching of Auguste Comte and his followers is **Positivist Philosophy** or **Positivism**

concept. In philosophy, a general concept or idea is a **universal.**

conception. In logic, the first conceptions of an object and the conceptions or conclusions following from these are, respectively, **first intentions** and **second intentions.**

conclusion. The mental operation of arriving at a conclusion by a combination of two premises is **illation** or **inference.**

conduct. In ethics, a principle of conduct emanating from the conscience is a **law.**

conscience. The name used in Kantian philosophy for the absolute command of the conscience as the ultimate moral law is **categorical imperative.**

consciousness. The name given by psychologists to the stage of consciousness at which sensations or feelings are first noticed is **limen.**

—. In psychology, the name given to the axiom that every conscious process is influenced by other conscious processes, thus explaining the continuity of consciousness, is the principle of sensational **relativity.**

—. Mental processes regarded as lying below the normal consciousness are **subconscious** or **subliminal.**

contradiction. A contradiction between laws or conclusions, each of which seems equally true, is an **antinomy.**

creator. A name given in the Platonic philosophy to the Creator of the material universe is **demiurge.**

deduction. A person who reasons deductively, that is, from general ideas to particular instances, reasons **a priori.**

deny. To deny a proposition in philosophy or logic is to **sublate.**

Descartes. Names given to the philosophy of René Descartes (1596-1650) are **Cartesianism** and **Cartesian philosophy.**

doctrine. A doctrine stated in a formal manner, which rests on the authority of its propounder and is not the result of reasoning or experience, is a **dogma.**

—. Philosophic doctrines meant to be understood only by the privileged members of a body are **esoteric.**

—. Philosophic doctrines considered suitable for popular understanding are **exoteric.**

—. A name for the doctrine that this world is the best possible world is **optimism.**

—. The doctrine that this world is the worst possible world is **pessimism.**

doubt. Names given to philosophic doubt are **Pyrrhonism** and **scepticism.**

—. A name for an attitude of mocking scepticism with regard to Christian beliefs akin to that of the French writer Voltaire (1694-1778) is **Voltairism.**

duty. In the Benthamite doctrine of ethics, the science of moral duty is **deontology.**

egoism. A name for egoism in the Kantian philosophy is **solipsism.**

equivalence. Two logical propositions equivalent in meaning but different in form are **equipollent.**

evil. The philosophical doctrine that, on the whole, this world is an evil place is **malism.**

—. A name for the theory that pain and evil are more widespread than is good, or that there is a dominant tendency towards evil in the universe, is **pessimism.**

existence. The actual existence of a thing, apart from its qualities, is its **entity.**

—, independent. A thing which exists independently of any cause outside itself is said in philosophy to be **irrelative.**

experience. A conclusion founded on previous experience and not on scientific reasoning is **empiric.**

—. According to the Kantian philosophy, things outside the sphere of our experience are **transcendent.**

—, practical. In philosophy, a term applied to matters of practical experience is **positive.**

extent. In logic, to define the extent of a term as regards quantity is to **quantify.**

fact. A fact that can be grasped by the intellect only, as opposed to one perceived through the action of the senses, is **intelligible.**

faculty. The faculty by which personal existence, acts, emotions, etc., are recognized is **consciousness.**

fallacy. A name given to the fallacy which consists in obscuring the real issue by an appeal to prejudice or sentiment is **argumentum ad hominem.**

—. Names given to the fallacy which consists in demonstrating a conclusion by the aid of premises that presuppose that conclusion are **circulus in probando** and **petitio principii.**

—. The fallacy that consists in arguing falsely from a particular case to a general rule is the **converse fallacy of accident.**

—. The fallacy that consists in arguing falsely from a general rule to a particular case is the **fallacy of accident.**

—. The name given to the fallacy that consists in ignoring the real point at issue, and diverting attention to some point foreign to the argument is **ignoratio elenchi.**

—. The name given to the fallacy that consists in incorrectly assuming that one thing is the cause of another is **non sequitur.**

—. The name given to the fallacy which consists in improperly grouping several questions in the form of one, to which a categorical answer is demanded, is **plurium interrogationum.**

force. The system of philosophy that attributes both mind and matter to the action of force is **dynamism.**

freedom. The doctrine that an individual should be free to shape his own life without considering his neighbours' interests is **individualism.**

free will. A term used in philosophy for free will is **liberty.**

group. In logic, a group of individuals or objects possessing a common name and agreeing in some essential quality or qualities is a **species.**

happiness. A name for an ethical theory that makes the pursuit, enjoyment, and production of happiness the basis of morality is **eudemonism.**

idea. A general idea, the result of an act of thought, is a **concept.**

—. The division of a class of ideas into two mutually exclusive sub-classes, one positive and the other negative, is **dichotomy.**

—. In philosophy, one who regards ideas or objects of thought as possessing a greater reality than things perceived by the senses is an **idealist.**

—. The term used in philosophy for the object corresponding to an idea is **ideate.**

—. The branch of philosophy which deals with the origin and nature of ideas is **ideology.**

—. Movements of the muscles which unconsciously carry out in action an idea on which the mind is fixed are **ideo-motor** or **ideo-muscular.**

—. An inborn idea or one regarded as the result of intuition is **innate.**

—, general. The doctrine that general ideas exist in the mind, but have no corresponding existence in reality, is **conceptualism.**

—, —. The doctrine that general ideas have no real existence apart from the things giving rise to their conception is **nominalism.**

—, —. The doctrine that general ideas exist independently of our conception and expression of them is **realism.**

—, —. In philosophy, a general concept or idea is a **universal.**

individual. The name used in psychology for the knowledge that an individual has of his own personality by reflexive action is **self.**

induction. A person who reasons inductively, that is, from particular instances to general laws, reasons **a posteriori.**

inquiry. A philosophy which proceeds by inquiry and seeks the cause of things is **zetetic.**

insane. A name given by psychologists to a semi-insane person is **mattoid.**

intellect. A name for the science of the intellect is **noetics.**

invention. A name for the branch of logic which has to do with discovery or invention is **heuretic.**

Kant. In Kantian philosophy, a name for the generalization of sense or the particularization of thought is **schema.**

knowledge. The philosophic theory that man can have no knowledge beyond material phenomena is **agnosticism.**

—. The science dealing with the sources, nature, and validity of human knowledge is **epistemology.**

—. The act or fact of acquiring knowledge directly through the senses is **perception.**

—. Exact or systematized knowledge is **science.**

Lao-tsze. The name of a Chinese religion based on the teachings of the philosopher Lao-tsze is **Taoism.**

logic. A term used for logical disputation is **dialectic.**

—. A name given to that branch of logic which teaches us to think accurately is **methodology.**

—. The branch of logic that deals with the fundamental laws of thought in general is **stoichiology.**

—. A formula used in logic consisting of two premises or statements and a conclusion that is drawn from them is a **syllogism.**

—. *See also under* **reasoning,** *below.*

man. A name for man, imagined as representing on a small scale that greater organism, the world, is **microcosm.**

—. Names given in the philosophy of Nietzche to an imaginary ideal man, who is to be superior to all moral restrictions, are **overman** and **superman.**

mankind, hatred. A name for hatred of mankind is **misanthropy.**

matter. A follower of the philosopher Bishop Berkeley, who taught that matter does not exist outside our own minds or imaginations, is a **Berkeleian.**

—. The philosophical doctrine that mind is a manifestation of matter, and that the spiritual does not exist, is **materialism.**

meaning. In logic, the name for the meaning, as opposed to the form, of a proposition is **matter.**

memory. The art of improving the memory, or a system for doing this, is **mnemonics.**

mental, action. The science of the laws of mental action is **psychodynamics.**

—, process. The measurement of the duration of mental processes, etc., is **psychometry.**

mind. The suggestion to the mind of ideas that come from the self only is **auto-suggestion.**

—. The doctrine that the things we see around us are not real substances is **immaterialism.**

—. A name given to the philosophical theory that mind and body act and react on one another is **interactionism.**

—. Terms used in psychology for the knowledge that a person may have of the working of his own mind are **introspection, reflection,** and **self-consciousness.**

—. Things that are external to the mind, and do not depend on thoughts or feelings, are **objective.**

—. A name used in philosophy for that which is apprehended by the mind or senses, as opposed to that which really exists, is **phenomenon.**

—. Things relating to the mind are **psychic.**

—. The systematic study of unconscious mental workings and underlying motives of conduct is **psychoanalysis.**

—. The origin and growth of mind is **psychogenesis.**

—. The science of the nature, functions, and phenomena of the mind is **psychology.**

—. That part of the mind which is outside the range of ordinary consciousness is the **subconscious.**

—. That which occurs or exists within the mind, as opposed to everything outside it, is **subjective.**

mind. The doctrine that human knowledge is due solely to the mind, and that there is no external test of truth, is **subjectivism.**

—. Communication of mind with mind without the use of senses is **telepathy.**

moral, teaching. A name given to the mode of thought which bases moral teaching on a system of ethics not founded on religious doctrine is **secularism.**

nature. That which is the real nature of a thing is the **essence.**

number. A follower of the Greek philosopher, Pythagoras, who held that number is the essence of all things, was a **Pythagorean.**

objects, related. In logic, a class of related objects is a **genus.**

origin A name for the theory that life has a material origin and not a spiritual one is **physicism.**

—. A name for the doctrine that there is more than one origin or principle of existence is **pluralism.**

others. Regard for the interests of others as a motive of action is **altruism.**

pattern. The name used in Platonic philosophy for the eternal perfect pattern, of which all material things are an imperfect copy, is **idea.**

perception. The term used in psychology to denote all the immediate effects upon the mind that are involved in the perception of an object is **presentation.**

—. An element in perception not involving thought is **sensation.**

pessimism. A name for pessimism in philosophy is **malism.**

phenomenon. A name for the underlying reality which gives rise to a phenomenon is **noumenon.**

—. In metaphysics, the essence which underlies a phenomenon is **substance.**

philosophy. Any theory of philosophy or religion recognizing two independent principles is **dualism.**

—. A tendency or attempt to unite various systems of philosophy in order to produce a single consistent system is **syncretism.**

—, Greek. A member of a school of philosophy in ancient Greece which held that it was necessary to give up all pleasures to become virtuous was a **Cynic.**

—, —. A member of a school of philosophy, founded by Aristippus of Cyrene, which held that pleasure was the chief aim of life was a **Cyrenaic** or **hedonist.**

—, —. A member of the school of philosophy in ancient Greece which taught that the true end of life was pleasure attained by the practice of virtue was an **Epicurean.**

— —. A school of Greek philosophy that identified good with the hidden secret of the universe was the **Megarian.**

—, —. The teaching of Pyrrho, a Greek philosopher, who said that certainty of knowledge was unobtainable was **Pyrrhonism.**

—, —. A member of a school of philosophy of ancient Greece which held that virtue was the highest good and that men should despise both pain and pleasure, was a **Stoic.**

—, Hindu. A member of an ancient Hindu school of philosophers, believing in the transmigration of the soul, who lived lives of great privation, wearing little or no clothing, was a **Gymnosophist.**

—, —. A system of Hindu philosophy founded on the Vedas or ancient Hindu scriptures is the **Vedanta.**

—, —. A name for a Hindu system of meditation and rigid asceticism by which the soul is supposed to become united with the eternal spirit is **yoga.**

—, mystic. The name given to a system of mystic philosophy claiming a direct knowledge of God is **theosophy.**

philosophy, religious. A system of religious philosophy current in the first six centuries of the Christian era, that combined Christian ideals with Greek and Oriental doctrines, is **gnosticism.**

picture. A mental picture of a sense-impression is an **image.**

Plato. The name for the system of philosophy resulting from a combination of Platonism with the mystical teaching of the Egyptian sages is **Neoplatonism.**

pleasure. The name given to the philosophical doctrine inculcating the obtaining of as much pleasure as possible is **hedonism.**

power. A name given to an active power of the human mind is **faculty.**

practical results. A method of philosophy which considers the workableness or practical results of philosophical principles as the only test of their truth is the **pragmatic method.**

predicate. In logic, an attribute predicable of a single member of a class is **particular.**

—. In logic, the extent to which a predicate agrees with or differs from its subject is its **quantity.**

—. In logic, an attribute predicable of all the individuals of a class is **universal.**

—, alternate. A proposition having alternate predicates, generally united by the conjunction *or*, is **disjunctive.**

premise. A name for the act of drawing conclusions from given premises is **illation** or **inference.**

—. The premise in a syllogism which contains the major term is the **major premise.**

—. The premise in a syllogism which contains the minor term is the **minor premise.**

—. A name for the minor premise of a syllogism is **subsumption.**

—. A name for the major premise of a syllogism is **sumption.**

—. *See also under* **proposition, syllogism** *and* **term,** *below.*

principle, essential. An essential principle or truth forming the basis of a system is a **fundamental.**

process, mental. The checking or blocking of a mental process by another process is **inhibition.**

prompting. A conscious, isolated prompting to act in a particular way is an **impulse.**

proof In logic, proof by refutation is **elenctic.**

—. A method of proving an argument by showing that all other alternatives are impossible is **exhaustion.**

—, direct. In logic, a proof by direct argument is **deictic.**

proposition. A proposition which is unconditional is **absolute** or **categorical.**

—. The word in a proposition which links the subject and predicate is the **copula.**

—. A proposition expressing two alternatives, generally linked by the conjunction *or*, is a **disjunctive proposition.**

—. A proposition which is practically self-evident is an **essential proposition.**

—. A proposition in logic asserting difference or discrepancy is a **negative proposition.**

—. A proposition applying to some individuals of a class or genus, but not to all, is **particular.**

—. In a logical proposition that which is affirmed or denied of the subject is the **predicate.**

—. Each of the two propositions in a syllogism, from which the conclusion is drawn, is a **premise.**

—. In logic, the affirmative or negative nature of a proposition is its **quality.**

— The extent of a proposition, as applying to a part or to the whole of a class of things, is its **quantity.**

—. The term of a proposition about which something is affirmed or denied is the **subject.**

—. In logic, a word or group of words forming the subject or predicate of a proposition is a **term.**

proposition. A proposition applying to all the individuals of a class or genus is **universal.**

—. *See also under* **premise,** *above, and* **syllogism** *and* **term,** *below.*

purpose. A term used by Aristotle to denote complete realization or full expression of a function, etc., is **entelechy.**

quality. A quality associated with a substance, and which has no entity apart from its connexion with the substance, is an **attribute.**

—. The seven qualities, justice, temperance, prudence, fortitude, faith, hope, and charity, are the **cardinal virtues.**

—. A term in logic denoting simply the absence of some quality is **negative.**

—. A term in logic denoting the presence of some definite quality is **positive.**

—. A term in logic denoting the absence of certain qualities and the presence of other qualities that are usually associated with the former is **privative.**

question. In philosophy, the question sought is sometimes called the **quaesitum.**

reaction. The time taken by a person to react mentally to a stimulus is the **reaction-time.**

reality. A name for the underlying reality which gives rise to a phenomenon is **noumenon.**

—. A name given to the theory that phenomena, as we perceive them, and the ideas that we draw from them are the only realities is **phenomenalism.**

—. A name for the doctrine that all phenomena are based upon substantial realities is **substantialism.**

reason. A name for reason regarded by the Platonists as a manifestation of the Divine Being is **logos.**

—. The philosophic doctrine that reason supplies grounds for certainty in knowledge that cannot be derived from experience alone is **rationalism.**

reasoning. The process of reasoning from parallel cases is **analogy.**

—. The process of reasoning which consists in applying universal laws to particular instances is **deduction.**

—. A name given to that branch of logic which deals with the rules and methods of reasoning is **dialectics.**

—. A name given to that branch of logic which deals with the laws of conception and judgment is **dianoetic.**

—. Connected reasoning stage by stage, as opposed to intuition, is **discursive.**

—. An unsound mode of reasoning or anything based on such reasoning is a **fallacy.**

—. A supposition made as a basis of reasoning without reference to its truth is an **hypothesis.**

—. The process of reasoning from particular instances to general laws is **induction.**

—. The science of exact reasoning is **logic.**

—. A name for a piece of false reasoning of which the reasoner is unaware is **paralogism.**

—. A name for a piece of false reasoning known to be such by the reasoner and used with the intention of deceiving his opponent is **sophism.**

—. A form of reasoning consisting of three propositions, the third of which depends on the other two, is a **syllogism.**

—, deductive. Names for deductive reasoning, as opposed to inductive, are **illation** and **syllogistic inference.**

—. *See also under* **argument** *and* **fallacy,** *above.*

response. A term used in psychology for the mental or physical response made by a person to some stimulus is **reaction.**

right and wrong. The science dealing with the distinction between right and wrong is **ethics.**

schoolman. The name given to the teachings of the mediaeval schoolman, John Duns Scotus, is **Scotism.**

secret doctrine. Religious or philosophic doctrines meant to be understood only by privileged members of an association are **esoteric.**

self. A person's self, as opposed to other people and to outside influences, is his **ego.**

—. The practice of regarding and judging everything by its relations to one's own interests is **egoism.**

senses. Things unknowable through the senses are **incognizable.**

—. An impression received through the senses is a **percept.**

sight. The power of seeing mentally what is out of sight is **clairvoyance.**

sleep. A kind of artificially produced sleep, in which the subject can be made to act under the influence of suggestion, is **hypnosis.**

soul. The doctrine that vital actions are caused by a soul that is distinct from matter but works in or on matter is **animism.**

—. A name for the theosophic doctrine that the soul is an independent thing passing into another body after death is **metempsychosis.**

Spencer. The name given to the evolutionary theory of Herbert Spencer is **cosmism.**

spirit. A name given to a supposed visible form assumed by spirits of the dead is **materialization.**

—. A name for a person, especially one engaged in spiritualistic investigations, through whom communications from the spirits of the dead are supposed to come, is **medium.**

—. Telepathy, automatic writing, and other obscure manifestations of the activities of the mind or of a spirit world are known as **psychic phenomena.**

—. A name for a written message claimed to have been sent by a spirit is **psychogram.**

—. The doctrine that spirit is distinct from matter, and alone is real, is **spiritualism.**

—, writing. A name for a small board supported by castors and a pencil, used by spiritualists in writing what are claimed to be spirit messages, is **planchette.**

spiritualist. The name for the force to whose agency spiritualistic phenomena are attributed by some is **psychic force.**

—. A name for a meeting of spiritualists for the purpose of attempting to communicate with spirits of the dead is **séance.**

starting-point. Phrases used in logic meaning respectively the starting point and conclusion are **terminus a quo** and **terminus ad quem.**

subconsciousness. A theory brought into prominence by Sigmund Freud, an Austrian professor, that many mental disorders are the result of man's subconscious desires and fears intruding unawares on his consciousness is the **Freudian theory.**

subject. In logic, that which may be predicated of the subject is the **attribute.**

—. A word or group of words forming the subject or predicate of a proposition is a **term.**

supernatural. A name for the investigation of the supernatural is **occultism.**

supposition. A position or supposition assumed as self-evident is a **postulate.**

syllogism. The premise in a syllogism which contains the major term is the **major premise.**

—. The premise in a syllogism that contains the minor term is the **minor premise.**

—. The two propositions of a syllogism are its **premises.**

—. Names for a compound syllogism, made up of a series of propositions, the predicate of each proposition being the subject of the following one, are **sorites** and **chain-syllogism.**

—. *See also under* **premise** *and* **proposition,** *above, and* **term,** *below.*

tendency, native. A native tendency to reaction of a particular kind, excited by a particular stimulus, is an **instinct.**

term. Terms in logic that are names of ideas or qualities, and not of things, are **abstract.**

—. Terms that are names of things having qualities are **concrete.**

—. The total of the qualities that give a term its significance are the term's **connotation.**

—. The extent of the application of a term, that is, everything that the term denotes, is the term's **denotation.**

—. A term used in such a way as to include or exclude every member of a class is said to be **distributed.**

—. Terms in logic which cannot be interchanged are **inconvertible.**

—. The term forming the predicate of the conclusion of a syllogism is the **major term.**

—. The term in a syllogism common to both premises, but absent from the conclusion, is the **middle term.**

—. A term forming the subject of the conclusion of a syllogism is a **minor term.**

—. In logic, terms which have exactly the same meaning and are interchangeable are **reciprocal terms.**

—. *See also under* **premise, proposition,** *and* **syllogism,** *above.*

thing. A name for all things that cannot be identified as one's personality or conscious self is **non-ego.**

thought. The act of thought or judgment following perception is **conception.**

—. The turning of one's thoughts inward is **introversion.**

—. The name given to the theory that, in the process of thought, the series of physical changes in the brain and the series of changes in consciousness occur simultaneously, but do not interact on each other, is **parallelism.**

truth. The belief that truth can be arrived at by choosing and combining the doctrines of various schools of philosophy is **eclecticism.**

—. The doctrine that the perception of truth is by immediate apprehension without reasoning is **intuitionalism.**

—. The philosophic doctrine that divine truth may be apprehended directly by the soul through contemplation without the intervention of intellect or sense is **mysticism.**

understanding. The sceptical doctrine that things are unknowable or beyond our understanding is **acatalepsy.**

—. In philosophy, a name given to apprehension or understanding is **catalepsy.**

—. Immediate knowledge or understanding without the process of reasoning is **intuition.**

—. In the Kantian philosophy, ideas and things that pass above human understanding, and are entirely beyond the range of experience, are **transcendent.**

universal. The doctrine that all universals are merely terms is **nominalism** or **terminism.**

universe. The branch of metaphysics dealing with the universe and its relation to the mind is **cosmology.**

—. The name used for the universe regarded as an ordered system is **cosmos.**

—. Names for the doctrine that identifies the universe with God, or denies that God exists apart from it, are **cosmotheism** and **pantheism.**

—. A name for the doctrine by which all things in the universe are considered as but different forms of a single substance or principle is **monism.**

will. A name for the purposeful or deliberate exercise of the will is **conation.**

—. The philosophic doctrine that the will is not free, but that man's actions are determined by his previous history or other outside causes, is **determinism.**

—. The belief that the human will is under divine or else mechanical control and cannot influence the course of events is **fatalism.**

—. In philosophy, a term for free will is **liberty.**

—. A name for the theory, allied to determinism, that man has no free will, and that his volitions and actions are determined by foregoing causes or motives is **necessitarianism.**

—. The exercise of the will in choosing or determining is **volition.**

world. A name for the world imagined as representing the lesser organism man is **macrocosm.**

—. A name for man as an imaginary representation of the world in little is **microcosm.**

PHYSICS

admittance, electrical. The unit of electrical admittance is the **ohm.**

air. The receiver of an air pump from which all air has been pumped is an **exhausted receiver.**

—. A space exhausted of air to a high or the highest degree is a **vacuum.**

—. *See also under* **gas,** *below.*

air-resistance. A name for an apparatus with a long arm rotated mechanically, used for testing air-resistance, lifting force, etc., is **whirling-table.**

air-tight. A vessel sealed so as to exclude air is sealed **hermetically.**

analysis. A method of analysis by which the composition of a substance is deduced from its spectrum is **spectrum analysis.**

atom. Each of the minute particles of equal mass carrying a negative electric charge and contained in the atom is an **electron.**

—. A name for a group of atoms held together by a force called affinity is **molecule.**

—. A name given to the positively charged nucleus of the atom round which the electrons are grouped is **proton.**

attraction. The attraction or pull exerted by all bodies on all other bodies is **gravitation.**

—. The sum of the massed elements or charges of an attracted body, each divided by its distance from the attracted point, is a **potential function.**

balance. The point in which a body is balanced in all positions is the body's **centre of gravity** or **centre of mass.**

barometer. A barometer consisting of an air-tight box from which the air has been nearly exhausted, recording atmospheric pressure by the inward or outward movements of its sides, is an **aneroid barometer.**

—. A name for a form of barometer in which atmospheric pressure is exerted directly upon a short column of liquid and causes compression of air or gas enclosed in the tube above is **sympiesometer.**

—. The name of a kind of barometer which, by means of an electrical circuit, shows at a distant point the pressure at the place where the barometer stands is **telebarometer.**

—. The space devoid of air above the mercury in the tube of a barometer is the **Torricellian vacuum.**

battery, electric. The name given to a powerful electric battery used for rapid combustion is **deflagrator.**

—, —. The name of a form of electric battery made of disks of dissimilar metal is **dry-pile.**

—, —. Each of the terminals of an electric battery is a **pole.**

—, —. A battery which generates current is a **primary battery.**

battery, electric. A battery, such as an accumulator, which stores up electrical energy is a **secondary battery.**

—, —. *See also under* **cell,** *below, and* **battery** *in section* Engineering.

—, galvanic. The positive pole of a galvanic battery is the **anode.**

—, —. The negative pole of a galvanic battery is the **cathode.**

—, —. Each of the poles of a galvanic battery is an **electrode.**

—, pole. The terminal of an electric battery into which the current is regarded as flowing from a circuit is the **negative pole.**

—, —. The terminal of an electric battery from which the current is regarded as flowing into a circuit is the **positive pole.**

broadcasting. *See section* Wireless Telegraphy and Telephony.

capacity, electrical. The electro-magnetic unit of capacity is the **farad.**

cell, electric. An electric cell consisting of zinc in diluted sulphuric acid, separated by a porous wall from carbon in concentrated nitric or chromic acid, is a **Bunsen cell.**

—, —. An electric cell consisting of copper and zinc immersed in solutions of zinc sulphate and copper sulphate respectively is a **Daniell cell.**

—, —. A number of electric cells connected together form an **electric battery.**

—, —. An electric cell in which a current is produced by chemical action on a metal or metals is a **galvanic cell** or **voltaic cell.**

—, —. An electric cell consisting of an outer jar containing a zinc plate in dilute sulphuric acid and an inner porous pot with a platinum plate in strong nitric acid is a **Grove cell.**

—, —. An electric cell consisting of zinc and carbon in ammonium chloride is a **Leclanché cell.**

—, —. The terminal of an electric cell into which the current is regarded as flowing from a circuit is the **negative pole.**

—, —. Each of the two terminals of an electric cell, dynamo, etc., is a **pole.**

—, —. The terminal of an electric cell from which current is regarded as flowing into a circuit is the **positive pole.**

—, — *See also* **battery,** *above.*

change, molecular. A term denoting the exertion of force in the production of molecular change or in overcoming resistance is **work.**

circuit, electrical. A connexion which offers a path of low resistance between two electrical conductors is a **short-circuit.**

colour. Colours which together produce white light by their simultaneous impact on the retina are **complementary.**

—. The colours from which all others can be obtained by the mixture of pigments are **primary colours.**

—, rings. A name for rings of different colours seen when a slightly convex lens is pressed against a flat glass surface is **Newton's rings.**

—. *See also* **light** *and* **spectrum,** *below.*

comparison. A point, line or object assumed in physics as a fixed basis of comparison is **fiducial.**

conductor. To separate a conductor from other bodies by means of some non-conducting substance is to **insulate.**

—, electrical. A substance which offers a high resistance to the passage of an electric current is a **dielectric.**

—, —. The electrical resistance of an electrical conductor expressed in ohms is **ohmage.**

—, —. A name for a device by which the changes of current in a conductor are shown as wavy lines of light on a screen is **oscillograph.**

crystal. A doubly refracting crystal having two optic axes and thus giving single refraction in two directions is **biaxial.**

crystal. The direction of a doubly refracting crystal in which there is single refraction only is the **optic axis.**

—. A doubly refracting crystal giving single refraction in one direction only—that of its optic axis—is **uniaxial.**

current, air. A name for an air current set up by an electrical discharge from a sharp point is **aura.**

—, electric. The term denoting the reciprocal of the impedance of an alternating current electric circuit is **admittance.**

—, —. An electric current the direction of which is continually changing is an **alternating current.**

—, —. An instrument for measuring the strength of an electric current in amperes is an **ammeter** or **ampere-meter.**

—, — The practical unit of electric current strength is the **ampere.**

—, —. A substance which allows the passage of an electric current, presenting low resistance to it, is a **conductor.**

—, —. An electric current that is continuous, as opposed to an alternating current, is a **direct current.**

—, —. The path through a conductor along which an electric current is regarded as flowing is an **electric circuit.**

—, —. The branch of physics that deals with electric currents is **electrodynamics.**

—, —. The process of decomposing a chemical compound by passing an electric current through it is **electrolysis.**

—, —. A chemical compound that can be decomposed by an electric current is an **electrolyte.**

—, —. The resistance due to self-induction met with by alternating currents passing through a conductor is **impedance.**

—, —. An electric current set up in a body by the proximity, without contact, of an electrified body is an **induced current.**

—, —. A name for a device by which oscillations of an alternating current are shown as wavy lines of light on a screen is **oscillograph.**

—, —. Two alternating currents, of the same frequency and in the same circuit having their greatest positive or negative value at the same moment are in **phase.**

—, —. A system of alternating electric currents having two, three, or more such currents of the same frequency but differing in phase is **polyphase.**

— —. An electric current generated by the conjunction of two solids, especially metals, at different temperatures is **stereo-electric.**

—, —. The electromotive force of an electric current expressed in volts is the **voltage.**

density. An instrument used to measure the relative density or specific gravity of substances is a **densimeter.**

discharge, electrical. An intensely bright discharge of electricity between two conductors is an **electric arc.**

—, —. A continuous discharge of electrical energy through a conductor is an **electric current.**

—, —. A sealed glass tube containing an almost perfect vacuum, used for observing the passage of an electric discharge, etc., is a **vacuum-tube**

dynamo. Each of the two terminals of an electric cell, dynamo, etc., is a **pole.**

electricity. The amount of electricity a condenser will contain is its **capacity.**

—. The branch of electricity dealing with electric currents is **electrodynamics.**

—. The branch of electricity dealing with the motion of electricity and the forces connected with it, as opposed to electrostatics, is **electrokinetics.**

—. The branch of physics dealing with the relations between electricity and magnetism is **electromagnetics** or **electromagnetism.**

electricity. The branch of science dealing with electricity in a state of rest or frictional electricity is **electrostatics.**

—. Electricity generated by chemical action is **galvanic** or **voltaic.**

—. A former name for electricity produced by chemical action was **galvanism.**

—. The production of electrification in a body by the proximity, without contact, of an electrified body is **induction.**

—. Electricity produced by revolving a coil of wire near a permanent magnet or magnets is **magneto-electricity.**

—. Electricity of the kind produced by rubbing sealing wax with flannel is **negative electricity.**

—. Electricity of the kind which is produced by rubbing glass with silk is **positive electricity.**

—. The term used to describe minerals, such as tourmaline, which are unelectrified when cold but become electrified and show polarity when heated is **pyro-electric.**

—. The quality in a substance which hinders the passage of electricity through it is **resistance.**

—. Electricity that is at rest is **static electricity.**

—. *See also under* **cell, current** *and* **discharge,** *above*; *and under* **unit,** *below.*

electrode. The positive pole or electrode of a galvanic battery is the **anode.**

—. The negative pole or electrode of a galvanic battery is the **cathode.**

electrolysis. An element appearing at the positive electrode or pole in electrolysis is **electro-negative.**

—. An element appearing at the negative electrode or pole in electrolysis is **electro-positive.**

—. A positively or negatively charged element appearing at one of the electrodes in the process of electrolysis is an **ion.**

—. A substance, or one of its radicals or atoms, resulting from electrolysis is an **ion.**

energy. A name for the quantity expressing the potential energy of a mass or body is **ergal.**

—. A term denoting the rate of transfer of energy, etc., is **flux.**

—. The name given to energy going out which modifies and affects that against which it is directed is **influence.**

—. Energy that is due to position and does not exist as motion is **potential.**

—. The path through the ether or other medium to a given point of a wave of energy is a **ray.**

—, electrical. Terms used to denote electrical energy equivalent to that of one watt for one hour, minute, and second are respectively **watt-hour, watt-minute,** and **watt-second.**

—, —. An instrument for recording electrical energy in terms of watt-hours is a **watt-hour meter** or **wattmeter.**

—, —. *See also under* **unit,** *below.*

equilibrium. If a body in equilibrium will remain at rest in a new position when slightly displaced the equilibrium is **indifferent, mobile,** or **neutral.**

—. If a body in equilibrium returns to its former position after a slight displacement the equilibrium is **stable.**

—. If a body in equilibrium will move still farther after being slightly displaced the equilibrium is **unstable.**

fluid. An instrument used to measure the expansion of fluids is a **dilatometer.**

—. The property of fluids, semi-fluids, and gases by which they resist a force tending to produce an instantaneous change of shape, or a change in the arrangement of their molecules, is **viscosity.**

—. A portion of fluid whose particles have a rotatory motion is a **vortex.**

force. The name for the force by which molecules of the same kind or of the same body are held together is **cohesion.**

force. The name given to a combination of two parallel forces acting in opposite directions, and so tending to turn a body round without moving it from its place, is **couple.**

—. The force created by an electrical generator or battery is **electromotive force,** usually abbreviated to **E.M.F.**

—. A line, surface or region in which the potential of a force is the same, or constant, at all points is **equipotential.**

—. Names for the force causing bodies to fall towards the centre of the earth are **gravitation** and **gravity.**

—. A term denoting the exertion of force in the production of molecular change, or in overcoming resistance, is **work.**

gas. The branch of pneumatics which treats of the behaviour of air and other gases under the influence of gravity and mechanical forces is **aerodynamics.**

—. An apparatus for finding the weight and tension of air and other gases is an **aerometer.**

—. The branch of pneumatics which deals with the equilibrium, pressure, and other properties of air and gases not in motion is **aerostatics.**

—. A combination of molecules with an electron in a gas is an **ion.**

—. The absorption and retention of a gas by a substance is **occlusion.**

—. The science treating of the properties of air and other gases is **pneumatics.**

—. The pressure or expansive force of a vapour or gas is its **tension.**

—. The name given to the gaseous form of a usually solid or liquid substance is **vapour.**

—. The property of gases, fluids and semi-fluids by which they resist a force tending to produce an instantaneous change of shape or of the arrangement of their molecules is **viscosity.**

gravity, centre of. The point in a floating body on the position of which its stability depends, determined by the relative positions of its centres of gravity and buoyancy, is such a body's **metacentre.**

—, specific. An instrument, in the form of a float, for ascertaining the specific gravity of liquids is a **gravimeter.**

—, —. The specific gravity of liquids and of some solids is able to be measured with a **hydrometer.**

—, —. The name of a kind of instrument for finding the specific gravity of liquids is **litrameter.**

heat. The conversion of heat rays into light rays is **calorescence.**

—. The transmission of heat, sound, etc., through matter without motion of the matter affected is **conduction.**

—. The diffusion of heat through a liquid or gas by the movement of its parts, as opposed to conduction, is **convection.**

—. The absorption of heat at a certain point during the heating of a bar of steel, when the temperature of the bar ceases to rise, or even falls, is **decalescence.**

—. The property possessed by certain substances of letting heat pass freely through them is **diathermancy.**

—. A term denoting the rate of transfer of heat, etc., is **flux.**

—. A substance made white or glowing with heat is **incandescent.**

—. The heat required to change a solid into a liquid or vapour, or to change a liquid into a vapour, is **latent heat.**

—. The passage of heat or light from one body to another without increasing the heat of the medium which may lie between is **radiation.**

—. The term applied to a temporary check in the cooling of heated steel, or an actual rise in temperature, during the process of cooling gradually from an incandescent state, is **recalescence.**

heat. The quantity of heat needed to raise the temperature of a given quantity of a substance one degree, as compared with the heat needed to raise the same volume of water one degree, is the **specific heat.**

—. The degree of sensible heat of a body or of the atmosphere is its **temperature.**

—. A current of electricity induced by a difference in temperature between two objects is **thermo-electric.**

—, instrument. The name of a delicate electrical instrument for the measurement of minute differences of radiant heat is **bolometer.**

—, —. An instrument for determining the capacity of substances for resisting or allowing the passage of heat is a **diathermometer.**

—, —. The name of a kind of instrument for measuring great heat is **pyrometer.**

—, —. The name of an electrical apparatus which makes a record in one place of the heat in another is **telethermograph.**

inductance, electrical. The unit of electrical inductance is the **henry.**

induction. The name given to the effect which an electric circuit has on itself in tending to check changes in the current flowing through it is **self-induction.**

ion. A negatively charged ion is an **anion.**

—. A positively charged ion is a **cation.**

lens. A lens that transmits light without separating it into its constituent colours is **achromatic.**

—. A name for the act of bringing the axes of two lenses into line is **collimation.**

—. A lens that has both faces curving inwards towards each other is **concave.**

—. A lens that has both faces curving outwards is **convex.**

—. A unit of refractive power expressing the power of a lens with a focal length of one metre is a **dioptric** or **diopter.**

—. The distance between the centre of a lens and the point where the light rays converge is **the focal distance** or **focal length.**

—. The point of meeting of a system of rays after passing through a lens or being reflected by a mirror is the **focus.**

—. A lens convex on one side and concave on the other is a **meniscus.**

—. A lens that is flat on one side and has the other side concave or curved inwards, is **plano-concave.**

—. A lens that is flat on one side and has the other side convex or rounded is **plano-convex.**

—. A lens made up of a number of ring-like segments is **polyzonal.**

—. The number of times a lens magnifies an object is the former's **power.**

—. A name for a perforated disk to regulate the light passing through a lens is **stop.**

light. The deviation of rays of light from a straight path when partly obstructed, or when passing near the edge of an opaque body, etc., generally accompanied by prismatic colours, is **diffraction.**

—. The property possessed by some substances of giving off light of a colour different from their own and from that of the light falling on them is **fluorescence.**

—. Light which cannot be resolved by a prism into component parts is **homogeneous.**

—. The name given to a lentil-shaped piece of glass with both sides curved, or with one side curved and one flat, used to concentrate light rays, is **lens.**

—. The name for the science of light and vision is **optics.**

—. Light that is treated by reflection or transmission in such a manner that its properties become different when it travels in different directions is **polarized.**

light. The principal colours of the spectrum which together make up white light—usually regarded as red, green, and violet—are **primary colours.**

—. The passage of light or heat from one body to another without increasing the heat of a medium which may lie between is **radiation.**

—. The name given to an apparatus consisting of a little four-vaned mill inside an exhausted glass bulb, caused to turn by the action of light, is **radiometer.**

—. A name for the throwing back at an angle from a surface of rays of light, heat, sound, etc., which strike it is **reflection.**

—. The deflecting of light at an angle from its direct course owing to a change of density in the medium is **refraction.**

—. A name for a perforated disk to regulate the light passing through a lens is **stop.**

—, instrument. An instrument used for measuring the actinic or chemical effect of light rays is an **actinometer.**

—, —. A name for various instruments for measuring the intensity of light, or for comparing the intensities of different lights, is **photometer.**

—, —. An instrument used for measuring the bending or the wave-length of a ray of light as it passes through a prism is a **spectrometer.**

—, intensity. A name for the branch of optics dealing with measurements of the intensity of light is **photometry.**

—, —. The name of a non-metallic chemical element which varies in electrical resistance according to the intensity of light is **selenium.**

—, polarization. A name for a prism of Iceland spar, split down the middle and stuck together again with Canada balsam, used for polarizing light, is **Nicol prism.**

—, rays. The failure of a lens or mirror to bring light rays to a focus is **aberration.**

—, —. The principle that the wave-length of rays of light, etc., decreases or increases as the body producing them moves towards or away from a given point is **Doppler's principle.**

—, —. The point where rays of light meet after passing through a lens or being reflected from a mirror is the **focus.**

—, —. The combination of two rays of light so that one either lessens or increases the brightness of the other is **interference.**

—, —. A term denoting a number of light rays meeting in or radiating from a point is **pencil.**

—, —. An image, visible or invisible, into which rays of light or other radiant energy are broken up by passing through a prism, etc., so that the parts are arranged in a progressive series according to their wave-length, is a **spectrum.**

—, reflection. The branch of optics dealing with the reflection of light from polished surfaces is **catoptrics.**

—, refraction. Names for the branch of optics dealing with the refraction of light are **anaclastics** and **dioptrics.**

—, —. An instrument for determining to what extent light is refracted in passing through a transparent solid, or through a liquid or a gas, is a **refractometer.**

—. *See also* **lens,** *above;* *and* **ray, refraction,** *and* **spectrum,** *below.*

magnetic dip. An instrument used to measure the declination from the horizontal of a suspended magnetic needle is a **dip-circle, dipping compass** or **dipping needle.**

—. The extent to which a magnetic needle dips is measured by an **inclinometer,** and recorded by an **inclinograph.**

magnetism. A galvanometer in which the magnetic attraction of the earth for the needle is balanced by a pull in the opposite direction from a magnet is **astatic.**

magnetism. A magnet having two poles is **dipolar.**

—. A machine, such as a dynamo, actuated by an electromagnet and not by a permanent magnet is **electromagnetic.**

—. The type of magnetism produced by an electric current is **electromagnetism.**

—. Substances that have magnetic qualities resembling those of iron are **ferromagnetic.**

—. The setting up of a magnetic field round a conductor by a current flowing through it is **inductance.**

—. The pole or end of a magnetic needle which turns to the south when the needle is allowed to swing freely is the **negative pole,** and that which turns to the north is the **positive pole.**

—. A substance that is attracted by the poles of a magnet is **paramagnetic,** and one that is repelled by them and tends to lie at right angles to the lines of magnetic force is **diamagnetic.**

—. Either of two points or ends in a magnet where the magnetic force is centred is a **pole.**

—. A magnet consisting of a cylindrical coil carrying an electric current is a **solenoid.**

—. The magnetic force inherent in the earth is **terrestrial magnetism.**

—, terrestrial. An imaginary line round the surface of the earth near the equator, joining those places where the magnetic needle does not dip but balances horizontally, is the **aclinic line.**

—, —. An instrument for measuring the declination or variation from true north and south of the compass-needle is a **declination-compass** or **declinometer.**

—, —. Each of the two points in the earth where the lines of magnetic force are vertical and the magnetic needle dips vertically is a **magnetic pole.**

—, —. An instrument for measuring and comparing magnetic force at different times or places is a **variometer.**

matter. The mass or quantity of matter of a substance in a unit of volume is its **density.**

—. Insensible loss or waste of the body of a substance is **dissipation.**

—. The name of the property of some kinds of matter to return to their original shape or bulk after being stretched, twisted or compressed is **elasticity.**

—. A name for matter in a liquid or gaseous form is **fluid.**

—. A substance which is not able to be condensed or pressed into a smaller space is **incondensable.**

—. The name for the property of matter by which a body continues in an existing state of rest or of uniform motion in a straight line unless an outside force changes that state is **inertia.**

—. The quantity of matter in a body is the body's **mass.**

—. The name for each of the tiny groups of atoms of which matter is believed to be composed is **molecule.**

—. A space regarded as being completely occupied by matter is a **plenum.**

—. The three forms of matter are **solid, liquid,** and **gas.**

—. The name for a space containing no matter is **vacuum.**

—. That property of matter by which bodies in a solid state yield continuously under a stress is **viscosity.**

—. The product of the mass, or quantity of matter, of a body and the force of gravity is the body's **weight.**

—. *See also* **atom,** *above;* *and* **molecule,** *below.*

measure. A multiplier which measures the degree of a property is a **coefficient.**

—. Any line or surface graduated or marked at regular intervals as a guide to measuring, grading or classifying is a **scale.**

mirror. A name for a mirror of polished metal used as a reflector in an optical instrument is **speculum.**

molecule. A name for the force holding atoms together in the molecule is **affinity.**

—. The name for the force by which molecules of the same kind or of the same body are held together, so that the body offers resistance to anything tending to pull it apart, is **cohesion.**

—. *See also under* **atom,** *above.*

motion. The state of a body when forces acting upon it so counteract each other that the body has no tendency to move is **equilibrium.**

—. The name for the power of a body to continue in motion, and to resist opposing forces after the moving force has ceased to act, is **momentum.**

—. A motion of matter or the ether which passes movement or energy along without the matter or ether itself advancing as a whole is an **undulation.**

—. Rate of motion whether great or small expressed by the relation of the distance traversed to the time of passage is **velocity.**

—. Rapid motion backwards and forwards, especially a repeated motion of the parts of a fluid or elastic solid whose equilibrium has been disturbed, is **vibration.**

number. A number expressing a relation or property which remains fixed for the same substance under the same conditions is a **constant.**

optics. Names for the branch of optics that deals with the refraction of light when passing through different mediums, especially lenses, are **anaclastics** and **dioptrics.**

—. The branch of optics dealing with the reflection of light from polished surfaces is **catoptrics.**

path. The path through the ether or other medium to a given point of a wave of energy is a **ray.**

permeation. To permeate or enter through pores or interstices is to **infiltrate.**

pneumatics. The branch of pneumatics which deals with the equilibrium, pressure, and other properties of air and gases not in motion is **aerostatics.**

polarization. A substance which turns the plane of polarization of light to the left is **laevo-rotatory,** and one which turns it to the right is **dextro-rotatory.**

pole, electric. The positive pole or electrode of a galvanic battery is the **anode.**

—, —. The negative pole or electrode of a galvanic battery is the **cathode.**

—, —. A device for ascertaining the polarity of the wires in a direct current electrical circuit is a **pole-finder.**

position. A name for the angular measurement of the apparent change of position of an object when viewed from two different points of observation is **parallax.**

pressure. A general name for an instrument for measuring the weight or pressure of the atmosphere is **barometer.**

—. A name for an apparatus for determining pressure or its effects on fluids is **piezometer.**

—. A name for an instrument for measuring the pressure or rate of speed of a current of water or other liquid is **sympiesometer.**

—. The name of an electrical device for measuring very small changes in moisture, temperature, or pressure is **tasimeter.**

—, atmospheric. The unit of barometric pressure is the **inch.**

—, electrical. The electrical pressure required to create a current of one ampere in a circuit having the resistance of one ohm is a **volt.**

pressure-gauge. Another name for a pressure-gauge is **manometer.**

radiation. The name given to an instrument which measures minute changes in radiation is **radio-micrometer.**

—. *See also under* **heat** *and* **light,** *above.*

radio. *See section* Wireless.

ray. The three distinct kinds ot ray given out by radium are the **alpha, beta** and **gamma rays.**

—. A collection of parallel rays is a **beam.**

—. The principle that the wave-length of rays of light, etc., decreases or increases as the body producing them moves towards or away from a given point is **Doppler's principle.**

—. The direction in which a ray strikes a surface is the ray's **incidence.**

—. Rays incapable of refraction are **irrefrangible.**

—. A name for a collection of diverging or converging rays is **pencil.**

—. The name given, after the discoverer, to a form of radiant energy penetrating most opaque substances is **Röntgen rays.**

—. *See also under* **light,** *above;* *and* **spectrum,** *below.*

recurrence. The rate of recurrence or repetition of phenomena is the **frequency.**

refraction. A doubly refracting crystal having two optic axes and thus giving single refraction in two directions is **biaxial.**

—. In optics the degree to which a substance has the power of bending light rays which pass through it is its **index of refraction.**

—. Rays which are incapable of refraction are **irrefrangible.**

— A doubly refracting crystal giving single refraction in one direction only—that of its optic axis—is **uniaxial.**

resistance. A term denoting the exertion of force in overcoming resistance or in the production of molecular change is **work.**

—, electrical. The unit of electrical resistance is the **ohm.**

Röntgen rays. An instrument having a fluorescent screen used instead of a dark room to show the shadows cast by Rontgen rays is a **fluoroscope.**

—. Another name for the Röntgen rays is **X-rays.**

series. A name used in physics for a method of performing certain operations in a series or successive stages is **cascade.**

sound. The branch of physics that treats of sound and its phenomena is **acoustics.**

—. Each of the secondary sounds heard when two musical tones of different pitch are sounded together loudly is a **combinational tone** or **resultant tone.**

—. A secondary sound, or resultant tone, the frequency of which is the difference between the frequencies of the two musical tones producing it is a **difference tone** or **differential tone.**

— A name for an instrument for measuring and comparing the duration of sounds is **echometer.**

— The number of the vibrations of a sounding body in a second is the **frequency.**

—. A musical sound or tone considered in relation to its overtones is a **fundamental.**

—. A secondary sound or tone produced by the vibration of parts of a body or string which, as a whole, gives a lower or fundamental tone is **harmonic** or **overtone.**

—. A name for an instrument used for measuring the force and recording the number of sound vibrations is **phonometer.**

—. A name for an instrument for testing or measuring sounds is **sonometer.**

—. A secondary sound, or resultant tone, whose frequency is the sum of the frequencies of two simple tones sounded simultaneously is a **summational tone.**

—, waves. The combination of two sets of sound-waves so as to produce greater intensity or comparative silence is **interference.**

—, —. The name of an apparatus for showing the nature of sound waves is **kaleidophone.**

—, —. The name of an apparatus for making visible the vibrations of sound by the flickerings of a flame is **Koenig's flame.**

sound, waves. A name for an apparatus which shows the effect of sound-waves by means of a spot of light moving on a screen is **opeidoscope.**

—, —. A name for an instrument that represents the vibrations of sound-waves in a visible form is **phonoscope.**

—, —. The throwing off or back from a surface of sound-waves or other waves that strike it is **reflection.**

—, —. The change of direction of sound waves owing to the nature of the medium through which they travel is **refraction.**

space. The name for the medium supposed to fill all space, through which waves of light, heat, electricity, etc., are propagated, is **aether** or **ether.**

—. *See also under* **matter,** *above.*

specific gravity. *See under* **gravity,** *above.*

spectrum. The name given to those rays of the spectrum which are powerful in producing chemical changes, especially the blue, violet, and ultra-violet rays, is **actinic rays.**

—. Rays, such as X-rays, lying outside the visible spectrum are **extra-spectral.**

—. The colours of the spectrum which together make up white light—usually regarded as red, green, and violet—are **primary colours.**

—. A modified form of spectroscope in which the colours of the spectrum are made to produce a succession of sounds is a **spectrophone.**

—. An instrument for forming and analysing the spectra of the rays given out by substances is a **spectroscope.**

—. Light rays beyond the violet rays of the spectrum are **ultra-violet.**

steel. The absorption of heat at a certain point during the heating of a bar of steel, when the temperature ceases to rise, or even falls, is **decalescence.**

—. The term applied to a property possessed by cooling steel, which grows hot again or ceases to cool for a time although the furnace heat is falling, is **recalescence.**

sun. The name of a kind of apparatus for measuring heat given out by the sun is **pyrheliometer.**

temperature. The temperature at which particles whose motion causes heat in matter would be at rest, estimated at about —273 degrees Centigrade, is **absolute zero.**

—. The amount of heat required to raise the temperature of a unit mass of water through one degree is a **heat unit.**

—. The name of an electrical device for measuring very small changes in moisture, temperature, or pressure is **tasimeter.**

thermometer. A thermometer in which the expansion and contraction of dry air is used to show changes in temperature is an **air-thermometer.**

—. The temperature at which steam escapes from pure water under atmospheric pressure, used as a fixed point on thermometer scales, is **boiling-point.**

—. A thermometer the scale of which has the freezing point of water at zero, and the interval between the freezing and boiling points divided into 100 degrees is a **Centigrade thermometer.**

—. A thermometer—formerly used in Russia—having the interval between the freezing and boiling points of water divided into 150 degrees is a **De Lisle's thermometer.**

—. A thermometer the scale of which has the freezing point of water as 32 degrees, and its boiling point as 212 degrees is a **Fahrenheit thermometer.**

—. The temperature at which pure ice melts under atmospheric pressure, used as a fixed point on thermometer scales, is **freezing-point.**

—. The name of a kind of thermometer for measuring very low temperatures is **kryometer.**

thermometer. A thermometer having a scale in which the interval between the freezing and boiling points of water is divided into 80 degrees is a **Réaumur thermometer.**

tone, musical. *See under* **sound,** *above.*

transparency. An instrument used to measure the transparency of liquids is a **diaphanometer.**

unit, electric. The unit of electric current is the **ampère,** and the quantitative unit is the **ampère-hour.**

—, —. A unit denoting the amount of electric current given by one ampère in a second is a **coulomb.**

—, —. The unit of work in practical electricity equivalent to the work done in one second by a current of one ampère against a resistance of one ohm is the **joule.**

—, —. Electric frequency is measured by the unit of 1,000 cycles, the **kilocycle.**

—, —. The units by which electric power is measured are the **watt** and its thousandfold multiple the **kilowatt.**

—, —. The unit of electric energy is the **kilowatt-hour** or **kelvin.**

—, —. Names for electrical units of one million ohms, volts, and watts are, respectively, **megohm, megavolt,** and **megawatt.**

—, —. The unit of electrical admittance is the **mho.**

—, —. Units used to measure the capacity of an electric condenser are the **farad** and its one-millionth part the **microfarad.**

—, — The unit of electric inductance is the **henry,** and its one-millionth part is the **microhenry.**

—, —. The unit of measurement for electric resistance is the **ohm.**

—, —. The unit by which electric pressure is measured is the **volt.**

unit, heat. The unit of heat equalling nearly two hundred and fifty-two calories, and representing the amount of heat required to raise one pound of water at its maximum density through one degree Fahrenheit is the **British thermal unit.**

—, —. The name of a metric unit of heat representing the amount of heat needed to raise the temperature of one gramme of water by one degree Centigrade is **calorie** or **small calorie.**

—, —. The name of a metric unit of heat representing the amount of heat needed to raise the temperature of one kilogram of water by one degree Centigrade is **large calorie.**

vapour. That branch of science which treats of the laws of watery vapour is **atmology.**

—. The pressure or expansive force of a vapour or gas is its **tension.**

vibration. The name given to the result of the action of two sets of vibrations on one another is **interference.**

—. A vibration in the ether which transmits heat, light, electricity, etc., is a **wave.**

—. The theory that light, heat, electricity, etc., are vibrations in the ether is the **wave theory.**

—, sound. *See under* **sound,** *above.*

vision. The name of the science of light and vision is **optics.**

volume. An instrument for measuring the volume of a solid body by determining the quantity of fluid which the body displaces is a **volumenometer.**

weight. A substance or agent without weight is an **imponderable.**

—. An object of which the weight can be measured or estimated is **ponderable.**

POLITICS AND ECONOMICS

Act of Parliament. The draft containing the text of a proposed Act of Parliament is a **bill.**

—. A clause inserted in an Act of Parliament to make allowance for those who honestly disagree with it is a **conscience clause.**

—. A name for an Act of Parliament that is not supported by all three estates of the realm is **Ordinance.**

—. An act or bill that concerns a particular individual or corporation only and not the community at large is a **private act** or **private bill.**

—. An act or bill which affects the interests of the public at large is a **public act** or **public bill.**

—. A published record of all Acts of Parliament which have become law is a **statute-book** or **statute-roll.**

ambassador. *See* **diplomat,** *below.*

America. The doctrine that no European state has the right to extend its political influence in North or South America is **Monroeism** or the **Monroe Doctrine.**

Arab, chief. The name given to the chief or head of an Arab family, tribe, or village is **sheikh.**

assembly. A national assembly, elected for a special purpose, but not called by a sovereign, is a **convention.**

—. A name for an assembly called together, often irregularly, for political or administrative action in a Spanish-speaking country is **junta.**

—. A local council of workmen, peasants, or soldiers in Russia, elected to send representatives to a higher assembly, is a **soviet.**

— A former local assembly in Russia elected to deal with the affairs of a district was a **zemstvo.**

—. *See also under* **parliament,** *below.*

banishment. The banishment of a person from his native land for political or other reasons is **expatriation.**

baronet. A name for the red hand of Ulster which is the armorial device of a baronet is **bloody hand.**

bill. The formal introduction, general discussion, and final acceptance of a Parliamentary bill are, respectively, its **first, second,** and **third reading.**

— Any bill introduced into the House of Commons which has for its object the spending of public money or the raising of it by taxation is a **money bill.**

—. The Act of Parliament, passed in 1911, by which any Bill that has passed through the House of Commons in three successive sessions becomes law even if rejected by the House of Lords is the **Parliament Act.**

—. *See also* **Act of Parliament,** *above.*

body-guard, King's. One of the company of retired officers who form the sovereign's body-guard on state occasions is a **gentleman-at-arms.**

borough. An inhabitant of a borough who has full municipal rights is a **burgess.**

—. An administrative division of a borough or city is a **ward.**

bribe. An American name for profit or advantage gained corruptly, especially bribes taken in connexion with political or municipal business, is **graft.**

bullion. The duty paid to the Exchequer on bullion brought to be minted is **seigniorage.**

burgh, royal. In Scotland, the name given to the corporation of a royal burgh is **guildry.**

Chancellor, Lord. The name given to the embroidered purse forming part of the insignia of office of the Lord Chancellor of England is **burse.**

—, —. The name of the large square cushion which is the Lord Chancellor's seat in the House of Lords is **Woolsack.**

change. The name given to a fundamental change in the government or constitution of a country is **revolution.**

charge. A charge imposed by a government on the production, sale, import, or export of goods, or on the transference of property, is a **duty.**

—. A charge imposed by a local authority for the purposes of local administration is a **rate.**

—. A charge imposed by the central authority on people and property for the purposes of national administration is a **tax.**

chief, Cossack. A chief or leader of the Cossacks is a **hetman.**

—, Indian. The name given to a kind of semi-independent or feudal chieftain in southern India is **poligar.**

—, Tatar. The name given to a chief of a Tatar or Mongol tribe is **khan.**

China. A name for the Chinese Foreign Office is **Tsung li yamen.**

—. The office or residence of a Chinese mandarin is a **yamen.**

Church and State. The doctrine that the Church should be subordinate to the State is **Erastianism.**

citizen. A name given to want of love for one's country or conduct unworthy of a good citizen is **incivism.**

city. A city with an independent government, especially the city republics of Hamburg, Bremen and Lubeck in Germany, and the city of Danzig, guaranteed by the League of Nations, is a **free city.**

civil rights. The withdrawal of civil rights, especially voting rights, is **disfranchisement.**

—. The admission to civil rights, especially that of voting, is **enfranchisement.**

closure. Popular names for the closure are **gag** and **guillotine.**

coin. The name for the small notches round the edges of gold and silver coins is **milling.**

—. A name for the diameter of a coin is **module.**

—. A name for the study of coins and medals is **numismatics** or **numismatology.**

—. The side of a coin or medal bearing the head or the more important device is the **obverse.**

—. The less important side of a coin or medal is the **reverse.**

—. *See also under* **currency, monetary unit,** *and* **money,** *below.*

colony. A colony governed directly by the British Crown is a **Crown Colony.**

—. The political theory that the dominions and colonies of the British Empire should be favoured in trade above other countries is **preferentialism.**

commonwealth, ideal. The name of the imaginary island with a perfect social and political system described by Sir Thomas More is **Utopia.**

Commons, House of. Those members of the House of Commons who belong to neither of the two leading parties occupy the **cross benches.**

—. When members of the House of Commons vote by passing out of the House by different lobbies, the House is said to **divide.**

—. In the House of Commons, each of the benches on either side of the table facing the Speaker is a **front bench.**

—. A standing committee of the House of Commons which considers bills relating to the law or to trade is a **grand committee.**

—. The chairman of the House of Commons is the **Speaker.**

—. The name given to one of the members appointed to count the votes at a division in the House of Commons is **teller.**

—. A name for a party official in the House of Commons who communicates the wishes of the party leaders to members of the party, and maintains its discipline, and also a name for a written message urging members to attend a sitting, is **whip.**

Congress, U.S.A. A name for a representative entitled to speak but not to vote in the United States Congress is **vocal.**

Conservative. A name given to the Conservative party, the successor of the party which in 1688 supported the Stuarts, is **Tory party.**

consul. An official recognition given to a consul by the foreign government to which he is accredited is an **exequatur.**

Corn Laws. A name for the principles of the Anti-Corn Law League, founded in Manchester in 1838 by Cobden and Bright, is **Manchesterism.**

county. The chief officer of the Crown in an English or Welsh county or shire is the **sheriff.**

court. A formal introduction of a person to a sovereign or his representative is a **presentation at court.**

—. *See also under* **royal household,** *below.*

currency. The name for the system of currency in which coins of two different metals, the rate of exchange between which is fixed, are legal tender for any amount is **bimetallism.**

—. One who advocates the use of coin as common currency instead of paper money is a **bullionist.**

—. The gradual withdrawal of paper currency from circulation is **deflation.**

—. The issue of more paper currency than could be redeemed for gold at need is **inflation.**

—. *See also under* **coin,** *above;* *and* **monetary unit** *and* **money,** *below.*

debate, Parliamentary. A decision in the House of Commons to close a debate without listening to further speeches is called a **closure,** or, popularly, **gag** and **guillotine.**

declaration. A public declaration explaining or asserting the policy of a sovereign, public leader, party, or group is a **manifesto.**

—. The name of a political, usually revolutionary, manifesto, especially one issued by a military leader in a Spanish-speaking country, is **pronunciamento.**

decoration, Papal. A decoration, in the form of a branch of a rose tree fashioned in gold and set with gems, occasionally bestowed by the Pope as a mark of great honour is the **Golden Rose.**

decree. A name for a decree or edict of an Oriental sovereign is **firman.**

—. The name of a written decree of the former Sultan of Turkey was **irade.**

—. The name for a decree or edict by the former Russian government was **ukase.**

department, French. The title of the civil governor of a department in France is **prefect.**

—, state. The state department which controls education in England and Wales is the **Board of Education.**

—, —. The state department which deals with the collection of taxes and all duties except customs and excise is the **Board of Inland Revenue.**

—, —. The chief state department which deals with trade is the **Board of Trade.**

—, —. The state department which manages the estates of the Church of England is the **Ecclesiastical Commission.**

—, —. The state department through which the British government communicates with foreign governments is the **Foreign Office.**

—, —. The state department which deals with factories, police, prisons, and other internal matters not dealt with by the Ministries of Health and Labour and other departments, is the **Home Office.**

—, —. The state department which deals with public health and local government in England and Wales is the **Ministry of Health.**

—, —. The state department which deals with labour, employment, workers' insurance, and industrial relations is the **Ministry of Labour.**

—, —. The state department which manages the public revenue is the **Treasury.**

diplomat. A name for a diplomatic officer of high rank, sent to represent his country at the court of another country, either permanently as a resident, or with special powers in charge of a special mission, is **ambassador.**

— One of the less important members of an ambassador's, envoy's, or minister's suite is an **attaché.**

— A name for the office of an embassy, legation, or consulate is **chancellery.**

— A diplomat who acts in the absence of his superior, the ambassador, envoy, or minister, is a **chargé d'affaires.**

— The whole body of ambassadors, ministers, attachés, and other diplomatic officers accredited to the court of a country is the **corps diplomatique.**

—. The letters of credence or warrant given to an envoy as his claim to credit at a foreign court are **credentials.**

—. The member of a diplomatic, legislative, or other body who is first in age, rank, or length of service is the **doyen.**

— The name for the office or function of an ambassador, for his official residence, and for the whole ambassadorial staff is **embassy.**

—. A diplomatic officer sent on a mission by one government to another is an **envoy.**

—. A diplomatic officer of the second class is an **envoy extraordinary** or **minister plenipotentiary.**

—. The name given to a diplomatic representative of lower rank than an ambassador, together with his suite, and also to his official residence, is **legation.**

—. A diplomatic agent of a government, residing at the capital or court of a foreign country, and of lower rank than an ambassador or envoy, is a **minister resident.**

—. An ambassador who has powers to act according to his own discretion in a matter of diplomacy is a **plenipotentiary.**

disorder. A self-organized body for repressing disorder in an imperfectly organized district is a **vigilance committee.**

document, official. A document relating to state affairs is a **State paper.**

Dominion. The King's representative in one of the self-governing Dominions is the **Governor-General.**

Dover, Governor of. The title of the Governor of Dover Castle, who, in virtue of the old powers of admiralty belonging to the office, nominates the justices of the peace for the liberties of Dover, Hastings, Hythe, Romney and Sandwich, is **Warden of the Cinque Ports.**

drink traffic. A name for the system by which the inhabitants of a district may regulate or prohibit the sale of intoxicating drinks is **local option.**

— A name given to the policy of making the manufacture and sale of intoxicating liquor illegal, as has been done in the U.S.A., is **prohibition.**

duty. A name for duties levied on imported goods is **customs.**

—. Taxes levied on the estate left by a person at death, including estate, legacy, and succession duties, are **death duties.**

—. A tax levied on inherited property over £100 in value is **estate duty.**

— A duty imposed on certain commodities of home production or consumption is an **excise.**

—. A name for a duty levied at the gates of certain Continental towns and for the barrier where this is collected is **octroi.**

—. A name for a tax paid by an heir on succeeding to property is **succession duty.**

—. A list of duties on imported or exported goods, or a duty on a particular class of such goods, is a **tariff.**

duty. *See under* **tariff** *and* **tax,** *below.*

Egypt. The title of a ruler or governor of a district in Egypt is **mudir.**

election. A name for a person who signs the nomination paper of a parliamentary candidate after the proposer and seconder is **assentor.**

—. An election between general elections to fill a vacancy in parliament is a **by-election.**

—. An official appointed to audit and publish the accounts of a parliamentary election is an **election-auditor.**

—. The system under which certain persons are elected to represent the voters of a country and to speak and act in their name is **parliamentary representation.**

—. The instructions to the proper officials for making the arrangements necessary for holding a parliamentary election are **precepts.**

—. The announcement of the result of an election is a **return.**

—. The county officer representing the Crown who presides over parliamentary elections is the **sheriff.**

—, U.S.A. The persons chosen by the electors of the several states of the U.S.A. to elect the President and Vice-President are the **presidential electors,** and form the **electoral college.**

—, —. In the U.S.A., an assembly at which a political candidate is selected before an election is a **primary meeting.**

—. *See also under* **vote,** *below.*

electoral division. To divide a district unfairly for election purposes in order to secure an unfair advantage for one party is to **gerrymander.**

exchange. The exchange of goods without using money is **barter.**

expenditure. When engaged in considering the yearly estimates of expenditure for the various public services, and for the navy and army, the House of Commons is a **Committee of Supply.**

extortion. A sum of money extorted by a ruler or government under promise of repayment is a **forced loan.**

finances, national. The yearly statement regarding the nation's finances made in the House of Commons by the Chancellor of the Exchequer is the **budget.**

—, —. The yearly income of a state, from which public expenses are paid, is its **revenue.**

France. In France and Belgium a name given to a small district under the same local government is **commune,** and the name for a larger unit of government is **department.**

—, party. A name given to an adherent of the Bonaparte family, and to a person who desires the establishment of monarchical government in France under a member of that family, is **Bonapartist.**

—, —. A supporter of legitimism who wishes to see a member of the house of Bourbon restored to the throne of France is a **Bourbonist** or **Royalist.**

goods. The amount of any kind of goods which would be bought at a given price is the **demand.**

—. The amount of any kind of goods which would be produced at a given price is the **supply.**

government. Government by a single person whose word is law is **absolutism, autocracy,** or **despotism.**

—. The ministers who carry on the government of a country are the **Administration.**

—. A name for the total lack of orderly government is **anarchy.**

—. A name for government by the nobility, or by a privileged class regarded as the best, is **aristocracy.**

—. A form of government by professional officials not responsible to the nation is **bureaucracy.**

—. An agreement under which two or more parties or nations work together for a common end is a **coalition.**

government. A form of government in which the people govern themselves directly or indirectly through elected representatives, is **democracy.**

—. The transferring of powers from a higher to a lower authority, such as the handing over of authority by Parliament to a committee, is **devolution.**

—. A form of government in which absolute power is vested in a single man, usually as a provisional measure when a constitutional state is passing through a crisis, is **dictatorship.**

—. A name for a government in which power is divided between two rulers or two groups of persons is **dyarchy** or **diarchy.**

—. The branch of government concerned with the putting of the laws into effect is the **executive.**

—. A name given to government by a body of old men is **gerontocracy.**

—. Names for government by priests or by a priestly class are **hierarchy, hierocracy,** and **hagiocracy.**

—. The name for a government under a supreme ruler, usually hereditary, is **monarchy.**

—. A contemptuous name for a government which is swayed by the caprices and passions of the mob is **ochlocracy.**

—. A name for a system of government in which power is vested in a few persons only is **oligarchy.**

—. A name for government in which political power is in the hands of the rich is **plutocracy.**

—. The science or art dealing with the theory and practice of government is **politics.**

—. Government of a city or state by many is **polyarchy.**

—. The government of a country by a regent, appointed to govern during the absence or incapacity of the sovereign, is **regency.**

—. A form of government in which the head of the state and his advisers are directly or indirectly elected for a limited period by the people, or by part of them, is **republicanism.**

—. Government by a priestly class believed to interpret the will of God in matters of government is **theocracy.**

—. Arbitrary government without regard to law or justice is **tyranny.**

—, property. The name for the mark resembling an arrow-head, used to distinguish property belonging to the British Government, is **broad arrow.**

—, representative abroad. An official appointed by a government to protect its nationals in a foreign town, and to report on trade, etc., is a **consul** or **vice-consul,** and his establishment is a **consulate** or **vice-consulate.**

—, —. The chief consul representing a government in a particular country is a **consul-general.**

governor. The name for a governor of a castle or prison in Spain, Portugal, and parts of Northern Africa is **alcayde.**

—. The title of the governor of an Egyptian province is **mudir.**

—. The title of the governor of a Greek province is **nomarch.**

heir. In certain kingdoms the heir-apparent to the throne is called the **Crown Prince.**

household, royal. *See under* **royal household,** *below.*

India. A name for the British rule in India is **British raj.**

—. A state reception held in India in honour of some special person or event is a **durbar.**

—. A name for the dual system of government which has existed in India since 1921 is **dyarchy** or **diarchy.**

—. The title of the ruling prince of Hyderabad in India is **Nizam.**

—. Titles used of the British sovereign as Emperor of India, by his Indian subjects, are **Padishah** and **Kaisar-i-Hind.**

—. A representative of the Indian Government at a native court is a **resident** or **political agent.**

India. A peasant or small land-holder in India who holds directly from the government is a **ryot** or **raiyat.**

—. The name given to a district in India from which the revenue is collected by a native official is **taluk.**

—. A name used in India for a commissioner resident at a native court is **vakeel.**

—. The name of a large landed proprietor in some parts of India who holds his estate from the government is **zemindar.**

—. A name for a system of dividing out land in certain parts of India and farming its revenues among zemindars is **zemindary.**

—. The name for an administrative district in some parts of India is **zillah,** a group of villages forming a division of it being called a **pergunnah.**

industry. Names for a state grant for the fostering of an industry or undertaking of public importance are **bounty, subsidy,** and **subvention.**

—. Industries concerned with the obtaining of natural products are **extractive industries.**

—. The name given to the great change which took place towards the end of the eighteenth century and resulted in the transformation of England from an agricultural into an industrial country is **Industrial Revolution.**

—. Names for the principle that trade and industry should be free from all government control are **Manchesterism** and **laissez-faire.**

Ireland. A name for a member of a former secret revolutionary Irish association is **Fenian.**

—. The Irish legislature, or **Oireachtas,** consists of the King, the Senate, or **Seanad,** and the Chamber of Deputies, or **Dáil.**

—. A name for an adherent of the policy of Protestant ascendancy in Ireland is **Orangeman.**

—. A name for the political policy and obstructing tactics of Parnell and his followers in the fight for Irish Home Rule is **Parnellism.**

—. The Irish name of the Irish Free State is **Saorstát Eireann.**

—. The name of the republican party in Ireland is **Sinn Fein.**

—. The name given to a supporter of the British political party which was opposed to the granting of Home Rule to Ireland was **Unionist.**

Italy. A member of the Italian nationalist organization directing its energies against socialism, etc., is a **fascist.**

Jews. The name given to the movement for repeopling Palestine with the Jews is **Zionism.**

king. A name for the theory held by certain kings that they occupied the throne by the appointment of God, and so were free to govern without parliamentary supervision, etc., is **divine right.**

—. One who governs a country in the place of a king or other sovereign, when the latter is absent, under-age or incapacitated, is a **regent.**

—. A title of a Mohammedan king or emperor is **sultan.**

—. One who governs a province, colony, or other dependency in the name of its sovereign ruler is a **viceroy.**

knight. The gentle tap on the shoulder with the flat of a drawn sword conferring a knighthood is the **accolade.**

—. A knight not belonging to a special order is a **knight bachelor.**

—. *See also under* **order,** *below.*

labour. A name for a system of occasional forced labour is **corvée.**

—. A debtor who in Mexico was formerly forced to work on his creditor's estate was a **peon,** and the system was **peonage.**

—, wages. That part of the capital of a country devoted to the payment of wages and salaries is the **wage-fund** or **wages-fund.**

land. A name for one who holds that landed property should be state-owned or portioned out afresh is **agrarian.**

—. A term in political economy for the value of land as waste land before any money or labour has been spent on it is **prairie value.**

law. An act of a corporation or its founder intended as a permanent rule or law is a **statute.**

—, officer. A Crown officer who is a barrister, and generally a Member of Parliament, appointed by the government in office to advise on legal matters is the **Solicitor-General.**

—, repeal. The repealing or cancelling of a law is **abrogation.**

leadership. Leadership or predominance, especially among states, is **hegemony.**

League of Nations. A territory placed under the control of a Great Power by a mandate from the League of Nations is **mandated.**

letter, official. An official letter or message dealing with affairs of state is a **dispatch** or **despatch.**

Liberal. The name of the former political party in England which opposed Charles II., and from which the Liberal Party developed, is **Whigs.**

local government. The name for an elected governing body in a village or small rural area in England or Wales is **parish council.**

— The name for an elected governing body of a district in England and Wales comprising a number of villages is **rural district council.**

— The name for an elected governing body in a town or populous district of less importance than a borough in England and Wales is **urban district council.**

London. The title of an official whose duty it is to represent the Corporation of London before parliamentary committees and the Privy Council is **City Remembrancer.**

—. A meeting of the liverymen of a ward of the City of London is a **wardmote.**

Lord Chancellor. The name of the large square cushion which is the Lord Chancellor's seat in the House of Lords is **Woolsack.**

Lords, House of. The House of Lords is always referred to in the House of Commons as **another place.**

—. An official of the House of Lords who summons the Commons on the occasion of the royal assent to a bill, or a speech from the Throne, is **Black Rod.**

—. Members of the House of Lords who vote in favour of any proposal under consideration are **contents,** and those who vote against it are **non-contents.**

—. The lay peers and bishops who sit in the House of Lords are respectively **Lords temporal** and **Lords spiritual.**

magistrate. A city or borough magistrate next in rank below the mayor is an **alderman.**

—. In the Channel Islands the chief magistrate of an island is the **bailiff.**

Man, Isle of. The name given to each of the six administrative divisions of the Isle of Man is **sheading.**

—. The law-making body of the Isle of Man is the **Tynwald** or **Tynewald,** and its lower house is the **House of Keys.**

mayor. A name for the mayor of a Dutch or Flemish town is **burgomaster.**

—. The name for the official residence of the Lord Mayor of London, and for that of certain other Lord Mayors, is **Mansion House.**

—. The head of a municipal corporation or burgh in Scotland, corresponding to a mayor in England, is a **provost.**

—. A name for the mayor or chief official of an Italian town is **syndic.**

Mecca. The title borne by the chief magistrate of Mecca is **sherif.**

monarchy. A monarchy in which the power of the ruler is limited by law is a **limited** or **constitutional monarchy,** and one in which it is unlimited is an **absolute monarchy.**

monetary unit. The monetary unit of Panama, containing two pesos, is the **balboa.**

— The monetary unit of Venezuela, containing one hundred centavos, is the **bolivar.**

—. The monetary unit of Bolivia, containing one hundred centavos, is the **boliviano.**

—. The monetary unit of Costa Rica, containing one hundred centesimos, and of Salvador, containing one hundred centavos, is the **colon.**

—. The monetary unit of Nicaragua, containing one hundred centavos, is the **cordoba.**

—. The monetary unit of Yugoslavia, containing one hundred paras, is the **dinar.**

—. The monetary unit of the U.S.A. and Canada, containing one hundred cents, is the **dollar.**

—. The monetary unit of Greece, containing one hundred lepta, is the **drachma.**

—. The monetary unit of Portugal, containing one hundred centavos, is the **escudo.**

—. The monetary unit of France, Belgium, and Switzerland, containing one hundred centimes, is the **franc.**

—. The monetary unit of Haiti, containing one hundred centavos, is the **gourde.**

—. The monetary unit of Holland, containing one hundred cents, is the **gulden** or **florin.**

—. The monetary unit of Persia is the **kran.**

—. The monetary unit of Sweden, containing one hundred ore, is the **krona.**

—. The monetary unit of Denmark and Norway, containing one hundred ore, and of Czechoslovakia, is the **krone.**

—. The monetary unit of Estonia, containing one hundred sents, is the **kroon.**

—. The Latvian monetary unit, containing one hundred graschi, is the **lat.**

—. The monetary unit of Rumania, containing one hundred bani is the **leu.**

—. The monetary unit of Bulgaria, containing one hundred stotinki, is the **lev.**

—. The monetary unit of Peru, containing ten soles, is the **libra.**

—. The Italian monetary unit, containing one hundred centesimi, is the **lira.**

—. The monetary unit of Lithuania is the **litas.**

— The monetary unit of Finland, containing one hundred penni, is the **markka.**

—. The monetary units of Cuba are the **marti** and the **silver peso.**

—. The monetary unit of Brazil, containing one thousand reis, is the **milreis.**

—. The monetary unit of Hungary, containing one hundred garas, is the **pengo.**

— The monetary unit of Spain, containing one hundred centimos, is the **peseta.**

—. The monetary unit of Argentina, Chile, Colombia, Honduras, Paraguay, and Uruguay is the **peso.**

—. The monetary unit of Guatemala is the **quetzal.**

—. The monetary unit of Germany, containing one hundred pfennige, is the **reichsmark.**

—. The monetary units of Russia are the **rouble,** of one hundred kopeks, and the **tchernovetz**

—. The monetary unit of British India, containing sixteen annas, is the **rupee.**

—. The monetary unit of Austria, containing one hundred groschen, is the **schilling.**

— The monetary unit of Ecuador, containing one hundred centavos, is the **sucre.**

—. The monetary unit of China is the **tael.**

—. The monetary unit of Siam, containing one hundred satangs, is the **tical.**

—. The monetary unit of Turkey, containing one hundred piastres, is the **Turkish lira.**

— The monetary unit of Korea, containing one hundred chon, is the **won.**

—. The monetary unit of Japan, containing one hundred sen, is the **yen.**

monetary unit. The monetary unit of Poland, containing one hundred grosz, is the **zloty.**

money. A term used to denote money payment as being the connexion between buyer and seller is **cash nexus.**

—. The circulating coin or other medium of sale and purchase used in a country is the **currency.**

—. The withdrawal of money from circulation or the act of depriving it of its value as currency is **demonetization.**

—. The rate at which money of one country can be changed into money of another country is the **exchange.**

—. The Hindustani word for 100,000, used chiefly in counting money, as rupees, is **lac.**

—. Money in the form of coin, as distinct from paper money, is **specie.**

—. A name for ingots of silver used in China as a medium of exchange is **sycee.**

—, public. The annual Act of Parliament that allots the revenue of the country to the purposes for which it is to be used is the **Appropriation Bill.**

—, —. The yearly statement regarding the national revenue made in the House of Commons by the Chancellor of the Exchequer is the **budget.**

—, —. The government department which deals with public moneys is the **Exchequer.**

—, —. The policy of a government with regard to the raising and expenditure of revenue is its **fiscal policy.**

—, —. A sum of money extorted by a ruler or government under promise of repayment is a **forced loan.**

—, —. The name of a revenue department in some Continental countries with entire control over the importation, sale and manufacture of certain articles is **Régie.**

—, —. Aid in money granted by a government is a **subsidy.**

—, —. A term used of money voted by Parliament for the cost of maintaining public services, etc., is **supplies.**

—, —. A decision of the House of Commons, in a time of emergency, empowering the government to expend public money for a purpose not definitely stated is a **vote of credit.**

—. *See also under* **coin, currency,** *and* **monetary unit,** *above.*

Morocco. The title borne by the ruler of a district in Morocco is **sherif.**

native. A tract of land set apart by a government for the sole use of natives is a **reservation.**

negotiation, international. The art of negotiating with foreign nations is **diplomacy.**

nobleman, Spanish. A name for a Spanish or Portuguese nobleman of the highest rank is **grandee.**

nobles, government. Government by the nobles, or, a privileged class regarded as the best, is **aristocracy.**

nursery, public. A public nursery where young children may be looked after while their parents are engaged is a **crèche.**

office, public. A name for a public office or department is **bureau.**

official, Mohammedan. A name for high state official in Mohammedan countries is **vizier.**

order. A British order of knighthood taking its name from the fact that formerly its members bathed before installation is the **Order of the Bath.**

—. An order founded in 1917 for services rendered by men or women to the British Empire is the **Order of the British Empire.**

—. The highest order of British knighthood is the **Order of the Garter.**

—. A British order founded in 1902 for persons who have achieved the greatest distinction in the arts, sciences, war, or politics is the **Order of Merit.**

order. The chief order conferred on those who have distinguished themselves in the Dominions and Colonies is the **Order of St. Michael and St. George.**

—. The Irish order of knighthood is the **Order of St. Patrick.**

—. The chief Indian orders are the **Order of the Star of India** and the **Order of the Indian Empire,** and, for ladies, the **Order of the Crown of India.**

—. The Scottish order of knighthood is the **Order of the Thistle.**

—. An order founded by Queen Victoria in 1896, and conferred usually for great personal service to the sovereign is the **Royal Victorian Order.**

—, French. The name of a French order of merit founded by Napoleon in 1802 is **Legion of Honour.**

ownership, public. A name for the theory that land and the means of producing food and other goods, etc., should be owned by the state for the benefit of all its members is **collectivism.**

—. *See also under* **socialism,** *below.*

pardon. A general pardon of a whole class of offenders by a government is an **amnesty.**

parish. A former name for the ratepayers of a parish, or their representatives, assembled to deal with parochial business, was **vestry.**

parliament. A name for the short postponement of a parliamentary session, and for the period between two sessions, is **adjournment.**

—. A suggested improvement in a bill before Parliament is an **amendment.**

—. One who signs the nomination papers of a parliamentary candidate after the proposer and seconder is an **assentor.**

—. The barrier in each of the Houses of Parliament beyond which non-members may not go is the **bar.**

—. A legislature having two law-making bodies is **bicameral.**

—. When a member of Parliament wishes to cease to be a member he usually applies for the stewardship of the **Chiltern Hundreds.**

—. In each House of Parliament a bench placed at right angles to the others and occupied by neutral members is a **cross bench.**

—. The ending of a Parliament before an election is a **dissolution.**

—. A name given to the part of a parliament or legislative assembly where members sit and speak is **floor.**

—. The official report of proceedings in the British Parliament, named after Luke Hansard (1752-1828), who first issued such reports, is **Hansard.**

—. The name for a member of a committee representing both Houses of Parliament, appointed to deal with matters concerning both Houses, is **manager.**

—. A bill before Parliament affecting the interests of private individuals or a corporation only is a **private bill.**

—. When the meetings of Parliament are discontinued for a time without a dissolution, Parliament is **prorogued.**

—. A name for a parliamentary vacation is **recess.**

—. The name given to the upper chamber of parliament in many countries is **senate.**

—. A parliamentary division brought on without notice is a **snap-division.**

—. A parliament or legislature consisting of a single chamber is **unicameral.**

—, American. The name of the parliament of the United States of America, consisting of a Senate and a House of Representatives, is **Congress.**

—, foreign. The name of the Spanish and of the Portuguese parliament is **Cortes.**

—, —. An English name applied to various foreign parliaments is **diet.**

parliament, foreign. The name of the parliament of a German State is **Landtag.**

—, —. The parliament of Persia is the **Majlis.**

—, —. The parliament of the former Austrian empire was the **Reichsrat.**

—, —. The parliament of the German Republic is the **Reichstag.**

—, —. The name given to the upper house of the Danish **Rigsdag,** or parliament, is **Landsting,** and the name of the lower house is **Folketing.**

—, —. The name given to the Swedish parliament is **Riksdag.**

—, —. The parliament of Lithuania is the **Seim.**

—, —. The parliament of Poland is the **Sejm.**

—, —. The name of the parliament of Serbia when a separate country, and now the name of the parliament of Yugo-Slavia, is **Skupshtina.**

—, —. The name of the Bulgarian parliament is **Sobranye** or **Sobranje.**

—, —. A name borne by the Dutch parliament is **States General.**

—, —. The name or the Norwegian parliament is **Storting.**

—, Irish. The name of the Irish Free State parliament is **Oireachtas**; the upper house is **Seanad Eireann,** and the lower house is **Dail Eireann.**

—. *See also under* **Act of Parliament, assembly, bill, Commons, House of, election,** *and* **Lords, House of,** *above.*

party. A name given to a small party of persons united for some secret purpose is **cabal.**

—. A name for a committee of a political party, which organizes the party for election purposes, is **caucus.**

—. A party united to promote their own views, usually without regard for law and order, is a **faction.**

—. A name for a political extremist, especially an uncompromising republican, is **intransigent.**

—. A name for a member of a minority section of a political party is **minoritaire.**

—. A name for a politician who is ready to compromise and put expediency before principle is **opportunist.**

—. A name for the party or parties not in power in the British Parliament is **Opposition.**

—. A name given to a politician who aims at reforms that can be carried out readily and immediately is **possibilist.**

—, British. The three chief parties in British politics are the **Conservatives** or **Unionists,** the **Liberals,** and the **Labour Party.**

—, —. A name formerly applied to the British party that was opposed to the Revolution of 1688 and supported privilege, and also a name now applied by opponents to the Conservatives, is **Tory.**

—, —. A name for a member of a former political party in England which stood for the principles of political and religious liberty is **Whig.**

—, —. A name for a member of Parliament whose duty it is to ensure the attendance of the members of his party at divisions is **whip.**

—, designation. A name in some countries for a member of a political party representing the interests of the greater landowners is **Agrarian.**

—, —. The name for a member of a Spanish legitimist party supporting the claims of the family of Don Carlos is **Carlist.**

—, —. A name applied in some countries to a party intermediate between the two extreme parties, and especially to a clerical party, is **Centre.**

—, —. A name applied, especially by opponents, in some countries to a party seeking to extend the authority and influence of the Church in political and social matters is **Clerical** or **Clericalist.**

—, —. The name of a party supporting a sovereign or claimant to the throne whose claim is based on hereditary right is **Legitimist.**

party, designation. A name for a member of a party advocating fundamental changes, especially of a democratic character, is **Radical.**

—, —. Names given in some countries to parties or groups holding conservative, reactionary, or moderate principles on the one hand, and to those holding democratic or radical principles on the other, are respectively **right** and **left.**

—, programme. A name given to the political programme of a party at election times is **platform,** and the name for an item in it is **plank.**

—, Prussian. A name given to a member of the exclusive, aristocratic party or group of Prussian landowners is **Junker.**

—, Russian. Names for a member of the extremist majority group of the Russian Socialists, which came into power towards the end of the World War, are **Maximalist, Bolshevist,** and **Bolshevik.**

—, —. Names for a member of the minority group of the Russian Social Democratic Party are **Minimalist** and **Menshevik.**

—, U.S.A. The names of the two great political parties in the U.S.A. are **Republicans** and **Democrats.**

—, —. A politician in the U.S.A. who supports the spoils system or works for a share in the party spoils is a **spoilsman.**

—, —. A system of politics existing in the U.S.A. by which adherents of a party are rewarded with offices, honours, or emoluments is the **spoils system.**

—, —. The name of a political organization of the Democratic party in New York is **Tammany.**

patriotism. A name for a form of rowdy, warlike patriotism in British countries is **Jingoism.**

—. A form of boastful, warlike patriotism in France and other foreign countries is **Chauvinism.**

—. A form of rowdy patriotism in America, which consists in making noisy, provocative speeches, is **spread-eagleism.**

people. A name for a politically organized community, or a state in which the people govern themselves through their elected representatives, is **commonwealth.**

—. A name given to the people as a whole, or as distinguished from the wealthier classes, is **Demos.**

—. A name for the wage-earning class is **proletariat.**

—. A name given to a State or a form of government in which the supreme power rests with the people, or with a section of them, and is exercised by their elected representatives, is **republic.**

political economy. The term applied to a theory of political economy based on the assumption of equal conditions of competition between man and man, named after its originator, David Ricardo, is **Ricardian.**

poor. The name given to a member of a board elected by the ratepayers to administer the Poor Law in a parish or district is **guardian.**

—. A group of parishes consolidated for administering the Poor Laws is a **union.**

population. The act of counting the population of a state or country is the **census.**

—. The name for the teaching of T. R. Malthus (1766-1834) in regard to the laws of population is **Malthusianism.**

port. A port where ships of all nations may unload or load free of duty, provided goods are not carried into adjoining ports where a tariff is imposed, is a **free port.**

postage. A mark made on letters from a government department to secure their free passage through the post is a **frank.**

price. The name for the rise and fall in the price of a commodity depending on the relation between supply and demand is **fluctuation.**

priests, government. *See under* **government,** *above.*

prime minister. A name for a prime minister or finance minister in an Indian state is **diwan.**

—. A name given to a prime minister is **premier.**

prince, Hindu. The title given to a Hindu prince or rajah of the highest rank is **maharajah.**

—, —. A title of a Hindu prince or chief is **rajah.**

—, —. The title borne by the wife of a rajah is **ranee.**

privilege. A right, privilege, or property granted by a government to a person or company for the purpose of carrying out some public or industrial scheme is a **concession.**

Privy Council. A name for a legislative order issued in emergencies by the sovereign on the advice of the Privy Council is **Order-in-Council.**

production, cost. The money spent on producing an article is the **first cost** or **prime cost.**

publication, official. An official publication of the British Parliament or Privy Council is a **blue-book.**

—, —. An official publication of the Indian Government is a **green-book.**

—, —. An official publication of the German, Portuguese, or Japanese governments is a **white-book.**

—, —. An official publication of the French or Chinese governments is a **yellow-book.**

rank. A table which shows the order in which titled and official persons are ranked is a **table of precedence.**

rates. An order from a local authority to a borough council for the payment of sums of money due from the rates is a **precept.**

report. A short official report on any public event is a **bulletin.**

representation. The grant of parliamentary representation to a town or district is **enfranchisement,** and the abolition of it is **disfranchisement.**

—. In politics a name for the extension of the means of representing the interests of the people in Parliament is **reform.**

—. The measures passed by Parliament to widen the representation of the people in 1832, 1867, 1884, 1918 and 1928, are **Reform Acts.**

representative, foreign. A political representative of a state at a foreign court is a **diplomat.**

republic. The title borne by the head of a modern republic is **president.**

revenue. *See under* **money,** public, *above.*

right, political. A term used to denote equality of political or legal rights is **isonomy.**

river. The name given to an official body appointed to preserve and protect a river or rivers is a **conservancy.**

—. An official whose duty is to watch a river to see that it is not being poached is a **water-bailiff.**

royal household. A member of the king's household, in the Lord Chamberlain's department, who summons the Commons to the House of Lords to listen to the speech from the Throne is **Black Rod.**

—. The officials of the king's household who introduce persons into the presence of the sovereign, or announce the sovereign's arrival, are **gentlemen ushers.**

—. Each of several high military officers belonging to the royal household who bear a gilt rod when attending the sovereign on state occasions is **gold stick.**

—. The official of the king's household in charge of the distribution of alms is the **Grand Almoner.**

—. The officer who ranks second in the royal household is the **Lord Chamberlain.**

—. The title of the head of the royal household is **Lord Steward.**

—. One of the highest officials of the king's household is the **Master of the Horse.**

—. The title held by certain officers of the Royal household having ceremonial duties is **serjeant-at-arms.**

ruler, absolute. An absolute ruler invested with supreme authority, especially during a crisis, is a **dictator.**

—, Abyssinian. A native title given to the ruler of Abyssinia is **Negus.**

—, Albanian. The title given to Prince William of Wied on accepting the crown of Albania in 1914 was **Mpret.**

—, Eastern. A title of the former Sultan of Turkey, of the Shah of Persia, and of the Emperor of India, is **Padishah** or **Padshah.**

—, Egyptian. The title formerly borne by the ruler of Egypt was **Khedive.**

—, Indian. An Indian native title given to a governing prince is **Jam.**

—, —. A Mohammedan title given to a native ruler in India is **Nawab.**

—, —. The hereditary title since 1713 of the reigning prince of Hyderabad, the principal Mohammedan ruler in India, is **Nizam.**

—, —. The title of the former hereditary rulers of the Mahrattas of West India is **Peshwa.**

—, Japanese. The personal title of the Emperor of Japan is **Mikado.**

—, Mohammedan. A title of certain rulers in Mohammedan countries is **Ameer, Amir,** or **Emir.**

—, —. A Mohammedan title meaning sovereign or ruler is **Sultan.**

—, Persian. The title of the ruler of Persia is **Shah.**

Russia. A name for a member of a Russian revolutionary society prominent towards the end of the nineteenth century is **Nihilist.**

—. The legislative body of the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics is the **Union Central Executive Committee** consisting of two Houses, the **Union Council** and the **Council of Nationalities.**

—. The name of the government of Russia and of the countries federated with her is **Union of Soviet Socialist Republics.**

secret society. The name of a powerful secret society in southern Italy, which till recently plundered and terrorized society, is **Camorra.**

—. The name given to members of a secret fraternity having benevolent, and in some countries political, aims is **Freemasons.**

—. The name of a secret society in the south of the U.S.A which terrorized negroes and others is **Ku Klux Klan.**

—. The name of a secret society with criminal aims, till recently existing in Sicily, and also of an unorganized movement of a similar character, is **Mafia.**

self-government. A name for national or provincial self-government is **autonomy.**

Shah. A title of the Shah of Persia is **Padishah.**

Socialism. The Socialist doctrine that land and all the means of production, distribution, and exchange should be held and administered by the community collectively is **Collectivism.**

—. A name given to a social system according to which all the members of each of the small communities into which society is assumed to be divided hold their property in common, and also a name for extreme Socialism of the Bolshevist type, is **Communism.**

—. A name for an English form of Socialism aiming at the improvement of the condition of the people by gradual methods, especially as regards land and capital, is **Fabianism.**

—. The social system of Charles Fourier (1772-1837) in which people were to live and work together in communist groups or phalansteries is **Fourierism.**

—. A form of Socialism under which each industry would be formed into a self-governing guild is **Guild Socialism.**

—. The system of international Socialism based on historic evolution, and founded by Karl Marx, is **Marxism** or **Marxianism.**

Socialism. The name of the principles of co-operation taught by the pioneer socialist, Robert Owen, is **Owenism.**

— A name for each of the communities in which groups of people were to live according to the socialistic ideals of Charles Fourier is **phalanstery.**

—. A name for a political party in Germany and other countries which seeks to obtain a socialistic organization of society by means of democratic institutions is **Social Democrats**

—. Management of the great industries, insurance, banking, etc., by the state for the benefit of the people is **State Socialism.**

—. A name for a theory of social organization that aims at placing the ownership and control of the various industries in the hands of the corresponding trade unions is **Syndicalism.**

society. The doctrine or theory that society is best organized when the greatest amount of freedom is secured to each individual is **individualism.**

—. The theory or system of society according to which the welfare of the individual is secured by the public ownership and control of some or all of the means of production, distribution, and exchange is **Socialism.**

—. *See also* **secret society,** *above.*

sovereign. The title of an officer who attends the sovereign at the opening of Parliament, and also at his coronation, is **Lord Great Chamberlain.**

— An allowance, made from the public revenue, from which the private expenses of a British sovereign are paid is the **privy purse.**

— The office and government of one who rules in place of a sovereign is a **regency.**

—. The special and peculiar rights and privileges belonging to a king or queen are the **royal prerogative.**

state. The duty of a subject to the ruler or government of his country is **allegiance.**

—. A name for a state or an association of individuals under a civil government is **body politic.**

— A small state between two larger states or countries is a **buffer state.**

— A union of a number of states in which sovereignty is divided between a common national government and the governments of the separate states is a **federal union** or **federation.**

statistics. The branch of the science of statistics dealing with the figures relating to health, disease, births, marriages, and deaths is **demography.**

— A name for statistics relating to births, marriages, and deaths is **vital statistics.**

Switzerland. The federal council or second chamber of the Swiss republic is the **Bundesrat.**

tabulation of facts. The science of arranging and classifying facts, expressed by numbers, to show their relationships with each other is **statistics.**

tariff. A customs tariff by which a state admits imports from a particular state at a lower rate than imports from other countries is a **preferential tariff.**

tax. A tax levied by a government on certain goods exported, imported, or consumed, and on the transference of property, etc., is a **duty.**

—. The fact of the burden of a tax falling on a particular class of persons is its **incidence.**

—. Taxes which are ultimately paid by the consumer of the taxed goods are **indirect.**

—. That part of the national revenue which comes from taxes levied on incomes, property, and goods produced in a country is **inland revenue.**

—. Any bill introduced into the House of Commons having as its object the raising of money by taxation, or the spending of such money, is a **money-bill**

tax. A tax levied on property for local purposes is a **rate.**

—. A name for a tax levied in addition to ordinary income-tax on incomes over a certain figure is **surtax** or **super-tax.**

—. The name of a tax of one-tenth the yearly revenue from land or personal industry, paid to support the clergy and the Church, is **tithe.**

—. *See also* **duty** *and* **tariff,** *above.*

title A title having no legal value and granted by custom only is a **courtesy title.**

—. A title of honour borne by the wife or widow of a knight or baronet, but ordinarily replaced by the title Lady, is **Dame.**

— A title given to a widow of high rank to distinguish her from the wife of her late husband's heir is **dowager.**

—, Eastern. A title given to various oriental officials is **beglerbeg.**

—, —. A title given to a man of standing in India and Afghanistan, and to a government official in Persia, is **khan.**

—, —. A title or appellation given by natives in India to a European is **sahib.**

—, Turkish. A title of a Turkish officer of high rank is **aga** or **agha.**

—, —. A Turkish title of respect afforded to government officials and others is **effendi.**

—, —. A Turkish title given to high military, naval, and civil officers is **pasha.**

— *See also under* **governor, prince, royal household, ruler,** *and* **sovereign,** *above.*

town. A town, or part of a town, with a corporation and privileges conferred by royal charter is a **borough.**

—. A name for a town enjoying self-government in matters concerning itself, and also for its governing body, is **municipality.**

—. A borough which sends one or more members to Parliament is a **parliamentary borough.**

— The name of a town in Scotland holding a charter from the Crown is **royal burgh.**

town-hall. A name often given to the town-hall where a city corporation has its meetings is **guild-hall.**

—. The name given to a town-hall in Germany is **rathaus,** and in France and Belgium **hôtel de ville.**

trade. Trade left to its natural course without the imposition of customs duties or the granting of bounties to favoured industries is **free trade.**

—. The policy of non-interference with trade, in accordance with the theories of the Manchester school, is **Manchesterism.**

—. Names for various systems of taxing imports from foreign countries, with the object of stimulating home or empire industries, are **protection, tariff reform, imperial preference,** and **safeguarding of industries.**

— The name of an early school of economists in France, who advocated the abolition of artificial restrictions on trade, etc., is **Physiocrats.**

trade union. A name for a theory of social organization that aims at placing the ownership and control of the various industries in the hands of the corresponding trade unions is **syndicalism.**

treasury. A name for a state treasury or exchequer is **fisc.**

Turkey. An administrative district forming a division of a Turkish province or **vilayet** is a **sanjak.**

— An administrative district in the republic of Turkey and formerly a province of the Turkish Empire is a **vilayet.**

— A minister of State in the former Turkish Empire was a **vizier.**

understanding, international. A friendly understanding between two nations not expressed in a formal treaty is an **entente** or **entente cordiale.**

United States. The name given in the U.S.A. to an organized division of the country not yet enjoying full state rights, and in Canada to a division not administered as a province, is **Territory.**

vote. The method of voting by which each elector is entitled to indicate his or her second choice, with a view to securing an absolute majority for one candidate among several candidates, is the **alternative vote.**

— A name for a paper, small ball, etc., used for secret voting, and also a name for secret voting at an election, is **ballot.**

—. The second vote or ballot in French elections between the two candidates who have come nearest to a legal majority is a **ballotage** or **second ballot.**

—. A vote given by the presiding officer when the votes of an assembly are equal is a **casting vote.**

—. To deprive an individual or class of persons of the right to vote at parliamentary or municipal elections is to **disfranchise.**

—. To grant an individual or class of persons the right to vote at parliamentary or municipal elections is to **enfranchise.**

—. The right to vote at public elections both parliamentary and municipal is the **franchise.**

—. A vote of all the electors of a country, state, or district on a single question of public policy is a **plebiscite.**

—. The number of votes cast at an election is the **poll.**

vote. The name given to a system of voting at elections designed to give minorities representation proportional to their size is **proportional representation.**

—. The referring of a measure to the public to be voted on is a **referendum.**

—. A name for the right to vote, especially in parliamentary elections, is **suffrage.**

—. A mechanical device which adds a vote to the total polled when the voter pulls a handle or presses a button is a **voting-machine.**

—. *See also under* **election,** *above.*

wealth. Wealth of any kind which is reserved or accumulated to assist in the future production of new wealth is **capital.**

—. The branch of science dealing with the production and distribution of wealth is **economics.**

weights and measures. That department of the Board of Trade in charge of the standards of length and weight and responsible for the correctness of all weights used in trade is the **Standards Department.**

woman. Support of the claims of women to political, economic, and social equality with men is **feminism.**

workmen, representative. The name given to a workman chosen by his fellows to represent them in discussions with their employers is **shop-steward.**

workpeople. An association of workpeople of the same trade or allied trades formed to promote and protect their interests, etc., is a **trade-union.**

RELIGIONS AND MYTHOLOGY

(See also CHRISTIANITY AND JUDAISM)

accursed. A name for the Polynesian system of setting apart certain persons, acts, or things as accursed or sacred is **taboo.**

Achilles. The name for a member of a warlike tribe of Thessaly that followed Achilles to Troy is **Myrmidon.**

Aeneas. The chosen friend and constant companion of Aeneas in his adventures, as related in Virgil's Aeneid, was **Achates.**

—. The reputed founder of Carthage who, according to Virgil, fell in love with Aeneas when he landed in Africa and stabbed herself when he deserted her, is **Dido.**

age. In classical mythology, the reign of the god Cronus or Saturn, when men were innocent and happy, was the **Golden Age.**

—. Each of the four ages of the world into which time is divided, according to Hindu religious writers, is a **yuga.**

agriculture, ancient. The goddess of agriculture and of the fruits of the earth was in Greek mythology **Demeter,** in Roman **Ceres.**

—, — In Roman mythology, the god of agriculture was **Saturn.**

air, spirit. A name for one of a race of spirits, supposed by Paracelsus to live in the air, is **sylph**

alchemy. The name given to the fabulous element believed by the alchemists to be capable of dissolving everything was **alkahest**

—. The name given to an imaginary preparation, which the alchemists believed would change other metals into gold, was **elixir** or **philosophers' stone.**

ancestor worship. A group of several families in ancient Greece, united for the worship of a common ancestor, was a **phratry.**

animal. The name used in folk-lore for the transformation of men or women into wolves or other animals is **lycanthropy.**

—. Deities which are represented in the forms of animals are **theriomorphic** or **zoomorphic.**

—. An animal or other natural object venerated by a clan or individual on the ground of supposed kinship is a **totem.**

animal. The religious worship of animals by certain ancient peoples was **zoolatry.**

Apollo. The seat of the great oracle of Apollo, near Mount Parnassus, was **Delphi.**

—. The mountain in Phocis, Greece, reputed in ancient times to have been the resort of Apollo and the Muses, is **Parnassus.**

—. The title of the priestess of Apollo at the Delphic oracle was **Pythia.**

apples, golden. In Greek mythology, the maiden famed for her running, who, having agreed to marry the suitor who could outrun her, stopped to pick up three golden apples given by Aphrodite to her opponent, and thus lost the race, was **Atalanta.**

—, —. In Greek mythology, the three sisters who guarded the golden apples given by Ge to Hera on her marriage with Zeus were the **Hesperides.**

—, —. In Scandinavian mythology, the goddess of youth and spring who guarded the golden apples that kept the gods eternally young was **Idun** or **Iduna.**

assassin, religious. The name given to one belonging to an organization of religious assassins in India is **thug.**

Athena. A name for a statue of Pallas Athene or Athena, kept in ancient Greek and Roman cities because of its supposed protective power, is **Palladium.**

—. A great Athenian festival held in summer in honour of Athena was the **Panathenaea.**

—. The temple of the goddess Athena on the Acropolis at Athens is the **Parthenon.**

Atlas, daughters The seven daughters of Atlas, who were changed into stars to save them from Orion, were the **Pleiades.**

Bacchus. The ancient yearly Roman festival of Bacchus was the **Bacchanalia.**

— A priest or male votary of Bacchus was a **Bacchant,** and a priestess or female votary a **Bacchante.**

—. Another name for Bacchus is **Dionysus.**

Bacchus. A name for an ancient Greek hymn of a wild character, sung in honour of Bacchus, is **dithyramb.**

— The name for the doctrines connected with the worship of Bacchus, spread by a religious sect prominent in the sixth century, B.C., is **Orphism.**

— The name given to certain attendants of Bacchus, having the legs and tail of a goat, with small, goat-like horns, is **satyr.**

— The name given in Greek mythology to the lazy, drunken companion of Bacchus is **Silenus.**

— The name given to a shaft or staff wrapped with vine leaves, used anciently as an emblem of Bacchus, is **thyrsus.**

beetle. The name of a kind of beetle held sacred by the ancient Egyptians is **scarab.**

beggar. A Mohammedan or Hindu beggar, regarded as holy by his co-religionists, is a **fakir.**

bird. A fabulous bird of Chinese legend, supposed by its appearance to announce the coming of an age of virtue, is the **fum.**

— A bird in classical myths, which built a floating nest on the sea in winter and produced calm weather, was the **halcyon.**

— In Greek myths, the name given to a vulture-like creature with a woman's face is **harpy.**

— The name of an immortal bird of Eastern legends, which was reborn from its own ashes, is **phoenix.**

—. The name of a monstrous bird of Eastern legends is **roc.**

— The name of an enormous bird which figures in Persian legend is **simurg.**

— The name of a class of beings in Greek myths, part women and part birds, who lured seafarers by their song, is **sirens.**

book, sacred. The sacred book of the Sikhs is the **Granth** or **Grantha.**

— — The sacred book of the Mohammedans is the **Koran.**

—, —. The chief sacred books of the Brahmins are the **Vedas.**

—, —. The sacred book of the Zoroastrians and Parsees is the **Zend-Avesta.**

boundaries. The name given to an ancient Roman festival in honour of the god of boundaries is **Terminalia.**

—. The Roman god of boundaries was **Terminus.**

box. In Greek mythology, the beautiful woman sent to earth in revenge for Prometheus' theft of fire from heaven, who let out of a box she was forbidden to open all the evils that afflict humanity, hope alone remaining, was **Pandora.**

Brahmin. *See under* **caste, Hinduism,** *and* **Sanskrit,** *below.*

bridge. The bridge which, according to Mohammedan belief, spans the gulf between earth and paradise is **Alsirat.**

—. The bridge in Norse mythology between Asgard and Midgard is **Bifrost.**

Buddhism. A name given to a Japanese or Chinese Buddhist priest is **bonze.**

—. The name given to the peepul or fig-tree sacred to Buddhists from its association with Gautama, which is planted near Buddhist temples in Ceylon, is **bo-tree.**

— The name given by Buddhists to a person who has attained perfect wisdom, especially the founder of Buddhism, Gautama, is **Buddha.**

—. Among names used for the founder of Buddhism are **Buddha, Gautama, Sakyamuni,** and **Siddhartha.**

—. The Buddhist name for the moral law is **dharma.**

—. The name given in esoteric Buddhism to an adept of the highest order is **mahatma.**

—. The name of the calm or sinless condition of the mind, which is one of the aims of Buddhism, is **Nirvana.**

Buddhism. A name for the ancient language, allied to Sanskrit, in which the Buddhist scriptures are written, is **Pali.**

—. The name given to a Buddhist monk in Siam, Ceylon, etc., is **talapoin.**

—. Names given to a Buddhist monument, consisting of a dome, a tower, or a mound, used for the preservation of relics or as a memorial, are **tope** and **stupa.**

bull, sacred. The name of a sacred bull, regarded as the representative of Osiris, a god worshipped at Memphis by the ancient Egyptians, is **Apis.**

burning. A funeral pile on which a dead body is burned is a **pyre.**

—, widow. The Hindu custom whereby a widow burned herself on the funeral pyre with the body of her husband is **suttee.**

caste. The name for a member of the priestly caste, the highest of the four great castes into which Hindu society is divided, is **Brahmin** or **Brahman.**

—. The name of a member of the warrior caste, the second of the four great castes into which Hindu society is divided, is **Kshatriya.**

—. A Hindu who has lost caste, or belongs to no caste, is an **outcaste.**

—. The name of a member of an agricultural class in South India, loosely extended to outcastes, is **Pariah.**

—. A name for a member of the lowest of the four great castes of Hindu society is **Sudra.**

—. The name of a member of the peasant caste, the third of the four great Hindu castes, is **Vaisya**

Castor and Pollux. Another name for the twin demi-gods, Castor and Pollux, is **Dioscuri.**

cat. The name of the cat-headed goddess of ancient Egypt is **Pasht** or **Bast.**

—, witch's. A name used in folk-tales for a cat, especially the cat accompanying a witch, is **grimalkin.**

ceremony. The formal or usual procedure in a religious or other solemn ceremony is a **rite.**

charm. A group of letters formerly written on a piece of parchment for use as a charm is **abracadabra.**

—. A thing worn on the person as a charm against evil is an **amulet.**

—. A name for a spoken charm, spell, or magical formula is **incantation.**

—. A Hindu magic spell or charm, originally a quotation from the Vedas, is a **mantra.**

—. A name for an object, animal, or person supposed to bring luck is **mascot.**

—. A charm having the form of a five-pointed star, with which certain virtues were once associated, is a **pentacle** or **pentagram.**

— A name for an amulet worn round the neck as a supposed defence against danger or disease is **periapt.**

—. The name given to a charm bearing astrological figures or a magical formula, once thought to protect the wearer, is **talisman.**

China. An official religion or ethical system of China based on the teaching of Confucius is **Confucianism.**

—. An official religion of China based on the teaching of Lao-tsze is **Taoism**

Circe. The name of the legendary herb with which Odysseus in the Odyssey warded off the charms of Circe is **moly.**

commerce. The ancient Roman god of commerce was **Mercury.**

Comte. A religion which developed from the philosophy of Auguste Comte, based on the idea that man is the highest being about whom there is real knowledge, is **Positivism.**

cup-bearer. The cup-bearers to the gods on Olympus were **Hebe and Ganymede.**

custom. The traditional beliefs, customs, and tales of a people, and the study of them, are **folk-lore.**

—. A name for the Polynesian custom or system of setting persons, acts, or things apart as being sacred or accursed is **taboo.**

cycle, Hindu. Each of the four cycles into which, according to Hindu religion, time in this world is divided is a **yuga.**

dancing. The muse of dancing was **Terpsichore.**

dawn. The Roman goddess of the dawn was **Aurora.**

dead. In Greek mythology the ferryman of the spirits of the dead was **Charon.**

—. In Greek mythology the name of the underworld which is the abode of the dead is **Hades.**

—. The name of a Greek goddess of the dead is **Hecate.**

—. The name in Roman mythology for the spirits of the dead are **lemures** and **manes.**

—. In Egyptian mythology the god and judge of the dead is **Osiris.**

—. In Greek mythology the three judges of the dead are **Rhadamanthus, Aeacus,** and **Minos.**

—. In Norse mythology the hall where Odin received the souls of warriors slain in battle is **Valhalla.**

—. The Hindu god of the dead who judges the souls of the departed is **Yama.**

death. A system of doctrines dealing with death, judgment, heaven, and hell is **eschatology.**

—, warning. In Celtic folk-lore a fairy who is supposed to give warning of a death by wailing at night under the windows of the house is a **banshee.**

deluge. The name of the hero in Greek legend corresponding to Noah in the Bible is **Deucalion.**

Demeter. The religious rites in honour of Demeter, the ancient Greek goddess of agriculture, performed at Eleusis in Attica, were the **Eleusinian mysteries** or **Eleusinia.**

demigod. The name given in Greek mythology to a man of more than human powers, often regarded as a god or demigod after death, is **hero.**

demon. A name for an evil spirit or demon in Mohammedan folk-lore is **afreet** or **afrit.**

—. A name for witchcraft or demonology is **black magic.**

—. The worship of demons or evil spirits is **demonolatry.**

—. The study of the history of belief in demons is **demonology.**

—. A name for an evil spirit in Persian mythology is **div.**

—. The chief of the evil spirits believed in by Mohammedans is **Eblis.**

—. The name given in the Middle Ages to a kind of demon thought to oppress and frighten people at night was **incubus.**

—. In Mohammedan mythology the name given to a spirit or demon is **jinnee.**

—. A name for a spirit or demon of the most powerful kind in Mohammedan mythology is **marid.**

dervish. A European name for a Mohammedan hermit or a dervish is **santon**

Dionysus. *See under* **Bacchus,** *above.*

divination. One of a college of priests of ancient Rome, who professed to foretell the future by observing the flights and habits of birds and examining the entrails of slaughtered animals, was an **augur.**

—. The observations of birds for the purpose of divination, practised by the ancient Roman augurs, were **auspices.**

—. The art of fortune-telling by smoke is **capnomancy.**

—. The practice of fortune-telling by playing-cards is **cartomancy.**

divination. The alleged art of reading future events or judging character by the hand is **chiromancy** or **palmistry.**

—. The alleged art of divining by fixing the gaze on a ball of crystal, etc., is **crystal-gazing** or **scrying.**

—. Divining the presence of water or of mineral veins by the movements of a twig held in the hand is **dowsing.**

—. The pretended foretelling of the future by means of lines, figures, and dots on the earth or on paper is **geomancy.**

—. Fortune-telling by means of salt is **halomancy.**

—. The foretelling of future events by the examination of animals sacrificed to the gods was **hieromancy.**

—. The art of divination or prophecy is **mantic.**

—. The alleged art of divining or predicting by communication with the dead is **necromancy** or **sciomancy.**

—. An occurrence or object held by the superstitious to portend good or evil is an **omen.**

—. The name for divination from dreams is **oneiromancy.**

—. The pretended art of divination by means of communication with spirits is **psychomancy.**

—. A name given to a woman soothsayer, and especially to a priestess of Delphi, was **Pythoness.**

—. A form of divination by choosing a passage in a book opened at random is **sortes.**

—. Divination by the casting of lots is **sortilege.**

dog. An Egyptian god represented with the head of a dog and believed to guard the tombs of the dead, whose souls he conducted to the next world, was **Anubis.**

—. The three-headed dog in classical mythology that guarded the entrance to the infernal regions was **Cerberus.**

doors. The ancient Roman god of doors and gates was **Janus.**

dream. The ancient Roman god of dreams, son of Somnus, god of sleep, was **Morpheus.**

—. The name for divination from dreams is **oneiromancy.**

drug, magic. A Greek name for a magic potion of the Egyptians, supposed to bring forgetfulness, is **nepenthe.**

drunkard. The name given in Greek mythology to the lazy, drunken companion of Dionysus (Bacchus) was **Silenus.**

dwarf. The name given in later Scandinavian folk-lore to a dwarf living in rocks and caverns is **troll.**

Elysium. The flower which according to Greek myths was sacred to Persephone (Proserpine) and bloomed eternally in the Elysian Fields, was the **asphodel.**

embalming. A kind of liquid bitumen used by the ancient Egyptians in embalming the dead was **pissasphalt.**

enchantress. The name of an enchantress who turned the companion of Ulysses into swine was **Circe.**

evil. *See under* **demon,** *above.*

experience. In Greek legend, the name of an old warrior in the Iliad, the wise counsellor of the Greeks before Troy, now used for the oldest member of a group or class, or for an old man of ripe experience, is **Nestor.**

eye. The name of the hundred-eyed being set by Hera to guard Io, and lulled to sleep by the music of Hermes, his eyes being put on the tail of the peacock, was **Argus.**

fairy. A name used for the king of the fairies is **Oberon** and for the queen, **Titania.**

—. A name for a fairy or elf, especially in West Country folk-lore, is **pixy.**

—. The names borne by a mischievous domestic fairy in English folk-lore are **Puck** and **Robin Goodfellow.**

—. *See also under* **spirit,** *below.*

fanatic, Mohammedan. A Mohammedan fanatic whose practice it is to murder those not of his own faith is a **ghazi.**

fast. The annual fast of Mohammedans, lasting a lunar month, is **Ramadan.**

fate. In classical mythology the sister goddesses Clotho, Lachesis, and Atropos were the **Fates** or **Parcae.**

—. In Hinduism, Buddhism, and Theosophy the name of the law by which every person determines his fate by his actions is **karma.**

— The Mohammedan name for fate or the will of God is **kismet.**

— The three goddesses of fate in Norse mythology, Urd (the Past), Verdandi (the Present), and Skuld (the Future), were the **Norns.**

—. The old English goddesses of fate were the **Weirds** or **Weird Sisters.**

ferryman. In Greek mythology, the name of the son of Erebus and Nox (Night) who ferried the spirits of the dead across the Styx and other rivers of the underworld is **Charon.**

festival. The name of the annual Roman festival of Bacchus was **Bacchanalia.**

—. An ancient Celtic festival, held on May-day to celebrate the beginning of summer, was **Beltane.**

— The name of a festival held on May 8th at Helston, Cornwall, perhaps a survival of the Roman Floralia, is **Flora Day** or **Furry Day.**

— The annual festival in honour of Flora, the Roman goddess of flowers, was the **Floralia.**

— The name of the spring festival of the Hindu god, Krishna, is **Holi** or **Hoolee.**

—. An ancient Roman festival held on February 15th in honour of Lupercus, the god of fertility, was the **Lupercalia.**

— A great Athenian festival held in summer in honour of Athena was the **Panathenaea.**

—. The name of the Roman festival of Saturn, held in December, was **Saturnalia.**

fire. A name for a Zoroastrian fire-worshipper is **Guebre.**

—. The ancient god of fire and metal-working was with the Greeks **Hephaestus,** and with the Romans **Vulcan.**

— In Greek mythology, the name of the Titan who stole fire from heaven for the use of mortals, and, chained to a rock by Zeus, was preyed on by an eagle every day, his wounds healing in the night, is **Prometheus.**

—. Fire worship is **pyrolatry**

—. The ancient Roman goddess of the hearth and of the hearth-fire was **Vesta.**

—. The religion of ancient Persia, popularly known as fire-worship, based on the conflict between the powers of light and darkness, is **Zoroastrianism.**

fish The name given in Greek mythology to a sea-god, half man and half fish, is **Triton.**

fleece, golden. Each of the band of heroes who, under the leadership of Jason, went in search of the golden fleece was an **Argonaut.**

flood. The name of the hero in Greek legend who escaped with his family from a world-wide flood, much as did Noah in the Bible, is **Deucalion.**

flower. The flower which, according to Greek myths, was sacred to Persephone (Proserpine) and bloomed eternally in the Elysian Fields was the **asphodel.**

—. The name of the annual festival in honour of Flora, the Roman goddess of flowers, was **Floralia.**

Flying Dutchman. The name of the captain of the spectre ship, "The Flying Dutchman," in the best-known version of the legend is **Vanderdecken.**

forest. The name given in classical mythology to certain forest divinities having the legs and tail of a goat, with small goat-like horns, and acting as attendants of Bacchus, is **satyr.**

forgetfulness. The name of the river of forgetfulness in the underworld of Greek mythology is **Lethe.**

—. A Greek name for a fabled Egyptian drink, supposed to bring forgetfulness, is **nepenthe.**

gates. The ancient Roman god of gates and doors was **Janus.**

ghost. Names given to the ghost of a living person are **fetch, wraith,** and **doppelganger.**

—. In Slavonic superstition a ghost supposed to leave the grave, and suck the blood of sleeping persons is a **vampire.**

—. *See also* **dead** *and* **divination,** *above, and* **spirit,** *below.*

giant. In Greek mythology the name of a hundred-handed giant, the son of Poseidon and Gaea (Earth), is **Briareus.**

—. A one-eyed giant of Greek fable is a **Cyclops.**

—. In German fairy-tales a giant harmful to children is the **erl-king.**

—. The names given to two carved figures of giants in the Guildhall, London, are **Gog** and **Magog.**

—. In the Odyssey, the Cyclops or one-eyed giant slain by Odysseus is **Polyphemus.**

—. The name in Greek mythology of a family of giants, children of Heaven and Earth, who warred against the gods is **Titans.**

—. The names given in Norse mythology to a giant or giantess having supernatural powers are **troll** and **jötun.**

glen. The name used in Greek mythology for nymphs imagined as inhabiting glens is **napaeae.**

goat. In Roman mythology the name given to each of a number of rural gods, part man and part goat is **faun.**

—. The name given in classical mythology to certain forest divinities, having the legs and tail of a goat, with small goat-like horns, and acting as attendants to Bacchus, is **satyr.**

god. The raising of a human being to the rank of a god is **apotheosis.**

—. In Hindu mythology the descent of a god to earth in earthly form is an **avatar.**

—. The name for the Roman temple built by Hadrian and dedicated to all the heathen gods is **Pantheon.**

—. A being partaking of the nature of both a god and a man is **theanthropic.**

—. An order or hierarchy of gods is a **thearchy.**

—. Government of a state in accordance with the expressed will of God or of gods is **theocracy.**

—. The name given to a genealogy of the gods, or a poem on that subject, is **theogony.**

—. An appearing of God or of a god to man is a **theophany.**

—. In ancient Rome a person vowed to the service of some particular god or goddess was a **votary.**

— The giving of an animal shape to a deity is **zoomorphism.**

—, blood. In Greek mythology the name for the pale fluid that was supposed to take the place of blood in the veins of the gods was **ichor.**

—, doctrine. The view that nothing is known, or is likely to be known, of the existence of God or the spiritual world is **agnosticism.**

—, —. Disbelief in the existence of God is **atheism.**

—, —. The doctrine or belief that there is a God, but that He has not revealed Himself supernaturally, is **deism.**

—, —. The doctrine that a good God and an evil power are eternally in conflict is **dualism.**

—, —. The worship of one of several gods is **henotheism.**

—, —. A name for the doctrine that there is but one Supreme Being is **monism.**

—, —. A name for belief in only one God is **monotheism.**

god, doctrine. A name for the comprehensive worship, under the Roman Empire, of gods belonging to different cults, creeds, and races, and also for the doctrine that identifies the universe with God, or denies His existence apart from it, is **pantheism.**

—, —. The worship of many gods, or of more than one god, is **polytheism.**

—, —. Belief in the existence of God or of gods is **theism.**

—, —. The identification of two or more gods in worship is **theocrasy.**

—, —. The name given to a system of mystic philosophy claiming a direct knowledge of God is **theosophy.**

—, food. The fabled food of the Olympian gods was **ambrosia.**

—, —. A fabled beverage of the Hindu gods, said to be nine times sweeter than honey, was **amrita.**

—, —. In Greek mythology, the drink of the gods was **nectar.**

—, household. A name given to a Chinese household god or idol is **joss.**

—, —. Names for the household gods of the ancient Romans are **Lares** and **Penates.**

—, national. The evil deity in the ancient Persian religion of Zoroastrianism was **Ahriman.**

—, —. Among the gods of the heathen Semites of Palestine were **Baal, Moloch,** and **Chemosh.**

—, —. The chief gods of the Hindu religion are the Creator **Brahma,** the Destroyer **Siva,** and the Preserver **Vishnu,** and the incarnations of Vishnu, **Rama** and **Krishna.**

—, —. Among the Philistine gods were the fish-god **Dagon,** and the god of flies **Beelzebul,** known to the Hebrews as **Beelzebub.**

—, —. The name for the Great Spirit, Creator, or God of the North American Indians is **Great Manitou.**

—, —. The chief gods of ancient Rome were **Jupiter, Neptune, Vulcan, Mars, Apollo, Mercury, Pluto, Bacchus,** and **Saturn.**

—, —. The chief gods of the Norsemen were **Odin, Thor, Tyr, Balder, Heimdal, Njord, Frey,** and **Loki.**

—, —. The supreme God or good spirit in the ancient Persian religion of Zoroastrianism was **Ormuzd.**

—, —. Among the chief gods of ancient Egypt were **Ra** or **Re, Amon, Ptah, Osiris, Horus, Set, Thoth,** and **Sebek.**

—, —. The chief gods of the heathen Anglo-Saxons were **Woden, Thunor** or **Thunder, Tiw,** and **Frea.**

—, —. The chief gods of ancient Greece were **Zeus, Poseidon, Hephaestus, Ares, Apollo, Hermes, Pluto** or **Hades,** and **Dionysus** or **Bacchus.**

goddess. The chief deity of Shintoism, from whom the emperors of Japan claim descent, is the sun-goddess **Amaterasu.**

—. The chief goddess of the Phoenicians and other Semites, presiding over love, was **Ashtoreth,** known to the Babylonians as **Istar** and to the Greeks as **Astarte.**

—. The Roman goddess of the dawn is **Aurora.**

—. Among the goddesses of Norse mythology were **Frigg, Sif, Nanna,** and **Freyja.**

—. Among the goddesses of ancient Egypt were **Hathor, Isis,** and **Bast.**

—. The chief goddesses of ancient Greece were **Hera, Demeter, Pallas** or **Athena, Aphrodite, Artemis,** and **Cybele.**

—. The chief Roman goddesses were **Juno, Ceres, Minerva, Venus, Vesta,** and **Diana.**

—. The most widely worshipped goddess of the Hindus is the wife of Siva, **Kali** or **Durga.**

—. The Japanese goddess of mercy is **Kwannon.**

—. Each of the nine ancient Greek goddesses presiding over the different branches of literature was a **Muse.**

gold. The legendary King of Phrygia, to whom the gods gave the power of turning everything he touched to gold, was **Midas.**

Gorgon. The name of one of the snaky-haired Gorgons in Greek mythology was **Medusa.**

—. The Greek hero who, according to legend, slew the Gorgon Medusa was **Perseus.**

grove. A name in Greek mythology for a nymph imagined as inhabiting a grove is **alseid.**

Hades. The name of one of the rivers of Hades, and also for the lower world itself, is **Acheron.**

—. A name given by the Greeks to the region of the lower world, between earth and hell, and also to the god of this region, was **Erebus.**

—. In Greek mythology, the ferryman of Hades was **Charon.**

—. The name of the wife of Pluto, in classical mythology, who ruled for six months each year in Hades, is **Persephone, Proserpina, or Proserpine.**

—. The names of the god in classical mythology who ruled over the underworld, or Hades, are **Pluto, Hades,** and **Dis.**

—. The name given in Greek mythology to an abyss below Hades in which the Titans were imprisoned is **Tartarus.**

hat, winged. A name for the winged hat of Hermes or Mercury is **petasus.**

healing. The Roman god of medicine and healing was **Aesculapius.**

health. The Greek goddess of health is **Hygeia.**

hearth. The goddess of the hearth was, with the Greeks **Hestia,** with the Romans **Vesta.**

heaven. The heaven of Norse mythology is **Asgard.**

—. The name given by the ancient Greeks to the abode of the blessed after death was **Elysium** or the **Elysian Fields**

—. The name used by the ancients for the highest region of heaven was the **empyrean.**

—. In classical mythology, the name of the queen of heaven was, with the Greeks **Hera,** with the Romans **Juno.**

—. The Greek name for the abode of the gods and of deified heroes was **Olympus.**

—. In classical mythology, the ruler of heaven and the supreme god was, with the Greeks **Zeus,** with the Romans **Jupiter** or **Jove.**

hell. The hell of Norse mythology is **Niflheim.**

—, punishments. The name in Greek legend of the fifty daughters of Danaus, king of Egypt who, all but one, murdered their husbands, and in hell had to try to fill vessels with no bottoms, was **Danaides.**

—, —. The name of a legendary prince of Corinth, condemned for his misdeeds to the unending labour of rolling to the top of a hill a stone which as often rolled down again, was **Sisyphus.**

—, —. The name of a legendary king in Lydia, who was punished in hell by having to stand with water and fruits just out of his reach, was **Tantalus.**

herald. The legendary herald of the Greeks at Troy was **Stentor**

herb. *See under* **plant,** magical, *below.*

Hermes. A name for the winged hat of Hermes, or Mercury, is **petasus.**

—. The name given in classical mythology to the ankle-wings or winged sandals worn by Hermes is **talaria.**

hermit, Mohammedan A name for a Mohammedan hermit or holy man, especially one of a class in North Africa having great influence in that region, is **marabout.**

—. A European name for a Mohammedan hermit or a dervish is **santon.**

Hinduism. The three great gods of the Hindu religion are the Creator **Brahma,** the Destroyer **Siva,** and the Preserver **Vishnu.**

—. A name for the Hindu religion, especially in its earlier and more philosophic forms, is **Brahminism**

Hinduism. A name for a Hindu religious teacher is **guru.**

—. The name of an Indian festival in honour of the god Krishna is **Hoolee** or **Holi.**

—. The name of the Hindu god Vishnu, as worshipped at Puri, in Orissa, is **Juggernaut** or **Jaganath.**

—. The two great religious epics of ancient India are the **Mahabharata** and **Ramayana.**

—. A Hindu learned in religion and philosophy is a **pundit.**

—. The two chief avatars or incarnations of the god Vishnu are **Rama** and **Krishna.**

—. A Hindu system of training and meditation intended to unite the soul with the universal spirit is **yoga.**

—. The name of a religious ascetic among the Hindus is **yogi.**

—. *See also under* **Sanskrit,** *below.*

Homer. The name of the ancient Greek epic poem ascribed to Homer, relating the story of the siege of Troy, is **Iliad.**

—. The name of the ancient Greek epic poem ascribed to Homer, relating the adventures of Odysseus or Ulysses after the fall of Troy, is **Odyssey.**

honey. The names of mountains in Sicily and Attica respectively, famed in ancient times for their honey, are **Hybla** and **Hymettus.**

horn of plenty. The name of the classical horn of plenty, originally a horn of the mythical goat Amalthea, is **cornucopia.**

horse. The name of a class of beings in Greek mythology, part man, part horse, is **centaurs.**

—. The winged horse fabled in Greek mythology to have sprung from the blood of Medusa was **Pegasus.**

household gods. The names given to the protecting deities of an ancient Roman house were **Lares** and **Penates.**

hunting. The name of the famous hunter in Greek mythology who was turned into a stag and torn to pieces by his dogs is **Actaeon.**

—. The goddess of wild animals and of hunting in Greek mythology was **Artemis,** and in Roman **Diana.**

idol. An idol or any inanimate object worshipped as containing a god or spirit, especially in certain African tribes, is a **fetish.**

—. An alleged name for an idol or god of certain West African tribes is **Mumbo-Jumbo.**

image. An image or other object worshipped as a god is an **idol.**

India. Any native of India who professes Hinduism is a **Hindu.**

—. The religion of the majority of the natives of India, other than Mohammedans, Sikhs, Jains, Buddhists, and Christians, is **Hinduism** or **Brahminism.**

. *See also under* **Hinduism,** *above.*

Isis. The name of an ancient Egyptian jingling instrument used specially in the worship of the goddess Isis is **sistrum.**

Japan. The national religion of Japan, which has been displaced to some extent by Buddhism, is **Shintoism** or **Shinto.**

Jason. The sailors of the ship Argo, who sailed with Jason from Greece to Colchis, were the **Argonauts.**

—. The ram's fleece, guarded by a dragon in Colchis, which was the object of Jason's voyage, was the **golden fleece.**

judge, Mohammedan. A name for a Mohammedan judge, who is also a religious teacher, is **cadi.**

Jupiter. The name given to the shield of Jupiter, made for him by Vulcan, is **aegis.**

justice. The Greek goddess of justice or law was **Themis.**

Kali. The name given to one of an association of religious assassins in India, who used to do murder in honour of the goddess Kali, is **thug.**

Koran. A name given to a Mohammedan who knows the Koran by heart is **hafiz.**

—. A chapter of the Koran is a **sura,** or **surah.**

lama. The most powerful of the lamas of Tibet is the **Dalai-lama.**

—. The lama next in dignity to the Dalai-lama is the **Teshu-lama.**

—. The name for a Lamaist monastery is **lamasery.**

law. The Greek goddess of law or justice was **Themis.**

—, Mohammedan. A name for an expounder of Mohammedan sacred law is **mufti.**

—, —. A name for a Mohammedan scholar or teacher learned in the sacred law is **mullah.**

—, —. A name for a Mohammedan student of law and theology is **softa.**

—, —. A name for the part of Mohammedan law based on the traditional sayings and deeds of Mohammed is **Sunna.**

libation. A name for a shallow, round drinking-vessel used by the ancient Romans for pouring libations to their gods is **patera.**

light. The name for the ancient Persian god of light is **Mithra.**

—. The spirit of light and fire—the supreme good spirit—in the ancient Persian religion of Zoroastrianism was **Ormuzd.**

love. The goddess of love and beauty was, in Greek mythology **Aphrodite,** in Roman **Venus.**

—. The son of Aphrodite or Venus, and god of love, was, in Greek mythology **Eros,** and in Roman **Cupid.**

—. The Hindu god of love is **Kama.**

lover. A famous pair of lovers in Greek legend are **Hero** and **Leander.**

—. A famous pair of lovers in Babylonian legend are **Pyramus** and **Thisbe.**

luck. A name for an object, animal, or person supposed to bring luck is **mascot.**

magic. A name used in literature for the assistant of a magician is **famulus.**

—. A magic formula, or something uttered or sung to produce a magical effect, is an **incantation.**

—. A name for magical or supernatural power, attributed by primitive peoples to certain persons and things, is **mana.**

—. A name for a Hindu charm supposed to have magical powers is **mantra.**

—. A name for a system of magic or sorcery of a terrible character, practised by West Indian and African negroes, is **obeah** or **obi.**

—. A set of words supposed to have magical power and used as a charm is a **spell.**

—. The name given to one of several classes of Sanskrit religious books dealing with magic is **tantra.**

—. A name given to the supposed production of results by the aid of spirits is **theurgy.**

—. A name for a system of magic and sacrifice, based on snake-worship, practised among West Indian and other negroes and creoles is **Voodoo.**

—. Another name for a magician or wizard is **warlock.**

man. A being partaking of the nature of both a god and a man is **theanthropic.**

marriage. The name of the god of marriage in Greek mythology is **Hymen.**

Mars. The festivals at which the priests of Mars sang and danced in the streets of ancient Rome were the **Salian festivals.**

—. The ancient Roman priests of Mars were the **Salii.**

medicine. The Roman god of medicine and healing was **Aesculapius.**

Medusa. The winged horse fabled in Greek mythology to have sprung from the blood of Medusa was **Pegasus.**

—. The Greek hero, who, according to legend slew the Gorgon Medusa, was **Perseus.**

Mercury. A name for the winged hat of Mercury or Hermes is **petasus.**

Mercury. The name given in classical mythology to the ankle-wings or winged sandals of Mercury or Hermes is **talaria.**

messenger. In classical mythology, the messenger of the gods was with the Greeks **Hermes,** with the Romans **Mercury.**

—. In Greek mythology, the rainbow, personified as the messenger of the gods, especially of Hera and Zeus, is **Iris.**

Messina. The name of a six-headed monster in Greek mythology that, with Charybdis, another monster, was thought to prey on voyagers through the Strait of Messina, is **Scylla.**

Minerva. A name for an image of Minerva (Pallas Athene or Athena), kept in ancient Greek and Roman cities because of its supposed protective power, is **Palladium.**

mistletoe. In Scandinavian legend, the name of the god who was killed by a mistletoe twig magically transformed into an arrow is **Balder.**

mockery. The ancient Greek god of mockery was **Momus.**

Mohammed. The laws based on traditional sayings and acts of Mohammed are the **Hadiths.**

—. The titles given in Mohammedan countries to a man who can trace his descent in the male line from Fatima and Ali, the daughter and nephew of Mohammed, are **Seid** or **Seyid,** and **Sherif.**

Mohammedan. The name of God among the Mohammedans is **Allah.**

—. A Mohammedan pilgrimage to the holy city of Mecca is a **hadj** or **hajj.**

—. A name for the Mohammedan religion and for the whole body of Mohammedans is **Islam.**

—. The sacred book of the Mohammedans is the **Koran.**

—. A name for a follower of the Mohammedan religion is **Moslem.**

—. The ninth month of the Mohammedan year, the time of the great yearly fast, is **Ramadan.**

—. A name for a Mohammedan student of sacred law and theology is **softa.**

—. The body of Moslem doctors of theology and sacred law, especially in Turkey, is the **Ulema.**

—, monk. A member of one of the Mohammedan monastic orders is a **dervish.**

—, sanctuary. A name for a Mohammedan sanctuary is **haram** or **harem.**

—, sect. The name of a revolutionary Mohammedan sect founded in the ninth century is **Karmathians.**

—, —. The name of a zealous modern Mohammedan sect, especially powerful in North Africa, is **Senussi.**

—, —. One of the great sects of the Mohammedan religion, found chiefly in Persia, is that of the **Shiahs** or **Shiites.**

—, —. A name for an orthodox Mohammedan who accepts the Sunna, or traditional law, as having equal authority with the Koran is **Sunni** or **Sunnite.**

—, —. A member of a Moslem sect living a very simple life and following strictly the teaching of the Koran is a **Wahabi.**

—, sermon. The name given by Mohammedans to the sermon read in the mosques usually on Fridays is **khutbar.**

—, shrine. The name of the famous Mohammedan shrine at Mecca, containing a black stone which is kissed by pilgrims, is **Kaaba.**

—, title The title given before 1924 to the Mohammedan chief religious and civil ruler, as the successor of Mohammed, is **Caliph, Calif, Khalif,** or **Khalifa.**

—, —. A title given to a Mohammedan who knows the Koran by heart is **hafiz.**

—, —. The title of a Mohammedan religious teacher, and also, among the Shiahs, of the supposed hidden successor of Mohammed is **imam.**

Mohammedan, title. The name given to the deliverer whom Mohammedans expect to appear and rule the world is **Mahdi.**

—, —. The official head of the Mohammedan religion in Turkey and in Persia is the **Sheikh ul Islam.**

—. *See also under* **mosque,** *and* **prayer,** Mohammedan, *below.*

monastery. A name for a Buddhist monastery is a **bonzary** or **bonzery.**

—. A name for a Lamaist monastery is **lamasery.**

Mongolia. The name of the debased form of Buddhism which is the chief religion of Mongolia and Tibet is **Lamaism.**

monk, Mohammedan. A member of one of the Mohammedan monastic orders is a **dervish.**

monster. The name given to a fabulous serpent with a head at each end is **amphisbaena.**

—. A serpent-like monster, often winged, occurring in the mythology of many nations, is the **dragon.**

—, Greek. The name of a monster in Greek myths, with a lion's head, a goat's body, and a serpent's tail, is **chimera.**

—, —. The three snake-haired female monsters of Greek mythology were the **Gorgons.**

—, —. The name of a female winged monster of classical legends, supposed to be a personification of a whirlwind or storm, is **harpy.**

—, —. The name of the nine-headed serpent-like monster, slain by Hercules as one of his labours, is **Hydra.**

—, —. The Cretan monster having a man's body and a bull's head, which Theseus slew, according to the Greek legend, was the **Minotaur.**

—, — The name of a six-headed monster in Greek mythology that, with another monster, Charybdis, was thought to prey on voyagers through the Strait of Messina, was **Scylla.**

—, —. A fabulous winged monster in Greek mythology with a woman's head and a lion's body was a **sphinx.**

—, mediaeval. In mediaeval tales, the names of a fabulous monster whose breath and glance were fatal are **basilisk** and **cockatrice.**

—, —. A fabulous animal with the legs and body of a lion and the wings and head of an eagle is a **griffin.**

—, —. The name given to an imaginary Norwegian sea-monster is **kraken.**

—, —. The name of an heraldic monster in the form of a two-legged dragon with wings is **wivern** or **wyvern.**

moon. Another name of the Greek Artemis, in her aspect as goddess of the moon, is **Selene.**

mosque. A Mohammedan functionary who leads the prayers in a mosque is an **imam.**

—. A name for a mosque or place of worship used by Mohammedans is **masjid.**

—. A slender tower of a Mohammedan mosque from which the muezzin calls the faithful to prayer is a **minaret.**

—. The public crier who calls the faithful to prayer from the minaret of a Mohammedan mosque is the **muezzin.**

mountain. The name of a mountain in Boeotia, Greece, regarded as a favourite haunt of the Muses, is **Helicon.**

—. The names of mountains, in Sicily and Attica respectively, famed in ancient times for their honey are **Hybla** and **Hymettus.**

—. The name of the mountain between Thessaly and Macedonia, which was regarded as the home of the ancient Greek gods, is **Olympus.**

—. A name for a nymph in classical mythology, imagined as inhabiting mountains, is **oread.**

—. The mountain in Phocis, Greece, reputed in ancient times to have been the resort of Apollo and the Muses was **Parnassus.**

Muse. The chief Muse in Greek mythology who presided over epic poetry was **Calliope.**

Muse. The Muse of history and heroic exploits was **Clio.**

—. The Muse of love poems was **Erato.**

—. The Muse of lyric poetry was **Euterpe.**

—. The Muse of tragedy was **Melpomene.**

—. The Muse of inspired sacred song was **Polyhymnia** or **Polymnia.**

—. The Muse of dancing was **Terpsichore.**

—. The Muse of comedy and pastoral poetry was **Thalia.**

—. The Muse of astronomy was **Urania.**

—, haunt. The name of a mountain in Boeotia, Greece, regarded anciently as a favourite haunt of the Muses, is **Helicon.**

—, —. The name of the spring on Mount Helicon, sacred to the Muses, supposed to have been produced by the hoof of Pegasus, is **Hippocrene.**

—, —. The mountain in Phocis, Greece, reputed in ancient times to have been the resort of Apollo and the Muses, was **Parnassus.**

—, —. The fountain in Pieria, Thessaly, the haunt of the Muses, fabled to inspire those who drank of it with poetry or learning was the **Pierian spring.**

music. The Greek and Roman god of music and song was **Apollo.**

—. The legendary Greek musician and poet, whose music enchanted animals, trees, and rocks, was **Orpheus.**

mystery. The name of the mysteries in honour of Demeter, the ancient Greek goddess of agriculture, performed at Eleusis, in Attica, is **Eleusinian mysteries** or **Eleusinia.**

—. A name for a teacher or explainer of religious mysteries to novices, especially in ancient Greece, is **mystagogue.**

myth. The theory that the gods of classical mythology were national heroes who had been deified is **euhemerism.**

—. A name for the origin of myths is **mythogony.**

—. An age or a stage in the life of a community in which myths arise is **mythopoeic.**

—. The theory that mythology is derived largely from primitive ideas about the sun is **solarism.**

nature worship. The personification of natural forces which led to the conception of many pagan deities is **elementalism.**

—. A name for a form of religion which identifies nature with God or the gods is **pantheism.**

—. A name for the worship of the forces of nature, especially by primitive peoples, is **physiolatry.**

—. A name for the worship of natural forces as gods is **physitheism.**

Neptune. The name given in Greek mythology to a son of Poseidon (Neptune), part man, part fish, is **Triton.**

New Year. A name given in Scotland to the first person who enters a house on New Year's Day to greet its inmates is **first-foot.**

—. A name given in Scotland to New Year's Eve, or to a gift or entertainment given on that day, is **hogmanay.**

nightingale. The Athenian princess who, according to legend, was changed into a nightingale was **Philomela.**

Norse mythology. The home of the gods in Norse mythology is **Asgard.**

—. The demon wolf of Norse mythology is **Fenrir.**

—. The world serpent of Norse mythology is the **Midgard serpent.**

—. The dark underworld of Norse mythology is **Niflheim.**

—. In Norse mythology the day of doom in which the world is destroyed and the gods are slain is **Ragnarok** or the **Twilight of the gods.**

—. The hall of Odin, the supreme god of Norse mythology, in which slain warriors feast with him, is **Valhalla.**

—. In Norse mythology, each of the twelve maidens who hovered over battlefields and conducted the souls of the slain to Valhalla was a **Valkyrie.**

Norse mythology. *See also under* **god,** national, *above.*

nymph. The nymphs, or half-divine maidens, of Greek mythology were the **Alseides** (of groves,) **Dryades** or **Hamadryades** (of trees), **Naiades** (of rivers, lakes, and springs), **Napaeae** (of glens), **Nereides** (of the sea, daughters of Nereus), **Oceanides** (of the outer ocean, daughters of Oceanus), and **Oreades** (of mountains).

ocean. A name in Greek mythology for an ocean nymph, daughter of Oceanus, is **oceanid.**

Odysseus. *See under* **Ulysses,** *below.*

offering. The killing of a victim or the surrender of a possession as an offering to a deity is a **sacrifice.**

oracle. The priestess who delivered the Delphic oracle was a **Pythia.**

—. The name given in ancient times by the Greeks and Romans to the prophetess of an oracle was **sibyl.**

—. The name given to a collection of oracles sold by the Cumaean Sibyl to Tarquin the Proud, kept in the temple of Jupiter at Rome, and consulted in national emergencies, was **Sibylline books.**

Pallas. *See under* **Athena,** *above.*

peacock. The name of the hundred-eyed being set by Hera to guard Io and lulled to sleep by the music of Hermes, his eyes being put on the tail of the peacock, is **Argus.**

plant, magical. The name of a plant in Greek legend, the fruits of which produced drowsiness and indolent enjoyment, is **lotus.**

— —. The name of a plant with a root shaped like a human figure, used in witchcraft, and fabled to shriek when pulled from the ground, is **mandrake.**

—, —. The name of the legendary herb with which Odysseus in the Odyssey warded off the charms of Circe is **moly.**

—, sacred. The name of the sacred plant of ancient Brahminism, and of an intoxicating drink prepared from it, is **soma.**

Polynesia. A name for the custom among the Polynesians of setting persons, acts, or things apart, as being sacred or accursed, is **taboo.**

Poseidon. The name given in Greek mythology to a son of Poseidon part man, part fish, is **Triton.**

prayer, Mohammedan. The name given to the point in the direction of Mecca towards which a Mohammedan turns in prayer is **kiblah.**

—, —. The public crier who calls the faithful to prayer from the minaret of a Mohammedan mosque is the **muezzin.**

priest. A name for a Japanese or Chinese Buddhist priest is **bonze.**

—. The priests of ancient Britain and Gaul were **Druids.**

— A priest of ancient Rome was a **flamen.**

—. A name for a chief priest is **hierarch.**

—. A government by priests is a **hierocracy.**

—. The name given by the ancient Greeks to the high priest of the Eleusinian mysteries was **hierophant.**

—. A name for one of a class of Parsee priests is **mobed.**

—. The name for a priest-king in ancient Babylonia and Assyria is **patesi.**

—. The name for a priest or magician among the tribes of northern Asia is **shaman.**

prophecy. The name of King Priam's daughter to whom Apollo gave the power of prophecy, but on her refusal to return his love caused her prophecies to be ridiculed, is **Cassandra.**

—. A name given the supposed art of prophecy or divination, and to an object used in divination, is **mantic.**

pyramid. The name given to a flat-topped pyramid, usually surmounted by a temple, used as a place of worship by the ancient Mexicans, is **teocalli.**

pyramid. The name of a Babylonian or Assyrian terraced pyramid, surmounted by a temple, is **ziggurat.**

rainbow. The goddess of the rainbow in Greek mythology is **Iris.**

reed. The Arcadian nymph of Greek legend whom the gods changed into a tuft of reeds to save her from Pan was **Syrinx.**

reflection. In Greek mythology, the beautiful youth who, having spurned the love of the nymph Echo, fell in love with his own reflection in a spring, pined away, and was changed into the flower named after him, was **Narcissus.**

religion. A person addicted to extreme forms of religious observance is a **devotee.**

—. Strict observance of religious forms and ceremonies is **formalism** or **formulism.**

—. One who claims the right to exercise his own judgment on religious matters without regard to accepted beliefs is a **free-thinker.**

—. Departure from what is believed to be the true faith, or from accepted standards or beliefs, is **heresy.**

—. A name for the study of religious literature is **hierology.**

—. The name given to one who attaches no importance to the differences between religious faiths is **indifferentist.**

—. A name given to the re-awakening of religious life in a community is **revival.**

—. The formal or usual procedure in a religious or other solemn ceremony is a **rite.**

—, form. Any religion that maintains that natural objects and forces have souls or controlling spirits in them is a form of **animism.**

—, —. The name of a modern religion which was promulgated by reformers of Mohammedanism in Persia and Syria is **Babism.**

—, —. The great religion of China, Japan, Further India, and Ceylon, founded in India by Gautama, Sakyamuni, or Siddhartha in the sixth century B.C., is **Buddhism.**

—, —. One of the religions of China, founded on the teaching of Confucius, is **Confucianism.**

—, —. The name of a religion based on the worship of fetishes, as in many parts of Africa, is **fetishism.**

—, —. A name for the Mohammedan religion is **Islam.**

—, —. The name of a religion of India, of ancient origin, resembling Buddhism, is **Jainism.**

—, —. The religion of Tibet and Mongolia, a debased form of Buddhism, is **Lamaism.**

—, —. An old Persian religion founded by Mani about A.D. 250 is **Manichaeanism.**

—, —. A name for the religion of the ancient Greeks, as portrayed in Homer's poems, is **Olympianism.**

—, —. The modern adherents in India of the ancient Persian religion of Zoroastrianism are **Parsees.**

—, —. A religion which developed from the philosophy of Auguste Comte, and is based on the idea that man is the highest being about which there is real knowledge, is **Positivism.**

—, —. The name of a primitive form of religion prevailing among the uncivilized tribes of northern Asia and some North American Indian tribes is **Shamanism.**

—, —. The name of the ancient national religion of Japan is **Shinto** or **Shintoism.**

—, —. The monotheistic religion founded in the Punjab by Nanak about A.D. 1500 is **Sikhism.**

—, —. An ancient religion of China, founded on the teaching of Lao-tsze, is **Taoism.**

—, —. The dualistic religion of ancient Persia, still maintained by the Parsees, is **Zoroastrianism.**

Rhine. The name of a legendary maiden who haunts the echoing rock of the same name in the Rhine, near St. Goar, and whose voice lures boatmen to destruction, is the **Lorelei.**

ridicule. The ancient Greek god of ridicule was **Momus.**

rites. The name given to the secret rites celebrated, after the harvest, at Eleusis in ancient Greece is **Eleusinian mysteries** or **Eleusinia.**

river. The rivers which flowed through the lower regions, in classical mythology, were the **Styx, Acheron, Lethe, Phlegethon,** and **Cocytus.**

—, nymph. The name given in Greek mythology to a nymph living in rivers, streams, springs, or lakes is **naiad.**

rural god. In Roman mythology, one of a number of rural gods, part man and part goat, is a **faun.**

sacred. A name for the Polynesian system of setting apart certain persons, acts, or things as sacred or accursed is **taboo.**

sacrifice. The sacrifice of one hundred oxen in ancient Greece or Rome was a **hecatomb.**

—. A sacrifice that is totally burnt is a **holocaust.**

—, human. The Canaanite god to whom children were sacrificed was **Moloch.**

saint, Mohammedan. A name for a Mohammedan saint or holy man, especially in North Africa, is **marabout.**

sanctuary, Mohammedan. A name for a Mohammedan sanctuary is **haram** or **harem.**

sandals, winged. The name given in classical mythology to the ankle-wings or winged sandals worn by Hermes or Mercury is **talaria.**

Sanskrit. The name given to one of a class of sacred legendary poems in Sanskrit is **Purana.**

—. The oldest of the Vedas, the sacred books of the Hindus, is the **Rig-Veda.**

—. A name for the books of rules and religious teachings of the Brahmins is **Sutras.**

—. The name given to one of several classes of Sanskrit religious books dealing with magic is **tantra.**

—. The name given to one of a series of ancient sacred books of the Brahminic religion and philosophy is **upanishad.**

—. The most ancient Sanskrit scriptures of the Hindus are the **Vedas.**

Saturn. The name of the ancient Roman festival of Saturn, held in December, is **Saturnalia.**

scourging. The term used for scourging when practised as a punishment or penance for sin is **flagellation.**

scriptures. *See under* **book,** sacred, *above.*

sea. In European folk lore, the names given to a class of semi-human beings with fishes' tails, living in the sea, are **mermen** and **mermaids.**

—. A name for a sea-nymph, daughter of Nereus, an ancient Greek sea-god, is **Nereid.**

—. The name of the chief god of the sea was with the Greeks **Poseidon,** with the Romans **Neptune.**

—. The name given to certain fabulous sea nymphs, thought to allure sailors to destruction by their sweet singing, is **Sirens.**

—. The name given in Greek mythology to one of a race of sea-gods, part man, part fish, is **Triton.**

sermon, Mohammedan. The name given by Mohammedans to a sermon read in the mosques usually on Friday is **khutbar.**

serpent. The name given to a fabulous serpent with a head at each end is **amphisbaena.**

—. A serpent whose bite was said to produce an unquenchable thirst, and so cause death, was a **dipsas.**

—. The fabulous, many-headed water serpent slain by Hercules was the **Hydra.**

—. The world serpent of Norse mythology is the **Midgard serpent.**

—. A name for the practice of worshipping snakes is **ophiolatry.**

—. The monstrous serpent slain by Apollo at Delphi was the **Python.**

—. The name given to an emblem in the form of a serpent, placed on the head-dress of ancient Egyptian divinities and kings, is **uraeus.**

serpent. A system of magic and sacrifice based on snake-worship, practised in the West Indies and the southern United States, is **Voodoo.**

shepherd. The ancient Greek god of shepherds and their flocks was **Pan.**

shield. In classical mythology the name of the shield of Zeus or of Pallas is **aegis.**

shrine. The shrine or innermost chamber of a Greek or Roman temple, containing the secret mysteries of religion, is an **adytum.**

—. A dome-shaped Buddhist shrine containing sacred relics is a **dagoba.**

—. The name of the famous Mohammedan shrine at Mecca, containing a black stone which is kissed by pilgrims, is **Kaaba.**

—. A name for a shrine, especially the central chamber of a Roman house where household gods were kept, is **penetralia.**

—. The name of a shrine or adytum in ancient Roman houses and temples was **sacrarium.**

Sibylline books. The name given to a member of the college of fifteen priests who had the care of the Sibylline books in ancient Rome was **quindecemvir.**

sleep. The name given in Greek legend to a plant whose fruits were said to produce drowsiness was **lotus.**

—. The ancient Roman god of sleep was **Somnus.**

smith. The name of a wonder-working smith of legend, whose forge was, according to English local tradition, in the Vale of the White Horse, Berkshire, is **Wayland Smith.**

sorcery. *See under* **magic,** *above, and* **witchcraft,** *below.*

soul. A name for the religious doctrine of the Pythagoreans, Hindus, Buddhists, etc., that the soul can pass from one living thing to another, is **metempsychosis.**

—. In later Greek mythology the soul was personified in the form of a maiden bearing the name **Psyche.**

—. The name given to a belief that the soul passes at death to the body of a newly-born person is **transmigration.**

spirit. A primitive form of religion, according to which all Nature is animated by spirits, is **animism.**

—. An evil spirit is a **demon.**

—. The pretended action of causing a spirit to appear by magic is **evocation.**

—. The pretended summoning of a spirit by magic is **invocation.**

—. A name given to the primitive belief that large numbers of spirits control the forces of nature is **polydaemonism.**

—. The belief that the spirits of the dead communicate with living people is **spiritualism.**

—. A name given to the supposed production of results by the aid of spirits is **theurgy.**

—, American. A name for a guardian spirit in North American Indian mythology is **manitou.**

—, classical. A minor Greek divinity, who was supposed to act as a guardian spirit or as an instrument of the gods in punishing offenders, was a **daemon** or **demon.**

—, —. The name of a deity believed by the Romans to watch over a man's life or over a place or institution is **genius.**

—, —. Names for disembodied spirits of the dead in ancient Roman mythology are **manes** and **lemures.**

—, —. A name in Greek and Roman mythology for a beautiful female nature-spirit is **nymph.**

—, —. The name used in early Christian times for a prophesying spirit was **python.**

—, —. The name given in classical mythology to a kind of demigod or spirit in human form, with the tail, legs, and ears of a horse or goat, was **satyr.**

—, European. A kindly spirit or goblin who, according to old folk-tales, did household work at night for farm-girls who had won his favour was a **brownie.**

spirit, European. One of a class of small, supernatural beings or spirits in European folk-lore is an **elf, fay,** or **fairy.**

—, —. According to Paracelsus the spirits inhabiting the four elements earth, water, air, and fire are, respectively, **gnomes, undines, sylphs,** and **salamanders.**

—, —. The name of a kind of water-spirit in Scottish folk-lore is **kelpie.**

—, —. The name given in German folk-lore to a mischievous house- or earth-spirit is **kobold.**

—, —. A name for a kind of sprite or brownie in Irish folk-lore is **leprechaun.**

—, —. The name of an alleged mischievous spirit that makes noises or throws things about the house is **poltergeist.**

—, —. A name given in Irish folk-lore to a malignant sprite is **pooka.**

—, Oriental. A name used by Robert Southey, in the "Curse of Kehama," for a beautiful and kindly Hindu spirit is **Glendoveer,** in Sanskrit **Gandharva.**

—, —. A fabulous being believed by the Arabians to be intermediate between the angels and men is a **jinnee, jinn,** or **genie.**

—, —. A jinnee of the most powerful kind in Mohammedan mythology is a **marid.**

—, —. A name for an evil sprite in early Persian, and a good fairy in later Persian mythology, is **peri.**

—. *See also* **dead, demon,** *and* **fairy,** *above.*

stag. The name of the famous hunter in Greek mythology who was changed into a stag and torn to pieces by his dogs was **Actaeon.**

star. The worship of the stars is **astrolatry.**

—. The seven daughters of Atlas who were changed into stars to save them from Orion were the **Pleiades.**

—. A name for the pagan worship of the stars is **Sabaism.**

statue. In Greek mythology the name of a king of Cyprus who fell in love with a statue he had made of a beautiful maiden, which came to life in answer to his prayers to Aphrodite, was **Pygmalion,** and that of the maiden **Galatea.**

stone, sacred. The name of the black stone, sacred to Mohammedans, which pilgrims kiss in the Kaaba, at Mecca, is **Hajar al-Aswad.**

—, —. A name for a sacred stone in the Temple of Apollo at Delphi, thought to mark the earth's centre, was **omphalos.**

sun. The worship of the sun is **heliolatry.**

—. Ancient stories and fables about the sun which were believed to explain such happenings as sunrise, eclipses, etc., are **solar myths.**

—, god. The sun-god of the ancient Persians and the Aryans of India was **Mithra.**

—, —. A name for the worship of the sun-god, Mithra, is **Mithraism.**

—, —. A name for Apollo as sun-god, in Greek mythology, is **Phoebus.**

—, —. The ancient Egyptian sun-god was **Re** or **Ra.**

—, —. The name given in Greek mythology to the sun-god, as the offspring of Hyperion, was **Titan.**

supernatural. A name for supernatural agency in human affairs is **theurgy.**

sword. The names of the swords of the French epic heroes Roland and Oliver were respectively **Durendal** and **Hauteclère.**

—, magic. In the Arthurian legend, the name of the magic sword given to the king by the Lady of the Lake is **Excalibur.**

symbol. The symbol of Islam is the **crescent.**

—. The ancient Egyptian symbol of life, a cross with a circle in place of the upper limb, is the **crux ansata.**

—. Names for a primitive symbol in the form of a cross with its four ends continued at right angles are **fylfot, gammadion,** and **swastika.**

symbol. A wheel-like symbol used in ancient Gaul to represent the sun is a **rouelle.**

—. The symbol of Zeus or Jupiter is the **thunderbolt.**

—. The symbol of Neptune is the **trident.**

—. The chief Buddhist symbols, typifying the cycle of existence, are the **wheel** and the **lotus.**

—. A form of religious symbolism in which the symbols or signs represent or imitate the form of an animal is **zoomorphic.**

temple. The temple of the goddess Athena in the Acropolis at Athens is the **Parthenon.**

—. A name given to the ancient rock temples of the Dravidians, found chiefly in the south of India, is **rath.**

—. The inner sanctuary in a Greek temple was the **sekos.**

—. The Greek name for land forming the enclosure of a temple is **temenos.**

—. *See also under* **shrine,** *above.*

Tibet. The name of the debased form of Buddhism which is the chief religion of Tibet and Mongolia is **Lamaism.**

Titan. The name given in Greek mythology to the abyss below Hades in which the Titans were imprisoned is **Tartarus.**

tower, sacred. A name for an Eastern sacred tower, often pyramidal in India, bell-shaped in Burma, octagonal and tapering in China, is **pagoda.**

—, —. Names for the tower upon which the Parsees expose the bodies of their dead are **tower of silence** and **dakhma.**

transformation. The name used in folk-lore for the transformation of men or women into wolves, bears, foxes, and other animals, is **lycanthropy.**

—. A supernatural transformation of a thing or person, as that of Narcissus, is a **metamorphosis.**

tree. The worship of trees by primitive peoples is **dendrolatry.**

—. Names for a tree-nymph, who died, according to classical mythology, when the tree that she inhabited died, are **dryad** and **hamadryad.**

—. The great ash-tree in Norse mythology, which bore up the universe and united earth, heaven, and hell with its roots and branches, is **Yggdrasil.**

twins. The names of the twin sons of Leda, who were changed into the constellation Gemini, are **Castor** and **Pollux,** or the **Dioscuri.**

Ulysses. The ancient Greek epic poem relating the adventures of Ulysses or Odysseus after the fall of Troy is the **Odyssey.**

—. The faithful wife of Ulysses or Odysseus was **Penelope.**

unbeliever. A Turkish name given to those, especially Christians, who disbelieve in Mohammed is **giaour.**

underworld. In Greek mythology the ferryman of the underworld was **Charon.**

—. The name of a mysterious god of the underworld, mentioned by Milton, Shelley, and others, is **Demogorgon.**

—. The ancient Greek and Roman god of the lower world was **Pluto.**

—. *See also* **Hades** *and* **hell,** *above.*

universe. A name for a doctrine that identifies the universe with God, or denies that God exists apart from it, is **pantheism.**

Uranus. The twelve children of Uranus (Heaven) and Ge (Earth) in Greek mythology were the **Titans.**

Vedas. A name for a hymn from the Vedas, and for a charm supposed by the Hindus to have magic powers, is **mantra.**

—. The oldest of the Vedas, the sacred books of the Hindus, is the **Rig-Veda.**

vengeance. In Greek mythology the avenging deity or evil destiny pursuing one who has sinned is **Alastor.**

—. Each of the three avenging goddesses was with the ancient Greeks an **Erinys,** with the Romans a **Fury.**

vengeance. A flattering name given by the Greeks to the Erinyes or avenging goddesses was "the gracious ones," or **Eumenides.**

—. The ancient Greek goddess of vengeance or retribution was **Nemesis.**

Venus. The beautiful youth in classical mythology who was loved by Venus, and was killed by a boar while hunting, was **Adonis.**

Vesta. The maidens who were consecrated to the service of the Roman goddess Vesta were **Vestal virgins** or **Vestals.**

vine. The name given to a shaft or staff wrapped with vine leaves, used anciently as an emblem of Bacchus, is **thyrsus.**

war. The Roman goddess of war was **Bellona.**

—. In classical mythology, the god of war was with the Greeks **Ares,** and with the Romans **Mars.**

—. The name given to a holy war proclaimed by Mohammedans against unbelievers in their faith is **jihad.**

water. A name for a water-nymph in classical legends is **naiad.**

— The name given in Greek mythology to a son of Zeus, condemned to stand up to his neck in water which receded as he tried to drink it, is **Tantalus.**

—. The name given in folk-lore to a kind of water-nymph who had no soul, but could obtain one by marrying a mortal, was **undine.**

water-finder. A forked branch, generally of hazel, by means of which it is held that the presence of underground water or minerals can be detected, is a **divining-rod.**

—. Another name for a water diviner, or one who detects underground water, is **dowser.**

widow, burning. The Hindu custom whereby a widow burned herself on the funeral pyre with the body of her husband is **suttee.**

will-o'-the-wisp. Names given to the will-o'-the-wisp, or pale light occasionally seen in marshy places, are **corpse-light, ignis fatuus,** and **jack o' lantern.**

wind. The god of the winds in Roman mythology was **Aeolus.**

—. Names in classical mythology for the north, south, east, and west winds respectively were **Boreas, Notus, Eurus,** and **Zephyrus.**

wine. The Greek and Roman god of wine and feasting was **Dionysus** or **Bacchus.**

wisdom. In classical mythology the goddess of wisdom, patroness of arts and crafts, was with the Greeks **Pallas Athene** or **Athena,** with the Romans **Minerva.**

witch. The name given to the night preceding the first of May, during which witches and demons were thought to hold revels, especially on the Brocken, in the Harz, Germany, was **witches' Sabbath** or **Walpurgis Night.**

witchcraft. A name for a kind of witchcraft practised in the West Indies and elsewhere is **myalism.**

— A name for a terrible kind of witchcraft practised by West Indian and African negroes is **obeah** or **obi.**

—. A name for a form of witchcraft once practised in Ireland is **pishogue.**

wolf. The name for the power attributed by the superstitious to certain persons of changing themselves into wolves is **lycanthropy.**

—. A name for a system of witchcraft and sacrifice based on serpent-worship, practised by West Indian and U.S. negroes and creoles is **voodoo.**

—. In folk-lore, a person who is changed, or is capable of changing himself, into a wolf is a **werwolf.**

woman. In classical mythology, the chief goddess of women was with the Greeks **Hera,** with the Romans **Juno.**

—. In Greek mythology, the first woman to appear on earth was **Pandora.**

wood-nymph. A nymph who, according to the Greek myths, lived and died with the tree which she inhabited was a **dryad** or **hamadryad.**

worship. A name for a Mohammedan place of worship is **mosque** or **masjid.**

—. A name for the comprehensive worship under the Roman Empire of all heathen gods, belonging to different cults, creeds, and races, is **pantheism.**

—. Any kind of ceremonial worship among the Hindus is **puja** or **pooja.**

writing. The name given to a sacred character, symbol, or piece of writing is **hierogram.**

youth. The Greek goddess of youth, who acted as cupbearer to the gods, was **Hebe.**

Zeus, cupbearer. The name of a beautiful youth carried to Mount Olympus by an eagle to act as cupbearer to Zeus was **Ganymede.**

Zoroastrianism. The evil deity in the ancient Persian religion of Zoroastrianism was **Ahriman.**

—. A name for a Zoroastrian fire-worshipper is **Guebre.**

—. The spirit of light and fire—the supreme good spirit—in the ancient Persian religion of Zoroastrianism was **Ormuzd.**

—. The modern adherents in India of the ancient Persian religion of Zoroastrianism are the **Parsees.**

SPORTS AND PASTIMES

ace of spades. A name for the ace of spades in the games of ombre and quadrille is **spadille.**

angling. Another name for angling is the **gentle craft.**

—. The name used in Scotland for a guide and assistant to anglers and deer-stalkers is **gillie.**

—. A learned name for the art and practice of angling is **halieutics.**

—, bait. The name for any one of the flies above the tail fly is **drop fly** or **dropper.**

—, —. The name given to a floating fly is **dry fly.**

—, —. A worm found in the roots of the flag plant and used as bait by anglers is a **flag worm.**

—, —. A name for the maggot of the bluebottle used by anglers as bait is **gentle.**

—, —. A solid kind of bait which is swallowed by the fish is a **gorge.**

—, —. A name given to a small brown May fly at which salmon rise, and also to an imitation of it used by anglers, is **grannom.**

—, —. Bait thrown to the bottom of the water to attract the fish is **ground-bait.**

—, —. The name for an artificial fly dressed with hackles is **hackle.**

—, —. Bait consisting of living fish, worms, etc., as opposed to artificial bait, is **live bait.**

—, —. A name for a type of artificial bait used by anglers when fishing at night is **night fly.**

—, —. The name for an artificial bait made to look like the hairy caterpillar called the palmer worm, is **palmer.**

—, —. A name for a kind of artificial bait resembling a living fish is **phantom.**

—, —. A piece of metal shaped like a tea-spoon, which spins in the water, used by anglers to attract fish, is **spoon-bait.**

—, —. The name for the fly at the end of the leader is **tail fly.**

—, —. The name given to a sunk fly is **wet fly.**

—, basket. A basket made of osiers used by anglers for carrying fish is a **creel.**

—, case. A case containing a number of flannel strips on which are laid the artificial flies used as bait is a **fly-book.**

—, fish. Fish, such as pike, perch, carp, bream, tench, rudd and roach, not belonging to the salmon and trout families, and taken otherwise than with the fly, are classed together as **coarse fish** or **general fish.**

—, —. A name for a salmon in its fourth year is **fork-tail.**

—, —. A name for the young of salmon in their second year is **fry.**

—, —. Freshwater fish of the salmon and trout families are classed together as **game fish.**

—, —. The name for salmon of adult age but not full grown, when they first return to fresh water to spawn, is **grilse.**

—, —. A name for a young pike is **jack.**

—, —. The name of a large game fish of Indian rivers, corresponding for sporting purposes to the salmon, is **mahseer.**

—, —. A name for a young salmon in its first year, not ready to leave the river for the sea, is **parr.**

angling, fish. A name used by anglers for a young pike is **pickerel.**

—, —. The name of a large fish of the herring family which provides excellent sport for American anglers is **tarpon.**

—, method. Angling in which the baited hook is on or not far from the bottom is **bottom-fishing.**

—, —. To fish by letting the bait bob up and down on the water is to **dap, dib,** or **dibble.**

—, —. To fish with a rod and long line, so weighted as to drag the hook along the bottom, is to **drabble.**

—, —. A staked enclosure in a river forming a fish preserve is a **fish garth.**

—, —. Bottom-fishing in which bites are detected by the use of a float is **float-fishing.**

—, —. To cast a line repeatedly over a stream is to **flog.**

—, —. To fish with a rod and line with real or artificial flies as bait is to **fly-fish.**

—, —. Angling without a float, with the line weighted near the hook, is **ground angling.**

—, —. Angling without a float, in which the sportsman trusts to his hand to feel a bite, is **hand-fishing.**

—, —. To keep a fish pulling on the line until it is too tired to make further resistance is to **play.**

—, —. To fish for eels by pushing a needle buried in a worm into their hiding-places is to **sniggle.**

—, —. To angle with a spinning bait is to **spin.**

—, —. To jerk fishing tackle so as to secure the hook in the mouth of a fish biting the bait is to **strike.**

—, —. To draw a spinning bait along behind a moving boat is to **trail.**

—, —. To fish with a spoon-bait is to **troll.**

—, —. To fish with a hand-line or lines, usually from a boat, by towing a spinning bait near the surface is to **whiff.**

—, tackle. The name for the end of an angler's line, usually of gut or gimp, and carrying the hooks, etc., is **cast.**

—, —. The name used for the cork attached to a bait-line, which bobs up and down when a fish bites, is **float.**

—, —. The flexible rod used in fly-fishing is a **fly-rod.**

—, —. A stick with an iron hook, used by anglers to land a heavy fish, is a **gaff.**

—, —. To protect part of a fishing-line with fine wire to prevent fish from biting it off is to **gange.**

—, —. A kind of long-handled fork used for spearing large fish is a **gig.**

—, —. A name for a kind of fish-spear made of iron with several barbed points is a **grain.**

—, —. A name for a fishing line made of horsehair is **hair-line.**

—, —. A fishing line worked without a rod is a **hand-line**

—, —. The name of the end part of an angler's reel-line is **leader.**

angling, tackle. A fishing line fastened to the bank, or fixed in some other manner so that it remains stationary, is a **ledger-line.**

—, —. A name given to a weighted fishing line to which shorter lines with hooks are fastened at intervals is **paternoster.**

—, —. A short length of gut or silk cord used for attaching hooks to a line is a **snood.**

—, —. The middle bar of an angler's reel is a **spool.**

—, —. The name of the section of spinning tackle between the bait and the line is **trace.**

animal. Animals hunted for sport or food are **game.**

—. An animal, or a part of one, mounted and kept as a memorial of the chase is a **trophy.**

archery. The name for the leather guard worn on the left arm as a protection from the recoil of the bow-string is **bracer.**

—. A name for a representation of a parrot used formerly as a mark in archery is **popinjay.**

—. The name for the leather guard for the fingers of the right hand is **tip.**

—. A name given to a lover of archery or to one skilled in the sport is **toxophilite.**

—, arrow. An arrow used in long-distance shooting is a **flight arrow.**

—, —. The notch in the butt-end of an arrow to fit the bowstring is the **nock.**

—, bow. A bow made of two or more pieces of wood glued together is a **backed bow.**

—, —. The name for one of the tiny cracks in a bow which spread till the bow breaks is **crystal.**

—, —. A bow made of one piece of wood is a **self bow.**

—, target. The third ring from the centre of the target is the **black.**

—, —. The second ring from the middle of the target is the **blue.**

—, —. The centre or bull's-eye of the target is the **gold.**

—, —. The first ring from the centre of the target is the **red.**

—, —. The fourth ring from the centre of the target is the **white.**

Association football. The governing body of the game is the **Football Association.**

—. The trophy open for competition each year by both English and Welsh professional and amateur clubs playing Association football is the **Football Association Cup** or, popularly, the **English Cup.**

—. The name given to each of two officials who give decisions when the ball goes out of play, and also help the referee, is **linesman.**

—. A popular name for Association football is **Soccer.**

—. The name given to the person who looks after the physical fitness of players is **trainer.**

—. A caution to a player for rough or ungentlemanly conduct is a **warning.**

—, boots The name given to flat strips of leather fastened to the sole of a boot to afford a foothold is **bars,** and to disks of leather, **studs.**

—, field. The ring drawn in the centre of the field is the **centre circle.**

—, —. The flags placed at each corner of the field, each having a staff not less than five feet high, are the **corner flags.**

—, —. The space within the lines marked six yards from each goal-post at right angles to the goal lines for a distance of six yards, and connected with each other by a line parallel to the goal line, is the **goal area.**

—, —. The line in the centre of the field connecting the touch-lines is the **half-way line.**

—, —. The space enclosed by lines drawn eighteen yards from each goal post at right angles to the goal lines, and connected by a line parallel to the goal lines, is the **penalty area.**

—, —. Within each of the penalty-areas, twelve yards in front of the goal, is the **penalty spot.**

—, kick. A free kick awarded to a team when an opponent has kicked the ball behind his own goal line is a **corner kick.**

Association football, kick. A kick awarded the opposing side for a breach of the laws of the game is a **free kick.**

—, —. A kick awarded to one side when the ball has been played over their goal line by one of the opposing team is a **goal kick.**

—, —. A goal scored from a free kick from the penalty spot is a **penalty goal.**

—, —. If a player kicks or trips an opponent, or deliberately handles the ball when within the penalty area of his side, the other side is awarded a **penalty kick.**

—, —. A kick from the centre of the field which starts or restarts a game is a **place kick.**

—, play. To obstruct an opposing player is to **block.**

—, —. The taking of more than two steps by a goalkeeper while holding the ball is **carrying.**

—, —. To thrust oneself forward at an opponent is to **charge.**

—, —. To take the ball forward with the feet while keeping it under close control is to **dribble.**

—, —. The act of kicking the ball to a player of the same side standing nearer the opposing goal is a **forward pass.**

—, —. A breach of the laws for which a free kick is awarded is a **foul.**

—, —. The intentional touching of the ball with the hand or with any part of the arm is **handling.**

—, —. To propel the ball with the head is to **head.**

—, —. The act of obstructing an opponent with the hands contrary to the laws is **holding.**

—, —. Unlawful obstruction is **interference.**

—, —. The kicking or heading of the ball from one player to another is a **pass.**

—, —. The backward transference of the ball to another player is a **pass back.**

—, —. The unlawful use of the hands against an opponent is **pushing.**

—, —. The making of considerable forward movement with the ball at the foot is a **run.**

—, —. Kicking the ball out of play when danger threatens is **safety play.**

—, —. The charging of a player by two opponents, one on each side of him, is **sandwiching.**

—, —. The preventing of a ball from entering the goal is a **save.**

—, —. A term denoting the action of charging or otherwise lawfully attempting to dispossess an opponent of the ball is **tackle.**

—, —. The act of putting the ball into play after it has been played over a touch-line is a **throw-in.**

—, —. To run round a player or otherwise avoid him is to **trick.**

—, player. The forwards constitute the **attack.**

—, —. Each of the two players whose position is between the half-backs and the goalkeeper is a **back,** or **full-back.**

—, —. The central player of the five forwards is the **centre-forward.**

—, —. Names given to the half-back who plays behind the centre-forward are **centre half-back** and **pivot.**

—, —. The name which is given collectively to the half-backs, full-backs, and goalkeeper is **defence.**

—, —. A name for the players, eleven in number, constituting a team is **eleven.**

—, —. The five front-line players, whose work is to attack their opponents' goal, are the **forwards.**

—, —. Each of the two players between the half-backs and the goalkeeper is a **full-back,** or **back.**

—, —. The player who defends the goal, and who is allowed to use his hands to do so, is the **goalkeeper.**

—, —. Each of the three players between the forwards and the full-backs is a **half-back.**

Association football, player. The player second from the left in the forward line, and the one second from the right respectively are the **inside left** and **inside right.**

—, —. The half-back on the left side of the field of play is the **left half-back.**

—, —. A name for the player on the extreme left of the forward line is **outside left.**

—, —. The player on the extreme right of the forward line is the **outside right.**

—, —. The half-back on the right side of the field of play is the **right half-back.**

—, —. A term used of both the outside-right and the outside-left is **wing forward.**

—, score. The number of goals scored at the end or at any period of a match is the **goal score.**

—. *See also under* **football,** *below.*

athletics. An item on a programme of sports or games is an **event.**

— A name for a meeting for athletic sports and games is **gymkhana.**

—. The name for an international athletic contest held every four years, a revival of the ancient Olympic Games, is **Olympic Games.**

—. To throw a heavy weight in competition with others in an endeavour to throw farthest is to **put the weight.**

—, Greek. A name for an athletic contest held at Corinth every other year, forming one of the four great festivals of ancient Greece, is **Isthmian Games.**

—, —. A name for the ancient Greek games held every two years in the wooded valley of Nemea is **Nemean Games.**

—, —. The greatest of the Panhellenic athletic contests, held every four years at Olympia in honour of Zeus, was the **Olympic Games.**

—, —. An athletic contest held in ancient Greece, in which there were five events—leaping, running, throwing the discus, wrestling, and hurling the javelin—was the **Pentathlon.**

—, —. One of the four great Panhellenic festivals of ancient Greece consisted of the **Pythian Games.**

—, —. A name for a covered portico, etc., used for exercising in by athletes of ancient Greece is **xystus.**

—, Irish. The name of a famous Irish meeting for organised sports, supposed to date back some three thousand years, is **Tailtin Games.**

—, Roman. The name given to games held at long intervals by the ancient Romans to mark the beginning of new eras in history was **secular games.**

—. *See also under* **race,** *below.*

baccarat. A variety of baccarat played with six packs of cards, in which the players in turn act as banker, and the others punt against him on the value of the cards dealt to them collectively, is **chemin de fer.**

backgammon. A triple game, if the opponent has not borne a man and still has one on the bar or on one of the first six points, is **backgammon.**

—. To remove a man from any point corresponding in number with the throw is to **bear.**

—. The name for an exposed piece is **blot.**

—. A double game, if the opponent has not borne a man, is a **gammon.**

—. A single game, if one's opponent has begun bearing, is a **hit.**

—. The name of an early and complicated form of backgammon is **tric-trac.**

ball game. A ball game played in courts of varying contour either with the open hand or with a small bat is **fives.**

—. The name given to a high-pitched ball in various games is **lob.**

—. A popular game in which the ball has to be thrown or batted into a net fixed on a pole is **net-ball** or **basket-ball.**

ball game. The name of a ball game played on horseback by four players who strike the ball with long-handled mallets is **polo.**

—. A kind of game played with a very large inflated leather-covered ball pushed about by teams is **push-ball.**

—. The name of an old English ball game in which the ball is thrown at a stool before which a player stands to intercept it, supposed to be the ancestor of cricket, is **stool-ball.**

—, American. The national ball game of America, resembling rounders, is **baseball.**

—, Canadian. The national ball game of Canada is **lacrosse.**

—, Spanish. The name of a ball game somewhat resembling fives, popular in Spain and Spanish America and originating with the Basques, is **pelota.**

—. *See all* **cricket, football,** *etc.*

baseball. The player in baseball corresponding to the wicket-keeper in cricket is the **catcher.**

—. Any one of the five fielders stationed near the striker is an **infielder.**

—. The three fielders farthest from the striker are the **outfielders.**

—. The player who delivers the ball to the batsman is the **pitcher.**

—. A complete circuit of the bases is a **run.**

billiards, ball. The ball at which the player aims is the **object ball.**

—, —. The ball that comes next into play is the **player.**

—, —. That one of the white balls marked with a black spot to distinguish it from the other is the **spot ball.**

—, cannon. A cannon in which the two balls are jammed at the mouth of a pocket is an **anchor cannon** or **cradle cannon.**

—, —. A name for a cannon made from grouped balls is **nursery cannon.**

—, kind. The name of a kind of game played with balls of various colours on a billiard table is **pool.**

—, —. The name given to a kind of pool game played on a billiard table with fifteen coloured balls set in a triangle and a cue ball is **pyramids.**

—, —. A form of billiards played with fifteen red pyramid balls, six differently coloured pool balls, and one white ball is **snooker** or **snooker pool.**

—, —. A game of billiards in which the spot stroke is not allowed more than twice in succession is **spot-barred.**

—, implement. A straight, tapering rod of wood used by a billiard player to strike the ball is a **cue.**

—, —. Cues longer than the ordinary are the **half-butt** and the **long-butt.**

—, —. A name for the short rest is **jigger.**

—, —. A shaft of wood with an X of wood or metal at the end, used as a support for the cue in certain shots, is the **rest.**

—, play. The number of points scored continuously by a player in a game of billiards is a **break.**

—, —. The support made by the left hand for the cue is the **bridge.**

—, —. Striking the ball low, without the sharp suddenness of the screw or the flowing push of the follow, is the **drag.**

—, —. To cause the ball to roll gently into the pocket is to **dribble.**

—, —. Striking the ball high with a following motion of the cue is the **follow.**

—, —. When the moving balls come lightly in contact they are said to **kiss.**

—, —. To keep the balls together for a series of cannons is to **nurse.**

—, —. The oblique curling tendency or motion when the ball is struck low, sharply, and suddenly is **screw.**

billiards, play. A spinning motion given to the ball by striking it on the side is **side.**

—, —. A form of rapid scoring in which the three balls are collected at the top of the table near the spot is **top-of-the-table play.**

—, stroke. A stroke made off the cushion to pocket the ball or to make a cannon is a **bricole.**

—, —. A stroke in which the player's ball strikes each of the two other balls in succession is a **cannon.**

—, —. A stroke in which the player's ball goes into a pocket without touching another ball is a **coup.**

—, —. A stroke that puts a ball into a pocket is a **hazard.**

—, —. A stroke that pockets the ball from an awkward position is a **jenny.**

—, —. A stroke in which the player's ball is pocketed off the object ball is a **losing hazard.**

—, —. A stroke with the cue held perpendicularly is a **massé.**

—, —. A stroke which is spoiled by the cue not striking the ball properly is a **miscue.**

—, —. A cannon stroke made when the balls are jammed in the pocket, by first playing on to a cushion, is a **pendulum stroke.**

—, —. A kind of stroke made by keeping the tip of the cue against the ball as the cue moves forward is a **push stroke.**

—, —. The stroke which pockets the red ball from the spot on which it is placed at the beginning of the game is the **spot stroke.**

—, —. A stroke with which a player forces the object ball into a pocket by striking it with his own ball is a **winning hazard.**

—, table. The part of the billiard table behind the line drawn twenty-nine inches from the face of the bottom cushion and parallel to it is the **balk.**

—, —. The line drawn across the table twenty-nine inches from the face of the bottom cushion and parallel to it is the **balk-line.**

—, —. The name of the semicircle of 11½ inches radius at the balk end of the table inside the balk-line is the **D.**

bird. Birds hunted for sport or food are **game.**

bluebottle. A name for the maggot of the bluebottle fly, used by anglers as bait, is **gentle.**

board game. The name given to a game played on a board marked with transverse lines by striking disks over its surface is **shovel-board.**

boat-race. A name for a meeting on a river or at the seaside at which there are sailing or rowing races is **regatta.**

bowls. The oblique roll given to a wood by flattening it on one side is the **bias.**

—. The name for the india-rubber or coco-nut fibre mat from which the bowler delivers his wood is **footer.**

—. Names for the small earthenware ball at which the players bowl are **jack** and **kitty.**

—. The name given to a set of players, and also to the spaces into which the bowling green is divided, is **rink.**

—. The captain or director of a side is the **skip.**

—. A name given to the balls used in bowls is **woods.**

boxing. To get away from one's opponent, especially when clinching, is to **break away.**

—. To grapple after exchanging blows is to **clinch.**

—. A boxer who fails to rise from the ground before ten seconds have expired is said to be **counted out.**

—. A name for a boxing match is **glove-fight.**

—. A name for fighting with the bare fists, as opposed to glove-fighting, is **pugilism.**

—. A name given to boxing and to the enclosure in which it takes place is the **ring.**

—. A supporter at the ring-side in a boxing match is a **second.**

—. A boxing match fought for exercise or exhibition is a **sparring match.**

boxing. A partner with whom a boxer practises when training is a **sparring partner.**

—. A short swinging upward blow to the opponent's chin is an **upper cut.**

—, ancient. A kind of boxing glove used by the Greeks and Romans was the **cestus.**

—, French. The name of a French method of fighting in which the fists, head and feet may all be used in attacking the opponent is **savate.**

—, Greek. A name for one of the athletic contests of ancient Greece, which combined boxing with wrestling, is **pancratium.**

—, weight. A boxer who weighs not more than 118 pounds is a **bantam-weight.**

—, —. A boxer who weighs not more than 126 pounds and above 118 pounds is a **feather-weight.**

—, —. A boxer who weighs not more than 112 pounds is a **fly-weight.**

—, —. A boxer weighing more than 175 pounds is a **heavy-weight.**

—, —. A boxer weighing not more than 175 pounds is a **light heavy-weight.**

—, —. A boxer who weighs not more than 140 pounds is a **light-weight.**

—, —. A boxer not weighing more than 160 pounds is a **middle-weight.**

—, —. A boxer who weighs not more than 147 pounds is a **welter-weight.**

bridge. Names of two varieties of bridge are **auction bridge** and **contract bridge.**

—. The number of tricks over six which a player engages to make is his **contract.**

—. In bridge and whist, partners when they give each other the chance to trump alternately are said to **cross ruff.**

—. The exposed hand of the partner of the player who has made the contract is **dummy.**

—. The name used for the gaining of every trick in a game is **grand slam.**

—. The name used for the gaining of every trick but one in a game is **little slam.**

—. A variety of bridge for two in which the declarer in a no-trump call undertakes to win not more than one trick is **misery bridge.**

—. A player who, owing to weakness in the suit named, disregards his partner's call by overcalling in another suit is said to **take out.**

—. A name for a hand that contains no card higher than a nine is **yarborough.**

bull-fighting. A small dart decorated with coloured paper which the bull-fighter sticks into the neck of the bull is a **banderilla.**

—. The chief performer at a Spanish bull-fight, who kills the bull with a sword, is the **matador.**

—. A mounted bull-fighter who provokes the bull with a lance in the first stage of a bull-fight is a **picador.**

—. The name given to one who takes part in a bull fight, other than a picador, is **torero.**

card. *See under* **card game** *and* **playing-card,** *below; and also under names of specific games.*

card game. The name of a gambling game, played with three packs of cards, in which one player takes the bank and the others punt against him in stakes up to the limit of the bank, on the value of the cards dealt to them, is **baccarat.**

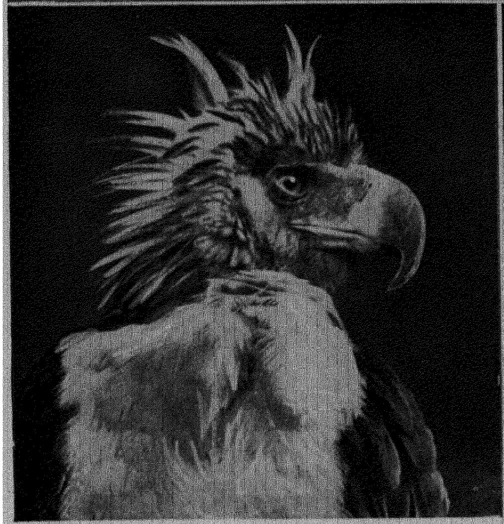
—. The name of a game for two players with two packs of cards from which all cards under seven are removed, the object of each player being to obtain certain combinations, to win aces and tens, and to take the last trick, is **bezique.**

—. A game for four players resembling whist, in which trumps are decided by the highest bid, and each player in turn looks on while his exposed hand is played by his partner, is **bridge.**

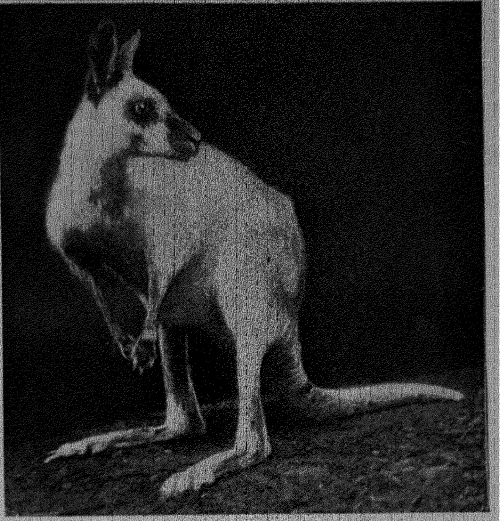
—. The name of a card game for two or four persons, the progress of which is marked by sticking pegs in a board, is **cribbage.**

(*Continued on page* 4953.)

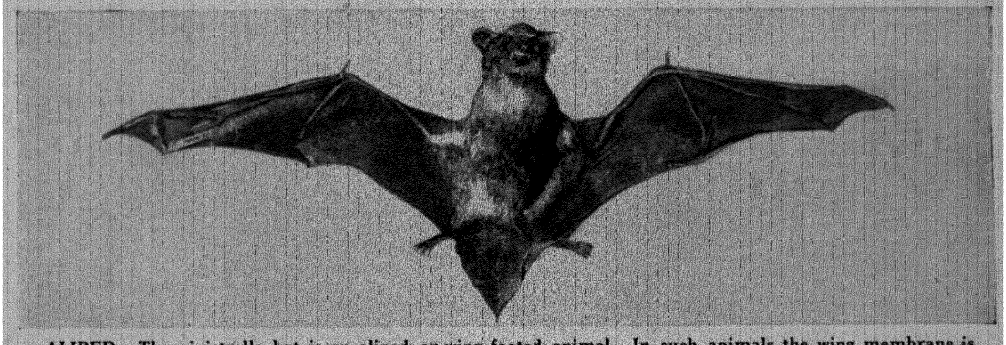
ZOOLOGICAL TERMS IN PICTURES



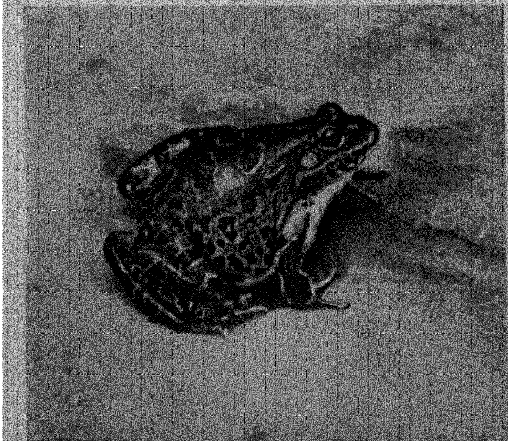
ADUNCATE.—The beak of a bird is described as aduncate when it is turned inwards. This monkey-eating eagle is an example of a bird with an aduncate beak.



ALBINO.—This great grey kangaroo is an albino, that is, an animal whose skin and hair lack the colouring matter found normally in others of the same species.

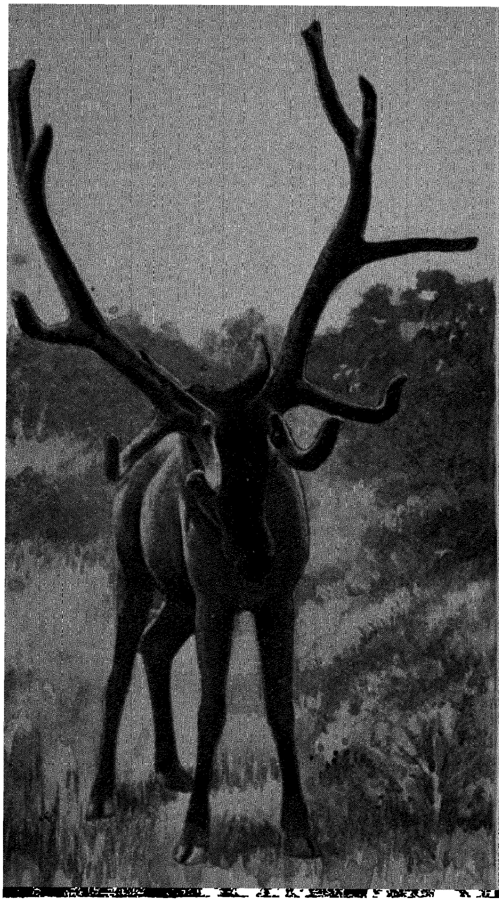


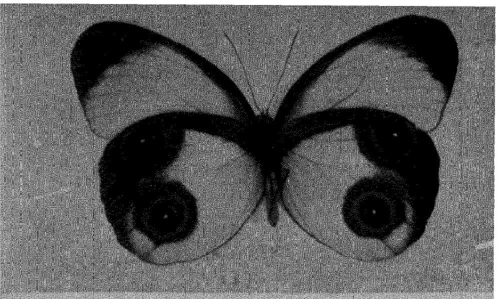
ALIPED.—The pipistrelle bat is an aliped, or wing-footed animal. In such animals the wing membrane is spread across the extremely long fingers, but the thumb is not included in the formation



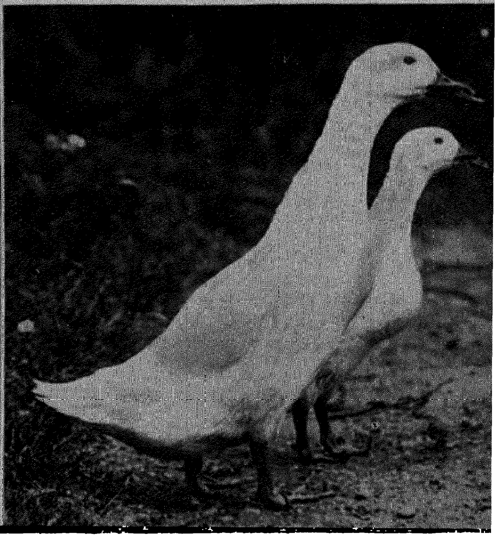
AMPHIBIAN.—An edible frog. It is an amphibian because it is able to live both on land and in water.

ANTHROPOID.—These orang-utans are anthropoid, or man-like, apes. Orang-utan means "man of the woods."



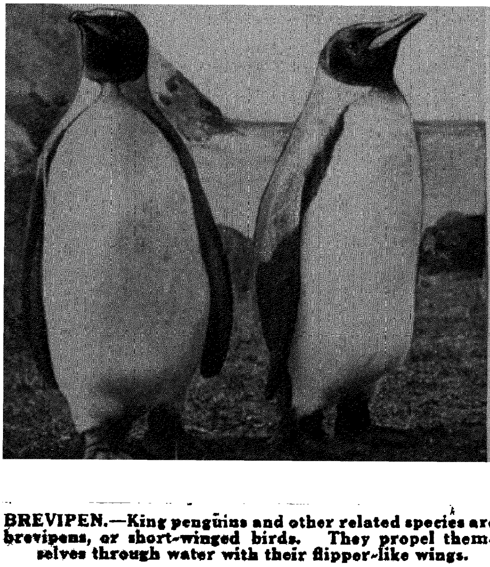


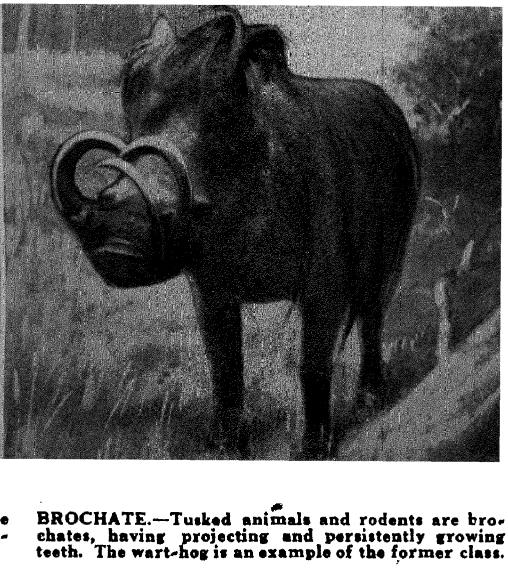
BIOCELLATE.— The wings of this butterfly a biocellate, that is, they have two eye-like marking



BEAM.—The main stem of a stag's horn is called the beam. It thickens and bears more branches with increasing years.

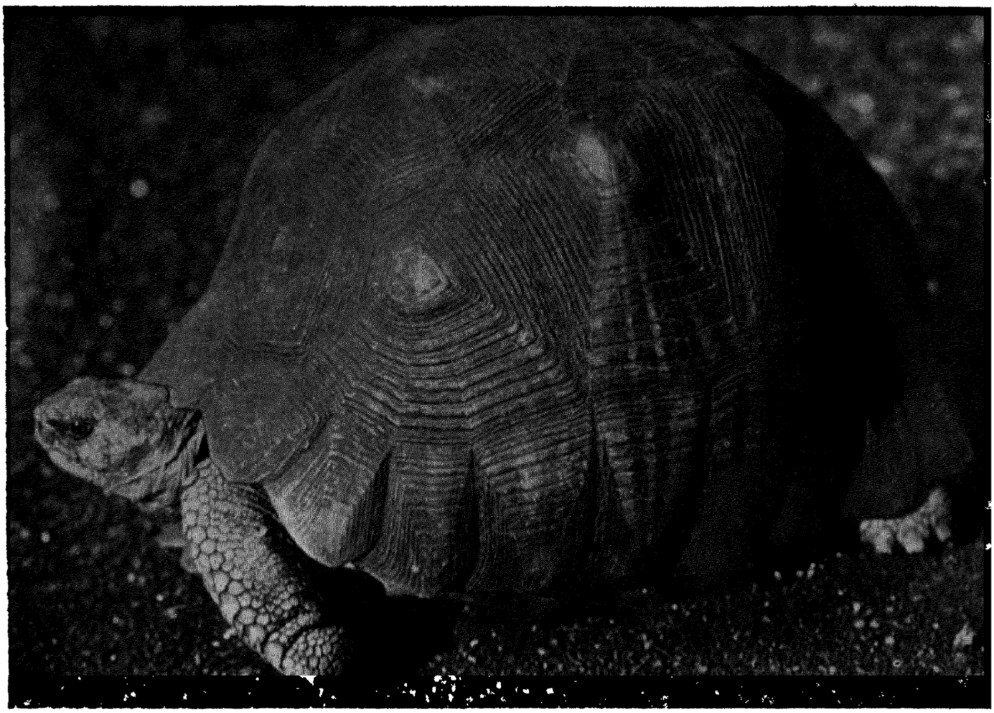
BREVIPED.—The canard cross-bred duck, illustrated in this picture, is an example of a breviped, that is, a short-footed bird.





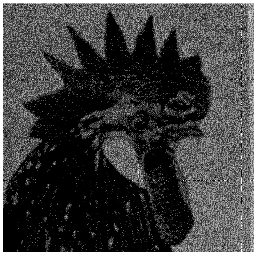
BREVIPEN.—King penguins and other related species are brevipens, or short-winged birds. They propel themselves through water with their flipper-like wings.

BROCHATE.—Tusked animals and rodents are brochates, having projecting and persistently growing teeth. The wart-hog is an example of the former class.

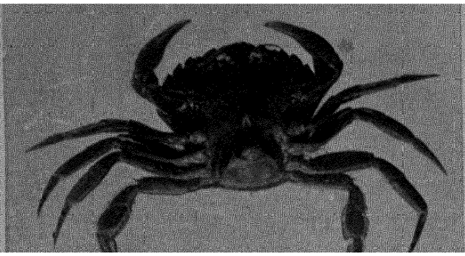


CARAPACE.—The carapace is a bony shield which protects soft-bodied creatures such as the tortoise, turtle, and crustaceans. The picture shows the radiated tortoise, with its symmetrically patterned carapace.

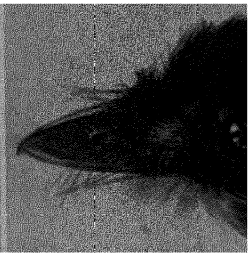
CARNIVORE.—The tiger is the largest and fiercest of the carnivores, or flesh-eating mammals. It is found only in Asia. The picture shows the Indian tiger ; an adult male may attain a length, including the tail, of ten feet.



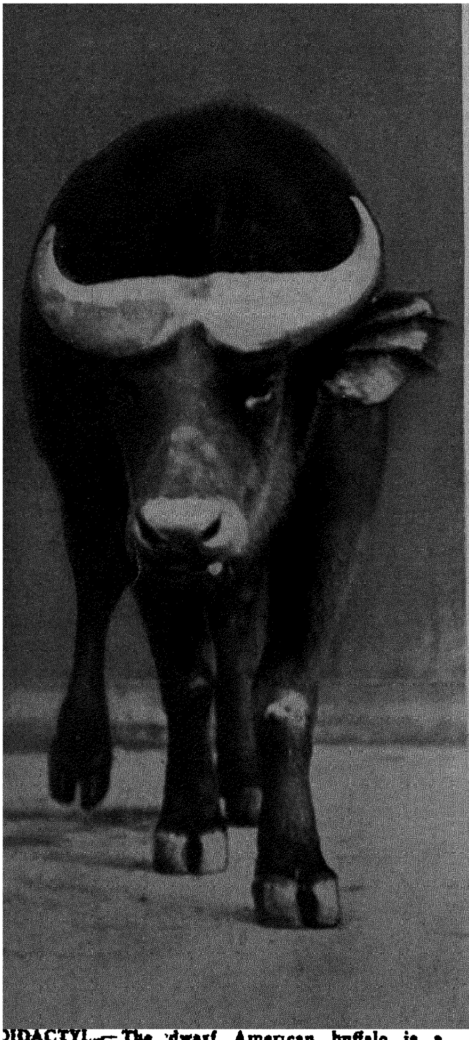
CARUNCLE.—A single-comb Ancona cockerel, showing the caruncle, or comb.



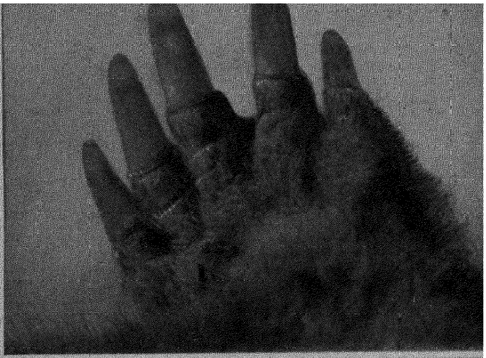
DECAPOD.—The crab is a decapod because it has five pairs of legs (including its pincers) Together with the lobster, it belongs to the order Decapoda.

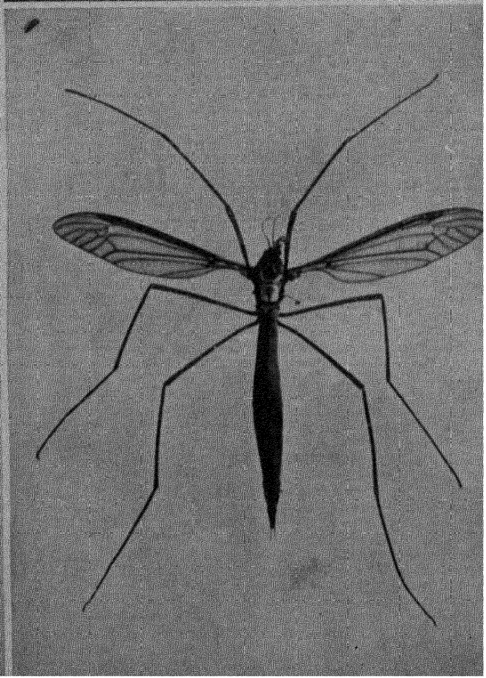


DEPRESSED.—This flycatcher has a depressed, or vertically-flattened, bill.



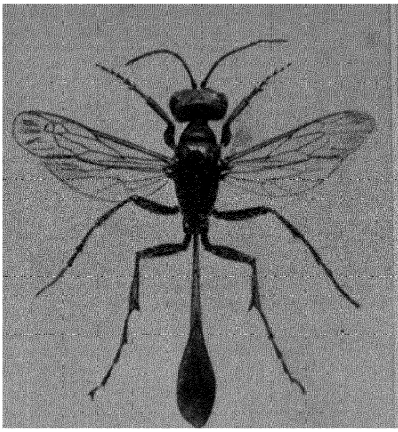
DIDACTYL.—The dwarf American buffalo is a didactyl because it has only two toes on each of its eet. Of the domesticated animals, the ox and the sheep are numbered among didactyls.



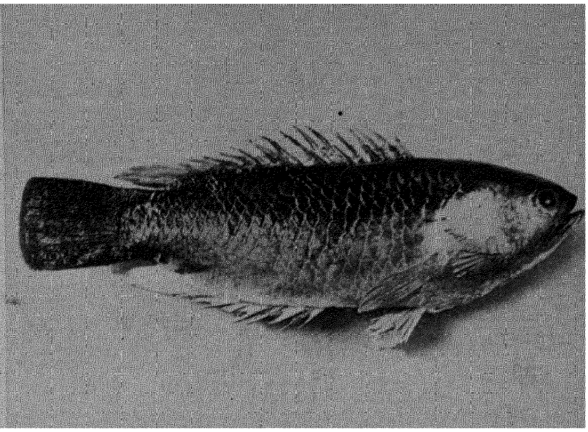


DIGIT (*Top*).—The fore-limb of the mole, which digs with its spade-like digits, or toes.

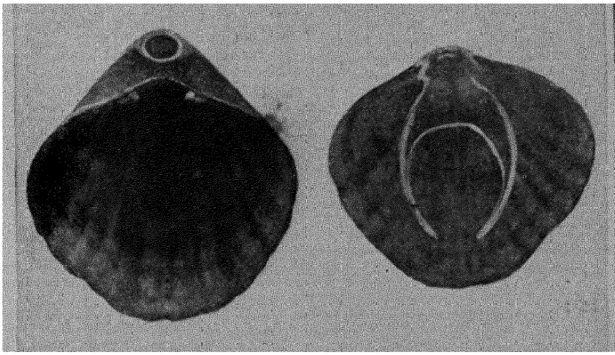
DIPTERAN (*Bottom*).—The daddy-long-legs, or crane-fly, is an example of a dipteran, or two-winged insect.



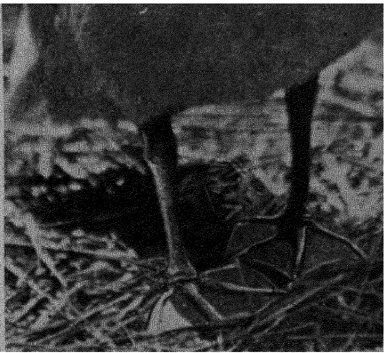
HYMENOPTERA. — The North American hunting wasp belongs to the order of Hymenoptera, or insects with membraneous wings.



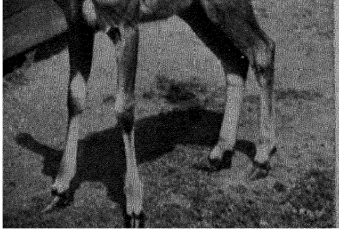
IMBRICATE —The scales of this fish are imbricate, that is to say, they are arranged in such a manner that they overlap one another like the tiles of a roof.



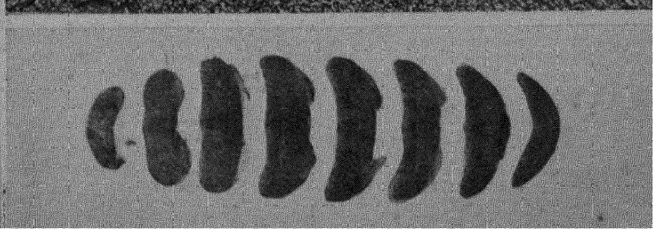
INARTICULATE.—Hingeless lamp-shell (Crania or Lingula) showing the separate unjointed halves of the shell. The scientific term Inarticulata has been given to such two-shelled molluscs because their valves are inarticulate, or not jointed.



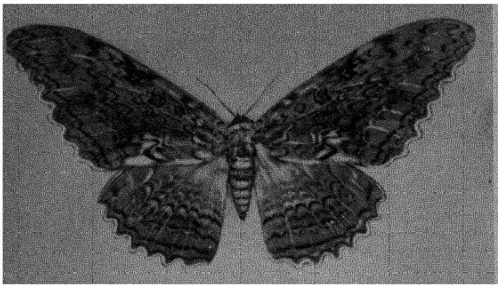
INTERDIGITAL.—In web-footed birds the toes, or digits, are connected together by a membrane lying between them. This membrane is described as interdigital.



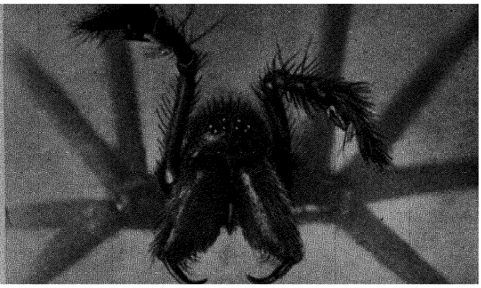
KUDU, or KOODOO.—This antelope belongs to East Africa, and is given the name of Kudu, or Koodoo.



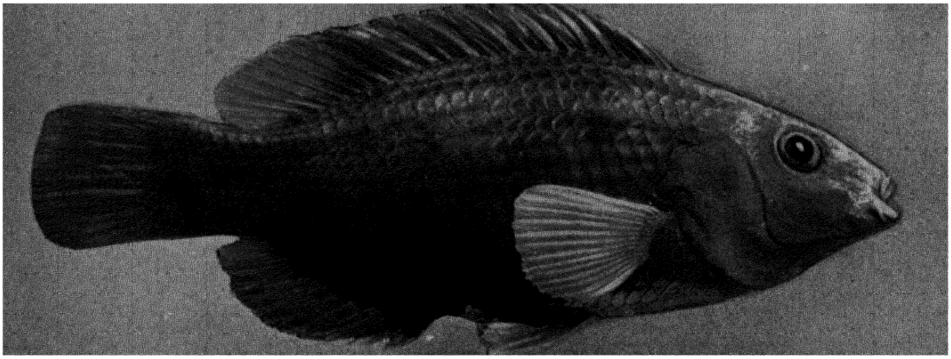
LEATHER-JACKET (*Top*) —The larva of the crane-fly, or daddy-long-legs. **MULTIVALVE** (*Bottom*).— The mail shell or chiton is called a multivalve because of its multiple shell-plates, or "valves."



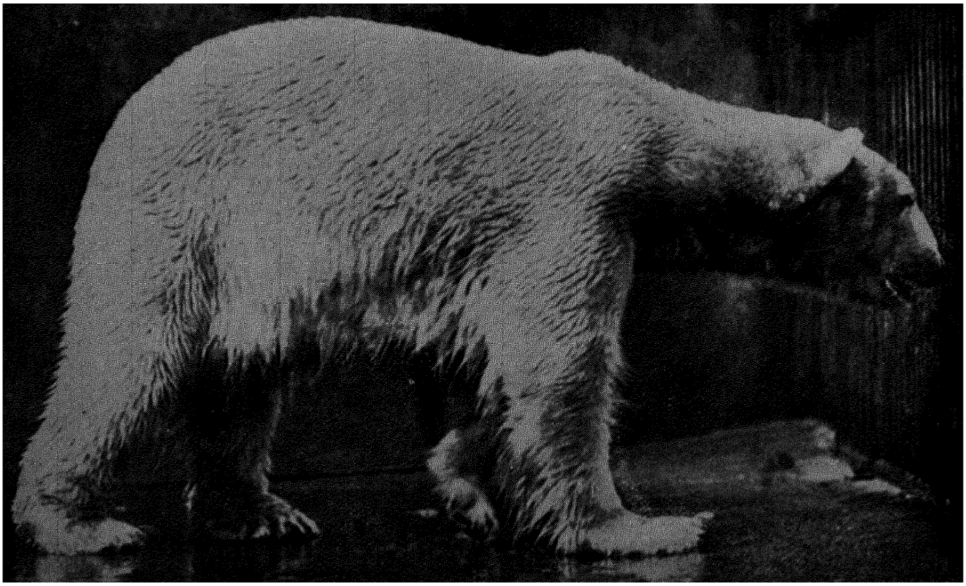
NOCTUID.—Night-flying moths, such as the South American species (Noctua Strix) here shown, are classed in the family Noctuidae, and described as noctuids.



OCELLUS.—Each of the eight simple eyes of the house spider is an ocellus. As the picture shows, the ocelli are arranged in two rows.



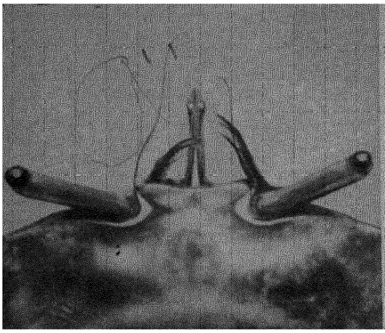
PECTORAL.—The paired fins near the front of the body in a fish, corresponding to the fore limbs in other animals, are pectoral fins. One of the pectorals of this fish can be seen close behind the gill cleft.



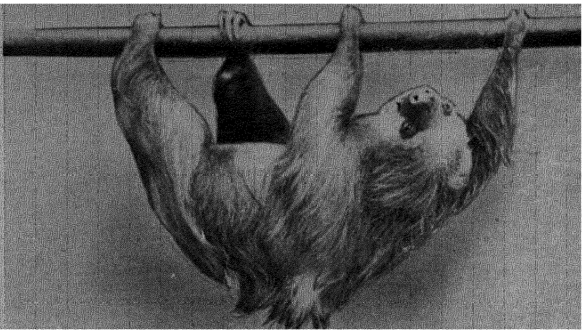
PLANTIGRADE.—Animals, such as the bears, which rest the sole of the foot on the ground in walking, are described as plantigrade, as distinguished from digitigrade animals, which walk on the tips of the toes.

RODENT.—Animals, such as rabbits, squirrels, porcupines, rats, and mice, having chisel-shaped incisor teeth with which they gnaw their food, are rodents. Typically vegetarian, they are distinguished from carnivorous mammals by having no canine teeth. This picture shows the collier squirrel, a Mexican rodent.

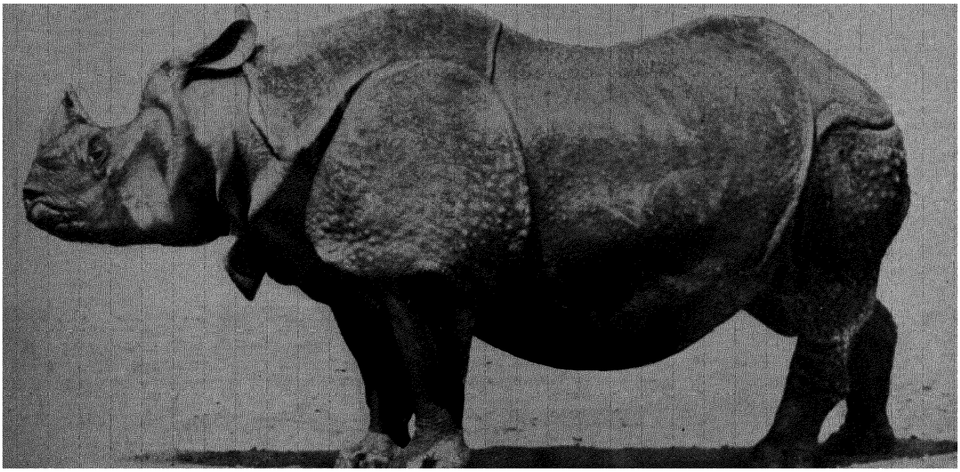
RUMINANT.—Ungulate mammals which chew the cud are ruminants. Grass, etc., eaten passes first into the rumen, thence to be brought up at leisure and chewed before passing into the three other stomachs of the animal. This picture shows the English wild bull, a typical ruminant.



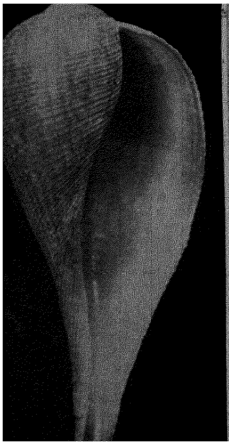
STALK-EYE.—The stalk-eyes of a crab, magnified. The stalks can be withdrawn into sockets in the carapace, or upper body shell.



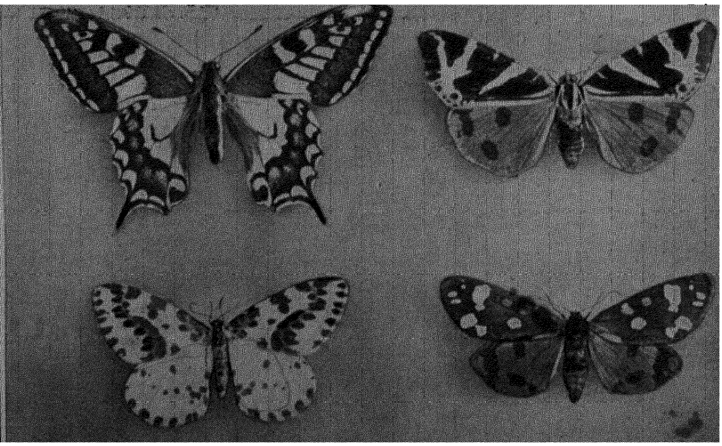
TALIPED.—The sloth (illustrated) climbs upside down along branches. Its feet are naturally twisted into an unusual position, and from this fact it is called a taliped.



UNGULATE.—All hoofed mammals belong to the order Ungulata and are described as ungulates This large group includes the ruminants, and the horse, pig, tapir, elephant, and rhinoceros. This is a picture of the Indian rhinoceros, which, like the other Asiatic species, has thick folds in its skin.



UNIVALVE.—This is a uni-valved shell, consisting



WARNING COLOURS.—In some insects the conspicuous wing-markings serve to warn off attack, or to divert it from the vital regions. This picture shows examples of warning coloration in a swallow-tail butterfly, a magpie moth, and two tiger moths.

(*Continued from page* 4944.)

card game. The name of a card game popular in America, played with all the cards between the ace and the seven removed, and usually with a joker in the pack, is **euchre.**

—. The name of a gambling card game, played by punters against a banker with a pack of fifty-two cards and some special apparatus, is **faro.**

—. The name for a game for a number of persons holding either three or five cards each, in which the method of playing resembles whist, is **loo.**

— A name for a South American gambling game resembling faro, but played with a pack of forty cards, is **monte.**

—. A name for a card game in which five cards are dealt to each player, the one engaging to take the highest number of tricks having the lead, is **nap.**

—. Names for a card game for three to eight players, played with a full pack and a lay-out from another pack, are **Newmarket** and **stops.**

— A name for a card game of Spanish origin played with forty cards, usually by three players, is **ombre.**

—. Names for each of several varieties of card game for one person only, in which the object is to arrange the cards according to some particular system, are **patience** and **solitaire.**

—. A name for a game of cards closely resembling bezique, no card below the nine being used, is **pinocle.**

—. A name for a card game for two players with a pack minus all cards below the seven is **piquet.**

—. A name for an American card game for two or more persons, in which the players bet on the value of the hand they hold, is **poker.**

—. A once popular game played with forty cards, the tens, nines and eights being taken out of the pack, was **quadrille.**

—. Names for a gambling card game played with six packs of cards on a table marked with red and black diamonds, in which the players punt against a banker, are **rouge-et-noir** and **trente-et-quarante.**

—. A game for any number of players with one or more packs of cards, the object of each player being to arrange the cards dealt to or bought by him in combinations and sequences, is **rummy.**

—. A variety of whist distinguished by a complicated system of bidding is **solo whist.**

—. A game for any number of people in which the players buy and sell cards for counters, the object being to obtain the highest number of counters, and cards of the greatest value, is **speculation.**

—. A name for a card game played by three to ten persons, the object of which is to make at least three out of five possible tricks, is **spoil-five.**

—. A card game played by two or more persons with an entire pack or two or more packs of cards, the object of the players being to make a total of twenty-one points, is **vingt-et-un.**

— The name of a game for four or sometimes three persons with the whole pack, in which trumps are decided by cutting, is **whist.**

—, term. A name for the dealer in certain card games, and also at a gaming-table for the person who has the bank, is **banker.**

—, —. To divide a pack of cards so as to determine who shall deal, etc., is to **cut.**

—, —. In bridge, whist, etc., an attempt to take a trick with a low card, although holding a higher one, is a **finesse.**

—, —. In some games the name given to the ace, king, queen, and knave of trumps is **honours.**

—, —. The name for a valuable card in ombre, quadrille, and other games, is **matador.**

card game. A name for a call in solo whist and some other games, by which the declarer undertakes to lose every trick, is **misère** or **misery.**

—, —. To stake against the bank in certain card games is to **punt.**

—, —. A sequence of four cards in piquet and other card games is **quart.**

—, —. A name for a sequence of five cards is **quint.**

—, —. In certain card games to fail to follow suit is to **revoke.**

—, —. A name for a series of three games between the same players at bridge, whist, etc., is **rubber.**

—, —. The act of trumping a lead in cards when a player cannot follow suit is a **ruff.**

—, —. Three or more playing cards of one suit following in numerical order are a **sequence.**

—, —. A single playing card of a suit in a hand is a **singleton.**

—, —. The winning of every trick in a card game is a **slam.**

—, —. A name for the ace of spades in the games of ombre and quadrille is **spadille.**

—, —. A name for a sequence of three cards is **tierce.**

—, —. The cards played, won, or taken in a round are a **trick.**

—, —. A playing card of a suit that is temporarily given a higher value for the purpose of a game is a **trump.**

—, —. In certain card games a term denoting the winning of all the tricks in a deal is **vole.**

chess. To move the king two squares to the right or left and bring the castle to the square the king has passed over is to **castle.**

—. The name used for the threatening of an opponent's king and also for exposure of the king to attack is **check.**

—. The name for the winning move is **checkmate** or **mate.**

—. The name for an opening in which a piece is sacrificed to gain certain ends is **gambit.**

—. The names of the pieces used are **king, queen, rook** or **castle, bishop, knight,** and **pawn.**

—. An arrangement of pieces on the chessboard in which a player has to decide the best moves, etc., to produce a certain result is a **problem.**

—. A position in which a player is unable to move any piece but the king, and the king, though not attacked, cannot be moved without being placed in check, is **stalemate.**

club, association. The association of small clubs and societies with a larger and more influential body is **affiliation.**

competition. The name given to a cup or trophy offered as a prize for the winning of a competition or a tournament is **challenge cup** or **challenge shield.**

—. The listed names of competitors in a race, etc., are **entries.**

—. A competition in which the conditions are arranged so that every competitor may have an equal chance is a **handicap competition.**

—. The round in a sports tournament immediately before the competition proper is the **preliminary round.**

—. In sports competitions the round in which competitors qualify to take their place in the competition proper is the **qualifying round.**

—. A section forming one of a number into which a tournament is subdivided is a **round.**

—. The competitor who comes next to the winner and takes second place is the **runner-up.**

—. A player in a game or other competition who neither owes nor receives points, etc., is a **scratch-player.**

—. A sports competition in which all players take part on level terms is a **scratch tournament.**

—. The name given to a contest of skill in which many persons compete is **tournament.**

condition. A name for the character of one's play is **form.**

—. An athlete who is out of condition through over-training is **stale.**

conjuring. Other names for that form of conjuring which relies on sleight of hand are **legerdemain** and **prestidigitation.**

counter. A name for an ivory or mother-of-pearl counter shaped like a fish, used in certain games, is **fish.**

cowboy. The name given to an exhibition of cowboy skill in lassoing wild cattle, etc., is **rodeo.**

cribbage. A name for the score when a player who holds the knave of the suit turned up scores one is **nob.**

cricket. A request for a ruling from the umpire while play is in progress is an **appeal.**

—. The name given to the mythical prize contended for at the test matches between England and Australia is the **ashes.**

—. To cheer ironically at a match is to **barrack.**

—. The player in charge of a team on the field is the **captain.**

—. An innings which the captain of the batting side terminates by declaring it closed is a **declared innings.**

—. Competing elevens when unable to complete their game are said to **draw.**

—. The players constituting a team are an **eleven.**

—. A member of the non-batting side in cricket is a **fielder** or **fieldsman.**

—. A side that goes in again after getting less than a prescribed number of runs is said to **follow on.**

—. The total number of spectators at a match is the **gate.**

—. The name for the turn of a player or a team to bat, the time occupied in batting, and the number of runs scored during that time, is **innings.**

—. The padded coverings for the legs of batsmen and wicket-keepers are **leg-guards** or **pads.**

—. The governing body of cricket is the **Marylebone Cricket Club,** usually abbreviated **M.C.C.**

—. A match played between representative elevens of two countries is a **test match.**

—. Each of the two officials in long white coats who, when appealed to, decide whether a batsman is in or out, call the overs, state if the pitch is fit or not for play, etc., is an **umpire.**

—, ancestor. The name of the old English ball-game which is supposed to be the ancestor of cricket is **stool-ball.**

—, ball. The leather casing of a cricket ball is its **cover.**

—, bat. The broad part of a bat, as distinguished from the handle, is the **blade.**

—, —. The flat part of the blade of a cricket bat with which the ball is struck is the **face.**

—, —. A name for a cricket bat is **willow.**

—, batting. Names given to steady batting with few runs scored are **barndooring, keeping end up,** and **stonewalling.**

—, —. When a batsman makes his first run he is said to **break his duck.**

—, —. A ball hit from off the ground or on to the ground at about the moment of its contact with the bat is a **bump-ball.**

—, —. A batsman who is not out at the end of the innings is said to **carry his bat.**

—, —. A batsman who plays all or nearly all balls is said to have a good **defence.**

—, —. If the batsman breaks the wicket while batting he is out **hit wicket.**

—, —. A batsman who with any part of his body stops a ball which would otherwise have pitched on his wicket is out **leg before wicket** or **l.b.w.**

—, —. The name for the act of a batsman in playing with the pads a ball not bowled in a direct line with the wicket is **pad-play.**

cricket, batting. When the bails are struck off while a batsman is trying to make a run he is **run out.**

—, —. A name for slow, careful batting is **safety play.**

—, —. The position of a batsman at the wicket when facing the bowler is **stance.**

—, —. A name given to the last few batsmen who do not score many runs is **tail.**

—, bowling. A name sometimes given to the bowlers is the **attack.**

—, —. A ball which the batsman should easily score from is a **bad-length ball.**

—, —. A ball which knocks off one or both bails from the stumps is a **bailer.**

—, —. The record of the individual progress of the bowlers is the **bowling analysis.**

—, —. Deviation of a ball from its path after striking the ground is **break.**

—, —. A name sometimes given to a ball that keeps low is **daisy-cutter.**

—, —. A term applied to a ball bowled or to the manner of bowling is **delivery.**

—, —. The passage of the ball between the wickets is the **flight.**

—, —. Variation of the height of the delivery of the ball is **flighting.**

—, —. A name for a ball pitched well up to the batsman and played before it touches the ground, and also for one that hits the wicket without touching the ground, is **full-pitch.**

—, —. A ball so bowled as to be difficult for the batsman to score from is a **good-length ball.**

—, —. A leg-break delivered with an off-break action, or vice versa, is a **googlie.**

—, —. A name used for a ball bowled along the ground is **grub.**

—, —. A ball bowled in such a way that the bat catches it before it has risen far from the ground is a **half-volley.**

—, —. When a bowler takes three wickets with three balls in succession he does the **hat trick.**

—, —. The name given to a kind of throw in bowling which is against the laws of cricket and is counted as a no-ball is **jerk.**

—, —. A ball which rises suddenly is said to **kick,** or **kick-up.**

—, —. A ball which turns from leg to off after striking the ground is a **leg break.**

—, —. The distance a ball travels from the hand of the bowler to its pitch is its **length.**

—, —. The name given to an underhand ball pitched well in the air is **lob.**

—, —. A name given to a ball pitched very short is **long-hop.**

—, —. A ball which is not sent down according to the rules is a **no-ball.**

—, —. A ball which turns from off to leg on striking the ground is an **off-break.**

—, —. The name given to the interval between the times when the umpire calls "over," and also to the number of balls delivered by one bowler during this period, is **over.**

—, —. Bowling in which the delivery is made with the arm above the shoulder is **overarm.**

—, —. The name given to the spot where a ball hits the ground when bowled is **pitch.**

—, —. A ball that pitches well in front of the batsman is a **short ball.**

—, —. The twist given to a ball by the fingers of the bowler is **spin.**

—, —. A delivery that alters its course during flight is a **swerver.**

—, —. Bowling in which delivery is made with the arm below the shoulder is **underarm.**

—, —. A ball bowled so as to fall on the stumps without bouncing is a **volley.**

—, —. A ball bowled to the side and out of the batsman's reach is a **wide.**

—, —. A term used of the spin given to a ball by a bowler is **work.**

cricket, bowling. A ball so bowled that it pitches within three or four feet of the wicket and immediately in front of the block is a **yorker.**

—, catch. A name given to an easy catch missed by a player is **bad drop.**

—, —. Names given to the failure of a fieldsman to take a catch are **chance** and **let-off.**

—, —. Colloquial names given to an easy catch are **dolly, gaper, sitter,** and **soft catch.**

—, duck. Another name for a duck is **blob.**

—, Eton. At Eton the name for a boy who plays cricket is **dry-bob.**

—, field. Anything which marks the limit of the playing field is a **boundary.**

—, —. A fieldsman who stands well back between point and the deeper slips is said to field in the **gully.**

—, —. The part of the ground immediately surrounding the pitch is the **infield.**

—, —. The name given to that part of the field on the wicket-keeper's left and square of the batsman is **leg.**

—, —. The part of the field to the bowler's left and the batsman's right is the **off,** or **off-side.**

—, —. The part of the field to the bowler's right and the batsman's left is the **on,** or **on-side.**

—, —. The name given to any position far away from the batsman is **outfield.**

—, —. The ground between the two wickets enclosed by imaginary lines connecting the return creases is the **pitch.**

—, —. The ground on the off side behind and within a short distance of the wicket is the **slips.**

—, fieldsman. To cover or support another fieldsman is to **back up.**

—, —. An off-side fieldsman standing to the right of point and somewhat deeper is **cover-point.**

—, —. The fieldsman standing almost directly behind the square-leg umpire and well out towards the boundary is **deep square-leg.**

—, —. A fieldsman whose position is wide of cover-point and on his right-hand side is **extra cover.**

—, —. The fieldsman standing on the off-side nearest the wicket-keeper and behind the wicket is **first slip.**

—, —. An on-side fieldsman standing far out towards the boundary and behind the batsman's wicket is **long-leg.**

—, —. A fieldsman who stands far out towards the boundary to the left of the bowler is **long-off.**

—, —. A fieldsman who stands far out towards the boundary to the right of the bowler is **long-on.**

—, —. A fieldsman behind the wicket-keeper who has to stop balls that pass the wicket-keeper is the **long-stop.**

—, —. The name for the off-side fieldsman who stands about twenty yards or more to the left of the bowler is **mid-off.**

—, —. The name for the fieldsman who stands about twenty yards or more to the right of the bowler is **mid-on.**

—, —. The name for the fieldsman on the on-side of the wicket standing about midway between short-leg and mid-on is **mid-wicket.**

—, —. A player stationed in the outfield is an **outfielder.**

—, —. The name for a fieldsman standing opposite the stumps at the batsman's end and on the off-side of the field is **point.**

—, —. The fieldsman nearest slip on the right-hand side is **second slip.**

—, —. The fieldsman who stands to the left of the wicket-keeper and to the right of the square-leg umpire is **short leg.**

—, —. The name for a mid-on standing close to the batsman is **silly mid-on.**

—, —. The name for a point who stands close to the batsman is **silly point.**

cricket, fieldsman. A fieldsman some distance to the left of the wicket-keeper and nearly opposite the wicket is **square-leg.**

—, —. The fieldsman between point and the slips, standing deeper than point, is **third man.**

—, —. The fieldsman on the right of second slip is **third slip.**

—, —. The player who stands behind the batsman's wicket, and whose work is to prevent byes and to stump or catch out the batsmen, is the **wicket-keeper.**

—, line. The white line marked four feet from the wicket in a line with the stumps is the **batting crease** or **popping crease.**

—, —. The name given to the place within the popping crease where the batsman grounds his bat is **block.**

—, —. The white line drawn in a line with the stumps, eight feet eight inches long and with a short line extending backwards at each end is the **bowling crease.**

—, —. The short line at each end of the bowling crease and at right angles to it is the **return crease.**

—, over. An over from which no run is scored is a **maiden over.**

—, score. When a batsman hits the ball up to the fence or rope marking the limits of the playing field he scores usually four runs—six, if the ball drops over the boundary without bouncing—and is said to score a **boundary.**

—, —. The name for a run or runs scored without the ball having been struck by the bat or any part of the person is **bye.**

—, —. A score of a hundred runs is a **century.**

—, —. Names for a score of nothing are **duck, duck's egg,** and **blob.**

—, —. A run not scored off the bat is an **extra.**

—, —. A run scored as the result of the ball when bowled hitting the batsman's leg is a **leg-bye.**

—, —. The unit of scoring in cricket is the **run.**

—, —. The board on which the scores and general progress of the game are marked, so that these can be seen from a distance, is the **telegraph.**

—, stroke. A name given to an ill-timed stroke made wildly at the ball is **blind stroke.**

—, —. The name given to a stroke in a downward direction which sends the ball past point is **cut.**

—, —. A follow-through stroke which sends the ball back past the bowler is a **drive.**

—, —. The continuation of the stroke after the ball has been hit is the **follow through.**

—, —. A stroke in which an effort is made by using force to score from a ball not generally considered a scoring ball is a **forcing stroke.**

—, —. A stroke with the bat's face turned slantwise to the ball is a **glance.**

—, —. A stroke in which the ball is sent along the ground is a **ground stroke.**

—, —. A stroke by a batsman playing half-forward at a ball instead of full-forward as he had originally intended is a **half-cock stroke.**

—, —. To play vigorous forcing strokes in an endeavour to score rapidly is to **hit out.**

—, —. A leg stroke played to a rising ball with the bat facing almost downwards and raised about shoulder high is a **hook-stroke.**

—, —. The name given to a stroke on the off-side of the wicket, made as the ball passes or after it has just passed the stumps, is **late cut.**

—, —. A stroke to leg made by glancing—not hitting—the ball past and not very wide of the wicket-keeper is a **leg-glance** or **leg-glide.**

—, —. A hit in the direction of long-leg or square-leg is a **leg hit.**

—, —. To play a ball pitched on the off-side to the on-side is to **pull.**

—, —. A stroke in which the ball is pushed to a predetermined point between the fieldsmen is a **push.**

cricket, stroke. A ball which glances off the edge of the bat is a **snick.**

—, —. An off-side stroke which sends the ball more or less at right angles to the wicket is a **square cut.**

—, stumps. Each of the two cross-pieces laid on the top of the stumps is a **bail.**

—, —. A wicket from which one or both bails have been dislodged is a **broken wicket.**

—, —. A name for the three stumps set in the ground with bails affixed is **wicket.**

—, wicket. A wicket which has been sheltered from rain prior to play is a **covered wicket.**

—, —. A wicket that is breaking up and growing difficult for the batsmen is a **crumbling wicket.**

—, —. A wicket softened by rain and on which the ball rises little and breaks slowly is a **dead wicket.**

—, —. A name given to a good wicket which favours the batsmen is **easy wicket.**

—, —. A hard, dry wicket from which the ball comes at a quick pace is a **fast wicket.**

—, —. A hard, dry, crumbly wicket which causes the ball to rise dangerously is a **fiery wicket.**

—, —. A wicket which is drying and is tending to favour the batsman more than the bowlers is an **improving wicket** or **recovering wicket.**

—, —. A wicket which has become soft with rain is a **soft wicket.**

—, wicket-keeper. Names given to the failure of a wicket-keeper to take an opportunity of stumping a batsman are **chance** and **let-off.**

—, —. When the wicket-keeper puts out a batsman by dislodging a bail or both bails while he is out of his crease in playing the ball the batsman is **stumped.**

croquet. To drive away an opponent's ball by striking one's own ball previously placed in contact with it is to **croquet.**

—. A stroke made by striking downwards on the ball is a **jump stroke.**

—. A name for an obsolete game resembling croquet, popular in the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries, is **pall-mall.**

—. To hit a partner's or opponent's ball through the hoops with a view to pegging it out is to **peel.**

—. To complete the play of a ball by striking the last peg or post with it is to **peg out.**

—. The ball that comes next into play is the **player.**

—. A term used when the ball is hit with a good deal of follow is **rolling croquet.**

—. A name given to croquet in the U.S.A. is **roque.**

—. To make one's ball strike that of an opponent in the game of croquet is to **roquet.**

—. A ball which has run all the hoops and is ready for the winning peg is a **rover.**

—. To roquet a ball so hard that it rolls a considerable distance in the required direction is to **rush.**

—. A stroke made with a short, sharp tap is a **stop stroke.**

—. A stroke that drives a ball forward so as to touch another ball without shifting it is a **take-off.**

curling. A name for a curling match is **bonspiel.**

—. A stone that fails to cross the hog-score is a **hog.**

—. A line on the rink which has to be crossed is the **hog-score.**

—. The ring surrounding the tee is the **house.**

—. A name for a stone which strikes another and drives it nearer the tee is **outwick.**

— The captain or director of the side is the **skip.**

—. A name for sweeping the ice-dust out of the way of the stone is **sooping.**

—. The flattened, polished disk fitted with a handle used in curling is the **stone.**

—. The fixed mark, in the centre of the house or ring, at which the curler aims his stone is the **tee.**

decision, request. In certain games a request for a ruling or decision from the referee, umpire, or judge on a point arising during the game is an **appeal.**

deer. A tract of wild land reserved for deer-stalking is a **deer-forest.**

—. Hunting deer by stealing up to them under cover is **deer-stalking.**

—. The name used in Scotland for a guide and assistant to deer-stalkers and anglers is **gillie.**

—. A name for the track of a deer, especially that made by its hoofs, is **slot.**

—. *See also under* **stag-hunting,** *below.*

dice. A name for a die with three spots, and for a throw of three, is **trey.**

dirt-track. *See under* **motor-cycle racing,** *below.*

discus. The name for a discus thrower among the ancient Greeks was **discobolus.**

diving. A straight dive head first is a **header.**

—. The name for a standing dive head first from a steady take-off is **plunge.**

—. A dive from a height with the arms stretched out at right angles to the body is a **swallow dive.**

dog, sporting. The name of a slenderly built dog, hunting by sight and not by scent, used for coursing and racing, is **greyhound.**

—. The name of a breed of dog trained to stand stock-still when it observes game and to point its head at the game is **pointer.**

— The name of a breed of dog trained to hunt out wounded or dead game and bring it back is **retriever.**

—. The name of a breed of sporting dog trained, like pointers, to stand still and point in the direction of the game is **setter.**

—. The name of a kind of game dog which can be trained to retrieve game from water is **spaniel.**

—. The name of a small kind of racing dog much used for rabbit-coursing, a cross between a greyhound and a terrier, is **whippet.**

—. *See also under* **hound,** *below.*

dominoes. Names for the pieces used in playing dominoes are **cards** and **stones.**

—. The name of a variety of dominoes in which the sum of the spots on adjacent ends of pieces must always amount to seven is **matador.**

—. The name of a variety of dominoes in which scoring is by fives or multiples of five is **muggins.**

draughts. A name given to draughts in the United States is **checkers.**

—. To remove an opponent's piece from the board as a forfeit for his failure to notice that a piece might be taken with it is to **huff.**

driving. The name for the shades used to prevent horses from seeing sideways is **blinkers.**

—. Two horses harnessed side by side are in **double harness.**

—. To drive four horses harnessed in pairs, one pair behind the other, is to drive **four-in-hand.**

—. A name for a driver, especially a fast driver, is **jehu.**

—. The name given to the front pair of horses in driving four-in-hand is **leaders.**

—. The name for the form of driving in which two horses are harnessed one in front of the other is **tandem.**

—. The name given to the back pair of. horses in driving four-in-hand is **wheelers.**

—. A name for a driver of horses is **whip.**

duck. A sheet of sheltered water from which are cut gradually narrowing channels, each ending in a tail covered by netting on loops, is a **decoy.**

—. An imitation or tame duck used to entice wild fowl is a **decoy-duck** or **decoy.**

elephant. The name used for an enclosure for capturing wild elephants is, in Ceylon, **corral,** and in India, **keddah.**

—. An elephant trap consisting of a deep hole covered over to look like solid ground is a **pitfall.**

entertainment, open-air. A French name used for an entertainment or festival in the open air is **fête champêtre.**

euchre. A name for three-handed euchre is **cut-throat euchre.**

—. The name for the knave of the suit of the same colour as trumps is **left bower.**

—. A name for euchre played with a joker is **rail-road euchre.**

—. The name for the knave of trumps is **right bower.**

falconry. The nest of a hawk is its **aerie** or **eyry.**

—. A piece of leather used to secure a hawk's wing is a **brail.**

—. The name for the ordinary flight of a hawk, about one hundred and twenty yards, is **career.**

—. Two hawks used for flying together are a **cast.**

—. A hawk taken from the nest in an unfledged state is an **eyas.**

—. Another name for falconry is **hawking.**

—. The name of a short strap fastened round each of the legs of a hawk is **jess.**

—. The name of the leathern thong passed through swivels on the jesses, used to secure a hawk, is **leash.**

—. The name for a decoy made to resemble a bird, with which the hawk is enticed back to the falconer's wrist, is **lure.**

—. A hawk when moulting is said to **mew.**

—. The game at which hawks are flown is the **quarry.**

—. A name used for the male of various species of falcon is **tiercel.**

fencing. A feint accompanied by a stamp of the foot is an **appel.**

—. An obsolete kind of fencing with a cudgel fitted with a basket-hilt was **cudgel-play.**

—. The command to cross swords or foils is the **engage.**

—. In fencing with the sabre a defence made by raising the hilt to the level of the head and dropping the point to the level of the opponent's right hip is a **hanging guard.**

—. An attack made with a forward stride is a **lunge.**

—. The name for the warding off or turning aside of a blow is **parry.**

—. When the finger-nails are facing downwards the sword hand is in **pronation.**

—. The position of the body or of a weapon after a thrust is the **recover.**

—. A name for a second thrust made while still on the lunge is **remise.**

—. A name for the redoubling of the attack is **reprise.**

—. A quick lunge or thrust in return after a successful parry is a **riposte.**

—. When the finger-nails are facing upwards the sword hand is in **supination.**

—. A term used for a series of rapid attacks and parries in which neither fencer scores a point, and also for a parry followed immediately by a riposte, is **tac-au-tac.**

— An attack made with the point of the weapon is a **thrust.**

—. A side movement to avoid an opponent's thrust is a **volt.**

—, position. The name of the fourth parry in fencing is **carte** or **quarte.**

—, —. The name of the eighth parry in fencing is **octave.**

—, —. The name of the first of the eight parries is **prime.**

—, —. The name of the fifth parry in fencing is **quinte.**

—, —. The name of the second parry in fencing is **seconde.**

—, —. The name of the seventh parry in fencing is **septime.**

—, —. The name of the sixth parry in fencing is **sixte.**

—, —. The name for the third parry in fencing is **tierce.**

fencing, protection. A protection for the arm used by fencers is a **bracer.**

—. A kind of mask worn by fencers is a **face-guard.**

—. A name given to the padded leather breast-plate worn by fencers is **plastron.**

—, weapon. A sword used in fencing, heavier than the fencing sabre, is the **broadsword.**

—, —. The name of a sharp-pointed sword, used in fencing, having a bowl-shaped guard and no cutting edge, is **épée.**

—, —. The weak part of a foil or sword-blade, between the middle and the point, is the **foible.**

—, —. A thin blunt-edged sword with a button on the end, used in fencing, is a **foil.**

—, —. The strong part of a foil or sword blade, between the middle and the hilt, is the **forte.**

—, —. The name of a one-edged sword used in fencing is **sabre.**

—, —. The name of a round ash stick with a basket-work hilt used in fencing is **single-stick.**

football. To cheer ironically at a match is to **barrack.**

—. The entrance of a team into a round without having been required to take part in the previous round is a **bye.**

—. When both teams fail to score, or when both score the same number of goals or tries, it is a **drawn game.**

—. The total number of spectators at a match is the **gate.**

—. The interval between the first and second halves of a match is **half time.**

—. To be told by the referee to leave the field for gross misconduct is to be **ordered off.**

—. The chief official in charge of a game is **the referee.**

—, ball. The leather cover of a football is the **case.**

—, —. The air pump used for blowing up a football bladder is the **inflator.**

—, —. The name given to the leather cord used to fasten the opening of the cover of a football is **lace.**

—, boots. The name given to round pieces of leather fastened to the soles of football boots to prevent slipping is **studs,** and to flat strips of leather, **bars.**

—, Eton. A scrimmage or mêlée in the Eton game of football is a **bully.**

—, —. At Eton a goal in the wall game is called a **calx.**

—, —. A football term used at Eton College when a ball goes behind from the charge and is touched by one of the attacking side is **rouge.**

—, —. Two peculiar forms of football played at Eton are the **wall game** played against a wall bordering the college playing-field, and the **field game.**

—, field. The line drawn across the width of the field equally distant from each goal is the **centre line.**

—, —. The part of a football field enclosed within goal-lines and touch-lines is the **field of play.**

—, —. The direction or quarter towards the opponents' goal is **forward.**

—, —. The boundary line marked at each end of the field of play is the **goal-line.**

—, —. The whole playing area is the **pitch.**

—, —. The part of a football ground outside the touch lines is **touch.**

—, —. Lines which extend along the length of a football playing pitch and connect the goal lines and the centre line are **touch-lines.**

—, goal posts. The wooden bar connecting and placed across the goal posts is the **cross-bar.**

—, —. The goal posts are the **uprights.**

—, kick. The kick which starts or restarts a game is a **kick-off.**

—, play. To assist another player in defence or attack is to **back up.**

—, —. The ball when outside the marked pitch, or when a stoppage of the game occurs for another reason, is **dead.**

—, —. To resist an attack is to **defend.**

football, play. To avoid an opponent is to **dodge.**

—, —. To pretend to do one thing and really do another in order to deceive an opponent is to **feint.**

—, —. The name for rough or illegal play is **foul play.**

—, —. To kick an opponent is to **hack.**

—, —. Whenever a ball can legally be played it is **in play.**

—, —. To prevent a pass reaching the player it is intended for is to **intercept.**

—, —. To shadow an opponent so as to prevent him from operating freely is to **mark.**

—, —. The name for a position on the field of play in which a player is not allowed to play the ball is **off-side.**

—, —. When a player can take part in the play without fear of being penalized for being off-side he is **on-side.**

—, —. To draw opposing players away from a player of one's own side to whom it is intended to make a pass is to make an **opening.**

—, —. A ball when it cannot legally be played is **out of play.**

—, —. To attack strongly is to **press.**

—, —. The use of undue violence during a game is **rough play.**

—, —. A slow, generally harmless, shot at goal is a **soft shot.**

—, —. To throw a player by the illegal use of the legs or feet is to **trip.**

—. *See also under* **Association football,** *above, and* **Rugby football,** *below.*

forfeit. The receptacle for stakes or forfeits in card and other games is the **pool.**

fox-hunting. The hunting of young foxes is **cub-hunting.**

—. A hunt in which an artificial scent is used, generally a bag of aniseed which is dragged over the ground, is a **drag-hunt.**

—. The name given to a hole frequented by a fox is **earth.**

—. The man who is employed to block the earths and drains frequented by foxes is the **earth-stopper.**

—. The work performed by the earth-stopper in the morning, of blocking the earths and drains frequented by foxes, is **putting to.**

—. The work performed by the earth-stopper during the night, of blocking the earths and drains to which foxes resort, is **stopping out.**

—. The shout given when the fox is seen to break cover is **view-hallo.**

—. *See also under* **hunting,** *below.*

gambling. The name given to the amount of money in front of the keeper of a gaming table is **bank.**

—. The name given to one who presides and collects stakes and pays out winnings at a gaming-table is **croupier.**

—. The name of a gambling game played on a table with a revolving centre on which a ball is made to roll in the opposite direction is **roulette.**

—. *See also under* **card game,** *above.*

game. A game in which a double cone is whirled on a string fastened to two sticks, tossed into the air, and caught again on the string, is **diabolo.**

—. The name of a game of chance played with ninety numbered disks and with cards divided into squares is **lotto.**

—. A game played between individual players or a number of players combined in teams is a **match.**

—, Chinese. The name of a Chinese game for four players, played with 144 pieces called tiles, is **mah-jongg.**

—, Cornish. An old Cornish game in which each side tried to throw or carry a ball into the other side's goal is **hurling.**

—, gambling. *See under* **gambling,** *above.*

game, Greek. A game popular among the ancient Greeks, consisting in its original form of throwing the wine left in a drinking-cup at a mark, was **cottabus.**

—, guessing. A name for an Italian guessing game, in which the number of fingers held out by a player has to be stated is **mora.**

—, indecisive. A game in which both teams, sides, or players secure an equal number of points, or in which both fail to score, is a **drawn game.**

—, Irish. An Irish game somewhat resembling hockey is **hurley.**

—, Japanese. A Japanese game played on a squared board with black and white pieces is **go bang.**

—, North Country. The name of a north country game resembling trap-ball is **knurr and spell.**

—, player. One who plays a game or takes part in a sport as a pastime and not with the object of making money is an **amateur.**

—, —. A player who plays for money or who makes his living by playing is a **professional.**

—, series. A series of (usually) three games or matches, or the winning of a majority of such games, is a **rubber.**

—, war. The name of a German war game for training Army officers in tactics and strategy is **kriegspiel.**

—, winning. The deciding game in a series of three, five, etc., is the **rubber.**

game (birds, etc.). The name given to the driving of game by beaters towards the waiting sportsmen, and also to such a shooting party, is **battue.**

—. The name for a person who beats bushes and undergrowth to make pheasants, partridges, and other game come out for sportsmen to shoot is **beater.**

—. The period of the year during which it is unlawful to kill certain game is the **close-time.**

—. A thicket or undergrowth sheltering game is a **cover.**

—. A shelter or reserve for game is a **covert.**

—. To chase or frighten game from over a wide area into a small space is to **drive.**

—. Game birds are called collectively **feathered game.**

—. To cause a covey of game birds to rise up at once is to **flush.**

—. The laws regulating the preservation of game and fixing the seasons when game may be killed are the **game laws.**

—. Running game such as hares, rabbits, etc., as distinct from birds is **ground game.**

gaming. *See under* **gambling,** *above.*

gladiator. The round or oval building with tiers of seats in which the gladiatorial combats took place was the **amphitheatre.**

—. The sand-strewn floor of the amphitheatre was the **arena.**

—. The name given in ancient Rome to one who fought in the arena armed only with a net, a trident, and a dagger was **retiarius.**

golf. The name given to one who carries a golfer's clubs is **caddie.**

—. The name given to the implement used by the golfer to strike the ball is **club.**

—. A caddie who goes ahead of the others to keep an eye on the balls is a **fore-caddie.**

—. The name of a nervous affection of the back muscles of the upper arm from which golfers sometimes suffer is **golf-arm.**

—. The name given to golf in which a hole is won by the player making it in the least number of strokes is **match play.**

—. The name given to golf in which the strokes made in completing a round are totalled, the winner being the player making the fewest total strokes, is **medal play.**

—, ball. The distance travelled by a ball when struck is the **carry.**

—, —. Names given to an old type of ball made of solid gutta-percha are **gutty ball** and **hard ball.**

golf, ball. The position of the ball on ground sloping downwards towards the hole is a **hanging lie.**

—, —. The position (good or bad) of a ball in play is its **lie.**

—, —. The distance a ball traverses after reaching the ground is its **run.**

—, club. A wooden club with a short shaft and the face lofted or inclined so that the ball can be raised in striking, at one time used for approaching, is a **baffy** or **baffy-spoon.**

—, —. A club with a wooden head faced with brass sometimes used instead of a heavy iron when the ball has a good lie is a **brassy.**

—, —. A name given to a brassy or driver with a convex face is **bulger.**

—, —. The name given to an iron-headed club sometimes used for driving off the tee as well as between the greens is **cleek.**

—, —. The name given to a wooden-headed club used for driving is **driver.**

—, —. The name given to a slightly lofted iron-headed club used for driving either from the tee or in a strong wind is **driving iron.**

—, —. The name of a slightly lofted iron club used sometimes in place of a cleek is **driving mashie.**

—, —. A name for a club with an iron head is **iron.**

—, —. The name of a short iron-headed club coming between a mid-iron and a mashie is **jigger.**

—, —. Names for an iron club used for lofting are **lofter** and **lofting iron.**

—, —. A type of iron club with a straight sole and face, used for short approach shots, is a **mashie.**

—, —. The name for an iron club used for strokes that need less lofting than those played with the lofter is **mid-iron.**

—, —. A club with a small cup-like head used for smashing a ball out of a difficult lie is a **niblick.**

—, —. A name for a club used for driving the ball long distances is **play-club.**

—, —. The name given to a club used for putting is **putter.**

—, —. The name given to a wooden club resembling the brassy, but with a shorter shaft and a face more lofted, is **spoon.**

—, —. A name for the suppleness or give of a club is **spring.**

—, —. The swing of the club in striking the ball is the **stroke.**

—, —. The to-and-fro movement of the club prior to striking the ball is the **swing.**

—, course. A sandy hollow or other natural or artificial obstruction on a course is a **bunker.**

—, —. The name given to a hollow or cup-like depression in a course, as well as to the numbered hole on the putting green, is **cup.**

—, —. The name for a piece of turf cut out by a player when making a stroke is **divot.**

—, —. That part of a course that is kept mown and free from obstructions is the **fairway.**

—, —. A name applied to the whole course, also to the putting green, is **green.**

—, —. Any bunker, roadway, pathway, ditch, sand, or water, other than casual water, is a **hazard.**

—, —. The cup in the putting green to receive the ball is the **hole.**

—, —. The name given to that portion of a course between a particular tee and the putting green is **hole.**

—, —. A name sometimes given to a golf course is **links.**

—, —. The name given to any loose obstruction, such as snow, etc., is **loose impediment.**

—, —. Any place outside the limits of the course is **out of bounds.**

—, —. The ground, excluding hazards, within twenty yards of the hole is the **putting green.**

golf, course. That part of the course that is covered with long grass, heather, or gorse, as opposed to the fairway, is the **rough.**

—, —. The name given to a small cone of sand, rubber, etc., from which the first stroke for each hole is made is **tee.**

—, —. A term denoting any part of the course where play is permitted, with the exception of hazards and that putting green which is being approached, is **through the green.**

—, handicap. A stroke allowed a weaker player at any hole in match play to equalize the chance of winning is a **bisque.**

—, —. A stroke allowed as a handicap on every other hole is called a **half.**

—, —. A name for a handicap by which the weaker player is allowed to deduct one from his total for each hole is **odd.**

—, —. A handicap of a stroke given at every third hole is a **third.**

—, match. A match in which a golfer plays against the best of two or more opponents is a **best-ball match** or **best-baller.**

—, —. A match in which the better ball of two players is played against the better ball of their two opponents is a **four-ball match** or **four-baller.**

—, —. A game played by four people, two on each side, in which the partners play their ball alternately is a **foursome.**

—, —. A game in which players drive and play full shots through the green is a **long game.**

—, —. The name for a game between two pairs of players, one of each sex on either side, is **mixed foursome.**

—, —. A game in which players go once round the course is a **round.**

—, —. A game limited to approaching and putting is a **short game.**

—, —. A match between two players is a **single.**

—, —. A round in which a single player competes with two others using one ball is a **threesome.**

—, play. The taking up of a suitable position before striking the ball is **addressing the ball.**

—, —. The stroke after the tee shot that lands the ball on the green is the **approach.**

—, —. To play a ball across rising ground so that it rolls down again towards the hole is to **borrow.**

—, —. The name for a hole or holes that have not been played when a match is finished is **bye.**

—, —. The name given to a hole or holes which remain unplayed after a bye is finished is **bye-bye.**

—, —. A ball lying so close to a hole that it is almost certain to be holed with the player's next stroke is **dead.**

—, —. A ball which does not roll when it strikes the ground after a stroke is said to fall **dead.**

—, —. A player who is as many holes ahead of an opponent as there are holes yet to play is **dormy.**

—, —. To fumble a stroke is to **fluff** or **foozle.**

—, —. A warning cry uttered when a player is about to strike the ball (a contraction of "before") is **"fore!"**

—, —. To play a ball into the cup in the putting green is to **hole.**

—, —. The privilege of playing first from the tee is the **honour.**

—, —. To take a ball from the place where it lies and to drop it or tee it, with the appropriate penalty, is to **lift.**

—, —. To pick up a ball and thus forfeit the hole is to **lift.**

—, —. A name given to a stroke which equalizes a player's or a side's strokes with those of an opposing player or side is **like.**

—, —. The term used when players have both played an equal number of strokes and balls are in play is **like as we lie.**

golf, play. The term used of a player's next stroke when his opponent has played two strokes more is **one off two.**

—, —. A chance deflection, or turn from the straight, of a ball after it is played is a **rub of the green.**

—, —. To scrape the ground with a club before hitting the ball is to **sclaff.**

—, —. The position taken up by a player when about to strike the ball is **stance.**

—, —. To hole a long and unexpected putt which only just falls into the cup is to **steal.**

—, —. The name given to the position when a player's ball lies between his opponent's ball (but more than six inches from it) and the hole is **stymie** or **stimy.**

—, score. A name for the standard score for a course or for any hole of a course is **bogey** or **"Colonel Bogey."**

—, —. Terms denoting that the numbers of holes won by players or sides are the same are **even** and **square.**

—, —. When two players or pairs of players in partnership take the same number of strokes for a hole the score of each is a **half.**

—, stroke. The action of hitting the ball below the centre so that it rises high and does not run far on reaching the ground is a **back-shin** or an **undercut.**

—, —. To play a full stroke, especially from the tee, is to **drive.**

—, —. The continuation of the stroke after the ball has been hit is the **follow through.**

—, —. A quick, straight putt in which the ball drops into the hole but otherwise would have passed far beyond it is a **gobble.**

—, —. The name given to a stroke half-way between a quarter-shot and a full shot is **half-shot.**

—, —. To strike the ball off the heel of the club is to **heel.**

—, — A ball played in a straight line and curling away to the left is a **hook.**

—, —. The name given to a sharp cutting stroke behind the ball, brought to a sudden stop at the ground, is **jerk.**

—, —. The lifting of the ball by a club in a stroke is a **loft.**

—, —. The name given to a lofted shot and to an approach shot made with little run on to, or towards, a green is **pitch.**

—, —. A shot resembling a pitch but having a certain amount of run is a **pitch-and-run.**

—, —. The name given to a ball which is played to the left of the direct line of flight is **pull.**

—, —. A stiff-armed stroke made with an iron club is a **push.**

—, —. The name given to a stroke made on the putting green and to the making of such a stroke is **putt.**

—, —. The name given to a shot less than a half-shot is **quarter-shot.**

—, —. To play the ball along the ground is to **run.**

—, —. A name given to a long-distance stroke, from the noise made as it goes through the air, is **screamer.**

—, —. The name given a cross-wise blow from right to left, causing a ball to curve to the right, and also to the direction of a ball so struck, is **slice.**

— — To strike the ball above the centre is to **top.**

—, —. A stroke between a half-stroke and a full stroke is a **three-quarter stroke.**

golf-club, lie. The lie of a club whose head has a wide angle with regard to the shaft is **flat.**

—, — A club placed on the ground with the face sloping slightly backwards is **grassed.**

—, —. The angle at which the shaft of a club is inclined to its head when grounded for a stroke is the **club's lie.**

—, — An inclination given to the face of a club to assist it in lifting the ball is a **loft.**

golf-club, lie. The angle presented by a club when its sole rests on the ground is the **upright.**

—, part. The name given to a piece of horn or fibre placed in the sole of a club to prevent it splitting is **bone.**

—, —. The part of a club that strikes the ball is the **face.**

—, —. The name given to the portion of a club which is not attached directly to the shaft is **head.**

—, —. The part of a club between neck and face is the **heel.**

—, —. A name for the socket of an iron-headed club, into which the shaft fits, is **hose.**

—, —. The name given to the bent part of a club which joins the shaft is **neck.**

—, —. Names given to the pointed part of a club farthest from the player are **nose** and **toe.**

—, —. A name given to the spliced part of a club is **scare.**

—, —. The name given to the handle of a club is **shaft.**

—, —. The hole in the head of an iron club into which the shaft is inserted is the **socket.**

—, —. The part of a club which rests on the ground is the **sole.**

—, —. The binding of pitched twine securing the head of a club to its shaft is the **whipping.**

greyhound racing. The name for the end of the run where the trolley is brought to a standstill is **brakeyard.**

—. The name for the position from which the speed of the hare is controlled is **control tower.**

—. The name for the retaining fence on the inner edge of the track is **dog fence.**

—. The name for the board level with the ground, on which the wheel of the dummy hare runs, is **hare board.**

—. The board placed in a prominent position for announcing the number of dogs running in any race, the time of the winner, and the distance won by, is the **number and result board.**

—. The name for the covering over the rails, under which the truck runs, concealing it from sight, is **penthouse.**

—. The position where the trolley is switched from the track to the brakeyard is the **points.**

—. The name for the coloured coat worn by each dog in a race is **racing coat.**

—. The box in which the dogs are placed before the race, each in a separate compartment, the whole front of which flies up at the starting signal, releasing all the dogs simultaneously, is the **trap.**

—. The name for the electrical truck running on a narrow gauge railway, and carrying on a projecting arm the dummy hare, is **trolley.**

gun. *See under* **shooting,** *below.*

gymnastics. The name given to a cross-bar suspended by a rope at each end, used by gymnasts and acrobats, is **trapeze.**

—. A wooden horse used in gymnasiums for practising vaulting is a **vaulting-horse.**

hare-hunting. The sport of hunting hares with greyhounds is **coursing.**

hawking. *See under* **falconry,** *above.*

hockey. The action in which a player obtains the ball from an opponent at the start off, or after a foul, is a **bully.**

—. When the ball is hit behind the goal-line but not into goal it is a **corner.**

—. The name for the offence of raising the stick above the shoulder is **sticks.**

—, field. The two shorter boundaries are the **goal-lines.**

—, —. The two longer boundaries are the **side-lines.**

—, —. The space in front of each goal marked by a curved line is the **striking circle.**

hockey, player. Each of the two players stationed between the half-backs and the goal-keeper is a **back.**

—, —. The five players who operate in the front line are the **forwards.**

—, —. Each of the three players operating between the forwards and the backs is a **half-back.**

—, —. The players second from the left and second from the right in the forward line are, respectively, the **inside-left** and **inside-right.**

—. *See also under* **ice hockey,** *below.*

hopping. A name for a method of exercising by hopping about on an upright pole containing a spring is **po[illegible].**

horse. An Army officer's horse is a **charger.**

—. An old name for a large horse used in battle or in the lists is **destrier.**

—. A general name for a horse prepared for riding is **mount.**

—. An old name for a quietly ambling horse is **pad.**

—. An old name for a small saddle-horse is **palfrey.**

—. A name of a book containing the pedigrees of thoroughbred horses is **stud book.**

—, breed. The name of a breed of horses brought by the Moors into Spain from Barbary is **barb.**

—, —. A name for a breed of horse with a large head and a low action, used for slow carriage work, is **Cleveland bay.**

—, —. The name of a Scottish breed of carthorse, corresponding to the Shire horse but slender and smaller, is **Clydesdale.**

—, —. Names for a medium-weight horse, used for ordinary riding and driving, are **hackney** and **nag.**

—, —. A name for a horse used for hunting, of substantial weight-carrying power, often a thoroughbred or a cross between a thoroughbred and a Cleveland bay, is **hunter.**

—, —. The name of a small Spanish horse formerly much used for light cavalry is **jennet.**

—, —. A name for a horse not exceeding fourteen hands, used for light-weight riding and driving, is **pony.**

—, —. The name of a very large, strong, and heavy carthorse bred in the shires or East Midland counties is **Shire horse.**

—, —. The name of a type of sturdy heavily-built draught horse, chestnut in colour, bred in East Anglia is **Suffolk Punch.**

—, —. Names for a light breed of known and pure descent, used for racing, hunting, and riding, are **thoroughbred,** and **blood-horse** or **blood-mare.**

—, colour. A horse of a reddish-brown colour, approaching chestnut, is a **bay.**

—, —. A reddish-brown horse of the colour of a chestnut is a **chestnut.**

—, —. A horse of a dark reddish colour blotched with grey or white is a **roan.**

—, —. A name used for a horse of a bright chestnut colour is **sorrel.**

—, height. The unit of measurement equal to four inches used for determining the height of horses is a **hand.**

—, marking. A horse whose coat is marked with spots or small patches of a different shade or colour is **dappled.**

—, —. A horse marked with little irregular spots on a lighter ground is described as **flea-bitten.**

—, —. A horse whose coat is marked with large, irregular patches of black and white is a **piebald.**

—, —. A horse whose coat is marked with large, irregular patches of white and a colour other than black—usually brown—is a **skewbald.**

—, training. The term used for the training of a young horse for the saddle or for driving is **breaking.**

—, —. A term meaning the training of horses, and also horsemanship, is **manège.**

horse-racing. A professional betting man who offers odds on races is a **bookmaker** or **bookie.**

—. Five races for three-year-olds run each season—the Derby, St. Leger, Oaks, Two Thousand Guineas, and One Thousand Guineas—are the **Classic Races.**

—. A race over level ground without obstacles, as opposed to a steeplechase or hurdle race, is a **flat race.**

—. A term used for the condition of the ground of a race-track or race-course is **going.**

—. A horse-race run over a course provided with hurdles is a **hurdle-race.**

—. A weight carried by a horse in a handicap race is an **impost.**

—. A name for a handicap race for two-year-old colts and fillies is **nursery** or **nursery-race.**

—. A name for a system of betting by which the backers of the first, or first three horses in a race receive as winnings a proportion of the total stakes determined by the respective amounts staked on those horses is **pari-mutuel.**

—. A race run straight across country from one point to another is a **point-to-point race.**

—. A race in which the winning horse is put up for auction immediately after the race is a **selling race.**

—. A horse-race run over a course provided with hurdles, water-jumps, and other obstacles is a **steeplechase.**

—. The name for a betting machine with dials and indicator that show the odds against any horse at any moment is **totalizator.**

—. A name for the occupation or profession of horse-racing is the **turf.**

—. The passing over the course by a horse which is the only starter is a **walk-over.**

—. A race for heavy-weight riders is a **welter-race.**

horse-riding. A short rein running from the bit to the saddle to prevent a horse from putting its head down is a **bearing-rein.**

—. The iron part of a horse's bridle placed in the mouth is a **bit.**

—. The name given to the shades used to prevent horses from seeing sideways is **blinkers.**

—. A name for a horse not broken in for riding, which leaps and bounds with feet drawn together and the back arched, is **buck-jumper.**

—. The covered stirrup used by women when riding side-saddle is a **foot-stall.**

—. A term for that part of a horse in front of the rider is **forehand.**

—. The band by which the saddle is made fast round a horse's body is the **girth.**

—. A horse not easily controlled by the bit is **hard-mouthed.**

—. The leather straps connected with the bridle of a horse form its **head-stall.**

—. A term meaning horsemanship, and also the art of training horses, is **manège.**

—. To make a horse move sideways while riding it is to **passage.**

—, pace. When a horse walks by lifting two feet on one side one after the other it is said to **amble.**

—, —. The name of a kind of slow gallop in which the feet are lifted and put down in the same order as in walking is **canter.**

—, —. The name given to the quick steps taken by a horse when changing its pace is **fox-trot.**

—, —. The name of the motion of a horse at its greatest speed, in which all four feet leave the ground at the same time, is **gallop.**

—, —. The prancing and bounding of horses as performed at mediaeval tournaments and modern displays is a **gambade** or **gambado.**

—, —. A name for a slow trotting motion of a horse is **piaffer.**

horse-riding, pace. The name of a steady, rapid pace in which the horse lifts simultaneously one fore foot and the hind foot of the opposite side, alternately with the other pair, is **trot.**

—, —. The gait of a horse going sideways round a centre is a **volt.**

hound. The name of a short-legged dog allied to the dachshund, used for drawing badgers and foxes. and sometimes instead of beagles in hare-hunting is **basset** or **basset-hound.**

—. Names for kinds of small hound used in packs for hunting hares are **beagle** and **harrier.**

—. A name for a hound that hunts by sight, not by scent, is **gaze-hound.**

—. *See also* **dog,** *above.*

hunter. A name for a hunter that jumps easily on and off banks too high to clear is **banker.**

hunting. The amount of game obtained on a hunting or shooting expedition is the **bag.**

—. A thicket or undergrowth sheltering beasts or birds of the chase is **cover.**

—. A shelter or reserve for game is a **covert.**

—. To induce an animal, such as a fox or badger, to leave its hole or other cover is to **draw.**

—. To run over the scent of the quarry and so baffle the hounds is to **foil.**

—. A name for a hound that hunts by sight, not by scent, is **gaze-hound.**

—. The gathering of people and hounds before hunting is the **meet.**

—. A name for a great hunter is **Nimrod.**

—. The name for an animal chased by hounds or hunters, or the bird flown at by a bird of prey, is **quarry.**

—. A name given in India to the hunting of wild beasts is **shikar,** and to an experienced hunter **shikari** or **shikaree.**

—. Hunting game, such as deer, in a stealthy way, by approaching behind cover is **stalking.**

—. Old names for the sport of hunting are **venery** and the **chase.**

—. A name given to a hunt official who manages hounds is **whip.**

—. *See also under* **fox-hunting** *and* **hare-hunting,** *above; and* **otter-hunting, stag-hunting, tiger-hunting,** *and* **wild boar hunting,** *below.*

ice. A name for hockey played on the ice is **bandy.**

—. A game played on a smooth ice rink in which the players slide large circular stones towards a mark at either end is **curling.**

ice hockey. A name for ice hockey, and for the curved stick used in the game, is **bandy.**

—. The name given to the ball used in ice hockey is **cat.**

—. The vulcanized rubber disk used in Canada instead of a ball in playing ice hockey is the **puck.**

knucklebones. Other names for knucklebones are **chuckstones, dibs, five-stones, hucklebones,** and **jackstones.**

lacrosse. The hickory stick, strung at the end with net, used in lacrosse is the **crosse.**

lawn-tennis. The trophy, presented by the American Dwight Davis, competed for each year by the lawn-tennis teams of all nations is the **Davis Cup.**

—. A game in which the loser fails to score is a **love game.**

—. A set in which the loser fails to score is a **love set.**

—. The point which decides a match is a **match point.**

—. Except when deuce games occurs six games won by a player or a side are a **set.**

—. A player who loses a match without winning a set is **setless.**

—. To toss the racket to determine the service or choice of courts is to **spin.**

—. To win a match without losing a set is to win **in straight sets.**

—. The name of the game is often abbreviated to **tennis.**

lawn-tennis. Names applied to inflammation, accompanied by swelling, of the elbow or knee sometimes suffered by lawn-tennis players are respectively **tennis elbow** and **tennis knee.**

—, ball. The casing of a ball is its **cover.**

—, —. The deviation of a ball from its course on striking the ground, produced by drawing the racket across the ball, is **break.**

—, —. The distance travelled by a ball after it passes over the net is its **length.**

—, court. The space on the doubles court between the side-lines of the singles and doubles courts is the **alley.**

—, —. The part of the court at the rear of the service line, including the portion outside the court proper and immediately behind the baseline, is the **backcourt.**

—, —. The boundary line at each end of the court is the **baseline.**

—, —. The line separating the service courts and connecting the service lines is the **centre-line.**

—, —. The area contained within the boundaries of the side-lines and the baseline is the **court.**

—, —. The line drawn to divide the service court into two equal parts is the **half-court line.**

—, —. A name given to a court made of asphalt or similar material and also to any court other than a grass court is **hard court.**

—, —. The name given to the service court on either side of the net and to the right of it, and applied also to the whole of the right-hand side from net to baseline, is **right court.**

—, —. The name given to a line drawn across the width of the court on each side, and distant 21 feet from the net, is **service-line.**

—, —. The lines forming the outside boundary down the length of a court are the **side-lines.**

—, game. A game in which two players oppose two others is a **doubles,** or **four-handed game.**

—, —. A name for a friendly game or a preliminary practice is **knock-up.**

—, —. The name for a game between two pairs of players, one of each sex on either side, is **mixed doubles.**

—, —. A game between two players is a **singles.**

—, —. The name given to a game in which three players take part, two on one side and one on the other, is **three-handed game.**

—, handicap. The name given to a handicap of five points in each six games of a set is **five-sixths of fifteen.**

—, —. Three points in each game is a handicap of **forty.**

—, —. The name given to a handicap of four points in each six games of a set is **four-sixths of fifteen.**

—, —. A handicap of one point in every other game, beginning with the second game of each set, is **half-fifteen.**

—, —. A handicap of two or three points given alternately in each game, commencing with one in the first and two in the second of each set, is **half-forty.**

—, —. A handicap of one point in each alternate game, beginning with the second game of each set, is **half-thirty.**

—, —. A term used in handicapping when a player is minus a specified number of points is **minus.**

—, —. Points given to another player as a handicap are **odds.**

—, —. A handicap of one point in each six games of a set is **one-sixth of fifteen.**

—, —. A term denoting that a player must score one point before any points gained shall count to his score is **owe-fifteen.**

—, —. A term used in handicapping when a player is plus a specified number of points is **plus.**

—, —. A player who neither owes nor receives points is a **scratch player.**

—, —. A name for a player favoured by a handicap is **sleeper.**

lawn-tennis, handicap. The name given to a handicap of three points in every six games is **three-sixths of fifteen.**

—, —. The name given to a handicap of two points in every six games of a set is **two-sixths of fifteen.**

—, net. The canvas binding at the top of the net is the **band** or **tape.**

—, —. The name given to the canvas strap which serves to keep the net at the correct height is **centre strap.**

—, —. The name given to each of the posts which support the net is **pole.**

—, —. The mechanism for raising and lowering the net is the **ratchet.**

—, —. The recess into which a net-post is inserted is the **socket.**

—, —. The name given to a kind of coupling by which the net is adjusted is **turnbuckle.**

—, official. An official who gives decisions regarding the lines allotted to him is a **linesman.**

—, —. The name given to an official who calls and keeps the score, calls faults, and gives decisions is **umpire.**

—, play. The name given to a ball that is " killed " outright or is not returned to the server's side of the net is **ace.**

—, —. A ball that is out of play is **dead.**

—, —. The point that finishes a game is the **game-point**

—, —. A ball which falls in the proper court is **in.**

—, —. Whenever a ball can legally be played it is **in play.**

—, —. A ball struck in such a way that it cannot be returned by an opposing player is **killed.**

—, —. A ball, in serving, which falls into the proper court after touching the net, counting as no stroke and being played again, is a **let.**

—, —. A game played mostly at the net is a **net game.**

—, —. A ball not played into the proper court is **out.**

—, —. When a ball cannot legally be played it is **out of play.**

—, —. A ball hit so that it passes an opponent at the net before striking the court is a **pass.**

—, —. A term for aimless hitting of the ball to and fro over the net is **pat ball.**

—, —. To play a ball which should be left to a partner is to **poach.**

—, —. A sequence of strokes made by opposing players before a point is made is a **rally.**

—, —. The player who receives the service is the **receiver** or **striker-out.**

—, —. To send a ball back to the opposite court is to **return.**

—, —. To hit the ball to the striker-out at the beginning of play for each point is to **serve.**

—, —. The player who is serving is the **server.**

—, —. The act of hitting the ball to the striker-out at the commencement of play for each point is **service.**

—, —. A service which is not returned is a **service ace.**

—, —. The winning point of a set is the **set-point.**

—, —. A name sometimes given to poor play is **skittles.**

—, —. Going inside the baseline to accept a service or ground shot on the bound is **standing in.**

—, —. The act of hitting the ball is a **stroke.**

—, racket. A name for the racket is **bat.**

—, —. A name sometimes given to the stringed part of the racket is **blade.**

—, —. The large end of a tennis racket is the **head.**

—, —. The name given to the frame in which a racket is placed under screw pressure when not in use, to prevent it from warping, is **press.**

—, —. The side of a racket where the rough edges of strings show—sometimes used in tossing for courts or service—is the **rough.**

lawn-tennis, racket. A name for the side of a racket opposite to the rough side is **smooth.**

—, —. A name for the gut of a racket is **stringing.**

—, —. The name given to that part of the racket where the handle joins the frame is **throat.**

—, score. The state of the game or set when either side has scored a point after deuce, or won a game after five all, is **advantage** or **'vantage.**

—, —. The state of the score when a player has won a game after deuce games has been called is **advantage game.**

—, —. Advantage in the server's favour is **advantage in,** in the receiver's **advantage out.**

—, —. The state of the game when the server has scored the first point after deuce is **advantage server.**

—, —. The state of the game when the striker-out has scored the first point after deuce is **advantage striker-out** or **advantage striker.**

—, —. A word used in announcing a level score, as games all, fifteen all, etc., is **all.**

—, —. The state of the score when each side has made three points, and the score is " forty all," is **deuce.**

—, —. The first score in a game is **fifteen.**

—, —. The score of a player who has made three points is **forty.**

—, —. A score of four points by a side, except when each scores three points (deuce) and a further score of two successive points has to be made by a side, is **game.**

—, —. The state of a set when each side has won the same number of games in a set is **games all.**

—, —. The term used for no score is **love.**

—, —. The state of the score when a game commences, neither side having obtained any points, is **love all.**

—, —. A scoring unit used in lawn-tennis is the **point.**

—, —. The score of a player who has made two points is **thirty.**

—, service. Another name for service is **delivery.**

—, —. The second of two successive services (unless one is a let) both of which are faults is a **double fault.**

—, —. An improper service is a **fault.**

—, —. A faulty service due to wrong position of one or both feet is a **foot-fault.**

—, —. The name given to a kind of service made by drawing the racket across the ball from right to left, causing it to swerve and to break, is **reverse twist service.**

—, —. The name given to a service in which, by drawing the racket from left to right, the ball is made to swerve and break is **twist service.**

—, spin. A backward spin of the ball after touching the court, imparted by a chopping stroke, is **back-spin.**

—, —. A spin given to a ball by making a slicing stroke is a **cut.**

—, —. A downward tendency given to a ball by using top spin is **drop.**

—, —. A name for the act of making a ball spin sharply forward on striking the ground is **overspin.**

—, —. A vertical revolving motion of the ball in the same direction as its flight, imparted by drawing the racket upwards when making the stroke, causing the ball to drop quickly and with an unexpected curve, is **top spin.**

—, —. Spin or cut imparted to a ball is **twist.**

—, stroke. To drive a ball over the net obliquely is to **angle.**

—, —. A stroke made with the racket turned across the body is a **backhand stroke.**

—, —. To stop the ball by holding the racket still is to **block.**

—, —. A stroke made by hitting the ball downwards with a chopping action, causing it to bounce towards the net. is a **chop stroke.**

lawn-tennis, stroke. A name for the twist or spin given to a ball by making a slicing stroke, and for the act of making such a stroke, is **cut.**

—, —. A hard, long stroke, especially from the rear of the court, is a **drive.**

—, —. A stroke which causes the ball to fall quickly after crossing the net is a **drop.**

—, —. A stroke made by a right-handed player on the right side of the body is a **forehand stroke.**

—, —. A stroke made at the ball while it is rising from the ground is a **ground stroke.**

—, —. A ball played just as it rises from the ground is a **half-volley.**

—, —. The name given, after its inventor, to a hard forehand stroke with top spin which makes the ball drop quickly is **Lawford stroke.**

—, —. A stroke made from the side of the court, which sends the ball the length of the court and parallel with the side-line is a **line-pass** or **side-pass.**

—, —. A smash-stroke similar to a line-pass is a **line-smash.**

—, —. A ball struck gently over the head of an opponent is a **lob.**

—, —. A stroke that causes the ball to strike the net before falling into the court at which it is directed is a **net cord stroke.**

—, —. A stroke made with the racket in a position above the waist is **overhand.**

—, —. A stroke made with the racket raised above the head is **overhead.**

—, —. A ball which just falls over the net is a **short ball.**

—, —. A name for a downward stroke to a high ball, played with much force, is **smash.**

—, —. A name for a stroke made with little force is **soft stroke.**

—, —. A name given to the twist imparted to a ball by drawing the racket across it is **spin.**

—, —. A volley made by holding the racket still and allowing the ball to strike it is a **stop-volley.**

—, —. The name given to a cut or twisted stroke derived from royal tennis is **tennis stroke.**

—, —. A stroke made with the racket held below the waist is an **underhand stroke.**

—, —. The playing of the ball before it bounces is a **volley.**

—, tournament. The name given to a tournament in which each player meets the others in turn is **American tournament.**

—, —. The name given after its inventor to a system of drawing in match play in order to avoid byes after the first or preliminary round is **Bagnall-Wilde.**

—, —. The name given to a round between the winner of a tournament and the existing champion for the title to championship is **challenge round.**

—, —. The awarding of a match to a player on account of his opponent's absence or inability to play is **default.**

—, —. A tournament in which all contestants play on level terms is a **scratch tournament.**

—, —. The name given to a method of dividing a draw into sections in an international tournament, so that no two nominated players of a country are in the same section, is **seeding.**

—, —. A title holder who does not play through a tournament but defends his title against the winner of the tournament **stands out.**

—, —. A round or section of a tournament is a **tie.**

leopard. The name of a kind of leopard used in India and Persia to course antelopes and other game is **cheetah.**

loo. In the game of five card loo, a name for the knave of clubs is **pam.**

ludo. A name for the Indian game of which ludo is a simplified form is **pachisi.**

mah-jongg. The name of the pieces used in mah-jongg is **tiles.**

marbles. A large and choice marble made of alabaster or of real marble is an **ally, alley,** or **alley taw.**

—. The name for a marble made of marble with red streaks or spots in it is **blood alley.**

—. A name for a very large kind of playing marble is **bonce.**

—. The name of a game played by shooting marbles at others placed in a ring is **ring-taw.**

— The name of a game for one person played with marbles on a board pitted with holes is **solitaire.**

match. A match or other sporting event in which the proceeds go to a player or players is a **benefit.**

motor-cycle racing. The name of a special award for the holder of the lap speed-record on the Wembley track is **cinders.**

—. The special helmet used by the riders to protect the head in the event of a spill is a **crash helmet.**

—. A name for the place, adjoining the track, where the motor-cycles are kept and tuned up, etc., before a race is **pits.**

—. Names given to motor-cycle racing are **speedway racing** and **dirt-track racing.**

—. The special surface of grass, earth, or cinders used for motor-cycle racing is the **track.**

—. Of the five differently coloured flags used in speedway racing, **white** indicates starting, **yellow** the start of the last lap, **chequered** (black and white) winning, **red** danger (stop the race), and **green** a warning in case of a fallen rider.

mountaineering. The iron-shod staff used in climbing mountains is an **alpenstock.**

—. A name for the act of sliding down a steep slope of ice or snow by aid of an ice-axe or alpenstock is **glissade.**

—. A name for the axe used by alpine climbers for cutting steps in ice is **piolet.**

—. A name for a mountaineer's staff or bar to which supporting ropes are attached is **piton.**

—. The name given to a sideways movement taken on a precipice to avoid an obstacle, and also to a place where this movement is necessary, is **traverse.**

net-ball. Another name for net-ball is **basket-ball.**

ombre. A name for the ace of spades in ombre is **spadille.**

otter-hunting. Names for the lair of an otter are **couch** and **holt.**

—. The rising of the otter to the surface to breathe is a **vent.**

partridge. The name given to a brood or small flock of birds, especially partridges, is **covey.**

pheasant. A pheasant that flies high and fast towards the gun is said to **rocket.**

physical culture. A name formerly much used for light gymnastics, especially for girls, is **callisthenics.**

—. A name for the art and practice of rhythmical movement, as in dancing and gymnastics, is **eurhythmics.**

piquet. A name for a sequence of four cards in piquet and other card games is **quart.**

—. A name for a sequence of five cards of the same suit is **quint.**

—. The making of thirty points on a hand by cards alone before beginning to play for tricks is **repique.**

—. The winning of a game before one's opponent has scored one hundred points is **rubicon.**

—. A combination of three honours of one denomination in one hand is a **trio.**

playing-card. The name given to the playing-card in each suit with only one pip is **ace.**

—. A name sometimes given to the nine of diamonds is **curse of Scotland.**

—. A name for the card in each suit with two pips is **deuce.**

playing-card. A name given to an extra card sometimes added to the pack, counted as the highest card, is **joker.**

—. A name given to each of the spots forming the design on playing-cards is **pip.**

—. To alter the relative position of cards in a pack is to **shuffle** or **make.**

—. A name for playing-cards marked in one of the top corners with their suit and value to avoid the necessity of spreading them out in the hands is **squeezers.**

—. The name of a special set of figured playing-cards first used in Italy in the fourteenth century is **tarot.**

—. A name given to the card in each of the suits bearing three pips is **trey.**

—. *See also* **card game,** *above.*

poker. A name sometimes used for a hand consisting of five court cards is **blaze.**

—. A name for a hand of cards all of one suit is **flush.**

— A name for a hand consisting of three cards of one denomination and a pair is **full house.**

—. The highest flush possible, consisting of ace, king, queen, knave and ten, is a **royal flush.**

—. A name for a sequence of cards not all of the same suit is **straight.**

—. A name for a hand of cards in sequence and all of one suit is **straight flush.**

—, form. Names for varieties of poker are **draw poker, straight poker, stud poker,** and **whisky poker.**

—, —. A name for a game of poker played with fifty-three cards, the additional one being the joker, is **mistigris.**

—, pool. A name for a pool to which the players contribute equal stakes is **jack pot.**

—, stake. The name for the full stake made by each player in the first round of a game is **ante.**

—. —. A name for the stake first put up in a game by the player on the dealer's left is **blind.**

—, —. To double the stakes is to **straddle.**

pole. A popular event at Highland athletic gatherings, consisting of hurling the roughly-trimmed trunk of a larch tree, is **tossing the caber.**

polo. The name for the time during which the ball is continuously in play is **chukker.**

pretence. A name given in games to a pretended movement to divert an opponent's attention is **feint.**

programme, item. Any item on a programme of sports or games, especially one on which bets are made, is an **event.**

puzzle. A word-puzzle in which the first, last, or some central agreed letters, when read successively in the order of the lines, make a word is an **acrostic.**

—. A picture cut up into many variously shaped pieces which have to be fitted together to form the complete design is a **jigsaw puzzle.**

—. The name of a Chinese puzzle consisting of a square cut into seven pieces of different shape is **tangram.**

quadrille. A name for the ace of spades in quadrille is **spadille.**

quoits. A pin or peg used in quoits is a **hob.**

—. A quoit that has been thrown round the hob or pin is a **ringer.**

—. One of the five games of the ancient Greek pentathlon, somewhat resembling quoits, was **throwing the discus.**

race. The listed names of competitors for a race or competition are **entries.**

—. A name for a race in which the weaker runners are given a start is **handicap.**

—. A preliminary race run in order to weed out competitors is a **heat.**

—. A race in which the runners jump over light wooden frames is a **hurdle race.**

race. A name for a long-distance race for runners, strictly about 26¼ miles, and also for other long-distance races, is **Marathon.**

—. A cross-country race in which the path to be followed is marked out by paper scattered along the ground is a **paper chase.**

—. The competitor who comes next to the winner in a race and takes second place is the **runner-up.**

—. A race in which all competitors start from the same line on equal terms is a **scratch race.**

—. A race run throughout at full speed is a **sprint-race.**

—, Greek. The name of an ancient Greek foot-race in which a torch was passed from runner to runner is **lampadedromy.**

rackets. A game resembling rackets, but played with an india-rubber ball and on a smaller court, is **squash** or **squash-rackets.**

riding-school. A name for a riding-school and also for the art of training horses is **manège.**

ring, iron. The name of a game in which iron rings are thrown so as to encircle an iron peg fixed upright in the ground is **quoits.**

rouge-et-noir. Another name for the card game rouge-et-noir is **trente-et-quarante.**

round. In cricket, football, tennis, and other games, the entrance of a player or team into a round without having taken part in the previous round is a **bye.**

rowing. To dip the oar too deep or not deep enough when rowing is to **catch a crab.**

—. An amateur single-sculling race held yearly at Henley over a course of one mile five hundred and fifty yards is the **Diamond Sculls.**

—. To turn an oar so that the blade passes through the air edgeways is to **feather.**

—. The name for a meeting on a river or at the seaside at which rowing or sailing races take place is **regatta.**

—. A short light oar used as one of a pair to propel a boat is a **scull.**

—. An Eton boy who takes up rowing is a **wet-bob.**

—. *See also under section* Army, Navy, etc.

royal tennis. *See under* **tennis,** *below.*

Rugby football. Names for an admonition administered to a player for rough or ungentlemanly conduct are **caution** and **warning.**

—. The governing body of professional Rugby football is the **Northern League.**

—. The governing body of amateur Rugby football is the **Rugby Football Union.**

—. A popular name for Rugby football is **Rugger.**

—. The name given to the officials on the touch-lines who give decisions when the ball goes into touch or touch-in-goal is **touch-judges.**

—, boots. The name given to round pieces of leather fastened to the soles of football boots to prevent slipping is **studs.**

—, catch. A catch taken from a kick, knock-on, or an opponent's throw forward is a **fair catch.**

—, —. The name given to a heel-hole made when a fair catch is claimed is **mark.**

—, field. The name given to flagposts at the junction of touch-lines and goal-lines is **corner posts.**

—, —. The lines at each end of the field of play, not more than twenty-five yards behind and at equal distances from each goal-line, are the **dead-ball lines.**

—, —.. The area enclosed by the dead-ball lines, goal-lines, and touch-lines is the **in-goal.**

—, —. The name given to the line, ten yards from and parallel with the centre-line, behind which opposing forwards must stand at the kick-off is **ten-yards line.**

—, —. Those portions of the ground at the corners of the field of play and between the touch-lines and goal are **touch-in-goal.**

Rugby football, field. That part of the field of play between the twenty-five yards lines and the goal-lines is the **twenty-five.**

—, —. The name given to a line at right angles to and joining the touch-lines, twenty-five yards from the goal-lines, is **twenty-five yards line.**

—, kick. A kick made by dropping the ball to the ground and kicking it just as it rebounds is a **drop-kick.**

—, —. The name given to a kick made by one of the opposing side after a touch-down or an unconverted try, which must pass beyond the twenty-five yards line, is **drop-out.**

—, —. The name given to a goal scored from a drop-kick is **dropped goal.**

—, —. A kick awarded to one side after a fair catch or as a penalty against their opponents for an intentional off-side or instance of foul play is a **free kick.**

—, —. The name given to the spot from which a free kick is taken is **mark.**

—, —. A name for a penalty awarded to the opponents for an infringement of the right to charge down a free kick is **no charge.**

—, —. A free kick awarded to the opponents for certain infringements of Law 11 is a **penalty-kick.**

—, —. A kick at the ball after it has been placed on the ground for the purpose by a player called a placer is a **place kick.**

—, —. The player who steadies the ball for one taking a free kick is the **placer.**

—, —. To kick the ball before it reaches the ground after dropping it from the hands is to **punt.**

—, New Zealand. In a New Zealand team, the name of a player operating between the scrum-half and the three-quarters is **five-eighth.**

—, play. A warning cry given by a player after his kick up the field when he has placed the other players of his team on side is "**all on side.**"

—, —. The resumption of the game by a scrummage, line out, etc., when a ball has become dead is **bringing into play.**

—, —. To take the ball back over the home goal-line is to **carry back.**

—, —. A forward rush by one side from behind the goal-line or the mark when the opposing side are taking a place kick or a free kick is a **charge.**

—, —. To rush down on a player about to kick the ball is to **charge down.**

—, —. A term which means the same as tackle is **collar.**

—, —. A name for attempts to break up attacking movements is **defence.**

—, —. A word sometimes called out by a player who is tackled to indicate that he has put the ball down is **down.**

—, —. A term applied to the enticing of an opponent to tackle, in order to make an opening for another player, is **draw.**

—, —. To take the ball down the field by propelling it with the feet and lower part of the legs is to **dribble.**

—, —. A player who, after a kick by one of his own side, tackles or rushes down an opponent who has either caught the ball or is about to catch it is said to **follow up.**

—, —. An attack by the forwards with the ball at their feet is a **forward rush.**

—, —. To deceive an opponent by pretending to pass is to **give the dummy** or **sell the dummy.**

—, —. To place the ball on the ground in the in-goal is to **ground.**

—, —. A player who is tackled and cannot pass the ball is **held.**

—, —. To dodge or feint is to **jink.**

—, —. To propel the ball towards the opposing in-goal with the arm or hand is to **knock-on.**

Rugby football, play. The name given to the formation of the opposing forwards when the ball is thrown in from touch is **line out.**

—, —. A name for the end of a match, or full time, is **no side.**

—, —. A ball when off the field of play or otherwise not legally playable is **out of play.**

—, —. The throwing of the ball by one player to another is a **pass.**

—, —. A return pass is a **pass back.**

—, —. Another name for a throw forward is **pass forward.**

—, —. To place the ball on the ground when fairly tackled is to **put the ball down.**

—, —. If the ball hits a player elsewhere than on the hand or arm and passes in the direction of the opponents' in-goal it is a **rebound.**

—, —. The making of considerable forward movement while holding the ball is a **run.**

—, —. A press of players moving down the field in a body and dribbling the ball is a **rush.**

—, —. To fall on the ball to stop a forward rush is to **save.**

—, —. The name given to the ordered struggle for the ball by the forwards of the opposing sides is **scrum** or **scrummage.**

—, —. Taking a step to the side to avoid an opponent is **side-stepping.**

—, —. To make a sudden change in direction to avoid a tackle when running is to **swerve.**

—, —. A term denoting the action of holding an opponent who has the ball so that he cannot pass or play it is **tackle.**

—, —. The name given to a pass or a throw made towards the opposing in-goal, contrary to the laws, is **throw forward.**

—, —. The returning to play of a ball played over a touch-line, by a player of the side to which the ball belongs throwing it from the spot at which it left the field of play, is a **throw-out.**

—, —. The player who first puts his hand on the ball in his own in-goal while it is touching the ground makes **touch down.**

—, player. Each of the players who play behind the scrum is a **back.**

—, —. The third or last row of forwards in the scrum is the **back row.**

—, —. The name for each of the two three-quarter backs playing in the central part of the field between the wing three-quarters is **centre three-quarter.**

—, —. A name for the players, fifteen in number, constituting a team under Rugby Union rules is **fifteen.**

—, —. The name for a player in a New Zealand team operating between scrum-half and the three-quarters is **five-eighth.**

—, —. The player operating between the scrum-half and the three-quarters is the **fly-half.**

—, —. The players whose chief duty is to take part in the scrum are the **forwards** or **pack.**

—, —. The first row of forwards in the scrum is the **front row.**

—, —. The player behind the three-quarter backs is the **full-back.**

—, —. Either of the two players, called the scrum-half and stand-off or fly-half respectively, operating between the three-quarter backs and the forwards is a **half-back.**

—, —. Names for the second row of forwards in the scrum are **middle row** and **lock.**

—, —. A name for all the players not forming part of the scrum is **outsides.**

—, —. The name given to the extra man in the seven forwards formation is **rover.**

—, —. The name given to the half-back who plays close behind the scrum is **scrum-half.**

—, —. Other names for a fly-half are **stand-off half** and **outside half.**

—, —. The name given to each of the four players between the half-backs and the full-backs is **three-quarter back.**

Rugby football, player. A forward who takes no part in the scrum is a **wing-forward.**

—, —. The play of a wing-forward is **winging.**

—, —. Each of the two outside three-quarter backs is a **wing three-quarter.**

—, score. A goal scored from a penalty kick, and counting three points, is a **penalty goal.**

—, —. A try allowed by a referee when he considers that a try would have been scored but for unfair play or interference by the defenders is a **penalty try.**

—, —. The scoring unit is the **point.**

—, —. The player who first puts his hand on the ball while it is on the ground and in the opponents' in-goal secures a **try.**

—, —. A try when the resulting kick at goal is unsuccessful is an **unconverted try.**

—, scrum. The side of a scrum on which the fewest outsides, or players other than forwards, are ranged is the **blind side.**

—, —. The term for the act of getting the ball to the backs out of the scrum is **heel.**

—, —. To secure the ball with the foot when it is put into the scrum is to **hook.**

—, —. The front row forward who heels out the ball in a scrum is the **hooker.**

—, —. The outside head in a scrum on the side from which the ball is put in is the **loose-head.**

—, —. A term meaning apart from the scrum is **open.**

—, —. That side of the scrum on which the greater number of outsides are formed up is the **open side.**

—, —. A term meaning to go down into the scrum is **pack.**

—, —. An expression meaning in the scrum is in the **tight.**

—, —. *See also* **Rugby football,** player, *above.*

—. *See also under* **football,** *above.*

running. *See under* **race,** *above.*

sailing. The name for a meeting on a river or at the seaside at which there are sailing or rowing races is **regatta.**

—. *See also section* Army, Navy, Air Force, and Nautical.

score. In certain games the state of the score when one point only is needed to decide the game is **game-ball.**

—. An equality of score between competing parties is a **tie.**

Scotland. A game played on the ice in Scotland in which opposing players hurl smooth stones towards a mark is **curling.**

—. The name of a popular Highland sport consisting of throwing a heavy pole is **tossing the caber.**

—. The name for a meeting in Scotland, for rifle shooting, curling matches, etc., is **wappenshaw.**

sculling. *See under* **rowing,** *above ; and section* Army, Navy, Air Force, and Nautical.

second place. The competitor who comes next to the winner in a race or other competition and takes second place is the **runner-up.**

self-defence. The name given to fighting with glove-covered fists is **boxing.**

—. The name given to the art of defending oneself either with the sword or with foils is **fencing.**

—. The Japanese art of self-defence is **jiu-jitsu.**

—. A name for fighting with bare fists, as opposed to glove-fighting, is **pugilism.**

—. The name of a pole from six to eight feet long, shod with iron at each end, once a favourite weapon of offence and defence, is **quarter-staff.**

—. *See also* **boxing** *and* **fencing,** *above.*

shooting. The amount of game obtained on a shooting or hunting expedition is the **bag.**

—. A name given to shooting with portable fire-arms, especially with the military rifle, is **musketry.**

shooting, gun. A kind of quick-firing rifle used by big-game hunters is an **express rifle.**

—, —. A name for a light smooth-bore gun adapted for wild-fowl shooting is **fowling-piece.**

—, —. A breech-loading shot-gun of large bore used in a punt for shooting duck and other waterfowl is a **punt-gun.**

—, —. A name for a light gun, often double-barrelled, used especially for shooting small game is **shot-gun.**

—, shot. A coarse kind of shot for shooting deer and other large game is **buck-shot.**

—, —. Small shot used for shooting wild duck is **duck-shot.**

—, target. The name for the centre of a target is **bull's-eye.**

—, —. A shot that hits the centre of a target is a **bull's-eye** or **bull.**

—, —. A name for the white disk within the bull's-eye of a target is **carton.**

—, —. A name for a rifle shot that hits the ring next the bull's-eye is **inner.**

—, —. A name for a rifle-shot that hits the outermost division but one of the target, signalled by a black and white disk, is **magpie.**

—, —. A name for a rifle-shot outside the magpie is **outer.**

skittles. A name for a skittle-alley is **bowling-alley.**

—. The name of the flattened oval missile used in skittles is **cheese.**

—. A name for the skittles at which the cheese is thrown is **pins.**

snow. The name for a long, narrow, wooden runner fastened under the foot for travelling over snow is **ski.**

speedway racing. *See under* **motor-cycle racing,** *above.*

stag-hunting. The name given to the second tine on the lower front edge of the shaft of a stag's antler is **bez tine.**

—. The name given to the lowest tine on the lower front edge of the shaft of a stag's antler is **brow tine.**

—. The man employed to keep track of stags, so that the huntsman knows where to find one, is the **harbourer.**

—. A name for a stag or male deer, used chiefly of the red deer, especially after it is five years old, is **hart.**

—. A name given to a female deer, especially a red deer, is **hind.**

—. A name given to a stag with six points on each antler is **royal** or **royal hart.**

—. Names given to the third tine on the lower front edge of the shaft of a stag's antler are **trez tine** and **royal tine.**

—. The name for any one of the two couple of steady hounds that are thrown into cover to turn out a warrantable stag is **tufter.**

—. A stag that is of an age to be hunted is a **warrantable stag.**

—. *See also under* **deer,** *above.*

stamp-collecting. The name given to an envelope, postcard, etc., with the postage stamp or stamps left on it is **entire.**

—. Postage stamps that have been printed in sheet form without any means of detaching them, except by cutting, are **imperforate.**

—. Postage stamps that have been partly separated from each other in sheet form by rows of holes punched out of the paper to facilitate easy parting are **perforate.**

—. A name for the collection, study, and arrangement of postage-stamps is **philately.**

—. The name for an impression of an obsolete stamp made from the original plate is **reprint.**

—. A name for a value printed on a postage-stamp after its issue and differing from its original value is **surcharge.**

—. A semi-transparent design made in the paper of a stamp is the **watermark.**

stirrup. The covered stirrup used by women when riding side-saddle is a **footstall.**

stroke. In lawn-tennis, badminton, etc., a sequence of strokes made by opposing players before a point is made is a **rally.**

—. *See also under specific games.*

swimming. The names of the principal strokes in swimming are the **back, breast, crawl, overarm, side,** and **trudgeon** or **trudgen strokes.**

sword. The name of the long, two-edged sword of the sixteenth century duelling, represented by the modern fencing foil, is **rapier.**

—. *See also under* **fencing,** *above.*

target. *See under* **shooting,** *above.*

tennis. The name used in the U.S.A. for tennis is **court tennis.**

—. A name for an Italian ball game resembling tennis, in which a large ball is struck with the gauntleted hand, is **pallone.**

—. The full name of tennis is **royal tennis.**

—, court. The name for the numbered lines marked on the floor for scoring purposes is **chase-lines.**

— —. The large opening in the inner end wall is the **dedans.**

—, —. The openings in the inner side wall on each side of the net are **galleries.**

—, —. The small square opening in the end wall on the hazard side of the court is the **grille.**

—, —. The line that divides the court into two equal parts at right angles to the net is the **half-court line.**

— —. The side of the net opposite the service side is the **hazard side.**

—, —. The plain outer wall of the court, free of the penthouse, is the **main wall.**

—, —. The angle where the walls and floor meet is the **nick.**

—, —. The name given to the dedans, grille, and galleries is **openings.**

—, —. The line on the hazard side 7 feet 8 inches from the main wall and parallel to it is the **pass line.**

—, —. The name of the roofed corridor running along the two end walls of the court and one of the side walls is **penthouse.**

—, —. The line drawn across the court on the hazard side 21 feet 1 inch from the grille wall is the **service line.**

—, —. The side of the net which contains the dedans is the **service side.**

—, —. The buttress in the main wall is the **tambour.**

—, —. The last opening from the net on the hazard side is the **winning gallery.**

—, —. The dedans, grille, and winning gallery are **winning-in openings.**

—, play. To hit the ball on to the side wall first is to **boast.**

—, —. A winning opening is a **hazard.**

—, —. The name given to a series of strokes between two players is **rest.**

—, score. A name for the privilege of scoring a stroke during any part of a game, except after a fault or after the delivery of service, is **bisque.**

—, —. If a player does not return the ball before its second bounce his opponent scores a **chase.**

—. *See also under* **lawn-tennis,** *above.*

tiger-hunting. A platform of boughs built in a tree, used by sportsmen lying in wait for tigers, is a **machan.**

tilting. The name given to a post, sometimes with a pivoted crossbar, formerly used for practising tilting is **quintain.**

tobogganing. The name for a kind of double toboggan with the front part controlled by ropes or a steering wheel is **bob-sleigh.**

—. Another name for tobogganing is **coasting.**

—. A kind of short toboggan used in Alpine sports is a **luge.**

tournament. *See under* **competition,** *above.*

track. The name for the track of a deer, especially that left by its hoofs, is **slot.**

—. A name for the track of a wild animal being hunted is **spoor.**

training. An athlete who is out of condition through over-training is **stale.**

trap. A net that can be closed suddenly, such as is used by bird-catchers, is a **clap-net.**

—. A fish trap made of wicker-work and stakes built on tidal flats is a **cruive.**

—. A trap consisting of a sheltered piece of water with gradually narrowing channels covered with netting at their ends for catching wildfowl is a **decoy.**

—. A trap consisting of a pit or deep hole covered over to look like solid ground is a **pitfall.**

— A trap with jaws and a steel spring is a **steel-trap.**

trotting. A name for a light two-wheeled vehicle, sometimes without a body and seating the driver only, used in trotting races is **sulky.**

unfair play. In most games rough play or play forbidden by the rules is called **foul play.**

university. A member of either Oxford or Cambridge University who represents his university in a game or athletic contest with the other university is a **blue.**

wheel. The name of a kind of large rolling wheel used for exercise is **Rhönrad** or **Röhn wheel.**

whist. In whist and bridge, partners when they give each other the chance to trump alternately are said to **cross ruff.**

—. In whist for three persons the hand of an imaginary fourth player, which is exposed and played by another, is **dummy.**

—. The second and fourth best cards of a suit when held in the same hand are a **minor tenace.**

—. A variety of whist distinguished by a complicated system of bidding is **solo whist.**

— The best and third best cards of a suit when held in the same hand are a **tenace.**

—. A hand that contains no cards higher than a nine is a **yarborough.**

wild-boar hunting. A name for the hunting of wild boar with spears is **pig-sticking.**

wine. A game popular among the ancient Greeks, consisting in its original form of throwing the wine left in a drinking cup at a mark, was **cottabus.**

wrestling. The manoeuvre in which a wrestler gets one leg behind his opponent's heel on the outside is the **back-heel.**

—. A manoeuvre in which the hip is used as a lever to throw the opponent is a **buttock.**

—. In British wrestling any manoeuvre used to throw an adversary is a **chip.**

—. A throw over the hip is a **cross-buttock.**

—. A name for a bout in which each wrestler tries to make the other fall, and also for the accomplishing of this, is **fall.**

— The manoeuvre in which one wrestler seizes his opponent's left wrist with his right hand, turns his back on him, grasps his left elbow with his left hand, and throws him over his back, is the **flying mare.**

—. A name used for the grip or close hold is **grapple.**

—. Lifting up the opponent after a sudden turn, so that both wrestlers fall, the opponent being underneath, is the **hank.**

— The name given to a throw executed by lifting and putting the knee between one's opponent's thighs is **hipe.**

—, Greek. A name for a public place in ancient Greece where wrestling, etc., was taught and practised is **palaestra.**

—, —. A name for the athletic contest of ancient Greece which combined wrestling with boxing is **pancratium.**

—, Japanese. The name of the Japanese form of wrestling is **jiu-jitsu.**

wrestling, style. Names for the style of wrestling in which nearly every hold, as well as tripping, is allowed, a fall being obtained by making both shoulders of one's opponent touch the ground at the same time, the representative of the ancient Greek wrestling and of the wrestling of the Middle Ages, are **catch-as-catch-can, Lancashire,** and **free style.**

. The name for a style of wrestling in which a fall is obtained by causing both shoulders and one hip of one's opponent, or both hips and one shoulder, to touch the ground, the wrestlers wearing loose linen jackets, is **Cornwall and Devon** or **West Country style.**

wrestling, style. The style of wrestling in which a hold is taken before the bout starts, and in which the object is to cause any part of the opponent's body, other than his feet, to touch the ground, is the **Cumberland and Westmorland style** or **North Country style.**

—, —. The name for a style of wrestling in which the holds are above the waist and tripping is prohibited, a fall being obtained by touching both shoulders of one's opponent on the ground at the same time, is **Graeco-Roman style.**

yachting. *See section* Army, Navy, Air Force, and Nautical.

WIRELESS TELEGRAPHY AND TELEPHONY

accumulator. The quantity of electricity a fully-charged accumulator will give out—expressed or measured in ampère-hours—is the accumulator's **capacity.**

admittance. The unit of measurement for electrical admittance is the **mho.**

aerial. Another name for an aerial is **antenna.**

—. A name for an aerial whose length is several times the wave-length to be received, but which is only a few feet high, is **beverage aerial.**

—. An aerial sending out waves in, or receiving them from, one direction in a greater degree than others is a **directional aerial.**

—. The name given to a kind of aerial stretched on a frame free to turn on its axis, and thus capable of being faced in any desired direction, is **frame aerial.**

ampère. The thousandth part of an ampère is a milli ampère.

atmosphere. A name for an assumed upper layer of the atmosphere, believed to be the cause of fading, reflection, etc., is **Heaviside layer.**

battery. The name given to a storage battery comprising one or more secondary cells is **accumulator.**

—. The unit of a battery is a **cell.**

—. A group of primary cells connected in series to give a pressure of fifteen volts or more is a **high tension battery.**

beam. The system of sending wireless or telephonic messages by waves concentrated on the receiver in the form of a beam is **beam-wireless.**

broadcasting. The apparatus receiving sounds to be broadcast and passing these on to the transmitter as modifications of continuous electric waves is a **microphone.**

capacity. Units used to measure the capacity of a condenser are the **farad** and its one-millionth part, the **microfarad.**

cell. A number of cells joined together forms a **battery.**

—. A cell which generates electricity is a **primary cell.**

—. A cell which does not generate electricity but stores up current with which it is charged is a **secondary cell.**

circuit. A continuous electric circuit is a **closed circuit.**

—. An electric circuit broken at some point, and therefore not continuous, is an **open circuit.**

—. A circuit taking current from a battery, generator, or other source of supply is a **primary circuit.**

—. A name given to a valve circuit having a high frequency amplifying valve which also acts as a low frequency amplifying valve is **reflex circuit.**

—. An oscillating circuit so tuned as to exclude oscillations of a particular nature which it is not desired to receive is a **rejector circuit.**

—. A circuit in which a current is induced by an adjacent primary circuit is a **secondary circuit.**

circuit. An alternative path of very low resistance presented to a current is a **short circuit.**

coil. The name for an inductance coil connected in series with an aerial to increase the latter's wave-length is **loading coil.**

condenser. The quantity of current a condenser will take up and store is its **capacity.**

—. A name for a condenser of which the capacity is constant is **fixed condenser.**

—. The name given to a type of condenser of variable capacity in which the angle of rotation of the moving plates is proportional to the square of the condenser's capacity is **square-law condenser.**

—. A condenser of which the capacity can be readily altered by changing the relative positions of its plates is a **variable condenser.**

crystal. The natural sulphide of lead largely used for the crystal detector in a crystal set is **galena.**

— A crystal which naturally has the property of rectifying an alternating current is a **natural crystal.**

current. Abbreviations for "alternating current" and "direct current" respectively are **A.C.** and **D.C.**

—. A current of which the direction changes continually and regularly is an **alternating current.**

—. The unit of electric current is the **ampère,** the quantitative unit being the **ampère-hour.**

—. A current that flows in one direction only is a **continuous current** or **direct current.**

—. The force which produces or tends to produce electric currents is **electromotive force,** abbreviated **E.M.F.**

—. A name for a current whose magnitude varies regularly but whose direction remains constant is **pulsating current.**

—. A gap in a wireless transmitting circuit over which the current sparks is a **spark-gap.**

—, alternating. A complete sequence in the pulsations of an alternating current, involving one flow of current in each direction, is a **cycle.**

—, change. The name given to an apparatus for changing the voltage of an alternating current or for converting alternating electric currents into continuous, and vice versa, is **transformer.**

—, passage. A substance which allows the passage of an electric current or presents low resistance to it is a **conductor.**

—, regulation. Names given to an instrument for keeping the flow of current in a circuit constant without reference to slight changes in voltage are **barretter** and **ballast tube.**

—. *See also* **circuit,** *above.*

cycle. The number of complete sequences through which an alternating current passes in one second is its **frequency.**

detector. A name given to a filament of metal for making contact with a crystal in a detector is **cat's whisker.**

—. The name of an early device used for detecting wireless waves by means of the magnetic effect on iron filings is **coherer.**

detector. The name given to a kind of rectifier or detector making use of a mineral crystal is **crystal detector.**

—. The crystal detector or the thermionic valve used in wireless reception, which causes the waves to travel in one direction only, is a **rectifier.**

disturbance, electrical. The name given to waves originated by electrical disturbances in the air is **atmospherics.**

electricity. The flow or passage of electric energy along a conductor is a **current.**

—. *See also sections* Physics *and* Engineering.

electrode. The name given to the third electrode in a three-electrode valve, consisting usually of a coil of wire enclosing the filament, is **grid.**

energy. The sending out of energy by means of oscillations in a conductor, these setting up electric waves which pass through the ether, is **radiation.**

—, conversion. A machine, such as a dynamo, which transforms mechanical energy into electrical energy is a **generator.**

filament. A resistance placed in the circuit of a filament heated by a battery in order to limit the voltage in the filament is a **filament resistance.**

force. The abbreviation for electromotive force, the force which produces or tends to produce electric current, is **E.M.F.**

frequency. Frequencies which fall within the range capable of being perceived by the human ear are **audio-frequencies.**

—. The term used to denote the set of oscillations resulting from the superimposing of one alternating current on another of a different frequency is **beat.**

—. Frequency is measured by the unit of 1,000 cycles, the **kilocycle.**

—. Frequencies too high to be perceptible to the human ear, used for radio transmission, are **radio-frequencies**

grid. The name given to a resistance in the grid circuit of a three-electrode valve which permits any accumulated charge on the grid to pass away is **grid-leak.**

inductance. The unit of inductance is the **henry,** its millionth part being the **microhenry.**

inductance coil. An inductance coil tuned by means of tappings, or lengths of wire attached at intervals to be brought into circuit, is a **tapped coil.**

induction. The name given to a casing proof against induction is **screen.**

interference. The sending out of signals which cause interference with signals from another source is **jamming.**

—. A name for interference caused by the incorrect adjustment of broadcast receivers is **oscillation.**

magnetic field. The exciting of a magnetic field in a conductor by a current flowing through it is **inductance.**

message. Names for a message sent by wireless telegraphy are **aerogram** and **radiogram.**

microphone. A microphone depending for its action on the varying resistance of carbon granules under the variable air pressure produced by sound waves is a **carbon microphone.**

—. The name for a microphone in which use is made of a coil of wire free to vibrate in a magnetic field and thus to generate electrical currents is **magnetophone.**

opposition. The name given to opposition offered to an alternating current, as by a choke coil, is **impedance.**

—. The name given to the opposition which an electric circuit presents to the flow of current is **resistance**

oscillation. The name given to the wire or wires, stretched high above the ground, upon which wave oscillations are received to pass thence to a wireless set is **aerial.**

oscillation. The name given to a set of oscillations produced by waves of two different transmitting stations superimposed is **beat oscillations.**

—. The rate of oscillation of an alternating current, usually expressed per second, is its **frequency.**

—. The name of an oscillator used to regulate the frequency of oscillations in wireless telegraphy is **independent drive.**

—. The causing of high frequency oscillations to pass in one direction only through a receiving circuit is **rectification.**

—. Oscillation set up in a receiving circuit by the employment of reaction in excessive degree is **self-oscillation.**

—. Movements in the ether caused by oscillations set up in an electrical circuit by an alternating current are **waves.**

pole. That pole of a battery, etc., having the lower potential, towards which the current flows, is the **negative pole.**

—. That pole of a battery, etc., having the higher potential, from which the current flows, is the **positive pole.**

potential. Difference of potential between the poles of a source of electricity measured or expressed in volts is **voltage.**

power. The units by which electrical power is measured are the **watt,** and its thousandfold multiple, the **kilowatt.**

pressure. Difference of pressure between the poles of an electrical apparatus is **potential difference** or **potential.**

—. The unit by which electrical pressure is measured is the **volt.**

protective device. A piece of wire which melts readily and so interrupts the current in a circuit when the current exceeds a predetermined strength is a **fuse.**

receiver. A receiver connected in such a way with an aerial that the operator can tell from which direction signals are coming is a **direction finder.**

—. The apparatus in the telephone or loud speaker of a receiving set by which variations in continuous waves vibrate a diaphragm and produce sound waves is a **microphone.**

reception. The name given to a method of receiving continuous wireless waves in which the oscillations of a transmitting station are superimposed on local oscillations of a different frequency, so that a third set of oscillations is produced, is **beat reception.**

—. A name for a method of reception in which a local oscillator is used to produce oscillations on which the incoming oscillations are superimposed to produce beat oscillations is **heterodyne reception.**

resistance. The name given to a coil designed to offer opposition or impedance to alternating current is **choke.**

—. A substance, such as one used as an insulator, which offers a high resistance to the passage of an electric current is a **dielectric.**

—. The opposition which a resistance offers to an alternating current is **impedance.**

—. A material which offers a very high resistance to the passage of the electric current is an **insulator.**

—. The unit of measurement for electrical resistance is the **ohm,** one million ohms being a **megohm.**

—. The name given to a kind of resistance which can be varied in strength is **rheostat.**

signal. An apparatus consisting of a number of valves used to increase the strength of the signals received from a transmitting station is an **amplifier.**

—. The dying away or variation in strength of a signal received from a transmitting station is **fading.**

—. The reception in a receiver of signals other than those of the desired station is **interference.**

signal. A name for a system of dots and dashes or long and short signals, used in the telegraphic transmission of letters, numerals, etc., is **Morse code.**

—. The adjusting of a receiving circuit so that it receives signals of a particular wave-length is **tuning.**

space. The name given to the hypothetical medium pervading space, through and by means of which waves are transmitted, is **aether** or **ether.**

switch. The name given to a plug switch allowing several connexions to be made simultaneously is **jack.**

symbol. The symbol (—) used to mark a negative electric terminal, and also terminals on a wireless set to be connected with this, is the **minus, or minus sign,** and that (+) marking a positive terminal is the **plus,** or **plus sign.**

telegraphy, wireless. An apparatus for determining the point of the compass from which wireless telegraphic signals come is a **direction-finder** or **radio-goniometer.**

—, —. A network of insulated wires on poles used in place of the earth at some transmitting stations for wireless telegraphy is an **earth-screen** or **counterpoise.**

—, —. The machine generating alternating current for wireless telegraphy is the **high frequency alternator.**

—, —. A system of wireless telegraphy by means of the electric arc is the **Poulsen arc system.**

—, —. A system of wireless telegraphy in which a series of independent short oscillations are transmitted is the **quenched spark system.**

—, —. A telegram sent by wireless is a **radio-telegram.**

—, —. Another name for wireless telegraphy is **radio-telegraphy.**

time signal. An instrument which sends out time signals by electricity is a **chronopher.**

transmission. The name given to the blocking of wireless transmission by sending out impulses of the same wave-length is **jamming.**

vacuum tube. The name of a form of vacuum tube used for creating, detecting, and magnifying electric oscillations is **thermionic valve.**

valve, thermionic. In a thermionic valve the plate electrode, which attracts electrons emitted from the cathode, is the **anode.**

—, —. A thermionic valve in which the filament must be heated to a bright glow in order to secure normal working is a **bright emitter.**

—, —. In a thermionic valve that electrode from which electrons are sent out, usually the filament, is the **cathode.**

—, —. A name for a thermionic valve used for detecting or rectifying high-frequency oscillations is **detector valve.**

—, —. A thermionic valve having only two electrodes—a filament and a plate—is a **diode.**

—, —. A thermionic valve constructed to give normal emission when the filament is heated to a dull red glow is a **dull emitter.**

valve, thermionic. The name given to the cathode in a thermionic valve, consisting usually of a thin wire, is **filament.**

—, —. The name given to the third electrode in a three-electrode thermionic valve is **grid.**

—, —. A thermionic valve exhausted to a very high degree is a **hard valve.**

—, —. A name for a small type of receiving valve is **peanut valve**.

—, —. The anode in a thermionic valve, consisting usually of a cylinder of metal, is the **plate.**

—, —. The name for a thermionic valve, used specially as a detector, in which the casing contains a residue of gas, is **soft valve.**

—, —. A name for a thermionic valve having four electrodes (a filament, two grids and an anode) is **tetrode.**

—, —. Another name for a three-electrode thermionic valve is **triode.**

voltage. The name given to voltage applied to the grid of a three-electrode valve so as to regulate its potential is **grid-bias.**

—. A relatively high voltage such as that used for the plate electrode of a three-electrode thermionic valve is **high tension voltage.**

— A relatively low voltage such as is used for the filament of a thermionic valve is **low tension voltage.**

— The name given to the method of using a thermionic valve in which the plate circuit currents are made to react on the grid circuit is **reaction.**

—. The name given to an apparatus, consisting of a primary and a secondary circuit, used to change the voltage of an alternating current is **transformer.**

wave. The name given to an oscillation or wave such as that used in wireless, which enables speech and music to be heard in suitable receivers, is **carrier wave.**

—. Successive waves in which the amplitude remains the same are **continuous waves.**

—. An apparatus which generates and sends out electric waves is a **transmitter.**

—. The interval between the peaks of two following electric waves is the **wave-length.**

wave-length. A receiver which can be adjusted to wireless signals of differing wave-lengths is a **harmonic receiver.**

—. A coil placed in a circuit to increase the wave-length of the circuit is a **loading coil.**

—. The varying of the inductance and capacity of a receiver so that it receives signals from a transmitter of a particular wave-length is **tuning.**

wire, elevated. Names given to the elevated wire used for sending out or receiving the waves in wireless telegraphy or telephony are **aerial** and **antenna.**

wireless. directional. The name given to a form of wireless telegraphy in which the waves are directional, travelling in one selected direction only, is **beam-wireless.**

ZOOLOGY

(See also ANATOMY AND PHYSIOLOGY)

abdomen. Parts of an animal situated on or near the abdomen are **ventral.**

air-bladder. Names for the air-bladder which enables a fish to rise or sink in the water are **sound** and **swim-bladder.**

air-sac. Names for an air-filled sac in some compound hydrozoa are **pneumatocyst** and **pneumatophore.**

air-tube. The name given to an air tube in an insect or an arachnid is **trachea.**

alligator. The name given to a tropical American reptile allied to and resembling the alligator, but having undivided nostrils and connected armour on the back, is **caiman** or **cayman.**

alligator. A name given to a South-American reptile allied to and resembling the alligator and caiman is **jacare.**

—. *See also under* **crocodile,** *below.*

amoeba. The name given to the process by which lowly forms of life like the amoeba take into themselves food particles is **inception.**

—. The finger-like protrusions of the amoeba are **pseudopodia.**

amphibian. Those amphibians which retain their gills throughout life are **perennibranchiate.**

—. The name of a genus of blind, eel-like amphibians living in subterranean waters in Jugo-Slavia is **proteus.**

amphibian, extinct. The name given to an extinct giant amphibian animal, the teeth of which present a labyrinth-like appearance when seen in cross-section, is **labyrinthodon.**

animal. A name for a group of vertebrate animals, adapted to live both on land and in water, the young of which usually have gills and a fish-like form, including frogs, toads, newts, and salamanders, is **amphibians.**

—. A name for a group of arthropod animals including the spiders, scorpions, and mites is **arachnids.**

—. Animals that live mainly in trees are **arboreal.**

—. A name for a group of invertebrate animals with jointed legs, such as insects, spiders, and crabs, is **arthropods.**

—. A name given generally to amphibians, especially to the group consisting of the frogs and toads, is **batrachians.**

—. An animal that has two feet, as distinguished from a quadruped, is a **biped**

—. A name for a group of feathered, egg-laying, vertebrate animals having the fore-limbs developed as wings is **birds.**

—. A name for a group of molluscan animals having a well-developed head region, with a beaked mouth surrounded by tentacles, is **cephalopods.**

—. A name for the group of marine animals comprising the whale and porpoise is **cetaceans.**

—. Animals such as the hydrozoans, jelly-fishes, sea-anemones, corals, and Ctenophora, which have no body cavity distinct from the digestive cavity, are classed in the division **coelenterata.**

—. An animal consisting of a branching structure with a number of bud-like polyps which form a colony is **compound.**

—. A name for a group of arthropod animals having a crust-like shell, including the crabs, lobsters, shrimps, and barnacles, is **crustaceans.**

—. The animals found in any region or living during any epoch are the **fauna.**

—. A name for a group of vertebrate animals living in the water and breathing through gills, which are retained throughout life, is **fishes.**

—. An animal which reproduces by division into new individual cells or organisms is **fissiparous.**

—. A name for a group of molluscan animals having a head-like extension of the body, a rasping tongue ribbon, and a foot, including the snails and slugs, is **gasteropods.**

—. The earliest stage in the existence of an animal is the **germ.**

—. Animals that live in herds or flocks are **gregarious.**

—. The name of a group of six-legged arthropod animals, having the body divided in three sections, and breathing by tracheae, is **insects.**

—. The name of the group of animals that suckle their young is **mammals.**

—. A name for the group of mammals the females of which have a pouch in which the young are kept for a time after birth is **marsupials.**

—. A name for a group of animals in which the body consists of a mass of cells, as distinguished from the one-celled animals or protozoans, is **metazoans.**

—. The name given to a group of invertebrate animals including cuttlefishes, snails, slugs, tooth-shells, and bivalves, is **molluscs.**

—. The name for the group of egg-laying mammals comprising the platypus and the porcupine ant-eater is **monotremes.**

—. The name given to a member of an extinct group of Australian pouched mammals with large front incisors is **nototherium.**

—. The branch of science dealing with the habits and mode of life of animals and their relation to their surroundings is **oecology.**

animal. A term used of the musk-ox, an animal resembling a small ox, but with teeth, hair, and horns showing its relation to the sheep, is **ovibovine.**

—. Animals, such as birds, fishes, amphibians, and many reptiles, that produce their young by means of eggs are **oviparous.**

—. A name for an animal or plant living on or in another organism and drawing its food directly from it is **parasite.**

—. A name given to a group of minute, worm-like, aquatic animals, either flat or tubular, is **planarians.**

—. A name given to a coelenterate aquatic animal, such as the hydra, or to each of the individuals in a compound animal or hydroid, is **polyp.**

—. A name for the group of mammals including man, the monkeys, and the lemurs is **primates.**

—. The name for the lowest division of animal life, including all the one-celled organisms, is **protozoans.**

—. An animal that has four feet, especially a mammal, is a **quadruped.**

—. A name for the group of cold-blooded, vertebrate animals having scaly skins, including the snakes, lizards, crocodiles, turtles, etc., is **reptiles.**

—. The name given to a group of gnawing animals having incisors but no canine teeth is **rodents.**

—. Names given to a group of minute, aquatic animals with swimming organs appearing to have a rotary movement are **rotifers,** and **wheel-animalcules.**

—. A name for the group of ungulate animals which chew the cud, including antelopes, deer, goats, oxen, and sheep, is **ruminants.**

—. A name given to a group of slow-moving, tree-living animals of South America is **sloths.**

—. Animals that live alone or in pairs are **solitary.**

—. A name given to a group of compound, marine animals with numerous pores in the body-wall is **sponge.**

—. The name given to a group including all hoofed mammals is **ungulates.**

—. Those animals, including mammals and some reptiles, that do not lay eggs, but bring forth their young alive are **viviparous.**

—. A name given to various low types of plant-like animal life is **zoophytes.**

—, abnormal. A name for an animal which differs notably from the normal type is **sport.**

—, compound. A name for a compound animal is **hydroid.**

—, —. The presence of a multiplicity of parts, as in a coral or other compound animal, is **polymerism.**

—, dissection. The scientific dissection of animals in order to learn their construction is **zootomy.**

—, experiments. The practice of using living animals for scientific experiments is **vivisection.**

—, extinct. A name for the branch of science dealing with extinct and fossil animals and plants is **palaeontology.**

—, flesh-eating. Animals that eat or live on flesh are **carnivores** and are described as **carnivorous.**

—, grain-eating. Animals, especially birds, that live upon grain or seeds are **granivorous.**

—, insect-eating. Animals that feed upon insects are **insectivorous.**

—, invasion. A name for an abnormal invasion of a region by animals is **visitation.**

—, life. The science which deals with the external life of animals and plants, including the habits and customs of living things, is **bionomics.**

—, —. The name given by the German naturalist, Haeckel, to the lowest forms of animal and plant life, regarded as a related group, was **protista.**

—, night-roaming. An animal that naturally roams about at night is **noctivagant or noctivagous.**

animal, plant-eating. Animals that feed on plants are **herbivorous.**

—, preservation. A place, artificially prepared, where living animals, reptiles, etc., are kept as far as possible in a natural state as objects of interest or study is a **vivarium.**

—, protection. A name for an area of land or water set apart for the protection of game or fish, especially for purposes of sport, is **preserve.**

—, —. A name for an area of country where wild animals are allowed to live in a natural state without being shot or trapped is **sanctuary.**

—, travel. The travelling of animals from one region to another, especially in large bodies, is **migration.**

—, young. The name given to the undeveloped form of a young animal while in the egg, or before it has started an independent existence, is **embryo.**

animalcule. The name given to a kind of minute protozoan animal is **heliozoan.**

— The name given to a class of minute animalcules which develop in infusions of decaying organic matter is **infusoria.**

— The name given to a group of small water animalcules which bear swimming organs having the appearance of rapidly-moving wheels is **rotifers.**

ant. An acid found in a fluid occurring in the bodies of ants, and in the stings of bees, wasps, etc., is **formic acid.**

—. A name for an ant-hill and for a vessel in which ants are kept for observation is **formicary.**

— Names for an imperfectly developed female ant with no wings, specialized for doing the work of the nest, are **neuter** and **worker.**

—. The name given to the fully-developed egg-laying female in a nest of ants is **queen.**

—. A name for a worker or neuter ant with elongated or powerfully developed jaws, specialized to protect the community, is **soldier.**

—, white. The name given to an insect, resembling the true ants in its habits, which builds large mounds of earth as communal nests is **termite.**

ant-eater. Another name for the great ant-eater, the largest of the family, is **ant-bear.**

—. The name given to the small, four-toed ant-eater is **tamandua.**

antelope. The name given to a kind of antelope with long spirally twisted horns and a white body, found in northern Africa and Arabia, is **addax.**

—. A term used to describe antelopes which are goat-like in appearance is **capriform.**

—. The name given to a large, ox-like, African antelope with twisted horns is **eland.**

—. A name for kinds of small, graceful antelope of Africa and Asia, having a white streak on each side of the head, is **gazelle.**

—. Names given to an ox-like African antelope with boldly-curved horns are **gnu** and **wildebeest.**

—. The name of a kind of antelope with ringed and curved horns, found in South Africa, is **hartebeest.**

— The name given to a small South African antelope is **klip-springer.**

—. The name of a water-loving West African antelope is **kob.**

—. The name of a species of striped antelope common in East Africa is **kudu.**

—. The name of a small, South African antelope with a light-grey coat and horns inclined somewhat to the front is **reebok.**

—. The name of an antelope found in the steppes of Eastern Europe and Western Asia, and distinguished by its large and bloated nose, is **saiga.**

—. The name of a small Indian antelope is **sasin.**

antelope. The name of a large South African antelope resembling the hartebeest, and having a dark reddish-brown coat, is **sassaby.**

antennae. Club-shaped antennae which grow thicker towards the apex are **clavate.**

—. Antennae that are jointed or contracted at regular intervals like a string of beads are **moniliform.**

—. Feathery antennae are **plumose.**

—. In insects the first and most conspicuous joint of the antennae, at the base, is the **scape**

—. Pointed bristles on antennae are **styliform.**

antler. A name for the main stem of the antler of a stag is **beam.**

—. Organs, such as the antlers of stags, etc., which are shed at certain seasons are **deciduous.**

—. A name for the flattened part of an antler is **palm.**

—. A term used of broad, flat antlers with finger-like projections, such as those of the fallow deer, moose, etc., is **palmated.**

—. A name for a prong or spike of an antler is **tine.**

—. A name for the soft, hairy covering of an antler which peels off at maturity is **velvet.**

ape. A term used of the highest apes, including the gorilla, chimpanzee, and orang-utan, which are man-like in appearance, is **anthropoid.**

—. A West African, man-like ape having very large ears, darker hair than the gorilla, and teeth and arms approximating to those of man is the **chimpanzee.**

—. A slender, long armed, Asiatic ape, the smallest of the man-like apes, is the **gibbon.**

—. The largest and strongest of the man-like apes, having a massive body and limbs is the **gorilla**

—. A name given to the tail-less Barbary ape is **magot.**

—. An Asiatic man-like ape, of massive build, with long reddish-brown hair, and a longer muzzle than the gorilla, is the **orang-utan.**

—. *See also* **baboon** *and* **monkey,** *below.*

ape-man. A name for the ape-man, a species of less than human type, represented by fossil remains found in strata of the first Ice Age, is **pithecanthrope.**

aphis. Another name for the aphis is **plant-louse.**

—. Names given to either of the two tubes on the abdomen of an aphis, through which honey-dew may be discharged, are **siphuncle** and **siphonet.**

arachnid. The name of an arachnid animal found in warm countries, having lobster-like claws and a jointed flexible abdomen ending in a sting, is **scorpion.**

—. A name given to various blood-sucking parasitic arachnids and insects is **tick.**

—. The name of the tubular breathing organ of an arachnid and of an insect is **trachea.**

—. The name given to a type of fossil marine animal having a body divided into three lobes, and thought to be a link between crustaceans and arachnids, is **trilobite.**

ascidian. An outgrowth from the body of an ascidian on which a new individual forms is a **stolon.**

—. The name given to the class of lowly marine organisms to which the ascidians belong is **tunicates.**

ass, wild. The name given to the large, wild ass of Tibet, marked with dark stripes on its back, is **kiang.**

—, —. The shy, swiftly-running wild ass of the Asiatic deserts is the **onager.**

—, —. The name for a South African wild animal, intermediate between the wild asses and the zebras is **quagga.**

auk. Another name for the great auk, now extinct, is **gare-fowl.**

aurochs. Another name for the aurochs, or extinct wild ox, is **urus.**

baboon. A name given to the pig-faced baboon of South Africa is **chacma.**

—. A name for a large and ferocious West African baboon with a scarlet snout and large, bright blue swellings on either cheek is **mandrill.**

back. Any organ which relates to, is situated on, or belongs to the back or to the upper surface of the body of an animal is **dorsal.**

backbone. Any backboneless animal is an **invertebrate.**

—. A name for a band of cartilage which takes the place of the backbone in some primitive fishes is **notochord.**

—. Any backboned animal is a **vertebrate.**

badger. A term used of badgers, bears, and other carnivorous animals that keep the sole of the foot on the ground when walking is **plantigrade.**

—. The name of a carnivorous animal related to the badger, found in India and South Africa, is **ratel.**

—. The native name for the stinking badger of Java and Sumatra is **teledu.**

bat. A term used to describe a wing-footed animal such as a bat, is **aliped.**

—. Bats are classed together as **Chiroptera.**

—. Names given to kinds of large, fruit-eating bat, having a fox-like snout and frequenting tropical parts, are **flying fox, fox-bat,** and **fruit-bat.**

—. A name given to the Malay fox-bat, the largest of the bats, is **kalong.**

—. A name for the wing membrane of a bat or other flying mammal is **patagium.**

—. A common reddish-brown insect-eating bat of Europe is the **pipistrelle.**

—. The only bat common in both the eastern and the western hemispheres is the **serotine.**

—. A species of bat common in both the eastern and the western hemispheres is the **serotine.**

—. A name for a bat of Central and South America with sharp incisor teeth, which sucks the blood of sleeping cattle, horses, etc., is **vampire-bat.**

beak. A term used to describe a bird's beak turned inwards at the tip is **aduncate.**

—. A slender flattened beak is a **bill.**

—. The central ridge on the upper mandible of a bird's beak is the **culmen.**

—. A sharp-edged, pointed beak, shaped like a pruning-knife, is **cultrate.**

—. A beak or bill vertically flattened is **depressed.**

—. A name given to a hard knob on a bird's beak or a reptile's snout, with which it breaks its way out of the egg, is **egg-tooth.**

— The distance between the upper and lower tips of a bird's beak when opened is the **gape.**

— A name for the central ridge of the lower mandible of a bird's beak is **gonys.**

—. A name given to both the upper and the lower parts of a bird's beak is **mandible.**

— The term applied to a beak-shaped part or process is **rostrate.**

—. A spoon-shaped beak, such as that of the duck, is **spatular** or **spatulate.**

—. A term applied to the grooved or fluted beak of a bird is **sulcate.**

—. *See also under* **bird,** beak, *below.*

bear. A term used of bears and other carnivorous animals that keep the sole of the foot on the ground when walking is **plantigrade.**

bee. The most familiar of the wild bees, distinguished by its large size and noisy hum, is the **bumble-bee** or **humble-bee.**

—. A stingless male bee which gathers no honey, and is supported by the workers, is a **drone.**

—. The name of a kind of bee which nests among or in stones is **lapidary bee.**

— Names for the type of imperfect female bee, forming the majority in a hive, and employed in gathering honey, or building combs, etc., are **neuter** and **worker-bee**

bee. The resinous cement with which bees fix their combs in place is **propolis.**

—. The one perfect female which lays eggs from which a new brood develops in an ordinary community of bees is the **queen-bee.**

beetle. The name given to a horny substance in the outer covering of beetles and crustaceans is **chitin.**

—. A common lamellicorn beetle, usually of reddish-brown colour and very destructive to vegetation, is the **cockchafer.**

—. Beetles are classed together in the order **Coleoptera.**

—. A name for a small beetle which burrows in old woodwork and makes a ticking noise is **death-watch.**

—. Beetles in which the tarsi of the first and second legs have five joints, and the tarsi of the hindmost legs have four joints, belong to the division **Heteromera.**

—. Any one of a group of beetles in which the antennae end in leaf-like joints is a **lamellicorn.**

—. To beetles of the family Cerambycidae, distinguished generally by possessing long antennae, is applied the name **longicorn.**

—. The name given to a tribe of soft-skinned beetles including the glow-worm is **malacoderms.**

belly. Any organ, etc., which relates to, is situated on, or belongs to the belly or to the under surface of the body of an animal is **ventral.**

bill. *See under* **beak,** *above.*

bird. The name given to the group of vertebrate animals that comprises the birds is **Aves.**

—. A name for a large cage in which birds are kept is **aviary.**

—. The birds inhabiting a particular region are its **avifauna.**

—. A term used of short-footed birds is **breviped.**

—. A term used of birds having a keel or ridge to the breastbone is **carinate.**

—. A name given to undigested food, skins, bones, etc., thrown up by a bird of prey is **cast.**

—. A name for a number of birds, etc., flying together is **flight.**

—. A term used of birds of the order Gallinae, including the domestic fowl and most game-birds, is **gallinaceous.**

— A term used of long-legged wading birds is **grallatorial.**

—. A term used of web-footed, or swimming birds, is **palmiped.**

— A term used of birds whose feet are specially adapted for perching, including most of the song-birds, is **passerine.**

—. A term used of predatory birds is **raptorial.**

—. A term used of birds having the habit of scratching the ground for food, like the fowl, is **rasorial.**

—. A term used of flightless birds which have a keel-less breastbone is **ratite.**

—. A term used of a bird resembling a starling, or belonging to the starling family—Sturnidae—is **sturnoid.**

—, beak. A name given to the naked, wax-like skin at the base of the beak of many birds is **cere.**

—, —. Birds having a cultrate or knife-shaped beak, as the heron and stork, are **cultrirostral.**

—, —. Birds having a beak curved downwards, such as the curlews, are **curvirostral.**

—, —. Birds having the upper mandible of the beak notched near the tip are **dentirostral.**

—, — Birds that have deeply cleft mouths are **fissirostral.**

—, —. A term used to describe birds having a wide or broad beak is **latirostral.**

—, —. *See also under* **beak,** *above.*

—, breastbone. Names for a central ridge along the breastbone of certain birds are **carina** and **keel.**

bird, extinct. Names for an extinct diving bird of northern seas having white underparts and a large patch of white on its black head are **gare-fowl** and **great auk**.

—, —. The name of an extinct wingless water bird the remains of which have been found in the U.S.A. is **hesperornis**.

—, —. The name of an extinct kind of toothed bird is **ichthyornis**.

—, —. A name for a large, wingless bird, formerly abundant in New Zealand but now extinct, is **moa**.

—, eye. A name for a comb-like membrane of the eyeball of birds and certain reptiles is **pecten**.

—, feather. *See under* **feather,** *below*.

—, fly-catching. The name of a fly-catching bird of brilliant plumage found in tropical America is **jacamar**.

—, foot. A term used to describe a short-footed bird is **breviped**.

—, head. A name for the cap-like patch of colour on the head of certain birds is **calotte**.

—, —. Names for the red fleshy crest on the head of a fowl are **comb** and **caruncle**.

—, —. Birds having prominent feathers forming a crest on the top of the head are **coronate, crested,** or **pileated**.

—, —. That part of a bird's head from the root of the bill to the nape is the **pileum**.

—, insectivorous. The name of an insectivorous woodland bird found in New Zealand is **huia**.

—, larynx. A name for the lower larynx by means of which birds sing is **syrinx**.

—, leg. The name given to a hard pointed projection found on the legs of some birds is **spur**.

—, —. In birds the shank of the leg is the **tarsus**.

—, —. The name given to the shin-bone of a bird, which merges with some of the tarsal bones, is **tibio-tarsus**.

—, long toed. The name of a long-toed marsh bird of the genus *Parra* found in tropical regions is **jacana**.

—, pouch. The pouch in a bird's throat which receives food when first swallowed is the **crop** or **ingluvies**.

—, running. The name of a genus of small running birds, found only in South America, which resemble the ostrich is **rhea**.

—, science. The branch of zoology which deals with birds generally is **ornithology**.

—, sea. The largest of all sea-birds is the **albatross**.

—, —. The name for a member of a group of dark-plumaged predatory sea-birds related to the gulls is **skua**.

—, shore. The name of a common shore bird of the gull family is **kittiwake**.

—, stomach. The muscular second stomach of birds, in which the food is ground after being softened in the first stomach, is the **gizzard**.

—, toe. The hind toe of a bird when it rests on the ground, as the bird is standing, is **incumbent**.

—, —. A name given to a bird with its toes arranged on a level, as in pigeons, is **peristeropod**.

—, —. Birds having the toes arranged in pairs, two projecting forward and two backward, are **zygodactylous**.

—, tropical. The name of a tropical American bird with an enormous beak and brilliant plumage is **toucan**.

—, —. The name of a family of tropical and subtropical birds remarkable for their gorgeous plumage is **trogon**.

—, wading. The name of a water-side bird with a long, curved beak, nearly related to the storks and herons, is **ibis**.

—, —. The name of a South American wading bird belonging to the stork family is **jabiru**.

—, —. The name of a small South African wading bird which builds a huge three-chambered domed nest is **umbrette**.

bird, wing. A name given to a bird, such as the penguin, having short wings useless for flight is **brevipen**.

—, —. The muscles that keep the wings of a bird in motion are the **flight-muscles**.

—, —. A term used of birds, such as the penguin, having short wings with scale-like feathers is **impennate**.

—, —. A term used of birds having broad wings is **latipennate**.

—, —. Birds having long wings are **macropterous**.

—, —. A name for the outer segment of a bird's wing bearing the flight-feathers is **pinion**.

—, —. A name for a bright patch of colour found on the wings of certain birds is **speculum**.

—, young. A young bird whose feathers are not sufficiently developed for it to fly is a **fledgeling**.

—, —. Birds whose young are able to feed and look after themselves directly after they are hatched are **praecocial**.

bivalve, shell. A name for one of the divisions of the shell of a bivalve is **valve**.

blackness. Excess of colouring matter in birds and animals, producing unusual blackness of feathers, hair, etc., is **melanism**.

bladder. A general name for the air-bladder of a fish or water-animal is **float**.

—. A name given to the swim-bladder of a fish is **sound**.

blenny. A name for the smooth blenny is **shanny**.

blood. The name given to minute animal parasites found in the blood is **haematozoa**.

bloodhounds. A name for the hanging upper lip of bloodhounds and other dogs is **flews**.

blow-hole. A name for the blow-hole or nostril of a whale is **spiracle**.

blubber. A name given to the blubber or oil-yielding fat of whales and seals is **speck**.

body, under surface. The under surface of the body of any animal is the **ventral side**.

—, upper surface. The upper surface of the body of any animal is the **dorsal side**.

bone. A name for a bone found in the shoulder girdle of birds and reptiles is **coracoid**.

—. A name for the forked bone, popularly called the merrythought and wishbone, formed below the neck of a bird by the united clavicles, is **furcula**.

—. A square-shaped bone in reptiles and birds at the point where the lower jaw is hinged to the skull is the **quadrate bone**.

breathing. The name given to a tubular organ found in some molluscs and in cephalopods, used for breathing or propulsion, is **siphon**.

—. Names for each of the external openings connected with the tracheae or breathing organs of insects are **spiracle, stigma,** and **stoma**.

—. A name for the tubular breathing organ of an insect is **trachea**.

breathing-hole. A name for the breathing-hole of the whale and of certain fishes, including the dog-fish, is **spiracle**.

breeding. The branch of biology which treats of the breeding of animals and plants is **thremmatology**.

budding. Reproduction by the development of bud-like outgrowths from the parent body, as in the case of polyps and hydra, is **gemmation**.

—. A name for reproduction by budding is **proliferation**.

bull. A term used to describe animals belonging to the bull genus is **taurine**

butterfly. A term applied to a butterfly's wing having two eye-like markings is **biocellate**.

—. Names for the early form of a butterfly after leaving the egg, and before becoming a pupa, are **caterpillar** and **larva**.

— Names for the inactive form of a butterfly when enclosed in a case, from which it emerges as a perfect insect, are **chrysalis** and **pupa**.

butterfly. The perfect butterfly that emerges from the chrysalis or pupa is the **imago.**

—. The order in which butterflies and moths are classed is the **Lepidoptera.**

—. The series of changes undergone by the butterfly, during its development from egg to imago, or winged adult, are its **metamorphosis.**

—. A name for each of the veins or tubular thickenings in a butterfly's wing is **nervure.**

—. A name for each of the scales on a butterfly's wing is **plumule.**

—. The name applied to a butterfly belonging to a division the individuals of which have only four perfect legs is **tetrapod.**

cachalot. Another name for the cachalot is **sperm whale.**

canary. The name of a small greenish finch of Central Europe related to the canary is **serin.**

case. The name given to a shell or to a hard case or covering is **test.**

cat. Any animal of the cat family is a **felid** or **feline animal.**

—. The name of a large, heavily-built animal of the cat family with bearded cheeks and tufted ears is **lynx.**

— tailless. A name for a tailless cat with long hind legs, common on the Isle of Man, is **Manx cat.**

— wild. The name of a wild cat of South and Central America, somewhat resembling the weasel in appearance, is **jaguarondi.**

—, —. A name for a South and Central American wild cat. marked and coloured like a tiger, is **margay.**

— —. The name for a small wild cat of tropical America, somewhat resembling the leopard, is **ocelot.**

—, —. The name of a tawny, black-spotted wild cat of Africa is **serval.**

caterpillar. A name for the envelope spun or constructed by the caterpillar to enclose it during the chrysalis state is **cocoon.**

— The name given to caterpillars of moths belonging to the order Geometridae, and having no legs in the middle part of the body, is **looper.**

— A name for a small tuft of hairs, such as that on a caterpillar, is **penicil.**

—. A name given to a fleshy, leg-like process on the abdomen of certain caterpillars is **proleg.**

—. The name for the tubular organ used by some caterpillars in producing a thread for making the cocoon is **spinneret.**

cattle. The name for a rudimentary hoof above the true hoof of cattle and other ungulates is **dew-claw.**

cell. A name for an animal organism consisting of a single cell is **monoplast.**

—. An organism consisting of several or many cells is **multicellular.**

— The name given to a minute cell, produced by budding or fission, which develops into a new individual is **spore.**

—. An organism consisting of a single cell is **unicellular.**

—, division. The process or act by which a cell divides into new individuals by cleavage is **fission.**

—, —. The act or process by which cells of plant or animal tissue separate into divisions is **segmentation.**

—, stinging. A name for a stinging cell in polyps and medusae is **cnida.**

—, —. The name for the sac containing the thread-like sting in a stinging cell of polyps and medusae is **nematocyst.**

cephalopod. The name given to the tubular organ in a cephalopod through which water is drawn in and expelled to propel the animal is **siphon.**

chamois. The name given to the chamois of the Pyrenees is **izard.**

change. A changing of form or structure, or both, as part of the life history of certain animals is a **metamorphosis.**

char. The name of a red-bellied char found in the rivers and lakes of North Wales is **torgoch.**

civet. The name of a civet-like animal found in Borneo, Java, and West Africa is **linsang.**

—. The name given to the smallest of the civets is **rasse.**

clam. A name for the hard or round clam, a North American bivalve mollusc used as food, is **quahaug.**

—. A name given to the giant clam is **taclobo.**

—. The name of a genus of very large bivalve molluscs, including the giant clam, is **Tridacna.**

classification. The name for a group of animals next in classification below a phylum, and above an order, is **class.**

—. The name given to a subdivision of animals between an order and a genus, comprising a single genus or several genera, is **family.**

— The name given to a group into which animals with similar main features are classified, comprising one or more species, and ranking below a family or subfamily, is **genus.**

—. The name for a number of families of animals or plants very closely related, forming a classification below a class or subclass, is **order.**

—. The name for a primary group of animals or plants regarded as having structural similarities and a common ancestry, ranking below a subkingdom and above a class, is **phylum.**

—. The name given to a group of animals next below a genus, differing from each other only in minor details, is **species.**

—. A primary subdivision of a family in the classification of animals, ranking above a genus, is a **subfamily.**

— A name for a subdivision of a genus ranking above a species is **subgenus.**

—. The name for one of the chief or primary divisions in the classification of animals ranking above a phylum is **subkingdom.**

—. Names for the subdivisions of the animal kingdom generally adopted by zoologists in descending order are **subkingdom, phylum, class, order, family, genus,** and **species.**

The following is a tabular review of the animal kingdom, showing the subkingdoms and phyla, and type animals for each group.

PROTOZOA

Vorticella, Polytoma, Amoeba

Simplest forms of animal life, mostly one-celled organisms.

INVERTEBRATA (Metazoa)

Invertebrata, Chordata, and Vertebrata comprise the subkingdom Metazoa (multicellular organisms).

Diploblastica (two germinal layers).

PORIFERA.—Sponges.

COELENTERATA.—Hydra, Medusa, sea-anemones, corals, ctenophores.

Triploblastica (three germinal layers).

PLATYHELMINTHES.—Fluke, tapeworm, planarians.

NEMATHELMINTHES. — Threadworms, roundworms.

ANNELIDA.—Segmented worms: earthworm, leech, lob-worm.

ECHINODERMATA. —Starfish, sea-urchin, sea-cucumber.

ARTHROPODA.—Segmented animals with jointed limbs: crustaceans, insects, myriapods, arachnids.

MOLLUSCA.—Snails, shellfish, cuttles, nautilus.

CHORDATA (Metazoa)

Animals having a notochord, permanently or only in the embryo stage.

HEMICHORDA. — Balanoglossus, etc. (worm-like marine animals).

UROCHORDA (Tunicates). — Ascidians or sea squirts.

CEPHALOCHORDA.—Amphioxus or lancelet.

Hemichorda, Urochorda, and Cephalocorda, which have no skull, are called *Acrania*

VERTEBRATA (Metazoa)

Animals having a backbone or vertebral column.

Cyclostomata (round-mouthed fishes).—Lamprey, hag-fish.

Pisces.—Fishes.

Amphibia.—Amphibians.

Reptilia.—Reptiles.

Aves.—Birds.

Mammalia.—Mammals.

a. PROTOTHERIA.—Monotremes, or egg-laying mammals (Duckbill and echidna).

b. METATHERIA.—Marsupials, or pouched mammals (Kangaroo, opossum, phalanger, etc.).

c. EUTHERIA.—Mammals which are neither monotremes nor marsupials. *Cetacea*, or sea-mammals; *Edentata*, sloths, ant-eaters, armadillos; *Sirenia*, manatee, dugong; *Ungulata*, hoofed mammals; *Rodentia*, gnawing mammals; *Carnivora*, flesh eaters; *Insectivora*, insect eaters; *Chiroptera*, bats; *Primates*, lemur, monkeys, man.

climate. The study of the influence of climate, etc., on the life and development of animals and plants is **phenology**

club-footed. The term used to describe animals which are club-footed, or have the feet twisted in an unusual position, such as the sloths, is **taliped.**

club-shaped. Any organ or part of an animal, such as a hair or antenna, which is club-shaped or broadened at the end is **clavate** or **claviform.**

cobra. Another name for the king cobra, a poisonous cobra-like snake of India and Malaya, is **hamadryad.**

cod. A food-fish resembling the cod, but having a projecting lower jaw and imperfectly-developed barbel, is a **pollack.**

colony. The presence of a multiplicity of parts, as in a colony of zooids, is **polymerism.**

—. A name given to low types of invertebrate animals, mostly marine, which live in compound masses or colonies is **polyzoa.**

colour. A name given to an animal of much paler colour than the normal type, due to a deficiency of colouring matter, is **albino.**

—. The name given to the bright green colouring matter found generally in plants, and occurring in some of the lower animals, is **chlorophyll.**

—. Those parts of an animal that are of the same colour are **concolorous.**

—. Brightly coloured animals and birds which tend to produce two of the primary colours, but not the third, in their colouring are **dichromatic.**

—. Excess of colouring matter in birds and animals, producing unusual blackness of feathers, hair, etc., is **melanism.**

—. The resemblance in colour, etc., of one insect or other organism to another usually of an unrelated species is **mimetic.**

—. The colouring of an animal when resembling or blending with its surroundings and serving as a means of concealment is **protective colouring.**

—. The name for diversity of colouring in the fur of animals, the plumage of birds, etc., is **variegation.**

—. Strongly contrasted and conspicuous colours on the bodies of certain animals, believed to act as warnings to possible enemies, are **warning colours.**

comb. A name for the fleshy comb of a fowl is **caruncle.**

comb-like. Scales or other parts of an animal that have a comb-like margin, are **ctenoid.**

—. A name for a comb-like part or process in the body of an animal is **pecten.**

coral Names for the group of animals in which the corals and sea-anemones are classed are **actinozoa** and **anthozoa.**

—. Names for the hard, cup-like part containing the polyp in corals are **calicle** and **theca.**

—. A name for each of the cavities inhabited by the polyp in coral is **calyx.**

—. A name for the central pillar or stem in the middle of the cup or cavity of some corals is **columella.**

—. Coral-forming animals are **lithogenous.**

—. The name given to a form of coral studded with star-shaped cavities is **madrepore.**

—. A name for each of the hard, upright partitions, or accessory septa, in the interior cavity of a coral is **palus.**

—. The presence of a multiplicity of parts, as in a coral or hydrozoan colony, is **polymerism.**

—. A name for each of the individual organisms that build and inhabit the hard tissues of coral is **polyp.**

—. A name for each of the partitions projecting towards the centre of the calyx of a coral is **septum.**

—. A name for a root-like creeping growth in coral and other compound organisms is **stolon.**

—. A term used of certain corals having horizontal partitions or plates is **tabulate.**

corresponding. Corresponding parts in different animals or plants are **homologous.**

cow. *See under* **ruminant,** *below.*

crab. Names given to a small kind of crab that waves its larger claw as if beckoning or playing the fiddle are **calling crab** and **fiddler crab.**

—. The name given to crabs of a type which lives in the abandoned shells of whelks, etc., is **hermit-crab.**

—. A name for each of the pincers of a crab is **mandible.**

—. A name given to a small kind of crab living as a commensal inside bivalves is **pea-crab.**

—. A name given to kinds of crab with long, thin legs is **spider-crab.**

—. *See also under* **crustacean,** *below.*

crane-fly. The name given to the larva of the crane fly is **leather-jacket.**

crested. Animals having a crest or tuft of hairs are **cristate.**

cricket. A term used to denote the making of the characteristic creaking noise of the cricket, etc., is **stridulation.**

crocodile. The name for a reptile allied to and resembling the crocodile, but having a shorter and broader head, is **alligator.**

—. The name given to an Asiatic reptile allied to and resembling the crocodile, but having a very long and slender snout with many teeth, is **gavial.**

—, extinct. The name given to an extinct animal resembling the crocodile is **teleosaurus.**

—. *See also under* **alligator,** *above.*

crop. A name given to the crop of birds is **ingluvies.**

cross-breeding. A cross produced by interbreeding animals of different species is a **hybrid.**

crustacean. Crustaceans, such as the sand-hopper, which possess two kinds of legs, adapted respectively for swimming and walking, are **amphipodous.**

—. The name given to the group of crustaceans that includes the hermit-crabs is **anomurans.**

—. The hinder pair of feelers of a crustacean are **antennae,** and the front pair, generally shorter, are the **antennules.**

—. The name given to a group of decapod crustaceans with short tails, including the crabs, is **brachyurans.**

crustacean. A name for certain small crustaceans having gills on leg-like appendages is **branchiopods.**

—. The name given to a horny substance in the outer covering of crustaceans and beetles is **chitin.**

—. Names given to small, round pellets of carbonate of lime formed in the stomach of some crustaceans when about to moult are **crab's-eyes** or **crab-stones.**

—. The name for the group in which crustaceans are classed is **Crustacea.**

—. The name given to a group of crustaceans, members of which have five pairs of legs, including crabs and lobsters, is **decapods.**

—. The name given to one of the main divisions of Crustacea, contrasted with malacostracans, is **entomostracans.**

—. A name given to a group of crustaceans members of which have seven pairs of legs of almost the same length is **isopods.**

—. A name given to a crustacean with large or long legs or feet is **macropod.**

—. A name given to a group of decapod crustaceans having a long body and tail, including lobsters and shrimps, is **macrurans.**

—. The term used to distinguish crustaceans with relatively soft shells is **malacostracan.**

—. A name for each of the jointed sense organs attached to the mouth parts in crustaceans and insects is **palp.**

—. A name given to a group of crustaceans having cleft feet, such as the opossum-shrimp, is **schizopods.**

—. The name given to one of the hard segments which make up the jointed bodies of crustaceans is **sclerodermite.**

—. A term used of a group of crustaceans having the eyes mounted on projecting parts, or peduncles, is **stalk-eyed.**

—. The name given to the last segment or joint in the abdomen of crustaceans is **telson.**

—. The name given to a type of fossil marine animal having a body divided into three lobes and thought to be a link between crustaceans and arachnids is **trilobite.**

cuckoo, Eastern. The name of an eastern bird of the cuckoo family is **koel.**

cuckoo-spit. The froth called cuckoo-spit is formed for the purpose of protection by the larva of the **frog-hopper.**

cud-chewing. An animal that chews the cud is a **ruminant.**

cuttle. A black fluid secreted by the cuttle is **sepia.**

deer. The name given to the group of ruminant animals in which deer are classed is **Cervidae.**

—. Names given to Old and New World varieties respectively of a large deer of northern forests are **elk** and **moose.**

—. The small European deer with palmated antlers and a brown coat dappled with white is the **fallow-deer.**

—. A male red deer, especially one five or more years old, is a **hart.**

—. A female of the red deer is a **hind.**

—. A kind of small wild deer native to Europe and Asia is the **roe,** or **roedeer.**

—. The name of a kind of large deer found in the forests of India and Ceylon is **sambur.**

—. A name given to a female fallow deer, or to the doe of the red deer in its second year is **teg.**

—. A large North American deer nearly related to the European red deer is the **wapiti.**

—. *See also under* **antler,** *above.*

descent. A term used of the order of descent in the development of species is **succession.**

development. A name given to the development of complicated forms of animal and plant life from simple forms is **evolution.**

—. The name of a theory that each type of living creature originated from several independent forms is **polygenesis.**

development, backward. The tendency in animals and plants to revert to ancestral forms, in a kind of backward development, is **regression.**

—, —. Development in a backward direction, from a higher type to a lower, is **retrogression.**

—. *See also under* **evolution, Mendelism, and species,** *below.*

digging. An animal with feet or other organs adapted for digging is **fossorial.**

digit. *See under* **finger** *and* **toe,** *below.*

dingo. The native name for the dingo or Australian wild dog is **warrigal.**

dinosaur. The name of a kind of giant three-horned dinosaur is **triceratops.**

distribution. The science which deals with the local distribution of animals is **chorology.**

—. The six regions used in comparing the distribution of animals and plants according to Sclater and Wallace are the **Palaearctic, Ethiopian, Oriental, Australian, Nearctic,** and **Neotropical.**

dividing. A name for the dividing of an organism into new individuals by cleavage is **fission.**

dog. The name for a rudimentary toe hanging loosely on the inner side of the hind foot of some dogs is **dew-claw.**

—, wild. A name given to the wild dog of India is **dhole.**

dolphin. Names for a member of the dolphin family which preys upon whales and large fish are **grampus** and **killer-whale.**

dormancy. The name given to the state of dormancy or slumber in which some animals spend the summer or driest season is **aestivation.**

dormouse. A name given to a kind of dormouse found in southern Europe is **loir.**

down. A name given to the downy covering, or first formed plumage, of newly hatched birds is **floccus.**

duck. The name given to the group of birds in which ducks, geese, and swans etc. are classed is **Anatidae.**

—. A name given to a large duck of northern seas, having white plumage above and black below, valued for its down, is **elder.**

—. A name for a large brown-coloured freshwater duck, slightly smaller than the mallard, and having a more elongated body, is **gadwall.**

—. A name for a freshwater duck slightly larger than the common teal, which it resembles, is **garganey.**

—. A name for the common wild duck of Great Britain and other countries of the northern hemisphere is **mallard.**

—. The name given to kinds of fish-eating duck with a toothed edge to the upper mandible is **merganser.**

—. The name of a large brightly-coloured bird of the duck family which breeds in burrows on sand-dunes near the sea is **sheldrake.**

—. A name given to a small freshwater duck of Europe having a green patch on each side of the head is **teal.**

—. The name given to the modified lower end of the trachea in ducks, which forms a resonance cavity, is **tympanum.**

dugong. The order of sea-mammals containing the dugong and manatee is **Sirenia.**

earthworm. The name given to the group of segmented worms including the earthworms is **annelids.**

—. The coil of earth pushed up by an earthworm is a **cast.**

eel. A name for a migration of young eels up a river from the sea is **eel-fare.**

—. A name for a young eel is **elver.**

egg. The germ of an animal while in the egg, or while in an early stage of development, is the **embryo.**

—. A name for the study of birds' eggs and for the scientific description of them is **oology.**

egg. A name for the organ of an animal in which eggs are produced is **ovary.**

—. A term used of the sacs, or little receptacles, in which some lower animals carry their eggs is **oviferous.**

—. An animal producing its young by means of eggs is **oviparous.**

—. A name for a tubular organ by means of which many insects deposit their eggs is **ovipositor.**

—. A name for an egg of small size, as of fishes and insects, is **ovum.**

eight-armed. An animal with eight arms, limbs, or rays is **octobrachiate.**

elephant. The name given to a large extinct mammal resembling the elephant, but having its tusks curved downwards, is **dinotherium.**

—. A name for a very large extinct elephant with upward curved tusks and long hair is **mammoth.**

—. The name given to a genus of extinct elephants distinguished by rounded projections on the molar teeth is **mastodon.**

—. The name given to the group of animals comprising the elephants is **proboscidians.**

—. A name given to an elongated, snout-like organ, such as the trunk of an elephant, is **proboscis.**

evening. A term used of bats, owls, etc., that fly in the evening and sleep during the day is **vespertine.**

evolution. Another name for the theory of evolution is **development theory.**

—. A name given to an intermediate type in the scale of evolution is **intercalary type.**

—. *See also under* **species,** *below.*

eye. The form of eye with many hexagonal facets present in insects and the higher crustaceans, etc., is a **compound eye.**

—. A name given to each of the tiny, simple eyes of insects is **ocellus.**

—. Names given to each of the stalk-like parts to which the eyes of some crustaceans, etc., are attached are **ophthalmic stalk,** and **pedicel.**

eyelid. The winker or "third eyelid" of a horse, dog, etc., is a **haw.**

falcon. A large falcon, native of the northern regions, is the **gerfalcon.**

—. A small falcon with black and yellowish plumage, visiting England in summer, is the **hobby.**

—. The commonest of British falcons is the **kestrel** or **windhover.**

—. A long-winged bird of prey of the falcon family is the **kite.**

—. A small species of British falcon, formerly used in falconry, is the **merlin.**

—. The name of a falcon which preys on large birds, and was formerly much used in falconry, is **peregrine falcon.**

—. *See also under* **hawk,** *below.*

fan-shaped. Terms used to distinguish a fan-shaped organ or part are **flabellate** and **flabelliform.**

feather. Each of the narrow side pieces projecting from the central rib or rachis, and forming the vane of a feather, is a **barb.**

—. The hollow horny stem extending below the rachis of a feather is the **barrel, calamus,** or **quill.**

—. The outer feathers of a bird's body that determine its contour are the **contour-feathers.**

—. A name for the short feathers covering the bases of the longer quill feathers in a bird's wings and tail is **coverts.**

—. A name for the soft, fine feathers of young birds, and for similar feathers beneath the contour-feathers of adult birds, is **down.**

—. Each of the long, stiff feathers, both primaries and secondaries, in a bird's wing, which direct its flight, is a **flight-feather** or **retrix.**

—. A name for the long, narrow, shining feathers on the neck of the domestic cock and certain other birds is **hackles.**

feather Names for an eye-spot on a bird's feather are **ocellus** and **speculum.**

— A scientific term meaning provided with feathers, resembling a feather or group of feathers, or downy, is **plumose.**

—. Each of the long flight-feathers attached to the inner bone of a bird's wing is a **primary.**

—. The four-sided central shaft, filled with pith, on two opposite sides of which the barbs of a feather are borne, is the **rachis.**

—. A name given to the whole shaft of a feather is **scape.**

—. Each of the long flight-feathers attached to the outer bone of a bird's wing is a **secondary.**

—. Each of the feathers that originate from the humerus of a bird's wing is a **tertiary.**

—. Names given to the surface formed by the barbs of a feather are **vane, vexillum,** and **web.**

fin. Fins situated on the lower part of the side of a fish's body towards the tail, are **anal.**

—. The tail fin of a fish is the **caudal fin.**

—. Fins situated on or near the back of a fish are **dorsal.**

—. Fins attached to the shoulder girdle of a fish, in the fore part of the body close behind the gills, are **pectoral.**

—. Fins situated on the under part of a fish's body are **pelvic** or **ventral.**

—. A term used of an animal having fin-like limbs, such as the seal, is **pinniped.**

—. A bony rod supporting the fin of a fish is a **ray.**

—. Another name for the dorsal, anal, and caudal fins of a fish is **vertical fins.**

—, soft. A term used to describe fish having soft fins is **malacopterygian.**

—, spiny. A term applied to fish, such as the mackerel, bass, etc., that have spines in the fins, is **acanthopterygian.**

—, ventral. A fish without ventral fins is **apodal.**

finger. The scientific name for a finger or a toe is **digit.**

—. Animals that have fingers or toes separated are **fissidactylous.**

—. A web between the fingers or toes is **interdigital.**

—. Animals that have only one finger or toe to each limb are **monodactylous** or **unidigitate.**

—. Animals that have five fingers or toes to each limb are **pentadactylous.**

—. Animals that have more than the usual number of fingers or toes to each limb are **polydactylous.**

—. Animals that have some or all of their fingers or toes on a limb entirely or partly jointed are **syndactylous.**

—. Animals that have three fingers or toes to each limb are **tridactylous.**

fish. Fish inhabiting the ocean depths below the two thousand fathom line are **abyssal.**

—. Fish that leave the sea and swim up rivers to spawn are **anadromous.**

—. A beard-like filament hanging from the jaws, chin, or nostrils of certain fishes is a **barbel.**

—. The name given to a part of the skin near the head of certain scombroid fishes bearing large scales is **corslet**

—. A name given to a group of fishes having a circular sucking mouth, with no lower jaw, and six or more gills on each side, including the lamprey, is **cyclostomes.**

—. The name given to a group of fishes having nostrils inside as well as outside the mouth, regular gills, and a single or double lung, including the lung-fish, is **dipnoans.**

—. The name given to a group of cartilaginous fishes, having no membrane bones to the skull, including the sharks, rays, etc., is **elasmobranchs.**

—. A name given to a group of fishes having enamel-coated scales and single gill openings, including garpikes and sturgeons, is **ganoids.**

—. The tails of fishes in which the two lobes are the same size are **homocercal.**

fish. The branch of zoology which deals with fishes is **ichthyology.**

—. A name given to a group of fishes having tuft-like gills and imperfect gill arches, including the sea-horses, is **lophobranchs.**

—. The name given to a kind of fish which clings to rocks by means of a powerful sucker is **lump-fish** or **lump-sucker.**

—. The name given to certain kinds of fish with lung-like organs is **lung-fish.**

—. The name given to the group of vertebrate animals which comprises the fishes is **Pisces**

—. A scientific name for a flat-fish, such as the sole, flounder, plaice, etc., is **pleuronectid.**

—. The name of a kind of large, flat fish, some species of which attain a width of eighteen feet across, is **ray.**

—. The name of a Mediterranean sucking fish of the genus *Echeneis* is **remora.**

—. The name of a Mediterranean food-fish with front teeth adapted for cutting and side teeth resembling molars is **sar.**

—. The name of a sea fish with a long, sharp beak, allied to the garfish, is **saury.**

—. A large number of fish swimming in company is a **shoal.**

—. The name given to a group of fishes including those which have a skeleton of true bone is **teleosteans.**

—, bony. The name of a large ganoid fish with a bony plated body and a projecting snout, found on both sides of the Atlantic, is **sturgeon**

—, extinct. The name of the branch of palaeontology dealing with extinct fishes is **palaeichthyology.**

—, —. The name given to an extinct ganoid fish with blunt, knot-like teeth on palate and jaws is **pycnodont.**

—, game. The name of a game fish found in Indian rivers is **mahseer.**

—, —. The name of a large game fish with silvery scales inhabiting the South Atlantic is **tarpon.**

—, lake. The name of a kind of fish found only in Irish fresh-water lakes is **pollan.**

—, scale. The term used to describe scales, peculiar to certain fishes, which are notched at the edge is **ctenoid.**

—, —. The term used to describe scales, peculiar to certain fishes, which are not notched at the free edges is **cycloid.**

— —. The term used to describe fish scales consisting of a bony plate with a coating of enamel is **ganoid.**

—, —. Scales arranged over one another like the tiles of a roof, as in the carp, are **imbricate.**

—, —. The term used to describe plate-like fish scales that do not overlap, such as those of the ray, shark, and hag, is **placoid.**

—, young. A name for young fishes fresh from the spawn is **fry.**

—. *See also under* **fin,** *above, and* **gill,** *below.*

flat-worm. The name given to different kinds of flat-worm which infest the intestines of animals is **tape-worm.**

flesh-eating. A name given to a flesh-eating animal is **carnivore.**

flipper. An animal that walks by means of flippers or fins, as the seal, is a **pinnigrade.**

flounder. A name given to a small fish, related to the flounder is **lemon-dab.**

fly. The name given to the group of insects, comprising the true flies, members of which have two membranous wings, a hinder pair of balancers, and a suctorial proboscis, is **Diptera.**

—. A name given to any of the Diptera or true flies is **dipteran.**

—, blood-sucking. The name of a blood-sucking South African fly, which transmits parasites causing a disease fatal to domestic animals, is **tsetse.**

—. *See also under* **insect,** *below.*

foot. An animal that has two feet, as distinguished from a quadruped, is a **biped.**

—. A term used of animals that walk on the toes and do not rest the whole sole of the foot on the ground, including dogs, cats, etc., is **digitigrade.**

—. An animal having many feet is **multipedous.**

—. A term used of carnivorous animals that keep the sole of the foot on the ground when walking is **plantigrade.**

—. An animal that has four feet, especially a mammal, is a **quadruped.**

—. An insect or crustacean having oar-like feet is a **remiped.**

—. A term used to describe animals that are club-footed, or have the feet twisted naturally in an unusual position, such as the sloths, is **taliped.**

foraminifer. Shells, such as those of foraminifera, consisting of many cells or chambers are **polythalamous.**

form. A change of form or structure, especially that undergone by an insect before reaching maturity, is a **metamorphosis.**

—. The science treating of the forms of animals and plants and their structural development is **morphology.**

—. A name for the process of changing to a new form in animals and plants, is **neomorphism.**

—. A type of animal that has been modified in form or structure by the conditions of recent environment is **neonomous.**

—. An organism, such as the amoeba, which changes its form continually is **polymorphic.**

fowl. A name for the fleshy comb on the head of a fowl is **caruncle.**

—. The bird from which our domesticated fowls are descended is the Indian **jungle-fowl**

fox. A name given to a small fox of the Asiatic steppes is **corsac.**

—. A name given to a small African fox having large, pointed ears is **fennec.**

frog. The animals of the class including frogs, toads, newts, salamanders, etc., which pass through a fish-like larval stage in which they breathe with gills, are **amphibians.**

—. A name given especially to animals, such as frogs and toads, which have gills and tail in the larval stage but discard them later is **batrachians.**

—. A name given to the eggs of frogs, together with the mass of jelly-like substance in which the eggs are enveloped, is **spawn.**

—. The name for a frog, toad, or newt in the larval stage is **tadpole.**

frog-hopper. The popular name for a protective froth with which the larvae of the frog-hopper surround themselves while feeding on plants is **cuckoo-spit.**

game-bird. A very large, black game-bird of the grouse kind, found in Scandinavia, Scotland, etc., is the **capercaillie** or **capercailzie.**

— A name for a game-bird found in Africa, Asia, and Oceania, resembling a partridge but with a longer bill and tail, is **francolin.**

—. A term used of domestic poultry, pheasants, partridges, grouse, etc., is **gallinaceous.**

—. The name of a migrating game-bird, allied to the partridge, which visits Britain in the spring is **quail.**

—. The name of a Chinese and Indian game-bird with brilliant plumage and fleshy horns is **tragopan.**

genus. Animals which belong to the same genus are **congeneric.**

—. A division of an order comprising a group of like genera is a **family.**

—. Two genera connected by common characters are **osculant.**

—. A genus which exhibits the essential characteristics of a family or other higher group named after it is a **type-genus.**

gibbon. The name given to the largest of the gibbons is **siamang.**

gill. An animal without gills is **abranchial.**

—. Animals which have gills, such as fishes, are **branchiate.**

—. The name given to certain small crustaceans having gills on the appendages is **branchiopods.**

—. Fishes having plate-like gills are **elasmobranchiate.**

—. Nerves or blood-vessels situated below the gills of a fish are **hypobranchial.**

—. Fishes of a group including the sea-horses, having gills arranged in tufts, are **lophobranchiate.**

—. An amphibian, such as the proteus, which retains its gills throughout life, is **perennibranchiate.**

gill-arch. The name of a bone in the human tongue which is regarded as a relic of the gill-arch of primitive fish-like ancestors is the **hyoid.**

goat. The names of a goat-like animal with upstanding horns, found in the Alps, in North-east Africa, and in Asia, is **ibex.**

—. A name for a spiral-horned wild goat of the Himalayas is **markhor.**

—. The name of a short-horned wild goat of India is **tahr** or **thar**

goldfinch. The name of a small migratory song-bird, allied to the goldfinch, is **siskin.**

grain-eating. An animal that feeds on grain is **granivorous.**

grampus. Another name for the grampus, a cetacean belonging to the dolphin family, is **killer-whale.**

grasp. The thumbs and great toes of the anthropoid apes, which can be opposed to the other digits for grasping, are **opposable digits.**

—. Organs adapted for seizing or grasping are **prehensile.**

—. Animals, such as some monkeys, which can grasp with all four feet are **quadrumanous.**

—. The name given to a long, slender organ of aquatic animals, used for grasping food, is **tentacle.**

grasshopper. An insect, common in southern Europe, which makes a shrill noise like that of a grasshopper is a **cicada.**

—. The popular name given to certain grasshoppers of North America is **katydid.**

—. The chirping of a grasshopper, produced by rubbing wing and femur together, is an example of **stridulation.**

group. A name for a group, division, or subspecies of animals, sprung from a common stock, and preserving certain characteristics, is **race.**

grouse. The male of the black grouse is the **black cock,** and the female the **grey hen.**

—. The name given to a kind of grouse found on the continent of Europe is **hazel-hen.**

—. The name of a species of grouse inhabiting mountainous regions of northern Europe and having white plumage in winter is **ptarmigan.**

gull. A British gull with red legs, and in summer a dark-brown head, is the **brown-headed gull** or **laughing gull.**

—. A large species of British gull, chiefly white and grey in colouring, is the **herring gull.**

—. The name of a common British gull with rudimentary hind toes is **kittiwake.**

hair. A name for a small, hair-like vibrating process on the surface of the body of one of the lower animals, serving for locomotion, etc., is **cilium.**

—. A name for a flexible, thread-like, or hair-like appendage found on many of the lower animals, and used for grasping, locomotion, or as an organ of touch, is **cirrus.**

—. A term used to describe those hairs of burrowing animals which are club-shaped or flattened at the ends is **claviform.**

—. A name for the long hair on the neck of some animals, such as the horse and lion, is **mane.**

hair. A term applied to hair-like parts of animals is **piliform.**

—. The skin of an animal, if covered with hair, especially soft hair, is **pilose.**

hand. Animals, as monkeys, which can use any of their four feet as hands, are **quadrumanous.**

hare. A young hare in its first year is a **leveret.**

hawk. A short-winged hawk found on the continent of Europe is the **goshawk.**

—. The name given to hawks of the genus *Circus*, which prey on small birds, is **harrier.**

—. A common British hawk, which preys on small birds, is the **sparrow-hawk.**

—. *See also under* **falcon,** *above.*

heart. Birds and mammals which have a double heart, that is, with the right and left sides quite separate, are **diplocardiac.**

hedgehog, Madagascar. The name of a small nocturnal insectivorous mammal of Madagascar, sometimes called a hedgehog, is **tanrec.**

herd. Animals that live in herds or flocks are **gregarious.**

heredity. The inheritance from an ancestor of certain peculiarities not present in intervening generations is **atavism.**

—. The science dealing with the problems of heredity is **genetics.**

—. The name given to the theory of Mendel relating to the laws of heredity, or the inheritance of characteristics, in animals, is **Mendelism.**

—. *See also under* **Mendelism** *below.*

herring. Fishes of the herring family, with soft fins, compressed bodies, and large bony plates over the jaws, are **clupeoid fishes.**

—. A name given to certain species of herring that ascend rivers is **shad.**

home. The natural home of an animal is its **habitat.**

honey. An animal that eats honey is **mellivorous.**

hoof. Animals, such as oxen, which have divided hoofs are **cloven-hoofed.**

—. The soft pad in the hollow of a horse's hoof is the **cushion.**

—. A name for a hoofed animal, such as the ox, having two toes on a limb is **didactyl.**

—. An animal having a single, solid hoof to each foot is a **soliped** or **solidungulate.**

— Hoofed mammals, as cattle, sheep, deer, swine and horses, are **ungulate.**

—, rudimentary. A name for a rudimentary hoof above the true hoof in cattle and other ungulates is **dew-claw.**

horn. A name for the second branch of a stag's horn or antler is **bay.**

—. An animal, such as an ox, having hollow horns is a **cavicorn.**

—. Parts of animals which are of a horn-like nature are **corneous.**

horse. A name for a white marking on the face of an ox or horse is **blaze.**

—. The sloping part of a horse's back above the tail is the **croup.**

—. The name for the tuft of hair at the back of a horse's foot just above the hoof, and also for the projecting part on which the tuft grows, is **fetlock.**

—. A name for the young of the horse, and also of other equine animals, is **foal.**

—. The tender elastic substance in the middle of the sole of a horse's foot is the **frog.**

—. The lower joint in the hind leg of a horse is the **hock** or **hough.**

—. A name for the wild horse of the American prairies is **mustang.**

—. The part of a horse's foot between the hoof and the fetlock is the **pastern.**

—. The name of a genus of extinct animals related to the horse is **Protohippus.**

—. Each of the two bones of a horse's leg that reach from the knee to the fetlock is a **splint** or **splint-bone.**

—. The upper joint in the hind leg of a horse is the **stifle joint.**

horse. The name given to the extinct wild horse of Tatary, or to wild descendants of the domestic horse in that region, is **tarpan.**

—. A name for the ridge at the junction of the shoulder-bones of a horse is **withers.**

hough. The large tendon at the back of the hough in quadrupeds is a **hamstring.**

hybrid, Mendelian. *See under* **Mendelism,** *below.*

hydrozoan. A name given to a stalk of a hydrozoan from which polyps grow is **stolon.**

—. An individual bud-like organism which separates itself from a hydrozoan and starts an independent existence is a **zooid.**

individual. The history of the development of an individual organism from the germ is **ontogeny.**

insect. The part of the body of an insect below the thorax is the **abdomen.**

—. The feeler-like organs of sense found in pairs on the head in insects and shell-fish are **antennae.**

—. The branch of science dealing with insects and insect life is **entomology.**

—. A name for an insect, such as the May-fly, that lives only for a very short time in the perfect stage is **ephemera.**

—. A true insect, or six-legged anthropod, is a **hexapod.**

—. Animals that feed on insects are **insectivorous** or **entomophagous.**

—. The name for the change of form which most insects undergo in the course of their development is **metamorphosis.**

—. The abdomen of an insect when joined to the body by an extremely slender part is **pedunculated.**

—. Insects that live on plants, or are plant-eating, are **phytophagous.**

—. In insects, the middle division of the body is the **thorax.**

—, air-tube. An opening in the body-wall of certain insects connecting with a trachea or air-tube is a **spiracle, stigma** or **stoma.**

—, —. The name given to an air-tube in an insect or an arachnid is **trachea.**

—, antennae. The term applied to antennae of certain insects, which are club-shaped at the extremity, is **claviform.**

—, —. A term used to describe the hatchet-shaped antennae of certain insects is **dolabriform.**

—, blood-sucking. A name given to various parasitic blood-sucking arachnids and insects is **tick.**

—, eye. Each of the pair of large eyes possessed by most insects, consisting of a number of separate organs each covered by a transparent hexagonal facet, is a **compound eye.**

—, —. Each of the simple eyes found in addition to the two compound eyes on the heads of certain insects is an **ocellus.**

—, leaf-eating. A term applied to a group of leaf-eating insects, including the saw-flies and allied bees and wasps, is **phyllophagous.**

—, leg. The principal parts of the leg of an insect from the point of attachment to the thorax are the **coxa, trochanter, femur, tibia, tarsal segments,** and an adhesive pad or **pulvillus,** between two **claws.**

—, —. The legs of certain insects which have the end segments divided into two parts or points are **dimerous.**

—, metamorphosis. A name given to those insects, such as the cockroach, which have no complete metamorphosis, the larva being very similar to the perfect insect, is **Ametabola.**

—, —. A common name for the larva of a butterfly or a moth is **caterpillar.**

—, —. A name for the pupa of a butterfly or moth, and also for the case enclosing it, is **chrysalis,** or **chrysalid.**

—, —. The envelope of silky threads which often protects the pupa of many insects is a **cocoon.**

insect, metamorphosis. The stages in the metamorphosis of most insects are **egg, larva, pupa,** and **imago.**

—, —. A name given to those insects, such as the dragonfly, which pass directly from the larval stage to that of the imago is **Hemimetabola.**

—, —. A name for a division of insects that go through a complete metamorphosis is **Holometabola.**

—, —. An insect in the final, usually winged, stage of its metamorphosis is an **imago** or **perfect insect.**

—, —. An insect, after it has emerged from the egg, and until it becomes a pupa, is a **larva** or **grub.**

—, —. An insect which remains active during the stage between those of larva and imago, without becoming a pupa, is at this stage a **nymph.**

—, —. An insect in the torpid inactive stage between those of the larva and imago is a **pupa.**

—, mouth. The organ through which a butterfly or like insect sucks up its food is a **haustellum.**

—, —. The name given to the lower " lip " of insects and crustaceans is **labium,** and that given to the upper " lip " is **labrum.**

—, —. A name for each of the tooth-like biting organs of an insect is **mandible.**

—, —. A name for each of the jointed sense-organs attached in pairs to the mouth-parts of insects and crustaceans is **palp** or **palpus.**

—, —. The name given to the elongated mouth-parts in some insects is **proboscis.**

—, nest. A name for the small nest of an insect is **nidus.**

—, order. The name of an order of wingless insects, including the bristle-tails and springtails, is **Aptera.**

—, —. The name of an order of insects, including the beetles, having the fore wings in the form of horny sheaths or elytra is **Coleoptera.**

—, —. Insects having two developed wings, such as flies and gnats, are **dipterous,** and form the order **Diptera.**

—, —. The name of an order of insects in which the outer wings are usually partly leathery and partly membranous is **Hemiptera.**

—, —. Insects with two pairs of membranous wings, as ants and bees, belong to the order **Hymenoptera.**

—, —. Butterflies and moths belong to the order of scaly-winged insects called **Lepidoptera.**

—, —. Insects, such as dragon-flies, having four veined or ribbed wings are classed in the order **Neuroptera.**

—, —. The name of an order of insects, including the locusts, grasshoppers, cockroaches, etc., with leathery, generally straight, fore wings and membranous hind wings, is **Orthoptera.**

—, resin-exuding. The name of a resin exuded by an East Indian insect, *Coccus lacca,* is **lac.**

—, sting. Insects provided with the power to sting as a means of defence are **aculeate.**

—, —. A sting which the insect can draw into and push out of a sheath is **exsertile** or **exserted.**

—, sub-order. Those insects of the order Hemiptera in which there is a marked difference between the fore and hind wings are grouped in the sub-order **Heteroptera.**

—, —. The name given to a sub-order of the Hemiptera, consisting of insects with wings of uniform texture, is **Homoptera.**

—, thorax. The middle section of the thorax of an insect, bearing the second pair of legs and the fore wings, is the **mesothorax.**

—, —. The hindmost part of the thorax of an insect, which bears the third pair of legs and the hind pair of wings, is the **metathorax.**

—, —. The front section of the thorax of an insect, bearing the first pair of legs, is the **prothorax.**

insect, twig-like. A name for various twig-like tropical insects with long, thin bodies and legs is **stick-insect**.

—, **wing**. A name for the horny fore wings or wing-covers of beetles and some other insects is **elytra**.

—, —. An insect having its wings supported by horny, tubular thickenings is **nervose**.

—, —. A name for any of the horny, tubular thickenings supporting the delicate wings of insects is **nervure**.

—, —. A term applied to the hair-like scales on the wings of some small insects is **piliform**.

—, —. The arrangement of nervures in the wings of insects is **venation** or **neuration**.

jaw. That bone in the lower jaw of fishes, batrachians, and reptiles, which bears the teeth is the **dentary**.

—. A name for the lower jaw of mammals and fishes and for either jaw of birds is **mandible**.

—. A name for the upper jaw of a mammal is **maxilla**.

jelly-fish. A name for the stinging cell of jelly-fishes and allied animals is **cnida**.

— The part of a jelly-fish that hangs down in the centre, and has the mouth at its end, is the **manubrium**.

—. A name given loosely to various species of jelly-fish resembling parachutes is **medusa**.

—. A name for the swimming-bell of a jelly-fish or a medusa is **nectocalyx**.

—. The simple or branched filaments which fringe the umbrella of a jelly-fish are **tentacles**.

kangaroo. An animal, such as a kangaroo or opossum, the female of which carries her young about in a pouch or **marsupium**, is a **marsupial**.

—. The name given to several smaller kinds of kangaroo is **wallaby**.

killer-whale. Another name of the killer-whale, a cetacean of the dolphin family, is **grampus**.

kingfisher. The name of a small insectivorous West Indian bird, allied to the kingfisher, is **tody**.

lake. A name given to the study of the plant and animal life of lakes is **limnobiology**.

land and water. Animals adapted to live both on land and in water are **amphibian**.

larva. A common name for the larva of a butterfly or a moth is **caterpillar**.

leg, quadruped. The name given to the joint in a quadruped's hind leg which corresponds to the ankle in man is **hough**.

lemur. The name given to the largest of the Malagasy lemurs is **indri**.

—. The name given to a lemur belonging to a group found in Ceylon and the East Indies is **loris**.

—. The name of a small, large-eyed lemur which lives in Borneo and the surrounding islands is **tarsier**.

—, flying. A name for the wing membrane of a flying lemur is **patagium**.

leopard. A name for the hunting leopard of India is **cheetah**.

—. The name of a large, leopard-like animal found chiefly in Central and South America is **jaguar**.

—. A white or grey leopard with black spots, found in Central Asia, is the **ounce** or **snow leopard**.

life. A term used to denote the hypothetical production of living matter from non-living matter, according to a theory put forward by certain scientists, is **abiogenesis**.

—. The doctrine that all living matter originates only from living matter is **biogenesis**.

—, beginning. The germ of an animal in the egg or in the earliest stage of its development is an **embryo**, and the science which deals with embryos is **embryology**.

limb, swimming. A name for the fin of a fish, and also for the limb used by certain sea-beasts and sea-birds in swimming, is **flipper**.

lion, sabre-toothed. The name of a genus of extinct feline animals containing the sabre-toothed lion or tiger is **Machairodus**.

lizard. The name of a group of Old-World lizards with prehensile tails, having the power of changing colour according to their surroundings, is **chameleon**.

—. The name of a large group of Old-World lizards mainly inhabiting the tropics, of nocturnal habits, is **gecko**.

—. The name of a poisonous American lizard found in Arizona and in Mexico is **heloderm**.

—. The name of a group of large lizards, partially aquatic, is **iguana**.

—. The name given to an Australian lizard having the body covered with spines is **moloch lizard**.

—. The name of the largest kind of living lizard, found in tropical Asia, Africa, and Australia, is **monitor**.

—. A name for the wing membrane of a flying lizard is **patagium**.

—. The name of an amphibian animal of lizard-like form and with brilliant black and yellow markings is **salamander**.

—. The name of one of a group of snake-like lizards, related to the skinks, with rudimentary limbs is **seps**.

—. The name given to a member of a group of short-legged lizards which afford a link between the true lizards and the snakes is **skink**.

—. A common British lizard without legs is the **slow-worm** or **blind-worm**.

—. The name of a lizard-like reptile found in New Zealand is **tuatera** or **tuatara**.

locust, young. A South African name for a young locust which, not having developed its wings, has to crawl along the ground is **voetganger**.

mammal. A name for the highest of the three sub-classes of mammals, including the great majority, is **Eutheria**.

—. The second subclass of mammals consists of the pouched mammals, the **marsupials** or **Metatheria**.

—. The name for the group of egg-laying mammals, the lowest subclass, comprising the platypus and the echidna or spiny ant-eater, is **monotremes** or **Prototheria**.

manatee. The order of sea-mammals containing the manatee and the dugong is **Sirenia**.

manna. The name of a kind of manna containing starch, sugar, and gum, exuded in cocoon form by a beetle found in Asia minor is **trehala**.

marking. Parts of an animal marked with crossing lines like lattice-work are **cancellate**.

—. An animal whose coat is marked with spots or patches of a different shade is **dappled**.

—. Feathers and wings having eye-like markings are **ocellate**.

—. An animal having fine streaks or markings resembling pencil lines is **penicillate**.

marmot. The marmot found in the Alps, Carpathians, and Pyrenees is the **alpine marmot**.

—. A rodent related to the marmot, inhabiting the prairies of North America, is the **prairie dog** or **prairie marmot**.

—. Names of a North American species of marmot are **woodchuck** and **ground-hog**.

marsupial. The name for any member of an Australian group of small marsupials somewhat resembling rabbits and rats is **bandicoot**.

—. The name for any member of a group of flesh-eating Australian marsupials somewhat like cats is **dasyure**.

—. The name given to members of a large family of Australian marsupials, mostly with powerful hind legs adapted for leaping, is **kangaroo**.

—. The name of a small, woolly, tailless, pouched mammal of Australia is **koala**.

—. The name for members of a group of American marsupial animals, mostly adapted for climbing, is **opossum**.

marsupial. The name for any member of a group of small arboreal Australian marsupials allied to the kangaroo is **phalanger.**

—. The name of a fierce little Tasmanian marsupial somewhat like a badger is **Tasmanian devil.**

—. Names given to a carnivorous wolf-like marsupial found in Tasmania, with striped markings, are **thylacine** and **Tasmanian wolf.**

—. The name for any member of a group of Australian marsupials somewhat like small bears, is **wombat.**

marten, Siberian. A Siberian species of marten prized for its lustrous brown fur is the **sable.**

medusa. Some medusae and the polyps belong to the class of aquatic animals grouped as **Hydrozoa.**

—. The name given to the tree-swimming larva of the medusa developed from a hydrozoan, which later becomes a polyp and gives rise to a hydrozoan colony in turn, is **planula.**

Mendelism. The name given in the Mendelian biological theory to a character which tends to persist in hybrids, and also to a hybrid showing such a character, is **dominant.**

—. The name given in the Mendelian biological theory to a character which tends to recede or disappear in hybrids, and also to a hybrid showing such a character, is **recessive.**

—. The separation of Mendelian hybrids into dominants and recessives is **segregation.**

metamorphosis. An organism which undergoes several distinct metamorphoses in the course of its development is **polymorphic.**

—. *See also under* **insect,** *above.*

mimicry. A name for protective mimicry in animals is **mimesis.**

missing link. The name used by Haeckel for the "missing link," the hypothetical animal needed to complete the chain of development between man and the apes, is **pithecanthrope.**

mite. Mites, spiders, and scorpions are classed together as **Arachnida.**

mollusc. The name of a gasteropod mollusc, with an open conical shell, which adheres very tightly to rocks is **limpet.**

—. A name for a soft-bodied animal resembling a mollusc is **molluscoid.**

—. A name for a flat, round, coin-like fossil mollusc found in limestones of the Eocene system is **nummulite.**

—. The names of two genera of shellfish from which a purple dye is procurable are **Purpura** and **Murex.**

—. Names given to a bivalve shellfish having a long razor-like shell are **solen** and **razor-shell.**

—. The name of a genus of tube-shaped molluscs which bore into submerged timber is **teredo.**

—, eye. The eye of a mollusc, if it has a crystalline lens, is said to be **lentigerous.**

—, group. Any mollusc having a two valved shell is a **bivalve, lamellibranch,** or **pelecypod.**

—, —. A mollusc, such as the cuttlefish and pearly nautilus, which has the organs of movement or grasping attached to the head is a **cephalopod.**

—, —. The name given to a group of bivalve molluscs, including the mussel, which close their shells by two abductor muscles is **Dimyaria.**

—, —. A shell-less or one-shelled mollusc which has a distinct head, and crawls by means of a broad flat foot on its lower side is a **gasteropod** or **gastropod.**

—, —. A mollusc in which the foot is modified into a swimming organ is a **heteropod.**

—, —. The name given to a group of sea molluscs which have a wing-like expansion of the foot is **Pteropoda** or **pteropods.**

—, —. Any mollusc having a single-valved shell is a **univalve.**

—, part. The name given to the tuft of fine, silky fibres by which certain molluscs fasten themselves to rocks is **byssus.**

mollusc, part. A name for a structure resembling a lid, such as that which closes the mouth of a snail's shell, is **operculum.**

—, —. A name for the mantle or fold of skin enclosing the gills of a bivalve shellfish is **pallium.**

—, —. The name given to a tubular organ in some molluscs which conveys water to the gills is **siphon.**

—, study. The scientific study of molluscs in special relation to their shells is **conchology.**

—, —. A name given to the branch of zoology that treats of molluscs, or soft-bodied animals, is **malacology.**

—, tongue. The name given to the tubular tongue of certain molluscs is **proboscis.**

—. *See also under* **shell,** *below.*

monkey. A general name for the tail-less monkeys is **apes.**

—. The name of a group of monkeys inhabiting Africa and Arabia, having dog-like faces, and mostly living on the ground, is **baboon.**

— A distinguishing term applied to the Old World monkeys and apes, which have the nostrils close together and directed downward, is **catarrhine.**

— The name given to any of a group of small African monkeys often exhibited in menageries is **guenon.**

— The name given to a black East African monkey with a white ruff round the face and a long white tail is **guereza.**

—. The sacred monkey of the Hindus is the **Hanuman monkey** or **entellus.**

—. The name of a group of stoutly-built Asiatic monkeys with projecting muzzles is **macaque.**

—. A name for a small, long-tailed monkey, of the genus *Cercocebus*, with flesh-coloured eyelids, is **mangabey.**

—. The name given to a number of very small, graceful monkeys of Central and South America is **marmoset.**

—. A distinguishing term applied to the American monkeys, which have very flat and broad noses, is **platyrrhine.**

—. The highest order of mammals, including lemurs, monkeys and man, is that of **Primates.**

—. The name of a kind of long-tailed Indian macaque monkey is **rhesus.**

—. The name of a long-tailed, bearded monkey of tropical America is **saki.**

—. A term applied to any of the anthropoid apes is **simian.**

—. The name of a marmoset monkey of South and Central America belonging to the genus *Midas* is **tamarin.**

—. A large black Indian monkey of the macaque kind with a whitish mane is the **wanderoo.**

—. *See also under* **ape** *and* **baboon,** *above.*

moth. The moths of a group containing the silkworms are **bombycine moths.**

—. A common name for the pupa of a moth or butterfly is **chrysalis** or **chrysalid.**

—. A name for any moth of a family whose caterpillars move in a series of looping movements is **geometer.**

—. Moths of the family Sphingidae, with stout bodies and long, powerful fore wings, mostly capable of rapid and sustained flight, are **hawk moths.**

—. The order of insects comprising the moths and butterflies which have minute scales on the wings is **Lepidoptera.**

—. A name for any member of a very large group of night-flying, mostly dull-coloured moths, is **noctuid.**

motion. An animal cell capable of motion through a fluid is **motile.**

mouse. A small hibernating rodent related to the mouse and common in Britain is the **dormouse.**

mouse. The name of a small mouse which builds its nest on corn-stalks is **harvest mouse.**

—. The name of an animal, superficially resembling the mouse, which lives in burrows and feeds on insects, snails, and worms is **shrew.**

movement, animal. The study of the laws of movement in living creatures is **biodynamics.**

mucus. An animal that secretes mucus or slime is **muciparous.**

musk. The term used to describe the musk-bearing glands of the musk-deer, musk-rat, etc., is **moschiferous.**

musk-ox. A term used to describe the musk ox, which is related both to the ox and the sheep, is **ovibovine.**

native. An animal which is native to a particular country is **indigenous,** and is an **autochthon.**

nautilus. Another name for the cephalopod often called the paper nautilus is **argonaut.**

—. Shells, such as those of the pearly nautilus and foraminifera, consisting of many cells or chambers are **polythalamous.**

nest. A name for nest-building is **nidification.**

—. A name for a small nest, such as that of an insect, snail, etc., is **nidus.**

—, hanging. The hanging nests built by certain birds are **penduline** or **pensile.**

—, —. The name of an insect-eating American song-bird that makes hanging cup-shaped nests is **vireo.**

newt. The name of the largest British newt is **triton.**

nose. A name for the bare part of the nose and thick upper lip of rodents and ruminants is **muffle.**

nut-eating. Animals given to eating nuts are **nucivorous.**

ocean. Animals living in the ocean or in ocean depths, as distinguished from enclosed seas, or surface water, are **pelagian** or **pelagic.**

organ. Organs on one side of an animal which perform a function different from that of those on the other side are **dimidiate.**

—. An undeveloped or imperfect part or organ is a **rudiment.**

—. A name for an organ now degenerate or practically useless, which was ancestrally well-developed and useful, is **vestige.**

organism. The simplest animal organism, having a nucleus, but no other definite organs and no permanent shape, is the **amoeba.**

—. A single-celled living organism is a **monad** or **monoplast.**

—. A name given to any of the individual organisms which compose a compound animal, such as a hydrozoan, is **zooid.**

—, characteristic. In biology, an organism possessing the characteristic features of its group is a **type.**

origin, common. Parts of different animals having a similarity due to common origin from a primitive type, such as the foreleg of a horse and the wing of a bird, are **homogenetic.**

ostrich. A large running bird living on the plains of South America, resembling a small ostrich, is the **rhea** or **randu.**

ovipositor. The name given to a modified ovipositor of certain insects, adapted for puncturing leaves, insects, etc., is **terebra.**

ox. Names given to a large, long-horned wild ox that roamed Central Europe, and was not extinct until the seventeenth century, are **aurochs** and **urus.**

—. The name of a large kind of ox, with short horns, thick mane and massive forequarters, two species of which are found wild, in eastern Europe and North America respectively, is **bison.**

—. A name properly applied to several kinds of Old World oxen, wild and domesticated, and wrongly applied to the American bison, is **buffalo.**

ox. The names of two closely related kinds of Indian ox are **gayal** and **gaur.**

—. A long-haired kind of ox, inhabiting Tibet and the higher parts of central Asia, is the **yak.**

oyster. A term applied to an oyster that produces pearls is **margaritiferous.**

—. A name for the eggs or young of shell-fish, especially oysters, is **spat.**

palp. A name for a part bearing a palp on one of the maxillae of an insect or crustacean is **palpifer.**

—. A name for a part bearing a palp on the labium or lower lip of an insect, etc., is **palpiger.**

parasite. The name given to a parasitic worm found in the gills of certain fishes is a **diplozoon.**

—. Names given to a parasite living on the skin or fur of other animals are **ectozoon** and **epizoon.**

—. A name for a parasite living inside the body of an animal is **entozoon.**

—. The animal upon which another lives as a parasite is the latter's **host.**

—. The study of parasites in connexion with biology and medical science is **parasitology.**

—. A name for a parasite that lives upon another parasite is **superparasite.**

parrot. A name for a small Australian parrakeet having green plumage with yellow markings is **budgerigar.**

—. The name of a group of Australian and East Indian parrots, many of which are crested, is **cockatoo.**

—. The name given to a species of New Zealand woodland parrot allied to the kea is **kaka.**

—. The name of a New Zealand mountain parrot which attacks sheep is **kea.**

—. A popular name given to some kinds of small parrot with brilliantly coloured plumage is **lorikeet.**

—. The name given to one of a family of bright plumaged parrots which feed on the nectar of plants is **lory.**

—. A name of several very small, short-tailed parrots, noted for their affection to their mates, is **love-bird.**

—. The name given to various large, long-tailed, gaily-coloured parrots found chiefly in South America is **macaw.**

—. A general name for small kinds of parrot is **parrakeet.**

—. Birds belonging to the parrot family are **psittaceous.**

partition. The name given in zoology to a partition is **septum.**

partnership. A name for a kind of external partnership in which different organisms live together, as in the case of a sea-anemone living on the shell housing a hermit crab, is **commensalism.**

—. A name for a kind of internal partnership, as when algae live inside the bodies of one-celled protozoa, is **symbiosis.**

paunch. The name given to the paunch or first stomach of animals that chew the cud is **rumen.**

pearl. A term used to describe an oyster that produces pearls is **margaritiferous.**

petrel. A name for the fulmar petrel is **mallemuck.**

—. A name given to stormy petrels is **Mother Cary's chickens.**

pigeon. A name for a young or unfledged pigeon is **squab.**

plant-eating. A term used to describe insects that live on plants, or are plant-eating, is **phytophagous.**

plumage. The name given to the first fine plumage of young birds, and to the soft feathers under the contour-feathers of adult birds, is **down.**

polyp. A colony of polyps forming a compound animal is a **hydroid.**

pouched animal. An animal of the order Marsupialia which carries its young in a pouch is a **marsupial.**

prey. Animals which live by prey are **predacious.**

proboscis. Insects which suck up nourishment through the tubes of their proboscis are **haustellate.**

proteus. The proteus and other amphibians that retain their gills throughout life are **perennibranchiate.**

quality, typical. A name used in biology for a quality or feature common to individuals of a group is **type.**

racoon. The name of a carnivorous animal of Central and South America belonging to the racoon family is **kinkajou.**

reptile. A name for the scientific study of reptiles is **herpetology.**

—, extinct. The name given to a gigantic herbivorous dinosaur whose remains were found in Jurassic strata in North America is **brontosaurus.**

—, —. A name for any member of a group of gigantic extinct land reptiles is **dinosaur.**

—, —. The name given to an extinct reptile which had a long snake-like body and four paddle-like limbs is **dolichosaurus.**

—, —. The name given to a kind of extinct marine carnivorous reptile with a huge head, long tail, and four paddle-like limbs, is **ichthyosaurus.**

—, —. The name of a large, extinct, lizard-like land reptile which walked in an upright attitude is **iguanodon.**

—, —. A name given to a large, extinct, flesh-eating dinosaur resembling the crocodile in bony structure is **megalosaurus.**

—, —. The name of an extinct, lizard-like, carnivorous marine reptile having a long neck and two pairs of flippers or paddles is **plesiosaurus.**

—, —. The name of an extinct winged reptile whose remains have been found in Mesozoic rocks is **pterodactyl.**

—, eye. A name given to a comb-like membrane of the eyeball of certain reptiles is **pecten.**

—, New Zealand. The name of a lizard-like reptile found in New Zealand is **tuatara** or **tuatera.**

ruminant. Names given to the fourth stomach of a ruminant are **abomasus** and **reed.**

—. The name given to the mass of food in the first stomach of ruminating animals, which is drawn up into the mouth and chewed again, is **cud.**

—. Names given to the second stomach of a ruminant are **honeycomb-bag** and **reticulum.**

—. Names for the third stomach of the cow and other ruminants are **omasum, psalterium** and **manyplies.**

—. The first of the several stomachs possessed by a ruminant animal is the **rumen** or **paunch.**

—, extinct. The name of an extinct, horned, ruminant animal, the remains of which have been found in Northern India, is **sivatherium.**

salmon. Salmon and other fish that leave the sea and swim up rivers to spawn are **anadromous.**

—. A name for a young salmon, usually in its third year, that has been once to the sea is **grilse.**

—. A name for a young salmon in its first year not yet ready to descend the river to the sea is **parr.**

—. A name for a salmon in the second year of its life, when it has its coat of silvery scales, is **smolt.**

salmon-trout. Another name for the salmon-trout is **sea trout.**

saw-like part. The name given to a saw-like edge, part, or organ is **serra.**

scale. A name for each of the scales on a butterfly's wing is **plumule.**

—, fish. *See under* **fish,** *above.*

scorpion. Scorpions, spiders, and mites are classed together as **arachnids.**

sea. A name given to animal life that is fixed to or crawls upon the sea bottom is **benthos.**

sea. A collective name for the forms of animal life found floating or drifting in the sea is **plankton.**

sea-anemones. Names for the class of coelenterate animals which includes the sea-anemones and corals are **Actinozoa** and **Anthozoa.**

sea animal. Names given to a lily-shaped sea animal which has its body attached to the sea-bed by a long, jointed stem are **crinoid, sea-lily,** and **feather-star.**

—. The name given to a type of free-swimming coelenterate animal that propels itself through the water by means of comb-like ciliated organs, applied also to the swimming organs, is **ctenophore.**

—. A name for a stem attaching a sea animal to another object is **foot-stalk.**

—, fossil. The name given to a type of fossil marine animal having a body divided into three lobes and thought to be a link between crustaceans and arachnids is **trilobite.**

sea-cucumber. The scientific name given to any of the echinoderms commonly known as sea-cucumbers is **holothurian.**

—. A name given to the edible sea-cucumber is **trepang.**

sea-horse. Another name for the sea-horse is **hippocampus.**

seal. Names for the layer of oil-yielding fat beneath the skin of seals, whales, etc., are **blubber** and **speck.**

—. Names given to a large species of seal, the males of which have a short proboscis, are **elephant seal** and **sea-elephant.**

—. Names given to a large sea animal allied to and resembling the seal, but having external ears, and hind limbs separated from the tail, are **fur seal** and **sea-lion.**

—. A name for the common seal of British coastal waters is **harbour seal.**

—. The only seal of the Mediterranean Sea is the **monk seal.**

—. Seals, eared seals, walruses, and sea-lions, which have fin-like limbs or flippers, are classed together as **pinnipeds.**

sea-lily. Names given to a kind of fossil sea-lily or crinoid, the remains of which are found in immense numbers on the sea bed, are **stone lily** and **encrinite.**

sea-lion. The large sea animal resembling both the seal and the sea-lion, but having enormous tusks projecting downwards from the upper jaw, is the **morse** or **walrus.**

segment. A name given to each of the segments which make up the body of an annelid, such as an earthworm or a leech, is **merosome.**

shark. Names given to a shark of temperate seas, resembling the ray in shape, and having large, wing-like pectoral fins, are **angel-fish** and **monk-fish.**

—. Names given to a large shark of the North Atlantic, having a very wide mouth, are **basking-shark** and **sunfish.**

—. Names given to kinds of small shark infesting coastal waters are **dog-fish, hound,** and **tope.**

—. Fishes such as sharks and skates, which have a cartilaginous skeleton and placoid scales, are classed together as **elasmobranchs.**

—. Names given to a kind of shark having a very long upper lobe to the tail are **fox-shark** and **thresher.**

—. The large shark having extensions at the sides of the nostrils, bearing the eyes, is the **hammerhead.**

—. The name given to a kind of shark having a short, stout body, tapering towards each end, a long tail, and conical teeth not adapted for cutting, is **porbeagle.**

sheath. The name given to a sheath-like covering, such as that of a coral polyp, is **theca.**

shell. A name given to the bony shell of a tortoise is **carapace.**

shell. A name for the central column of a spiral shell is **columella.**

—. The scientific study of shells and the animals that make them is **conchology.**

—. A name for a calcareous plate which divides the cavity of the shell in certain shell-fish is **diaphragm.**

—. A term used to describe shells, such as those of water-snails, which are flatly coiled is **discoidal.**

—. A shell consisting of many pieces or valves, or an animal with such a shell, is a **multivalve.**

—. A name for a flat, round, coin-like fossil shell, found in limestones of the Eocene system, is **nummulite.**

—. Shells having many chambers are **polythalamous.**

—. A shell shaped like a top is **trochoid.**

—. The name given to the boss or projecting part near the hinge of the shell in a bivalve mollusc is **umbo.**

—. Each of the two shells of a bivalve mollusc is a **valve.**

—. A swelling or ridge crossing the whorls of a univalve shell, indicating an earlier position of the mouth of the shell, is a **varix.**

—. A name for a single turn of the shell of a univalve mollusc is **whorl.**

—, spiral. A spiral shell the whorls of which turn towards the right is **dextral.**

—, —. A term used to describe a shell coiled into a flat spiral is **discoidal.**

—, —. Spiral shells in which the whorl turns to the left are **sinistral.**

—, —. A name for the peak or the topmost part of a spiral shell is **spire.**

shellfish. *See under* **mollusc,** *above.*

skate. Fishes such as skates and sharks, which have a cartilaginous skeleton and placoid scales, are classed together as **elasmobranchs.**

sleep. The summer sleep or torpidity of certain animals is **aestivation.**

—. The winter sleep of certain animals is **hibernation.**

slime. The name for a kind of slime secreted by various animals, such as snails, fishes, etc., is **mucus.**

sloth. A name given to a huge, extinct American sloth that lived on the ground is **megatherium.**

—. The name for a large, extinct species of ground sloth is **mylodon.**

—. The name given to an extinct giant sloth of South America, akin to but smaller than the megatherium, is **scelidothere.**

slug. *See under* **snail,** *below.*

snail. A name given to a snail or other mollusc of the same class, with a distinct head and a flat, creeping foot, is **gasteropod.**

—. The name given to an order of Gasteropoda which includes land snails, slugs, and air-breathing fresh-water snails is **Pulmonata.**

—. A common name for a snail having no external shell is **slug.**

snake. Names given to the only British species of poisonous snake are **adder** and **viper.**

—. A name given to a South American snake—the largest of all snakes—allied to the boa is **anaconda.**

—. A large, non-poisonous snake that crushes animal prey with its body, especially a tropical American kind having rudimentary hind legs, is a **boa.**

—. A name given to a kind of large, venomous snake of Asia and Africa, which dilates its neck into a broad hood when irritated, is **cobra.**

—. Names for a poisonous North American snake, having dark obscure markings, are **cotton-mouth** and **moccasin.**

—. A name given to a large, venomous, South American snake allied to the copper-head, and having a triangular head, is **fer-de-lance.**

—. Names given to a non-poisonous snake occurring in England, having a black-banded body with two whitish spots behind the head, are **grass snake** and **ringed snake.**

snake. The name given to any of a group of tropical sea-snakes is **hydrophid.**

—. The name of a poisonous Indian snake allied to the masked adder is **krait.**

—. A name given to a deadly front-fanged colubrine snake of South Africa is **mamba.**

—. The name given to a small carnivorous Indian animal, allied to the civet, and noted for its powers of killing snakes, is **mongoose.**

—. A name for any member of the order Ophidia, including the snakes, is **ophidian.**

—. A name for the branch of science dealing with the classification and description of snakes is **ophiology.**

—. A name given to kinds of large, non-poisonous, constricting snakes, less arboreal in their habits than boas, is **python.**

—. A poisonous American snake having a series of horny rings at the end of the tail, which rattle when vibrated, is a **rattlesnake.**

—. The outer layer of skin cast or discarded periodically by a snake is the **slough.**

—. A term used of plates situated under the tail, and of bones at the tail of a snake, is **subcaudal.**

snout. The name given to an organ such as the elongated snout of a tapir or the trunk of an elephant is **proboscis.**

species. A species that differs widely from the normal type is **aberrant.**

—. Animals belonging or relating to the same species are **conspecific.**

—. A name for a quality or mark which distinguishes one species of a genus from the other species is **differentia.**

—. Two species connected by common characters are **osculant.**

—. A name for an abrupt variation in the character of a species is **saltation.**

—, development. A name given to the development of complicated species of animal and plant life from simple forms is **evolution.**

—, —. The name given to a theory that species are multiplied by the passing on by parent animals to their offspring of peculiarities such as might be caused by habits is **Lamarckianism.**

—, —. The name for the method, according to the theories of Darwin and Wallace, by which new species of animals and plants arise by the elimination of individuals unsuited to survive is **natural selection.**

—, —. A term meaning the order of descent in the development of species is **succession.**

—, —. The name given to the hypothesis that all existing species are produced by the gradual transformation of other living species is **transformism.**

—, —. The name given to the theory that new species arise from others by the effect of natural causes is **transmutation.**

—, living. A name for the branch of zoology that deals with living as distinct from extinct species is **neontology.**

—, origin. A name for the history of the origin of a racial group or species of animals or plants, and for the study of this, is **phylogeny.**

—, —. A name for the science which deals with the origin of species is **speciology.**

sperm-whale. The name given to a fatty substance found in the head of the cachalot or sperm-whale, and used to make candles, etc., is **spermaceti.**

spider. Spiders, scorpions, and mites are classed together as **arachnids.**

—. The two distinct parts into which the body of a spider is divided are the **cephalothorax** and the **abdomen.**

—. The name given to the two jointed fang-bearing organs of a spider is **falces.**

spider. A popular name for a small long-legged spider-like arachnid, common at harvest-time, is **harvest-man.**

—. The name given to the many-chambered breathing organs of a spider is **lung-books.**

—. The name given to the two leg-like appendages of a spider which are used to aid mastication, etc., is **pedipalps.**

—. The name for the silk-spinning organs of a spider is **spinnerets.**

—. The name of a kind of poisonous spider, formerly believed to cause a dancing madness by its bite, is **tarantula**

—. The name given to a common British spider which makes its nest in a submerged water plant, carrying down bubbles of air to inflate the nest, is **water spider.**

spinal column. A name for a band of cartilage which takes the place of the spinal column in some primitive fishes, and is found in the embryo stage of many vertebrates, is **notochord.**

—. Animals having a backbone or spinal column are classed as **vertebrates.**

spine. A minute spine or spine-like organ found in certain animals is a **spinule.**

sponge. The scientific name of the group of animals usually called sponges is **Porifera.**

—. The name given to the needle-shaped particles of mineral matter which serve to strengthen the horny framework of a sponge is **spicules.**

spore. Names for a spore having independent motion are **swarm-cell, swarm-spore,** and **zoospore.**

squirrel. A name given to kinds of ground squirrel common in North America and Siberia is **chipmunk.**

stalk-like part. A name for a stalk-like part is **pedicel.**

starfish. A name for a limb of a starfish is **ray.**

structure. The science dealing with the structural development and form of animals and plants is **morphology.**

sucking. An organ, such as a proboscis, adapted for sucking is **suctorial.**

summer sleep. The name given to the state of torpidity or slumber in which some animals spend the summer or driest season is **aestivation.**

swim-bladder. A name for the swim-bladder of a fish is **sound.**

swimming-bell. A name for the swimming-bell of a medusa, jelly-fish, or allied animals is **nectocalyx.**

swimming organ. The name given to each of the eight paddle-shaped swimming organs of the Ctenophora, a group of coelenterate animals, is **ctenophore.**

symmetry. An animal, such as a mammal, which has its parts arranged on either side of a median plane, and so has a right and left side, **is bilaterally symmetrical.**

—. An animal, such as a jelly-fish or a sea-anemone, which has its organs or parts arranged around a common centre is **radially symmetrical.**

tail. Organs or parts belonging to the tail of an animal are **caudal.**

—. A term used to describe animals having a curved tail is **curvicaudate.**

—. A term used to describe some long-tailed deep sea fishes is **longicaudate.**

tapering. A scientific term meaning long, narrow, and tapering to a point is **subulate.**

tapir. The name given to the elongated snout of the tapir is **proboscis.**

—, extinct. The name of an extinct animal resembling a tapir is **palaeotherium.**

teeth. Animals having projecting and persistently growing teeth are **brochate.**

—. A name for a list or table stating the number and arrangement of an animal's teeth is **dental formula.**

teeth. A name for a tooth-like projection, such as those found in the jaws of many fishes, is **denticle.**

—. The name given to a natural gap between adjoining teeth or series of teeth, as in the horse, is **diastema.**

—. Animals having two successive sets of teeth, the first or milk teeth, and the second or permanent teeth, are **diphyodont.**

—. A name given to a tusk or a long-pointed tooth in an animal, and also to the curved poison tooth of a snake, is **fang.**

—. Animals in which the teeth are of more than one shape are **heterodont.**

—. A scientific name for an animal, such as the dolphin, in which all the teeth are uniform in shape is **isodont.**

—. A term applied to teeth adapted for tearing, such as those of carnivores, is **laniary.**

—. The term used to describe molar teeth in which the cusps form ridges, applied also to an animal with such teeth, is **lophodont.**

—. A name given to the first set of teeth in an animal having two successive sets is **milk teeth.**

—. A name given to the second set of teeth in an animal having two successive sets is **permanent teeth.**

—. A term used to describe the chisel-shaped incisor teeth of rodents is **scalpriform.**

—. The term used to describe teeth in which the cusps form crescents, applied also to an animal with such teeth, is **selenodont.**

terrapin. Names given to a kind of turtle with a large head, long tail, and relatively small shell are **snapping turtle** and **alligator terrapin.**

—. A name for any of a group of terrapins in which the plastron is hinged and its hinder lobe can be moved so as to close the posterior opening of the shell is **hinged terrapin.**

timber borer. The name of a genus of tube-shaped molluscs which bore into submerged timber is **teredo.**

toad. *See under* **frog,** *above.*

toe. Hoofed mammals, such as ruminants and pigs, which have an even number of toes or digits are classed as **Artiodactyla.**

—. The name for a rudimentary toe hanging loosely on the inner side of the hind leg of some dogs is **dew-claw.**

—. An animal having only two toes or digits on a limb is a **didactylous** animal, or a **didactyl.**

—. A name for a toe or finger is **digit.**

—. A term used of animals, such as cats and dogs, that walk on the toes, and do not rest the whole sole of the foot on the ground, is **digitigrade.**

—. Animals that have the toes or fingers separated are **fissidactylous.**

—. A term used to describe animals having separated toes, as opposed to those that are web-footed, is **fissiped.**

—. A web between the toes or fingers is **interdigital.**

—. Animals that have only one digit or toe to each limb are **monodactylous.**

—. Animals that have five toes or digits to each limb are **pentadactylous.**

—. Hoofed mammals, such as the horse or rhinoceros, which have an odd number of toes or digits on a limb are classed as **Perissodactyla.**

—. Animals that have more than the usual number of toes or digits to each limb are **polydactylous.**

—. Animals that have all or some of their toes or digits on a limb entirely or partly connected are **syndactylous.**

—. Animals that have three toes or digits to each limb are **tridactylous.**

torpidity. A name for the summer sleep or torpidity of certain animals is **aestivation.**

tortoise. A name for a type of tortoise having a high-domed carapace and a hinged plastron is **box-tortoise.**

tortoise. A name for the upper horny shell of a tortoise or turtle is **carapace.**

—. The name of a small species of tortoise often kept in gardens is **Greek tortoise.**

—. A term used of the lower shell of a tortoise or kindred animal is **plastron.**

—. A name for a type of tortoise which withdraws its head within the carapace by an S-shaped vertical bending of the neck is **S-necked tortoise.**

—. A name for a type of tortoise which withdraws its head within the carapace by a sideways bending of the neck is **side-necked tortoise.**

—. A name for a type of tortoise having a leathery carapace and no horny shield is **soft tortoise.**

—. A name given to various kinds of tortoise found chiefly in fresh and tidal waters is **terrapin.**

—. The name given to kinds of tortoise with limbs and organs adapted for aquatic life is **turtle.**

tortoise-shell. The sea-turtle yielding the tortoise-shell of commerce is the **hawksbill.**

trogon. The name given to a vividly coloured Central American bird of the trogon family is **quetzal.**

trout. The name given to an Irish species of trout in which the stomach membranes are thickened is **gillaroo** or **gizzard trout.**

—. Another name for the sea-trout is **salmon-trout.**

—. The name of a species of sea-trout found especially in the Welsh rivers is **sewin.**

trunk. The name given to the trunk of an elephant or the elongated snout of a tapir is **proboscis.**

turtle. A name given to any of the true turtles is **chelonian.**

—. The name of the species of turtle from which the tortoise-shell of commerce is obtained is **hawksbill.**

—. The name given to a species of turtle which has a flexible carapace of bony plates covered by leathery skin is **leather-back.**

—. The names given to a kind of turtle with a large head, long tail, and relatively small shell are **snapping turtle** and **alligator terrapin.**

twilight. A term used to distinguish animals, such as bats, which are active at twilight, or dusk, is **crepuscular.**

type, intermediate. An animal type intermediate between two others is **osculant.**

urus. Another name for the urus, or extinct wild ox, is **aurochs.**

variation. *See under* **Mendelism** *and* **species,** *above.*

viper. Another name for the common viper, the only poisonous British snake, is **adder.**

vulture. The name of a large bird of prey allied to the vultures is **lammergeyer.**

—. A name given to the Egyptian vulture, a figure of which is seen in many hieroglyphic inscriptions, is **Pharaoh's chicken.**

walking. Those animals which walk on their toes, as distinct from those that place the whole foot on the ground, are **digitigrade.**

—. Animals such as the bear and badger which walk on the sole of the foot, placing the whole foot on the ground, are **plantigrade**

—. Claws which an animal is able to draw back into a sheath when walking or at rest are **retractile.**

— Animals which keep the heel raised when walking but rest the whole of the sole of the foot on the ground when at rest are **sub-plantigrade.**

water Animals which spend their life in the water are **aquatic.**

—. Animals, such as the frog and newt, which are able to live either in the water or on land, the young passing through a fish-like larval stage, are **amphibian.**

—. Animals, such as the otter, and certain birds which live partly on water and partly on land are **subaquatic.**

wattle. A name for a small fleshy outgrowth, such as the comb of a fowl or the wattle of a turkey-cock, is **caruncle.**

whale. Names for the layer of oil-yielding fat beneath the skin of whales and seals are **blubber** and **speck.**

—. A name for a whale of the genus *Hyperoödon* is **bottle-nosed whale.**

—. Names given to a kind of whale found in the warmer seas, in which the head is very large and contains in its cavity the fatty substance called spermaceti, are **cachalot** and **sperm whale.**

—. The name given to the order of mammals, including whales and dolphins, that live in the open sea is **cetaceans.**

—. A name for each of the two triangular divisions of a whale's tail is **fluke.**

—. A name given to those of the toothless whales which yield the finest whalebone is **right whales.**

—. The name of a whale of the genus *Balaenoptera,* common in the Atlantic Ocean, is **rorqual.**

whalebone. Another name for whalebone, the horny substance found in plates in the palate of some whales, is **baleen.**

wheel-animalcule. Another name for a wheel-animalcule is **rotifer.**

whip. A name for a whip-like organ or appendage of an animal is **flagellum.**

wildebeest. Another name for the wildebeest is **gnu.**

—. A name for the white-tailed gnu is **black wildebeest.**

—. A name for the brindled gnu is **blue wildebeest.**

wing. A name for the wing-membrane of a flying mammal or reptile, and for the fold of skin between the upper arm and forearm of a bird's wing, is **patagium.**

—, butterfly's. A name for each of the scales on a butterfly's wing is **plumule.**

—, insect. The arrangement of the veins or nervures on the wings of insects is **venation** or **neuration.**

—, pointed. A wing of an insect or bird that ends with a sharp or long point is **mucronate.** *See also* **feather,** *above.*

wingless. Animals without wings are **apterous.**

wing-like. A term used to describe a wing-like or wing-shaped part is **pterygoid.**

winter-sleep. The term used to describe animals which pass the winter in a state of sleep or torpor is **hibernant.**

worm. The name given to a segmented worm, such as a leech, lobworm or earthworm, is **annelid.**

—. A name for a type of annelid such as the earthworm and lobworm, furnished with bristles or setae, is **chaetopod.**

—. A name for a type of annelid, such as the leech, having a disk-like sucking mouth, is **discophore.**

—. A name for a parasitic intestinal worm-like animal is **helminth.**

—. The name of a large gill-breathing earthworm, found on sandy or muddy shores, and used for bait by sea-anglers, is **lobworm.**

—. Each of the segments or rings of which an annelid's body is composed is a **merosome.**

—. The name given to a group of worm-like, generally parasitic, animals with unsegmented bodies, including the threadworms, is **nemathelminthes.**

—. The name given to a group of flat, elongated, worm-like animals, with unsegmented bodies, including flatworms, flukes, and tapeworms, is **platyhelminthes.**

—. The term used to describe the extensible sucking organ of some worms is **proboscis.**

—. The name given to a kind of red freshwater worm which congregates in large numbers on the surface of mud in ponds is **river-worm.**

—. The name for the bristles of the earthworm, which assist it in making its way along, is **setae.**

zebra. The name of a South African equine animal related to the ass and the zebra is **quagga.**

STUDIES IN THE USE OF WORDS

The Importance of the Synonym or Alternative Term in Composition

SOMETIMES there is only one word which exactly conveys a meaning we want to express, and we use that word knowing that no other will do. On the other hand, it frequently happens that we are able to select a word from several which will answer the purpose equally well. In this way repetition may be avoided, and added forcefulness, clarity, and rhythm be given to a sentence. Success, even genius itself, depends largely on the correct use and arrangement of words. With a vocabulary far smaller than that contained in THE CHILDREN'S DICTIONARY, *Shakespeare gained immortality.*

In each of the sentences below one or more words have been printed in italics. These have synonyms, or alternatives, that is, words that may be used in place of them. The key references at the end of the sentences indicate these synonyms, which, as likely as not, are words that the student will not think of or does not know. The process of discovering these words will greatly increase his vocabulary and add immeasurably to his power of expression in writing and speaking.

The first number in the key references indicates the page in the main body of the work, the letter a *or* b *column one or two as the case may be, and the end number the line. For example,* (889 a 40) *means page* 889, *column* 1, *line* 40. *The synonym or alternative is always the word printed in black type, thus :* **constitutional.**

JUNIOR SECTION

Rats *devour* an enormous quantity of human food every year. (1337 b 1)

Most people *take delight in* a thrilling story. (1412 a 7)

Those who are weak in mathematics may be good at some *different* subject. (3058 a 13)

Thomas Gray's "Ode on the Spring" is a literary *jewel.* (1810 a 49)

Some girls *titter* for very little reason. (1833 a 36)

Many business firms now arrange an annual *pleasure trip* for their work-people. (3063 a 55)

We *pick* the apple crop in autumn. (1803 a 9)

"*All the while* at it wins the day." (126 b 36)

At the end of *every* week most business men like a rest. (1329 b 34)

Twirling round quickly makes one *dizzy.* (1832 a 17)

The ships of the Spanish Armada sought in vain for a *place of shelter.* (1988 b 28)

Anger makes people *scowl* at one another. (1855 b 53)

The Pilgrim Fathers, when sailing for America, bade a long *farewell* to their native land. (1873 b 22)

One occasionally has to choose between *the whole* and nothing. (111 a 7)

The ancients believed that a swan, when *nearing death,* sang a sweet song. (1325 b 24)

The *view* from a house considerably affects its value to the occupier. (3063 b 57)

The ancient Egyptians ill-treated their slaves in their *hurry* to complete the Pyramids. (1984 b 5)

The south-west wind *usually* brings rain with it. (1813 a 55)

We are always *pleased* to listen to an interesting story. (1843 a 64)

Young birds *open the mouth wide* when food is brought to them. (1792 a 38)

A large *quantity* of gold is obtained from South Africa. (138 b 12)

Rats will sometimes *nibble* through lead water-pipes to get water. (1859 a 51)

Squirrels *store up* nuts for the winter. (2048 a 24)

A *worthless* man is of no use to his fellows. (1873 a 21)

Cross-country runners find the *travelling* very bad when the ground is sodden. (1866 b 20)

Nothing will better *entertain* children than a Punch and Judy show. (143 a 7)

The *usual* method of cooking vegetables is to boil them in water. (3041 b 42)

The cutting of the Panama Canal involved its promoters in an enormous *expense.* (3063 b 29)

Great *injury* was done to artistic treasures by the Vandals when they sacked Rome. (1977 b 5)

When provisions *come to an end,* a besieged force has to surrender. (1541 b 41)

Boxes with *sham* bottoms are sometimes used by smugglers. (1549 a 31)

The inexperienced rider prefers a *quiet* horse. (1818 b 19)

A small *present* often gives great pleasure. (1832 a 42)

The battering-ram was used for making a *breach* in a city's walls. (1792 a 11)

"*Wrathful* men seldom want woe." (158 b 66)

When one is busy, the hours come and *depart* very quickly. (1860 b 19)

The purchase of a ticket entitles one to *go into* a theatre. (1419 b 49)

Once they have burned themselves, dogs *are afraid of* the fire. (1569 a 29)

An exciting book quickly drives away *low spirits.* (1315 a 1)

A miser makes money his *idol.* (1864 b 50)

Hippocrates was the first doctor to discover scientific ways to *effect the cure of* wounds. (1994 a 60)

Near many mines and quarries may be seen a great *heap* of waste material. (1314 a 23)

"There are more things to *cause fear* than to injure us." (100 b 18)

Some boys are *clever* at making things with their hands. (1872 a 62)

Birds *come to rest* on the branches of trees (108 b 19)

Among the Basques, pelota is the most popular *pastime.* (1786 b 5)

Children at the seaside *pile up* spadefuls of sand to make a castle. (1995 a 21)

Most plants grow best in rich *soil.* (1333 a 1)

One needs *fine* weather for a picnic. (1542 b 61)

Runners in a race are *keen* to win. (1330 a 15)

If our clothes *become* wet, we should change them as soon as possible. (1827 a 56)

The edges of a *deep cut* in the flesh are sewn together with silk. (1800 b 24)

Everyone should have some *purpose* in life. (94 a 1)

The gambler rues his folly when all his money is *lost.* (1871 b 44)

A good sentry is *wide-awake* when on guard. (105 b 22)

Wandering tribes *reside* in tents or quickly-built huts. (1324 b 32)

Guy Fawkes and his fellow conspirators met in secret to *work out* their plot. (1985 a 62)

Some paints *lose colour* in bright sunshine more quickly than others. (1540 a 30)

The game of bowls requires a very *level* lawn. (1481 b 9)

The spurs of a knight were *coated with gold.* (1835 a 30)

The sun is *much* larger than any planet. (1555 a 56)

During school hours inattentive pupils often *look* at the clock. (1844 b 43)

A funny entertainer occasions much *merriment.* (1849 a 14)

It is cruel to *enrage* a captive animal. (155 b 52)

The *aim* of one's ambition should be something good in itself. (1862 b 1)

The man travelling from Jerusalem to Jericho was robbed by a *band* of thieves. (1789 b 29)

A person held up on a gangway will request those in front to pass *forward.* (120 a 28)

Exercise gives the cheeks a healthy *flush.* (1855 b 16)

A few pennies a day *add up* to a lot in a year. (138 b 12)

Children should try not to *tease* one another. (165 a 13)

People who *gulp* their food must expect indigestion. (1863 b 38)

The bulldog is noted for holding *firmly* when it grips. (1561 b 18)

Swallows fly southward in autumn to *get away from* the cold of winter. (1457 a 33)

Courtesy and unselfishness win a man the *excellent* opinions of his friends. (1869 a 15)

A drug is occasionally used to *soothe* pain. (111 b 1)

The *fierce light* from a white-hot steel ingot dazzles the eyes. (1845 a 64)

In the *excitement* of argument we may utter words we regret in cooler moments. (1988 a 23)

It is *not difficult* to add two and two together. (1337 a 28)

Better be five minutes too *soon* than one minute late. (1332 a 26)

A magistrate may *admit* a claim for damages. (116 a 1)

Too often we fail to do as we *should.* (3059 b 4)

Temple Bar was an old *entrance* of the City of London. (1802 a 51)

In very cold countries the *struggle* for existence is a hard one. (1602 b 40)

Substances extracted from coal-tar are widely used to *stain* woven fabrics. (1325 a 54)

The "Mitre" tavern in Fleet Street was a favourite *resort* of Dr. Johnson. (1987 a 25)

A man of *lofty* principles will not stoop to baseness. (2035 b 64)

Temptation is a great *foe* to honesty. (1405 b 3)

It is wise to *slacken* a tight tent-rope before rain. (1334 b 19)

Never *permit* a dog to chase sheep. (116 a 1)

Good health cannot be enjoyed without a certain amount of *open-air* exercise. (3062 a 39)

He who takes what is not his own will go to *prison* if caught. (1792 a 9)

"Better be *by oneself* than in ill company." (120 a 8)

On horseback one can gallop, canter, trot, or just *ride slowly.* (130 b 55)

A schoolboy who is *in advance* of his class-mates is sometimes moved into a higher class. (92 a 30)

On a dark night the *faint light* of a candle can be seen from a great distance. (1848 b 30)

Reporters *collect* all sorts of news for newspapers. (1848 b 47)

Everyone should know how to render first *help* to a person taken ill or injured. (92 b 24)

Great Britain came to the *assistance* of Belgium at the beginning of the World War. (2013 b 16)

Twilight comes at the *close* of the day. (1401 b 18)

We value most highly the things we *gain by labour.* (1332 b 23)

According to a proverb there is no *chance* which does not return. (3030 a 41)

To avoid a storm, an aviator will sometimes *change* his course. (124 a 39)

In the fable the slow tortoise was able to *complete* the course before the swift hare. (1615 b 14)

Sir Henry Irving made a great *success* in the part of Shylock. (2046 b 19)

Horses are fed on *grass cut and dried for fodder.* (1991 a 9)

However *uninteresting* a boy's work may seem, he must persevere with it. (1312 a 13)

Certain kinds of music act as a *spell* on snakes. (704 a 33)

When kittens *romp*, their movements are very graceful. (1786 a 38)

Twins are frequently *similar* in appearance. (108 b 61)

A high *tax* is levied on all tobacco imported into England. (1323 a 9)

It is a common sight to see one child in *the keeping* of another. (701 a 26)

In the building of the Pyramids the slaves had to *lift* enormous blocks of stone. (1999 a 41)

One can tell more or less what food a bird eats by the nature of its *beak.* (415 b 27)

Where there is no bridge one has to *wade through* the water. (1691 a 3)

Ships that *sink* go to the bottom. (1714 b 35)

To *take a bath* is refreshing. (357 b 6)

What the South Sea islander considers a comfortable home we should call a *wretched abode.* (2086 b 24)

It is a bad habit to *speak* carelessly. (4218 b 18)

The *fastening* on a private account book is sometimes provided with a key. (763 a 36)

One person will often *finish* what another has begun. (845 b 20)

In early days the Alps formed a *fence* between Rome and the barbarous north. (345 b 42)

It is natural for a poor man to *reckon up* his flock. (945 b 37)

A hen will *chatter noisily* after laying an egg. (758 a 11)

Some people can be recognized at a distance by their *manner of walking* (1774 a 17)

A *flock* of starlings may contain many thousands of birds. (1648 a 6)

The surface of frozen snow is *hard and brittle* underfoot. (987 a 8)

If we try to force a stick down a pipe it may *become tightly wedged.* (2336 b 50)

Among the *ordinary* objects of the seashore are sea-shells. (835 a 28)

The massacre of the Innocents was a *dreadful* crime. (2075 b 42)

A goat can find a *footing* where a man would fall. (1685 a 32)

The *straightforward* confession of an error is the wisest policy. (1724 b 11)

An efficient person does his work without any *to-do.* (1767 a 21)

A stocking is easy to *stuff* with toys, because it stretches easily. (967 a 54)

A small *lump* of earth may escape the harrow. (777 a 23)

An oil-well is sunk for the purpose of tapping the oil *below* the surface. (392 b 16)

A dog will often *hide* a bone. (854 a 1)

A *longing* for glory has been the stimulus to many gallant deeds. (4278 a 15)

Snow will sometimes conceal a *cleft* in a mountain. (707 b 38)

Heligoland gives its name to a *large bay.* (414 b 19)

A boy entering business life starts at the *bottom* of the ladder. (1683 a 58)

Turbines urge a vessel *onward.* (1710 b 32)

A brave man will *struggle* the harder if the odds are against him. (361 a 1)

A barren tree will not *produce* fruit. (370 a 22)

During the Renaissance artists and sculptors sought to *copy* Greek models. (2142 b 13)

Heliotrope, lilac, and mauve are purple colours, each of a different *shade.* (2089 a 9)

Among animals monkeys are noted for being *quick in movement.* (46 a 10)

The discomfort suffered during an attack of toothache is often very *painful.* (1235 b 45)

People bid *good-bye* to friends who are going on a journey. (53 a 1)

In the course of many years' absence the appearance of a friend may so *change* that it is difficult to recognize him. (124 a 39)

Tradesmen find it profitable to *call attention to* the goods they have for sale. (64 b 20)

A fine day will *entice* us out of doors. (4247 b 33)

A *cask* is usually hooped on its outside. (344 b 17)

Many Eastern people to-day wear European *dress.* (939 a 1)

Green maize is sometimes used as *cattle-food.* (1675 b 21)

Officials who are unwilling to resign are said to *hold fast* to office. (773 a 54)

Plaster of Paris is used as a *stopping* for cracks in plaster. (1608 a 16)

A boot has a *leather flap* inside the front. (4314 b 41)

One often cannot predict the course of an illness until after the *turning-point* is reached. (986 b 29)

A *man in charge of a jail* usually carries a large bunch of keys. (2336 b 4)

The works of Shakespeare *comprise* a number of sonnets and poems, besides the plays. (2184 a 61)

The loneliness of a shepherd's life is relieved by the *society* of his dog. (841 a 16)

Alfred the Great had a firm *grip* on the affections of his subjects. (2053 a 31)

Foxhounds are used to *pursue* the fox. (707 a 13)

A *close-fitting* garment is often uncomfortable. (4296 b 28)

In *bygone* days church-going was enforced by law. (1705 a 13)

Very severe discipline tends to *break the spirit of* some people. (961 a 58)

Edinburgh Castle is built on a *steep and rugged rock.* (967 a 1)

We should not *roar as with pain* before we are hurt. (388 a 1)

Before attempting to *curve by force* a bar of iron one should heat it. (392 a 21)

At many schools special prizes are awarded for good *behaviour.* (863 b 43)

We should endeavour to *form our thoughts* clearly. (4276 b 66)

A careful motorist slows down on approaching a *road that crosses another.* (996 a 61)

The Rock of Gibraltar has been a *fortified place* for over 1,000 years. (1709 a 14)

It is pleasant to walk *by the side of* a stream. (400 b 9)

Many of us do not realize how *lucky* we are. (1709 b 29)

At a sale of furniture dealers study carefully each *entry* in the catalogue. (2326 a 65)

The *bill* of a bird is adapted to the nature of its food. (367 b 1)

When there is good work to be done it is a pity to be *lazy.* (2131 b 21)

A *lesson to be learned* is a bugbear to a lazy boy. (4233 a 14)

It is actions rather than words that *produce an effect.* (4244 a 19)

At the *first stage* of our school career we have to learn how to learn. (380 b 57)

We should know the *price* of what we buy before we buy it. (938 a 37)

We can now *travel by aircraft* from England to India. (1670 b 12)

In England one is most likely to find the earliest spring flowers on a *slope* which faces south. (328 a 1)

Straight, closely-cut edges give a *tidy* look to a lawn. (2906 a 23)

A spirited horse resents even a *light blow* with the whip. (1647 b 40)

Much may depend on the handling of a *delicate situation* in politics. (986 b 29)

A *hardened offender who has often been in prison* is a difficult man to reform. (2336 a 22)

Sir John Falstaff was rebuked by the young Henry V for his *slackness.* (2170 b 12)

It is unseemly to *joke* about sacred matters. (2346 a 31)

The fetters on their feet made prisoners *walk with an uneven gait.* (2049 b 26)

People often have a *friendly talk* over a cup of tea. (709 a 6)

Nearly all suburban houses have a *neatly arranged* front garden (4294 b 28)

Smugglers often used a *sheltered recess on the shore* for concealment. (958 a 25)

An invalid on rising from his sick-bed is often *unable to walk steadily.* (4326 a 11)

A *bell-tower of a church* is sometimes a haunt of bats. (384 a 1)

A favourite trick of the *juggler* is to produce a live rabbit from a top hat. (876 a 37)

Mothers often *sing in a low tone* to their babies to send them to sleep. (991 b 1)

An empty grate in winter is a *joyless* spectacle. (712 a 17)

We should never forget to *express gratitude* to a benefactor. (4264 b 64)

There is nothing like good news to *gladden* the heart. (711 b 33)

In some countries the authorities *impose silence upon* the Press. (2881 a 39)

King Richard I always fought in the *leading* ranks of his army. (1696 a 8)

The shells of small birds' eggs are *easily broken.* (1721 b 42)

" Coming in a *moment !* " cries the boy to his chum. (2349 a 51)

The *pebbly seashore* is a favourite holiday resort of both children and grown-ups. (365 b 1)

Some birds, such as parrots and cockatoos, can *speak* quite well. (4218 b 18)

Rhubarb without sugar is *sharp to the taste.* (4232 a 30)

A *rent* in a threadbare garment is not easily repaired. (4238 b 34)

In a theatre the curtain is raised when the play is ready to *start.* (380 b 49)

In Shakespeare's play, " A Midsummer Night's Dream," Pyramus speaks to Thisbe through a *crack* in a wall. (726 b 10)

Boys delight to cut their initials on the *outside covering* of trees. (340 a 1)

Burglars are frequently frightened away by the *cry* of a dog. (339 b 31)

Many horses are of a *reddish-brown* colour. (364 a 17)

Superior seamanship enabled the British to *beat* the French at the Battle of Trafalgar. (878 a 22)

On the occasion of a coronation it is usual to *adorn* the streets of London with flags, etc. (375 a 62)

The sun often sets behind a *long, flat-topped mass* of clouds. (328 a 1)

The *closeness* of the Germans to Paris in 1914 caused much alarm. (2905 b 15)

There is a grandeur in the *quality of sound* of Big Ben that is not found in smaller bells. (4314 a 12)

Fishermen wear *large boots that reach to the thighs.* (2331 a 39)

Many ships have been wrecked on the *seashore* of Cornwall. (790 b 8)

Many wines *increase in quality* with keeping. (2166 b 1)

From time immemorial reformers have had to suffer many a *mocking word.* (2343 a 5)

An unusual happening in a street will cause a crowd to *gather together.* (811 b 12)

King Charles II loved to *caress* his toy spaniels. (1682 a 13)

People who are *orderly* in their dress are generally orderly in their habits. (4294 b 11)

Businesses often need *additional* capital. (1764 a 40)

The river at Canton, China, is densely packed with *boats*. (965 b 1)

Wellington knew that Britain *was compelled to* defeat Napoleon. (2877 a 38)

The Ministry occupy a *long seat* on the right of the Speaker's chair. (391 a 38)

A clever *swindler* is often the chief character in a detective story. (991 a 16)

A race is a *trial* of endurance. (4259 a 35)

A good way to warm oneself on a frosty morning is to *cut* wood (732 a 45)

In the United States a law has been passed to *forbid* the sale of alcoholic liquor. (324 a 1)

A mole-hill is small *in comparison with* a mountain. (400 b 9)

The dodo was a queer-looking *bird*. (1718 b 42)

Shyness is often a phase of youth. (350 a 25)

Many great men have risen from very *lowly* beginnings. (2092 b 19)

The aim of an army in action is to *defeat* the enemy. (371 a 40)

It is a nuisance to have more work than we can *struggle successfully* with. (912 b 28)

It is wrong to *linger* when the school-bell is ringing. (4231 b 40)

One cannot *instruct* a person if he has made up his mind not to learn. (4238 a 12)

The crowds in an Eastern bazaar include many a *person who lives by begging*. (380 b 7)

The poorest marksman may score a bull's-eye by a *lucky shot*. (1666 a 16)

Good cheer will *drive away* care. (327 b 1)

Football is the *most popular* winter game. (1568 b 35)

Over short distances no animal excels the leopard in *swiftness*. (1644 b 30)

One should never mock a *lame person*. (986 b 12)

It is not advisable to apply a second *layer* of paint until the first is dry. (791 a 9)

We stand in *silent* admiration before a truly great work of art. (2878 b 21)

"One man can lead a horse to the water, but twenty cannot *force* him to drink." (843 a 11)

We should never try to *force* a book into a crowded shelf. (2336 b 50)

Ships sometimes *strike violently together* during a fog. (813 a 7)

The dogged courage of the British was able to *baffle* the Germans at Ypres. (1677 b 18)

The rays of the sun *cast* shadows. (4287 b 3)

Men feared the *scowl* of William the Conqueror. (1747 b 63)

The fox is a *cunning* animal. (965 b 32)

It is foolish to *brood* upon the mistakes of one's past life. (2873 a 39)

The *overcoming* of many difficulties calls for courage, patience, and perseverance. (879 a 1)

Link-men were formerly employed by pedestrians in London to *guide* them to their homes during a fog. (863 b 43)

In olden times Europe was ravaged by *dreadful* plagues. (4257 a 11)

A prisoner may *mumble* a threat that he dare not speak aloud. (2880 a 16)

October is spoken of as a *cold* month. (723 a 19)

A boat which is seaworthy has nothing to fear from a *big swelling wave*. (417 b 1)

Docks provide many ships with a *convenient place for mooring*. (399 a 32)

A rumour often proves to be *without foundation*. (349 a 42)

A cook will often *pour fat or gravy over* meat while it is roasting. (354 a 24)

Columbus was ridiculed for his *notion* that the earth might be round. (2128 a 9)

Richard Nash was a celebrated *dandy* of the eighteenth century. (372 a 24)

The *rap* of a blind man's stick clears the way for him. (4226 b 56)

The barometer usually falls before a *storm*. (1775 b 1)

An animal-lover will *act as a friend to* a lost dog. (380 a 23)

A singer sometimes invites an audience to join in the *refrain* of a song. (734 b 30)

Metals become *liquid* when subjected to great heat. (1665 b 36)

A sheep *pen* is usually made with hurdles. (1678 b 15)

Cromer, which used to be inland, is now *close to* the sea. (2905 a 41)

It is customary to *ring* a church bell at a funeral. (4311 a 25)

The gauzy black fabric called crape has a *wrinkled* appearance. (986 a 1)

It is sometimes necessary to *wheedle* a child into taking its medicine. (791 b 13)

When confronted with a very difficult task we have to *summon up* all our resolution. (2877 b 64)

"All *grumble*," says the proverb. (844 b 19)

Nervous people are apt to *stumble* badly when speaking in public. (1661 a 1)

Engineers *shape* large shafts with hydraulic presses. (1701 a 14)

To laugh heartily is better than to *laugh in a subdued way*. (4306 a 65)

A factory chimney will sometimes *shake and threaten to collapse* some time before it falls. (4326 a 4)

We lose interest in a tale that moves too slowly to its *end*. (778 a 24)

A greater thing than to *overcome by fighting* is to know how to make use of victory. (878 a 22)

The world has seen no *struggle* greater than the World War of 1914-18. (868 b 15)

One should avoid a person who is *in a bad temper.* (993 a 1)

A boy may spend much of his spare time with a *close friend.* (742 a 13)

The *term* " loon " is applied to various species of water-birds. (2890 b 27)

It is desirable to wear warm *garments* in winter. (781 a 1)

An angler does not like the water of a stream to be too *transparent.* (767 a 11)

A *large social gathering to which people are invited for dancing* is often given in honour of a debutante. (319 a 1)

Old people often like to have a *short sleep* after dinner. (2891 a 66)

It is a worthy ambition to *improve* one's position in life. (405 a 11)

Fairies have been called " the little *people.*" (1679 b 30)

Lambs *gambol* in an amusingly clumsy way. (1744 b 1)

The playgoer does not see what goes on *at the back of* the scenes. (382 a 62)

" The *animal* that goes always never needs blows." (371 a 18)

Children *grasp* hands when playing " ring of roses." (763 a 36)

Christmas is a season of *merriment.* (1772 b 62)

" Who looks not *in front* finds himself behind." (379 b 20)

A mountain-climber is often assisted by a *crack* in a rock. (769 a 11)

All rivers *run* downhill. (1662 a 31)

In a *thick mist* it is easy to lose one's way. (1676 a 28)

Boat-builders *secure* planks to a boat's framework with copper nails. (1562 b 1)

Everybody dislikes a *badly behaved, disobedient* child. (2900 b 15)

School children begin to *chatter* directly they get out of school. (2329 b 28)

If a person persists in wrong-doing he will soon find himself in *prison.* (2336 a 19)

Finger-prints serve as a *guide* to identity. (785 a 47)

It is very unkind to *scoff* at another person's poverty. (2343 a 5)

" Speak when you're spoken to ; *approach* when you're called." (825 a 9)

Some birds seem to *move without effort* through the air. (1651 b 34)

A famous *ancestor* confers distinction on a family. (1693 b 32)

A *tint* of red in the evening sky is said to be the shepherd's delight. (4301 a 44)

A person who is *completely* blind is one of the saddest sights. (4325 b 41)

Interest in a race, the finish of which is *nearly even,* is sustained to the last moment. (778 b 19)

A *girdle for the waist* is usually made so that it can be adjusted. (389 b 16)

A shepherd's *hooked staff* is often of great service to him. (991 a 16)

The *period* of man's life, according to the Psalmist, is three score years and ten. (4254 a 1)

One sometimes gets a *sudden stiffness of the muscles* in the neck. (982 b 7)

Self-respect forbids one to *be abjectly humble.* (985 b 38)

An uninvited guest often meets with a *cold* reception. (723 a 48)

A statue has the *shape* of a living being. (1703 a 14)

The cuffs of an old coat *become worn by rubbing.* (1727 b 43)

Nowadays the *story below the ground-level* in a dwelling-house is seldom used for sleeping quarters. (349 b 32)

The average *person* is often alluded to as " the man in the street." (383 a 9)

If water is spilt careful housewives *wipe* it up at once. (2831 a 37)

Some animals are so *docile* that they can be taught to perform various feats. (4221 b 39)

Coming events cast their shadows before. (1768 a 42)

There is no knowing what may *happen to* a man who risks everything. (379 a 31)

At the *end* of a war prisoners are usually set at liberty. (778 a 24)

England is 50,874 square miles in *size.* (216 b 40)

The *setting up* of Cleopatra's Needle on the Victoria Embankment, London, dates from 1878. (1450 a 28)

Apes are very fond of fruit and vegetables, on which they chiefly *live.* (1506 a 7)

In summer, flower gardens are *bright* with colour. (10 a 31)

The cliffs at Dover are *steep.* (15 a 29)

Some birds are friends of the farmer because they *feed on* insects. (1337 b 1)

Bravery is called for in peace as well as in war. (955 b 1)

To make good a *title* to property is often a costly proceeding. (758 a 38)

People from many *distant* places come to London. (1556 a 19)

Few people still believe that the earth's surface is *level.* (1638 b 36)

A careless person after packing a suit-case often leaves his room in a *disordered* condition. (4320 b 66)

A *spider's web* in a room is often rendered conspicuous by the dust upon it. (793 a 20)

A favourite spot for a rookery is a *thick cluster* of trees. (785 b 5)

The audience at a theatre is usually eager for the play to *start.* (380 b 49)

Shire horses are noted for their ability to *drag* heavy loads. (1986 b 17)

Children should learn to *conduct themselves* in a proper manner. (381 b 37)

The *roar* of a bull is familiar to most people. (388 a 1)

During the marriage service the bride stands *by the side of* the bridegroom. (400 b 9)

The pelican possesses a long *beak*. (415 b 27)

A *plump* face is generally a sign of good health. (741 b 3)

The diamond is a *precious stone* that is highly prized. (2348 b 11)

The *middle* of a circle is equidistant from all points on its circumference. (677 b 14)

The orange tree will not *flourish* in England. (4285 b 8)

The hare is *easily frightened*. (4299 b 46)

Unwise speculation may result in the *complete* loss of a man's fortune. (4325 b 15)

A person going *in the direction of* the setting sun is travelling westward. (4328 b 38)

A submarine can travel on as well as *under* the surface of the sea. (389 b 1)

When we are launched on the world we begin to *profit* by our schooling. (394 a 22)

Skins that are *easily injured* should not be exposed to strong sunlight. (4249 a 58)

A child's *small bedstead* in a hospital is sometimes named after its donor. (940 a 28)

Pupils who make mistakes *lose* marks. (1700 b 7)

A fly caught in a spider's web cannot *disentangle* itself. (1730 b 31)

Waves break into *foam* against a rock. (1747 a 56)

A dog will sometimes *bark at* the moon. (363 b 35)

Lord Roberts urged the British Government to *add to* the size of the army. (2193 a 9)

A *story* should be well written and contain a good plot. (4217 a 61)

To straighten out a *muddled state of things* in business affairs is a difficult task. (4224 b 6)

King John was filled with *rage* when he sealed Magna Charta. (1764 b 60)

Exposure to the elements causes rocks to *break into small pieces*. (1002 b 37)

It is difficult to *go up* a ladder quickly. (772 b 18)

To *rely* on good fortune is to take a risk. (945 b 37)

Dead leaves will sometimes *clog* a rain-water pipe. (731 a 51)

A burglar fears the *sharp cry* of a dog. (339 b 31)

In olden times medicines were usually very *unpleasant to the taste*. (2896 a 1)

A sand castle will soon *fall down* if it is invaded by the sea. (4320 b 55)

Frogs and ravens *utter a low hoarse sound*. (988 a 26)

Broken *earthenware* is rarely worth mending. (988 b 50)

Marmalade is kept in a *glass or earthen ware vessel*. (2339 a 14)

Firemen direct a *stream* of water onto a burning building. (2347 a 1)

We *rub* a person's hands if they are cold, in order to restore circulation. (683 b 36)

It is impossible to obtain a *complete* knowledge of a subject without intensive study. (4280 a 49)

We sometimes *slope* an ink-pot when there is not much ink in it. (4297 b 42)

To *throw back* the head is usually a sign of contempt or impatience. (4325 a 38)

In dress, a *wrinkle made by folding* may be either intentional or accidental. (974 a 21)

A trader who gives short measure is a *deceiver*. (710 b 17)

A great leader is *greatly loved* by his followers. (389 a 30)

The French writer Chamfort described *fortune* as a nickname for Providence. (692 a 46)

A rider to hounds often carries a *short hunting whip without a lash*. (991 b 13)

The whipper-in of a pack of hounds has often to *make a sharp noise with* his whip. (964 b 20)

We should give place to our *superiors*. (405 a 32)

The puma is credited with a strange *affection* for mankind. (1681 b 37)

Most boys have at least one *chum*. (1737 b 31)

The *bat used for striking a shuttlecock* somewhat resembles a tennis racket. (362 a 1)

Locomotive wheels do not *grip* the rails so well in wet weather. (427 b 36)

A man driven into a *difficult position* may grow desperate. (922 b 49)

Everyone likes to *select* his own hobby. (732 a 30)

A gardener will sometimes take pride in a particular *garden plot for plants*. (374 a 57)

The plinth of a column is its *lowest part*. (349 a 6)

Large crowds *troop* to see a big football match. (1653 b 16)

A man's self may be his worst *enemy*. (1675 b 36)

One heeds where one walks when one's feet are *without covering*. (338 a 1)

Slaters *fasten* slates with flat-headed nails. (1629 b 26)

The *summit* of anything is its highest part. (4318 b 4)

One sometimes sees the *will-o'-the-wisp* on marshy ground. (2331 b 13)

The Pleiades are a *bunch* of small stars in the constellation Taurus. (786 a 20)

A bee *soon* dies after it has stung someone. (3513 b 14)

Three and four *add up* to seven. (138 b 12)

It is *far* colder at the North Pole than in England. (2857 b 56)

Motor-boats move swiftly *across* water. (3069 a 53)

Plymouth Sound, on the south-west coast of England, is about three miles *wide* at the entrance. (524 b 28)

The *arrival* of spring is heralded by the cuckoo. (828 b 1)

A *feeble* excuse is easily seen through. (1648 b 35)

The eighteenth century *dandy* was a mass of affectations. (1687 a 37)

It is a crime to obtain money by *trickery.* (1727 a 12)

Fieldmice *crouch down in fear* when an owl flies overhead. (961 b 64)

A child can *creep slowly along the ground* before it can walk. (972 b 10)

Shears are used to *cut* the wool from sheep. (774 b 1)

Wine is generally stored in a *room underground.* (673 a 14)

" *Hide* what causes shame to a friend." (854 a 1)

Much buying and selling is done on *trust.* (975 b 30)

A *person who commits a crime* is liable to be punished. (984 b 66)

" A *young horse* is worth nothing unless he breaks his cord." (820 a 14)

It is a wonderful sight to see a fleet of battleships *at sea.* (79 b 10)

The winner of a race is he who finishes *in front* of the others taking part. (92 a 30)

Many boys and girls are *shy* in the presence of strangers. (350 a 17)

Draughts occur when doors are left *partly open.* (99 b 29)

A soldier on sentry duty should always be *wide awake.* (105 b 22)

Passengers who *get down* from a moving vehicle run the risk of meeting with injury. (108 b 19)

On the evening of Lord Mayor's Day a *feast* is held in the Guildhall, London. (330 b 60)

A child will *mourn for* a lost toy. (406 a 37)

Charles I's defiance of Parliament was an act of great *foolishness.* (1681 a 13)

Jokes fail to amuse when they have lost their *newness.* (1734 b 29)

As a child one is taught to *conduct one's self* well at table. (381 b 37)

It requires a good deal of skill to *tie up* a wound properly. (418 b 38)

Lofty oaks grow from little acorns. (4219 a 36)

The *loud ringing sound* arising from the blacksmith's hammering of a horseshoe on an anvil is more rarely heard to-day than formerly. (760 b 46)

On special occasions a city will *adorn* its streets with flags. (375 a 62)

Certain fungi, commonly found in meadows, spread in the form of a *ring.* (748 b 8)

Proofs of a *deluge* have been found at Ur of the Chaldees. (1654 b 33)

A ship's cargo is sometimes unloaded into a *flat-bottomed boat.* (338 b 31)

To ascend Helvellyn, we may walk along Striding Edge, a narrow *ridge* of land. (2908 a 10)

It is surprising how many different books we may find on the same *subject.* (4320 a 44)

Not everybody is a *man who can turn his hand to any job.* (2331 b 5)

The movements of a seal on land are *awkward.* (785 b 45)

Fires often owe their origin to the falling of a *partly burnt coal* on something inflammable. (746 a 56)

A *humorous* element is often introduced into a serious play. (828 a 15)

Most people enjoy a certain amount of *good-natured teasing.* (684 b 5)

A knight's war-horse was as eager for the *fight* as its master. (1727 b 35)

Want of courage sometimes deserves more pity than blame. (961 b 42)

Some old-fashioned rooms are so low-pitched that a person of average height can *put his fingers on* the ceiling. (4326 a 30)

A special *warning* to motorists is placed outside schools adjoining the highway. (666 b 13)

Our chief *medium* of general information on current events is the Press. (695 a 48)

A poor *harvest yield* is disappointing to the farmer. (991 b 13)

A hare will *lie close to the ground* to escape being observed. (997 b 16)

An underground *cave* conveys a sense of mystery that appeals strongly to the imagination. (668 b 1)

There is a wide scope for *preference* in art. (730 b 22)

In the morning men go *out* to their labours. (1707 b 5)

Stoats *pursue* their prey with great persistence. (1680 a 51)

On some railways the trains are *often* late. (1733 b 34)

The gown worn by an Aberdeen Doctor of Letters is red in *colour.* (2089 a 9)

Captured slaves had to *crowd together* in the holds of the slavers. (2088 b 24)

Even experts fail sometimes to distinguish between the genuine article and the *imitation.* (914 a 55)

A one-sided game is poor *sport.* (1757 b 8)

To a starving man a crust of bread is a *small piece* of comfort. (1002 b 21)

A familiar sound in an English village is the *musical ringing* of the church bells. (724 a 22)

The top *story* of the Woolworth building, New York, is the fifty-seventh. (1655 b 10)

Most houses are supplied with a *tank for storing water.* (755 a 19)

Margate is *noted* for its bracing air. (1551 b 5)

The swift will fly past a window in a *twinkling.* (1637 a 65)

The Roman catapult was used to *hurl* stones or darts. (1649 a 44)

After mowing the lawn we proceed to trim the *uneven* edges. (2335 b 6)

It is wrong even to meditate a *serious offence.* (984 b 54)

Poor gramophone records *grate on* the nerves of anyone who has a sensitive ear. (2338 b 59)

We cannot *soothe* one who is inconsolable. (827 a 37)

We should make *sure* that the horse is inside before we lock the stable door. (681 b 22)

Moorhens *haunt* secluded pools. (1733 b 24)

Fortune is sometimes called the *shy* goddess. (963 a 1)

Men who use horses to *drag* barges rarely carry a whip. (4328 a 58)

Who does not hasten slowly runs the risk of a *set back.* (710 b 40)

When we move from one house to another we notify the postal authority of our *alteration* of address. (694 b 29)

Shepherds *look after* their flocks, and nurses *look after* the sick. (4249 a 9)

A cloud will sometimes envelop the *summit* of a hill. (980 a 35)

On a misty day we cannot see distant objects *distinctly.* (767 b 28)

A *simple story in verse* is often history at first-hand. (319 a 18)

A *sour-tempered, gloomy* expression will only make bad worse. (4161 a 25)

Artificial sunlight has done much to *check* disease. (230 a 51)

Letters sometimes go *adrift* in the post. (258 a 37)

Things are not always what they *seem* to be. (193 b 14)

A tidy person will leave things *in order* when he has done with them. (4121 a 20)

Explosives need to be handled with *caution.* (628 b 5)

United action is usually more effective than that of a single person. (2355 b 8)

We open the door by turning the *handle.* (2412 b 23)

We should not *find fault with* others for what we are responsible for ourselves. (437 a 21)

A cherry orchard in full *flower* is a lovely sight. (451 a 10)

Good work cannot be done without taking *pains* with it. (4370 b 7)

When we say our prayers we *go down on our knees.* (2410 b 11)

The manlike apes do not as a rule stand *erect.* (4438 a 20)

To *remain obstinately ill-humoured* is silly. (4161 a 21)

The postman gives a double knock *on* the door. (263 a 42)

It is natural for a ram to *push with the head.* (563 b 26)

An india-rubber ball will *rebound* better than a wooden one. (489 a 30)

At a railway station the porter carries heavy luggage on a *barrow.* (4372 a 52)

It is a mistake to *form opinions* by appearances. (2363 a 34)

It is sometimes best, when one has made a mistake in a piece of work, to start *again.* (80 b 12)

A dentist will *fill up the hole in* a tooth with gold, cement, or amalgam. (4116 b 60)

William the Conqueror had soldiers skilled in *shooting with bows and arrows.* (211 b 36)

Some precious stones have a *surprising* history. (4122 b 19)

Ladies no longer wear dresses with a *part trailing behind the wearer.* (4335 b 45)

In order to *become a member of* a club one has to be proposed by one or more members. (2355 a 29)

By keeping tadpoles in a small tank or pond one can see them *change* into frogs. (4386 a 6)

Sleigh bells make a pleasant *tinkle.* (2350 b 11)

One should not *worry* over trifles. (485 b 7)

At *sundown* the sun sinks below the horizon. (4165 a 47)

If a bootlace is *untied* one may trip up and fall. (4420 a 15)

The spines of a porcupine preserve it from *assault.* (270 a 22)

When the British, shut up in Lucknow, were despairing, help was *near.* (2932 b 8)

Fewer women than formerly *plait* their hair. (500 a 8)

A caged skylark leads a very *miserable* life. (4423 a 20)

We *break into crumbs* the bread we throw out to the birds. (1002 b 37)

Some spoilt children *weep* whenever they are crossed. (1005 b 50)

Limpets *fasten* themselves to rocks or stones. (269 b 25)

It is part of the business of an engineer to *construct* bridges. (543 a 40)

One should eat quietly, not *chew noisily.* (1003 b 1)

American Indians are very clever at following the *trail* of an animal or a man. (4331 b 55)

The London worker whose parents live in Scotland has a long *distance to travel* when going home. (2360 a 38)

A good detective will soon *clear up* a mystery. (4014 a 59)

When we are tired we make for the most comfortable *chair with arms.* (224 a 67)

A servant may be instructed not to *grant entrance to* visitors at certain times of the day. (58 b 34)

Chickens *nestle* up to the hen. (4001 a 51)

A vessel *drifting helplessly* is a menace to shipping. (60 b 37)

Use will *dull the edge of* the sharpest tool. (458 a 10)

Motor lorries *shake and jerk sharply* when they run over very uneven ground. (2358 a 22)

The sky-scrapers of New York *rise to a great height* above the streets of the city. (4329 a 21)

A *parasol* is a small umbrella used by ladies to protect them from the sun's rays. (4166 a 9)

We must try to keep *in high spirits* when things go against us. (2357 b 3)

The *basin* in which one cooks a pudding is usually made of earthenware. (494 a 16)

A *seat without back or arms* is less comfortable than a chair. (4116 b 1)

To eat only *the soft inner part of the loaf* is not good for the teeth. (1002 b 21)

Drake was always *eager* for adventure. (264 b 42)

One great thing in life is to be good at one's *work*. (2351 b 19)

Sailors come *on land* for leave. (245 a 18)

Children who are careful *do not lose* their toys. (2385 b 41)

A swan can give a nasty *knock* with its wing. (452 b 19)

On festivals we *decorate* our churches with flowers and foliage. (60 b 24)

Britain entered into the World War in 1914 because of her *pledge* to support Belgium in resisting a foreign invasion. (3433 a 1)

Some people like to be *tanned by the sun* (4165 a 34)

If there is a sudden scarcity of certain foodstuffs the price may *rise quickly*. (2367 b 34)

Frosts *help* farmers in breaking up the ground. (252 b 39)

When a train pulls up suddenly it gives us a *sharp jerk*. (2358 a 22)

To many boys the most *exciting* event in the school term is the breaking up for the holidays. (4111 b 1)

A child who has little appetite is apt to *trifle* with his food. (4330 b 1)

A sharp knife is a dangerous *thing* for children to handle. (237 b 18)

If we occupy ourselves overmuch with the *business* of others we may neglect our own. (75 a 7)

Everyone should know how to *summon* the fire-brigade. (588 a 42)

Between the first and second halves of a football match there is usually a short *break* of about ten minutes. (2289 b 28)

To tap underground oil or water it is necessary to *make a hole*. (481 a 63)

Young people *throng* to a circus when it visits a town. (4369 a 1)

A scientist may be led to the making of a discovery by a lucky *chance*. (28 a 7)

Men rushed to answer Kitchener's *request* for volunteers in 1914. (193 a 38)

In a smoky manufacturing town the *first freshness* of a building is soon lost. (2926 a 34)

To *make journeys* in England or abroad is a delightful and valuable experience. (4347 b 19)

A Gothic window usually has an *odd* number of lights. (4421 a 58)

A good *deed* is its own reward. (44 b 35)

There is often much *stir* at a railway station on the arrival and departure of trains. (561 b 36)

Provident people set *aside* a portion of their income for old age. (185 a 14)

If we do not trim the shrubbery it will soon become a mere *wild tangled mass*. (2369 b 34)

It is pleasant to see a herd of deer *step lightly* along a forest glade. (4363 b 44)

The *district* of Hampstead Heath has won fame as the home of poets, artists, and authors. (2914 a 33)

Showing a red rag to a bull is sure to *stir up* its anger. (229 a 1)

It is absurd to *try to prove* that black is white. (219 b 60)

A *high-minded* sailor, like Nelson, gives his life for his country. (2940 b 48)

If we *put up with* hardships cheerfully we lighten the burden of them. (4157 a 16)

Hardly any *melody* is so widely known as that of "God Save the King." (4382 a 10)

The *surface measurement* of Yorkshire is 6,077 square miles. (216 b 40)

Most families have a *large piece of meat* for dinner on Sundays. (2355 b 8)

In the old smuggling days many a *small barrel* of brandy was landed on the coasts of Cornwall and Devon. (2387 a 30)

A *song by one person* is more pleasing to some people than a chorus. (4013 a 36)

The sound of bagpipes is *disagreeable* to some people. (4430 b 12)

A *shopkeeper* should take pains to find out what the public requires (4333 b 34)

Any person with a watch can tell us the time. (184 a 45)

A good man is *honest and upright* in all his dealings. (4121 a 20)

A forest may easily be set *on fire* by carelessness of a picnic party. (79 a 31)

It is a great credit to a girl or boy to pass a *difficult* examination. (4106 b 24)

The spider-monkey is extremely *nimble* in its movements. (86 b 56)

If one does not *know the meaning of* a word one hears one should consult a dictionary. (4417 b 57)

In modern houses the *room in a house where food is cooked* often has tiled walls (2406 a 33)

A slum is no fit *place to live in* for human beings. (12 a 6)

Robert Burns was a *genuine* Scottish peasant. (4373 a 19)

Cosiness is more often found in a cottage than in a castle. (4001 a 57)

The erection of an *unsightly* building inflicts an injury on the public. (4400 a 57)

When George II died in 1760, the Mansion House, in London, had been but *recently* finished. (2927 a 16)

Little children love to *roll about* in a field of new-mown hay. (4380 b 56)

A lame person sometimes supports himself when walking with a *staff with a cross-piece at the top to fit under the armpit.* (1005 b 1)

Always look at the *cheerful* side. (519 b 39)

Being away from home affects different people in different ways. (16 a 25)

After passing middle life we begin to *grow old.* (83 a 1)

The communication cord in a train must never be pulled *except when* there is urgent need. (4428 b 52)

It is a pretty sight to see a deer *leap lightly* over an obstacle. (489 b 7)

The return of Halley's Comet in 1759 was *evidence* that Halley's prediction was true. (3435 b 40)

A heavy fall of snow will *bend* down the branches of a fir. (492 b 34)

An explorer has to be *full of courage* and very resourceful. (466 a 27)

A *person who sings a song alone* is usually accompanied on the piano. (4013 a 44)

The clever financier is the one who makes his deal *exactly* at the right moment. (2374 b 18)

In the game of draughts a *crowned piece* may move backwards as well as forwards. (2401 a 15)

Shakespeare is honoured *in foreign countries* as well as at home. (15 a 1)

The oversea dominions often *request* England to send them emigrants. (245 b 10)

Experience should increase with *length of life.* (83 a 1)

Some persons accomplish much without ever seeming to be *at work.* (561 b 66)

"Better be *without sight* than see ill." (443 b 19)

Beating the *under surface* of the foot was at one time a common Oriental mode of punishment. (4009 b 20)

One must have a licence to *make beer or ale.* (514 a 1)

A *hum like that of a bee* is usually caused by vibration. (568 a 47)

A cat loves to *settle itself comfortably* on something soft and warm. (2921 a 6)

To *stand or walk with the shoulders bent forward* is bad for the health. (4116 b 29)

Pears may cost a shilling *each.* (187 b 24)

Some people will *stop* at nothing to attain their ends. (4105 b 1)

An honest draper does not *draw out* elastic when he measures it. (4126 b 33)

When the "Titanic" struck an iceberg ships rushed to her *aid.* (253 a 1)

A baby likes to *hug* a soft toy, such as a Teddy bear. (1011 a 18)

A well-kindled fire will soon *burst into a bright flame.* (440 a 8)

Wood is more difficult to cut *opposite to* than with the grain. (82 a 15)

Lack of recognition goes far to *destroy* initiative. (2396 b 1)

If a boy goes to sleep during a lecture the boys on either side of him may *nudge* him. (2353 b 16)

Pheasants often roost on a *limb of a tree.* (501 b 52)

A *ray of the sun* will pass through a pin-hole. (4165 a 23)

Commerce between nations is based on *credit.* (4376 a 14)

Boys do not mind a master being strict, so long as he is *fair.* (2374 b 18)

A rabbit runs into its burrow to *escape* capture. (294 b 1)

Rival captains may *agree beforehand* to draw stumps early. (229 a 56)

The *coming* of summer is always welcome. (230 b 55)

When Jack fell down the hill Jill came tumbling *behind.* (81 a 29)

The hunting *call* of wolves is a terrible sound. (1005 b 50)

One should rest *for a short time* after a meal. (296 b 38)

Great orators are often *timid and uneasy* when they begin their speeches. (2920 a 1)

A *smith who works in iron* needs a forge. (435 a 62)

Should it be necessary to water sweet peas they should be given a *thorough wetting.* (4002 a 2)

The lion is acknowledged the *leader* of beasts. (2401 a 15)

The Greeks captured Troy by a *cunning device.* (4358 b 1)

Difficulties often *appear* when least expected. (221 a 64)

Charles Dickens was the *writer* of "David Copperfield." (285 a 1)

Captain Dreyfus was ultimately declared *guiltless* of the crime of betraying military secrets. (2244 b 23)

Parliament decided to *grant* Wellington £200,000 for his services in the Waterloo campaign. (295 a 61)

"Even a child can beat a man who is *tied* with cords." (489 b 49)

Repeated failures *test* the patience and courage of the boldest. (4376 b 58)

A dog will run with all its might *in pursuit of* a cat. (81 a 29)

A clock will *cease to work* if it is not wound up. (4116 b 60)

An unoiled wheel is apt to *lose motion by jamming.* (4105 b 1)

The moors look their best when the heather is in *flower.* (450 b 45)

We cannot tell what measure of *prosperity* we shall achieve, but we can find joy in our efforts to attain it. (4153 b 26)

A *smooth* sea is welcome to the bad sailor. (589 b 56)

The unhappy long for *perfect happiness.* (445 a 12)

Country children are usually *strong and robust.* (4138 a 10)

If a metal *pipe* in a boiler bursts it may cause a serious accident (4378 a 17)

Some kinds of meat and fish are *preserved by being dried in the heat of the sun.* (4165 a 53)

Many inhabitants of seaside resorts earn a living by supplying visitors with *food* and lodging. (459 a 24)

In "King Lear" Shakespeare describes the feeling of standing on the *edge* of a precipice. (522 a 29)

It is better to *occupy* oneself with one's own affairs than to meddle with the affairs of another. (561 b 66)

A *faithful* watch-dog barks when a stranger approaches his master's house at night. (4376 a 46)

The police often find it very difficult to *follow the track of* a thief. (4331 a 13)

A snail leaves a slimy *track* behind it as it crawls (4335 b 6)

Most railway tickets are not available *at a time later than* a certain date. (81 a 29)

Actors and actresses often *perform* for charity. (44 a 25)

In making bread-sauce, one does not use the *hard outer covering of bread.* (1004 b 52)

The town of Rye in Sussex, formerly on the coast, is now two miles *distant from the sea.* (2242 a 15)

If we *take away* three from ten the remainder is seven. (4152 a 60)

One good *service* deserves another. (4386 a 6)

Every night the Bank of England is guarded by soldiers. (2934 b 3)

The leaves of the aspen *quiver* with the slightest movement of the air. (4353 a 8)

There is usually a *short* interval between the acts of a play. (518 b 8)

The length of Italy is much greater than its *width.* (507 b 39)

"Some have been thought brave because they were *frightened* to run away." (80 a 21)

For an unbroken reflection in water a *still* surface is necessary. (589 b 56)

A popular concert *performer* commands a large salary. (240 b 9)

If our schoolfellows *joggle* the desk it is almost impossible to write. (3901 a 16)

In olden days some foot-soldiers were armed with a *weapon for shooting arrows.* (491 b 65)

The same opportunity never occurs *a second time.* (82 a 1)

On a dark night it is sometimes difficult to see the *stone edging of the pavement* (2389 a 57)

A ***narrow band*** of ribbon can be made into a rosette. (4130 a 22)

It is wise, when packing a trunk, to place articles liable to *break or get out of shape by pressure* at the top. (1004 b 21)

A dry twig will *break* easily. (3991 a 1)

A wall was built *on every side of* Troy (228 b 57)

Cats *smell at* their food before eating it. (3996 b 61)

It sometimes happens that an unscrupulous person will *carry off by force* a child of wealthy parents. (2395 b 3)

We should *consider* other people's feelings as well as our own. (4135 a 7)

To be *faithful* to one's convictions is a proof of a strong character. (4373 a 19)

For writing or drawing purposes one chooses paper which is *free from writing or other marks.* (437 b 62)

A stone thrown into a *calm* lake will cause a multitude of ripples. (4108 a 23)

In his novel, "Little Dorrit," Dickens describes the *occupants* of the Marshalsea Prison for debtors. (2243 a 1)

An important duty of a sea captain is to keep his ship *floating.* (79 b 10)

Honours *are in store for* the man who deserves them. (295 a 16)

Many navigators *attempted* to find a north-west passage to India. (4377 a 2)

Oliver Twist caused astonishment by asking for ***a further*** helping. (168 a 25)

In a business office the *younger* clerks have fewer privileges than their seniors. (2370 a 23)

Card-sharpers *cheat* their victims in many different ways. (4358 b 1)

One should never *pet* a dog one does not know. (629 b 16)

A *blow with the open hand* can hurt. (1012 a 1)

A bird may be known by its *cry.* (588 a 42)

Late risers do not know the pleasure of being able to *walk leisurely* to school or business. (4131 a 59)

Garden rubbish is usually thrown on a *large fire in the open air.* (473 b 22)

Some students have a *cosy* private room which they call their den. (4001 a 35)

A *young goat* is a frisky little creature. (2395 a 9)

On a frosty night the stars *sparkle* brightly. (4392 a 20)

Newspapers take the greatest trouble to obtain all the latest *information.* (2927 a 38)

Willows and alders may often be seen growing beside a *small stream.* (530 b 12)

The effects of upheavals *of the same kind* as the French Revolution are world-wide. (4154 b 53)

Queen Eleanor's *ready* action in drawing the poison from his wound saved the life of Edward I. (3433 b 47)

Some windows are fitted with a *hanging to keep out the sun.* (4166 a 3)

Several lives were lost in attempts to *climb* Mount Everest. (242 a 20)

The African pygmies live in the *dim light* of tropical forests. (4391 a 15)

"Yes" or "No" is the simplest *reply* to a question. (168 b 12)

Drivers must *halt* their vehicles when the policeman puts up his hand. (4116 b 60)

A loud noise can be heard from ***a long way off.*** (74 b 41)

A sudden bright light causes one to *move the eyelids.* (444 b 30)

A *light wind* is refreshing on a hot day. (512 b 29)

The *cautious* investor is content with a moderately low yield. (629 a 53)

If we *fight* against discouragement we shall win through. (4130 b 21)

A trapped bird will *strive hard* to escape. (4130 b 39)

In springtime one may hear the snipe *make a noise like a goat.* (441 a 27)

Beans are usually planted *in line.* (229 a 11)

If we endeavour to please we shall probably *achieve our object.* (4153 b 1)

A runaway horse may sometimes be stopped by a *strong pull* at the reins. (4380 a 20)

A little orphan boy may be cared for by his *father's sister.* (279 b 18)

A boy at school must *pay heed* to what the master says. (271 a 35)

The builders of the pyramids *understood* a great deal about engineering. (2410 b 57)

Peary explored the *North Polar* regions. (215 a 1)

A swing is sometimes attached to a *large branch* of a tree (488 a 22)

We find pleasure in our work if we *try hard* to make it perfect. (4130 b 21)

Runner beans nearly always *twist* round a pole the same way. (4391 b 21)

Soldiers carry their rifles *at a slope.* (246 a 1)

No animal is more *cunning* than the fox. (235 b 60)

It is foolish to *praise oneself unduly.* (460 a 7)

Some people will not pass under a ladder placed *in contact with* a wall. (82 a 15)

China let fall is usually *shattered.* (508 a 28)

There are few better ways of spending a holiday than a good *walk* across the country. (4337 b 32)

In sorting out our possessions we put *on one side* the things we want to keep. (245 a 31)

We *strike a blow with our knuckles* on a door to gain admission. (2413 a 18)

An English policeman is only armed with a *baton.* (4375 a 1)

Trade depression adds to the *host* of unemployed. (226 b 41)

A hat with a *wide* brim will serve to shade the eyes. (524 b 28)

Monkeys are remarkably *agile* climbers. (2935 b 10)

People who walk on a quay in a fog may *fall* into the harbour. (4380 b 56)

The colours of the rainbow *shade off into each other* where they meet. (442 a 15)

Many newspapers are printed whilst most people are *sleeping.* (245 b 58)

Missionaries go about *without weapons* among savages. (4411 a 9)

A picture which one man may *regard with mingled pleasure and wonder* may leave another cold. (58 a 37)

Wedding bells make a *cheerful* noise. (2361 b 17)

It is pleasant to be able to *loll* in a hammock when the weather is very hot. (2597 a 58)

Tiny children like *bread or biscuit soaked in milk.* (4019 a 1)

Our *condition* in life is largely what we make it. (2595 b 15)

A *ringlet of hair* is sometimes kept as a souvenir. (1022 b 23)

A fearless footballer is said to have plenty of *go.* (1053 a 45)

Timber merchants *stack* wood in a yard to season it. (3258 a 15)

Little children enjoy games in which they have to dance round in a *circle.* (3697 b 19)

We mourn the loss of a *beloved* friend. (1063 a 8)

It is sometimes difficult to find a seat that is *unoccupied* in the early morning trains. (4445 b 24)

The joyful *musical cry* of the skylark announces a fine day. (4017 a 31)

When a school-teacher retires from his post a new one is appointed in his *place.* (3717 b 47)

Spring is the time to *set* out seedlings grown in frames or pots. (3288 b 43)

We welcome a *written message* from an absent friend. (2507 a 33)

There is a very *large* bridge across the Firth of Forth. (1904 b 1)

Serious fires have sometimes been caused by a *glowing* coal setting fire to the hearth-rug. (2563 a 31)

A hogshead is a *big* barrel. (2456 b 20)

A ship which springs a bad leak is in *peril* of sinking. (1048 b 8)

A home that is *without love* is no home at all. (2599 a 62)

A cut finger may be very *painful.* (4021 a 14)

High towers sometimes *sway to and fro* in a storm. (3709 b 8)

What looks like a mere *shapeless mass* of useless rock may contain gold. (2609 b 12)

Lifeless leaves rustle in the wind. (1060 a 27)

Visitors are not allowed to *pick* the flowers in a public garden. (3304 b 9)

A well *brushed* carpet will outlast one of the same quality that is allowed to remain dusty. (4190 b 3)

We like to find *somebody* at home to welcome us. (4015 a 59)

An overturned vehicle may *fix* a person to the ground. (3262 b 20)

We *believe* that life does not exist on the moon, but we cannot prove it. (4175 a 8)

The *seed* of a lemon, sown in a pot and kept warm, may produce a plant. (3269 b 40)

It is a great *cause for regret* that so many beautiful old buildings in England have been destroyed. (3279 b 34)

The moods of some highly sensitive people *change* according to the weather. (4457 b 26)

A needle is useless when the *tip* is broken off. (3315 b 40)

One gets a *splendid* view of London from the top of the Monument near London Bridge. (1891 a 19)

One is often compelled to *refuse* an invitation owing to a previous engagement. (1076 a 30)

The *fatty matter* on wool is called lanolin. (1903 b 33)

Three score years and ten is the allotted span of our *existence* on earth. (2525 a 17)

Some people think that *high* rooms are more healthy to live in than low-pitched ones. (2578 a 16)

Travellers have to be on the alert for any savage animals that may *lie hidden* in the jungle. (2614 a 11)

Some people are very *careless* in the way they dress. (2475 a 9)

The most famous *woman poet* of the ancient world was Sappho. (3314 b 34)

Tactful words will often *calm* a child that is ruffled. (4018 b 15)

A man who picks pockets is a *dishonest person.* (3712 a 16)

The *clamorous* cawing of rooks is a common country sound. (2596 a 38)

A *guilty person* sometimes confesses his guilt. (1013 a 40)

In. sparsely settled regions a cordial greeting awaits *persons lately arrived.* (2925 b 19)

Insane people are placed in mental hospitals. (2627 b 63)

At the Victoria Falls the waters of the Zambezi *fall headlong* into a deep gorge. (3308 a 48)

A few withered leaves may continue to *hang loosely* on a tree long after the rest have fallen. (1048 b 35)

No one can prophesy what would be the *outcome* of another world war. (3663 b 11)

Green apples have a *sharp acid* taste (4025 b 40)

It would not be *correct* to say that England's chief industry is farming. (3694 a 34)

Liking the same work or pastime is a great *bond* between boys. (2547 a 25)

A person who is *wholly or partly without hearing* deserves our pity. (1061 b 20)

To *gain* wealth should not be our chief aim. (2987 b 17)

One's duty is not always *clear.* (3284 b 6)

He who hesitates to *seize* an opportunity generally loses it. (1897 b 38)

To *act the part of* Hamlet is the ambition of many actors. (3294 b 44)

It is a mistake to spend much time on matters that are of *trifling* importance. (2561 b 35)

A high chimney may *rock from side to side* when a gale is blowing. (4189 a 8)

A miniature or a lock of hair is sometimes kept in a *little metal case worn as an ornament.* (2574 b 40)

We *brush* away dirt and dust with a broom. (4190 a 44)

In decimals, a *dot* separates the whole number from the fractional part. (3315 b 40)

The east coast of Britain is not so *damp* as the west. (2808 b 52)

The stair-carpet is usually held in place by a *thin bar* of brass or wood on every step. (3710 b 57)

Most boys enjoy a *frolic.* (2458 a 15)

Crabs can give a very sharp *pinch* with their claws. (2937 a 15)

Most little girls *have a strong affection for* their dolls. (2598 b 12)

The *rate of movement* of a bullet can be measured by photography. (4042 a 7)

One *is obliged to* eat in order to live. (2877 a 38)

Crowds of men, women, and children go from London into Kent to *gather* hops for the farmers. (3247 b 14)

At the harvest the farmer heaps up the sheaves into a *stack.* (3689 b 47)

We can solve most of our difficulties *in some manner or other* if we try. (4015 b 18)

The *outer crust* of cheese is usually tough and not good to eat. (3697 a 54)

The discovery of the cause of malaria was a great scientific *triumph.* (4482 b 27)

One may have to try many times before finding the right *position* in a room for a picture. (3281 a 37)

The Pacific Ocean is a *huge* expanse of water. (4458 b 64)

Strawberries are very *scarce* in May. (3548 a 61)

To *stir* the fire too often is to waste the coal. (3318 b 12)

Many millions of sheep *feed on growing grass* on Australian and New Zealand farms. (1903 a 54)

It is difficult to *kindle* a fire if the wood is damp. (2528 b 31)

A long illness causes the sufferer to become *thin* and weak. (2484 a 17)

The gardener or chauffeur often lives in a *little house at the gates of the grounds of a mansion.* (2577 a 25)

Sunny days *entice* town-dwellers into the country. (2613 a 19)

A *performer on a musical instrument* generally has to spend much time in practice. (2875 a 7)

Some blind persons have a dog to *guide* them. (2480 a 26)

It requires a good deal of strength to *drag* a boat up a shelving beach. (2606 b 63)

To recite a *piece of poetry* well, one must enter into the spirit of it. (3314 a 49)

Blackberries that are not quite *ready for gathering* may disagree with one. (3700 b 49)

When we see the fruit forming on the brambles we know that blackberries will be ripe *before long*. (4018 a 26)

The usher in the House of Lords carries a small black *wand* as an emblem of his office. (3710 b 57)

Malachi is the *concluding* book in the Old Testament. (2460 b 9)

The steeplejack's job is one that calls for great *coolness*. (2919 b 49)

The wild animal leaves its *den* to hunt for food. (2437 b 1)

A night watchman welcomes the *coming of day*. (1057 a 23)

The curfew bell used to *toll* at eight o'clock at night as a signal that all fires must be put out. (3699 a 1)

In a lane full of ruts a cart may at any moment give a *sudden jerk to one side*. (2612 b 66)

One cannot sleep well unless one's mind is at *ease* and free from worry. (3660 a 25)

Unripe gooseberries are *tart*. (4025 b 40)

A cosmopolitan prefers to *wander* about the world rather than to settle in one country. (3705 a 62)

Little children sometimes *adorn* their heads with daisy-chains. (1074 a 6)

A face may be *lacking in beauty*, and yet attractive. (3284 b 6)

It is sometimes difficult to *bring back to mind* events that happened long ago. (3568 b 56)

A Shakespearean *drama* is often acted in a garden or park. (3294 b 44)

The *top* of a biscuit tin should fit tightly. (2522 b 9)

The Norman kings of England took great *delight* in hunting the red deer. (3297 b 64)

In most parts of the New Forest one can wander at *one's free will*. (3297 b 64)

In olden days the wrecker would *entice* many a good ship to destruction by showing a light. (2613 a 19)

Oil and water do not *blend*. (2800 a 9)

The *rate of motion* of a motor-car is reckoned in miles per hour. (4042 a 7)

There is an enormous amount of *travellers' baggage* to handle at an important railway terminus. (2607 a 36)

A gardener sometimes raises a plant from a *slip taken from another plant*. (1029 b 61)

The Romans wore a *long, loose garment* called a toga. (3706 b 51)

One should not *loiter* when on an errand. (2435 b 52)

Another great war would *hurl* Europe into ruin. (3308 a 48)

Chilblains sometimes make a person *walk lamely*. (2540 b 23)

A *wicked action* brings punishment sooner or later. (2787 b 31)

The prose style of John Ruskin is *akin to poetry*. (3314 b 43)

Many holiday-makers at the seaside like to *idle* on the sands. (2478 a 35)

The art of naming the letters of words in order is not easily acquired by young children. (4042 b 69)

Many lives have been lost through a careless *blunder*. (2796 a 29)

Tow was formerly used to *stop* leaks in ships. (3305 a 6)

Firemen occasionally have to *rush quickly* through flames. (1053 a 45)

Though our work be good, it is almost *certain* not to please everybody. (4177 b 7)

A large thorn will *make a hole in* a bicycle tire. (3253 b 6)

To take part in horse-races one must be a good *horseman*. (3691 a 63)

A hard-working boy can generally *get promotion* in whatever career he adopts (3701 b 37)

A practical joke may be no joke at all for the *person who is the object*. (4482 a 1)

It is *customary* to leave a tip for the waitress at a tea-shop. (4442 b 21)

We are *frequently* mistaken in our first impressions of the people we meet. (3005 b 40)

In heavy seas a great liner does not *toss from side to side* so much as a small steamer. (3712 b 10)

Patents *give* certain rights to inventors. (1894 b 10)

Some flat-fish *propel themselves through the water* by moving their bodies with a curious wave-like motion. (4193 a 20)

To tell a *falsehood* while on oath is to commit perjury. (2522 b 41)

A very *agreeable* stroll may be taken through the London parks in May. (3297 b 55)

Fodder is frequently kept in a *room over a stable*. (2577 b 32)

There is many a beautiful *valley* in the English lake district. (1043 a 20)

The *feathery* fronds of ferns clothe shady banks in Devonshire. (3308 a 14)

It requires skill to *set* paving blocks properly. (2475 a 32)

The splashing of a spring of water is *a sweet sound* to a thirsty traveller. (2874 a 32)

Children playing at being Red Indians sometimes *smear over* their faces with paint. (1055 a 64)

A carpenter sometimes uses a wooden *peg* to join pieces of timber together. (3262 b 20)

We cannot expect the *class* of goods sold at a cheap bazaar to last. (4022 a 40)

It takes little to *annoy* an irritable man. (4478 a 22)

We should all try to *employ* our time profitably. (4441 b 16)

If we look long enough at a ship that is sailing straight out to sea she will *disappear* over the horizon. (4453 a 44)

A *pat* of butter is often served with a roll of bread. (1039 a 54)

A sponge, which was long thought to be a *vegetable*, is really a colony of animals. (3288 a 63)

The sea has been the *tomb* of many sailors. (1901 a 5)

A gentleman is kindly in thought, word, and *act*. (1082 b 18)

Most people have a special *fondness* for a particular colour. (2535 a 61)

A good driver seldom finds it necessary to *whip* his horse. (2459 a 36)

Wet feet are often the cause of a cold. (1046 a 35)

A new coat gives little satisfaction if it is a *bad fit*. (2789 b 39)

The little handbags carried by women usually contain a *mirror*. (2588 a 12)

The *tiniest* piece of grit in the eye will cause pain. (2485 b 19)

When on holiday we often *have a midday meal* out of doors. (2610 b 29)

A *limping* animal arouses pity. (2440 b 42)

Gibraltar is a great *stony* promontory. (3710 b 9)

People who do not like the heat sometimes feel *flabby* in very hot weather. (2540 b 39)

In the days of chivalry, a knight wore a large *bunch of feathers* on his helmet. (3306 b 15)

For their own evil purposes pickpockets *mix* with crowds. (2774 b 64)

A *dive* into a cool stream is refreshing on a hot day. (3308 a 48)

We *let down* the tennis net if it is too high. (2602 a 24)

A chained dog is usually very *unhappy*. (2788 b 49)

An artist is careful to *wash out* his paint brushes in water or turpentine before using them. (3699 b 45)

Some birds have been nearly exterminated through the trade in their *feathers*. (3305 b 25)

There are many *gloomy* days in winter. (1051 a 1)

Some buses only stop at certain points to *take* up passengers. (3247 b 14)

A hawk will *swoop* down on its prey. (4190 a 44)

Steam-boat passengers often embark from a *jetty* where the water near the shore is shallow. (3253 a 44)

The noise made by a railway train passing over a short bridge is *somewhat* like a peal of thunder. (4015 b 5)

Schoolboys often *idle about* on their way to school. (1056 b 40)

A man who knows he is in the wrong is well on the *way* to putting himself in the right. (3704 b 45)

Scientific research is of the greatest *importance* in fighting desease. (4450 a 65)

If a lead pencil is blunt one can *sharpen* it with a knife. (3315 b 40)

When spiders *seize* a fly they at once wind it up in threads. (1883 a 68)

A *rapidly* running river is unsuitable for bathing. (4192 b 40)

Young people now enjoy greater *freedom* than formerly. (2517 b 6)

Some people, when they go for a walk with a friend, have a way of walking a *short distance* ahead. (2561 b 35)

If an old man is in good health he may be as *full of life* as a boy. (2564 a 46)

It is foolish to *idle* over a task which has to be done. (1043 a 34)

Young children are taught to *name the letters of words in order*. (4042 b 58)

Poor children living in mean streets must *yearn* for a glimpse of the green fields. (2585 b 1)

The area of Austria is *smaller* than it was before the World War. (2504 b 43)

A sick person seeks a *remedy*. (1021 a 14)

To wade out of our depth if we cannot swim is the act of a *madman*. (2610 a 9)

Hood's " Song of the Shirt " tells of a poor woman who had to *work with* the needle for wretched wages. (3310 a 62)

Petroleum is sometimes conveyed in a *tube* extending hundreds of miles. (3270 a 5)

The *rotting* of a tree is not always visible from the outside. (1070 a 40)

To a foreigner the spelling of English must appear very *strange*. (2997 a 36)

To hesitate *half-way* across a busy street is dangerous. (2761 a 1)

Owls *sleep* in the day and hunt for food by night. (3718 a 11)

Recreation is more enjoyable when we have worked hard. (3294 b 44)

A very *agreeable* holiday may be spent on the Cornish coast. (3297 a 61)

Sailors often *lessen* the cargo of a stranded ship to enable it to float again. (2532 a 38)

The scales of a balance *move irregularly up and down* before coming to rest. (4189 a 8)

To stop a runaway horse needs much *courage*. (3304 b 9)

Motor-cars are liable to skid on roads that are *covered with mud*. (2859 b 32)

The devotion of a *faithful* friend never changes. (2602 b 15)

Grains of rice *become puffed out* when placed in water. (4191 b 38)

In India men *travel about* on elephants. (3691 a 14)

Levant morocco is a *kind* of leather made from the skins of sheep and goats. (4022 a 40)

Some people never *pay attention* to advice. (2554 b 1)

Boy Scouts learn how to *set up* a tent securely. (3276 b 32)

The auctioneer accepts the highest *bid* for whatever he has to sell. (3002 b 25)

Darkness comes *shortly* after sunset. (4018 a 26)

Robert Fulton was the first engineer to *arrive at* a solution of the problem of submarine navigation. (3559 a 60)

INTERMEDIATE SECTION

Hunger and poverty *incite* even the laziest folk to work. (1862 a 29)

A collection is often made at the *end* of a meeting. (858 a 38)

When giving instructions it is well to make them *definite*. (1513 a 45)

A well-equipped *surgical theatre* is a necessity in every hospital. (3025 a 49)

To adjust the parts of a motor-cycle is a very delicate *task*. (3025 a 26)

One has to *employ* great tact in dealing with some people. (1501 b 52)

No bird-lover would *imprison* a robin in a cage. (867 b 1)

A person who gives a plain statement of incidents is said to *limit* himself to the facts (867 b 1)

A great architect knows how to control his use of *decoration*. (3049 a 22)

Samuel Richardson is regarded as the *creator* of the English novel. (3048 a 14)

Special machines have been invented to *squeeze into a smaller bulk* such material as waste paper. (851 a 57)

All efforts to solve the problem of perpetual motion have been *fruitless*. (1767 b 65)

One of the Australian lizards has a curious *ruffle* of skin. (1740 b 1)

Whatever our work may be, we should *strive* to do it well. (1403 a 23)

It is a characteristic of modern civilization for people to *crowd* together in cities. (2021 a 21)

A new discovery will sometimes *bear out* an old theory. (867 b 41)

Hay, grass, and oats are used as *fodder* for horses. (1687 b 64)

At the birth of Christ wise men from the *East* came to worship Him. (3046 b 37)

The kangaroo delivers *dangerous* blows with its hind feet. (1705 b 5)

A terrier must have *pluck* to attack a badger in its burrow. (1788 a 2)

The bait used by a fisherman does not always *entice* the fish. (117 a 10)

Many towns are supplied with drinking water brought from a distance through an open or enclosed *channel*. (864 a 33)

Ancient races were *pitiless* towards captives of war. (1650 a 24)

On Derby Day there is a huge *concourse* of people on Epsom Downs. (1803 a 43)

Ranchers *enclose* their lands with posts and wire. (1580 b 22)

The arrival of Blücher and the Germans at Waterloo was most *timely*. (3030 a 1)

Edmund Burke was a very eloquent *speaker* of the eighteenth century. (3036 a 27)

Captain Scott's death in the Antarctic is a good *instance* of dying nobly. (1489 a 1)

In the phrase " reading novels is pleasant " use is made of a *verbal noun*. (1826 a 50)

Alexander the Great's *war-horse* was named Bucephalus. (701 b 23)

To pass round a sharp corner, an iron pipe must be fitted with an *angle-piece*. (1359 a 1)

Kind words *hearten* the willing worker. (1399 b 24)

To *contradict* a statement is not necessarily to disprove it. (1773 b 64)

The *street Arab* is generally very keen-witted. (1788 b 1)

Nelson had reached the *fullest extent* of his ambition at the battle of Trafalgar. (2006 a 39)

The village blacksmith in Longfellow's poem was a *very strong* man. (2005 b 13)

One who volunteers to do a job is less likely to grumble than one who does it under *constraint*. (852 a 6)

The *widespread fire* which broke out in London in 1666 is supposed to have banished the plague from the metropolis. (868 a 33)

Sovereigns meet on a *basis* of equality. (1686 b 60)

Very hot weather makes children *restless* in school. (1597 b 23)

There is no *recipe* for attaining happiness. (1706 a 8)

Copernicus was the *originator* of modern astronomy. (1564 a 32)

To *refer indirectly* to a thing, it is not necessary to specify it. (116 b 33)

The *hundredth anniversary* of an event is often marked by a special celebration. (676 a 31)

One cannot place much trust in a person of *flighty* habits. (1671 a 14)

" The Children's Dictionary " offers an excellent *chance* to improve our English. (3030 a 41)

Puck, in Shakespeare's " Midsummer Night's Dream," is a merry, mischievous *sprite*. (1370 a 25)

When making clothes for children, *generous* allowance should be made for their growing. (141 b 16)

Persons who *agree together to do something unlawful* against the State are guilty of treason. (887 a 1)

In the year 1918 a *widespread outbreak* of influenza occurred. (1436 a 24)

Good breeding shuns discourtesies. (1818 b 1)

We sometimes *infer* from the answer to a question more than it was meant to convey. (858 a 29)

The geysers of New Zealand and Iceland *throw out* great quantities of boiling water and steam. (1357 a 27)

Many large rivers *discharge their waters* into the Atlantic Ocean. (1392 b 26)

One frequently has to *admit to be true* certain points in an opponent's argument. (854 a 18)

Nurserymen *set aside* their best plants for cuttings or seed. (3650 b 54)

A vanquished enemy may have to *surrender* territory to the victor. (854 a 18)

Many tropical birds *surpass* ours in brightness of plumage. (1492 a 33)

Samson's *huge* strength enabled him to break the pillars of the Philistines' house. (1832 b 64)

The wisest of men *make mistakes.* (1453 b 5)

Few fashions survive a *hundred years.* (678 b 63)

Cherry colour is not one that suits everybody. (681 a 40)

Repeated disappointments *wear away* our patience. (1735 a 27)

Very long hours of work *exhaust* the strongest man. (1540 b 6)

The history of some early races has been *completely* lost. (1422 b 30)

The crowings of cocks *announce the approach of* a new day. (2019 a 50)

Evidence which seems to prove two contrary facts is *discordant.* (868 b 21)

Unscrupulous business men *palm off* worthless shares on unsuspecting people. (1678 a 23)

An *unprejudiced* man can give a better decision than one of fixed ideas. (3023 b 11)

The *creation* of clouds is due to the chilling of moist air. (1704 a 67)

Dresses no longer *in the mode* have little value. (1561 b 2)

A subject may be difficult to understand *even if* it is clearly expressed. (125 a 48)

The effectiveness of a nation depends largely upon the *physical condition* of its people. (1994 b 18)

Many words in all languages have a *twofold* meaning. (1306 a 28)

The circle, as it has neither beginning nor end, has been taken as the *symbol* of eternity. (1380 b 65)

To *resist* the laws made for the country's benefit is the greatest folly. (3030 a 52)

Fishing with rod and line calls for much patience. (156 b 2)

The German version of the proverb " Look before you leap " is " First *ponder,* then begin." (883 b 39)

One cannot *look intently* at the sun except at sunrise and sunset. (1807 a 31)

Bombing aeroplanes during the World War caused widespread *devastation.* (1989 a 30)

Every old castle had its *underground prison.* (1316 b 19)

Victories *raise the spirits of* troops. (1358 b 23)

The colour red is said to *arouse* the anger of bulls. (1495 b 32)

King Lear, in Shakespeare's tragedy, is treated *without sympathy* by his two elder daughters. (1982 a 11)

The police often find it necessary to make inquiries *with respect to* a person associated with a crime. (855 b 31)

Good motor-cars run *very well* for years. (1492 b 23)

A leader who looks *dejected* discourages his followers. (2055 a 16)

Water running over soft ground will soon *scoop* a channel for itself. (2055 a 16)

Many a blind person has to depend on *almsgiving.* (702 b 20)

There is always a great *meeting* of football enthusiasts at the Cup Final. (859 b 11)

Widespread *scarcity of food* is often followed by plague. (1551 a 19)

David and Jonathan were always *loyal* to each other. (1545 a 40)

Want of money need offer no serious *hindrance* to progress in life. (2986 a 50)

Marshal Foch proved himself *adequate* to his great task in the World War. (1443 b 31)

The invention of gunpowder opened a new *era* in the history of warfare. (1442 b 20)

How the ancient Egyptians built the Pyramids is a *riddle* to the modern engineer. (1411 a 55)

A fire that has been apparently quenched may spring up again from its *smouldering ashes.* (1379 a 65)

A veiled *suggestion* is sometimes more effective than a downright question. (2041 b 39)

It is foolish to *overstate* a good case. (1487 b 23)

The first rigid *steerable balloon* was built by Count Zeppelin in 1900. (98 a 1)

An *aviator* is hampered by fog. (97 a 32)

Napoleon *tauntingly* described the British as a nation of shopkeepers. (1831 b 15)

Thieves use a *jargon* of their own. (3969 b 1)

The Corinthian column is easily recognized by its *richly decorated* capitol. (3049 b 8)

To *lie in wait for* an enemy in order to attack him unexpectedly is a common practice in war. (132 a 32)

Everything possible should be done to preserve the *friendship* of nations. (135 b 24)

Wit and good stories *brighten up* conversation. (1413 a 7)

The failure of a bank is a *staggering blow* to the depositors. (1535 a 4)

The Amazons were a *mythical* race of warlike women. (1532 a 40)

A person who truckles to those of higher social position, and will not *deign* to be civil to his social inferiors, is a snob. (862 a 10)

Methodical habits are a wonderful saving of time. (3041 a 40)

Benevolence, we are told, should begin at home. (702 b 20)

In the *dusk* bats begin to flit about. (1850 b 59)

The outbreak of the World War threw Europe into a state of *agitation.* (1583 b 33)

Some people are inclined to *put awkward questions to* a parliamentary candidate. (2002 a 23)

The shop visited most often by children is that of the *seller of sweetmeats.* (865 b 3)

Disraeli and Gladstone were two *prominent* statesmen of Queen Victoria's reign. (1387 b 32)

The jaguar is a very *fierce* animal. (1584 b 11)

Many rogues have *ready* tongues. (1849 b 1)

It is illegal, except indoors, to set a *spring trap* to catch a human being. (1836 a 44)

Charles James Fox, the British statesman, was a confirmed *gambler.* (1788 a 11)

Shaking the fist at a person is a *motion* symbolic of defiance. (1827 a 19)

The Eddystone lighthouse is as *stable* as the rock on which it stands. (1621 b 26)

The moon is a *sphere* 2,162 miles in diameter. (1851 a 14)

Rivers and streams *grow smaller* during a drought. (1324 b 60)

Many kinds of memorials may be seen in a *public burial-ground.* (674 b 1)

Walking slowly requires little *effort.* (1502 b 3)

Railway carriage buffers *yield* under great pressure. (1841 b 6)

In August large bodies of troops *pitch tents* on Salisbury Plain. (1396 a 1)

A high opinion of oneself and humility are not compatible with one another. (854 a 31)

The fortunes of Napoleon began to *decline* with the disastrous retreat from Moscow in 1812. (1338 a 29)

Differences between litigants may be settled *in a friendly way.* (134 b 16)

It is difficult to master a subject which is very *involved.* (846 b 4)

The *colour of the skin* of a blonde is fair. (846 a 28)

Pythons *encircle* their prey in a crushing embrace. (1407 a 6)

A masonry dam has a *covering* of squared stones. (1535 b 28)

Weathercocks are so mounted that they always *turn towards* the wind. (1533 b 1)

Watchdogs *look at* strangers with distrust. (1527 b 24)

Children are taught to read by spelling and pronouncing each word *audibly.* (120 b 23)

A timid person will stand *at a distance* from a mob. (120 b 8)

Most European armies consist mainly of *soldiers compulsorily enlisted.* (881 a 17)

It is the lot of the judge to *pronounce judgment against* a prisoner who is found guilty. (861 a 55)

The terrestrial *globe* has a diameter of nearly 8,000 miles. (4044 b 20)

A trawler is provided with powerful *tackle* for hauling the trawl aboard. (1808 a 17)

Surgeons *draw out* steel splinters from an injured eye with a powerful magnet. (1524 a 1)

After Waterloo, Napoleon had no *choice* but to surrender. (3032 b 44)

The course of the largest ship is *controllable* by a small hand-wheel. (1882 a 67)

Ivy plants *encircle* trees with their branches. (1383 a 9)

Works of philosophy are sometimes *dry and tedious* reading. (2000 b 3)

The laws *authorize* officials to demand the payment of taxes. (1392 b 1)

Disappointments make us feel *dismal.* (1852 a 54)

It is *nonsense* to say that peacock's feathers bring bad luck. (1597 a 11)

Stalkers of wild animals tread very *cautiously.* (1837 a 48)

The minuet is a dance distinguished by its *graceful* movements. (1365 b 18)

To *risk money on a chance* is an easy way of squandering wealth. (1785 b 37)

Macaws have very *showy* plumage. (1804 a 12)

Hamlet is the *chief male character* in Shakespeare's play of that name. (2025 a 1)

During the World War the Allies acted in *agreement* with one another. (856 a 17)

To speak laconically is to express oneself in a *terse* or pithy style. (858 a 1)

Harsh retorts tend to *aggravate* a quarrel. (1380 b 25)

The Pharisees took counsel how they might *ensnare* Jesus in His talk. (1418 b 58)

Cowardly people tell lies to *escape* punishment. (1479 a 32)

A fine sunset is a *splendid* spectacle. (1876 b 30)

Volcanoes *discharge* ashes, dust, steam, boiling mud, and molten lava. (1388 a 37)

Owls see better in the *twilight* than we do. (1321 b 1)

A *navigator's map* is indispensable to the sailing of a sea-going ship. (705 a 1)

Tax-payers generally *cry out* against new taxes. (1496 a 33)

Explorers must be prepared to *undergo* hardships. (1511 a 52)

The stars seem to *flicker* on a frosty night. (4392 a 20)

A bicyclist travels on level roads with small *exertion of power.* (1351 b 8)

During the illness of King George V the public showed much *anxiety.* (855 b 19)

An *immense* statue of Liberty stands in the entrance to New York Harbour. (1414 a 1)

A person on trial awaits the *verdict* of the jury with anxiety. (1612 b 21)

It is useless to call to a person who is out of *hearing distance.* (1331 a 22)

The athlete keeps himself in *a good state of health* by training. (862 b 1)

The Harpies of old Greek legends had very *repellent* features. (1689 a 3)

The *path* of the earth around the sun is in the form of an ellipse. (3037 a 47)

The trunk of a giant tree in the Yosemite Valley has a *circumference* of more than 100 feet. (1840 b 26)

The ideas of mankind about the future of the human race are necessarily *not clear.* (1991 b 12)

Falstaff, in Shakespeare's play of Henry IV, is an *uproariously merry* rogue. (2038 b 25)

Walking in loose sand is very *tiring* work. (1565 b 9)

A metal-spinner can *shape* a bowl out of a flat metal plate. (1561 a 13)

Unlike Dives, Lazarus did not *feed* sumptuously. (1557 a 1)

Fishermen *gather* the harvest of the sea. (1796 b 22)

The *tattler* often does harm to those of whom he talks. (1879 a 22)

A *phrase* has often been the determining factor in the winning of an election. (3979 a 57)

Amundsen's journey to the South Pole in 1911 was a great *feat.* (1513 b 27)

If a lighted match is applied to gunpowder, an explosion will *follow.* (1417 b 43)

Interfering with her calf may *infuriate* a cow. (1415 a 1)

Many a family treasures the portrait of a famous *forefather.* (150 a 34)

Misfortunes *call forth* sympathy. (1485 a 24)

The Californian sequoia is a *colossus* among forest trees. (1830 a 55)

Exposure to the air causes the gum produced by certain trees to *change from a fluid to a solid.* (871 a 44)

The Vikings of old celebrated a victory by a wild *carousal.* (3046 a 50)

In any walk of life one must expect to *meet with* some difficulties. (1399 b 1)

Beethoven was a great *creator of music.* (847 b 40)

Direct information is the most reliable. (1623 b 12)

The word "furniture" covers tables, chairs, bookcases, *and so on.* (1468 a 7)

Queen Victoria won the *respect* of all her subjects. (1465 b 25)

The Spaniards strove in vain to *drive* the English from the West Indies. (3060 a 51)

The *stableman* finds his means of livelihood seriously threatened by the increase of motoring. (3056 b 41)

The cutting of the Panama Canal was a gigantic *undertaking.* (1420 b 42)

All four wings of the Camberwell Beauty butterfly have a white or cream-coloured *border.* (1347 a 38)

Good King Wenceslas was a monarch who was *mindful* of the needs of his subjects. (2004 b 7)

A statue is sometimes placed in an *arched recess.* (104 a 57)

Formal etiquette is sometimes dispensed with by *common agreement.* (882 a 21)

Cardinal Wolsey incurred the *disapproval* of Henry VIII. (1209 b 62)

Astronomers *predict* the time of eclipses with great accuracy. (1692 b 50)

A cat will attack a dog with great *savageness* in defence of her kittens. (1600 b 48)

Lord Kitchener's *strong point* was his power of organizing. (1707 a 14)

There is no *basis* for the belief that sunlight puts out a fire. (1714 a 23)

Near the village of Cheddar in Somerset there is a *deep cleft* in the Mendip Hills. (1876 a 66)

The Missouri is the chief *tributary* of the river Mississippi. (1574 a 10)

A general may make a *sham movement* to conceal his actual plan of attack. (1575 a 46)

The daring feats of acrobats *cause wonder to* the spectators. (129 a 10)

Socrates arrived at the *core* of things by argument. (1996 a 5)

The Japanese are clever at growing *miniature* trees. (1323 b 12)

Children sometimes *astonish* their elders by their precocious sayings. (4180 b 12)

Confectioners *coat* wedding cakes with sugar. (1400 b 21)

The peel of an orange is its *external* protective covering. (3062 b 13)

Much of our *petrol* comes from the United States. (1800 .b 54)

It is difficult to express a definite *view* on unfamiliar subjects. (3027 b 27)

The stubborn *resistance* offered by the French at Verdun was a prominent feature of the World War. (3030 b 48)

Powerful cranes are used to *lift* heavy weights. (1369 a 13)

At a marriage ceremony the bride wears a special bridal *dress.* (1796 a 41)

Gardens are *brilliant* with flowers in summer. (1807 a 9)

St. Paul said many wise things about the *next world.* (2021 b 20)

Before breaking up, a *meeting for conference* sometimes settles where it shall meet next. (873 b 21)

Most towns are now lighted *by means of electricity.* (1361 b 10)

The stems of a honeysuckle *twist together* in a wonderful way. (1427 b 16)

An aeroplane in flight is now quite an *ordinary* spectacle. (1483 b 32)

Football and hockey *involve* much violent exertion. (1418 b 18)

Henry V is said to have behaved in a *reckless* manner when Prince of Wales. (1982 b 1)

To succeed, business needs the services of *capable* directors. (844 a 1)

Granite is a very *lasting* building material. (1319 b 7)

There is no *result* without a cause. (1349 a 58)

Fires *go out* if not kept supplied with fuel. (1512 b 1)

Good *leadership* may change the fortunes of a football team. (1814 a 26)

The Welsh Eisteddfod is a congress of bards held *yearly* to encourage native poetry and music. (165 a 34)

It takes many men to throw up a large *earth defence* quickly. (1333 b 48)

House-martins build their nests under the *projecting edges* of roofs. (1338 a 1)

The prizes of commerce fall to the most *enterprising* people. (1861 a 16)

Good *binoculars* magnify seven or more diameters. (1599 b 38)

The papers of an untidy man are sometimes in *disorder*. (696 b 15)

The microphone is used to magnify very *weak* sounds. (1542 b 9)

The Prodigal Son would *gladly* have eaten the husks given to the swine. (1542 a 20)

The *generous* giver finds a delight in helping deserving cases. (3023 b 1)

Napoleon Bonaparte refused to *consider* Robert Fulton's offer to build him steam-driven warships. (1421 a 15)

It is easier to *order* secrecy than to ensure it. (1411 b 33)

No man can conceive the *limits* of space. (687 b 1)

History relates numerous instances of *knightly* deeds. (728 b 63)

A proverb bids us look *before* we leap. (1449 b 28)

We can *rub out* rust marks on steel with emery cloth. (1449 a 29)

Barbarossa was a famous Moorish *pirate* of the 16th century. (1731 a 7)

A *frank, kindly* welcome makes people feel at home. (1729 a 39)

Other countries completely *surround* Switzerland. (1398 a 12)

A painter has to study the effect of the *arrangement* as well as the colour of his subject. (849 a 1)

Enemies will sometimes *settle* differences between themselves for the purpose of uniting against a common foe. (847 b 29)

The Portuguese were the first Europeans to *catch sight* of the Cape of Good Hope. (1461 a 35)

A sudden draught will *put out* a candle flame. (1522 b 1)

Joseph's brethren were *jealous* of the love shown him by his father. (1430 a 48)

A weak nation may seek a powerful *partner*. (117 a 52)

Jenny Lind, the "Swedish nightingale," had a most *bewitching* voice. (1560 a 38)

The Leeward Islands *include* Antigua, St. Kitts, Nevis, Dominica, Montserrat, and the Virgin Islands. (851 b 10)

To substantiate an abstract statement, *actual* evidence must be produced. (859 b 42)

A guilty demeanour serves **to** *verify* suspicion. (867 b 41)

Every *ancestor* is accorded great honour by the Chinese. (1688 b 4)

Chemists *strain* solutions through a special kind of paper. (1609 b 11)

True repentance is shown by conduct. (1819 b 62)

Natural laws *regulate* the movements of the stars. (1882 a 52)

Its dignified simplicity is a *distinctive part* of Norman architecture. (1571 b 1)

Passengers for France *go aboard ship* at Dover, Newhaven, Folkestone, or Southampton. (1378 a 17)

It is the ambition of some to *accumulate* wealth. (128 a 6)

Attila, King of the Huns, was a *pitiless* tyrant. (1997 b 35)

Vulgar people like *cheap and gaudy* clothes and jewels. (1638 a 38)

It is foolish to *imperil* one's life by taking needless risks. (1403 a 4)

The *equipment* of an Arctic traveller must include plenty of warm and serviceable clothing. (3062 b 58)

To *arrange* the work of a large factory is a difficult task. (3045 b 7)

A sudden douche of cold water makes one *catch the breath*. (1801 a 26)

In most large hotels there is an electric *lift*. (1369 b 4)

In praising what is *very old* one should not neglect what is modern. (151 b 7)

Faithfulness, according to Francis Bacon, is the foundation of virtues. (888 a 19)

Octopuses *encircle* their prey with their long tentacles. (1428 b 23)

The woman of the parable looked *in every place* for the missing piece of silver. (1483 b 40)

A stag, when brought to bay, tries to *stab* the hounds with its antlers. (1876 a 58)

The peacock spreads its tail in a very *disdainful* manner. (1986 b 1)

Bad or totally unexpected news may so *stagger* a person as to make him speechless for a time. (1313 a 49)

During Lent many people *give up* luxuries. (1702 a 17)

Violent words *urge* people on to commit violent deeds. (1354 a 28)

Australian natives can *live* where white men would starve. (1506 a 7)

Children need a *liberal* supply of nourishing food. (1815 a 8)

In the old Greek tragedy the actors sought to *distress* the souls of their audiences. (1981 b 22)

In early times the Picts used frequently to *lay waste* British territory. (1981 b 53)

In travelling from London to Berlin a person journeys *towards the rising sun*. (1336 a 3)

The Taj Mahal, near Agra in India, is a wonderfully beautiful *building*. (1347 b 17)

The farmer can never foretell the *result* of his labours. (3062 a 23)

A yard-arm was often used as a *gallows* upon which to hang captured pirates. (1831 a 27)

The *spirit* of the murdered Banquo appeared to Macbeth. (1829 b 20)

Polar explorers have to *bear* great hardships. (1405 a 10)

The Greek musician Orpheus was fabled to be able to *bewitch* wild beasts by his playing. (1397 a 11)

Dickens's Uriah Heep was a *grovelling* rascal. (1569 a 3)

A conjurer rolls up his sleeves to suggest that there is no *imposture*. (1071 b 37)

A prisoner has a right to answer the *accusation* brought against him. (701 a 26)

It is possible to act too *charily*. (666 b 40)

Farmers *meet together* on market-days. (1701 a 4)

Mother Shipton was a famous alleged *predicter* of future events. (1699 a 14)

An *inscription on a tomb* is frequently in Latin words. (1441 a 17)

The first use of tanks was a dramatic *incident* in the World War. (1439 a 30)

Queen Philippa went on her knees to *beseech* Edward III to spare the burghers of Calais. (1425 b 23)

Many people *commit* valuables to the care of a bank. (1427 a 10)

The Portland Vase is the finest one of its kind *still existing*. (1519 a 40)

A debonair person has a courteous, pleasing *manner* and bearing. (95 a 1)

The *atmosphere* we breathe is a mixture of gases consisting mostly of nitrogen and oxygen. (95 a 1)

Cheap articles may prove *costly* in the long run. (1511 a 43)

The Egyptians *fertilize* their lands by irrigation. (1415 a 19)

The *hostility* between people of different religious creeds has caused many wars. (1413 a 32)

Experts are employed to *compose* laws in correct form. (1722 a 18)

It is always best to go to the *original source* for information. (1715 b 15)

When we desire to *praise delicately*, we should do so in few and appropriate words. (846 b 38)

Rarity and perfect condition *heighten* the value of very old books. (1411 a 17)

Some railway couplings are designed to *interlock* automatically. (1407 b 29)

A *flourish of trumpets* sometimes greets the arrival of royalty. (1554 a 19)

Judges in a Court of Appeal do not always *agree* with one another in their findings. (861 a 1)

Rembrandt, Shakespeare, Michelangelo, and Milton were men of *supreme ability*. (1817 a 31)

The loss of his son William left Henry I *disconsolate*. (1702 b 28)

It is foolish to purchase eyeglasses except from a qualified *spectacle-maker*. (3032 a 2)

The *master* of a house, said Christ, would keep watch if he knew a thief were coming. (1872 b 58)

The rails of a railway track are laid *end to end*. (1402 b 23)

The Fat Boy in Dickens's "Pickwick Papers" had a *robust* appetite. (1998 a 3)

On a large part of the earth's surface no vegetation grows, owing to the soil being *arid*. (1305 a 1)

A good reader lays *stress* on those words that need it. (1390 b 7)

A motorist's *long glove* keeps the wrist warm. (1805 b 12)

A *wreath* from the sacred olive was the only prize given to a winner in the ancient Olympic games. (1795 a 59)

The *expenditure* of a business should never equal the income. (3063 a 14)

Memory invests bygone days with a certain *fascination*. (1844 b 23)

The members of a committee *choose* a chairman to preside at meetings. (1360 b 1)

In winter, wolves become *lean* with hunger. (1805 a 60)

Prince Charlie was *concealed* from his enemies by his devoted compatriots. (2033 a 24)

Birds *gather together* when about to migrate. (873 a 37)

The Normans pretended to flee at Senlac in order to *tempt* the Saxons from their entrenchments. (1422 b 6)

Laurels, pines, and yews are *always in leaf*. (1483 a 6)

Christ sent out His disciples to spread the *glad tidings* of the Kingdom of God. (1878 b 25)

Cats *use* great cunning while stalking birds. (1392 a 1)

The *fine particles* thrown out by volcanoes travel thousands of miles through the air. (1321 b 43)

The desert sands have been able to *blot out* whole cities in Central Asia. (1349 a 40)

Steam boilers are tested periodically to *make certain* that they are safe to use. (1418 a 1)

Trees covered with hoar-frost *sparkle* in the sun. (1850 b 34)

It is usual to *make known* a marriage engagement. (165 a 1)

The coat of a well-groomed horse has a *lustre* on it. (1853 b 32)

Widdecombe Fair is held at the *remote* village of that name on Dartmoor. (3061 a 39)

Merchants employ commercial travellers to *extend* their trade. (1412 b 14)

Silkworms *enclose* themselves in silk when spinning their cocoons. (1396 a 12)

Incendiarism is a serious crime. (1620 a 13)

A grindstone is used to *sharpen* tools. (1346 b 24)

It took Dr. Johnson nearly eight years to *put together* his famous dictionary. (884 a 20)

Daily school begins in the *morning*. (1691 b 12)

A judge is often called upon to *give directions to* a jury. (701 a 26)

It behoves all of us to have *care for the future.* (1697 b 33)

The *speech* delivered by Antony at the death of Caesar forms the climax of Shakespeare's play. (3036 a 13)

Spoken tests should form part of examinations in foreign languages. (3034 a 66)

A coal-mine explosion may *bury* many miners. (1423 a 20)

Workmen *smooth* some castings by blowing sand on to them by means of compressed air. (1591 a 57)

Superstition has been known to *put obstacles in the way of* progress. (2040 b 60)

The building of the Forth Bridge was delayed by more than one unexpected *difficulty.* (2047 a 18)

A minor *indisposition,* while it lasts, may be as painful as a chronic disease. (93 b 31)

Joshua sent two spies across the Jordan to *examine* the Promised Land. (1514 a 22)

The Rocky Mountains *stretch* from Alaska to Mexico. (1529 b 23)

Legend represented Romulus as a *deserted child* reared by a wolf. (1715 a 1)

Beavers *cut down* trees with their teeth. (1576 b 6)

The passage of a story from mouth to mouth is likely to *distort* it. (1793 a 23)

A person of a sweet disposition is often described as being *lovable.* (134 a 24)

The relations between a cat and dog are not always *friendly.* (134 b 4)

In Japan, polite conversation is *full of compliments.* (1664 b 26)

Workmen usually receive *additional* pay for working overtime. (1523 a 5)

The *navigable part* of the River Mersey is kept open by dredging. (1543 b 5)

Henry II regarded Thomas Becket as a *turbulent* subject. (1537 a 7)

A writer has often to *compress* into a few sentences what, if space had permitted, he would have expressed more fully. (861 b 11)

A lack of heavy *guns* seriously hampered the British Army in 1914-15. (3042 b 27)

A *cordial* manner wins a man many friends. (1816 a 64)

The hands of many old people are *knotty* with rheumatism. (1858 b 19)

Slugs *come out* from their hiding-places at dusk to feed. (1385 a 19)

The poet Byron led a *feverishly exciting* life. (2002 a 49)

True friends can place their fullest *trust* in each other. (866 b 41)

Intense joy or sorrow causes great *agitation of the mind.* (1389 a 14)

Petrol pumps *measure* petrol as they deliver it. (1804 b 1)

Christmas is a *joyous* season. (1588 b 22)

A worthy *antagonist* enhances the interest in a sporting contest. (3029 b 26)

A fish's *breathing organ* enables it to abstract air from water. (1834 b 3)

Coopers *encircle* casks with iron hoops. (1839 a 27)

Some Eastern peoples are adopting European *clothes.* (1792 b 50)

English drama enjoyed its *time of greatest vigour* during the age of Elizabeth. (2031 b 27)

A government may grant a *right to carry out an industrial scheme* to an individual. (857 a 1)

The eruption of Mont Pelée, in Martinique, on May 8, 1902, caused a *shocking* loss of life. (1828 b 15)

Mountain-climbers *provide* themselves with ropes, ice-axes, and other gear. (1446 b 48)

When pressed hard by hounds, hares double to *evade* capture. (1374 b 59)

Many of the *people of Holland* wear wooden clogs. (1322 a 39)

To *express sympathy* with those who are overtaken by misfortune is a humane act. (863 a 1)

Some naturally timid animals *show* great boldness in defending their young. (1503 b 53)

At one time only wealthy people could afford to *put glass in* their windows. (1848 a 25)

Every child must begin its *schooling* when it reaches a certain age. (1348 a 32)

The human mind can scarcely *imagine* the distance of the sun from the earth. (854 b 7)

An orchard in full bloom is a *splendid* sight. (1853 a 17)

The ballista was an ancient *machine* of war which hurled missiles. (1408 a 38)

A set-piece is usually the *last item* of a firework display. (1611 a 54)

Christ told us not to set our hearts too much on things that are *of this world.* (1334 a 14)

The time to question a *provision* in an agreement is before signing it. (862 b 1)

On the end of a *cape* there is often a lighthouse. (1695 a 43)

A well-trained dog obeys his master's *command* immediately. (3040 a 31)

Life in the trenches is a terrible *trial* to soldiers. (3039 b 36)

Hard blows are exchanged in a *boxing-match.* (1855 a 28)

Romans flocked to the amphitheatres to *exult* over cruel spectacles. (1851 a 1)

Darkness causes the pupils of the eyes to *expand.* (1174 a 20)

Many a street *accident* is due to absentmindedness. (652 b 7)

Certain animals, such as cows and goats, have *cleft* hoofs. (783 b 15)

Frost-bitten limbs become devoid of *sensation.* (1574 b 54)

The slightest *blemish* lessens the value of a precious stone. (1614 a 18)

The wings of some insects have a *filmy* appearance. (1806 a 45)

Joseph taught the Egyptians how to *economize* their stores of corn. (2100 a 41)

Nobody has yet been able to *get to the bottom of* the mystery of the Man in the Iron Mask. (1565 a 30)

The leaves of the sensitive plant *droop* at the slightest touch. (1631 a 9)

A *vessel in which solids are melted* must be capable of standing great heat. (1001 a 49)

Laws *prohibit* actions of many kinds. (1688 b 31)

Primitive peoples regard many civilized institutions with *amazement mingled with terror.* (2076 a 10)

No two human beings have *exactly similar* finger-prints. (2129 a 30)

The *inconstancy* of popular favour is proverbial. (1596 a 29)

A tradesman who is doing very well will most probably have a *self-satisfied* bearing. (2340 b 35)

In feudal days the *standard* of a feudal lord was carried into battle, and served as a rallying-point for the troops. (330 a 18)

If we are *apt to take offence on slight provocation* we only succeed in making ourselves and other people miserable. (4327 a 9)

Fear may cause a person to be *unable to speak.* (4315 a 63)

Sir Walter Scott contrived to *animate* his novels with the very spirit of romance. (2230 b 62)

Both very young children and very old people walk *unsteadily.* (4326 a 12)

It requires a heat of 3612° Fahrenheit to *melt* iridium. (1765 a 59)

A wealthy individual sometimes makes a *legacy* to some charity. (396 b 29)

In former days news was often conveyed by means of a *signal-fire on a hill.* (365 b 33)

Most savoury dishes are improved by adding a *small quantity* of salt. (2839 a 29)

We may do foolish things in a *fit of temper.* (4226 b 27)

An early riser is up *in good time.* (404 a 44)

Some substances are more *solid* than others. (840 a 1)

Nothing astonishes men so much as *ordinary practical wisdom* and plain dealing. (835 b 18)

A person who is unable to do a thing himself will sometimes *authorize* another to do it for him. (833 a 35)

A clever *humorous actor* provokes much laughter. (826 b 8)

Help that is *late in arriving* may be no help at all. (4229 b 26)

Crime is often betrayed by the *expression on the face* of the criminal. (946 b 29)

Damp cellars have a *mouldy* smell. (1767 b 15)

Observations of the sun and stars are made in order to *fix* the position of a ship at sea. (1464 b 20)

Digging stiff clay is *very tiring* work. (1503 b 20)

The strength of a metal is proved by *testing.* (1511 b 21)

Elizabeth Fry was a pioneer in the cause of *merciful* treatment of prisoners. (2091 b 19)

The journey made by Jack and Jill to fetch water had a *ludicrous* ending. (1556 b 51)

Many people do public service without *remuneration.* (1573 a 23)

A crevasse is a deep *cleft* in a glacier. (1627 b 13)

Badly laid on whitewash tends to *scale* off. (1634 a 1)

The *crowning* of English kings and queens is performed in Westminster Abbey. (927 a 1)

An icebreaker is a ship which can force a way through a *sheet of floating ice.* (1654 a 8)

Agitators are people who *encourage* discontent. (1681 a 29)

A *skilled workman* knows how to handle his tools. (965 b 29)

A simpleton stands a poor chance against a *crafty* fellow. (1719 b 46)

Cattle dash about *madly* when tormented by flies. (1733 b 18)

Broadcasting is an excellent *example* of the rapid development of modern science. (2140 a 27)

In Bedford jail John Bunyan proceeded to *charm away* the hours by playing his flute. (381 a 61)

Formerly large towns often had a *special quarter set apart for Jews.* (2347 b 42)

The British Empire offers a fine *opportunity* for enterprise. (1598 b 17)

The rattan has a long, *pliant* stem. (1646 b 56)

Napoleon's campaign in Syria (1799) was *indecisive.* (2188 a 46)

The sailors of Columbus had to *steer their ship across* the Atlantic without a chart. (2902 b 8)

A *person who cannot pay his debts* is not always responsible for his misfortune. (329 b 43)

Refusal to consider any other opinions but one's own is a fault to be avoided. (2894 b 9)

Charles I made many attempts to govern England *without the help* of Parliament. (2201 a 31)

The Armistice (November 11, 1918) was welcomed with *frenzied* joy. (1725 b 29)

How "The Mystery of Edwin Drood" was meant to end continues to *puzzle* Dickens lovers. (2885 a 42)

In walking along the seashore one sometimes has to *climb* over rocks. (759 a 27)

The Corn Laws are now generally admitted to have been *detestable* laws. (2223 a 50)

It is foolish to pay a high price for an article that is *of poor quality.* (2275 b 1)

It is usual to *blacken with fire* the part of wooden palings that is fixed in the ground. (699 b 15)

The *baptism* of a child is usually performed in a church. (736 a 29)

Much labour is often expended in organizing a *sale for charitable purposes.* (364 b 20)

The expansion and contraction of the muscles of the heart cause it to *move rhythmically.* (371 a 40)

It is possible to *pamper* oneself overmuch. (799 a 42)

We should *adhere* to that which is good. (768 a 46)

A history often reveals the *mental bent* of the historian. (408 b 8)

"A *wager* is a fool's argument." (403 a 20)

Public men have to *be sociable* with all sorts and conditions of men. (2050 a 15)

A *rushing stream* of lava is an awesome spectacle. (4323 a 40)

Telegraphic messages are written in a very *concise and pithy* style. (4258 b 8)

Kindly assistance is usually accepted *with gratitude.* (4265 a 18)

An ill deed goes far to *blemish* a good name. (4231 a 19)

One may row hard but quite *vainly* against a very strong current. (1749 b 7)

Sir Philip Sidney ended his life with a *chivalrous* act. (1778 a 29)

It was a custom of the ancients to *seek advice from* the oracles. (891 b 7)

To-day we are apt to wonder how anyone could *maintain by argument* that the earth is flat. (895 a 42)

An acrobat can *twist* his body into all manner of shapes. (898 b 5)

A desert region is not always wholly *unproductive.* (344 b 48)

It is good to *expose oneself to pleasant warmth* in the sun's rays. (351 b 45)

In the seventeenth century the Dutch reclaimed some of the *swampy* lands of East Anglia. (1580 a 24)

Pictures by old masters *command* huge prices at sales. (1589 a 10)

New canal barges are painted in *gaudy* colours. (1637 a 55)

Queen Elizabeth often rebuked the youthful Earl of Essex for his *insolent behaviour.* (2156 a 8)

Cattle *graze on* pastures. (991 b 13)

A *crack* in a rock sometimes makes it easier to climb. (981 a 23)

"Who serves his *fatherland* well has no need of ancestors." (952 b 34)

In the beginning the earth was *without definite shape.* (1705 b 33)

Amicable talk will often heal a quarrel. (1738 a 10)

It is no easy task to *communicate* one's knowledge to others. (2149 b 35)

In England an executioner was last employed to *cut off the head of* a person in 1747 (382 a 8)

The Scribes and Pharisees were rebuked for their *pretending to virtues they did not possess.* (2117 a 61)

Some Oriental towns disgust the visitor by the *foulness* of their streets. (1610 a 27)

A man who cannot control himself is not *competent* to control others. (1628 b 10)

The *discordant sound* caused by the bells of several neighbouring churches ringing together is unpleasant. (2337 b 32)

A second is a very small *part* of an hour. (1720 a 37)

Goods, such as wool, are usually compressed into a *bundle* for the purpose of transportation. (316 a 13)

Excessive eating or drinking exercises a *harmful* influence upon the health. (326 b 32)

A feature of the Welsh Eisteddfod is the "Pennillion singing," in which a *minstrel* has to improvise verses to the accompaniment of a harp. (337 a 1)

Of a boy's work at school, we may ask whether it is good, bad, or *neither good nor bad.* (2205 a 46)

America was *under an obligation* to Abraham Lincoln for many benefits. (2197 a 26)

Some ships can carry a *cargo* of nearly 20,000 tons. (1731 b 39)

Oliver Goldsmith might have become a rich man if he had not been so *imprudent* in the management of his affairs. (2208 a 1)

The beginning of time is a *matter beyond our understanding.* (2884 b 28)

William Paterson, the founder of the Bank of England, introduced many *cleverly contrived* schemes for the restoration of financial stability. (2234 a 16)

Some birds build their nests in a *hollow* of a tree. (669 a 26)

Actions and words often *give the lie to* one another. (384 a 45)

The *zone* near the equator where calm and variable winds prevail is called the doldrums. (389 b 16)

The *bottom* of the ocean consists in parts of the calcareous remains of animalcules. (374 a 57)

The *highest point* in a drama is reached when its events produce a crisis. (772 b 1)

A person who sees distinctly has *clearness* of vision. (762.b 53)

A prisoner undergoing solitary confinement is not permitted to *have intercourse* by word or writing with others. (838 a 7)

A disease carrier will *convey* a disease from one person to another without developing it himself. (838 a 7)

Ambitious people are *eager* for power or riches. (4278 a 29)

Some Indian fakirs, it is alleged, can assume a state of *unconsciousness* at will. (822 a 41)

The crew of a *ship which carries coal* cannot be expected always to look clean. (813 b 11)

John Jacob Astor began life as a *dealer in furs.* (1763 a 66)

Many rivers have a very *wandering* course. (1453 b 57)

When in doubt about a word we *seek information from* a dictionary. (891 b 7)

Being satisfied is better than being very rich. (895 b 26)

A tornado is a storm of *intense* violence. (1525 b 16)

A point in common often serves as a *foundation* for a wider measure of agreement. (351 b 31)

One's practice should be *in agreement* with what one preaches. (884 b 21)

The words of an eloquent preacher *produce a powerful effect upon* his congregation. (2164 a 33)

A retreating tide often leaves a line of *froth* on the beach. (1674 b 14)

A famous man often writes a *preface* for another person's book. (1700 a 27)

Some novelists achieve *instantaneous* success, while others wait years for recognition. (2144 a 1)

It was an *unfortunate* day for the Spanish Armada when it set sail for England. (2136 a 12)

As a rule women know less of *money* matters than men do. (1611 b 19)

Birds may *abandon* their nests if disturbed. (1706 b 7)

A steam-pipe often has a *casing to keep the heat in.* (2332 b 40)

In England the *method of secret voting* was first introduced in 1872, as an experiment for eight years. (321 a 61)

A voice between the bass and tenor is the most common of all male voices. (339 b 1)

Our newspapers give us *current or local* news. (4320 b 4)

A *lengthy excursion* on the Continent is a delightful way of spending a holiday. (4327 a 53)

During the Renaissance there was a steady *influx* of ancient knowledge into the modern world. (2229 b 28)

Our attitude *with respect to* a person may reflect his feelings towards ourselves. (4328 b 38)

We get more and more interested as the *story* of Robinson Crusoe unfolds. (2894 a 18)

Manlius Curius Dentatus was a famous *chief magistrate* of ancient Rome. (891 a 7)

In China *a pair of slender sticks of wood* are used in place of a knife and fork. (733 a 8)

One cannot fill further anything that is *full to overflowing.* (730 a 51)

A shy man will *beseech* his friends never to ask him to speak in public. (380 a 32)

Garrulity is the chief weapon of the bore. (4219 a 12)

A civilian may be called upon to *provide lodgings for* a soldier. (416 b 47)

A daily newspaper is a *record* of events from day to day. (739 a 20)

It is good sometimes to *hold converse* with oneself. (837 b 32)

A sea-breeze has a *bracing* effect. (4315 b 10)

Prudence in the management of one's means is a very desirable quality. (4284 b 54)

Broaching a cask, without spilling some of its contents, needs a practised hand. (4228 b 57)

To plead guilty is to *acknowledge* one's guilt. (866 a 32)

Sufficient heat will *change* water into steam. (906 b 1)

In some countries it is dangerous to travel without an armed *bodyguard.* (1458 a 54)

Temperance and self-control *dignify* a man's character. (1488 a 34)

The refusal of soldiers to *carry out* their officers' commands is insubordination. (1499 b 24)

The customs authorities are constantly on the look-out for *smuggled articles.* (899 a 29)

In civilized countries money has put an end to *trade by exchange of commodities.* (347 a 1)

A *covered building in which grain or other agricultural produce is stored* is essential to a farm. (341 a 1)

Acts of cruelty or injustice *arouse anger in* even the mildest people. (2179 a 45)

A bishop's *pastoral staff* proclaims him the shepherd of his flock. (992 b 14)

A little *care for the future* may save much expense. (1699 a 19)

Travellers can generally obtain any information they require at the *official residence of the consul.* (891 a 37)

The Chinese dramatists *disregard* the unities of time and place in their plays. (2134 b 55)

The acting of Sarah Bernhardt was marked by dramatic *fervour.* (1617 a 1)

A sensible boy takes a deserved *thrashing* in good part. (2332 b 65)

It is very irritating to have to do with a *pompous and consequential petty official.* (2331 b 17)

Among other things, a first-aid manual instructs how to fold and apply a *long strip of woven material for binding.* (324 b 61)

Turner's paintings show a wonderful appreciation of the beauties of *earth, sky, and sea.* (2899 a 50)

A *sentence that is difficult to utter clearly, especially when spoken rapidly,* has a fascination for some people. (4315 b 7)

When a Scottish *head of a clan* wished to gather together his fighting men he sent round a fiery cross. (721 b 14)

French peasants are very *careful with their money.* (1748 b 23)

The *very hot* atmosphere of the tropics tries the health of many English people. (4323 b 10)

Even when only *slightly unwell* some people decline to do their work. (2208 b 34)

It takes practice to *roll up* an umbrella neatly. (1762 a 25)

A *beautiful girl* is often the talk of the beaux. (387 a 33)

People *hold to* an idea which they hope to see realized. (715 a 16)

Dust will sometimes *choke up* the mechanism of a watch. (777 a 49)

Gelatine may be used to *clear* a liquid containing impurities. (762 a 61)

Justice and *pity*, combined in the same person, temper one another. (842 b 28)

Half-hearted support is of little service. (4252 b 60)

People who are worried often answer *irritably* to questions. (4261 a 16)

The *measured beat* of a machine may send a rhythmical quiver right through a building. (4286 a 18)

The names of the battles in which a regiment has distinguished itself are recorded on its *flag*. (819 a 1)

Willow trees *border* many streams. (1740 b 53)

Stealthy movements arouse suspicion. (1764 b 25)

At Christmas old friends greet one another in a *warm-hearted* manner. (917 a 32)

One holds in *scorn* a person who behaves basely. (895 a 6)

Handicapping makes the chances of those taking part in a *competition* more equal. (896 a 22)

A *grave mound of early times* was often placed on the top of a hill. (346 b 8)

Most educated people are *ardent* admirers of Shakespeare's plays. (1587 b 19)

No right-minded person cares to *make a display of* his wealth. (1640 a 32)

His father ran to *clasp* the Prodigal Son in his arms. (1678 b 30)

The only way to get good marks for arithmetic is to do the sums *accurately*. (931 a 32)

Many arts are involved in the *building* of a house. (889 b 48)

The Trojans were *unaware* of the fact that soldiers were concealed in the Wooden Horse. (2134 b 7)

Saul hurled a javelin at David in a *spasm* of anger. (1628 a 19)

Good parents do everything that is *necessary* for their children. (2909 b 9)

The smuts in the atmosphere of a manufacturing town *cover with grime* everything they touch. (381 a 43)

The mace of the Speaker of the House of Commons is a *symbol* of his authority. (4310 b 1)

Many large fortunes are the *result* of hard work. (1749 a 1)

Our weekly expenses *mount* up considerably if we do not keep an eye on them (4325 b 6)

Many highwaymen met their end on the *gibbet*. (1783 a 13)

The Book of Proverbs contains a *store* of wisdom. (1758 a 34)

A yacht cannot sail a straight course in a *variable* wind. (732 b 23)

Happy childhood days may well *give rise to* a love of home life. (380 b 32)

A man with *unrefined* manners is unwelcome in polite society. (790 a 52)

Travellers often *engage in advance* a room in the place they intend to visit. (401 a 59)

Flies *harass* animals in hot weather. (4321 b 60)

The *disturbance* following upon the hue and cry after a thief sometimes makes it easier for him to escape. (837 a 6)

A parent will sometimes *entrust* a child travelling by train alone to the care of the guard. (834 a 36)

On the painter's palette every *pigment* has its place. (819 a 1)

"If the *advice* be good, no matter who gave it." (945 b 12)

It is unnecessary to *carry* coals to Newcastle. (907 a 26)

Lukewarm water is neither hot nor cold but slightly warm. (4252 b 60)

Nations *compete* with one another for a footing in the world's best markets. (895 a 42)

Any person may *pardonably* be ignorant of some subjects. (1499 a 44)

Many brick houses are *coated outside* with stucco. (1534 b 59)

Many of the early Christians suffered death for their religious *belief*. (1544 b 41)

Perseverance is an important *element* in achieving success. (1537 b 23)

For centuries *hawking* was a fashionable sport in England. (1547 a 3)

In war-time civilians scan the papers for every *particle* of encouraging news. (2326 a 65)

Poverty and lack of opportunity *hamper* ambition. (1591 a 20)

The *projecting rim* on a railway-carriage wheel keeps it on the rail. (1636 a 15)

The successes of our competitors *urge* us to redouble our own efforts. (2182 b 19)

The mere sight of a strange dog is enough to *agitate* a flock of sheep. (1668 a 34)

The Young Pretender had a large *body of supporters* in Scotland. (1680 b 36)

Meteors were once believed to *portend* disaster. (1692 a 5)

Many gipsies profess to foretell one's *destiny*. (1709 b 56)

A *cold* manner discourages friendship. (1740 a 8)

The conductor of an orchestra beats time with his *wand*. (358 b 1)

The *dweller on an island* need not necessarily have insular views. (2322 a 11)

Some people, when they grow old, become very *easily annoyed*. (2320 a 40)

Pidgin English, as spoken in the East, is a *mixture of several languages*. (2339 a 35)

The *leafage* of a plant extracts carbonic acid gas from the air. (1679 a 35)

Richard II was an *incompetent* king. (2177 a 15)

Many a great composer has written music for a *dramatic story expressed on the stage by means of dancing.* (319 b 49)

Shakespeare gives a striking conversation with a *poverty-stricken* apothecary in "Romeo and Juliet." (2909 b 22)

A *member of an uncivilized tribe* is not necessarily a savage. (334 a 17)

Before the invention of the mariner's compass ships often arrived at their destinations by *roundabout* ways. (2207 a 1)

The fall of Khartum and death of Gordon (1885) were due to the British Government's *hesitation* about sending relief. (2197 b 10)

The discoveries of Sir Isaac Newton had a powerful *modifying effect* on scientific research. (2230 a 1)

Red sky in the morning is held to *show* that there will be rain later on in the day. (2204 a 9)

Wordsworth wrote much great poetry, but also a good deal of verse that is *wanting in force.* (2217 a 1)

The distance for a race over low hurdles is one *eighth of a mile.* (1762 a 43)

A doctor prescribes the medicine which he considers will be most *helpful.* (394 a 15)

A jealous man is inclined to *make little of* the merits of his fellows. (384 b 51)

The *twittering noise* of a bird excites a cat. (728 a 12)

It was at one time the custom to keep money and valuables in a *strong box.* (717 b 27)

To *make sure of* his bargain with Harold, the Duke of Normandy made him swear, unknowingly, upon some holy relics. (773 a 21)

There are many ways in which an unscrupulous man can *evade payment of* his creditors. (415 b 14)

Not every *town-dweller* enjoys all the privileges of the city in which he lives. (756 a 17)

A house to be *fit for occupation* must be dry and airy. (4248 b 22)

Well-written stories *bear witness to* the care taken in their preparation. (4260 a 42)

At the *beginning* of a term the next holidays seem a long way off to the schoolboy. (830 a 12)

A twice-told tale is often *wearisome.* (4240 a 30)

A *savoury* dish stimulates the appetite. (4233 b 56)

A soldier is granted *leave of absence* by his commanding officer. (1762 a 59)

Some people are extraordinarily difficult to *persuade by argument.* (908 b 21)

Time-signals are sent out from Greenwich Observatory with great *precision.* (1487 b 7)

To buy barrels one should go to a *maker of casks.* (911 a 50)

Cereals imported into Britain are *free* from duty. (1501 a 58)

Enormous pressure is used to *squeeze out* the oil from coco-nut kernels. (1517 a 28)

In Roman Catholic countries one frequently sees a wayside *cross bearing a carved figure of Christ.* (1001 b 20)

The *refuge in the middle of a street* is a welcome halting-place for foot-passengers. (2321 b 41)

During a boom the Stock Exchange is the scene of *excited* activity. (1593 a 21)

God set an angel with a *blazing* sword at the gate of Eden. (1635 a 14)

A quick-witted person soon detects a *defect* in an argument. (1641 a 18)

It is the ambition of most tragedians to *play the part of* Hamlet. (2155 b 59)

A mountaineer often goes out of his way to avoid a *fissure in a glacier.* (981 a 11)

One gains more than one loses by being *polite.* (957 a 45)

The claim of Perkin Warbeck to the English throne was proved to be *a piece of deception.* (2093 a 19)

Dr. Guillotin did not, as is sometimes said, die by the *device* named after him. (902 a 28)

It is unwise to *make an idol of* a child. (2132 a 26)

A child's most treasured possession is often a *worthless, showy thing.* (362 a 64)

More than once has a collector had the *finest specimen* of his collection stolen. (2348 b 11)

A *thin coating* of dirt on a window shuts out much light. (1609 a 1)

We all like a *short trip* in the country occasionally. (2340 b 15)

There is no boy who does not enjoy a *special gathering of Boy Scouts.* (2337 a 43)

The syringa fills the air with the *sweet smell* of its flowers. (1721 b 35)

For good gardening a spade is *indispensable.* (2907 a 25)

A *lawless plunderer* is often one of an organized gang. (326 a 1)

A child's love for games is *inborn,* not acquired. (2898 b 6)

Iron workers *strengthen* steel by the addition of more carbon. (4327 a 39)

The octopus is a *hideous* creature. (1739 b 31)

It is of little use to take a *weakly sentimental* view of life. (2890 b 3)

Chatterton, the boy poet, died *without fame,* although his poems were afterwards appreciated. (2235 a 7)

A lady, on being presented to royalty, makes a *bow.* (1026 b 12)

A solo by a *member of the choir* is often a feature of a church service. (734 a 39)

It is unseemly to *shout loudly* in church. (363 a 1)

For a wedding one dresses in a manner *suitable to* the occasion. (379 b 3)

If two accounts of the same incident do not *agree* one must be false. (4219 b 42)

Pure water is a wholesome *drink.* (406 a 20)

He that will *tell* a secret entrusted to him is not to be trusted with one. (838 a 7)

It is not always an easy matter to *persuade* a horse to drink. (2212 a 61)

One may *be guilty of* a crime similar to that perpetrated by another and yet receive different punishment. (834 a 36)

A numeral in the wrong *row of figures* may make a great difference in an account. (821 a 18)

A *digger of coal* runs many risks. (813 b 11)

It is delightful to *talk familiarly* with a friend. (906 a 11)

Soldiers' kits undergo close *inspection* periodically. (1488 b 17)

The Moslems insist on the *shutting out* of infidels from their holy cities. (1496 b 26)

On flag days one is asked to *give one's share* towards the support of deserving charities. (901 b 29)

In modern warfare infantry sometimes advances behind a *screen of artillery fire.* (344 a 21)

If there is a disagreement between two nations we anxiously await the *outcome.* (2324 a 1)

The season ticket forms a considerable *element* in a business man's yearly expenditure. (2326 a 65)

Insomnia means *the habitual state of being unable* to sleep. (2170 a 9)

Rogues *practise deception* upon unsuspecting people in many ways. (2161 a 61)

It is improbable that women will ever again favour the *large hooped skirt.* (986 a 59)

A good general does not let reverses *agitate* him. (1667 a 52)

Shooting Niagara Falls in a barrel is a *reckless* act. (1683 a 42)

A *crevice* in a cliff is often chosen by a sea-bird as a nesting-place. (970 a 56)

Some people might call a quiet life a *dull and dreary* existence. (2093 a 37)

It is unpleasant travelling in a country where the natives are *unfriendly.* (2081 a 59)

The Romans sought, with some degree of success, to *absorb* the knowledge of the Greeks. (2141 b 58)

The pangs of hunger may *force* even the most honest of men to steal. (2152 a 23)

The Jameson Raid in 1896 was a *humiliating failure.* (1594 a 30)

A punctured tire quickly becomes *limp.* (1630 b 29)

It is foolish to be *envious* of other people's good fortune. (2342 b 1)

Many *unwary* people were ruined by investing their money in the "South Sea Bubble." (2178 a 21)

The invasions of foreign enemies caused England to form a *fleet of fighting ships.* (2903 a 1)

In twelve pictures, entitled "Industry and Idleness," Hogarth tells the story of a *wastrel.* (2910 b 21)

Jockeys are usually very *dapper* little men. (2898 a 43)

The adventures of Baron Munchausen are so astonishing as to be *unbelievable.* (2193 b 1)

The *imposing* of the penalty for a crime rests with the judge. (2229 b 5)

What we can see with a telescope may be invisible to the *unaided* eye. (2890 a 26)

It is better to try to improve one's lot than to *grieve over* it. (391 a 1)

King Lear was a victim of the *ungratefulness* of his elder daughters. (2235 b 39)

The *cup* used at the celebration of the Eucharist or Holy Communion is usually made of silver. (687 b 35)

The chief object of a newspaper is to *spread* news. (750 a 17)

There is much chaffering in a *market-place in the East.* (364 b 20)

If a mother wants her children to come indoors she may *make a signal by gesture.* (374 a 7)

A cobbler knows best how to *mend* a shoe. (792 a 43)

Boxers *tightly close* their fists. (769 b 1)

A *tin can used as a kettle* is very useful in camp. (417 b 19)

A polite question calls for a *courteous* answer. (757 a 21)

Schoolboys, when planning an adventure, will sometimes make a *bargain* with one another to maintain silence regarding it. (839 b 40)

Limited space, and consequent high cost of land, are the cause of the houses in a town being less *roomy* generally than those in the country. (834 b 50)

"He that would *govern* must serve." (829 a 8)

Moderation in eating and drinking is conducive to good health. (4246 a 1)

A *biting or pungent* remark may destroy a life-long friendship. (4232 a 30)

Slave-owners used to hunt *runaway* slaves with bloodhounds. (1752 a 61)

The steam railway opened up a new *epoch* in transportation. (1448 b 59)

A large grate will *use up* more fuel than a small one. (891 b 38)

In time one grows accustomed to *unceasing* sounds, like that of the waves. (898 a 1)

It is unwise to *bare* the head when the sun is very hot. (1515 b 6)

Henry II in an evil *frame of mind* instigated the murder of Becket. (2094 b 39)

Injustice and hardship *excite* discontent. (1552 a 1)

Captain Charles Lindbergh's flight from New York to Paris in 1927 was a great *achievement.* (1570 a 14)

One expects to pay a good price for *excellent* articles. (1623 a 24)

The assassination of the Archduke Francis Ferdinand of Austria in 1914 was a matter of grave *significance.* (2160 b 1)

Cirrus clouds *dapple* the sky. (1642 b 19)

A man who writes regularly for the newspapers needs a *ready* pen. (1665 a 49)

In fashionable society one *very popular amusement* is soon supplanted by another. (973 a 35)

Compulsion is a *powerful* argument. (1690 b 31)

Governments try to *encourage* home industries by means of subsidies and tariffs. (1712 b 40)

Benjamin was held by his brother Joseph as a *pledge.* (2081 a 1)

Continual wars greatly *weaken* the resources of a nation. (2148 b 21)

To *deceive* oneself is very easy. (381 a 61)

On account of its *loyalty* the dog has been named the friend of man. (1597 a 59)

Unscrupulous people *steal* ideas from unsuspecting geniuses. (1605 a 27)

A *gay and brisk* manner may cover a heavy heart. (2340 b 35)

The box-seats of the old hansom cabs held many a dashing *driver.* (2343 a 39)

It is an important part of a teacher's work to *instil* high ideals. (2157 b 51)

"The *instrument for weighing* distinguisheth not between gold and lead." (313 b 21)

There is *poverty* even in the wealthiest countries. (2909 b 25)

On the tip of an arrow there is usually a *backward-pointing projection.* (333 b 23)

The climate of the British Isles is very *changeable.* (2190 b 5)

Caliban, in Shakespeare's "Tempest," is depicted as an *uncouth, beastlike* creature. (2238 b 17)

Mrs. Joe Gargery, in "Great Expectations," is a character notable for *persistent* fault-finding. (2888 b 36)

In the *vault* of St. Paul's Cathedral are the tombs of some famous men. (1006 b 32)

Badly fitting shoes *chafe* the feet. (1778 a 12)

The Quartermaster-General's duty is to *provide* the army with supplies. (1763 a 11)

The *buffoon* is one of the most popular characters in a circus. (784 a 1)

When the World War began in 1914 there was no conscript army in *existence* in England. (383 a 9)

A design frequently seen on *porcelain* is the "willow pattern." (725 a 36)

Most dogs love to *chase* a cat. (719 a 40)

Many seemingly dull people have a *special aptitude* for some particular art or business. (4217 b 25)

It is unwise to *meddle* with machinery. (4222 b 12)

In Parliament a proposal to amend a particular *section* of a bill is often debated. (764 a 65)

It was the lot of Bismarck to *render himself liable to* the disapproval of the German Emperor by becoming too powerful. (2196 a 24)

Self-indulgent habits *are inclined* to make people selfish and lazy. (4248 b 53)

The accounts between nations are balanced by the buying, selling, or exchange of one or other *article of commerce,* by services, or by gold. (834 b 64)

A good lecturer never wanders far from his *subject.* (4267 b 55)

Voltaire described his life as a *fight.* (823 a 17)

The inhabitants of a *settlement founded by emigrants* usually preserve many ties with the motherland. (816 b 23)

Persons arranging to meet one another decide on the most *suitable* time and place. (904 b 31)

A *man sentenced to penal servitude* has to wear a special dress. (908 a 17)

It is *obviously* impossible for two straight lines to enclose a space. (1484 a 31)

The dragons of legend were said *to breathe out* flames and deadly vapours. (1502 b 30)

The *outside* of an airship is coated with a special paint. (1520 b 33)

Anyone *wilfully causing pain or suffering* to persons or animals lacks humaneness. (1002 a 1)

Any *imperfection* in an aeroplane's structure may cause a disaster. (1566 b 53)

We cannot expect to get our sums right if our workings are *not exact.* (2170 a 46)

Wagtails *flick* their tails continually. (1651 a 1)

Until the Union the Scottish border was often the scene of a *raid.* (1688 a 55)

Lucullus, the wealthy Roman epicure, was famed as a lavish *entertainer of guests.* (2080 b 13)

During the Middle Ages religious intolerance often served to *obstruct* scientific progress. (2152 a 1)

Engineers *cause water to flow through* land to make it fertile. (2319 b 34)

A pump-valve is often a small *hinged shutter.* (1636 b 58)

The *unmarried man* generally has more opportunity for practising thrift than the married man. (304 a 60)

The Lord Mayor's Show is followed by a *lengthy and elaborate meal* at the Guildhall, London. (330 b 60)

The conditions of prison life before John Howard and Elizabeth Fry instituted reforms were *beyond description.* (2201 b 14)

The Eskimos *dwell in* the Arctic regions. (2236 a 53)

Gooseberry bushes generally yield a *plentiful* crop of fruit. (1754 a 7)

Dogs are often *pathetically* devoted to their masters. (4327 a 1)

In some parts *gorse* is used as fodder. (1765 a 17)

A poor man has little or nothing to *leave by will.* (396 b 11)

Gravel is often loaded into barges by means of a *sloping trough.* (743 b 11)

Troubles must be *endured* with fortitude. (370 a 27)

The cracking of the walls of a building draws attention to the danger of its *falling down.* (809 b 34)

One of the tasks imposed upon Hercules was to *purify* the stables of King Augeas. (766 b 39)

Heavy clouds may *be a sign of* rain. (404 a 55)

There are many ways of behaving *vexingly*, but none of them should be followed. (4322 a 9)

Some operas do not *come to an end* until close on midnight. (4254 b 53)

Were it not for her shipping Britain's *trade* with the outside world would be dependent on foreign craft. (831 b 1)

The ascent of the Monument, in the City of London, means *laborious* climbing of steps. (4309 b 38)

The Greeks and Romans gave the name "colossus" to the *gigantic* statue of the sun god at Rhodes. (817 b 56)

Houses in Park Lane, London, *face towards* Hyde Park. (1745 a 40)

Restless folk *rove* about in search of excitement. (1771 a 10)

The *tidal mouth* of the river Amazon is very wide. (1467 b 5)

The Red Sea is *extremely* hot at all seasons. (1492 a 27)

Often an unsafe building shows no *outward* signs of weakness. (1521 a 41)

A *dam built across a river to raise its water level* usually has sluice-gates. (344 a 21)

A witness in a court of law may *bear witness* to facts within his knowledge. (4260 a 42)

Some adventure stories, however *unlikely to be true*, are very entertaining. (2165 b 5)

The images thrown on to a cinema screen *quiver* slightly. (1647 b 54)

China was the *place of origin* of many of the arts. (965 a 37)

Breakable goods need careful packing. (1721 a 29)

The legends of "Will-o'-the-Wisp" arise from the unaccountable *taking fire* of marsh gases. (2133 b 29)

Very coarse or rough underclothes *cause a smarting sensation in* the skin. (2320 a 30)

A mother watches over her children with *solicitous* care. (2342 b 1)

It is a serious thing for an army to be cut off from its *portable belongings.* (310 a 31)

Good-natured teasing often serves as a preventive of over-seriousness. (331 b 11)

A cane is *pliable, without being brittle.* (1645 b 56)

The "Morte D'Arthur" of Sir Thomas Malory invites us to *breathe in* the very spirit of the Middle Ages. (2236 b 20)

Much of Cecil Rhodes's good work in reconciling the British and Dutch in South Africa was done quite *without ceremony.* (2231 b 12)

The Tower of London is an example of a *fortress in a city.* (755 a 50)

In Shakespeare's play, "Othello," Iago seeks to *imbue* Othello's mind with jealous doubts. (2224 b 5)

A schoolboy's *inclination* towards mischief is liable to get him into trouble. (395 a 48)

There was never a true knight with a *surly* manner. (743 a 24)

A woman's costume should be *smart,* but not bizarre. (720 a 1)

A first-rate *professional male cook* is an artist in cookery. (713 a 18)

A bird is a feathered *animal with two feet.* (421 a 58)

The Reform Bill was the outcome of the *loud and continued demand* for reform. (759 b 9)

"A merry *person who keeps company with another* on the road is as good as a nag." (840 a 37)

The roar of a lion will *strike terror into* the smaller beasts of the forest. (4257 a 64)

Sometimes a judge feels called upon to *remark* on the conduct of a case which comes before him. (831 a 13)

Nowadays we seldom see overloaded horses making a *laborious* journey up a long steep hill. (4309 b 39)

Most metals *lose brightness* on exposure to the air. (4231 a 19)

A clever *riddle whose answer contains a pun* provokes laughter. (903 b 20)

The *way out* from a coal-mine is through a shaft or tunnel. (1506 a 29)

The *deepest of the three kinds of female voice* is comparatively uncommon (900 a 66)

A crowded public *vehicle* provides the pickpocket with his best opportunity. (907 b 14)

God's goodness to us endures *for ever.* (1482 b 59)

A policeman may *call upon* a motorist to stop his car. (4164 a 24)

Disaster is bound to overtake any *social community* that has no regard for law and order. (4004 a 36)

If one goes to sleep on the seashore the tide may catch one *unexpectedly.* (4411 a 35)

A high *forehead* is said to betoken intelligence. (531 b 55)

The East Coast of England is noted for its bracing *air.* (266 b 6)

A *float which marks the position of rocks, reefs, etc.,* has to be anchored. (551 b 1)

The *man who goes up in a balloon* cannot tell where he will alight. (70 a 31)

A jury will *declare not guilty* a prisoner whose innocence is proved. (41 b 21)

A candidate in an election sometimes asks for volunteers to *direct* envelopes. (51 a 10)

Few scenes in the world are more *awe-inspiring* than the Niagara Falls. (4353 a 41)

King George V gained the love of his subjects by *wise and skilful exercise of his powers.* (2402 b 3)

The *parched* plains of North Africa are barren of vegetation. (220 b 23)

Many people waste much time in *unimportant* gossip. (4367 a 34)

Few orators can hope to *reach* the brilliance of Edmund Burke. (270 a 44)

A *person who throws a gloom over social enjoyment* makes himself very unpopular. (2396 b 41)

A kindly person never injures anyone *intentionally.* (2415 b 28)

Some rooms have a *window that curves outward.* (492 b 6)

A tell-tale will *betray a secret.* (430 a 1)

A *quick* fall in temperature is an indication of approaching rain. (4156 b 5)

Everything that can be used it is possible to *use in the wrong way.* (20 a 17)

Some folk will not *tolerate* the slightest infringement of their rights. (4157 a 16)

Ships are warned by wireless of the approach of *stormy* weather. (4400 a 57)

Great Britain made strenuous efforts to *ward off* the World War. (293 a 55)

A book of reference is one that contains a *plentiful supply* of useful information. (4117 b 36)

In a football match seven goals to *none* would be a severe defeat. (2935 a 38)

Great *ability* is needed to guide a state. (613 b 3)

A *Christmas cracker* usually contains some small toy and a motto. (471 b 3)

A dog will slip off *furtively* if he has done wrong. (3996 a 7)

A wise man does not *enter upon* a great work unless he believes he can do it. (4418 b 24)

It is bad to *ponder moodily* over a misfortune. (530 a 11)

One should stand up to a *browbeating, overbearing fellow.* (546 b 30)

It was the practice of Maori warriors to *frighten* their enemies by making hideous grimaces. (2291 b 21)

Opinion offered as a guide to action when most needed is often least heeded. (64 b 48)

If we take away *love* and goodwill all the pleasure goes from life. (75 a 59)

Absalom was guilty of *traitorous conduct* when he rebelled against David. (4349 b 29)

It is foolish to make much *fuss* about nothing. (59 b 10)

Mourning *attire* is customary at funerals. (192 a 27)

Skylarks *utter a quavering song* as they soar aloft. (4361 b 46)

The geographical range of mankind is almost *world-wide.* (4427 a 28)

A *set* of rooms on one floor is called a flat. (4160 b 59)

In cutting the Panama Canal it was often found necessary to *blow up with an explosive* masses of rock which stood in the way. (439 a 13)

Trifling objections to a plan should not be taken seriously. (4367 a 34)

Things generally thought quite *improbable* often happen. (4429 a 4)

The *German Emperor* was forced to abdicate in 1918. (2378 b 5)

The *town* population of England increases much faster than that of country districts. (4440 a 16)

Guy Fawkes's *endeavour* to blow up Parliament was unsuccessful. (271 a 20)

The *principal part of the framework* of a ship is not unlike a man's backbone. (2384 b 43)

Bricks are baked in a *chamber heated by a furnace.* (2397 a 31)

One should discriminate between an *insult* which is deliberate and one which is not intended. (78 b 32)

It is foolish to take seriously what we know has been said *jestingly.* (2357 a 43)

A *piece of burning wood* plucked from one fire is sometimes used to light another. (502 a 50)

An honourable person will not accept a *gift offered to influence conduct or opinion.* (514 a 56)

When civilized nations occupy countries inhabited by savages they endeavour to *do away with* bad customs. (12 a 12)

A *substantially* built house is a credit to the builder. (4011 b 37)

The blackcap has a remarkably *melodious* song. (4382 a 45)

A sovereign has a *retinue or train of servants.* (4160 b 59)

Some people like to decorate their rooms with many a *little ornamental article.* (2411 a 10)

Napoleon's victories changed the whole *aspect of affairs* in Europe. (3959 a 5)

The males of deer are *horned.* (183 a 21)

A *supporting structure built against a wall* is sometimes ornamented. (567 a 42)

A flagon cannot be filled beyond its *holding power.* (613 b 3)

Artillery is used when it is decided to *attack with heavy gun-fire.* (470 a 12)

Exposure to the sun causes *a darkening of the skin.* (4165 a 30)

The *cavity or hollow* in a candlestick should be deep enough to give firm support to the candle. (4004 b 47)

Boys often engage in a boxing *contest.* (491 b 48)

Persons who are *without proper qualifications* are forbidden to practise medicine. (4431 a 44)

A commonplace garment lacks *distinction.* (4130 b 7)

There is always a large *number of people present* at a coronation ceremony. (271 a 42)

The invention of wireless telegraphy enabled ships at sea to *make known* their whereabouts. (2291 a 28)

In olden days the only *means of approach* to the gateway of a castle was by a drawbridge. (25 b 5)

One should always *attach* a label to a suit-case. (76 b 19)

Molasses is a sweet, thick syrup drained from sugar. (4349 a 36)

Many an accident is prevented by the *dexterous* handling of a motor-car. (60 b 46)

A *sympathetic* employer does all he can to make those who work for him happy and comfortable. (2398 b 46)

A distinctive item of a Boy Scout's *outfit* is his staff. (2405 b 20)

The *murder* of Abraham Lincoln occurred in 1865. (249 b 4)

Polar exploration had a great *fascination* for Shackleton. (273 a 40)

Sometimes a tobacconist becomes known for a particular *mixture* of tobacco. (442 a 15)

A keen debater will soon get to the *gist* of an argument. (2390 a 39)

Bad weather sometimes necessitates the *giving up* of an open-air entertainment. (3 b 11)

A woodland bird loves a *leafy retreat.* (493 b 6)

A *scoundrel* is not tolerated in decent society. (434 a 1)

A gale often culminates in a sudden *terrific gust of wind.* (439 a 13)

The seconds that mark the steady flow of time *follow* one another endlessly. (4153 b 1)

A holiday serves to *free* us for the time being from work. (17 a 14)

The green *sward* of English lawns is hardly equalled in the world. (4384 b 24)

A *set* of furniture may consist of any number of pieces. (4160 b 59)

In chess the *piece shaped like a horse's head* has certain powers. (2411 b 1)

Sea-gulls are always *conscious* of the approach of a storm. (295 b 10)

Fowls that *wander aimlessly* about the road are a great nuisance to motorists. (4120 b 67)

Much fighting used to take place on the Scottish *frontier.* (481 a 20)

A pleasant way of spending one's holidays is to *sail to and fro* along a picturesque coast. (1002 b 1)

Work done in a *slovenly* manner often has to be done again. (629 b 1)

Lonely people are seldom happy people. (4012 b 29)

Oneness of purpose is essential in a group of people working together. (4426 b 22)

It is *unworthy of a sportsman* to think more of oneself than of one's team. (4433 b 27)

To *tame* a lion is a difficult and dangerous task. (4142 b 15)

In early warfare a soldier with a sword defended himself with a *small round shield.* (538 b 15)

A *dwelling-house with a single floor* occupies more ground space than a storied building with the same amount of accommodation. (549 b 56)

Everything *belonging to the air* is influenced by the conditions of the air. (67 a 17)

It is far better to *own up to* a mistake than to try and brave it out. (39 a 25)

The ice on a frozen pond is often very *untrustworthy.* (4349 a 15)

In a trial at law some matters are regarded as not *capable of being admitted* as evidence. (58 b 6)

A small success will *stir up* in us a desire to do still better. (2399 a 52)

Dr. Fridtjof Nansen, the Norwegian explorer, has many *fervent* admirers. (216 a 36)

Yugoslavia is a *threefold* kingdom, that of the Serbs, Croats, and Slovenes. (4364 b 26)

Carelessness in money matters may bring one into serious *misfortune.* (4370 b 7)

A quiet man who has never attracted attention may prove a real *good fellow* in time of need. (4374 a 11)

It took many years to find the *solution* to the ancient Assyrian inscriptions. (2391 b 10)

A scene of horror may cause one to stand *terrified.* (86 b 37)

Violent winds are associated with the month of March. (466 a 1)

To be effective, a statesman must possess *the qualities of discernment and discrimination.* (2363 b 30)

To omit to thank a person for a service rendered is a *violation* of good manners. (507 a 1)

One cannot *lower* oneself without loss of self-respect. (4 a 6)

The atmosphere is often *hot and close* before a thunderstorm. (4162 b 26)

A mother should not *allow* her little child to go alone into the street. (4157 a 16)

The *proposal* to put clocks forward an hour during the summer months was made by a London builder. (4159 b 40)

A *bag for carrying luggage on the back* is often used by people on walking tours. (2409 a 27)

The science which deals with heavenly bodies is the oldest of all the sciences. (261 a 1)

Gladstone was a determined political *opponent* of Disraeli. (169 a 21)

Britain was *uneasy* about Gordon's position in Khartum. (184 a 19)

Fagin taught the Artful Dodger to be *dexterous* at picking pockets. (2935 b 22)

A bride usually carries a *bunch of flowers.* (490 b 11)

Both sexes now ride on horseback *with a leg on either side.* (258 b 19)

Fruits, such as plums, are sometimes *coated with sugar.* (602 b 61)

A good watch-dog will *growl threateningly* when a stranger approaches him. (3995 a 14)

It is discourteous to *rebuff* an acquaintance. (4000 a 44)

Loneliness often accompanies old age. (4013 a 10)

The discovery of America helped the seaport of Bristol to *thrive.* (3445 a 1)

Some people find the belief in *ill-omened* days hard to shake off. (4429 a 35)

A *large cask* is often used for the collection and storage of rain-water. (563 b 7)

One often obtains goods at a lower rate by buying them in *mass.* (544 b 7)

Daring enterprise has always attracted youth. (63 a 1)

Chicken-pox is an *illness* which usually occurs in childhood. (75 a 59)

Sharp pain which is soon over is often easier to bear than less severe pain which is more lasting. (48 a 1)

A *formal international agreement* was signed at Versailles in 1919. (4351 a 29)

The Messina earthquake resulted in *terrible* loss of life. (192 a 5)

To *fritter* away one's time is an act of great folly. (4360 b 7)

The *victorious* army of Napoleon occupied Berlin in 1806. (4366 b 19)

The younger Pitt was a very *shrewd* financier. (262 a 22)

So long as he keeps his heart young, a middle-aged man need not feel old at a *children's* party. (2376 b 7)

A *short, stout club or stick,* especially when weighted with lead, is a formidable weapon. (453 a 46)

In a well-planned theatre every seat will *provide* a good view of the play. (77 b 3)

The *pirates' flag* had a white skull and cross-bones on a black background. (2357 b 28)

Soldiers often *make a temporary encampment without tents.* (429 b 7)

Smooth, coaxing speech is often used by those who seek to gain some favour in a roundabout way. (438 b 9)

It should be our aim to do things *skilfully.* (613 a 43)

Things that are not *ridiculous* in themselves are often so in relation to their surroundings. (19 a 8)

A prisoner will sometimes *petition* for pardon. (4156 b 50)

We should be *appropriately* clothed if we do not wish to be conspicuous. (4160 b 40)

A man who gets into trouble may perhaps be more fool than *rogue.* (2409 b 1)

Queen Elizabeth dealt ably with many an *embarrassing* situation. (296 b 49)

A *stimulating* story is a good tonic after a hard day's work. (4111 b 1)

Plants that spread out *in an irregular fashion* give the gardener a lot of trouble. (4121 a 14)

Fearlessness is sometimes due to *dullness of understanding.* (4137 b 28)

Mountains often form a natural *frontier* of a country. (490 a 16)

The choice of a *profession* needs serious consideration. (629 a 33)

A builder has to *estimate* the cost of material, etc., before he can give a quotation. (584 b 37)

In case of fire we should *send for* the fire brigade without delay. (4164 a 24)

It is *assumed* that the audience will not talk while a musical performance is in progress. (4418 b 9)

The Trent and the Yorkshire Ouse *combine* to form the Humber. (4426 a 56)

An *ill-mannered* person is his own enemy. (4413 a 12)

The involuntary repetition of the initial consonants that hinders the speech of some people does not always prevent them from singing naturally. (4138 b 12)

A motor-car has reached the *amazing* speed of 230 miles an hour. (257 b 4)

A ship at a regatta is often bedecked with *a collection of flags.* (551 a 24)

To *consent to receive* a favour and then not return it when one is able, is mean. (25 a 35)

A lemon is *sour* to the taste. (38 b 28)

It is necessary to some extent to *adjust* oneself to one's surroundings. (49 a 11)

Lattice-work covered with creepers forms an excellent screen in a garden. (4352 b 64)

Britannia is represented as holding a *weapon with three prongs.* (4359 b 33)

A *herring split open, salted, and smoked or dried* is a favourite breakfast dish. (2404 b 31)

The famous tower of Pisa is *tilted.* (245 b 40)

A *child who absents himself from school without leave* will be sorry some day. (4371 b 35)

No one who is really modest will *loudly proclaim* his own merits. (4374 a 35)

Ships laden with concrete were used to *obstruct* the entrance channel at Zeebrugge in 1918. (446 a 58)

Russian criminals used to be flogged with a *long lash jointed with metal rings.* (2415 a 18)

The plays of the famous Elizabethan dramatists, Beaumont and Fletcher, were written *in combination.* (2356 a 9)

Familiarity is said to *beget* contempt. (512 b 1)

The *taking away* of children has sometimes been imputed to gipsies. (7 b 4)

Ice is water in a *non-fluid* state. (4011 b 4)

Many people like a cold *sponge-bath* every morning. (4377 b 45)

Each of a pair of cherries is the *counterpart* of the other. (4391 a 47)

Harsh and despotic rule is a very insecure form of government. (4397 b 23)

Captain Scott lost his life in *South Polar* exploration. (169 b 13)

Children love to *imitate* their elders. (185 a 64)

Some art critics say that Birket Foster painted in a style that was *over-elaborate.* (2932 a 65)

The *rejection* by Serbia of a demand of Austria led to the World War. (2947 b 44)

To betray a friend is a base and *perfidious* act. (4336 b 44)

A coward is usually *indifferent to the suffering of others.* (1002 a 10)

He who speaks *curtly* sees few smiles. (3994 b 32)

Better articles fetch higher prices. (4169 b 28)

Radium has the peculiar *quality* of emitting radio-active emanations for hundreds of years. (3438 a 29)

In " A Midsummer Night's Dream " the *clumsy* acting of Bottom and his friends is very amusing. (4414 a 34)

Seeds of plants are *scattered in all directions* by the wind. (525 b 3)

The *truce* arranged on November 11th, 1918, brought the World War to an end. (225 a 40)

A *stopper for a hole in a barrel* is usually made of cork. (549 b 45)

From 1712 until 1853 every paid *announcement* in an English newspaper was taxed. (64 b 26)

As regards goods that we buy, the *highest point* of perfection is not reconcilable with cheapness. (39 b 23)

It is worse than useless to spend one's time reading *rubbish.* (4347 a 57)

We have to *put in order* the various parts of a machine if they are not working in harmony. (54 b 12)

The properties of unknown substances can only be found out by repeated *experiment.* (4356 a 10)

Sir Christopher Wren, whose greatest monument is St. Paul's Cathedral, London, was a great *designer of buildings.* (212 b 42)

All midshipmen *yearn* to be as famous as Nelson. (248 a 57)

Thistles and dandelions give the gardener a great deal of *annoyance.* (4370 b 7)

Clever rogues often *concoct* a plausible story to shield themselves. (4373 b 47)

Train-oil is obtained from *the fat of whales.* (453 a 19)

An unusual noise or sight will sometimes *frighten* a horse. (78 b 20)

A will-o'-the-wisp is sometimes seen hovering over a *morass.* (463 a 30)

We picture the landlord of a country inn as a *jolly, hearty* man. (2361 a 13)

A rough sea sometimes makes a *gap* in a sea wall. (507 a 1)

The presence of visitors will often *confuse* a shy child. (4 a 41)

Strongly constructed furniture will last for many years (4011 b 4)

Some people *endure* pain uncomplainingly. (4157 a 16)

Study of the flight of the dragon-fly provided the *hint* for the final form of the aeroplane. (4159 b 40)

Some absent-minded people have a *trick or habit* of saying the wrong thing. (2408 b 8)

The Russian *nobility* fled after the Revolution of 1917. (221 b 43)

Stamps are coated with gum so that they may *adhere* to our letters. (4105 b 1)

Napoleon's plans for the invasion of Russia went *amiss.* (297 b 3)

Cocks, peacocks, and turkeys *walk in a pompous manner.* (4133 a 44)

The science which treats of the vegetable kingdom is a fascinating subject. (484 b 50)

Anxiety, as well as age, brings wrinkles and grey hair. (628 b 5)

One expects a friend to be *outspoken.* (602 b 29)

The *top* of a mountain is often enshrouded in mist. (4164 a 6)

Many grown-ups like to take a *short sleep* after dinner. (3998 a 44)

In the great Klondike rush thousands of people left their homes to *search* for gold. (3444 a 53)

One should learn to express oneself so that one's meaning is *perfectly clear.* (4429 b 45)

Anglers usually go to a *secluded* part of a river to fish. (4012 b 29)

Swallows *gather together* before they migrate. (250 a 29)

One of the objects of this dictionary is to be *informative.* (2261 a 52)

As *trade* increases, unemployment decreases. (561 a 3)

A cold in the ear may *have an effect on* one's hearing. (75 a 43)

To *change the order of* words in a sentence may make nonsense of it. (4345 b 3)

A general in praising his troops may say that their spirit is *worthy of admiration.* (55 b 36)

One should beware of underestimating an *opponent.* (64 a 12)

The science of building is one of the fine arts. (213 a 7)

The *excursionist* who comes to London for a day cannot learn much about that city. (4364 a 8)

Money put into the Bank of England is *undoubtedly* safe. (255 a 16)

Worthless finery is often offered for sale at fairs. (4374 a 2)

A swift-flying bird quickly disappears from our *range of sight.* (2388 a 10)

From earliest times man has occupied himself with *the science and practice of cultivating the soil.* (91 a 20)

A boy is very *triumphant* when he has succeeded beyond his hopes in a difficult examination. (2362 a 6)

Fear sometimes causes a person's face to *turn pale* suddenly. (437 a 44)

When the rain ceases, the floods *subside.* (4 a 50)

Reasons should be *well grounded.* (4011 b 4)

It is very difficult to test the *veracity* of old chroniclers. (4376 b 43)

The philosopher Aristotle was the *private teacher* of Alexander the Great. (4389 a 21)

An experienced traveller usually carries a very light *personal equipment.* (2405 b 20)

The *mean* annual rainfall at Cherra Punji, in Assam, is over 450 inches. (292 b 43)

If the moon suddenly turned pink the change of colour would cause a *sensation.* (4111 a 48)

Nelson's fame reached its *pinnacle* at Trafalgar. (186 a 55)

A run in cricket used to be recorded by a *notch* cut in a piece of wood. (2929 b 37)

A small stream is sometimes diverted by a *large mass of more or less rounded stone.* (488 b 19)

A boxer has to *keep fit by dieting and exercise.* (4335 b 45)

"*Great misfortune* is the touchstone of a brave mind." (582 b 49)

Peevishness is often the accompaniment of bad digestion. (3994 b 34)

Robinson Crusoe lived on a *lonely* island in the ocean. (4012 b 29)

Common salt is formed by the *combination* of sodium and chlorine. (4425 a 1)

During a written examination *uninterrupted* silence must be maintained. (4412 a 50)

People with good sense and insight generally come to an *agreement* on a matter in dispute. (4418 a 4)

King John gave his *sanction* to Magna Charta in 1215. (250 b 23)

Mercutio's rashness in *meddling* with the affairs of the houses of Montagu and Capulet cost him his life. (2276 b 16)

Unless we try with all our might we shall never *accomplish* anything. (37 b 8)

In a long-standing quarrel the *real* cause of the trouble is often forgotten. (46 b 20)

It is the aim of every midshipman to attain the position of *commander of a fleet or squadron.* (57 a 1)

A *member of a tribe* in Arabia is bound by the customs of his tribe. (4356 b 65)

Englishmen have a great *relish* for sport. (195 a 22)

It is essential to *distribute the weight properly in* a ship before she sails. (4362 a 48)

The Underground railway would *astonish* an African native. (257 b 13)

Capes are pieces of land that *project* into the sea. (2375 b 29)

A certain amount of iodine is still made from *the ash of dried and burned seaweed.* (2387 a 52)

How to do away with unemployment is a *difficult* question. (2414 b 21)

The formation of a *sham* company is a common device of swindlers. (464 a 23)

The housewife sometimes buys meat to *stew in an enclosed cooking vessel.* (501 a 1)

A man may assume an expression of *utter* dismay on receiving very bad news. (437 b 62)

The British Museum paid a large sum for Shakespeare's *signature.* (287 b 51)

A book is sometimes issued in *shortened* form for use in schools, etc. (14 b 28)

If we do things *hastily* we shall probably do them badly. (4156 b 17)

Sir Galahad's sword would cleave a man's helmet in *two.* (4389 b 30)

If we can afford the space in our garden we may have a *plot of land set apart for growing vegetables and fruit.* (2406 b 1)

A person may be said to *smother* the voice of his conscience when he disregards its promptings. (4107 a 30)

Ministers are *responsible* to Parliament for their actions. (168 b 39)

To *play an instrument monotonously and unskilfully* is both a waste of time and an annoyance to others. (4133 a 25)

A watchmaker has to make *delicate* adjustments. (2928 b 65)

Benjamin Disraeli was treated at first as a *nonentity.* (2941 b 17)

The *handicraft* of a carpenter cannot be learnt without neatness and accuracy. (4333 a 21)

Accidents are often attributable to *thoughtlessness.* (629 b 10)

The view of the Matterhorn from Grindelwald is *glorious.* (4167 b 22)

A child who shows *lack of gratitude* for a kindness is either selfish or thoughtless. (4422 b 42)

Coleridge's "Ancient Mariner" is a story of *weird* happenings. (4412 b 7)

The British Broadcasting Corporation gives a *brief account* of the day's news every evening. (4163 a 31)

A typewriter is a very useful *machine* for a journalist to possess. (196 a 5)

In 1924 the foundations of St. Paul's Cathedral, London, were found to be *unsafe.* (2252 a 1)

A blackbird often builds its nest in a *thick shrub.* (559 b 27)

The work we are *used* to is usually the work we do the best. (35 a 13)

The life of a *man who ensnares fur-bearing animals* is full of adventure. (4346 b 38)

Founders *apply processes* to ore to extract the metal. (4350 b 41)

One should be careful not to *make undue claims* on a busy person's time. (4355 a 14)

An uncle is a near *relative.* (2404 a 20)

The *climbing* of high mountains is an arduous undertaking. (242 b 45)

Sir William Gilbert produced many famous comic operas in *partnership* with Sir Arthur Sullivan. (253 b 10)

If a wheel does not run *accurately* power is wasted. (4373 a 19)

A hill shepherd dreads a *fierce storm of snow and wind.* (445 b 38)

" An undisturbed mind is the best sauce for *trouble.*" (77 a 25)

A ship *stuck on the bed of the sea or other water* is often refloated. (91 a 65)

Writing for newspapers is interesting work. (2360 a 22)

The crime of demanding money by threats is held in the greatest contempt. (435 a 10)

When *a strong solution of salt and water* is boiled, the water evaporates, leaving pure salt behind. (521 a 38)

Dishonourable acts *disgrace* a person's character. (4161 b 23)

The *Emperor of Russia,* Alexander II, liberated the serfs in 1861. (4377 b 6)

An angle in a city wall is sometimes surmounted by a *small tower.* (4387 a 66)

Europeans of the Nordic *class* often display great endurance and enterprise. (4394 b 44)

It fell to Robert Clive to *exact retribution for* the crime of the Black Hole of Calcutta. (291 b 9)

A boiling liquid is never *motionless.* (4108 a 23)

To *disregard* the early signs of a disease may have serious consequences. (2912 a 16)

Starting upon opposite sides of a mountain, tunnel borers calculate their meeting-place with amazing *accuracy.* (2929 a 25)

The phenomenon of a *high tidal wave* is observable on certain rivers at spring tides. (482 a 1)

Many of the British *aristocracy* were killed in the Wars of the Roses. (2940 b 29)

The methods of *hauling goods along the roads* have greatly changed in recent years. (4332 b 51)

Spoil carried off by a thief is sometimes recovered by the police. (480 a 51)

We should not expect to receive *more than average* quality if we insist upon paying a low price. (4169 b 28)

A *half suppressed cynical giggle* is not worthy to be called a laugh. (3997 a 13)

Cartwright's invention of the power-loom did much to *contribute to the growth of* the cotton trade in Lancashire. (3433 b 1)

It is *illegal* to keep a dog without a licence. (4428 b 29)

Doctors have to answer *pressing* calls for help at any hour of the night. (4440 b 23)

The king's *sanction* is necessary before a knighthood is granted. (199 b 1)

Pharaoh pretended to be *indifferent* to the demands of the Israelites for straw with which to make bricks. (2252 a 46)

A great part of Australia is still *uncleared land.* (559 b 27)

The *bomb for dropping from aircraft* is usually attached to the underside of the framework. (68 b 28)

If we travelled in Turkey we should want some one to *interpret* what people said to us. (4342 b 6)

For a school and its playing-field to *be next to* one another is most convenient. (53 b 41)

In a long race the early *gain* of one competitor over another is often not sustained. (62 a 17)

India greeted the *nomination* of Lord Irwin as Viceroy. (196 b 58)

A *small personal ornament* may be treasured for the sake of its former wearer. (4363 a 50)

Chameleons *take on* the colour of their surroundings. (254 b 9)

The stock in a marine store consists of all manner of *old and discarded material.* (2371 a 8)

A *partially cured herring* is a savoury breakfast dish. (446 a 35)

A board often has a *hard, cross-grained piece* in it. (2414 a 34)

Sphagnum grows on *wet and spongy* ground. (463 a 39)

The life of a *person who writes for or edits newspapers* is a busy one. (2360 a 19)

It is best to keep out of a *noisy quarrel.* (505 a 54)

Beauty without *flaw* is rarely found. (441 b 23)

Cliffs by the sea often fall away *precipitously* to the beach. (15 a 34)

Cromwell told his soldiers to *have confidence* in God and keep their powder dry. (4376 a 14)

The bearing of pain is common to man and beast. (4157 a 47)

A pestle is used to *pound* substances placed in a mortar. (1004 b 21)

Books of every kind are *at one's disposal* at the British Museum Library. (290 b 18)

Donkeys and mules are *obstinate* animals. (4133 b 51)

A *lurch forward after making a false step* is very disconcerting. (4136 a 35)

Everyone talks *nonsense* at some time or other. (483 b 21)

Increasing attention is being paid to *the methodical laying out of towns.* (4329 b 50)

The *loud, deep, resounding noise* of a big bell can be heard a long way off. (476 b 38)

A person with a *curt* manner makes few friends. (3994 b 29)

A spoilt child will *cry in a sniffling, whining way.* (3997 b 12)

The nurses in a hospital wear *regulation dress.* (4424 a 1)

A round game may make shy or reserved people *become more friendly.* (4411 b 56)

An Arctic explorer must be prepared to *pass through* many hardships. (4416 b 3)

A small number of troops often bear the *shock* of a strong attack made by the enemy. (533 b 22)

The needle of a mariner's compass points *immediately* to the magnetic north. (2259 a 49)

The appearance of an artist on the concert platform is often hailed with a *sudden breaking forth* of applause. (558 a 56)

To get the right answer to a sum our workings must be *free from error.* (34 a 19)

Some persons are more *energetic* than others. (46 a 10)

One effect of the World War was to *increase threefold* the cost of many necessary articles. (4351 a 43)

One should be able to *bring forward* reasons for one's actions when they are challenged. (61 b 30)

It is useless to expect reasonable ideas from a man who has a *mental twist.* (2403 a 49)

Whether Hobbs is a greater cricketer than Grace is open to *dispute.* (220 a 1)

A weapon taken from an enemy was often preserved as a *memorial of victory.* (4369 a 60)

If our actions are called in question we at once proceed to *show the rightness of* them. (2375 a 25)

The *cheerful* song of the blackbird is frequently heard in springtime. (445 b 21)

Many a disaster is due to a *stupid mistake.* (457 b 10)

A breath of wind is sufficient to *shake* the leaves of trees. (88 a 1)

Persons sometimes *refuse to have dealings with* those against whom they have a grievance. (497 a 17)

If we do wrong wilfully we must be prepared to take the *responsibility.* (437 a 21)

Fragile objects need to be handled with care. (524 a 17)

If we are *silently and persistently resentful* or unforgiving, we are responsible for the misery that we cause. (4161 a 41)

The *body* and limbs of a gorilla are covered with shaggy hair. (4375 a 35)

If one dog sees another with a bone there may be a *struggle* for it. (4388 b 17)

A carelessly folded fabric will *become wrinkled.* (1003 a 23)

A girl who can *use a typewriter* quickly and accurately has learnt a useful accomplishment. (4394 b 44)

Kew Gardens are famed for their fine *collection* of plants. (230 a 1)

An enthusiast does not *spare* his efforts. (4110 a 56)

A protest, if it is to be effective, should be *emphatic.* (4131 b 19)

In a football match the referee must be *free from a desire for either side to win.* (2924 b 47)

Children, when they are enjoying themselves, sometimes think going to bed is a great *nuisance.* (482 a 24)

Carrion crows often feed on the *dead body* of a sheep. (626 a 51)

No man likes to be called a *stupid fellow.* (475 a 26)

A *dark spot on the surface of the sun* is said to cause magnetic storms on the earth. (4165 a 62)

Low-toned colours can be made to pass imperceptibly into each other. (4006 a 22)

It is difficult to *throw off* a bad style of playing a game when once learnt. (4428 b 36)

People of sanguine temperament *make too low an estimate of* their difficulties. (4416 a 28)

A person late for an appointment should *express regret* for the delay. (189 b 11)

" A *load* one likes is cheerfully borne." (552 a 49)

One should not *bring a charge against* another in order to excuse oneself. (34 b 28)

Window glass has *the quality of allowing things behind to be clearly seen.* (4344 b 3)

To *speak to* a vast audience is trying to the voice. (51 a 10)

No *grown-up* person is allowed to take part in a children's competition. (61 a 41)

Sweets may *pacify* a fractious child. (194 a 8)

We miss the joke if we fail to hear *properly.* (221 a 38)

The Cup Final at Wembley is played before a great *crowd* of people. (250 a 40)

Horses *plod* steadily along the tow-path, dragging a barge behind them. (4373 a 7)

A friend sometimes gives a *book or other article to be kept in remembrance of the giver.* (2386 b 20)

Reddening of the face in an accused person is no evidence of guilt. (458 a 56)

Neither the mind nor the body can endure *extreme suffering* for any great length of time. (90 a 1)

A scout usually carries a *hunter's knife.* (494 a 5)

A cattle drover will *flourish* his goad to keep his herd together. (502 b 53)

There has been no more *illustrious* playwright than Shakespeare. (520 a 16)

Some dogs are *obstinately ill-humoured.* (4161 a 41)

An *overflowing* supply of a particular commodity causes a glut in the market. (19 b 33)

A boy who has eaten more than *enough* is a sorry boy. (4157 b 38)

As a field of molten lava cools, a hard *layer* forms on its surface. (1004 b 52)

Some people have *reddish-brown* hair. (274 b 21)

Senator Marconi is a great *expert* on wireless telegraphy. (286 a 1)

Sir Walter Raleigh was accused by James I of an *underhand plot* to place Arabella Stuart on the throne. (2295 a 18)

Barristers have to be very *quick at repartee.* (2935 b 20)

It is cruel to keep a robin in a state of *imprisonment.* (621 a 21)

A churlish *person* misses a great deal of happiness. (477 a 52)

We never see a *contemptuous smile* on the face of a good-natured person. (3996 a 21)

The hippopotamus, when on land, moves in an *awkward* manner. (4422 b 14)

The extent of the *whole creation* is too vast for the mind to grasp. (4427 b 20)

When writing a letter one should never leave it *without a date*. (4414 b 35)

Urgent matters *permit* no delay. (530 b 26)

The knights of old used to *dress* themselves in armour. (272 b 6)

A Scottish glen has usually a *small stream* running through it. (556 b 28)

Many formalities are observed on a king's *ascending the throne*. (25 b 27)

It has taken millions of years to effect the *complete change* of wood into coal. (4340 b 29)

It requires long and patient work to become *thoroughly proficient* in any art, craft, or profession. (52 a 35)

One must read the newspapers to follow the *general tendency* of public affairs. (4354 b 13)

If a *sudden bend* forms in the garden hose it should be straightened out at once. (2403 a 49)

Imitation poppies are sold on Armistice Day. (239 a 13)

A whole *herd* of antelopes will take flight at the sight of a man. (4369 a 1)

To be able to *do conjuring tricks* is a useful and entertaining accomplishment. (2366 a 24)

A *sharp* razor will become blunt with hard use. (2385 a 61)

Christmas is the great season of the year for gatherings of *relatives*. (2398 a 15)

A general election in Great Britain sets the whole country *in a state of great excitement or eager expectation*. (89 b 5)

It is bad manners to *push roughly against* people when getting into a train or bus. (2359 a 33)

A *glittering* effect is produced by the reflection of the sun on the surface of the sea. (520 a 16)

Some of the early trams were drawn by two horses harnessed *side by side*. (14 b 5)

Good news and bad news often come *unexpectedly*. (4156 b 17)

The result of a battle may *depend* on the health of a single man. (4386 a 6)

A *sharp, sudden pain* in a tooth shows that a dentist should be visited. (4392 a 6)

Self-acting lifts are installed in many modern buildings. (288 a 37)

Sticking-plaster is linen with a coating of some *adhesive* substance. (4106 a 39)

Knowledge of some subjects can be gained only by *mental application*. (4135 a 7)

The smallest *sip* of wormwood tea will reveal its extreme bitterness. (2937 a 57)

A life-boat may *overturn*, but it will not sink. (619 a 33)

When an ordeal is over we may perhaps utter a fervent *exclamation* of thankfulness. (1005 b 50)

The realization of his ambitions may be said to be the *apex* of a man's career. (4164 a 6)

Power obtained directly from the sun has been used to raise steam in special boilers. (4165 b 6)

Tobacco is sometimes called the poor man's *comfort*. (4008 a 4)

For thousands of years Europeans were *ignorant* of the existence of America. (4411 a 33)

Slightly cooked meat is good for those who can enjoy it. (4416 a 26)

Gold is a heavier *material* than lead. (4150 a 18)

A *lout* behaves awkwardly in good company. (548 b 41)

Sir Philip Sidney was a very *brave* soldier. (2294 b 11)

It was the habit of Mary's little lamb to *go with* her wherever she went. (31 a 10)

At sunset the clouds often *come to have* strange and lovely colours. (41 a 25)

Aladdin found a great *hoard of jewels* in a cave. (4350 a 9)

" Not to *go forward* is to go back." (61 b 30)

The bonds of *relationship* are strong. (2399 b 13)

The last gladiatorial combat in the *amphitheatre* in Rome took place in A.D. 404. (217 a 38)

The first *attack* on the Dardanelles during the World War was launched in February, 1915. (249 b 16)

If we cannot co-ordinate what we know our knowledge is a mere *confused assemblage* of facts. (2367 a 56)

King Henry VIII of England was renowned for his *hearty outspoken manners*. (457 a 53)

Hills sometimes look their best when *in a glow* with the light of the setting sun. (88 b 16)

A contest with gloved fists is a manly sport. (496 a 17)

" Necessity makes the timid *courageous*." (504 b 46)

Boiling cotton in lime-water will *whiten* it more quickly than would exposure to the sun. (440 b 50)

In law it is an offence to *countenance or encourage* a crime. (8 b 9)

We should not announce bad news *abruptly*. (4156 b 17)

A piece of iron will *deflect* the needle of a compass. (4386 a 6)

Certain kinds of building stone are more likely to *decay* than others. (1002 b 37)

What is believed to be the first petrol-driven *motor-car* seen in England was designed in 1888 by Carl Benz. (289 a 27)

Britons *confidently assert* that they never shall be slaves. (292 b 27)

To give us ugliness instead of beauty is the *objectionably novel* notion of some modern artists. (2925 b 55)

It is not so good to *obtain on loan* as to be able to lend. (483 a 17)

Lambs often *leap in a playful manner* when playing together. (614 b 32)

Shylock, in "The Merchant of Venice," insisted on payment in accordance with his *written agreement.* (471 b 25)

A swan will *ward off attack from* its cygnets with great courage. (1087 a 17)

One of the *peculiar* charms of Bunyan's "Pilgrim's Progress" is the simplicity of its language. (4036 b 66)

The laws of the Medes and Persians were *sternly* enforced. (3696 a 3)

Great quantities of *soft cotton fabric for dressing wounds* are used in hospitals. (2549 b 11)

In wet weather children must *confine* themselves to indoor games. (3663 a 23)

Children love to *ornament* the house at Christmas with paper chains. (1078 a 64)

Abundant harvests make the farmers prosperous. (3300 a 51)

Our eyes *range over* a landscape when we survey it quickly. (4190 a 44)

Children who have been sitting in school all the morning enjoy a good *boisterous game* out of doors. (3716 a 29)

When mosquitoes bite a person, they *introduce injurious matter into* the blood. (3317 b 56)

A hawk will *descend swiftly* upon its prey and seize it while on the wing. (4196 a 42)

A critical survey of recently published books forms an important part of most weekly papers. (3677 a 9)

Plenty of sun, together with sufficient rain are needed for a *bountiful* harvest. (2516 a 20)

A statesman has to *wrestle* with many difficult problems. (1897 a 60)

A mining prospector is overjoyed when he discovers a rich *vein of metal-bearing rock.* (2577 a 4)

The *sounding line* has to be used frequently in unknown waters. (3306 a 12)

Dr. Primrose, in Goldsmith's novel "The Vicar of Wakefield," is one of the most *amiable and attractive* characters in fiction. (2599 a 42)

A *rounded spot or cloudy marking* is often seen on the skin of an animal. (1050 a 1)

Spare time is well employed in acquiring knowledge. (2497 a 32)

The King's chair in Westminster Abbey stands on a *low platform.* (1042 b 4)

It is the duty of the police to *quell* unlawful demonstrations. (4175 b 23)

The poet Chatterton allowed his imagination to run *wild* over the romances and legends of the past. (3700 a 1)

The blackbird's notes are as *smooth and clear* as running water. (2551 b 35)

Burns should be treated with a good *salve,* to protect them from the air. (3009 a 5)

It is hard, sometimes, to *take up* work again after a long rest. (3663 b 53)

The *supple* movements of a deer on the moors are a delight to see. (2558 a 27)

Sailors *mop* the decks of a ship. (4185 a 66)

Henry VII suppressed the custom by which nobles maintained a large number of *followers.* (3665 b 8)

To raise crops it is necessary to *till* the soil. (1014 a 1)

The west coast of Scotland is composed of steep *rugged* cliffs. (3710 b 8)

Malicious gossip may *spoil* the relations between friends. (3317 b 56)

The circle is the *emblem* of eternity. (4199 b 9)

The Scottish Jacobites suffered a serious *defeat* at Sheriffmuir in 1715. (3675 b 25)

There is usually some *resemblance* between a father and his son. (2535 a 23)

The oyster is said to form a pearl round a *little grain* of sand or other matter that has entered its shell. (1895 a 23)

Every important event is entered in the *official daily record of a ship's progress.* (2578 b 6)

Much of South Africa is a rather dry *table-land.* (3292 b 41)

Ocean travellers are glad to *disembark* after a rough voyage. (2445 a 55)

The loft is the place for *unused articles which take up room.* (2608 b 1)

Sometimes the money a farmer obtains for his produce in the market does not *pay* the expenses of transport. (1090 b 9)

A meal should be served *in a manner pleasing to the taste.* (1042 a 40)

Vegetation is *scanty* in a country where rain seldom falls. (4033 b 40)

It is a long time since there has been a serious *outbreak of lawlessness* in London. (3700 a 1)

Regular exercise makes the figure *supple.* (2553 a 60)

There is *abundance* of room in the British Dominions for new settlers. (3300 a 19)

A conditional *bequest* is one that depends on some future happening. (2493 a 25)

It was once the custom to *swathe* newborn babies in many yards of material. (4185 b 33)

The talkativeness of a single pupil will often *hinder* the progress of the whole class. (3666 a 1)

To walk comfortably one does not want to *hamper* oneself with heavy clothing. (1014 b 35)

Many philanthropists have founded homes for children who had no *shelter* over their heads. (3717 a 13)

A juggler will *balance* a number of objects one above another on his chin, and spin them round. (3317 b 34)

The nightingale sings in *woodland* glades, (4199 a 34)

Greater care at cross-roads would *diminish* the risk of accident. (2505 a 12)

Many Germans *regard with respect and admiration* the name of Frederick the Great. (3675 a 14)

A true story may appear less *plausible* than a false one. (2534 b 25)

Sir Henry Segrave's car ran *magnificently* when it broke the world's speed record. (1892 b 13)

If we have been asked to deliver an important message we should not *linger on the way*. (2581 a 51)

Time is a great healer of *grief*. (4021 b 53)

A *basket in which silver spoons and forks are kept* is lined with baize. (3292 b 2)

It is natural to *mourn* the death of a friend. (2441 a 35)

Farm wagons *move heavily and clumsily* along the country lanes. (2608 a 49)

A good cause deserves *assistance*. (4174 b 24)

A stone dropped into a pond will cause a slight *ruffling of the water's surface*. (3701 a 32)

Magistrates are usually *merciful* towards first offenders. (2500 a 65)

It is no justification to *allege* ignorance of the law. (3296 b 59)

One should *restrain* one's temper. (1020 a 22)

The people of the East *subsist* largely on rice. (2563 b 8)

People of strong character can *influence* the opinions of others. (4189 a 8)

We *welcome* the coming of the New Year with the ringing of bells. (1907 b 25)

It is customary to *praise highly* one who is responsible for outstanding achievement. (2647 a 55)

Workers in the heart of London soon get used to the *confused din* of the traffic. (3705 b 25)

Raleigh's spreading of his cloak in the mud for Queen Elizabeth to walk on was a *charming and courtierlike* act. (1884 b 36)

It is usual to *set up* a national flag on a newly discovered island. (2052 b 27)

It is unwise to *put off* till to-morrow what we can do to-day. (1087 b 13)

Excessive heat or stuffiness causes some people to *faint*. (4196 a 35)

The publication of a *calumny* may lead to an action at law. (2515 a 66)

The coronation of a king is always celebrated with great *festivity* and rejoicing. (3673 b 52)

A lazy boy is ungrateful because he makes no *recompense* for his parents' trouble and expense. (3672 a 17)

The sky is *overcast* before a storm. (4015 a 6)

The *heaving motion* imparted by waves to a ship is disagreeable to many people. (4178 b 24)

Such a calamity as the World War fortunately does not *happen* often. (2991 b 48)

In "Paradise Lost" Milton gives free *scope* to his imagination. (3294 b 44)

A *clergyman who assists a rector or vicar* in a large parish has much to do. (1019 b 5)

After a bank holiday there is usually an enormous amount of *rubbish scattered about* in the London parks. (2561 a 51)

A level *stretch of turf* is indispensable for the game of cricket. (4188 a 1)

Unless precautions are taken, thieves will *rifle* orchards and gardens when the fruit is ripe. (3308 a 22)

Charles Lamb, the essayist, lived a very *secluded* life, but he had many friends. (3668 a 26)

At a school examination the candidate must *collect* all his wits. (2877 b 64)

A clock's hands move very *slowly* round the face. (1886 b 3)

The laws against *trespassers in pursuit of game* were formerly exceedingly severe. (3312 a 38)

The fielders in a cricket match often *lie down* on the grass while waiting for the next batsman to come in. (3575 a 51)

The *fleetness* of the greyhound surpasses that of the hare. (4192 b 30)

Some novelists leave the *outline of a story* to develop as they write. (3303 a 29)

It does not do to *accept without examination* every rumour one hears. (4186 b 57)

A *fop* draws attention to himself by style of his dress. (1047 b 29)

Tea-tasters *classify* teas with great expertness. (1885 b 14)

It was at the age of twenty-nine that Robert Louis Stevenson set out to *earn his livelihood* by his pen. (2563 b 8)

Pastures scorched by drought are soon made *verdant* again by rain. (1906 a 5)

At schools each boy or girl usually has a *special little cupboard* for shoes and other belongings. (2574 b 19)

A sense of fair play forbids us to *harass* one whose opinions we dislike. (3211 a 12)

Fortunately for us, there is a silver lining to every cloud. (2605 a 8)

The Greeks believed that Charon was the ferryman of the *lower* regions. (2922 b 26)

The French call a *leap in which one turns head over heels* le saut périlleux. (4015 b 36)

Churlishness discourages friendliness. (4179 a 63)

Many quaint old customs *continue to exist* in the remoter country parts. (2545 b 22)

A great leader will always try to *hold back* his followers from unnecessary violence. (3662 b 46)

The *quick movement* of a number of searchlights is a fine sight. (3294 b 44)

The *kind and courteous* treatment of a foe may change him into a friend. (1885 a 5)

A *piece of land saturated with water* is not a suitable site for building. (4187 a 29)

The *melodious* notes of the thrush may be heard in all parts of the country. (2874 a 40)

SENIOR SECTION

During a lecture we *concentrate* our attention on what is being said. (1675 a 12)

The supporters of a football team *rejoice greatly* if their side wins. (1527 a 26)

In the great crater of Kilanea the lava is always in a *boiling condition.* (1339 b 11)

A witness in court should not make statements *irrelevant* to the case. (1694 b 20)

Petroleum was first discovered in the United States quite *by chance.* (1709 b 5)

Obsidian is a *vitreous* substance thrown out from volcanoes. (1847 a 29)

Several *side-dishes* may be served during an elaborate dinner. (1425 b 64)

Not all kinds of fungi are *fit to be eaten.* (1347 a 50)

One usually does with least labour the work which is most *agreeable.* (871 b 22)

Its *concluding speech* is the great attraction of the Westminster School Play. (1438 a 14)

A tongue-tied person cannot *articulate* his words correctly. (1428 a 38)

The subject of one of Hogarth's pictures is a visit to a *quack.* (703 b 6)

Talkativeness and an empty head often go together. (1798 a 37)

An auctioneer closes the bidding with a blow of his *hammer.* (1806 b 34)

Formalin is an effective *germ-destroyer.* (1824 a 39)

A person suffering from *lack of blood* is usually pale-complexioned. (145 b 11)

It is not customary to *haggle* when shopping. (684 b 18)

A horse that is *worn out* should not be made to work. (1080 a 20)

Vegetables are difficult to sell when there is a *superabundance* of them. (1857 a 12)

In fine weather people may be seen lunching *in the open air.* (106 b 1)

Various laws have been enacted to *make better* the conditions of life and work in factories. (132 b 12)

Astronomers are able to *calculate* the distance of stars from the earth. (852 b 10)

In the Middle Ages people would pay a high price for an *unfledged hawk.* (1527 b 13)

One way to *give publicity to* a grievance is to write to the newspapers. (4467 a 63)

Great hunger makes animals *eat to excess* when they get the chance. (1878 a 9)

No British war memorial is held more sacred than the *empty tomb* in Whitehall. (674 b 16)

A sharp prick makes one give vent to an *exclamation* of pain. (1357 a 17)

The dervishes charged the British troops with great *dash* at the battle of Omdurman. (1358 a 1)

Cats *infuriate* gardeners by scratching up their seedlings. (1489 b 11)

We should never make an *assertion* which we are not able or willing to substantiate. (111 b 12)

A speech containing criticism should not reveal *a hostile feeling* on the part of the speaker. (162 b 41)

Some people are able to impose on their fellows by sheer *shameless impudence.* (1352 a 8)

The *wedding song* of Spenser is one of the finest of English poems of its kind. (1441 b 20)

Legislation meets with little opposition when there is a *general agreement* of opinion in its favour. (882 a 6)

The ancient Lydians were looked upon as very *unmanly* by other nations. (1349 b 51)

To Western eyes one *Chinese* looks very like another. (672 a 20)

A schoolboy will sometimes *make up* a story to serve as an excuse for being late. (858 b 20)

A particular *substance that gives a relish to food* is sometimes used with a particular meat. (862 a 54)

If a serious wound is neglected, *mortification* may set in (1790 b 49)

Epicurism is an expensive pleasure. (1802 a 1)

The magpie belongs to the same *group* of birds as the crow and raven (1550 b 25)

The sinking of the s.s. "Titanic" in 1912 was a great *calamity.* (656 b 42)

The chief characteristic of a greyhound is its *swiftness.* (672 a 1)

Warm, damp weather makes seeds *sprout* quickly. (1825 b 28)

Insults *embitter* quarrels. (1487 a 14)

The answer delivered by an oracle to a question was often *of doubtful meaning.* (130 b 9)

Steam roundabouts are decorated *gaudily.* (1795 a 50)

Plants grow *luxuriantly* in hot, moist climates. (1527 a 8)

The *Russian Parliament,* created in 1905, was abolished in 1917. (1312 b 29)

His subjects accused Charles II of *irresponsible* behaviour. (1742 b 22)

Millions of children attend *primary* schools. (1366 a 68)

It is unwise to *oppose* the studied opinion of an expert. (3031 b 9)

About 11 p.m. there is a great *outpouring* of people from the theatres. (1351 a 66)

The labours of Sisyphus are proverbial for their *abortiveness.* (1749 b 3)

The *radiance* of burning magnesium is dazzling. (1352 a 52)

The *formation* of a joint-stock company necessitates certain legal formalities. (1660 a 17)

It is a mistake to *confuse* the means with the end. (869 b 12)

The experienced traveller does not *burden* himself with too much luggage. (1401 a 1)

Talleyrand, the French statesman, was a master of *artfulness* in politics. (1614 a 25)

The Roman *gourmet* prized the red mullet highly as a delicacy. (1435 b 27)

It is difficult to *picture* the daily life of the Anglo-Saxons. (1429 b 18)

The law cannot inflict *adequate* punishment on every criminal. (862 a 39)

Business concerns with similar interests and which trade in the same area often *combine.* (127 a 37)

The seaward faces of the Rock of Gibraltar are pierced with many an *opening for guns.* (1383 b 22)

Lord Kitchener adopted *slow but sure* tactics to defeat the Boers. (1531 b 50)

The music of Wagner was at first rejected with scorn by those who held *accepted* views in musical matters. (3051 b 61)

Plutarch tells us that Julius Caesar showed much *hesitation* before crossing the Rubicon in 49 B.C. (1307 a 10)

A public meeting generally ends with *conventional* votes of thanks. (1703 b 28)

The *pointer* of a sundial lies in an upright plane running due north and south. (1860 a 11)

The River Fleet, a London tributary of the Thames, now flows through a *channel for carrying water* below the road surface. (864 a 33)

The singing of Adelina Patti moved her hearers to *rapture.* (1344 a 57)

A good loser bears failure with *evenness of mind.* (1444 b 1)

Just before Christ's birth Augustus issued a *decree* that all the world should be enrolled. (1594 a 50)

In public, Spanish girls are usually accompanied by a *chaperon.* (1310 a 1)

Most school children could *give a list of* the counties of Great Britain. (1428 a 24)

It is sometimes necessary to *cut off* a badly injured limb. (142 a 57)

All should share in the *pleasant things* of life. (133 a 28)

A wise person is more *responsive* to reason than a fool. (132 b 42)

The remarks of a speaker in Parliament must be *relevant* to the matter under discussion. (1825 b 1).

A pioneer in a new country often has to be his own *man of all work.* (1538 b 34)

Justices of the peace perform their duties without *remuneration.* (1388 b 65)

The writings of the old astrologers were a *hotch-potch* of superstition. (1558 a 51)

One cannot *give life* to a skeleton. (162 a 18)

A great leader of men must have a *forceful* personality. (1326 a 6)

The peacock is noted for the *parade* with which it displays the beauties of its plumage. (3056 a 23)

A very large *electric generator* may have an output of as much as 70,000 horse-power. (1326 b 26)

The *bulk* of mankind desires that virtue should triumph over vice. (1813 b 25)

Bombastic language is often a cloak for poverty of thought. (1767 a 52)

In " don't " and " shouldn't " there is the *dropping* of a letter. (1371 a 66)

David ordered Uriah to be placed in the *foremost part* of the fighting line. (1693 b 59)

The habits of many great men have been marked by *oddness.* (1340 a 41)

The incomes of most hospitals are *dependent on alms.* (1365 a 62)

" Ship of the desert " is a *happy* description of the camel. (1575 b 66)

One who is fond of his work does it with *cheerful eagerness.* (100 a 66)

Old age is described *metaphorically* as the writer of life. (1603 b 35)

A child does not resent *fair* punishment. (1447 b 57)

A sermon usually contains more than one *extract* from the Bible. (1403 a 32)

Popularity is apt to be very *short-lived.* (1433 b 5)

An American dollar is *equal in value* to 4s. 2d. in English money. (1448 a 67)

Reconnoitring is a safeguard against an *ambush.* (132 a 12)

Indigestion is a *stomachic* complaint. (1801 b 15)

A manuscript may need much *correction* before it is ready for the printers. (1384 b 34)

Timber, earth and concrete are used in making a proper *platform for guns.* (1391 b 38)

Whalers *remove the blubber from* a whale with sharp spade-like tools. (1645 b 34)

Luxury and idleness *enfeeble* mind and body. (1406 a 30)

The mammoth was a large *hairy* elephant. (2044 a 32)

A good leader will *inspire* his followers. (162 a 18)

Mathematicians have not yet been able to *think out* a way of squaring the circle. (1497 a 27)

There are many books dealing with the *explanation* of the Bible. (1500 b 59)

Cecil Rhodes took a leading part in the *opening up* of the Kimberley diamond fields. (1514 a 9)

Extreme pain of body or mind should excite pity. (159 a 1)

The nightingale is famous among birds for its *sweet* notes. (1311 b 17)

Gravitation is a *primary* principle of the universe. (1758 b 39)

The *blanching* of sea-kale is effected by covering up the plants. (1471 a 5)

Unpunctuality is a *failing* which may give great offence. (1677 a 49)

Cecil Rhodes died before the *fulfilment* of his empire-building schemes. (1750 a 1)

In the World War bursting shells injured the *structure* of many noble buildings. (1532 b 18)

The Israelites behaved *rebelliously* in the wilderness. (1747 b 56)

Want of exercise makes a horse *unruly*. (1720 b 21)

Irrigation has brought *fruitfulness* to many deserts. (1572 a 29)

Charitable persons subscribe money to *ease* distress. (112 b 59)

Among animals, man finds the dog the most *sympathetic* companion. (871 b 22)

Unrestrained praise defeats its own object. (1525 a 18)

A robin will attack any other robin that may *trespass* upon what it considers its own part of a garden. (1400 a 34)

Undue *thought of self* makes people forgetful of others. (1354 b 57)

The market prices of metals, grain, and other commodities *rise and fall* continually. (1664 b 40)

An error made in one set of figures will sometimes *counterbalance* an error made in another. (843 a 52)

Some people are very *difficult to please* in the matter of food. (1562 b 48)

On a badly laid line an express train will *sway* dangerously. (3053 b 1)

Some Hindu doctrines are supposed to have an *inner and secret* meaning. (1459 b 1)

Many people write their signatures *abominably*. (1499 b 3)

The starling is a *chattering* bird. (1798 a 22)

The uniform of a French *armed policeman* is partly military and partly civilian. (1812 a 13)

Pure gold is the most *malleable* of all the metals. (1309 a 12)

A workman who is injured in the course of his work is entitled to *payment for damages*. (843 a 60)

Women are now *qualified to be chosen* as Members of Parliament. (1371 a 18)

When the Roman Empire became *worn out* it was overrun and conquered by barbarians. (1350 b 31)

Years pass, but the soul of man is *everlasting*. (1468 a 41)

Jealousy made the sons of Jacob meditate *the killing of a brother*. (1726 b 23)

Day and night *occur by turns*. (125 a 1)

The frog of the fable burst when it tried to *vie with* the ox in size. (1393 b 1)

Literary ability is sometimes *handed down from one generation to another*. (2022 a 32)

A horse that trots well has a very *even* gait. (1443 b 13)

Some people are *over-particular* in unimportant matters. (1615 a 39)

The national *bardic congress of Wales* is held annually. (1356 b 32)

It is unwise to base an argument on a *guess founded on slight grounds*. (874 b 25)

Every actor has to study *the art of speaking distinctly*. (1373 a 47)

Partridges *fly up suddenly* with a loud whirring. (1667 b 1)

Cool-headed people remain calm during an *unforeseen crisis*. (1385 b 1)

A great deal of our knowledge is *founded on experiment*. (1391 b 12)

The *bending* of a rheumatic joint causes pain. (1647 a 9)

That the end justifies the means is a *misleading* assertion. (1548 b 42)

The length of shadow cast by a mountain is an index of its *vertical height*. (125 b 22)

A good commander will not expose his troops to *a raking fire*. (1406 b 26)

At the court of Queen Elizabeth *high-flown language* was fashionable. (1476 b 39)

In old age the tendons are liable to *become bony*. (3055 b 61)

We do not rate highly one who is unable to *conduct* himself well in ordinary circumstances. (847 b 19)

One should *remonstrate* with anyone seen ill-treating animals. (1516 a 8)

The *pith* of a long speech may often be given in very few words. (1841 a 26)

The *throat-protector* of a fourteenth-century soldier was made of chain mail or steel plates. (1877 a 10)

The Lord Chamberlain is a high *official* of the royal court. (1758 a 23)

Extravagant praise gives offence. (1756 a 35)

The *fire-opal* has a reddish glow. (1839 a 17)

Moses, the eldest son of Goldsmith's Vicar of Wakefield, was a *simpleton*. (1770 b 28)

Demosthenes, the Greek orator, could *captivate* his audience with his eloquence. (1421 b 14)

Friction and decomposition *produce* heat. (1408 a 30)

The astronomical theories of Galileo were regarded by the Church as *contrary to the true faith*. (2022 b 26)

The *hermit* St. Simeon Stylites is the subject of one of Tennyson's poems. (1450 b 25)

The ancients held the *mistaken* belief that the sun revolved round the earth. (1454 a 20)

A person cannot become *competent* as a worker without training and practice. (1350 b 56)

Magnesia, fruit-salts, and sherbet *bubble up* if mixed with water. (1350 b 16)

According to Homer, *the Greek heaven* was a land free from snow, rain, and cold. (1375 b 11)

The body is in a *state of constant change*. (1669 b 14)

Carlyle described *sarcastic* language as that of the devil. (666 a 25)

A wise man does not make a *bosom friend* of the first person he chances to meet. (866 b 32)

Rome made a determined attempt to secure the *leadership* of the world. (2005 b 42)

Dormice *hide* themselves snugly in nests during the winter. (1416 a 13)

A schoolmaster will sometimes *make critical remarks* upon the behaviour of his class. (159 b 50)

Frescoes painted by famous artists *beautify* the walls of the Royal Exchange, London. (1379 a 46)

The *disinterment* of Napoleon's body at St. Helena was carried out in 1840. (1505 a 43)

Before we can estimate the time a task will take we must form some *general idea* of its magnitude. (855 b 10)

Speculating in stocks and shares is a *risky* business. (1991 a 60)

Massiveness is an *indispensable* feature of a breakwater. (1463 b 36)

Many great rivers *flow out* from the mountain ranges of Central Asia. (2324 a 1)

The margin of a book provides space for *the making of notes.* (164 b 33)

A plant develops from a living *rudiment* in a seed. (1824 a 15)

It is easier to *pardon* the offence of one who is penitent than that of one who is not. (863 a 30)

The *heart-wood* of a tree is more durable than the softer sapwood outside it. (1320 a 13)

The cranium is the *bony* case that encloses the brain. (3055 a 55)

Horticulture was Adam's occupation. (1794 a 17)

Circumstances may *mitigate* a crime. (1520 b 16)

King John of England estranged his subjects by his *double-dealing.* (1319 a 33)

Stale bread is *easily crumbled.* (1736 a 41)

One who commits shameful acts is regarded with *horror.* (3031 b 1)

Man's *full number* of years, according to the Psalmist, is threescore and ten. (845 a 12)

Job bore his troubles with great *courage.* (1708 b 33)

Proofs of printed matter are corrected very carefully to *get rid of* errors. (1371 a 44)

The *general effect* of Kew Gardens is very pleasing. (1416 a 24)

It is a custom of the King to celebrate his birthday by the *bestowal* of honours on certain of his subjects. (866 a 4)

Fear and madness sometimes *invest* people with unnatural strength. (1404 b 44)

The light of an electric lamp is emitted from a *thread* of metal. (1604 b 47)

"I came; I saw; I conquered" was Julius Caesar's *summing-up* of his campaign against Pharnaces. (1442 a 17)

The knowledge of even the most learned men is *limited.* (1615 b 43)

Many oil-lamps have a *double* burner. (1318 b 1)

It is easy to identify the *groups of stars* with the aid of a planisphere. (888 b 3)

Opponents try to *disconcert* political speakers by awkward questions. (1378 a 38)

The sturgeon is the largest *river* fish. (1669 a 36)

Mica is *capable of being split.* (1627 a 63)

An unreasonable request generally meets with a very *decided* refusal. (1390 b 24)

A hawk has *sickle-shaped* claws. (1546 b 15)

Unreasonably zealous people are governed by their imagination more than by their judgment. (1553 a 3)

The busy person is seldom attacked by *boredom.* (1413 b 50)

Morphia gives animals *painless death.* (1479 a 7)

Devotion to the cause of others and egoism are directly opposed to one another. (126 a 37)

The eggs of the tern *serve as an instance of* protective colouring. (1501 a 39)

Misunderstandings may *alienate* friends. (1467 a 9)

The prizes given at fairs are usually *trumpery* articles. (1835 b 30)

The *mysterious* art of alchemy was much cultivated in the Middle Ages. (2991 a 1)

Milton wrote a famous *funeral ode* lamenting a friend drowned at sea. (1366 a 12)

Cheerful conversation at meals makes for *good digestion.* (1475 b 64)

Serious matters should never be treated *frivolously.* (1650 b 35)

Kerosene and turpentine *turn into vapour* very slowly. (1480 b 53)

Freedom of expression is the opposite of reticence. (1352 b 8)

The *retinue* of Cardinal Wolsey rivalled that of Henry VIII himself. (1424 a 16)

Lambert Simnel's claim to be the Earl of Warwick was a pure *fiction.* (1603 b 1)

Decaying animal matter is *very evil-smelling* (1590 b 26)

The Church of England is governed *by bishops.* (1439 a 21)

A shortage of wheat gives a *stimulus* to wheat-growing. (1608 b 22)

The Victoria Cross bears the *inscription* "For Valour." (1437 b 22)

The Germans made a very *remarkable* blunder in invading Belgium in 1914. (1355 a 7)

The ancient Greeks believed that every tree was the home of a *forest nymph.* (1306 a 10)

The power stations at Niagara Falls *create* over a million horsepower of electrical energy. (1814 a 48)

In his later years Henry VIII suffered from extreme *stoutness.* (930 a 36)

The ancients believed the *highest region of the heavens* to be filled with fire. (1393 a 25)

Some diseases, such as measles, are very *catching.* (2224 a 20)

It is one of the duties of a sheriff to *enroll* juries from a list of jurors. (1389 b 23)

A massacre of defenceless people is an act of *atrocious* cruelty. (2006 b 8)

A clear conscience is *contributive* to peace of mind. (863 b 32)

Ill-will is an enemy of peace. (162 b 26)

Chrysostom got his name, which means "golden-mouthed," from his *fluent oratory.* (1374 a 18)

Many people have to live on an *exceedingly slender* income. (1505 b 4)

A *person fond of delicate fare* spends much money on his food. (1882 a 7)

The *absolute destruction* of an army is a rare occurrence. (164 a 60)

The British nation has always been noted for its hatred of tyranny. (3031 a 19)

A ship's cargo is held in place and protected by *packing material.* (1317 a 58)

With the advancement of *the science of measuring time* navigation has become less hazardous. (740 a 28)

During the French Revolution the mob were *not to be appeased* in their demands for victims. (2157 b 33)

Philip II of Spain made an *unavailing* attempt to invade England. (2217 a 22)

Among the books at an abbey was a *register of the deaths of the monks.* (2908 b 29)

Mohammedans sometimes proclaim a *holy war against unbelievers.* (2350 a 5)

A storm at sea may cause a *ship sailing in company with another* to lose sight of the ship it is accompanying. (886 a 35)

The introduction of machinery provided a new *driving force* to industry. (2156 b 12)

A good map shows accurately the *outline* of the land. (867 a 45)

A witch's steed is a *broom made of a bundle of twigs bound round a handle.* (401 a 21)

Glaciers are formed by the *making solid* of accumulations of snow at high altitudes. (885 b 46)

It is *against reason* to say that all men are equal. (2313 a 61)

In every walk of life we find pompous people who are *incapable of being discouraged.* (2317 b 24)

Unwritten laws, based on immemorial usage, *make up* what is known as Common Law. (888 b 59)

Dick Whittington, from being in very *poor* circumstances, rose to be wealthy and famous. (2908 a 1)

Many a *supporter of the Stuarts after James II's abdication* followed the King to France. (2333 b 13)

Truly great men are worthy of the nation's *reverential regard.* (2058 b 18)

Harry Hotspur, the hero of Chevy Chase, was a very *impulsive* soldier. (2156 a 64)

In early cross-country races a steeple was chosen as an objective because it was *to be seen easily* at a distance. (886 b 27)

One way of giving force to a statement s to *repeat* it. (2326 b 15)

The Mohammedan religion was founded in the seventh century. (2321 b 19)

Thomas Hood was a master of the *unprepared* witticism. (2165 b 31)

A *nation or person engaged in war* has not the same status as a neutral. (387 b 8)

People arriving late at a theatre seriously *inconvenience* the actors. (2186 a 6)

It is necessary for an actor to study the *personality* he has to represent. (700 a 7)

Sign-boards *warn* motorists of the danger of driving fast in certain places. (59 a 8)

Galileo was bold enough to *call in question* the astronomical theories of Ptolemy. (2168 a 30)

In a newspaper, a brief account of an important occurrence is often followed, in a later edition, by one that is more *detailed.* (753 a 45)

We should never behave to our elders in a manner that is *lacking in respect.* (2319 a 45)

Discharges quickly *eat away* the rifling of a big gun. (1453 a 23)

A boy who is *unable to make up his mind* will not go far. (2318 a 1)

Not every musician can *compose on the spur of the moment.* (2167 b 1)

William Ernest Henley, the poet, was not discouraged by the physical *disability* from which he suffered. (2228 a 7)

In time of war *spying* is a very dangerous occupation. (1460 b 16)

The colour of lions is *brownish-yellow.* (4236 b 8)

The United States and Canada are *adjacent* countries. (896 b 1)

A romp with young children will *disarrange* the hair. (4328 a 18)

Opportunities that we have neglected are *not capable of being recovered.* (2314 a 61)

Indecision has been the cause of many disasters. (2318 a 16)

A girl in love anxiously awaits her *love letter.* (416 b 63)

We have to *cut off from contact with others* people suffering from infectious diseases. (2323 a 1)

Some institutions perish from sheer *inability to retain the enthusiasm of their supporters.* (2172 b 7)

"Love's Labour's Lost" is an *unripe* product of Shakespeare's genius. (2143 b 5)

The scientific study of a locality is an interesting occupation for a man of leisure. (4320 b 37)

The Minotaur devoured human victims, and was reputed to be *incapable of being satisfied.* (2172 b 26)

A *commonplace* remark is not the less unnecessary for its being a truism. (324 a 52)

A *gift or endowment for charitable purposes* is sometimes bestowed anonymously. (393 b 16)

The Greek philosopher Socrates was born *about* 469 B.C. (748 a 30)

The world's supply of timber depends partly on the *preservation* of existing forests. (882 b 32)

Asbestos is *incapable of being burned.* (2185 a 33)

Aviation has progressed to a point at one time *beyond belief.* (2193 b 1)

Touching posts as he passed them in the street was an *eccentric habit* of Dr. Johnson. (2131 a 16)

Damage done to an ancient work of art is usually *incapable of being made good.* (2316 b 11)

Australasia is the *inclusive* name for Australia with its surrounding islands. (851 a 42)

The western *front* of St. Paul's Cathedral has a two-story portico. (1533 a 30)

We should not *make an attack against* a whole nation for the mistakes of a few of its members. (2204 b 21)

It is not possible to form an opinion without any *standard for judging.* (987 b 9)

A disease which is ignored often becomes *permanent.* (739 a 11)

Some of the colours seen in women's dress to-day are *incapable of being exactly defined.* (2199 a 15)

Clouds sometimes assume *grotesque* forms. (1555 a 15)

Certain bees *cut out* small circular pieces from leaves. (1495 b 21)

Queen Elizabeth was cautious, and sometimes *ungenerous,* in her methods of government. (2137 b 16)

Some of the mediaeval fortresses were virtually *capable of resisting all attacks.* (2163 a 66)

It is sad when a man loses his good name *without possibility of recovery.* (2317 b 3)

The heads of some business firms are very *difficult to approach.* (2170 a 22)

The seventh Earl of Shaftesbury was *unwearying* in his work for the poor. (2198 a 61)

Entering into a second marriage when one has a wife is a crime punishable by imprisonment. (414 a 47)

Bargaining often ends in a *settlement in which each side gives way partly to the other side.* (851 b 25)

A lead early in a race is no guarantee of a runner's *final* success. (1482 b 25)

The Severn bore is due to the *bursting in* of an exceptionally high tide at the estuary of the river. (2196 b 29)

Australian natives have a wonderful *capacity* for following trails. (1539 a 46)

The wealth and power of Montezuma proved a great *incitement* to the Spaniard Cortes. (2179 a 61)

A person who lives much alone often has some *perverse fancy* or other. (997 a 47)

The poetry of Keats is remarkable for its *figurative description.* (2140 b 56)

Heavy taxation is an *oppressive burden* on trade. (2195 a 17)

When Wolsey failed to obtain the divorce Henry VIII proceeded to *humble* the proud cardinal. (2093 b 40)

On the fourth day of Creation God set lights in the *heavens.* (1622 a 43)

The science which treats of the comparative food-values of *eatables* is known as dietetics. (826 b 50)

It is a rule in the Roman Catholic Church for priests to remain *unmarried.* (672 a 36)

In 1915 Italy decided to *support* the cause of the Allies in the World War. (1460 b 56)

Beethoven was distressed in his later years by the conduct of an *irreclaimable* nephew. (2192 a 49)

We sometimes agree to differ with a friend whose opinions are not *in harmony* with our own. (886 a 1)

During the World War many kinds of articles fetched *excessively high* prices. (1507 a 32)

The *decisive* action in a play usually takes place towards its end. (1001 a 9)

In every Christian country there are buildings *set apart as sacred* to public worship. (881 a 50)

Few men are *hopelessly* base. (2314 b 42)

The north-east passage was long regarded as an *unreal fancy.* (2139 b 16)

The *balanced lever* of a bridge can be raised to allow shipping to pass. (348 b 10)

In hot countries the sun is often kept out by a *Venetian blind.* (2336 b 40)

In many underground railway stations the *moving staircase* has replaced the electric lift. (1455 b 30)

A *classified list of the books of any subject or author* serves a useful purpose. (410 b 28)

In the East the streets are filled with beggars who *pester* the passer-by for alms. (2161 a 32)

St. Francis of Assisi was a man possessed of *boundless* faith. (2227 a 30)

The fracture of a *collar-bone* is generally the result of a fall. (765 a 1)

Of Dickens's characters, Pecksniff is the most *conceited.* (882 b 11)

Sometimes several dewdrops *unite into one body* and form one large globule of moisture. (789 b 39)

The hollyhock is a *plant which lives for two seasons and dies in the second.* (413 a 53)

Irritability is sometimes due to worry or overwork. (4261 a 15)

Some frauds can be successful only if two or more persons enter into *a secret arrangement for the purpose of fraud.* (815 b 18)

In olden times many people carried a *magical charm* to ward off evil. (4218 b 1)

For evidence to be convincing its details must be *consistent.* (805 a 27)

"*Yielding* is sometimes the best way of succeeding." (846 a 50)

A tactless person will constantly make a remark that is *not suitable to the occasion.* (2224 b 34)

No expert, however eminent, can be regarded as *incapable of making a mistake.* (2223 a 16)

A certain degree of heat is necessary to bring about the *chemical union* of various substances with one another. (824 a 1)

When friends meet, they often have a *gossip.* (865 a 20)

The burghers of Calais who surrendered to Edward III owed their lives to the *solemn appeal* on their behalf made by Queen Philippa. (876 a 14)

Wars *exhaust the resources of* a nation. (2163 a 5)

When about to start on a long journey we may receive a parting *exhortation* not to forget to write. (2240 b 35)

Most cases of *burning* are due to carbon and oxygen combining. (824 b 11)

At Coblenz the rivers Rhine and Moselle are *blended into one.* (868 b 34)

To break a previous record it is necessary to *establish* a new one. (888 b 59)

Science has exposed many a *groundless fear* that formerly terrified man. (724 a 57)

Mirabeau strove until his death to awaken the French Court to the danger of opposing the will of the *common people.* (835 b 54)

Gardeners *uproot* deep-rooted weeds with special tools. (1449 a 14)

The *ceremonial code* of a royal court is complicated and strict. (1471 a 13)

The infamous Judge Jeffreys was by no means *unprejudiced* in his judgments. (2150 a 7)

The degree of Doctor of Letters is often *conferred as a mark of honour.* (2065 b 45)

After the death of Pericles the Athenians undertook some *ill-advised* campaigns. (2240 b 15)

A *soldier who acts as a servant to an officer* generally receives extra pay. (358 a 54)

What is called *speaking through the nose* is particularly noticeable among Americans. (2895 a 37)

Suffering is often caused as much by *stupid* ignorance as by design. (971 a 28)

A large steam *digger* can scoop up several tons of earth at a single stroke. (1491 a 16)

Inventors have achieved much that seemed *incapable of being done with the means at command.* (2163 a 28)

Many people can play some musical instrument *passably* well. (4311 a 19)

The *gross injustice* of some of the old taxes is almost unbelievable. (2239 a 24)

In the hall of a large building used for offices there is usually a *door-keeper.* (2337 b 51)

Harmonious sounds are pleasing to the ear. (859 a 50)

The worth of an object and the price paid for it are not always *proportional.* (830 b 28)

It is shameful to behave *without reverence* in church. (2319 a 52)

The first Reform Bill (1832) removed many anomalies of the franchise that were *harmful* to British liberties. (2238 b 58)

Lady Macbeth taunted Macbeth because of his *wavering state of mind.* (2202 a 19)

The *party to whom a concession is granted* usually pays for his privilege either in taxes or with a share of the profits. (857 a 15)

An object that can be seen plainly through a telescope may be *indistinguishable* by the naked eye. (2207 b 15)

King Edward VII often travelled abroad *under an assumed name.* (2184 b 33)

Douglas Jerrold, the celebrated wit, was feared because of his *cutting* remarks. (2182 b 3)

It is waste of breath to reason with the *intolerant partisan.* (414 b 41)

We cannot mistake the *purpose* of an emphatic and lucid speech. (4250 b 23)

The Six Hundred charged at Balaklava with a dash that was *not to be resisted.* (2317 b 57)

On board ship one frequently takes a *walk for the benefit of one's health* on deck. (889 a 40)

Cycling, in the year 1867, was no more than *in its infancy.* (2895 b 5)

Explorers sometimes find savage tribes *not disposed to welcome strangers.* (2238 a 22)

It is *perplexing* to listen to the conversation of many persons at once. (406 b 55)

Friends often indulge in *light banter.* (308 b 59)

The controller of a spending department is expected to be *watchful.* (753 a 15)

The web of the spider is constructed of *extremely thin* filaments. (4252 b 4)

Oil will not *blend* with water. (832 a 34)

Conspirators do not *talk secretly* in places where they are liable to be overheard. (815 a 1)

A *nickname* of the Duke of Wellington was " the Iron Duke." (804 b 20)

A *system of law and custom by which a country is governed* may be written, as is the American, or unwritten, as is the British. (889 a 8)

The influence of education is *beyond reckoning.* (2176 b 1)

A *discussion* between parties in disagreement often results in an understanding. (815 a 55)

At Austerlitz (1805) the united armies of Russia and Austria were *powerless* against Napoleon's armies. (2162 b 11)

Divine service usually closes with a *solemn prayer for the divine blessing.* (393 a 36)

During the World War the governments concerned found it necessary sometimes to *seize* privately owned property. (829 b 22)

When travelling in a strange country it is pleasant to meet with a *person belonging to the same country as oneself.* (842 b 57)

Extravagance is always folly. (4284 b 63)

By the signing of the Petition of Right Charles I pledged himself against *infringement* of the people's rights. (2231 b 31)

A *range of columns* is a feature of the exterior of many ancient and modern buildings. (816 b 9)

A strong sense of humour is *inherent* in the English. (2175 b 23)

A *lover of books* sometimes collects first editions. (411 a 17)

Florence Nightingale demonstrated that the severities of warfare are not *inconsistent* with humane nursing. (2187 a 1)

Some nursery jingles lead one back, by their relation of a *linked series* of events, to their starting point. (853 b 20)

The character of Malvolio in Shakespeare's "Twelfth Night" is a classic example of *puffed up* self-importance. (2228 b 15)

It is most difficult to *limit* a forest fire. (752 b 47)

If we have once forfeited our good name it is lost *permanently and for ever.* (2319 b 23)

The habit of wearing boots provides work for the *specialist in the care of feet.* (727 b 40)

The fool betrays himself by his *silly* remarks. (1565 b 20)

The prose writings of the poet Swinburne are marred by *exaggeration.* (2114 a 49)

A government may find it necessary to make an official statement in *disproof* of a newspaper report. (871 a 2)

An unexpected calamity causes *horror combined with surprise.* (888 b 12)

A *very enthusiastic collector of books* often collects more than he can read. (410 b 17)

The naturalist Fabre regarded no detail about insects so trivial as to be *unimportant.* (2143 a 35)

One can be too *obliging.* (844 b 62)

When the cat's away the mice can play with *security.* (2168 b 17)

Moses was a pioneer in *the science of preserving health.* (2111 b 6)

A custom-house officer may *seize* goods which have not been declared. (868 a 1)

Medical treatment and surgery can sometimes remedy defects which are *present from birth.* (872 a 9)

The Belgian army had to *abandon* Brussels in 1914. (1479 a 16)

Lions *mangle* their prey with teeth and claws. (2879 a 21)

It is folly to *endanger* one's future by neglecting one's work. (2344 a 36)

With education free nobody need be *ignorant of letters.* (2138 a 32)

It was *unwise* of Wolsey to build palaces more magnificent than those of his sovereign. (2160 a 8)

Opinions that do not *tend towards the same conclusion* are said to diverge. (905 b 24)

The year 1366 was the *three hundredth anniversary* of the battle of Hastings. (4253 a 34)

Sam Weller is remembered for his *humorous* sayings. (1535 a 30)

When age appears *ill-tempered* to youth, it is not always the fault of age. (964 b 1)

The wolf is a *flesh-eating* animal. (634 a 9)

The forces of Gordon at Khartum proved *insufficient* against those of the Mahdi. (2170 b 44)

A member of a profession may learn much by associating with his *fellow-members.* (870 a 19)

The mouse of the fable was able to *disentangle* the lion from the net by gnawing the meshes. (1526 a 33)

Dwellers in a monastery lead a *secluded* life. (764 b 12)

Each organ of the body has its special *duty.* (1757 b 32)

An alkali is often used to *neutralize* the effects of an acid. (949 a 1)

Positions of trust are not for people who are *without sense of duty.* (2318 b 19)

Half the art of literary composition consists in eliminating what is *irrelevant.* (2173 a 9)

A sound mind and a healthy body represent an ideal *union.* (824 a 1)

Even a *person qualified to judge* is occasionally deceived by appearances. (877 a 56)

A *much-used phrase* is sometimes culled from a popular song. (771 a 42)

Company directors sometimes *call together* an extraordinary meeting for the discussion of some urgent matter. (904 b 13)

In 1917 the British Admiralty had to *work out* plans for checking the German submarines. (1486 a 22)

Falstaff, who figures in more than one of Shakespeare's plays, was *very fat.* (930 a 33)

One's instinctive acts are those one performs without *knowledge of what one is doing.* (880 b 54)

The desire to possess something that belongs to another is a base passion. (960 a 51)

The period of *getting better after illness* is sometimes irksome. (903 b 39)

Sharks *swarm in* some tropical and subtropical seas. (2226 a 38)

The conversation of lunatics is at times sensible, at others *devoid of intelligence.* (2171 b 63)

One does not experience any *sting of conscience* in doing what one believes to be right. (852 a 32)

A nonsensical jumble of words is not meant to have any meaning. (315 a 64)

Understanding of the rule of the road is essential to the safety of the pedestrian and motorist alike. (804 b 7)

The particles of some solids have greater power of *sticking together* than those of others. (805 a 53)

The contour lines on a map reveal to us the *form* of the land. (867 a 45)

One cannot *dispute* a fact on which there can be no two opinions. (903 a 1)

In warfare a soldier's life is always in *danger*. (2344 a 31)

Fanaticism is an enemy of reason. (414 b 47)

Most animals *display* affection for their young. (1485 a 13)

Popular favour is notoriously *liable to change*. (2878 a 40)

After passing through many hands the text of an author may become *spoiled by alteration*. (933 b 18)

A proverb advises that one should withdraw from a *hot-tempered* man. (731 b 51)

People with weak digestions must *abstain from* rich foods. (1458 a 24)

The slave trade was a most *iniquitous* practice. (2910 b 45)

The result of an experiment is not always what one might *regard as likely*. (894 b 30)

Malicious gossip may easily *sully* a person's reputation. (401 a 16)

Anyone *like a beast* in habits is unfit to associate with human beings. (402 a 50)

A man may *throw overboard* his good resolutions if he gets into bad company. (2347 a 24)

The *experimental* first flight of a bird is an exciting event. (4252 a 23)

In places frequented by persons speaking different languages notices are often *written in two languages*. (415 b 1)

Solitude is conducive to a *thoughtful* frame of mind. (894 b 36)

When our fortunes have reached their *lowest depths* they often begin to rise. (2888 a 54)

All objects are either simple or *made up of several parts*. (846 a 1)

Neptune, god of the sea, figures in many an old Roman *traditional story*. (2885 a 51)

In squally weather the wind blows *spasmodically*. (1628 b 1)

Some critics are more *fault-finding* than others. (675 a 20)

The first Englishman to *sail round* the world was Sir Francis Drake. (752 a 11)

The occurrence of day and night is due to the *daily* rotation of the earth. (1239 b 23)

Palmistry is one of the commonest forms of fortune-telling. (727 b 13)

Much time is wasted by *the use of too many words*. (751 b 14)

One has *relationship by birth* with the brothers and sisters of one's parents, but not with their wives and husbands. (880 a 35)

A humane person will *despise* one who is cruel. (894 b 15)

Unjust actions *rankle* in the sufferer's memory. (1588 b 37)

Persons who do not want to be seen in one another's company sometimes plan a *secret* meeting. (760 b 35)

Authors often *work with one another*. (809 b 20)

No argument can ever be more *convincing* than one advanced by necessity. (804 a 6)

The *keyboard* of a piano may consist of seven or eight octaves. (765 a 17)

Special care is taken to prevent the *pollution* of the water supply of a community. (893 b 31)

The *post of porter* in an office building is often given to an ex-service man. (2337 b 62)

Many a good cause has been lost *beyond all hope*. (2319 a 40)

In the English climate one cannot reckon on the weather's continuing the same for many *successive* days. (881 b 17)

The Cenotaph in Whitehall, London, was erected to *keep in memory* the dead who are buried elsewhere. (829 b 37)

A selfish individual seldom does anything that is not to his own *advantage*. (382 b 29)

Measles is spread by *direct or indirect contact with a person suffering from it*. (893 a 18)

Compared with a large sum of money a few odd pennies are a *mere trifle*. (310 a 13)

Quality of tone is determined by the individual character of the sound-waves. (4298 b 34)

It is often difficult to know how to *interpret* an ambiguous remark. (890 b 12)

Before a warship goes into action, everything which is *capable of being set on fire*, and is not indispensable, is thrown overboard. (824 b 1)

A striking *correspondence* is often noticeable in the features of twins. (807 a 27)

Blood drawn from the body and exposed to the air will *become curdled*. (788 a 8)

Certain non-venomous snakes crush their victims by the *drawing together* of their powerful muscles. (889 b 25)

Astrologers believe that the stars have a bearing, either *favourable* or malignant, on one's life. (395 a 2)

The science which deals with natural life is the most comprehensive of all sciences. (420 b 23)

A grounded ship, so *placed* that it cannot be towed off, is in danger of becoming a total wreck. (753 a 35)

A change in the enemy's plans may induce a general to *revoke* his orders. (950 a 45)

We can often get bargains from *travelling* sellers of brushes and other wares. (2326 b 28)

Australia with its *surrounding* islands is known as Australasia. (751 a 60)

A cut diamond will *flash* when it catches the light. (935 a 39)

In history and elsewhere we read of Mark Antony's *uncontrollable passion* for Cleopatra. (2224 a 27)

If neither ill nor very well we may say we are in *fairly good* health. (4311 a 14)

Additional evidence may *confirm* a statement, the truth of which has been doubted. (932 b 59)

A traveller who is not in a hurry may choose a *roundabout* route. (749 b 11)

No honest man ever resorts to *mean trickery.* (720 a 30)

The long necks and long legs of wading birds are *mutually related* adaptations to environment. (931 b 30)

Gaudy and cheap finery is displeasing to a person of good taste. (4236 a 41)

Many minds are imposed upon by *profuseness* of words. (913 a 24)

In the nineteenth century our knowledge of radio-activity was still in a very *undeveloped* state. (2180 b 27)

When combined naval and military action is decided upon, the army and navy *act jointly.* (911 a 61)

At great heights the air is too *rarefied* for us to breathe in comfort. (4252 b 4)

An archbishop may *call together* an assembly of bishops. (909 a 8)

In writing dialogue it is necessary to employ expressions that are *used in conversation.* (815 a 42)

Richard Brinsley Sheridan delivered a very *stirring* speech on the impeachment of Warren Hastings. (2150 b 25)

Hesitation is often *equivalent* to a refusal. (4226 b 4)

Drake remained *unmoved* when told that the Spanish Armada had been sighted. (2156 a 21)

The jungle is sometimes so thick as to be *incapable of being pierced.* (2152 b 8)

The story of a person's life and the history of a period are often inseparable. (420 b 10)

Beau Brummell, the famous dandy, dressed in *faultless* style. (2151 b 43)

A story to be worthy of *belief* must be consistent. (975 a 32)

Oxygen is *absolutely necessary* to human existence. (2208 b 7)

Queen Victoria had *unquestioning* faith in the advice of Disraeli. (2168 b 19)

A Chinaman will remain *unmoved* where a more emotional person would become frantically excited. (2150 b 28)

The persuasive powers of some great preachers are *not capable of being resisted.* (2317 b 57)

Napoleon was faced with an *insurmountable obstacle* when the Russians burned Moscow. (2150 a 54)

A remark not bearing on the matter in hand is *not to the point.* (2316 a 21)

Oliver Cromwell's planning of the future made it necessary for him to *meditate* on the pros and cons of kingship. (804 a 21)

The Ghost in Shakespeare's "Hamlet" is an *intangible* character. (2149 a 28)

One of the duties of a librarian is the *placing together in order* of books. (814 a 58)

In warfare, a ruse is often adopted to *get the better of* an enemy. (753 b 26)

Snakes hypnotize their victims so that they become *motionless.* (2146 a 22)

John showed little *brotherly* love for Richard I. (1726 a 26)

In the early days of British history tribal wars were always *threatening.* (2145 b 13)

Aeroplanes *hasten* the transport of mails. (1510 b 12)

The sun has risen every morning from time *beyond memory or record.* (2144 a 41)

Bee-keepers used to *smoke* hives with sulphur to kill the bees. (1757 a 48)

The quality of doing good may be manifested in many different ways. (394 a 5)

A boy's escapade is usually followed by a *kindly admonition* from his father. (2061 b 18)

Autolycus is the name of the *pedlar* in Shakespeare's "A Winter's Tale." (2088 b 4)

A prisoner is sometimes condemned to serve two sentences *at the same time.* (861 a 26)

In business a *letter in the handwriting of the person signing it* is seldom seen. (2056 a 14)

The wisest of men are *liable to make mistakes.* (1548 b 56)

There is, in Great Britain, a fairly general *agreement* of opinion in favour of daylight saving. (882 a 6)

Plato set out to *inspire* his disciples with high ideals. (2142 a 57)

The population of every country comprises an element which is *desirous of maintaining the existing institutions.* (883 a 11)

"*Praise* makes good men better and bad men worse." (830 a 38)

It is impossible for the human mind to *understand* everything. (851 a 24)

Some scapegraces, even if treated sympathetically, prove *incapable of being reformed.* (2313 b 43)

Children who are *short-sighted* should be taken to an oculist. (2883 a 19)

Excessive taxation of food is regarded by all political parties as *inadvisable.* (2220 b 41)

It is very pleasant to find a *taste* of the sea in a breeze. (4223 b 16)

The three witches in "Macbeth" chanted a terrible *magical formula* round the cauldron. (2176 b 45)

The Greek dramatists represented mankind as ruled by *relentless* Fate. (2220 b 12)

Peter the Great was the most *renowned* of the Russian Tsars. (2140 b 13)

A man who is at war with society is looked upon as an *outcast.* (2321 a 45)

The Star Chamber was instituted by Henry VII to safeguard the people from *unfair* treatment at the hands of influential lords. (2218 b 41)

One cannot *accomplish* an end without the requisite means. (841 b 39)

The character of Mrs. Nickleby in Dickens's "Nicholas Nickleby" is lovable in spite of her *foolishness.* (2218 a 26)

Monkeys climb trees with great *ease.* (1535 b 13)

Lions and tigers are *carnivorous* animals. (1646 a 8)

The laws of the Medes and Persians have become proverbial for *unyieldingness.* (2217 b 1)

The Great Fire of London was caused by the *unintentional* overheating of an oven. (2171 b 1)

The spectacle of the Egyptian Pyramids inspires sightseers with *indescribable* feelings. (2216 b 17)

Some people indulge in a long *tale of woe* at every trifling reverse. (2344 b 28)

The soundest conclusions in scientific research are only reached by *the process of reasoning from particular instances to general laws.* (2213 a 5)

Oppression often results in a *crying* demand by the oppressed for vengeance. (759 a 7)

Much of the blank verse written by Christopher Marlowe, the Elizabethan dramatist, is *matchless.* (2186 b 26)

On the seashore we sometimes see *things that have been thrown overboard from a ship to lighten her.* (2347 a 18)

The number of cells in a human organism is probably *not capable of being reckoned.* (2188 a 13)

Scholarships are usually *capable of being held* for a definite period. (4248 a 32)

Olives are *native* to Palestine. (2205 b 16)

Gold can be hammered out into sheets of extreme *thinness.* (4252 a 60)

Unrefined rubber has to be specially treated before it can be used for commercial purposes. (1001 b 44)

Many of Wordworth's poems were inspired by his *fellowship* with Nature. (838 b 50)

The *extent* of smallpox epidemics has been much reduced in recent years. (2180 b 54)

Any *genuine* painting by an Old Master would realize a large sum. (283 b 4)

A motorist has to *quicken* the speed of his car to overtake another car travelling at the same rate. (24 a 17)

The *person who takes the first step in a quarrel* sometimes gets the worst of the quarrel. (86 a 37)

The Greeks conquered Troy by means of a clever *trick.* (238 b 1)

Various terms of abuse are declared by the Speaker to be *not permitted in Parliament.* (4430 a 54)

Sparrows contrive to *find sustenance* even in the hardest winters. (4140 b 44)

Napoleon's *excessive* ambition brought about his downfall. (2247 a 20)

A government may *solemnly declare* that it will not be intimidated by threats. (76 a 62)

The waves gradually *grind to powder* the pebbles on the beach. (4366 a 55)

One ought never to *speak or write profanely.* (438 b 35)

Some plants have *thick and fleshy* leaves. (4154 a 66)

An elephant can lift heavy weights with its *proboscis.* (4375 a 35)

The binomial theorem is a very *compilcated* exercise in mathematics. (2294 b 23)

Ferdinand de Lesseps persuaded the French government that the construction of the Suez Canal was a good *commercial enterprise.* (3441 a 15)

Sir Walter Scott was so *diligent* that at one period he wrote thirty pages of a novel every day. (251 b 27)

A society that lacks *cohesion* will not survive long. (4011 b 31)

It is only a very acute mind that can master the intricacies of *the science of law.* (2373 a 41)

Only *thorough* rogues would rob a blind man. (229 b 7)

It is quite usual to *date back* promotion in the fighting services. (172 a 22)

A popular actor or actress is sure of *loud applause* from an audience. (28 b 37)

Some people dine *luxuriously* every day. (4164 b 62)

The poetry of Swinburne is *imbued* with rhythmic beauty. (2260 a 24)

An *arbitrator* between rivals must be wise as well as just. (4404 b 4)

The *lover of beauty* can appreciate the beautiful wherever it is to be found. (74 a 15)

The stars in the sky are *countless.* (2246 a 1)

No one has become a great man without some degree of divine *inspiration.* (77 a 1)

A *politician who tries to keep in favour with two parties* is never trusted. (4362 b 2)

The *armorial bearings* of a knight used to be displayed upon his shield. (440 b 11)

It is very dangerous to *roll* a hoop where there is much traffic. (4375 a 11)

War medals have very little *actual* value. (2295 a 41)

Suttee, the practice of Hindu widows to sacrifice themselves on the funeral pyre of their deceased husbands is now *forbidden.* (3442 b 62)

A man may live down his shady *past.* (170 b 38)

Britain is *perceptibly* poorer as a result of the war. (197 b 19)

The *indictment* of Clive on charges affecting his administration in India was unjustified. (229 a 49)

Patients with ear disease consult an *ear specialist.* (281 b 24)

A person who has embezzled money will sometimes *go away secretly* in order to avoid the legal consequences. (16 a 1)

Birds which swim or wade are easy to *accustom to a new climate.* (29 a 1)

Encouragement will often *rouse* a person to action. (4109 a 47)

Richard Wagner was a great master of the art of *writing music for a number of instruments.* (2261 b 60)

In "The Rime of the Ancient Mariner," Coleridge tells of a man *lying under a curse* for the shooting of an albatross. (34 b 3)

A person found guilty of *wilfully setting property on fire* is punished. (233 b 16)

The prodigal son wasted his *possessions.* (4150 a 18)

The alligators of North America hibernate in the mud, but those of Brazil *spend the summer* in a similar manner. (74 a 40)

The wearing of articles of dress which do not harmonize produces a *grotesque* appearance. (429 b 35)

Parents are usually to blame for a child's being *over-indulged in pleasure and excitement.* (438 b 32)

One's bicycle ought to have the proper *length between the pedals.* (4349 a 52)

Some artists have a very *free and easy* way of living. (464 a 54)

A pert, conceited speaker or writer deserves a *serious scolding.* (4371 a 4)

The *worship* of the Infant Jesus by the Magi at Bethlehem has been depicted by many artists. (60 b 19)

In a *recess* in the gateway of Trinity College, Cambridge, is a statue of King Henry VIII. (2929 b 5)

Shallow and trivial knowledge of a subject is likely to lead one into error. (4168 b 24)

The first lesson to be learnt by a lecturer is to *speak distinctly.* (238 a 39)

Salt is *dissolvable* in water. (4013 b 38)

It is not easy to *estimate the value of* Clive's work for the British Empire. (197 a 37)

A *dainty but unsatisfying dish of food* is of little use to a hungry man. (2394 b 31)

Nelson knew, before he died, that the day had gone *favourably* for England. (282 b 54)

The *summary* of a deed or legal document prepared by a lawyer contains its main points. (18 a 60)

A modern child knows much that, in the Middle Ages, was regarded as *hidden from ordinary knowledge.* (18 b 42)

The death duties serve as a check upon the *heaping up* of wealth. (33 b 22)

Napoleon believed that no obstacles to his ambition were *incapable of being overcome.* (2264 b 9)

If praise is deserved it should not be given *sparingly.* (4111 a 64)

Reflections in a mirror have form but no *body.* (4150 a 18)

Aeroplanes sometimes perform *acrobatics in the air.* (68 b 6)

Marshall Hall, the barrister, was famous for his skill in the *close questioning* of witnesses. (2287 a 17)

Gorgeous furnishings are sometimes found in a house with a mean-looking exterior. (4164 b 56)

It was formerly the practice to *send to a penal colony* persons convicted of crimes. (4345 a 24)

A *member of the middle classes* is usually law-abiding. (491 a 31)

A *calumniator* of his neighbours may thoughtlessly do an immense amount of harm. (4334 b 14)

Even in these modern days there are occasions for a *chivalrous* deed. (2412 a 22)

To *cut off the end of* a quotation may entirely alter its meaning. (4374 b 32)

An absent-minded man needs someone to *jog* his memory. (4109 a 47)

The gipsy is a *wanderer.* (2945 b 17)

The water of a tidal river is rendered unfit for drinking by its *salty taste.* (499 a 24)

To *supervise* a large body of workers requires patience and tact. (4169 b 8)

A police court magistrate has *authority* only over a certain district. (2373 a 16)

The conditions we lived under during the World War were *out of the ordinary.* (11 b 14)

The crinoline is an *old-fashioned* garment. (181 a 22)

Drake was the hero of many *daring* exploits. (275 a 42)

It is illegal for a beggar to *speak to* passers-by for the sake of obtaining alms. (32 a 4)

To *cheat* a man into doing what is wrong is a base action. (2352 b 5)

Strict rules are necessary to keep some folk within bounds. (4130 a 1)

To *reprove gently* one who has done wrong is better than to scold. (59 a 8)

The *sameness* of the landscape makes a great part of Russia very dreary. (4424 a 23)

Disregard of custom often prevents a man from becoming popular. (4414 a 9)

In the Middle Ages a tradesman who did not belong to his appropriate guild was regarded as an *intruder.* (2279 b 61)

The intense cold and drought of the early months of 1929 seem to be *incapable of explanation.* (4410 a 13)

On state occasions a sovereign wears *splendid* robes. (4164 b 56)

The *wavy motion* of the sea does not extend far below the surface. (4420 b 17)

Napoleon was given to *promoting his own relatives to places of profit and power.* (2919 a 18)

A comprehensive cookery book deals with almost everything *relating to cookery or the kitchen.* (1012 b 5)

Foreign correspondents *pass on* to the editors of newspapers news of what happens abroad. (4343 a 33)

A *lady's private sitting room* is usually daintily arranged. (487 b 21)

" Nothing is so fleet as *slander.*" (591 b 1)

The career of St. Joan is *without a parallel* in history. (4425 b 25)

Retributive justice overtook Judge Jeffreys and punished him for his brutality. (2915 b 9)

A *very large* reward is sometimes offered for the return of lost jewels. (4150 a 37)

Swift's satires are written *in an incisive manner.* (4354 a 40)

A beggar will *ask earnestly for* alms. (4011 a 18)

No self-respecting person will *cringe* to a bully. (4372 b 21)

One should clear one's mind of *hypocrisy.* (608 b 1)

A large cake was formerly eaten on *Epiphany Eve.* (4390 a 49)

Most of our troubles are *surmountable.* (4167 a 41)

A *shallow* cut should soon heal. (4168 b 24)

Good-natured people are never *haughty.* (4168 a 19)

" Man proposes, God disposes " is a well-known *proverb.* (187 a 1)

There are tales of travellers having been drowned by a *Scottish water-sprite, which often took the form of a horse.* (2387 b 6)

William III compelled all who held public office to *renounce on oath* allegiance to " the late King James." (9 b 29)

Quakers are noted for their *severely simple* mode of living. (283 a 1)

There are still many *original native inhabitants* left in Australia. (12 b 62)

At the sea a window-card often proclaims the fact that a person is open to *provide lodging for* visitors. (30 a 49)

In the story of Aladdin and the wonderful lamp, the *spirit* appears whenever the lamp is rubbed. (2351 a 49)

Unripe fruit is very *sour to the taste.* (42 a 24)

One needs to possess considerable *shrewdness of mind* to make a success of business. (47 a 49)

A red sunset is a good *portent* for the morrow. (278 a 45)

A government will sometimes grant a *bounty* to an industry of national importance to enable it to establish itself. (4149 b 23)

In the British Isles the coming of the swallows corresponds with the *arrival* of spring. (62 a 54)

Many *derogatory insinuations* were levelled against Robespierre before his final overthrow. (2245 b 22)

Some of the early work of Aristotle consisted of an *explanation of the meaning* of Plato's doctrines. (2286 a 12)

The furnishings of a millionaire's house are usually *rich and splendid.* (4164 b 56)

The Greek god of the *nether regions* was called Pluto. (4419 b 15)

Among men famous for their *miserliness* are Daniel Dancer (1716-94) and John Elwes (1714-89). (2932 a 30)

Mary Ann Evans signed her books with the *pen-name,* George Eliot. (2946 a 34)

Strawberries are sometimes damaged in *the process of being conveyed* by rail. (4341 b 28)

A *careless* motor-car driver is likely to cause an accident. (2912 b 10)

A *blandly polite* person is often insincere. (4140 b 26)

Public speakers should avoid the use of *hackneyed* phrases. (4366 a 17)

When one is ill one's relations and friends show *anxiety.* (4011 a 65)

The *savage ferocity* of tyrants like Ivan the Terrible is a form of insanity. (4372 b 68)

Only the shallow-minded are appealed to by *high-sounding, extravagant talk.* (470 b 50)

The year 1848 was one of great *unrest* in Europe. (4385 b 62)

Mrs. Malaprop thought herself a great judge of *correct behaviour.* (3441 b 34)

An air of *insolent defiance* is often assumed in the face of imminent danger. (504 b 35)

Friendly intercourse is one of the joys of life. (4003 b 24)

Cortes found it an *onerous* task to conquer Mexico. (216 b 8)

To-day, the prospect of war is regarded by most persons with *detestation.* (8 b 48)

The *majestic* splendour of Napoleon's tomb fills one with awe. (278 a 59)

It was an English Quakeress, Elizabeth Fry, who drew attention to the *horrible* conditions of prison life. (12 b 22)

A concert in London is now *able to be heard* in Australia through the wonders of wireless. (275 a 63)

It is bad form to be *merry* on a serious occasion. (2352 b 40)

The speeches of a disappointed politician may be tinged with *bitterness.* (42 a 38)

A ship ceases to rock as soon as the waves *die down.* (4149 a 30)

A vain person is sometimes taken in by *extravagant flattery.* (61 a 17)

Tea is a comparatively *harmless* beverage. (2245 a 14)

Ordinarily one breathes *without deliberate effort.* (4413 b 51)

Christmas is the great time of the year for all kinds of *merry-making.* (2357 b 30)

It is mean to suspect a generous benefactor of *unavowed* motives. (4401 b 23)

An umbrella is carried in *expectation* of rain. (178 a 16)

Unmixed gold is too soft to be made into coins or medals. (4410 b 18)

A *halo* round the moon foretells rain or snow. (2936 a 6)

A *novice* must not be disheartened if he makes many mistakes. (4398 a 12)

Certain substances in solution *form into crystals* when the liquid in which they are dissolved is evaporated. (1007 b 53)

A *broad street in a town planted with trees* is a pleasant promenade. (489 a 1)

Passing showers are apt to interrupt a walk in April. (4341 a 49)

The small amount of coal in millstone grit rocks is *not worth consideration.* (2912 b 21)

Hospital treasurers *appeal for* subscriptions. (4011 a 18)

A *speaker who talks in a silly way* annoys his audience. (4389 b 26)

Workmen may *increase* their earnings by working overtime. (277 b 21)

Some primitive races of Africa sought to *conciliate* their gods by human sacrifice. (3439 a 49)

Abruptness of speech is often indicative of a genuine nature. (534 b 15)

A *thing produced in the making of something else* is often of great commercial value. (569 a 26)

The gorilla and chimpanzee are *man-like* apes. (175 b 25)

A good cook improves her dishes by the *discriminating* use of flavourings. (2365 a 22)

Acts of Parliament are often difficult to *understand.* (197 b 61)

The *grovellingly* humble clerk, Uriah Heep, in " David Copperfield," is a repulsive character. (9 b 15)

Cawnpore was the scene of one of the most *shocking* massacres in history. (269 a 22)

A person who is natural scorns all *appearance or manner adopted as a pretence.* (75 a 29)

A patriot may *earnestly entreat* his fellow countrymen to be loyal to their country. (54 b 1)

In one of Goldsmith's poems we read of a clergyman who was passing rich on a *living* of forty pounds a year. (4110 b 38)

In crimes other than high treason the law regards the *companion in crime* as less guilty than the principal. (31 a 21)

The practice of most arts is influenced by *custom handed down from the past.* (4334 a 12)

Before attaining to *wealth* some very rich people have known what it is to be poor. (77 a 52)

Natural and simple manners are attractive in children. (4410 b 4)

There are still very *squalid* slums in English cities. (2945 a 35)

The books of a company are inspected periodically by an *official examiner of accounts.* (276 b 7)

Many men have suffered *severe affliction* for the sake of their faith. (4357 a 36)

Parents are *concerned* about the health of their children if they are delicate. (4011 a 56)

The *guardian* deities of a Roman house were called Lares. (4389 a 8)

The *unnecessariness* of a hot-water bottle in the tropics is obvious. (4169 a 28)

Well-to-do people caught thieving often plead that they are suffering from *an irresistible desire to steal.* (2408 a 46)

Sir William Blackstone, the author of the famous " Commentaries," is perhaps the only *legal writer* whose name is familiar to laymen. (2373 b 1)

The German Emperor, William II, was forced to *renounce the throne* on November 9th, 1918. (7 a 8)

The high cost of living is *due* to the World War. (273 b 31)

For a career we should try to choose something for which we have a natural *inclination.* (76 a 45)

Wordsworth's poetry is very *variable in quality.* (4421 a 44)

A speaker will sometimes *allude in passing* to a matter which does not arise out of his subject. (64 b 3)

One often finds it impossible to *carry out* what one has planned. (31 a 53)

A sense of humour is an attractive *characteristic* in a person's disposition. (4336 b 32)

The Egyptian sphinx suggests something *unfathomable.* (2250 b 21)

A meeting usually passes a vote of sympathy *by general consent.* (4410 b 36)

Critics are often *fault-finding.* (620 b 25)

Uriah Heep, in Dickens's novel, " David Copperfield," is a classic study in *deceitfulness.* (2255 a 3)

The art of printing was introduced into England by William Caxton. (4397 a 43)

Children *look forward* to the coming of holidays with great joy. (177 b 27)

Neatness of expression characterizes the good speaker. (201 b 65)

Very sensitive people are apt to take *offence* at harmless remarks. (4403 b 4)

It is customary for the British Parliament to *suspend business for a time* at the end of a session. (53 b 54)

A sailing vessel can make little headway against *contrary* winds. (64 a 25)

It may be necessary to *copy out* a badly written letter before sending it. (4339 a 49)

Much of the drama immediately following the age of Shakespeare is, by comparison, *vapid.* (2255 a 43)

An ambassador who is *without credentials* is not received at a foreign court. (4410 a 24)

Pets can be very *fascinating.* (620 b 67)

Cares are *worrying* when they weigh heavily on the mind. (631 a 42)

It is hard to maintain *a calm or serene state* of mind when in distress. (4338 a 42)

Irishmen took up arms to *vindicate* their right to Home Rule. (251 a 7)

John Bull is supposed to be the *representative* Englishman. (4396 b 16)

Unnecessary words are omitted from telegrams. (4169 a 16)

Recognition of Beethoven's genius as a composer is world-wide. (197 b 43)

There might be less war if all disputes between nations were referred to an *umpire.* (207 b 26)

The poet Dante died from a fever contracted in the *unhealthy* marshes at Ravenna. (2249 b 6)

In a case at law a judge is called upon to *give a judicial decision.* (54 a 13)

The faculty of logical thinking is *inherent* in the Latin races. (2243 b 17)

The *surpassing* genius of Michelangelo will always arouse wonder. (4339 a 5)

The Mole is the *tributary* that flows into the Thames near Molesey. (77 a 41)

Drinking alcoholic liquors to excess is sure to *sap* one's health and character. (4417 a 24)

For a criticism of a *painting of a night scene* by the artist Whistler, Ruskin was found guilty of libel. (2942 b 30)

Blériot was the first *airman* to cross the English Channel in an aeroplane. (293 b 34)

Too many regulations are apt to *hamper* an official in his work. (4337 a 39)

Some people have a *lot more than they need* of this world's goods. (4169 a 21)

Museums contain relics of *olden times.* (181 a 24)

China clay is found in Cornwall. (2382 a 1)

For a building to last it must be *strongly and solidly* built. (4150 a 40)

The *baseness* of King John brought great trouble upon England. (4387 a 51)

A *filibuster* was shown no mercy when caught. (536 b 30)

The careers of some men are *full of change, consisting of many ups and downs.* (2379 a 26)

James Bruce, the explorer, resented the *slanderous accusation* that he was an impostor. (247 a 27)

When a nation is confronted with danger from without its internal affairs are often left in *suspension* till the danger is past. (8 b 23)

Germany's *dictatorial* treatment of Belgium led to war with Britain. (207 a 52)

A good hostess will talk *pleasantly* with her guests. (74 b 53)

No one can accomplish an end without *sufficient* means. (52 a 55)

Commercial companies often run *auxiliary* businesses. (4149 b 10)

It is a good plan to put down on paper the *gist* of a lecturer's remarks. (4150 a 18)

In Dickens's "Martin Chuzzlewit," Pecksniff is a type of the *suave, effusive* hypocrite. (4414 b 5)

The most *rigid* Puritans objected to Christmas as a festival of heathen origin. (4413 b 1)

There are times for *mirth* and times for sadness. (2352 b 65)

The *final* result of an act cannot be foreseen. (4401 b 45)

Indifference characterizes the American attitude to cricket. (185 a 34)

As long as people are careless, many road accidents will be *inevitable.* (4411 a 28)

Nicholas Nickleby's mother was a lady who behaved in a very *finicky, affected* manner. (2936 a 23)

The ether is held by physicists to be *everywhere present.* (4400 a 31)

The Lords had to pass the Reform Bill of 1832, *whether they liked it or not.* (2945 a 56)

Many a *clever, witty remark* was uttered by the jesters of olden days. (473 b 54)

Too sudden a *passage from one subject to another* may spoil a good essay. (4342 a 15)

Captain Scott's *ambition* to be the first to reach the South Pole was not realized. (248 a 46)

To *persuade by fair words* is the practice of the flatterer. (581 b 6)

Tradesmen *invite* custom. (4011 a 18)

The *interlacing open-work pattern* of a Gothic window is often very beautiful. (4331 a 49)

The furnishings of an oriental palace are of great *magnificence.* (4164 b 64)

Many people use *redundant* words in speech and writing. (4169 a 16)

To *have the management of* the business some day should be the ambition of every apprentice. (4169 b 8)

Many of the South African tribes wear a *cloak or rug of skins.* (2383 a 1)

N.S.P.C.C., is the recognized *shortening* of the title of the National Society for the Prevention of Cruelty to Children. (6 b 19)

Relationship through marriage is more distant than blood-relationship. (76 a 45)

Insects coming into contact with fly-paper *stick* to it. (52 b 1)

In the salt-mining districts it is not uncommon for the ground to *cave in* in places. (4149 a 30)

Oil applied to a burn may *soothe* the pain. (254 a 41)

It often requires courage to *act or speak in favour of* a reform. (65 a 10)

The name of George Washington is proverbial for *uprightness in word or deed.* (2267 a 22)

A thermometer is used to *find out* a person's temperature. (243 a 25)

It is not well to *underline* too many words or phrases in a letter. (4417 b 11)

The so-called Debatable Land was a *piece of land belonging to no one in particular.* (2946 a 13)

In mediaeval art various animals *represent typically* the virtues and vices (4396 b 39)

A *passage open at one end only* does not provide a short cut to anywhere. (1012 a 46)

Women are said to possess more *instinctive knowledge* than men. (2297 a 23)

The alchemists tried to *transform* base metals into gold. (4343 b 40)

Lord Roberts's *aversion* to cats was well-known. (179 b 1)

When the Nile rises, its water is *discoloured* with the mud that it carries. (4383 b 14)

David Livingstone sought to *spread* the knowledge of the Gospel throughout parts of Africa. (3436 b 52)

A night watchman often has a *perforated vessel for holding burning coal* outside his shelter. (506 b 13)

The manager of a business has to *control* its activities. (4169 b 8)

Colonists are always *very eager* for news of the Homeland. (294 a 1)

The adoption of summer time meets with general *approval.* (199 a 13)

Careful and timely watering will *encourage* the growth of a backward plant. (4109 a 47)

Mirabeau, the French revolutionary leader, was famous for his *invigorating* speeches. (2258 a 28)

Since the World War the *person who is in favour of an aggressive foreign policy* has not been much in evidence. (2351 a 15)

The *maintenance* of a large mansion involves heavy expense. (4437 a 44)

The *exalted* beauty of Holman Hunt's " Light of the World " holds one spellbound. (4145 b 4)

The period between childhood and manhood or womanhood is often a romantic period of life. (59 b 26)

" Perhaps " is now used for the *antiquated* word " perchance." (210 b 19)

An *eagle's nest* is often built in an inaccessible place. (68 a 14)

Every family in China has its *household god.* (2359 a 19)

Uncontrolled anger is a sign of moral weakness. (4412 a 46)

In olden times a knight entered the lists armed *from head to foot.* (614 a 13)

Firemen bravely face the risk of *suffocation* by smoke. (248 a 7)

Nervous riders always prefer a horse that is *quiet and easy to drive.* (4332 b 28)

A *keen, acute, and discerning* intelligence is indispensable to success in journalism. (4152 a 23)

Old coins are eagerly bought by an *antiquarian.* (180 b 29)

To say that evil is done by want of thought is a *self-evident truth.* (4373 b 20)

Blushes *overspread* the face. (4158 b 8)

In 1780 a *riotous* mob burned many houses in London. (4384 a 19)

A favourite trick of the *disdainful* person is to raise the eyebrows as though in pained surprise. (4168 a 19)

Extra fine quality candles are candles made of the best materials by the best methods. (4169 a 5)

Haughtiness is unbecoming at all times. (231 a 1)

Dull sandy brown uniforms began to be worn in 1848 by the Guide Corps in India. (2392 b 57)

For centuries Rome suffered under the *despotic* rule of its Emperors. (287 b 18)

Evening dress is *suitable* for a dance. (199 a 30)

Richard II failed as a king through *lack of firmness.* (2258 b 8)

An *unembellished* tale gives one confidence in the teller of it. (4435 a 37)

A lieutenant is *inferior* in rank to a captain. (4147 b 1)

Friendly warning or mild reproof is usually more effective than scolding. (59 a 20)

Elizabeth Fry brought about many *changes* in the conduct of prison life. (2245 a 67)

Policemen control the flow of traffic at points where two roads *cut across each other.* (2288 a 1)

If something preys on one's mind it relieves one to *open one's heart* to a friend. (4412 a 35)

A *disposition to sudden and unaccountable changes in feeling or opinion* is a feature of the artistic temperament. (618 a 31)

Sometimes the facts which would explain a strange occurrence never *leak out.* (4344 b 21)

The study of mankind is one of the widest of the sciences. (176 a 7)

A kind-hearted person will *aid* another who is in distress. (4154 a 51)

The credit we attach to an astonishing report depends on the *reliability* of the witnesses. (4376 a 41)

A *contemptuous* grin is an ugly exhibition of bad manners. (4168 a 19)

Our manners should not be *so refined as to be almost ridiculous.* (4169 a 5)

An actor sometimes has to *speak thoughts aloud.* (4012 a 56)

Spicy herbs, such as sage, are used for flavouring. (228 b 46)

It was common at one time to *attribute* heavy rainfall to gun-fire. (243 b 31)

Many Moslems can recite the whole of the *sacred book of the Mohammedans* without a mistake. (2418 a 55)

Deafness is an *ear* affliction. (280 a 9)

An *upward slope* is the opposite to a declivity. (30 a 22)

A state that rejects the *final proposal of terms* offered by another state must be prepared for war. (4402 a 3)

A person owning a house sometimes buys the *adjoining* land in order to ensure its not being built upon. (53 b 12)

A person in making a will usually appoints someone to *take charge of and manage* his estate. (55 a 55)

A brave man grapples boldly with *misfortune.* (64 a 31)

Very few examples of Greek statuary have been preserved *entire.* (2266 a 13)

The building of a great airship is a costly *enterprise.* (4419 a 11)

Most moths fly *during the night.* (2942 a 42)

At an expensive hotel one expects a good *style of cooking.* (1012 a 41)

Genuine travellers sometimes enjoy special privileges. (471 a 20)

We should refuse to contribute to the *overthrow* of a system of government till a better one is put forward. (4153 a 16)

No *bee-keeper* could be busier than his bees. (187 a 39)

A *crosswise* section of a tree-trunk shows a number of rings. (4346 a 1)

A ripe orange is *juicy*. (4154 a 66)

It is possible to *travel across* Africa in a few days by aeroplane. (4348 a 1)

The American Civil War (1861-64) arose from the revolt of the northern states against the *intolerable* institution of negro slavery. (2264 b 30)

A *worker in brass* makes many useful objects. (506 b 6)

A *self-assertive* person invites snubs. (549 a 9)

Some birds, such as the kiwi, are *wingless*. (202 a 14)

Kerosene is dangerous owing to its *tendency* to catch fire. (201 b 63)

A truly great man is *above petty feelings*; he not only forgives but forgets. (2634 a 1)

If we neglect a cold, fever may *follow as a consequence*. (4172 b 11)

A man of high *ancestry* will probably have a good deal of family pride. (2544 a 1)

The swindler Dr. Cook told a *specious* story of his discovery of the North Pole. (3294 b 28)

The *pompous* speaker may easily make himself ridiculous. (1893 a 10)

There is a famous *large, natural rocking-stone* near Land's End, in Cornwall. (2579 a 21)

The beating of the human heart is *not under the control of the will*. (2306 b 9)

Sly glances may denote a crafty disposition. (4181 b 1)

Weakness often follows upon a fever. (1065 a 57)

A *word for word* translation never reads well. (2555 b 55)

Many questions do not call for *exact* answers. (1089 a 10)

Everybody enjoys the *absurd* antics of the clowns at a circus. (2606 a 35)

In some parts of a mine *breathing* is difficult, but it is made easier by the invention of a special apparatus. (3658 b 28)

A *female professional dancer* often plays the principal part in a ballet. (1049 b 7)

Chloroform is a great *reliever* of suffering. (2799 a 39)

Self-righteous behaviour makes a person odious. (3226 b 39)

A person who champions a cause will defend it with *impassioned fervour*. (4462 a 26)

A *commonplace, prosaic person* cannot understand the pursuit of art. (3230 a 62)

A glass globe can *bear* great pressure. (4184 a 42)

Some people think the song of the nightingale *mournful*. (3285 a 44)

Visitors to the British Museum have to leave their sticks and umbrellas in the *entrance-hall*. (4476 a 65)

Many a *person who goes to law* regrets afterwards that he had not let the matter alone. (2560 a 56)

At the new year many of the newspapers contain articles written in *review* of the past year. (3671 b 38)

Poppy seeds have *sleep-inducing* properties. (4019 b 65)

Some children do not need to be taught to dance *in time* to music. (3687 a 37)

Several kinds of *plague* still ravage the populous regions of the East. (3218 b 10)

It is a doctor's *vocation* to fight disease. (2794 b 38)

Sham sentiment is easily seen through. (3264 b 4)

To gain their ends some people *behave in an abjectly humble way* to their superiors. (2419 a 3)

It requires a shrewd brain to become a *man of high or influential position* in the world of finance. (2634 a 27)

Inordinate love of gain is a vice. (1018 a 43)

Some men speak little; others are very *talkative*. (2591 a 1)

Many newspapers are written in a *vulgar or ill-bred* style. (3298 a 40)

Convicts work under strict *supervision*. (4181 b 59)

The ancients addressed many an *earnest entreaty* to the goddess Ceres to guard their corn crops. (2305 b 26)

Before signing a document, one should have a *clear* understanding of its contents. (1089 a 10)

Matter-of-fact people always take everything that is said to them *according to the exact meaning of the words*. (2556 a 8)

The *gloominess* of many railway waiting-rooms is notorious. (4015 a 12)

A *relevant* question shows that one has followed an argument intelligently. (3215 b 16)

Vegetation grows *very freely* in a warm, moist climate. (2617 a 19)

A person who neglects the *training* of the mind or body will not develop mentally or physically. (1014 a 32)

An explorer must have, above all other qualities, courage and *practical ingenuity*. (3657 b 3)

The *lighthouse* at Alexandria was one of the wonders of the world. (3227 a 35)

It is delightful to hear a blackbird *vary* its notes. (2806 b 17)

Most of the daily papers contain a *condensed statement* of the proceedings of the previous day in Parliament. (3664 a 4)

An atmosphere of anxious expectation is an indispensable ingredient of a ghost story. (4183 b 17)

In crowded districts the saving of an open space for the public is a *real* boon. (4471 a 31)

Meat will not *decay* whilst it is frozen. (1078 a 13)

On our journey through life we may encounter many a *change of fortune*. (4481 b 55)

If we wish to *represent the quality of* purity we may use the colour white. (4199 b 51)

Some people believe that modern civilization is *taking a backward tendency.* (3671 a 19)

Among the characters in a pantomime there is often a *wizard or enchanter.* (4020 b 22)

A tramp will often invent a long *rambling story* about his woes in order to get money. (3696 a 13)

A tendency to take the most gloomy view of things is common in degenerate societies. (3217 b 52)

Bad writing may cause one to *misinterpret* a message. (2793 a 17)

Anchovy sauce gives *an appetizing flavour* to fish. (3272 a 16)

A bird robbed of its young utters *lamentable* cries. (3278 a 30)

To be a successful speaker, one must cultivate a *clear and simple* style. (2604 a 32)

No one who is *listless* can excel at sports. (2430 a 28)

An opinion for which there is little evidence is a mere *conjecture.* (4179 b 10)

Singers or other performers are often nervous on making their *first appearance before the public.* (1066 b 47)

It would be unwise on the part of industrialists to *flood* the market with very expensive goods. (2298 a 1)

In France the guillotine is still used to *behead* criminals. (1069 b 1)

The *keeping* of Sunday has largely influenced the character of the British Nation. (2985 b 27)

Many fishes, insects, fungi, and minute organisms have the property of *shining in the dark.* (3236 b 6)

The average man uses prose as the *medium* for the expression of his thoughts. (4462 a 49)

The shark is an exceedingly *greedy* fish. (3546 b 1)

The mind of a child is more *open to impressions* than that of an adult. (3291 a 58)

The House of Lords, as a court of appeal, can *annul* the decision made by any other court of law in Great Britain. (3678 b 46)

The throwing of a bomb into a peaceful assembly is a *cowardly* act. (1054 a 13)

No one likes to work for a *surly* employer. (2837 a 36)

The press is sure to *hold up to contempt* a play that offends public opinion. (3260 b 39)

Andrew Carnegie's benefactions were on a *generous* scale. (2868 a 40)

The stage presence of Sir Henry Irving was *extraordinarily attractive.* (2634 b 25)

It is good to be helpful, but we should avoid *undue interference.* (3004 b 31)

Courage will help us to *overcome* most of our difficulties. (4179 b 54)

It is often difficult to *make out the meaning of* an inscription on a weathered monument. (1073 a 63)

All Roman Catholic churches contain a *picture or statue of the Virgin Mary.* (2629 a 61)

The ancient Romans used a system of *shorthand.* (3235 a 4)

Sea caves *echo* with the slightest sound. (3674 b 55)

The *bitter* sorrows of King Lear are expressed in some of the most moving scenes in Shakespeare. (3315 b 10)

A dog in disgrace has an abject *appearance.* (2761 a 24)

Certain cells in the skin of a negro contain dark *colouring matter.* (3256 b 43)

When King Saul was frenzied David could *pacify* him by playing the harp. (3281 a 24)

The good *elephant-driver* knows his charge as a mother knows her child. (2638 b 21)

It often does a pompous, self-important person good to be the object of *light raillery.* (3212 a 13)

If a person lives to a great age the King sometimes sends a little congratulating line on his *long life.* (2586 a 5)

After a fire a search is made among the *wreckage* for any articles which may be of value. (1065 b 30)

If we have a bruise or a sprain we apply a *liquid preparation to relieve pain or inflammation.* (2547 a 14)

A self-conscious person is often *excessively sensitive.* (4171 b 31)

The art of preparing and mixing drugs requires extreme care and accuracy. (3226 b 62)

A car out of control gathers *impetus* when going downhill. (2812 a 10)

The scientific study of language made little progress until the nineteenth century. (3231 a 1)

Some of our most treasured belongings are of little *pecuniary* value. (2814 a 35)

A *person who is morbidly anxious about his health* is a trying companion. (4449 a 45)

In "The Dunciad" Dryden ridiculed a *paltry poet* named Shadwell. (3314 b 40)

The *misunderstanding* of an order may have serious results. (2785 b 1)

The office of mayor entails *diverse* duties. (2864 b 10)

Where the bed of a stream is pebbly the water is *very clear.* (2541 a 22)

John D. Rockefeller will be remembered as a *man holding a commanding position* in the oil industry. (2634 a 27)

Conjecture is a poor substitute for fact. (4175 a 55)

At the theatre ladies sometimes use a *pair of eye-glasses with a long handle.* (2593 b 50)

Many of Francis Bacon's sayings are very *pithy.* (2430 b 19)

Royal commissions are sometimes appointed to *inquire into* matters of public interest. (2303 a 30)

To be renowned, a musician must play *exceedingly* well. (4180 a 41)

Where some see only *a falling away from a previous state of excellence* others see improvement. (1067 b 1)

The rigours of polar conditions *harden* Arctic and Antarctic explorers to privation. (2298 a 26)

A new custom may *take the place of* an old one. (4171 b 9)

Misgivings about the future *haunt* the man who has lost his nerve. (2986 a 1)

In Government offices it is usual to *put away for reference* official reports from all quarters. (3256 b 13)

If a proposal does not commend itself to us we *reject* it. (2911 a 24)

Before the battle of Philippi Brutus saw the *ghost* of Caesar, whom he had murdered. (3225 b 46)

It is not easy for the ordinary housewife to cater for a *person who lives wholly or largely on vegetable food.* (4461 b 30)

The Budget speech is one of great *importance.* (2811 b 14)

The *original worker* in a new branch of science may not become famous in his lifetime. (3269 a 22)

Many devout Mohammedans can recite the whole of the Koran *word for word.* (4469 a 60)

A mentally *defective* person is not always responsible for his acts. (1088 a 32)

It does not do for a man in a high position to *change from one opinion to another.* (4446 a 45)

In many technical books the author gives a *short summing up* of the contents of each chapter at its end. (3569 a 41)

The Englishman is notorious abroad for his *reserve.* (3666 b 67)

How some vagrants manage to procure *the means of sustaining life* is a puzzle. (4184 b 26)

We despise the *meanness* of the miser. (4020 b 46)

Severe shock sometimes causes a *sudden violent change* of feeling towards some object. (3680 b 1)

Such materials as clay and wax are *suitable for modelling.* (3291 a 58)

Criticism, however *biting,* is usually helpful. (2834 b 19)

Many people prefer *a pair of eye-glasses* to spectacles. (3263 b 60)

To meditate alone in a village church turns one's thoughts from *worldly* things. (2867 b 36)

When facts are unobtainable we can only *theorise* as to the cause of things. (4041 a 12)

We read of a captive kneeling *entreatingly* at the feet of his captor. (4173 b 57)

A tanner is sometimes also a *dresser of leather.* (1024 b 5)

The Book of Numbers sets forth the *forms and ceremonies* of the Jewish religion. (3703 a 7)

North Schleswig was restored to Denmark after the taking of a *vote of all the electors.* (3298 b 21)

The rose is a flower of *extraordinary* fragrance. (4180 a 38)

Mendel's laws relating to the inheritance of innate qualities are *constant.* (2299 b 16)

Distinctness is not necessarily essential to a good photograph. (1089 a 24)

People who are *occupied with writing* books are often not very practical. (2556 a 39)

If we see a *person walking in his sleep* we should be careful not to wake him suddenly. (4016 a 22)

The loss from *petty theft* by dishonest employees is sometimes considerable. (3259 a 26)

Bitterness goes far to *counteract* the influence of an eloquent speaker. (2925 a 6)

An author or composer should be careful not to *steal the ideas of another.* (3283 a 30)

A clever shopkeeper can usually *pacify* a dissatisfied customer. (2810 b 20)

The study of the general principles of things is largely based on ancient Greek speculation. (3231 b 11)

A *thin outer coating* of refinement may cover a coarse mind. (4465 b 21)

A schoolmaster will ask for a *positive statement* of the facts of an escapade. (1075 b 2)

Some people spend a great deal of money and time in *lawsuits.* (2560 a 58)

The *maiming* of cattle is sometimes an act of revenge against their owner. (2879 a 29)

Napoleon had a remarkably *tenacious* memory. (3666 b 23)

A child that is *drowsy* is perhaps not very well. (4016 a 44)

The Trappist order of monks is famous for the *austerity* of its discipline. (3696 a 30)

The memoirs of public men are often full of *agreeably pungent* incidents. (3272 a 5)

Chinese coolies work hard for a *very low wage.* (3279 a 65)

Some people *add to* their incomes by doing work in their spare time. (4173 b 15)

A good barrister takes great pains in preparing the *closing part* of his speech. (3209 a 28)

Précis-writing helps one to avoid *redundant language.* (3300 b 10)

The resources of the British Empire *exceed* those of the old Roman Empire. (4180 a 23)

Certain substances and liquids *turn aside* rays of light passing through them. (1089 b 11)

Voltaire was a master of *violent expression of censure.* (2300 b 1)

WORDS OFTEN MISSPELT

A Guide to Spelling Difficulties of the English Language

NO other European language presents so many difficulties of spelling as English. How often does one see, for example, the word " embarrass " spelt with one " r " and " harass " with two; or again, " allotted " with one " t " and " riveted " with two.

To assist readers to attain proficiency in orthography, as the art of spelling is called, a number of general rules are set out below. Although they cannot be applied without exception, a knowledge of these rules will enable readers to achieve greater success in spelling than they otherwise would do. A number of words that are exceptions to the rule are given.

In the case of words with alternative spellings the generally accepted form is given. Thus it will be found that " ankle " is the form that is recommended. Although " ancle " is not incorrect, it might be regarded by many people as a spelling mistake, and should therefore be avoided. It will be noticed that the form of a word as used by lawyers or in other technical senses sometimes differs from that adopted in ordinary writing. For instance, a man might write in a letter to a friend that he does not like always to be the " accepter " of favours, whereas the person who accepts a bill of exchange is referred to as the " acceptor," not the " accepter."

The first spelling rule relates to single-syllable words. Single-syllable words, not including plural forms, having *f, l, s* as their final consonant, double that letter when it is preceded by a single vowel. Examples: *Chaff, less, bill, toll, full.* Exceptions: *As, gas, has, was, chef, clef, ides, gules, trapes, yes, if, is, his, this, of, us, pus, thus.*

Words of one syllable, not including plural forms, having any other consonant than *f, l, s* as their final letter and a single vowel as the preceding letter, do not double the final letter. Examples: *Cab, bed, din, not, sup.* Exceptions: *Abb, ebb, add, odd, egg, inn, linn, err, burr, purr, bitt, butt, buzz, fizz, fuzz.*

A very important rule is that which relates to the changing of final *y* into *i*. The change occurs when the letter coming immediately before the *y* is a consonant. Examples: *Cry cries, berry berries, carry carrier, tarry tarries, try trier, marry married, vary varied, merry merriment, happy happier happiest.*

A notable exception to this rule is in the formation of present participles and verbal nouns by the addition of *-ing* when the *y* is retained to avoid the occurrence of a double *i*. Examples: *Carry carrying, hurry hurrying.*

When preceded by a vowel, *y* is usually retained. Examples: *Ray rays, key keys, employ employs, annoy annoyance, boy boyish, destroy destroyer, joy joyful, enjoy enjoyment.* Exceptions: *Day daily, gay gaily gaiety, lay laity.* Exceptions to this rule also occur in the formation of past participles, as *lay laid, pay paid, say said.*

When preceded by *t, y* is changed to *e* with the addition of the suffix *-ous*. Examples: *Beauty beauteous, bounty bounteous, plenty plenteous.*

Words that end with a consonant preceded by a single vowel have the consonant doubled, if the final syllable is accented, when an extra syllable beginning with a vowel is added. When *l* is the final letter, and the preceding vowel is short, it is doubled irrespective of the syllable accented. Examples: *Allot allotted, sun sunning, begin beginning, fat fatty, revel reveller, travel travelled.*

On the other hand, when the accent is on a syllable before the final one, as in *rivet riveted, benefit benefiting, suffer suffering, orbit orbital,* and when the consonant follows two vowels in the syllable immediately preceding it, as in *boil boiling, sail sailing, maid maiden,* the extra syllable only is added to the original word.

Words that end with double *l* usually drop one *l* when the suffixes *-ful, -less, -ly, -ness* are added. Examples: *Wilful, thrilless, fully, dulness.*

Words that end with any double consonant other than double *l* retain both when the suffixes *-ful, -less, -ly, -ness* are affixed to them. Examples: *Blissful, grassless, carelessly, stiffness.*

When the suffixes *-ful, -less, -ly, -ness* are attached to words that end in silent *e*, the *e* is generally retained. Examples: *Graceful, lifeless, timely, politeness.* Exceptions: *Awful, duly, truly.*

Words that end with silent *e* commonly drop the vowel when *-able* or *-ible* is added. Examples: *Tame tamable, atone atonable, fuse fusible, sense sensible.*

Exceptions to this rule occur when the silent *e* follows c or g soft, as in *manage manageable, service serviceable.*

Silent *e* is generally preserved in adding a suffix beginning with a consonant. Examples: *Abatement, disbursement, care careless.* Many writers, however, omit *e* after *dg*, when followed by *-ment*, as in *abridgment, acknowledgment, judgment.*

Silent *e* is almost always dropped in adding *ing* or *ish.* Examples: *Dodge dodging, race racing, blue bluish, mode modish.* In *dyeing, singeing* the *e* is retained to avoid confusion with dying, singing.

Words ending in a double consonant when taken into composition—that is, combined to form one word—sometimes omit one of the double letters. Examples: *Mouthful, chilblain, withal.*

Words ending with *c* to which the suffix *y* or a suffix beginning with *e, i,* is added have *k* inserted before the suffix. Examples: *Panic panicky, picnic picknicker, frolic frolicking.*

All commonly drops one *l* when prefixed to another word. Examples: *Almost, already, although, altogether, always.* Exceptions: *All-round, all-fours, all-hail.*

The suffix *-ize* is commonly used in forming verbs, but *-ise* is also often used in place of it. Examples: *Authorize, catechize, civilize, harmonize, recognize.* In certain words, however, in which the syllable is of entirely different origin, *-ise* is always used. *Advertise, advise, chastise, compromise, disfranchise, enfranchise, exercise, revise, surmise, surprise.* Note also that *-yse* is the correct spelling: *Analyse, dialyse, paralyse.*

Words ending in *-ice* which change the *c* to *s* in their verb forms are *advice, device, licence, practice.*

When *i* and *e* come together in a word and have the sound of long *e*, the *i* usually comes before the *e*, except when preceded by *c*, when, as in *ceiling, deceive, receive,* the *e* comes first. Examples: *Believe, fierce, grief, siege, yield.* Exceptions: *Either, neither, seize, weir, weird.*

abasing, *not* cing.
abatable, *not* cable.
abattoir, *not* atoir.
abbreviator, *not* er.
abdicator, *not* er.
abetter, *legal* **abettor.**
abridgment, *not* ement.
abscissa, *plural* **abscissae.**
absenter, *not* or.
absinthe, absinthic.
abut, abutted, abutting.
abyss, abysmal.
acceder, *not* or.
accelerator, *not* er.
acceptance, *not* ence.
accepter, *legal* **acceptor.**
accessory, *not* ary.
acclimatize, *not* ise.
accompanist, *not* yist.
accordion, *not* eon.
acknowledgment, *not* ement
acquit, acquittal, acquitted
adapter, *not* or.
addendum, *plural* **addenda.**
addible, *not* able.
adducible, *not* cable.
adieu, *plural* **adieux.**
adjectival, *not* veal.
adjudgment, *not* ement.
adjudicator, *not* er.
administrator, *not* er.
administratrix, *not* orix.
admonitor, *not* er.
adulator, *not* er.
adverbially, *not* bally.
advertise, *not* ize.
advertisement, *not* sment.
aedile, *not* e.
aegis, *not* e.
Aeolian, *not* E.
aeon, *not* e.
aepyornis, *not* epi, epy.
aerate, *not* aë.
aerie, *not* aery, eyrie, eyry
aesthete, *not* e.
aether, *use* **ether.**
aetiology, *not* e.
affranchise, *not* ize.
ageing, *not* agi.
agendum, *plural* **agenda.**
aggrandize, *not* ise.
agitator, *not* er.
aglet, *not* aig.
agonize, *not* ise.
agouti, *not* ty.
agrarianize, *not* ise.
agriculture, agricultural, agriculturist.
aiglet, *use* **aglet.**
aigrette, *not* ei.
ait, *not* eyot.
Aladdin, *not* Alladin.
albatros, aeroplane.
albatross, bird.
albino, *feminine* **albiness,** *plural* **albinos.**
albumen, white of egg.
albumin, chief constituent of albumen; **albuminous, albuminose.**
alcayde, *not* ade.
alcoholize, *not* ise.
alga, *plural* **algae.**
alibi, *plural* **alibis.**
alienator, *not* er.
align, *use* **aline.**
alimentative, *not* ntive.
aline, *not* align.
alkali, *plural* **alkalis.**
alkalize, *not* ise.
allegiance, *not* eance.
allegorize, *not* ise.
alleviator, *not* er.
allineation, *not* alina.
alliterator, *not* er.
allot, allotted.
all right, *not* alright.
all together, all at the same time; *see* **altogether.**
alluvium, *plural* **alluvia.**
alto, *plural* **altos.**
altogether, wholly; *see* **all together.**
alto-relievo, *plural* **alto-relievos.**
altruize, *not* ise.
amanuensis, *plural* **amanuenses.**
ambassador, embassy
amoeba, *plural* **amoebae.**
amphibium, *plural* **amphibia.**
amphora, *plural* **amphorae.**
anabaptize, *not* ise.
anacoluthon, *plural* **anacolutha.**
anaemia, *not* ane.
anaesthetize, *not* ise.
analogy, *not* agy.
analysis, *plural* **analyses.**
anamorphosis, *plural* **anamorphoses.**
anapaest, *not* est.
anathematize, *not* ise.
anatomize, *not* ise.
anatomy, anatomist.
anatta, *not* arnotto.
ancestor, *not* er.
ancestress, *not* rix.
anchoret, *not* rite.
ankylosis, *not* anch.
ancle, *use* **ankle.**
animalcule, *plural* **animalcules.**
ankle, *not* ancle.
annotator, *not* er.
anonymous, *not* imous.
antagonize, *not* ise.
ante, before, as **antechamber, antedate, anteprandial;** *see* **anti.**
antediluvian, *not* del.
antefix, *plural* **antefixes.**
antenna, *plural* **antennae.**
anthropomorphize, *not* ise.
anthropophagus, *plural* **anthropophagi.**
anti, opposite, as **antidote, antiseptic;** *see* **ante.**
antipathize, *not* ise.
antiquary, antiquarian.
antithesis, *plural* **antitheses.**
antithesize, *not* ise.
aorta, *plural* **aortae.**
apanage, *not* appa
ape, aping.
apex, *plurals* **apexes, apices.**
apologize, *not* ise.
apophthegm, *not* apoth.
apostasy, *not* cy.
apostatize, *not* ise.
apostrophize, *not* ise.
apothegm, *use* **apophthegm.**
apotheosis, *plural* **apotheoses.**
appal, appalled.
appanage, *use* **apanage.**
apparel, apparelled.
apparitor, *not* er.
appeasement, *not* sment.
appendix, *plurals* **appendices, appendixes.**
appetize, *not* ise.
appreciator, *not* er.
apprise, inform.
apprize, estimate.
apse, *plural* **apses.**
apsis, *plural* **apsides.**
aquarium, *plural* **aquariums.**
archaeology, archaeological.
archetype, *not* archi.
archidiaconal, *not* ide.
archipelago, *plural* **archipelagos.**
architecture, architectural.
areola, *plural* **areolae.**
argil, argillaceous.
Arian, heresy; *see* **Aryan.**
Aristotle, Aristotelian.
arithmetician, *not* itian.
armadillo, *plural* **armadillos.**
armful, *plural* **armfuls.**
arnotto, *use* **anatta.**
aroma, *plural* **aromas.**
arquebus, *use* **harquebus.**
arrive, arrival.
artificialize, *not* ise.
artisan, *not* zan.
Aryan, language group; *see* **Arian.**
asafoetida, *not* ass.
ascendancy, *not* ency.
ashlar, *not* er.
asphalt, *not* ashp, lte.
assafoetida, *use* **asafoetida.**
assagai, *not* asse.
assailant, *not* ll.
assassin, *not* as asin.
assegai, *use* **assagai.**
assentor, *not* er.
assessable, *not* ible.
assessor, *not* er.
assignor, *not* er.
assister, *legal* **assistor.**
assizer, *not* ser, or.
assurer, *legal* **assuror.**
assythment, *not* assi.
asterisk, *not* ik.
astrology, astrologer.
astronomy, astronomer.
atar, *use* **attar.**
atheize, *not* ise.
atonable, *not* eable.
attainer, *not* or.
attar, *not* atar, otto.
attitudinize, *not* ise.
attractor, *not* er.
aught, anything, *confused with* **naught,** nothing.
aureola, *not* iola.
aurora borealis, *plural* **aurorae boreales.**
authorize, *not* ise.
automaton, *plural* **automata.**
automobile, automobilist.
autonomize, *not* ise.
auxiliary, *not* illi.
avertible, *not* able.
avocet, *not* set.
aweing, *not* awi.
awesome, *not* aws.
awful, *not* awe.

babiroussa, *not* yrussa.
baboo, *not* babu.
baboon, *feminine* **babuina.**
bacillus, *plural* **bacilli.**
backsheesh, *use* **baksheesh.**
baksheesh, *not* back, shish.
balanceable, *not* cable.
balk, *not* baulk.
ballad, song.
ballade, poem.
ballot, balloted.
bandana, *not* anna.
bandbox, *not* banb.
bandit, *plural* **bandits.**
bandolier, *or* **bandoleer.**
bang, hemp, *use* **bhang.**
banian, *use* **banyan.**
banjo, *plural* **banjos, banjoes.**
banns, *not* bans.
banquet, banqueting.
banyan, *not* banian.
baptistery, *not* try.

baptize, *not* ise.
barbarize, *not* ise.
barberry, *not* berberry.
barbette, *not* et.
bargainer, *legal* **bargainor.**
baritone, *not* bary.
bark *or* **barque.**
barkentine *or* **barquentine.**
Barmecide, *not* acide.
barouche, *not* ruche.
barque *or* **bark.**
barquentine *or* **barkentine.**
barrage, *not* bara.
barrator, *not* etor.
barrel, barrelled.
barrister, *not* or.
baruche, *use* **barouche.**
barytone, *use* **baritone.**
basan, *not* zan.
basil, *not* zil.
basin, *not* son.
basis, *plural* **bases.**
bas-relief, *not* bass.
bass, fish, *not* basse.
bassinet, *not* ette.
bastille, *not* ile.
bastinado, *not* basto.
bateau, *not* batt ; *plural* **bateaux.**
battalion, *not* bata, llı.
battledore, *not* door.
baulk, *use* **balk.**
bawbee, *not* bau.
bayonet, bayoneted.
bazaar, *not* zar.
bazan, *use* **basan.**
beadle, Oxford form **bedel,** Cambridge form **bedell.**
beau-idealize, *not* ise.
Bedouin, *not* duin.
befall, *not* al.
Beguine, *not* in.
behove, *not* oove.
beldam, *not* ame.
Belgium, Belgian.
believable, *not* eable.
belvedere, *not* vi.
benefactor, *not* er.
benefit, benefited.
Bengali, *not* lee.
benzene, *not* ine.
benzol, *not* ole.
benzoline, *not* ene.
bequeather, *not* or.
berberry, *use* **barberry.**
bereavement, *not* vment.
bergamot, *not* bur.
beriberi, *not* berri, biri.
bersagliere, *plural* **bersaglieri.**
berth, on ship, *not* bi.
besant, *use* **bezant.**
bestialize, *not* ise.
bestrew, *not* ow.
betony, *not* nny.
better, one who bets, *not* or.
bevel, bevelled.
beylic, *not* lik.
bezant, *not* bes, by.
bezel, *not* il.
bhang, *not* bang.
biannual, half-yearly ; *see* **biennial.**
bias, biased.
bibliography, bibliographic.
biennial, every two years ; *see* **biannual.**
bigot, bigoted.
bijou, *plural* **bijoux.**
bilberry, *not* bill.
bilboes, long iron bar.
billet, billeted.
bimetallic, *not* alic.
binnacle, compass-stand, *not* bina.
binocle, a field-glass.
biology, biological.
biribiri, *use* **beriberi.**
birth, on ship, *use* **berth.**
bisk, a rich soup ; *see* **bisque.**
bisque, in games ; *see* **bisk.**
bistre, *not* er.
bitt, *plural* **bitts.**
bitumen, bituminous.
bivouac, bivouacked.
bizarre, *not* are.
blaeberry, *not* blea.
blameable, *not* mable.
blanket, blanketed.
blatant, *not* blatt.
bleaberry, *use* **blaeberry.**
blizzard, *not* bliss.
blond, *feminine* **blonde.**
blueing, *not* blui.
bluish, *not* eish.
bogie, locomotive
bogy, spectre, *not* gey.
bolas, *plural* **bolases.**
bolometer, *not* tre.
bolus, *plural* **boluses.**
bombasine, *not* zine.
bonanza, *not* ansa.
Bonaparte, *not* Buon.
bonnet, bonneted.
borzoi, *plural* **borzois.**
bot, *not* bott.
botanize, *not* ise.
botany, botanist.
bothy, *not* ie.
bott, *use* **bot.**
bounceable, *not* cable.
bourgeois, *feminine* **bourgeoise** ; *middle class* **bourgeoisie.**
bourgeois, type, *not* bur.
bowie, *not* ey.
box, *plural* **boxes.**
bradoon, *use* **bridoon.**
braggadocio, *not* aga.
Brahma, *not* hm, hme.
Brahmin, *not* man ; *feminine* **Brahminee.**
braise, in cooking, *not* ze ; *see* **braze.**
brake, *distinguish from* **break.**
bran, branny.
brand-new, *not* **bran.**
brant-goose, *use* **brent-goose.**
brassy, golf club, *not* sie.
bravado, *plural* **bravados, bravadoes.**
bravo, *feminine* **brava.**
bravo, assassin, *plural* **bravos, bravoes.**
braze, solder, *not* aise ; *see* **braise.**
break, *distinguish from* **brake.**
breccia, *not* chia.
brent-goose, *not* bra.
brevet, breveted.
briar, *use* **brier.**
bribable, *not* eable.
bridoon, *not* bra.
brier, *not* ar.
briquette, *not* et, icket.
broach, *distinguish from* **brooch.**
Brobdingnag, *not* dignag.
broccoli, *not* broco.
bronco, *not* cho ; *plural* **broncos.**
brooch, *distinguish from* **broach.**
brother, *plurals* **brothers, brethren.**
browse, *not* ze.
brusque, *not* sk.
brutalize, *not* ise.
buccaneer, *not* buca, ier.
Buddha, Buddhism.
buffalo, *plural* **buffaloes.**
buffet, buffeted.
buksheesh, *use* **baksheesh.**
bulrush, *not* bull.
bumkin, small boom.
bumpkin, country lout.
buncombe, *use* bunkum.
Bundesrat, *not* rath.
bunkum, *not* **buncombe.**
Buonaparte, *use* **Bonaparte.**
bur, of plant, *not* burr.
burden, *not* burthen.
bureau, *plural* **bureaux.**
burgamot, *use* **bergamot.**
burgeois, type, *use* **bourgeois.**
burglar, *not* er.
burgrave, *not* burgg.
Burma, *not* ah ; **Burmans ;** *adjective* **Burmese.**
burnous, *not* bernouse.
burnt sienna, *not* ena.
burr, rough ridge, *not* bur.
burthen, *use* **burden**
busybody, *not* busi.
by and by, *not* bye.
bye, cricket, *plural* **byes.**
bye-bye, good-bye, *not* by.
by-election, *not* bye.
by-lane, *not* bye.
bye-law, *not* **by-law**
by the by, *not* bye.
byzant, *use* **bezant.**

Caaba, *not* Kaaba.
cabana, *not* nna.
cabbala, *not* kab.
cachemire, *use* **cashmere.**
cacique, *not* caz.
cacodemon, *not* daemon.
cactus, *plural* **cacti.**
caddis, *not* dice.
cadi, *not* ka.
caduceus, *plural* **caducei.**
caecum, *not* ce, *plural* **caeca.**
Caedmon, *not* Ce.
caerulean, *use* **cerulean.**
Caesarean, *not* ian.
caesura, *not* ce.
caftan, *not* kaf.
caiman, *use* **cayman.**
Cainozoic, *not* Caen, Kai.
caisson, *not* cassoon.
cajuput, *not* caja.
calamanco, *not* cali, calla.
calcareous, *not* ious.
calcedony, *use* **chalcedony.**
calculator, *not* er.
calculus, *plural* **calculi.**
caldron, *use* **cauldron.**
calendar, almanac, *not* k, er.
calender, machine and dervish, *not* ar.
calends, *not* kal.
calibre, *not* er.
calico, *plural* **calicoes.**
caligraphy, *use* **calligraphy.**
calimanco, *use* **calamanco.**
calipers, *use* **callipers.**
caliph, caliphate, *not* kalif, khalif.
calisthenic, *use* **callisthenic.**
calix, *distinguish from* **calyx ;** *plural* **calices.**
calk, *distinguish from* **caulk.**
calligraphy, *not* cali.
callipers, *not* cali.
callisthenic, *not* cali.
calmia, *use* **kalmia.**
calorescence, *not* sence.
calotte, *not* llot.
caltrop, *not* throp.
calumniator, *not* er.
calyx, *distinguish from* **calix ;** *plural* **calyces.**
camblet, *use* **camlet.**
camelopard, *not* eleo.
camelot, *use* **camlet.**
cameo, *plural* **cameos.**

camera, *plural* **cameras.**
camlet, *not* camb.
camomile, *not* cham.
Canaan, *not* nan.
canalize, *not* ise.
canaster, tobacco; *see* **canister.**
cancel, cancelled.
candelabrum, *plural* **candelabra.**
canephorus, *plural* **canephori.**
canister, metal box; *see* **canaster.**
cannon-bone, *not* canon.
canny, *not* nie.
canonize, *not* ise.
Cantabrigian, *not* dgian.
cantaloup, *not* eloup.
cantilever, *not* canta.
canto, *plural* **cantos.**
cantonment, *not* ement
canvas, cloth.
canvass, solicit votes.
caoutchouc, *not* cou.
capercailzie, *not* sie.
capibara, *use* **capybara.**
capitalize, *not* ise.
capsize, *not* ise.
capybara, *not* capi.
carabinier, *not* carb.
carafe, *not* ffe.
caramel, *not* caro.
carat, weight, *not* k; *see* **caret.**
caravanserai, *not* sary.
caraway, *not* carr.
carbineer, *use* **carabinier.**
carbolize, *not* ise.
carbonize, *not* ise.
carcass, *not* ase; *plural* **carcasses.**
cardamom, *not* on.
caret, insertion mark; *see* **carat.**
carex, *plural* **carices.**
cargo, *plural* **cargoes.**
caribou, *not* boo.
cariole, *use* **carriole.**
carl, *not* le.
carnelian, *use* **cornelian.**
carol, caroller.
caromel, *use* **caramel.**
carrageen, *not* gheen.
carrat, *use* **carat.**
carraway, *use* **caraway.**
carriole, *not* cari.
carrot, carroty.
carte, in fencing, *not* quarte.
carte-de-visite, *not* cart, visit.
cartography, *not* char.
cartouche, *not* char.
caryatid, *not* cari; *plural* **caryatids, caryatides.**
casein, *not* ine.
cashmere, *not* cachemire, meer.
casino, *plural* **casinos.**
cassava, *not* casa.
cassimere or kerseymere.
caster, one who flings.
castor, oil, cruets, sugar, swivelled wheel.
cataclysmist, *not* matist.
catalogue, cataloguing.
catalysis, *not* ka.
catamaran, *not* cate.
catarrhine, *not* catarh.
catchpole, *not* poll.
catchup, *use* **ketchup.**
categorize, *not* ise.
catena, *plural* **catenae.**
cathode, *not* ka.
catholicize, *not* ise.
cation, *not* ka.
cat's-cradle, *not* scratch, cratch.
catsup, *use* **ketchup.**
cauldron, *not* cal.
caulk, *distinguish from* **calk.**
caulker. *not* caw.
cauterize, *not* ise.
cavass, *use* **kavass.**
caveator, *not* er.
cavey, rodent, *use* **cavy.**
caviar, *not* re.
cavil, cavilled.
cavy, rodent, *not* vey.
cawker, *use* **caulker.**
cayman, *not* cai, kai.
cazique, *use* **cacique.**
cedar, tree, *not* er.
ceder, one who gives up, *not* ar.
ceiling, *not* cie.
celebrator, *not* er.
celestialize, *not* ise.
cellar, *not* er.
'cello, *plural* **'celli, 'cellos.**
Celt, *not* K.
Cenozoic, *use* **Cainozoic.**
censer, incense vessel, *not* or.
censor, official, *not* er.
centenary, centennial.
center, *use* **centre.**
centering, in architecture.
centigram, *not* mme.
centilitre, *not* ter.
centimetre, *not* ter.
centre, central, centring.
cephalic, *not* kep.
ceramic, *not* ker.
cerebellum, *plural* **cerebella.**
cerebrum, *plural* **cerebra.**
cerge, *use* **cierge.**
ceriph, *use* **serif.**
cerium, *not* cere.
cerulean, *not* cae, coe.
Cesarevitch, *use* **Tsarevitch.**
cestus, *not* os.
cesura, *use* **caesura.**
chalcedony, *not* cal, chalci.
Chaldee, Chaldean, Chaldaism.
chameleon, *not* aeleon.
chamois leather, *not* shammy.
chamomile, *use* **camomile.**
champagne, wine.
champaign, flat, open country.
champerty, *not* arty.
champignon, *not* pinion.
changeable, *not* gable.
chanty, *use* **shanty.**
chap, jaws, *not* chop.
chaperon, *not* one.
char, charred.
characterize, *not* ise.
château, *plural* **châteaux.**
check, sudden stoppage; *see* **cheque.**
checker, pattern, *use* **chequer.**
cheetah, *not* chet.
cheiroptera, *not* chir.
cheque, draft on banker; *see* **check.**
chequer, *not* checker.
chestnut, *not* chesn.
chetah, *use* **cheetah.**
chevy, *not* chivy.
chiaroscuro, *not* chiaro-oscuro.
chibouque, *or* **chibouk.**
chicory, *not* ccory, ckory.
chiffonier, *not* nnier.
chilli, pepper, *not* ile, ili.
chilliness, *not* chilli.
chimaera, fish; *see* **chimera.**
chimer, *not* ere.
chimera, monster, fancy; *see* **chimaera.**
China, Chinese.
chinchona, *use* **cinchona.**
chip, chipped.
chiromancy, *not* cheiro.
chiropody, *not* edy.
chirrup, chirruped.
chit, note, *not* chitty.
chivy, *use* **chevy.**
chlorophyll, *not* yl.
chock-full, *not* choke.
choir, singers, *not* quire.
choke-full, *use* **chock-full.**
chop, jaws, *use* **chap.**
chorus, chorused.
Christianize, *not* ise.
chromosphere, *not* chromatosphere.
chronologize, *not* ise.
chrysalis, *plural* **chrysalides, chrysalises, chrysalids.**
chutney, *not* ny.
cicada, *not* cigala; *plural* **cicadae.**
cicatrix, *plural* **cicatrices.**
cicatrize, *not* ise.
cicerone, *plural* **ciceroni.**
cider, *not* cy.
cierge, *not* cer, ser.
cigala, *use* **cicada.**
cilium, *plural* **cilia.**
cimeter, *use* **scimitar.**
cinchona, *not* chin.
cinema, *use* **kinema.**
cineraria, *plural* **cinerarias.**
Cingalese, *not* Sinhalese.
cipher, *not* cy, sy.
Circean, *not* aean.
circularize, *not* ise.
circumflexion, *not* ection.
cirrhosis, *not* cirh.
cirrus, *not* rhus.
cist, casket; *see* **cyst.**
citron, citrinous.
civil, civilian.
civilize, *not* ise.
claire-cole, *use* **clear-cole.**
clairvoyant, *feminine* **clairvoyante.**
clan, clannish.
clang, clangor, clangorous.
clansman, *plural* **clansmen.**
Clarenceux, *not* cieux.
clarinet, *not* ionet; **clarinettist.**
clear-cole, *not* claire.
clearstory, *use* **clerestory.**
cleavers, plant, *not* clivers.
clepsydra, *not* klep.
cleptomania, *use* **kleptomania.**
clerestory, *not* clear.
clericalize, *not* ise.
clevis, *not* clives.
clew, of sail; *not* clue.
cliché, clicheur.
clinic, *not* ique.
clinometer, *not* klin.
clique, cliquy.
cloak, *not* cloke.
clod, clodded.
cloke, *use* **cloak.**
clot, *not* clout; **clotted.**
club, clubbable.
clue, a guide, *not* clew.
Cluny, Cluniac.
clypeal, clypeiform.
coagulum, *plural* **coagula.**
coble, boat, *not* cobble.
cobra de capello, *not* di.
cocaine, *not* ain.
cochlea, *plural* **cochleae.**
cockaigne, *not* ayne.
cock-a-leekie, *use* **cocky-leeky.**
cockatoo, *plural* **cockatoos.**
cock's-comb, plant, *not* cox.
cockswain, *use* **coxswain.**
cocky-leeky, *not* cock-a-leekie.
coco-nut, *not* cocoa, coker.
codex, *plural* **codices.**
codling, *not* in.
coerulean, *use* **cerulean.**
cognize, *not* ise; **cognizance.**
coits, *use* **quoits.**

colander, *not* coll, cull.
colcannon, *not* cole.
colic, colicky.
Coliseum, *use* **Colosseum.**
collaborator, *not* er.
collapsible, *not* able.
collator, *not* er.
collectable, *not* ible.
collector, *not* er.
collie, *not* ly.
collodionize, *not* ise.
colonize, *not* ise ; **colonization**
coloration, *not* colour.
Colosseum, *not* Coliseum.
colour, *not* lor.
colter, *use* **coulter.**
columbarium, *plural* **columbaria.**
coma, sleep, *plural* **comas.**
coma, in botany and astronomy, *plural* **comae.**
combat, combated.
comfrey, *not* cum.
commando, *plural* **commandos.**
commentary, *not* ory.
commissioner, *distinguish from* **commissionaire.**
commit, committed.
committer, *legal* **committor.**
communize, *not* ise.
comparator, *not* er.
competitor, *feminine* **competitiress.**
complacent, *distinguish from* **complaisant.**
complainant, *not* ent.
complaisant, *distinguish from* **complacent.**
complement, *distinguish from* **compliment.**
complexion, *not* ction.
compliment, *distinguish from* **complement.**
compline, *or* **complin.**
compositor, *not* er.
comprise, *not* ize.
compromise, *not* ize.
comptroller, in title of some officials.
con, conning.
concensus, *use* **consensus.**
conch, *plural* **conchs.**
concreter, *not* or.
concur, concurred.
condottiere, *plural* **condottieri.**
conductor, *not* er.
coney, *use* **cony.**
confer, conferrable.
confidant, *feminine* **confidante.**
conformator, *not* er.
congou, *not* kongo.
congruous, congruity.
conjurer, juggler, *not* or.
conjuror, one who solemnly entreats, *not* er.
connecter, *not* or.
connexion, *not* ction.
connivance, *not* ence.
connoisseur, *not* iseur.
consenescence, *not* ecence.
consensus, *not* conc.
constitutionalize, *not* ise.
conterminous, *not* cot.
continue, continual.
contractor, *not* er.
contralto, *plural* **contraltos.**
contrary, contrariness, contrariwise.
contributor, *not* er.
control, controlled.
controller, one who controls.
converter, *not* or.
conveyer, *not* or.
convolvulus, *plural* **convolvuluses.**
cony, *not* ey ; *plural* **conies.**

cooee, *not* cooey.
cookie, cake, *not* key.
coolie, *not* ly.
copeck, *not* ko.
copula, *plural* **copulae.**
coquette, *not* **coquet.**
cordillera, *not* dilera.
co-respondent, *distinguish from* **correspondent.**
corf, *plural* **corves.**
cornea, *plural* **corneae.**
cornelian, *not* car.
cornu, *plural* **cornua.**
cornucopia, *plural* **cornucopias.**
corollary, *not* olary.
corporeal, *not* ial.
corposant, *not* cour.
corpus, *plural* **corpora.**
correlate, *not* corr.
correspondent, *distinguish from* **co-respondent.**
corrigendum, *plural* **corrigenda.**
corroboree, *not* bery.
corrupter, *not* or.
corslet, *not* elet.
cortex, *plural* **cortices.**
cosey, *use* **cosy.**
cosher, *use* **kosher.**
cosy, *not* sey.
coterie, *not* ery.
coterminous, *use* **conterminous.**
cottar, peasant.
cotter, pin.
coulter, *not* col.
councillor, *not* iler ; *distinguish from* **counsellor.**
countrified, *not* try.
courier, *not* rrier.
court martial, *plural* **courts martial.**
couscous, African dish ; *see* **cuscus.**
cowry, *or* **cowrie**
coxcomb, fop, *not* cock's.
coxswain, *not* cocks.
cozy, *use* **cosy.**
crane's-bill, *not* cranesbill.
cranium, *plural* **crania.**
crape, mourning fabric.
craunch, *use* **crunch.**
creditor, *not* er.
creosote, *not* kre.
crêpe, crapy fabric other than mourning crape.
cringe, cringing.
crinkum-crankum, a zigzag, *not* cum.
crisis, *plural* **crises.**
criterion, *plural* **criteria.**
criticize, *not* ise.
crosier, *not* zier.
crumb, *not* crum.
crunch, *not* craun.
cruse, cup, *not* crui.
crux, *plural* **cruces.**
crypton, *use* **krypton.**
crystallize, *not* alise.
cullender, *use* **colander.**
cumin, *not* cummin.
cummerbund, *not* kamarband, ku.
cumulus, *plural* **cumuli.**
cuneiform, *not* cuni.
curaçao, *not* çoa.
curare, *not* ara.
curbstone, *use* **kerbstone.**
currant, *distinguish from* **current.**
curriculum, *plural* **curricula.**
curtsy, *not* sey ; **curtsying.**
curvet, curvetting.
cuscus, Indian grass root ; *distinguish from* **couscous.**
cutch, *not* ku.
cyclops, *plural* **cyclopes.**

cyder, *use* **cider.**
Cymric, *not* Ky.
cypher, *use* **cipher.**
cyst, vesicle, *not* ci.

dachshund, *not* hound.
dacoit, *not* dec, dak.
daguerreotype, *not* rotype.
dahabeeyah, *not* biah, beyah.
dakoit, *use* **dacoit.**
damageable, *not* gable.
damascene, *not* keen.
Danegeld, *not* lt.
datum, *plural* **data.**
deaconate, *use* **diaconate.**
debatable, *not* cable.
debonair, *not* aire.
debutant, *feminine* **debutante.**
decennium, *plural* **decennia.**
decern, *distinguish from* **discern.**
decimator, *not* er.
decimetre, *not* er.
decivilize, *not* ise.
decoit, *use* **dacoit.**
decolour, decolorize.
decorator, *not* er.
decrepit, *not* id.
deducible, *not* able.
deemster, *not* demp.
defaceable, *not* cable.
defence, defensible.
defendant, *not* ent.
defer, deferred.
define, definition, definable.
deflect, deflexion.
delf, earthenware, *not* ft.
deliverer, *not* or.
demain, *use* **demesne.**
demarcate, *not* kate.
demeanour, *not* or.
demesne, *not* ain.
demise, *not* ize.
demobilize, *not* ise.
demonetize, *not* ise.
demoralize, *not* ise.
dempster, *use* **deemster.**
demur, demurred.
denarius, *plural* **denarii.**
denationalize, *not* ise.
dentil, *not* el.
deodorize, *not* ise.
dependable, *not* ible.
dependent, *distinguish from* **dependant.**
depicter, *not* or.
depositary, trustee.
depository, storehouse.
depressible, *not* able.
derangeable, *not* gable.
derive, derivation.
descendant, *not* ent.
desert, *distinguish from* **dessert.**
deshabille, *use* dis.
desiccate, *not* dess, icate.
desirable, *not* eable.
desistance, *not* ence.
desolator, *not* er.
despatch, *use* **dispatch.**
desperado, *plural* **desperadoes.**
despise, *not* dis.
dessert, *distinguish from* **desert.**
dessicate, *use* **desiccate.**
destructor, *not* er.
detector, *not* er.
deterrent, *not* erant.
detonator, *not* er.
detractor, *feminine* **detractress.**
develop, *not* pe.
devest, *use* **divest.**
deviator, *not* er.
devise, *not* ize.
deviser, *legal* **devisor.**

dexterous, *not* trous.
dhooly, *use* **doolie.**
dhow, *not* dow.
dhurrie, *not* dur.
diaconate, *not* dea.
diaeresis, *not* die.
diagnosis, *plural* **diagnoses.**
dicky, *not* ey.
dictum. *plural* **dicta.**
didactyl, *not* le.
dieresis, *use* **diaeresis.**
digestible, *not* able.
dike, *not* dy.
dilatable, *not* eable.
dilatation, *not* dilation.
dilator, *not* er.
dilettante, *not* etante; *plural* **dilettanti.**
dinghy, *not* gey.
diocese, diocesan.
diphtheria, *not* dipt.
diphthong, *not* dipt.
disbursement, *not* sment.
disc, *use* **disk.**
discernible, *not* able.
disciplinary, *not* ery.
discoloration, *not* ouration.
discreet, prudent.
discrete, distinct.
disenthral, *not* disi.
disfavour, *not* vor.
disfranchise, *not* ize.
dishabille, *not* **deshabille.**
dishevelled, *not* eled.
disinthral, *use* **disenthral.**
disk, *not* sc.
dismissible, *not* able.
disorganize, *not* ise.
dispatch, *not* des.
dispensable, *not* ible.
dispise, *use* **despise.**
dissoluble, *not* uable.
dissolvable, *not* ible.
dissyllable, *use* **disyllable.**
distension, *not* tion.
distil, *not* ll.
disyllable, *not* diss.
divest, *not* de.
divisor, *not* er.
djinnee, *use* **jinnee.**
doat, *use* **dote.**
doctrinaire, *not* air.
dogate, *not* eate.
doggerel, *not* grel.
dogmatize, *not* ise.
doily, *not* d'oyley.
doleful, *not* ll.
dolour, dolorous.
Domesday Book, *not* Dooms.
dormy, *not* ie.
dose, dosage.
dote, dotage.
dotterel, *not* trel.
double-barrelled, *not* **eled.**
dove-cot, *not* te.
dow, *use* **dhow.**
d'oyley, *use* **doily.**
draft, *distinguish from* **draught.**
draftsman, *distinguish from* **draughtsman.**
dragoman, *plural* **dragomans.**
dramatize, *not* ise.
draught, *distinguish from* **draft.**
draughtsman, *distinguish from* **draftsman.**
driblet, *not* dribb.
drivel, drivelling.
droshky, *not* sky.
drought, *not* uth.
drunkenness, *not* **eness.**
dry, dryly, drier.
dryly, *not* dri.
duel, duelling.
dullness, *not* duln.
dumbfound, *not* dumf.
dungaree, *not* ger.
durrie, *use* **dhurrie.**
dyeing, staining.
dying, about to die.
dyke, *use* **dike.**
dynamo, *plural* **dynamos.**

ebonize, *not* ise.
eburnean, *not* ian.
échelon, *not* esch.
echo, *plural* **echoes.**
economize, *not* ise.
economy, economist.
ecstasy, *not* cy.
ecumenical, *use* **oecumenical.**
edema, *use* **oedema.**
edile, *use* **aedile.**
editor, *not* er.
editress, *not* oress.
eerie, *not* ry.
effluvium, *plural* **effluvia.**
effluxion, *not* ction.
egis, *use* **aegis.**
egret, *distinguish from* **aigrette.**
eigrette, *use* **aigrette.**
eikon, *use* **icon.**
eirenicon, *not* ir.
elater, *not* or.
elector, *not* er.
electress, *not* oress.
eleemosynary, *not* elem.
elegist, *not* giist.
elevator, *not* er.
elf, *plural* **elves.**
eligible, *not* able.
ellipsis, *not* il.
elucidator, *not* er.
embalmment, *not* lment.
embank, *not* im.
embargo, *not* im.
embarkation, *not* cation.
embarrass, *not* aras.
embassy, ambassador.
embed, *not* im.
embitter, *not* im.
embody, *not* im.
embolden, *not* im.
emboss, *not* im.
embrasure, *not* zure.
embroglio, *use* **imbroglio.**
embroil, *not* im.
embryo, *plural* **embryos.**
embue, *use* **imbue.**
emeu, *use* **emu.**
empair, *use* **impair.**
empale, *use* **impale.**
empanel, *not* im; **empanelled.**
empassion, *use* **impassion.**
emphasis, *plural* **emphases.**
emphasize. *not* ise.
employé, *use* **employee.**
empty, emptiness.
emu, *not* emeu.
emulator, *not* er.
enactor, *not* er.
enamel, enamelled.
enamorato, *use* **inamorato.**
encage, *not* in.
encase. *not* in.
enclasp, *not* in.
enclose, *not* in.
encroach, *not* in.
encrust, *not* in.
encumber, *not* in.
encyclopaedia, *not* pedia.
endemnify, *use* **indemnify.**
endenture, *use* **indenture.**
endite, *use* **indite.**
endorse, *not* in.
endure, *not* in.
endways, *not* wise.
energize, *not* ise.
enfeoff, *not* fief.
enfold, *not* in.
enforce, *not* in.
enfranchise, *not* in.
engage, engaging.
engrain, *verb, but* **ingrain**, *adjective.*
engross, *not* in.
engulf, *not* in.
enlargement, *not* gment.
enmesh, *not* imm.
ennui, *not* enui.
enoculate, *use* **inoculate.**
enquire, *use* **inquire.**
enrol, *not* in; **enrolled.**
ensconce, *not* in, se.
ensile, ensilage.
ensnare, *not* in.
enstall, *use* **install.**
ensue, ensuing.
ensure, to make certain; *see* **insure.**
entail, *not* in.
enterprise, *not* ize.
enthral, enthralled.
entitle, *distinguish from* **intitule.**
entrap, *not* in; **entrapped.**
entreat, *not* in.
entrench, *not* in.
entrust, *not* in.
entwine, *not* in.
enure, *use* **inure.**
enveigh, *use* **inveigh.**
enveigle, *use* **inveigle.**
envelop, enwrap.
envelope, wrapper.
enwrap, *not* in; **enwrapped.**
enwreathe, *not* in.
Eolian, *use* **Aeolian.**
eon, *use* **aeon.**
epaulet, epauletted.
ephemera, *plural* **ephemerae.**
ephemeris, *plural* **ephemerides.**
epideictic, *not* iktic.
epigram, *not* imme.
epiornis, *use* **aepyornis.**
epitomize, *not* ise.
equal, equalled.
equalize, *not* ise.
equerry, *not* ery.
equestrian, *feminine* **equestrienne.**
equinox, equinoctial.
equivocator, *not* er.
erector, *not* er.
erpetology, *use* **herpetology.**
erratum, *plural* **errata.**
escallop, *use* **scallop.**
eschalot, *use* **shallot.**
escheator, *not* er.
escritoire, *not* oir.
escutcheon, *not* scut.
Eskimo, *not* Esquimau; *plural* **Eskimos.**
esophagus, *use* **oesophagus.**
Esquimau, *use* **Eskimo.**
esthete, *use* **aesthete.**
estimator, *not* er.
estrangement, *not* gment.
ether, *not* ae.
ethereal, *not* ial.
etherealize, etherize, *not* **ise.**
ethnology, *not* agy.
etiology, *use* **aetiology.**
etiquette, *not* quet.
eucalyptus, *plural* **eucalypti.**
euchre, *not* cre.
eulogize. *not* ise.
euphonize, *not* **ise.**
evade, evadable.
evangelize, *not* **ise.**

evolve, evolvable.
exactor, *not* er.
exalter, *not* or.
Excalibur, *not* bar.
excavator, *not* er.
excellence, *plural* **excellences.**
Excellency, *plural* **Excellencies.**
excerpt, *plural* **excerpts.**
exchangeable, *not* gable.
excisable, *not* cable.
excise, *not* ize.
exciter, *distinguish from* **excitor.**
exclamation, exclamatory.
execute, executant.
executor, *not* er.
executrix, *not* orix.
exemplar, *not* exam.
exercise, *not* ize.
existence, *not* ance.
existible, *not* able.
exorcize, *not* ise.
expense, *not* ce.
experimenter, *not* or.
exploiter, *not* or.
expositor, *not* er.
expostulator, *not* er.
expressible, *not* able.
extemporize, *not* ise.
extendible, *not* able.
extensor, *not* er.
extirpator, *not* er.
extol, extolled.
extorter, *not* or.
extortioner, *not* or.
extractable, *not* ible.
extractor, *not* er.
eyeful, *not* ll.
eyeing, *not* eying.
eyot, *use* **ait.**
eyrie, *use* **aerie.**

facia, shop front tablet ; *see* **fascia.**
facine, *use* **fascine.**
faggot, *not* fagot.
faience, *not* fay.
faint, weak ; *see* **feint.**
fairway, *not* fare.
faithful, faithfully.
fakir, *not* keer.
falderal, *not* folderol.
faldstool, *not* fo.
fal-lal, *not* fallol.
fallible, *not* able.
falucca, *use* **felucca.**
familiarize, *not* ise.
fanfaronade, *not* nnade.
fantasy, *not* ph.
fantom, *use* **phantom.**
farago, *use* **farrago.**
fareway, *use* **fairway.**
farinaceous, *not* ious.
farrago, *not* fara.
farrier, *not* fari.
farther, more distant ; *see* **further.**
fascia, in surgery, etc. ; *see* **facia.**
fascine, *not* fac.
fatiguing, *not* ueing.
faun, *distinguish from* **fawn.**
fayence, *use* **faience.**
feasible, *not* able.
featherfew, *use* **feverfew.**
fecial, *use* **fetial.**
federalize, *not* ise.
feeoff, feff, *use* **feoff.**
feint, pretence ; *see* **faint.**
feldspar, *not* fels.
fellah, *plural* **fellaheen.**
felspar, *use* **feldspar.**
felucca, *not* fal, fil.
femur, *plural* **femora.**
feoff, *not* feco, feff.
feoffor, *not* er.
ferret, ferreted.
ferrule, *not* feru.
fertilize, *not* ise.
fervour, *not* vor.
fetid, *not* foe.
fetish, *not* ich.
feverfew, *not* feather.
fez, *plural* **fezes.**
fiancé, *feminine* **fiancée.**
fiasco, *plural* **fiascos.**
fibre, *not* er.
fibrin, *not* ine.
fidget, fidgeted.
fifty, fiftieth.
filibeg, *not* filli, philli.
filibuster, *not* filli.
filigree, *not* filli.
fillet, filleted.
fillibeg, *use* **filibeg.**
filucca, *use* **felucca.**
finnan, *not* findon.
fiord, *not* fjord.
fisticuffs, *not* fisty.
fizz, *not* fiz.
fjord, *use* **fiord.**
flabbergast, *not* flaba.
flacon, *distinguish from* **flagon**
flageolet, *not* olet.
flagon, *distinguish from* **flacon.**
flambeau, *plural* **flambeaux.**
flamboyant, *not* oiant.
flamingo, *plural* **flamingos.**
flannel, flannelled.
flannelette, *not* llette.
flautist, *not* flu.
flavour, flavourless, *but* **flavorous.**
flawy, *not* ey.
flection, *use* **flexion.**
fledgeling, *not* gling.
flexible, *not* able.
flexion, *not* flect.
flier, *use* **flyer.**
floatation, *use* **flotation.**
floatsam, *use* **flotsam.**
floriate, *not* cate.
flotation, *not* floa.
flotsam, *not* floa.
flugelman, *use* **fugleman.**
fluky, *not* ey.
flunkey, *not* ky.
fluorine, *not* in.
flutist, *use* **flautist.**
fluty, *not* ey.
fluxion, *not* fluct.
fly, *plural* **flies.**
flyer, *not* flier.
fo'c'sle, *use* **forecastle.**
focus, *plural* **foci.**
focused, *not* ssed.
foetid, *use* **fetid.**
fogy, *not* gey.
folderol, *use* **falderal.**
foldstool, *use* **faldstool.**
foliaceous, *not* cious.
follicle, *not* cule.
font, type, *use* **fount.**
foray, *not* ye, rray.
forbear, ancestor, *not* fore.
forbear, forbore, forborne.
forceps, *plural* **forceps, forcepses,** *or* **forcipes.**
forcible, *not* eable.
forcite, *not* site.
forearm, *not* fora.
forecast, *not* forc.
forecastle, *not* fo'c'sle.
forefinger, *not* forf.
forego, go before ; *see* **forgo.**
forehead, *not* forh.
forejudge, judge beforehand ; *see* forjudge.
forel, *not* forr.
foresee, *not* fors.
forestall, *not* fors.
foretell, *not* fort.
forewarn, *not* forw.
forfend, *not* fore.
forgather, *not* fore.
forgettable, *not* etable.
forgivable, *not* eable.
forgo, go without ; *see* **forego.**
forjudge, deprive ; *see* **forejudge.**
formula, *plural* **formulas, formulae.**
forray, *use* **foray.**
forswear, *not* fore.
fosse, *not* foss.
fossilize, *not* ise.
foul, foully.
foundry, *not* ery.
fount, type, *not* font.
framable, *not* eable.
franchise, *not* ize.
frangipane, *not* ni.
fraternize, *not* ise.
freeze, *distinguish from* **frieze.**
freize, *wrong spelling of* **frieze**
frenzy, *not* phrensy.
friar, *not* er.
fricassee, *not* sse.
frier, *use* **fryer.**
frieze, *not* frei.
frisette, *not* ett.
frizz, *not* iz.
frolic, frolicked.
frowsy, *not* uzy.
frumenty, *not* furmety.
frustum, *not* rum.
fryer, *not* fri.
fuchsia, *not* fuschia.
fuel, fuelled.
fugleman, *not* flugel.
fulcrum, *plural* **fulcra.**
fulfil, *not* fill.
fullness, *not* ful.
fumatory, *distinguish from* **fumitory.**
fungus, *plural* **fungi.**
furbelow, *not* ellow.
furmety, *use* **frumenty.**
fur, furry.
further, additional ; *see* **farther.**
fuschia, *use* **fuchsia.**
fuse, *not* ze.
fusee, *not* zee.
fusible, *not* able.
fusilier, *not* eer.
fusillade, *not* ilade.
fuze, *use* **fuse.**
fuzee, *use* **fusee.**

gaberdine, *not* gaba.
gaby, *not* ey.
gage, *distinguish from* **gauge.**
gaiety, *not* yity.
gaillardia, *not* galli.
gaily, *not* yly.
gair-fowl, *use* **gare-fowl.**
gairish, *use* **garish.**
galantine, *not* gall.
galavant, *use* **gallivant.**
galena, *not* aena.
galliot, *use* **galliot.**
galipot, *distinguish from* **gallipot.**
gallaway, *use* **galloway.**
gallimaufry, *not* mawfry.
galliot, *not* gali.
gallipot, *distinguish from* **galipot.**
gallivant, *not* gala, gali.
gallop, galloper.
gallopade, *not* ppade.
galloway, *not* galo, galla.
galop, *distinguish from* **gallop.**
galosh, *not* golosh.

galvanize, *not* ise.
gambier, *not* beer.
gamboge, *not* ooge.
gambol, gambolled.
gammon, *not* gamon.
ganister, *not* gann.
gantlet, *use* **gauntlet.**
gantry, *not* gaun.
gaol, *use* **jail.**
garage, *not* garra.
gardenia, *not* inia.
gare-fowl, *not* gair.
gargoyle, *not* oile.
garish, *not* gair.
garlic, garlicky.
garrotte, *not* garo.
gaselier, *not* gasa.
gasogene, *use* **gazogene.**
gasolene, *not* ine.
gasometer, *not* re.
gasteropod, *not* gastro.
gaucho, *not* gua.
gauffer, *use* **goffer.**
gauge, *not* gua; *distinguish from* **gage.**
gauntlet, *not* gant.
gauntry, *use* **gantry.**
gauzy, *not* ey.
gavotte, *not* ot.
gawby, *use* **gaby.**
gayity, *use* **gaiety.**
gazelle, *not* el.
gazetteer, *not* eter, eteer.
gazogene, *not* gaso.
gecko, *not* geko.
gelatine, *not* in.
gelatinize, *not* ise.
gelder rose, *use* **guelder rose.**
gelsemium, *not* inum.
gemsbok, *not* buck.
genera, *plural of* **genus.**
generalize, *not* ise.
generator, *not* er.
genesis, *plural* **geneses.**
genet, *distinguish from* **jennet.**
genuflexion, *not* ction.
genus, *plural* **genera.**
geologize, *not* ise.
geranium, *plural* **geraniums.**
gerfalcon, *not* gyr, jer.
gerkin, *use* **gherkin.**
gerrymander, *not* je.
gesticulator, *not* er.
gettable, *not* geta.
gewgaw, *not* jewjaw.
geyser, *not* gei.
ghaut, *not* ghat.
gherkin, *not* ger, gur.
ghiaour, *use* **giaour.**
Ghibelline, *not* **Gib.**
ghillie, *use* **gillie.**
ghoul, *not* ool.
giaour, *not* ghi.
gibber, *not* jib.
gibbet, gibbeted, ***not*** jib.
gibe, gibing
Gibeline, *use* **Ghibelline.**
giblets, *not* jib.
gild, *use* **guild.**
Gill, Jack and, *not* Jill.
gillie, *not* ghi.
gillyflower, *not* ji.
gimcrack, ***not*** **ji.**
gimlet, *not* blet.
gimp, *not* gui, gy.
ginkgo, *not* gingko.
gipsy, *not* gyp, sey.
girkin, *use* **gherkin.**
giveable, *not* vable.
gives, fetters, *use* **gyves.**
glacier, *not* glasc.
gladiolus, *plural* **gladioli.**
glaive, *not* ave.
glamour, glamorous.
glary, *not* ey.
Glasgow, Glaswegian.
glassful, *plural* **glassfuls.**
glave, *use* **glaive.**
glazer, *distinguish from* **glazier.**
glengarry, *not* ary.
glissade, *not* glisa.
glose, *use* **gloze.**
glower, *not* glour.
gloze, *not* ose.
glue, gluing.
gluten, *not* in, *but* **glutinous, glutinize.**
glycerine, *not* in.
gnome, *feminine* **gnomide.**
gnu, *plural* **gnus.**
goal, *distinguish from* **gaol.**
goby, *not* ey.
goffer, *not* gau.
goitre, *not* er.
golosh, *use* **galosh.**
good-bye, *not* by.
gool, *use* **ghoul.**
Goorkha, *use* **Gurkha.**
goosey, *not* sie.
gormand, *use* **gourmand.**
gormandize, *not* gour.
gormet, *use* **gourmet.**
gorse, gorsy.
gossip, gossiped.
gossoon, *not* goso.
gouge, *not* gow.
gouk, *use* **gowk.**
goule, *use* **ghoul.**
gourmand, *not* gor.
gourmandize, *use* **gormandize.**
gourmet, *not* gor.
gowk, *not* gouk.
gowl, *use* **ghoul.**
grail, *not* aal.
graminivorous, *not* gramen.
grammetre, *not* er.
gramophone, *not* grama.
granadilla, *not* gren, ila.
grannom, *not* granam.
granter, *legal* **grantor.**
gravel, gravelled.
graves, *use* **greaves.**
gray, *use* **grey.**
grayling, *not* grey.
grazier, *not* zer.
greasy, *not* ey.
greaves, *not* gra.
Greece, Grecian.
grey, *not* gray.
greyling, *use* **grayling.**
griffin, *not* gryphon.
grill, *distinguish from* **grille**
grimy, *not* ey.
grizzly-bear, *not* gris
grogram, *not* an.
groin, *distinguish from* **groyne.**
grosbeak, *not* gross.
gross, *singular and plural.*
grotto, *plural* **grottos.**
grovel, grovelled.
groyne, *distinguish from* **groin**
gruesome, *not* gru, grew.
gryphon, *use* **griffin.**
guacho, *use* **gaucho.**
guage, *wrong spelling of* **gauge.**
guaiacum, *not* icum.
guana, *distinguish from* **guano.**
guarantee, guarantor.
guelder rose, *not* gel.
Guelph, *not* Guelf.
guerdon, *not* en.
guerrilla, warfare, *not* erila.
Guibelline, *use* **Ghibelline.**
guild, *not* gild
guimp, *use* **gimp.**
gullible, *not* able.
gully, *not* ey.
gumption, *not* shion.
gurkin, *use* **gherkin.**
gurnard, *not* net.
gybe, *distinguish from* **gibe.**
gymkhana, *not* kana.
gymp, *use* **gimp.**
gynaeceum, *not* ium.
gynaecology, *not* gyne.
gypsy, *use* **gipsy.**
gyrfalcon, *use* **gerfalcon**
gyves, *not* gi.

habitué, *feminine* **habituée.**
hachisch, *use* **hashish.**
hadji, *not* hajji.
haematic, etc., *not* he.
haemochrome, etc., *not* he.
Haggadah, *not* Hagada.
haggis, *not* ies.
hairbell, *use* **harebell.**
hajji, *use* **hadji.**
halberd, *not* ert.
hallabaloo, *use* **hullabaloo.**
Hallelujah, *not* uiah.
hallo, *not* oa, he.
halm, *use* **haulm.**
halo, *plural* **haloes.**
halyard, *not* halli.
ham, hammy.
hammam, *not* hu, mum.
handful, *plural* **handfuls.**
handicap, handicapped.
handiwork, *not* handy.
handsel, *not* hans.
handywork, *use* **handiwork.**
hangar, aircraft shed.
hanger, sword.
hansel, *use* **handsel.**
hansom cab, *not* some.
haram, *use* **harem.**
harass, *not* harr.
harebell, *not* hair.
harem, *not* ram.
harier, *use* **harrier.**
hark, *not* hea.
harken, *use* **hearken.**
harmonize, *not* ise.
harquebus, *not* ar.
harrier, *not* hari.
hartebeest, *not* harth.
harum-scarum, *not* em.
hashish, *not* chisch.
hauler, *not* ier.
haulm, *not* halm.
hautboy, *use* **oboe.**
havoc, *not* ock.
hazy, *not* ey.
healthful, *not* full.
hearken, *not* har.
heartrending, *not* dering.
heathenize, *not* ise.
hebdomad, *not* ade.
Hebraize, *not* ise.
Hebridean, *not* ian.
hectogram, *not* mme.
hectolitre, *not* er.
hectometre, *not* er.
Hegira, *not* Hej.
heigh-day, *use* **hey-day.**
Hejira, *use* **Hegira.**
hello, *use* **hallo.**
helpmate, *also* **helpmeet.**
hematic, etc., *use* **haem.**
hemochrome, etc., *use* **haem.**
henna, *not* nah.
Heraclean, *not* ian.
herbarium, *plural* **herbaria.**
heritrix, *or* **heritress.**
hero, *plural* **heroes.**

heronry, *not* cry.
hey-day, *not* heigh.
hibernate, *not* hy.
hiccup, *not* cough.
hie, hying.
hillo, *use* **hallo.**
hindrance, *not* derance.
hinge, hinging.
hippodrome, *not* hipo.
hippopotamus, *plural* **hippopotami.**
hirable, *not* reable.
hirly-birly, *use* **hurly-burly.**
history, historian.
hoarhound, *use* **horehound.**
hodge-podge, *use* **hotchpotch**; *distinguish from* **hotchpot.**
hodometer, *not* od.
hoeing, *not* hoi.
hogmanay, *not* ny.
hoiden, *use* **hoyden.**
hoing, *use* **hoeing.**
hokey-pokey, *not* ky.
hole, holey.
hollabaloo, *use* **hullabaloo.**
homing, *not* eing.
hommock, *use* **hummock.**
homoeopath, *not* home.
homonym, *not* yme.
homy, *not* ey.
honeyed, *not* ied.
hookah, *not* huk.
hooping-cough, *use* **whooping-cough.**
hoopoe, *not* poo.
hope, hoping.
horehound, *not* hoar.
hornblende, *not* blend.
horsy, *not* ey.
Hosanna, *not* ah.
hospitaller, *not* aler.
hostler, *use* **ostler.**
hotchpot, *distinguish from* **hotchpotch.**
houdah, *use* **howdah.**
housebote, *distinguish from* **houseboat.**
houyhnhnm, in "Gulliver's Travels."
hoveller, *not* eler.
howdah, *not* hou.
howitzer, *not* tser.
hoyden, *not* hoi.
huckaback, *not* hugga.
Huguenot, *not* onot.
hukah, *use* **hookah.**
hullabaloo, *not* halla, holla.
hullo, *use* **hallo.**
humanize, *not* ise.
humerus, bone of upper arm.
hummock, *not* ho.
humoresque, *not* humour.
humour, humorous.
hurden, *use* **harden.**
hurly-burly, *not* hir, bir.
hurrah, *not* ay.
hurry-scurry, *not* sk.
hussy, *not* zzy.
hyaena, *use* **hyena.**
hybernate, *use* **hibernate.**
hydrangea, *not* ia.
hyena, *not* hyae.
Hygeia, *not* gea.
hying, *not* hie.
hymeneal, *not* ial.
hyperbola, *distinguish from* **hyperbole.**
hyphenize, *not* ise.
hypochondria, *not* condria.
hypotenuse, *not* hypoth.
hypothesis, *plural* **hypotheses.**
hy-spy, game, *not* I spy.
ibex, *plural* **ibexes.**
ibis, *plural* **ibises.**
Icarian, *not* ean.
icon, *not* ik.
ideagraph, *use* **ideograph.**
idealize, *not* ise.
idealogical, *use* **ideological.**
ideograph, *not* idea.
ideological, *not* idea.
idiocy, *not* otcy.
idiosyncrasy, *not* **cy.**
idiotcy, *use* **idiocy.**
idle, idling.
idolater, *not* or.
idolize, *not* ise.
idyll, *not* yl.
ignitible, *not* able.
ignoramus, *plural* **ignoramuses.**
ikon, *use* **icon.**
ilex, *plural* **ilexes.**
illegalize, *not* ise.
illipsis, *use* **ellipsis.**
illustrator, *not* er.
imago, *plural* **imagines.**
imbed, etc., *see* **embed, etc.**
imbrue, *not* em.
immanent, *distinguish from* **imminent.**
immeasurable, *not* eable.
immesh, *use* **enmesh.**
imminent, *distinguish from* **immanent.**
immortalize, *not* ise.
immovable, *not* eable.
impair, *not* em.
impale, *not* em.
impanel, *use* **empanel.**
impassable, *distinguish from* **impassible.**
impassion, *not* em.
impedance, *not* ence.
impel, impelled.
imperil, imperilled.
impostor, *not* er.
impresario, *not* ssario.
impromptu, *not* mtu.
improvise, *not* ize.
inamorato, *feminine* **inamorata.**
incage, *use* **encage.**
incase, *use* **encase.**
incise, *not* ize.
inclasp, *use* **enclasp.**
inclose, *use* **enclose.**
incognito, *plural* **incogniti.**
incroach, *use* **encroach.**
incrust, *use* **encrust.**
incubus, *plural* **incubi.**
incumber, *use* **encumber.**
incur, incurred.
indefensible, *not* able.
indelible, *not* able.
indemnify, *not* en.
indenture, *not* en.
independence, *not* ance.
index, *plural* **indexes,** *but* **indices** *in mathematics.*
indigestible, *not* able.
indiscreet, *distinguish from* **indiscrete.**
indispensable, *not* ible.
indorse, *use* **endorse.**
indraught, *not* aft.
induction, *not* xion.
indue, *use* **endue.**
ineffaceable, *not* cable.
infallible, *not* able.
infer, inferred.
inferable, *not* ible.
inflatable, *not* eable.
inflator, *not* er.
inflexion, *not* ction.
infold, *use* **enfold.**
inforce, *use* **enforce.**
infranchise, *use* **enfranchise.**
infuser, *not* or.
ingrain, *adjective, but* **engrain,** *verb.*
ingross, *use* **engross.**
ingulf, *use* **engulf.**
inheritrix, *or* **inheritress.**
initial, initialed.
innoculate, *use* **inoculate.**
innocuous, *not* ino.
innoxious, *not* ino.
innuendo, *not* inu; *plural* **innuendoes.**
inoculate, *not* inn.
inquire, *not* en; **inquiry.**
inrol, *use* **enrol.**
insistence, *not* ance.
insnare, *use* **ensnare.**
install, *not* en; **instalment.**
instil, instilled.
institutor, *not* er.
instructor, *not* er.
insure, secure against loss; *see* **ensure.**
intail, *use* **entail.**
inter, interred.
intermit, intermitting.
interpellate, *distinguish from* **interpolate.**
interpose, *not* en.
interpret, *not* en.
interpreter, *not* or.
interrupter, *not* or.
inthral, *use* **enthral.**
intitule, *distinguish from* **entitle.**
intrap, *use* **entrap.**
intreat, *use* **entreat.**
intrench, *use* **entrench.**
intrust, *use* **entrust.**
intwine, *use* **entwine.**
inuendo, *use* **innuendo.**
inure, *not* en.
inveigh, *not* en.
inveigle, *not* en.
inventor, *not* er.
inweave, *not* en.
inwrap, *use* **enwrap.**
inwreathe, *use* **enwreathe.**
ipecacuanha, *not* ana.
Ipomoea, *not* aea.
irenicon, *use* **eirenicon.**
iresistible, *use* **irresistible.**
iridescent, *not* irri.
iris, *plural* **irises.**
iron-mould, *not* mold.
irreconcilable, *not* eable.
irrefragable, *not* ible.
irrelevant, *not* ire.
irresistible, *not* iri, able.
isosceles, *not* seles.
I spy, game, *use* **hy-spy.]**
italicize, *not* ise.
ivy, *plural* **ivies.**

Jack and Jill, *use* **Jack and Gill.**
Jacobite, Jacobean.
jactation, *distinguish from* **jactitation.**
Jaggernaut, *use* **Juggernaut.**
jail, *not* gaol.
jalap, *not* joll.
jam, jammed.
janizary, *not* issary.
janty, *use* **jaunty.**
japan, japanned.
jar, jarred.
jargon, *not* goon.
jarvey, *not* vie.
jasmine, *not* jessa.
jaunty, *not* jan.
jelly, jellify.
jennet, *distinguish from* **genet.**

jeopardize, *not* ise.
jeremiad, *not* de.
jerfalcon, *use* **gerfalcon.**
jerrymander, *use* **gerrymander.**
jessamine, *use* **jasmine.**
jewel, jewelled.
jewjaw, *use* **gewgaw.**
jibber, *use* **gibber.**
jiblet, *use* **giblet.**
jiffy, *not* cy.
Jill, Jack and, *use* **Jack and Gill.**
jilliflower, *use* **gillyflower.**
jimcrack, *use* **gimcrack.**
Jingo, *plural* **Jingoes.**
jinnee, *not* ginnee.
jinricksha, *not* rickshaw.
jiu-jitsu, *not* ju.
jodel, *use* **yodel.**
jog-trot, *not* job.
John dory, *not* ey.
jole, *use* **jowl.**
jollop, *use* **jalap.**
jorum, *not* am.
jostle, *not* ju.
jot, jotted.
joust, *not* just.
jowl, *not* jole.
judgment, *not* ement.
jug, jugged.
Juggernaut, *not* Ja.
ju-jitsu, *use* **jiu-jitsu.**
julep, *not* ap.
junket, junketed.
just, *use* **joust.**
justiciar, *not* er, tiar.
justle, *use* **jostle.**
jut, jutted.

Kaaba, *use* **Caaba.**
kaava, *use* **kava.**
kabbala, *use* **cabbala.**
kadi, *use* **cadi.**
Kafir, *not* Kaff.
kaftan, *use* **caftan.**
kail-yard, Scottish; *same as* **kale-yard.**
kaiman, *use* **cayman.**
Kainozoic, *use* **Cainozoic.**
kalendar, *use* **calendar.**
kale-yard, *but see* **kail-yard.**
kaliph, *use* **caliph.**
kalmia, *not* cal.
kamarband, *use* **cummerbund.**
karat, *use* **carat.**
katalysis, *use* **catalysis.**
kathode, *use* **cathode.**
kation, *use* **cation.**
katsup, *use* **ketchup.**
kava, *not* kaa.
kavass, *not* ca.
kayak, *not* kai, ki.
keelhaul, *not* awl.
keelson, *use* **kelson.**
kelpie, *not* py.
kelson, *not* keel.
kennel, kennelled.
kephalic, *use* **cephalic.**
keramic, *use* **ceramic.**
kerbstone, *not* cu.
kernel, kernelled.
kerseymere, distinguish from **kersey.**
ketchup, *not* cat, katsup.
key, wharf, *use* **quay.**
khalif, *use* **caliph.**
khedival, *not* ial.
Khedive, *feminine* **Khediva.**
Khoran, *use* **Koran.**
kiak, *use* **kayak.**
kidnap, kidnapped.
kilolitre, *not* er.
kilometre, *not* er.
kinaesthesis, *not* kine.
kinematograph, *not* cine.
kiosk, *not* que.
kirbstone, *use* **kerbstone.**
kit-cat, *not* kat.
klepsydra, *use* **clepsydra.**
kleptomania, *not* clep.
klinometer, *use* **clinometer.**
kneel, kneeling.
knick-knack, *not* nicknack.
knight-errant, *plural* **knights-errant.**
knit, knitted.
knot, knotted.
knowledgeable, *not* gable.
knur, *not* nurr.
knurl, *not* nurl.
koh-i-noor, *not* nur.
kohlrabi, *not* by.
koodoo, *use* **kudu.**
koomiss, *use* **kumiss.**
Koord, *use* **Kurd.**
kopeck, *use* **copeck.**
kopje, *not* pie.
koprolite, *use* **coprolite.**
Koran, *not* Kho.
kosher, *not* co.
kotow, *not* kow-tow.
koumiss, *use* **kumiss.**
kow-tow, *use* **kotow.**
kreosote, *use* **creosote.**
krypton, *not* cry.
kudu, *not* koodoo.
kumiss, *not* koo, kou.
kummerbund, *use* **cummerbund.**
Kurd, *not* Koo.
Kymric, *use* **Cymric.**

laager, camp, *distinguish from* **lager.**
label, labelled.
labour, laborious.
lac, *not* lakh.
lachrymal, *not* lacri.
lackadaisical, *not* daysical.
lacker, *use* **lacquer.**
lackey, *not* quey.
laconic, *not* ick.
lacquer, *not* ker.
lacrimal, *use* **lachrymal.**
lager, *distinguish from* **laager.**
lagoon, *not* une.
lakh, *use* **lac.**
lama, *distinguish from* **llama.**
landaulet, carriage.
landaulette, motor-car.
landgrave, landgraviate.
languor, *not* gor.
lanolin, *not* ine.
lantern, *not* thorn.
lanyard, *not* iard.
lap, lapped.
lapel, *not* elle; **lapelled.**
lapsable, *not* ible.
Laputan, *not* ian.
largess, *not* esse.
lariat, *not* rriet.
larrikin, *not* lari.
larva, *plural* **larvae.**
larynx, *plural* **larynges.**
lasso, lassoed.
lath, *distinguish from* **lathe.**
laurel, laurelled.
laverock, *not* lavr.
lazaretto, *not* ret, eto.
laze, lazy.
leaf-mould, *not* mold.
leaned, *or* **leant.**
learned, *or* **learnt.**
lectern, *not* urn.
ledgerdemain, *use* **legerdemain.**
leef, *use* **lief.**
leeming, *use* **lemming.**
legalize, *not* ise.
legerdemain, *not* ledg.
legitimize, *not* ise.
leitmotif, *not* iv.
leming, *use* **lemming.**
lemma, *plural,* **lemmas, lemmata.**
lemming, *not* leem, lem.
lens, *plural* **lenses.**
leprechaun, *not* lepra.
leteral, *use* **literal.**
lettuce, *not* ice.
level, levelled.
lewis, *not* iss, luis.
liaison, *not* liay.
libel, libelled.
library, librarian.
libretto, *plural* **libretti.**
licence, *noun*; **license,** *verb.*
licentiate, *not* ciate.
lich, *not* ly.
lichi, *use* **litchi.**
lickerish, *not* liquor.
licorice, *use* **liquorice.**
lief, *not* leef.
life-assurance, *not* ins.
likeable, *not* lika.
Lilliputian, *not* Lili.
limbo, *plural* **limbos.**
lime, limy.
linable, *not* cable.
linament, *use* **liniment.**
lineal, linear, *not* lini.
lineament, *not* lini.
liniment, *not* lina.
Linnaean, *but* **Linnean Society.**
linsey-woolsey, *not* nsy, lsy.
lionize, *not* ise.
liquefy, *not* ify.
liquidambar, *not* er.
liquorice, *not* lico.
liquorish, *use* **lickerish.**
lira, *plural* **lire.**
lissom, *not* me.
litchi, *not* lic, lychee.
literal, literally.
literal, *not* let.
literally, *not* aly.
literati, *not* litt.
litigious, *not* cous.
litre, *not* er.
litterati, *use* **literati.**
liveable, *not* liva.
llama, *distinguish from* **lama.**
loadstar, *use* **lodestar.**
loadstone, *not* lode.
loath, *not* loth; *distinguish from* **loathe.**
local, *not* ale.
localize, *not* ise.
loch, Scottish lake, *not* lock.
lodestar, *not* load.
lodestone, *use* **loadstone.**
loess, *not* löss.
logan-stone, *not* logg.
loggia, *not* logia.
lollipop, *not* ypop.
longe, *use* **lunge.**
longeval, *not* aeval.
lope, loping.
löss, *use* **loess.**
loth, *use* **loath.**
lotus, *not* tos.
lounge, lounging.
lour, *not* wer.
louver, *not* vre.
lovable, *not* eable.
lower, *use* **lour.**
Lucan, of St. Luke, *not* kan.
lucerne, plant, *not* rn.
luis, *use* **lewis.**
lunge, *not* lo.

lupine, plant, *not* in.
lych, *use* **lich.**
lychee, *use* **litchi.**
lyddite, *not* lydi.
lynx, *plural* **lynxes.**

macaroni, *not* macc.
macaw, *not* cao.
Maccabean, *not* aean.
Machiavellian, *not* Macch.
mackintosh, *not* maci.
macle, *distinguish from* **mackle.**
macrocosm, *distinguish from* **microcosm.**
maelstrom, *not* mal.
maenad, *not* me.
maggot, *distinguish from* **magot.**
magnify, magnified.
magot, *distinguish from* **maggot.**
Mahamedan, *use* **Mohammedan.**
mahlstick, *use* **maulstick.**
mahlstrom, *use* **maelstrom.**
Mahomedan, *use* **Mohammedan.**
Mahratta, *not* Marh.
maisonnette, *not* onette.
malcontent, *not* male.
malmsey, *not* sie.
malpractice, *not* se.
malstrom, *use* **maelstrom.**
mama, *use* **mamma.**
Mameluke, *not* Meme, Mama.
mamma, *not* mama.
manacle, *not* icle.
manage, manageable.
manakin, *use* **manikin.**
mandarin, *not* ine.
mandatary, *usual for noun*; **mandatory** *for adjective.*
mandioc, *use* **manioc.**
mandolin, *not* ine.
mandrel, *not* il; *distinguish from* **mandrill.**
mangel-wurzel, *not* mangold.
mango, *plural* **mangoes.**
mangold-wurzel, *use* **mangel-wurzel.**
Manichaean, *not* can.
manicle, *use* **manacle.**
manifesto, *plural* **manifestoes.**
manikin, *not* mana.
maniplies, *use* **manyplies.**
manipulator, *not* er.
manoeuvre, *not* mane.
mantelet, *not* tlet.
mantelpiece, *not* mantle.
mantlet, *use* **mantelet.**
manyplies, *not* mani, mony.
mar, marred.
marabou, *distinguish from* **marabout.**
Maraschino, *not* queno.
marionette, *not* nnette.
marline-spike, *not* in, ing.
maroon, *not* morone.
marquess, *not* is.
marriageable, *not* gable.
marshal, marshalled.
marten, *distinguish from* **martin.**
martyrize, *not* ise.
marvel, marvelled.
mashie, *not* y.
masseur, *feminine* **masseuse.**
mastic, *not* ick.
matador, *not* ore.
materialize, *not* ise.
matriculator, *not* er.
matrix, *plural* **matrices.**
mattress, *not* matr.
maulstick, *not* mahl.
Mauresque, *use* **Moresque.**
mausoleum, *plural* **mausolea.**
maximum, *plural* **maxima.**
mayonnaise, *not* onaisse.
mazurka, *not* ourka.
meagre, *not* er.
mealie, maize, *not* ly.
measurable, *not* cable.
medal, medallist.
mediaeval, *not* eval.
megrim, *not* migraine.
memento, *plural* **mementoes.**
Memluke, *use* **Mameluke.**
memorandum, *plural* **memoranda.**
memorize, *not* ise.
menagerie, *not* ery.
mendacity, *distinguish from* **mendicity.**
merchandise, *not* ize.
mercurialize, *not* ise.
meridian, *not* can.
mesmerize, *not* ise.
metal, metalled.
meter, *distinguish from* **metre.**
metropolis, *plural* **metropolises.**
mezereon, *not* eum.
miasma, *plural* **miasmata.**
microcosm, *distinguish from* **macrocosm.**
midriff, *not* if.
mignonette, *not* min.
migraine, *use* **megrim.**
mileage, *not* mila.
millenary, *not* nnary.
millennial, *not* enial.
millennium, *not* enum.
millepede, *not* milli.
millimetre, *not* er.
millionaire, *not* nnaire.
millipede, *use* **millepede.**
mimic, mimicked.
minever, *use* **miniver.**
minimize, *not* ise.
minimum, *plural* **minima.**
miniver, *not* mine.
minuet, *not* ette.
mirk, *use* **murk.**
miscible, *not* able.
misdemeanour, *not* or.
Mishna, Jewish traditions, *not* nah.
misle, *use* **mizzle.**
misletoe, *use* **mistletoe.**
misprint, *not* miss.
missel-thrush, *use* **mistle-thrush.**
mistakable, *not* eable.
mistle, *use* **mizzle.**
mistle-thrush, *not* missel.
mistletoe, *not* misle.
mitreing, *not* ring.
mizen, *not* mizz.
mizzle, *not* sle, stle.
mob, mobbed.
mobilize, *not* ise.
moccasin, *not* moca, ssin.
model, modelled.
modernize, *not* ise.
modify, modified.
Mohammedan, *not* Mahom, Muhamma.
molasses, *not* moll.
mold, *use* **mould.**
mollusc, *not* sk.
molt, *use* **moult.**
momentum, *plural* **momenta.**
moneys, *not* ies.
mongoose, *not* mun; *plural* **mongooses.**
monyplies, *use* **manyplies.**
mop, mopped.
mope, moping.
moralize, *not* ise.
Moresque, *not* Mau.
morone, *use* **maroon.**
morris-dance, *not* morrice.
mortise, *not* ice.
Moslem, *not* Muslim.
mosquito, *plural* **mosquitoes.**
motley, *not* ly.
motto, *plural* **mottoes.**
mouezzin, *use* **muezzin.**
moujik, *use* **muzhik.**
mould, *not* mold.
moult, *not* molt.
mouse, mousy.
moustache, *not* mus.
movable, *not* eable.
mucous, *adjective,* **mucus,** *noun.*
mud, muddied.
muezzin, *not* mou.
Muhammadan, *use* **Mohammedan.**
mulatto, *plural* **mulattos, mulattoes.**
mulch, *not* sh.
mulligatawny, *not* muli.
mullion, *not* munn.
mulsh, *use* **mulch.**
mungoose, *use* **mongoose.**
municipalize, *not* ise.
munnion, *use* **mullion.**
murk, *not* mi.
murrhine, *not* my.
muscadel, *not* tel.
Muslim, *use* **Moslem.**
Mussulman, *plural* **Mussulmans.**
mustache, *use* **moustache.**
muzhik, *not* moujik.
mycelium, *plural* **mycelia.**
myrobalan, *not* bolan.
myrrhine, *use* **murrhine.**
myrtle, *not* el.
mythopoeic, *not* peic.

nacre, *not* er.
naive, *not* if.
nameable, *not* able.
nankeen, *not* kin.
nap, napped.
naphtha, *not* napt.
narcissus, *plural* **narcissi.**
narwhal, *not* wal.
nasturtium, *not* ian.
nationalize, *not* ise.
naturalize, *not* ise.
naught, *not* nought, ought.
nautch, *not* nat.
nautilus, *plural* **nautili.**
nebula, *plural* **nebulae.**
nectar, nectarean, nectarial.
negligible, *not* eable.
negotiate, *not* ciate.
Negrito, *plural* **Negritos.**
negro, *plural* **negroes.**
negroid, *not* coid.
neice, *wrong spelling of* **niece.**
neighbour, *not* or.
nereid, *plural* **nereids.**
net, *not* tt; **netted.**
nett, *use* **net.**
neutralize, *not* ise.
news-vendor, *not* er.
niblick, *not* lic.
niche, *not* ch.
nickel, *not* le.
nicknack, *use* **knick-knack.**
nidus, *plural* **nidi.**
niece, *not* nei.
nimbus, *plural* **nimbuses.**
ninth, *not* neth.
nip, nipped.
nitrate, *distinguish from* **nitrite.**
nitroglycerine, *not* in.
no, *plural* **noes.**
nod, nodded.
noisy, *not* cy.
nonesuch, *use* **nonsuch.**
nonplus, nonplussed.
nonsuch, *not* none.

nosey, *not* sy.
notice, noticeable, noticing.
notify, notified.
nought, *use* **naught.**
novelette, *not* ct.
novitiate, *not* ciate.
nucleus, *plural* **nuclei.**
nullify, nullified.
numskull, *not* numb.
nurl, *use* **knurl.**
nurr, *use* **knur.**
nurse, nursing.
nut, nutting.

oasis, *plural* **oases.**
obelisk, *not* isc.
obliger, *legal* **obligor.**
oboe, *not* hautboy.
obsolescence, *not* esence.
obstructor, *not* er.
occur, occurred.
ochone, *use* **ohone.**
octahedron, *not* octo.
octaroon, *use* **octoroon.**
odometer, *use* **hodometer.**
Odontoglossum, *not* osum.
odour, odoriferous.
oecumenical, *not* ecu.
oesophagus, *not* eso.
offence, offensive.
ohone, *not* och.
oleitorous, *not* olif.
omelet, *not* ette.
omit, omitted.
omnibus, *plural* **omnibuses.**
oneself, *not* one's self.
ooze, oozy.
ophicleide, *not* cid.
ophthalmia, *not* opt.
opodeldoc, *not* dildoc.
opoponax, *not* opopa.
oppressor, *not* er.
orang-utan, *not* our.
oreography, *use* **orography.**
oreology, *use* **orology.**
organdie, *not* di.
organize, *not* ise.
orgy, *plural* **orgies.**
Orientalize, *not* ise.
oriflamme, *not* flamb.
ormolu, *not* ulu.
orography, *not* oreo.
orology, *not* oreo.
orthopaedic, *not* pedic.
osculatory, *not* ery.
ossein, *not* ine.
ostensible, *not* able.
ostler, *not* ho.
ostracize, *not* ise.
ostreiculture, *not* ostra.
otto, *use* **attar.**
Ottoman, *plural* **Ottomans.**
ought, nothing, *use* **naught.**
ourang-outang, *use* **orang-utan.**
ousel, *use* **ouzel.**
overburden, *not* then.
ovum, *plural* **ova.**
oxide, *not* yde.
oxidize, *not* ise.
oxygen, *not* oxi.
oyez, *not* es.

pacha, *use* **pasha.**
pad, padded.
Padishah, *not* Pads.
paean, *not* pean ; *distinguish from* **paeon, peon.**
paedagogy, *use* **pedagogy.**
Paedobaptism, *not* Pe.
paedeutics, *not* pai.
paeon, *distinguish from* **paean, peon.**
paeony, *use* **peony.**
paganize, *not* ise.
paginate, *not* enate.
paideutics, *use* **paedeutics.**
paijamas, *use* **pyjamas.**
paillasse, *not* allia.
palaeobotany, etc., *not* paleo.
palaestra, *not* pale.
palankeen, *not* quin.
palazzo, *plural* **palazzi.**
paleobotany, etc., *use* **palaeo.**
palette, *distinguish from* **pallet**
palladium, *not* pala.
pallet, *distinguish from* **palette.**
palliasse, *use* **paillasse.**
palliator, *not* er.
panacea, panaceist.
pandit, *use* **pundit.**
panegyric, *not* iric.
panel, panelled.
panic, panicky.
pannel, *use* **panel.**
pannikin, *not* pana.
pantograph, *not* panta.
papal, papacy.
papyrus, *plural* **papyri.**
paradisaical, *not* iacal.
paraffin, *not* afine.
parakeet, *not* quet.
paralipsis, *not* eipsis.
parallel, paralleled.
parallelepiped, *not* ipiped.
paralyse, *not* ise.
paraphernalia, *not* paraf.
paraquet, *use* **parakeet.**
parcel, parcelled.
parenthesis, *plural* **parentheses.**
parenthesize, *not* ise.
pari-mutuel, *not* al.
parlour, *not* or.
parochialize, *not* ise.
paroquet, *use* **parakeet.**
paroxysm, *not* ism.
parquetry, *not* tery.
parr, fish, *not* par.
parrakeet, *use* **parakeet.**
parsimony, *not* parci.
participator, *not* er.
parti-coloured, *not* party.
particularize, *not* ise.
partisan, *not* zan.
party-coloured, *use* **parti-coloured.**
parvenu, *feminine* **parvenue.**
pasha, *not* cha.
passable, *distinguish from* **passible.**
pastel, *not* le.
pasteurize, *not* ise.
pastille, *not* til.
pat, patted.
patchouli, *not* ly.
paten, *not* in.
paterfamilias, *plural* **patresfamilias.**
patin, *use* **paten.**
patrol, patrolled.
patronize, *not* ise.
pauperize, *not* ise.
pavilion, *not* llion.
paviour, *not* ier.
peacock, *female* **peahen.**
pebble, pebbly.
peccadillo, *plural* **peccadilloes.**
peccary, *not* ari.
peculator, *not* er.
pedagogy, *not* paed.
pedal, pedalled.
pedlar, *not* er, ddler.
Pedobaptism, *use* **Paedobaptism.**
peewit, *use* **pewit.**
pekoe, *not* kho.
pemmican, *not* pemi.
penalize, *not* ise.
pencil, pencilled.
pendant, *noun*, **pendent,** *adjective.*
pendulum, *plural* **pendulums.**
penguin, *distinguish from* **pinguin.**
penny, pennies, pence.
pentagraph, *use* **pantograph.**
pentstemon, *not* pens.
peon, *distinguish from* **paean, paeon.**
peony, *not* pae.
pepsin, *not* ine.
perceivable, *not* eable.
perceptible, *not* able.
perfecter, *not* or.
perforator, *not* er.
peritoneum, *not* aeum.
periwig, *not* perr.
permissible, *not* able.
permit, permitted.
persiflage, *not* perse.
persimmon, *not* mon.
persistent, *not* ant.
personnel, *not* onel.
persuasible, *not* able.
perturber, *not* or.
peruke, *not* que.
petal, petalled.
petit, *feminine* **petite.**
petrel, *not* erel.
pewit, *not* pee.
phaenogam, *use* **phenogam.**
phaenomenon, *use* **phenomenon.**
philibeg, *use* **filibeg.**
philippic, *not* ipic.
philosophize, *not* ise.
philtre, *not* er.
phoenix, *not* phe.
phosphorus, *noun*, **phosphorous,** *adjective.*
phrensy, *use* **frenzy.**
phthisis, *not* phti.
physic, physicked.
pie, mix, *not* pye, pi.
piebald, *not* pye.
pigmy, *use* **pygmy.**
pigsty, pigsties.
pilot, piloted.
pimento, *not* ta.
pinguin, *distinguish from* **penguin.**
pistachio, *not* cho.
pittance, *not* pita.
pix, *use* **pyx.**
pixy, *not* xie.
plafond, *not* platf.
plagiarize, *not* ise.
plague, plaguily.
plain-sailing, *distinguish from* **plane-sailing.**
planchet, *distinguish from* **planchette.**
plaster, *not* plai.
plateau, *plural* **plateaux.**
plausible, *not* able.
playwright, *not* writer.
pleasurable, *not* eable.
plebeian, *not* bian.
plebiscite, *not* isite.
plod, plodder.
plough, *not* ow.
plum, *distinguish from* **plumb.**
pluviometer, *not* pluvia.
poignard, *use* **poniard.**
poinsettia, *not* points.
polarize, *not* ise.
polyanthus, *not* os.
polyglot, *not* tt.
polyhedron, *not* polye.
polyp, *not* ype.
polypus, *plural* **polypi.**
polyzoon, *plural* **polyzoa.**
pomelo, *not* pumm.
pommel, *not* pum.
Pompeian, *not* pian.
poniard, *not* poign.

pontiff, pontifical.
popularize, *not* ise.
Portuguese, *not* gese.
pose, posing.
poste restante, *not* post.
posthumous, *not* postu, mus.
postilion, *not* llion.
postumous, *use* **posthumous.**
posy, *not* sey ; *plural* **posies.**
pot, potted, *distinguish from* **pott.**
potato, *plural* **potatoes.**
poteen, *not* theen.
pott, *distinguish from* **pot.**
pourtray, *use* **portray.**
praam, *use* **pram.**
practice, *noun,* **practise,** *verb.*
praemunire, *not* pre.
praenomen, *use* **prenomen.**
praepositor, *use* **prepositor.**
praetor, *not* pre.
pram, *not* aam.
pratique, *not* ic.
precentor, *not* er.
preceptor, *not* er.
precession, *not* esion.
precursor, *not* er.
predictor, *not* er.
predilection, *not* iction.
pre-eminent, *not* ant.
prefer, preferable, preferred.
prejudgment, *not* gement.
premise, *not* ss.
premunire, *use* **praemunire.**
prenomen, *not* prae.
prepositor, *not* prae.
prestige, *not* ege.
presume, presumably.
pretence, *not* se.
pretension, pretentious.
preterit, *not* ite.
pretor, *use* **praetor.**
preventive, *not* tative.
primeval, *not* aeval.
principal, *distinguish from* **principle.**
proboscis, *plural* **proboscides.**
producible, *not* able.
programme, *not* am.
projector, *not* er.
pronounce, pronunciation.
propel, propelled.
prophecy, *noun,* **prophesy,** *verb.*
proselytize, *not* ise.
prospector, *not* er.
protégé, *feminine* **protégée.**
protester, *not* or.
protractor, *distinguish from* **protracter.**
proviso, *plural* **provisos.**
puggree, *not* puga.
pulverize, *not* ise.
pummel, *use* **pommel.**
pummelo, *use* **pomelo.**
pundit, *not* pan.
pupa, *plural* **pupae.**
purchasable, *not* eable.
putrefy, *not* ify.
putt, in golf, *not* put.
pye, *use* **pie.**
pyebald, *use* **piebald.**
pygmy, *not* pi.
pyjamas, *not* pai.
pyx, *not* pi.

quarrel, quarrelled.
quarte, in fencing, *use* **carte.**
quartet, *not* ette.
quaterfoil, *use* **quatrefoil.**
quay, *not* key.
queue, *not* cue.
quinsy, *not* cy.
quintet, *not* ette.
quit, quitted.
rabdomancy, *use* **rhabdomancy.**
raccoon, *use* **racoon.**
racket, *not* quet.
radiator, *not* er.
radius, *plural* **radii.**
radix, *plural* **radices.**
rag, ragged.
ram, rammed.
ramekin, *not* quin.
rancour, rancorous.
ranee, *not* ni.
rap, rapped.
rarefy, *not* ify.
rarity, *not* ety.
rase, *use* **raze.**
rat, ratting.
ratable, *use* **rateable.**
ratan, *use* **rattan.**
rateable, *not* table.
rationalize, *not* ise.
rattan, *not* ratan.
ravel, ravelled.
raze, *not* se.
realize, *not* ise.
rebel, rebelled.
rebut, rebutted.
receivable, *not* eable.
recognize, *not* ise.
reconcilable, *not* eable.
reconnaissance, *not* oisance.
reconnoitre, *not* er.
rectify, rectified.
recur, recurred.
redoubt, *not* ut.
reducible, *not* eable.
refer, referring.
refit, refitted.
reflector, *not* er.
refractor, *not* er.
refrangible, *not* able.
regenerator, *not* er.
registrable, *not* erable.
regret, regretted.
regulator, *not* er.
relapse, relapsable.
relater, *legal* **relator.**
releaser, *legal* **releasor.**
rely, relied.
remissible, *not* able.
remit, remittance.
remonstrator, *not* er.
removable, *not* eable.
renovator, *not* er.
reorganize, *not* ise.
repair, reparable.
repel, repelled.
replaceable, *not* cable.
reply, replied.
reprehensible, *not* able.
representable, *not* ible.
repressible, *not* able.
reprise, reprisal.
reproducible, *not* able.
reproof, *noun,* **reprove,** *verb.*
repudiator, *not* er.
reserver, *legal* **reservor.**
residuum, *plural* **residua.**
resin, *distinguish from* **rosin.**
resistance, *not* ence.
resolvable, *not* eable.
respirator, *not* er.
responsible, *not* able.
restorable, *not* eable.
resume, resuming.
resuscitate, *not* sitate.
retraceable, *not* cable.
retractor, *not* er.
revel, revelled.
reverie, *not* ry.
reversible, *not* able.
revise, revision, revisable.
reviver, *legal* **revivor.**
revoke, revocable.
revolutionize, *not* ise.
rhabdomancy, *not* rab.
rhapsodize, *not* ise.
rhinoceros, *plural* **rhinoceroses.**
rhodomontade, *use* **rodomontade**
rhombus, *plural* **rhombi.**
rhyme, *distinguish from* **rime.**
rhythm, *not* ry.
rib, ribbed.
ribbon, *not* riband.
rickety, *not* tty.
rickshaw, *use* **jinricksha.**
ricochet, ricochetted.
rid, ridded.
ridable, *not* ridea.
ridge, ridgy.
rifle, rifling.
rigor, *distinguish from* **rigour.**
rigour, rigorous.
rim, rimmed.
rime, *distinguish from* **rhyme.**
riposte, *not* st.
ripple, ripply.
risible, *not* able.
rival, rivalled.
rivel, rivelled.
rivet, riveted.
roc, *not* rok.
rodomontade, *not* rho.
roisterer, *not* roy.
rok, *use* **roc.**
rondeau, *plural* **rondeaux.**
rose, rosy,
rosin, *distinguish from* **resin.**
rostrum, *plural* **rostra.**
rosy, *not* ey.
rot, rotted.
rotator, *not* er.
rowley-powley, *use* **roly-poly.**
rowlock, *not* roll.
roysterer, *use* **roisterer.**
Rubicon, *not* an.
rudd, *not* rud.
rule, ruling.
rum, rummy.
ruminator, *not* er.
rut, rutted.

sabretache, *not* ash.
saccharimeter, *not* ometer.
sacrilege, *not* sacre.
salaam, *not* lam.
saleable, *not* lable.
saltpetre, *not* er.
salutary, *not* ory.
salver, *distinguish from* **salvor.**
salvo, *plural* **salvos, salvoes.**
salvor, *distinguish from* **salver.**
sanatory, *distinguish from* **sanitary.**
sandal, sandalled.
sanitary, *distinguish from* **sanatory.**
Sanskrit, *not* crit.
sarcenet, *use* **sarsenet.**
sarcophagus, *plural* **sarcophagi.**
sarsenet, *not* sarc.
sassafras, *not* sasse.
satirize, *not* ise.
savanna, *not* ah.
savant, *feminine* **savante.**
scalable, *not* eable.
scallawag, *not* scally.
scallop, *not* es, sco.
scan, scanned.
scandalize, *not* ise.
scarabaeus, *plural* **scarabaei.**
scarlatina, *not* ctina.
scathe, scatheless.
scenario, *plural* **scenarii.**
sceptic, *not* sk.
schottische, *not* ish.
sciagraph, *use* **skiagraph.**

scimitar, *not* sk.
scollop, *use* **scallop.**
scratch-cradle, *use* **cat's-cradle.**
scrutator, *not* er.
scrutinize, *not* ise.
sculk, *use* **skulk.**
scull, *distinguish from* **skull.**
scutcheon, *use* **escutcheon.**
scymitar, *use* **scimitar.**
seamstress, *not* semp.
sear, *distinguish from* **sere.**
secrecy, *not* sy.
secretariat, *not* ate.
secretary, *distinguish from* **secretory.**
secularize, *not* ise.
secund, *distinguish from* **second.**
Sedlitz powder, *use* **Seidlitz powder.**
seducible, *not* able.
seethe, *not* th.
Seidlitz powder, *not* Sed.
seize, *distinguish from* **seise.**
selector, *not* er.
selvage, *not* edge.
sempstress, *use* **seamstress.**
senator, *not* er.
sensible, *not* able.
sensualize, *not* ise.
separator, *not* er.
septicaemia, *not* emia.
septum, *plural* **septa.**
sere, *distinguish from* **sear.**
serge, *distinguish from* **cierge.**
serif *not* ce, iph.
serum, *plural* **sera.**
serviceable, *not* cable.
servitor, *not* er.
sestet, *not* sex.
settler, *legal* **settlor.**
sextet, *use* **sestet.**
shallot, *not* esch.
shammy leather, *use* **chamois leather.**
shanty, sea ditty, *not* chanty.
shapeable, *not* pable.
sheaf, *plural* **sheaves.**
shear, *distinguish from* **sheer.**
sheath, *noun*, **sheathe,** *verb.*
sheikh, *not* ik.
shekarry, *use* **shikaree.**
sheldrake, *not* shell.
shelf, *plural* **shelves.**
shellac, *not* **shelac**
shelve, shelving.
sheriff, *not* if.
shew, *Scottish and Biblical, otherwise use* **show.**
shikaree, *not* **shekarry.**
shillelagh, *not* lalagh.
shoe, shoeing.
shovel, shovelled.
show, *but see* **shew.**
shrivel, shrivelled.
sibyl, *not* **sybil.**
sice, *use* **syce.**
signal, signaller.
signalize, *not* ise.
signatory, *not* ary.
sillabub, *not* sy.
silvan, *use* **sylvan.**
simile, *plural* **similes.**
simoom, *not* ou.
siphon, *not* sy.
siren, *not* sy.
sirocco, *not* sci.
sirup, *use* **syrup.**
sizable, *not* eable.
skain, *use* **skein.**
skee, *use* **ski.**
skein, *not* ska.
ski, *not* skee.
skiagraph, *not* sci.
skilful, *not* skill.
skimitar, *use* **scimitar.**
skulk, *not* sc.
skull, *distinguish from* **scull.**
sleight, *distinguish from* **slight.**
slew, *distinguish from* **slue.**
slight, *distinguish from* **sleight.**
slily, *use* **slyly.**
sloid, *not* sloyd.
slue, *distinguish from* **slew.**
slyly, *not* sli.
smelt, *distinguish from* **smolt.**
smoke, smoky.
smolder, *use* **smoulder.**
smolt, *distinguish from* **smelt.**
smooths, *not* hes.
smoulder, *not* smol.
snivel, snivelled.
sobriquet, *not* soub.
socialize, *not* ise.
solan, *distinguish from* **solen.**
solatium, *plural* **solatia.**
solemnize, *not* ise.
solen, *distinguish from* **solan.**
soliloquize, *not* ise.
solvable, *not* eable.
somersault, *not* summ.
soochong, *use* **souchong.**
soubrette, *not* et.
soubriquet, *use* **sobriquet.**
souchong, *not* soo.
spahi, *not* hee.
spandrel, *not* il.
speciality, *not* **lty.**
specialize, *not* ise.
specimen, *not* an.
spectrum, *plural* **spectra.**
speculator, *not* er.
speculum, *plural* **specula.**
spelt, *not* lled.
sphinx, *not* ynx.
spinach, *not* age.
spinney, *not* ny.
spiritualize, *not* ise.
spirt, *use* **spurt.**
spoil, spoliation.
spoonful, *plural* **spoonfuls.**
spoony, *not* ey.
sprightly, *not* itely.
spurt, *not* spi.
square, squaring.
squeegee, *not* squil.
staccato, *not* staca.
staid, *distinguish from* **stayed.**
stanch, bleeding.
standardize, *not* ise.
stannary, *not* ery.
star, starred.
stationary, *distinguish from* **stationery.**
statuary, *not* ery.
statuette, *not* et.
staunch, loyal.
stayed, *distinguish from* **staid.**
steadfast, *not* sted.
stencil, stencilling.
steppe, *distinguish from* **step.**
sterilize, *not* ise.
sterling, *not* stir.
stigmatize, *not* ise.
stile, *distinguish from* **style.**
stiletto, *plural* **stilettoes.**
stimie, *use* **stymie.**
stimulus, *plural* **stimuli.**
stockinet, *not* inget.
stoep, *distinguish from* **stoop, stoup.**
stone, stony.
stoop, *distinguish from* **stoep, stoup.**
story, *not* ey ; *plural* **stories.**
stoup, *distinguish from* **stoep, stoop.**
straight, *distinguish from* **strait.**
stratum, *plural* **strata.**
stratus, *plural* **strati.**
strychnine, *not* in.
stupefy, *not* ify.
sty, *not* ye.
style, *distinguish from* **stile.**
stymie, *not* sti.
subsidize, *not* ise.
substratum, *plural* **substrata.**
subtile, *distinguish from* **subtle.**
sue, suing.
suggestible, *not* able
suit, *distinguish from* **suite.**
sumach, *not* ac.
summarize, *not* ise.
supersede, *not* cede.
supervise, *not* ize.
supervisor, *not* er.
supplicator, *not* er.
supposititious, *not* sitious.
suppressor, *not* er.
surgeon, *not* jeon.
surmise, *not* ize.
surprise, *not* ize.
survivor, *not* er.
suspender, *not* or.
svastika, *use* **swastika.**
swap, *not* op.
swastika, *not* sv.
swathe, *distinguish from* **swath.**
sweet-brier, *not* iar.
swinging, *distinguish from* **swingeing.**
swop, *use* **swap.**
sybil, *not* **sibyl.**
syce, *not* si.
syllabub, *use* **sillabub.**
syllabus, *plural* **syllabuses.**
sylvan, *not* si.
symbolize, *not* ise.
sympathize, *not* ise.
symposium, *plural* **symposia**
synchronize, *not* ise.
synopsis, *plural* **synopses.**
sypher, *use* **cipher.**
syphon, *use* **siphon.**
syren, *use* **siren.**
syringe, syringing.
systematize, *not* ise.

tabinet, *not* tabbi.
taboo, *not* bu.
taffeta, *not* tafe.
talisman, *plural* **talismans.**
tamable, *not* eable.
tambourine, *not* orin.
tangible, *not* able.
tantalize, *not* ise.
tar, tarred.
tarantella, *distinguish from* **tarantula.**
tariff, *not* if.
tarpaulin, *not* ing.
tatoo, *use* **tattoo.**
tatterdemalion, *not* ian.
tattoo, *not* tatoo.
taut, *distinguish from* **taught.**
tawny, *not* ey.
tease, *not* ze.
teasel, *not* le.
teaspoonful, *plural* **teaspoonfuls.**
techy, *use* **tetchy.**
teetotal, teetotaller.
tellurion, *distinguish from* **tellurium**
templet, *not* late.
temporize, *not* ise.
tenor, *not* our.
terce, *use* **tierce.**
tercel, *use* **tiercel.**
termagant, *not* ent.
terminus, *plural* **termini.**
terreen, *use* **tureen.**
terrorize, *not* ise.
tessellated, *not* ela.
tetchy, *not* tec.
theorize, *not* ise.
thesis, *plural* **theses.**
thin, thinner.
thole, *not* owl.
thorax, *plural* **thoraces.**
thowl, *use* **thole.**
thrall, thraldom.
thrash, *not* esh.
threshold, *not* hhold.
tic douloureux, *not* dol.
tidbit, *use* **titbit.**
tie, tying.
tierce, *not* ter.
tiercel, *not* ter.
tike, *not* ty.
timpani, *distinguish from* **tympanum.**
tinging, *not* eing.
tinsel, tinselled.
tippet, *not* tipet.
tire, *also* **tyre.**
tiro, *use* **tyro.**
titbit, *not* tid.
titivate, *not* titti.
toboggan, *not* ogan.
toffee, *not* fy.
toilet, *not* ette.
tomato, *plural* **tomatoes**
tonsillitis, *not* ilitis.
topsy-turvy, *not* sey, vey.
torc, *use* **torque.**
tormentor, *not* er.
tornado, *plural* **tornadoes.**
torniquet, *use* **tourniquet.**
torpedo, *plural* **torpedoes.**
torque, *not* torc.
torso, *plural* **torsos.**
totalize, *not* ise.
tourniquet, *not* tor.
towel, towelling.
toxin, *not* ine.
traceable, *not* cable.
tractor, *not* er.
traffic, trafficked.
tragedian, *feminine* **tragédienne**
trammel, trammelled.
tranquil, tranquillity.
transactor, *not* er.
transfer, transferred.
transgress, transgressor, transgressible.
tranship, *use* **trans-ship.**
translator, *not* er.
transmissible, *not* able.
travel, traveller.
trek, *not* ek, **trekker.**
tremor, *not* our.
trestle, *not* ssel.
trevet, *use* **trivet.**
tripos, *plural* **triposes.**
trivet, *not* tre.
trousers, *not* trow.
trousseau, *plural* **trousseaux.**
trumpeter, *not* or.
Tsarevitch, *not* Cesarevitch.
tsetse, *not* tzetze.
tulle, *not* tule.
tumbrel, *not* il.
tumour, *not* or.
tumulus, *plural* **tumuli.**
tunnel, tunnelled.
tureen, *not* terr.
tussock, *not* ack.
tying, *not* tiei.
tympanum, *distinguish from* **timpani.**
tyrannize, *not* ise.
tyre, *also* **tire.**
tyro, *not* ti, *plural* **tyros.**
tzetze, *use* **tsetse.**

ultimatum, *plural* **ultimatums.**
unapparelled, *not* eled.
unauthorized, *not* ised.
unbiased, *not* ssed.
underlie, *not* ly.
unenclosed, *not* unin.
universalize, *not* ise.
unlicensed, *not* ced.
unmistakable, *not* eable.
unparalleled, *not* alled.
unrivalled, *not* aled.
unsaleable, *not* lable.
unserviceable, *not* cable.
unskilful, *not* llful.
until, *not* ll.
untrammelled, *not* eled.
untravelled, *not* eled.
urban, *distinguish from* **urbane.**
usable, *not* eable.
utilize, *not* ise.

vacillate, *not* illate.
vacuum, *plural* **vacua.**
Valhalla, *not* W.
Valkyrie, *not* W.
valour, valorous.
vandyke, *not* yck.
vapour, vaporous.
vedette, *not* vi.
veldt, *not* ld.
venal, *distinguish from* **venial.**
venial, *distinguish from* **venal.**
ventilator, *not* er.
veranda, *not* ah.
verdigris, *not* verde.
vermilion, *not* llion.
vertex, *plural* **vertices.**
vertu, *use* **virtu.**
veto, *plural* **vetoes.**
victimize, *not* ise.
victual, victualled.
vidette, *use* **vedette.**
vie, vying
vigour, vigorous.
vilify, *not* vill.
villain, *not* an.
villify, *use* **vilify.**
vinaigrette, *not* vinegar.
violator, *not* er.
violoncello, *plural* **violoncellos.**
virago, *plural* **viragoes.**
virtu, *not* ve.
viscus, *plural* **viscera.**
visitor, *not* er.
visor, *not* viz, er.
visualize, *not* ise.
vitalize, *not* ise.
vivisector, *not* er.
vizier, *not* vis.
vizor, *use* **visor.**
vocalize, *not* ise.
volcano, *plural* **volcanoes.**
vortex, *plural* **vortices.**
voucher, *legal* **vouchor.**
vulcanize, *not* ise.
vying, *not* viei.

wabble, *use* **wobble.**
wagon, *not* wagg.
wale, *use* **weal.**
Walhalla, *use* **Valhalla.**
Walkyrie, *use* **Valkyrie.**
wapiti, *not* wapp.
wase-goose, *use* **wayzgoose.**
wave, wavy.
wayzgoose, not wase.
weal, *not* wale.
wear, *distinguish from* **weir.**
weasand, *not* weaz, wez.
weever, fish, *not* wea.
weir, *distinguish from* **wear.**
wergild, *not* were.
werwolf, *not* were.
wharf, *plural* **wharves.**
whilom, *not* me.
whisky, *not* ey.
whiz, *not* zz.
whooping-cough, *not* hoop.
widgeon, *not* wig.
wilful, wilfully.
winter, wintry.
witch-elm, *use* **wych-elm.**
witch-hazel, *use* **wych-hazel.**
withal, *not* all.
wivern, *use* **wyvern.**
wobble, *not* wa.
woebegone, *not* wob.
woefully, *not* wof.
wool, woollen.
worship, worshipper.
wych-elm, *not* witch.
wych-hazel, *not* witch.
wyvern, *not* wiv.

xoanon, *plural* **xoana.**
xystus, *plural* **xysti.**

yelk, *use* **yolk.**
yodel, *not* dle; **yodeller.**
yokel, *not* kle.
yolk, *not* ye.

zenana, *not* za.
zephyr, *not* ir.
zero, *plural* **zeroes.**
zigzag, zigzagged

WORDS OFTEN MISPRONOUNCED

A Guide to Phonetic Difficulties in the English Language

MANY English words in almost daily use are mispronounced. Such words, for example, as " campanula," " gnu," " sonorous," and " trait," are traps for the unwary. To search through the main body of this work in order to discover these barriers to correct speech would not be an easy task, but in this invaluable section many of these obstacles have been brought together and can thus be readily surmounted. For words not found below, reference should be made to the Dictionary proper. One of the chief difficulties of pronunciation is that of placing the accent on the proper syllable, and in this respect the following rules will be of the greatest assistance.

When a prefix or a suffix is added to a single-syllable word the accent generally falls on the original word. Examples: *Bemoan', debar', regain'* : *dead' ly, boy' ish, act' ing, new' er.*

Two-syllable words that are both noun and verb usually carry the accent on the first syllable of the noun and the second of the verb. There are a number of exceptions to this rule, especially in its application to nouns. Examples: *Pro' gress, progress', con' tract, contract'* ; *de' tail, detail'* ; *dis' cord, discord'.* Exceptions: *Advance', cement', con' tour, delight'.*

In words of two syllables that end with *-y, -en, -et, -ish, -le, -ow, -age, -our* the accent commonly falls on the first syllable. Examples: *Many, sunny* ; *frighten, liken* ; *billet, cricket* ; *banish, relish* ; *bottle, cattle* ; *barrow, bellow* ; *coinage, manage* ; *candour valour.* Among the few exceptions are *ally, apply, deny, rely, reply* ; *amen* ; *forget, regret* ; *compile, cajole* ; *allow, arow, avow, endow, below, bestow* ; *encage, engage, enrage, assuage, garage, presage* (verb) ; *amour, devour, outpour.*

Two-syllable words ending with *-er* and preceded by a consonant almost always have the accent on the first syllable. Exceptions: *Aver, confer, defer, deter, infer, inter, prefer, refer, transfer* (verb).

When two vowels come together in two-syllable words and are separately pronounced the accent is, with very few exceptions, placed on the first syllable. Examples: *Bruin, doing, lion, ruin, suet,* Exceptions: *Create, pre-empt, re-ink.*

Verbs, adjectives, and nouns of two syllables in which two vowels come together in the second syllable are generally accented on the latter syllable. Examples: *Applause, assault, maraud, exhaust, debouch, rebound.* Exceptions: *Ablaut,* and words ending with *-ain* as *bargain, captain, certain, curtain, fountain, mountain, plantain.*

Words of three syllables formed by adding a prefix or a suffix have the accent on the primitive or original word. Examples: Abnormal, calm, disservice, gracefulness, endurance, reporter, classical, dependant.

Three-syllable words that end in *al, -ant, -ate, -ce, -ent, -le, -ous, -ude, -ure, -y* generally have the accent on the first syllable. Examples: *Personal, advocate, penitence, evident, principle, numerous, plentitude, signature, victory.*

Exceptions to this rule occur in words formed from others that have the accent on the second syllable, as *contrivance, admittance.* The middle syllable is accented when it has two vowels together, or when it has a vowel followed by two consonants. Examples: *Repeating, appearance, disturbance.*

Three-syllable words terminating in *ator* have the middle syllable accented. Examples: *Narrator. spectator.* Exceptions: *Orator. senator.*

A number of words of three syllables have the last syllable accented. Most of these are words with a two-syllable prefix and the others are chiefly of French origin. Examples: *Ambuscade, acquiesce, supersede, absentee, referee, disagree, overcharge* (verb), *underlay* (verb).

Words of more than three syllables have the accent as a rule on the word from which they are formed. Examples: *Fanatical, impotency, determinedly, remorselessness.* There are many exceptions however, as *disputable, indicative, oceanic, matrimonial.*

Polysyllabic words that end with *-cal, -ia, -ity, -ous, -ty,* commonly carry the accent on the last syllable but two. Examples: *Numerical, insignia, immensity, oblivious, gratuity.*

The following is a key to the phonetic system used in the appended list of common words often mispronounced :—

a as in bar (bar), rather (ra' *th*er), finale (fi na' li).
ă as in bat (băt), matter (măt' ėr), pansy (păn' zi).
ā as in bate (bāt), gait (gāt), reign (rān).
â as in bare (bâr), stair (stâr), there (*th*âr).
aw as in ball (bawl), water (waw' tėr), fraud (frawd).
e as in cell (sel), bury (ber' i), impel (im pel').
ĕ as in fern (fĕrn), lurch (lĕrch), gird (gĕrd), word (wĕrd).
ē as in deed (dēd), chief (chēf), idea (ī dē' ȧ), piano (pē ăn' ō).
i as in sit (sit), kindle (kin' dl), guild (gild), lymph (limf).
ī as in site (sīt), might (mīt), analyse (ăn' ȧ līz).
o as in dot (dot), watt (wot), lorry (lor' i).
ō as in no (nō), dote (dōt), glow (glō).
o as in nor (nor), formal (for' mal).
oo as in do (doo), mood (mood), prove (proov), true (troo).
u as in pull (pul), could (cud), wood (wud).
ŭ as in bun (bŭn), dove (dŭv), rough (rŭf).
ū as in fuse (fūz), pew (pū), pure (pūr).
oi as in boy (boi), coil (koil), quoit (koit).
ou as in bout (bout), now (nou), bower (bou' ėr).
kh as in loch (lokh), coronach (kor' ȯ nakh).
n as in aileron (āl' ro*n*), chiffon (shif' o*n*).
th as in thick (thik), wreath (rēth).
th as in then (*th*en), wreathe (rē*th*).
Hard g is shown as in gong (gong), goal (gōl) ; soft g as in gem (jem), gender (jen' der).
When a dot is placed over a e o u (ȧ ė ȯ u̇) it denotes that the vowel has a slurred or obscure sound, as in the following examples:
abet (ȧ bet'), recent (rē' sėnt), conform (cȯn förm'), nation (nā' shŭn), durable (dūr' ȧbl), between (bė twēn'), tailor (tā' lȯr), measure (mezh' u̇r).

abacus (ăb′ ȧ ku̇s)
abattoir (a ba twar′)
abdomen (ăb dō′ mėn)
abdominal (ăb dom′ in ȧl)
aberrant (ăb er′ ȧnt)
abeyance (ȧ bā′ ȧns)
abhor (ȧb hör′)
abhorrent (ȧb hor′ ėnt)
ablaut (ăb′ lout)
ablution (ȧ bloo′ shu̇n)
abluent (ăb′ lu ėnt)
absent (ăb′ sėnt, *adj.* ; ȧb sent′, *v.*)
abstract (ȧb străkt′, *v.* ; ăb′străkt, *n.*, *adj.*)
abstruse (ăb stroos′)
abuse (ȧ būz′, *v.* ; ȧ būs′, *n.*)
abyss (ȧ bis′)
acacia (ȧ kā′ shi ȧ ; ȧ kā′ shȧ)
academic (ăk ȧ dem′ ik)
acajou (ăk′ ȧ zhu)
accent (ăk′ sėnt, *n.* ; ak sent′, *v.*)
acclamatory (ȧ klăm′ ȧ tȯ ri)
accrete (ȧ krēt′)
accurate (ăk′ kū rȧt)
acoustic (ȧ kou′ stik ; ȧ koo′ stik)
acquiesce (ăk kwi es′)
acre (ā′ kėr)
acrid (ăk′ rid)
acumen (ȧ kū′ mėn)
adage (ăd′ ȧj)
adamant (ăd′ ȧ mȧnt)
adamantine (ăd ȧ măn′ tin)
addendum (ȧ den′ dum)
addict (ȧ dikt′)
adduce (ȧ dūs′)
adept (ăd′ ept ; ȧ dept′)
adjourn (ȧd jẽrn′)
adjutant (ăd′ ju tȧnt)
adroit (ȧ droit′)
adverse (ăd′ vẽrs)
adze (ădz)
aedile (ē′ dīl)
aerate (ā′ ėr āt)
aerial (ā ēr′ i al)
aerie (ā′ ėr i)
aesthetics (ēs thet′ iks)
affiche (ăf fēsh′)
affix (ȧ fiks′, *v.* ; ăf′ fiks, *n.*)
affluent (ăf′ flu̇ ėnt)
afflux (ăf′ flŭks)
agape (feast) ; (ăg′ ȧ pē)
agaric (ăg′ a rik ; a găr′ ik)
agger (ăj′ ėr)
aggrandize (ăg′ grȧn dīz)
agio (ăj′ i ȯ ; āj′ i ȯ)
agrarian (ȧ grâr′ i an)
albeit (awl bē′ it)
alembic (ȧ lem′ bik)
algebraic (ăl jė brā′ ik)
alias (ā′ li ăs)
alkali (ăl′ kȧ li)
alkaline (ăl′ kȧ līn)
allopathy (ȧ lop′ ȧ thi)
allottee (ăl lot tē′)
alloy (ȧ loi′)
almoner (ăl′ mȯn ėr ; a′ mȯn ėr)
amateur (ăm′ ȧ tūr ; ăm ȧ tẽr′)
amenable (ȧ mēn′ ȧbl)
amenity (ȧ mē′ ni ti)
amerce (ȧ mẽrs′)
amicable (ăm′ ik ȧbl)
anaesthetic (ăn ēs thet′ ik)
analogy (ȧ năl′ ȯ ji)
analogous (a năl′ ȯ gu̇s)
angina (ăn′ ji nȧ ; ăn jī′ nȧ)
aniline (ăn′ i līn)
annex (ȧ neks′)
antennae (ăn ten′ ē, *pl.*)
antipathy (ăn tip′ ȧ thi)
antipathetic (ăn ti pȧ thet′ ik)
antipode (ăn′ ti pōd)
antipodes (ăn tip′ ȯ dēz)
antipodean (ăn ti pȯ dē′ ȧn)
antithesis (ăn tith′ ė sis)
apanage (ăp′ ȧ nȧj)
apathy (ăp′ ȧ thi)
aplomb (a plo*n*′)
apparent (ȧ păr′ ėnt ; ȧ pär′ ėnt)
appellant (ȧ pel′ ȧnt)
apropos (ăp rȯ pō′)
aquatic (ȧ kwăt′ ik)
arbitrage (ar′ bi trȧj)
arbitrament (ar bit′ rȧ mėnt)
arboreal (ar bōr′ ė ȧl)
archaic (ar kā′ ik)
archiepiscopal (ar ki ė pis′ kȯ pȧl)
archives (ar′ kīvz)
Arctic (ark′ tik)
areca (ăr′ ė kȧ)
arid (ăr′ id)
aristocrat (ăr′ is tȯ krăt)
armada (ar mā′ dȧ ; ar ma′ da)
armistice (ar′ mis tis)
arraign (ȧ rān′)
artisan (ar ti zăn′)
ascetic (ȧ set′ ik)
askew (ȧ skū′)
asphalt (ăs′ fălt)
assagai (ăs′ ȧ gī)
assuage (ȧ swāj′)
ataxy (ȧ tăks′ i ; ăt′ ȧks i)
atomic (ȧ tom′ ik)
attenuate (ȧ ten′ ū āt, *v.* ; ȧ ten′ ū ȧt, *adj.*)
attribute (ăt′ tri būt, *n.* ; ȧ trib′ ūt, *v.*)
auger (aw′ gėr)
aural (aw′ rȧl)
aureat (aw′ rė ȧt)
aureola (aw rē′ ȯ lȧ)
aureole (aw′ rė ōl)
aurum (aw′ ru̇m)
autocrat (aw′ tȯ krăt)
autocracy (aw tok′ ra si)
automaton (aw tom′ ȧ tȯn)
avoirdupois (ăv′ ėr dū poiz)
awry (ȧ rī′)
azure (ăzh′ ėr ; ăzh′ ūr)

badinage (ba din azh′ · băd′ in ȧj)
balk (bawk)
ballet (băl′ ā)
banal (bā′ nȧl ; bȧ nal′)
banality (bȧ năl′ i ti)
bandana (băn dăn′ ȧ)
barrage (bar′ ȧj)
basalt (bȧs′ awlt ; bȧ sawlt′)
bathos (bā′ thos ; băth′ os)
bauxite (bō′ zīt)
bayou (bī′ oo)
beau (bō)
bedizen (bė dīz′ n ; bė diz′ n)
beloved (bė lŭv′ ėd ; bė lŭvd′)
besom (bē′ zu̇m)
betel (bē′ tėl)
betroth (bė trō*th*′ ; be trōth′)
bezant (bė zănt′ ; bez′ ȧnt)
bibelot (bēb′ lō)
bijou (bē′ zhoo)
bilge (bilj)
billet doux (bil ā doo′)
binomial (bī nō′ mi ȧl)
bismuth (biz′ mu̇th)
bison (bī′ sȯn ; biz′ ȯn)
bisque (bisk)
bistre (bis′ tėr)
bitumen (bi tū′ mėn ; bit′ ū mėn)
bituminous (bi tū′ min u̇s)
bizarre (bi zar′)
blanch (blanch ; blănch)
blancmange (blȧ monzh′)
blasé (bla′ zā)
Blenheim (blen′ im)
blithe (blī*th*)
blithesome (bli*th*′ su̇m)
blucher (bloo′ kėr ; bloo′ chėr)
boa (bō′ ȧ)
Bodleian (bod lē′ ȧn)
Boeotian (bē ō′ shi ȧn)
Boer (boor)
bohea (bō hē′)
bombast (bom′ băst ; bŭm′ băst)
bona fide (bō′ nȧ fī′ de)
bonhomie (bon′ ȯ mē)
bon mot (bo*n* mō)
booth (boo*th*)
borage (bŭr′ ȧj)
bothy (both′ i)
boudoir (boo′ dwar)
bougainvillaea (boo ga*n* vi lē′ ȧ)
boulevard (bool′ var)
bouquet (bu kā′)
bourgeon (boor′ jȯn)
bovine (bō′ vīn)
bowdlerize (boud′ lėr iz)
bowie-knife (bō′ i nīf)
braille (brāl)
bravado (brȧ va′ dō ; brȧ vā′ dō)
bravura (brȧ voo′ rȧ)
brazier (brā′ zhėr)
breastsummer (bres′ ŭm ėr)
brigantine (brig′ ȧn tēn)
brochure (brȯ shoor′)
bromide (brō′ mīd)
bromine (brō′ min ; brō′ min)
brougham (broom ; broo′ ȧm . brō′ ȧm)
bruit (broot)
brusque (brusk ; brŭsk)
Bucentaur (bū sen′ tawr)
bulbul (bul′ bul)
burgeon (bẽr′ jȯn)
burgh (bŭr′ u̇)
Byzantine (bī zăn′ tīn)

cabal (kȧ băl′)
cadaverous (kȧ dăv′ ėr u̇s)
cadre (ka′ dr)
caisson (kās′ ȯn ; kā soon′)
calcareous (kăl kăr′ ė u̇s)
calibre (kăl′ i bėr ; kȧ lē′ bėr)
campanile (kăm pa nē′ li ; kam pa nēl′; kăm′ pȧ nil ; kăm′ pȧ nīl)
campanula (kăm păn′ ū lȧ)
canard (kȧ nard′, ka nar′)
caoutchouc (kou′ chook)
caparison (kȧ păr′ i sȯn ; kȧ păr′ i zȯn)
capercailzie (kăp ėr kāl′ yi)
capillary (kȧ pil′ ȧ ri ; kăp′ il ȧ ri)
capitalism (kăp′ it ȧ lizm)
capitalist (kăp′ it ȧ list)
caravanserai (kăr ȧ văn′ sėr i)
carbine (kar′ bīn)
careen (kȧ rēn′)
carillon (kȧ ril′ yȯn ; ka rē′ *yon*)
carillonneur (kȧ rē yon nẽr′)
carmagnole (kar ma nyōl′)
carmine (kar′ min ; kar′ mīn)
carnivora (kȧr niv′ ȯ ra)
carouse (kȧ rouz′)
cartouche (kar toosh′)
casein (kā′ sė in)
casern (kȧ zẽrn′)
cassowary (kăs′ ȯ wȧ ri)
casuist (kăz′ ū ist ; kăzh′ u̇ ist)
cataclysm (kăt′ ȧ klizm)
catafalque (kăt′ ȧ fălk)
catastrophe (kȧ tăs′ trȯ fē)
category (kăt′ ė gȯ ri)
caulk (kawk)
causerie (kō zėr ē′)
'cello (chel′ lō)
Celtic (selt′ ik ; kelt′ik)

centenary (sen tē' nȧ ri; sen' tė nȧ ri)
centrifugal (sen trif' ū gȧl)
centripetal (sen trip' ė tȧl)
ceramic (sė răm' ik)
cerebrum (ser' ė bru̇m)
chagrin (shȧ grēn')
chalybeate (kȧ lib' ė ȧt)
chameleon (kȧ mē' lė ȯn)
chamois (shăm' wa, antelope; shăm' i, leather)
chaos (kā' os)
char-a-bancs (shar a ba*n*)
charivari (sha ri va' ri)
charlatan (shar' lȧ tȧn)
Charon (kär' ȯn)
chary (chär' i)
chicane (shi kān')
chicanery (shi kān' ėr i)
chimaera (ki mēr' ȧ; kī mēr' ȧ)
chimera (ki mēr' ȧ; kī mēr' ȧ)
chimerical (ki mer' ik ȧl; kī mer' ik ȧl)
chiropodist (kir op' ȯ dist)
chivalry (shiv' ȧl ri; chiv' ȧl ri)
chivalrous (shiv' ȧl ru̇s; chiv' ȧl ru̇s)
cicada (si kā' dȧ)
cicerone (chich ėr ō' ni)
cinque (singk)
circuitous (sėr kū' it u̇s)
clandestine (klăn des' tin)
cleanliness (klen' li nės)
cleanly (klēn' li, in clean way; klen' li, habitually clean)
clerestory (klēr' stōr i)
clerk (klark)
clientele (klī' ėn tēl)
cloisonné (klwa zȯ nā')
cloth (kloth; klawth)
clothes (klō*th*z)
coalesce (kō ȧ les')
cobra (kō' brȧ)
coccyx (kok' siks)
codicil (kod' is il)
cognizant (kog' ni zȧnt)
colander (kŭl' ȧn dėr)
collate (kȯ lāt')
colloquial (kȯ lō' kwi ȧl)
combe (koom)
comely (kŭm' li)
comfrey (kŭm' fri)
commissariat (kom i sär' i ȧt)
complaisant (kom' plā zȧnt; kom plā zănt')
compromise (kom' prȯ mīz)
concerto (kȯn chěr' tō)
conch (kongk)
concierge (ko*n* si ärzh)
conduit (kon' dit; kŭn' dit)
confidant (kon fi dănt')
confine (kȯn fīn', *v.*; kon' fīn, *n.*)
confiscate (kon' fis kāt, *v.*; kon' fis kȧt, *adj*)
conflict (kon' flikt, *n.*; kȯn flikt', *v.*)
confrère (ko*n* frär)
congé (ko*n* zhā)
conifer (kō' ni fėr)
conjure (kȯn joor', appeal solemnly; kŭn' jėr, juggle)
connoisseur (kon ȧ sěr')
consommé (ko*n* som ā)
consort (kon' sört, *n.*; kȯn sört', *v.*)
constable (kŭn' stȧbl; kon' stȧbl)
construe (kon' stroo; kȯn stroo')
consummate (kȯn sŭm' ȧt, *adj.*; kon' su̇ māt, *v.*)
contretemps (ko*n* trė to*n*')
controversy (kon' trȯ věr si)
convenance (ko*n* vė na*n*s')
conversazione (kon vėr sat si ō' nā)
converse (kȯn věrs', *v.*; kon' věrs, *n.* and *adj.*)
convoy (kȯn voi', *v.*; kon' voi, *n.*)
cordillera (kŏr dil yär' ȧ)
cornucopia (kör nū kō' pi ȧ)
coronal (kȯ rō' nȧl, *adj.*; kor' ȯ nȧl, *n.*)
corps (kör)
corpuscle (kör' pu̇s l)
coruscate (kor' u̇s kāt)
coterie (kō' tė ri)
coulter (kōl' tėr)
coup (koo)
courteous (kěr' tyu̇s; kör' tyu̇s)
covey (kŭv' i)
coxswain (kok' sn; kok' swān)
coyote (ko yō' ti; kī' yōt)
cozen (kŭz' ėn)
crabbed (krăb' ėd)
crème (krām)
creole (krē' ōl)
cuirass (kwi răs'; kū răs')
cul-de-sac (kė dsak'; kul dė săk)
culinary (kū' lin ȧ ri)
cupola (kū' pȯ lȧ)
curmudgeon (ku̇r mŭj' ȯn)
Cymric (kim' rik; sim' rik)
cynosure (sin' ȯ sūr; sī' nȯ sūr)
cyst (sist)
Czech (chek)
Czecho-Slovakia (chek' ō slō va' ki ȧ)

dachshund (daks' hunt)
dacoit (dȧ koit')
daguerreotype (dȧ gėr' ȯ tīp)
dahabeeyah (da ha bē' ya)
Dail Eireann (dö il' ār' ȧn)
dais (dās; dā' is)
danseuse (da*n* sėrz')
davit (dăv' it)
débacle (dė bak' l)
debonair (deb ȯ när')
débris (dā' bri)
debut (dā bu)
decade (dek' ād)
decadence (dek' ȧ dėns)
Decalogue (dek' ȧ log)
deciduous (dė sid' ū u̇s)
décolleté (dā kol' ė tā)
decorous (dė kōr' u̇s; dek' ȯ ru̇s)
deify (dē' i fī)
demagogue (dem' ȧ gog)
demarcate (dē' mar kāt)
demarche (dā marsh')
démenti (dā ma*n* ti)
demesne (dė mēn'; dė mān')
demise (dė mīz')
demobilize (dē mō' bi līz)
demoiselle (dem wȧ zel')
demonetize (dė mŭn' ė tīz; dė mon' ė tīz)
demurrage (dė mŭr' ȧj)
demurrer (dė mŭr' ėr)
demy (dė mī')
denature (dē nā' chu̇r)
dengue (deng' gā)
dénouement (dā noo ma*n*)
dentifrice (den' ti fris)
deodar (dē' ȯ dar)
deodorize (dė ō' dȯr īz; dė od' ȯr īz)
depilate (dep' i lāt)
deposition (dē pȯ zish' u̇n; dep ȯ zish' u̇n)
deprecate (dep' rė kāt)
deprivation (dep ri vā' shu̇n)
deratize (dē răt' īz)
derelict (der' ė likt)
derivable (dė rīv' ȧbl)
derivative (dė riv' ȧ tiv)
derogate (der' ȯ gāt)
derogatory (dė rog' ȧ tȯ ri)
descant (des' kȧnt, *n.*; dės kănt', *v.*)
desecrate (des' ė krāt)
desert (dez' ėrt, region; dė zěrt', forsake, thing deserved)
desiderate (dė zid' ėr āt)
designate (dez' ig nāt, *v.*; dez' ig nȧt, *adj.*)
desist (dė zist'; dė sist')
desperado (des pėr ā' dō)
despicable (des' pik ȧbl)
desuetude (des' wė tūd)
desultory (des' u̇l tȯ ri)
detail (dē' tāl, *n.*; dė tāl', *v.*)
détente (dā ta*n*t')
detonate (dē' tȯ nāt; det' ȯ nāt)
detour (dė toor')
detriment (det' ri mėnt)
deutzia (doit' si ȧ; dūt' si ȧ)
devastate (dev' ȧs tāt)
devoir (dė vwar')
dhow (dou)
diabetes (dī ȧ bē' tēz)
diablerie (di ab' lėr i)
diabolic (dī a bol' ik)
diaconal (dī ăk' ȯ nȧl)
diaeresis (dī ēr' ė sis)
diameter (dī ăm' ė tėr)
diapason (dī ȧ pā' zȯn)
diaphanous (dī ăf' ȧ nu̇s)
diaphragm (dī' ȧ frăm)
diatom (dī' ȧ tom)
didactic (di dăk' tik; dī dăk' tik)
dies non (dī' ēz non)
dietary (dī' ė tȧ ri)
dietetic (dī ė tet' ik)
diffuse (di fūz', *v.*; di fūs,' *adj.*)
digit (dij' it)
digitalis (dij i tā' lis)
dilatory (dil' ȧ tȯ ri)
dilemma (di lem' ȧ; dī lem' ȧ)
dilettante (dil ė tăn' ti)
dinghy (ding' gi)
dinosaur (dī' nȯ sawr)
diocese (dī' ȯ sės; dī' ȯ sēs)
diphthong (dif' thong)
diptych (dip' tik)
dirigible (dir' i jibl)
discern (di zěrn'; di sěrn')
disconcert (dis kȯn sěrt')
discount (dis' kount, *n.*; dis kount', *v.*)
discourteous (dis kěr' tė us; dis kōr' tė u̇s)
dishabille (dis ȧ bēl'; dis ȧ bil')
dishevel (di shev' ėl)
disputable (dis' pū tȧbl; dis pū' tȧbl)
dissertation (dis ėr tā' shu̇n)
dissever (di sev' ėr)
dissident (dis' i dėnt)
dissociate (di sō' shi āt)
dissoluble (dis' ȯl ūbl; di sol' ūbl)
distich (dis' tik)
distingué (dis tă*n*g' gā)
dithyramb (dith' i rămb; dith' i răm)
diva (dē' vȧ)
divan (di văn')
Dives (dī' vēz)
divot (div' ȯt)
docile (dō' sīl; dos' il)
doctrinaire (dok tri när')
doctrinal (dok trī' nȧl; dok' tri nȧl)
dogged (dog' ėd)
dolour (dō' lȯr; dol' ȯr)
domicile (dom' i sīl; dom' i sil)
dossier (dos' yā; dos' i ėr)

dotage (dōt' ȧj)
dotard (dōt' ȧrd)
douane (doo an')
douce (doos)
douceur (doo sĕr')
douche (doosh)
dour (door)
douse (dous)
dowry (dou' ri)
doxology (dok sol' ȯ ji)
drachm (drăm)
draught (draft)
Drosera (dros' ėr ȧ)
drought (drout)
dryad (drī' ȧd)
ducat (dŭk' ȧt)
ductile (dūk' til; dūk' tīl)
dudgeon (dŭj' ȯn)
Duma (doo' mȧ)
dumbfound (dŭm found')
dungaree (dŭng gȧ rē')
dunnage (dŭn' ȧj)
dynamiter (dī' nȧ mīt ėr)
dynast (din' ăst; dī' năst)
dysentery (dis' ėn tėr i)
dyspepsia (dis pep' si ȧ)

eagre (ē' gėr)
eau (ō)
Ebenezer (eb ė nē' zėr)
éboulement (ā bool ma*n*)
ebullient (ē bŭl' i ėnt)
écarte (ā kar' tā)
Ecce Homo (ek' si hō' mō)
échelon (esh' ė lȯn; esh' lȯn)
éclat (ė kla')
écru (ā kru')
edelweiss (ā' dėl vīs)
effendi (ė fen' di)
effrontery (ė frŭn' tėr i)
egregious (ė grē' jús)
eisteddfod (ā ste*th*' vōd)
élan (ā la*n*')
electrolier (ė lek trȯ lēr')
eleemosynary (el ė ē mos' i nȧ ri)
elegiac (el ė jī' ȧk)
elision (ė lizh' ún)
élite (ā lēt')
Elysium (ė liz' i úm)
emaciate (ė mā' shi āt)
emanate (em' ȧ nāt)
emblements (em' blė mėnts)
embonpoint (a*n* bo*n* pwa*n*)
embryo (em' bri ō)
émeute (ā mut')
émigré (ā mē grā)
emissary (em' i sȧr i)
empennage (a*n* pė nazh')
empiric (em pir' ik)
empressement (a*n* pres' ma*n*)
empyrean (em pi rē' an)
enallage (en ăl' ȧ ji)
endive (en' div)
enigma (ė nig' mȧ)
ennui (on' wē; a*n* nwē)
ensemble (a*n* sa*n*bl)
ensilage (en' si lȧj)
enteric (en ter' ik)
entourage (a*n* too razh)
entracte (a*n* trakt)
entrée (on' trā; a*n* trā)
entremets (a*n*tr mā)
entrepot (a*n*tr pō)
entrepreneur (a*n*tr pren ur)
entresol (a*n*tr sōl)
environs (en vīr' ȯnz; en' vi rȯnz)
envisage (en viz' ȧj)
enzyme (en' zim)
epaulet (ep' ȯ let)
epergne (ė pärn'; ė pĕrn')
Epicurean (ep i kū rē' ȧn)
epilogue (ep' i log)
episcopacy (ė pis' kȯ pȧ si)
epitome (ė pit' ȯ mi)
epoch (ē' pok; ep' ok)
eponym (ep' ȯ nim)
equable (ek' wȧbl; ē' kwȧbl)
equanimity (ē kwȧ nim' i ti)
equerry (ek' wėr i; ėk wer' i)
equinox (ek' wi noks; ē' kwi noks)
equipage (ek' wi pȧj)
equitable (ek' wi tȧbl)
eremite (er' ė mīt)
ermine (ĕr' min)
erratum (ė rā' túm)
erudite (er' ú dīt)
erysipelas (er i sip' ė lȧs)
eschscholtzia (esh sholt' si ȧ: esh shōlt' si ȧ; es kol' chi ȧ)
escritoire (es kri twar')
escutcheon (es kŭch' ȯn)
esoteric (es o ter' ik)
espalier (es păl' i ėr)
espionage (es' pi ȯn ȧj)
esprit (es prē)
essay (es' ā, *n.*; ė sā', *v.*)
ethic (eth' ik)
etiquette (et' i ket)
etui (ė twē')
euchre (ū' kėr)
eugenic (ū jen' ik)
Eurasian (ū rā' shȧn)
eureka (ū rē' kȧ)
evanes (ev ȧ nes')
exacerbate (egz ăs' ėr bāt; eks ăs' ėr bāt)
excerpt (ek' sĕrpt, *n.*; ek sĕrpt', *v.*)
executor (egz ek' ū tor)
exegesis (eks ė jē' sis)
exigeant (eks i zha*n*)
exoteric (eks ȯ ter' ik)
expletive (eks' plė tiv; eks plē' tiv)
explicable (eks' pli kȧbl)
expurgate (eks' pėr gāt)
exquisite (eks' kwi zit)
extant (eks' tȧnt; eks tănt')
extempore (eks tem' pȯ ri)
extincteur (eks tingk' tėr; eks ta*n*k tĕr)
extirpate (eks' tir pāt)
extol (eks tol')
eyrie (īr' i)

façade (fȧ sad')
facet (făs' ėt)
facetiae (fȧ sē' shi ē)
facetious (fa sē' shús)
facia (fā' shi ȧ; făsh' i ȧ)
facial (fā' shal; fā' shi ȧl)
facile (făs' il)
facsimile (făk sim' i li)
Fahrenheit (fa' rėn hīt)
faience (fa ya*n*s)
fainéant (fā nā a*n*)
falchion (fawl' shún)
fanatic (fȧ năt' ik)
farrago (fȧ rā' gō)
fascia (făsh' i ȧ)
Fascist (fa' shist)
faubourg (fō' boorg; fō boor)
fayence (fa ya*n*s)
fealty (fē' ȧl ti)
febrile (fē' bril; feb' ril)
fecund (fek' únd; fē' kúnd)
fetid (fet' id; fē' tid)
fetish (fet' ish; fē' tish)
feu de joie (fė dzhwa)
feuilleton (fė ē yė to*n*)
fey (fā)
fiancé (fē a*n* sā)
fiasco (fi ăs' kō)
fiat (fī' ȧt)
fief (fēf)
fiend (fēnd)
finesse (fi nes')
fiord (fyörd)
fissure (fish' úr)
flaccid (flăk' sid)
flageolet (flăj ȯ let'; flăj' ȯ let)
flagitious (flȧ jish' ús)
flamingo (flȧ ming' gō)
flâneur (fla nür)
flèche (flāsh)
fleur-de-lis (flĕr dė lē; flĕr dė lēs)
forehead (for' ėd)
forensic (fȯ ren' sik)
format (för' ma)
formidable (för' mi dȧbl)
foyer (fwa' yā)
fracas (frăk' a)
frau (frou)
fraught (frawt)
fräulein (froi' līn)
frequent (frē' kwėnt. *adj.*; frė kwent', *v.*)
Freudian (froi' di ȧn)
frigate (frig' ȧt)
frontispiece (frŭn' tis pēs)
froward (frō' wȧrd; frō' ȧrd)
fugue (fūg)
furlough (fĕr' lō)
furore (foo rōr' ā)
furrier (fŭr' i ėr)
furry (fĕr' i)
futurity (fū tūr' i ti)
futurist (fū' chúr ist)

Gaekwar (gīk' war)
Gael (gāl)
gaillardia (gāl ar' di ȧ)
gala (gā' lȧ)
galaxy (găl' ȧk si)
gallant (găl' ȧnt, brave; gȧ lănt', attentive to ladies, and *v.*)
gamboge (găm boozh')
gamin (găm' in; ga mă*n*')
gamut (găm' út)
gangue (găng)
gaol (jāl)
garage (gȧ razh'; găr' ȧj)
garçon (gar so*n*)
gardenia (gar dē' ni ȧ)
garish (gar' ish)
garrulous (găr' u lús)
gaselier (găs ė lēr')
gasometer (gȧ som' ė tėr)
gauche (gōsh)
gaucho (gou' chō; gaw' chō)
gauge (gāj)
gazebo (ga zē' bō)
gazogene (găz' ȯ jēn)
gean (gēn)
geisha (gā' shȧ)
gelatinous (jė lăt' i nús)
gendarme (zha*n* darm)
generic (jė ner' ik)
genetic (jė net' ik)
genie (jē' ni)
genre (zha*n*r)
gentian (jen' shȧn)
geodesy (jē od' ė si)
geodetic (jē ȯ det' ik)
georgic (jör' jik)
germane (jĕr mān')
gesso (jes' ō)
gesture (jes' chúr)
geum (jē' úm)
gewgaw (gū' gaw)
geyser (gā' zėr; gī' sėr; gī' zėr)
ghastly (gast' li; găst' li)
gherkin (gėr' kin)
ghetto (get' ō)
Ghibelline (gib' ė lin)
ghoul (gool)
giaour (jour)

gibber (jib' ėr; gib' ėr)
gibberish (gib' ėr ish; jib' ėr ish)
gibbet (jib' ėt)
gibe (jīb)
giblets (jib' lėts)
gibus (zhē' bu̇s)
gill (gil, of fish; jil, measure)
gillie (gil' i)
gillyflower (jil' i flou ėr)
gingal (jin' gȧwl)
gingham (ging' ȧm)
ginkgo (gingk' gō)
Giottesque (jot tesk')
girandole (jir' ȧn dōl)
girl (gĕrl)
gist (jist)
glacé (gla' sā)
glacial (glā' shi ȧl; glā' shȧl)
glacier (glăs' i ėr)
glacis (glā' sis; gla sē')
gladiolus (glăd i ō' lu̇s; glȧ dī' ȯ lu̇s)
glazier (glā' zi ėr; glā' zhėr)
glissado (gli sad'; gli sād')
glisten (glis' n)
glower (glou' ėr)
gneiss (nīs)
gnomon (nō' mȯn)
gnostic (nos' tik)
gnu (nū)
godetia (gȯ dē' sha)
Goethian (gĕ' ti an)
goffer (gof' ėr; gō' fer)
goitre (goi' tėr)
golf (golf; gof)
gondola (gon' dȯ lȧ)
gone (gawn; gon)
gorgeous (gȯr' jus)
Gothamite (got' am īt)
gouge (gouj; gooj)
gourmand (goor' mand; goor ma*n*)
gourmet (goor' mā)
gowan (gou' ȧn)
Graecism (grē' sizm)
grandiose (grăn' di ōs)
gratin (gra tă*n*)
gratis (grā' tis)
gravamen (gra vā' men)
Greenwich (grin' ij)
grimalkin (gri măl' kin; gri mawl' kin)
Griqua (grē' kwȧ)
grisaille (gri zāl; gri zā' yė)
grisette (gri zet')
grisly (griz' li)
gristly (gris' li)
gross (grōs)
gruyère (gru' yȧr)
guaiacum (gwī' ȧ ku̇m)
guanaco (gwȧ na' kō)
guano (gwa' nō)
guava (gwa' vȧ)
gudgeon (gŭj' ȯn)
Guebre (gē' bėr; gā' bėr)
guelder rose (gel' dėr rōz)
Guelph (gwelf)
guerdon (gĕr' dȯn)
guerrilla (gė ril' ȧ)
guffaw (gu̇ faw')
guidon (gī' dȯn)
guillemot (gil' ė mot)
guipure (gē pur')
gunwale (gŭn' l)
Gurkha (goor' kȧ)
gymkana (jim ka' nȧ)
gypsophila (jip sof' i lȧ)
gyrate (jīr āt', *v.*; jīr' ȧt, *adj.*)
gyroscope (jīr' ȯ skōp)
gyve (jīv)

haematite (hem' ȧ tīt; hē' mȧ tīt)
halcyon (hăl' si ȯn)
hallelujah (hăl ė loo' yȧ)
halyard (hawl' yȧrd; hăl' yȧrd)
handsome (hăn' sûm)
hangar (hăng' gar; a*n* gar)
hara-kiri (ha' ra kir' i)
harangue (hȧ răng')
harbinger (har' bin jėr)
haricot (hăr' i kō)
haugh (hakh; haf)
haulm (hawm)
hauteur (hō tėr')
Hawaiian (hȧ wī' i ȧn)
Hebe (hē' bē)
Hebridean (hė brid' ė ȧn)
hedonic (hē don' ik)
hedonist (hē' dȯn ist)
hegemony (hē' jė mo ni; hė jem' ȯ ni)
Hegira (hej' i rȧ)
height (hīt)
heinous (hā' nu̇s)
heliacal (hė lī' ȧ kȧl)
heliotrope (hē' li ȯ trōp; hel' i ȯ trōp)
helot (hel' ȯt)
hepatica (hė păt' i kȧ)
Heptateuch (hep' tȧ tūk)
Heraclean (her ȧ klē' ȧn)
hereditable (hė red' i tabl)
heroin (hė rō' in)
heterodox (het' ėr ȯ doks)
heuchera (hū' ker a)
hexameter (heks ăm' ė tėr)
hiatus (hī ā' tus)
hiccough (hik' up)
hierarchy (hī' ėr ar ki)
Himalayan (hi ma' la yȧn)
homoeopathy (hom i op' a thi)
honorarium (on o rar' i um)
hoopoe (hoo' poo)
hospitable (hos' pi tabl)
hough (hok)
Huguenot (hū' gė not)
hydropathy (hī drop' a thi)
hypallage (hi păl' ȧ ji)
hyperbole (hī pēr' bȯ lē)
hypochondria (hip o kon' dri ȧ; hī pȯ kon' dri a)
hypotenuse (hi pot' ė nūs; hī pot' e nūs)

ichneumon (ik nū' mȯn)
ichor (ī' kȯr; ik' ȯr)
idyll (ī' dil)
ignominy (ig' nȯ mi ni)
iguana (ig wa' nȧ)
iliac (il' i ăk)
imagery (im' aj ri; im' aj ė ri)
imago (i mā' gō)
imbecile (im' bė sil)
imbroglio (im brō' lyō)
immitigable (i mit' i gabl)
immobile (i mō' bil)
imperator (im pėr ā' tȯr)
impiety (im pī' ė ti)
impious (im' pi u̇s)
implement (im' plė mėnt, *n.*; im' plė ment, *v.*)
importune (im' pȯr tūn; im por' tūn)
inanity (i năn' i ti)
inapplicable (in ăp' li kȧbl)
incense (in sens', to enrage)
incoherent (in kȯ hēr' ėnt)
incomparable (in kom' pȧr ȧbl)
inchoate (in' kȯ ȧt, *adj.*; in' kȯ āt, *v.*)
incongruous (in kong' gru̇ u̇s)
incorrigible (in kor' ij ibl)
indecorum (in dė kōr' u̇m)
indict (in dīt')
indigenous (in dij' e nu̇s)
indigent (in' di jėnt)
indocile (in dō' sīl; in dos' il)
inequitable (in ek' wi tȧbl)
inexorable (in eks' ȯr ȧbl)
inexpert (in ėks pĕrt')
inexplicable (in eks' pli kȧbl)
inextricable (in eks' tri kȧbl)
infantile (in' fȧn tīl)
ingénue (a*n* zhė nu)
inherent (in hēr' ėnt)
inhospitable (in hos' pi tȧbl)
inimical (i nim' i kȧl)
insensate (in sen' sȧt)
insouciant (in soo' si ȧnt; a*n* su sya*n*)
intaglio (in ta' lyō)
intercalary (in tĕr' kȧ lȧ ri)
interest (in' tėr ėst)
interesting (in' tėr ėst ing)
intermezzo (in tėr med' zō)
internecine (in tėr nē' sīn; in tėr nē' sin)
interpellate (in tėr pel' āt)
intestate (in tes' tȧt)
intricate (in' tri kat)
intestine (in tes' tin)
introit (in trō' it)
inventory (in' vėn tȯ ri)
irade (i ra' di)
iridescent (ir i des' ėnt)
irrefragable (i ref' ra gȧbl)
irrelevant (i rel' ė vȧnt)
irrevocable (i rev' ȯ kabl)
istle (ist' li)

jabot (zha bō')
jacinth (jăs' inth)
jaeger (yā' gėr)
jalouse (ja looz')
jalousie (zha loo zē')
jamb (jăm)
jardinière (zhar di nyar')
Javanese (jȧv ȧ nēz')
jean (jān)
jejune (jė joon')
jeremiad (jer ė mī' ȧd)
jihad (jē had')
jiu jitsu (joo' jit soo)
jocose (jȯ kōs')
jocund (jō' kund; jok' u̇nd)
judicature (joo' di ka chur)
Jugo-Slav (ū' gō slav')
jugular (joo' gū lar)
julienne (zhu li en')
junker (yung' kėr)

Kabyle (kȧ bīl')
Khedive (kė dēv')
kiosk (ki osk')
kiwi (kē' wi)
knout (nout; noot)
knowledge (nol' ej)
kopje (kop' i)
Koran (ko ran')
kosher (kō' sher)
kotow (kō tou')
kraal (kral)
kreuzer (kroit' sėr)
krone (krō' nė)
kultur (kul toor')
Kurd (koord)

labial (lā' bi ȧl)
lacerate (lăs' er āt)
laches (lăch' ėz)
laconic (lȧ kon' ik)
laissez-faire (lā sā fär)
landau (lăn' dō)
landsturm (lant' shtoorm)
Landtag (lant' takh)
Landwehr (lant' vär)
lapel (lăp' ėl)

largess (lar′ jes)
larynx (lăr′ ingks)
lasso (lăs′ ō)
latakia (lăt ȧ kē′ ȧ)
laureate (law′ rė ȧt)
legist (lej′ ist; lē′ jist)
legume (leg′ ūm; lė gūm′)
leitmotif (līt mō tēf′)
Leninite (lā′ ni nīt)
leprechaun (lep rė khawn′)
lese-majesty (lēz măj′ ės ti)
lesion (lē′ zhŭn)
lethargic (lė thar′ jik)
lethargy (leth′ ȧr ji)
lethean (lė thē′ ȧn)
levee (lev′ i)
leviathan (lė vī′ ȧ thȧn)
liaison (li ā′ zȯn; lē ā zo*n*)
lichen (lī′ kėn)
lied (song, lēd)
lien (lē′ ėn; lēn)
lieu (lū)
lign-aloes (līn ăl′ ōz)
likin (lē kēn)
limner (lim′ nėr)
lineage (lin′ ė ȧj)
lingerie (lă*n* zhrē)
linhay (lin′ i)
liqueur (li kūr′)
lira (lēr′ ȧ)
litchi (lē chē)
lithe (lī*th*)
lithesome (lī*th*′ sŭm)
litigious (li tij′ ŭs)
litre (lē′ tėr)
livelong (liv′ long)
loch (lokh)
loess (lō′ es; lĕs)
loggia (loj′ yȧ; lōj′ ȧ)
longanimity (long gȧ nim′ i ti)
longeron (lo*n*′ zhėr o*n*)
longeval (lȯn jē′ val)
loquacious (lȯ kwā′ shŭs)
lorgnette (lör nyet′)
lough (lokh)
lucre (loo′ kėr)
luge (loozh)
lugubrious (loo gū′ bri ŭs; lū gū′ bri ŭs)
lukewarm (look′ wörm; lūk′ worm)
lycêe (lē sā)
lyceum (lī sē′ ŭm)
lychnis (lik′ nis)

macabre (mȧ kabr′)
macadam (mȧ kăd′ ȧm)
macaque (mȧ kak′)
macaw (mȧ kaw′)
macerate (măs′ ėr āt)
machete (ma chāt′ ā)
machiavel (măk′ i ȧ vel)
machicolate (ma chik′ ȯ lāt)
machinate (măk′ i nāt)
maecenas (mē se′ nȧs)
maelstrom (māl′ strom)
maestro (ma es′ trō)
mafia (ma fē′ ȧ)
Magi (mā′ jī)
Magna Charta (măg′ nȧ kar′ tȧ)
magus (mā′ gŭs)
magyar (mad′ yȧr; măj′ yar)
maharajah (ma ha ra′ jȧ)
mahlstick (mal′ stik)
mahout (mȧ hout′)
maladroit (măl′ ȧ droit)
Malagasy (măl ȧ găs′ i)
malaise (mȧ lāz′)
malapropos (măl a prȯ pō; măl ăp rȯ pō′)
Malayalam (măl ȧ ya′ lȧm)
malevolent (mȧ lev′ ȯ lėnt)
malfeasance (măl fē′ zȧns)
malign (mȧ līn′)
mall (mawl)
malmaison (măl mā′ zo*n*)
malmsey (mam′ zi)
malodorous (mȧ lō′ dȯr ŭs)
manageress (măn′ ȧj ėr ės)
mandatary (măn′ dȧ tȧ ri)
mandatory (măn′ dȧ tȯ ri)
mandragora (măn drăg′ ȯr ȧ)
maniacal (mȧ nī′ ȧk ȧl)
Manichaean (măn i kē′ ȧn)
Manichee (măn i kē′)
manoeuvre (mȧ noo′ vėr)
manyplies (men′ i plīz)
marabout (măr′ ȧ boot)
maraschino (măr ȧ skē′ nō)
margarine (mar′ gȧ rin; mar gȧ rēn)
marish (măr′ ish)
Marist (măr′ ist)
marital (măr′ i tȧl)
marjoram (mar′ jȯ rȧm)
markedly (mark′ ėd li)
markedness (mark′ ėd nės)
marline (mar′ lin)
marmite (mar mēt′)
marmoset (mar′ mȯ zet)
marquetry (mar′ kėt ri)
marquise (mar kēz′)
Marseillaise (mar sė lāz′; mar sā yāz)
Marseilles (mar sālz′)
Martian (mar′ shȧn)
Martini (mar tē′ ni)
masque (mask)
masquerade (mas kėr ād′)
massage (ma sazh′)
masseur (ma sĕr′)
masseuse (ma sĕz′)
maté (mat′ ā)
matériel (ma tā ri el)
matrices (măt′ ri sēz, in printing; mȧ trī′ sēz, in science)
matrix (mā′ triks)
matronal (mā′ tron ȧl)
matutinal (măt ū tī′ nȧl)
maugre (maw′ gėr)
mauresque (mōr esk′)
Mauser (mow′ zer)
mausoleum (maw sȯ lē′ um)
Maya (ma′ yȧ)
meagre (mē′ gėr)
meander (mė ăn′ dėr)
meatus (mė ā′ tŭs)
mechanize (mek′ ȧ nīz)
medallic (me dăl′ ik)
medicable (med′ ik abl)
Medicean (med i sē′ ȧn)
mediocre (mē′ di ō kėr)
Medjidie (mė jē′ di ė)
mélange (mā la*n*zh)
mêlée (mel′ ā)
melilot (mel′ i lot)
mellifluous (mė lif′ lu ŭs)
melodic (mė lod′ ik)
melodize (mel′ ȯ dīz)
Melpomene (mel pom′ ė nē)
memoir (mem′ war)
menace (men′ ȧs)
ménage (mā nazh′)
menhir (men′ hēr)
Mephistopheles (mef is tof′ ė lēz)
mephitic (mė fit′ ik)
meretricious (mer ė trish′ ŭs)
méringue (mė răng′)
Merovingian (mer ȯ vin′ ji ȧn)
mesa (mā′ za)
mésalliance (mā za lya*n*s)
mesne (mēn)
Mesolithic (mes ȯ lith′ ik)
Mesozoic (mes ȯ zō′ ik)
messuage (mes′ wȧj)
metallurgic (met ȧ lĕr′ jik)
metallurgist (met′ ȧ lĕr jist)
metallurgy (met′ ȧ lĕr ji)
metamorphose (met ȧ mör′ fōz; met ȧ mör′ fȯs)
metamorphosis (met ȧ mör′ fȯ sis)
metathesis (mė tăth′ ė sis)
Metazoa (met ȧ zō′ ȧ)
metempsychosis (mė temp si kō′ sis)
métier (māt yā)
metope (met′ ȯ pi)
mezzanine (mez′ ȧ nēn′
mezzo (med′ zō)
mezzotint (med′ zō tint)
miasma (mī ăz′ mȧ)
mien (mēn)
migratory (mī′ grȧ tȯ ri)
minatory (min′ ȧ tȯ ri)
mineralogy (min ėr ăl′ ȯ ji)
minever (min′ ė vėr)
miniver (min′ i vėr)
minotaur (min′ ȯ tawr)
mirage (mi razh′)
misanthrope (mis′ ȧn thrōp)
mischievous (mis′ chi vŭs)
miscreant (mis′ krė ȧnt)
mise (mēz; mīz)
mise en scène (mēz a*n* sān)
miserè (mi zăr′)
miserere (miz ėr ēr′ i)
misfeasance (mis fē′ zȧns)
mistle (mis′ l)
mitrailleuse (mē tra yĕz′)
mizen (miz′ n)
mnemonic (nė mon′ ik)
mobile (mō′ bil)
modiste (mȯ dēst′)
Mogul (mȯ gŭl′)
moire (mwar)
moiré (mwa rā)
molecule (mol′ ė kūl)
momentary (mō′ mėn tȧ ri)
monetary (mŭn′ ė tȧ ri; mon′ ė tȧ ri)
monosyllabic (mon ȯ si lăb′ ik)
Monseigneur (mon sā nyĕr)
Monsieur (mo syer)
Monsignor (mon sē′ nyör; mon sē nyȯr′)
montbretia (mont brē′ shi ȧ)
moquette (mō ket′)
moraine (mȯ rān)
morganatic (mör gȧ năt′ ik)
morgue (mörg)
moribund (mor′ i bŭnd)
morpheus (mör′ fūs)
mot (mō)
motif (mō tēf′)
mourn (mōrn)
mouser (mou′ zėr)
mousy (mou′ si)
mouth (mou*th*, *v.*)
mouthy (mou′ *th*i)
mousseline (moos lēn)
Mozarab (mȯ zăr′ ȧb)
muezzin (moo ez′ in)
mullein (mŭl′ in)
murrain (mŭr′ ėn)
mygale (mig′ ȧ lē)
Myrica (mi rī′ kȧ)
myrobalan (mīr ob′ ȧ lȧn)

nacelle (na sel′)
nacre (nā′ kėr)
nadir (nā′ dir)
née (nā)
negligé (neg li zhā)
negligible (neg′ li jibl)
nemesis (nem′ ė sis)
nepenthe (nė pen′ thi)

Nereid (nēr′ ė id)
naive (na ēv′)
naphtha (năf′ thȧ)
nepotism (nep′ ȯ tizm)
nicety (nī′ sė ti)
nigella (nī jel′ ȧ)
Nirvana (nir va′ nȧ)
Noachian (nō ā′ ki ȧn)
noisette (nwa zet′)
nom de guerre (no*n* dė gär′)
nomenclature (nō′ mėn klā chûr)
nonage (nō′ nȧj; non′ ȧj)
nonce (nons)
nonchalant (non′ shȧ lȧnt)
nonpareil (non pȧ rel′; non′ pȧ rėl)
nonsuch (nŭn′ sŭch)
noraghe (nȯ ra′ gā)
nous (nous)
noyau (nwa yō′)
nuance (nu a*n*s)
nugatory (nū′ gȧ tȯ ri)
nuncio (nŭn′ shi ō)
nuptial (nŭp′ shȧl)
nurture (nẽr′ chûr)

oasis (ō ā′ sis)
oast (ōst)
obeisance (ȯ bā′ sȧns)
obese (ȯ bēs′)
oblate (ob lāt′, *adj.*; ob′ lāt, *n.*)
oblique (ȯb lēk′)
obloquy (ob′ lȯ kwi)
oboe (ō′ boi)
obscurant (ȯb skūr′ ȧnt)
obscurantist (ȯb skūr′ ȧnt ist)
obsequies (ob′ sė kwiz)
obsequious (ȯb sē′ kwi u̇s)
occipital (ȯk sip′ i tȧl)
occiput (ok′ si pŭt)
occult (ȯ kŭlt′)
ochre (ō′ kėr)
ocelot (ō′ sė lot)
odeum (ȯ dē′ u̇m)
Odyssey (od′ i si)
oecology (ē kol′ ȯ ji)
oecumenical (ē kū men′ ik ȧl)
oesophagus (ē sof′ ȧ gu̇s)
offal (of′ ȧl)
officinal (ȯ fis′ i nȧl)
Ogam (og′ ȧm)
ogee (ō jē′)
Ogham (og′ ȧm)
ogive (ō′ jīv; ō jīv′)
ogre (ō′ gėr)
ohm (ōm)
okapi (ȯ ka′ pi)
oleaginous (ō lė ăj′ i nu̇s)
ominous (om′ i nu̇s)
omnipotent (om nip′ ȯ tėnt)
omniscient (om nish′ ėnt)
omnivorous (om niv′ ȯr u̇s)
onager (on′ ȧ jėr)
on dit (o*n* dē)
onerous (on′ ėr u̇s)
onomatopoeia (ȯ nom ȧ tȯ pē′ ȧ; ȯ nom ȧ tȯ pē′ yȧ)
onomatopoeic (ȯ nom ȧ tȯ pē′ ik)
onomatopoetic (ȯ nom ȧ tȯ pȯ et′ ik)
onus (ō′ nu̇s)
onyx (on′ iks)
oolite (ō′ ȯ līt)
operative (op′ ėr ȧ tiv)
operose (op′ ėr ōs)
ophicleide (of′ i klīd)
ophidian (ȯ fid′ i ȧn)
ophite (of′ īt)
ophthalmia (of thăl′ mi ȧ)
opine (ȯ pīn′)
opoponax (ȯ pop′ ȯ năks)
opportune (op′ ȯr tūn; op ȯr tūn′)
opportunism (op′ ȯr tū nizm; op ȯr tū′ nizm)
opportunist (op′ ȯr tū nist; op ȯr tū′ nist)
opposite (op′ ȯ zit)
optimates (op ti mā′ tēz)
optime (op′ ti mi)
orgy (ôr′ ji)
oriel (ōr′ i ėl)
orient (ōr′ i ėnt, *n.*, *adj.*; ōr′ i ėnt, ōr i ent′, *v.*)
orientate (ōr′ i ėn tāt); ōr i en′ tāt)
orifice (or′ i fis)
oriflamme (or′ i flăm)
Orion (ȯ rī′ ȯn)
orison (or′ i zȯn)
ormolu (ôr′ mȯ loo)
ornate (ôr nāt′)
ornithorhynchus (ôr ni thȯ ring′ ku̇s)
orotund (ōr′ ō tŭnd)
Orphean (ôr fē′ ȧn)
orthoepy (ôr′ thō ē pi; ôr thō′ ė pi)
orthography (ôr thog′ rȧ fi)
orthopaedic (ôr thȯ pē′ dik)
oscillatory (os′ i la tȯ ri)
osteopath (os′ tė ȯ păth)
osteopathy (os tė op′ a thi)
ostracism (os′ trȧ sizm)
ostracize (os′ trȧ sīz)
otiose (ō′ shi ōs)
oubliette (oo bli et′)
ousel (oo′ zėl)
oust (oust)
outmanoeuvre (out mȧ noo′ vėr)
outrageous (out rā′ ju̇s)
outrance (oo tra*n*s)
outré (oo trā)
ouzel (oo′ zel)
overt (ō′ vėrt)
oviparous (ȯ vip′ ȧ ru̇s)
oxalic (oks ăl′ ik)
oxalis (oks′ ȧ lis)
oyer (oi′ ėr)
ozocerite (ō zos′ ė rīt)

pace (pā′ si, with all deference to)
pachyderm (păk′ i dẽrm)
pacifism (păs′ i fizm)
pacifist (păs′ i fist)
Padishah (pa′ di sha)
padre (pa′ drā)
paean (pē′ ȧn)
paeony (pē′ ȯ ni)
pageant (păj′ ėnt; pā′ jėnt)
pagoda (pȧ gō′ dȧ)
paigle (pā′ gl)
paillasse (păl′ i ăs)
paladin (păl′ ȧ din)
Palaeolithic (păl ė ȯ lith′ ik)
palaeontology (păl ė on tol′ ȯ ji)
palaestra (pȧ lē′ strȧ)
palankeen (păl ȧn kēn′)
palatable (păl′ ȧ tȧbl)
palatial (pȧ lā′ shȧl)
palatinate (pȧ lăt′ i nȧt)
palaver (pȧ la′ vėr)
paletot (păl′ ė tō)
palfrey (pawl′ fri; păl′ fri)
palimpsest (păl′ imp sest)
pall (pawl)
Palladian (pȧ lā′ di ȧn)
Palladium (pȧ lā′ di u̇m)
palliative (păl′ i ȧ tiv)
pall-mall (pel mel)
pallone (pal lō′ nā)
palmaceous (păl mā′ shu̇s)
palmar (păl′ mȧr)
palmate (păl′ māt)
palmer (pa′ mėr)
palmetto (păl met′ ō)
palmistry (pa′ mis tri)
palmitic (păl mit′ ik)
palmy (pa′ mi)
palsgrave (pawlz′ grāv)
palsy (pawl′ zi)
palter (pawl′ tėr)
paltry (pawl′ tri)
panacea (păn ȧ sē′ ȧ)
panache (pȧ nash′; pȧ năsh′)
panama (păn ȧ ma′)
Panathenaea (păn ăth ė nē′ ȧ)
pancheon (păn′ shȯn)
Pandean (păn dē′ ȧn)
pandemic (păn dem′ ik)
Pandora (păn dōr′ ȧ)
panegyric (păn ė jir′ ik)
panoply (păn′ ȯ pli)
pantheism (păn′ thė izm)
Pantheon (păn thē′ ȯn; păn′ thė ȯn)
pantomimic (păn tȯ mim′ ik)
pantomimist (păn tȯ mīm′ ist)
papier mâché (păp yā ma′ shā)
Papuan (pa poo′ ȧn; păp′ ū ȧn)
papyrus (pȧ pīr′ u̇s)
parabola (pȧ răb′ ȯ lȧ)
parachute (păr ȧ shoot′)
paradigm (păr′ ȧ dīm; păr′ ȧ dim)
paradisaic (păr ȧ di sā′ ik)
paradisaical (păr ȧ di sā′ ik ȧl)
paragrapher (păr′ ȧ graf ėr)
paragraphic (păr ȧ grăf′ ik)
paragraphist (păr′ ȧ graf ist)
Paraguay (păr′ a gwā)
parallax (păr′ ȧ lăks)
parallelepiped (păr ȧ lel ep′ i ped; păr ȧ lel ė pīp′ ėd)
paralogism (pȧ răl′ ȯ jizm)
paraph (păr′ ȧf)
Parcae (par′ sē)
parenthesis (pȧ ren′ thė sis)
parenthetic (păr ėn thet′ ik)
parget (par′ jėt)
pargeting (par′ jėt ing)
pariah (pär′ i ȧ; pa′ ri ȧ)
parietal (pȧ rī′ ė tȧl)
pari-mutuel (pa rē′ mu tu el′)
parity (păr′ i ti)
Parmesan (par mė zăn′)
parochial (pȧ rō′ ki ȧl)
parole (pȧ rōl′)
paroquet (păr′ ȯ ket)
parotid (pȧ rot′ id)
parquet (par ket′; par′ ki)
parterre (par tär′)
participle (par′ ti sipl)
partisan (par ti zăn′; par′ ti zȧn, supporter)
parvenu (par′ vė nu)
pas (pa)
paschal (pas′ kȧl)
pasha (pa′ shȧ; păsh′ ȧ; pȧ sha′)
pashalic (pa′ shȧ lik; pȧ sha′ lik)
pasque-flower (păsk′ flou ėr)
pasquinade (păs kwi nād′)
passé (pa sā)
passementerie (pas ma*n* tri)
passepartout (pas par too′)
pastel (păs′ tėl)
pastellist (păs′ tėl ist)
Pasteurism (pas′ tėr izm)
pastiche (păs tēsh′)
pasticcio (păs tēt′ chō)
pastille (păs tēl′)
patchouli (pȧ choo′ li; păch′ u li)
paten (păt′ ėn)
paternoster (păt ėr nos′ tėr)
Pathan (pȧ tan′)
pathogeny (pȧ thoj′ ė ni)
patina (păt′ i nȧ)
patois (păt′ wa)
patrician (pȧ trish′ ȧn)
patronal (păt′ rȯn ȧl; păt′ rȯn ȧl; pȧ trōn′ ȧl)

patronymic (păt rȯ nim′ ik)
paysage (pā zazh′)
paysagist (pā′ zȧzh ist)
peccavi (pė kā′ vī)
pectoral (pek′ tȯ rȧl)
pedagogic (ped ȧ goj′ ik)
pedagogy (ped′ ȧ goj i)
pedant (ped′ ȧnt)
pedantry (ped′ ȧn tri)
pedestal (ped′ ės tȧl)
pedestrian (pė des′ tri ȧn)
pedometer (pė dom′ ė tėr)
Pegasus (peg′ ȧ sŭs)
peignoir (pā′ nwar)
pekoe (pek′ ō)
pelagian (pė lā′ ji ȧn)
pelagic (pė lăj′ ik)
pelerine (pel′ ėr in; pel′ ėr ēn)
pelisse (pė lēs′)
Penates (pė nā′ tēz)
penchant (pen′ chȧnt; pa*n* sha*n*)
pendentive (pen′ dėn tiv)
Penelope (pė nel′ ȯ pē)
pennill (pen′ ithl)
pennillion (pė nith′ lyȯn)
pentameter (pen tăm′ ė tėr)
Pentateuch (pen′ tȧ tūk)
pentstemon (pent stē′ mȯn)
penult (pė nŭlt′)
penultimate (pė nŭlt′ i mȧt)
penury (pen′ ū ri)
peony (pē′ ȯ ni)
perambulate (per ăm′ bū lāt)
percept (pĕr′ sept)
percheron (pĕr′ shė ro*n*)
peregrine (per′ ė grin)
peremptory (per′ emp tȯ ri; pėr emp′ tȯ ri)
perfume (pėr fūm′, *v.*; pĕr′ fūm, *n.*)
pergola (pĕr′ go lȧ)
peri (pē′r′ i)
pericope (pė rik′ ȯ pē)
peridot (per′ i dot)
perigee (per′ i jē)
perimeter (pė rim′ ė tėr)
periodic (pēr i od′ ik)
peripatetic (per i pȧ tet′ ik)
periphery (pė rif′ ėr i)
periphrasis (pė rif′ rȧ sis)
peritoneum (per i tȯ nē′ um)
perjure (pĕr′ jŭr)
permeate (pĕr′ mė āt)
permeable (pĕr′ mė ȧbl)
permit (pėr mit′, *v.*; pĕr′ mit, *n.*)
perorate (per′ ȯ rāt)
perpetuity (pėr pė tū′ i ti)
perquisite (pĕr′ kwi zit)
Perseus (pĕr′ sūs; pĕr′ sė ŭs)
persicot (pĕr′ si kō)
persiflage (pȧr si flazh)
personnel (pĕr sȯ nel′)
pervert (pėr vėrt, *v.*; pĕr′ vėrt, *n.*)
peseta (pė sā′ tȧ)
peso (pā′ sō)
pestle (pes′ l)
petard (pė tard′)
phaeton (fā′ ė tȯn; fā′ tȯn)
phagocytè (făg′ ȯ sīt)
phalange (făl′ ȧnj)
phalangeal (fȧ lăn′ jė ȧl)
phalanger (fȧ lăn′ jėr)
phalanges (fȧ lăn′ jēz)
phalanstery (făl′ ȧn stėr i)
phalanx (făl′ ăngks)
phalanxes (făl′ ăngks ėz)
pharmaceutical (far mȧ sū′ ti kȧl; far mȧ kū′ ti kȧl)
pharos (fā′r′ os)
pharynges (fȧ rin′ jēz)
pharynx (făr′ ingks)
phenol (fē′ nȯl)
phenyl (fen′ il)
philander (fi lăn′ dėr)
philatelic (fil ȧ tel′ ik)
philatelist (fi lăt′ ė list)
philately (fi lăt′ ė li)
philippic (fi lip′ ik)
Philomel (fil′ ȯ mel)
Philomela (fil ȯ mē′ lȧ)
philtre (fil′ tėr)
phlegmatic (fleg măt′ ik)
Phoebus (fē′ bŭs)
Phoenician (fė nish′ ȧn)
phoenix (fē′ niks)
phosphoric (fos for′ ik)
photomaton (fȯ tom′ ȧ tȯn)
phratry (frā′ tri)
phthisis (tī′ sis; thī′ sis; fthī′ sis)
phylloxera (fil ok sēr′ ȧ)
physicist (fiz′ i sist)
physiognomy (fiz i on′ o mi; fiz i og′ nȯ mi)
physique (fi zēk′)
piastre (pi ăs′ ter)
piazza (pi ăz′ ȧ; pi at′ sȧ)
pibroch (pē′ brokh)
picot (pi kō′)
Pierian (pī ēr′ i ȧn; pī er′ i ȧn)
pietà (pyā ta′)
pilau (pi lou′)
pince-nez (pă*n*s nā)
Pindaric (pin dăr′ ik)
pinnace (pin′ ȧs)
pipette (pi pet′)
pipistrelle (pip is trel′)
piquant (pē′ kȧnt)
pique (pēk)
piqué (pē′ kā)
piquet (pi ket′; pik′ ėt)
piscina (pi sē′ na; pi sī′ nȧ)
pistachio (pis tā′ shi ō; pis ta′ shi ō; pis tăch′ ō)
placebo (pla sē′ bō)
placer (plăs′ ėr; plȧ thĕr′, in mining)
plafond (pla fo*n*)
plagiarize (plā′ ji ȧ rīz)
plait (plăt)
planchette (plăn shet′)
planetary (plăn′ ė tȧ ri)
plaque (plak)
platan (plăt′ ȧn)
plateau (plȧ tō′)
platen (plăt′ ėn)
Platonic (plȧ ton′ ik)
pleasance (plez′ ȧns)
plebeian (plė bē′ an)
plebiscite (pleb′ i sit)
Pleiad (plī′ ȧd)
Pleiades (plī′ a dēz)
Pleiocene (plī′ ȯ sēn)
plenary (plē′ nȧ ri)
plethora (pleth′ ȯ rȧ; plė thōr′ ȧ)
Pliocene (plī′ ȯ sēn)
plumb (plŭm)
plumber (plŭm′ ėr)
pneumatic (nū măt′ ik)
pneumonia (nū mō′ ni ȧ)
pochette (pȯ shet′)
pococurante (pō kō koo ran′ tā; pō kō kū răn′ ti)
podestà (pō des ta′)
pogrom (pȯ grom′)
poignant (poi′ nȧnt)
poilu (pwa lu)
poinsettia (poin set′ i ȧ)
polder (pōl′ dėr)
polemic (pȯ lem′ ik)
polonaise (pol′ ȯ nāz; pō′ lȯ nāz)
polony (pȯ lō′ ni)
poltergeist (pol′ tėr gīst)
polygamy (pȯ lig′ ȧ mi)
polyp (pol′ ip)
polyphony (pȯ lif′ ȯ ni)
polysyllabic (pol i si lăb′ ik)
polytheism (pol′ i thē izm)
pomace (pŭm′ is)
pomade (pȯ mad′; pȯ mād′)
pomander (pō′ mȧn dėr; pom′ ȧn dėr; pȯ man′ dėr)
pomegranate (pom′ grăn ȧt; pŭm′ grăn ȧt; pom grăn′ at; pŭm grăn′ ȧt)
pommel (pŭm′ ėl)
Pompeian (pom pē′ ȧn)
pompier (po*n* pyā; pom′ pyėr)
ponceau (po*n* sō)
pongee (pŭn jē′)
poniard (pon′ yȧrd)
popliteal (pop lit′ ė ȧl)
porcelain (pōr′ sė lān; pōr′ slin)
porcine (pōr′ sīn)
porphyry (pōr′ fi ri)
porpoise (por′ pŭs)
portemonnaie (port mon ā)
portentous (por ten′ tŭs)
portière (pōr tyär)
posaune (pō zou′ nė)
posse (pos′ i)
poste restante (post rės ta*n*t′)
postern (pōst′ ėrn)
posthumous (pos′ tū mŭs)
postiche (pos tēsh′)
postilion (pȯ stil′ yȯn)
post-obit (pōst ob′ it)
posture (pos′ chŭr)
potable (pō′ tabl)
potage (pō tazh)
potamic (pȯ tăm′ ik)
pother (po*th*′ ėr; pŭ*th*′ ėr)
pot-pourri (pō pu rē′)
poult (pōlt)
pourboire (pour bwar)
pourparler (poor par lā)
pourpoint (poor′ point)
practicable (prăk′ ti kȧbl)
praetor (prē′ tȯr)
prairie (prar′ i)
pratique (prăt′ ik; prȧ tēk′)
preamble prē′ ăm bl, prē ăm′ bl *n.*; prē ăm′ bl, *v.*)
prebend (preb′ end)
prebendal (preb′ ėn dȧl)
prebendary (preb′ ėn dȧ ri)
precedence (pre sē′ dėns)
precedent (pres′ ė dėnt, *n.*; prė sē′ dėnt, *adj.*)
precinct (prē′ singkt)
predatory (pred′ a to ri)
predicable (pred′ i kabl)
predicate (pred′ i kāt, *v.*; pred′ i kat, *n.*)
preface (pref′ ȧs)
prefatory (pref′ ȧ tȯ ri)
preferably (pref′ ėr ȧb li)
prelacy (prel′ ȧ si)
prelate (prel′ ȧt)
prelude (prel′ ūd, prē′ lūd, *n.*: prė lūd′, prel′ ūd, *v.*)
premature (prem′ ȧ tūr; prē′ mȧ tūr; prē mȧ tūr′)
premier (prem′ i ėr; prē′ mi ėr)
première (prė myȧr′)
premise (prem′ is, *n.*; prė mīz′, *v.*)
presage (pres′ ȧj, prē′ sȧj, *n.*; prė sāj′, *v.*)
prescient (presh′ i ėnt; prē′shi ėnt)
prestige (pres tēzh′; pres′ tij)
preterit (pret′ ėr it)
prie-Dieu (prē dyĕ)
prima donna (prē′ mȧ don′ ȧ)
prima facie (prī mȧ fā′ shi ē)
primates (prī mā′ tēz, order of mammals)
primeval (prī mē′ vȧl)
primogeniture (prī mȯ jen′ i chŭr)

primula (prim′ ū lȧ)
primus (prī′ mûs)
pristine (pris′ tin)
privacy (prī′ vȧ si ; priv′ ȧ si)
probity (prob′ i ti)
proboscis (prȯ bos′ is)
Procrustean (prȯ krŭs′ tė ȧn)
procuration (prok ū rā′ shûn)
proem (prō′ ėm)
prognathic (prog năth′ ik)
prognathous (prog′ nȧ thûs)
prognosis (prog nō′ sis)
progress prō′ grės, prog′ rės, *n.* ; prȯ grės′, *v.*)
project (proj′ ėkt, *n.* : prȯ jėkt′, *v.*)
prologue (prō′ log)
Promethean (prȯ mē′ thė ȧn)
promontory (prom′ ȯn tȯ ri)
promulgate (prom′ ŭl gāt ; prō′ mŭl gāt)
pronouncedly (prȯ nouns′ ėd li)
propagate (prop′ ȧ gāt)
prophylactic (prof i lăk′ tik)
prosaic (prō zā′ ik)
proselyte (pros′ ė līt)
prosody (pros′ ȯ di)
prosopopoeia (pros ō pȯ pē′ yȧ)
prospect (pros′ pėkt, *n.* ; prȯ spėkt′, *v.*)
prostrate (pros′ trȧt, *adj.* ; prŏs trāt′, pros′ trāt, *v.*)
protean (prō′ tė ȧn)
protégé (prot′ ā zhā)
proteid (prō′ tė id)
protein (prō′ tė in)
Proteus (prō′ tūs ; prō′ tė ûs)
prothesis (proth′ ė sis)
protocol (prō′ tȯ kol)
protoplasm (prō′ tȯ plăzm)
prototype (prō′ tȯ tīp)
protozoa (prō tȯ zō′ ȧ)
provenance (prov′ ė nȧns)
Provençal (prov a*n* sal′)
proviso (prȯ vī′ zō)
provisory (prȯ vī′ zȯ ri)
provocative (prȯ vok′ ȧ tiv)
prowess (prou′ ės)
prussic (prŭs′ ik)
prytaneum (prit ȧ nē′ ûm)
psaltery (sawl′ tė ri)
pseudonym (sū′ dȯ nim)
Psyche (sī′ ki)
psychiatric (sī ki ăt′ rik)
psychiatry (sī kī′ a tri)
psychic (sī′ kik)
psychical (sī′ kik ăl)
psychicist (sī′ ki sist)
psychoanalysis (sī kȯ ȧ năl′ i sis)
psychology (sī kol′ ȯ ji)
psychosis (sī kō′ sis)
ptarmigan (tar′ mi gȧn)
pterodactyl (ter ȯ dăk′ til)
Ptolemaic (tol ė mā′ ik)
ptomaine (tō′ mān ; tō′ mā īn)
publicist (pŭb′ li sist)
pueblo (poo eb′ lō ; pweb′ lō)
puerile (pū′ ėr īl)
puerility (pū ėr il′ i ti)
puisne (pū′ ni)
puissant (pū′ i sȧnt ; pwis′ ȧnt)
pulmonary (pŭl′ mȯ nȧ ri)
pulque (pul′ kā)
pulsatory (pŭl′ sȧ tȯ ri)
puna (poo′ nȧ)
puncheon (pŭn′ shûn)
punctilio (pungk til′ i ō)
pungent (pŭn′ jėnt)
punitive (pū′ ni tiv)
punitory (pū′ ni tȯ ri)
pupilary (pū′ pil ȧ ri)
purée (pu rā)
purgative (pĕr′ gȧ tiv)
purlieu (pĕr′ lū)
purport (pûr pōrt′, *v.* ; pĕr′ pȯrt, *n.*)
purslane (pĕr′ slȧn)
pursuance (pûr sū′ ȧns)
pursuivant (pĕr′ swi vȧnt)
purulent (pūr′ ū lėnt)
purvey (pûr vā′)
purview (pĕr′ vū)
pus (pŭs)
pusillanimous (pū si lăn′ i mûs)
pustule (pŭs′ tūl)
put (pŭt, to hurl)
putative (pū′ tȧ tiv)
putt (pŭt, in golf)
putter (pŭt′ ėr, in golf and in putting the weight)
puy (pwē)
pyaemia (pī ē′ mi ȧ)
pyramidal (pi răm′ i dăl)
pyrethrum (pī rē′ thrûm ; pi reth′ rûm)
pyretic (pī ret′ ik)
pyrites (pi rī ′ tēz)
Pyrola (pir′ ȯ lȧ)
pyrope (pīr′ ōp)
pyrotechnic (pīr ȯ tek′ nik)
pyrotechny (pīr′ ȯ tek ni)
Pyrrhic (pir′ ik)
Pyrrhonism (pir′ ȯn izm)
Pyrus (pīr′ us)
Pythagorean (pi thăg ȯ rē′ ȧn ; pith ăg ȯ rē′ an)
Pythian (pith′ i an)

qua (kwā)
quadriga (kwod rī′ gȧ)
quaff (kwaf)
quagmire (kwăg′ mīr)
qualm (kwawm ; kwam)
quandary (kwon dȧr′ i ; kwon′ dȧ ri)
quant (kwont)
quantum (kwon′ tûm)
quarantine (kwor′ ȧn tēn)
quash (kwosh)
quasi-historical (kwā′ sī his tor′ ik al)
quassia (kwosh′ a ; kwăsh′ ȧ ; kwăs′ i ȧ)
quatercentenary (kwăt ėr sen′ te nȧ ri)
quaterfoil (kăt′ ėr foil)
quaternary (kwȧ tĕr′ nȧ ri)
quatorzain (kăt′ ȯr zān)
quatrain (kwot′ rān)
quatrefoil (kăt′ ėr foil)
quay (kē)
quean (kwēn)
queasy (kwē′ zi)
querulous (kwer′ ū lûs)
quetzal (ket′ săl)
quiescent (kwī es′ ėnt)
quietus (kwī ē′ tûs)
quintain (kwin′ tȧn)
quipu (kē′ pu ; kwip′ u)
qui vive (kē vēv)
quixotic (kwiks ot′ ik)
quoin (koin)
quoit (koit ; kwoit)

Rabbinic (rȧ bin′ ik)
rabies (rā′ bi ēz ; răb′ i ēz)
raceme (rȧ sēm′)
racial (rā′ shȧl)
raconteur (ra ko*n* tĕr)
rafflesia (rȧ flē′ zi ȧ ; **rȧ flē′ zhi ȧ**)
ragout (rȧ goo′)
raisonné (rā zon ā)
rajah (ra′ jȧ)
Rajput (raj′ poot)
ramie (răm′ i)
rancour (răng′ kȯr)
ranee (ra′ nē)
ranz-des-vaches (ra*n* dā vash)
rapine (răp′ in)
rapport (rȧ pōrt′ ; ra pȯr)
rapprochement (ra prosh ma*n*)
rapscallion (răp skăl′ yȯn)
rarefy (rär′ ė fī)
ratafia (răt ȧ fē′ ȧ)
Rathaus (rat′ hous)
ratio (rā′ shi ō)
rationale (răsh ûn ā′ li)
ratline (răt′ lin)
ravening (răv′ ėn ing)
ravine (rȧ vēn′)
Rayah (rī′ ȧ)
Reaumur (rā ō mur)
recalcitrant (re kăl′ si trȧnt)
réchauffé (rā shō fā ; re shō′ fā)
recherché (rė shar′ shā)
recidivist (rė sid′ i vist)
recipe (res′ i pi)
reciprocal (re sip′ rȯ kal)
reciprocity (res i pros′ i ti)
recitative (res i ta tēv′, *n.* ; res′ i tā tiv, rė sit′ ȧ tiv, *adj.*)
reclamation (rek lȧ mā′ shun)
réclame (rā klam)
recluse (rė kloos′)
recognizance (re kog′ ni zȧns ; rė kon′ i zans)
recognize (rek′ og nīz)
recondite (rek′ on dīt)
reconnaissance (rė kon′ ȧ sȧns)
reconnoitre (rek o noi′ tėr)
recoup (re koop′)
recreant (rek′ re ant)
recrudesce (rē kru des′)
recuperate (rė kū′ pėr āt)
recuperative (re kū′ pėr ȧ tiv)
recurrence (rė kŭr′ ėns)
recurrent (rė kŭr′ ent)
recusant (rek′ ū zant ; re kū′ zȧnt)
redan (re dăn′)
redolent (red′ ȯ lėnt)
refectory (re fek′ to ri ; ref′ ėk tȯ ri)
referable (ref′ ėr abl)
refinedly (rė fīn′ ed li)
reformative (rė for′ mȧ tiv)
refutation (ref ū tā′ shun)
regicide (rej′ i sīd)
régie (rā zhē′)
régime (rā zhēm)
registrar (rej′ is trar)
registrary (rej′ is trȧ ri)
regius (rē′ ji ûs)
regulable (reg′ ū lȧbl)
regurgitate (rė gĕr′ ji tāt)
Reichsrat (rīkhs′ rat)
Reichstag (rīkhs′ takh)
Reichswehr (rīkhs′ var)
reiterate (rė it′ ėr āt)
relevant (rel′ ė vant)
relict (rel′ ikt)
relievo (rė lē′ vō)
religieuse (rė lē zhyēz)
reliquary (rel′ i kwȧ ri)
remanet (rem′ ȧ net)
remediable (rė mē′ di ȧbl)
reminiscence (rem i nis′ ėns)
remonstrate (rė mon′ strāt)
remonstration (rem ȯn strā′ shûn)
remonstrative (rė mon ′ strȧ tiv)
remonstrator (rė mon′ strā tor)
renaissance (rė nā′ sans ; rėn ā sa*n*s)
renascent (rė năs′ ėnt)
rendezvous (ra*n*′ dā voo ; *pl.* ra*n*′ dā vooz)
renovate (ren′ ȯ vāt)
rentier (ra*n* tyā)
repairable (rė pär′ ȧbl)
reparable (rep′ ȧr ȧbl)

repartee (rep ȧr tē′)
repellent (rė pel′ ėnt)
repent (rē′ pėnt, creeping)
repertoire (rep′ ėr twar)
repertory (rep′ ėr tȯ ri)
replica (rep′ li kȧ)
repoussé (rė poo′ sā)
reprehend (rep rė hend′)
reprobate (rep′ ro bȧt *adj.*; rep′ rȯ bāt, *n.* and *v.*)
reputable (rep′ ū tȧbl)
requiem (rek′ wi ėm; rē′ kwi ėm)
requiescat (rek wi es′ kȧt)
requisite (rek′ wi zit)
reredos (rēr′ dos)
rescript (rē′ skript)
reseda (rė sē′ dȧ)
reservoir (rez′ ėr vwar)
residual (rė zid′ ū ȧl)
residuary (rė zid′ ū ȧ ri)
residue (rez′ i dū)
resignedly (rė zīn′ ėd li)
resilient (rė zil′ i ėnt)
resin (rez′ in)
resoluble (rez′ ȯ loobl)
resolvedly (rė zol′ vėd li)
resonant (rez′ o nȧnt)
respirator (res′ pi rā tȯr)
respiratory (res′ pi rā tȯ ri)
respite (res′ pit)
restaurant (res tō ra*n*; res′ tȯ rȧnt)
restaurateur (res tō ra tĕr)
restorable (rė stōr′ ȧbl)
restorative (rė stor′ ȧ tiv)
restrainedly (rė strān′ ėd li)
résumé (rā zū mā′)
resumption (rė zŭmp′ shun)
retable (rė tā′ bl)
retaliatory (rė tăl′ i ȧ tȯ ri)
reticent (ret′ i sėnt)
retina (ret′ i nȧ)
retribution (ret ri bū′ shůn)
retributive (rė trib′ ū tiv)
retrograde (ret′ rȯ grād)
retrospect (ret′ rȯ spekt)
retroussé (rė troo sā)
réveillé (rė vel′ i; rė vā′ lyė)
reveller (rev′ ėl ėr)
revenant (rev′ ė nȧnt; rė vē na*n*)
revenue (rev′ ėn ū)
reverie (rev′ ėr i)
revers (rė vâr′)
reversedly (rė vērs′ ėd li)
revictual (rē vit′ l)
revocable (rev′ ȯ kȧbl)
revue (rė vū′)
rhadamanthine (răd ȧ măn′ thin)
rhapsody (răp′ sȯ di)
rhea (rē′ ȧ)
Rhenish (ren′ ish)
rhetoric (ret′ o rik)
rheum (room, liquid)
rhizome (rī′ zōm)
ribald (rib′ ȧld)
Ribes (ri′ bēz)
ricochet (rik′ ȯ shā; rik′ ȯ shet)
righteous (rī′ tyůs; rī′ chůs)
rilievo (rē lyā′ vō)
riparian (rī pâr′ i an)
riposte (ri pōst′)
risible (riz′ ibl)
riven (riv′ ėn)
riverain (riv′ ėr ān)
riverine (riv′ ėr īn)
rochet (roch′ ėt)
rococo (rȯ kō′ kō)
rodeo (rȯ dā′ ō)
rodomontade (rod ȯ mon tād′)
Romany (rom′ ȧ ni)
Röntgen rays (rėnt′ gėn rāz)
Roquefort (rok fȯr)
roseate (rō′ zė ȧt)
Rosicrucian (rō zi kroo′ shȧn)
rotatable (rȯ tāt′ ȧbl)
rotatory (rō′ tȧ tȯ ri)
rouge (rooj, Eton football term)
route (rout, in the Army)
rowel (rou′ ėl)
roxburghe (roks′ bůr ȯ)
Rubicon (roo′ bi kon)
rubicund (roo′ bi kůnd)
ruridecanal (roor i dė kā′ nȧl)
ruse (rooz)

sabot (săb′ ō)
sabre (sā′ bėr)
sabretache (săb′ ėr tăsh)
sabreur (sa brĕr)
saccharine (săk′ ȧ rin, săk′ ȧ rēn, *n.*; săk′ ȧ rin, săk′ ȧ rīn, *adj.*)
sacerdotal (săs ėr dō′ tȧl)
sachet (săsh′ ā)
sacring (sā′ kring)
saga (sa′ gȧ)
Sagitta (sȧ jit′ ȧ)
sahib (sa′ ib)
sainfoin (sān′ foin)
salaam (sȧ lam′)
salle (sal)
salmis (săl′ mē)
salon (sa lo*n*)
salutary (săl′ ū tȧ ri)
sal volatile (săl vo lăt′ i li)
samurai (săm′ u rī)
sanbenito (săn bė nē′ tō)
sangfroid (sa*n* frwa)
sans (sănz)
sansculotte (sănz kū lot′)
sapient (sā′ pi ėnt)
saponaceous (săp ȯ nā′ shůs)
sarcophagus (sar kof′ ȧ gus)
sardine (sar′ dīn, precious stone)
sardonic (sar don′ ik)
sardonyx (sar′ dȯ niks)
Sassenach (săs′ ė năkh)
satiable (sā′ shi ȧbl)
satiate (sā′ shi āt)
satiety (sȧ tī′ ė ti)
satirist (săt′ i rist)
satirize (săt′ i rīz)
saturnine (săt′ ůr nīn)
satyr (săt′ ir)
sauerkraut (sour′ krout)
sauté (sō tā)
Sauterne (sō tārn′)
savant (sa va*n*)
scabious (skā′ bi ůs)
scarab (skăr′ ȧb)
scarify (skăr′ i fī)
scathe (skā*th*)
scena (shā′ nȧ)
scenario (shā na′ ri ō)
sceptic (skep′ tik)
sceptre (sep′ tėr)
schedule (shed′ ūl)
scherzo (skârt′ sō)
schipperke (skip′ ėr kė)
schism (siz′ m)
schismatic (siz măt′ ik)
schist (shist)
Schizanthus (skī zăn′ thůs)
schloss (shlos)
schorl (shȯrl)
sciatic (sī ăt′ ik)
Scilla (sil′ ȧ)
scimitar (sim′ i tȧr)
scintilla (sin til′ ȧ)
scintillate (sin′ ti lāt)
sciolist (sī′ ȯ list)
scion (sī′ ȯn)
sclerotic (sklēr ot′ ik)
sconce (skons)
scoria (skōr′ i ȧ)
scotia (skō′ ti ȧ)
Scotice (skot′ i si)
scrivener (skriv′ nėr)
scurrilous (skŭr′ i lůs)
scutcheon (skŭch′ ȯn)
Scylla (sil′ ȧ)
scythe (sī*th*)
Scythian (si*th*′ i ȧn)
Sealyham (sē′ li ȧm)
seamstress (sem′ strės)
séance (sā a*n*s)
secede (sė sēd′)
secretary (sek′ rė tȧ ri)
secrete (sė krēt′)
secretive (sė krē′ tiv)
sectary (sek′ tȧ ri)
sedan (sė dăn′)
sedentary (sed′ ėn tȧ ri)
sedulous (sed′ ū lůs)
sedum (sē′ dům)
segmentally (seg men′ tȧl li)
segmentary (seg′ mėn tȧ ri)
segregate (seg′ rė gāt, *v.*; seg′ rė gȧt, *adj.*)
seiche (sāsh)
seigneur (sā nyĕr)
seigneurial (sā nūr′ i ȧl)
seigniorage (sē′ nyȯr ȧj)
seigniorial (sē nyōr′ i ȧl)
seine (sān; sēn)
seismic (sīz′ mik)
seizure (sēzh′ ůr)
selachian (sė lā′ ki ȧn)
Seleucid (sė lū′ sid)
Seljuk (sel jook′)
selvagee (sel vȧ jē′)
seneschal (sen′ ė shȧl)
senile (sē′ nīl)
senility (sė nil′ i ti)
sennachie (sen′ ȧ khi)
señor (sen yōr′)
señora (sen yōr′ ȧ)
señorita (sen yō rē′ tȧ)
sentient (sen′ shi ėnt)
sepal (sep′ ȧl)
sepia (sē′ pi ȧ)
Septuagint (sep′ tū a jint)
sepulchre (sep′ ůl kėr)
sequelae (sė kwē′ lē)
sequestrate (sē′ kwes trāt)
sequestration (sē kwes trā′ shůn)
sequestrator (sē′ kwes trā tȯr)
sequoia (sė kwoi′ ȧ)
seraglio (sė ra′ lyō)
seraphic (sė răf′ ik)
sericulture (ser′ i kŭl chůr)
serif (ser′ if)
sergeant (sar′ jėnt)
serjeant (sar′ jėnt)
serrate (ser′ ȧt, *adj.*; sė rāt′, *v.*)
sesame (ses′ ȧ mi)
sesquipedalian (ses kwi pė dā′ li ȧn)
sessile (ses′ īl; ses′ il)
severance (sev′ ėr ȧns)
Sèvres (sāvr)
sgraffito (sgra fē′ tō)
shagreen (shȧ grēn′)
sheathe (shē*th*)
sheikh (shēk; shāk)
shellac (shė lăk′)
sherif (shė rēf′)
Shiah (shē′ ȧ)
shiel (shēl)
shieling (shē′ ling)
Shiite (shē′ īt)
shikari (shē ka′ rē)
shillelagh (shi lā′ lȧ)
Shogun (shō′ gun)
shrievalty (shrē′ vȧl ti)
shriven (shriv′ ėn)
sibyl (sib′ il)
Sicel (sis′ ėl)

Siceliot (si sel′ i ȯt)
sidereal (sī dēr′ ė ȧl)
Sienese (sē ė nēz′)
sienna (si en′ ȧ)
signatory (sig′ nȧ tȯ ri)
signor (sē′ nyōr)
signora (sē nyōr′ ȧ)
signorina (sē nyȯ rē′ nȧ)
Sikh (sēk)
silhouette (sil u et′)
silica (sil′ i kȧ)
silicate (sil′ i kȧt)
simoniac (si mō′ ni ăk)
simoniacal (si mȯ nī′ ȧk ȧl)
simulacrum (sim ū lā′ kru̇m)
Sinaitic (sī nȧ it′ ik)
sinecure (sī′ nė kūr; sin′ ė kūr)
sinister (sin′ is tėr)
Sinn Fein (shin fān′)
Sioux (soo)
sisal (sis′ ȧl)
Sisyphean (sis i fē′ ȧn)
Siva (sē′ vȧ)
sjambok (zhăm′ bok)
ski (shē; skē)
sleight (slīt)
sleuth (slooth)
sliver (sliv′ ėr)
slough (slou, quagmire; slŭf, cast skin)
sloven (slŭv′ ėn)
sluice (sloos)
smithy (smi*th*′ i)
sobriquet (sō′ bri kā)
Socinian (sȯ sin′ i ȧn)
socle (sō′ kl)
Socratic (sȯ krăt′ ik)
soi-disant (swa dē za*n*)
soirée (swa′ rā)
solace (sol′ ȧs)
solanum (sȯ lā′ nu̇m)
solatium (sȯ lā′ shi u̇m)
solecism (sol′ ė sizm)
solemnize (sol′ ėm nīz)
solferino (sol fė rē′ nō)
solidarity (sol i dăr′ i ti)
soliloquy (sȯ lil′ ȯ kwi)
solstice (sol′ stis)
somatic (sȯ măt′ ik)
sombre (som′ bėr)
sombrero (som brär′ ō)
somnolent (som′ nȯ lėnt)
sonorous (sȯ nōr′ u̇s)
soochong (soo shong′)
sophism (sof′ izm)
sophistry (sof′ is tri)
Sophoclean (sof ȯ klē′ ȧn)
soporific (sō pȯ rif′ ik; sop ȯ rif′ ik)
sortie (sör′ ti)
soubrette (soo bret′)
soubriquet (soo′ bri kā)
souchong (soo shong′)
soufflé (soo′ flā)
sough (sŭf, sou, of wind; sŭf, channel)
soupçon (soop′ so*n*)
soutane (soo tan′; soo tăn′)
Southron (sŭ*th*′ rȯn)
soviet (sov′ yėt)
spathe (spā*th*)
spatial (spā′ shȧl)
specie (spē′ shē; spē′ shi ē)
specific (spė sif′ ik)
specious (spē′ shu̇s)
spermaceti (spĕr mȧ sē′ ti)
spherical (sfer′ ik ȧl)
spicule (spī′ kūl)
spiegeleisen (spē′ gėl īzn)
spigot (spig′ ȯt)
spiracle (spīr′ ȧkl)
spiraea (spī rē′ ȧ)
spirituelle (spir i tū el′)
splenetic (splė net′ ik)
spoliation (spō li ā′ shu̇n)
spontaneity (spon tȧ nē′ i ti)
sporadic (spȯ răd′ ik)
sporran (spor′ ȧn)
spurry (spŭr′ i)
squalid (skwol′ id)
squalor (skwol′ ȯr)
stabilize (stā′ bi līz)
stadium (stā′ di u̇m)
Stagirite (stăj′ i rīt)
stalwart (stawl′ wȧrt)
stamina (stăm′ i nȧ)
stanchion (stăn′ shȯn; stan′ shȯn)
static (stăt′ ik)
Statice (stăt′ i sē)
statist (stā′ tist)
statistician (stăt is tish′ u̇n)
status (stā′ tu̇s)
statutory (stăt′ ū tȯ ri)
stavesacre (stāv′ zā kėr)
stearin (stē′ ȧ rin)
steatite (stē′ ȧ tīt)
stephanotis (stef ȧ nō′ tis)
sterile (ster′ il)
sterilize (ster′ il īz)
stertorous (stĕr′ tȯr u̇s)
stevedore (stē′ vė dōr)
stoep (stoop)
stomachic (stȯ măk′ ik)
stook (stuk)
storax (stōr′ ȧks)
Storthing (stör′ ting)
stoup (stoop)
strata (strā′ tȧ)
strategic (strȧ tē′ jik; strȧ tej′ ik)
strategical (strȧ tē′ jik ȧl; strȧ tej′ ik al)
stratum (strā′ tu̇m)
stringent (strin′ jėnt)
strophe (strof′ i; strō′ fi)
strychnine (strik′ nin; strik′ nīn)
studding sail (stŭn′ sl)
Stygian (stij′ i ȧn)
suavity (swăv′ i ti)
subaltern (sŭb′ al tėrn)
suborn (su̇ börn′)
substantive (sŭb′ stȧn tiv)
subtile (sŭt′ il; sŭb′ til)
subtle (sŭt′ l)
succinct (su̇k singkt′)
suède (swād)
suffragan (sŭf′ rȧ gȧn)
suffuse (su̇ fūz′)
suite (swēt)
sultanate (sŭl′ tȧn ȧt)
sundae (sŭn′ dē)
superficies (sū pėr fish′ i ēz)
superfluous (sū pĕr′ floo u̇s)
supine (sū pīn′, *adj.*; sū′ pīn, *n.*)
supposedly (su̇ pōz′ ėd li)
supposititious (su̇ poz i tish′ u̇s)
suppurate (sŭp′ ū rȧt)
surfeit (sĕr′ fit)
surgeon (sĕr′ jȯn)
surplusage (sĕr′ plu̇s ij)
surreptitious (sŭr ėp tish′ u̇s)
surrogate (sŭr′ ȯ gȧt)
surveillance (su̇r vā′ lȧns; su̇r vā′ lyȧns)
suttee (su̇ tē′)
suture (sū′ chu̇r)
suzerain (sū′ zė rān; sū′ zė rėn)
Swahili (swa hē′ li)
swarthy (swör′ *th*i)
swastika (swăs′ ti kȧ)
Sybarite (sib′ ȧ rīt)
sycophant (sik′ ȯ fȧnt)
syllabary (sil′ ȧ bȧ ri)
syllabic (si lăb′ ik)
syllogism (sil′ ȯ jizm)
symbolic (sim bol′ ik)
symmetry (sim′ ė tri)
symphonic (sim fon′ ik)
symposium (sim pō′ zi u̇m)
synchronism (sing′ krȯ nizm)
synchronize (sing′ krȯ nīz)
synchronous (sing′ krȯ nu̇s)
syncopate (sing′ kȯ pāt)
syncope (sing′ kȯ pė)
synod (sin′ ȯd)
synodal (sin′ ȯd ȧl)
synodic (si nod′ ik)
synonym (sin′ ȯ nim)
synonymous (si non′ i mu̇s)
synopsis (si nop′ sis)
synthesis (sin′ thė sis)
synthetic (sin thet′ ik)
Syriac (sir′ i ăk)
syringa (si ring′ gȧ)
syringe (sir′ inj)
syrinx (sir′ ingks)
systole (sis′ tȯ lė)
systyle (sis′ tīl)

Taal (tal)
tabard (tȧb′ ȧrd)
tabasheer (tăb a shēr′)
taberdar (tăb′ er dar)
tabes (tā′ bēz)
table d'hôte (tabl dōt)
tableau (tăb′ lō)
tablier (ta blyā)
tacit (tăs′ it)
taciturn (tăs′ i tu̇rn)
tactile (tăk′ til; tăk′ tīl)
tael (tāl)
taenia (tē′ ni ȧ)
Tagetes (tȧ jē′ tēz)
taiga (tī′ ga)
Taiping (tī ping)
talc (tălk)
tambour (tăm′ bȯr)
tanager (tăn′ ȧ jėr)
Taoism (tou′ izm)
tapis (tȧ pē; tăp′ is)
tarot (tăr′ ō)
Tarpeian (tar pē′ ȧn)
tartaric (tar tăr′ ik)
taube (tou′ bė)
taxidermy (tăk′ si dĕr mi)
technique (tek nēk′)
telegrapher (tė leg′ rȧ fėr)
telegraphist (tė leg′ rȧ fist)
telegraphy (tė leg′ rȧ fi)
telepathic (tel ė păth′ ik)
telepathy (tė lep′ ȧ thi)
telephonic (tel ė fon′ ik)
telephonist (tė lef′ ȯ nist)
telephony (tė lef′ ȯ ni)
telescopist (tė les′ kȯ pist)
telescopy (tė les′ kȯ pi)
Tempean (tem pē′ ȧn)
tenable (ten′ ȧbl)
tenace (ten′ ȧs)
tenuity (tė nū′ i ti)
tepid (tep′ id)
tercentenary (tĕr sen′ tė nȧ ri; tĕr sėn tē′ nȧ ri)
tergiversate (tĕr′ ji vėr sāt)
terminable (tĕr′ min ȧbl)
Terpsichorean (tĕrp si kȯ rē′ ȧn)
terrain (ter ān′)
terrestrial (tė res′ tri ȧl)
tertian (tĕr′ shȧn)
tertiary (tĕr′ shȧ ri)
tetanus (tet′ ȧ nu̇s)
tête-à-tête (tāt′ a tāt′)
tetralogy (tė trăl′ ȯ ji)
tetrameter (tė trăm′ ė tėr)
tetrarch (tet′ rark; te′ trark)
Thalia (thȧ lī′ ȧ)
Thalian (thȧ lī′ ȧn)
thaumaturge (thaw′ mȧ tĕrj)

thaumaturgic (thaw mȧ tĕr′ jik)
thaumaturgy (thaw′ mȧ tĕr ji)
Thebaid (thē bā′ id ; thē′ bā id)
thebaine (thē′ bā īn)
theine (thē′ in)
Theocritean (thė ok ri tē′ ȧn)
theodicy (thė od′ i si)
theodolite (thė od′ ȯ līt)
therapeutic (ther ȧ pū′ tik)
thesaurus (thē saw′ ru̇s)
thesis (thē′sis ; in prosody, thes′ is)
thrall (thrawl)
thraldom (thrawl′ dȯm)
thriven (thriv′ n)
Thule (thū′ lē)
thurible (thūr′ ibl)
thurifer (thūr′ i fėr)
thyme (tīm)
tiara (ti a′ rȧ)
tibia (tib′ i ȧ)
tierce (tērs)
tiers état (tyärz ė ta)
timbre (ta*n*br ; tim′ bėr)
tirade (ti rād′)
tirailleur (tē ra yĕr ; tir ȧ lēr′)
tmesis (mē′ sis)
tolbooth (tol′ buth)
tombola (tom′ bȯ la)
tonneau (ton′ ō ; to nō′)
tontine (ton tēn′)
topgallant (top găl′ ȧnt ; tȯ găl′ ȧnt)
topiary (tō′ pi ȧ ri)
topsail (top′ sl)
toque (tōk)
tortious (tor′ shu̇s)
toucan (tu kan′ ; too′ kȧn)
toupee (tu pē′)
tourniquet (toor′ ni ket)
tousle (tou′ zl)
toxophilite (toks of′ i līt)
trabeated (trā′ bė āt ėd)
trachea (trȧ kē′ ȧ ; trā′ kė ȧ)
trachoma (trȧ kō′ ma)
tragacanth (trăg′ ȧ kănth)
tragopan (trăg′ ȯ păn)
traipse (trāps)
trait (trā ; U.S.A., trāt)
trajectory (trȧ jek′ tȯ ri)
transcendental (tran sėn den′ tȧl)
transient (trăn′ zi ėnt ; trăn′ si ėnt)
traverse (trăv′ ėrs)
travesty (trăv′ ės ti)
trecento (trā chen′ tō)
trenail (tren′ l)
trepan (trė păn′)
trephine (trė fēn′ ; trė fīn′)
tricolour (trī′ kŭl ėr)
trilogy (tril′ ȯ ji)
triptych (trip′ tik)
triturate (trit′ ū rāt)
trochee (trō′ kē)
Tropaeolum (trȯ pē′ ȯ lu̇m)
troth (trōth)
truculent (trŭk′ ū lent ; troo′ kū lėnt)
tryst (trīst ; trist)
tubercle (tū′ bėrkl)
tuberose (tu′ ber os)
tundra (toon′ drȧ)
turgid (tĕr′ jid)
tutelage (tū′ tė lij)
tutelary (tū′ tė lȧ ri)
tyrannous (tir′ ȧ nu̇s)
Tzigany (tsig′ ȧ ni)

ubiquity (ū bik′ wi ti)
Uhlan (oo′ lan ; ū′ lȧn)
uitlander (oit′ lȧnd ėr ; ēt′ lȧnd ėr)
umlaut (um′ lout)
unanimous (ū năn′ i mu̇s)
unanimity (ū nȧ nim′ i ti)
uncate (ŭng′ kȧt)
uncial (ŭn′ shȧl)
unconscionable (ŭn kon′ shȯn ȧbl)
undulatory (ŭn′ dū lȧ tȯ ri)
unguent (ŭng′ gwėnt)
unique (ū nēk′)
unlearned (ŭn lĕrnd′, not learnt ; ŭn lĕr′ nėd, ignorant)
untoward (ŭn tō′ ȧrd)
upanishad (oo pa′ ni shad ; oo păn′ i shăd)
upset (ŭp set′, *v.* ; ŭp′ set, *n.* and *adj.*)
Uranus (ūr′ ȧ nu̇s)
urbane (u̇r bān′)
urbanity (u̇r băn′ i ti)
Urdu (oor′ doo)
usurer (ū′ zhu̇r ėr)

vacillate (văs′ i lāt)
vade-mecum (vā′ di mē′ ku̇m)
vagary (vȧ gar′ i)
vague (vāg)
valerian (vȧ lēr′ i ȧn)
valid (văl′ id)
valise (vȧ lēz′ ; vȧ lēs′)
Valkyrie (văl′ kir i)
vapid (văp′ id)
vase (vaz ; archaic, vawz ; archaic and U.S.A., vās, vāz)
vaudeville (vōd′ vil)
vaudois (vō dwa′)
Veda (vā′ dȧ)
vedette (vė det′)
vehement (vē′ ė mėnt)
veldt (felt)
venesect (ven′ ė sekt)
vengeance (ven′ jans)
venison (ven′ zȯn ; ven′ i zȯn)
venue (ven′ ū)
verbena (vėr bē′ nȧ)
version (vĕr′ shu̇n)
vertu (vėr too′)
vestige (ves′ tij)
veterinary (vet′ ėr i nȧ ri)
vexedly (vek′ sėd li)
vicegerent (vīs jer′ ent)
vice versa (vī′ sė vĕr′ sa)
vicinage (vis′ i nij)
victorine (vik tȯ rēn′)
victual (vit′ l)
vicuña (vi koo′ nyȧ)
vide (vī′ dē ; vī′ de)
Viennese (vē ė nēz′)
vigil (vij′ il)
vignette (vin yet′)
vilayet (vil ȧ yet′)
vilify (vil′ i fī)
villein (vil′ ėn)
viniculture (vin′ i kŭl chur)
vinous (vīn′ u̇s)
viola (vē ō′ lȧ, musical instrument ; vī′ ȯ lȧ, plant)
violable (vī′ ȯ labl)
virago (vi rā′ gō)
virile (vir′ il ; vīr′ il)
virtu (vėr too′)
virtuosity (vėr tū os′ i ti)
virtuoso (vĕr tū ō′ sō)
virulent (vir′ ū lėnt)
virus (vīr′ u̇s)
visa (vē′ zȧ)
visage (viz′ ij)
vis-à-vis (vē za vē′)
viscera (vis′ ėr ȧ)
viscid (vis′ id)
viscount (vī′ kount)
viscous (vis′ ku̇s)
visé (vē′ zā)
visor (viz′ ȯr)
vitiate (vish′ i āt)
viviparous (vī vip′ ȧ ru̇s)
vizier (vi zēr′)
vizor (vīz′ ȯr)
vocative (vok′ ȧ tiv)
volant (vol′ ȧnt)
volatile (vol′ ȧ tīl)
volauvent (vol ō va*n*)
volcanist (vol′ kȧ nist)
volkslied (fōlks′ lēt)
Volksraad (fōlks′ rat)
volplane (vol′ plān)
volte-face (volt fas)
voluble (vol′ ūbl)
volute (vȯ lūt′)
vouchsafe (vouch sāf′)
voussoir (voos′ war)
voyageur (vwa ya zhĕr)
vraisemblance (vrā sa*n* bla*n*s)
vulcanist (vŭl′ kȧ nist)

wacke (wăk′ ė)
wadi (wod′ i)
waffle (wof′ l)
waft (waft)
Wagnerian (vag nēr′ i ȧn)
wagon-lit (va go*n* lē)
Wahabi (wȧ ha′ bē)
Walhalla (val hal′ ȧ)
Walkyrie (wol′ kir i)
Wallach (wol′ ȧk)
Wallachian (wȧ lā′ ki ȧn)
wallah (wol′ ȧ)
Walpurgis Night (val poor′ gis nīt)
wampum (wom′ pu̇m)
wan (won)
wapentake (wop′ ėn tāk)
wassail (wos′ l ; wăs′ l)
watt (wot)
Watteau (wot′ ō)
Wesleyan (wes′ li ȧn ; wez lē′ ȧn)
wharfinger (hwörf′ in jėr)
whilom (hwī′ lȯm)
whoop (hoop)
whorl (hwörl ; hwĕrl)
whortleberry (hwĕr′ tl bėr i)
widgeon (wij′ ȯn)
wigwam (wig′ wom)
wildebeest (wil′ dė bāst)
wilder (wil′ dėr)
wistaria (wis tar′ i ȧ)
witan (wit′ ȧn)
witenagemot (wit′ ė nȧ gė mōt)
wivern (wī′ vėrn)
worsted (wus′ tėd, fabric ; wĕrst′ ėd, beaten)
wort (wĕrt)
Wykehamist (wik′ ȧm ist)
wynd (wīnd)
wyvern (wī′ vėrn)

Xantippe (zăn tip′ ė)

Yahveh (ya′ vā)
yamen (ya′ men)
yataghan (yăt′ ȧ găn)
yclept (i klept′)
yggdrasil (ig′ drȧ sil)
yodel (yō′ dl)
yolk (yōk)
yucca (yŭk′ ȧ)
ywis (i wis′)

zebra (zē′ brȧ)
zeitgeist (tsīt′ gīst)
zemstvo (zemst′ fō)
zenith (zen′ ith)
Zeus (zūs)
zoetrope (zō′ ė trōp)
Zollverein (tsol′ fė rīn ; tsōl′ fė rīn)
zoophyte (zō′ ȯ fīt)
Zoroastrian (zor ȯ ăs′ tri ȧn)
Zouave (zoo av′)

FOREIGN WORDS AND PHRASES

Their Meanings and the Language of Their Origin

FOREIGN phrases are occasionally used by writers and speakers of our tongue, though not so frequently as formerly. A list of those more or less commonly used is given below, together with the English translations. The abbreviations, a full list of which is given on page **lxiv**, *are the same as those employed throughout the work.*

à bas [F.]. Down! down with!

à bâtons rompus [F.]. By fits and starts, interruptedly.

abest [L., *pl.* **absunt**]. He (or she) is absent.

ab extra [L.]. From without.

ab hoc et ab hoc [L.]. Irrelevantly, at random.

abiit ad plures or **majores** [L., *pl.* **abierunt**]. He (or she) has gone to the majority, or is dead.

ab incunabulis [L.]. From the cradle.

ab initio [L.]. From the beginning.

ab intra [L.]. From within.

ab irato [L.]. In hot blood.

a bisogni si conoscon gli amici [Ital.]. Friends are known in time of need, a friend in need is a friend indeed.

à bis ou à blanc [F.]. By hook or by crook, in one way or another.

à bon chat, bon rat [F., to a good cat, a good rat]. Tit for tat, a Roland for an Oliver.

à bon compte [F.]. At a low estimate.

à bon droit [F.]. By good right, with justice.

à bon entendeur salut [F.]. A word to the wise.

à bon marché [F.]. Cheaply.

ab origine [L.]. From the commencement.

ab ovo usque ad mala [L.]. From the egg to the apples (hors d'œuvre to dessert), from beginning to end.

à bras ouverts [F.]. With open arms.

abrégé [F.]. An abridgment.

absence d'esprit [F.]. Absence of mind.

absens haeres non erit [L.]. The absent will not inherit, out of sight, out of mind.

absente reo [L.]. In the absence of the accused.

absit invidia [L.]. Let there be no ill will, without ill-feeling.

absit omen [L.]. Let there be no ill omen.

absunt. *See under* **abest.**

ab uno ad omnes [L.]. From one to all.

ab uno disce omnes [L.]. From one example judge of the rest, let that be a lesson to you next time.

a buon vino non bisogna frasca [Ital.]. Good wine needs no bush.

ab urbe condita or **A.U.C.** [L.]. From the building of the city (Rome), 754 B.C.

abusus non tollit usum [L.]. Abuse does not invalidate use.

a capite ad calcem [L.]. From head to heel.

ac etiam [L.]. And also.

à chaque saint sa chandelle [F., to each saint his candle—from the custom of burning lights before the shrine or altar of a saint]. Honour to whom honour is due.

à cheval [F.]. On horseback.

a chi vuole non mancano modi [Ital.]. Where there's a will there's a way.

acompte [F.]. Part payment, payment on account.

à compte [F.]. On account, in part payment.

à corps perdu [F.]. At breakneck speed, desperately.

à coup sûr [F.]. Certainly, without fail.

à couvert [F.]. Under cover, protected.

a cruce salus [L.]. Salvation by or from the Cross.

acte d'accusation [F.]. Indictment.

actum est [L.]. It is all over.

ad arbitrium [L.]. At will, at pleasure.

ad astra [L.]. To the stars.

ad captandum vulgus [L.]. To attract or please the rabble.

addio [Ital.]. Good-bye.

à demi [F.]. By halves.

a Deo et rege [L.]. From God and the king.

à deux [F.]. Of or between two.

à deux mains [F.]. With both hands, two-handed.

ad extremum [L.]. To the limit.

ad finem fidelis [L.]. Faithful to the last.

ad gustum [L.]. To one's taste.

ad hoc [L.]. For this particular purpose, specially.

ad hominem [L.]. To the man, personal, appealing to interest (of an argument).

a die [L.]. From that day.

adieu la voiture, adieu la boutique [F., good-bye, carriage, good-bye, shop]. All is over.

ad infinitum [L.]. To infinity.

ad interim [L.]. Meanwhile.

ad internecionem [L.]. To extermination.

à discrétion [F.]. At discretion.

ad kalendas Graecas [L.]. At the Greek calends; that is, never. (The Greeks had no calends).

ad libitum [L.]. At pleasure.

ad litteram [L.]. Literally, word for word.

ad manum [L.]. To hand, ready.

ad misericordiam [L.]. To pity (of an argument).

ad modum [L.]. In the manner of.

ad marjorem Dei gloriam [L.]. For the greater glory of God.

ad nauseam [L.]. So as to disgust or nauseate.

ad patres [L.]. Gathered to his fathers, dead.

ad quod damnum [L.]. To what damage.

ad referendum [L.]. For further consideration.

ad rem [L.]. To the point.

à droit [F.]. To the right.

adscriptus glebae [L.]. Bound to the soil, a serf.

adsum [L.]. I am present, here!

ad summum [L.]. To the highest point.

ad unguem [L.]. To a nicety, exactly.

ad unum omnes [L.]. All, to a man.

ad usum [L.]. According to the custom (of).

ad utrumque paratus [L.]. Ready for either eventuality.

ad valorem [L.]. According to value.

ad verbum [L.]. To the word, verbally.

ad vitam aut culpam [L.]. For life or till fault (that is, during good behaviour).

ad vivum [L.]. To the life.

advocatus diaboli [L.]. The devil's advocate.

aequanimiter [L.]. With composure.

aequo animo [L.]. With equanimity.

aes alienum [L.]. Money belonging to another.

aetatis suae [L.]. Of his (or her) age.

affaire d'amour [F.]. A love affair.

affaire d'honneur [F.]. An affair of honour, a duel.

à fond [F.]. To the bottom, thoroughly.

a fortiori [L.]. All the more.

à gauche [F.]. To the left.

à genoux [F.]. On the knees.

age quod agis [L.]. Mind what you are about.

à grands frais [F.]. At great expense.

à haute voix [F.]. Aloud.

à huis clos [F.]. With closed doors, *in camera*.

aide toi et Dieu t'aidera [F.]. Help yourself and God will help you.

air noble [F.]. An air of distinction.

à jamais [F.]. For ever.

à la [F.]. According to, in the style or fashion of.

à l'abandon [F.]. Anyhow, at random.

à la belle étoile [F.]. In the open air.

à la bonne heure [F.]. Well done! bravo!

à l'abri [F.]. Under the shelter (of).

à la campagne [F.]. In the country.

à la carte [F.]. According to the bill of fare.

à la dérobée [F.]. Stealthily.

à la française, grecque, l'anglaise, l'espagnole, etc. [F.]. In the French, Greek, English, Spanish, etc., style.

à la lettre [F.]. Literally.

à la main [F.]. In hand, ready.

à la mode [F.]. In fashion.

à la Tartuffe [F.]. Like Tartuffe, hypocritically.

à la volonté de Dieu [F.]. At the will of God.

à l'envi [F.]. With emulation, emulously.

alere flammam [L.]. To feed the flame.

à l'extérieur [F.]. On the outside, externally.

al fresco [Ital.]. In the open air.

à l'improviste [F.]. Unawares, on a sudden.

à l'intérieur [F.]. Indoors.

allez-vous-en [F.]. Begone, away with you!

allons ! [F.]. Come, let us go!

Alma Mater [L., fostering mother.] One's school, college, or university.

alter ego [L.]. One's second self.

alter ego est amicus [L.]. A friend is another self.

alter idem [L.]. Another exactly similar.

alteri sic tibi [L.]. Do to another as to thyself.

alterum tantum [L.]. As much more.

a main armée [F.]. By force of arms.

amari aliquid [L.]. A touch of bitterness.

a maximis ad minima [L.]. From the greatest to the least.

amende honorable [F.]. Apology, satisfaction.

a mensa et toro [L.]. From bed and board.

à merveille [F.]. Admirably, perfectly.

amicus curiae [L.]. A disinterested adviser.

amicus usque ad aras [L.]. A friend even to the altar (of sacrifice), that is, to the last extremity.

ami du cour [F.]. A court friend, a fair-weather friend.

à moi ! [F.]. Help!

à moitié [F.]. Half, half and half.

amor patriae [L.]. Love of country, patriotism.

amour propre [F.]. Self-esteem.

ancien régime [F.]. The old order of things.

anguis in herba [L.]. A snake in the grass, an unforeseen danger.

anima in amicis una [L.]. One mind amongst friends.

animo et fide [L.]. Courageously and faithfully.

anno aetatis suae [L.]. In the (specified) year of his (or her) age.

anno Domini [L.]. In the year of our Lord.

anno humanae salutis [L.]. In the year of man's redemption.

anno mundi [L.]. In the year of the world.

anno post Christum natum [L.]. In the year after the birth of Christ.

anno post Romam conditam [L.]. In the year after the building of Rome (754 B.C.).

anno salutis [L.]. In the year of redemption.

anno urbis conditae or **A.U.C.** [L.]. In the year from the time the city (Rome) was built (754 B.C.)

annos vixit [L.]. He (or she) lived (so many) years.

annus mirabilis [L.]. Year of wonders.

ante bellum [L.]. Before the war.

ante diem [L.]. Before the day.

ante lucem [L.]. Before daybreak.

ante meridiem [L.]. Before noon.

à outrance [F.]. To the death, to the bitter end.

à part [F.]. Apart, aside.

à pas de géant [F.]. With a giant's stride.

à perte de vue [F.]. As far as the eye can reach.

à peu de frais [F.]. At little cost.

à peu près [F.]. Nearly.

à pied [F.]. On foot.

à plaisir [F.]. At pleasure, at will.

à point [F.]. Just in time, exactly, exactly right.

a posse ad esse [L.]. From possibility to reality.

après coup [F.]. After the event, too late.

a prima vista [Ital.]. At first sight.

a primo [L.]. From the first.

a principio [L.]. From the beginning.

à propos de bottes [F., with regard to boots]. Irrelevantly, without rhyme or reason.

à propos de rien [F.]. Apropos of nothing, without point.

aquila non capit muscas [L.]. An eagle does not catch flies.

arbiter elegantiarum [L.]. A judge in matters of taste.

Arcades ambo [L.]. Two of similar tastes, vices, etc.

arcana caelestia [L.]. Celestial mysteries.

arcana imperii [L.]. State secrets.

arc-en-ciel [F.]. Rainbow.

ardentia verba [L.]. Glowing language.

à reculons [F.]. Backwards.

au rez-de-chaussée [F.]. On the ground floor.

argent comptant [F.]. Ready money, cash.

argumentum ad crumenam [L., an argument to the purse]. An appeal to interest.

argumentum ad hominem [L.]. An appeal to personal interests, etc.

argumentum ad invidiam [L.]. An appeal to prejudice.

argumentum baculinum [L.]. An appeal to force.

arrière-garde [F.]. Rearguard.

arrière-pensée [F.]. A mental reservation.

ars est celare artem [L.]. True art is to conceal art.

ars longa, vita brevis [L.]. Art is long, life is short.

artium magister [L.]. Master of Arts.

asinus ad lyram [L., an ass at the lyre]. An awkward fellow.

assez bien [F.]. Moderately well.

assiettes volantes [F.]. Small entrées.

à tort et à travers [F.]. At random, hit or miss.

à tout prendre [F.]. On the whole.

à tout prix [F.]. At all costs.

atra cura [L.]. Black care.

à travers [F.]. Across, through.

at spes non fracta [L.]. But hope is not crushed.

au bout de son Latin [F.]. At the end of his Latin; to the extent of his knowledge.

au contraire [F.]. On the contrary.

au courant de [F.]. Fully informed about.

audax et celer [L.]. Bold and speedy.

au désespoir [F.]. In despair.

audi alteram partem [L.]. Hear the other side.

au fait [F.]. Well informed; expert.

au fond [F.]. At bottom.

au grand sérieux [F.]. In all seriousness.

au mieux [F.]. At best.

au naturel [F.]. In its natural state.

au pied de la lettre [F.]. Literally, precisely.

au pis aller [F.]. At the worst.

aurea mediocritas [L.]. The golden mean.

au reste [F.]. Besides, moreover.

au revoir [F.]. Till we meet again.

au secours [F.]. Help!

au sérieux [F.]. Seriously.

aussitôt dit, aussitôt fait [F.]. No sooner said than done.

autant d'hommes, autant d'avis [F.]. Many men, many minds.

aut Caesar aut nullus [L.]. Either Caesar or nobody; either first or nowhere.

aut mors aut victoria [L.]. Death or victory.

autres temps, autres mœurs [F.]. Other times, other manners.

aut vincere aut mori [L.]. To conquer or die.

aux abois [F.]. At bay, to extremities.

aux armes ! [F.]. To arms!

auxilium ab alto [L.]. Help from on high.

avant-propos [F.]. Preface, preliminary remarks.

ave atque vale [L.]. Hail and farewell!

a verbis ad verbera [L.]. From words to blows.

avertissement [F.]. Notice, warning.

avis [F.]. Notice, warning.

à volonté [F.]. At will, at pleasure.

bachelier ès lettres [F.]. Bachelor of Letters.

bachelier ès sciences [F.]. Bachelor of Science.

ballon d'essai [F.]. Experimental balloon, feeler.

bal paré [F.]. Fancy-dress ball.

Bancus Communium Placitorum [L.]. The Court of Common Pleas.

Bancus Regis [L.]. On the King's Bench.

Bancus Reginae [L.]. On the Queen's Bench.

bas bleu [F.]. A blue-stocking, a literary woman.

basta ! [Ital.]. Enough ! stop !

bataille rangée [F.]. A pitched battle.

battre la campagne [F.]. To scour the country, to beat the bush.

beatae memoriae [L.]. Of blessed memory.

Beata Maria or **Virgo** [L.]. The Blessed Virgin.

beati possidentes [L.]. Possession is nine points of the law.

beau rôle [F.]. A fine showy part.

beau sabreur [F.]. A dashing cavalryman.

beaux esprits [F.]. (*sing.* **bel esprit**) Wits, intelligentsia, intellectuals.

bel air [F.]. Fine deportment.

bel esprit. *See under* **beaux esprits.**

bella ! horrida bella ! [L.]. Wars ! horrid wars !

belle passion [F.]. The tender passion.

bellum internecinum [L.]. A war of extermination.

bellum omnium in omnes [L.]. A war of all against all.

bene decessit [L.]. He made a good end.

bene esse [L.]. Well-being.

bénéficiaire [F.]. A person receiving a benefit.

bene merenti [L.]. (*pl.* **-entibus**) To the well-deserving.

bene orasse est bene studuisse [L.]. To have prayed well is to have studied well.

bene vale [L.]. Farewell.

bene vale vobis [L.]. Good luck to you.

ben trovato [Ital.]. Well invented.

ben venuto [Ital.]. Welcome.

beso las manos [Span.]. I kiss your hands.

bête noire [F.]. A bugbear, pet aversion.

bibliothécaire [F.]. A librarian.

bibliothèque [F.]. A library.

bien aimé [F.]. (*fem.* **aimée**) Well-beloved.

bien chaussé [F.]. (*fem.* **-sée**) Well-shod, neatly booted.

bien entendu [F.]. To be sure, of course.

bien ganté [F.]. (*fem.* **-tée**) Well-gloved.

bienséance [F.]. Civility, decorum.

billet doux [F.]. Love-letter.

billa vera [L.]. A true bill.

bis dat qui cito dat [L.]. He gives twice who gives speedily.

bis peccare in bello non licet [L.]. In war one may not blunder twice.

bis pueri senes [L.]. Old men are children twice.

bon accueil [F.]. A welcome.

bon ami [F.]. Good friend.

bon camarade [F.]. A good comrade.

bon diable [F.]. A good-natured fellow.

bon enfant [F.]. A good pleasant companion.

bon goût [F.]. Good taste.

bon gré, mal gré [F.]. Willingly or unwillingly.

bona fide [L.]. In good faith.

bona fides [L.]. Good faith.

bona mobilia [L.]. Movable goods.

bona peritura [L.]. Perishable goods.

bona vacantia [L.]. Unclaimed goods.

bonhomie [F.]. Good nature.

bonjour [F.]. Good day.

bon jour, bonne œuvre [F.]. The better the day the better the deed.

bon marché [F.]. A cheap shop ; cheap ; an easy victory.

bonne [F.]. A nurse-maid.

bonne-bouche [F.]. (*pl.* **bonnes-bouches**) A dainty morsel, titbit.

bonne et belle [F.]. Good and handsome (of a woman).

bonne foi [F.]. Good faith.

bonne fortune [F.]. (*pl.* **bonnes fortunes**) Good fortune, prosperity, success.

bonne mine [F.]. Pleasant looks, good grace.

bonnet rouge [F.]. Red cap of liberty.

bonsoir [F.]. Good evening.

bon ton [F.]. Fashion, good style.

bonum publicum [L.]. The public good.

bon vivant [F.]. (*fem.* **bonne vivante**) One fond of good living.

bon voyage [F.]. A pleasant journey, farewell.

borné [F.]. Limited, narrow-minded.

bouleversé [F.]. Upset.

bouleversement. A complete overturn or upset.

boutique [F.]. A shop.

boutonnière [F.]. A nosegay, a buttonhole.

brevet d'invention [F.]. A patent.

breveté [F.]. Patented.

brevi manu [L.]. Offhand, extempore, summarily.

brevis esse laboro, obscurus fio [L.]. In endeavouring to be concise I become obscure.

briller par son absence [F.]. To be conspicuous by one's absence.

brutum fulmen [L., *pl.* **bruta fulmina**]. A harmless thunderbolt, an empty threat.

buonamano [Ital.]. A small gratuity.

cadit quaestio [L.]. The question drops.

caeca invidia est [L.]. Envy is blind.

café au lait [F.]. Coffee with milk.

café noir [F.]. Coffee without milk.

campo santo [Ital. and Span.]. A burying-ground.

canaille [F.]. The rabble, a low fellow.

candida Pax [L.]. White-robed Peace.

cantate Domino [L.]. Sing unto the Lord.

capiat qui capere possit [L.]. Let him take who can.

caput mortuum [L., " dead head "]. Worthless residue.

cara sposa [Ital.]. Dear wife.

carême [F.]. Lent.

carmen triumphale [L.]. A triumphal song.

carpe diem [L.]. Enjoy the present day, seize the opportunity.

casus belli [L.]. A ground of war.

casus conscientiae [L.]. A case of conscience.

causa causans [L.]. The original cause.

causa sine qua non [L.]. An indispensable cause.

causa latet, vis est notissima [L.]. The cause is hidden, the effect obvious.

causa vera [L.]. A true cause.

cause célèbre [F.]. A notable case or trial.

cave canem [L.]. Beware of the dog.

caveant consules [L.]. Let the government take heed.

caveat actor [L.]. Let the doer beware ; that is, he acts at his own risk.

caveat emptor [L.]. Let the purchaser beware.

caveat viator [L.]. Let the traveller or passer-by beware.

cavendo tutus [L.]. Rendered safe by taking care.

cedant arma togae [L.]. Let arms yield to the gown.

celà va sans dire [F.]. That goes without saying, of course.

celeritas et veritas [L.]. Promptitude and truth.

c'en est fait de lui [F.]. It's all up with him.

ce n'est que le premier pas qui coûte [F.]. It is only the first step that is troublesome.

censor morum [L.]. A censor of morals.

certum est quia impossibile est [L.]. It is true because it is impossible.

cessio bonorum [L.]. A surrender of goods.

c'est-à-dire [F.]. That is to say.

c'est à vous de parler [F.]. It is your turn to speak.

c'est égal [F.]. It's all the same, it makes no difference.

c'est le commencement de la fin [F.]. It's the beginning of the end.

c'est magnifique, mais ce n'est pas la guerre [F.]. It's magnificent, but it is not war.

c'est selon [F.]. That depends on circumstances.

c'est tout dire [F.]. That's stating the whole case.

c'est une autre chose [F.]. That's another matter.

cetera desunt [L.]. Further particulars are wanting, nothing further is available (or recorded).

ceteris paribus [L.]. Other things being equal.

chacun son goût (à) [F.]. Every one to his taste.

chacun tire de son côté [F.]. Every one inclines to his own side or party.

chambre à coucher [F.]. (*pl.* **chambres**) A bed-room.

chapeau bras [F.]. A crush hat.

chapeau rouge [F.]. The red hat ; rank of cardinal.

chapeaux bas ! [F.]. Hats off !

chapelle ardente [F.]. A chamber lighted with candles for a lying-in-state.

châteaux en Espagne [F.]. Castles in Spain, castles in the air.

chef de cuisine [F.]. A head cook.

chef-d'œuvre [F.]. A masterpiece.

chemin de fer [F., *pl.* **chemins**]. A railway.

cherchez la femme [F.]. Look for the woman, a woman is at the bottom of it.

chère amie [F.]. A dear (female) friend, a lover.

che sarà, sarà [Ital.]. What will be, will be.

cheval de bataille [F.]. A charger; a favourite subject, hobbyhorse.

chevalier d'industrie [F.]. Adventurer, sharper.

chi tace confessa [Ital.]. He who keeps silent admits his guilt.

chose jugée [F.]. A matter that has been decided.

Christe eleison [Latinized Gr.]. Christ have mercy.

Christi crux est mea lux [L.]. The cross of Christ is my light.

chronique scandaleuse [F.]. A history of scandals.

ci-devant [F.]. Heretofore, former aristocrat.

ci-gît [F.]. Here lies.

circuitus verborum [L.]. A circumlocution.

circulus in probando [L.]. Arguing in a circle, a vicious circle.

civis Romanus sum [L.]. I am a Roman citizen.

clarior e tenebris [L.]. All the brighter from his obscurity.

clarum et venerabile nomen [L.]. An illustrious and venerable name.

cogito, ergo sum [L.]. I think, therefore I exist.

Comédie Française [F.]. The official title of the subsidized Théâtre Français.

comitas inter gentes [L.]. Comity between nations.

comme il faut [F.]. As it should be, proper, correct, genteel.

commune bonum [L.]. A common benefit.

communibus annis [L.]. On average years, one year with another.

communi consensu [L.]. By common consent.

communiqué [F.]. An official report.

compagnie [F.]. Company (usu. written **Cie**).

compagnon de voyage [F.]. A travelling companion.

compos mentis [L.]. Sound of mind.

compte rendu [F.]. (*pl.* **comptes rendus**) Account rendered, an official report, detailed notice.

comptoir [F.]. A shop-counter, a commercial agency.

con amore [Ital.]. With affection, with zeal.

concours [F.]. Competition.

con diligenza [Ital.]. With diligence.

conditio sine qua non [L.]. An indispensable condition.

con dolore [Ital.]. With grief, sadly.

confer [L.]. Compare (commonly abbreviated to **cf.**).

conjunctis viribus [L.]. With united powers, pooling their resources.

conscia mens recti [L.]. A mind conscious of rectitude.

conseil de famille [F.]. A family consultation.

conseil d'État [F.]. A council of state.

consensus facit legem [L.]. Consent makes law.

consilio et animis [L.]. By wisdom and courage.

consilio et prudentia [L.]. By wisdom and prudence.

con spirito [Ital.]. With animation.

constantia et virtute [L.]. By constancy and courage.

consuetudo pro lege servatur [L.]. Custom is held as law.

consummatum est [L.]. It is finished.

contra bonos mores [L.]. Contrary to good morals.

contra jus gentium [L.]. Against the law of nations.

contra mundum [L.]. Against the world.

contrat social [F.]. A social compact.

copia verborum [L.]. Copiousness of words, flow of language.

coram judice [L.]. Before a judge.

coram nobis [L.]. In our presence.

coram populo [L.]. In public.

cordon bleu [F.]. Blue ribbon; a first-class cook.

corps de ballet [F.]. Troop of ballet dancers, the rank and file of such a troop.

corps de garde [F.]. Guard-room, those on guard-duty.

corpus delicti [L.]. Material evidence of the offence.

corpus juris canonici or **civilis** [L.]. The body of canon or civil law.

corpus vile [L.]. Worthless matter.

corrigenda [L.]. Points to be corrected.

corruptio optimi pessima [L.]. The corruption of the best is worst of all.

cosi fan tutti [Ital.]. 'Tis the way of the world.

couleur de rose [F.]. Rose colour, an optimistic outlook.

coup de grâce [F.]. A finishing stroke.

coup de main [F.]. A sudden attack, enterprise, or undertaking.

coup de maitre [F.]. A masterstroke.

coup de pied [F.]. A kick.

coup de soleil [F.]. A sunstroke.

coup d'essai [F.]. A first attempt.

coup d'Etat [F.]. A stroke of policy; a sudden change of government.

coup de vent [F.]. A gust of wind, a gale.

coup d'œil [F.]. A rapid glance, a view or vista.

coup manqué [F.]. An abortive attempt.

courage sans peur [F.]. Fearless courage.

coûte que coûte [F.] Cost what it may.

crede quod habes, et habes [L.]. Believe that you have it, and you have it.

credo quia absurdum [L.]. I believe it because it is absurd.

crême de la crême [F.]. Cream of the cream, the very best.

crescit eundo [L.]. It increases as it goes.

crescit sub pondere virtus [L.]. Virtue grows under oppression.

crimen falsi [L.]. Forgery.

crimen laesae majestatis [L.]. High treason.

crux criticorum [L.]. A puzzle for critics.

cui bono? [L.]. For whose advantage?

cui Fortuna ipsa cedit [L.]. To whom Fortune herself yields.

cuique suum [L.]. To each one his own.

culpa levis [L.]. Venial offence.

cum bona venia [L.]. With your kind indulgence.

cum grano or **cum grano salis** [L.]. With a grain of salt; with some allowance.

cum privilegio [L.]. With privilege.

cum tacent, clamant [L.]. Although they keep silence they cry aloud, silence is more expressive than words.

currente calamo [L.]. With a running pen, off-hand, fluently.

custos morum [L.]. The guardian of morality.

dabit qui dedit [L.]. He will give who gave.

d'accord [F.]. Agreed, in time.

da locum melioribus [L.]. Give place to your betters.

dame de compagnie [F.]. A lady's paid companion.

dame de la halle [F.]. A market woman.

dame d'honneur [F.]. A maid of honour.

damnant quod non intelligunt [L.]. They condemn what they do not understand.

damnosa haereditas [L.]. A legacy entailing loss.

damnum absque injuria [L.]. Loss or damage without wrong.

danse macabre [F.]. A dance of death.

dare pondus fumo [L.]. To give weight to smoke; to attach importance to trifles.

das heisst [G.]. That is.

data et accepta [L.]. Expenses and receipts.

date et dabitur vobis [L.]. Give, and it shall be given to you.

Davus sum, non Oedipus [L.]. I am Davus, not Oedipus, I am not good at riddles.

de bon augure [F.]. Of good omen.

de bonne grâce [F.]. With good will, willingly.

deceptio visus [L.]. An optical illusion.

déchéance [F.]. Forfeiture, expiry.

de die in diem [L.]. From day to day, continuously.

de facto [L.]. In reality, actually.

defectus sanguinis [L.]. Failure of issue.

défense d'afficher [F.]. Stick no bills.

défense d'entrer [F.]. No admittance.

défense de fumer [F.]. Smoking not allowed.

dégagé [F.]. Free and easy, unconstrained.

de gaieté de cœur [F.]. Wantonly.

de gustibus non est disputandum [L.]. There is no disputing about tastes.

de haut en bas [F.]. From head to foot ; contemptuously.

Dei gratia [L.]. By the grace of God.

de integro [L.]. Anew.

déjeuner à la fourchette [F.]. Meat breakfast, luncheon.

de jure [L.]. By right.

de l'audace, encore de l'audace, et toujours de l'audace [F.]. Assurance, more assurance, and still more assurance.

delineavit [L.]. He (or she) drew it.

de luxe [F.]. Luxurious.

de mal en pis [F.]. From bad to worse.

de minimis non curat lex [L.]. The law does not concern itself with trifles.

de mortuis nil nisi bonum [L.]. Let nothing be said of the dead but what is good.

de nihilo nihil, in nihilum nil posse reverti [L.]. From nothing, nothing is made, and nothing can be reduced to nothing.

de nouveau [F.]. Anew.

de novo [L.]. Anew.

Deo adjuvante non timendum [L.]. With God helping there is nothing to be afraid of.

Deo duce [L.]. With God as our leader.

Deo favente [L.]. With the favour of God.

Deo gratias [L.]. Thanks be to God.

Deo juvante [L.]. With the help of God.

de omni scibili [L.]. Concerning everything knowable.

de omnibus rebus, et quibusdam aliis [L.]. Concerning all things, and certain other matters.

Deo monente [L.]. God giving warning.

Deo, non fortuna [L.]. From God, not from chance.

deorum cibus est [L.]. It is food for the gods.

Deo volente [L.]. God willing.

de par le roi [F.]. In the name of the king.

de pied en cap [F.]. Cap-a-pie.

de pis en pis [F.]. From bad to worse.

de praesenti [L.]. Of or for the present.

de profundis [L.]. Out of the depths.

de proprio motu [L.]. On one's own initiative.

de retour [F.]. Back again, returned.

de rigueur [F.]. According to strict etiquette, obligatory.

dernier ressort [F.]. A last resource.

désagrément [F.]. Something disagreeable, unpleasantness.

desipere in loco [L.]. To jest at the proper time.

désorienté [F., fem. **-tée**]. Out of one's bearings, confused.

desunt cetera. *See* **cetera desunt.**

de trop [F.]. Superfluous, not wanted.

detur digniori [L.]. Let it be given to the more worthy.

Deum cole, regem serva [L.]. Worship God, honour the king.

Deus avertat ! [L.]. God forbid !

Deus det ! [L.]. God grant !

deus ex machina [L.]. A god from the machine (in the Gr. theatre), providential or timely intervention.

Deus nobiscum, quis contra [L.]. God with us, who against us ?

Deus vobiscum [L.]. God be with you.

Deus vult [L.]. God wills it.

de visu [L.]. As one having been a witness.

dicamus bona verba [L.]. Let us speak words of good omen.

" Dichtung und Wahrheit " [G.]. Poetry (or fiction) and truth.

dictum sapienti [L.]. A word to the wise.

diem perdidi [L.]. I have lost a day.

dies datus [L.]. A day appointed.

dies fausti, dies infausti [L.]. Auspicious or inauspicious days.

dies irae [L.]. A day of wrath, the Day of Judgment.

dies nefasti [L.]. Days on which the courts could not be held in ancient Rome.

dies non [L.]. A day when business is not transacted.

Dieu est toujours pour les plus gros bataillons [F.]. God is always on the side of the big battalions.

Dieu et mon droit [F.]. God and my right (motto of the Sovereigns of Great Britain).

Dieu vous garde ! [F.]. God protect you !

digito monstrari [L.]. To be pointed out with the finger, to be famous.

dii majorum gentium [L.]. The gods of the superior class.

dii penates [L.]. Household gods.

dimidium facti qui coepit habet [L.]. Well begun is half done.

dis aliter visum [L.]. The gods have decided otherwise.

di salto [Ital.]. At a leap.

disjecta membra [L.]. Scattered remains.

distingué [F.]. Elegant, well bred.

divertissement [F.]. Amusement, sport.

divide et impera [L.]. Divide and govern.

docendo discimus [L.]. We learn by teaching.

doctor utriusque legis [L.]. Doctor of both laws (that is, canon and civil).

Domine, dirige nos [L.]. O Lord direct us (the motto of the City of London).

Dominus illuminatio mea [L.]. The Lord is my light (the motto of Oxford University).

Dominus vobiscum [L.]. The Lord be with you.

domus et placens uxor [L.]. Home and a pleasing wife.

donna è mobile [Ital.]. Woman is changeable.

dorer la pilule [F.]. To gild the pill.

dormitat Homerus [L.]. Homer nods.

do ut des [L.]. I give that you may give (of reciprocity).

double entente [F.]. Play on words.

dramatis personae [L.]. Characters of the play.

droit au travail [F.]. The right to work.

dulce, domum [L.]. Sweet is the strain of " Homeward."

dulce est desipere in loco [L.]. It is pleasant to play the fool at the right time.

dulce et decorum est pro patriâ mori [L.]. It is sweet and glorious to die for one's country.

dulcis amor patriae [L.]. The love of country is sweet.

dum spiro, spero [L.]. While I breathe, I hope.

dum vivimus, vivamus [L.]. Let us live while we live, let us enjoy life.

duomo [Ital.]. A cathedral.

dura lex, sed lex [L.]. However hard, law is law.

durante vita [L.]. During life.

eau bénite [F.]. Holy water.

eau sucrée [F.]. Water sweetened with sugar.

ecce agnus Dei [L.]. Behold the Lamb of God.

ecce homo [L.]. Behold the man !

ecce signum [L.]. Behold the proof.

échantillon [F.]. A sample.

école militaire [F.]. A military school.

éditeur [F.]. A publisher.

édition de luxe [F.]. A sumptuous edition of a book.

editio princeps [L.]. (*pl.* **editiones principes**) The first edition.

égalité [F.]. Equality.

ego et rex meus [L.]. I and my king.

eheu ! fugaces labuntur anni [L.]. Alas ! the fleeting years slip away.

ejusdem generis [L.]. Of the same kind.

elapso tempore [L.]. The time having elapsed.

élève [F.]. A pupil, a scholar.

el honor es mi guia [Sp.]. Honour is my guide.

en amateur [F.]. As an amateur.

en ami [F.]. As a friend.

en arrière [F.]. In the rear, behind.

en attendant [F.]. In the meantime.

en avant [F.]. Forward.

en badinant [F.]. In sport, jestingly.

en bloc [F.]. In the mass, wholesale.

en cachette [F.]. In concealment, secretly.

en cheveux [F.]. Bare-headed (of a woman).

en cœur [F.]. Heart-shaped.

en cueros, or en cueros vivos [Sp.]. Naked, having no clothes.

en dernier ressort [F.]. In the last resort.

en déshabillé [F.]. In undress, half-dressed.

en deux mots [F.]. In two words, in short.

en effet [F.]. Substantially, in effect.

en famille [F.]. With one's family, at home.

enfant gâté [F., *fem.* **-tée**]. A spoilt child.

enfants perdus [F., lost children]. A forlorn hope.

enfant terrible [F.]. A terrible child, a precocious or disconcerting youngster.

enfant trouvé [F., *fem.* **-vée**]. A foundling.

en fête [F.]. Keeping holiday.

enfin [F.]. In short, finally.

en flagrant délit [F.]. In the very act, red-handed.

en garçon [F.]. As a bachelor.

en grande tenue [F.]. In full official or evening dress; in full dress uniform.

en grands atours [F.]. In best bib and tucker.

en masse [F.]. In a body.

en passant [F.]. By the way.

en pension [F.]. On boarding-house terms.

en petit [F.]. In little, on a small scale.

en plein jour [F.] In broad daylight.

en prince [F.]. In princely fashion.

en queue [F.]. In a long row or string.

en rapport [F.]. In direct relation, in sympathy (with).

en règle [F.]: In order, as it should be.

en résumé [F.]. To sum up.

en revanche [F.]. In return, as a compensation.

en route [F.]. On the way.

en somme [F.]. In a word.

en suite [F.]. In a set, in succession, to match.

entente cordiale [F.]. A good understanding, especially between two States.

en tout cas [F.]. In any case; a light umbrella which can be used as a parasol.

en train [F.]. In progress.

entre deux feux [F.]. Between two fires.

entre deux vins [F.]. Between two wines, half-drunk.

entre nous [F.]. Between ourselves, in confidence.

en vérité [F.]. In truth, really.

eo animo [L.]. With that design.

eo instante [L.]. At that moment.

eo nomine [L.]. Under that name.

e pluribus unum [L.]. One out of (or composed of) many. (Motto of the U.S.A.)

épreuve [F.]. A proof.

épreuve d'artiste [F.]. An artist's proof.

épuisé [F., *fem.* **-sée**]. Worn out; out of print.

epulis accumbere divum [L.]. To sit down at the banquet of the gods.

e re nata [L.]. According to the exigency.

errare est humanum [L.]. To err is human.

esprit [F.]. Ready wit.

esquisse [F.]. A sketch.

esse quam videri [L.]. To be rather than to seem.

est modus in rebus [L.]. There is a middle course in all things.

esto perpetua ! [L.]. May it last for ever.

esto quod esse videris [L.]. Be what you seem to be.

et ego in Arcadia [L.]. I too was in Arcadia; I too have known happiness.

et hoc genus omne [L.]. And everything of the sort.

étoile [F.]. A star; an asterisk.

et sequens [L., *pl.* **-quentes** or **-quentia**]. And the following.

et sic de ceteris [L.]. And so of the rest.

et sic de similibus [L.]. And so of similar things.

et similia [L.]. And the like.

et tu, Brute ! [L.]. You too, Brutus (the last words of Caesar when he saw Brutus amongst his murderers).

euge ! [L.]. Well done.

eventus stultorum magister [L.]. Fools must be taught by experience.

evviva ! [Ital.]. Hurrah ! Vive !

ex abundantia [L.]. Out of the abundance.

ex adverso [L.]. From the opposite side.

ex aequo [L.]. On the same footing.

ex aequo et bono [L.]. According to what is right and good.

ex animo [L.]. Heartily, sincerely.

ex capite [L., from the head]. From memory.

ex cathedra [L.]. From the chair, with authority.

exceptio probat regulam [L.]. The exception tests the rule.

exceptis excipiendis [L.]. Due exceptions (or allowances) having been made.

ex commodo [L.]. Conveniently.

ex concesso [L.]. From what has been conceded.

ex curia [L.]. Out of court.

ex delicto [L.]. From the crime.

ex dono [L.]. By the gift.

exegi monumentum aere perennius [L.]. I have finished a monument more lasting than brass.

exempla sunt odiosa [L.]. Examples are offensive, to give instances is odious.

exempli gratia [L.]. For instance.

exeunt omnes [L.]. All go out.

ex gratia [L.]. As an act of favour.

ex hypothesi [L.]. According to the hypothesis.

exit [L.]. He goes out.

exitus acta probat [L.]. The result justifies the deed.

ex mero motu [L.]. Of his own free will.

ex necessitate rei [L.]. From the necessity of the case.

ex nihilo nihil fit [L.]. Out of nothing nothing comes.

ex officio [L.]. In virtue of his office.

ex pede Herculem [L.]. We recognize Hercules by his foot; we judge the whole from the part.

experientia docet stultos [L.]. Experience teaches fools.

experimentum crucis [L.]. A crucial test.

experto crede [L.]. Trust one who has tried, or had experience.

expertus metuit [L.]. Having had experience of it, he dreads it; a burnt child dreads the fire.

ex post facto [L.]. After the deed is done; retrospective.

expressis verbis [L.]. In express terms.

ex professo [L.]. By profession, avowedly.

ex proprio motu [L.]. Of one's own initiative.

ex quocunque capite [L.]. For whatever reason.

ex tacito [L.]. Tacitly.

ex tempore [L.]. At the time, offhand.

extra modum [L.]. Beyond measure, extravagant.

extra muros [L.]. Outside the walls.

ex ungue leonem [L.]. You may tell the lion by his claw.

ex uno disce omnes. *See* **ab uno disce omnes.**

ex usu [L.]. By use.

ex utraque parte [L.]. On either side.

faber quisque fortunae suae [L.]. Every man is the architect of his own fortune.

facile est inventis addere [L.]. It is easy to add to what has been already invented.

facile princeps [L.]. The acknowledged chief; one standing easily first.

facilis descensus Averno [L.].Descent to hell is easy; the road to evil is easy.

façon de parler [F.]. Manner of speaking; phrase, locution.

facta non verba [L.]. Deeds not words.

factum est [L.]. It is done.

faex populi [L.]. (*pl.* **faeces**) Dregs of the people.

faire bonne mine [F.]. To put a good face on the matter.

faire feu [F.]. To fire (guns, etc.).

faire l'homme d'importance [F.]. To give oneself airs.

faire sans dire [F.]. To act without ostentation or boasting.

faire son devoir [F.]. To do one's duty.

faire son paquet [F.]. To pack up.

fait accompli [F.]. An accomplished fact.

falsa lectio [L.]. An erroneous reading, erratum.

fama clamosa [L.]. A current scandal.

fama nihil est celerius [L.]. Nothing travels more swiftly than scandal.

fama semper vivat ! [L.]. May his (or her) fame last for ever !

fas est et ab hoste doceri [L.]. It is right to be taught even by an enemy; you may get a hint from the other side.

fata obstant [L.]. The Fates oppose.

fata viam invenient [L.]. The Fates will find out a way.
faute de mieux [F.]. For want of better.
faux pas [F.]. A blunder, a slip.
favete linguis [L.]. Favour with your tongues, be silent.
fax mentis incendium gloriae [L.]. Ardour for glory is the torch of the mind.
fecit [L.]. (*pl.* **fecerunt**). He (or she) made it.
felicitas multos habet amicos [L.]. Prosperity has many friends.
feliciter [L.]. Fortunately, happily.
fendre un cheveu en quatre [F.]. To split hairs.
festina lente [L.]. Hasten slowly ; don't be impetuous.
fête champêtre [F.]. An open-air party.
fiat justitia, ruat coelum [L.]. Let justice be done though the heavens should fall.
fiat lux [L.]. Let there be light.
fide et amore [L.]. By faith and love.
fide et fiducia [L.]. By fidelity and confidence.
fide et fortitudine [L.]. By fidelity and fortitude.
fidei defensor [L.]. Defender of the faith.
fide non armis [L.]. By faith, not by force of arms.
fide, sed cui vide [L.]. Trust, but see whom you are trusting.
fides et justitia [L.]. Fidelity and justice.
fides Punica [L.]. Punic faith ; treachery.
fi donc ! [F.]. For shame !
fidus Achates [L.]. Faithful Achates (the companion of Aeneas) ; a true friend.
fidus et audax [L.]. Faithful and bold.
filius terrae [L.]. A son of the soil ; one of low birth.
fille de chambre [F.]. (*pl.* **filles**) A chamber-maid.
fille d'honneur [F.]. A maid of honour.
finem respice [L.]. Look to the end.
finis coronat opus [L.]. The end crowns the work.
flagrante bello [L.]. During hostilities.
flagrante delicto [L.]. In the very act.
flamma fumo est proxima [L.]. Where there's smoke there's fire.
flecti, non frangi [L.]. To be bent, not to be broken.
floreat [L.]. May (it) flourish.
fons et origo [L.]. The source and origin.
force majeure [F.]. Superior power, circumstances not under one's control.
forsan et haec olim meminisse juvabit [L.]. Perhaps it may be pleasant hereafter to remember these things.
fortes fortuna juvat [L.]. Fortune favours the brave.
forti et fideli nihil difficile [L.]. Nothing is difficult to the brave and faithful.
fortiter et recte [L.]. With fortitude and rectitude.
fortiter, fideliter, feliciter [L.]. Boldly, faithfully, successfully.
fortiter in re, suaviter in modo [L.]. Acting forcibly yet in gentle fashion.
fortuna favet fatuis [L.]. Fortune favours fools.
frangas, non flectes [L.]. You may break me, but you shall not bend me.
froides mains, chaud amour [F.]. Cold hands, warm heart.
front à front [F.]. Face to face.
fronti nulla fides [L.]. There is no trusting to appearances.
fugit irreparabile tempus [L.]. Irrecoverable time glides away.
fulmen brutum. *See under* **brutum.**
functus officio [L.]. Having discharged his duties ; hence, out of office, time-expired.
furor arma ministrat [L.]. Rage provides arms.
furor loquendi [L.]. A rage for speaking.
furor poeticus [L.]. Poetical frenzy.
furor scribendi [L.]. A rage for writing.

gage d'amour [F.]. A love-pledge.
Gallice [L.]. In French.
garçon [F.]. Bachelor, waiter.
garde à cheval [F.]. A mounted guard.
garde champêtre [F.]. (*pl.* **gardes champêtres**) A rural policeman.
garde-chasse [F.]. A game-keeper.
garde du corps [F.]. A body-guard, life-guard.
garde mobile [F.]. A guard liable to general service.
Garde nationale [F.]. National guard.
gardez vous [F.]. Take care ; be on your guard.
gardez vous bien [F.]. Take good care, be careful.
gardez la foi [F.]. Keep faith.
gare [F.]. Look out, beware.
gaudeamus igitur [L.]. Let us therefore rejoice.
gaudet tentamine virtus [L.]. Virtue rejoices in trial.
gens d'affaires [F.]. Business people.
gens d'armes [F.]. Men-at-arms.
gens d'église [F.]. The clergy, clerics.
gens de guerre [F.]. Military men.
gens de lettres [F.]. Literary men.
gens de loi [F.]. Lawyers.
gens de même famille [F.]. People of the same family, birds of a feather.
gens de peu [F.]. People of humble condition.
gens togata [L.]. Roman citizens, civilians.
gibier de potence [F.]. A gallows-bird.
giovine santo, diavolo vecchio [Ital.]. Young saint, old devil.
gitano [Span.]. A gypsy.
gli assenti hanno torto [Ital.]. The absent are in the wrong.
gloria in excelsis Deo [L.]. Glory to God in the highest.
gloria Patri [L.]. Glory be to the Father.
gnothi seauton [Gr.]. Know thyself.
goutte à goutte [F.]. Drop by drop.
grâce à Dieu [F.]. Thanks be to God.
gradatim [L.]. Step by step.
gradatim vincimus [L.]. We conquer by degrees.
gradus ad Parnassum [L.]. Steps to Parnassus ; prosodical Latin dictionary.
grande chère et beau feu [F.]. Good cheer and a good fire.
grande parure, tenue, or **toilette** [F.]. Full dress.
grande passion [F.]. A serious love-affair.
grandeur naturelle [F.]. Life-size.
grand merci [F.]. Many thanks (generally ironical).
gratia Dei [L.]. By the grace of God.
gratia placendi [L.]. For the sake of pleasing.
gratis dictum [L.]. Mere assertion.
graviora manent [L.]. Greater afflictions are in store ; the worst is yet to come.
graviora quaedam sunt remedia periculis [L.]. Some remedies are worse than the disease.
gré à gré [F.]. By private contract.
grex venalium [L.]. The venal throng.
grosse tête et peu de sens [F.]. Big head and little wit.
grosso modo [L.L.]. In the rough, roughly speaking.
guerra al cuchillo [Span.]. War to the knife.
guerre à mort [F.]. War to the death.
guerre à outrance [F.]. War to the uttermost.

hac lege [L.]. With this condition or proviso.
haud longis intervallis [L.]. At frequent intervals.
haut et bon [F.]. Great and good.
haute politique [F.]. State politics.
helluo librorum [L.]. A devourer of books ; a bookworm.
heu pietas ! heu prisca fides ! [L.]. Alas for piety ; alas for our ancient faithfulness !
hiatus valde deflendus [L.]. A gap greatly to be deplored.
hic et ubique [L.]. Here and everywhere.
hic labor [L.]. This is the difficulty.
hic sepultus [L.]. Here (lies) buried.
hier spricht man Deutsch [G.]. German is spoken here.
hinc illae lacrimae [L.]. Hence these tears ; this is the cause of the trouble.
his non obstantibus [L.]. Notwithstanding this.
hoc age [L.]. Do this ; attend.
hoc genus omne [L.]. All that sort.
hoc loco [L.]. In this place.
hoc mense [L.]. This month.
hoc opus est, hic labor [L.]. That's the difficulty.
hoc monumentum or **saxum posuit** [L.]. He (or she) erected this monument or stone.
hoc tempore [L.]. At this time.
hoc titulo [L.]. Under this title.

hoc volo, sic jubeo [L.]. This I will, thus I command.

hodie mihi, cras tibi [L.]. It is my turn to-day, yours to-morrow.

hodie, non cras [L.]. To-day, not to-morrow.

hoi polloi [Gr.]. The many, the rank and file, the mob.

hominis est errare [L.]. It is common to man to err.

hommage de l'auteur [F.]. With the author's compliments.

homme d'affaires [F.]. A man of business, an agent.

homme de bien [F.]. A man of worth, an upright man.

homme de lettres [F.]. A man of letters; an author.

homme de paille [F.]. A man of straw.

homme de robe [F.]. A lawyer.

homme d'esprit [F.]. A wit, a genius.

homme du monde [F.]. A man of fashion.

homo multarum literarum [L.]. A man of many literary accomplishments.

homo solus aut deus aut daemon [L.]. A man living alone must be either a god or a devil.

homo sum; humani nihil a me alienum puto [L.]. I am a man, and deem nothing that concerns mankind a matter of indifference.

homo unius libri [L.]. A man of one book.

honi soit qui mal y pense [O F.]. Shame to him who thinks evil of it (motto of the Order of the Garter).

honnête homme [F.]. A worthy man.

honores mutant mores [L.]. Honours change manners.

honoris causa or **gratia** [L.]. For the sake of honour, honorary.

honos habet onus [L.]. Honour is burdened with responsibility.

horae canonicae [L.]. Canonical hours, prescribed times for prayers.

horae subsecivae [L.]. Leisure hours.

horas non numero nisi serenas [L.]. I count none but shining hours (inscription on sun-dials).

horresco referens [L.]. I shudder as I tell the story.

horribile dictu [L.]. Horrible to tell.

horribile visu [L.]. Horrible to see.

hors concours [F.]. Not for competition, beyond challenge, unmatched.

hors de combat [F.]. Disabled, unfit to continue a contest.

hors la loi [F.]. Outlawed.

hors de pair [F.]. Without equal.

hors de propos [F.]. Wide of the point, inapplicable.

hors de saison [F.]. Out of season.

hors ligue [F.]. Outstanding, exceptional.

hostis humani generis [L.]. An enemy of the human race.

hôtel garni [F.]. Furnished apartments.

hujus anni [L.]. Of this year.

humanum est errare [L.]. To err is human.

hurtar para dar por Dios [Span.]. To steal in order to give to God.

ich dien [G.]. I serve (Prince of Wales's motto).

ici on parle français [F.]. French is spoken here.

idée fixe [F.]. A fixed idea, monomania.

idem sonans [L.]. Having the same sound.

idem velle atque idem nolle [L.]. To like and to dislike the same things.

id genus omne [L.]. All of that kind.

Iesus hominum Salvator [L.]. Jesus the Saviour of men.

ignorantia legis neminem excusat [L.]. Ignorance of the law is an excuse for no one.

ignoratio elenchi [L.]. Ignoring the point in dispute; the fallacy of arguing to the wrong point.

ignotum per ignotius [L.]. (To explain) a thing not understood by one still less understood.

il faut de l'argent [F.]. Money is wanting.

Ilias malorum [L.]. An Iliad of woes; a host of evils.

il n'y a pas à dire [F.]. There is nothing to be said; there's no denying it.

il n'y a pas de quoi [F.]. No matter, don't mention it.

il n'y a que le premier pas qui coûte [F.]. It is only the first step that costs.

il pensieroso [Ital.]. The pensive man.

il sent le fagot [F.]. He smells of the faggot; he is suspected of heresy.

ils n'ont rien appris ni rien oublié [F.]. They have learned nothing and forgotten nothing (said of the Bourbons).

il va sans dire [F.]. It goes without saying.

imo pectore [L.]. From the bottom of the heart.

impedimenta [L.]. Military baggage, traveller's luggage.

imperium et libertas [L.]. Empire and liberty.

imperium in imperio [L.]. A state within a state.

impos animi [L.]. Feeble-minded, imbecile.

in abstracto [L.]. In the abstract.

in actu [L.]. In reality.

in aeternum [L.]. For ever.

in alio loco [L.]. In another place.

in ambiguo [L.]. In a doubtful manner.

in articulo mortis [L.]. At the moment of death.

in Banco Regis [L.]. In the King's Bench.

in bianco [Ital.]. In blank, in white.

in caelo quies [L.]. In heaven is rest.

in caelo salus [L.]. In heaven is salvation.

in camera [L.]. In the judge's chamber, not in open court.

in capite [L.]. In chief (holding), directly from the Crown.

in cauda venenum [L.]. The poison is in the tail, the sting is left to the last.

in Christi nomine [L.]. In the name of Christ.

incredulus odi [L.]. Being incredulous, I cannot endure it.

in cruce spero [L.]. I hope in the Cross.

in curia [L.]. In open court.

inde irae [L.]. Hence this resentment.

in Deo speravi [L.]. In God have I trusted.

index rerum [L.]. An index of things or matters.

index verborum [L.]. An index of words.

in dubio [L.]. In doubt.

industriae nil impossibile [L.]. Nothing is impossible to industry.

in equilibrio [L.]. Properly balanced.

in esse [L.]. In actual being.

in excelsis [L.]. In the highest.

in extenso [L.]. At full length.

in extremis [L.]. At the point of death, on its last legs.

in facie curiae [L.]. In the presence of or before the court.

in flagrante delicto [L.]. In the very act, red-handed.

in forma pauperis [L.]. As a poor man.

in foro conscientiae [L.]. Before the tribunal of conscience.

infra dignitatem (more often '**infra dig.**') [L.]. Beneath one's dignity.

in futuro [L.]. For the future, henceforth.

in genere [L.]. In kind.

in hac parte [L.]. On this part.

in hoc salus [L.]. There is safety in this.

in hoc signo vinces [L.]. In this sign you will conquer (motto of Constantine the Great).

in infinitum [L.]. For ever, to the uttermost limit.

in initio [L.]. In the beginning.

in limine [L.]. On the threshold, as a preliminary.

in loco [L.]. In the place (of), in its due place.

in loco citato [L.]. In the place cited.

in loco parentis [L.]. In the place of a parent.

in medias res [L.]. Into the very midst of the business.

in medio tutissimus ibis [L.]. The middle course is the safest.

in memoriam [L.]. To the memory of.

in nomine [L.]. In the name (of).

in nubibus [L.]. In the clouds; undefined, uncertain, vague.

in nuce [L.]. In a nutshell.

in omnia paratus [L.]. Prepared for all things.

inopem me copia fecit [L.]. Abundance has made me poor.

in pace [L.]. In peace.

in perpetuam rei memoriam [L.]. In everlasting remembrance of the event.

in perpetuum [L.]. For ever.

in petto [Ital.]. Within the breast, in reserve.

in pleno [L.]. In full.

in posse [L.]. In possibility, potentially.

in praesenti [L.]. At the present time.

in principio [L.]. At the beginning.

in promptu [L.]. In readiness.

in propria persona [L.]. In one's own person.

in puris naturalibus [L.]. In a state of nature; naked.

in re [L.]. In the matter of.

in rerum natura [L.]. In the nature of things.

in saecula saeculorum [L.]. For ever and ever.

in se [L.]. In itself.

in situ [L.]. In (its original or proper) position.

instanter [L.]. At once.

instar omnium [L.]. An example to all.

in statu quo (ante or **nunc)** [L.]. In the same state as (before or now).

in te, Domine, speravi [L.]. In thee, O Lord, have I put my trust.

in tenebris [L.]. In the dark, in doubt.

inter alia [L.]. Among other things.

inter nos [L.]. Between ourselves.

in terrorem [L.]. As a warning.

inter se [L.]. Among or between themselves.

inter spem et metum [L.]. Between hope and fear.

inter vivos [L.]. Among the living, during life.

in testimonium [L.]. In witness.

in totidem verbis [L.]. In so many words.

in toto [L.]. Entirely.

intra muros [L.]. Within the walls.

in transitu [L.]. On the way, en route.

intra parietes [L.]. Within the walls (of a house), in private.

intra vires [L.]. Within the powers (of).

in usu [L.]. In use.

in utrumque paratus [L.]. Prepared for either event.

in vacuo [L.]. In a vacuum, in empty space.

invenit [L.]. He (or she) devised this.

inverso ordine [L.]. In the inverse order.

invita Minerva [L.]. Minerva (Goddess of wisdom) being unwilling; hence, without inspiration.

ipse dixit [L.]. He himself has said it; a mere assertion.

ipsissima verba [L.]. The identical words.

ipso facto [L.]. By the fact itself.

ipso jure [L.]. By the law itself.

ira furor brevis est [L.]. Anger is a brief madness.

ita est [L.]. It is so.

iterum [L.]. Again.

jacta alea est [L.]. The die is cast.

januis clausis [L.]. With closed doors, in secret.

je maintiendrai le droit [F.]. I will maintain the right.

je ne sais quoi [F.]. I know not what.

je ne sais trop [F.]. I don't know precisely.

je n'oublierai jamais [F.]. I will never forget.

je suis prêt [F.]. I am ready.

jeu d'esprit [F.]. A witticism, verbal ingenuity.

jeu de scène or **théâtre** [F.]. A stage trick.

jour de fête [F.]. A fête day, a festival.

jour de l'an [F.]. New Year's Day.

jour des morts [F.]. All Souls' Day.

journal intime [F.]. One's private diary.

jubilate Deo [L.]. O be joyful in the Lord.

judicium Dei [L.]. The judgment of God.

jure divino [L.]. By divine law.

jure humano [L.]. By human law.

juris peritus [L.]. One learned in the law.

juris utriusque doctor [L.]. Doctor of both (canon and civil) laws.

jus canonicum [L.]. Canon law.

jus civile [L.]. Civil law.

jus divinum [L.]. Divine law.

jus et norma loquendi [L.]. The law and rule of speech.

jus gentium [L.]. The law of nations.

jus gladii [L.]. The right of the sword.

jus possessionis [L.]. Right of possession.

juste milieu [L.]. The golden mean.

justo tempore [L.]. At the right time.

juvante Deo [L.]. God helping.

laborare est orare [L.]. Work is prayer.

labore et honore [L.]. With labour and honour.

labor ipse voluptas [L.]. Labour itself is a pleasure.

labor omnia vincit [L.]. Labour overcomes all difficulties.

l'allegro [Ital.]. The cheerful man (title of poem by Milton).

l'amour et la fumée ne peuvent se cacher [F.]. Love and smoke cannot be hidden.

langage des halles [F.]. The language of the markets, Billingsgate.

la patience est amère, mais son fruit est doux [F.]. Patience is bitter, but its reward is sweet.

lapis philosophorum [L.]. The philosophers' stone.

lapsus calami [L.]. A slip of the pen.

lapsus linguae [L.]. A slip of the tongue.

lapsus memoriae [L.]. A slip of the memory.

lares et penates [L.]. Household gods.

lateat scintillula forsan [L.]. Perchance some small spark may lie concealed (motto of the Royal Humane Society).

laudum immensa cupido [L.]. An insatiable desire for praise.

laus Deo [L.]. Praise be to God.

l'avenir [F.]. The future.

la vertu est la seule noblesse [F.]. Virtue is the only nobility.

le beau monde [F.]. The world of fashion, society.

le bon temps viendra [F.]. There's a good time coming.

le coût en ôte le goût [F.]. The cost takes away the pleasure.

lector benevole [L.]. Kind, or gentle, reader.

legatus a latere [L.]. A legate from the side (of the Pope), a papal ambassador.

le grand monarque [F.]. The grand monarch—Louis XIV of France.

le jeu n'en vaut pas la chandelle [F.]. The game is not worth the candle.

le mot de l'énigme [F.]. The clue to the mystery.

le pas [F.]. Precedence.

le point du jour [F.]. Daybreak.

le roy, or la reyne, le veult [O.F.]. The King, or the Queen, wills it (royal assent to a Bill).

les absents ont toujours tort [F.]. The absent are always in the wrong.

les convenances [F.]. The proprieties.

lèse majesté [F.]. Lese-majesty.

les murailles ont des oreilles [F.]. Walls have ears.

le style est l'homme même [F.]. The style is the man himself.

l'État, c'est moi [F.]. The State! I am the State.

le tout ensemble [F.]. The general effect.

lettre d'avis [F.]. A letter of advice.

lettre de change [F.]. A bill of exchange.

lettre de créance [F.]. A letter of credit.

lever de rideau [F.]. A curtain-raiser.

le vrai n'est pas toujours vraisemblable [F.]. Truth is stranger than fiction.

lex loci [L.]. The law or custom of the place.

lex non scripta [L.]. The unwritten law.

lex talionis [L.]. The law of retaliation.

lex terrae [L.]. The law of the land.

l'homme propose et Dieu dispose [F.]. Man proposes and God disposes.

libertas in legibus [L.]. Liberty under the laws.

liberum arbitrium [L.]. Free choice.

licentia vatum [L.]. The license allowed to poets.

licet [L.]. It is permitted, it is legal.

l'inconnu [F.]. The unknown.

l'incroyable [F.]. The incredible, the marvellous.

lingua Franca [Ital.]. A mixed language used in the Levant between Europeans and Asiatics

lis litem generat [L.]. Strife begets strife.

lite pendente [L.]. While the action was as yet unsettled.

litera scripta manet [L.]. The written word remains.

loco citato [L.]. In the place quoted.

locus criminis or **delicti** [L.]. Th scene of the crime.

locus in quo [L.]. The place in which.

locus poenitentiae [L.]. An opportunity for repenting or withdrawing.

locus sigilli [L.]. The place of the seal.

locus standi [L.]. Recognized place or position authorizing appearance in court, etc.

longo intervallo [L.]. At a long interval.

loquitur [L.]. He (or she) speaks.

loyauté m'oblige [F.]. Loyalty binds me.

lucernam olet [L.]. It smells of the lamp.

lucidus ordo [L.]. A clear arrangement.

lucri causa [L.]. For the sake of gain.

ludere cum sacris [L.]. To trifle with sacred things.

lupus in fabula [L.]. The wolf in the fable; talk of the devil and he will appear.

lusus naturae [L.]. A freak of nature.

lux in tenebris [L.]. Light in darkness.

lux mundi [L.]. The Light of the world.

ma chère [F.]. My dear (fem.).

ma foi [F.]. Upon my faith, my word.

magister ceremoniarum [L.]. Master of the ceremonies.

magna civitas, magna solitudo [L.]. A great city is a great solitude.

magna est veritas et praevalebit [L.]. Truth is mighty and it will prevail.

magna est vis consuetudinis [L.]. Great is the force of habit.

magni nominis umbra [L.]. The shadow of a great name.

magnum bonum [L.]. A great good.

magnum in parvo [L.]. A great deal in a little space.

magnum opus [L.]. A great work.

magnum est vectigal parsimonia [L.]. Economy is itself a good income.

maintiens le droit [F.]. Maintain the right.

maison de campagne [F.]. A country house.

maison de santé [F.]. A private asylum or hospital.

maison de ville [F.]. A town hall.

maison garnie [F.]. A furnished house.

maître d'hôtel [F.]. A house steward.

mal à propos [F.]. Unseasonably.

malade imaginaire [F.]. One who fancies himself an invalid.

mal du pays [F.]. Home-sickness.

mala fide [L.]. In bad faith, treacherously.

mal de cœur [F.]. Nausea, faintness.

mal de mer [F.]. Sea-sickness.

mal de tête [F.]. Headache.

malentendu [F.]. A misunderstanding, a mistake.

malgré nous [F.]. In spite of us.

malgré soi [F.]. In spite of oneself.

malheur ne vient jamais seul [F.]. Misfortunes never come singly.

mali exempli [L.]. Of bad example.

malo modo [L.]. In an evil manner.

malum in se [L.]. A thing bad in itself.

malus pudor [L.]. False shame.

manet [L.]. . (*pl.* **manent**) He (or she) remains.

manibus pedibusque [L.]. With hands and feet.

manu forti [L.]. With the strong hand.

manu propria [L.]. With one's own hand.

mardi gras [F.]. Shrove Tuesday.

mare clausum [L.]. A sea closed to foreigners.

mariage de convenance [F.]. A marriage of convenience.

marque de fabrique [F.]. A trade-mark.

materiam superabat opus [L.]. The work was better than the material.

mauvaise honte [F.]. False shame.

mauvais goût [F.]. Bad taste.

mauvais quart d'heure [F.]. An unpleasant quarter of an hour.

mauvais sujet [F.]. A worthless fellow.

mauvais ton [F.]. Bad style.

maximus in minimis [L.]. Very great in trifling things.

mea culpa [L.]. By my fault.

mea virtute me involvo [L.]. I wrap myself in my own virtue.

médecin, guéris-toi toi-même [F.]. Physician, heal thyself.

mediocria firma [L.]. There is safety in moderation.

me judice [L.]. In my opinion.

memor et fidelis [L.]. Mindful and faithful.

memoria in aeterna [L.]. In eternal remembrance.

memoriter [L.]. From memory.

mens agitat molem [L.]. Mind moves matter.

mens sana in corpore sano [L.]. A sound mind in a sound body.

mens sibi conscia recti [L.]. A mind conscious of its own rectitude.

meo periculo [L.]. At my own risk.

meo voto [L.]. By my own wish.

meret qui laborat [L.]. He is deserving who is industrious.

merum sal [L.]. Pure salt, true wit.

meum et tuum [L.]. Mine and thine.

mi-carême [F.]. Mid-Lent.

mihi cura futuri [L.]. My care is of the future.

mirabile dictu [L.]. Wonderful to relate.

mirabile visu [L.]. Wonderful to see.

mise en scène [F.]. The setting (or production) of a play; the background, surroundings.

miserere mei [L.]. Have mercy upon me.

modo et forma [L.]. In manner and form.

modo praescripto [L.]. In the way directed.

modus operandi [L.]. Way of doing.

modus vivendi [L.]. A working compromise.

mœurs [F.]. Manners, customs.

mollissima fandi tempora [L.]. The most favourable times for speaking.

mon ami [F., *fem.* **amie**]. My friend.

mon cher [F., *fem.* **ma chère**]. My dear.

mon Dieu ! [F.]. Good heavens ! gracious !

mont-de-piété [F.]. (*pl.* **monts-**) A pawnbroker's shop.

monumentum aere perennius. *See* **exegi monumentum, aere perennius.**

morceau [F.]. A piece of music.

more majorum [L.]. After the manner of our ancestors.

more suo [L.]. In his usual way.

mors janua vitae [L.]. Death is the gate of life.

mors omnibus communis [L.]. Death is common to all men.

mos pro lege [L.]. Usage has the force of law.

mot à mot [F.]. Word for word.

mot du guet [F.]. A watchword.

mots d'usage [F.]. Words in common use.

motu proprio [L.]. Of his own accord.

moyen âge [F.]. The Middle Ages.

multum in parvo [L.]. Much in little.

mutatis mutandis [L.]. The necessary changes being made.

mutato nomine [L.]. The name being changed.

natale solum [L.]. The land of one's birth.

naturam expellas furca, tamen usque recurret [L.]. Though you drive out Nature with a pitchfork, yet will she always return.

nec cupias nec metuas [L.] Desire not and fear not.

necessitas non habet legem [L.]. Necessity knows no law.

nec habeo, nec careo, nec curo [L.]. I have not, I want not, I care not.

nec mora, nec requies [L.]. Neither delay nor rest.

nec pluribus impar [L.]. No unequal match for many (motto assumed by Louis XIV).

nec prece, nec pretio [L.]. Neither by entreaty nor bribery.

nec scire fas est omnia [L.]. It is not lawful to know all things.

nec sibi, nec alteri [L.]. No good to oneself or anyone else.

nec temere nec timide [L.]. Neither rashly nor timidly.

ne exeat regno [L.]. Let him not depart the realm (a writ of restraint).

nefasti dies [L.]. Days on which judgment could not be pronounced, etc., in ancient Rome; unlucky days.

ne fronti crede [L.]. Don't trust to appearances.

negatur [L.]. It is denied.

nemine contradicente [L.]. No one contradicting.

nemine dissentiente [L.]. No one dissenting.

nemo me impune lacessit [L.]. No one provokes me with impunity (motto of the Order of the Thistle).

nemo mortalium omnibus horis sapit [L.]. No man is wise at all times; the wisest may make mistakes.

✓ **nemo repente fuit turpissimus** [L.]. No man becomes a blackguard all at once.

nemo solus sapit [L.]. No one is alone wise.

nemo tenetur ad impossibile [L.]. No one is bound by what is impossible.

nemo tenetur se ipsum accusare [L.]. No one is bound to accuse himself.

ne nimium [L.]. Not too much; avoid excess.

ne plus ultra [L.]. Nothing further; perfection.

ne puero gladium [L.]. Do not (entrust) a sword to a boy.

ne quid detrimenti respublica capiat [L.]. Lest the State suffer any injury.

ne quid nimis [L.]. Not too much.

ne tentes, aut perfice [L.]. Do not attempt it, or carry it out thoroughly.

nihil ad rem [L.]. Nothing to the purpose.

nihil sub sole novum [L.]. There is nothing new under the sun.

nil admirari [L.]. To wonder at nothing.

nil desperandum [L.]. Never despair.

nil magnum nisi bonum [L.]. Nothing is great unless good.

nil nisi cruce [L.]. Nothing but by the cross; no reward without suffering.

ni l'un ni l'autre [F.]. Neither the one nor the other.

nimium ne crede colori [L.]. Do not trust too much to appearances.

n'importe [F.]. It is of no consequence.

nisi Dominus frustra [L.]. Unless the Lord (build the house, they labour) in vain (that build it).

nitor in adversum [L.]. I strive against opposition.

noblesse oblige [F.]. Rank imposes obligations.

nolens volens [L.]. Willing or unwilling.

nolle prosequi [L.]. To be unwilling to proceed with a case.

nom de guerre [F.]. A war name; a pen name.

non assumpsit [L.]. A plea denying promise or undertaking by the defendant.

non compos mentis [L.]. Not of sound mind.

non est inventus [L.]. A sheriff's statement that the defendant is not to be found on return of a writ.

non ignara mali, miseris succurrere disco [L.]. Not unacquainted with misfortune, I learn to succour the wretched.

non libet [L.]. It does not please.

non mihi sed Deo et regi [L.]. Not for me, but for God and the King.

non multa, sed multum [L.]. Not many things, but much.

non nobis solum nati sumus [L.]. We are not born for ourselves alone.

non obstante veredicto [L.]. Notwithstanding the verdict.

non omnia possumus omnes [L.]. We cannot all do everything.

non placet [L.]. A formula expressing a negative vote.

non possumus [L., we cannot]. A statement of inability or a refusal to act.

non quis, sed quid [L.]. Not who, but what; measures, not men.

non sequitur [L., it does not follow]. An unwarranted conclusion.

nosce teipsum [L.]. Know thyself.

noscitur a or **e sociis** [L.]. He is known by his companions.

nota bene [L.]. Note well.

notandum [L.]. (*pl.* **-da**). A thing to be noted.

Notre-Dame [F.]. Our Lady, the Virgin Mary.

n'oubliez pas [F.]. Don't forget.

nous avons changé tout cela [F.]. We have changed all that.

nous verrons [F.]. We shall see.

nouveau riche [F.]. (*pl.* **nouveaux riches**) A newly-rich man, a parvenu.

nouvelles [F.]. News.

novus homo [L.]. (*pl.* **novi homines**). A self-made man, an upstart.

nudis verbis [L.]. In plain words.

nudum pactum [L.]. An unratified contract.

nulla bona [L.]. No goods; no effects.

nulla dies sine linea [L.]. No day without a line—without something done.

nulla nuova, buona nuova [Ital.]. No news is good news.

nulli secundus [L.]. Second to none.

nunc aut nunquam [L.]. Now or never.

nunquam non paratus [L.]. Never unprepared.

obiit [L.]. He (or she) died.

obiter dictum [L.]. A thing said by the way, or in passing.

obscurum per obscurius [L.]. Explaining an obscurity by something still more obscure.

obsta principiis [L.]. Resist the first beginnings.

oderint dum metuant [L.]. Let them hate provided that they fear.

odi profanum vulgus et arceo [L.]. Hate the unhallowed crowd and hold it aloof.

œil-de-boeuf [F., *pl.* **œils-**]. A bull's eye. A small round window.

œuvres [F.]. Works.

omne ignotum pro magnifico [L.]. Whatever is unknown is thought to be magnificent.

omnem movere lapidem [L.]. To leave no stone unturned.

omnia mors aequat [L.]. Death levels all distinctions.

omnia munda mundis [L.]. To the pure all things are pure.

omnia vincit amor, nos et cedamus amori [L.]. Love conquers all things, let us too yield to love.

omnibus idem [L.]. The same to all men.

on connait l'ami au besoin [F.]. A friend is known in time of need.

onus probandi [L.]. The burden of proving.

operae pretium est [L.]. It is worth while.

opere citato [L.]. In the work cited.

opus operatum [L.]. A work performed.

ora e sempre [Ital.]. Now and always.

ora et labora [L.]. Pray and work.

ora pro nobis [L.]. Pray for us.

orate pro anima [L.]. Pray for the soul (of).

orator fit, poeta nascitur [L.]. An orator is made, a poet is born.

ordre du jour [F.]. Order of the day, the agenda of a meeting.

ore rotundo [L.]. With round, full voice.

ore tenus [L.]. From the mouth only; oral evidence.

O sancta simplicitas! [L.]. O sacred simplicity!

osculum pacis [L.]. The kiss of peace.

O! si sic omnia! [L.]. O that all had been (spoken or acted) thus!

O tempora! O mores! [L.]. O the times! O the manners!

otia dant vitia [L.]. Leisure begets vice.

otiosa sedulitas [L.]. Laborious trifling.

otium cum dignitate [L.]. Dignified leisure.

oublier je ne puis [F.]. I can never forget.

ouvrage de longue haleine [F.]. A long-winded business.

ouvrier [F., *fem.* **-ère**]. A workman, an artisan.

pabulum animi [L.]. The food of the mind; learning.

pace [L.]. By leave of, with the consent of.

pace tua [L.]. By your leave.

pacta conventa [L.]. The conditions agreed on.

pactum illicitum [L.]. An unlawful compact.

palmam qui meruit ferat [L.]. Let him who has deserved it bear the palm.

panta rhei [Gr.]. All things are ever changing.

par amitié [F.]. By favour.

par avance [F.]. In advance.

parbleu! [F.]. An exclamation of surprise, etc.

par-ci-par-là [F.]. Here and there.

par complaisance [F.]. Out of politeness, as an act of grace.

par dépit [F.]. Out of spite.

par excellence [F.]. Pre-eminently.

par exemple [F.]. For instance; (*also, as interjection*) the idea!

par hasard [F.]. By chance.

pari passu [L.]. At the same rate or pace.

par nobile fratrum [L.]. A noble pair of brothers; two just alike.

parole d'honneur [F.]. Word of honour.

par parenthèse [F.]. By way of parenthesis.

pars pro toto [L.]. Part for the whole.

particeps criminis [L.]. A partaker in the crime; an accessory.

parvis componere magna [L.]. To compare great things with small.

pas de deux [F.]. A dance for two.

pas de zèle ! [F.]. Don't be zealous, steady.

pas possible ! [F.]. Impossible!

pas seul [F.]. A dance for one person.

passim [L.]. Everywhere; in all parts of the book.

pater patriae [L.]. The father of his country.

patres conscripti [L.]. The Conscript Fathers; the Roman Senate.

patria potestas [L.]. (*Roman Law.*) The power of a father (over his family).

pax huic domui [L.]. Peace be to this house.

pax in bello [L.]. Peace (that is, leniency) in war.

pax orbis terrarum [L.]. The peace of the world.

pax Romana [L.]. The peace of the Roman Empire.

pax vobiscum [L.]. Peace be with you.

peine forte et dure [F.]. Very severe punishment.

pendente lite. *See* **lite pendente.**

pensée [F.]. A thought expressed in terse, vigorous language.

per [L.]. Through the intermediary of.

per accidens [L.]. By accident.

per ambages [L.] By circuitous ways.

per angusta ad augusta [L.]. Through hardship to triumph.

per aspora ad astra [L.]. Through trials to glory.

per contante [Ital.]. For cash.

per contra [L.]. On the other hand.

per fas aut nefas [L.]. Through right or wrong.

periculum in mora [L.]. There is danger in delay.

per incuriam [L.]. Through carelessness.

per interim [L.]. In the meantime.

per mare, per terras [L.]. By sea and land.

per mensem [L.]. Monthly.

per mese [Ital.]. By the month.

per saltum [L.]. At a leap.

per se [L.]. In itself.

persona [L.]. A person.

persona grata [L.]. An acceptable person, a favourite.

per tot discrimina rerum [L.]. Through so many vicissitudes of fortune.

petit comité [F.]. A small party.

petit coup [F.]. A small mask, a domino.

petit maître [F.]. A fop.

petitio principii [L.]. Begging the chief point; begging the question.

petits soins [F.]. Little attentions.

petit verre [F.]. A small glass (of liqueur).

peu à peu [F.]. Little by little, by degrees.

peut-être [F.]. Perhaps.

pièce de résistance [F.]. The most substantial dish at a meal; the most important item.

pièce d'occasion [F.]. A piece composed for a special occasion.

pied-à-terre [F.]. A footing, a temporary lodging.

pis aller [F.]. A makeshift.

plebs [L.]. The lower orders.

plein air [F.]. The open air.

pleno jure [L.]. With full authority.

plus tôt [F.]. Sooner.

plutôt [F.]. Rather.

poco a poco [Ital.]. Little by little, by degrees.

poco curante [Ital.]. Not caring, indifferent, apthetic.

poeta nascitur, non fit [L.]. The poet is born, not made.

point d'appui [F.]. Point of support, a base for action.

pondere, non numero [L.]. By weight, not by number.

point du jour [F.]. Daybreak.

pons asinorum [L.]. The asses' bridge (a name given to the 5th proposition in Euclid, Book I).

populus vult decipi, decipiatur [L.]. The people wish to be deceived, let them be deceived.

post hoc, ergo propter hoc [L.]. After this, therefore on account of this.

post obitum [L.]. After death.

poste restante [F.]. To be left till called for.

post tenebras lux [L.]. After darkness, light.

potage au gras [F.]. Meat soup.

pot-au-feu [F.]. Meat broth.

potius mori quam foedari [L.]. Death before dishonour.

pour acquit [F.]. Paid, settled.

pour ainsi dire [F.]. So to speak.

pour dire adieu or **pour faire ses adieux** [F.]. To say good-bye.

pour encourager les autres [F.]. To encourage the rest.

pour faire visite [F.]. To make a call.

pour faire rire [F.]. To raise a laugh.

pour passer le temps [F.]. To kill time.

pour prendre congé (P.P.C.) [F.]. To take leave.

pour tout dire [F.]. In a word.

praemonitus, praemunitus [L.]. Forewarned, forearmed.

presto maturo, presto marcio [Ital.]. Soon ripe, soon rotten.

prêt d'accomplir [F.]. Ready to accomplish.

pretiosum quod utile [L.]. What is useful is valuable.

preux chevalier [F.]. A brave knight, a quixotic fellow.

prima facie [L.]. At first sight, on the face of it.

primo [L.]. In the first place.

primo intuitu [L.]. At the first glance.

primum mobile [L.]. Original motive force, mainspring.

primus inter pares [L.]. First among equals.

principia, non homines [L.]. Principles, not men.

prior tempore, prior jure [L.]. First in time, first by right; first come first served.

pristinae virtutis memores [L.]. Mindful of the valour of former days.

pro aris et focis [L.]. For our altars and hearths.

probatum est [L.]. It has been proved.

probitas laudatur et alget [L.]. Honesty is praised, and left to shiver.

pro bono publico [L.]. For the public good.

pro Deo et ecclesia [L.]. For God and the Church.

pro et contra [L.]. Both sides of the question.

pro forma [L.]. As a matter of form.

pro hac vice [L.]. For this occasion

proh pudor ! [L.]. For shame.

pro memoria [L.]. As a memorial.

pro patria [L.]. For one's country.

pro patria et rege [L.]. For country and king.

proprio motu [L.]. Of one's own accord, spontaneously.

pro rata [L.]. In proportion.

pro rege, lege, grege [L.]. For the king, the law, the people.

pro re nata [L.]. As occasion may arise.

pro salute animæ [L.]. For the health of the soul.

prosit tibi [L.]. May it do thee good.

pro tanto [L.]. For so much, to that extent.

pro tempore [L.]. For the time being.

proxime accessit [L.]. He (or she) came nearest.

prudens futuri [L.]. Mindful of the future.

publice [L.]. Publicly.

pugnis et calcibus [L.]. With fists and heels, tooth and nail.

Punica fides [L.]. Punic faith, treachery.

pur et simple [F.]. Pure and simple, unqualified.

pur sang [F.]. Thoroughbred.

quae nocent, docent [L.]. What pains us, trains us.

quaere [L.]. Inquire.

quaeritur [L.]. It is asked.

quaestio vexata [L.]. A vexed question.

quae vide [L.]. Which (things) see.

qualis rex, talis grex [L.]. Like king, like people.

qualis vita, finis ita [L.]. As the life has been, so will its end be.

quamdiu se bene gesserit [L.]. During good behaviour.

quandoque bonus dormitat Homerus [L.]. Even good Homer sometimes nods; the wisest make mistakes.

quanti est sapere ! [L.]. How valuable is wisdom !

quantum libet [L.]. As much as you like.

quantum meruit [L.]. As much as he (or she) deserved.

quantum mutatus ab illo ! [L.]. How changed from what he was !

quantum sufficit [L.]. As much as suffices.

quantum valeat [L.]. So much as it may be worth.

quelque chose [F.]. Something; a trifle.

quel temps fait-il ? [F.]. What sort of weather is it ?

que voulez-vous ? [F.]. What would you have ?

quem Jupiter vult perdere, prius dementat [L.]. Whom Jupiter means to destroy he first makes mad.

quem di diligunt, adolescens moritur [L.]. He whom the gods love dies young.

qui desiderat pacem, praeparet bellum [L.]. Who desires peace, let him make ready for war. *See also under* **si vis.**

quid faciendum ? [L.]. What is to be done ?

quid opus est verbis ? [L.]. What need is there for words ?

quid pro quo [L.]. Something in return.

quid rides ? [L.]. Why do you laugh ?

quien sabe ? [Span.]. Who knows ?

quieta non movere [L.]. Not to interfere with things that are at rest; let sleeping dogs lie.

qui facit per alium, facit per se [L.]. He who acts through another acts through himself.

qui laborat, orat [L.]. He who labours, prays.

qui m'aime, aime mon chien [F.]. Love me, love my dog.

qu'importe ? [F.]. What does it matter ?

qui n'a santé, n'a rien [F.]. He who has not health has nothing.

qui nimium probat, nihil probat [L.]. He who proves too much proves nothing.

qui non proficit, deficit, [L.]. He who does not advance loses ground.

quis custodiet ipsos custodes ? [L.]. Who shall guard the guards ?

qui s'excuse, s'accuse [F.]. He who excuses himself accuses himself.

quis separabit ? [L.]. Who shall separate us ? (the motto of the Order of St. Patrick).

qui stat, caveat ne cadat [L.]. Let him that standeth take heed lest he fall.

qui tacet, consentire videtur [L.]. Silence gives consent.

qui timide rogat, docet negare [L.]. He who asks timidly courts denial.

qui va là ? [L.]. Who goes there ?

qui vive ? [F.]. Who goes there ?

quoad hoc [L.]. To this extent.

quo animo ? [L.]. With what intention ?

quocunque jeceris, stabit [L.]. Wherever you throw it it will stand (motto of the Isle of Man).

quocunque modo [L.]. In whatever manner.

quocunque nomine [L.]. Under whatever name.

quod absurdum est [L.]. Which thing is absurd.

quod avertat Deus ! [L.]. Which God avert !

quod bene notandum [L.]. Which is to be especially noted.

quod dixi, dixi [L.]. What I have said, I have said.

quod erat demonstrandum (Q.E.D.) [L.]. Which was to be proved.

quod erat faciendum (Q.E.F.) [L.]. Which was to be done.

quod hoc sibi vult ? [L.]. What does this mean ?

quod scripsi, scripsi [L.]. What I have written, I have written.

quod tibi fieri non vis, alteri ne facias [L.]. What you do not wish done to yourself, do not to another.

quod vide [L.]. Which (thing) see.

quo fas et gloria ducunt [L.]. Where duty and glory lead.

quo fata vocant [L.]. Whither destiny summons.

quo jure ? [L.]. By what right ?

quomodo ? [L.]. By what means ?

quot homines, tot sententiae [L.]. Many men, many minds.

quousque tandem ? [L.]. To what lengths ?

quo vadis ? [L.]. Whither goest thou ?

raison d'Etat [F.]. A reason of State.

raison d'être [F.]. The reason for a thing's existence.

rara avis [L.]. A rare bird; a prodigy.

ratione soli [L.]. According to the soil.

recte et suaviter [L.]. Justly and mildly.

redolet lucerna [L.]. It smells of the lamp; it betrays hard work.

reductio ad absurdum [L.]. Reducing the argument for a proposition to an absurdity.

re infecta [L.]. With the business unfinished.

relata refero [L.]. I tell the tale as I heard it.

rem acu tetigisti [L.]. You have touched the thing with a needle; you have hit the nail on the head.

remis velisque [L.]. With oars and sails; with all one's might.

répondez s'il vous plait (R.S.V.P.) [F.]. Please reply.

requiescat in pace [L.]. May he (or she) rest in peace.

res [L.]. A thing, property; the subject-matter of a suit, etc.

res angusta domi [L.]. Narrow circumstances at home; poverty.

res gestae [L.]. Things done; business transacted.

res judicata [L.]. An issue that has been settled in court.

respice finem [L.]. Look to the end.

respublica [L.]. The commonwealth.

resurgam [L.]. I shall rise again.

revenons à nos moutons [F.]. Let us return to our sheep; let us come back to our subject.

rex non potest peccare [L.]. The king can do no wrong.

rex nunquam moritur [L.]. The king never dies.

ridere in stomacho [L.]. To laugh in one's sleeve.

ride si sapis [L.]. Laugh if you are wise.

rien n'est beau que le vrai [F.]. There is nothing beautiful but truth.

rira bien qui rira le dernier [F.]. He laughs well who laughs last.

rire entre cuir et chair or **rire sous cape** [F.]. To laugh in one's sleeve.

rixatur de lana saepe caprina [L.]. He often quarrels about goats' wool (or trifles).

robe de chambre [F.]. A dressing-gown.

robe de nuit [F.]. A night-dress.

ruat caelum [L.]. Let the heavens fall.

rudis indigestaque moles [L.]. A rude and undigested (or formless) mass.

ruse de guerre [F.]. A military stratagem.

rus in urbe [L.]. Country in town.

saeva indignatio [L.]. Fierce indignation.

sal Atticum [L.]. Attic salt, wit.

salus populi suprema lex [L.]. Public welfare is the supreme law.

salva conscientia [L.]. With a clear conscience.

salva dignitate [L.]. Without danger to one's dignity.

salva fide [L.]. With safety to one's honour.

salvo jure [L.]. Without prejudice.

salvo ordine [L.]. With due regard to one's rank or order.

salvo pudore [L.]. Without offence to modesty.

sans cérémonie [F.]. Without ceremony.

sans doute [F.]. Doubtless.

sans façon [F.]. Without formality.

sans pareil [F.]. Unequalled.

sans peur et sans reproche [F.]. Without fear and without blame.

sans phrase [F.]. Without circumlocution.

sans souci [F.]. Free from care.

sapere aude [L.]. Dare to be wise.

sartor resartus [L.]. The tailor retailored.

sat cito, si sat bene [L.]. Quickly enough if well enough.

satis eloquentiae, sapientiae parum [L.]. Eloquence enough, but too little wisdom.

satis quod sufficit [L.]. What suffices is enough.

satis superque [L.]. Enough, and more than enough.

satis verborum [L.]. Enough of words.

sat pulchra, si sat bona [L.]. Handsome is as handsome does.

sat sapienti [VERBUM SAPIENTI, etc.].

sauve qui peut [F.]. Save himself who can.

savoir faire [F.]. Tact.

savoir vivre [F.]. Good breeding.

scandalum magnatum [L.]. Slander of dignitaries.

sculpsit [L.]. He (or she) engraved or carved this.

secundum artem [L.]. According to art.

secundum legem [L.]. According to law.

secundum naturam [L.]. According to nature.

secundum regulam [L.]. According to rule.

selon les règles [F.]. According to rule.

semel abbas, semper abbas [L.]. Once an abbot, always an abbot.

semper avarus eget [L.]. The avaricious man is always needy.

semper eadem [L., fem.]. (masc. **idem**) Always the same.

semper fidelis [L.]. Always faithful.

semper paratus [L.]. Always ready.

Senatus Populusque Romanus (S.P.Q.R.) [L.]. The Roman Senate and People.

seniores priores [L.]. Those who are older first.

seriatim [L.]. In a series; one by one.

servare modum [L.]. To keep within bounds.

servus servorum Dei [L.]. The servant of the servants of God (a title of the Pope).

sic eunt fata hominum [L.]. Thus go the destinies of men.

sic in originali [L.]. Thus in the original.

sic itur ad astra [L.]. Such is the way to the stars (or to fame).

sic passim [L.]. Thus in many places.

sic semper tyrannis [L.]. May all tyrants meet a like fate.

sic transit gloria mundi [L.]. So passes the glory of the world.

sicut ante [L.]. As before.

si Deus nobiscum, quis contra nos ? [L.]. If God be with us who shall be against us ?

sile et philosophus esto [L.]. Hold your tongue, and you will pass for a philosopher.

s'il vous plait [F.]. If you please.

simile gaudet simili [L.]. Like is pleased with like.

similia similibus curantur [L.]. Like things are cured by like.

si monumentum requiris, circumspice [L.]. If you seek his monument look around.

simplex munditiis [L.]. Simple in elegance.

simpliciter [L.]. Absolutely, without qualification.

sine cura [L.]. Without charge or office.

sine die [L.]. Without any day (being fixed).

sine dubio [L.]. Without doubt.

sine mora [L.]. Without delay.

sine praejudicio [L.]. Without prejudice.

sine proba causa [L.]. Without approved cause.

sine prole [L.]. Without offspring.

sine qua non [L.]. An indispensable condition. *See also under* **causa** *and* **conditio.**

singillatim or **singulatim** [L.]. One by one.

siste, viator ! [L.]. Stay, traveller !

sit tibi terra levis [L.]. May the earth lie lightly upon thee.

si vis pacem, para bellum [L.]. If you want peace be ready for war.

sint ut sunt [L.]. Let them remain unchanged.

sola nobilitas virtus [L.]. Virtue is the only nobility.

sotto voce [Ital.]. Under one's breath.

souffler le chaud et le froid [F.]. To blow hot and cold.

spero meliora [L.]. I hope for better things.

spes sibi quisque [L.]. Let each man's hope be in himself.

splendide mendax [L.]. Magnificently untruthful.

spolia opima [L.]. The richest booty.

sponte sua [L.]. Of one's own accord.

stat fortuna domus virtute [L.]. The fortune of the house stands by its virtue.

statim [L.]. At once.

stat pro ratione voluntas [L.]. My will is the reason I give.

status (in) quo ante bellum [L.]. Pre-war conditions.

status quo ante [L.]. The same state as before.

stet [L.]. Let it stand, do not cancel.

stet fortuna domus ! [L.]. May the fortune of the house endure !

studium immane loquendi [L.]. An insatiable desire for talking.

Sturm und Drang [G.]. Storm and stress.

sua cuique utilitas [L.]. To everything its use.

sua cuique voluptas [L.]. Every man has his own pleasures.

suaviter in modo, fortiter in re [L.]. Gentle in manner, resolute in execution.

sub colore juris [L.]. Under colour of law.

sub hoc signo vinces. *See* **in hoc signo vinces.**

sub judice [L.]. Under consideration.

sublata causa, tollitur effectus [L.]. The effect ceases when the cause is removed.

sub pede sigilli [L.]. Under the Great Seal.

sub poena [L.]. Under penalty (of).

sub praetexto juris [L.]. Under a pretence of legality.

sub rosa [L.]. Under the rose ; in secret, confidentially.

sub silentio [L.]. In silence ; without formal notice being taken.

sub specie [L.]. Under the appearance of.

sub voce or **verbo** [L.]. Under the head of.

succès d'estime [F.]. A success with more credit than profit.

sufficit diei malitia sua [L.]. Sufficient unto the day is the evil thereof.

suggestio falsi [L.]. A suggestion of something that is untrue.

sui generis [L.]. Of its (or his or her) own kind.

sui juris [L.]. Of his (or her) own right.

sumptibus publicis [L.]. At the public expense.

suo Marte [L.]. By his own powers.

super vires [L.]. Beyond one's strength or powers.

suppressio veri suggestio falsi [L.]. A suppression of the truth is the suggestion of a falsehood.

surgit amari aliquid [L.]. Something bitter arises (in the midst of happiness).

sursum corda [L.]. Lift up your hearts.

suum cuique [L.]. To each his own.

suus cuique mos [L.]. Every one has his particular habit.

tabula rasa [L.]. A smooth or blank tablet.

tâche sans tache [F.]. A faultless piece of work.

tam Marte, quam Minerva [L.]. As much by brawn as by brains.

tangere ulcus [L.]. To reopen a wound.

tant mieux [F.]. So much the better.

tant pis [F.]. So much the worse.

tantum quantum [L.]. Just as much as (is required).

teipsum nosce [L.]. Know thyself.

te judice [L.]. In your opinion.

tel maitre, tel valet [F.]. Like master, like man.

tempora mutantur, nos et mutamur in illis [L.]. The times are changing and we with them.

tempori parendum [L.]. We must move with the times.

tempus edax rerum [L.]. Time the devourer of things.

tempus fugit [L.]. Time flies.

tempus omnia revelat [L.]. Time reveals all things.

tenax propositi [L.]. Firm of purpose.

terminus ad quem [L.]. The goal, latest possible date.

terminus a quo [L.]. The starting-point, earliest possible date.

terra incognita [L.]. An unknown land.

tertium quid [L.]. A third (or intermediate) something.

teste [L.]. By the evidence (of).

tiens à la vérité [F.]. Maintain the truth.

tiens ta foi [F.]. Keep thy faith.

tiers état [L.]. The commons.

timor mortis morte pejor [L.]. The fear of death is worse than death.

toga virilis [L.]. Man's estate.

tot homines, tot sententiae. *See* **quot homines, tot sententiae.**

totidem verbis [L.]. In so many words.

toties quoties [L.]. As often as.

toto caelo [L.]. By the whole heavens, diametrically opposite.

totus in toto, et totus in qualibet parte [L.]. Complete as a whole, and complete in every part.

toujours prêt [F.]. Always ready.

tour de force [F.]. A feat of strength or skill.

tourner casaque [F.]. To turn one's coat, to take an opposite side.

Toussaint [F.]. All Saints' Day.

tout à coup [F.]. Suddenly.

tout à fait [F.]. Wholly, entirely.

tout a l'heure [F.]. Presently, immediately.

tout au contraire [F.]. On the contrary.

tout à vous [F.]. Entirely yours.

tout bien ou rien [F.]. All or nothing.

tout de suite [F.]. Immediately.
tout ensemble [F.]. The general effect.
tout est perdu hors l'honneur [F.]. All is lost but honour.
tout le monde est sage après coup [F.]. Everybody is wise after the event.
transeat in exemplum [L.]. Let it pass into a precedent.
tria juncta in uno [L.]. Three things combined in one (the motto of the Order of the Bath).
Troja fuit [L.]. Troy was; Troy is no more.
truditur dies die [L.]. One day follows hard on another.
tu quoque [L.]. You also (as retort).

uberrima fides [L.]. Implicit faith.
ubi bene, ibi patria [L.]. One's home is wherever one is at ease.
ubi jus, ibi remedium [L.]. Where there is right there is remedy.
ubi jus incertum, ibi jus nullum [L.]. Where the law is uncertain there is no law.
ubique [L.]. Everywhere.
ultima ratio regum [L.]. The last argument of kings (war).
ultima Thule [L.]. The utmost limit.
ultimus Romanorum [L.]. The last of the Romans.
ultra licitum [L.]. Beyond one's rights.
ultra posse nemo obligatur [L.]. No one is obliged to do more than he can.
ultra vires [L.]. Beyond one's (legal) powers.
una et eadem persona [L.]. One and the same person.
una voce [L.]. Unanimously.
un bienfait n'est jamais perdu [F.]. A kindness is never thown away.
un fait accompli [F.]. An accomplished fact.
unguibus et rostro [L.]. With claws and beak, tooth and nail.
uno animo [L.]. With one mind, unanimously.
uno ictu [L.]. At one blow.
urbi et orbi [L.]. To the city (Rome) and the world.
usque ad aras. *See* **amicus usque ad aras.**
usus est tyrannus [L.]. Custom is a tyrant.
usus loquendi [L.]. The usage of speech.
ut homo est, ita morem geras [L.]. Suit your manner to your man.
utile dulci [L.]. The useful with the agreeable.
ut infra [L.]. As (mentioned) below.
ut pignus amicitiae [L.]. In token of friendship.
uti possidetis [L.]. As you now have in your possession.
ut mos est [L.]. As the custom is.
ut supra [L.]. As (mentioned) above.

vade in pace [L.]. Go in peace.
vade mecum [L.]. Go with me, a handbook.
vade retro [L.]. Get behind me, avaunt!
vae victis! [L.]. Woe to the vanquished!
vale [L.]. Farewell.
valeat quantum valere potest [L.]. Let it pass for what it is worth.
vanitas vanitatum, et omnia vanitas [L.]. Vanity of vanities, all is vanity.
varia lectio [L., *pl.* **variae lectiones**]. A variant reading.
variorum notae [L.]. Notes by various commentators.
varium et mutabile semper femina [L.]. Always a fickle and changeable thing is woman.
veluti in speculum [L.]. As in a mirror.
venia necessitati datur [L.]. Pardon is granted to necessity; necessity knows no law.
veni, Creator Spiritus [L.]. Come, Creator Spirit.
venite, exultemus Domino [L.]. O come, let us sing unto the Lord.
veni, vidi, vici [L.]. I came, I saw, I conquered.
ventis secundis [L.]. With favourable winds.
verbatim et literatim [L.]. Word for word and letter for letter.
verbum satis sapienti [L.]. A word is enough to the wise.
veritas odium parit [L.]. Truth begets hatred.
veritas omnia vincit [L.]. Truth conquers all things.
veritas prevalet. *See* **magna est veritas et praevalebit.**
veritatis simplex oratio est [L.]. The language of truth is simple.
vérité sans peur [F.]. Truth without fear.
vexata quaestio [L.]. A disputed question.
via crucis via lucis [L.]. The way of the Cross is the way of light.
via media [L.]. A middle course.
via trita via tutissima [L.]. The beaten path is safest.
vice versa [L.]. In reversed conditions.
videlicet [L.]. To wit, namely.
vide ut supra [L.]. See as above.
vidit et erubuit lympha pudica Deum [L.]. The modest water saw its God and blushed. (Epigram on the miracle at Cana in Galilee).
vi et armis [L.]. By force and arms.
vigilate et orate [L.]. Watch and pray.
vigueur de dessus [F.]. Strength from on high.
vilius argentum est auro, virtutibus aurum [L.]. Silver is of less value than gold, gold than virtue.
vincet amor patriae [L.]. The love of country will prevail.
vincit qui patitur [L.]. Patience wins the day.
vinculum matrimonii [L.]. The bond of wedlock.
vir bonus dicendi peritus [L.]. A good man skilled in the art of speaking.
vires acquirit eundo [L.]. It acquires strength as it goes.
Virgilium vidi tantum [L.]. Virgil I only saw.
virginibus puerisque [L.]. For maidens and boys.
virtus millia scuta [L.]. Courage is worth a thousand shields.
virtus post nummos [L.]. Virtue after money.
virtute officii [L.]. By virtue of one's office.
vis consili expers mole ruit sua [L.]. Force, without judgment, falls by its own weight.
vis inertiae [L.]. The power of inertness.
visum visu [L.]. To see and to be seen.
vis unita fortior [L.]. Strength united is the more powerful.
vita brevis, ars longa [L.]. Life is short but art is long.
vita hominis sine literis mors est [L.]. The life of man, without literature, is death.
vitam impendere vero [L.]. To risk one's life for the truth.
vivat regina! or rex! [L.]. Long live the queen or king!
viva voce [L.]. Orally.
vive la bagatelle! [F.]. Long live frivolity!
vive la République! [F.]. Long live the Republic!
vive l'empereur! [F.]. Long live the Emperor!
voilà [F.]. See there, there it is there!
voilà tout [F.]. That's all.
voilà une autre chose [F.]. That's quite another thing.
voir les dessous des cartes [F.]. To see the face of the cards, to be in the secret.
volens et valens [L.] Willing and able.
volenti non fit injuria [L.]. No wrong is done to a consenting party.
volo, non valeo [L.]. I am willing but unable.
voluntas habetur pro facto [L.]. The will is taken for the deed.
vous y perdrez vos pas [F.]. You will have your walk for nothing, you will lose your labour.
vox clamantis in deserto [L.]. The voice of one crying in the wilderness.
vox et praeterea nihil [L.]. A voice and nothing more.
vox faucibus haesit [L.]. He was dumb with amazement.
vox (*pl.* **voces**) **populi** [L.]. The voice of the people, popular feeling.
vox populi vox Dei [L.]. The voice of the people is the voice of God.
vox stellarum [L.]. The voice of the stars.
vulnus immedicabile [L.]. An irreparable injury.
vultus animi janua et tabula [L.]. The face is the portrait and picture of the mind.

Weltgeist [G.]. The world-spirit.

Zeitgeist [G.]. The spirit of the age.
zonam perdidit [L.]. He has lost his girdle (and his money), he is ruined.

IRREGULAR GENDERS AND PLURALS

A Representative List of Difficulties often Encountered

THERE are three usual methods of distinguishing between the male and female, namely, by adding " ess " to the masculine noun, by using an entirely different word, and by prefixing a masculine or feminine noun to a common noun. In addition, however, there are many unusual ways of making the distinction, as, also, there are many unusual ways of changing a singular noun into a plural noun. Below will be found a representative selection of these irregularities of gender and plural.

IRREGULAR GENDERS

PAIRS OF WORDS ETYMOLOGICALLY UNCONNECTED.

Masc.	*Fem.*
he	she
father	mother
son	daughter
brother	sister
husband	wife
uncle	aunt
papa	mamma
bachelor	spinster maid
boy	girl
lad	lass
king	queen
earl	countess
knight	dame
sir sire	madam dame
gentleman	lady
man-servant	maid-servant
monk	nun
wizard	witch
male	female
sire	dam
stallion horse	mare
colt	filly
bull steer ox	cow
bull-calf	heifer
ram wether	ewe
boar	sow
buck	doe
stag hart	hind
hound dog	bitch
billy-goat	nanny-goat
cock	hen
black cock	grey hen
peacock	peahen
merganser	dundiver (local)
drake	duck
sheldrake	shelduck
drone	queen-bee worker-bee

PAIRS OF WORDS ETYMOLOGICALLY CONNECTED.

Masc.	*Fem.*
man	woman
bridegroom	bride
widower	widow
nephew	niece
gaffer	gammer
lord	lady
foal	filly
gander	goose
ruff	reeve

Fem. *-en, -ine, -in, -ina*

Masc.	*Fem.*
fox	vixen
carl (archaic)	carline (archaic)
hero	heroine
margrave	margravine
landgrave	landgravine
Kaiser	Kaiserin
Tsar	Tsarina (Tsaritsa)
baboon	babuina

Fem. *-ess*

(1) added to masc.

author
baron
count
deacon
giant
heir
host
Jew
lion
mayor
patron
peer
poet
priest
prior
prophet
Quaker
shepherd
viscount

The fem. of prince is princess.

(2) Contracted forms: masc. *-er*, fem. *-ress*

Masc.	*Fem.*
enchanter	enchantress
founder	foundress
hunter	huntress
porter (doorkeeper)	portress
songster	songstress
tiger	tigress
waiter	waitress

(3) masc. *-rer*, fem. *-ress*

Masc.	*Fem.*
adventurer	adventuress
caterer	cateress
murderer	murderess
sorcerer	sorceress

(4) masc. *-tor*, fem. *-tress*

actor
benefactor
competitor
conductor
detractor
editor
elector
inventor
proprietor
protector
traitor

(5) Irregular

Masc.	*Fem.*
abbot	abbess
albino	albiness
anchorite anchoret	anchoress ancress
duke	duchess
emperor	empress
god	goddess
governor	governess
laundryman	laundress
marquess	marchioness
master	mistress
Mr.	Mrs., Miss
votary	votaress

Masc. *-tor*, fem. *-trix* (Latin)

administrator
executor
heritor (also heritress)
testator

Fem. *-a*

Masc.	*Fem.*
inamorato	inamorata
infant(e)	infanta
khedive	khediva
señor	señora
signor(e)	signora
sultan	sultana

Fem. *-e* (French)

blond
bourgeois
clairvoyant
confidant
débutant
fiancé
habitué
parvenu
petit
savant

Other French pairs of words.

Masc.	*Fem.*
beau	belle
brunet	brunette
coquet	coquette
masseur	masseuse
siffleur	siffleuse

The French équestrienne is used as fem. of the English equestrian, and tragédienne of tragedian.

Oriental forms.

Masc.	*Fem.*
beg	begum
Brahmin	Brahminee
jinn	jinneeyeh
maharajah	maharanee
rajah	ranee

IRREGULAR PLURALS.

Irregular Forms of the Plural.

(1) After *s, sh, x, z,* and after *ch* when pronounced tsh or sh, the plural termination is *-es,* except in certain foreign words in *-s* and *-x.* See under foreign words.

circuses
gases
omnibuses
rhinoceroses
triposes
glasses
fishes
boxes
prefixes
bunches
buzzes
fezes, etc.

On the other hand, conch, loch form the plurals conchs (kongks), lochs (lokhs).

(2) Plural of words in *-o*

After a vowel: *-os*

cameo
cuckoo
folio
intaglio, etc.

After a consonant: (i) *-os*

albino
alto
alto-relievo
archipelago
armadillo
avocado
bonito
bronco
canto
casino
'cello (pl. also -i)
cento
commando
contralto
dado
dodo
duodecimo
dynamo
embargo
embryo
Eskimo
fandango
farrago
fiasco
flamingo
generalissimo
grotto
lasso
lazaretto
limbo
magnifico
negrillo
negrito
octavo
palmetto
proviso
quarto
solo (pl. also -i)
soprano
theorbo
tobacco
torso
tyro
umbo (pl. also -nes)
violoncello
virtuoso (pl. also -i)

After a consonant: (ii) *-oes*

buffalo
calico
cargo
dago
desperado
dingo
domino
echo
fresco
halo
hero
innuendo
Jingo
mango
manifesto
memento
mosquito
motto
negro
no
peccadillo
portico
potato
stucco
tomato
tornado
torpedo
veto
virago
volcano
zero

After a consonant: (iii) *-os* or *-oes*

banjo
bravado
bravo
mulatto
salvo
stiletto

These words are all of foreign origin (except cuckoo and no). They are mostly borrowed from Italian and Spanish, a few being from Latin (farrago, folio, limbo, memento, octavo, torpedo, veto, virago) or Greek (echo, dynamo). Generally speaking, the words with pl. *-oes* were borrowed earlier and are more thoroughly naturalized than the others.

(3) Plural of words in *-y.*

After a vowel: *-ys,* as days, joys.

After a consonant: *-ies,* as beauty, beauties; country, countries; fly, flies; lady, ladies.

(4) In words of English and other Teutonic origin in *f* (except *ff* and sometimes *rf*) and in *-fe* the pl. termination is *-ves.*

leaf
sheaf

thief

knife
life
wife

loaf
oaf (pl. usually oafs)
hoof (pl. also hoofs)

calf
elf
half
self
shelf
wolf

corf
dwarf (pl. usually dwarfs)
turf (pl. usually turfs)
scarf (pl. also scarfs)
wharf (pl. also wharfs)

Exceptions: belief, reef, roof always have pl. in *-s.*

Staff has two plurals: staffs and staves.

Words derived from French (brief, chief, fife, grief, strife) form pl. in *-s.* The word beef, though of French origin, has a pl. beeves.

(5) A few words form the pl. in *-en, -n,* namely oxen, and the archaic or dialect forms een or eyne (eyes), hosen, shoon, treen. Brethren and kine (brothers, cows) are double plurals, showing mutation or umlaut of the stem-vowel. Children is also a double pl., the A.-S. being *cild,* pl. *cild-ru* (cp. the vulgar form *childer,* and G. pl. in *-er*).

(6) A few words form the pl. by umlaut or mutation of the stem-vowel (cp. brethren, kine), namely:

cow	kye (Sc.)
foot	feet
goose	geese
louse	lice
man	men
mouse	mice
titmouse	titmice
tooth	teeth
woman	women

Mungoose, wayzgoose form pl. -gooses, and the words Brahman, Burman, dragoman, Mussulman, Ottoman, which have no connexion with *man*, form regular plurals in *-s*.

(7) A few words, neuter in Anglo-Saxon, have retained their old unchanged pl., namely deer, neat, sheep, swine. Other words of this class—folk, head, pound, score, year, yoke—are sometimes unchanged in the pl., but this use is now mainly archaic or colloquial, except in the case of head in counting cattle, etc.

Words of other classes often remain unchanged in the pl. when used collectively, as cannon, fish, fowl, especially in the language of sport, as duck, snipe, trout. Horse and foot, in the sense of cavalry and infantry, are also pl. Names of quantities, weights and measures, preceded by a numeral, are often unchanged in the pl., especially brace, dozen, fathom, gross, stone. With bushel, chaldron, couple, foot, last, mile, pair, penny, quire, ream, shilling, this use is antiquated or provincial, except when they are used attributively, as two-foot rule, six-mile walk, ten-shilling note.

FALSE PLURALS.

The words alms, cherries, eaves, laches, peas, riches are false plurals, that is, they are now treated as pl., although they are derived from old singular forms, the new singulars cherry and pea being back-formations.

DOUBLE PLURALS.

In the following words the two forms of the pl. have different meanings:

brothers (usual)	brethren (archaic and religious)
cloths (pieces or kinds)	clothes (garments)
dies (plinths, engraved stamps)	dice (cubes used in games)
indexes (lists of subjects, etc.)	indices (in mathematics)
peas (individual seeds or kinds)	pease (collective)
pennies (separate coins)	pence (amount of money)

PLURALS OF COMPOSITE NOUNS.

When a noun is combined with an adj., adv., or phrase, the noun only takes the plural termination:

battles royal
courts martial
cousins-german
hangers-on
heirs apparent
knights errant
lilies of the valley
runners-up
sons-in-law
states general

Exceptions:
castaways
crown imperials (flower)
handfuls
spoonfuls, etc.

Foreign composite nouns keep their foreign plurals: matresfamilias, patresfamilias, postes restantes.

When two nouns are in apposition, usually the second takes the plural termination:

journeyman tailors
lieutenant-colonels
Lord Mayors
maid-servants
man-servants (or men-servants)
major-generals
master-keys
master mariners
robber barons
woman doctors

But in certain official titles both nouns are plural, as:

gentlemen ushers
Knights Commanders
Knights Templars
Lords Commissioners
Lords Justices
Lords-Lieutenants

Exception:
Knights bachelor

LATIN PLURALS.

(1) *-a*, pl. *-ae*
abscissa
alga
amoeba
amphora
antenna
aorta
areola
aura
aurora borealis (aurorae boreales)
bal(l)ista
caesura
catena
cicada
cochlea
coma (botany)
copula
cornea
corona
ephemera
fibula
formula (scientific; in general sense formulas)
lamina
larva
medusa
minutia
nebula
penumbra
pupa
scoria
tibia
vertebra

Stele has pl. stelae.

Exceptions. The following form the pl. in -s.
area
arena
boa
camera
chimera
cornucopia
corolla
era
fuchsia
hydra
hyena
parabola
peninsula
tiara
verbena
villa, etc.

(2) *-us* or *-r*, pl. *-i*.
bacillus
cactus
caduceus
calculus
canephorus
carpus
centumvir
colossus
cumulus
decemvir
denarius
duumvir
eucalyptus
focus
fungus (and -uses)
gladiolus
hippopotamus (also -uses)
incubus
magus
narcissus
nautilus
nidus
nucleus
oesophagus (and uses)
papyrus
polypus
radius
rhombus
sarcophagus
scarabaeus
stimulus
stratus
tarsus
terminus
tumulus
xystus

The pl. literati has no sing. in English.

Exceptions. The following form the pl. by adding *-es*.
bolus
bonus
census
chorus
circus
cistus
convolvulus
crocus
genius
isthmus
lotus
nimbus
syllabus

(3) *-us* pl. *-us*; pronounced ūs.
apparatus
meatus

These often, and hiatus always, form pl. by adding -es.

(4) *-um*, pl. *-a*.
addendum
agendum
alluvium
amphibium
arcanum
bacterium
caecum
candelabrum
cerebellum
cerebrum
cilium
cingulum
coagulum
columbarium
corrigendum
cranium
curriculum
datum
decennium
dictum
effluvium
emporium
erratum
frustum

fulcrum
herbarium
interregnum
lustrum
mausoleum (also -ums)
maximum
memorandum (also -ums)
millennium (also -ums)
minimum
momentum
mycelium
ovum
palladium
pallium
plectrum
residuum
rostrum
scholium
septum
serum
solatium
spectrum
speculum
stratum
substratum
symposium
vacuum
vivarium

Exceptions. The following form the pl. in -*s*.
aquarium
asylum
chrysanthemum
encomium
eulogium
factotum
geranium
harmonium
laburnum
nasturtium
nostrum
pendulum
premium
trapezium
ultimatum

(5) -*on*, pl. -*a* (from Greek).
anacoluthon
automaton
criterion
noumenon
phenomenon
polyhedron
polyzoon
protozoon
xoanon

Exceptions (pl. in -*s*).
colon
pylon
rhododendron

(6) -*is*, pl. -*es* (mostly from Greek); pronounced ēz.
amanuensis (Latin)
analysis
anamorphosis
anastomosis
antithesis
apotheosis
axis (Latin)
basis
crisis
diaeresis
diagnosis
ellipsis
emphasis
genesis
hypostasis
hypothesis
metamorphosis
oasis
parenthesis
periphrasis
prognosis
synopsis
thesis

(7) -*is*, pl. -*ides* (from Greek); pronounced id ēz.
apsis
chrysalis (and -ises)
ephemeris
proboscis

The singular forms caryatid (pl. -ids and -ides), and chrysalid (pl. -ids) also occur.

Exceptions.

ibis	ibises
iris	irises
metropolis	metropolises

(8) -*ex*, -*ix*, -*x*, pl. -*ices*, -*ces*.

apex	apices (also apexes)
appendix	appendices (also appendixes)
calix	calices
calyx	calyces
carex	carices
cicatrix	cicatrices
codex	codices
cortex	cortices
crux	cruces
helix	helices
index	indices (also indexes)
matrix	matrices
radix	radices
thorax	thoraces
vertex	vertices
vortex	vortices

Exceptions (pl. in -*es*).
climax
equinox
ibex
lynx
phoenix

(9) -*nx*, pl. -*nges* (from Greek).
larynx
phalanx (in anatomy; phalanxes in military sense)
pharynx
sphinx (moth; sphinxes as fabulous animal)

(10) -*ma*, pl. -*mata* (from Greek).
carcinoma
lemma (pl. also lemmas)
miasma (pl. also miasmas)
stoma

Exceptions (pl. in -*s*).
aroma
dilemma
dogma
drama
magma

(11) *Miscellaneous.*

Cyclops	Cyclopes
imago	imagines
octopus	octopodes (also -puses)
species	species
umbo	umbones (also umbos)

In these words -*es* is pronounced ēz (except in octopuses). Forceps generally forms the pl. forceps, also forcipes and forcepses.

cognomen	cognomina
corpus	corpora
cornu	cornua
femur	femora
genus	genera
opus	opera
viscus	viscera

French Plurals.

After words in -*eau*, -*eu*, -*ou*, pl. -*x*.
adieu
bateau
beau
bijou
bureau
château
flambeau
plateau
rondeau
trousseau

Other French plurals:

monsieur	messieurs
madame	mesdames
mademoiselle	mesdemoiselles

Italian Plurals.

-*o*, pl. *i*.
carbonaro
'cello (pl. also -os)
incognito
libretto
palazzo
sbirro
scenario
solo (pl. also -os)
timpano
tondo
virtuoso (pl. also -os)
Cp. bandit—banditti

-*a*, pl. -*e*.
incognita
lira
vettura

-*e*, pl. -*i*.
bersagliere
cicerone
condottiere
dilettante
cognoscente
lazzarone
signor(e)

Hebrew Plurals.

Masc. pl. -*im*.
Anakim
Baalim
Cherubim
Purim
Seraphim
shittim
teraphim
thummim
urim

fem. pl. -*oth*
Ashtaroth
Sabaoth

Arabic Plurals.

fellah fellaheen	jinnee jinn

Cp. Bedouin, a pl. also used as sing.

CORRECT STYLE AND TITLE

How to Address People in Writing and in Speaking

There are various rules and conventions for addressing people, both in writing and in speaking. For instance, a gentleman is addressed on the envelope of a letter as William Smith, Esq., unless he is an American, when the proper form is Mr. William Smith. The envelope of a letter addressed to sisters should read: The Misses ——, and the letter should begin with the word Mesdames. Some of the more important forms of address are set forth below.

a. On the envelope.
b. At the beginning of a letter.
c. At the end of a letter.
d. In conversation.

1. The King.

a. The King's Most Excellent Majesty, or His Majesty the King.
b. Sir.
c. I have the honour to remain, Sir, Your Majesty's humble and obedient servant.
d. Sir, and Your Majesty.

2. The Queen.

a. The Queen's Most Excellent Majesty, or Her Majesty the Queen.
b. Madam.
c. I have the honour to remain, Madam, Your Majesty's humble and obedient servant.
d. Ma'am, and Your Majesty.

3. Other members of the Royal Family.

a. H.R.H. Prince (or Princess) ——.
b. Sir (or Madam).
c. I remain, Sir (or Madam), Your Royal Highness's most obedient servant
d. Sir (or Ma'am), and Your Royal Highness.

4. A Duke (or Duchess).

a. His (or Her) Grace the Duke (or Duchess) of ——; less formally, The Duke (or Duchess) of ——.
b. My Lord Duke (or Madam).
c. I have the honour to be, Your Grace's most obedient servant.
d. Duke (or Duchess); by employees or tradesmen, Your Grace.

5. A Marquess, or the eldest son of a Duke who has the courtesy title of Marquess (or a Marchioness).

a. The Most Hon. the Marquess (or Marchioness) of ——; less formally, The Marquess (or Marchioness) of ——.
b. My Lord Marquess (or Madam).
c. I am, My Lord Marquess (or Madam), Your Lordship's (or Ladyship's) obedient servant.
d. Lord (or Lady) ——.

6. An Earl, or the eldest son of a Marquess who has the courtesy title of Earl (or a Countess).

a. The Right Hon. the Earl (or Countess) of ——; less formally, The Earl (or Countess) of ——.
b. My Lord (or Madam).
c. I am, My Lord (or Madam), Your Lordship's (or Your Ladyship's) obedient servant.
d. Lord (or Lady) ——.

7. A Viscount, or the eldest son of an Earl who has the courtesy title of Viscount (or a Viscountess).

a. The Right Hon. the Viscount (or Viscountess) ——; less formally, The Viscount (or Viscountess) ——.
b, c, d. Same as 6.

8. A Baron, or the eldest son of a Viscount who has the courtesy title of Baron (or a Baroness).

a. The Right Hon. Lord (or Lady) ——; less formally, The Lord (or Lady) ——; but a Baroness in her own right, The Baroness ——.
b, c, d. Same as 6.

9. A Baronet.

a. Sir William ——, Bart.
b. Sir.
c. I am, Sir, Your obedient servant.
d. Sir William.

10. A Knight (or Knight's wife).

a. Sir William (or Lady) ——.
b, c, d. Same as 9.

11. An Ambassador, the Viceroy of India, or a Governor of a Dominion or Crown Colony.

a. His Excellency the —— Ambassador, the Governor, etc.
b. My Lord, or Sir.
c. I have the honour to be, My Lord or Sir, Your (Lordship's) most obedient servant.

The title Excellency (also applied to Governors' wives) is used only in the place to which the Governor is accredited.

12. The Lord Chancellor.

a. The Right Hon. the Lord High Chancellor.
b. My Lord.
c. I have the honour to remain, Your Lordship's obedient servant.
d. My Lord.

13. A Judge of the High Court (or his wife).

a. Sir William —— or Mr. Justice —— (or Lady ——).
b. Sir (or Madam).
c. I have the honour to be, Sir (or Madam), Your obedient servant.
d. Sir (or Madam).

14. A Lord Mayor.

a. The Most Worshipful the Lord Mayor of ——.
b. My Lord.
c. Same as 12.
d. My Lord.

15. An Archbishop.

a. The Most Rev. the Lord Archbishop of ——.
b. My Lord Archbishop.
c. I have the honour to be, My Lord Archbishop, Your Grace's obedient servant.
d. Your Grace.

16. A Cardinal.

a. His Eminence Cardinal ——.
b. Your Eminence.
c. I have the honour to remain, Your Eminence's humble servant.
d. Your Eminence.

17. A Bishop.

a. The Right Rev. the Lord Bishop of ——.
b. My Lord.
c. Same as 12.
d. My Lord.

HOW TO WRITE LETTERS

Boy's Letter to his Sister.

Quarry Cottage,
Angleby.
November 21st, 19——

Dear Lucy,

It is seven weeks since you started as a probationer at St. Martha's, and we are all longing to see you home at Christmas. Your weekly letter to Mother is quite an event. We were so glad to hear from your last that you have made one or two good friends. By the way, a boy at school called Judd, rather a chum of mine, tells me he has a cousin, Esther Hammond, on your staff. She has been there about three years, and is a nice girl.

I suppose Mother is keeping you pretty well posted about doings at home. Poor old Bob has got to decide soon, or have it decided for him, what to do when he leaves school. Obviously office work will not suit him. Dad talks of fruit-growing or poultry-farming. Uncle Walter thinks he could start him some day as a commercial traveller. Fancy Bob as a traveller!

Well, I have to write an essay to-night, and I don't know a thing about it, so I must close.

With love from us all.

Your affectionate brother,
Charles.

Little Girl's Letter of Thanks.

Teesdale,
Grassy Lane,
Hascombe.
April, 19th, 19——

My dear Auntie and Uncle,

When I came down to breakfast on my birthday, I found such a heap of parcels for me, but there was one bigger than the rest, labelled "From Uncle Harry and Aunt Betty," and it was such a funny shape that I opened it first, for I couldn't guess what was in it. Thank you ever so much, Auntie, for the lovely doll, and you, Uncle, for the splendid doll's pram. How did you know they were just the very things I wanted most?

We all went out to the woods for my birthday party. Each of my friends brought her favourite doll, and we had a grand feast.

We were sorry you couldn't come and bring Mary and Jessie. I hope Mary is quite well again now.

Much love and kisses to you all, and renewed thanks for the beautiful presents.

Your loving niece,
Kate.

Boy's Holiday Letter to a Friend.

c/o Mrs. Sheppard,
Rosemead,
Shanklin, I.O.W.
August 23rd, 19——

Dear Robin,

Thank you for your long and amusing letter, to which the whole party listened with the keenest interest, the reading being interrupted by a few ironical comments from persons whom I leave unnamed. I for one envied you your exploits among the crags of Snowdon, and I have been trying to persuade my people to take us all next year to the glorious old farmhouse you have discovered. Find out if you can whether Farmer Evans has room for a party of seven next August. As for learning Welsh, I leave that to linguists like you.

We can't boast of any adventures quite so exciting as yours, for we have neither been lost on the mountains nor upset in the sea, neither has any of us landed a trout. True, one day in the New Forest Oliver caught three White Admirals and nearly caught a Purple Emperor, the result being that he lost his way and the return boat. Of course we have seen the Needles, and scrambled about Alum Bay, with its sands of many colours. We made the acquaintance of the treadmill donkey that draws water at Carisbrooke Castle, and duly noted the window from which King Charles I tried to escape. I think the two most interesting things we have seen are the Roman villa at Brading and Nelson's "Victory" at Portsmouth.

The united family sends its kindest regards to you and yours. Dora specially sends her love to Maggie. Be sure you come over, all of you, one day before term.

Yours ever,
Bryan.

From a Girl to her Mother.

999, Chorley Place,
Birch Hill,
April 10th, 19——

Dearest Mother,

We were all so glad to hear that you reached Aunt Emily's safely, and that you were not overtired by the long and tedious journey.

You will be anxious, I expect, to hear how we are managing at home without you. We are all perfectly safe and sound, and though the house is never the same place in your absence, nothing has gone seriously wrong so far. Daddy, it is true, grumbled a bit over his dinner yesterday, but I will see that he has no cause to do so again. Maria says I shall make a first-rate cook before very long. Somehow the furniture will get into the wrong positions and spoil the look of everything. I suppose it misses your artistic touch.

There is nothing else of importance to tell you. Please give Aunt Emily my love. Good-bye, dearest mother. Love and many kisses from

Your affectionate daughter,
Helen.

Apology.

Two Beeches,
Platt Green
March 19th, 19——

Dear Miss Haydon,

I hasten to apologize for my apparent rudeness in missing my music lesson this morning. I know how valuable your time is, and I am always very careful not to keep you waiting if I can possibly help it.

I started in good time this morning, and had gone about two miles when my bicycle skidded, and I fell and sprained my ankle. I shall have to rest for two or three days, but will practise as much as I can. Unless you hear to the contrary, I hope to come as usual on Friday.

Yours very truly,
Clara J. Mills.

Reply to an Invitation.

Hillside,
Park Road,
Cranworth.
June 7th, 19——

Dear Mrs. Dash,

My brother and I thank you for your kind invitation to a picnic party in Brockley Forest on Saturday the 15th. Edward would have been delighted to join the party, but unfortunately the School First XI is relying on him to play that afternoon in one of their most important matches. He is sure you will realize that this is a duty he cannot escape, and he wishes everybody a jolly time.

I shall be very pleased to come, and will meet you as arranged at Bathcombe Station at 10.17 a.m.

Sincerely yours,
Janet Benson.

Application for a Situation.

999, Marine Parade,
Beverton-on-Sea.
March 7th, 19——

W. S. Dash, Esq., F.R.I.B.A.,
999, Station Road,
Beverton-on-Sea.

Sir,

Referring to your advertisement in this week's *Mallingham Messenger* for an assistant draughtsman and clerk, I beg to apply for the situation.

My age is sixteen, and my health is satisfactory. Since leaving the Council School, Beverton, at the age of fourteen, I have attended continuation classes in architectural and freehand drawing, mechanics, English, history, and book-keeping, and hold the certificate granted by the Board of Education, my best subjects being architectural drawing and English.

The following gentlemen in Beverton have kindly allowed me to refer you to them in regard to my character, intelligence, and attainments.

George Black, Esq., Head Master of the Boys' Council School.
S. H. Langridge, Esq., Art Master, Brookside.
Rev. J. Brown, 2, Carlton Crescent.
P. Williams, Esq., J.P., Whitland House.

Should you accept my application, I would do all in my power to satisfy your requirements.

Yours respectfully,
PETER HERBERT BOWMAN.

Application for a Situation.

999, High Street,
Oldhampton,
Yorks.
April 19th, 19——

Messrs. Dash and Dash,
Langbury.

Gentlemen,

In reply to your advertisement for a correspondence clerk, appearing in to-day's *Wilmingham Post*, I beg to apply for the vacancy.

I am nearly eighteen years of age, and my health has always been very good. For six years I was at Oldhampton Grammar School, which I left in 19——, having obtained the leaving certificate after a year in the Lower Sixth Form, in which I held the fourth place. My best subjects were French, English, and geography, and I also held a good place in mathematics.

Since leaving school I have for more than a year attended classes in shorthand, business correspondence and German at the Oldhampton Technical School, and have obtained certificates in these subjects. I have also spent four months with a French family at Rouen, with the object of improving my knowledge of conversational French.

The head master of the Grammar School and the director of the Technical School at Oldhampton have kindly allowed me to make use of their names for reference. I enclose testimonials from two other prominent gentlemen of this town who have known me for several years.

In the event of my appointment, I should do my utmost to give you satisfaction.

Yours respectfully,
ARTHUR JOHN RICHARDS.

Business Letter: Acknowledgment and Answer to Complaints.

PHILIP DASH,
GREENGROCER, FRUITERER AND FLORIST,
999, Market Street, Yalton-on-Trent.
August 5th, 19——

Mrs. Brown,
Dover Lodge, St. Margaret's Road,
Yalton-on-Trent.

Madam,

I beg to acknowledge with thanks the receipt of your letter of the 4th inst., enclosing cheque for twenty-one pounds, five shillings and ninepence (£21 5s. 9d.). Enclosed please find receipt for this amount.

I note with much regret your complaints about the quality and price of the fruit and vegetables supplied, and can only assure you that the prolonged unseasonable weather has so seriously affected home-grown produce that it is impossible to provide goods of better quality except at prohibitive prices.

I must offer my sincere apologies for the irregular attendance and carelessness of my errand boy, regarding whom I have lately received several complaints. Thank you for drawing my attention to his shortcomings. The boy has already been dismissed, and the new messenger will, I am convinced, give satisfaction.

I therefore venture to hope, madam, that you will reconsider your decision to withdraw your valued patronage.

Yours respectfully,
P. DASH.

Receipt enclosed.

Business Letter: To the Landlord of a House.

999, Bradbury Avenue,
Stanfield Maltravers,
Bucks.
September 29th, 19——

M. Dash, Esq.,
The Grange,
Stanfield Maltravers.

Dear Sir,

Herewith I enclose a cheque for fifteen pounds (£15) in payment of the quarter's rent now due.

I would take this opportunity of drawing your attention again to the urgent need of certain repairs to the property, especially to the leaky condition of the roof, which is rapidly rendering one of the bedrooms uninhabitable. Outside painting is also, in my opinion, long overdue. If you will visit the premises, or send your representative, at your earliest convenience, the matter can, I trust, be arranged to the advantage of all concerned.

An early acknowledgment and receipt will be appreciated.

Yours faithfully,
HENRY JACKSON.

Cheque enclosed.

Congratulations.

The Dingle,
Milfield,
Kent,
August 5th, 19——

Dear Maitland,

I met Wilson at Bristol yesterday, and he said, "Heard the news about Maitland? He has won an open scholarship at Trinity." I can't say I was surprised, because I always knew you were a good scholar; but, all the same, I was tremendously pleased, and so was Wilson, because we knew it was just what you needed to enable you to carve out a career for yourself. So now, you know, we expect to see you a K.C., or a Regius Professor, or perhaps even a Cabinet Minister some day. Nothing would surprise us.

Please give my hearty congratulations to Mr. and Mrs. Maitland, who, I am sure, must be immensely proud of you. The least the Head can do is to give us a whole holiday next term. I believe it is seven years since the school gained a University scholarship; at any rate, I know it is a very long time.

Now you must rest on your oars a bit, or perhaps I should say on your laurels, which are more in your line than oars. Good-bye and good luck to you, old man!

Yours ever,
TOM STEVENS.

LITERATURE'S GOLDEN STORY

Treasures of Fact and Fancy which are to be found in the printed page by those who love the Beautiful and the True, together with some Account of the Men and Women who have Contributed to the Glories of the English Language

Told by HAROLD COLLETT DENT *and* HAROLD WHEELER

THE smoke of the wood fire curled to the roof of the cave and formed tiny grey billows that looked like wavelets upside down. Sometimes the wisps took on strange shapes as they made their journey. They twisted and turned, doubled and straightened into goblins. Outside, the boisterous daughters of the wind whistled and screamed, as though frightened of the darkness. The furies ran helter-skelter through the valleys and across the hills, defying all and heeding none.

Thomas Chatterton (1752-70), to whom Southey referred as "the marvellous boy who perished in his pride."

The little children of the rocky home moved uneasily on their litter of bracken, pulled the deerskin covering over their eyes, and cuddled together for fear that one or other of them might be snatched up and spirited away. Why did the sun grow tired and have to go to bed like themselves? Well, not quite like themselves, because he seemed to have a far more comfortable resting-place. He just disappeared into a land of crimson glory and had twinkling silver lamps to keep him company.

The children loved the sun. He was their very dear friend. When the autumn leaves dropped from the branches, did he not touch them with a gleam of gold and turn them into happy fairies as they fluttered to the lap of Mother Earth? Was he not also the father of fire, whose warm heart cheered them, though it was strange that so bright a companion kept such eerie company as goblins.

Thus, it may be, the little people came into the world. Nowadays nobody believes in elves and sprites, in giants and dwarfs, in pixies and gnomes, in goblins and bogles. But the children of the cave lived perhaps thirty thousand years ago, when imagination ruled the world. It still does so, though in a different way. Then there was neither alphabet nor book. There was not even a dog to keep one company when mother was gathering roots and father was hunting fearsome wild beasts called mammoths, bisons, and reindeer.

When the children grew tired of playing with their toys, which were nothing more than the bones left over from the last meal, they had to "pretend." And so they saw and heard all kinds of creatures that had no actual existence. Thus it comes about that the great story-tellers of the ages are links with the cave children of long ago. Beowulf and Barrie, Chatterton and Arnold Bennett live almost next door to each other in the Temple of Literature.

Imagination remains the key of the

treasure-house of the mind. Without it there would be no books. The figures that populate the pages of the latest masterpiece are less grotesque, fancy is blended with fact, the known tempers the unknown as fire tempers steel. Poverty of word and of thought has given place to an abundance of riches, the crude sentence has surrendered to the polished phrase, ugliness to beauty, but the past still lives. It was but yesterday that the flint arrow-heads used by the cave people were believed to be darts carried by the fairies when on mischief bent. Now we call them celts, and as we look at them in a museum we like to remember that when early man was patiently tapping the stones and shaping them with infinite labour his boys and girls were seeing airy shapes—the "fairies, black, grey, green, and white," that Shakespeare loved.

When you started to form letters on a slate you were not following the latest method of writing, but a slightly altered form of the earliest. Long before the birth of Christ the Sumerians, who lived at no great distance from the Persian Gulf, made strange, wedge-shaped characters on clay. Many of these brick-books have been found recently by patient and learned men who have ransacked the dust-heaps of Babylon and other ruined cities in order to give us knowledge of what happened in the long ago.

Mr. Arnold Bennett, who won fame with novels dealing with life in the pottery district of North Staffordshire.

The first People to make Paper

The Egyptians invented another way of expressing thought. This was known as picture writing. You will find the duck which formed their Z at the end of our alphabet. When you compare the letter with the bird you will see there is a distinct likeness. The builders of the Pyramids were also the first people to use paper. Their discovery was passed on to the Greeks, and by the Greeks to the Romans. In the language of ancient Greece *papyrus* became *biblos*, from which we get the name Bible.

The patient workers used the long stems of the papyrus reed that grew in the mud of the Nile and were often much taller than a man. It is from the name of the plant that we obtained our word *paper*. Strips of the substance were crossed at right angles and then soaked, pressed, and dried in the sun. Afterwards the sheets were pasted together so as to form a roll. The Egyptians also made part of the plant into pens, which were dipped in a gummy mixture that was the first ink. Still later a tougher substance was made from the skins of such animals as sheep and goats rubbed thin and polished with pumice-stone at the city of Pergamum, in Asia Minor; hence the term *parchment*. Now, in addition to knowing something about alphabets and writing, you are beginning to understand how words came to be formed.

At the time when all these important discoveries were being made the men, women and children of Europe were quite ignorant of them. They were still living in caves or in rude huts built on piles above lakes. But if they could not write, some of them were very clever artists. They scratched pictures of animals on bones and carved them on rocks, and occasionally attempted to paint them with red, yellow, black, and brown earth. They also modelled little human figures in clay and attempted tiny sculptures in ivory and soapstone. They became artists before they turned authors.

When Stories were Sung

People told stories long before they knew their letters well enough to write them. In our own land certain men known as bards or minstrels went from place to place relating tales of heroic deeds, usually in the form of poetry. Sometimes they sang what they had to tell, perhaps to the accompaniment of a harp. Doubtless you have heard of community singing, when the audience forms a chorus instead of listening to soloists. That is what our forefathers did after they had been entertained. There was no knowing when the bard would visit them again, and so they memorized what he said as best they could and repeated it as a song long after the story-teller had gone his way.

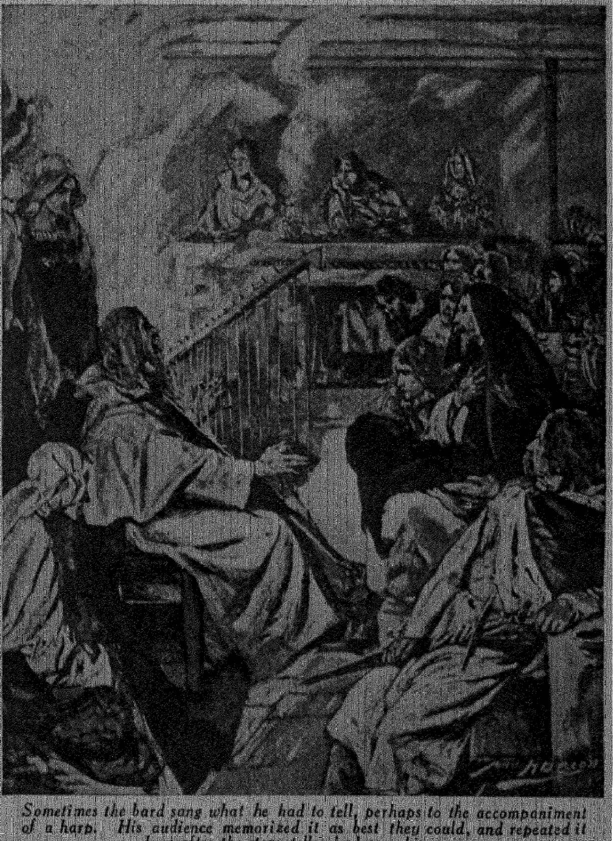
The three great Adventures of Beowulf

What was the first romance to be put into writing? None knows. But in the British Museum, enshrined with so many priceless relics, is a collection of discoloured pages in manuscript worth a king's ransom. It is called "Beowulf," after the hero of the exploits of which it tells. He was nephew of the king of the people who once lived in that part of southern Sweden which we call Gothland. The three great adventures related deal with Beowulf's defeat of the fearsome monster Grendel, his killing of the ogre's equally terrible mother, and the slaying of a fiery dragon, which unfortunately inflicted a wound on its opponent from which he died. In addition to these stories, which may have served as the parents of Jack the Giant-killer and St. George, there is much valuable information on the life and customs of the period. How, when, and where the poem came to be penned in the West Saxon dialect is uncertain, but it was probably written in Northumbria, and the year 700 or thereabouts has been suggested as the date of its authorship.

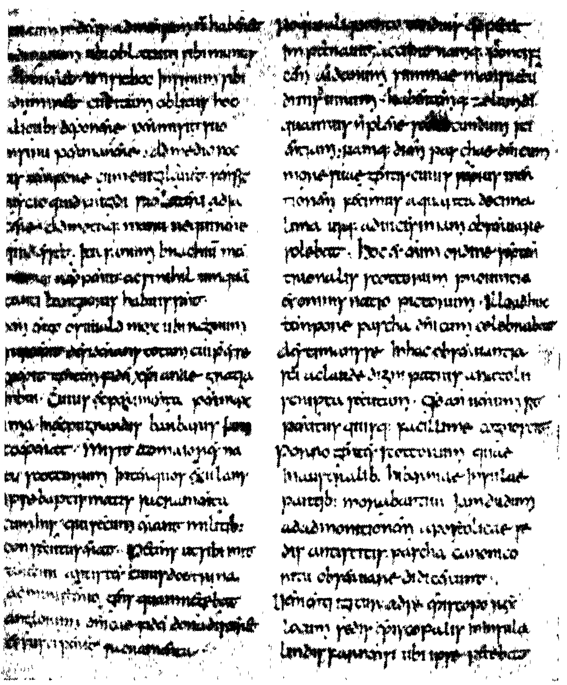
A child with an ordinary box of wooden bricks can only make a very crude model of a building. For much the same reason the author or authors of "Beowulf" could only construct his romance in a crude way. The polished phrase, the use of a word to express the exact shade of meaning, and the subtle magic of style had not been invented. There were no dictionaries in those days, and even if there had been they would not have contained a large number of words. The form of the language as we know it to-day had not taken definite shape. Even so lengthy a work as the "Anglo-Saxon Chronicle," which may have been started about the year 758 and was completed in 1154, is declared to contain only 600 to 800 individual words. To-day there are over half a million words in the English language, and new terms are frequently added. Shakespeare wrote his immortal plays and sonnets with about 15,000 different words, but Milton used about 7,000 less.

The inspired Cowherd of Whitby

When missionaries reached England they settled down in various places and began to teach the people the wonderful truths that almost everybody can now read for himself in the printed Bible. Among those who carried on this splendid work was a gracious and godly woman named Hilda, who lived in a religious house with a number of pious folk on the East Cliff at Whitby, now a charming seaside place.



Sometimes the bard sang what he had to tell, perhaps to the accompaniment of a harp. His audience memorized it as best they could, and repeated it long after the story-teller had gone his way.



A page from one of the manuscripts of Bæda (673-735), more usually called Bede, the Father of English History. From the original in the British Museum.

One of the earliest converts was a cowherd named Caedmon. One night, so the story goes, when he was asleep with the cattle in the stable, he dreamed that a voice said to him: "Caedmon, sing me a song." "I cannot sing," answered the sleeper. "But you shall sing to me," the voice went on. "What," asked the cowherd, "shall I sing?" "Sing of how God made all things." Hilda was told of the poor labourer's dream, and he repeated to her some sacred verses that he had composed while tending the cattle. Other Bible stories were told to him, and these he also put into song. His work gave so much pleasure that he was invited to forsake his care of the oxen and live in the monastery. There he stayed, carrying on the noble work that he had begun as a labourer, until the "Glorious King of all the hosts of men," to quote one of his own lines, called him home.

The origin of Caedmon's poems will remind you of the voices that inspired Joan of Arc to gird a sword and fight for the prince whom her bravery placed on the throne of France. Both youth and maid were of lowly origin, but both filled a worthy place in the record of humanity.

Sometimes a quiet life may make a great noise in the world. Few men have had a more sheltered existence than Bede, who entered a monastery when he was a boy of seven and remained in seclusion at Wearmouth and Jarrow until his death some fifty-five years later. Yet the books which he wrote in his cell, often we may be sure when his fingers were so cold that he could scarcely hold his pen, are consulted in this busy, bustling twentieth century by every reader who is interested in the England of Early Saxon times.

"Amid the observance of monastic discipline and the daily charge of singing in the church," he tells us, "it has ever been my delight to learn, to teach or write." Bede is honoured as the Father of English History by reason of his greatest work, "The Ecclesiastical History of the English Nation." He laboured through the ponderous volumes of manuscripts that formed the monastic library, and compiled from them the information that he thought likely to be of value to students.

He took infinite pains to ensure accuracy. "I will not have my pupils read a falsehood," he said, "nor labour therein without profit after my death." With such an aim before him it is not surprising that his work has lived, and will continue to live. For many hundreds of years his little textbook on Natural Science was used by boys and girls, and he also wrote a grammar.

Bede became the most famous scholar of his day in western Europe. Even when he was on his death-bed he laboured diligently for those to whom he wished to pass on the lamp of learning. He was translating the Gospel according to St. John. Too ill to write, he dictated to a younger man. "Go on quickly," he said in a voice already weak, "I know not how long I shall hold out or how soon my Master will call me hence."

Hour after hour he continued his task. "There remains but one chapter, master," the scribe interrupted. "Will you not rest now?" he suggested, for Bede was weaker, and the sun had set.

"Nay, we must go on," was the quiet reply. "Take up thy pen again and I will translate."

The words came slower and slower. The voice faltered. But the unconquered will gained a brief victory over the spirit that was anxious to take its flight.

"And now, father," said the writer, "it is finished."

"Ay, it is finished," repeated the dying man. The last words that came from his lips were those which are still repeated throughout the world every day of the year: "Glory be to the Father, and to the Son, and to the Holy Ghost."

This simple and beautiful record of Bede's passing was told in a letter written to a friend by one of his pupils named Cuthbert. Among others of this period who strove to bring light into the darkness by telling the people of good and noble things was Aldhelm of Malmesbury, who sang of the joys of religion, and Alcuin, who taught in the school attached to the monastery at York and was also its librarian. Afterwards he helped the mighty Charlemagne, King of the Franks and Holy Roman Emperor, to start a seat of learning at Aix-la-Chapelle which became famous.

In those days books were very costly, and perhaps for that reason, as well as for their rarity, they were greatly treasured. Even when printing came to aid further the cause of learning, the Bibles in churches were chained to a desk or a pillar so that they might not be stolen without a great deal of trouble. Every copy of a book previous to the invention of a mechanical means of production was written by hand, and very beautifully written, too, as a general rule. In the British Museum you may see specimens of them, often brilliantly illuminated with big picture letters in gold and colour at the beginning of each chapter.

In the Writing-room of a Monastery

Seated in the scriptorium or writing-room of the monastery, the monks transcribed or translated the original manuscript, or if several copies were required at once a reader would dictate it slowly to them. Either at the beginning or the end of a modern volume you will find the words "Printed by——," and then follows the name of the individual or firm. This is required by Act of Parliament. But in the days of which we are thinking there was no Parliament as we understand it, and the custom doubtless had its origin in the words that the copyist sometimes added on his own account when his trying task was over.

One of these notes runs as follows: "I pray you, good readers who may use this work, do not forget him who copied it. It was a poor brother named Louis, who, while he copied the volume (which was brought from a foreign country), endured the cold and was obliged to finish in the night what he could not write by day." Like Bede, Alcuin wrote a number of educational works as well as those of a religious character.

The Prize that Alfred Won

One of the greatest encouragers of learning was Alfred the Great. Not only did he translate part of Bede's "History" and other works from Latin into Anglo-Saxon, but he also found time to add personal comments to some of them. The story is told that when he was a young boy his mother said to him and his brothers: "Do you see this little book, with its clear black writing and the beautiful letter at the beginning painted in red, blue, and gold? It shall belong to the one who first learns its songs." Alfred secured the prize, and when he became king he made up his mind that he would give to as many of his subjects as he possibly could the benefits of education. "It has ever been my desire," he remarked on one occasion, "to live worthily while I was alive, and after my death to leave to those that should come after me my memory in good works."

At first the constant raids made by the Danes prevented him from carrying out his fine intention. He had to fight, and fight hard, but he did not lose sight of his high ideal. After he had proved that a man of peace may also be mighty in war he started a palace school similar to that of Charlemagne, and became known far and wide as the protector of the poor. Alfred hated ignorance almost more than the Danes. "He seems to me a very foolish man," he wrote, "and very wretched, who will not increase his understanding while he is in the world, and ever wish and long to reach that endless life where all shall be made clear."

Great was the ignorance Alfred had to fight. Hardly anyone could read or had any desire for knowledge. The terrible Danes had destroyed the schools of Northumbria and learning had fled the country.

Even the priests, who were the educated men of the time, had in these days of invasion and alarm grown so unlearned that "When I began to reign," the king wrote, "I cannot remember one priest south of the Thames who could understand his service book, and very few in other parts of the country."

As soon as he had beaten off the Danes and made his country secure, Alfred set to work with untiring energy to battle against the deadlier foe of ignorance. He superintended the palace school and taught in it himself. He brought over teachers from the great schools of the Continent, and sought the help of the Welsh bishop Asser, who was almost the only scholar in the country. He made a law that every free-born youth who could afford the time should "abide at his book till he can well understand English writing."

To scatter the darkness of ignorance he learned Latin late in life and translated book after book in that language into vigorous, straightforward English. As he translated he added passages of his own, sometimes to make the meaning more clear, but more often because he felt he simply had to stop from translating and to talk to his people as man to man, to advise and help them because he loved them and earnestly desired their enlightenment.

Alfred is the "father of English prose." Before him poets had sung in English, but of prose literature there was none. When we to-day, with centuries of glorious writing behind us, struggle to express our thoughts in words and to shape our sentences, can we just dimly imagine the difficulties of this great pioneer, who had none to guide him and few who cared to help?

The Anglo-Saxon Chronicle

It is sad to think that the little handbook which Alfred always carried and in which he jotted down anything that interested him, now a suggestion for some work, now a prayer, now an anecdote, is for ever lost. But a very great work which he inspired, and parts of which he almost certainly wrote, has happily been preserved. This is the "Anglo-Saxon Chronicle."

The Anglo-Saxon Chronicle, the earliest national history we have, was started long before Alfred's day; A.D. 758 is the date usually given for its beginning. At first the monkish writers, whoever they were, simply put up on a board in the monastery the chief events of the past year. Then the idea arose of giving also events of previous years. So the record was carried back as far as Julius Caesar's landing in Britain in 54 B.C.; but, as the earlier parts were copied from Bede's "Ecclesiastical History," we call only the record from A.D. 449 onwards the Anglo-Saxon Chronicle.

We can imagine how Alfred would encourage such a work. It is said, and probably rightly, that he first suggested the working up into a connected narrative of the bare statements of fact which so far had been entered in the Chronicle. He may have written some parts himself; Plegmund, his archbishop, "a venerable man and a wise" who died in 914, certainly had a share in the work. Whether Alfred actually wrote part of the Chronicle or not, the account of the years 893 to 897 is better written, is more like real literature, than almost any other section.

When Robber Barons Roved the Land

Alfred's influence kept the Chronicle a living book until about 924. Then for a long time we get only dry statements of fact, as in the earlier period. Some enterprising scribe, however, perhaps realizing how dull the record was, thought fit to insert four poems, and as one of those is the gloriously vital and thrilling poem of the Battle of Brunanburh, we can forgive the poor, uninteresting prose.

The Chronicle continued to be compiled up to 1154. It was written in various places; first at Winchester, then at Canterbury, then at Worcester, and finally at Peterborough. We do not know for certain who the writers were, but they varied very much in skill. There are fine accounts of the Battles of Stamford Bridge and Senlac field, and William the Conqueror's hard, stern rule is vividly described. But best known to boys and girls of to-day is the bitter description of the agonies of Stephen's reign, when robber barons roved the land, torturing and oppressing the poor, so that "thou might'st go a whole day's journey and never shouldest thou find a man sitting in a town, nor the land tilled." A great deal of the Chronicle, and particularly much of the latter part, may be lifeless, but the man who wrote that description was no mean handler of prose.

The Chronicle is our only record of what happened during part of the time between 449 and the Norman Conquest in 1066; it contains many descriptions of life in England after the coming of William I, such as we get nowhere else; but perhaps the most vital fact connected with it is that it was written in English, the language of the natives, and not, as nearly all such early histories were, in Latin.

The Passing of Old English

Soon after the death of Alfred the dark days fell upon England once more. The Danes renewed their invasions and finally became masters of the whole country. A few years later the Normans were in the land, and their coming spelled the death of Old English literature, indeed of the Old English language. We shall read of the glorious resurrection of English literature in the stories of Chaucer and of Malory, but the language they used was very far from the language of Beowulf and the Anglo-Saxon Chronicle. That passed, in literature at any rate, with the coming of the Conqueror and his barons.

Two writers of Old English prose besides Alfred must be mentioned. They were both priests. Of Aelfric little is known save that he was the first abbot of Ensham, near Oxford, about 1006. He wrote both in Latin and in English. Wulfstan was Archbishop of York from 1003 until he died in 1023. The English writings of both these men are interesting because they show real attempts at style. Alfred had just written, without any apparent effort at charm; Aelfric and Wulfstan in their sermons and letters to their people both tried to polish their writings so as to make them attractive reading. They wrote a prose which came close to poetry.

Poetry without Rhyme

Old English poetry was composed on quite a different plan from modern poetry. There was no rhyme, and the lines were of unequal length. It was rhythmical but not metrical. In each line four syllables were heavily stressed, and of these four, three (usually) began with the same letter or with a vowel. Alliteration was one distinctive mark of Old English poetry; another was the abundant use of beautiful and expressive synonyms. The sea was the "swan road," the "flood-way," the "whale's path"; the ship was the "foamy-necked"; battle was "ash-play" or "sword-play," and so on.

Besides Beowulf and the songs of Caedmon we have in Old English religious poems, battle-songs, elegies full of brooding music, and riddles. These last were evidently very popular at banquets; many of them are both witty and poetical.

Much of the religious poetry of the later Old English period has been ascribed to Cynewulf, a poet about whom nothing is known, but much has been guessed. Most of his poems indeed were lost for hundreds of years. In 1046 Edward the Confessor made Leofric Bishop of Devon and Cornwall. Leofric found his cathedral at Exeter in a sad state of neglect, almost of ruin. There were only five books in the library, and few valuable belongings anywhere. He set to work to better matters, and among other things he presented to the library a volume entitled "A large English book, on all sorts of things, wrought in verse." This is the famous Exeter Book, the very first anthology of poetry in our language. It was found again in 1705, and it is priceless, not only historically, but also because it contains the most beautiful of the Old English poems. "The Wanderer" and "The Seafarer" are two elegies that for sorrowful dignity compare with anything written since. Cynewulf's "Crist," which tells of the coming of Christ to earth, of His ascension, and of His second coming and the Day of Judgment, throbs with intense piety and deep conviction.

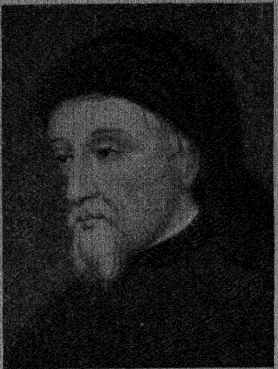
Battle-songs in the Exeter Book

Three battle-songs of great vigour and descriptive power are "The Fight at Finnesburgh," "The Battle of Brunanburh," and "The Battle of Maldon." The unknown writers knew all about fighting! It may be that they had used the sword as well as the pen.

The Exeter Book is a folio volume, beautifully written on vellum in letters as clear as the clearest modern type. Its condition, of course, shows marks of age, just as old people usually have wrinkles and a complexion less youthful than it was in childhood. But when it is remembered that the volume is considerably over eight hundred years old, it will surprise no one that in the passing of the centuries some of the pages have disappeared and others have become stained and worn. Perhaps it is better thus, for the marks are honourable scars. They show, indeed, that people have handled the book and studied it instead of merely regarding it as a thing too precious to be really used and enjoyed. The Exeter Book is a glorious monument to its unknown compiler.

THE LONG ROAD TO CANTERBURY

From Duke William of Normandy to Geoffrey Chaucer, the Father of English Poetry



Geoffrey Chaucer (about 1340-1400.)

WITH the coming of the Normans English literature seems to stop, and it is a long time before it begins again. For nearly a century and a half after Senlac field there is nothing written in the English language which can be called literature, and very little is written at all. English is the despised language of a beaten and humbled race, and French is the only tongue fit for a gentleman to speak.

Not until about 1200 do we begin to get English writers again. When we do, we notice a remarkable thing; they are using a new language, singing new songs in a new way, telling stories that have never been told in English before, thinking new thoughts. For long enough, for another century and a half, they write falteringly, as beginners, which indeed they are.

It is not quite fair to blame the Norman Conquest entirely for the long silence, or to hold it altogether responsible for the mighty change which comes over our literature. The pure Old English was a dying language before 1066, and its literature had practically ceased before that date. It was losing its declensions, and would have lost them had the Normans never come, though the Conquest hurried matters up considerably. When, as time went on, Norman and Englishman became good friends, our language was enriched with a host of French and Latin words, and many Old English words disappeared. Yet no doubt great numbers of these new words would have come in any case, and many of the old would have died. In Germany, where there was no conquest, exactly the same language changes took place.

Middle English Literature

Besides grammatical changes and changes in vocabulary, there was a third tremendous change taking place in the silent years. The culture and education of France were silently spreading through the land, and for this the Normans are undoubtedly to be thanked. The influence of France was spreading everywhere in Europe, for France was the educated and literary country of the time. When, about 1200, the first signs of a new English literature — Middle English literature as it is called—begin to appear, the Old English verse forms, the Old English stories, the Old English thoughts are giving place everywhere to verse forms, stories, and thoughts from France, introduced by the Normans. The writing is English, but the matter is French. For a long time the two do not fit very well. Until about 1350 our writers are imitators, translators, experimenters, and their works are chiefly interesting because they are stepping-stones along the long, long road to Chaucer and his Canterbury Pilgrims.

Chronicles and Romances

As is always the case when a new literature is growing, the first writers are poets. They use poetry for all the many purposes for which we now use prose. Copying the French, they write history in verse, history after the manner of the Middle Ages, full of amazingly improbable stories and always ready of invention when facts fail. All these chronicles are very long. "The Brut," a poem of 30,000 lines, which was written by a Gloucestershire monk called Layamon, begins the story of Britain with Brutus, great-grandson of Aeneas of Troy. Robert Manning of Bourne starts his "Story of Ingelond" at the Flood, and finds that the English kings are descended from Noah.

Far more important than these rhyming chronicles, for rhyme is gradually driving out alliteration, are the romances. "There are," said a French poet of those days, "only three histories to which any man will listen — of France, and of Britain, and of Rome the great." The "matter of France" centres round Charlemagne, the "matter of Britain" round Arthur, the "matter of Rome" round classical stories, particularly those of Alexander the Great and the siege of Troy.

Nearly all the stories of the Middle Ages spring from these three " matters," and on them the romances, hundreds and thousands of them, were built.

The English writers took eagerly to romance writing, which they learnt from the French, and thus it was that the grand legend of Arthur and his Table Round came to be a national possession. Later we shall read how the Arthurian legends were woven into one connected story by our first great prose writer, Sir Thomas Malory. But long before Malory we had the stories of " Sir Tristram," " Arthur " and " Merlin," " Ywain " and " Gawain," the " Morte d'Arthur," the famous " Sir Gawayne and the Grene Knight," and many others done in verse. Popular romances told about English heroes included " Horn," " Guy of Warwick," " Bevis of Southampton," and " Richard Cœur-de-Lion."

Romances began to be written in English about 1300. The authors are unknown, but there must have been many of them. The story is generally of a journey or a quest; there is always a knightly hero, " a varry parfit gentil knight," as Chaucer would say, a distressed maiden, and a good deal of love making.

Songs and Ballads

There is little doubt that even in the darkest days after the Conquest the Englishman could find it in his heart sometimes to sing. The freshness of the morning, the beauty of the sun shining through the leaves, the loveliness of the maid he loved, even the happiness that a good dinner brings—all these must have served him at times to lift up his voice and carol lustily whatsoever words came into his head to some tune or other he knew. Most of the songs would be rough and ready, and quickly forgotten. But now and again a song was made which has never been forgotten. Such a one is the famous Cuckoo song, one of the earliest of English lyrics, which begins :—

Sumer is i-cumen (come) in,
  Lhude (loud) sing cuccu :
Groweth sede, and bloweth mede,
  And springth the wde (wood) nu (now).

The Englishman sang Nature songs such as this, he sang love songs and religious songs. In the making of his lyrics he had two helps; he heard in church, and perhaps joined in singing, the wonderful rhymed Latin hymns such as " Stabat Mater " and " Dies Irae "; and he must have heard many a French jongleur, or verse maker, on the way to the Norman castle or in the castle itself. The French lyrics and chansons were recited and sung all over Europe.

There was another kind of song beloved of the Englishman, the song of scorn that mocked his Norman master or jeered at a downfallen foe. In many a rhyme, coarse and bitter in tone, he eased his heart of the hatred that was in it. Later, as the two races grew more friendly, as they began to feel themselves part of one England, there developed the patriotic song, which Laurence Minot sang so vigorously in the days of Crécy and Poitiers. Alongside the song of scorn, and because the Englishman has ever loved a joke, we get the comic poem, the poem that is funny and nothing more.

English ballads are famous all the world over. Scarcely any that are preserved to-day are older than the fifteenth century, but it is certain that these ballads began to grow into shape long before that. They developed from the songs and the romances, and this was the manner of it.

A group of villagers would gather round the minstrel, the teller of tales and singer of songs. He would sing a line or two introducing some famous story. Then the whole company would roar a line they all knew—it may only have been " Hey! trolly lolly lolly lo! "— by way of a refrain, in all probability dancing to the tune as they sang. Followed another line or two from the minstrel, and again the refrain would be shouted by the listeners. So with solo, chorus, and dance the long evening would be passed in merriment.

As the years came and went the solo part, or story, would get better and better known, though the versions of it would vary from parish to parish. At last a superior poet would write it down, polishing the verse as he did so; his copy would be preserved, and so we get the ballad as we know it to-day.

The Bitter Cry of the Poor

About 1330 there was born near Malvern a boy called William Langland. His parents were poor, probably serfs, but the child proved clever, and so was trained for the Church, the only refuge from incessant manual labour for clever poor people. As he grew up the lad began to brood over the injustice of life, to wonder why the poor " full seldom they play," but " labour too hard to win that which masters with gluttony destroy." The fourteenth century was a hard time for the poor, and William Langland felt all its hardness and saw all its injustice.

As he brooded there shaped in his mind a vision; he saw the world as a field full of folk, with Flattery, Falsehood, Guile, and Lady Meed ruling, against whom Conscience strives in vain. Then he saw Reason preach to the people, telling them Truth would deliver them from their sins. But no one seemed to know Truth or where he could be found, until the poet's ideal man, Piers (or Peter) the Plowman, the honest labouring man, who has followed Truth "these fifty winters," steps forth to guide them.

This poem Langland wrote and rewrote three times. He enlarged it until Piers becomes a symbol for Christ; he added the Vision of Do-wel, Do-bet, and Do-best. Anyone who wishes to know why the serfs of England rose in the ferocious Peasants' Revolt of 1381 can find ample reason in "Piers the Plowman."

The Unknown Poet

The name of a famous contemporary of Langland is unknown. He wrote, in the same West Midland dialect, and mingling alliteration and rhyme in his verse, four poems, two of which can never be forgotten. These are "Sir Gawayne and the Grene Knight," one of the finest of the Arthurian romances, and "Pearl," perhaps the loveliest and tenderest of all poems of the Middle Ages. Pearl is the poet's daughter, whom he lost at the age of two and has mourned bitterly ever since. She appears to him in a vision, walking in the heavenly country and across a stream he may not pass, comforts him with loving words, and shows him the New Jerusalem where she lives.

Can you not feel how the spirit of poetry was surging through the land during these hundred and fifty years when men were practising, trying what they could do in this new English, imitating and turning into English from the French lyrics, romances, and chronicles, ever experimenting with new words and phrases, new metres, new rhythms, urged on by the irresistible desire to express their thoughts in words? Yet something more was necessary; there was needed the hand of a master.

English and French had not yet welded into one language; there were still three distinct dialects. In the south French ideas held sway, but in the west and north-west, in the country of Langland and the unknown poet, the old traditions lingered. As always in the history of any literature, the master came; and his name is Geoffrey Chaucer.

Chaucer's Merrie Englande

Geoffrey Chaucer was born with a twinkle in his eye and a smile on his lips. At least, so we may imagine. We do not know the actual year of his birth—it was about 1340—but we do know what a jolly place he found the world, and how throughout his life people interested and amused him. Of poverty and hardship Chaucer knew little, though at one time he was in money difficulties. He belonged to the prosperous middle classes, and served his country as soldier, diplomatist, and civil servant. He travelled, he read the best books and knew the best people. The powerful John of Gaunt was his protector and friend. He lived in the busy, thriving London of the fourteenth century.

Chaucer's father was a wine-dealer. Of his boyhood we know nothing, but we can picture him listening eagerly to the jokes and stories of the well-to-do merchants who thronged his father's house, or wandering down to the banks of the Thames to gaze upon the vessels and talk with the shipmen from strange lands. We can think of him as a boy, seated at the open lattice window, reading in French strange tales of mighty deeds and gallant lovers, or watching raptly the bustle of the narrow, crowded street.

We can see him later, a handsome, eager youth, worrying over his first attempts at verse, wondering whether he would be able to write in English as did these French poets whose works he so much admired; or still later, as a full grown man of thirty, on his visit to Italy, finding to his amazement a still greater literature than that of France, reading with wonder akin to awe Dante's sublime "Divine Comedy," and roaring with laughter over the tales of Boccaccio.

He began writing as a translator. He turned into English the French "Roman de la Rose," that great allegorical poem which, written a hundred years before, was for three centuries to remain a mine of inspiration for poets. From it he learnt that to fall asleep in a garden on a May morning was the correct opening for a poet's tale, and that to be in the fashion all poems must be dreams. So as dreams and visions, seen in gardens on May mornings, he later told "The Parliament of

Fowls," "The House of Fame," and "The Legend of Good Women." While he was engaged upon the last he suddenly had a brilliant idea, and that idea has made him famous for evermore. He put aside the "Legend" and began the "Canterbury Tales."

Whether Chaucer ever actually went on pilgrimage to the tomb of the "hooly blisful martyr" Thomas Becket we do not know. But surely he must have done. How else did he get to know so intimately those pilgrims who met at the Tabard Inn, Southwark? How else could he have written that amazing Prologue, the chief glory of the "Tales," in which every one of them is so delightfully portrayed right down to his or her last little trick of manner? How else did he know that the Monk loved a fat swan best of all roast meats, that the Friar knew all the taverns in the town, that the Franklin loved a sop in wine, that the Good Wife of Bath was slightly deaf?

The Prologue is the finest of all Chaucer's writings. It is almost a complete picture of his times; every class, except the noble and the serf, is represented among the twenty-nine pilgrims, and every one is described fully and accurately and with a rare gift of humour by a man who knew his "Merrie Englande" through and through. Every shade of character is there, from that of the Poor Parson, "rich of holy thought and work," who:

> Christ's lore and His Apostles twelve
> He taught, but first he followed it himselve,

and his brother, the Plowman:

> A true swinker (worker) and a good was he
> God loved he best, with all his whole heart
> And then his neighbour right as himselve,

right down to the Summoner, full of misdeeds and hypocrisy, and the Shipman, who "of nice conscience took no keep."

Had Chaucer completed the "Canterbury Tales" as he planned we should have had over a hundred stories, for the host of the Tabard Inn had suggested that each pilgrim should tell two stories on the way to Canterbury, and two more on the way back. Unfortunately only twenty complete stories got told, four more being left unfinished. Of these two are in prose, and not very good prose; nearly all the rest are in heroic couplets—that is, rhyming couplets—usually of ten-syllable lines. The stories fit the characters who tell them: the Knight's Tale of Palamon and Arcite is stately and dignified, and the tales of the Miller and the Reeve are coarse and outspoken.

There is no one in Middle English literature to compare with Chaucer. No one observed life so acutely or could describe people and places so interestingly and accurately. No one in his day, or for hundreds of years afterwards, noticed everything as he did, from the greatest things down to the little peculiarities we all possess. No one was so kindly disposed towards other men's faults, or saw the funny side as he did. And no one could tell a story as he could. True, to modern ideas he is often boring with his long asides and explanations and arguments, but if you want to know what real boredom is, try some of the others who wrote before or after him.

Moreover, no one could handle the new English language as he did. He knew just the right English or French word to use; he made of the two languages an English language; he is the first writer of modern English. He established the East Midland dialect as the standard English, which it has remained ever since. He alone writes easily; his poetry is brilliantly fluent and rhythmical; he is our first writer who thoroughly understands his business and does it well.

When he died they buried him in Westminster Abbey, in what has since become famous as the Poets' Corner. He deserved the honour of the first place there, for he is the "father of English poetry."

He sleeps, appropriately enough, at no great distance from the site of the last house he occupied in London. It was on ground which was afterwards cleared to make room for the magnificent Henry VII's Chapel at the east end of the Abbey. No visitors from foreign lands, who so often seem to have greater reverence for English literature than its lineal inheritors, can gaze at the shrine of Chaucer. Even his tomb is not contemporary, but was erected by Nicholas Brigham in 1555, over a century and a half after the remains of the poet had been given back to Mother Earth. As John Wesley Hales writes, Chaucer "is the first great figure of modern English literature, the first great humorist of modern Europe, and the first great writer in whom the dramatic spirit, so long vanished and seemingly extinct, reappears. Except Dante, there is no poet of the Middle Ages of superior faculty and distinction."

THE COMING OF KING ARTHUR

Exploits Related by Poet and Romancer in England and in France

Victoria and Albert Museum.
Sir Galahad as pictured on stained-glass by Sir Edward Burne-Jones.

IN all literature there is no story which has so delighted the minds of men as that of King Arthur and his Knights of the Round Table. Throughout the centuries its spell has remained binding on old and young, while poets, dramatists, painters, musicians, historians, students of folk-lore—all alike have been drawn to it, as moths to a candle.

Who was Arthur? Was there ever such a man? This is a question which has puzzled scholars for at least seven centuries, and we are still no nearer an answer. All we can say is that if he lived he was a British prince who fought successfully against the Saxons, was probably betrayed by his wife and a near relative, and perished in battle.

His exploits are told as history by Nennius, a Welshman who wrote in Latin, about 800, a history of the Britons. Nennius says that Arthur fought twelve great battles against the Saxons, and modern students are inclined to think that Nennius is to be believed. In an old Welsh chronicle we read that in 537 was fought " the battle of Camlan, in which Arthur and Medraut (Modred) fell." That is all that history has to tell us, and we must always remember that mediaeval historians are not historians in our sense of the word, but simply relaters of what they have heard in an age when it was easy to hear, and believe, all sorts of marvellous tales. In Nennius, in addition to believable history, we read also stories of certain " marvels " of Arthur which show that even then legends were beginning to cluster thick around his name.

The Return of Arthur

Now a strange thing happens. The story of Arthur disappears from this country, and nothing is known of it to historians for three hundred years. Meanwhile a great Arthurian legend is growing among the peoples, in Wales, in Cornwall, and particularly in Brittany. By the beginning of the twelfth century this legend is firmly established. Arthur not only was a real and all-conquering king, but he has never died, and he is going to return as the saviour of his people. It was dangerous to deny this belief in districts where it was held. A French monk declared in Bodmin in 1113 that Arthur was not still living, and there was a riot!

In the twelfth century, Arthur reappears in English " history." But he comes from France; he is brought back to England by writers who, if not Normans themselves, wrote under the patronage of Norman nobles. William of Malmesbury, writing in the early part of the century a Latin " History of the Kings of England," tells how " Ambrosius the sole survivor of the Romans . . . quelled the presumptuous barbarians (i.e., the Saxons) by the aid of the powerful Arthur. This is the Arthur of whom the idle tales of the Bretons rave even unto this day; a man worthy to be celebrated not in the foolish dreams of deceitful fables, but in truthful histories." He gives an account of Arthur's great fight at Mount Badon, and mentions Gawain, " Arthur's noble nephew."

Geoffrey of Monmouth's Arthur

Alas, the " truthful histories " of those days are often sadly untruthful, and the " history " of Arthur upon which nearly all succeeding " histories " and romances are based is only too open to this charge. This is the famous " Historia Regum Britanniae," written between 1139 and 1148 by Geoffrey of Monmouth. Even Geoffrey himself, who expects to be believed, admits that he is only translating into Latin " a certain most ancient book in the British language " which " Walter, archdeacon of Oxford, brought hither from Brittany." In his own time even not quite everybody believed Geoffrey. William of Newburgh, a contemporary chronicler, said that " everything which this person wrote about Arthur . . . was made up partly by himself and partly by others, whether from an inordinate love of lying or for the sake of pleasing the Britons."

Geoffrey's " history " begins with Brutus, great-grandson of Aeneas, who was supposed to have been the ancestor of the British kings, and ends with the death of Cadwallader in 688. The story of Arthur occupies more than one-fifth of the whole work.

Arthur, son of Uther Pendragon, having been miraculously preserved by Merlin, the great enchanter, becomes King of Britain at the age of fifteen and, being " of a courage and generosity beyond compare . . . was beloved of well-nigh all the peoples of the land." But he " was so prodigal of his bounties as that he began to run short of wherewithal to distribute amongst the huge multitude of Knights that made repair unto him." So he started on a vast campaign of conquest. Armed with Priven, his shield, Ron, his spear, and " Calibur, best of swords, that was forged within the Isle of Avalon," he harried and conquered the Saxons. Then he married Guinevere, a noble Roman lady, and subdued Ireland, Iceland, Gothland, and the Orkneys.

Arthur conquers Gaul, Dacia, and Norway

Twelve years of peace followed, in which he and his court grew ever more famous, until " the fame of his bounty and his prowess was on every man's tongue, even unto the uttermost parts of the earth." Then he conquers Gaul, Dacia, and Norway, giving to Lot the crown of Norway. He returns to Caerleon-upon-Usk, the city he has made the seat of all that is courtly and splendid and learned, and is crowned a second time in such state and with such ceremonies that Geoffrey finds it impossible to describe the splendour of it all. Constantly he meets and slays giants, and his prowess in battle is only equalled by his generosity to those around him in time of peace.

After his coronation he sets out on another campaign, this time against the Romans, whom after a long and dreadful struggle, in which the faithful Kay and Bedivere are slain, he overcomes. He is already climbing the Alps to march on Rome when he hears that his nephew Modred, whom he has left in charge in Britain, has traitorously seized the crown and stolen Guinevere. He hurries home, and there follows a fatal battle near Camelford, in Cornwall, in which both hosts are destroyed. " Even the renowned King Arthur himself was wounded deadly," but not killed ; he " was borne thence unto the island of Avalon for the healing of his wounds."

Geoffrey's " history " was at once enormously popular. It was exactly what every one wanted. Did it not prove that the " idle tales of the Bretons " were true ? Here they were all written down in history. What a hero the great king was ! He had conquered the whole world, and he was not dead ; he had been " borne . . . unto the island of Avalon," and would return. How the Norman lords and ladies loved the gorgeous descriptions of Arthur's court which Geoffrey had painted so lavishly in his book ! The English, too, could not help feeling proud that their country had once possessed a hero whose exploits outshone even those of the renowned Charlemagne.

The twelfth century was the golden age of chivalry and romance. People everywhere were eager to hear more of Arthur, and the tellers of tales quickly seized Geoffrey's account and sang endlessly of the deathless deeds of the British king. Needless to say, those deeds grew ever and ever more wonderful. Wace, a Norman poet, though he was not quite sure in his own mind about the truth of it all—" Nor all a lie, nor all true, nor all fable, nor all known, so much have the story-tellers told, and the fablers fabled, in order to embellish their tales, that they have made all seem fable "—quickly translated Geoffrey into French verse, adding much of his own to the story, and particularly the first mention of the Round Table.

Fifty years later, in Layamon's " Brut," Arthur has become the great " Christian King " and a very English hero. Layamon tells us all about the Table Round, " a board, wondrous fair, at which sixteen hundred men and more could sit," and yet which Arthur could carry with him as he rode.

Romance and Legend glorify Arthur

As the story was told over and over again by poet and romancer, in England and in France, other legends and other stories became part of it. Somehow or other Glastonbury was imagined to be the site of the island of Avalon, and the beautiful legend of the Holy Grail, the chalice of the Last Supper, which men said Joseph of Arimathea had brought thither after Christ's death, became a part of Arthurian romance.

New heroes figure among Arthur's Knights. Tristram and Perceval and Lancelot, and, latest of all, Lancelot's son, the pure and lovely youth Galahad, who finds the Holy Grail. Arthur himself becomes less important. Often he is no more than the noble king from whose court knights set out on those quests full of deadly peril and gallant love of which people in the Middle Ages so delighted to hear. In the countries of northern Europe, after Odin, the wind-god, had fallen from his high estate, it was believed that a gale was caused by the passing of King Arthur or some other worthy bearing away the souls of the dead. The Norsemen called such tempestuous weather the Wild Hunt.

Two writers, Chrétien de Troyes, a Frenchman, and Walter Map, an Englishman, did more than all others to enlarge and make famous the romantic legend of Arthur. Geoffrey of Monmouth's account, remember, was " history " ; but now we are in the land of imagination and romance. To them we owe the matchless love stories of Tristram and Iseult, Lancelot and Guinevere—most indeed of the stories of Sir Lancelot du Lake—and Perceval.

Malory's " Morte d'Arthur "

The stories of Arthur as you read them to-day are drawn from the collection made by Sir Thomas Malory, a Warwickshire gentleman who " in the ix yere of King Edward the fourth did take (it) out of certeyne frensshe bookes and reduced it in to Englysshe," and whose book was printed by Caxton.

About Sir Thomas Malory himself we know little, and of the " frensshe bookes " still less. But what does it matter? We have his book, wherein we may read in rich, stately English prose how Arthur alone could pull the sword Excalibur from the stone into which it had been thrust, how the great magician Merlin counselled him and protected him from all evil, how Gawain fought with Lancelot, of the love of Lancelot for Guinevere, of Sir Kay the Seneschal, of the bold Sir Bedivere, of Sir Tristram, who " fared among those knights like a greyhound among the conies," and of all the other gallant knights and lovely ladies of " many tower'd Camelot."

Not only did Sir Thomas Malory weave skilfully into a connected story the great Arthurian legend, but he wrote what is not only the first but still among the greatest works of prose in the English language. There is nothing grander in all English literature than the magnificent chapter in which Arthur, wounded unto death, bids Bedivere take Excalibur and throw it into the lake.

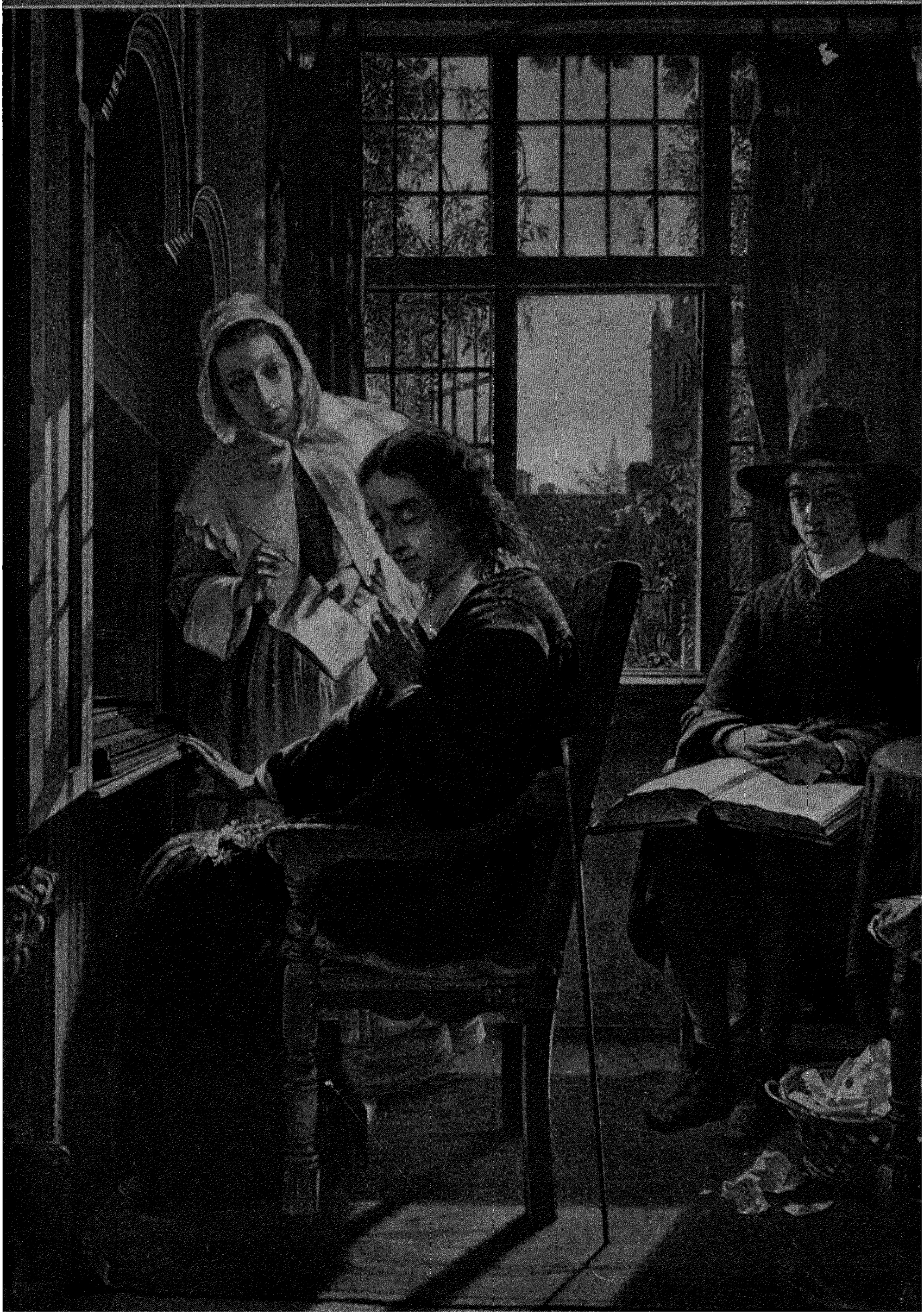
Twice Sir Bedivere is tempted by the rich beauty of the sword, hides it, and tells Arthur he has seen " nothing but the waters wap and the waves wanne." Arthur, in his wrath, declares that, wounded sore though he is, he will slay Bedivere with his own hands if he fail him again. Then the bold Sir Bedivere goes back, binds " the girdle about the hilts " that he may not be tempted a third time, and flings the magic sword far into the lake; there looking, sees it caught by " an arm and a hand above the waters . . ." that " caught it, and so shook it thrice and brandished, and then vanished away . . ." He returns and tells Arthur, who bids him carry him to the edge of the lake. There " fast by the bank hoved a little barge with many fair ladies in it, and among them all a queen " to receive Arthur, who is borne away, leaving Bedivere desolate on the shore.

But Malory did more than this, though this surely was achievement enough for any man. When he lived the story of Arthur was degenerating, the glamour of romance was fading, the ideal of chivalry becoming a forgotten dream. He raised the story to heights it never before had known, made Arthur and his knights heroes, " without fear and without reproach," and gave to modern days all that was best and noblest and purest in the grandest story of the Middle Ages.

A Treasure of Rare Price

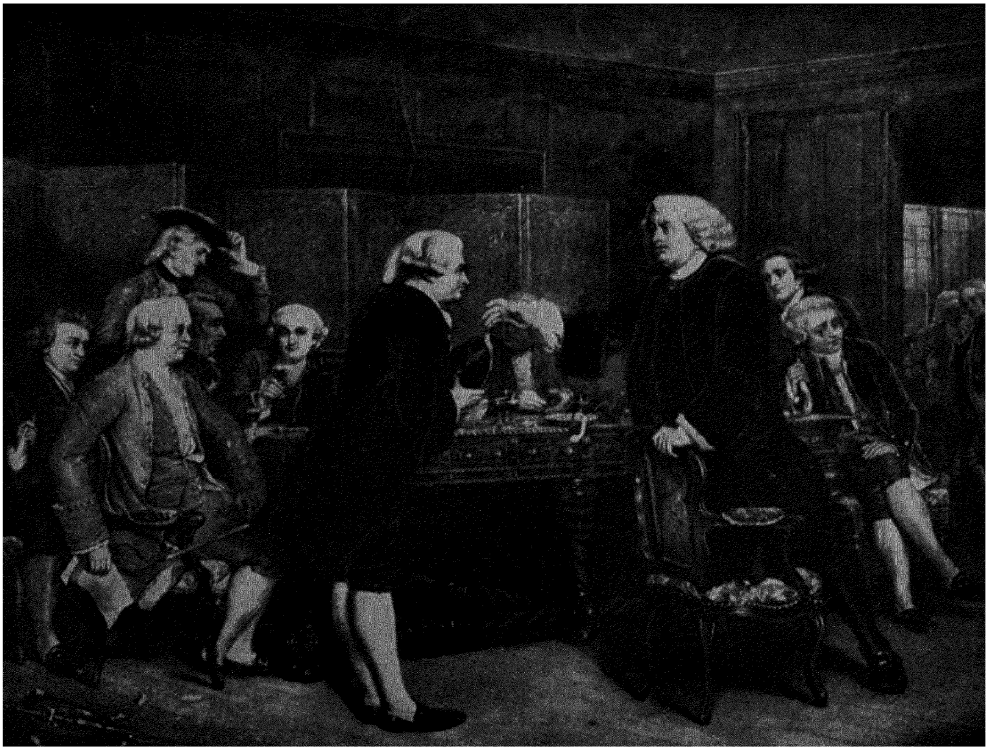
The story of Arthur is one of the most priceless possessions of English literature. Since Malory's days a never-ending roll of writers has found in it material for noble verse and prose. We shall read how Spenser wove round it his immortal " Faerie Queene," how Milton and Dryden both dreamed of a great drama of King Arthur, though Milton put aside his dream for the far greater epic of " Paradise Lost," and Dryden was too busied over smaller matters to realize his ambition; how in the nineteenth century Tennyson fashioned in melodious blank verse his " Idylls of the King," and gave to the world that exquisite tale of " linked sweetness long drawn out," " The Lady of Shalott." For these treasures we have to thank Sir Thomas Malory, our first really great writer of prose, and William Caxton, who, because it was written " for our doctrine," decided to put in print " The Book of King Arthur and of his Noble Knights of the Round Table."

(*Continued on page* 5121.)

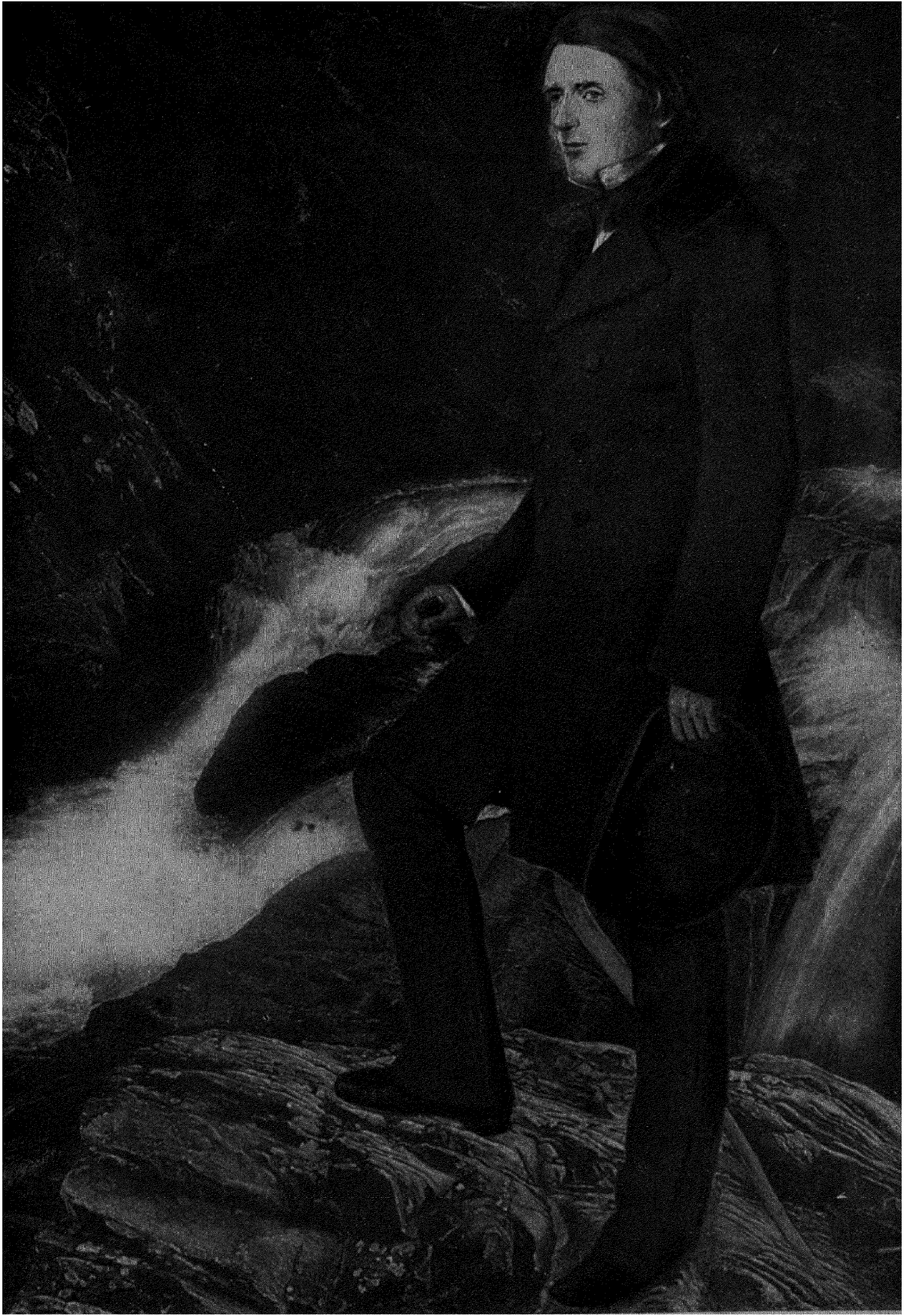


John Milton composing "Samson Agonistes," after the painting by John Callcott Horsley. This poem and "Paradise Regained" were published together in 1671, three years before the blind poet's death. Though closely following the Bible story, it contrives to throw a light on the life and thoughts of its writer.

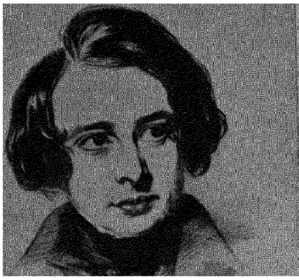
Shakespeare reciting "Hamlet" to his family. Those of us who have heard some of the great impersonators of Hamlet must envy that privileged family who heard this wonderful tragedy from the lips of its creator.



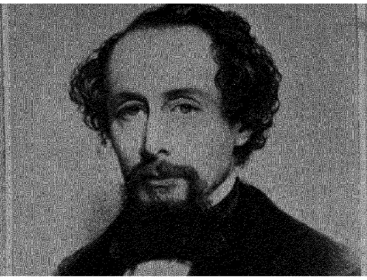
The meeting of Johnson and Boswell, after the painting by Eyre Crowe, R.A. May 16, 1763, was a memorable day for Boswell, for on that day, in the shop of Tom Davies, the bookseller, he first met "Dictionary" Johnson.



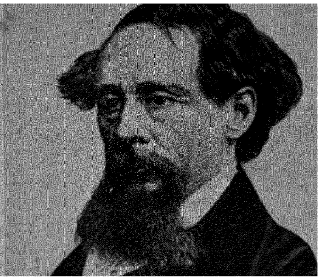
John Ruskin at the age of thirty-four, after the painting by Sir John Millais. Ruskin is seen standing by the waterfall of Glenfinlas, in the Scottish Highlands, where he and his beautiful wife had taken a cottage for the summer. Millais and his brother accompanied the Ruskins on this occasion, staying at the inn near by. The union was obviously ill-assorted, for Mrs. Ruskin left her husband shortly after the Scottish visit, and eventually married Millais.



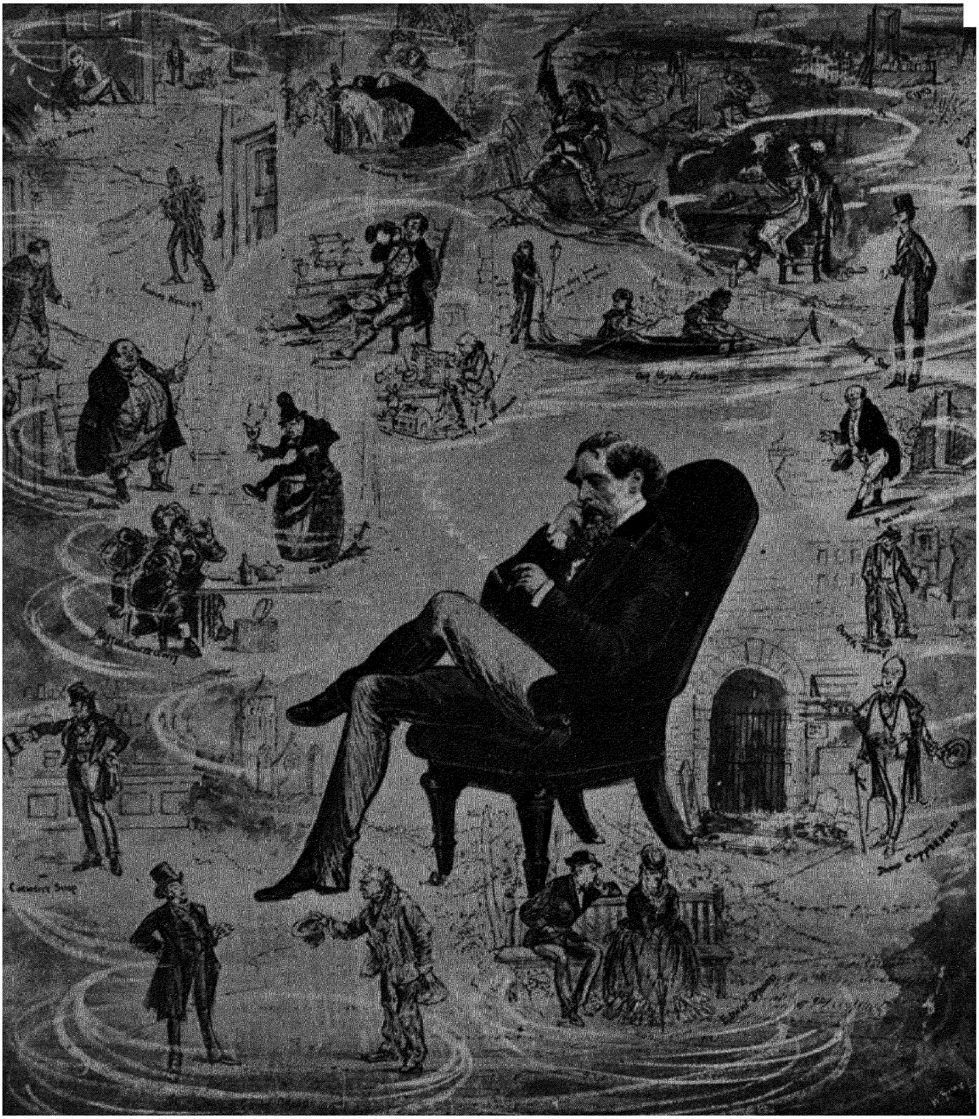
Charles Dickens at twenty-five years.



The novelist at the age of forty-six.



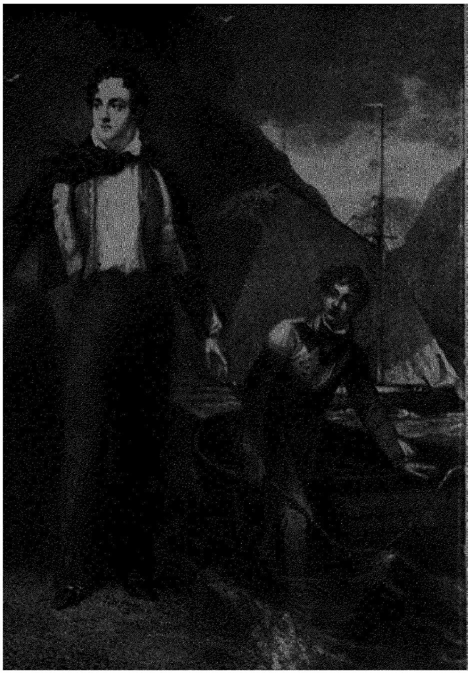
Dickens as he appeared in 1864.



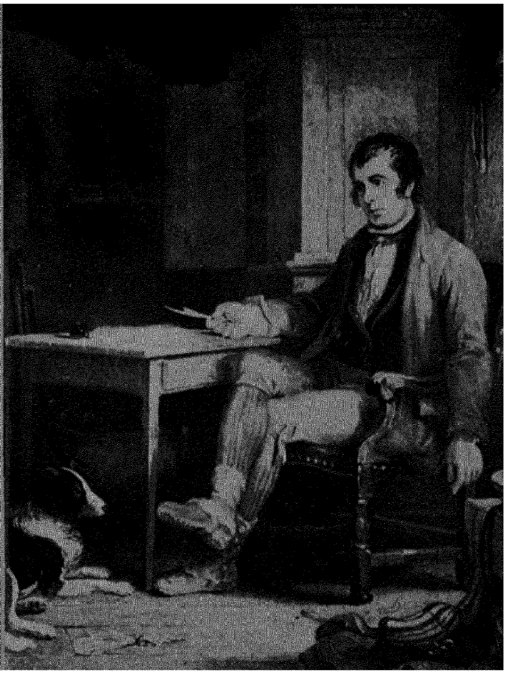
A Dickens reverie. The great novelist sits in his arm-chair deep in thought, and in the smoke of his cigar we see depicted scenes and characters from his teeming imagination, most of them—Mr. Pickwick, Mr. Dombey, Bill Sikes, and the rest—so familiar that they have become household words.

Pope's introduction to Dryden. In his old age Dryden held a kind of court at Wills's coffee-house. Pope, when about twelve years old, is said to have crept into Wills's one day to see the old poet, who was the boy's hero.

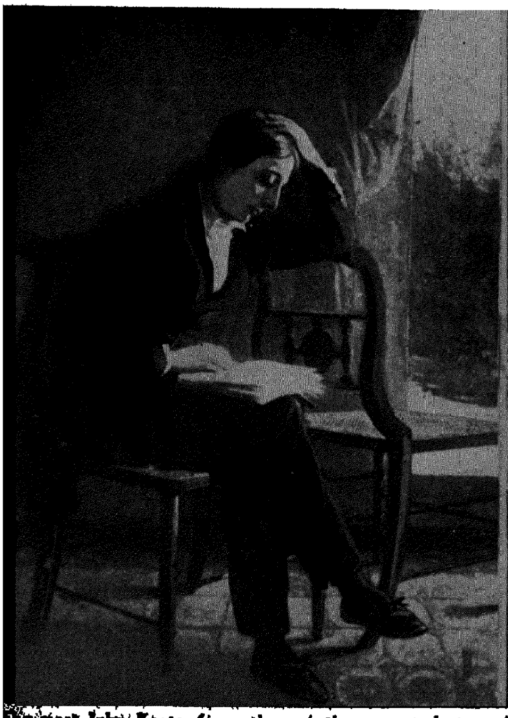
Sir Walter Scott and his friends at Abbotsford, from the painting by Thomas Faed, R.A., in the Corcoran Art Gallery. At Abbotsford Scott kept open house in feudal fashion, and welcomed one and all with free and hearty hospitality.



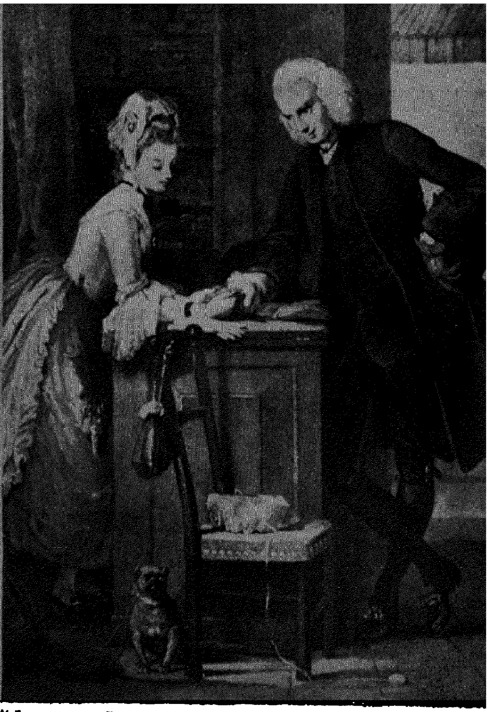
Lord Byron at the age of nineteen, from the painting by G. Sanders. Even at this early age Byron had published a number of poems.



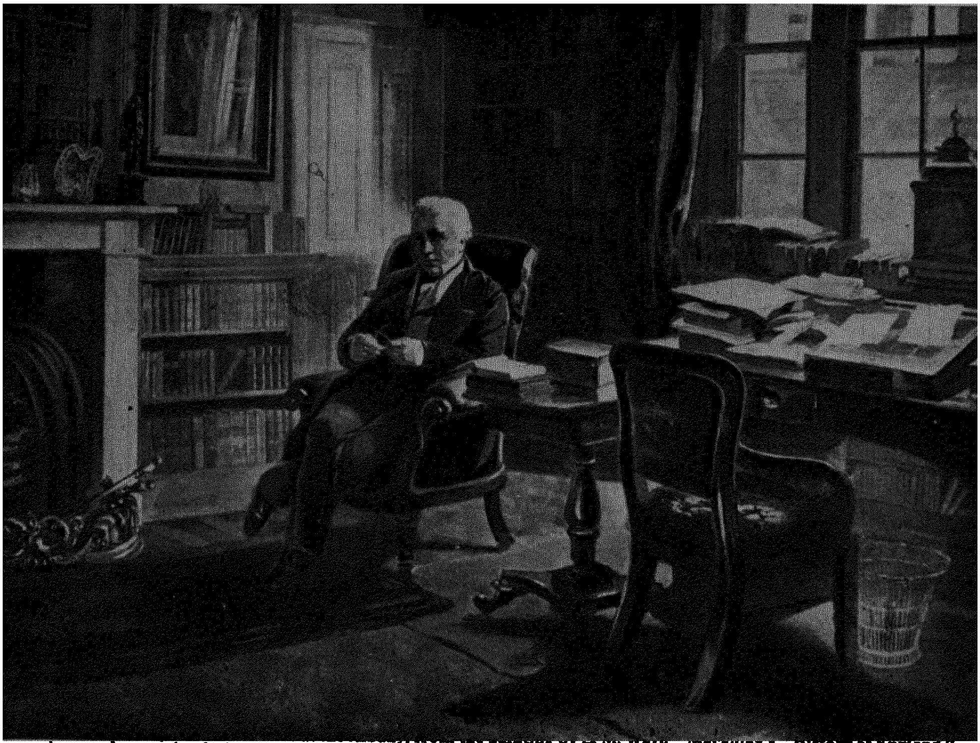
Robert Burns composing "The Cottar's Saturday Night," depicting the week's close in a hard-working household, after the painting by William Allen.



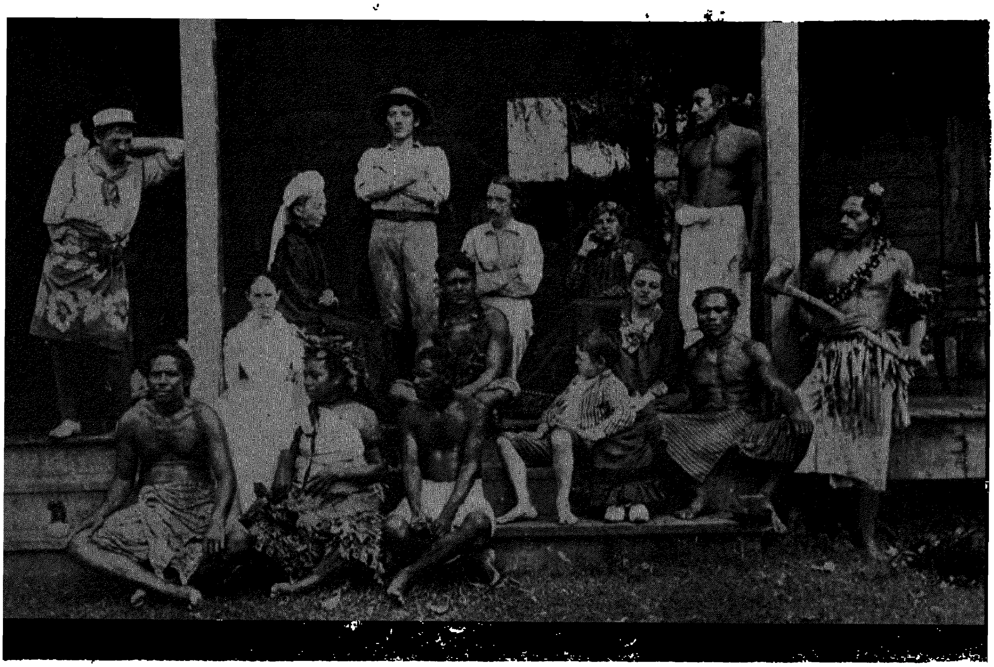
The poet John Keats, from the painting executed at Rome in 1821 by Joseph Severn, now in the National Portrait Gallery, London.



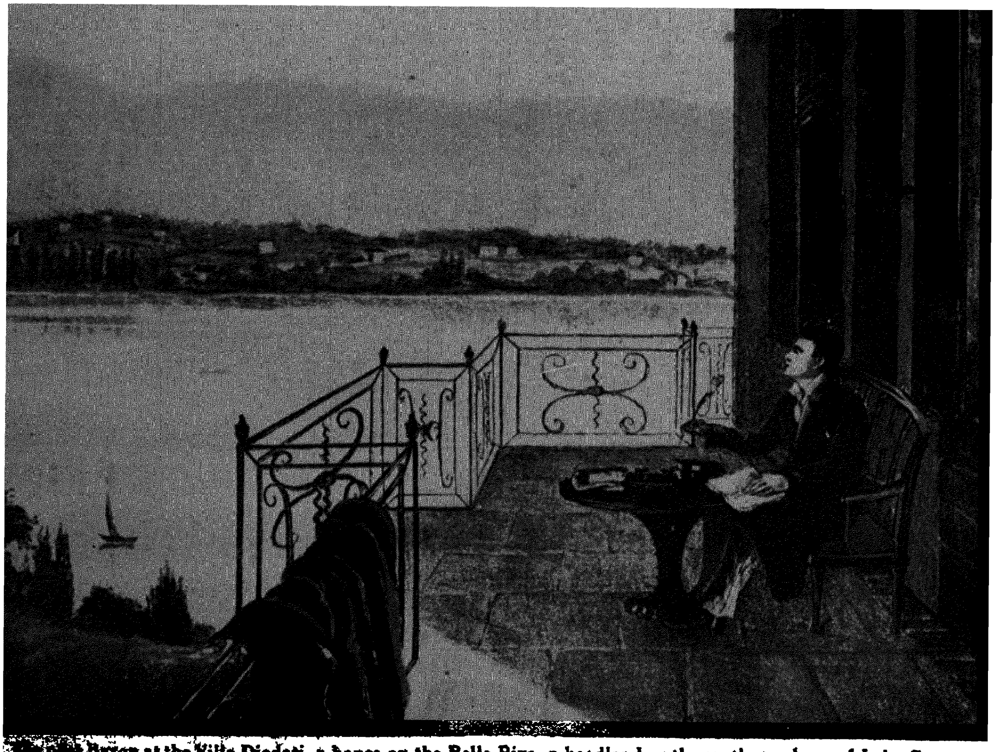
"Laurence Sterne and the Grisette," illustrating an episode in "A Sentimental Journey," from the painting by Gilbert Stuart Newton, R.A.



is a good example of picturesque and lucid narrative. Not less interesting are his historical and literary essays.



Robert Louis Stevenson with his family and household at Vailima, in Samoa, where he spent the last years of his short life surrounded by "a kind of feudal clan of servants and retainers." R. L. S. is seen seated in the centre

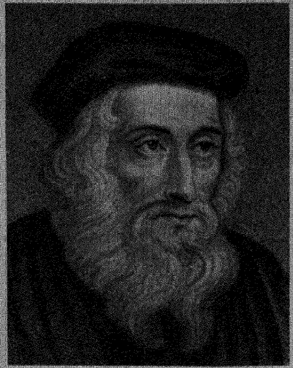


[illegible] Byron at the Villa Diodati, a house on the Belle Rive, a headland on the southern shore of Lake Geneva. Here he met the Shelleys and wrote, in surroundings of romantic beauty, his "Monody on the Death of Sheridan" and the fragment "Darkness."

BUILDING FOR THE GOLDEN AGE

The Gradual Rise of English Drama and how it was Helped by the Church

WE have now to tell the tale of a century or more that does not appear at first sight to be very interesting, of the years between the death of Chaucer and the clear beginning of that great and glorious outburst of magnificent literature in what we can justly call our Golden Age, the age of Spenser and of Shakespeare. During the fifteenth century nothing much seems to happen; with the exception of Malory there are no great writers, and no works of first-rate importance.


John Wiclif (died 1384).

There would appear to be every reason for this sad state of affairs. The long drawn out struggle with France, the Hundred Years' War, drags to its wretched end, and is succeeded by the ferocious and bloodthirsty Wars of the Roses. A poor, half-witted king reigns long over a divided and unhappy land, and for twenty years after his deposition there is no ruler with a strong hand and a determination to give peace and plenty to his people. Not until Henry VII seized the throne in 1485 did the political troubles show signs of ending, and it took him all the twenty-four years of his reign to build up a strong, united England.

That is one half of the story; there is another and a happier part. During the fifteenth century the condition of the people steadily improves; the citizens of the towns, protected and enriched by the strong guilds into which they banded themselves, grew ever more prosperous and powerful. The serfs, or agricultural labourers, had shown by the Peasants' Revolt of 1381 that they, too, claimed to be considered as human beings, and though that rebellion had been put down with great cruelty, its result was that bondage gradually disappeared from England. By 1500 practically no labourer had to remain all his life on the estate on which he was born, to give free labour and a share of his own produce to his lord, or to work without wages.

The great awakening of men's minds which we call the Renaissance was spreading swiftly throughout Europe, and though the new learning which it brought, and the keen spirit of discovery, reached England later than most other countries, some of its effects were plainly to be seen in this land even before Henry Tudor became king. In 1476 or 1477 William Caxton set up the first printing press in England, and was honoured by a visit from Edward IV and his nobles.

Even this date marks an event that happened long after the first breathings of the wind that was to sweep the simple, self-satisfied spirit of the Middle Ages away for ever. A century beforehand, in the days of Chaucer, John Wiclif had been moved to translate the Bible into English and to send forth his "poor priests" to carry the Gospel story throughout the length and breadth of the land. For this he has been called the "morning star of the Reformation"; he is the forerunner in England of that tremendous religious movement which, accompanying the intellectual Renaissance, split the one and undivided Church of Western Europe into two sections, the Roman Catholic and the Protestant.

No historian of the fifteenth century in England can omit the part the Lollards played in teaching the common people, in educating them and stirring in their hearts a sense of dignity and freedom. The effect of their teaching and preaching may not have appeared immediately in literature, but it was profound; they helped to make literature possible because they enabled people to understand and appreciate it.

How the spirit of literature spread and warmed the hearts of ordinary English men and women during this time can well be shown in the story of the rise of English drama. This story begins centuries before the marvellous plays of Shakespeare, perhaps before the Norman Conquest. No one can tell when, and so our tale has no beginning; but we may be quite sure that our Old English forefathers acted in a crude kind of way well-known stories to amuse themselves.

The story of drama properly written and produced begins in the Church. The priests of the Middle Ages, realizing that everybody loves acting, made use of this love to teach their simple, unlettered parishioners Bible stories. They showed " living pictures " in the church, particularly at Easter, when the story of Christ's Death and Resurrection was dramatized, and at Christmas, when the story of His Nativity was presented. Some of the beautiful Nativity plays have been preserved and are still produced to-day at Christmas and other times.

Plays written in Latin

At first only priests acted parts in these mystery plays, as they are called, and the plays were written in Latin. They were performed in the church itself, and sometimes formed part of the service. Then the whole congregation could take part by joining in the hymns which were sung during the play. There is no doubt that the Norman priests who came to England after the Conquest made these mysteries very popular. Soon, not only Bible stories but also stories of saints, or miracle plays, were shown by the priestly actors. One of these, the Play of St. Katherine, was acted at Dunstable in 1100 by the scholars of the monastery there.

As the plays grew in popularity they became more elaborately produced, and spectators increased, so the churchyard was used instead of the church. Evidently people wanted to know the words, for plays were written in English as well as in Latin as early as 1220, about the same time as English poetry once more began to be written.

The priests alone could perform mysteries, for they alone could read the Bible, which was in Latin. But miracle plays were different, and schools, guilds, and other non-priestly associations began to perform them, generally in honour of their patron saints. The clergy did not look favourably upon this practice, but they could not stop it, and they themselves found it necessary to accept outside help with their own performances. In the miracle plays and in the moralities which developed from them comic characters began to appear, and it was felt to be hardly fitting for a priest to take such parts.

All these plays were for the education of the people. In the moralities the audience was taught not by Scripture or the holy lives of the saints, but by allegories or parables in which the characters were not real people but virtues and vices, such as Justice, Mercy, Gluttony, Pride, Vice. Vice was the great " funny man " of the plays ; he was the servant of the Devil, and it was his business to tease his master for the amusement of the audience. Generally at the end of the play he picked him up and carried him off to the lower regions., Naturally, in such circumstances, the Devil himself became a comic character. Because of the Massacre of the Innocents, Herod became the stock " villain."

The example of the priests in giving plays was soon copied, and in the thirteenth century, if not earlier, wandering troupes of professional actors were touring England. The Church strove to forbid them, but it was no use, and when the great guilds, or trading companies, began to organize series of plays in the towns, the control of the drama by the Church was at an end.

The Play Cycles

During the thirteenth, fourteenth, and fifteenth centuries town after town began to have its own cycle of plays. Each guild would have its own play, choosing if possible a Bible incident appropriate to its trade. The shipwrights, for example, would act the story of Noah and the Ark. As there would be thirty or forty or fifty trades in a town, so a town would have thirty or forty or fifty plays. On holidays (holy days, that is, such as All Saints' Day or Corpus Christi Day) these would all be performed, one in each street, and the whole town would turn out to see them. Each company had its own movable stage, a wagon with two stories ; in the lower room the players dressed, in the upper, which was open, they performed the play. When a play was over the wagon would be pulled into the next street and the performance would begin again. So in every street of the town there would be a continuous performance throughout the day.

We still have the manuscripts of four of these cycles or groups, the Chester plays, the Coventry plays, the York plays, and the Towneley plays, which were probably acted at a village near Wakefield. We do not know exactly how old any of these cycles are, but they all belong roughly to the century which is the main subject of this chapter, the fifteenth.

It needed the Renaissance to transform this rough-and-ready, half-religious, half-popular drama into the powerful drama of the Elizabethan Age, but just as the Old English language is the foundation upon which Modern English has been built, so this mediaeval drama is the foundation upon which the greatest drama in the world has been built.

Chronicle Plays and Interludes

The change from mediaeval to modern drama was beginning to become evident by about 1500. People grew rather tired of unreal abstractions such as Justice and Gluttony, and longed for real men and women in their plays. They soon got them; playwrights even in those early days learned to turn out what the public demanded. To Bible history was added other history, and so the chronicle play developed. One of the earliest of these was Bishop Bale's "Kyng Johan," written about 1548, a play which Shakespeare may have seen acted.

Short comic plays called interludes also began to be written. One of the early writers of interludes, John Heywood (about 1497-about 1580), was very famous in his day. His best known work is "The Playe called the foure P P; a new and very merry interlude of a palmer, a pardoner, a potycary, a pedler." The four P's hold a competition to see who can tell the biggest lie; the palmer wins, because he says he has travelled all over Europe and never seen a woman out of temper.

We shall see in a later chapter how Elizabethan drama grew from these earlier forms, and how much it owes to them. At present, let us remember that in the fifteenth and the first half of the sixteenth century, which seem to contain so little literature, all over the country men were taking part in or watching with huge enjoyment miracle plays and moralities, many of which, simple though they are, are by no means unliterary or unpoetical. The best known to people to-day, "Everyman," which was written about 1490, is of its kind a perfect piece of work.

Drama was flourishing. What of poetry? The story is somewhat similar; this is chiefly a time of laying foundations. To tell it we have to go right back again, as we had with drama, to early days before Chaucer. We must do so first in order to explain the great popularity of allegorical poems in the fifteenth century.

An allegory is a story with a hidden meaning. The parables of Jesus Christ are short allegories. For those who do not trouble to find any moral an allegory is simply an interesting tale, but the hope of the story-teller is that people will puzzle over what he has told them and find the moral, or allegorical, meaning. We have seen that many of the early plays were allegories. and indeed the Church in the Middle Ages taught its ignorant, uneducated congregations very largely through allegories. Generally the priests pointed the moral, in case it might be overlooked.

Strange Natural Histories

Preachers and religious writers, many of whom chose verse as their medium of expression, forced allegories out of the queerest material. For instance, they wrote Bestiaria, or natural histories, in which they explained allegorically every bird, beast, and fish, both real and fabulous, in the world. In allegory the whale was the Devil, for sailors, mistaking his broad back for an island, landed on it, and were plunged into the depths and drowned.

Of course, allegory did not remain the property of the preachers and teachers. It became so immensely popular, particularly after the famous French allegorical poem "Le Roman de la Rose," that no self-respecting poet could fail to write one or more allegories, not necessarily for the sake of pointing a moral, though he often did, but because it was so much more interesting, for example, to write allegorically about a royal marriage, as Chaucer did in "The Parliament of Fowls," making all the characters birds. The readers, too, must have been delighted to discover that their prince was like the kingly eagle, and their princess like a falcon.

John Gower, who lived about the same time as Chaucer, was a great allegorist. If Chaucer had not been born, he would have been a great deal more famous than he is, for he could tell a story well, though he was inclined to be lengthy. He wrote equally fluently in three languages, Latin, French and English, and was very popular in his day. Visitors to St. Saviour's Cathedral, Southwark, may see his effigy on his tomb, with the head resting on three enormous stone books representing his three great works, "Vox Clamantis" (Latin), "Speculum Meditantis" (French), and

"Confessio Amantis" (English). The English poem is an allegory of love; Gower, the lover, makes suit to Venus, and is rejected because he is too old.

Chaucer and Gower had many imitators, all of whom wrote allegories and introduced Houses of Fame, Temples of Glass, Courts of Love and the Seven Deadly Sins into their works. To our ideas these minor allegorists are sadly dull; they had nothing of Chaucer's imagination and power of observation; they all wrote about the same things, in much the same language, and introducing similar characters and scenes; they could not handle metre very well, and they were appallingly long.

John Lydgate's long Poem

Only very occasionally did they manage to reach real poetry. That is why we remember them, and because they were preparing the way for far greater poets. Yet John Lydgate (about 1370-1451) had a tremendous reputation, and for two centuries after his death was thought of quite as highly as Chaucer. His fault was that he never could stop writing. His longest poem, "The Falls of Princes," is 7,000 verses long! To his praise be it said that in an age when every writer was experimenting with what, for literature at least, was a new language, he got the right word oftener than most people.

Thomas Occleve or Hoccleve (about-1370-about 1450) was a modest poet.

> Fader Chaucer fayne wolde han me taught,
> But I was dul and learned lite or naught,

he says, and nobody will seriously disagree with him. He wrote no allegory; he is the one poet of the time who did not. Otherwise he is quite typical, he poured out sermons in verse, balades, complaints to the king—in the hope of getting a pension—and moral tales.

Stephen Hawes (about 1474-about 1523), who was Court poet for twenty years or so, called Lydgate his master, so we can hardly expect him to be specially interesting. His chief work was a long allegory called "The Passetyme of Pleasure," the chief purpose of which was to show the education of a knight. Hawes, who it is said could repeat by heart nearly all the poetry in the English language, was very popular.

However dull and prosy these men and others were, we must never forget that they helped to make it possible for Spenser to write that marvellous allegorical poem, "The Faerie Queene." For success in literature, as in all other things, comes only after endless and persistent practice, but the practice need not be done by one man. So it is that the great writer who astonishes us with his genius is always in debt to the humble and often forgotten writers from whose works he learned, if he learned nothing else, what mistakes to avoid.

New Notes in Poetry

Alexander Barclay (about 1476-1552), for instance, although he was no great writer, introduced the pastoral to English literature when he wrote "Certayne Ecloges." Pastoral poems, or eclogues, were very popular in classical Rome, and were common in Italy, France, and Spain long before English writers took to them. All the persons are shepherds and shepherdesses, with names such as Phoebe, Phyllis, Colin, and Corydon, and all the action takes place in sunny meadows on which sheep browse contentedly. The characters play the pipes and dance, talk philosophy and politics, and never seem to pay much attention to their sheep. We shall see later what Spenser and Milton could make of the pastoral.

Barclay's "Ship of Fools," too, though an allegory, strikes a new and more modern note. The characters are not abstractions, but typical foolish men of the world, including a corrupt judge and a greedy miser. The way in which he holds them up to ridicule is called satire, and the fact that we are getting to satire shows that English literature is growing up.

A greater poet than Barclay is John Skelton (about 1460-1529), a priest whose sharp tongue and over-keen wit ruined his chances in the Church, and nearly cost him his life. His poems are bitterly satirical, and he could abuse his enemies better than any man of his time. "Why come ye not to Court?" is a fierce criticism of Cardinal Wolsey, who

> Regardeth lords
> Not more than potsherds;
> He is in such elation
> Of his exaltation,
> And the supportation,
> Of our sovereign lord,
> That, God to record,
> He ruleth all at will
> Without reason or skill.

This rapid, jingling metre was Skelton's own invention, and was called after him Skeltonics. Among his more sober works he wrote quite a good morality play called "Magnificence."

Far better than the English poets during this period were the Scottish. Of these the first is a king, James I of Scotland, who was captured by the English in 1405 and kept captive for nineteen years. One day in 1422 he saw from out a window a lady walking in the garden, fell in love with her, and wrote to the memory of that vision "The Kingis Quair" or King's Book, some parts of which are as good as Chaucer at his best. His story had a happy ending, for two years later he married the lady of his poem, Joan Beaufort, and returned to Scotland. It was James who invented the stanza form called rhyme royal.

Robert Henryson (about 1430-about 1506) was a schoolmaster at Dunfermline, who wrote in rhyme royal by far the best English version of Aesop's Fables. He penned also a delicious little pastoral called "Robene and Makyne," a really charming and freshly written poem.

It is the neat, sure, vigorous, and cleanly way in which these Scottish poets write that makes their verse so much better than the efforts of their long-winded English contemporaries, with their clumsy, sprawling verses. This is particularly true of William Dunbar (about 1465-about 1530), a wandering friar who became official Court poet to James IV of Scotland. He probably wrote more than ninety poems altogether, including "The Thrissill and the Rois" (The Thistle and the Rose), an allegory celebrating the marriage of James IV of Scotland and Margaret, daughter of Henry VII of England, "The Dance of the Sevin Deidly Synnis"—no poet ever did it better or more powerfully—and a short but finely written "Lament for the Makaris" (makers, i.e. poets), bewailing the deaths of the poets whose works he loved.

First Translator of Virgil's Aeneid

Gawin Douglas (about 1474-1522), Bishop of Dunkeld, was a careful and scholarly poet, not so vigorous and original as Dunbar, but worthy of remembrance because he did the first translation of Virgil's Aeneid into English verse, and did it remarkably well. He also wrote three original poems, "The Palice of Honour," "King Hart," and "Conscience."

Among other Scottish poets we must mention Blind Harry, or Henry the Minstrel, who wrote in long rhyming couplets the story of that great national hero, William Wallace. Blind Harry was a wandering minstrel, or ballad maker, and his great poem is in ballad form.

Ballads, the Poetry of the People

We cannot leave this period of apparent dullness without mention of the ballads, for they show, as does the story of the drama, how poetry was alive in the hearts of the common people. We have told how these poems grew into being; in the fifteenth century they ripened into perfection. It is the golden age of the ballad.

Many books have been written about the English ballads—or, to speak more correctly, the English-Scottish ballads, for many of the finest come from the Border country—but their wonder is not yet exhausted. One cause for amazement is that any of these have been preserved. Few were ever printed, and those few in bad type and on sheets of poor paper. It is to the loving labours of men like Bishop Percy of Dromore, who in 1765 published a famous collection of them, the "Reliques of English Poetry," that we owe their preservation.

These rough and simple narrative poems, telling of deadly fights between Scottish and English in "The Battle of Otterburne," "Chevy Chase," and "The Death of Douglas," of sad and sorrowful happenings in times of peace in "Sir Patrick Spens," of war in "The Twa Corbies," and of love between man and maid in "The Nut Brown Maid," were to have a tremendous effect on English literature in the years to come.

Ballads are the poetry of the common people, and anyone who wishes to peer into the hearts and minds of the ordinary Englishmen and Scotsmen of the fifteenth century should read them, re-read them, and read them again. There is no poetry in English quite like them, and no poet of modern days has imitated them successfully, though many have tried. They tell their story quickly and naturally, and yet, with their refrains and their constant repetitions of stock phrases, they give no impression of hurry:

> Our King has written a braid letter,
>   And sealed it with his hand,
> And sent it to Sir Patrick Spens,
>   Was walking on the strand.
>
> To Noroway, to Noroway;
>   To Noroway o'er the faem;
> The King's daughter of Noroway,
>   'Tis thou maun bring her hame!

Some time towards the end of the fourteenth century a book arrived in England from Liége which stated in its preface that its author was Jehan de Mandeville, an English knight born at St. Albans, who had crossed the sea on Michaelmas Day, 1322, and had often been to Jerusalem. He had seen every country in the world, and the book contained an account of his travels, though its main purpose was to serve as a guide to the Holy City. "Ye shall understand," the author explains, "that I have put this book out of Latin into French, and translated it again out of French into English, that every man of my nation may understand it."

Then follows the most marvellous collection of travel tales in the world, all very simply told with great dignity. Hundreds of stories, possible and impossible, but chiefly the latter, are crammed into this charming book. Sir John saw in Ethiopia people "that have but one foot, and they grow so fast that it is a marvel, and the foot is so large that it shadoweth all the body against the sun when they will lie and rest them."

Elsewhere he saw people with no heads, whose eyes were in their shoulders, people with no features, and people with ears reaching down to their feet. He saw trees that bore apples of Paradise marked with a cross, and trees bearing fruit containing little animals like lambs. He knows all about the phoenix, the solitary bird of Arabia that lived for five hundred years, then burnt itself to ashes from which its successor arose, all about how the first red and white roses grew, all about Prester John, the Great Cham, the earthly paradise, the valley of devils, and a thousand and one other marvels. There is no end to the wonders he has seen.

His early readers believed all his tales, and loved the book. Alas! we know now that Sir John never existed, that the author was not an Englishman, that the French version was written first, not the Latin, and that he had never visited the places he described so readily. He got his information from other books and by the exercise of a vivid imagination, "whether from an inordinate love of lying or to please the Bretons" and other people. But he made a marvellously good story of it; no one would guess from the book itself that the author was a fraud. For the rest, he wrote delightfully clear and musical English, and he "wrote like a gentleman."

John Wiclif (died 1384) deserves more than a mention in our story, for he wrote a large number of tracts and pamphlets in English, in addition to his most important work, the translation of the Bible, about which we shall read more in a later chapter. Wiclif wrote in short, clear vigorous sentences and very much to the point.

Reginald Peacock (1395-1460) was a strong opponent of Wiclif's views, which the latter's followers, the Lollards, were spreading through the country. He wrote two books in English opposing these views, and it is because of these that we give him a place here, for any other writer would have used Latin for such works. Even Wiclif did.

John Fisher (1459-1535), Bishop of Rochester, was beheaded because he refused to acknowledge Henry VIII as head of the Church. His chief works are in Latin, but his sermons, some tracts, and a long book on the Psalms are in English. He is important in our story because he is an orator; he uses deliberately elaborate, rhetorical language, seeking to impress his hearers and readers by the magnificence and beauty of his style. There will be many who will follow his example.

On the other hand, Hugh Latimer (died 1555), Bishop of Worcester, favoured the plain, blunt, homely style. He spoke as man to man, not picking and choosing his phrases. His sermons are models of clear, straightforward explanation and teaching.

Though this chapter ends here, it must not be supposed that there is any break in the story. Some writers who will be mentioned later might quite well have been included in it. Literature's golden story is never in real life divided into chapters; it flows on and on without a break, and no one can tell when it begins to ebb or to flow. But it does ebb and flow, and sometimes appears without warning to break forth into a grand glory of magnificence. We shall soon be reading of the great age of Elizabeth and the world-famous literature which Marlowe, Spenser, Shakespeare, Ben Jonson, Bacon, and many another helped to create. In this chapter and the two chapters immediately following we read of the men who made Shakespeare and his fellow giants possible. Let us not despise them. The rich beauty of the stately mansion is upheld by the foundations at which no one ever looks.

A PEACEFUL REVOLUTION AT THE SIGN OF THE "RED PALE" IN WESTMINSTER

LITERATURE FOR EVERY HOME

What We Owe to William Caxton, England's First Printer

A supposed portrait of William Caxton (about 1422-1491).

ABOUT the year 1422 there was born in the sunny Weald of Kent a boy whose name was destined to become famous all over the English-speaking world. Yet if he could come to life to-day he would probably be amazed to find that anyone remembers him.

He never became a great statesman or soldier, inventor, poet, musician or painter; he remained all his life a clever, hard-working business man with a taste for good literature and a happy knack of making good translations from Latin or French into English. True, in middle life he gave up the trade at which he had worked successfully for over thirty years and embarked on another, but what of that? Many a man has done the same without making himself known to history. His case, however, was the exception, and because William Caxton brought the first printing press to England, every boy and girl in this country to-day has heard his name.

Caxton as an Apprentice

He probably had a pleasant boyhood, for his parents were quite well-to-do. When he was sixteen they bound him apprentice to Mr. Robert Large, a rich silk mercer, who next year became Lord Mayor of London. With him he evidently got on quite well, for when Large died three years after young Caxton had joined him, he left a small sum of money to his apprentice.

William appears to have been sent to Bruges, the centre of the trade between England and the Continent, to finish his apprenticeship. Evidently he liked the place, perhaps because of the splendid libraries it contained, and he set up in business there on his own account. His business prospered and he became a man of note; within twenty years he was governor of the Company of Merchant Adventurers in the Low Countries, an association of traders and merchants very largely run by the Mercers' Company, to which he belonged. He was also employed several times by the English Government in attempts to negotiate commercial treaties.

It was while Caxton was thus employed that he became acquainted with Margaret of York, sister of Edward IV, who had married Charles the Bold, Duke of Burgundy. Through her, in all probability, came the great adventure of his life that was to make his name honoured among Englishmen. He had started some time in the spring of 1469 a translation of a French romance, but had given it up. Margaret asked him to finish it, and at her desire he did so. But he did not like the work of copying it, of making a book of it. He says in the preface to the printed edition:

> For as much as in the writing of the same my pen is worn, my hand weary and not steadfast, mine eyes dimmed with over much looking on the white paper, and my courage not so prone and ready to labour as it hath been, and that age creepeth on me daily and feebleth all the body, and also because I have promised to divers gentleman and to my friends to address to them as hastily as I might the said book, therefore I have practised and learned at my great charge and dispense to ordain this said book in print after the manner and form as ye may see, and is not written with pen and ink as other books be, to the end that every man may have them at once, for all the books of this story here emprynted as ye see were begun in one day and also finished in one.

From Pen to Printing Press

That was why he printed "The Recuyell of the Historyes of Troye." No doubt he loved making translations from French, though he did not like them to be too long; but he hated the boredom of making laborious copies of his translations, and no doubt also he considered the time thus spent to be wasted. He had heard of this wonderful new invention which so enormously quickened the production of books, and as he had promised "divers gentlemen" and his friends that they should have copies of the "Recuyell" as quickly as he could turn them out he determined to learn all about it, and if possible to save his time and energy. The experiment was successful beyond all measure. He discovered he could do more in a day with his printing press than in many weary months with his pen.

For some little time longer Caxton remained in Bruges, probably learning thoroughly his new trade, for he became partner with another printer, Colard Mansion. He translated another book, " The Game and Playe of Chesse," this time from the Latin ; and again the wonderful machine turned out for him enough copies to satisfy all demands.

William Caxton was a keen business man, and soon he began to see great possibilities in the printing press, so in 1476 we find him busy packing up his machines and addressing them to England. There was no printer in his native country, and he could see a fortune awaiting him there.

By September he had set up in business, at the sign of the " Red Pale " in Westminster, in a little enclosure which contained a chapel and some almshouses, and had hung out an advertisement to say he could provide printed matter " good chepe." He began by printing small pamphlets, service books, sermons for the use of the clergy, and so on, just the sort of stuff that would sell easily.

He soon got beyond these efforts, for he loved literature as well as good business. The first book of literature he printed in England, so far as we know, was " The Dictes and Sayings of the Philosophers," which Lord Rivers had translated and Caxton himself had revised before putting through the press. Then he quickly printed " The Canterbury Tales " and other works of Chaucer, because " that worshipful man . . . ought eternally to be remembered."

Caxton's Translations

He put in print the works of Gower and Lydgate. History, too, received his attention, and the " Chronicle " of Brut and the " Polycronicon " (written by Ralph Higden and rewritten in prose by John of Trevisa) were issued from his press. The latter work Caxton revised and brought up to date. For the nobles and courtiers he provided " joyous and pleasant histories of chivalry," and thus it was that he printed Malory's " Morte d' Arthur," because " many noble and divers gentlemen . . . demanded many and often times wherefore I have not made and imprinted the noble history of the 'San Graal.' " All the time he was diligently translating into English works from Latin and French, encouraged by the general and kindly interest that was taken in his work. Of the 18,000 pages which he printed, more than a quarter were of translations he had made. The most ambitious of these was " The Golden Legend," which he illustrated with seventy woodcuts. This work made him " half desperate," but the Earl of Arundel encouraged him with presents to finish it. The Earl of Worcester, Earl Rivers, the Queen's brothers, Margaret, Countess of Richmond, and Edward IV and Richard III were among his patrons. He was still busily translating until just before he died in 1491.

Books for All

Caxton's work was continued by the men who had trained under him, Wynkyn de Worde, who set up a shop in Fleet Street, the great newspaper thoroughfare of to-day, Robert Copland and others, and printing presses multiplied in the land.

It is impossible to overestimate the effects of the introduction of printing. Before Caxton came to England, books were scarce and costly, and every one took months to prepare. Few people could afford them, and those few could not get as many as they wanted. The printing press brought books within the reach almost of the very poorest.

But that was not the only result. The introduction of printing made possible a standard English, an English that everyone could use, whatever his native dialect. Caxton had rare trouble to decide what sort of English to use. " Some honest and great clerks," he writes, " have been with me and desired me to write the most curious terms I could find, while some gentlemen of late blamed me, saying that in my translations I had over many curious terms which could not be understood of common people, and desired me to use old and homely terms in my translations." He himself favoured " the common terms " in daily use ; but even here there were great difficulties, for every county had its dialect, and before the printing press arrived every writer wrote in his particular dialect.

As soon as books began to be common and to be widely used, it was felt that they should be printed in an English which everyone could understand. The same applied to spelling. Before Caxton's time there was no standard of spelling. Everyone spelt as he liked, but this was no longer possible when books multiplied , people would no longer put up with many varieties of spellings of every word.

THE GLORIOUS RENAISSANCE

The New Learning that was Based on the Old Classics.

Sir Thomas More (1478-1535).

NOW we come to the sixteenth century, a century which is to prove one of the most eventful in English history, and not less so in literature than in anything else. From start to finish it is a wonderful time, an adventurous, joyous, sorrowful, bewildering time. All the ideas in which men have believed firmly for centuries seem to be undermined; daily, age-old faiths collapse, and no one knows what will happen next.

The very heavens and earth are changed. No longer are they the snug little safely-bounded places everybody thought they were. Everyone in the Middle Ages *knew* that the earth was flat—had not a monk crawled to the edge and looked over?—and that Heaven covered it like a bowl. Everyone knew that the sun was created specially for the lighting and heating of this earth, around which it moved obediently. Now Copernicus the Dane and Galileo the Italian have roughly upset all those notions. The earth, they say, is a globe; it is ever so much smaller than the sun, and revolves around it. Far from being the centre of the universe, it is quite an insignificant planet.

While the earth is shown to be tiny in comparison with the sun, in itself it is growing immensely bigger. The geographical discoveries of the last years of the fifteenth century have revolutionized all ideas of the size of the world. In 1486 a Portuguese sailor had ventured his ship down the coast of Africa till he came to a point where he could turn east, and something of the enormous size of Africa was revealed. Twelve years later Vasco da Gama pushed along the same route and discovered the sea way to India round the Cape of Good Hope, a route that was to be used until nineteenth century engineers cut the Suez Canal. In 1492 Columbus amazed the world by sailing across the Atlantic and finding land. He thought at first he had come to India, but speedily it was shown that this was no part of a country already known but a hitherto undreamed of continent. Five years later Cabot sailed from Bristol and set foot in Newfoundland.

Scientists have discovered new heavens, sailors are discovering new lands and new seas. No less are the discoveries of scholars during these fateful years. They too have been sailing into new worlds, worlds of the mind, and their delight at their discoveries has aroused an enthusiasm for learning never before experienced in Europe. A happy accident has brought back "the glory that was Greece, and the grandeur that was Rome," and everywhere the magnificent literatures of those two mighty peoples are being read and studied and delighted in.

In 1453 the Turks besieged and took Constantinople. In that city, the capital for a thousand years of the eastern Roman Empire, the learning and literature of ancient days had been preserved, and from there came hurrying in flight to Italy the learned men, bearing with them the mighty works of Plato and other Greek philosophers, of Homer and other Greek poets, of the Greek dramatists, of the historians Thucydides and Herodotus, of the writers of classical Rome, all of whom, save Virgil, because it was supposed he had prophesied Christ's coming, had been forgotten in western Europe for ten hundred years. Last, but by no means least, the scholars from Constantinople brought with them the New Testament written in the original Greek.

They found men everywhere ready to receive this "new" learning. The Italians seized upon it eagerly; in Italy there had already been a great revival of interest in literature, painting, sculpture, and music. The cities of northern Italy became centres for the study of the classics, and from all over Europe, even from far-distant England—a three to six months' journey in those days—came scholars to Padua, to Bologna, to Florence. Returning, they spread the knowledge they had acquired over the length and breadth of the Continent.

Nor was this all. The authority of the one and undivided Church was questioned. In 1517, the year in which Magellan set out to sail round the world, the blow fell that was to split it in two. A monk named Martin Luther nailed a paper to the door of a church in Wittenberg, and the Reformation had begun. Henceforth there were to be in Europe Roman Catholics and Protestants, and for a century and a half bitter persecutions and cruel religious wars.

The Renaissance in England

Perhaps you are wondering what all this has to do with the story of literature in England. It has everything to do with it. The literature of a country or of an age is a clear mirror in which we may see reflected the life of that country or of that age. No literature can be understood without a knowledge of history. Why is it that some parts of Shakespeare's plays—the most living, real, human plays in the world—seem dull and meaningless to some readers? Very largely because the latter know nothing of the England in which Shakespeare lived.

We are now studying a time in which some of the most momentous changes in history took place. Nothing less than a world, the modern world in which we live, is being born. The ignorance, the simple faith, the chivalry and the cruelty of the Middle Ages are disappearing; an era of discovery, of science and invention, of critical and accurate knowledge, is taking its place. We who live in the twentieth century are reaping some of the harvest sprung from the seed sown in those far-off days.

England is the westernmost of all the states of Europe, and the Renaissance reached it very late. Not until the sixteenth century can this country be said to be much affected by it. Caxton's printing press, though in itself a sign of the coming revolution, at first scattered through the land the poetry and romances of the Middle Ages, not the new learning that was thrilling lands across the sea. But by the time of the accession of Henry VIII, himself a friend of the new learning, the Renaissance may be said to have rooted itself in England, and in 1516 appears the first great work inspired by it, the "Utopia" of Sir Thomas More.

Although it was written in Latin, and was not translated into English until sixteen years after its author's death, "Utopia" is a landmark in English literature. Sir Thomas More's words were Latin, but his thoughts were English; and they were the first clear, magnificent thoughts of a new England. No such book had ever been written before. Let us linger awhile over the story of "Utopia," the island of Nowhere, for it is one of the most remarkable ever produced.

"Utopia" is the ideal state. Under pretence of relating a story told to him by Ralph Hythloday, a sailor returned from far-off voyages of discovery, Sir Thomas More builds up a complete account of a country justly ruled, perfectly managed, and inhabited by happy, contented, and industrious people. How different from the England he knew, and of which he tells in his book! All the time we are reading "Utopia" we feel that the author has a wonderful picture in his mind of a fairer, more beautiful, more cleanly England—and especially London—in which all the evils due to men's greed and love of power and riches should be swept away. More is our first great social reformer, the first man to imagine a time when slums and poverty shall be ended, when all men shall work happily and eagerly in beautiful surroundings, with abundance of comforts and leisure, when they shall appreciate learning and education and the dignity of man.

What he preached he practised. His home in Chelsea was a Utopia in little. Erasmus, the great Dutch scholar, wrote of him:

> There is not any man living so affectionate to his children as he, and he loveth his old wife as if she were a girl of fifteen. Such is the excellence of his disposition that whatever happeneth that could not be helped, he is as cheerful and as well pleased as though the best thing possible had been done . . . The house at Chelsea is a veritable school of Christian religion. In it is none, man or woman, but readeth or studieth the liberal arts, yet is their chief care piety. There is never any seen idle; the head of the house governs it, not by a lofty carriage and oft rebukes, but by gentleness and amiable manners. Every member is busy in his place performing his duties with alacrity, nor is sober mirth wanting.

The Bible in English

Unhappily the religious troubles that followed hard upon the new learning, which were indeed the result of it, destroyed Sir Thomas More. Henry VIII, unable to secure from the Pope a divorce from Katharine of Aragon, declared himself head of the Church in England and renounced the authority of the Pope. More, though a devoted disciple of the new learning, clung to the old way in religion, and the king, though his personal friend, had him executed in 1535 for refusing to acknowledge the Act of Supremacy.

Yet this same deed of Henry VIII, this assumption by him of headship of the English Church which brought about More's death, was the direct cause of what has truly been called "by far the most important literary fact of the reign of Henry VIII." This was the English Bible, which, in the same year as More was executed, was "set forth with the Kynge's most gracious licence."

The story of our Bible is an almost incredible one, and will be told at length in another chapter. Suffice to say now that when in 1533 Henry VIII decreed that the Bible should be published in English, the work of editing it was given to Miles Coverdale, and that the translations he collected and revised had been done by William Tyndale, who in the year that the completed work appeared was executed as a heretic on the Continent. We shall see later what a romance of lifelong devotion and suffering and tragedy the life of Tyndale was, and how much the Authorised Version of 1611, the "grandest monument of English prose," as it has been called, owed to the vigour and directness of Tyndale's writing and the smoothness and sweetness of Coverdale's.

A copy of the Bible was placed in every church in England, and very soon it was by far the most read book in the country, a circumstance which was to have untold effect upon our literature. It was followed in 1549 by the Book of Common Prayer, prepared under the direction of Archbishop Cranmer. Except the Bible, there is no finer English prose to be found than in the Book of Common Prayer.

English Versions of the Classics

Two such publications as the 1535 Bible, which was speedily followed by other versions, and the Book of Common Prayer would make any half century notable in the history of a literature, but there were not wanting many other signs to show that English prose was developing rapidly and on very sound lines. The work of the translators alone is proof positive. During the years between about 1500 and 1579 a great number of industrious men set to work to produce English versions of the classics, and though many of their efforts may not have reached a very high literary standard, they must be remembered because they provided abundance of readable material from which the greater writers of the next half century drew, and also because they were producing English prose, and thus proving in how many ways it could be used, at a time when many distinguished men were afraid of their native language and were writing in Latin.

Lord Berners and the Translators

The most illustrious name is that of John Bourchier, Lord Berners, who made his translations from mediaeval, not classical, sources. About 1520, being so desired by Henry VIII, he translated into English the "Chronicles of England, France, Spain, Portugal, Scotland, Brittany, Flanders, and other places adjoining," written by that most refreshing and chatty person Jean Froissart in the fourteenth century. Lord Berners delighted in history of all kinds, and no doubt found the task a pleasant relief from thinking on the debts with which he was bothered all his life. He pretends to no great learning, and says he has no skill in rhetoric, for which we can be devoutly thankful, for he was content to turn Froissart's simple, old-fashioned French into simple, old-fashioned English. Later he translated the romance of "Huon of Bordeaux," and "The History of the most noble and valiant Knight Arthur of Little Britain," apologizing for the "many impossibilities" of the latter. It is by his version of Froissart that he has remained known to us ; this book is read eagerly to-day by many people, and in its time had a very great influence on the writing of history in England.

The eager students of the new learning, as we have noted, were inclined to be rather afraid of writing in English. Sir Thomas More wrote "Utopia" in Latin, though he did an excellent little history of the reigns of Edward V and Richard III in good, clear English. Many years later, in the seventeenth century, Francis Bacon still thought it best to compile his great scientific work in Latin, the universal language of scholars throughout Europe. The general attitude of learned men in England at this time was very well expressed by one of them who said that in the Latin and Greek tongues everything had been done so well that it was no good trying to improve on it. So it is not at all surprising to find Roger Ascham, a scholar of no mean order, who for some time was tutor to Princess, afterwards Queen, Elizabeth, apologizing for writing in English instead of Latin.

Ascham's first important work was "Toxophilus," a book on shooting with the bow and arrow. He says he had "written this Englishe matter in the Englishe tongue for Englishe men," and defends his use of his native tongue by saying that "he ought not to suppose it vile for him to write" English when "the best of the realm think it honest to use" that language.

His other book, "The Scholemaster," is much more famous. This is how it came about. In December, 1563, he was dining in London with Sir William Cecil, who told the company how he had heard that "divers scholars of Eton be run away from the schole for fear of beating." That remark started a lively argument on "Should schoolboys be whipped?" Ascham was the strongest opponent of corporal punishment. Later in the evening a gentleman came to him, told how his schooldays had been ruined by a brutal schoolmaster, asked Ascham to tell him of a good tutor for his boys, and begged him to write a book on "the right order of teaching."

So we got our first treatise on education, written in plain straightforward English. "The Scholemaster" contains a famous argument pleading for kindlier treatment of school children instead of the incessant whipping that was then thought necessary to drive in lessons. and a delightful account of Lady Jane Grey. It contains also a strong defence of English as a fit language in which to express profound and beautiful thoughts. Ascham was proud of his own language, and held it not inferior in possibilities to Latin or Greek.

Rhetoric instead of Logic

The great study of the scholars of the Middle Ages had been logic, the science of reasoning. The Schoolmen, as we call them, argued about anything in heaven or on earth, even upon such subjects as the number of angels that could stand on a pin's point. A most important result of the Renaissance in England was that men began to drop logic and to study rhetoric, the art of using words beautifully and persuasively. This had the strongest effect upon English prose, and we shall see in due course how extraordinary some of the results were.

Meanwhile, let us remember that during the seventy-five years or so that we are considering three English prose styles are developing: the ornate, that loves long words and rich, flowing sentences; the plain, that uses short, sharp sentences and the homeliest and commonest words only; and the middle, which stands between the two. Let us remember, too, that Latin and Greek words are being borrowed wholesale, that the English store of words is increasing daily, and that any and every experiment with our language is considered seriously. There are some writers who are so full of Latin and Greek that they can write only an English that is nothing more or less than Latin in English words, others in their zeal for pure English use no words from the classics at all.

There is much disputing between these classes of writers, as might be expected when rhetoric is the chief study. Thomas Wilson, for example, who wrote about 1553 "The Art of Rhetoric," says men ought "to speak as is commonly received," "to speak plainly and nakedly after the common sort of men in few words," and he complains that "the fine courtier will speak nothing but Chaucer."

Courtly Poetry

It was the correct thing just then at the Court to talk in old-fashioned language, to be full of quotations from Chaucer and Lydgate and Gower, to use nothing but obsolete and antique terms During the sixteenth century in England there was an abundance of such fashions. Some were to have important results, some not; some were very sensible and some very silly. But they nearly all began at the Court of the King or the Queen, and it is to the Court that we must now turn to find out what is happening in the realm of poesy. Says an Elizabethan writer:

> In the latter end of the same King's (Henry VIII) raigne sprong up a new company of courtly makers, of whom Sir Thomas Wyat the elder and Henry Earle of Surrey were the two chieftaines, who having travailed into Italie, and there tasted the sweets and stately measures and stile of the Italian Poesie, as novices newly crept out of the schools of Dante, Arioste, and Petrarch, they greatly polished our rude and homely manner of vulgar poesie, from that it had been before, and for that cause may justly be said the first reformers of our English metre and stile.

The scholars of England had travelled to Italy for knowledge of the classics (though Surrey never did. despite the statement made above); the courtiers travelled thither after them, and found plenty of other things besides the classics to interest them. For long enough in this century Italian fashions in dress and ornament were all the rage at Court, till the Italian-copying Englishman became one of the stock jokes of the day. But our travellers made two discoveries in Italy that were to be of immense importance for English literature; they discovered the Italian story-tellers or novelists, and they discovered the Italian poets, and particularly the lyric poets.

The Influence of Petrarch

The work of Petrarch (1304-1374) in particular was to affect English poetry through and through for many years. Sir Thomas Wyatt and Henry Howard, Earl of Surrey, and a score of other "courtly makers," including King Henry VIII himself, Sir Francis Bryan, Lord Vaux, Nicholas Grimald, and George Boleyn, translated him and imitated him and copied him, and in so doing found themselves and became the founders of modern English lyrical poetry—almost, one might say, of modern English poetry. They left far behind them such relics of the Middle Ages as allegory, sermons in verse, and epic romances of mythical heroes. Love songs they sang; and the love song has remained ever since one of the greatest glories of English poetry. They brought new metres, too, a host of them; and above all we have to thank them for the introduction of the sonnet.

A sonnet is a poem consisting of fourteen ten-syllable lines. There are no other rules, though plenty of regulations might be made about it. The Italian sonnet, as written by Petrarch, consisted of an octave—that is, a first part of eight lines—and a sestet, a second part consisting of six lines. The English form of the sonnet, as it was perfected by Shakespeare, consists of quatrains, or three four-line verses followed by a rhyming couplet. Provided you use no more or less than fourteen lines, you are really free to adopt any arrangement you like.

The sonnet is the most exquisite of all English verse forms. It is to poetry what the miniature is to painting. It is the small, perfect jewel of poesy, and no more magnificent tribute can be paid to English poets than to say that they have excelled in sonnet making. Sir Philip Sidney, Edmund Spenser, William Shakespeare John Milton, and William Wordsworth are but a few of the men whose sonnets are for ever priceless gems in the rich crown of English poetry. Nor is the art of sonnet making dead to-day. On many a war memorial in the land are to be read lines from a sonnet written by Rupert Brooke in 1915, which begins:

> When I am dead, think only this of me,
> That there's some corner of a foreign field
> That is for ever England.

That sonnet is worthy to stand beside the finest ever written by poets of other days.

To Sir Thomas Wyatt (1503-1542) belongs the honour of introducing the sonnet to England. We still have thirty-two of his, twenty-two of which are translated or part-translated from Petrarch. Poor, stiff, awkward things most of them seem to us to be, but we must not despise them. A baby making his first staggering steps across a room does not walk gracefully or easily. Wyatt was in the baby's position; he was making an absolutely new experiment, and there was no one to guide his faltering steps.

Henry Howard, Earl of Surrey (about 1517-1547), very much improved upon Wyatt's efforts at the sonnet, and was the first to write sonnets in the English fashion, three quatrains followed by a couplet. Surrey tried another experiment, too. In "Certain Bokes of Virgiles Aeneis turned into English meter" we get our first English blank verse. Rough and stiff his blank verse seems beside "Marlowe's mighty line" or Shakespeare's or Milton's, but here again we are dealing with the first efforts in an entirely new medium. Nothing can illustrate better the remarkably swift development of English poetry during the sixteenth century than the fact that the pioneers of the sonnet and blank verse made their first attempts about 1540 and that only fifty years later poets were producing sonnets and writing blank verse which have never been excelled in the history of our literature.

Verse of Sterner Make

Numerous indeed were the poets who followed in the wake of Wyatt and Surrey. The songs and sonnets of many of the earlier of them are to be found in "Tottel's Miscellany," the first anthology of Renaissance poetry, which was published in June, 1557. Many another miscellany was to issue from the press in the years that followed, often richly decorated with a high-sounding title, such as the "Paradise of Dainty Devices" (1576) or "The Gorgeous Gallery of Gallant Inventions" (1578), but none equalled in variety or value of contents that of Richard Tottel

Courtly verse-making went on with undiminished vigour in the "spacious days of great Elizabeth," but not all poetry was of the gay type. In 1559 was produced "The Mirror for Magistrates," a collection of stories drawn from English history telling of the tragic fall from power of great personages, which was to serve as a warning to future kings and statesmen. This stately and dignified work, "the most important poem in English literature between Surrey and Spenser," is chiefly remembered because of the "Induction" (introduction) and the first "complaint" (telling of the power and fall of the Duke of Buckingham, Richard III's minister), which were written by Thomas Sackville, Lord Buckhurst (1536-1608), a writer of great power and nobility of thought. Sackville's poetry, which is composed in rhyme royal, shows us a mind intensely serious and sad in its outlook, but rising above all petty things to a grandeur of imagination that has no equal since Chaucer.

George Gascoigne (about 1525-1577) has been credited with more "firsts" than any other man in English literature, including the first regular satire, the first play in English prose, the first modern hymn, and the first critical essay. He could turn his hand to anything, and he did most things well. We are concerned here chiefly with the first regular satire, "The Steel Glass," published in 1576. Gascoigne seems to have been a gay, roistering fellow in his youth, but as he increased in years he grew more serious, and evidently became convinced he must warn others not to follow in his earlier footsteps. So he wrote "The Steel Glass," which cries out against the follies and vices of the times, and contains much sound advice. He wrote it in blank verse, so that his poem brings us one step farther on the way to Shakespeare's supreme poetry.

In 1579 the work of a new poet appeared. Edmund Spenser published "The Shepheardes Calender," and all England realized that a master poet had arisen. We must devote a whole chapter to Spenser because he stands among the select few who are "with Shakespeare": he is one of our very great poets.

In the same year was also published a work in prose which, though now unread save by scholars, was to have a lasting and widespread influence on English writers. This was "Euphues, the Anatomy of Wit," written by John Lyly, a book which was to start a fashion of speech at Court that lasted many years, and to provoke more imitations, and in the end more ridicule, than most other books.

Nor must it be forgotten that in 1579 there appeared Sir Thomas North's translation of Plutarch's "Lives," by far the finest rendering in English of a classical author made in the sixteenth century.

North seems to have exhibited many of the unpractical qualities usually attributed to literary men, though often incorrectly. He was a brother of the second Lord North, and although well provided for, seemed unable to make ends meet. "He is a very honest gentleman," the Earl of Leicester wrote of him, "and hath many good things in him which are drowned only by poverty." North dedicated his "Lives" to Queen Elizabeth, who gave him a pension of £40 a year, and the town of Cambridge also contributed to his purse in 1598 by an annual grant of £20. During the time of Philip II's threatened invasion he served as a soldier.

Although, as we have said before, there are no breaks in literature's golden story, we may safely declare that with the publication of "The Shepheardes Calender" in 1579 the great Elizabethan Age begins. The full chorus of that magnificent outburst of song does not perhaps swell into its loudest harmonies until after the defeat of Philip of Spain's Invincible Armada in 1588; Shakespeare is fifteen, Bacon eighteen, and Ben Jonson about six; but the time is at hand. The days of experimenting and practice are over; "The Shepheardes Calender" sounds the first clear and unmistakable notes of the gorgeous symphony that is to follow.

It has been possible to mention a few only of the exceedingly numerous writers both of prose and poetry who flourished and were popular and admired and imitated during the first three-quarters of the sixteenth century, to indicate only a few outstanding points in a period that has no equal for intricacy and swiftness of development. A whole volume would be required to explain fully all that happened during this time, to tell of all the experiments that were made, to show how classical, Italian, French, German, Spanish and Portuguese influences all played round English literature and assisted to shape the new and magnificent era of writing which was to come. We must leave this age of promise now for the writers whose works are its fulfilment.

SPENSER: THE POET'S POET

The Author of "The Faerie Queene," an unfinished Masterpiece

Edmund Spenser (*about* 1552-1599).

IN the days of Queen Elizabeth no one dreamed of writing the biography of a poet. So, although we know quite a lot about the life of Edmund Spenser, there are big gaps in the story, and any account of him is bound to be incomplete. To the Elizabethans the poetry was what mattered, not the man who wrote it. It would not have occurred to them to write the life of a poet, because in those days poetry was not considered as an occupation to take all a man's time or even his most serious moments. It was a delightful hobby, in which nearly every gentleman indulged.

Least of all would any Elizabethan imagine it to be necessary to find out what we to-day always want to know, how and why a man becomes a poet, and what are the influences that shape him and develop his work. They just took his poetry and gloried in it. Let us, however, from what is known of Spenser's life and from what his poetry can tell us of the man, attempt what none of his contemporaries thought of doing, and see if we can build a miniature biography of Edmund Spenser that shall show us why he became the author of "The Faerie Queene," and a poet who is loved and held in honour as the creator of the most musical, most sweetly beautiful poetry in our literature.

He was probably born in 1552 in London. His father, who came from Lancashire, was a clothmaker, and by no means well off, but, being a free journeyman of the Merchant Taylors' Company, with help from a charity established by Robert Nowell, a rich Lancashire man, sent his two sons, Edmund and John, to the newly-founded Merchant Taylors' School.

This was very fortunate for the future poet. Richard Mulcaster, the headmaster, was a man with ideas on teaching far in advance of his time, and we cannot doubt that it was while under his care that Spenser first began to dream of being one day the great poet all England was waiting and hoping for. We know that he wrote poetry while still at school, for some of it was published in 1569 in an anthology edited by John van der Noodt. It is next to impossible to think that his headmaster did not encourage him in his early efforts, for Mulcaster was above all a pioneer in the teaching of English.

In those days almost every teacher thought that the most useful study for any child was Latin, and few, if any, felt it necessary to teach English. Mulcaster held very different views. "We are directed by nature and propertie," he wrote, "to reade that first which we speake first, and to care for that which we use most, bycause we need it most." He had no patience with those who thought Latin the finer language. "I honour the Latin," he said, "but I love the English," and he had the courage to declare, "I take this present period of our English tung to be the verie height thereof, bycause I find it so excellentlie well fined, both for the bodie of the tung itself and for the customarie writing thereof . . ." So he taught his boys English, and by methods that are to-day becoming popular. He had a strong belief in the value of acting, and every year his scholars performed plays before the Court.

This was just the right man to teach Edmund Spenser, whom we can imagine a rather delicate, sensitive boy passionately fond of reading, and who if he had been set to endless hours of Latin grammar and composition, as was the rule in other schools, might never have stood the strain. The boy got plenty of Latin, for Mulcaster taught that language and also Greek and Hebrew, and so well that Spenser became a learned classical scholar, especially fond of Plato; but we may perhaps think of him as taking most delight in play-acting, in writing boyish sonnets and other verses, and in listening with dreamy enjoyment to the music that every day was played and sung in the Merchant Taylors' School.

In 1569 Spenser went up to Pembroke College, Cambridge, where he remained for seven years. Here he became exceedingly friendly with Gabriel Harvey (about 1550-1631), who was made a Fellow of Pembroke a year after Spenser's arrival, a learned scholar, and one whose lectures on rhetoric drew crowds of eager students. This friendship was to prove lifelong and, in spite of all that has been said against it, to be very valuable.

Gabriel Harvey has often been ridiculed as a conceited, quarrelsome, and stupid pedant, and many people have wondered why it was that Spenser remained so firmly his friend. The answer is that Gabriel Harvey always showed himself a true and faithful friend and adviser to Spenser. He had mistaken ideas at times ; he was one of those (Sir Philip Sidney and Roger Ascham were others) who were leaders in a ridiculous attempt to change the whole fashion of English poetry and to remodel it according to classical rules. He was disappointed in "The Shepheardes Calender" and the first draft of " The Faerie Queene," and said so in candid, friendly fashion ; but he undoubtedly helped Spenser often with good advice, encouraged him as poet and scholar, and assisted him in his career by introducing him to Sir Philip Sidney and the Earl of Leicester.

Spenser's Famous Patron

In those days it was necessary for a poet of humble rank to have a patron, a man of influence to whom he could dedicate his work, and who would take an interest in it. Spenser found a patron after his own heart in Sir Philip Sidney, to whom he dedicated his first important work, " The Shepheardes Calender " (1579). How far the two ever became friends in our sense of the word we cannot tell, but certain it is that Spenser loved Sidney as he loved no other man, and that Sidney, the most brilliant and accomplished courtier and gentleman in England, who at thirty years old had a reputation throughout Europe as soldier, scholar, and skilful diplomatist, greatly admired and respected Spenser. It is fascinating to imagine these two walking together arm in arm in the gardens of Penshurst, Sidney's beautiful home in Kent, arguing on philosophy or reciting to each other verses they had composed. Whatever other influence we omit that went to the making of the author of " The Faerie Queene," we cannot forget the love he bore to Sir Philip Sidney, the hero of his youth and the ideal of his manhood.

The publication of " The Shepheardes Calender " was a big event, and no one knew it better than Spenser. He and his friends took every care that nothing should go wrong. Even the patronage of Sir Philip Sidney was not thought sufficient to ensure the overwhelmingly favourable reception they hoped for. A friend, E. K., wrote a preface in the shape of a long letter to Gabriel Harvey, explaining the design of " this our new Poete " and asking his protection, and also supplied notes on the poem and a glossary of the old-fashioned and dialect words used.

All this careful preparation was wise. " The Shepheardes Calender " was a new thing in English poetry, and a daring poem in more ways than one. At that moment no one quite knew how English poetry was going to develop, whether it was to be influenced chiefly by classical, Italian, or English influences. Spenser threw down the gauntlet boldly ; he declared himself English through and through. Chaucer was his master ; from Chaucer alone had he learnt the art of poetry. He will acknowledge a debt to no one else, " For he of Tityrus his songs did lere (learn)." For Chaucer, to whom the name Tityrus is given in the poem, he had the deepest love and reverence :

> The god of shepheardes Tityrus is dead,
> Who taught me homely, as I can, to make,
> He, whilst he lived, was the soveraigne head
> of shepheardes all . . .
> But if on me some little drops would flowe,
> Of that the spring was in his learned hedde,
> I soone would learne (teach) these woods, to mourne my woe,
> And teache the trees, their trickling tears to shedde.

You will see from the quotation that the poem is a pastoral. There was nothing out of the way in that ; in fact, the form was probably chosen because it was a popular one. But Spenser used the pastoral as it had never been used before. There are twelve poems in " The Shepheardes Calender," one for each month, and he uses in them all sorts of metres. This was quite a new freedom. English metres they are, too, metres learnt from Chaucer and the ballads. His language also is deliberately English ; he is openly challenging those who would Latinize our tongue. " Why, a God's name, may we not have the kingdom of our language ? " he was to exclaim later in a letter to Harvey. In " The Shepheardes Calender " he gave our language its kingdom.

It is a language of his own, for all that. He employs dialect words (this was allowable in pastorals), old-fashioned words, words long since dead, and slang expressions of his own time. He invented words, and thought nothing of cutting off the head or the tail of a word to make it fit his verse. No wonder E. K. supplied a glossary.

The most daring feature of the poem was that in it Spenser openly declared himself the master poet everyone was longing for. Colin Clout, the name under which he appears in his poems, for all his shepherds are real people in disguise, is not only shown to be a better poet than his fellows by the far finer songs he sings, but they all acknowledge his supremacy :

> For never thing on earth so pleaseth me,
> As him to heare, or matter of his deede.

Spenser Goes to Ireland

In " The Shepheardes Calender " Hobbinol (Gabriel Harvey) sings a " lay of fayre Eliza, Queene of Shepheardes all," which lay, he says, was made by Colin Clout. As was only proper, Spenser had paid his tribute to Queen Elizabeth, and as flattering the Queen, especially in verse, was a recognized way of getting a position at Court, he naturally hoped his very popular poem would bring him some preferment.

He did not get quite what he hoped for. In August 1580 he was made private secretary to Arthur, Lord Grey of Wilton (1536-1593), who had just been appointed Lord Deputy of Ireland. For the rest of his life he was to live, not at Court, but in Ireland. We can only be thankful this was so. The wild and mournful beauty of the Irish scenery, the long years of lonely leisure in his home in County Cork, experience of the Irish mind, which is for ever hovering o'er the realm of faery, and insight into the terrible realities of a land torn by civil war, fiercely unhappy, rebellious—without these " The Faerie Queene " could never have become the work of haunting loveliness that it is.

He cannot have really understood Lord Grey. For two years he was the close companion of this man, most terrible of all Deputies of Ireland, the history of whose term of office there reads to us like a record of savage butchery. Yet Spenser declared he was " most gentle, affable, loving and temperate," and that it was " the necessitye of that present state of thinges enforced him to that violence, and allmost changed his very naturall disposition."

Ireland, when Spenser reached it, was in a state of unimaginable wretchedness. The native inhabitants, many of whom were living hunted, desperate lives, sheltering in caves and desolate hiding-places, fought savagely among themselves, and united only against the common and loathed foe, the English. Lord Grey—and Spenser agreed with him—saw but one hope ; the Irish must be terrorized into submission. So for two years he ravaged, he burned, he massacred, he executed.

Why was it that Spenser, the gentle, sensitive poet, approved his brutal methods, and honoured and revered the man, so much so that he made of him later Sir Artegall, the knight of Justice, one of the finest and most upright heroes of " The Faerie Queene " ? Simply because they were both Puritans, and went into the conquest of Ireland with the same zeal that the early Crusaders went to recapture Jerusalem. All cruelties, all iniquities were just and holy in the sacred cause of religion. Lord Grey never wavered in what he believed to be his duty to God and his Queen, the extermination of rebellion and Roman Catholicism. So Spenser could see in him the perfect pattern of Justice—" Most sacred vertue she of all the rest "—and could appreciate the dignity and unswerving nobility of a character that seems to us sadly stained by deeds of horror.

" The Faerie Queene "

Spenser remained in Ireland after Lord Grey left, and, after living some years in Dublin, was about 1587 presented with the estate and mansion of Kilcolman in Cork. Here most of " The Faerie Queene " was written. He had begun it long before, perhaps as early as 1579, but now he had leisure in abundance to brood over it, alter and perfect it, and pour into it all the loveliness and passionate desire for beauty that was in him. Here came to visit him in 1589 Sir Walter Ralegh (about 1552-1618), most brilliant, most noble, and most restless of all the adventurous pioneers of the time. Spenser read to him the first three books of " The Faerie Queene," and Ralegh saw at once what a masterpiece it was. Full of enthusiasm, he fired Spenser, and the two set sail for London to publish the poem and reap what honour it might bring them.

Early in the next year (1590) it was published, with a dedication to Queen Elizabeth. " Her most humble servant, Edmund

Spenser," we read, " doth in all humilitie dedicate, present, and consecrate these his labours to live with the eternitie of her fame." Never was dedication more justified. The poem has truly lived " with the eternitie of her fame." " The Faerie Queene " was immediately and tremendously popular, and has remained one of the chiefest glories of our literature.

The Elizabethans loved it. They loved the rich beauty of the descriptions, the sweetly flowing melody of the verse, the endless adventures of the knights and ladies in Fairyland. They loved the double and intricate allegory, so puzzling to us now. Spenser was the most popular favourite of the day, and for a year he enjoyed his triumph to the full. The ladies of the Court idolized him, and in return he wrote for them elegant sonnets and other verses.

Spenser in Despair

But he got no big position at Court, though he tried hard for one. Elizabeth, a thrifty woman, granted him a small pension, and at length he returned to Ireland in disgust, leaving behind him to be published a volume of " Complaints," in which he bewails the neglect of art and the hopelessness of trying to gain recognition at Court.

The first three books of " The Faerie Queene " tell the stories of St. George, the Knight of the Red Cross, or Holiness, and Una, of Sir Guyon, who was Temperance, and Britomart, the maiden knight of Chastity. They were followed in 1596 by the stories of Cambel and Telamond, or Friendship, of Artegall, or Justice, and of Calidore, or Courtesy. After Spenser's death a fragment of a seventh book, of Constancy, was published.

Spenser wrote to Sir Walter Ralegh

> The generall end therefore of all the booke is to fashion a gentleman or noble person in vertuous and gentle discipline . . . I chose the historye of King Arthure, as most fitted for the excellency of his person, being made famous by many men's former words, and I labour to pourtraict in Arthure, before he was king, the image of a brave knight, perfected in the twelve private morall vertues . . the which is the purpose of these first twelve bookes: which if I find to be well accepted, I may perhaps be encouraged, to frame the other part of polliticke vertues in his person, after that hee came to be king.

Spenser's tragic death prevented " The Faerie Queene " from being finished. In October, 1598, the Irish rose in revolt, his home was burnt to the ground, and he and his family had to flee for their lives. In Cork he was given dispatches for England, and reached London just before Christmas. In January he was taken ill and died quite suddenly. There is a legend that he died broken-hearted and starving, having lost a child in the destruction of Kilcolman, but we must be chary of accepting it as true.

Ben Jonson is authority for the statement that Spenser died " for lack of bread." He certainly had a pension of £50 a year and a large number of friends who, if they did not come to his aid with money—perhaps because they were unaware of his necessity—were sufficiently powerful to secure for him the privilege of burial in Westminster Abbey. His funeral was attended by a number of poets, who wrote poems and elegies and flung them into the open grave, together with the pens with which they had composed them. This tribute, although it may not be unique, was an amazing tribute to the author of " The Faerie Queene," and shows with what respect and regard he was held by his contemporaries, who are not necessarily the best judges of a man's labours, though they may be of his moral qualities.

Chaucer, as we have already noted, was buried in that part of Westminster Abbey now known as Poet's Corner, and Spenser's grave is quite close to that of the man for whose work he had the highest possible respect.

" The Poet's Poet "

Spenser planned twelve books of " The Faerie Queene," with perhaps another twelve to follow ; only six were written, so we cannot judge how he would have succeeded with his colossal design. The first two books are fairly straightforward, and so is Book V ; in the other three the double allegory grows very confusing. But it does not matter. Nobody reads Spenser now for his allegory or even for his story. They read him because he is truly, as Charles Lamb said, " the poet's poet," the man who had the most perfect command of English poetic rhythm and metre, the loveliest poetic imagination, the noblest, purest, sweetest mind in our literature.

Though Spenser lived and died a poor man, the treasure of his mind was sufficient to endow English literature with a great narrative poem which is declared by an eminent authority as not far below the greatest of them—namely, Milton's "Paradise Lost."

FORERUNNERS OF SHAKESPEARE

Paving the Way for the Coming of the Master Dramatist of all Time

Thomas Sackville (1536-1608).

WHEN we refer to the Elizabethan Age in literature, we think at once of its drama. Mighty as were its achievements in both poetry and prose, it was mightiest of all in this realm of the theatre, thanks to the colossal genius of Shakespeare. He stands high above his fellows even in that age of genius, and ranks as one of the few supremely gifted writers of the world.

It is almost unbelievable that drama, in the true sense of the word, came into being in England only a few years before the master dramatist was born. Yet such is the case. As we have seen, there had been plays for centuries, but although the word drama is generally used loosely for any sort of play, we must in literature attempt to make some distinction between the two words.

The older mysteries, miracle plays, and moralities were not true drama because, among other reasons, the characters in them were not human characters such as we might meet any day or read of in the pages of history, the scenes represented were not scenes of real life, and the plays had not a properly constructed plot or story. Doubtless many of them were highly dramatic in parts, but that did not make them drama.

They were all, in fact, sermons acted instead of preached. Even the interludes, which included real-life characters and told stories of everyday life, were only half-and-half drama, for most of them contained allegorical characters, and told only a scrap of a story. When we come to the chronicle plays, such as Bale's "Kynge Johan" (1548), we are getting much nearer to the real thing, and a few years later modern drama begins in earnest.

Inspiration from Greece and Rome

Aristotle (384-322 B.C.), the Greek philosopher, laid down rules for the drama, and the writers of Greece and Rome followed them more or less completely. English scholars during the sixteenth century read Aristotle and also the works of the dramatists of Greece and Rome. It became the fashion in schools, at the universities and the Inns of Court, and in noblemen's mansions to produce a classical play on important occasions such as a visit from Elizabeth and her Court. Seneca (3- B.C. A.D. 65), on account of his flowing, rhetorical style, was the favourite tragedian, while Terence (died 159 B.C.) and Plautus (about 160 B.C.) were the comedians chiefly esteemed.

It was only natural that scholars should turn their hands to imitations of their favourite dramatists, and equally to be expected that they should imitate them fairly closely. Our first regular drama is therefore a learned drama, drawing its inspiration from Latin and its rules from Aristotle. But the influence of the plays which had been performed in England for so long made itself felt from the start, and particularly in comedy, the first efforts in which appeared rather earlier than tragedy. Though foreigners always suppose us to be a sad and serious people who cannot take life joyfully, our literature shows plainly that there is no nation with so strong or so distinctive a sense of humour. Our early dramatists divided their plays into five acts and their acts into scenes because the ancients did so, but they very quickly broke one of the first rules of classical drama—namely, that a tragedy must contain no comedy and a comedy no tragedy, because the Englishman loves a joke even in his most serious moments.

The Earliest Comedies

At first, however, comedy and tragedy were kept apart, according to tradition. "Ralph Roister Doister," produced about 1553, has the distinction of being the first regular English comedy, and it is by no means the worst. It was written by Nicholas Udall or Uvedale (died 1556), at one time headmaster of Eton, and tells how a rich and pretty widow is plagued by the attentions of a foolish young man who has just come into a fortune. The suitor is attended everywhere by one Matthew Merygreke, a flatterer who pretends to be his friend, lives on his money, and amuses himself by leading him into all sorts of ridiculous and embarrassing scrapes. Matthew Merygreke, you see, is the old Vice of the moralities, who was for ever teasing his master the Devil; only now he has become a real person. Shakespeare later was to use the same idea when he created Sir Toby Belch and Sir Andrew Aguecheek in "Twelfth Night."

"Gammer Gurton's Needle," another early comedy that has remained famous, is more of the knockabout, hurly-burly type of drama we call farce. Gammer Gurton has been mending her husband's breeches, and has lost her needle. The play consists of a mad, merry search for it. There is not much plot, but there is plenty of rough fun. In the end Hodge, the husband, finds the needle rather painfully by sitting down on it. It has been in his nether garment all the time.

The Gloomy Tragedies

The first English tragedies were very solemn and dignified affairs. Though they abounded in deaths by murder and accident and other tragic events, the long, rhetorical speeches in monotonous blank verse, the high-flown language and the lifelessness of the characters, who all speak exactly alike, make them seem to us very dull. The effect was one of deepest gloom. Such a tragedy was "Gorboduc," later renamed "Ferrex and Porrex," which was acted before Queen Elizabeth in 1561 by the gentlemen of the Inner Temple. It was written by Thomas Sackville, afterwards Lord Buckhurst, the author of the Induction to "The Mirror for Magistrates," and Thomas Norton (1532-1584), and is generally considered the first regular English tragedy. We will pass from these stiff, depressing efforts, though remembering them with honour because they were the first tragedies, to the work of a brilliant group of young men, one of whom possessed the divine spark of genius.

The names of Peele, Greene, Nash, Lodge, Kyd, and Marlowe are usually grouped together under the heading of "The University Wits." There are several reasons for this. They probably all knew each other; they were all University men; with the exception of Lodge they all lived wild and miserable lives and died young; and their plays are far in advance in plot, character drawing, and style of anything that has been written before.

Each in his own way was a pioneer. George Peele (about 1558-about 1597), in "The Arraignment of Paris" and "David and Bethsabe," gave to English blank verse a sweetness and melody it had never had before, and Robert Greene (about 1560-1592) created in his plays women characters finer and more delicately drawn than any save those of Shakespeare. Thomas Kyd or Kid (1558-1594) has a dreadful renown in our literature, for he originated with his "Spanish Tragedy" what is known as "the tragedy of revenge," the type of play that was crammed full of horrible villains and innocent victims, and packed to the brim with murders and suicides and tortures and appearances of ghosts. We can understand something of the superhuman genius of Shakespeare when we remember that he wrote a "tragedy of revenge" which is also one of the most tremendous dramas in the world, "Hamlet, Prince of Denmark." Thomas Nash (1567-1601) is better known as the author of the first work in English which can be called a novel, but he added a note of satire to the drama which had not been there before. He was so successful that he was imprisoned as the result of it. Lodge made his characters live.

All these young dramatists were true Elizabethans, and with them we get the real ring of the Elizabethan drama. They were in their writing "heroic"; they chose subjects which gave them full scope for vigorous action and exciting crises, characters such as conquerors, mighty and impressive monarchs whose deeds startled and amazed; and they treated their doings magnificently, in swelling and magnificent language. We realize when we read them the power and wealth of the English language.

Christopher Marlowe

Far above all his contemporaries towers the mighty figure of Marlowe, who has been called "the first English master of word-music in its grander forms." His story is one of the most astonishing and tragic in this era of astonishing and tragic stories. A man of piercing intellect and supreme poetical imagination, he did more for the drama than any Elizabethan save Shakespeare. At one stroke he transformed English tragedy from a lifeless, monotonous thing to a living, intensely moving and powerful force; he turned English blank verse from a dull succession of ten-syllabled lines into the grandest, most eloquent, most lovely of all

English verse forms: he wrote the most terrible and heart-breaking scene in all English dramatic literature, and the most heartfelt and exquisite address to poetry ever penned; he wrote at least one passage in a play and one poem which for matchless delicacy and sweetness of language have no equals—and he perished when he was only twenty-nine, with a warrant for his arrest on a charge of atheism on the way to meet him.

Marlowe was born at Canterbury in 1564, two months before Shakespeare, and was educated at the King's School there and at Corpus Christi College, Cambridge. After leaving Cambridge he joined the Lord Admiral's Company of Players, and must have begun to write for the stage almost at once.

Like his more famous contemporary Shakespeare, our knowledge of Marlowe the man is of the scantiest. In a day somewhat given to the collection of details of its famous men and women, when almost their every act is chronicled in the newspapers, this is perhaps to be regretted. We love to read about the methods of an author, to know whether he prefers to work when the sun is shining or when the lamp is lit and the curtains drawn, the size of writing paper he uses, the number of words he puts on it in an hour, and a multitude of suchlike intimate facts. We investigate his hobbies, and seek to become acquainted with the details of his daily life. That Marlowe was the son of a shoemaker is beyond doubt, but the suggestion that he fought as a soldier in the countries which are now Holland and Belgium is open to doubt. He was certainly fond of introducing military terms in his plays, but that is no proof that he ever bore arms. St. Paul has many references to the accoutrements of a soldier in his magnificent epistles, but that is no proof that the great apostle to the Gentiles studied the profession of arms. Marlowe may have been merely interested in military matters, as many a landsman is fascinated by ships, sailors, and the sea. Even the circumstances of his death at Deptford have been the subject of prolonged controversy.

In 1587 his first amazing play was produced. This was "Tamburlaine the Great," a drama in two parts of five acts each. Marlowe knew his own value, and the revolution he was creating:

> From jigging veins of riming mother wits
> And such conceits as clownage keeps in pay
> We'll lead you to the stately tent of war,
> Where you shall hear the Scythian Tamburlaine
> Threatening the world with high astounding terms
> And scourging kingdoms with his conquering sword.

Thus opens the play of "Tamburlaine." Marlowe fulfilled his promise. The play is like a torrent, majestic, unbridled, tempestuous. "High astounding terms" describing high astounding deeds crowd one another through its action. In spite of many faults, here is a real tragic figure, the mighty and all-conquering Scythian who rose from a shepherd to be lord of Asia; here is blank verse such as man has never written before, terrific, majestic, eloquent, pleading, entrancing; here is a sublime theme sublimely dealt with.

This play Marlowe followed in the next year with "Dr. Faustus," in which the story of a man who sold his soul to the Devil in return for a few years of unlimited power is told. "How greatly it is all planned!" exclaimed Goethe, the famous German writer, himself the creator of a sublime masterpiece on the same theme.

There is nothing in all literature more terrible than the last agonizing scene when Faustus's time on earth is up and the devils come to claim their prey, nothing more beautiful than the glorious address of Faustus to Helen of Troy, whom he makes Mephistopheles conjure up before him, and which begins:

> Is this the face that launched a thousand ships,
> And burnt the topless towers of Ilium?
> Sweet Helen, make me immortal with a kiss . .

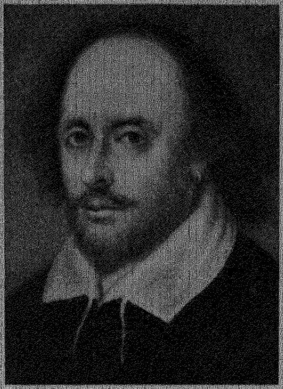
Marlowe wrote two other plays, "The Jew of Malta" and "Edward II." Both rank as masterpieces.

Each of his plays contains a character who dominates the whole action and makes all the other actors insignificant. They are essentially what are known as "one man" plays. Therefore Marlowe is far inferior to Shakespeare, who, in his greater plays, could give every character, however lowly, a distinct personality. But Marlowe died when Shakespeare was still learning his art.

"He is the greatest discoverer, the most daring and inspired pioneer, in all our poetic literature. Before him there was neither genuine blank verse nor a genuine tragedy in our language. After his arrival the way was prepared, the paths were made straight, for Shakespeare." No words could better describe Marlowe's work and his services to English drama.

LITERATURE'S MASTER-MIND

William Shakespeare, the Greatest Writer the World has Known



William Shakespeare (1564-1616).

NO one could possibly read in a lifetime all that has been written about Shakespeare; the amount is too vast. Many learned men have devoted their lives to a study of his works, or even to a study of one aspect of them, such as his poetic gifts, his dramatic power, his philosophy, the grammar of his language or the metre of his verse, the stories out of which he made his plays. Every one of his plays has been written about endlessly; praised, criticized, and discussed over and over again. Whole libraries of books have been written about "Hamlet" alone.

Other scholars have spent laborious years searching for any scrap of evidence that will tell us more about the life of the poet. Innumerable biographies of Shakespeare have been written. The work still goes on; to-day people are engaged as busily as ever studying his plays and his poems, and trying to find out more about the man who wrote them. A few people, amazed at the profoundness of his wisdom and "the proud full sail of his great verse," are still attempting to prove that William Shakespeare never wrote the works that go under his name. Even they agree with all other students of Shakespeare on one point, and that the one which really matters. It is that these plays constitute the most marvellous body of literature ever created by the mind of one man.

What is the secret of it? Why is it that Shakespeare is universally acclaimed as the greatest writer the world has ever known? Why is it that to-day, three hundred years and more since his death, his plays are still performed and read and studied and discussed not in our country alone, but in every civilized land on earth? Can we explain something of this mystery?

We cannot find the key in the story of Shakespeare's life, for in spite of all the long and arduous efforts which have been made, we still know for certain very little about it. He was born, in April 1564, at Stratford-on-Avon, in Henley Street, not earlier than the 23rd and before the 26th, on which day he was baptized in the parish church. His father, John Shakespeare, was at the time a prosperous tradesman, who four years later became mayor. His mother, Mary, was of gentle birth, and belonged to the Arden family. He was the third child, but the eldest son.

We know absolutely nothing about his boyhood, except that his father's family increased and his prosperity declined. In 1582 William Shakespeare was married to Anne Hathaway; in the next year a daughter, Susanna, was born to him, and in 1585 twins, Hamnet and Judith.

The next we know of him is that he is in London and already beginning to be heard of as a dramatist. In 1592 Robert Greene exclaimed bitterly in a book called "A Groatsworth of Wit" that "there is an upstart Crow, beautiful with our feathers, that with his *Tiger's heart wrappt in a player's hide* supposes he is so well able to bumbast out a blanke verse as the best of you; and being an absolute *Johannes factotum* is, in his own conceit, the only Shakescene in a countrie."

The upstart Crow is certainly Shakespeare, and the reference shows that he was not only an actor but also a playwright of some reputation. People do not trouble to attack those who are not making a name for themselves.

From this time on we know rather more about his life, but nothing more than we might learn about any ordinary and successful writer. In the spring of 1593 he published the poem "Venus and Adonis," and a year later the poem "Lucrece," both dedicated to the Earl of Southampton, a brilliant young man who was a favourite at Court. In the winter of 1594 Shakespeare's name appears on the pay-roll of the theatrical company called the Lord Chamberlain's men. In 1596 his son Hamnet died at Stratford-on-Avon and was buried there. By 1597 it is evident that Shakespeare was a man of some wealth, for in that year he bought New Place, one of the biggest houses in the town of his birth. In 1602 he purchased a fairly large estate outside the town, but he continued to live in London till about 1610, when he retired to his native town. He died there on April 23rd, 1616, and was buried in the parish church.

There are many other small items of information we possess about him. He was a shareholder in his theatrical company; he engaged in various lawsuits, and there is evidence that he "was wont to goe into Warwickshire once a year and did commonly in his journey lye at this house (the Crown Tavern) in Oxon, where he was exceedingly respected." We certainly know the house in London in which he was living in 1604. But what does all this tell us about the man who wrote the world's most stupendous plays?

Shakespeare as a Schoolboy

The people with whom he lived give us but little help. Francis Meres, who published "Palladis Tamia," a handbook of literature, in 1598, declared Shakespeare to be "the most excellent in both kinds (that is, comedy and tragedy) for the stage," and calls him "mellifluous and honeytongued." Ben Jonson, the playwright who ranks next to him in this period, said, "I lov'd the man, and do honour his memory (on this side idolatry) as much as any," and declared that "he was indeed honest and of an open and free nature." John Webster, another playwright, admired his "right happy and copious industry." "Gentle" Shakespeare, another contemporary called him. "Had he been not gentle," says Mr. John Masefield, "we should know more about him." People unfortunately talk most about those with whom they can find most fault.

A rich storehouse of legend and tradition has been built round the name of Shakespeare, while, in addition, the evidence which scholars have collected enables us to say that he "probably" did this, and he "possibly" did that, and "may have" done the other. Very likely he went to the free Grammar School at Stratford, and possibly he had to leave early on account of his father's money difficulties. He may have had to leave Stratford hurriedly because he was mixed up in a poaching affair and wrote rude verses about the man who prosecuted him. He may have been at one time or another a butcher, a schoolmaster, a lawyer's clerk, or any other of the many things that have been suggested. He may quite likely have started his theatrical career by holding horses for the gentlemen who came to the play, and been later promoted to call-boy. He probably did act Adam in "As You Like It," and the ghost in "Hamlet." "The Merry Wives of Windsor" may have been written at the express desire of Queen Elizabeth.

These and many other fascinating suppositions about Shakespeare bring us very little nearer to understanding the man or the reasons for his fame. The history of Shakespeare's life, the true history which would show us the keen, eager lover who wrote "Romeo and Juliet," the laughing philosopher who penned "As You Like It," "Twelfth Night," and "Much Ado About Nothing," the sadly troubled, deeply pondering thinker who made out of a crude old revenge play the masterpiece of "Hamlet," the kindly, benevolent, wise old man who wrote "The Tempest," has not been written and never will be.

Between about 1590 and 1612 Shakespeare wrote or had a hand in the writing of some thirty-nine plays. Immense researches have been made to decide exactly when each play was composed; except in a few cases the results are still doubtful, and this difficult question we will leave altogether on one side. Neither will we enter into the almost equally tangled problem of where he got his plots from, but will concentrate upon what he made of the stories and histories, often dull and lifeless, upon which the fire of his genius breathed and which he transformed into dramas that hold the world enthralled.

Played without Scenery

To become well acquainted with Shakespeare's plays is within the power of any boy or girl. Every educated home contains a copy of his works; his plays are studied in many schools, and the better known ones are frequently acted upon the stage. He is not over difficult to read, and his characters explain themselves so clearly—they had to on the stage for which Shakespeare wrote; it was a bare platform with no scenery—that the action can be followed easily. His plots as a rule are simple.

To read Shakespeare, however, or to see him acted upon the stage, is not necessarily to understand him, or even to realize a small fraction of his greatness. It may safely be said that very few people ever do understand Shakespeare through and through, and those few only arrive at that understanding by way of patient and loving study of his works and deep experience of the joys and sorrows of life.

That is the real difficulty of Shakespeare, and the innermost secret of his greatness. No man ever excelled him in the understanding of the " good and ill together," the " mingled yarn " of our life ; no man ever stated so triumphantly as he does in his plays that

. . . the rarer action is
In virtue than in vengeance . . .

We could easily fill a book with quotations to show how deeply Shakespeare understood life and how exquisitely he has interpreted its every mood. He knew the thoughts and could enter into the feelings of kings and queens, rich men and poor, soldiers, statesmen, philosophers, poor half-witted fools, country folk, town folk, thieves, vagabonds, saints. There is no height of joy or depth of sorrow, no heat of anger or love, no coldness of scorn or contempt he does not reach.

The Universal Genius of Shakespeare

" Myriad-minded " he has been called, and the description is a perfect one. Lesser writers may show themselves particularly good at one type of character, or in one vein of thought, because they themselves are those kinds of men or women, and have gone through those kinds of experience themselves ; but he seems to be universal, to be able to enter into every type of character and share its experiences.

Not all at once, however, did he come to this supreme understanding. The story of his life, as revealed by his plays, is one of very gradual and, there is reason to believe, very terrible and painful progress towards complete realization of the meaning of life We cannot say for certain, because we have no positive evidence, but it seems only too probable that during the years in which Shakespeare was writing the tragedies which are his most enduring work he passed through an agony of soul, an awful period when almost he could hardly bear to be alive, so useless, so worthless almost did life seem to him. Only men of fine and noble character pass through such stages ; only they can feel to the full the misery which is caused by the wickedness, the selfishness, the greediness and meanness of their fellow men. In one of those moments of torture which the beautiful-souled man or woman alone can experience, Shakespeare cried aloud :

Life's but a walking shadow, a poor player
That struts and frets his hour upon the stage
And then is heard no more ; it is a tale
Told by an idiot, full of sound and fury,
Signifying nothing. (Macbeth)

Or, if he never himself experienced the utter depression that those lines express, then all the more must we admire his power of entering into the feelings of others. But we prefer to believe that Shakespeare's terrible and powerful tragedies were wrought out of the bitterness of his own soul, just as his laughter-filled, radiant comedies were born of the joy in life that was in him, and those sweetly-moving romances, " The Tempest," " The Winter's Tale " and " Cymbeline," which he wrote towards the end of his life, were the fruit of the great peace which possessed him when the struggle of the tragic years was over.

Shakespeare began his career as a dramatist by altering, adding to, cutting and rewriting other men's plays. In his day a play did not have a long run in a theatre, as some plays do to-day ; it was acted once, twice, perhaps half a dozen times, and then another was put on. The Elizabethans liked variety. This meant that new plays were much in demand, and that when a new one was not to be had, an old one had to be polished up. Although " Henry VI " is included among his plays, Shakespeare only wrote three parts of it, and some others he only helped to prepare.

Which is Shakespeare's First Play ?

Then he launched out on his independent career. Exactly when, we do not know ; some people believe as early as 1589, but others think it was much later. When he began he certainly spent several years trying his hand at various sorts of plays. There is a tradition that " Love's Labour's Lost " was the first entirely Shakespearean play, and certainly it gives that impression. It is brilliantly written, very clever, full of the fashionable poetry of the time, and to-day is only interesting as an example of what Shakespeare did in his youth. Either just before or just after, he wrote " The Comedy of Errors," that rollicking farce in which everybody mistakes everybody else for somebody else, and all sorts of confusions and errors occur. He did not like farce, and never wrote another.

The plays of Marlowe undoubtedly had a great influence on him during these earlier years ; his Richard III, a monster of cruelty and vice, who overshadows everyone else in the play of that name, is like Marlowe's gigantic conceptions of Tamburlaine, Faustus, and Barabbas, the Jew of Malta.

In "Titus Andronicus," which is full of murders and worse horrors, we are bound to admit that Shakespeare had a hand, but we must remember that he lived in the days of Queen Elizabeth, when the sight of blood did not terrify and when torture and treachery were still dread realities.

How much of "The Taming of the Shrew" is the product of Shakespeare's brain and pen we cannot be certain, but in it we begin to get an inkling of the real man. Katharina, the ill-tempered, lively shrew whom Petruchio undertakes to tame and to turn into a loving, obedient wife, is a triumph any dramatist might be proud of.

"*Romeo and Juliet*"

Far greater triumphs were at hand. Through the half-revealing, half-concealing mists of his earlier work the warm sun of Shakespeare burst into full radiance in "Romeo and Juliet" and "A Midsummer Night's Dream." No one but Shakespeare could have written these. The former remains the finest love poem in our language ; it is an imperfect play, because the story of these "star-crossed lovers" wrought Shakespeare to such an ecstasy of feeling that the poet in him overcame the dramatist. The language and the thoughts are so beautiful that the parts of Romeo and Juliet are beyond most actors and actresses. "No lover ever spoke like Romeo," said one critic of the play. "No," was the retort ; "don't you wish they could ?" The play is a tragedy of "just-too-late." Romeo and Juliet, since they belong to families that are at feud, have to conceal their love and arrange to be married secretly and by stratagem. Their impetuousness is the cause of their deaths, and the news that would have prevented tragedy arrives just too late.

"A Midsummer Night's Dream" is one of the loveliest things in English literature. The main story is of no great consequence ; it is Titania, queen of the fairies, Puck, and Bottom, the weaver, who had an ass's head put on his shoulders and was then beloved by Titania, who really matter. Shakespeare did a marvellous thing in this play ; he took Titania from classical legend, Oberon, the king of the fairies, from German mythology, and Puck from English folklore, and created for them a delicate fairyland of his own. Into it he brought common workmen such as Bottom, Flute, a bellows-mender, Snout, a tinker, and Starveling, a tailor, and made of the whole a deliciously harmonious mixture of humour and fantasy. Genius was at work when "A Midsummer Night's Dream" was written.

"The Two Gentlemen of Verona" is a slighter work. "King John" is memorable for the magnificent scene in which Prince Arthur pleads with Hubert not to burn out his eyes as the king has commanded him. The language is rather artificial. Shakespeare had not yet learnt that in our moments of deepest emotion we speak in short, simple sentences, but he gets very near the real thing in this scene, and particularly in the dialogue :

Arthur : Must you with hot irons burn out both
mine eyes ?
Hubert : Young boy, I must.
Arthur : And will you ?
Hubert : And I will.
Arthur : Have you the heart ? . . .

"Richard II" presents the picture of a man who thought too much, was too clever, and ended in disaster. The closing scene of the king's life is packed with tragic power.

"*The Merchant of Venice*"

Then came "The Merchant of Venice." Whatever we may say about the story of this play—and both stories, that of the pound of flesh and that of the three caskets may seem somewhat foolish to modern folk—it contains Shylock, and Shylock is one of Shakespeare's masterpieces. Although the play is a comedy, he is the first in the long roll of great tragic figures. There is nothing more touching than the Jew's heartbroken appeal, when his case is lost and his goods are confiscate :

I pray you give me leave to go from hence ;
I am not well.

Portia is a brave and cool-witted heroine, but the figure of Shylock towers above all others in this comedy that was almost a tragedy.

About this time Shakespeare set out to write a serious historical play, but in the course of it created Falstaff, the fat man, "old sack and sugar," the rollickingest, wittiest, most amazing old villain in England. Though the history struggles valiantly through the two parts of "Henry IV," the shouts of laughter that greet Falstaff whenever he enters drowns its solemn music, and we remember, not the story of the wars and troubles of the founder of the royal House of Lancaster, but the side-splitting scenes where Falstaff rules in a tavern as King. When Shakespeare wanted to draw the character of his ideal king in " Henry V " he killed Falstaff, for no ideal king would have stood a chance against Falstaff. He revived him again in " The Merry Wives of Windsor," but it is a sadly different and not so amusing a Falstaff. It is said the play was written in a fortnight.

Triumph followed triumph. By 1598 Shakespeare was sure of himself. Three glorious comedies, " Much Ado About Nothing," "As You Like It," and " Twelfth Night," bear witness to his high spirits and self-confidence. Here are laughter and good humour in abundance. Beatrice and Benedick, the keen-witted pair in " Much Ado About Nothing" who will not be married, are married most mirthfully; we find ourselves in the forest in "As You Like It," and meet there Rosalind and Celia, Touchstone (prince of court jesters), and Jacques, fit company for anyone; while in " Twelfth Night " Sir Toby Belch and Sir Andrew Aguecheek, aided and abetted by Maria, will keep the most serious in roars of laughter.

Throughout these plays, sunny though they are, there runs an undertone of seriousness. There is very nearly a tragedy in " Much Ado About Nothing " ; Jacques, who was a bad lot in his youth but has now turned philosopher, spices " As You Like It " with satire ; and Malvolio, the steward who thought his mistress Olivia loved him, and the brave, pathetic figure of Viola keep " Twelfth Night " from farce. But for the most part Shakespeare was well content to " play the fool " uproariously.

Tragedies

Suddenly there came a change. Some authorities declare that Shakespeare began to write tragedies because he knew tragedies were going to be popular. It may be that as people get a finer taste in drama they come to prefer tragedy to comedy, and that, since his audiences were growing tired of comedies, Shakespeare gave them tragedies. If that be the reason, if Shakespeare wrote " Hamlet," " Othello," " Macbeth," " King Lear," and " Timon of Athens " because his admirers preferred tragedy, we can only stand amazed at his superhuman genius. These plays and the other tragedies are more understandable and more human, however, if we imagine a mighty soul struggling with its doubts and fears, and finding comfort by writing them down.

" Julius Caesar " is based on Roman history, which it follows quite closely. The tragedy of the play is in Brutus, " the noblest Roman of them all," a pure, high-minded thinker, who always does the wrong thing when it comes to action.

The Problem of " Hamlet "

The problem of " Hamlet " continues to baffle the world. Was Hamlet mad? Why had he always to " unpack his heart with words " so that he never could act at the right moment? Why—it is an endless why? with Hamlet. It is said that Shakespeare spent years over this play.

" Othello " is the tragedy of jealousy. Othello, a noble Moor, loves and marries Desdemona, the sweetest and most feminine of all Shakespeare's heroines. Iago, the wickedest man Shakespeare imagined, cunningly works the simple-minded Othello into a fury of jealous anger against her, so that he strangles her. Then he finds he has been deceived.

The story of Macbeth is well-known. Wrongful ambition brings its own punishment. It is not the death of Macbeth that is terrible in this play, but the torture of mind he goes through :

> . . . Better be with the dead,
> Whom we, to gain our peace, have sent to peace,
> Than on the torture of the mind to lie
> In restless ecstasy.

Of " King Lear " it is difficult to speak. It is the most stupendous effort of human imagination ever written. It is too tremendous a play to be adequately represented on any stage. No artificial means can show Lear hurling defiance at the wild storm which beats on his aged head as he wanders o'er the moor, a king, eighty years old, and homeless.

In " Antony and Cleopatra " Shakespeare took up the story begun in " Julius Caesar," and told how Antony gave up all for love. It contains a marvellous description of Cleopatra :

> Age cannot wither her, nor custom stale
> Her infinite variety . . .

The story of " Coriolanus " also is taken from Roman history, and tells how a proud

Roman general brought about his destruction because he could not bear to have to do with the common people. "Timon of Athens" is the most despairing of all Shakespeare's plays. Timon, a rich man, surrounded by friends, loses his wealth, and is abandoned by all. In a passion of hatred that embraces all humanity he leaves Athens and his fellow men for ever to make :

> . . . his everlasting mansion
> Upon the beached verge of the salt flood.

The play was finished by someone else ; it is not known by whom, but the writer had genius only second to Shakespeare's own.

Whether "Timon of Athens" really was a cry wrung from Shakespeare's heart we do not know, but the tragedies do seem to tell of a long and terrible struggle in the soul of their author. Every cause of sorrow and unhappiness in a man he explored—pride, envy, ingratitude, treachery, jealousy, heartlessness, vice, love of power, irresolution ; but never once did he quite give up hope. There is no tragedy, save "Timon of Athens," which does not at its close point towards hopefulness.

The strain of writing these great dramas must have been immense. All creative writing is hard work and when a man puts all he feels and suffers into his labour the effort leaves him exhausted and worn out. Shakespeare retired when he was still comparatively a young man. In his retirement, or just before it, he wrote those three beautiful romances, "The Tempest," "The Winter's Tale," and "Cymbeline," which after the storm and stress of the tragedies seem like soft evening sunshine after a day of gale and rain. All ends well in these plays ; nothing mars the happy ending. For the first time since "A Midsummer Night's Dream" Shakespeare returns to sweet fairyland, and Ariel and Caliban in "The Tempest" are the happy results. In the same play we meet Miranda, the most natural and girlish heroine of all the plays, and Prospero, the wise, benevolent magician, whom many have imagined to be a picture of Shakespeare himself when he retired.

"Cymbeline" may have been begun earlier as a tragedy, then picked up at Stratford, and finished as a romance, casually, carelessly. In "The Winter's Tale" Shakespeare shows ever so gently what sorrow the pettiness of men can bring. Leontes, a mean little man, works himself into a passion of jealousy against his wife, Hermione, and loses her for sixteen years. She is restored to him at last, with her daughter Perdita, whom as an infant he had had placed far away on a sea coast to die.

There is reason to believe that later Shakespeare helped John Fletcher (1579-1625) with the plays of "Henry VIII" and "The Two Noble Kinsmen." No doubt he was constantly begged to write "just one more" play. Perhaps he spent his retirement in peace, or he may have remained busy to the end.

In trying to estimate the genius of Shakespeare there is more to take account of than we can mention here. But no narrative can omit an estimate of him as a poet. From first to last, from his earliest work to his latest, the soul of poetry is in him. He perfected blank verse, and wrote it with a mastery few others have equalled and none excelled. He scattered through his plays songs that for daintiness and beauty are unmatched. He had verse for every mood. No one save Shakespeare would ever have dared to make a blank verse line of "Never, never, never, never, never ! " yet in its place it is perfect. The one hundred and fifty "sugar'd sonnets" that he wrote would alone have made him famous. They are not all equally good, but some are unmatchable.

Shakespeare was a master playwright. No one excelled him at stagecraft. We might go on to extol his excellences, to show how cleverly he could conceal weak points in his story, cover up awkward gaps, invent characters simply to carry on the action, and so on. But we will end on a note of warning.

Shakespeare was a man. That is to say, his work was not perfect. Many foolish things have been said about him by admirers who could not or would not see in him any fault. It has been said that he never wrote an unmusical line of poetry ; his weakest plays and weakest characters have been praised as though they were the most perfect ; his dullest passages have been extolled as gems of literature.

What it comes to is this. Of the thirty odd plays that he wrote a few are quite ordinarily good Elizabethan plays, shot through with brilliant passages ; more are exceptionally good plays, heightened in their effort by the grandeur and the loveliness of the verse. About a dozen are supreme masterpieces. They are the essence of Shakespeare, and it is chiefly because of them that he will be for ever honoured.

BUSY ELIZABETHAN WRITERS

Playwrights, Translators, Pamphleteers, Chroniclers, and Historians

Sir Philip Sidney (1554-1586).

TO-DAY we regard Shakespeare as far and away the greatest writer of his time, and rightly so; the centuries that have passed since his death have but served to establish even more securely his fame.

We devote so much attention to him that perhaps we are apt to forget or to dismiss too readily other writers of the Elizabethan age. Even Marlowe and Spenser suffer some neglect because they are overshadowed by the colossal figure of Shakespeare. Lesser writers than they are remembered only in the pages of histories of literature and by students of this glorious age. Yet between the years 1579 and 1625 there were actually scores of men who were famous in their day, themselves enduring names.

We cannot in one short chapter mention them all, but in running quickly through the crowded story of these forty-five years or so we will try to mention sufficient to give an indication of the tremendous literary activity of this period, in which there were writers in abundance in every class of society, and literature of one sort or another seemed to the people of England almost as necessary as their daily bread.

One of the first things we shall notice is that writers are becoming more versatile. Up till now, generally speaking, a poet has been a poet, a prose writer a prose writer, and a dramatist a dramatist. Now writers try their hands freely at all branches of literature. This is the case with John Lyly (about 1554-1606) who has already been mentioned as the author of "Euphues" (*see* p. 5134). In his plays he wrote delicious little lyrics such as the one beginning:

> Cupid and my Campaspe played
> At cards for kisses; Cupid paid,

but he has a place of real importance in our story because of two books in prose he published in 1579 and 1580. These were "Euphues, the Anatomy of Wit," and its sequel, "Euphues and his England." These were more like novels in form than anything else, and profess to describe the adventures of a young Athenian, Euphues, in Naples, Athens, and England. Hardly anyone to-day has patience to read the books, for they are filled with long-winded discourses on love, polite behaviour, and the education of a gentleman, which to us are boring in the extreme. So too, is the style in which they are written, but this it is which really made Lyly's fame. We still talk about euphuism and a euphuistic style. In his own day and long after his death euphuism was so much the fashion, especially at Court, that "that beautie in Court which could not parley euphuism was as little regarded as she which nowe (1632) there speakes not French."

"Do we not see that in painted pots is hidden the deadliest poison? that in the greenest grass is the greatest serpent? in the clearest water the ugliest toad?" This extract illustrates two chief characteristics of euphuism—the use of alliteration and of constant illustrations from what has been called "unnatural natural history." The most prominent characteristic, however, was the weaving of chain-like sentences, each clause balanced against the next, and generally forming an antithesis, or opposite, to it. "Though the tears of the hart be salt, yet the tears of the boar be sweet, and though the tears of some women be counterfeit to deceive, yet the tears of many be current to try their love."

The strange thing is that though euphuism was artificial and affected, its result was to aid many writers to produce better and clearer English prose. If you were writing in euphuistic style, you had to be careful over your sentences, or you wrote rubbish; and though later everyone ridiculed this artificial style, yet the art of balancing clauses has not been forgotten, and much of the beauty of English prose to-day still depends upon balance. There is no doubt that even Shakespeare, though he made great fun of euphuism, was much indebted to Lyly.

There is much more than a trace of euphuism in Sir Philip Sidney's prose romance, "Arcadia," written in 1580 but not published till ten years later. The story is of how two princes, one disguised as a woman, woo two princesses, but there is not much plot; a large part of the book is occupied with descriptions of tournaments, gardens and palaces, and with long speeches and discourses. Shortly afterwards Sidney wrote a much more important book, his "Apology for Poetry," later known as "The Defence of Poesy." One Stephen Gosson (1554-1624) had in 1579 dedicated to him his "School of Abuse," a raging, tearing attack upon drama in particular and poetry in general, and Sidney wrote his "Apology" in reply to show that the pleasure we get from literature is largely for our good. By this book he became our first conscious literary critic—that is, he was the first to attempt to examine exactly what literature does do for us, and to discover its real value.

Sonnet Cycles

Sir Philip Sidney wrote poetry also, and set the fashion of writing a "cycle" of sonnets to his lady. A cycle consisted of about 100 sonnets, but the number varied with each writer; Sidney's cycle consisted of 110 sonnets.

You will remember how Sir Thomas Wyatt introduced the sonnet to English literature (*see* p. 5133). It became immediately popular, with many other novelties introduced from Italy, then regarded as the home of learning, wit, and courtliness. From writing and translating sonnets gentlemen got the idea of composing books or cycles of sonnets addressed to a real or imaginary lady and picturing the lover's hopes and fears. Every poet—and every gentleman attempted to be a poet in those days—strove to excel in a sonnet cycle, and some very beautiful series resulted. Easily the best are those of Spenser ("Amoretti," 1595) and Shakespeare. A few of the others are "Hecatompathia," or "Passionate Century of Love" and "Tears of Fancy," by Thomas Watson (about 1557-1592), Sidney's "Astrophel and Stella," "Delia," by Samuel Daniel (1562-1619), "Diana," by Henry Constable (1562-1613), "Parthenophil and Parthenophe," by Barnabe Barnes (about 1569-1609), "Licia," by Giles Fletcher (about 1549-1611), "Phillis," by Thomas Lodge (about 1558-1625), "Idea's Mirror," by Michael Drayton (1563-1631), and "Coelica" by Sir Fulke Greville (1554-1628). This list contains only the smallest selection, for it is said that in ten years over three thousand sonnets were written and published in England. One wonders how many were written and never saw the light of day in printed form.

The Beautiful Elizabethan Lyrics

The sweetest notes that sound in our ears from the Elizabethan age are those of the dainty and exquisite trifles of poetry we call lyrics. It must always remain something of a wonder to us that these bustling, active, full-blooded, adventurous men of the later sixteenth century could write with so light a touch. Perhaps the explanation is not far to seek; this golden age of English literature was also a golden age of English music. The lyric is, strictly speaking, a short poem written to be set to music, and now fine poets and fine musicians could work hand in hand.

Everybody knows, or should know, the charming songs to be found in Shakespeare's plays, songs such as "Come unto these yellow sands," "Fear no more the heat o' the sun," and "You spotted snakes." Few people are unfamiliar with Ben Jonson's lovely "Drink to me only with thine eyes." The plays of the Elizabethan dramatists, from "Ralph Roister Doister" onwards, are full of delicately beautiful lyrics, the singing of which no doubt delighted many a contemporary audience. Here is one from a not very well known play, "The Death of Robin Hood," by Anthony Munday (1553-1633) and Henry Chettle (died about 1607):

Weep, weep, ye woodmen! wail:
  Your hands with sorrow wring!
Your master Robin Hood lies dead,
  Therefore sigh as you sing.

Here lie his primer and his beads,
  His bent bow and his arrows keen,
His good sword and his holy corse;
  Now cast on flowers fresh and green.

And, as they fall, shed tears and say
  Well, well a-day! well, well-a-day!
Thus cast ye flowers fresh, and sing,
  And on to Wakefield take your way.

It was only to be expected that many poets should attempt to imitate the wonderful mixture of story and description that is to be found in Spenser's "Faerie Queene." Two brothers, Phineas Fletcher (1582-1650) and Giles Fletcher, the younger (1588-1623), copied Spenser and produced work that was quite reasonably like his, except that it lacked his genius. Giles wrote among other poems "Christ's Victorie and Triumph," which may have had some influence on Milton's "Paradise Regained." The chief work of Phineas was an extraordinary poem called "The Purple Island, or the Isle of Man," in which the human body is described and made the subject of allegory.

Samuel Daniel (1562-1619), whom we have mentioned as a sonneteer, besides writing many masques, turned out history and fiction in verse. His best known poems are "The Civil Wars," a long and rather dull description of the Wars of the Roses, and "The Complaint of Rosamond," a historical romance. He wrote also a "History of England" in prose. Daniel was doubtless an efficient writer, but unfortunately he did not know quite how to bring the glad light of imagination to play on his longer poems.

Michael Drayton (1563-1631) combined history and geography. His happiest effort, and the one by which he is known to-day, is the short ballad of "The Battle of Agincourt," which begins "Fair stood the wind for France," but his masterpiece was "Poly-Olbion," a work that ran into thirty cantos and occupied him for at least nine years. It is a minute geographical description of our country, written with loving patriotism. Drayton mentions every town, village, hill and river, tells a vast store of legends most interestingly, and manages to get in quite a lot of allegory. There is no poem like it in English literature.

His pastoral poetry is delicious, and as good even as Spenser's. Particularly must we remember "Nymphidia," a dainty little mock-heroic poem dealing with the fairy superstitions everyone believed in.

The Translators

While sonnets and lyrics show the Elizabethans in their lighter moments, solid learning was also sought. We have mentioned the earlier translators of the classics; this work continued steadily throughout these years, and ordinary men who could not study Latin and Greek authors in the original were thus given the opportunity to read them in translations. By the end of the Elizabethan period of literature, by 1650 say, few classical authors remained untranslated. Many of these English versions were in poetry. Richard Arthur Golding translated Ovid's "Metamorphoses," a book the Elizabethans loved. Not only classical but Italian and French poets were translated; Sir John Harington (1561-1612) published in 1591 a translation of Ariosto's "Orlando Furioso," a book that influenced many writers; Edward Fairfax (died 1635) and others turned Tasso into English, while Joshua Sylvester (1563-1618), "the silver-tongued," gained much fame as the result of his version of Du Bartas's "Divine Weeks and Works," a book which influenced Milton.

Prose translators were equally numerous; their material was chiefly the classics and Italian and Spanish novels. We have mentioned before Sir Thomas North, the translator of Plutarch (*see* p. 5134); the translation of Montaigne's "Essays" by John Florio (about 1553-1625) is, after North's work, as fine an effort as can be found in this period. Philemon Holland (1552-1637) made himself famous by a translation of Livy, and, in addition, "translated everything else he could lay his hands on." The Elizabethans had many faults, but laziness does not appear to have been one of them.

The works of the prose translators were eagerly read by the dramatists, and many a fine play, including some of the best of Shakespeare, owes its plot to one or more of these translations.

The Pamphleteers

There were no journalists in these days, because there were no newspapers or magazines for them to write in, but there was any number of men writing pamphlets. A pamphlet generally consisted of a few pages only, though there are pamphlets of anything up to 350 pages, and was regarded as allowing considerably more latitude to a writer than an ordinary book. In it a writer said exactly what he liked, and many Elizabethan pamphlets are masterpieces of vigorous and often libellous and even foul abuse. Green's famous description of Shakespeare in "A Groatsworth of Wit" is mild, even complimentary, when compared with what many pamphleteers said about people they did not like. "Pig," "ape," "baboon," and such names were used; even so dignified and noble a man as Milton was later to use epithets like these freely.

Thomas Nash or Nashe (1567-1601) is celebrated for the vigorous rudeness of his pamphlets; his "Have with you to Saffron Walden" (1596), in which he attacked Gabriel Harvey, the friend of Spenser, is a masterpiece of its kind. An anonymous writer, however, who called himself Martin Marprelate, and who took part in a great religious quarrel, was Nash's equal. Thomas

Dekker's "Seven Deadly Sins of London" (1606) and "The Gull's Hornbook" (1609) are interesting and well-known pamphlets which tell us much about the metropolis of that day.

The Beginnings of Prose Fiction

Men quarrelled in pamphlets; to earn their living they wrote plays and tales in prose after the manner of the Italians. Though the novel as we know it began a century later with Daniel Defoe, yet we begin to get now its forerunner, prose fiction. The difference is simple; the novel describes what might actually happen in real life to real people, while prose fiction does not bother too much about probability. Lyly's "Euphues" and Sidney's "Arcadia" are prose fiction. Greene, the playwright, followed Lyly and gave Euphues further adventures, while his "Pandosto or the Triumph of Time" supplied Shakespeare with a plot for "The Winter's Tale." Barnabe Rich (about 1540-1617) and George Whetstone (about 1544-about 1587) were popular story writers. Thomas Lodge (about 1558-1625) pretended to have found a tale in Euphues' cell after his death; this was "Rosalynde," the famous story that gave Shakespeare the plot of "As You Like It." Thomas Nash's "The Unfortunate Traveller" (1594) is perhaps the best known of all.

Facts proved as attractive to the Elizabethan as fiction. John Stow (1525-1605), a worthy citizen of London, with no sort of pretensions as a writer, but possessed of enormous industry, set himself to collect and put in a book all there was to be known of the streets and buildings of his native place. So well did he do it that his "Survey of London" (1598) is still of great value to antiquaries and students of old London, though in it there is no picture of the social life of the times.

He had previously published the "Summary of English Chronicles" (1565), a general history of England, and earlier still an edition of Chaucer (1561). His "Annales of England" was originally called "The Chronicles of England from Brute unto this present yeare of Christ, 1580," but the title was altered in the second edition, and Stow afterwards continued his narrative until within a few weeks of his death. The clever and painstaking old man did not find his literary work very profitable, for at the age of seventy-nine years he was granted permission to collect "kinde gratuities" from the subjects of King James, who personally began "the largesse for the examples of others."

The name of Raphael Holinshed or Hollingshead (died about 1580) is familiar to most readers. His "Chronicles of England, Scotland and Ireland" (1578) were not all written by him, for he received much help from Stow and other people, yet we must look upon the book as being his work, since his was the brain which directed it and the hand which carried it to completion. He was a bold man, for he did not fear to publish an account of Elizabeth's reign which so angered her and her Court that the offending pages had to be torn out.

Holinshed's volumes are very valuable in throwing much light upon the early history of England, yet it is not "history" in the scientific sense of the word. Fact and legend are mingled, important events are not given the prominence they deserve, and unimportant ones are often related at great length. But quite apart from its historical value, we shall always treasure the work, because it is the mine from which Shakespeare dug the rough ore which he transmuted into the gold of "Macbeth," "King Lear," and other plays, and because it was perhaps the inspiration of his magnificent cycle of historical dramas. How closely Shakespeare read Holinshed is shown by the fact that in places in "Henry V" and "Henry VI" the chronicler's words are used almost without alteration.

Holinshed's indebtedness to Leland

Just as the master dramatist was indebted to Holinshed, so the latter was under an obligation to the work of John Leland (about 1506-1552), an antiquary and traveller of amazing industry, whose arduous labours at length overtaxed his mental strength and caused him to lose his reason. Leland was indefatigable in his search for material, and was successful in rescuing a number of valuable manuscripts that in all probability would have been lost to England or destroyed.

There were many other chroniclers and historians in those days. The sad fate of one is worth notice. Of Richard Knolles (died 1610), a schoolmaster, Samuel Johnson wrote a century and a half later, "Nothing could have sent this author into obscurity but the remoteness and barbarity of the people he relates." Knolles had chosen Turkey as his subject.

THE FADING OF ROMANCE

"Rare Ben Jonson," Francis Bacon, and John Donne

Francis Bacon (1561-1626).

IN 1598 there was acted at the Curtain Theatre a play called "Every Man in His Humour." It was written by a young man called Benjamin Jonson (about 1573-1637), better known as Ben Jonson. Tradition says that Shakespeare, who was in the cast, gave him the chance to distinguish himself. In the same year another play of his, "The Case is Altered," was also produced, and a year later "Every Man out of His Humour."

Any understanding critic of those days must have noticed two things about these plays—first, that the author thoroughly understood his craft, and second, that they introduced a new note into English drama. Observe the word "humour" in two of the titles; it means disposition or special characteristic. Jonson had noticed that in many people one characteristic or humour seemed more prominent than any other. One man, for instance, seemed all selfishness, another all boastfulness. So he made each of the people in his plays a living example of a special humour. For this reason, among others, he must always rank far below Shakespeare, who, with that full and loving knowledge of his fellow men which is so essential a part of his greatness, saw always the good and bad mingled, and showed them both. Shakespeare in his plays created real men and women, just like ourselves; Jonson created types of men and women.

Jonson, indeed, had quite a different aim from Shakespeare in writing plays. Shakespeare tells us quite plainly in "Hamlet" that "the purpose of playing . . . both at the first and now, was and is, to hold, as 'twere, the mirror up to nature," and all his plays are proof how thoroughly he followed this doctrine. But Jonson thought otherwise. An author, he says, "is of an ingenious and free spirit, eager, and constant in reproof, without fear controlling the world's abuses." To be a teacher, a corrector of the morals and bad habits of people, was his idea of a playwright. And, be it said to his everlasting credit, he stuck to his principles through thick and thin, and proved himself truly "one whom no servile hope to gain, or frosty apprehension of danger, can make to be a parasite, either to time, place, or opinion." These are his own words, and he lived up to their high standard.

His was a strange life. He was in early life a bricklayer, then a soldier. At the very moment of his first success on the stage he killed an actor in a duel, and came near to being executed. He quarrelled with most of the men with whom he worked. He was in prison several times, generally because of something he had said in a play. He was connected with the Gunpowder Plot. He came from a Nonconformist family, yet he was converted to Roman Catholicism, and remained a Roman Catholic for twelve years at a time when it made a person unpopular, if not unsafe, to be one. He became the recognized head of English men of letters, and lorded it for many years over his followers. He wrote masques better than any man alive. He retired from the stage for a considerable period and then came back again. In addition, he was one of the most profound and deeply-read scholars of his time.

Jonson's enduring works are two tragedies, "Sejanus his fall" and "Catiline his conspiracy," and four comedies, or "comic satires," as he called them, "Volpone, or the Fox," "Epicoene, or the Silent Woman," "The Alchemist," and "Bartholomew Fair," in addition to "Every Man in His Humour." On the strength of these works Jonson ranks second to Shakespeare among dramatists of the Elizabethan Age. In addition we must certainly remember the masques he wrote. These were short dramatic pieces suitable for festive occasions, banquets, weddings, the visit of an important person, and so on, which were very popular during the early years of the seventeenth century. They included much singing and dancing, and were very elaborately staged. Among Jonson's best were "Hymenaei" and "Hue and Cry after Cupid," two wedding masques, and "The Masque of Queens." Nor must we omit to mention the beautiful lyrics he wrote, chiefly in his masques.

Ben Jonson loved to be called " honest," that is, straightforward or outspoken. He certainly was. He never " played to the gallery " ; he thought the world, and London in particular, was full of lying and knavery and cheating and hypocrisy, and he said so in his plays without fear or favour. If the public did not like his work, they could stay away ; that was his attitude. He was an extraordinary man, in figure and in mind. What was said of his body, when he was described as having the figure of a mountain and a rocky face, very well describes him in character. He was a mountain of learning, and his principles were immovable as a rock. His plays are sometimes acted on the modern stage, but only those with a deep knowledge of his times can appreciate them. If Shakespeare was " not for an age, but for all time," Jonson was certainly for an age, but not for all time. He represents the period when romance was fading and hard reality was taking its place.

The Tribe of Ben

The difference between Shakespeare and Ben Jonson, who were friends, goes very deep. It is a difference of attitude. Shakespeare is what we call a romantic, Jonson a classic writer. A romantic writer gives full play to his imagination and his emotions, and writes straight from the heart ; a classic writer restrains himself, and remembers always that writing is an art and has a purpose. He is always conscious of the effect his work will produce on others. So it follows that Jonson's plays are much more carefully built than Shakespeare's, much more according to the rules, more logical and not given to sacrificing strict argument for wonderful bursts of poetry, as Shakespeare's do so often. It follows also that in a limited sense they are much more real. Jonson's " Sejanus " and " Catiline " give very accurate pictures of life in ancient Rome, well backed up by multitudes of quotations from Latin writers ; Shakespeare's " Julius Caesar " and " Coriolanus " are finer representations of character and conduct, but the people in them, though they have Roman names, speak, think and act like Elizabethans.

Jonson had far more influence on the writers of his day and on the age that was to follow than Shakespeare. In spite of his outspoken and violent temper, in spite of his conceit and his disdain of other men's works, he had a marvellous way of attracting younger writers to him and of inspiring in them the love and devotion of disciples for their master. Practically all English men of letters in the first third of the seventeenth century acknowledged " rare Ben Jonson " as their leader ; they called themselves " the tribe of Ben," and to belong to the tribe was the aim of every writer.

At the Mermaid Tavern

They met at the Mermaid Tavern in Bread Street, Cheapside, where Jonson and Shakespeare had in former days engaged in many a battle of wit, and Ben criticized, chaffed, advised, and warned his tribe. In the hands of the tribe, it is sad to say, English drama steadily declined from its position of foremost importance in English literature. But for that it is not fair to blame Ben Jonson. Far deeper influences were at work than his : the times were troubled, not gay and care-free as in the happy earlier days of Shakespeare, religious quarrels were putting men's minds into a state that fitted ill with drama, and the Puritans, who had fought the stage tooth and nail since its rise, were ever growing more powerful. In 1642 they closed all theatres, but drama had killed itself by that time. " All the world " had ceased to be a stage, and men had forgotten how to write as in the days of old.

It is ever the same in the history of literature. There is an age of experiment ; the experiments grow better and better till there comes a period of great writers by whom literature is for ever enriched ; then there is a period of decline. Writers grow extravagant and sensational if they are romanticists, mechanical and dull if they are classicists. They have all the faults and few of the virtues of the great masters. The result is that everyone grows tired of that kind of writing, and the experimenting, along different lines, begins again. The Elizabethan Age was one of the greatest romantic ages in our literature ; it was succeeded by the greatest classic age.

Yet the Elizabethan Age was great even in decline, and there are many names yet to be mentioned, names of men who, although their work is marred by all the symptoms of decadence—that is, by artificial methods, by exaggeration, by turgid, unreal writing—were yet capable at times of magnificent poetry and scenes of deepest beauty and power.

One of the difficulties with regard to the drama of the Elizabethan Age is that frequently two or more writers collaborated to produce a play—in some cases we simply do not know who wrote what. Two writers, Francis Beaumont (1584-1616) and John Fletcher (1579-1625), entered into a definite literary partnership. Between them they produced over fifty plays, and Fletcher worked industriously after Beaumont's death, both by himself and with others. Their work was most popular; they were brilliantly witty, they could write on any subject, and they produced many fine poetical lines. One of their plays, "The Knight of the Burning Pestle," is still performed. It is a burlesque, which mocks at the habits of theatregoers of the time. Other notable plays of theirs are "Philaster" and "The Maid's Tragedy," both full of deep emotion and fine tragedy.

Beaumont and Fletcher were followers of Shakespeare rather than of Jonson, though Beaumont was a devoted admirer of Ben. Their chief faults are looseness and exaggeration; they built their plots loosely, their blank verse loosely, so that it often can be read as prose, and they relied upon highly improbable events to maintain interest.

"*A Game of Chess*"

Thomas Middleton (1570-1627) had a sharp pen that loved satire. Once it got him into serious trouble, for his comedy, "A Game at Chess," boldly attacked the unpopular Spanish marriage that James I tried to arrange for his son Charles. It ran for nine days, attracted enormous crowds, and caused its author to be heavily fined if not imprisoned. He wrote at least one fine tragedy, "The Changeling." Middleton's work reminds one of the little girl of whom it was said that "when she was good, she was very, very good, but when she was bad she was horrid." Few could write so well or so badly as he could.

George Chapman (1559-1634), author of a glorious translation in verse of Homer that two hundred years later John Keats was to read and to write an immortal sonnet about, wrote plays until he was seventy-two; the best-known are "All Fools," a comedy, and "Bussy d'Ambois." Chapman was far greater as a translator than as an original writer.

Thomas Dekker (about 1570-about 1641) was a good, clean, wholesome writer who knew London well, and could write well about it. Charles Lamb said he "had poetry enough for anything," and his beautiful lullaby, "Golden slumbers kiss your eyes," is in itself proof that the essayist was right. His best plays are "The Shoemaker's Holiday" and "Old Fortunatus." The latter is a romantic comedy full of poetry. Perhaps if Dekker had not had to write quite so many plays in order to keep the pot boiling, and had been able to please himself more about what he wrote, he might have become far more famous. As it is, in lyrical ability and in humour he often came nearer to Shakespeare than any of his fellows.

Philip Massinger (1583-1640) imitated Fletcher as Fletcher imitated Shakespeare. His work is very good, but in an ordinary way. To put it beside Shakespeare's is like putting a candle beside a high-power electric light. His plots are carefully constructed, he writes graceful poetry, but of inspiration and deep feeling there is little or none. His best play is "A New Way to Pay Old Debts," a vigorous and satirical comedy.

Charles Lamb, who knew the works of these Elizabethan dramatists as few people have known them, called Thomas Heywood (died about 1650) a "prose Shakespeare," no doubt largely because of his best known play, "A Woman Killed with Kindness," which told the same story as "Othello" with characters drawn from middle-class society. This is a really fine play, and if all the other two hundred and twenty plays Heywood is said to have written or helped to write had been lost, this one would have preserved his name. No one could better describe the life of the middle classes than Heywood.

Tragedy and Gloom

John Ford was of a somewhat gloomy turn of mind. His fame rests mainly on three terrible tragedies, "The Lover's Melancholy," "The Broken Heart," and "Love's Sacrifice." Ford was a great poet, and in tragic power not too below Shakespeare. He was not a great dramatist. Like all too many of the playwrights of this age of decline, he depends upon sensational and unnatural incidents. And he had a peculiar moral "twist"; it seems as though he did not clearly know the difference between right and wrong.

In producing effects of gloom and terror he was equalled, if not excelled, by John Webster (about 1580-about 1625), author of two moving and powerful plays, "The

White Devil" and "The Duchess of Malfi." Much of his work has been lost, but these plays are sufficient to prove that he was a magnificent writer, capable of rousing in his audiences the deepest emotions. He writes about terrible crimes and fills his work with horrible situations, therefore he must rank far below Shakespeare in tragedy, because Shakespeare moves his audiences to pity and sorrow without these aids, but he has the ability to manage them.

Ben Jonson's plays struck a new note in the drama, a more modern note in many ways. With Francis Bacon, Lord Verulam, Viscount St. Albans (1561-1626), we strike not simply a new note in prose but a note that introduces us to the harmony of modern scientific thinking.

In the days of Queen Elizabeth men explored. They were happy in making discoveries, whether it were across the sea, or in the realm of learning or art or religion. In the seventeenth century they began to settle down to examine what they had discovered, to criticize its value, and to investigate it scientifically. Francis Bacon was both explorer in the realm of learning and critic; he was both sixteenth and seventeenth century in his outlook.

"I have taken all knowledge to be my province," he wrote, and proved by his life that his was not a vain boast. While still an undergraduate at Cambridge, after studying the sciences taught there, he came to the conclusion that the methods employed and the results obtained were all wrong, and that they must be put right. Therefore, since he thought himself "born to be of advantage to mankind," he set himself to the task.

Bacon had three aims in life: to do good to mankind through the discovery of truth, to serve his country well, and to do good to the Church. He was only half successful, but the half-success has made his name honoured ever since. He did great good to mankind, not so much by discovery of truth as by showing up the faults of mediaeval thought and pointing men to a new way. His career as a servant of his country, though he achieved the highest post he could reach, Lord Chancellor of England, ended in disgrace, and he did not materially benefit the Church. He had three handicaps throughout life: delicate health, insufficient means, and a lack of the stout, resolute character of the fearless Elizabethans.

Bacon had a magnificently acute and methodical mind, which he devoted unremittingly to the service of mankind. He longed for power, wealth, position, influence, so that he might be able to do more to further the three great objects of his life, and he employed every device to obtain them. He was capable of the basest flattery, the most servile and abject words and deeds, to gain his ends. He lost his life through his devotion to science. Driving through snow one night, he was suddenly seized with the desire to know whether it would act as an antiseptic, so he stopped his coach, bought a fowl, had it killed, and stuffed it with snow. The exposure to the bitter weather brought on a severe attack of bronchitis, and within a few days he was a dead man.

The great work of his life, of which only two parts were written, was the "Instauratio Magna." This was to have been nothing more or less than a complete survey of man's knowledge and an infallible guide for using that knowledge so as to gain more, and so in the end to come to the discovery of all things. Of the six parts which he planned, Bacon completed "The Advancement of Learning" and the "Novum Organum." The former was in English, but later translated into Latin under the title of "De Augmentis Scientiarum," and the latter was written in Latin. All the work Bacon did which he thought valuable he either wrote in Latin or had translated into that language. His idea was that "these modern languages will at one time or another play the bankrupt with books, and since I have lost much time with this age, I would be glad if God would give me leave to recover it with posterity."

The extent of the immense debt modern science owes to Bacon cannot be dealt with here. We are concerned with him as an English man of letters, and so must turn to the three volumes in English prose by which he is best known. These are his "Essays," "The Advancement of Learning," and "The History of Henry VII." Of these the "Essays" are read the whole world over. "The Advancement of Learning" and "The History of Henry VII" are perused by scholars only, but we must not underrate their importance. As English literature they equal the "Essays," but as works of service to mankind "The Advancement of Learning" is immeasurably more valuable.

Bacon's "Essays" were a spare-time occupation. Into them he put the results of his observations of men and matters. No English prose is so packed with thought, so concise, so sparing of words. Indeed, in all his works he never wasted a syllable, and all he wrote was a model of clear, terse expression. In this Bacon is the forerunner of modern English prose, the ideal of which is to say as much as possible in the fewest words. If you want to know how heavy with meaning English words can be, and so what a master of prose Bacon was, read his essay "Of Studies," then try to rewrite it in your own words. If you can succeed in saying one half of what he says in twice as many words as he uses, you are well on the way to being a writer of English prose.

Both Jonson the dramatist and Bacon the philosopher showed the same turning away from romance to hard realities. Now we have a poet following the general trend. With John Donne (1573-1631) we are in a different world altogether from the romantic, allegorical, sweetly beautiful work of Spenser.

Donne was a man of fearless and original mind and red-hot emotions, who in his poetry burns with passion and yet amazes us at every verse by the abnormal power of his thought. Casting aside all the ordinary methods and themes of poetry, he discovered a new poetry in the most prosaic events.

In his youth Donne was noted for his gaiety and his wit. He tried several professions: he enjoyed himself in every way possible to a young man in his days. He fell deeply in love, wrote poetry to his lady, and married her secretly. Later he repented of his early life, took Holy Orders and rose to be Dean of St. Paul's. He was as sincerely and intensely religious as he had been gay, witty, and a lover. His sermons are as remarkable as his poetry.

There is no gainsaying the fact that Donne was exceptionally fortunate in his clerical career. Preferment came to him rapidly. He had not been ordained more than a month or two before James I. made him his chaplain, and later persuaded Cambridge University to confer on him the degree of Doctor of Divinity. In 1616 he became rector of Sevenoaks and divinity reader at Lincoln's Inn, where his thoughtful oratory attracted much favourable attention. Having visited Germany as chaplain to Lord Doncaster, Donne proceeded to Holland, where he was presented by the States-General with a gold medal. In 1621, less than six years following his ordination, he was made Dean of St. Paul's.

Sermons are still published, but it is doubtful if any delivered in the first two decades of the twentieth century have been so eagerly purchased and read as were those of Donne three hundred years ago. In those days it was by no means unusual for a clergyman to hold more than one living, and even when he was a dean Donne held the rectory of Blunham and the vicarage of St. Dunstan's-in-the-West, in London. The duties of the latter he was able to perform in addition to those of the cathedral, but a curate attended to the spiritual needs of the inhabitants of the Bedfordshire parish.

John Donne, of course, preached in old St. Paul's, but his monument was afterwards erected in the cathedral which now crowns Ludgate Hill. It is almost the only monument that did not perish in the fire of 1666. It represents the learned and eloquent dean in his shroud, and was copied from a painting which Donne, in melancholy mood, had painted while he was lying on his deathbed.

We call Donne the first of the metaphysical poets. A metaphysical poet is one whose poetry is packed with thought as much as, if not more than, with feeling. He turns to logic, to science, to mathematics, to philosophy for similes and metaphors, and finds the strangest and most elaborate comparisons. He can, for example, imagine his soul as a compass, with one leg ever fixed to a central point, the other roving far away. It follows that metaphysical poetry is not easy to understand, being full of these ingenious twists of thought.

Quite a number of men followed Donne in writing this elaborate and highly intellectual type of poetry. Some of them, in their desire to be clever, became merely absurd, but generally their lyrical ability enabled them to produce fine work. Most of these poets will be considered in a later chapter, but we will mention here George Herbert (1593-1633), the gentle and pious rector of Bemerton, in Wiltshire, who wrote a collection of religious poems called "The Temple," full of sweet and noble thought, often quaintly expressed but not so metaphysical as many others. Herbert was not a poet of the first order, but his work has one quality that has endeared it to readers—it is lovable.

THE GREATEST BOOK OF ALL

The Exquisite Prose of the Authorized Version of the Bible

William Tyndale (died 1536).

NO account of the literature of the Elizabethan Age would be complete without a tribute to that most splendid book of English prose, the Authorized Version of the Bible, which was completed in 1611. No other book in our language has been so widely read, nor has the influence of any other on literature been so great or so beneficent.

Every writer of any note since 1611 has owed something, and very often a great deal, to the simple, dignified, and thoroughly English prose of the Authorized Version. Hundreds of common phrases, to-day used by everyone, are derived from it. "There were giants in those days," "corn in Egypt," "by the sweat of his brow," "at the eleventh hour" are examples chosen at random. You can hardly read a page of English with any pretentions to style in which you will not find some phrase reminiscent of this storehouse of all that is glorious in our prose. At least one author—John Bunyan, to wit—modelled his style entirely on that of the Authorized Version. Anyone who wishes to learn to write pure, strong, sweet English should study this book daily.

While the glory of having produced the Authorized Version belongs to the Elizabethan Age, though not to the reign of Elizabeth, it is only fair to acknowledge at once that a tremendous amount of the work was done before that time. The forty-seven men who from 1604 to 1611 were occupied in producing the Authorized Version had before them several earlier translations, and particularly one called the Bishops' Bible, which was itself a revision of the Great Bible of 1539 and Tyndale's translation.

The books of the Bible were originally written in Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek. In the early days of the Christian Church a Latin version, called the Vulgate, was made by St. Jerome at Bethlehem about 384. Translations into English of parts of the Bible were made by the Venerable Bede and other writers during the days before the Norman conquest. All these translations were made from the Vulgate.

John Wiclif (died 1384), who was sometime master of Balliol College, Oxford, and later incumbent of Lutterworth, in Leicestershire, first attempted a translation of the whole. He and John Purvey (about 1353-about 1428) were responsible for two complete versions. How much Wiclif himself actually did we do not know, but to him must be given the honour of having inspired the work. Purvey's version was a revision of his, and the translation was from the Vulgate. The versions appeared between 1380 and 1388, and were widely read.

The Renaissance of learning brought in its train the Reformation. One of the demands of the Protestants was that the Bible should be able to be read by all men, and not simply by those who knew Latin. So in Germany, the home of the Reformation, the work of translation began. An Englishman, William Tyndale (died 1536), determined to do the same for his country, and it is to him that we owe the foundation on which the Authorized Version was built. He summed up his ambition when he said to a learned man who disputed with him over a theological point, "If God spare my life, ere many years I will cause a boy that driveth the plough shall know more of the Scripture than thou doest."

Tyndale's life is a tragic one. At Oxford and Cambridge he became deeply enamoured of the "new" learning, and developed into a profound scholar. When he settled in Gloucestershire he found himself constantly involved in dispute with his neighbouring clergy. He had to leave, and he decided to translate the New Testament into English to show how grievously in his opinion the Church had fallen away from the gospel of Christ. So he went to London and sought the help of Bishop Tunstall. Tyndale was not encouraged, and saw, as he sadly said, "not only that there was no room in my lord of London's palace to translate the New Testament, but also that there was no place to do it in all England."

He went to Hamburg, and in Wittenberg, a self-made exile from his country, he made his translation, helped by his faithful secretary, John Roye. In 1525 he began to print it in Cologne, but an enemy had the production prohibited and warned Henry VIII. Tyndale fled to Worms, and there was successful. He smuggled copies of the New Testament into England, and they were eagerly bought and read, in spite of strong action by the English government, which regarded the volumes as "pernicious merchandise" fit only for bonfires. The bishop whose help he had sought denounced it from the open air pulpit at Paul's Cross, but an incomplete copy of the work is to-day one of the treasures of London's cathedral.

Tyndale then started on the Old Testament. A translation of Deuteronomy was lost in a shipwreck, but by 1530 the whole of the Pentateuch—the first five books of the Old Testament—was printed. Meanwhile fresh editions of the New Testament were constantly issued. In 1534 Tyndale made a complete revision of the text.

All the time this indefatigable and devoted worker was being harassed by his enemies. In the end they triumphed. He was imprisoned at Vilvorde, and on October 6th, 1536, suffered death as a heretic.

Tyndale's life work was not to be in vain. It was continued by Miles Coverdale, who may have worked with him. Coverdale produced at Zürich the first entire English Bible in or about 1535. Though he had not the learning of Tyndale, whose work he incorporated, and was unable to use the Greek and Hebrew versions, he succeeded in gaining the help and sympathy of several scholars, and some of the loveliest phrases in the Bible are due to him.

Two years later another version appeared which is called Matthew's Bible, because its title page said it was translated by Thomas Matthew. It was probably prepared by John Rogers (1500-1555), a friend of Tyndale's. It was a revision of Tyndale's and Coverdale's versions. A reprint of the latter, printed in Southwark in 1537, is believed to be the first complete Bible issued from a press in England.

Then came the Authorized Version. Henry VIII had made himself head of the English Church, and at the request of the clergy directed his minister Thomas Cromwell to carry through a translation that should be official. Cromwell chose Coverdale to superintend the work. The result was the Great Bible of 1539, the title-page of which is believed to have been drawn by Holbein. In 1546 all other versions were prohibited.

The work of translation did not cease. Some Englishmen who had fled to Geneva during Mary's reign produced in 1560 the Geneva Bible, the chapters for the first time being divided into verses. It became so popular that some of the English bishops, who disliked it because of the notes that had been printed in the margin, combined to produce in 1568 the Bishops' Bible. The Geneva Bible, however, continued to be more popular.

In 1582 a number of English Roman Catholics, dissatisfied with all the versions, began to prepare another version. The New Testament was published at Rheims, and the Old Testament at Douai. It has remained the authorized version for Roman Catholics.

These were not all the versions that were made before 1611, but they are the most important, and show sufficiently the loving toil and endurance of difficulties that went to the making of the earlier editions.

In 1604 James I, newly arrived in England, held a great Church conference at Hampton Court. Its main object was to settle disputes between the more conservative clergy and the Puritans, but far more came of it than that. James consented to have a new Authorized Version made.

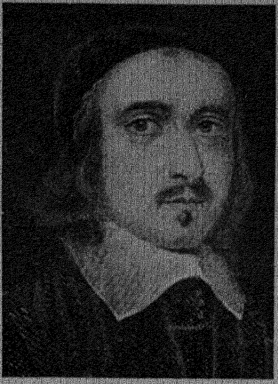
The work was undertaken with the utmost care. Forty-seven scholars were chosen and divided into six groups, two at Westminster, Oxford, and Cambridge respectively. Each group was given a special part to translate and revise, and elaborate rules were made as to how the work was to be done. The Bishops' Bible was taken as the foundation on which to base the work.

No version since printed has shaken the authority of the Authorized Version of 1611, not even the Revised Version of 1881. It remains immovably recognized as beyond compare the most perfect of all English books. The strength, the rhythm, the sheer beauty of the language in it have never been nor ever will be excelled. It is the language of no one age but of all ages up to 1611 ; that is the secret of its perfection. Perhaps it seems a little old-fashioned to us ; so it did to the Englishmen of King James's time. All that was best in translation after translation, selected with loving and pious care, found its way into this supreme volume. Let us never forget that the lives of many noble Englishmen are embalmed in its pages.

CAVALIER AND ROUNDHEAD

Simpler and Shorter Poems and more Elaborate Prose

IN the disturbed days of James I and Charles I the religious and other troubles which had long been brewing, even in the happiest and most glorious days of Elizabeth, grew worse and worse. The nation split into two parties, between which the enmity grew deeper and deeper, until at last there was no remedy but war. In 1642 Cavalier and Roundhead took the field in the bitter struggle that was to end in the execution of an English king and the setting up for a short while of an English republic.



Jeremy Taylor (1613-1667).

Literature, which is the clearest reflection of life in any age, could not fail to be influenced by the change. The Elizabethan literature was a national literature, a full-throated song in which all people joined; the literature of the age to follow was that of a party or of solitary individuals.

On the one side were the Puritans, whose ideas grew ever more sober and narrow. The theatres they had always opposed, and in 1642 they had them closed. Later they refused to allow dancing, singing of songs other than hymns, poetry and prose other than religious or instructive in tone, music other than church music, to be fit recreation for any godly person. It is not surprising, therefore, that, with the exception of Milton and Andrew Marvell, there are no Puritan poets of distinction.

The Caroline Lyrists

On the other side were those who supported the king and the Established Church. As the Puritans grew stricter, those in opposition grew freer. They upheld everything the Puritans condemned—theatres, dancing, music, poetry, games. In many cases, unfortunately, they approved and practised things that were evil, and the Puritans had good reason to reprove them for their vices and wickednesses. Their devotion to literature, however, produced some of the most bewitchingly beautiful songs in our language.

An unsettled time such as this was unfavourable to the composition of long works, and it is for their lyrics that we remember the Cavalier poets. Sir John Suckling (1609-1642), who was a party to Royalist plots, and who had to flee the country, is for ever memorable because of a delicious little trifle, "Why so pale and wan, fond lover?" and an equally charming "Ballad upon a Wedding," in which occur the lines:

> Her feet beneath her petticoat,
> Like little mice, stole in and out,
> As if they feared the light.

The lyrics of Richard Lovelace (1618-1658) are perhaps better known. Most people can quote at least a line or two from "To Althea, from Prison":

> Stone walls do not a prison make,
> Nor iron bars a cage;
> Minds innocent and quiet take
> That for an hermitage.

Lovelace knew what he was talking about; during the Civil War he was imprisoned by the Roundheads. His "To Lucasta, On Going to the Wars," contains those famous lines:

> I could not love thee, dear, so much,
> Loved I not honour more.

The Lyrics of Robert Herrick

Greatest of all the Caroline (Latin *Carolus* Charles) lyrists was Robert Herrick (1591-1674), a clergyman who pretended to hate the dull country and love the bright town, but who lived many years in Devonshire, and wrote many superb lyrics in which he showed the finest appreciation of the beauties of the English countryside. He published two volumes of poetry, "Noble Numbers" (1647) and "Hesperides" (1648), the first composed of religious poetry, the second of love and pastoral lyrics. His work is dainty and precise, with a touch of reflective sadness:

> Gather ye rosebuds while ye may,
> Old Time is still a-flying,
> And that same flower which blooms to-day,
> To-morrow will be dying.

There is no poet in English literature who is more charmingly refreshing than Robert Herrick.

It is natural that a time of terrible religious disputes should produce a number of poets whose works are in the main religious. We have mentioned George Herbert (*see* p. 5156), who did not live to know the horrors of civil war. Richard Crashaw (1613-1649), a devoted Royalist who had to flee to France, and became a Roman Catholic, wrote "Steps to the Temple" and other works. He is a most difficult poet to appreciate. At his best he wrote with a clear, passionate energy that is almost beyond praise; at his worst he is so bad, so metaphysical, as to be almost unreadable.

Henry Vaughan (1622-1695) was a poet of noble mind with a gift for producing lines of astonishing and dazzling beauty. He wrote love poems as well as religious, but his sacred poetry is by far the finer. No one can ever forget those matchless opening lines:

> I saw Eternity the other night
> Like a great ring of pure and endless light,
>   All calm, as it was bright.

George Wither (1588-1667), who also wrote a good deal of religious poetry, must be mentioned because of his exquisite descriptions of the English countryside, and Francis Quarles (1592-1644) because of his collection of "Divine Emblems," which, with its queer and sometimes horrible illustrations, was quite a popular book as late as the nineteenth century.

Milton's Friend

To Milton, the giant of this age, a separate chapter is allotted; to his friend, Andrew Marvell, we can give but a few lines. His earlier work, lyrical in form, is the better known, and includes "The Song of the Emigrants to Bermuda," "Lamentations of the Nymph on the Death of her Fawn," and "Thoughts in a Garden." After the Restoration he turned satirist, though his lovable character could not allow him to be too harsh. He was a man beloved and respected by all, and well worthy to be the chosen friend of the author of "Paradise Lost."

Strangely enough, as poetry (save when it was metaphysical) grew simpler and poems shorter, prose grew more elaborate. Sentences become longer and longer, till they were of enormous length. Writers delighted to make the fullest use of the rich crop of new words which had grown up with the new learning; they loved to pile clause upon clause, to heighten the effect and give to their sentences a majestic force and rhythm. When they succeeded they created prose the eloquence and power of which are undeniable; when they failed, as they often did, they produced stuff that was thoroughly confused and confusing. You will find both results in the same writer, and in the same piece of work. In John Milton's "Areopagitica" you can read sentences of glorious eloquence and rhythm which carry you along breathless to a magnificent conclusion; you can read sentences also which land you into a state of amazed perplexity.

This elaborate, rhetorical style was adopted by clergymen in their sermons. The first half of the seventeenth century has indeed been called "the Golden Age of the English pulpit," and much of the prose deals with religious subjects.

The Sermon Writers

Sermons were far longer than they are to-day, and often of very high literary value. Many preachers published their orations, and these were read as eagerly as they had been listened to. It was an age in which religion was to most men and women the subject of deepest importance. We have mentioned John Donne, who as Dean of St. Paul's delivered many fiery and eloquent discourses which were afterwards printed (*see* p. 5156). James Ussher (1581-1656), Archbishop of Armagh, who was said to be "learned to a miracle," and who drew up a list of dates for the Authorized Version starting with the Creation in 4004 B.C., was an Irishman who came to England in 1640 on a visit, and, owing to the unsettled state of his country, had to stay there for the rest of his life. He wrote many sermons and tracts, but is best known for his "Chronologia Sacra," the dates in which, from the Creation to the Roman emperor Vespasian, were unquestioned for a very long time.

Joseph Hall (1574-1656), Bishop of Exeter and afterwards of Norwich, opposed the Puritans strongly, was imprisoned by them, and forbidden to preach. His earliest works are satires attacking the Church for its wickedness, and were published under the title of "Virgidemiarum" (1597). He wrote a great number of sermons, tracts, and religious works, and is perhaps the greatest stylist of all the sermon writers.

A far greater writer, however, is Jeremy Taylor (1613-1667). He too was imprisoned by the Roundheads, but at the Restoration was given the Irish bishopric of Down and

Dromore. The books which have kept his name in hallowed remembrance are "Holy Living" (1650) and "Holy Dying" (1651). Both have brought comfort and afforded help and consolation to many generations. They deal with every aspect of Christian life and conduct, and the writer's firm yet exquisitely melodious style fits to perfection the sound and practical advice he gives. Taylor wrote also a life of Christ under the title of "The Great Exemplar" (1649), and his "Discourse of the Liberty of Prophesying" (1646) contains the first systematic and deliberate attempt to show that every man ought to be allowed to worship God in what manner he pleases, and that no one has any right to persecute another for his religious belief or practices.

A Great-hearted Writer

Richard Baxter (1615-1691) not only believed in freedom of worship, but suffered brutal and unceasing persecution because of his beliefs. Baxter, whose immortal book "The Saints' Everlasting Rest" (1650) is still read and loved, is one of the sweetest, purest, and most pious characters in our story. Nothing could daunt him. Prison and poverty, pain and persecution, all these he endured willingly. As a clergyman of the Church of England, during the Civil War he was loyal to the king, yet believed in the rightness of the Parliamentary cause. The Act of Uniformity caused him to leave the Church, and for twenty years his life was one long record of incessant and malignant harrying by his enemies. He was not a great writer, but he was a great-hearted and noble man who by his books wrought much good.

"I love," wrote Sir Thomas Browne (1605-1682), "to lose myself in a mystery." The man was himself a mystery. Throughout his long life he stood apart from all the quarrels and disputes of this most quarrelsome and contentious period of English history, observing everything, taking sides in nothing. A doctor by profession, he lived a quiet and happy life, chiefly at Norwich. Like so many of his age, he was deeply and widely read, and his knowledge and his writings were varied in the extreme. He had an extraordinary mind; nothing was too great and nothing too small for its comprehension. To borrow Milton's words, it "dove-like sat brooding o'er the vast abyss," for Browne was possessed with the idea of the littleness and shortness of human life, and the immensity of the countless ages of time—"Time, which antiquates antiquity" as he himself described it.

His "Religio Medici" was first published without his consent in 1642. This confession of faith, "a private exercise directed to myself," is one of the strangest, most intricate, most contradictory, yet most pleasing of books. It puzzled readers when it was published; it has puzzled readers ever since. Its style, like that of all Browne's works, is elaborate and heavily Latinized. Every possible (and many an impossible) word is pressed into its service, yet you feel in reading the book that, in spite of the extraordinarily gorgeous manner, you have chatting to you in a language all his own a very kindly, companionable soul. He delights to startle you with some astonishing suggestion, so unexpected that it takes your breath away, and then to pursue that suggestion through a maze of intricate argument.

Another famous work of his, quite short, but a masterpiece of ornate prose, is "Hydriotaphia, or Urn Burial." Some Roman funeral urns were dug up near his home, and this started his mind to ponder on his favourite theme, the shortness of mortal life. The result was a book which for majesty and splendour of language stands alone in English literature.

A quainter work, and one which shows the peculiar searching after strange and out-of-the-way knowledge that always distinguished Sir Thomas Browne, is "The Garden of Cyrus." This deals with quincunxes, the lozenge-shaped gardens popular in ancient times. Browne finds illustrations of quincunxes everywhere, ransacking the universe to find them. As Coleridge said, he finds "quincunxes in heaven above, quincunxes in earth below, quincunxes in the mind of man, quincunxes in tones, in optic nerves, in roots of trees, in leaves, in everything!"

The Anatomy of Melancholy

Another strange man was Robert Burton (1577-1640), who also stood aside from the troubles of his day. His massive "Anatomy of Melancholy," which was given to the world in 1621, was published as having been written by Democritus Junior. The book proposes to tell us exactly what melancholy is and how to cure it, but its interest lies in its quaint style and in the innumerable quotations from fourteenth and fifteenth century writers on medicine. Robert Burton was undoubtedly eccentric, but his very eccentricity led him to produce a work of enduring charm on a subject which, treated ordinarily, would have had no attraction within a few years of its publication. Astrology fascinated him, and he predicted that he would die in his sixty-third year. When he actually did so, some unkind people suggested that he hanged himself so that his prediction should come true.

The Character Writers

A curious literary group very popular in these days was that of the character writers. Of these Sir Thomas Overbury (1581-1613) was the first. His book, called "Characters," consisted of a number of essays each describing a type or class of men or women, such as "a country gentleman," "a franklin," "a fair and happy milkmaid." These essays are often very witty, and show that Overbury observed his fellow men keenly.

Another writer of the same kind is John Earle (about 1601-1665), who published in 1628 "Microcosmographie, or a Piece of the World discovered in Essays and Characters." This work, like "Characters," is wittily written in short, telling sentences, and gives us an idea we could not gain from more learned works of how ordinary men and women lived in the early seventeenth century. "A bowl-alley," says Earle, "is the place where there are three things thrown away besides bowls—to wit, time, money, and curses, and the last ten for one." What would Sir Francis Drake have said to that?

Thomas Fuller (1608-1661) can hardly be called a writer of characters, yet his "Worthies of England and Wales" (1662), consisting of biographies of Englishmen of renown, is first cousin to that type of work. Fuller, who was a clergyman and a strong supporter of the king during the Civil War, is a most interesting and amusing writer. He packs his biographies full of all the curious stories and anecdotes he can find, and makes so many original and ingenious remarks that no reader can fail to be delighted with him. He loves to shock you by mingling the comic with the serious, and by placing side by side the most opposite ideas and then showing how similar they are. He is perpetually witty and yet very wise, a friendly writer with whom it is good to be acquainted.

Fuller was a man of prodigious memory. "I met Dr. Thomas Fuller," writes Pepys in his famous Diary. "He tells me of his last great book that is coming out—a history of all the families of England. He could tell me more of my own than I know myself, and also to what perfection he hath brought the art of memory that he did lately to four eminent scholars dictate together in Latin upon different subjects of their proposing, faster than they were able to write, till they were tired." In Fuller's days traders were wont to hang signs outside their shops, as some country inns continue to do, and it is said that the author of "Worthies" was able to repeat them in their proper order from St. Paul's to Tyburn. But while Pepys was loud in praise of Fuller's memory, he was less enamoured of his preaching. He notes having heard "a poor dry sermon" by him.

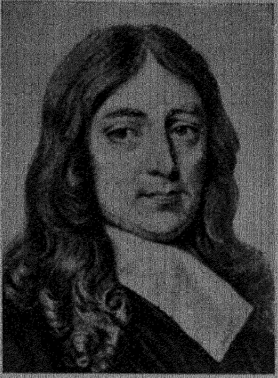
Fuller came of a clerical family. His father was a clergyman, and his mother was niece of Bishop Davenant of Salisbury, who took a kindly and practical interest in his relative's career. We find the prelate appointing him to the prebendal stall of Netherbury in Ecclesia and the vicarage of Broadwindsor. Later, Fuller became curate of the Savoy, then settled at Lincoln College, Oxford, was appointed chaplain to Sir Ralph Hopton, and was present at the battle of Lansdowne, near Bath. His elevation to the dignity of chaplain to the infant daughter of Charles I entailed no arduous duties, and he retired to Exeter, the "ever faithful city," to write his most famous book. He also found time, perhaps by way of diversion, to write "Good Thoughts in Bad Times," believed to be one of the first books printed in the busy city of the West.

Fuller had also been labouring for many years on a "Church History," which was published in 1655. It was not to be expected that such a work would escape criticism, which it received in full measure. Peter Heylyn, one of Fuller's most bitter opponents, ridiculed him publicly at Oxford by referring to the author as "running round London with his big book under one arm and his little wife under the other, and recommending himself as a dinner guest by his facetious talk." The vendetta went farther, for the captious critic published a volume dealing with alleged errors, to which Fuller replied in a book bearing the delightful title of "Appeal for Injured Innocence." It says much for the good humour of Fuller, as it also redounds to the credit of Heylyn, that they afterwards became good friends.

THE BLIND MAN WHO SAW MUCH

The Story of "Paradise Lost" and of "Paradise Regained."

TO not many men is it given to spend the first thirty years of their lives in quiet reading and self-education, as was the privilege of John Milton. But then very few men have such a destiny before them as had the author of "Paradise Lost," who from an early age realized that he was set apart for some special task, and gave himself wholly to concentrated preparation for it.


John Milton (1608-1674).

He was happy in his home and his parents. Many a father would have thought it unreasonable that a clever son should continue year after year in study without a thought of earning his own living. Not so the elder John Milton, who from the first encouraged and aided John Milton the younger and, far from interfering in any way with his ideals and ambitions, furthered them by all means in his power.

The Miltons were Puritans, and consequently their home was godly, sober, and industrious. But in it were no signs of the harsher, more fanatical Puritanism which we so often connect with that movement. The elder John Milton, a scrivener or notary, who by the time of his son's birth had become, after an early life of struggle, a comparatively wealthy man, was well-educated, cultured, and refined, and a lover of music, who not only played well, but also composed notable melodies. His house in Bread Street, London, was a resort for men of learning.

It was nearly an ideal home for a poet-to-be. Almost the only mistake made, but that a grave one, was that the younger John's eagerness for study was encouraged too far. He tells us that "from the twelfth year of my age I scarce ever went to bed before midnight," so devoted was he to learning. Nature exacted a terrible penalty for such flouting of her laws. The man who wrote "Paradise Lost" and dramatized the story of the blinded Israelitish giant, Samson, was himself a man bereft of sight. When, in "Samson Agonistes," he makes the captive Samson exclaim:

> O loss of sight, of thee I most complain,

he was writing from his own bitter experience.

Those days, however, were yet far off. For more than thirty years John Milton's life must have been one of quiet enjoyment. When the boy was ten his father secured for him a scholarly tutor, and two years later he entered him at St. Paul's School. Neither pains nor money was spared to give him the best possible education. "Both at the grammar school and also under other masters at home," John Milton wrote later of his father, "he caused me to be instructed daily."

While he was still at St. Paul's his written work, both in English and in other languages, began to excite attention. He was fifteen when he wrote that paraphrase of Psalm 136, parts of which are still regularly sung in Divine worship, and which begins—

> Let us with a gladsome mind
> Praise the Lord, for He is kind;
> For His mercies aye endure,
> Ever faithful, ever sure.

Of this poem and another written at the same age, Samuel Johnson declared that "they would in any numerous school have obtained praise, but not excited wonder." "Let us with a gladsome mind" is not a remarkable work, though so popular; John Milton's was a genius which refined slowly, and he soon began to show that he had no intention of hastening it. Rarely in all the history of literature has there been such deliberate and lengthy preparation for a poet's career.

No doubt when he left school at sixteen he was still too young to be sure of himself or to know exactly why he was studying with such ardour and writing verses so carefully and precisely. But during the seven years he spent at Christ's College, Cambridge, his mind gradually came to see clearly, if not the exact nature of the life work which lay before him, at least what he was not to do. His father had intended that he should go into the Church—no doubt, John Milton the elder had dreamed glowing dreams of his son as a bishop, as a learned divine, or as a preacher of compelling eloquence—but that career, he decided, was not for him. The Church of

England at that time, under Archbishop Laud, was adopting ceremonies and practices which could not please a Puritan, and Milton "thought it better to prefer a blameless silence before the sacred office of speaking."

While he was at Cambridge, where he acquired a distinguished reputation for scholarship and literary work, he wrote poetry in both Latin and English. With his Latin poems we need not concern ourselves, save to remember that throughout life he wrote occasional elegant verses in that tongue. Nor need we inspect too closely his early work in English; these efforts were but exercises, the training a young poet would naturally give himself. Two poems only deserve much more than a passing glance, the ode "On the morning of Christ's Nativity" (1629) and the sonnet "On having arrived at the Age of Twenty-three" (1631). The first of these, which tells in flowing and gorgeous language part of the Gospel story of Christ's birth, is notable because in it you can see clearly the author of "Paradise Lost," can distinguish here and there that largeness and magnificence of mind, that breadth of scholarship, that blending of Christian and classical knowledge, that rolling and sonorous language which distinguish the later and infinitely greater poem. The second, which we quote in full, is a remarkable and beautiful dedication of a life to the highest ends:

How soon hath Time, the subtle thief of youth,
  Stolen on his wing my three-and-twentieth year!
  My hasting days fly on with full career,
  But my late spring no bud or blossom shew'th.
Perhaps my semblance might deceive the truth
  That I to manhood am arrived so near;
  And inward ripeness doth much less appear,
  That some more timely-happy spirits endu th.
Yet, be it less or more, or soon or slow,
  It shall be still in strictest measure even
  To that same lot, however mean or high,
Toward which Time leads me, and the will of Heaven.
  All is, if I have grace to use it so,
  As ever in my great Task-Master's eye.

In that sonnet we see Milton at twenty-three a little anxious, in spite of himself, wondering if it is right that he should still be to all appearances a drone in the world's hive, yet somehow sure of two things—that he is called of God to some task, and that God's plans for him will mature in His own good time.

He knew he was not yet ready for that task, that he needed still more time for study and reflection, so with his father's consent he retired "far from the noise of town" to the little village of Horton, in Buckinghamshire, which the elder had himself shortly before selected as a retreat for his old age. Here he spent between five and six years:

Sometime walking, not unseen,
By hedgerow elms, on hillocks green,

. . . . . .

While the ploughman, near at hand,
Whistles o'er the furrowed land,
And the milkmaid singeth blythe,
And the mower whets his scythe,
And every shepherd tells his tale
Under the hawthorn in the dale.

At other times he would

walk unseen
On the dry smooth-shaven green
To behold the wandering moon,
Riding near her highest noon,
Like one that had been led astray
Through the heaven's wide pathless way.

But his chief concern was with books; he had gone to Horton to study in peace the works of the greatest scholars and poets of all time, to fit himself to write noble thoughts by absorbing the noble thoughts of others who had gone before:

let my lamp, at midnight hour,
Be seen in some high lonely tower,
Where I may oft outwatch the Bear,
With thrice great Hermes, or unsphere
The spirit of Plato, to unfold
What worlds or what vast regions hold
The immortal mind that hath forsook
Her mansions in this fleshly nook;

. . . .

Sometime let gorgeous Tragedy
In sceptred pall come sweeping by,
Presenting Thebes, or Pelops' line,
Or the tale of Troy divine . . .

Not long ago a notebook used by Milton during this time was discovered, and in it were notes and extracts showing that he must have studied diligently the works of at least eighty authors in five different languages, English, French, Italian, Latin, and Greek.

While he lived in this village Milton naturally wrote some poetry. He did not think a great deal of it himself—it was all done by way of preparation, as exercise in the art of writing poetry; but everyone agrees that had he never written "Paradise Lost," the work he did at Horton would have kept his name famous among English poets. The quotations above are from "L'Allegro" and "Il Penseroso," short companion poems of which one poet said, "Whenever I come to the end of these poems, or either of them, it is always with a sigh of regret." Both are pictures of himself, "L'Allegro" in mirthful mood, "Il Penseroso" in sober, austere frame of mind. Each is, in its way, a perfect picture of life in a beautiful village in the heart of the country, as lived by a young man of intellectual and refined tastes. Each is something more, an expression of a young man's delight in life, and told in words of genius.

If you wish to appreciate Milton's poetry, begin with these two poems. It is easy to begin at the wrong place with Milton; he is a poet who elsewhere demands stern, continued intellectual effort. You have to win your way into an understanding of him through sheer hard work, and many a reader of tender years has been terrified of him for life through being plunged without preparation into the intricacies of "Paradise Lost."

Milton's Masques

We have read of the popularity of the masque as a form of entertainment during the first half of the seventeenth century (*see* p. 5152). Milton's acquaintance with well-known musicians, and particularly with Henry Lawes (1596-1662), led him to make two attempts at this form of drama. One of these attempts resulted in the finest masque in the English language. The Earl of Bridgwater, being about to take up residence at Ludlow Castle on his appointment as Lord Lieutenant of the Welsh Marches, asked Lawes, who was music master to his family, to provide a masque for the occasion. Lawes, for whom Milton had previously written "Arcades," which was presented to the Dowager Countess of Derby at Harefield, near Uxbridge, by members of her family, asked the poet to supply the words, and received in reply "Comus."

"Comus" has faults—it is much more of a sermon than an entertainment, but as a passage of poetry of sustained dignity and beauty, and as a noble Puritan protest against the impurity and licence of life so common then in England, it is unrivalled. In it speaks out clearly for the first time the "high priest of the Puritan revolution."

The same tone is evident in "Lycidas," an elegy on the death of Edward King, a Cambridge scholar who was drowned while crossing the Irish Sea. Milton did not write as an intimate friend of King's; he was asked, being a known poet and one who had been at Cambridge with him, to contribute to a collection of elegies in memory of the unfortunate man. Consequently, there is no personal sorrow in the poem; the occasion is used to weave a graceful lament round the name of Lycidas—that is, King—who after the pastoral fashion is pictured as a shepherd. Suddenly, in the midst of the perfectly modulated flow of poetic grief, Milton's anger at the worthlessness and wickedness of so many members of the English Church blazes forth in this magnificent tirade. Among the mourners of the death of Lycidas:

Last came and last did go,
The Pilot of the Galilean Lake;
Two massy keys he bore of metals twain
(The golden opes, the iron shuts amain).
He shook his mitred locks, and stern bespake:—
"How well could I have spared for thee, young swain,
Enow of such as, for their bellies sake,
Creep, and intrude, and climb into the fold!
Of other care they little reckoning make
Than how to scramble at the shearers' feast,
And shove away the worthy bidden guest.
Blind mouths! that scarce themselves know how to hold
A sheep-hook, or have learnt aught else the least
That to the faithful herdman's art belongs!
What recks it them? What need they? They are sped;
And, when they list, their lean and fleshy songs
Grate on their scrannel pipes of wretched straw
The hungry sheep look up and are not fed,
But, swoln with wind and the rank mist they draw,
Rot inwardly, and foul contagion spread.
Besides what the grim wolf with privy paw
Daily devours apace, and nothing said."

The language may be allegorical, but the meaning is terribly clear.

A grand Continental Tour

At length the quiet life at Horton began to pall upon Milton, or perhaps he felt that his studies were complete. A grand Continental tour was planned and in 1638 embarked upon. He visited Paris, Nice, Genoa, Florence, Rome, and Naples, and met and talked with the most eminent men of the day. How long he might have stayed abroad we cannot say, but on his way the news from England grew ever more distressing, the king and Parliament were rapidly drifting towards war, and in 1639 he returned home.

Before he had set out he had felt that his time was at last at hand, that the long years of preparation were almost over, and that he was shortly to commence the great work he had in mind, though he knew not yet exactly what it was to be. "What am I thinking of?" he had written to Charles Diodati, his dearest and only intimate friend, just before leaving for the Continent. "Why, with God's help, of immortality!" He had even half decided upon his subject; he was, he thought, to sing of "Arthur moving to the fray even in the nether world."

Despite the fact that he returned to England hurriedly because of a growing feeling that he ought to play his part in the political struggle, his great poem-to-be occupied most of his thoughts. He has, indeed, been laughed at by some critics because he cut short his Continental tour in order to come home to help the Puritan cause, and then did nothing but open a small private school. But if we think carefully for a moment, we shall understand his position. For years and years his whole mind had been occupied with and centred upon one thing and one only, the writing of a poem which "the world would not willingly let die." He had lived apart from man, far from the busy world of strife and dispute, in quiet contemplation and diligent study. Now he felt himself torn with anxiety and doubt. Was he to remain outside the great struggle that was tearing England in two, or was he to abandon, for a while at least, all thought of his destined work, and to throw himself into the fight?

At length he decided upon the latter course. We could wish that he had not, and yet we are bound to feel that as a true Englishman and a staunch Puritan he could not have done otherwise. We will draw the veil as far as possible over the unhappy years that followed. Milton found his task, or thought he found it, in writing pamphlets on behalf of the Puritans. He wrote feverishly hard, and was rewarded for his services by a minor post in Cromwell's government. Yet all he wrote, save only the noble "Areopagitica; a Speech for the Liberty of Unlicensed Printing" (1644) and his "Tract on Education" (1640), neither of them concerned with the great struggle, is best forgiven and forgotten. It is too sad to think of the mighty mind which created "Paradise Lost" pouring forth pages of coarse and scurrilous abuse, as it did during these years.

The Fading Light

By 1650 his left eye was blind, and he was warned that the other would go unless he gave up work entirely. The noble spirit of Milton rose above all personal considerations. He decided—and we can but reverence the sublimity of the decision—that "he could not but obey that inward monitor . . . that spake to me from heaven . . . and . . . employ the little remaining eyesight in doing . . . the greatest service to the common weal it was in my power to render."

The Commonwealth Government fell with the death of Cromwell. There was a year of anxiety and intrigue, and then came the triumphant restoration of Charles II and the final shattering of all Puritan hopes. Milton was by now completely blind, in poor health, more or less ruined financially, and for some time, as he thought, in danger of his life. He was actually arrested once, and for a while deemed it necessary to remain in hiding in a friend's house in London.

"*Paradise Lost*"

Under such conditions, to the trials of which were added worries and troubles in his home, he composed a great part of "Paradise Lost." We do not know when his immortal poem was actually started, nor do we know when the subject was finally decided upon, but we do know that it was during the distressful years just before and after the Restoration that the greater part of the story

Of Man's first disobedience, and the fruit
Of that forbidden tree whose mortal taste
Brought death into the world, and all our woe

was written down. The difficulties were colossal. Milton could neither read nor write one word himself, and he had to depend largely upon unwilling help. His three daughters acted as his secretaries, and by all accounts were most ungracious. Perhaps we can feel some sympathy with them. They had been educated to use one language only, English, yet now they had to learn the correct pronunciation of six, and to read to their father for hours on end from books of which they understood not a single word.

In the quiet hours of night Milton would compose his lines, and in the morning his daughters would write them down. Three years of hard labour it cost to commit "Paradise Lost" to paper. Friends gave their assistance more readily than the daughters, and in particular Edward Philips, a nephew of the blind poet. These Milton charmed by his conversation and his cheerfulness. Young men especially were attracted to him. It was only his own family who loved him not.

"Paradise Lost" consists of twelve books, each of which contains from seven to eleven hundred lines. The story opens just after Satan and his rebellious angels have been cast out of Heaven; we see them in Hell, stunned and bewildered after their colossal overthrow. But though vanquished they are not daunted. Of Satan we are told that

Nine times the space that measures day and night
To mortal men, he, with his horrid crew,
Lay vanquished, rolling in the fiery gulf,
Confounded, though immortal. But his doom
Reserved him to more wrath . . .

He and his lieutenants plot and plan; they build a large palace in Hell, and think out means for revenge upon God. Satan proposes an amazingly daring plan; God is proposing to create a new world, called Earth. He, Satan, will go to this earth, and see what evil he can there create. He goes, not without protest; and his journey is observed by God, who knows and who announces in Heaven that it will be successful.

Then follows a long description of the Garden of Eden, and of the life of Adam and Eve therein. Guardian angels protect them, and they are warned of the danger which besets them. The archangel Raphael describes to them in full the terrific combat between God and Satan, and the fearful onslaught led by God's only Son which ended the fight. Then, at Adam's request, he relates the story of Creation. In spite of all warnings, however, the Fall of Man ensues; Satan, in the guise of a serpent, tempts Eve to taste of the Tree of Knowledge, and Eve, in her turn, tempts Adam.

There is rejoicing in Hell at Satan's success, followed swiftly by rage and mourning as God announces his almighty punishments. The Son of God pleads with His Father successfully for man, but Adam and Eve have to be driven out of Paradise. Before they go the archangel Michael relates to them what shall happen on the Earth from their own days right to the coming of Jesus Christ, and tells of His redemption of mankind through His death.

This very short summary gives no idea of the wealth of this superb poem, which is not to be compared with any other in the English language. If Shakespeare is the supreme poet of human nature, Milton is of divine; his work is grand almost beyond mortal reach. Colossal learning went to the making of "Paradise Lost," and still more colossal imagination. The poem is as a mighty eagle soaring with unhurried, unfaltering flight high in the heavens. For this reason it is more often praised than read. Probably few people to-day can say that they have read right through it. Yet everyone who pretends to love English literature ought to do so, and anyone who has read it through once in proper fashion will return to it again and again.

What is the proper fashion? We cannot say. But we can offer one suggestion. As we write, there lies before us an old two-volume copy of Milton's poems, read by a loving student many years ago. "Paradise Lost" is marked on every page with dates showing that the reader attempted one hundred, one hundred and fifty, two hundred lines, perhaps, each day, but no more. This we believe to be a very good way for the beginner to approach the poem.

A young Quaker friend of Milton having read the manuscript of "Paradise Lost," returned the poem to the author, saying, "Thou has said much here of Paradise Lost, but what hast thou to say of Paradise Found?" A year later Milton handed Thomas Ellwood (1639-1713) the manuscript of "Paradise Regained" with the words, "This is owing to you, for you put it into my head . . . which before I had not thought of."

"Paradise Regained" consists of four books only, and tells the story of the temptations of Jesus in the wilderness. There has been much argument about this poem, some critics thinking it equal to "Paradise Lost," others regarding it as far inferior. But it is so different that it is hardly possible to compare the two. "Paradise Regained" is as simple and straightforward as "Paradise Lost" is gorgeous. To compare the two is like trying to compare the beauty of a field of corn with that of a garden packed with rich and exotic plants.

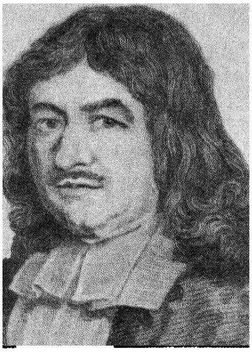
Milton continued writing steadily until his death in 1674, but we need take note only of the great drama in Greek fashion, "Samson Agonistes," published in 1670.

Everyone knows the story: how Samson, his hair cut and his strength gone, was captured by the Philistines, blinded and put to slave labour; how his strength revived, and how on a feast day he pulled down the house in which the Philistine nobles were banqueting, slaying three thousand of them, and dying himself in taking his revenge.

The drama, never meant for the stage, is the most human of all Milton's writings. In it, so it seems, he gave expression to all the bitterness and despair and grief he must at that time have felt, bewailing in the person of another all that loss of sight meant to him. Yet the conclusion is serene, for it ends with "calm of mind, all passion spent."

BEDFORD'S INSPIRED TINKER

John Bunyan's Great Message to the World



John Bunyan (1628-1688).

"THE Pilgrim's Progress from this World to that which is to Come delivered under the Similitude of a Dream wherein is Discovered the manner of his setting out, his dangerous Journey and safe arrival at the desired Country." Such is the full title-page of the book which, after the Bible, has been read and loved by more people than any other written in the English language.

We have all read it, or part of it. We have all as children been given a volume containing, either on the cover or as frontispiece, the picture of a man with a pack on his back, and gazing at a cross. We have all sat down, opened the book, and begun to read :

> As I walked through the wilderness of this world, I lighted on a certain place, where was a Den ; and I laid me down in that place to sleep ; and as I slept I dreamed a dream. I dreamed, and behold I saw a man clothed with Rags, standing in a certain place, with his face from his own House, a Book in his hand, and a great burden upon his back. I looked and saw him open the Book, and read therein ; and as he read, he wept and trembled ; and not being able longer to contain, he brake out with a lamentable cry ; saying, what shall I do? . . ."

We have read on enthralled, learning how Christian met Evangelist, who directed him to a wicket-gate ; how he set forth on his pilgrimage from the City of Destruction, undeterred by the jeers and threats of the neighbours, and by the arguments of Obstinate and Pliable. We have followed him on his adventures, falling with him into the Slough of Despond, listening to Mr. Worldly Wiseman's arguments, entered with trembling the gate at which Beelzebub shot arrows, rejoiced in the house of Interpreter, and shouted with joy as Christian lost his burden before the Cross.

We need hardly recapitulate further the story. We all know how Christian put on his armour, how he met with Faithful, how he fought with Apollyon, went through the Valley of the Shadow of Death, passed through Vanity Fair, where Faithful met with so cruel a death, and was imprisoned and beaten with Hopeful in Doubting Castle by Giant Despair, and finally reached the Heavenly Jerusalem after crossing the River of Death.

At that probably we have closed the book, for though there is a second part to "The Pilgrim's Progress," wherein is related how the wife of Christian followed after her husband, it is not usually printed in ordinary editions. When we talk about "The Pilgrim's Progress" we mean the first part containing the immortal story of Christian's pilgrimage.

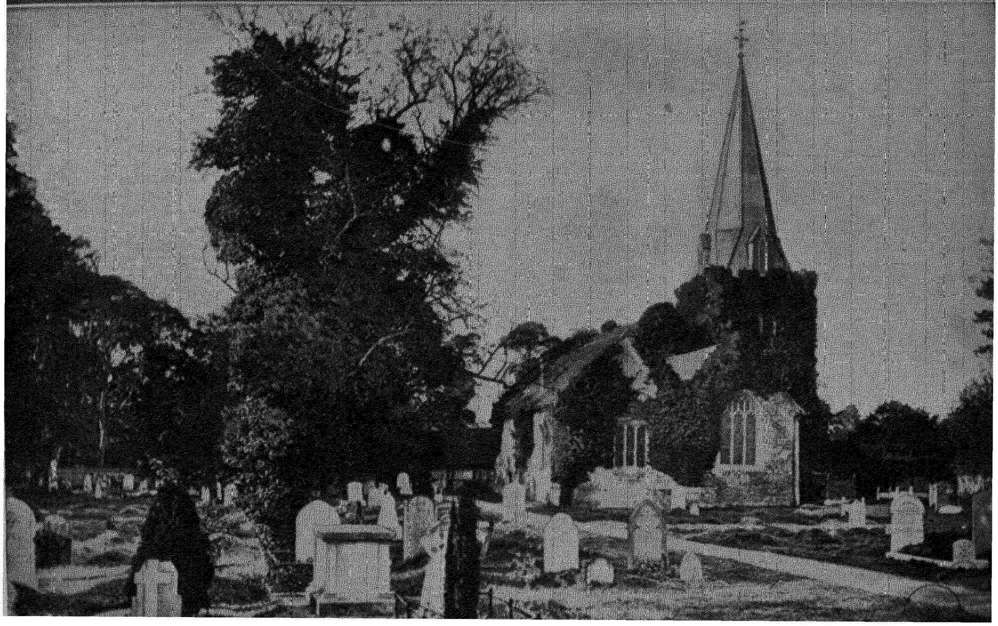
What sort of a man was this John Bunyan, who wrote this strange, compelling, fascinating allegory which, three centuries after the birth of its author, continues to be reprinted? Why do we read "The Pilgrim's Progress" to-day?

The answer to the second question throws great light on the first. This is what one writer says, ". . . the allegory is the life of its author cast into an imaginable form. Every step in Christian's journey had been first trodden by Bunyan himself ; every pang of fear and shame, every spasm of despair, every breath of hope and consolation, as described in the book, is but a reflection as on a mirror from personal experience. And therein lies the real secret of its unabating power of appeal." Lord Macaulay said much the same thing when he declared "The Pilgrim's Progress" to be "the only work of its kind which possesses a strong human interest." Most allegories read as allegories—that is, as stories from dreamland ; "The Pilgrim's Progress" reads on every page absolutely human and real.

We know instinctively, without being told, that Bunyan actually saw and was tortured by a fearful vision of the Judgment Day, that the dream was a real one, and not made up for the purpose of the narrative.

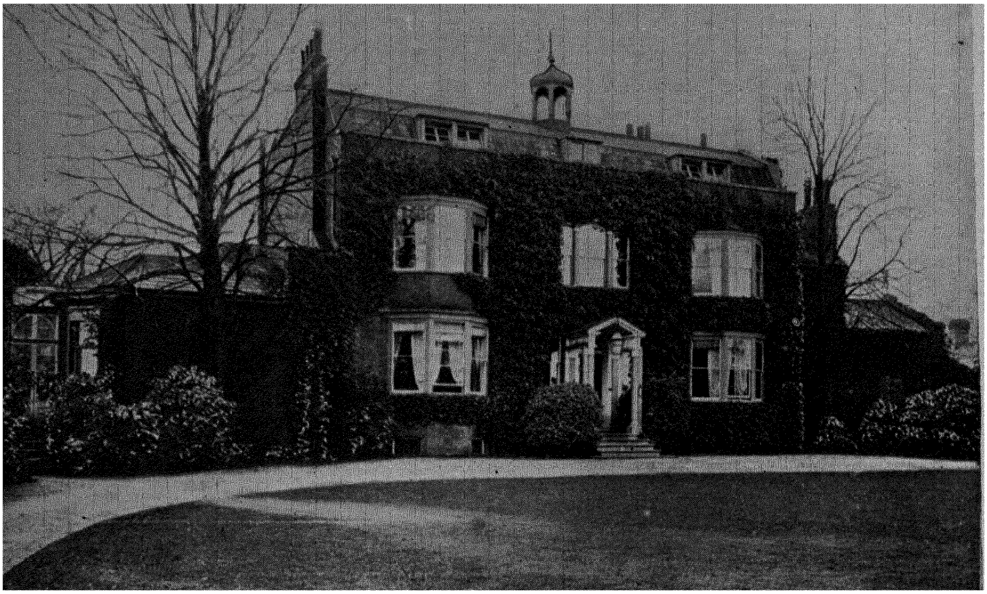
The real story of Bunyan's life does not consist of the actual happenings of that life, exciting though many of those were, but of his religious experiences, of the growth of his soul. He was born at Elstow, near Bedford, in 1628, the son of a tinker ; went to school, where he learned to read and

(*Continued on page* 5177.)

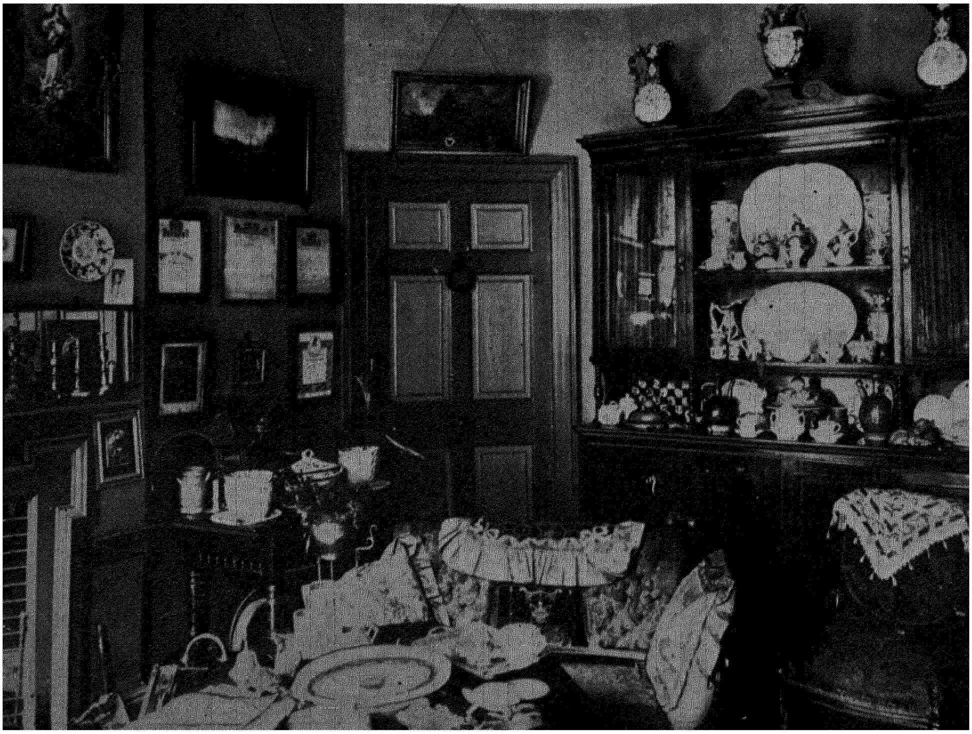


The parish church of St. Giles and part of the churchyard at Stoke Poges, Buckinghamshire, which inspired Thomas Gray's exquisite "Elegy Written in a Country Churchyard" The poet's tomb is in the churchyard, and there is a monument to him in the neighbouring Stoke Park

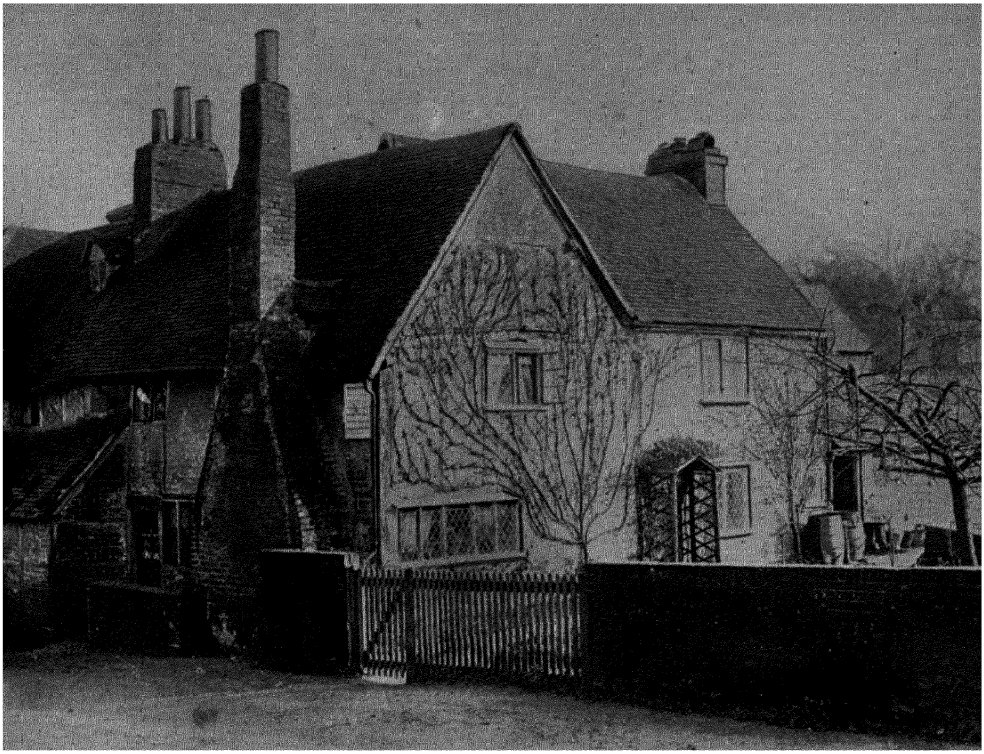
The parsonage of Steventon, in Hampshire, where Jane Austen was born. Her father was rector of Deane and Steventon, and in this stately Tudor mansion, with its mullioned windows and great chimney stacks wreathed with ivy, the future authoress spent the first years of her quiet life.



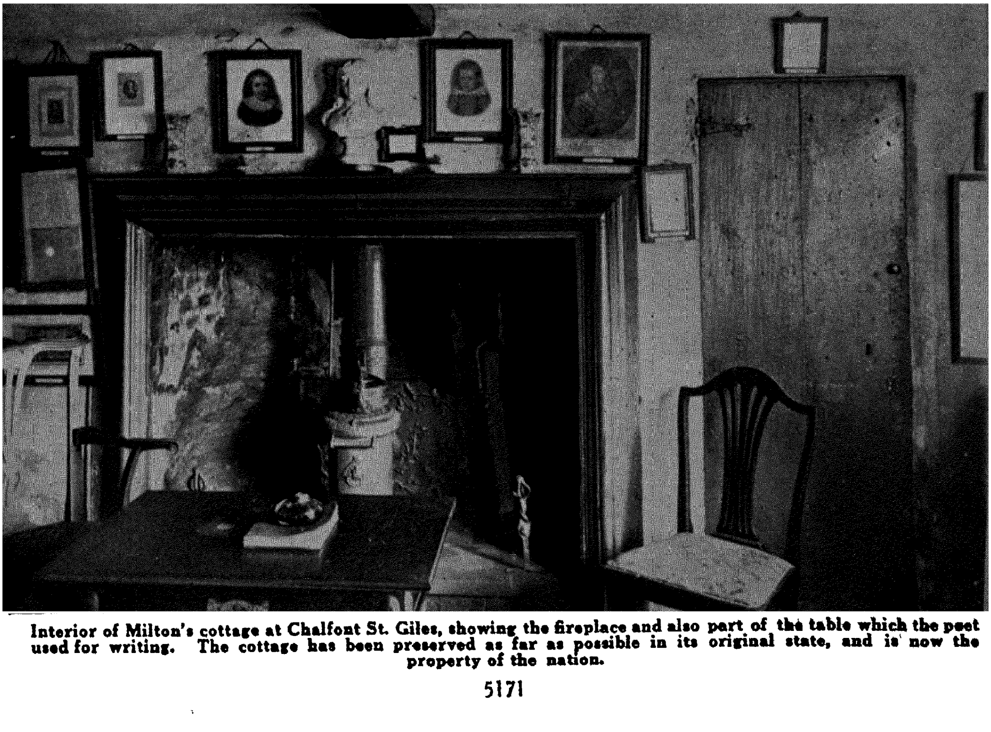
Charles Dickens's house at Gad's Hill, near Rochester, which was the novelist's home from 1857 until his death. The house, known as Gad's Hill Place, stands near the Sir John Falstaff inn. Gadshill is the name of a character in the first part of Shakespeare's "King Henry IV."



Dickens's dining-room at 48 Doughty Street, Bloomsbury, his home from 1837 to 1839, when he went to Devonshire Terrace, Regent's Park. The door knob and knocker were removed from the front door for greater safety. The house is now the headquarters of the Dickens Fellowship.



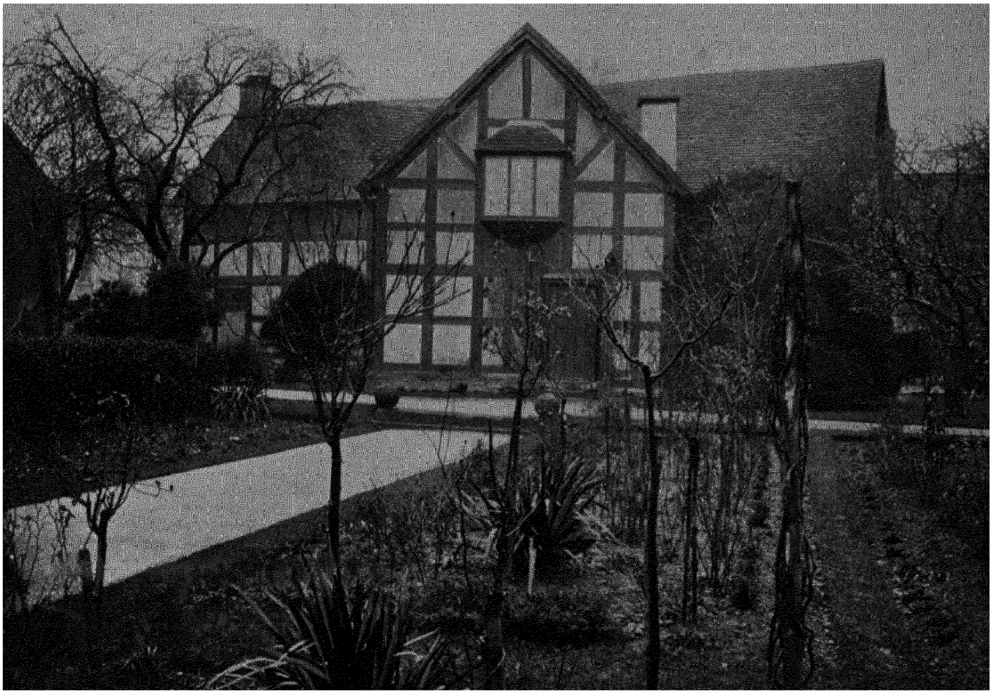
John Milton's cottage at Chalfont St. Giles, Buckinghamshire, the "pretty box" hired for him by his Quaker friend Thomas Elwood. To this quiet and picturesque haven the poet retired during the Great Plague, and it was here that he completed his magnificent epic "Paradise Lost."



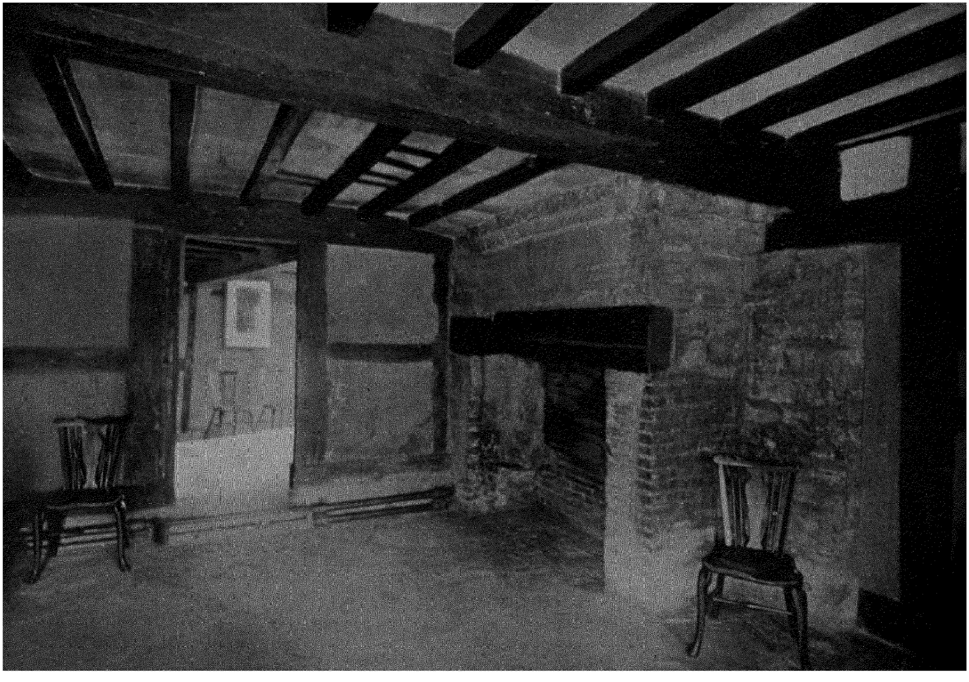
Interior of Milton's cottage at Chalfont St. Giles, showing the fireplace and also part of the table which the poet used for writing. The cottage has been preserved as far as possible in its original state, and is now the property of the nation.

Farringford, near Freshwater, in the Isle of Wight, which became Lord Tennyson's home in 1853. The calm, peaceful beauty of Farringford had a deep appeal for the poet, and it was from here that he launched the first series of the "Idylls of the King"

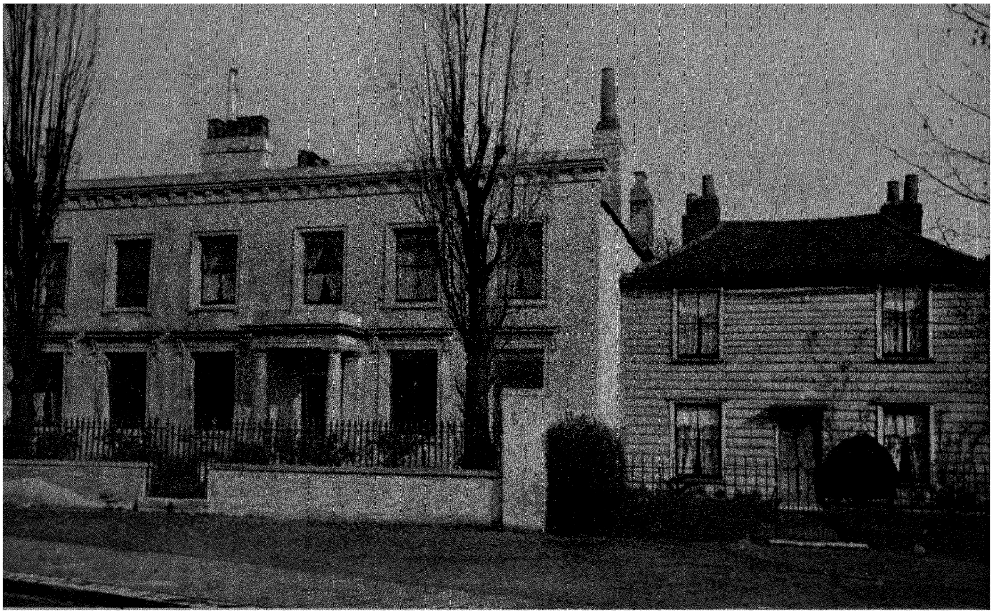
The rectory of Somersby, Tennyson's birthplace, in a tiny village of the Lincolnshire wolds. The poet came of an old Lincolnshire family, and the luxuriant pastoral scenery of this part of Lincolnshire had a powerful influence on the inspiration of the future Poet Laureate.



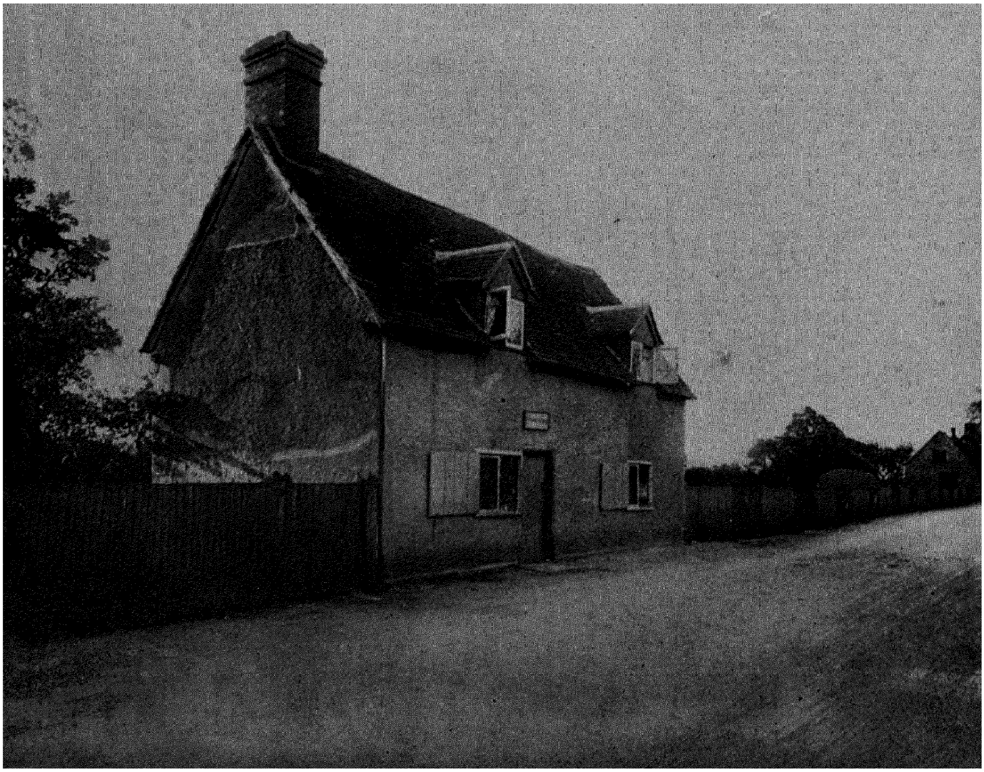
Back view of the house at Stratford-on-Avon in which Shakespeare was born. The house has been converted into a Shakespeare museum, and the garden has been planted with many of the flowers and trees that are mentioned in the poet's works.



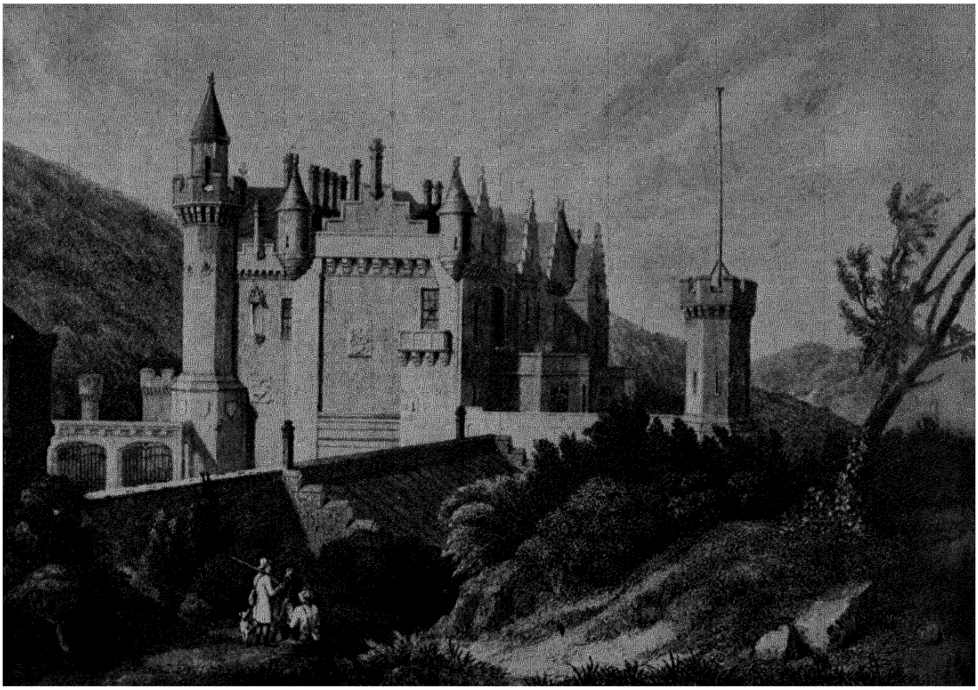
The living-room in the house at Stratford-on-Avon in which Shakespeare was born. The room is typical of a house of the period—built in a style often imitated to-day—with massive oak beams, open brick fireplace, and stone floor.



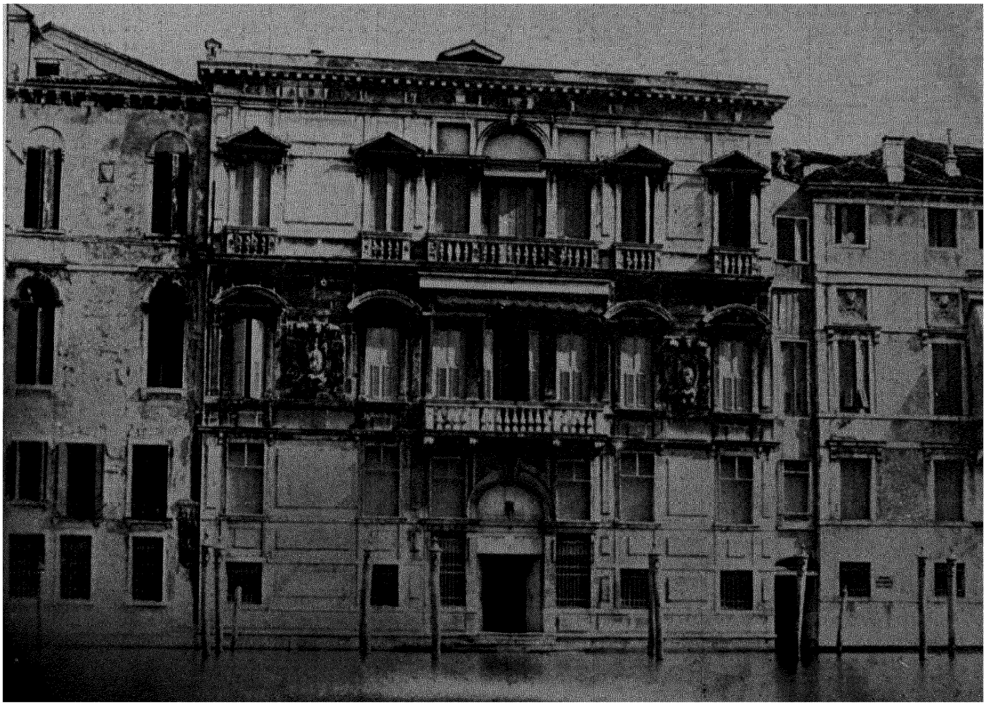
The house and the cottage at Enfield where Charles Lamb and his sister lived for some years. At first they lived in the cottage, but as Mary Lamb's health grew worse, and cares of housekeeping became overwhelming, they moved into the adjoining house as boarders.



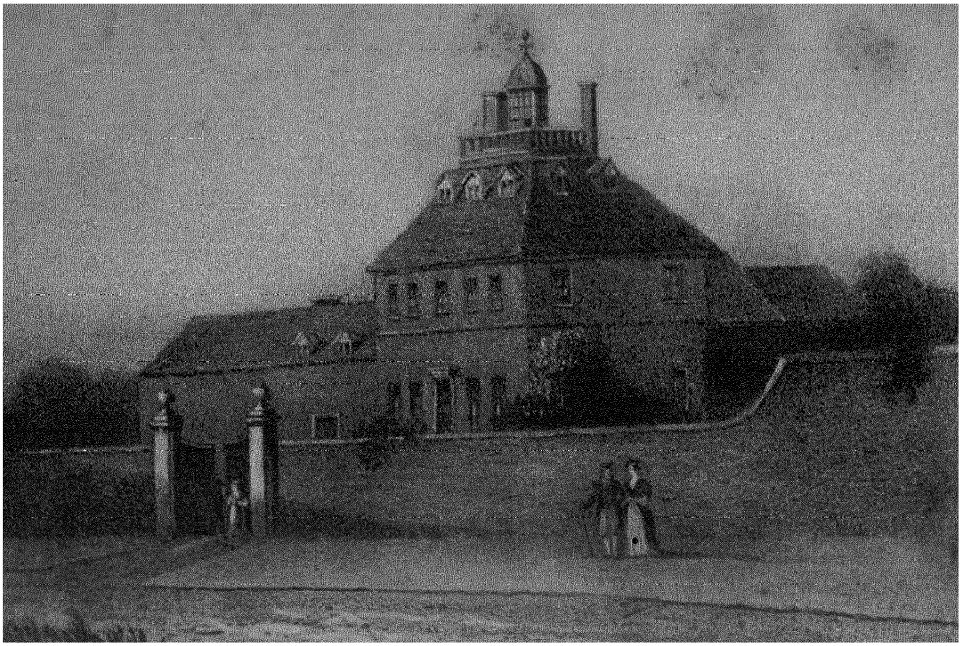
The little cottage at Elstow, about a mile outside Bedford, in which John Bunyan was born in 1628. His family had lived long at Elstow, his father being a tinker, at which trade the author of that wonderful allegory, "The Pilgrim's Progress," worked for some time.



Abbotsford, Sir Walter Scott's seat, viewed from the north-east. This picturesque irregular pile of buildings stands on the southern bank of the Tweed, a few miles west of Melrose. Scott first built a small villa (now the west wing), and kept on adding to this.



The magnificent Mocenigo Palace, on the Grand Canal, Venice, in the central block of which Lord Byron lived for some time. It was here that the poet Thomas Moore stayed when he paid Byron a surprise visit in 1819.



Edial Hall, near Lichfield, where Dr Samuel Johnson set up a school after his marriage But it was not a success. In eighteen months he had only three pupils, so he closed his academy and went to London to seek his fortune.

Thomas Hardy's home, Max Gate, at Dorchester. The great novelist was an architect in early life, having been apprenticed to an ecclesiastical architect in Dorchester, and his duties took him up and down the Dorset country, which he grew to know so well.

write; served for a while in the army of the Parliament, married early, became himself a tinker, began to preach, was imprisoned for twelve years, in spite of the devoted efforts of his wife to get him released, was set at liberty under the Declaration of Indulgence in 1672, began at once to preach again, became rapidly the most famous itinerant preacher of the day, was imprisoned again in 1675, began in gaol to write a book, and was released again the following year. For twelve years more, till his death in 1688, he continued to preach, while his books, which he produced in numbers during those years, made him among the common people by far the most popular author of the day. It used to be believed that he wrote "The Pilgrim's Progress" during his first long imprisonment, but this is probably not the case.

Such in brief is the tale of the outward life of this tinker and village preacher. There is nothing extraordinary about it, considering the period in which he lived; almost the same incidents might be related of hundreds of lives during that stirring, troubled century. He outshone his fellows as a preacher and as a writer, but there were scores of popular Puritan preachers in those days, and as many popular writers, while many men had suffered in some way or another for their religious faith.

Let us now dip into his inner life, to learn more about the source of his power and the reason why "The Pilgrim's Progress" remains in many ways the truest piece of writing in English.

For years Bunyan suffered intense tortures regarding spiritual matters. They reduced him from a strong, healthy man to a weak, nervous wreck whose legs trembled under him as he walked, who could hardly bear the sight of food, and who could find neither peace nor rest night or day. It was from a mind tried to the uttermost by such fearful experiences that the story of "The Pilgrim's Progress" issued. But when he wrote that masterpiece all his mental troubles were over; he had at last found peace.

It is of such stuff that the greatest literature is wrought. The man who would write that which the world will read must first himself have passed through the fire of experience. Such books as "The Pilgrim's Progress," "The Holy War" (1682), and "Grace Abounding to the Chief of Sinners" (1666) cannot be imagined; they must be written in the very life-blood of the author. That is why "The Pilgrim's Progress" ran into ten editions in the first seven years; why it was in Bunyan's lifetime "the daily subject of the conversation of thousands" in America, read widely in Scotland, in Holland, in France; why since his death it has a circulation second only to the Bible. It was first published in 1678—over two and a half centuries ago.

John Bunyan is the outstanding example in all literature of an almost completely uneducated man (in the sense that he received little schooling, went to no University, and knew few books) achieving a mastery of language that is unsurpassed. "I surveyed his library," wrote a biographer whose name we do not know, "when making him a visit in prison, the least and yet the best that ever I saw, consisting only of two books." Those books were the Authorized Version of the Bible and Foxe's "Book of Martyrs."

Bunyan's style is built on the Bible. He knew the Scriptures as no other man has ever known them; if ever it could be said of a man that he knew the Bible by heart, it could be said of Bunyan. In a sense, "The Pilgrim's Progress" is a duplicate Bible, for quotations abound on every page and every sentence rings of Holy Writ.

Bunyan wrote from the centre of the great heart of England; he was of the great common rank of English; he wrote as one of them, for them, and in their tongue, always appealing to the best and truest in everyone.

Compared with his masterpiece, Bunyan's other works are practically unknown. Many of them are, indeed, almost worthless as literature, and of no great interest to readers to-day, being the sort of stuff that was poured out by many a Puritan pen during the great religious struggle of the seventeenth century—prayers, strange interpretations of scripture passages, innumerable lurid pictures of the fate in store for the wicked, written with a violence and picturesqueness that is quite unpalatable to our taste. But it is interesting to remember that the "The Holy War" is, after "The Pilgrim's Progress," the best allegory in the language, that "Grace Abounding to the Chief of Sinners" is perhaps the most remarkable book of confession and self-examination we possess in English, and that even "A few Sighs from Hell" bears on every page the mark of Bunyan's vigorous, sinewy grip of our tongue.

THE AGE OF RHYME AND REASON

A Change Comes over English Literature

John Dryden (1631-1700).

WE now enter upon an age which is very different in spirit from that of "the spacious days of great Elizabeth." As we cannot understand the literature of any age without knowing something of the history of the time, let us glance for a moment or two at the history of the seventeenth century, to see if we can discover why a change was bound to come over English literature.

In 1603 James Stuart, a Scotsman, succeeded to the throne of England. It was a bad time for a foreigner—for so the English regarded him—to become king of England. For many years during Elizabeth's reign, thanks to her genius and to the dread all Englishmen had of the Spanish invasion they felt sure would come sooner or later, the country had been united and ready to allow the sovereign almost unlimited power. This power Elizabeth had used wisely.

The destruction of the Spanish Armada in 1588 relieved the country once and for all of its dread of Spain, and there were probably no happier days in England than during the few years after that event. But as Englishmen began to feel themselves secure, they began to feel also that it was not right for the monarch to have so much power; that the people through Parliament ought to have much more say in deciding the government of the country. The queen grew old; her wise and trusted ministers of state who had helped her to guide the country through a multitude of dangers died one by one, and it became clear that immediately she was dead the struggle to decide whether monarch or people should rule would begin in earnest.

That was not all. To fight the Armada, Englishmen of all religious beliefs had stood as one man, forgetting their disputes in the hour of national peril. When the danger was over, the disputes began again. There were in England three main religious parties, the Puritans, who were wholehearted supporters of the Protestant Reformation, and who longed for a simpler form of worship; the Anglicans, or supporters of the English Church as established by Henry VIII and Elizabeth, and the Roman Catholics, who naturally wanted to see the Pope once more the acknowledged head of the English Church. Of these parties the Puritans grew ever stronger, and by the time of the death of Elizabeth they and the Anglicans were the two great opponents.

King James was the worst possible man to deal with such a situation. Although he was very learned, he was of a weak, obstinate character. He hated and feared the Puritans, and had a rooted opinion that kings were appointed by God, and that therefore no man had any right to attempt to control or to object to anything they did. His ideas were thus exactly the opposite to those of the majority of Englishmen. The struggle between king and Parliament began immediately he came to the throne, and grew ever fiercer during his reign and that of his son, Charles I, until in 1642 war was declared. The conflict ended in the complete triumph of the Puritan and Parliamentary party, who tried and executed their king as a traitor to his country.

For eleven years England became a republic under that powerful genius, Oliver Cromwell. But the Puritans, soured by the many years of struggle, had become too narrow, too severe, too gloomily religious in their views; their government, though efficient, was not popular; the supporters of the Stuarts were still active, and the moment the Protector died the republican government broke down, and in a few months Charles II was recalled from exile and made king of England amid scenes of great rejoicing.

Do not think, however, that because England welcomed back a king whose father had been executed as a traitor that it had given up the ideas for which it had fought in the Civil War. The joy at the Restoration was just a burst of gladness that the over-stern, over-religious rule of Cromwell was over. The moment Charles II began to try to re-introduce the doctrine his father and his grandfather had held—the idea of the Divine Right of kings to do as they liked—and tried to meddle with religious affairs, he found himself faced with determined and indignant opposition.

Charles had the good sense to give way before this opposition; his brother James, who succeeded him, had not, but persisted obstinately in his unpopular policy, with the result that he was very quickly hurried off the throne and out of the country. Englishmen had fought once for the right to govern themselves, and they had no mind to allow the struggle to begin all over again. To prevent the possibility of this happening again, they drew up an elaborate set of rules for all future monarchs. This was the famous Declaration of Rights (1688), which became law in the next year as the Bill of Rights. From that moment the people, and not the king, became the real rulers of the country. The Bill of Rights is one of the great turning-points in English history. It marks the end of the tremendous religious and political struggle which raged in this country during the seventeenth century, and the beginning of the modern system of orderly and organized government of the people by the people.

The Influence of the Times

No writer can fail to be influenced by the times in which he lives. Writers of immense power and genius—Shakespeare, Milton, and Bunyan, for example—rise above the thoughts and habits of their day and give us work that is eternally valuable. Yet Shakespeare is the most thoroughly Elizabethan of all writers; in his works you have the most perfect picture of England in the late sixteenth century. The works of Milton and Bunyan, immortal though they are, could not have been written except during the feverish years of the seventeenth century. Had Milton been born earlier he would have written not "Paradise Lost" but probably a grand epic poem about King Arthur; had Bunyan been born a century earlier, he would probably never have written at all. Even writers such as Burton and Sir Thomas Browne, who lived undisturbed by political and religious disputes, show clearly by their style, their language, their very manner of thinking, to what age they belong.

The chief characteristics of Elizabethan literature are exactly the same as the chief characteristics of Elizabethan life; gay and high-spirited adventurousness, disregard of rules and regulations, and a longing to explore. During the years that followed, this freedom led to all sorts of wild extravagances, which show themselves just as much in the way men composed verses as in such a freakish and ridiculous business as Guy Fawkes' Gunpowder Plot. As the struggle between king and Parliament developed, however, as men fought their way towards religious and political freedom, their minds began to grow less adventurous and to desire law and order, settled rules and regulations, quiet and peaceful ways.

Literature very soon began to show the effect of this change. The free and easy verse of the Elizabethans, the prose that was almost verse and the verse that was almost prose, the loosely-constructed plots, the wild bursts of song, began to grow distasteful, and the more so as they became more and more disfigured by wildness and eccentricity. Writers began to aim at correctness, neatness, precision in thought and language. The seventeenth century is the century of Harvey, discoverer of the circulation of the blood, of Boyle and Sir Isaac Newton, and the growth of scientific thought, and the fact that French literature was then at its greatest gave impetus to this movement.

At the Restoration, when a king who had been living for many years in France came to the English throne, it became established. But it was not yet a movement which could give rise to a national literature. The drama especially, and the poetry and prose to a less degree, of the latter part of the seventeenth century belong to the Court and high society, and do not come from the great heart of the English people. To find the reason for this we must search again the page of history, where again we shall discover the close relation between literature and life.

Foes to the Theatre

The Puritans had been foes to the theatres. In the sixteenth century they petitioned time and again to have them closed, and when they came into power they shut them up. From 1642 to 1660 the doors of the playhouses remained closed. The earlier Puritans had no objection to literature as such, but as time went on they came to value sacred and religious literature more and more, and all other forms less and less, till in the end the Bible and a few select volumes of sermons and sacred poetry were all they would admit.

Their hatred of all forms of religious practice except their own even closed to them the works of many devoutly religious writers. The result was twofold; except for Milton and Bunyan there are no great Puritan writers, and at the Restoration writing is almost entirely in the hands of the opponents of Puritanism. As even after the accession of Charles II the great majority of Englishmen remained Puritan at heart, it will be clear that the literature we are now to examine does not speak for more than a comparatively small section of the people.

The Poetry of Thomas Waller

Long before the Restoration we begin to find writers showing signs of a desire for orderly arrangement both of thought and of language. The first of these of any note is Edmund Waller (1606-1687), who as early as 1623 was writing poetry in neatly-arranged rhyming couplets with a distinct pause at the end of each line. These " end-stopped " rhyming couplets are to become the almost universal metre during the late seventeenth and the eighteenth centuries. Here is an example from Waller's poetry :

That which her slender waist confined
Shall now my joyful temples bind ;
No monarch but would give his crown,
His arms might do what this has done.

It is easy to see how different an idea of poetic style inspires such lines from that which moved Robert Herrick (1591-1674) to write :

Fair daffodils, we weep to see
  You haste away so soon :
As yet the early rising sun
  Has not attained his noon.
    Stay, stay,
Until the hasting day
    Has run
But to the even-song :
  And, having prayed together, we
Will go with you along.

Note how easily the sense runs from one line to another in Herrick's verse, and how carefully it is arranged into lines in Waller's. This is a new poetry.

Later writers gave extravagant praise to Waller, and even called him " the father of English poetry." John Dryden, the greatest writer of the Restoration period, referred to him as " the first that made writing (verse) easily an art," and said that " the excellence and dignity of rhyme were never fully known till Mr. Waller first taught it." We do not nowadays think very highly of his work, but we have to admit that he set a fashion in the writing of verse which was to last for more than one hundred years.

He was a man well suited to set this fashion of neat, orderly, controlled writing. He had almost no imagination, and a small, neat, witty mind. He was a member of Parliament for many years, and his career is a record of seeking after popularity ; he was always ready to change his opinions so as to be with the majority. No one ever trusted him, but his ready wit and fascinating manners always kept him out of difficulties. He wrote a glowing poem in praise of Cromwell in 1655, but in 1660 was ready with an equally glowing one "To the King, on his Majesty's happy return." Charles II asked him why the second poem was such poor poetry compared with the first. Waller quickly replied, " Sir, we poets never succeed so well in writing truth as in fiction."

Waller is quite typical of the race of witty, unemotional, courtly poets who followed him. Before the Restoration at least three other writers had become converted to his views. These were Abraham Cowley (1618-1667), Sir John Denham (1615-1669), and Sir William D'Avenant (1606-1668), Shakespeare's godson.

Poems of an Infant Prodigy

Abraham Cowley wrote both in the Elizabethan style and in the new classical style. He was in early life an infant prodigy, for he began to write long poems at the age of ten, and his first volume of verse was published when he was only thirteen. He had an immense reputation in his day, both as a poet and as an essayist. We remember him as the latter, for in the eleven essays he wrote we can see the same movement towards neat, orderly arrangement and clear, direct language that was changing poetry. While we have long since abandoned the poetical ideas of this age, we still believe firmly in " a close, naked, natural way of speaking " in prose. Cowley also has a place in English literature as the inventor of the Pindaric ode, in imitation of Pindar, the Greek poet, which became so popular in the eighteenth century. The Pindaric ode pretends to be very irregular in metre, but actually its form is governed by an elaborate set of rigid rules.

Denham illustrates another movement. As poetry became more restrained in form, it became also more restrained in thought and emotion. The wild glory of Nature no longer attracted poets—they knew far more about the town than the country—but they felt bound to write pastoral and country poetry, since the writers of Greece and Rome, whom they admired and whose rules they strove to follow, had done so. It became the fashion, therefore, to select some portion of the countryside, and to weave round it a semi-descriptive poem. Denham's "Cooper's Hill," an account of a spot on the Thames near Richmond, is the first of these rather artificial poems. He succeeded rather well, and wrote at least four lines which will never be forgotten. They give, too, an excellent idea of this kind of poem. He says of the Thames ·

O could I flow like thee, and make thy stream
My great example, as it is my theme!
Though deep, yet clear, though gentle, yet not dull,
Strong without rage; without o'erflowing full

D'Avenant, as became a godson of Shakespeare, was most actively concerned in the revival of drama after the Restoration. He wrote a great many plays, chiefly tragedies, and a large amount of verse.

John Dryden

By far the most important writer for many years after the Restoration was John Dryden (1631-1700), the perfect example of his age, whether as poet, prose writer, or dramatist.

He began as a poet by publishing in 1659 an ode on the death of Oliver Cromwell. He was ready in the next year with "Astraea Redux," a poem celebrating the happy return of Charles II. In 1666 he wrote a long poem called "Annus Mirabilis," describing the wonderful events of the year, and particularly the Fire of London and the Dutch war. Before this last poem was finished, he had begun his career as a dramatist, and with the determined intention of writing exactly what the public wanted. Here are his own words on the subject:

> I confess my chief endeavours are to delight the age in which I live. If the humour of this be for low comedy, small accidents and raillery, I will force my genius to obey it, though with more reputation I could write in verse. I know I am not so fitted by nature to write comedy; I want that gaiety of humour which is required to it. My conversation is slow and dull; my humour saturnine and reserved; in short, I am none of those who endeavour to break jests in company or make repartees. So that those who decry my comedies do me no injury, except it be in point of profit; reputation in them is the last thing to which I shall pretend

Dryden knew his powers, and was determined to make a good living by means of them. He was quite right, too, about comedies; he never could write them successfully. His idea of a comedy was too boisterous, too bustling, too crude for the polished wits of the age. So he turned his attention to tragedy, which suited him much better. In 1664 he and Sir Robert Howard wrote "The Indian Queen," a tragic play written in rhyming couplets, which scored a great success. He followed it in 1665 with "The Indian Emperor, or the Conquest of Mexico by the Spaniards," which was also highly successful.

John Dryden took his work very seriously, and studied its laws carefully. He not only used rhyming couplets in these plays, but took the trouble in the preface to another play to explain why he used them, and why they were to be preferred to blank verse. During 1665 the theatres were closed because of the plague, and Dryden used the opportunity to think out his ideas as to how plays ought to be written. The conclusions he came to were published in 1668 as the "Essay on Dramatick Poesie," a work that has been famous ever since.

It consists of a dialogue between four characters; one defends the rules of classical drama, another the very strict rules of French drama, and a third the more free and easy methods of Elizabethan drama. Neander, the fourth character, who is Dryden himself, sums up the matter by arguing that English drama has much to gain by closely observing exact and careful methods of construction, but that it would be a pity to give up altogether the freedom English writers have always allowed themselves. The book is a fine piece of constructive criticism—that is, it starts with several theories, examines them all, picks out the best, and then builds up a strong case in favour of that theory.

Dryden's greatest Tragedy

From 1663 to 1680 Dryden was busily occupied in writing plays, chiefly tragedies. For this work he was perfectly fitted; that roughness, that strong directness of character which made him too clumsy and heavy for comedy, was exactly right for the high-flown, sensational, wildly exciting tragedy the courtiers of Charles II loved. Heroic tragedy we call it, partly because it was written in heroic couplets (ten-syllable rhyming couplets), and partly because it dealt with heroic deeds and characters—often rather impossibly so! His finest tragedy was "Aurengzebe" (1675), which dealt with the Great Mogul of India.

This was his last rhymed tragedy. In the prologue he confesses he has grown "weary of his long-lived mistress, Rhyme." Next he did a very remarkable thing. He wrote a play entirely to please himself. His ideas on the composing of plays had altered somewhat, and he had been re-reading Shakespeare, whose work he always greatly admired. So he produced a version of "Antony and Cleopatra" which he called "All for Love." His notion was to make a play with characters as excellently drawn as Shakespeare's, and with a better constructed plot. He did not succeed in creating a masterpiece, but he wrote a very fine blank verse tragedy

Dryden Shines in a new Way

In 1681 opportunity came to Dryden to shine in a new way, and he was not slow to seize it. There was tremendous political excitement; a determined attempt was being made to prevent James from succeeding to the throne after Charles's death, and to make the Duke of Monmouth the heir to the throne. The Earl of Shaftesbury's party in favour of Monmouth was steadily winning adherents; a strong body of writers was supporting them, pouring out pamphlets and satirical poems that influenced men daily. Someone was needed to write for the king's party. Dryden was asked to do so. He sat down and wrote the famous satire of "Absalom and Achitophel," in which, using the story of Absalom's rebellion against David, he poured ridicule upon Shaftesbury (Achitophel), Buckingham (Zimri), and the rest of the Monmouth party. He hit hard; the country roared with laughter, bought and read his satire like one man, and succeeding generations have chuckled over it ever since.

Dryden found satire very much to his liking. He helped to compose a second part to Absalom and Achitophel, and he wrote "The Medal," a satire against sedition, to ridicule the striking of a medal to celebrate Shaftesbury's acquittal when he was tried for treason. Then he metaphorically devoured a literary rival of his, Thomas Shadwell (about 1642-1692), in a satire called "Mac Flecknoe" (1682), which describes the crowning of the unfortunate rival as the Lord of Dullness, because in the dreary host of feeble writers

> The rest to some faint meaning make pretence
> But Shadwell never deviates into sense.

Strangely enough, at the same time Dryden was occupied in the composition of a very noble religious poem, "Religio Laici, or a Layman's Faith," in which he defends the Church of England devoutly and sincerely. In religious matters, as in his literary opinions, Dryden was liable to change, and in 1686 he joined the Roman Catholic Church. The year following he published "The Hind and the Panther," in which he defended sincerely and logically his new Church. It has been suggested that he changed over at a convenient moment, just when it seemed probable that Roman Catholicism would become popular in England. Be that as it may, he remained sturdily a Roman Catholic after the accession of William and Mary, and lost the important posts of Poet Laureate and Historiographer Royal in consequence. His faith meant much to him, and he was prepared to suffer for it.

During his later years he wrote again for the stage, and spent much time in translating works from Latin. His most famous translation is of Virgil, which also brought him in a large amount of money. Right up to his death he worked hard; his last volume was a collection of "Tales and Fables," partly from Chaucer and partly from the Italian writer Boccaccio (1313-1375). This volume, which is as good as anything he wrote, contained also a translation of the first book of the "Iliad," and that very fine poem which is quoted in all anthologies, the "Ode in Honour of St. Cecilia's Day."

There you have Dryden, a hard-working, hard-thinking man of letters, devoted to his work, which was also his profession, sincere, outspoken, and honest. His faults are largely the faults of the time, his virtues are his own. He is not in the very first rank of writers, but he is very high in the second rank. He wrote tragedies as well as anybody of his day, he wrote satires that are still well known and esteemed, he wrote a really fine critical essay, and he was one of the first to write clear, short, sharp English prose.

Wycherley, Congreve, and Etheredge

Of the dramatists who filled the Restoration theatres we need not say a great deal. Comedy was witty, its plots were intricate and dealt with society life, chiefly on the shadier side; its language was unpleasantly coarse and often indecent. In the comedies of William Wycherley (1640-1716) "nearly every person is a fool, and every clever man a rogue and a rake." William Congreve (1670-1729), one of whose plays, "The Way of the World," is still sometimes played on the stage to-day, was perhaps the best of the group. He draws characters well, his dialogue is exceedingly witty, but he writes, like all the rest, in the cynically coarse manner typical of the aristocratic society of his day. George Etheredge (1635-1691), Sir John Vanbrugh (1664-1726), Thomas Shadwell (1642-1692), and George Farquhar (1678-1707) were other popular writers of comedy.

In tragedy Thomas Otway (1652-1685) stands alone as the writer of one magnificent play, "Venice Preserved." It has many faults. Otway piles horror on horror, and the comic passages show how badly he could write. But the play stands out from the ruck of Restoration tragedies, and is well worth reading. Otherwise the tragedians, apart from Dryden, were a poor lot, and their works are deservedly forgotten.

Samuel Butler's "Hudibras"

Samuel Butler (1612-80) made his fame with one book, "Hudibras." We do not know much about his life, but he probably spent most of his days as a secretary or tutor—then a kind of upper servant's job—in one big house after another. In these posts he gained close insight into the life of the time, seeing many people, and observing them closely. Butler used his knowledge well, waited his opportunity, and soon after the Restoration produced the first part of the satire of "Hudibras." It immediately became the most popular book in the country. Charles II carried a copy of it in his pocket, quoted it constantly, and he and his courtiers laughed perpetually over this monstrously funny satire on the hated Puritans.

Butler borrowed from "Don Quixote" the idea of a foolish knight going out into the world to look for honourable adventure. In place of Don Quixote and his servant Sancho Panza we have Sir Hudibras and his squire Ralpho. Hudibras is made as ridiculous as possible, and his adventures are so cleverly told that we cannot help feeling contempt for so miserable a creature. It was just the poem to please the Court of Charles II. Here is a sample:

> He was in logic a great critic,
> Profoundly skilled in analytic;
> He could distinguish and divide
> A hair 'twixt south and south-west side;
> On either which he would dispute,
> Confute, change hands, and still confute;
> He'd undertake to prove by force
> Of argument a man's no horse;
> He'd prove a buzzard is no fowl,
> And that a lord may be an owl—
> A calf, an alderman—a goose, a justice—
> And rooks, committee-men and trustees.

The three parts were published in 1663, 1664, and 1678 respectively.

Butler died in poverty. This is entirely in keeping with the spirit of the age. The Court and the king laughed to exhaustion over his wit, but quite forgot to pay him for their amusement. That is the Restoration period in a nutshell. Can you wonder that the literature is brilliant, clever, witty—and heartless?

One man who was neither brilliant nor heartless must be mentioned. This is Izaak Walton (1593-1683), author of one of the most delightful books in our literature, "The Compleat Angler," which was published in 1653.

Walton was an ironmonger. In his spare time he fished, read good literature, and made friends among the finest characters of the day. When he was fifty he retired from business; he lived on very happily until he was ninety. From time to time he wrote charming little biographics of some of his friends, Donne, Wotton, Hooker, Herbert, and Bishop Sanderson. These biographies, which are full of beautiful and devout thoughts, are delightful to read, because he tells us so simply what these men he loved did, what they thought, why he liked them so well, and how thankful we ought to be to God for such good men.

"The Compleat Angler"

"The Compleat Angler" is the book which has made his fame enduring. As its name suggests, it is a complete guide to fishing as an art. But it is much more than that. Walton knew all there was to be known about catching fish (and cooking them), but he knew also the lovely woods, the quiet, peaceful rivers, the meadows and hills of our beautiful country, and these he describes in the simplest language, ever thanking God for his goodness in providing for man's happiness so bountifully.

Most of the book consists of dialogues between Piscator (the fisherman), Venator (the huntsman), and Auceps (the fowler). Auceps drops out in due course, and Venator becomes convinced that fishing is the finest of all sports, so Piscator tells him all the secrets. Here is Izaak Walton's idea of a good morning:

> **Piscator.** My honest scholar, it is now past five of the clock; we will fish till nine; and then go to breakfast. Go you to yon sycamore tree, and hide your bottle of drink under the hollow root of it; for about that time and in that place, we will make a brave breakfast with a piece of powdered beef, and a radish or two that I have in my fish-bag; we shall, I warrant you, make a good, honest, wholesome, hungry breakfast. And I will, then, give you direction for the making and using of your flies: and in the mean time, there is your rod and line, and my advice is, that you fish as you see me do, and let's try which can catch the first fish.

It is to the credit of English literature that it alone has produced an Izaak Walton; there is no book in any other language like it.

Most people at some time or other keep diaries, and write in them all their most precious secrets. During the reign of Charles II, Samuel Pepys (1633-1703), a clerk in the Navy office, kept for nine years a very full diary, and as a result has become one of the most famous and best beloved of English writers. He never knew anything of his fame (it would have pleased him mightily!), for the diary, which was written in a secret code, was not published until 1825.

Intimate Mr. Pepys

Pepys was just the type of man who ought to write a diary; a talkative, merry, confidential busybody who saw everything, heard everything, and put down everything. He was successful in his work; we read all about his success and his occasional disappointments. He loved money and fine clothes; so every year he counted up his money and told his diary how much he was worth, while he recorded every new suit of clothes he bought and the delight or disgust it gave him. He was a vain, conceited little man, but he never made any pretence of hiding the fact. He loved to go to the theatre and to jolly supper parties, so we read about all the plays he saw, and of all the times he over-ate or over-drank. We know when he was cross with his wife, when she was cross with him, when he spent money foolishly, when he repented of it, when the sermon at church was interesting, and when it annoyed him, or sent him to sleep.

But his diary contains much more than pleasant prattle about Samuel Pepys and his family. Pepys did not hold one of the highest posts in the Admiralty, but he was very much "in the know," and met and talked with everyone of importance in the kingdom from the king downwards. He was also very shrewd and keen, in spite of his follies and vanities. His diary is therefore an intimate and well informed social history of his times, and as such is of the utmost value to the historian of Charles II's reign.

"This day," wrote John Evelyn (1620-1706), "on the 25th May, 1703, died Mr. Samuel Pepys, a very worthy, industrious and curious person . . . He was universally beloved, hospitable, generous, learned in many things, skilled in music, a very great cherisher of learned men of whom he had the conversation . . ." Of Evelyn Pepys wrote: "In fine, a most excellent person he is, and must be allowed a little for a little conceitedness; but he may well be so, being a man so much above others."

John Evelyn's Diary

John Evelyn was himself a diarist. For sixty-five years he faithfully kept his record of events, trivial and important. Unlike Pepys, however, he remained on his guard while writing, was always dignified and reserved. As a stylist he was far superior to the garrulous Admiralty official, but there is nothing of the intimate, personal touch that is so fascinating in Pepys's work. Yet there is much charm in his writing, as we might expect from one who was "the model English country gentleman."

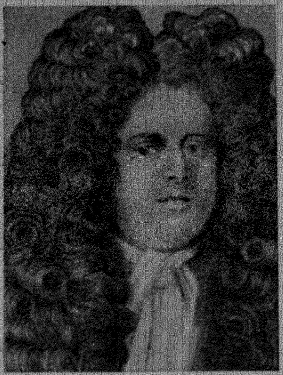
No one now remembers the great work of his life, "Sylva" (1664), a treatise on forestry, which was renowned and popular in his day and for long afterwards, but many people still read his diary, which, like that of Pepys, was not published until the early years of the nineteenth century.

"Sylva: a Discourse of Forest Trees" resulted in work being undertaken that proved of national importance. Referring to it when the diary was published in 1818, a writer in the *Quarterly Review* paid a worthy tribute to its value. "The greater part of the woods which were raised in consequence of Evelyn's writings have been cut down," we read: "the oaks have borne the British flag to seas and countries which were undiscovered when they were planted, and generation after generation has been coffined in the elms. The trees of his age which may yet be standing are verging fast toward their decay and dissolution; but his name is fresh in the land, and his reputation, like the trees of an Indian Paradise, exists, and will continue to exist in full strength and beauty, uninjured by the course of time."

THREE FAMOUS CHARACTERS

Sir Roger de Coverley, Robinson Crusoe, and Lemuel Gulliver

EVERYONE has heard of the three famous characters whose names form the sub-title of this chapter. Probably you have read "The Life and Surprising Adventures of Robinson Crusoe of York, Mariner," and revelled in "Gulliver's Travels," you may also know of the Spectator Club, and of the jolly, eccentric old bachelor, Sir Roger de Coverley, who was its chief member. Let us now learn a little more about these three, and something of the men who created them. By a coincidence which is not so remarkable as at first sight it appears to be, Sir Roger, Crusoe, and Gulliver made their bows in English literature within a few years of each other—Sir Roger in 1711, Crusoe in 1719, and Gulliver in 1726. Let us read in their authors' words of their first appearances :



Daniel Defoe (about 1661-1731).

We will begin with Sir Roger :

The first of our society is a gentleman of Worcestershire, of ancient descent, a baronet, his name Sir Roger de Coverley. His great grandfather was inventor of that famous country dance which is called after him. All who know that shire are very well acquainted with the parts and merits of Sir Roger. He is a gentleman that is very singular in his behaviour, but his singularities proceed from his good sense, and are contradictions to the manners of the world, only as he thinks the world is in the wrong. However, this humour creates him no enemies, for he does nothing with sourness or obstinacy ; and his being unconfined to modes and forms makes him but the readier and more capable to please and oblige all who know him.

When he is in town, he lives in Soho Square. It is said he keeps himself a bachelor by reason he was crossed in love by a perverse beautiful widow of the next county to him. Before this disappointment Sir Roger was what you call a fine gentleman, had often supped with my Lord Rochester and Sir George Etherege, fought a duel upon his first coming to town, and kicked Bully Dawson in a public coffee-house for calling him youngster. But, being ill-used by the above-mentioned widow, he was very serious for a year and a half ; and though, his temper being naturally jovial, he at last got over it, he grew careless of himself, and never dressed afterwards. He continues to wear a coat and doublet of the same cut, that were in the fashion at the time of his repulse, which, in his merry humours, he tells us has been in and out twelve times since he first wore it.

He is now in his fifty-sixth year, cheerful, gay, and hearty ; keeps a good house both in town and country ; is a great lover of mankind ; but there is such a mirthful cast in his behaviour, that he is rather beloved than esteemed. His tenants grow rich, his servants look satisfied, all the young women profess love to him, and the young men are glad of his company ; when he comes into a house he calls the servants by their names, and talks all the way up stairs to a visit. I must not omit, that Sir Roger is a justice of the *quorum*, that he fills the chair at a quarter-session with great abilities, and three months ago gained universal applause by explaining a passage in the Game Act.

Now for Robinson Crusoe :

I was born in the year 1632, in the city of York, of a good family, though not of that country, my father being a foreigner of Bremen, who settled first at Hull. He got a good estate by merchandise, and, leaving off his trade, lived afterward at York, from whence he had married my mother, whose relations were named Robinson, a very good family in that country, and from whom I was called Robinson Kreutznaer ; but, by the usual corruption of words in England, we are now called, nay, we call ourselves, and write our name Crusoe, and so my companions always called me.

I had two elder brothers, one of which was lieutenant-colonel to an English regiment of foot in Flanders, formerly commanded by the famous Colonel Lockhart, and was killed at the battle near Dunkirk against the Spaniards. What became of my second brother I never knew, any more than my father or mother did know what was become of me.

Being the third son of the family, and not bred to any trade, my head began to be filled very early with rambling thoughts. My father, who was very ancient, had given me a competent share of learning, as far as house education and a country free school generally goes, and designed me for the law ; but I would be satisfied with nothing but going to sea . . . .

Gulliver is supposed to be introduced to the reader by the publisher :

The author of these travels, Mr. Lemuel Gulliver, is my ancient and intimate friend ; there is likewise some relation between us by the mother's side. About three years ago Mr. Gulliver, growing weary of the concourse of curious people coming to him at his house in Redriff, made a small purchase of land, with a convenient house, near Newark, in Nottinghamshire, his native county, where he now lives retired, yet in good esteem among his neighbours.

. . . . . .

Before he quitted Redriff he left the custody of the following papers in my hands, with the liberty to dispose of them as I should think fit. I have carefully perused them three times. The style is very plain and simple, and the only fault I find is that the author, after the manner of travellers, is a little too circumstantial. There is an air of truth apparent through the whole, and, indeed, the author was so distinguished for his veracity that it became a sort of proverb among his neighbours at Redriff, when anyone affirmed a thing, to say it was as true as if Mr. Gulliver had spoken it.

. . . .

This volume would have been at least twice as large if I had not made bold to strike out innumerable passages relating to the winds and tides, as well as to the variations and bearings in the several voyages, together with the minute descriptions of the management of the longitudes and latitudes, wherein I have reason to apprehend that Mr. Gulliver may be a little dissatisfied; but I was resolved to fit the work as much as possible to the general capacity of readers. However, if my ignorance in sea affairs shall have led me to commit some mistakes, I alone am answerable for them; and if any traveller hath a curiosity to see the whole work at large, as it came from the hand of the author, I shall be ready to gratify him. As for any further particulars relating to the author, the reader will receive satisfaction from the first pages of the book.

RICHARD SYMPSON

These quotations have been given, not simply that you may be introduced, or re-introduced, to these world-famous characters, but that you may take particular notice of the way in which their authors bring them before you.

The author of "Robinson Crusoe" was Daniel Defoe (about 1661-1731); Joseph Addison (1672-1719) and Sir Richard Steele (1672-1729) were responsible for Sir Roger de Coverley, while Gulliver was invented by Jonathan Swift (1667-1745), then Dean of St. Patrick's, Dublin. Men more dissimilar it would be difficult to find, yet there is a remarkable similarity in their work.

For "The Man in the Street"

First, in the language and the style. They all use simple words, and plain, straightforward sentences, many of them exceedingly short. "When he is in town, he lives in Soho Square." "Being the third son of the family, and not bred to any trade, my head began to be filled very early with rambling thoughts." "I have carefully perused them three times." The same man might have written these sentences, and there is not a phrase in them which cannot be understood at a glance. These authors all write as though they were just chatting to their friends in the simplest and most homely fashion. These books are not produced for the few, scholarly people, but for the man in the street, who is expected not to be interested much in a fine style, but to want to get on with the story.

Second, the characters are so carefully and minutely described that you would think they were real persons. Can you not see Sir Roger in his old-fashioned clothes, talking hard as he goes upstairs? Can you not at once picture young Crusoe, his head filled with wild ideas of running away to sea? Would you not at once recognize, even though his personal appearance is never mentioned, the worthy Mr. Lemuel Gulliver, whose reputation for truthfulness makes people say, "If Mr. Gulliver says so, it's true?" The authors want you to believe their characters are real people.

Characters that Live

Third, not only do the authors give you the impression that they are describing real people, but also that these people are living with you, and that you might meet them any day in the street. They tell you where they live, how old they are, where they were born, and mention real people with whom they have come into contact, such as my Lord Rochester, the friend of Charles II, who is said to have composed that famous epitaph on the Merry Monarch:

Here lies our Sovereign Lord the King,
  Whose word no man relied on,
Who never said a foolish thing,
  And never did a wise one.

This is a new way of writing. You have been told about the new prose which Abraham Cowley and John Dryden began to write, the prose of direct, straightforward sentences and plain, homely language (*see* p. 5180). Here it is at its best, and applied to a new purpose, the purpose of making people read fiction as though it were fact. These three writers (for we will consider Addison and Steele as one) are introducing the art of writing realistic fiction.

It is true that more than one hundred years earlier Thomas Nash (1567-1601) wrote "Jack Wilton," but the regular and artistic production of stories of real life did not begin until the eighteenth century. You may object that "Gulliver's Travels" is not a story of real life, but you must remember that in those days people were still ready to believe tales which we can see at once are manifestly untrue. It is related that a learned bishop, on reading the Travels, cried out, "that there were some things in Gulliver that he could not quite believe!" If we take into account the credulity of people in the early eighteenth century, and the positively amazing care Swift takes to make his story realistic—as you see, he even invents an imaginary publisher-friend for Gulliver—

it is not surprising that many readers took the Travels as a record of actual happenings.

Let us turn to history again. We may be sure that it will tell us why realistic fiction began to be written early in the eighteenth century, and why from the start it was written so well.

You will remember the pamphlets of the Elizabethan days, and also the character writers, Overbury, Earle, and the rest (*see* pp. 5142 and 5154). Any man who wrote a pamphlet that was to be read by the common people had to express himself clearly so as to be understood, and forcibly so as to drive home his point. Anyone who essayed character writing had to describe his characters clearly and interestingly. During the religious disputes of the seventeenth century a prodigious amount of pamphleteering was done by both sides ; thus the habit of forceful, plain writing was thoroughly established by the time of the Restoration.

During the time of Cromwell and Charles II, and more particularly after William and Mary came to the throne, England began to have much more to do with foreign lands than before. Foreign trade increased, and this country, in addition, became closely involved in foreign wars. William III was a Dutchman and ruled part of Holland as well as England. Strange stories were brought home by sailors and soldiers, not the almost incredible yarns the Elizabethans told and listened to, but still remarkable enough.

A matter-of-fact Age

It was a matter-of-fact age. The high ideals and boundless appetite for romance of the Elizabethans had been exhausted in the long-drawn-out religious quarrels. Men now wanted facts. Newspapers sprang into being to supply them with facts. Soon someone discovered that newspapers could be made much more attractive if alongside the facts there were printed pleasantly-written little articles on subjects likely to interest readers, such as cookery, housekeeping, dress, habits, customs and fashions. Sir Roger de Coverley first saw the light in a journal called the "Spectator," which was produced by those two energetic journalists, Sir Richard Steele and Joseph Addison. The news element was missing, but the paper dealt with the life and manners of the times in a way that proved very acceptable.

Then Defoe had a brilliant idea. He would combine truth with fiction, and fact with fancy. It so happened that he had met, or had heard the story of, one Alexander Selkirk, a sailor who many years before had been marooned by his captain on the uninhabited island of Juan Fernandez, in the South Pacific. On that island Selkirk had remained for several years, quite alone ; he had become little better than a savage, and by the time his captain rescued him he had forgotten how to talk.

That was a splendid foundation. Selkirk's story was quite well known. Defoe would produce another, a far better one, with more excitement and with all the details of life on a desert island filled in.

Crusoe finds that he is not Alone

So we got Robinson Crusoe, mariner, of York, who was wrecked on a desert island, who built himself a house there and fortified it, who caught fish and turtles and planted corn, who lived and acted just as any sensible, hard-working, ordinary man would have acted who had been wrecked on a desert island. Defoe, however, saw that the story, however well told, would lack interest if Crusoe remained without human companionship, so he made cannibals come to the island, and we got that dramatic scene in which the lonely mariner, after five years of solitude, found that he was not alone :

> It happened one day about noon, going towards my boat, I was exceedingly surprised with the print of a man's naked foot on the shore, which was very plain to be seen in the sand. I stood like one thunderstruck, or as if I had seen an apparition. I listened, I looked round me ; I could hear nothing, nor see anything. I went up to a rising ground to look farther. I went up the shore and down the shore ; but it was all one. I could see no other impression but that one. I went to it again . . . after innumerable fluttering thoughts, like a man perfectly confused and out of myself. I came home to my fortification, not feeling, as we say, the ground I went on, but terrified to the last degree, looking behind me at every two or three steps, mistaking every bush and tree, and fancying every stump at a distance to be a man.

Is not that perfectly natural, and just as anyone would behave ? Who would refuse to believe that tale ? And how splendidly it prepares us for the cannibal feast and Man Friday ! Can you wonder that Defoe's book was a tremendous success, or that the author, elated by the way in which people received this first venture, turned out as many more books of the same kind as he could ? A second and a third part of "Robinson Crusoe" appeared quickly after the first, but they are not nearly so good :

other people beside Crusoe and Man Friday are on the island, and its charm has gone. Then came "Captain Singleton," who has extraordinary adventures in Africa, "The Memoirs of a Cavalier," "Duncan Campbell," "Colonel Jack," "Moll Flanders," "Roxana," and, most remarkable in many ways of all Defoe's books, "The Journal of the Plague Year."

Defoe was four years old when the Great Plague fell upon London in 1665 ; fifty-seven years later he wrote an account of it which is so amazingly lifelike that you would think it had actually been written during the scourge.

We are told everything exactly as it happened ; the numbers who died each week in each parish, the orders for cleansing the streets, for infected houses and persons, conversations, good deeds and bad. How did Defoe do it ? Something of the plague no doubt he remembered ; he had heard a great deal more from older people, and his imagination supplied the rest. Read "The Journal of the Plague Year," and you will discover the secret of Defoe's greatness, which was that while he was writing of a person he *was* that person, and that the scenes he imagined were to him more real than the real world.

We do not know a great deal about Defoe's life. He started as a tradesman and failed in business. He became a writer, and wrote a prodigious number of books and pamphlets which frequently got him into trouble ; he edited several newspaper and magazines. A born journalist, he could write convincingly about almost any subject under the sun. The world has forgotten much that he wrote, but it will never forget "Robinson Crusoe."

Steele and Addison were schoolfellows at Charterhouse School. Steele turned out a gay, careless, hail-fellow-well-met kind of individual, always jolly, frequently in scrapes and generally in debt ; Addison was shy, reserved, and quiet. They both began with serious verses in English and Latin. Both were employed by politicians to write. Steele launched out into editing, and in 1709 was running a paper called the "Tatler." Addison read it, thought he recognized his old friend's style, and offered to become a contributor. His offer was accepted, and thus began a famous literary partnership.

The "Tatler" ceased in January 1711 ; in March the two friends started the "Spectator," the purpose of which was to bring "philosophy out of closets and libraries, schools and colleges, to dwell in clubs and assemblies, at tea-tables and in coffee-houses." It was to consist of essays which would amuse, interest, and instruct ordinary people.

It was Steele who hit upon the idea of an eccentric old knight who lived in the country, but belonged to the Spectator Club in London and made frequent visits to town, but it was Addison who developed the idea, gave Sir Roger the characteristics that have made him so beloved, and created those delightful fellow members of the club, Mr. Will Wimble, "a good-natured officious fellow . . . extremely well versed in all the little handicrafts of an idle man" ; Sir Andrew Freeport, the city merchant, Captain Sentry and Will Honeycomb, and who invented all the delightful county people among whom Sir Roger lived. Sir Roger, however, is the leading figure throughout, and it is his adventures in town and country that form the subject of these essays of Addison, which of their kind are the first in the world. "Sir Roger at the Play," "Sir Roger and the Gipsies," "Sir Roger at Church"—these are specimen titles. Here is Sir Roger at church :

> As Sir Roger is landlord to the whole congregation, he keeps them in very good order, and will suffer nobody to sleep in it besides himself ; for if by chance he has been surprised into a short nap at sermon, upon recovering out of it he stands up and looks about him, and if he sees anybody else nodding, either wakes them himself, or sends his servant to them. Several other of the old knight's particularities break out upon these occasions : sometimes he will be lengthening out a verse in the singing psalms, half a minute after the rest of the congregation have done with it : sometimes, when he is pleased with the matter of his devotion, he pronounces Amen three or four times to the same prayer ; and sometimes stands up when everybody else is upon their knees, to count the congregation, or see if any of his tenants are missing.

There are many other pictures quite as good, all written in the same pleasant, easy-going, light, perfectly clear and simple prose. Anyone who wishes to become a writer of good English, said a great critic, should give his days and nights to a study of Addison.

"We may almost say," wrote Dr. W. L. Courtney, "that Addison and Steele invented that most characteristic product of eighteenth century literature—the essay ; or, if we choose to remind ourselves of Bacon's Essays, as predecessors in this specific form of work, we can at least say that that which was somewhat artificial and formal before was in the eighteenth century given its most agreeable outlines and its sociable outlook. For, remember that papers like the 'Tatler' and the 'Spectator' served for our forefathers the purpose of what we should now call journalism."

The life of Jonathan Swift was a very sad one. The story of how "Gulliver's Travels" has remained famous is so strange as to be almost unbelievable. Nowadays it is a book which every boy or girl reads with delight as a queer adventure story, full of amusing and exciting events; it was written as the most terrible and pitiless and contemptuous attack upon mankind. "I heartily hate and detest that animal called man," said Swift to Alexander Pope, and in "Gulliver's Travels" that hatred is expressed with a bitterness which no other writer of English has ever shown. Yet Swift is to be pitied far more than reviled.

He was a man of colossal power of mind and piercing wit; he could write with a force and directness that few have equalled; he had a consuming and passionate pride in his ability, which was perfectly justified, for his writings changed the opinions of nations and made governments tremble; yet apparently his life was a failure, and for years before his death he was a helpless, crippled lunatic. Listen to this pitiful cry, written five years before he passed away:

> I have been very miserable all night, and to-day extremely deaf and full of pain. I am so stupid and confounded that I cannot express the mortification I am under both of body and mind. All I can say is that I am not in torture; but I daily and hourly expect it . . . I hardly understand one word I write. I am sure my days will be very few; few and miserable they must be.

Miserable at School

The ear trouble which finally brought Swift to this pitiable state began early in life. His father died before he was born. He was miserable at school and college, and hated the uncle in whose charge he had been left. He brooded as a young man over his bad fortune, and there grew in him a savage contempt for his fellow men, who were so inferior to him in ability yet who succeeded so much better. One source of happiness alone he had in these earlier years. When he was twenty-two, in the house of his relative, Sir William Temple, where he was employed as a secretary, he met a little girl called Esther Johnson, then eight years old. He became devoted to her as he taught her to read and write, and the love between them lasted for fifty years. Even this love was to develop into a terrible tragedy, for later in life Swift became attached to another woman, Esther Vanhomrigh, and the lives of all three were rendered miserable because he could not decide which of the two he loved the more. Both Esthers died broken-hearted. To Esther Johnson, whom he called Stella, Swift for some years sent regularly a diary of all his doings; this is called now "The Journal to Stella," and is one of those books that reveal the heart of a man.

Early Leanings towards Poetry

In his early days Swift's literary leanings were towards poetry. We learn from one of his letters that he then regarded two hours in a morning spent studying poetry as "the flower of the whole day." If his output was certainly not great, for he seldom wrote more than two stanzas in a week, yet there were occasions when he penned two a day, "and when all is done I alter them a hundred times." He did not believe himself to be "a laborious dry writer, because if the fit comes not immediately I never heed it, but think of something else." But when Swift wrote something that especially pleased him, he confessed that he could "read it a hundred times over." It was Dryden who told him, "Cousin Swift, you will never be a poet."

Swift first became known in 1704, when he wrote "The Battle of the Books," an amusing allegory in which the books in a library argue and finally fight over the question whether the ancient or the modern writers are better. At the same time he published "The Tale of a Tub," which many people think his best work. He himself in his later years, when his powers were failing, re-read this book, and exclaimed, "What a genius I had when I wrote that book!"

"The Tale of a Tub" is also an allegory. The characters are Peter, who represents the Roman Catholic Church; Jack, who represents what we should call the Nonconformists, and Martin, who represents the Church of England. Each of the three has a coat left to him by his father, and each begins by making changes in his coat to suit his fancy. The story develops into a savage attack upon Peter and Jack and all they do; Martin also is criticized, but not so severely.

Then he gave himself to writing for the Tory party, and it was during this time that he became the man whose writings governments feared. As he was a clergyman, he expected to be made a bishop in return for his services, and he would have been had he not written "The Tale of a Tub," which had shocked many people, including the Archbishop of York. Instead, he was made in 1713 Dean of St. Patrick's, Dublin, and the rest of his life was spent in Ireland, the country of his birth.

Here he made himself the most popular man for many generations by writing six letters under the name of M. B. Drapier. Ireland had then no small coins such as pennies and halfpennies. An Englishman called Wood was given the right of making a supply. Unfortunately, the coins he was to make were to be worth only about two-thirds of what they ought to have been worth; the profit was to be divided between him and George I. Swift's "Drapier's Letters" set Ireland in a blaze of revolt against "Wood's halfpence," and the contract had to be cancelled. The English government, though furiously angry, could do nothing. Walpole, the Prime Minister, was told it would have taken ten thousand men to arrest the author.

The Advent of Gulliver

Shortly after the publication of "Drapier's Letters" there began to appear that work which has made Swift's name for ever famous, "Travels Into Several Remote Nations of the World," in four parts, by Lemuel Gulliver.

This, too, is an allegory. Gulliver, following many voyages as a ship's surgeon, decides to give up the sea, but being unsuccessful on land, "After three years' expectation that things would mend, I accepted an advantageous offer from Captain William Pritchard, master of the *Antelope*, who was making a voyage to the South Sea. We set sail from Bristol, May 4, 1699, and our voyage at first was very prosperous." Not so later; they are shipwrecked, and Gulliver is cast upon the land of the Lilliputians, little human creatures not six inches high. Here he remains for about two years, being much honoured by the tiny people, and particularly because of his services in the war against the neighbouring empire of Blefuscu.

Ten months after his return from Lilliput, Gulliver again sets sail, and this time gets left by a boat's crew on the shores of Brobdingnag, where the inhabitants were "as tall as an ordinary church steeple," where corn grew forty feet high and hedges an hundred and twenty. This part is the most amusing of the four, but the bitterness of Swift's hatred of mankind breaks out more clearly than in the first part. Gulliver gives the King of the Brobdingnagians a very full account of England and the English, and the king's final conclusion is that "I cannot but conclude the bulk of your natives to be the most pernicious race of little odious vermin that Nature ever suffered to crawl upon the face of the earth."

Gulliver's Third Voyage

On his third voyage Gulliver is taken by pirates, who set him "adrift in a small canoe, with paddles and a sail, and four days' provisions." Five days later, after calling at several other islands, he lands on the island of Laputa, of whom he says he had "never till then seen a race of mortals so singular in their shapes, habits and countenances." Of their eyes, one turned inward and the other upward, while their clothes were decorated all over with suns and moons and musical instruments. These people spent all their time thinking, and became so absorbed that servants had to strike them in the face with bladders containing dried peas to bring their attention back to ordinary affairs. They cared for nothing but music and mathematics.

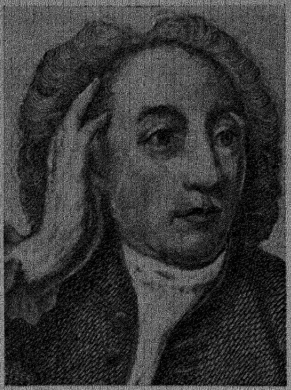
Here and in neighbouring islands Gulliver has most remarkable adventures, and is shown many marvels. Then comes the last journey, to the country of the Houyhnhnms. Here dwelt two races, the Houyhnhnms, a noble people, horse-like in shape but cultured and educated, and a dirty, goat-like people called Yahoos, whom the Houyhnhnms kept as slaves. In this fearful picture of mankind—for the Yahoos are human, the Houyhnhnms are not—Swift paints in all its horror his idea of the degraded state of his fellow creatures.

The Good that Swift did not See

We read "Gulliver's Travels" to-day for the story, and forget the allegory. We laugh and grow thrilled over Gulliver's adventures, we are astonished at the ingenuity and inventiveness of Swift, and we admire his wonderfully plain, forceful prose and his gift for telling a convincing story, but we refuse to accept his low estimate of ourselves. We know that there is much good in human nature, though poor Swift could not see it. That is why he is to be pitied. There can be no more awful fate for a man than to be able to see only the bad in those among whom he lives.

THE AGE OF ALEXANDER POPE

The Prodigious Work of a Writer with a frail Body and an unyielding Will



Alexander Pope (1688-1744).

WHY "the Age of Pope"? For a very real reason. During the thirty years or so that this man was writing there was no other poet who could be compared with him. During the first half of the eighteenth century, when a person said "Poetry" he meant Pope, and when he said "Pope" he meant poetry. Those who lived when he did declared him to be the greatest poet the world had ever known. We do not think so now. Indeed, many people have said that he was not a poet at all, but only a very clever writer who wrote in verse. However that may be, no one can deny that in the writing of what was called poetry in the first half of the eighteenth century Pope stands without a shadow of a rival.

What is it that makes one man write poetry, another prose, a third plays? Why does one writer succeed best in the writing of lyrics, while another, who produces wonderful novels, cannot write a lyric to save his life? These are questions to which no certain answer can be given, even by the authors themselves. Swift wanted to be a poet, and he made attempts at poetry all his life. What was the result? He wrote one or two little things which are not bad, but no one ever thinks of him as a poet; he is remembered, and always will be, for his amazingly fine prose and the wonderful range of his imagination.

Another question, closely connected with those above, we can in part answer, and that is, "Why does a man write in a particular style or manner?" We can even answer to some extent the question of why he writes about particular subjects. We cannot attempt to say why Shakespeare became the greatest poet of his age and Bacon the greatest prose writer; the minds of the two men acted differently, that is all. But we can say that Shakespeare used blank verse in his plays because blank verse was the kind of verse everyone used. We can say that Shakespeare made plays about kings and queens and noblemen because it was the fashion in his day to do so. We can say that Shakespeare wrote sonnets because everyone wrote sonnets.

In the same way we can declare at once that Pope used heroic couplets because the heroic couplet was the fashionable form of verse in his time. We can add that Pope wrote literary criticisms, philosophy in verse, and composed satires, because those were the matters the men of his time considered right and proper for poetry.

Very few men can be different from the age in which they live, and Pope was not one of them. Quite the opposite; very few ages have had so perfect a representative as Alexander Pope. Fashionable society in the early eighteenth century was witty, clever, and artificially gay; it was keenly interested in politics; it loved the town and hated the country, although it had a fancy for artificial gardens; it was suspicious, treacherous, insincere, mean. Pope was all these things.

In considering the career of this remarkable man we have to remember three things. He was a Roman Catholic, he was from birth an invalid, and he had an overwhelming desire to succeed in life. Roman Catholics in those days had a hard time in England; they had to pay double taxes, they could not own land or houses, and they had practically no chance of entering any of the recognized professions. They were hated, suspected of intrigues against the Crown, and sometimes suffered actual persecution. A career in the ordinary sense of the word, except in trade, which his father, a linen-draper, seems to have been determined he should not enter, was hardly possible, because of his religion. It was made more impossible by his ill-health; from birth he was rickety and suffered from headaches; one of his earlier friends spoke of his "little, tender, crazy carcass." And another, in a description of him during his later years, said:

> He was so weak as to be unable to rise to dress himself without help. He was so sensitive to cold that he had to wear a kind of fur doublet under a coarse linen shirt; one of his sides was contracted, and he could scarcely stand upright till he was laced

into a bodice made of stiff canvas; his legs were so slender that he had to wear three pairs of stockings, which he was unable to draw on and off without help.

Such was the man who became the most brilliant writer of his period. His body was a "crazy carcass"—it prevented him from ever working steadily for long together, but his passion for success, his magnificently keen intellect and his plucky, indomitable spirit drove him irresistibly to the highest peak of almost the only profession in which he could hope for success. All his ambition, from his earliest years, was centred upon one thing; he never lost a moment when he could work, or an opportunity of spreading his fame; and he slaved almost to death to perfect himself in his writing.

Alexander Pope was the only child of elderly parents. He was very precocious, and his fond father and mother encouraged his precocity. He wrote of himself later:

As yet a child, nor yet a fool to fame,
I lisp'd in numbers, for the numbers came.

He went to two schools for short periods, but by the time he was twelve it was decided to educate him entirely at home. He read tremendously, and just what he liked. He read particularly English poetry, and before he was twelve loved especially the work of Waller, Spenser, and Dryden. He wrote poetry, and his father corrected it. Before he was fifteen he had written an epic poem, and when he was twenty-one his first important work, a collection of four "Pastorals" on Spring, Summer, Autumn, and Winter, appeared. Pope said they were written when he was sixteen, but his word was not always to be trusted, especially if what he said tended to increase his own reputation.

The Young Poet's Advisers

He was fortunate in his friends. Two in particular helped him on his way. These were William Walsh and Henry Cromwell. William Walsh was acknowledged to be the finest critic of poetry in the country, and he gave Pope advice that the young poet followed unhesitatingly. "Be correct," said Walsh—that is, write according to rule; and Pope did, no man ever better. Henry Cromwell, who was distantly related to the famous Oliver Cromwell, introduced him to literary society. Before he was twenty he knew Wycherley, Addison, Swift, and Steele, all of whom encouraged the youthful poet.

Two years after the "Pastorals" there appeared "An Essay on Criticism." With this poem Pope sprang into the front rank of writers; it was praised by everyone. It has been praised ever since, not for the thoughts it contains, which are quite ordinary, but for the verse. The writer is a master of the heroic couplet; he handles it as well as any man of his time. He is witty, too; his couplets live in the memory. Few people read "An Essay on Criticism" now, but everyone knows lines from it; they have become proverbs:

A little learning is a dangerous thing.

To err is human: to forgive, divine.

The bookful blockhead, ignorantly read,
With crowds of learned lumber in his head.

For fools rush in where angels fear to tread.

The whole poem is full of such lines.

£10,000 *for a Poem.*

Pope now set about the greatest task of his life, a translation of Homer's "Iliad." This took him eight years, the last of the six parts appearing in 1720. The work was published by subscription—that is, people were asked to promise beforehand to buy copies when the book appeared. Pope obtained a very large number of subscribers, thanks in part to his friend Swift, who most diligently collected subscriptions for him, and altogether made something over £10,000, or enough to allow him to live comfortably for the rest of his life. He did not do all the work himself; he did not know sufficient Greek for that, and so employed helpers. Even then the poem he produced, though a very fine example of eighteenth century poetry, did not much resemble the original. Richard Bentley (1662-1742), the most famous classical scholar of the day, remarked to the author, "A pretty poem, Mr. Pope, but you must not call it Homer." Pope did not forget that remark; he never forgot or forgave anyone who criticized his work unfavourably. Some years afterwards he included Bentley in "The Dunciad," the huge satire in which he took his revenge on all people, writers and others, who had offended him, making him describe himself thus:

Thy mighty Scholiast, whose unweary'd pains
Made Horace dull, and humbled Milton's strains.
Turn what they will to Verse, their toil is vain,
Critics like me shall make it Prose again.

Bentley was right. It was "a pretty poem," but Pope was not the man to appreciate and reproduce the mighty roll of Homer's verse. Yet we cannot sufficiently admire the gallant spirit of the man who, tortured by ill-health, undertook so colossal a task. Most of the translation was written on the backs of envelopes.

Long before the "Iliad" appeared there was published the poem which more than any other made, and has kept, Pope's fame secure. This was the "Rape of the Lock," and this is the story of how it came to be written. A certain young gallant, William, Lord Petre, very much annoyed a certain Miss Arabella Fermor by cutting off a lock of her hair without asking her permission. Quite a serious quarrel seemed likely to ensue, when someone suggested to Pope that a dainty, little, laughing poem on the incident might put matters right. The poem was written, and published. It was admired, and Pope himself was highly pleased with it, so pleased that he determined to improve it. So he rewrote it, making it much longer, and turning it into a mock epic. He introduced a whole army of sylphs, gnomes, elves, and fairies, who meddled and took sides in the human affairs, just as the gods and goddesses took sides and interfered in the siege of Troy. Here is an example :

So thro' white curtains shot a tim'rous ray,
And oped those eyes that must eclipse the day ;
Now lap-dogs give themselves the rousing shake,
And sleepless lovers, just at twelve, awake .
Thrice rung the bell, the slipper knocked the ground,
And the pressed watch return'd a silver sound.
Belinda still her downy pillow prest,
Her guardian Sylph prolong'd the balmy rest :
'Twas he had summon'd to her silent bed
The morning dream that hover'd o'er her head.

Belinda is Miss Arabella Fermor, and the scene is the morning before the dreadful catastrophe.

Loss of Addison's Friendship

The poem is perfect; so neat, so witty, so gently satirical. It is said that the only person who was not charmed by it was the fair Arabella herself, who rather objected to having her affairs made public. Pope, who was always losing friends, thanks to his sensitive, touchy, irritable spirit, lost another friend through this effort. Addison had advised him not to meddle with the first shorter version of the poem, and Pope thought he gave the advice because he was jealous. He, of course, took his revenge on Addison later :

Who shames a Scribbler ? break one cobweb thro',
He spins the slight, self-pleasing thread anew :
Destroy his fib or sophistry, in vain,
The creature's at his dirty work again,
Thron'd in the centre of his thin designs,
Proud of a vast extent of flimsy lines ! "

It was dangerous to quarrel with Pope, but it was almost impossible not to do so.

Between 1720 and 1725 Pope was occupied on a translation of the "Odyssey." In 1725 he published also an edition of Shakespeare in six volumes. It was a poor piece of work ; next year Lewis Theobald (1688-1744), who really was a Shakespearean critic, published a lengthy criticism of it. Pope's revenge on Theobald was fiendish, he made him the King of Dullness in the first version of "The Dunciad."

Pope attacks his Enemies

After 1725 Pope gave himself to satire and to philosophy. For the former he had an unrivalled gift ; for the latter he was not particularly fitted. He was popular, he was vain, he despised all other writers, he was hurt by the least breath of criticism ; therefore he had many enemies. He set out to lash them all with the biting whip of his sharp tongue, and the result was "The Dunciad." Over this poem he spent much labour and many years. It was first published in 1728, with a second edition in 1729 ; it was issued in enlarged form in 1742, and in its final form in 1743. No one was too great or too small to be put into it ; if you want to know all the writers of Pope's day, read "The Dunciad."

The plot is that the throne of Dullness is vacant. All who aspire to it engage in a series of trials to see who can be dullest. In the 1728 edition Theobald is elected, but by 1743 Theobald had been supplanted by Colley Cibber (1671-1757), Poet Laureate actor, playwright, and theatre manager. Cibber, by the way, was not dull, whatever else he was. "The Dunciad" is a nasty poem, spiteful, coarse, and unjust, but no one can deny its power, its bitterness of satire, and its brilliant versification.

"The Essay on Man" was a version of the philosophy of Bolingbroke, who was Pope's friend. The verse, as always, is excellent ; the thought is very ordinary. Pope was no philosopher ; he did not even understand his friend's ideas perfectly. The object of the poem was, in Pope's words, to :

Eye Nature's walks, shoot Folly as it flies,
And catch the manners living as they rise ;
Laugh where we must, be candid where we can ;
But vindicate the ways of God to Man.

Pope's was not a happy life, nor one that it is over pleasant to recall. He used his gigantic powers often on very unworthy objects, "The Dunciad" is not the work of a high-minded or noble-spirited man. He is not to be counted alongside Shakespeare, Milton, Wordsworth or Tennyson. But before we condemn him too harshly as a man, let us remember the age in which he lived, the terrible handicaps against which he struggled, and the fact that, whatever sort of man he was, he was a superb artist, who gave his life to his art and who rose to perfection in its practice. Of the spiritual aspect of poetry he knew no whit, but within his limits no one wrote verse so perfectly as he.

"*The Beggar's Opera*"

The other writers of Pope's day, apart from those great masters of prose whom we discussed in our last chapter, may be very shortly mentioned. John Gay (1685-1732) was a good-natured, idle, shiftless fellow, one of whose works, "The Beggar's Opera," is still performed on the stage, while his ballad of "Black-eyed Susan" is not forgotten. Matthew Prior (1664-1721) was a writer who could turn his hand to anything, and who produced some neat, witty, impudent verses.

Edward Young (1683-1765) is a man of different character, solemn and almost gloomy. His "Complaint: or Night Thoughts," a long poem written after the death of his wife, was much read until well on into the nineteenth century as a sound religious work.

Ambrose Philips (1675-1749), who wrote "Pastorals," was a friend of Pope, quarrelled with him, of course, and was put in "The Dunciad." He is only mentioned here because his poetry was called "namby-pamby" (from his name), and so he gave the English language a word, if he gave us nothing more.

Lady Winchilsea (died 1720) was one of the very few people in this age who really saw beauty in the countryside. Another was Allan Ramsay (1686-1758), author of "The Gentle Shepherd," a pastoral drama which contains some delightful lyrics and some charming descriptions of natural scenery.

James Thomson (1700-1748) represents a different style of poetry from Pope's. In 1726 he published "Winter," a blank verse poem when blank verse was almost unknown, to which he later added "Spring," "Summer," and "Autumn." The whole poem is known as "The Seasons." It is rather cumbrous and heavy, but Thomson came from the Scottish border and knew what wind and rain and sunshine really were:

. . . the sky saddens with the darkened storm
Through the hushed air the whitening shower
descends,
At first thin-wavering; till at last the flakes
Fall broad and wide and fast, dimming the day
With a continual flow.

Strangely enough, this poet of outdoors developed into the laziest of mortals. Once he was famous, Thomson settled down in comfort to do nothing. He used to lie in bed half the day, and never exerted himself if he could help it.

"The Seasons" is an important poem. It shows that the spirit of romance is not dead, but is shortly to recover and to thrill English poetry once more. Thomson is the forerunner of Gray, Collins, and Blake, who were in their turn the forerunners of the great romantic period of Shelley, Keats, and Wordsworth.

Later in life he wrote "The Castle of Indolence," a description of a land of dreamy happiness into which those weary of earth are invited. The metre is the same as that of Spenser's "Faerie Queene," and altogether the poem is a remarkable imitation of Spenser's style and manner. As for the subject, Thomson was in every way the right person to treat it; he knew all about indolence.

Thomson has one other title to fame; it is almost certain that he wrote our famous patriotic song, "Rule, Britannia!"

Among prose writers two of Pope's friends, John Arbuthnot (1667-1735) and Henry St. John, Viscount Bolingbroke (1678-1751), attained some fame. Arbuthnot was a member of the Scriblerus Club, of which Pope and Swift were fellows, and much of his writing was done in connection with that. Bolingbroke wrote vigorously in rhetorical prose, and his works include "The Idea of a Patriot King" and "Letters on the Study and Use of History."

Eighteenth Century Letter Writers

Lady Mary Wortley Montagu (1689-1762) is the first of the great letter writers of the eighteenth century. A lady of keen wit and masculine character, she travelled with her husband to Constantinople when he was made ambassador to the court of the Sultan, and from there wrote regularly at length to her many friends. Her shrewd and witty "Letters" were published in the year following her death.

JOHNSON AND HIS DICTIONARY

The Struggles and Triumphs of the Great Cham of English Literature

Samuel Johnson (1709-84).

IN 1737 there arrived in London from Lichfield, in Staffordshire, two young men. The elder was twenty-eight years old, the younger only twenty. When they reached the great city they had about fourpence between them, and their first act was to borrow five pounds on the strength of a letter of introduction they carried.

Twenty years later they were two of the most famous men in literary England; but very different were the paths by which they attained success. One had a prosperous career almost from the very beginning; the other fought his way upward inch by inch through long years of poverty and neglect.

The younger of the two was David Garrick (1717-1779). The theatre was his goal, and very quickly he was to make his mark in it. His companion, who had been for some time his schoolmaster, was surely one of the strangest beings who ever came fortune-hunting to London. A great, big, husky fellow he was, clumsy-limbed and awkward, though his face might have been called good-looking, even handsome, had it not been disfigured by persistent skin disease. As he walked, he peered here and there, for his eyes were badly affected, and he uttered strange grunts and growls.

For long periods he would remain moodily silent, every now and then gesticulating wildly with his arms or making grimaces. At times he looked almost imbecile. When David spoke to him, either he snubbed him heavily or answered with great shouts of laughter. Only occasionally, when something was said that really interested him, his face would light up, and he would begin to speak eagerly, passionately, and the clear, brave soul that was cased in the strange, lumpy body would shine through and transform him.

This queer, uncouth stranger had come to London to try to make his name as a writer. His name was Samuel Johnson (1709-84), and he was the son of a country bookseller. His father had died six years before, almost penniless, thanks to bad business habits. Samuel so far had been a complete failure. At school he had been a clever scholar, but very lazy, and subject to fits of melancholy. At sixteen he had left, and had then spent two years in his father's shop. That had been paradise. He loved books; he read them like a starving man might devour a meal. He hardly ever finished one; he just devoured the parts he enjoyed, and then threw the volume aside.

When he was eighteen Johnson was sent to Oxford. There he had been, to say the least of it, unhappy. The people who sent him had not provided him with sufficient money, and the ragged, ugly scholar had been the laughing-stock of more fortunate undergraduates. He left Oxford without taking a degree. He became a schoolmaster, or usher, as it was then called. That had been a dreadful experience. He was the worst person in the world to teach boys or to command respect from them—gloomy, irritable, slovenly in dress, uncouth in his habits, repulsive to look at. He gave up being an usher, did a little writing, got married, and started a school of his own. In a very short time he had spent all his wife's little fortune. There was only one thing to be done; he had plenty of brains, but he could not make money out of them as a schoolmaster, so he must try what he regarded as the only other way, namely writing. Therefore he set out for London, where he believed it was possible to make a living by the pen.

Johnson could not have come at a worse time. Authorship had never been very profitable in England; just at the moment it was less so than ever. Ten years later he himself wrote that the reward of the scholar who turned to literature for a living was "Toil, envy, want, the patron, and the gaol." He was to know them all.

Writing had not then become a dignified profession, and to be an author was to be a member of a wretchedly poor and overworked class. A generation before things had been much better; then a writer who pleased a political party was reasonably certain of a safe Government job. But Walpole, the first Prime Minister, had smashed that system.

Patrons of literature—that is, rich men who befriended authors and rewarded them with bounties—had become rare, and as yet not sufficient people read books enough to make publication a prosperous business. The booksellers, who were also the publishers, could not afford to pay high wages. Authors sold their works for what they could get, which was usually little enough. Even popular authors could hardly make a decent living. This is what Lord Macaulay said of these days :

> All that was squalid and miserable might now be summed up in the word Poet . . . Even the poorest pitied him ; and they well might pity him. To lodge in a garret up four pair of stairs, to dine in a cellar among footmen out of place, to translate ten hours a day for the wages of a ditcher, to be hunted by bailiffs from one haunt of beggary and pestilence to another, from Grub Street to St. George's Fields, and from St. George's Fields to the alleys behind St. Martin's Church, to sleep on a balk in June and amidst the ashes of a glass-house in December, to die in an hospital and to be buried in a parish vault, was the fate of more than one writer, who, if he had lived thirty years earlier . . . . would have sat in Parliament.

The chances of a man making a fortune at literature were almost negligible. What had Johnson in his favour that he emerged triumphant, not indeed with a fortune, but with the reputation of the greatest man of letters of the day ? Against his disadvantages, which were many and grievous, may be set his powerful mind, immense pluck, and grim determination. What he suffered in those twenty years of struggle we can only imagine.

Johnson's Early Struggles

Johnson early gave signs that he did not intend to remain for ever in the ruck of scribblers. He published in 1738 a satire called " London." It brought him reputation but little money. The great Pope thought well of it, and even tried to help the author. But nothing came of it. So Johnson went back to his translating, his writing of sermons, pamphlets, prefaces and indexes to books, by which he was managing to keep himself alive.

How he existed for several years we do not know ; he certainly became well acquainted with all the miseries of a writer's life. Among other things he did Parliamentary reporting. In those days this was forbidden, but men were sent to listen to the speeches and to bring back to people like Johnson what they could remember. The speeches were then written up by these journalists and published under a fictitious title. Long years afterwards someone praised in Johnson's hearing an old speech that he had read. " Sir," said Johnson, " I wrote that speech in a garret in Exeter Street."

Gradually Johnson became known among the booksellers as a man whose work was sound and scholarly, and who could be relied upon. One day in 1747 Robert Dodsley (1703-1764), a well-known publisher, said to him, " I believe that a dictionary of the English language is a work that is greatly needed, and one which would be well received by the public." " I believe," replied Johnson, " that I shall not undertake it." He did, however. He agreed for fifteen hundred guineas to prepare " A Dictionary of the English Language " in two folio volumes. The work, he expected, would take him three years ; actually it took him seven.

Interview with Lord Chesterfield

On Dodsley's advice he wrote to Lord Chesterfield, the Secretary of State, for his aid, and dedicated the Plan of the work to him. Chesterfield was regarded as the most gracious patron of literature in the kingdom ; he received Johnson kindly enough at first, but the uncouth manners of the dictionary-maker disgusted the fastidious nobleman, and he gave orders that he wanted to see no more of him. Samuel Johnson was the most independent of men ; he took the hint, and troubled the noble lord no further. If he could get no encouragement in his work, he would do without.

Seven years later, when the dictionary was about to be published, Lord Chesterfield, finding that it was being talked about as a work of some importance, became suddenly interested in it, and wrote two very flattering articles about it and the compiler, praising it highly and hailing him as the dictator of the language. Of course he wanted the work dedicated to him. Johnson saw through the shallow meanness, and replied to the articles with a letter that has become the most famous reproof in English literature :

> My Lord,—I have been lately informed by the proprietor of the "World" that two papers in which my " Dictionary " is recommended to the public were written by your lordship. To be so distinguished is an honour which, being very little accustomed to favour from the great, I know not well how to receive, or in what terms to acknowledge

> When, upon some slight encouragement, I first visited your lordship, I was overpowered, like the rest of mankind, by the enchantment of your address; and could not forbear to wish that I might boast myself *le vainqueur du vainqueur de la terre*—that I might obtain that regard for which I saw the world contending; but I found my attendance so little encouraged that neither pride nor modesty would suffer me to continue it. When I had once addressed your lordship in public, I had exhausted all the arts of pleasing which a retired and uncourtly scholar can possess. I had done all that I could; and no man is well pleased to have his all neglected, be it ever so little.
>
> Seven years, my lord, have now passed since I waited in your outward rooms and was repulsed from your door, during which time I have been pushing on my work through difficulties of which it is useless to complain, and have brought it at last to the verge of publication without one act of assistance, one word of encouragement, and one smile of favour. Such treatment I did not expect, for I never had a patron before.
>
> The shepherd in "Virgil" grew at last acquainted with Love, and found him a native of the rocks.
>
> Is not a patron, my lord, one who looks with unconcern on a man struggling for life in the water, and when he has reached ground, encumbers him with help? The notice which you have been pleased to take of my labours, had it been early, had been kind; but it has been delayed till I am indifferent, and cannot enjoy it; till I am solitary, and cannot impart it; till I am known, and do not want it. I hope it is no very cynical asperity not to confess obligations where no benefit has been received, or to be unwilling that the public should consider me as owing that to a patron which Providence has enabled me to do for myself.
>
> Having carried on my work thus far with as little obligation to any favourer of learning, I shall not be disappointed though I should conclude it, if less be possible, with less, for I have been long wakened from that dream of hope in which I once boasted myself with so much exultation, my lord.
>
> Your lordship's most humble, most obedient servant,
>
> SAM. JOHNSON.

In this letter you have the whole character of Johnson, the proud, independent struggler who knows his own worth, and will be imposed upon by no man, however distinguished.

Johnson in Prison

The "Dictionary" and a magazine called "The Rambler," which he had edited and written almost entirely by himself during the years 1750 to 1752, secured for Johnson a worthy place in literature. It did not make him well off; the £1,575 had all been spent during the years of preparation, for he had to live, and to pay several assistants. In 1755, the year the work was published, he was arrested and put in a debtor's prison, but he was now "Dictionary Johnson," and well on the way towards being considered one of the most important literary men of the day

He had, indeed, accomplished a very notable work. He did not regard it as literature; in the "Dictionary" he defined a lexicographer as "a harmless drudge," and he considered dictionary making "as the proper toil of artless industry . . that requires neither the light of learning nor the activity of genius, but may be successfully performed without any higher quality than that of bearing burdens with dull patience, and beating the track of the alphabet with sluggish resolution." As a hard-working man of letters he had successfully performed a big task, and there was an end of it. Nevertheless, he had done rather more than his job; he was the first man to produce a readable dictionary.

Johnson's idea of a good life was to remain in bed till midday or later, go to dinner at a tavern, sit there talking till nearly tea-time, then sit talking over tea, and afterwards repair to his "club" (again in a tavern) and argue with his friends half way through the night. When at length a comfortable income was assured him, that was how he spent most of the remainder of his life

A Quickly-written Book

As early as 1749 he started a "club" at a famous beef-steak house in Ivy Lane, and soon became renowned for his skill in argument, the way he shouted down his opponents, and his witty retorts. Yet how hard he could work we know both from the fact that he was asked to undertake the "Dictionary," and from the dogged persistence with which he carried through that work. Another remarkable instance is provided in the composition of "Rasselas," a strange book, half novel, half heavy philosophy, which he wrote in 1759. In that year his aged mother died. Johnson had no money, and he could not go to Lichfield for the funeral. But he sat down and wrote "Rasselas" in the evenings of one week, got £100 for it, and with that paid the funeral expenses.

In 1760 George III came to the throne, and offered Johnson a pension of £300 a year. The dictionary-maker did not at first know whether he could accept it. He was a strong Tory, a hater of the House of Hanover, a supporter of the exiled Stuarts, and he looked upon receivers of pensions with such scorn that he had defined "pension" in the "Dictionary" as "generally understood to mean pay given to a State hireling for treason to his country." In the end he accepted, being reassured by the arguments that his pension was reward for what he had already done, and not a bribe for future work.

So ended his days of struggle. For the next twenty years he was to be Johnson, the dictator, the president of the Literary Club, the unrivalled talker and supreme literary critic of the day. He did very little more writing; the only work of importance during these latter years was his " Lives of the Poets," perhaps the best thing he ever wrote. He could not appreciate Milton, or indeed any romantic poet, but of those poets whom he could understand, the classic poets of the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries, there was no finer critic. His style is neater and lighter than in his earlier works; it has become dignified instead of ponderous. His finest Life, which he had written long before, is that of Richard Savage (died 1743), a wretched and worthless fellow whose poetry is now quite forgotten. Johnson had been Savage's close friend, and had shared with him the misery and wretchedness he described.

Boswell, the Persistent Friend

In 1763 a young man called James Boswell (1740-1795) was introduced to Johnson. He was a queer, childish, conceited fellow, talkative, and insatiably curious. A strange friendship sprang up between the two, rather like that between a gruff master and a faithful spaniel. Boswell stuck to Johnson all his life; he irritated him, he bored him, he worried him with questions; and in addition he was a Scotsman, and Johnson disliked the Scots. Yet the friendship remained firm; and the result was Boswell's " Life of Johnson," which is still, and probably always will be, the finest biography ever written.

Boswell had innumerable faults as a man, but he had just the qualities required for a biographer—intense devotion for the man whose life he was recording, an unrivalled gift for " drawing out " by artful questions the best in his friend, and a wonderful gift for retaining and recording the cream of a conversation. He is perfectly honest, too; he does not hide Johnson's faults, his rudeness, his violent explosions of temper, his savage table manners, his untidy habits; we see Johnson exactly as he was during the years in which he ruled literary London.

His book is a mine of good stories. If you read it you will see why Johnson is a unique figure in English literature; you will understand why this great, surly giant, who wrote nothing except perhaps " The Lives of the Poets," which is first-rate, who had the manners of a ploughboy and the appearance and gestures of a madman, remains one of the most honourable and lovable figures in our story.

Boswell's Revelations

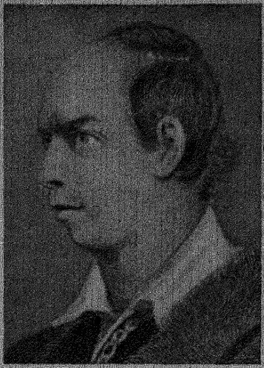
All Johnson's wit and humour, all his learning, his piety, his sound wisdom, and knowledge of men, are revealed in Boswell's pages. There, too, you will meet with society the like of which for intellect and variety of interests you will hardly meet elsewhere; you will meet Edmund Burke, Oliver Goldsmith, Richard Brinsley Sheridan, David Garrick, Sir Joshua Reynolds, Richardson, Beauclerk, Langton—men distinguished in Politics, Literature, Art, and the Theatre. You will hear Johnson thunderously argue them all down—the only man in England whom Johnson did not attempt to beat down in argument was King George III—you will hear him abuse them, mincing no words. " Sir," he said to one, " you talk the language of a savage." You will hear their sly digs at him, for they hit back, and you will hear wonderful tales and magnificent logic.

The more one gets to know about Johnson, the more one likes him. " There is nothing of the bear about him except the skin," said Oliver Goldsmith, whose very good friend he was. He was devoted to children, and his charity to those in poor circumstances was unfailing. It is said that as he walked home at night, if he saw children sleeping out in the streets, he used to put pennies in their hands for them to buy themselves breakfast. He never spent more than a third of his pension on himself; the rest, apart from what he gave away indiscriminately, went to support poor people, some of whom lived many years in his house. He never, in spite of his churlishness, lost a friend except by death, and he was constantly making new ones.

There is no more honourable figure in our literature. He did not enrich it greatly by his writings, but his personality is one we could not afford to lose. If ever there was an honest, upright, sturdy Englishman who fought his way by sheer strength of mind and will to literary eminence, it was Samuel Johnson. We need not call him doctor. He never used the title himself. It seems to remove him a little from our love. Let us think of him as plain Samuel Johnson, and as such esteem and value him.

SOME OF JOHNSON'S FRIENDS

Oliver Goldsmith, Richard Brinsley Sheridan, and Edmund Burke



Oliver Goldsmith (1728-74).

JOHNSON'S idea of happiness was to sit down in a chair, fold his legs, and argue. But it had to be with persons capable of holding their own with him; he did not suffer fools gladly, and his methods with them were short and sharp, not to say contemptuous.

Into the Literary Club, which was formed in 1764, and which for many years was the haunt he loved best, where his powers of conversation showed to greatest advantage, members were only admitted after the most careful examination of their merits. Boswell, although he had been intimately acquainted with Johnson since 1763, was not made a member until ten years later. The result was that the Club contained only brilliant and distinguished men, and its opinions carried great weight. "The verdicts pronounced by this conclave" on new books, we are told, "were speedily known all over London, and were sufficient to sell off a whole edition in a day, or to condemn the sheets to the service of the trunk-maker and the pastrycook."

Who were the men whose opinion could thus make or mar the fortune of any new book, the men to whom literary London listened with such deference? First and foremost, of course, Samuel Johnson himself. The theatre was represented by David Garrick, the friend who had tramped with him from Lichfield, and who was now far and away the finest actor of the time, and in addition the leading theatrical manager and a busy playwright. Painting was represented by the finest artist of the day, Sir Joshua Reynolds, the first President of the Royal Academy, who still remains among the greatest of all English painters. He it was who was responsible for the founding of the Club, and it was his portrait of Johnson which first attracted Boswell, who dedicated to him his life of Johnson. Sir Joshua could write as well as paint, and in the fifteen "Discourses" which he pronounced as President of the Royal Academy he set out in plain, correct, and sensible prose the first statement in English of a definite theory and practice of art.

Garrick and Reynolds do not fill prominent places in the history of literature, nor do Bennet Langton (1737-1801), the Greek scholar, Topham Beauclerk (1739-1780), the witty man of the world, Sir William Jones (1746-1794), the most distinguished linguist of the day, and others who were equally renowned. We must therefore leave them, and pass on to those of Johnson's friends who are more intimately a part of our story. Among these the names of Oliver Goldsmith, Edmund Burke, and Edward Gibbon stand pre-eminent. Three men more absolutely different it would be difficult to imagine: Goldsmith, the vain, childish, foolish drifter; Burke, the brilliant political philosopher; and Gibbon, the unwearying historian.

In all worldly matters Goldsmith acted with a folly which no one could check. "He was childishly generous, madly in love with pleasure and fine clothes, and fond of gambling," says one writer; who continues, "It was as impossible to avoid loving him as to avoid despising him. His vanity, his childish though not malignant envy, his Irish aptitude for blunders, his eagerness to shine in conversation, for which he was peculiarly unfitted, his weaknesses and genius combined, made him the pet and laughing-stock of the whole company."

Although he became famous through sheer merit, and a popular writer in a day when writers were becoming better paid, his extravagance kept him for the most part of his life in shabby lodgings and in danger of the debtor's prison, and he died leaving behind him debts to a considerable amount. Yet the epitaph Johnson wrote for this strange, wayward friend of his told us more than the truth:—

Qui nullum fere scribendi genus
Non tetigit,
Nullum quod tetigit non ornavit.

(There was hardly a branch of literature he did not touch, and whatsoever he touched he handled exquisitely well.)

Goldsmith was born in Ireland in 1728, the son of a village curate. At school he was usually unhappy. He went to Trinity College, Dublin, where he managed to obtain a degree, in spite of being a most unsatisfactory student. Then began a long, long search after a profession, a search that brought him some of the queerest adventures a man might well experience. He tried being a tutor, he tried law, he tried to qualify as a doctor. Then he disappeared to the Continent, and for two years tramped Europe.

Goldsmith's Wanderings

How he lived, or what exactly he did no one knows. He played the flute, so we are told, along the highroads, and charmed the country people into giving him food and lodging; probably he begged his way when other means failed. Boswell says that he "disputed"—that is, went from university to university as a poor scholar, and received the usual free accommodation that poor scholars were wont to be given. All we really know is that he started on his tour with a guinea in his pocket and landed at Dover about two years later without a penny.

In England Goldsmith had a miserable time for some years. It is said that he was for a while an actor in a travelling company. He became a chemist's errand-boy; he tried being an usher in a school, gave it up because he was so ridiculed by both boys and staff, and tried writing for the booksellers. This work he found worse, so he took to being an usher again. He obtained a position as a doctor in the East India Company, but his appointment was cancelled, probably because the authorities found out that the medical degree he said he had gained on the Continent did not mean that he knew anything about medicine. Finally he applied for examination as "mate to an hospital." It was no good; he was not even fit for that. So in despair he turned to writing again.

It was the right task for him, the only one for which he was fitted. He was a most ignorant man, a man who could remain ignorant in spite of any and every advantage. To the day of his death he possessed little really accurate knowledge. In spite of having resided at three universities and of having tramped on foot throughout Europe, it was said that he could not distinguish one barndoor fowl from another till it was cooked and on the table.

No scholarship, no deep thought, was to be expected from Goldsmith. He could not even construct a decent plot for a story. His mind was so muddled that in conversation he often talked the most utter rubbish and made appalling blunders. But he had one supreme gift—he could write interestingly. The poor, blundering conversationalist, the moment he got a pen between his fingers, could not fail to be charming, graceful, and amusing. "Noll," said Garrick of him, "wrote like an angel and talked like poor Poll." Horace Walpole called him an inspired idiot. What he wrote, when he wrote of facts, was astonishingly inaccurate, but it was always delightful reading.

The booksellers speedily found that his writing was popular, and they worked him hard. He wrote articles for newspapers and magazines, he wrote children's books, none better, he wrote a "History of England," full of mistakes, he wrote a series of essays in which a Chinaman is supposed to describe London and its inhabitants, and he wrote popular biographies and philosophy.

Visited by Bailiffs

Gradually Goldsmith became known. He was introduced to Johnson and Reynolds and Burke. He made money, plenty of it, and gambled it away or spent it on fine clothes. In 1764, when he ought to have been quite well off, his rent had been so long overdue that his landlady called in the bailiffs. Goldsmith sent a pitiful appeal to Johnson for help. Johnson immediately pulled a guinea out of his pocket and bade the messenger take it to his unfortunate friend.

Not many minutes afterwards he went himself to Goldsmith's lodgings to see what more could be done, and found the man sitting drinking a bottle of wine bought with the guinea, and calling his landlady names! Johnson took the bottle from him, corked it, and asked Goldsmith if he had anything he could sell to pay his debts. Goldsmith replied that he had the manuscript of a novel in his desk. Johnson looked at it, took it to a bookseller, and sold it for £60. That is how, so Boswell tell us, "The Vicar of Wakefield," the most laughable, most absurd, most charming novel in our language, came to be published.

It was not issued, however, until Goldsmith had made himself really famous. In December, 1764, he published "The Traveller." "There has not been so fine a poem since

Pope's time," said Johnson to Boswell, and the Great Cham of literature did all he could to popularize it. Soon people began to talk about it; there had been little good poetry written for some time, and "The Traveller," so musical, so pathetic, so full of Irish tenderness, struck a note that echoed in all men's hearts. A second, a third, a fourth edition was called for. Goldsmith had reached his place among the great.

The Country Parson

We still read "The Traveller" and enjoy it, together with the even better known poem, "The Deserted Village," which Goldsmith published six years later. Far better poems are neglected for these two. The reason no doubt is that they are so human, that they touch our sympathies so nearly. Who is not moved by Goldsmith's loving remembrance of his brother, the poor curate living in Ireland on £40 a year?

Where er I roam, whatever realms to see,
My heart untravelled fondly turns to thee;
Still to my brother turns, with ceaseless pain.
And days at each remove a lengthening chain

Or by his delightful, yet pathetic, picture of a country parson?

Near yonder copse, where once the garden smiled,
And still where many a garden flower grows wild
There, where a few torn shrubs the place disclose
The village preacher's modest mansion rose
A man he was to all the country dear,
And passing rich with forty pounds a year
Remote from towns he ran his godly race,
Nor e'er had changed, nor wished to change, his place
Unpractis'd he to fawn, or seek for power
By doctrines fashioned to the varying hour,
Far other aims his heart had learned to prize,
More skilled to raise the wretched than to rise

"The Traveller" is an account, not necessarily true in detail, of Goldsmith's wanderings, of the people he has met, and the thoughts his varied adventures have aroused in him. A traveller is supposed to be seated on an Alpine crag overlooking three great countries. the view reminds him of his wanderings and of all he has seen and heard. He thinks over the meaning of it all, and comes to the conclusion that what makes people happy or unhappy is not the way they are governed nor the conditions under which they live, but just how they learn to control their own minds and characters.

"The Deserted Village," "sweet Auburn, loveliest village of the plain," is a mixture of Goldsmith's memories of his own childhood and his recollections of a prosperous English village. He describes Auburn in its prosperity and in the neglected, abandoned state in which he afterwards found it.

In 1768 Goldsmith tried his hand at drama. He wrote a rollicking comedy called "The Good Natur'd Man." It was a failure. Funny plays were not wanted on the stage at that time: what people liked, and were getting, were sentimental plays which made them weep. The audience objected to the funniest scene in the whole play in which Honeywood, the hero, finding that his lady is outside and wishes to call upon him, hurriedly dresses up the bailiffs who are in the house, and presents them as two of his gentlemen friends. They hissed it, and said it was "low." Goldsmith was bitterly disappointed and upset. It is said that he "burst out a-crying" before Johnson, and swore that he would never write again.

It was another five years before he attempted drama a second time. Then he produced a piece the popularity of which has lasted down to our own days. How a respectable country house was mistaken for an inn by two young gallants, how that house contained the two young ladies they were trying to avoid marriage with (never having seen them), how they fall in love with those two young ladies—all is a tale richly and funnily told.

Success as a Playwright

"She Stoops to Conquer" was a tremendous success. Poor Goldsmith, terrified by the remembrance of the failure of "The Good Natur'd Man," could eat no dinner that night, and actually dared not go to the theatre for the first performance. He wandered by himself round St. James's Park, and was only brought inside after the fifth act had begun! He need not have worried: the audience roared with laughter from beginning to end, and every audience since has done the same.

Goldsmith was for ever at his wits' end for money, although once his fame was established he could always make plenty. At the time when he produced "She Stoops to Conquer" he was turning out schoolbooks. These he found very profitable. We have mentioned "The History of England," for which he got £500. In addition he wrote a history of Rome, a history of Greece, and a natural history, which between them brought him in over £1000.

He knew very little about his subjects. "If he can tell a horse from a cow," said Johnson, "that is the extent of his knowledge of zoology." Some friends almost persuaded him to tell in his "History of Greece" of the struggle between Alexander the Great and Montezuma, Goldsmith being ignorant of the fact that a matter of eighteen hundred years separated these two famous monarchs. But he had a marvellous gift of taking dry-as-dust material from learned works and turning it into charming and easily read information. Probably no boys and girls were ever happier in their school-books than those for whom he wrote.

Goldsmith never could keep pace with his extravagances. In spite of the large sums of money he earned he died, as we have said, heavily in debt. He was only forty-seven, and it is said that he quickened, if he did not actually cause, his end by taking medicine of his own prescribing. But before his death he had enriched English literature with many fine essays, a novel that will never be forgotten, two haunting poems, and a couple of plays, one of which is the finest written in the eighteenth century.

There is in fact only one other playwright in the eighteenth century whose work is to be compared with that of Oliver Goldsmith. This is Richard Brinsley Butler Sheridan (1751-1816), who, before he was thirty years old, had written, besides less well remembered plays, "The Rivals" (1775), "The School for Scandal" (1777), and "The Critic" (1779), three brilliant comedies which are still produced frequently on the stage.

Speeches in Parliament

Two years after the successful production of "The Critic" Sheridan abandoned literature for politics, and so we need not follow his subsequent career, except to note that he made a distinguished name for himself as a Parliamentary speaker. His speeches during the impeachment of Warren Hastings, we are told, "were by the unanimous acknowledgment of his contemporaries among the greatest delivered in that generation of great orators."

Sheridan was born in Dublin. When he was seven his mother wrote of him and his sister that "two such impenetrable dunces she had never met with." At Harrow, though his masters thought little of his ability, his school friends respected and esteemed him. After leaving school he began writing a farce in collaboration with another Harrow boy. It was never finished, but seems to have helped towards the creation of "The Critic."

At the age of twenty-two he made a romantic marriage, rescuing Miss Linley, a beautiful girl of sixteen, and a celebrated singer, from a much older lover, and carrying her off to France. Directly he was married he furnished a house in costly style and began to entertain lavishly, though he had practically no money.

"The Rivals," which Sheridan produced in 1775, was not successful immediately, mainly owing to poor acting of one of the parts, but it proved a triumph after revision. He followed it up with a farce, "St. Patrick's Day, or the Scheming Lieutenant," and a comic opera, "The Duenna," both of which drew big houses. At the Theatre Royal. Drury Lane, Sheridan produced his masterpiece, "The School for Scandal," which drew crowded audiences from the moment it was put on the stage, and has continued to do so ever since.

Mrs. Malaprop

Sheridan's power lies in his witty dialogue and in his array of clever characters. No one who has ever seen them will ever forget the cowardly Bob Acres, the blushing Sir Lucius O'Trigger, and, greatest of all, Mrs. Malaprop, the muddler of words, whose name has added the word "malapropism" to the English language; nor Sir Peter and Lady Teazle of "The School for Scandal"; nor Sir Fretful Plagiary, Puff, Dangle, and Sneer of "The Critic." Sheridan's characters are types: they hit off to perfection the faults and failings of his age. They do not impress us as being real people, as do Goldsmith's, but for all that there is infinite amusement to be got from them.

Edmund Burke, like Goldsmith, was an Irishman. Born in Dublin in 1729, he was educated at Trinity College, Dublin, and then came to London to study law. Politics and literature proved more attractive, and he managed to make his politics produce literature. He wrote "A Vindication of Natural Society" and "A Philosophical Inquiry into the Origin of our Ideas of the Sublime and the Beautiful" before he became the Whig member of Parliament for Wendover in 1765, but the work which has given him the reputation of being, with Gibbon, the finest prose writer of his age, was the direct result of his activities in Parliament. Three memorable crises in English political history, the attempt to force taxation upon the North American colonies, the impeachment of Warren Hastings, and the outbreak of the French Revolution, produced from Burke some of the most eloquent and glowing prose that we possess.

Burke was an orator. There is nothing simple or artless in what he wrote or spoke. His is the magnificent prose, the grand, flowing, ornate style. As a speaker in Parliament, indeed, he was no great success. His speeches were prodigiously long, he spoke with a strong Irish accent, and often hurriedly and inaudibly. Men called him " the dinner bell " and left the House when he rose to his feet. Apart from his faults of delivery, he took far too wide a view of his subject to hold the attention of the ordinary member of Parliament.

It is said that Pitt, the Prime Minister, slept through a five hours' speech by Burke, but immediately he received the printed version read and re-read it until he had nearly worn through the edges of the pages by constantly turning over the leaves. Men realized the immense power of his words, but could not endure to listen to them. His was the master mind that spoke in a language too elevated for the platform or the House of Commons. His arguments were too comprehensive, he saw far beyond the actual position with a clearness other men could not achieve ; in other words, he was too big for them.

The Enthusiasm of Burke

Irishmen are noted for their passionate enthusiasms, and Burke was capable of blazing and whole-heartedly supporting any cause he took up. He protested against the war with the American colonies with all the eloquence he could command, and three magnificent writings on this subject, " The Speech on American Taxation," " The Speech on Conciliation with America," and " The Letter to the Sheriffs of Bristol," show us how perfect that eloquence could be.

In 1785 came the opportunity that enabled him to rise to the veriest heights of his power. Warren Hastings had returned from India, where, as the first Governor-General, he had done a work of lasting good to the Empire. He had started great reforms, and set the government on a firm and lasting basis, but his methods had not always been too gentle or above suspicion. Burke impeached him.

The trial, which dragged on for seven years, ended in the acquittal of Hastings, but Burke's enthusiasm and eloquence produced at least one result of importance. No Governor-General afterwards dared to act in the high-handed manner the first had done.

Marie Antoinette

When the French Revolution broke out, men in England were inclined to be on the side of the revolutionists, who were at the time reasonable and enlightened men. Burke, with the eye of a prophet, foresaw the evils that were to come, and sat down to warn the British nation against friendship with a movement that was unjust in its actions, too much in a hurry, destructive, and without firm foundation. He sat down and wrote his famous " Thoughts on the French Revolution." The whole book is a sustained and magnificent argument, which changed national opinion in England and caused Burke to be looked upon as inspired. This description of Marie Antoinette, is an example of his rich and beautiful prose :—

> It is now sixteen or seventeen years since I saw the queen in France, then the dauphiness, at Versailles ; and surely never lighted on this orb, which she hardly seemed to touch a more delightful vision. I saw her just above the horizon, decorating and cheering the elevated sphere she had just began to move in ; glittering like the morning star, full of life, and splendour, and joy. Oh ! What a revolution ! and what an heart must I have, to contemplate without emotion that elevation and that fall ! Little did I dream when she added titles of veneration to those of enthusiastic, distant, respectful love, that she should ever be obliged to carry the sharp antidote against disgrace concealed in her bosom ; little did I dream that I should have lived to see such disasters fallen upon her in a nation of gallant men, in a nation of men of honour and cavaliers. I thought ten thousand swords must have leaped from their scabbards to avenge even a look that threatened her with insult ; but the age of chivalry is gone. That of sophisters, economists, and calculators, has succeeded ; and the glory of Europe is extinguished for ever. Never, never more, shall we behold that generous loyalty to rank and sex, that proud submission, that dignified obedience, that subordination of the heart, which kept alive, even in servitude itself, the spirit of an exalted freedom. The unbought grace of life, the cheap defence of nations, the nurse of manly sentiment and heroic enterprise, is gone ! It is gone, that sensibility of principle, that chastity of honour, which felt a stain like a wound, which inspired courage whilst it mitigated ferocity, which ennobled whatever it touched, and under which vice itself lost half its evil, by losing all its grossness.

Burke's attitude to the French Revolution ended his political career ; he broke from his party, but the loss to politics was more than atoned for by the rich gain to literature.

Gibbon is dealt with on a later page.

THE PROGRESS OF THE NOVEL

The Childhood of the youngest Member of the English Literary Family

Horace Walpole (1717-1797).

THOUSANDS of novels are published every year in Great Britain. If you go into any lending library you will see shelf after shelf full of them; if you ask the librarian what the borrowers read, you will be told at once, "Oh, novels, of course; we give out twenty novels for one of every other kind of book." Look at almost any bookseller's window, and you will see novels galore. Yet if you were suddenly to demand of a novel reader, "What exactly is a novel?" the chances are that you would get a very confused answer.

Some people would tell you a novel must contain a love story; others would say that was not necessary, but a novel must have a plot. Yet other people would declare that the plot does not matter so much, provided the characters are clearly drawn and what they say and do is interesting. So we might go on, and we should find that, whatever strict rules we tried to lay down, there were novels, and good novels too, which broke them. So here the widest possible definition will be adopted. By a novel we shall mean any narrative written in prose which treats chiefly of characters and events which the author declares to be imaginary.

The novel is easily the youngest of the various branches of English literature. To all intents and purposes it begins with Daniel Defoe, who, as we have seen (p. 5185), set out to supply people with attractively written accounts of characters and events, not true, but so written as to appear to be true. He succeeded marvellously; for many years people believed that some of his novels were autobiographies.

Other men at the same time were writing what were very nearly novels. There is no connected account of Sir Roger de Coverley in the charming essays Addison contributed to the *Spectator*, but with just a little more linking they might have been strung together, called chapters, and published as a novel. Dean Swift, when he wrote "Gulliver's Travels," had no intention of writing a novel; he was a satirist, and his work was an allegory, but to-day we can hardly regard that remarkable story as anything other than a novel.

These writers had not quite the aim of what we call a novelist. Defoe aimed at palming off untrue accounts as true; Addison aimed at the kindly instruction of his readers and a gentle chiding of their faults and follies; Swift aimed at a wholesale condemnation of the stupidity, wickedness, and uselessness of mankind. The novelist aims at giving a picture of life, at showing real people and their doings—real, that is, in the sense that the characters and happenings which he describes, though actually imaginary, seem to the reader even more real than the people he meets every day and the incidents of his daily life.

"Robinson Crusoe," the first English work of any importance which we can call a novel, was published in 1719. Only twenty years later there appeared the first work of one of the greatest of our eighteenth century novelists, Samuel Richardson, whose second novel was to set all Europe weeping. Within fifty years of Defoe's immortal classic at least a dozen really fine novels, all of which are still remembered, and occasionally read, had been published. By the end of the eighteenth century the novel was firmly established and its reputation was secure.

Samuel Richardson (1689-1761) became a novelist almost by accident. For fifty years he lived a quiet, busy life as a printer. Although he was a timid, sensitive little man, he knew his job, and his business prospered. He loved writing, particularly writing letters, though he was a good hand at penning prefaces and compiling indexes for books.

As a boy in Derbyshire he had written letters for servant girls and others who could not write, and from that time on he was popular with women, who confided in him all their troubles and found him a charming and unfailing counsellor. That, and the fact that he was so good a letter-writer, prompted Mr. Rivington and Mr. Osborn, two booksellers who were friends of his, to suggest to him one day that he should compile a little book of model letters for the use of uneducated people who were not able to compose their own. The idea fascinated Richardson, who, since he had given advice all his life, suggested as an improvement in the plan that he should also " instruct them how they should think and act in common cases."

As he proceeded with the work Richardson bethought him of a story he had heard long before, how a servant girl, when her mistress died, was tempted to unworthy love by the son and heir, but resisted all his advances and ended by showing him how wicked he was and reforming him. What could be better than to use this story, and thus give an added interest to his collection of letters? He sat down, and in two months " Pamela, or Virtue Rewarded," was written.

Its success was amazing. Edition after edition was sold. It became the correct thing to have a copy of the book. Everyone talked about it, suffered with the heroine in her trials and rejoiced in her triumph. In one village they actually rang the church bells for joy when, in the end, Pamela married her rich lover!

The story, told in letters of enormous length, was so human, so life-like. Richardson, who knew so well the inmost secrets of a woman's heart, touched the deepest chords of sympathy. Every little detail of suffering, of joy, of hope, of despair was brought out in his pages; his characters, as they wrote, laid bare all their longings, their desires, their fears, their terrors.

The actual story crept along at a snail's pace. " If you were to read Richardson for the story," commented Dr. Johnson, " your patience would be so much fretted that you would hang yourself." People did not read him for the story. They read him for the delicious thrills, the lovely pain of suffering with the heroine in all her trials, the long-drawn-out agony of her temptations, and the glorious excitement of her victory over them all. The book is almost intolerable to a reader of to-day, but the eighteenth century adored it.

Henry Fielding

The books set other writers to work. A good deal of the stuff they wrote was worthless, but, by a most fortunate chance, among those who were prompted to make fun of " Pamela "—for not all readers were sentimental—was an author of equal genius for novel writing with Richardson. This was Henry Fielding (1707-1754).

Fielding was as different as could be from Richardson. He loved pleasure and society, sport and the open air. His father, General Fielding, lost all his money through extravagance, and Henry did his best to imitate his father. He had to earn his living, and so, although he had been educated for the law, he chose to write plays. He was not a very popular writer, but somehow or other he managed to live fairly well, though at times he knew all the embarrassments of a writer's life.

In 1737 he returned to the law, but filled in time by writing articles for a newspaper called *The Champion*. During this period he developed a humorous, laughing style of dealing with topics, a style in which probably no man has ever equalled him.

Richardson Burlesqued

When " Pamela " was published, Fielding read it. Instead of moving him to tears, it moved him to ridicule and disgust. He began to write a burlesque on it, telling the tale of a good and virtuous footman who is tempted by his mistress, but who piously holds to the path of righteousness. Very soon, however, the story got a grip on its author; he forgot about burlesquing Richardson, and, though the book remained a mockery of the more serious writer, it had besides an interest of its own. Thus was written " Joseph Andrews," the first novel by the author of " Tom Jones," which latter many good judges have declared to be the finest novel in the English language.

Richardson was bitterly hurt by this caricaturing of his work; he never forgave Fielding, but hated him all his life, and would never admit that he could write well. Fielding, for his part, laughed at Richardson.

Once launched upon novel writing, both these authors set to work in dead earnest to give the world of their best, and their masterpieces appeared within two years of each other. Richardson's " Clarissa; or the History of a Young Lady," usually called " Clarissa Harlowe," was published in 1747 and 1748, " Tom Jones, or the History of a Foundling," by Fielding, in 1749.

Of the first we are told that " Clarissa's sorrows set all England sobbing, and her fame and her fate spread rapidly to the Continent." There is no happy ending to this story, as there had been to "Pamela." Clarissa, the heroine, a beautiful, attractive, cultured girl, who is betrayed by the worthless, but gay and reckless villain, Robert Lovelace, in the end dies of grief; the wicked lover also meets his fate in a duel with a cousin of Clarissa. It is a mournful tale, but it is wonderfully told. Bit by bit, in the same long letters as were written by the characters in "Pamela," the story is built up; we get to know every tiniest detail, every emotion, every spark of hope or stab of despair. The book is enormously long. It was published in seven volumes, and Richardson, a clever man of business, kept his readers waiting for them in eager anticipation. Two volumes were published in November, 1747, two more in April, 1748, but the last three not till December, 1748. The period of time covered by the book is only eleven months.

Fielding's "Tom Jones"

"Tom Jones" is a story. Its plot, every one acknowledges, is as perfect as any in English fiction. It is the story of a good, honest, rough-and-ready fellow, one Tom Jones, a waif who lives with Squire Allworthy, who is always in a scrape, but whom you always feel to be thoroughly good at heart. There is a charming young lady, Sophia, the daughter of a neighbouring squire named Western, whom he loves; there is a sneaking rogue of a half-brother called Blifil, who also loves Sophia, and who very nearly brings about poor Tom's complete disgrace, but who in the end is baffled and shown to be a hypocrite.

The book gives a complete picture of English country life in the second half of the eighteenth century. It was a rough, coarse, brutal and, to our minds, degraded life. Those were the days when a county gentleman hunted the fox all day and considered it a disgrace to go to bed sober. The parson was frequently more at home in the saddle or at the Squire's dinner-table than in the pulpit. Manners were coarse, jokes were coarser, and morals loose. Consequently, there are passages in "Tom Jones" which do not make very pleasant reading. Fielding, who knew the life perfectly, spared no detail of its unpleasantness; but, on the other hand, showed also all its broad good humour, its stubborn honesty, its tremendous joy in life. He did not profess to draw model characters; he just depicted ordinary human beings as they were.

Both Richardson and Fielding published a third novel, but in neither case was the result anything like equal to the second. Richardson wrote "Sir Charles Grandison," and Fielding "Amelia." Sir Charles Grandison is the perfect gentleman, or is meant to be. Unfortunately, Richardson knew nothing whatever about aristocratic society, of which Sir Charles is supposed to be the chief ornament, with the result that the book is a ridiculous mistake. It is said that the author asked a lady in high society to criticize this work before it appeared, but she found so many absurd errors that she gave up the task in despair. "Amelia" is a much finer book, a very lovable and charming one. The heroine is drawn from Fielding's first wife, whom he loved dearly, and the weak and erring husband is plainly Fielding himself. The book is a splendid and deserved tribute to a noble and delightful woman, and it shows Fielding in a tenderer, more subdued mood.

Thus was the English novel given a magnificent send-off. These two men were masters of their art, and fortunately for the history of the novel in our language, they were utterly and entirely different in every possible way. Richardson is the father of the sentimental novel, the love story, Fielding of the gay, rollicking, fresh air, full-of-fun tale. Both kinds have flourished exceedingly, but Fielding's is the more truly English type of novel. He had nothing of the popularity Richardson achieved and kept for a long time on the Continent, but "Tom Jones" is read and enjoyed to-day in this country, while his sentimental contemporary's works remain untouched except by scholars.

Tobias Smollett

Before "Tom Jones" appeared, another novelist had made his name. This was Tobias Smollett (1721-1771), a Scotsman, who had been a surgeon's mate in the Navy, had travelled, had seen fighting, and had lived in the West Indies. During his journeyings he had kept his eyes wide open, and as he could see the funny side of things as well as any man living, and loved to poke fun at people, his novels are highly amusing. But he saw more than the ridiculous in life; he saw also the cruelty and the incompetency of those in the Navy, and the hardships men had to suffer there, and these things inclined him to satire of a hard and biting type.

His first novel was "Roderick Random" (1748). In this he practically tells the story of his own life. Roderick is a worthless young scamp, who, after an unhappy time at school, is apprenticed to an apothecary, makes his way to London and there joins the fleet. Then comes the best part of the book. Smollett, writing from grievous memory of his own sufferings, describes in every detail life on board a warship, the bullying and tyranny, the harsh and revolting treatment of the men by their superiors, the lying and cheating and intrigue that went on.

There is no plot. The hero meets with adventures of all sorts, that is all. The rest of Smollett's novels, except one, are very similar. They have a gay, irresponsible young scoundrel of a hero; most of the characters are disreputable, and those which are not come in for all the misfortunes.

A Masterpiece of Humour

The novel which is different is "Humphrey Clinker" (1771), the funniest tale in the English language before "Pickwick Papers." Smollett did not have a very happy life, and his unhappiness and his incessant work soured his temper and destroyed his health. At last he broke down, and had to go to Italy to see what a warmer, sunnier climate could do for him. If it did nothing else, it seems to have brought kindness to his embittered nature, for "Humphrey Clinker" is as tenderly humorous as his earlier work had been harshly and bitingly satirical.

Humphrey Clinker has not a big part in the story which bears his name, but what about a novel in which the hero hardly ever appears? It seems impossible that such a novel could be written, and probably no other man save Laurence Sterne (1713-1768) could have produced so weird a book as "Tristram Shandy." The hero is not even born until the middle of the work. But this is by no means the most remarkable feature of a most remarkable book. Smollett's novels have no plots, but "Tristram Shandy" has not even the shadow of a pretence at a plot. Immediately any sign of one appears, Sterne stops dead, and begins somewhere else. Sometimes the hero is telling the tale, sometimes Uncle Toby or Parson Yorick; it does not matter who it may be, he is never allowed to finish. Off goes the author on to some other line.

In spite of his extraordinary tricks of style, the book reads naturally; in spite of the jumps from one story to another, the gaps, the digressions, it is never boring nor disappointing. Of course it is not the sort of book that a reader who likes a good strong plot gets on with particularly well, and it is maddening to anyone who always likes to be able to know what is going to happen next in a story. You really need to go into training to read "Tristram Shandy" or "The Sentimental Journey," Sterne's other book, which is supposedly an account of travel on the Continent. In addition to his bewildering style and methods of composition, he is in parts so sentimental that to our ideas he is almost maudlin. If, however, you want to find some of the most cleverly drawn and most amusing characters in our literature, you must go to that absurdest of all novels, "Tristram Shandy."

We have reserved mention of Goldsmith's novel, "The Vicar of Wakefield," for this chapter, because this is its proper place. These men were all pioneers, and Goldsmith, though less a pioneer than any of the others, should be noticed along with them.

Like so many of his contemporaries, he built no plot for his novel. Its charm lies in its characters, and in its simple, fresh, and artless telling. There is no more lovable character in all fiction than the hero, Dr. Primrose, the dear old Vicar, who in wealth and poverty, happiness and misfortune, remains the same amiable, artless, guileless Christian. He and his family are all simpletons, but ever so delightful.

"*Blood and Thunder*" *Novelists*

During the second half of the eighteenth century people became very interested in the Middle Ages, and in stories of the Middle Ages. We shall have more to say about this interest in our next chapter, for it had important effects upon poetry. Another result was that it produced a regular tribe of "blood and thunder" novelists, whose stock in trade was haunted castles, ghosts, clanking chains, secret chambers, mysterious manuscripts, villainous and hooded strangers.

Horace Walpole (1717-1797) was the first of these novelists. He published "The Castle of Otranto" anonymously, saying it was a story written in the Middle Ages. Then came William Beckford, who wrote "Vathek," a kind of distorted "Arabian Nights." Mrs. Radcliffe made a profession of writing these "penny dreadfuls," and Matthew Gregory Lewis gained the nickname of "Monk" Lewis, through the most horrible of all the "terror" novels.

THE REVIVAL OF ROMANCE

Poetry frees Itself from the Bonds which had Held It

THE word "romantic" has many meanings. An adventure in a strange land may be romantic, so may a walk late at night when the moon is shining softly. A newspaper will describe the life of a man who has risen from office-boy to general manager as romantic. Almost anything strange, provided it is coloured with happiness, may be termed romantic.

In speaking of literature and writers, it is difficult to explain exactly what we mean when we use the word. The general meaning is clear enough. We said in an earlier chapter, that "a romantic writer gives full play to his imagination and his emotions, and writes straight from the heart," but there is a great deal more in it than that. Subject matter, form, style, and language, all are involved.

Thomas Gray (1716-71).

Let us examine each of these. A romantic writer turns to romantic themes, to themes which promise adventure and inspiration, themes which stir his emotions. Therefore, he turns to history, to mythology, to folk lore, to tales of daring by land and by sea. But not only, nor even largely, to them. Most of all he is attracted by the adventure of all living things, by the inspiring fact that there is a wide world, throbbing with life, from the tiniest blade of grass to ourselves, the most intricate and interesting of all living things on the earth.

He examines everything with fascinated interest, and discovers two absorbing facts—that there is beauty beyond comprehension everywhere, and that there are also ugliness and wickedness. He finds that man is responsible for much of the latter, for most indeed of what is to be seen. Nature—that is, all the world except what man has created—conceals for the most part the cruelty which exists in the animal and the plant kingdoms, and shows herself always beautiful, bountiful, and kindly. So perfect is Nature that the romantic writer cannot help believing that there is a Divine Creator, infinitely wiser and more capable than man, who has fashioned it all. In other words, he discovers God in His works.

He immediately wants to sing about the wonder, the beauty, the glory of it all. So he turns naturally to lyrics, songs and odes. He turns away from satire, and has little patience with parodies, burlesques, and humorous writing. He is in deadly earnest . when he is saddened by the thought of evil, his heart burns with indignation, or he reflects sorrowfully in elegies or laments.

Such a man cannot be bound too much by laws and rules If a metre will not allow him to say what he wants, then it must be altered, or he will create a new one to suit his purpose. He cannot be "correct" if it means he cannot be true to his inspiration. Though many of the greatest romantic writers have been sternly careful about their style because their love of beauty made them so, yet in general romantic literature is free, careless of tradition, and ready to break a rule of style if that rule gets in its way.

Naturally, a romantic writer cannot bear to use language that is artificial in any way He uses the strong, sincere words that say what they mean . he does not wind about, but goes straight to the point.

Such writers were almost non-existent in England from about 1670 to 1750 During the second half of the eighteenth century romance in literature lifted up its head again, and writing struggled out of the bonds in which Dryden and Pope and their followers had imprisoned it. Prose had never been so straitly bound as poetry ; but prose, since it is prose, the language of everyday life, can never reach such heights or sink to such depths as poetry. It must always be the language of the heart as well as of the head, because everyone uses it ; but poetry, which is an art practised by few, can be forced into strangely unnatural shape.

In the eighteenth century it had been confined almost exclusively to one form, the heroic couplet . to a very narrow range of subjects : and its language had grown so artificial that it had become improper in poetry to call a thing by its right name.

Even Gray, who was one of the leaders in the romantic revival, refers to a cat as "demurest of the tabby kind."

It had become the fashion, too, to make a person of every emotion, and to give Hope, Fear, Passion, Anger, and so on, human qualities. William Collins (1721-59), who with Gray is equally a leader along the road to romance, in one of his most famous Odes shows to what length this practice had been carried:

How sleep the brave who sink to rest,
By all their country's wishes blessed!
When Spring, with dewy fingers cold,
Returns to deck their hallowed mould,
She there shall dress a sweeter sod
Than Fancy's feet have ever trod.

By fairy hands their knell is rung;
By forms unseen their dirge is sung;
There Honour comes, a pilgrim grey,
To bless the turf that wraps their clay;
And Freedom shall awhile repair
To dwell, a weeping hermit, there!

All poets allow themselves to use Personification, but in the eighteenth century the practice had been carried to extreme lengths.

In this chapter we shall deal with the poets who led poetry back to romance, and who thus paved the way for the finest outburst of song in modern times, the wonderful harmony of Wordsworth, Coleridge, Shelley, Keats, and their contemporaries.

Wolfe and Gray's "Elegy"

The name of Thomas Gray (1716-71) is known to every Englishman, be he scholar or not. There are few who cannot quote some lines from the "Elegy written in a Country Churchyard," which can claim to be one of the best-known, if not actually the best known, poem in our language. An oft-repeated story tells how Wolfe, the British general who seized Quebec from the French, recited the poem as he was being rowed along the river St. Lawrence to the assault, and then declared, "I would rather be the author of that poem than take Quebec." It is indeed a memorable piece of work, and strenuously did Gray labour to make it so. Years of patient and loving care were spent on it by this shy, retiring, reserved man, who lived most of his life in the seclusion of a Cambridge college.

Gray wrote very little poetry, but that little has placed him high on the pinnacle of fame. "If I do not write much, it is because I cannot," he wrote to his friend Horace Walpole. Matthew Arnold, son of the great headmaster of Rugby, himself a poet and a keen critic of literature, said that "Gray, a born poet, fell upon an age of prose." That is true enough. While he was perfecting his "Elegy," and writing an occasional fragment of polished verse, England was ringing with the fame of "Tom Jones" and "Clarissa Harlowe." Gray, a fastidious, shrinking man, was completely out of sympathy with the rough, boisterous spirit of the day, and it may be that he wrote little because he loved learning more. He was a student, "the most learned man in Europe," the best Greek scholar of his day, and profoundly versed in mediaeval literature and history. During the last three years of his life he was Professor of Modern History at Cambridge.

Johnson belittles Gray

Most of his contemporaries were unable to appreciate his poetry. Johnson wrote a very unjust account of him in his "Lives of the Poets," and never lost an opportunity of saying unkind things about him. Of his poems the doctor declared: "They are forced plants, raised in a hotbed; and they are poor plants, they are but cucumbers after all," and of the man, "Sir, he was dull in company, dull in his closet, dull everywhere. He was dull in a new way, and that made many people think him great. He was a mechanical poet."

The fact is, Gray was just a little ahead of his age; not very much, but enough to make the "correct" people suspicious of him. He had rather too good an ear for music, rather too keen an eye for the beauties of the countryside, rather too much of an interest in the wild and the picturesque, whether in nature or in history, to please the town-bred, artificial writers. His language is theirs, with melody and softness of rhythm added; he can be as artificial in his choice of words as they, even in his "Elegy";

But knowledge to their eyes her ample page,
  Rich with the spoils of time did ne'er unroll;
Chill Penury repressed their noble rage,
  And froze the genial current of the soul.

That verse is stamped with the mark of the eighteenth century. But in the next lines Gray's imagination soars far beyond the ken of the Age of Reason, in one of the loveliest pictures he ever painted:

Full many a gem, of purest ray serene,
  The dark unfathomed caves of ocean bear;
Full many a flower is born to blush unseen,
  And waste its sweetness on the desert air.

That verse carries us into the very heart of romance.

Gray's deep knowledge of and love for the old Norse, Scandinavian, and Celtic legends led him to write "The Bard," "The Fatal Sisters," "The Desert of Odin," and one or two other fragmentary poems on similar subjects. These are not so well known as the "Elegy" or the "Ode on a distant prospect of Eton College," but their influence on literature was great, and they showed what a field was open to the writer who dipped into mediaeval romance. They are the forerunners of Sir Walter Scott's tales in verse. "The Bard" is the first poem in which the glory and grandeur of mountain scenery is brought out:

Mountains, ye mourn in vain
Modred, whose magic song
Made huge Plinlimmon bow his cloud-topped head

The true spirit of Scott breathes through these lines from "The Fatal Sisters":

Ere the ruddy sun be set,
Pikes must shiver, javelins sing,
Blade with clattering buckler meet,
Hauberk crash, and helmet ring

Gray is what we call a transitional poet, that is, he shows the change that is coming without actually being utterly different from his contemporaries. Some of his verse, noticeably his little mock-heroic poem, the "Ode on the death of a Favourite Cat," is as eighteenth century as you please. What could be more artificial than

Her conscious tail her joy declared;
The fair round face, the snowy beard,
The velvet of her paws,
Her coat, that with the tortoise vies,
Her ears of jet, and emerald eyes,
She saw, and purred applause.

But his attitude, his subject matter, his imagination, and occasionally his style and his language, are in the main a departure from the eighteenth-century tradition.

Gray, the Nature-lover

Mention must be made of his letters. In his later years he visited the Lake District and other beautiful and romantic spots, and in his correspondence with his friends he described these places in vigorous prose and with a keen eye for natural beauty. Mountains bored Johnson: they delighted Gray. That is one difference between a classic and a romantic.

Another poet who showed the same forward movement towards romance, but who is not so well known, is William Collins (1721-1759). Several of the poets who heralded the most glorious period of English romantic poetry, the period of Wordsworth, Shelley, and Keats, were not quite sound in their minds, and Collins was one of them. Throughout his short and unhappy life he was cursed with the fear of insanity, and for the last five years he was actually mad. His poems did not attract people, and the disappointment was so great to this sensitive, ambitious young man that after the failure of his "Odes" (1747), the book that to-day we treasure as containing the finest lyrics written in the first half of the eighteenth century, he destroyed all the unsold copies, and practically gave up writing poetry. His finest poem is the unrhymed "Ode to Evening."

The Traditional Ballad

We have spoken of the revived interest at this time in the Middle Ages. This interest produced many remarkable results. It led to the writing of lurid fiction; it led Gray to write some of his best known poems; it led a romantic parson, Thomas Percy, who afterwards became Bishop of Dromore, to hunt up, and patch up by adding, all the ballads and songs and lyrics he could discover, and to publish them in 1765 under the title of "Reliques of Ancient English Poetry." This book is certainly one of the most important ever published in England, not only because without it we should probably have lost most of our famous ballads, including "Chevy Chase" and "The Battle of Otterburn," but also because it kindled the desire to write in the heart of Sir Walter Scott.

This interest, however, produced nothing more remarkable than the poems of Thomas Chatterton (1752-70). In his short life of eighteen years he perpetrated one of the most colossal literary forgeries of all time, and also proved himself the genuine leader of the great romantic revival. There is nothing transitional about Chatterton, he is a pure romantic. Of course, the fact was only discovered after his unhappy death. What this boy might have done had he received encouragement and help we can only dimly imagine.

His story reads like a fairy tale. As a youngster he lived near the magnificent church of St. Mary Redcliffe, Bristol, and spent half his time wandering about the building, till his imaginative mind came to live far more in the Middle Ages than in the eighteenth century. In the church was a room containing chests in which were stored old documents, a great heap of which had been dumped there as of no value. Chatterton pored over these dusty parchments, and into his childish mind—he was only twelve at the time—came the amazing idea of writing, in old-fashioned lettering and spelling, poems which he could pretend to have found among them.

Chatterton's Forgeries

He carried out his ingenious notion with complete success. He invented a monk called William Rowley, said to have lived in Edward IV's time and to have been a chronicler and collector of works of art for William Canynge, the rich merchant who rebuilt St. Mary Redcliffe in that reign. For four or five years Chatterton supplied the Bristol newspapers with Rowley's. poems. Every time there was an important civic event, such as the opening of a new bridge over the River Avon, he produced a poem or poems dealing with similar events in the alleged Rowley's time. No one suspected the cheat.

When he was sixteen he began to desire wider fame. He sent to Horace Walpole, who was then writing a book on British painters, some supposed mediaeval manuscripts on painting. Walpole was completely deceived, so Chatterton sent him some more. Walpole showed them to Gray and to another authority, who at once detected the fraud.

Nevertheless, Chatterton went up to London to try his fortune. But no one had any use for Rowley poems now, and he found himself unable to make enough money to live on. After practically starving for four months, he poisoned himself. Thus perished a boy who might have become one of England's greatest poets, for he had real genius.

Samuel Johnson said of Chatterton: " This is the most extraordinary young man that has encountered my knowledge. It is wonderful how the whelp has written such things." Of another literary forger, James Macpherson (1736-96), he said things not so pleasant.

This man was a country schoolmaster living in the Highlands of Scotland. His tale was that he had collected and copied old Celtic lays which had been handed down by word of mouth. Some Scottish patrons of literature, impressed by his story, provided him with money to tour the Highlands in search of more of this mediaeval poetry. He produced " Fingal," an epic poem supposed to have been composed in the third century A.D., and a year later " Temora."

There was much dispute about these poems. Johnson declared from the start that they were frauds, and English people were generally of his opinion. Scottish folk, and particularly the Highlanders, declared they were genuine, and that the name of Ossian, the hero, was a familiar one in legend. Macpherson gave his case away by referring to some manuscripts, and then, when he was asked to produce them, by shuffling, declaring that his honour was being questioned, and finally being able to produce only some scraps that were of no value whatever. With characteristic loyalty his own countrymen continued to believe in him, and he lived respected and profitably on his supposed discoveries.

A single poem has made Christopher Smart (1722-71) famous, and that poem was thought out while the author was in a lunatic asylum. This is the " Song to David," and there is no other eighteenth century poem like it. Smart, who had been a fellow of Pembroke College, Cambridge, wrote much other verse, but nothing that is at all as remarkable as the " Song to David."

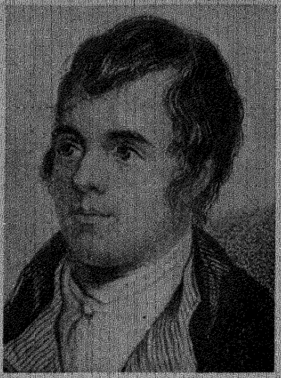
The Romantic Revival

Romance in poetry won its way very gradually. Who would think, when the whole world of writers was still pouring out correct couplets after the manner of Pope, that the scanty work of a timid professor at Cambridge, the " Odes " of a young man who tore up his own books, the precocious forgeries of a boy, and the ravings of a madman were heralding one of the mightiest outbursts of romantic song this country has ever seen?

It is easy enough for us, more than a century and a half later, to trace the progress of the Romantic Revival, but at the time few people can have been aware that any change was coming over the spirit of poetry. Yet between 1780 and 1800, a matter of twenty years, four great poets published volumes of poetry, and of these four, one at least wrought a tremendous change in people's ideas and opened their eyes to the fact that a " new " poetry had arrived. These four were Cowper, Crabbe, Blake, and Burns.

SCOTLAND'S NATIONAL POET

And his English Contemporaries, Cowper, Crabbe, and Blake



Robert Burns (1759-96).

"I AM of a very singular temper, and very unlike all the men that I have ever conversed with. Certainly I am not an absolute fool, but I have more weakness than the greatest of all fools I can recollect at present. In short, if I was as fit for the next world as I am unfit for this—and God forbid I should speak it in vanity—I would not change conditions with any saint in Christendom."

So wrote Cowper of himself when he was thirty-two, and in the main he judged himself rightly. He was unfit for the rough, boisterous world into which he had been born. To that fact we owe it that he is counted among our great poets.

He was born at Berkhampstead, where his father was rector, in 1731. When he was six years old his mother died. The sensitive, loving boy felt her loss deeply, and never forgot her. Fifty years later he wrote :—

I heard the bell toll'd on thy burial day,
I saw the hearse that bore thee slow away,
And, turning from my nursery window, drew
A long, long sigh, and wept a last adieu !
But was it such ?—It was—Where thou art gone
Adieus and farewells are a sound unknown.
May I but meet thee on that peaceful shore,
The parting word shall pass my lips no more !

In the same year, when he was only six, Cowper was sent away to a boarding school. There he suffered cruelly. "My chief affliction," he says, "consisted in my being singled out from all the other boys by a lad of about fifteen years of age as a proper object upon whom he might let loose the cruelty of his temper . . . . his savage treatment of me impressed such a dread of his figure upon my mind, that I well remember being afraid to lift my eyes upon him higher than to his knees, and that I knew him better by his shoe-buckles than by any other part of his dress." It was an age of cruel bullying in schools, as the poor little fellow quickly found out. At Westminster School, to which he went later, he was not so unhappy, for he was good at both cricket and football, and that no doubt saved him from much of the fierce organized bullying that went on there.

After school, Cowper studied for the law, and when he had served his articles went to live in the Temple. While he was there, at the age of thirty-two, occurred the sad crisis of his life ; he became insane and tried to kill himself. He was living alone, and must have brooded overmuch on his sorrows, for he had lost his father and been prevented from marrying the lady he loved, until his brain lost its balance. He was confined in a private asylum for eighteen months, after which he was pronounced cured. He himself put down his cure to religion, and ever afterwards was a devout and earnest Christian.

All question of a career was ended by this fit of insanity ; his relatives secured him a small income and sent him to live at Huntingdon. There he became acquainted with the Rev. William Unwin and his family. To Mrs. Unwin in particular he was strongly attracted. For twenty years or more she cared for him tenderly, as a mother for a son. When, two years later, her husband was killed by falling from his horse, she moved to Olney, in Buckinghamshire, taking Cowper with her.

There they met the Rev. John Newton, the curate of the parish, and a leader in the great religious revival in which John Wesley, the founder of Methodism, was the foremost figure. Newton, with Mrs. Unwin and Lady Hesketh, was to have strong influence on Cowper. The clergyman persuaded him to take part in the religious work he was doing, and got him to write hymns for a hymn book he was compiling. Several of these have become known and loved the world over. "Hark, my soul, it is the Lord," is perhaps the most popular.

Cowper's mind gave way under the strain. Newton was a strong, powerful character, fit for revivalism and enthusiasm, but his friend was not. For sixteen months Mrs. Unwin nursed a poor, deluded lunatic who imagined in his madness that she hated him, fancied that he was despised and rejected by God, and attempted again to commit suicide.

Eventually the shadow lifted, and his mind cleared. Newton left Olney, and Mrs. Unwin sought less exacting occupations for Cowper. She induced him to try gardening and carpentry, and he began to keep tame hares. As relief for his mind she urged him to write poetry. Thus, at fifty years of age, Cowper became a poet he had written occasional verses before, but now he took up the employment in earnest. Unfortunately, in "The Progress of Error" Mrs. Unwin did not choose a very happy subject for him, and this and other poems which followed, "moral satires" in which society is gently told its errors, were not very good poetry Cowper was not fitted to write satire.

His Best and Longest Poem

One day a Mrs. Jones, the wife of a neighbouring clergyman, came to tea, bringing her sister, Lady Austin, with her. This woman, a jolly, lively person, quickly became friendly with Cowper, and she it was who made the suggestion which started him off on work he could really do. She asked him to write something fairly long in blank verse. Cowper demanded a subject, and she immediately pointed to the sofa on which he was lying and told him to write about that. Sofas were then rather uncommon. Cowper took to the idea and accepted her challenge. Thus was his longest and best poem, "The Task," begun. It made him popular, and readers have loved it ever since.

"The Task" consists of six books, the titles of which are: "The Sofa," "The Time-piece," "The Garden," "The Winter Evening," "The Winter Morning Walk," and "The Winter Walk at Noon." These suggest in part what his verse was about—namely, the common things of life, home and its comforts, the pleasant countryside, the restful, quiet, day by day events. But Cowper was also intensely religious, and in this poem his religion was given the outlet it desired—a not too passionate or overstrained one. The chief impression "The Task" gives is of calm happiness :—

> Now stir the fire and close the shutters fast,
> Let fall the curtains, whirl the sofa round,
> And while the bubbling and loud-hissing urn
> Throws up a steamy column, and the cups
> That cheer but not inebriate, wait on each,
> So let us welcome peaceful evening in.

We must not forget that it was Lady Austin also who told Cowper the story of John Gilpin, the "citizen of credit and renown," and thus was partly responsible for the finest mock-ballad in our language. The story goes that Cowper lay awake laughing at the story half the night after he heard it, and then got up in the morning and wrote the poem. Strange that a man who suffered from fits of depression so terrible that they upset his sanity should have written so gloriously funny a piece! He himself came to believe afterwards that he actually wrote it in one of his saddest moods, but the truth probably is that he wrote it between two such moods.

The friendship with Lady Austin did not last very long. But a new friend came into Cowper's life to take her place. This was Lady Hesketh, his cousin. She had him moved from the dark, gloomy house at Olney to Weston Hall, and here the happiest days of his life were spent. Here he wrote many short poems, of which "The Loss of the Royal George," "The Solitude of Alexander Selkirk," and "To Mary" are the best-known. Mary was Mrs. Unwin, and Cowper's tribute to her is one of the most beautiful things ever penned.

In an evil day he was persuaded to attempt an English rendering of Homer. We need not linger over it . the task was one for which he was not suited, and no one ever reads the poem now. But we must say a word or two about his letters.

The Best of English Letter-Writers

In the eighteenth century letter-writing was a form of literature. People wrote long letters, and wrote them carefully. So when we remember that Southey said that Cowper was "the best of English letter-writers," we must consider this the highest possible praise.

His letters, like the poetry of "The Task," are full of the charm of the "daily round." They are of the man himself, gentle, tender, loving, but occasionally very sad. He writes to Lady Hesketh :—

> My dear, let me tell you once more that your kindness in promising us a visit has charmed us both. I shall see you again. I shall hear your voice. We shall take walks together. I will show you my prospects, the hovel, the alcove, the Ouse and its banks, everything that I have described. . . . My dear, I will not let you come till the end of May, or beginning of June, because before that time my greenhouse will not be ready to receive us, and it is the only pleasant room belonging to us. When the plants go out, we go in. I line it with mats, and spread the floor with mats : and there you shall sit with a bed of mignonette at your side, and a hedge of honeysuckle, roses and jasmine, and I will make you a bouquet of myrtle every day.

In spite of the cheerfulness of Weston Hall, poor Cowper went insane again. As he grew older his malady gained strength, and the doctors did not treat it wisely. Also Mrs. Unwin had a stroke and was no longer able to look after him. Her mind began to fail and she became a hindrance to him rather than a help. Friends moved them to East Dereham, in Norfolk, and two months later, in 1796, Mrs. Unwin died.

Cowper lived until 1800. During the three and a half years which intervened he was but rarely sane, and he wrote but one original poem, "The Castaway."

Crabbe, the Realist

The poetry of George Crabbe (1754-1832) is not much read to-day, and the two chief reasons are not far to seek. He is at his very best when he is describing ugly, unattractive people or places, and he wrote in sturdy but rather monotonous rhymed couplets, not brilliantly flashing with wit like Pope's, but more after the manner of Dryden.

He was born at Aldeburgh, in Suffolk, and as a boy had an unhappy childhood, for he was not strong in body, and his father and mother were continually quarrelling. He was first apprenticed to a surgeon. Loving only literature and botany, it is perhaps not surprising that the work failed to interest him. So he came up to London to try his fortune and, like many another writer, soon found himself in debt and despairing.

In his difficulty he did a very wise thing. He wrote a straightforward, manly letter to Edmund Burke, asking for help. Burke behaved splendidly, took him into his house, gave him money, helped with the publication of a poem he had penned, "The Library," and persuaded him to take holy orders. From that time Crabbe's career, though a humble one, was made. He was for some time chaplain to the Duke of Rutland, then he obtained a living in Lincolnshire, and the rest of his long life was spent as a parish priest there, in Suffolk, and in Wiltshire.

He wrote poetry early and late in life. 'The Library" (1781) was followed by "The Village" (1783) and "The Newspaper" (1785). Then for twenty-two years he published nothing. When, as an elderly man, he began again, he published in fairly rapid succession "The Parish Register," "The Borough," "Tales in Verse," and "Tales of the Hall."

Crabbe had known what it was to be starving, to be without friends and without money, and these recollections led him to find his inspiration in the struggle of life. He writes about poor, common, homely people, about back streets, fishing quays, the fens and the moors. He writes simply, with a force that goes straight to one's heart. His is not pleasant poetry, but you feel that he knows and has suffered with the people whose struggles and sufferings he describes.

As is obvious from the titles of his poems he chooses a general, everyday subject, then he lets his thoughts gather round it, and he weaves a story, grim, passionate, and real round his subject. Thomas Hardy is not unlike Crabbe; indeed, he said that he owed much to his reading of Crabbe's poetry. This is how Crabbe describes the life of the agricultural labourer:—

> . . . See them rising with the sun,
> Through a long course of daily toil to run;
> See them beneath the Dog-star's raging heat,
> When the knees tremble and the temples beat;
> Behold them, leaning on their scythes, look o'er
> The labour past, and toils to come explore;
> See them alternate suns and showers engage,
> And hoard up aches and anguish for their age.

Crabbe was not a great poet, but he deserves remembrance, if only because of his sincerity, and the faithful truth with which he described the toiling poor.

Blake, the Visionary

The year 1927, the centenary of the death of William Blake (1757-1827), produced an astonishing revival of interest in his work. Book after book about him was published, and his lyrics, set to music, were sold everywhere.

Yet nobody seems quite sure about Blake. Was he insane or inspired? Certainly he "saw visions and dreamed dreams," and both visions and dreams were among the strangest that ever visited man. Late in life he published two books of prophecy containing many wonderful bursts of exquisite poetry, but in which most readers have utterly failed to find any meaning. He illustrated his own books, and his illustrations were as weirdly beautiful as his verse. As an artist we cannot consider him here, though his engravings are as renowned as his poetry, and of his poetry we will consider only "The Songs of Innocence" and "The Songs of Experience." It is through these that Blake is known to every lover of lyrical poetry.

There was something of Peter Pan in Blake; he never grew up. He lived all his life in a dream world of his own. There is mystery in every line of his lyrics, delicately simple though they may seem. He was like a child who is surrounded by companions whom he imagines to be fair, wise, and intimate, and who regards all merely human people rather in the light of solid nuisances. Fortunately, he married a wife who understood him perfectly and who looked after him with devoted care. His life was, on the whole, a happy one. No one took much notice of him, but he desired neither wealth nor fame. His art was all in all to him, and in it he found a full, unearthly satisfaction.

Blake's Songs

Some of Blake's songs are known to almost everyone. Who does not know that tenderly simple poem so full of deep meaning, "Little lamb, who made thee?" or the strangely powerful, hammerlike beat of:

Tiger, tiger, burning bright
In the forests of the night,
What immortal hand or eye
Could frame thy fearful symmetry?

in which a childlike wonder mingles with a reverential awe of God's handiwork. Most of us are familiar with "The Piper." Here are two stanzas from a delicious little poem, "The Echoing Green," that is perhaps not quite so well known:—

The sun does arise
And make happy the skies;
The merry bells ring
To welcome the spring;
The skylark and thrush,
The birds of the bush,
Sing louder around
To the bells' cheerful sound:
While our sports shall be seen
On the echoing green.

Old John, with white hair,
Does laugh away care,
Sitting under the oak,
Among the old folk.
They laugh at our play,
And soon they all say,
"Such, such were the joys
When we all—girls and boys—
In our youth-time were seen
On the echoing green."

Was ever poetry so fresh, so childlike, so angelic? Blake makes every other poet seem stiff and artificial, however simply he may write. There is no one else quite like him, unless, perhaps, a poet of our own day, W. H. Davies, who has something of the same innocent wonder. It is said that Blake wrote many of these lyrics between the ages of twelve and eighteen.

Robert Burns is more than a poet; he is one of Scotland's national heroes. He is, to a Scotsman, not a poet, but the poet. Every year, on his birthday, January 25th, his fellow countrymen all over the world meet and dine together in his honour and toast "The Immortal Memory" of the man whose songs are a part of their life. There is no other poet in the world to whom men of all trades and professions, of all ranks of society, pay such honour.

Said a writer recently of him; "Robert Burns is Robert Everyman, but he is what Everyman would be if he could sing." That is the secret of it. He put into undying words just what everyone would like to say. It may take a Scotsman to appreciate Burns's poetry fully, for he wrote chiefly in the Lowland Scotch dialect, but even an Englishman feels a lump rising in his throat when he reads:—

John Anderson, my jo, John,
  When we were first acquent,
Your locks were like the raven,
  Your bonie brow was brent;
But now your brow is beld, John,
  Your locks are like the snaw;
But blessings on your frosty pow,
  John Anderson, my jo

John Anderson, my jo, John,
  We clamb the hill thegither;
And mony a canty day, John,
  We've had wi' ane anither;
Now we maun totter down, John:
  And hand in hand we'll go,
And sleep thegither at the foot,
  John Anderson, my jo.

The Boyhood of Burns

Burns was born at Alloway, in Ayrshire, in 1759. His father was a small farmer, a hard-working, God-fearing, and thoroughly good man, but terribly poor. The boy had to go to work at the earliest possible moment; by the time he was fifteen he was the chief labourer on the farm. Passionately though he longed to escape from "the unceasing toil of a galley-slave," escape there seemed to be none. Everything appeared to conspire against him; he wanted sympathy, kindliness, and liberty, and he was pinned down to an endless round of drudging toil.

The hard life helped to ruin his constitution, yet he hoped on. He became a great reader. He carried a book of songs in his pocket and would study it as he walked or rode to and from his work or at odd moments in the fields. As he followed the plough he whistled the old tunes of Scotland and invented fresh words for them. He longed to sing a song in praise of the woods, the hills, the trees, that should really stir men's hearts.

He composed songs, and in his scanty leisure wrote them down. Meanwhile, his poverty was as great as ever, but he was the jolliest of companions.

Burns's First Volume

When he was twenty-five his father died, and Robert and his brother Gilbert carried on the farm, but with no success. At last he determined to try his luck in the West Indies. In order to raise funds for this venture he decided to publish the poems he had written. So in July, 1786, there appeared a small book, published at Kilmarnock, containing "Poems" by Robert Burns.

The book brought him only £20 in money, but it changed the whole course of his life. He was invited to Edinburgh, and there for a while the former ploughboy was flattered, feasted, and patronized by fashionable literary society. But he won a popularity far more enduring than that. It was as though Scotland realized that her national poet had arisen in her midst. Poor labourers and servant girls saved up their scanty earnings to buy the poems written by one like themselves, by one who expressed for them all their desires, their hopes, loves, and fears.

The 1786 volume of poems contained, among others, "The Cottar's Saturday Night," in which Burns's life as a boy is faithfully and touchingly described; "The Twa Dogs," a fable; "To a Mouse" and "To a Mountain Daisy," and many another song composed on hillside or valley. This is how he wrote of the daisy:

Wee, modest, crimson tippèd flow'r,
Thou'st met me in an evil hour;
For I maun crush among the stoure
  Thy slender stem:
To spare thee now is past my pow'r,
  Thou bonie gem.

Alas! it's no thy neebor sweet,
The bonie Lark, companion meet!
Bending thee 'mang the dewy weet!
  Wi' speckl'd breast,
When upward-springing, blythe, to greet
  The purpling East.

Cauld blew the bitter-biting North
Upon thy early, humble birth;
Yet chearfully thou glinted forth
  Amid the storm,
Scarce rear'd above the Parent-earth
  Thy tender form

The flaunting flow'rs our Gardens yield,
High shelt'ring woods and wa's maun shield;
But thou, beneath the random bield
  O' clod or stane,
Adorns the histie stibble-field
  Unseen, alane

There, in thy scanty mantle clad,
Thy snawie bosom sun-ward spread,
Thou lifts thy unassuming head
  In humble guise;
But now the share uptears thy bed,
  And low thou lies!

That is a poem which could only have been composed by a man who had followed the plough and watched it tearing through the soil, and who saw the beauty and the sacredness of small things.

In 1787 a second edition of the "Poems was issued. For it Burns received some £500. He took two long holidays, in which he wandered through northern England and the eastern Highlands. Then he married, bought a farm, and lost his money. He became an excise officer, badly paid and overworked. He grew old before his time. "I close my eyes in misery and open them without hope," he wrote a few months before his death, in 1796, at the age of thirty-seven. One of his last acts was to borrow £10 in order to keep out of a debtors' prison.

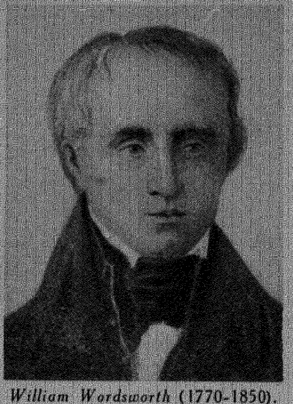
"Tam o' Shanter"

While he was still a farmer he wrote "Auld Lang Syne," perhaps the most enduringly popular song in the world, and "Tam o' Shanter," a tale in verse, the longest of his poems. Tam, a drunken horse-dealer, is going across a lonely moor in the dead of night, when he sees that the old church of Alloway is full of light. He creeps up, and watches the witches dancing. In his delight at their feats he attracts their attention, and the whole band turns out to pursue him. To escape them he must cross a running stream, this he just manages to do. But they get close enough to him to seize and pull off the tail of his grey mare.

But it is not "Tam o' Shanter," jolly story though it is, that has endeared Burns to all men. It is his songs—songs like "Ye Banks and braes o' bonie Doon," "Mary Morison," "Scots, wha hae wi' Wallace bled," and "Ae fond kiss, and then we sever," that have rung in men's ears and made them love the author with a love that is unrestrained. Those songs are not simply Scottish: they are Scotland itself

WORDSWORTH AND COLERIDGE

The Part they Played in Reforming the Artificial Language of Poetry



William Wordsworth (1770-1850).

IN September, 1798, two young men published at Bristol a small book of poems entitled "Lyrical Ballads," for which they received the sum of thirty guineas. It made no very great impression on the reading public, as the wife of one of the authors jokingly said: "The 'Lyrical Ballads' are not liked at all by any." Yet somehow the copies managed to get sold, and by 1800 the edition was exhausted. The publishers having asked for a second edition, the two young men, William Wordsworth (1770-1850) and Samuel Taylor Coleridge (1772-1834), republished the book, adding some more poems and a preface by the former poet explaining the principles on which the poems were composed.

Then the trouble began. Before the publication of the second edition these two young men had been considered, by those who took the trouble to consider them at all, as perfectly harmless beings who chose to write in rather a strange way about rather unpoetical subjects. Now, however, when they took it upon themselves to defend seriously their eccentric manner of writing and to condemn strongly the ordinary method, the critics grew angry and a storm of abuse was poured on the would-be reformers.

What was there in Wordsworth's explanatory preface that should so upset people? Briefly stated, he declared that "incidents and situations from common life," and particularly "humble and rustic life," were the matter from which he built his poems, and that the language of poetry ought to consist of "the language really used by men," especially country men, because they "speak a plainer and more emphatic language."

The principles laid down do not seem to us to be very dreadful, but that is because they have now been accepted in general for at least a century. When we remember the artificial language and tone of eighteenth century poetry, and that the influence of Pope was still strong even when the "Lyrical Ballads" were published, we shall see the matter in quite a different light. The "Lyrical Ballads" were new, were something that had not been attempted in poetry before; they are the foundation on which modern English poetry has been built.

Unfortunately, the book gave the critics plenty of opportunity for abuse and ridicule. Most of it had been written by Wordsworth, and in some of the poems he had overdone the simplicity. The difficulty about writing simply is that if you write too simply you become merely silly. On the other hand, "Lyrical Ballads" contained at least two poems that are among the finest in our language. These were "Lines written a few miles above Tintern Abbey" and "The Ancient Mariner." The latter was Coleridge's only contribution to the book, but it is a poem of considerable length and occupied just over a quarter of the volume.

These two poems perfectly illustrate the characters of the men who wrote them and the poetic principles for which they stood. The partnership of Wordsworth and Coleridge was a partnership of opposites; no two men could have been more wildly unlike, and, fortunately, each gave to the other the inspiration and help he needed. Wordsworth was quiet and reflective; he found his deepest joy in recollection of beauty. As he says in "Tintern Abbey," after he has described the loveliness of the Wye Valley (Tintern Abbey is on the banks of the Wye), which he is revisiting after five years:

> Though absent long,
> These forms of beauty have not been to me,
> As is a landscape to a blind man's eye:
> But oft, in lonely rooms, and mid the din
> Of towns and cities, I have owed to them,
> In hours of weariness, sensations sweet,
> Felt in the blood, and felt along the heart,
> And passing even into my purer mind
> With tranquil restoration.

Nothing could describe Wordsworth better than those lines. No poet ever loved the hills and valleys, woods, meadows, lakes, and rivers more than he, but the first impression, beautiful though it might be, was not what counted most for him. His pleasure was in remembering, in drawing from a richly stored memory pictures which time had rendered yet more beautiful.

In his youth, both before and after leaving Cambridge, where he studied at St. John's College, Wordsworth had travelled in France, become wildly excited over the Revolution, and very nearly joined the ranks of the revolutionaries. But—

> That time is past,
> And all its aching joys are now no more,
> And all its dizzy raptures. . . .
> . . . For I have learned
> To look on Nature, not as in the hour
> Of thoughtless youth, but hearing oftentimes
> The still, sad music of humanity,
> Not harsh nor grating, though of ample power
> To chasten and subdue . . .

Compare the last six lines with any in eighteenth century poetry, and you will realize that here is a poet with an attitude absolutely different. All trace of artificiality, of moralizing, of affectation is gone.

The Loneliness of Coleridge

So, too, with Coleridge, though in an utterly opposite way. There is a verse in "The Ancient Mariner" which describes him to perfection :—

> Alone, alone, all, all alone,
> Alone on a wide, wide sea!
> And never a saint took pity on
> My soul in agony.

All his life Coleridge was, like his ancient mariner, a lonely wanderer in strange places, but these wanderings were of the mind, not of the body. As a boy he was precocious. He said of himself that he never had a childhood, never thought as a child. At Christ's Hospital, where Charles Lamb was among his schoolfellows, he was a strange scholar who, in his spare time, buried himself in all sorts of queer studies. He was absent-minded, absorbed in his thoughts ; once he swam a river in his clothes, and forgot to change.

He went up to Cambridge and did fairly well there for a time. Then his religious opinions brought him into ill-favour, and he contracted debts ; so one day he left and enlisted in the Dragoon Guards. He soon tired of soldiering. His next exploit was to form with Southey and a young man called Lovell a wonderful communistic scheme of society. The only result of this scheme was that he married a young lady who had been interested in it. The marriage was not happy, and the fault was Coleridge's.

He was brilliant but erratic. He had one of the finest minds, one of the acutest intellects man has ever been blessed with, but he could settle steadily to nothing. His career is a record of drifting.

In 1797 he met Wordsworth in Somerset. Wordsworth was living there with his sister Dorothy, who throughout life was his firmest friend and most devoted helper. The three became friends and met daily. Coleridge admired Wordsworth's earlier poetry. The two men arranged a walking tour, and on the first afternoon Coleridge related the story of the ancient mariner. At first the idea was that the poem should be written jointly, but Coleridge became so excited over his tale that Wordsworth wisely determined to leave him to it. He agreed to contribute several poems of his own to a volume that should pay the expenses of the walking tour. The "Lyrical Ballads" were not the result of a determined attempt to revolutionize poetry ; they were the result of a walking tour.

Coleridge left Somersetshire in 1798 and went to Germany, but before doing so he had written the only two poems beside "The Ancient Mariner" that need concern us. These were "Christabel" and "Kubla Khan." Neither was ever finished ; perhaps "Kubla Khan" never could have been finished, for Coleridge said he dreamt it. When he wrote, he wrote down hurriedly what he could remember ; somebody interrupted him, and the precious vision was gone for ever. It was Coleridge's habit to work by fits and starts, and he left unfinished almost everything he began. He had no power of concentration.

"*Kubla Khan*" *and* "*Christabel*"

For sheer loveliness of word music "Kubla Khan" is perhaps unequalled in our language. Everyone knows the opening lines :—

> In Xanadu did Kubla Khan
> A stately pleasure dome decree,
> Where Alph, the sacred river, ran
> Through caverns measureless to man,
> Down to the sunless sea.

From this poem and from "The Ancient Mariner" poets learnt what beauty might be in mere words ; from "Christabel" they learnt new possibilities in metre. "Christabel," which is the beginning of a story of how a vampire, by taking the shape of a lovely lady, gained the confidence of a gentle girl, Christabel, is written in eight-syllabled couplets, loosely and musically constructed. In each line there are four beats, that is, four strongly accented syllables; but the unaccented syllables vary considerably in number:—

There is not wind enough to twirl
The one red leaf, the last of its clan,
That dances as often as dance it can,
Hanging so light, and hanging so high,
On the topmost twig that looks up at the sky.

No one ever put mystery so beautifully into verse as Coleridge. He is of imagination all compact, and his imagination is full of the supernatural, the weird, the unearthly. The pity is that he did not write more poems like these three.

From Germany Coleridge returned to the Lake District, where the Wordsworths had already settled, but he stayed only a short time. He settled his family there in a large house, the other half of which was occupied by Southey. Soon poor Southey, that immensely hard-working man of letters, had to unite the two households, for Coleridge was rarely at home. For sixteen years or so this brilliant but weak man, who had now taken to opium, thus further unfitting himself for any serious work, wandered aimlessly about England and the Continent, living on the hospitality of friends and a small pension, devising endless projects, and either abandoning them or carrying them out half-heartedly.

His wonderful powers of conversation attracted many people, and he was never without friends, but in spite of his charm he was a failure. At one time he was engaged to give a series of lectures; the series was a farce. Sometimes he was brilliant, at others horribly dull, and on occasion he never turned up.

Coleridge on Shakespeare

At length, in 1816, Coleridge was taken into the house of some people called Gillman, treated for his drug-taking, and gradually cured of it. With this family he lived until his death in 1834. During these eighteen years he published several books, one of which, the "Lectures on Shakespeare," is enduringly famous. These lectures are the foundation on which all modern criticism of Shakespeare has been based. There had been critics of Shakespeare before, but they had all regarded the dramatist as one who had succeeded in spite of himself, who had no art, but who wrote marvellous poetry and constructed amazing plays simply because he could not help himself. Coleridge, starting where all previous critics had left off with the assumption that Shakespeare was the greatest genius who ever lived, proved conclusively that he was also the greatest literary artist the world had ever seen.

Coleridge's prose works are like gold mines; there is an enormous amount of valueless stuff to sift through, but hidden away in it are nuggets of pure gold. His writings are like himself, aimless, discursive, rambling, but shot through with genius.

The career of Wordsworth was in every way utterly and entirely different. In 1799 he went back to his boyhood's beloved Lake District, and there he remained until his death in 1850. During this half century he devoted himself steadily and with quiet, persistent courage to poetry. His marriage was entirely happy, and his wife and his sister Dorothy made it their business to help him along his chosen career by every means in their power.

A Biography in Verse

No poet ever took himself more seriously than Wordsworth. Soon after he settled in the Lake District he began what was to be a huge biography of himself in verse. This was never achieved, but two parts, in themselves long poems, "The Prelude" and "The Excursion," remain. He wrote industriously throughout his life, and his wife and his sister treasured every scrap of verse that came from his pen. It is perhaps a pity that they did so, for few poets have been capable at their worst of such bad poetry as Wordsworth. He could write side by side the most exquisite and the most paltry lines. As he grew older his inspiration left him, yet he continued to write.

He has been one of the most discussed of English poets. Some people say that all his best work was written before 1807, or even earlier, and that his later work is for the most part a dreary desert of rather dull prose in metrical form. Others maintain that, though his lyrical power took wings and departed, his later poems grow upon those who study them with care. It is a difficult matter, and to form a settled judgment upon his work demands a lifetime of study. On one or two points, however, we may venture an opinion.

His is certainly the most potent influence in modern poetry. He taught poets to look closely at Nature, and to hear "the still, sad music of humanity"—that is, to deal with real things. He taught them, too, that the true language of poetry is the simple, unaffected language of the heart. This does not mean that all poetry must be written in short, common words, but it does mean that the language must be exactly what the subject demands.

Apart from his beautiful earlier poems, "Tintern Abbey" and the "Ode on the Intimations of Immortality in early Childhood," Wordsworth did his best work in sonnet form. He is one of the masters of the sonnet, and takes rank with Shakespeare and Milton. The form exactly suited his quiet, reflective, serious mind. The "Lines written on Westminster Bridge" are perhaps his finest; they ought to be learnt by heart by every child, for they are exquisite:

Earth has not anything to show more fair;
  Dull would he be of soul that could pass by
  A sight so touching in its majesty;
The city now doth like a garment wear
The beauty of the morning; silent, bare,
  Ships, towers, domes, theatres and temples lie
  Open unto the fields, and to the sky,
All bright and glittering in the smokeless air,
  Never did sun more beautifully steep
In his first splendour valley, rock, or hill;
  Never saw I, never felt, a calm so deep!
  The river glideth at his own sweet will.
Dear God! the very houses seem asleep;
  And all that mighty heart is lying still!

Wordsworth may have written prosy poems, but the man who wrote that sonnet was a true and great poet.

Wordsworth: Poet Laureate

He lived to see his merits universally acknowledged. By 1830 he had outlived almost all his great contemporaries: Keats, Shelley, and Byron were dead and Sir Walter Scott was ebbing away. His quiet persistence had gained him follower after follower, and now it was realized that the poet whose work had never been boomed was unquestionably a master writer. His time had come. In 1843, on the death of Southey, he was made Poet Laureate. Tennyson, who succeeded him in 1850, declared in a fine poem that he succeeded to an honour that had been enhanced by "him who uttered nothing base."

It was true. Wordsworth had many faults. He wrote too much, and he had no sense of humour. He had a tremendously high opinion of himself, an opinion in the main justified, which led him to take seriously work which others found futile; but he never wrote a line that could be called degrading. He never forgot his high ideals, and his work breathes devout and earnest piety. No one can read him without being the better for it.

With all his faults, Wordsworth left behind him a body of work that is memorable in our literature. No one can deny his importance, or his claim to a place among our greatest poets; no one can deny that he founded modern English poetry. The brilliance of a Coleridge, the passionate cry of a Shelley, the radiant love of beauty of a Keats—these are priceless gems in the glittering crown of English literature, but to Wordsworth must be given the credit of the solid work of fashioning the setting.

Wordsworth Inspired

Thomas Arnold relates how he heard Wordsworth in a mood of inspiration. "In the autumn of 1844," he says, "at the time when plans and prospectuses were flying about proposing the continuation of the railway from Kendal to Windermere, my mother paid a morning call at Rydal Mount, and I accompanied her. We were shown into the drawing-room, a small apartment very plainly furnished. Presently the poet entered, having a sheet of paper in his hand; his face was flushed, and his waistcoat in disarray, as if he had been clutching at it under the stress of fervid thought.

"'I have been writing a sonnet,' he said. After a few more words, standing up in front of the fire, he recited it to us; it was the sonnet, 'Is there no nook of English ground secure from rash assault?' The force and intensity with which he uttered the lines breathed into his hearers a contagious fire; and to this hour I recollect the precise manner and tone of his delivery more exactly than in the case of any verses I ever heard."

Was Wordsworth a happy man? That is a difficult question to answer. "Oh!" the poet writes to Southey, "it makes the heart groan that, with such a beautiful world as this to live in, and such a soul as that of man's is by nature and gift of God, we should go about on such errands as we do, destroying and laying waste; and ninety-nine of us in a hundred never easy in any road that travels towards peace and quietness."

De Quincey recognized in Wordsworth "the secret fire of a temperament too fervid, the self-consuming energies of the brain, that gnaw at the heart and life-strings."

POETS OF YOUTH AND BEAUTY

The Troubled Careers of Byron, Shelley, and Keats

Lord Byron (1788-1824).

WE cannot, however much we wish, alter the past, and it is useless to try to imagine what might have happened had things fallen out differently than they did, yet it is only too tempting to try. In the story of our literature, who can resist wondering what Marlowe might have done had he lived as long as Shakespeare, what poems Chatterton might have written had not death cut him off before he was a man, or, in our own day, to what heights Rupert Brooke or Charles Sorley or James Elroy Flecker might not have risen? It is the same with the three poets whom we are now to consider—George Gordon Noel, sixth Lord Byron, Percy Bysshe Shelley, and John Keats.

Byron, the eldest, was thirty-six when he died; Keats, the youngest, only twenty-five. Their combined ages make a total of years but little more than that of Thomas Hardy. What might any one of them have achieved had he lived so long as that great man? For, short though were the lives of these three men, they left a mark upon English literature which will never be effaced. Each in his sphere was supreme, and each has been a model for succeeding writers and a source of joy and refreshment to many.

It is the custom in many books to make elaborate comparisons between Shelley and Keats, and to treat them as though they are very similar poets, though in truth they could hardly be more dissimilar. We have included them together in one chapter for three reasons only: they lived at the same time, they both died young, and they were both great poets. For the same three reasons Lord Byron is put into their chapter. In the case of each of these men we can paraphrase an old proverb and say that his life was short, but his art endures.

Byron was born in 1788, the son of a worthless father and an excitable mother. He was very good-looking, almost angelic, in appearance, but had a deformed foot which made him limp and about which he was very sensitive. His mother did her best to ruin his character: at one moment she would be petting and fondling him, at another screaming abuse and throwing things at her son.

In spite of his lame foot he played cricket for Harrow against Eton, and became an expert swimmer; he also took part in a mutiny at school. He was a strange boy, now gloomy, sulking and keeping apart from the others, now taking the lead in all "rags" and sports. It was the same when he went up to Cambridge; he speedily became known as a rather wild, eccentric youth.

While he was at Cambridge he published his first book of verses, called "Hours of Idleness." These were no better nor worse than the first verses of any young poet, but, probably because they were written by a lord, the *Edinburgh Review* published a long and biting criticism of them. Byron, determined to be revenged, wrote in reply, "English Bards and Scotch Reviewers," a satire in verse in which he had a hard knock at almost every writer of the day, including Sir Walter Scott. This poem first showed where his real power lay. It is Byron the satirist whom we remember now, the author of "The Vision of Judgment" and "Don Juan."

Those later poems, however, were written after his reputation was made. In 1809 he went for a long tour on the Continent; he was away from England for two years. He spent most of his time in Greece, the country in whose service he was later to give his life. At Athens he began to write "Childe Harold's Pilgrimage," an account of his own travels, and in 1812, on his return to England, the first two cantos were published.

Never was popularity more quickly gained. As he said, he woke up in the morning to find himself famous. All fashionable London paid court to the sentimental, romantic author, and for four years Byron was applauded and adored. He made the most of his popularity, and published volume after volume of verse. In 1813 came "The Giaour" and "The Bride of Abydos," in

1814 "The Corsair" and "Lara," in 1815 "Hebrew Melodies," in 1816 "The Siege of Corinth" and "Parisina." With the first of these he took Scott's place as the teller of romantic tales in verse, and with each publication his reputation grew, until it overshadowed that of all his contemporaries. It spread rapidly to the Continent, and he was regarded as easily the greatest writer of the day.

Then came a dramatic change of fortune. In 1815 he married; the marriage was not a happy one, and within a year his wife left him. She said he was mad, and worse. Society turned against him, and from being the most popular man in England, he became the most hated. In the same year he left England, and never returned.

His greatest work was yet to be written. His greater reputation was yet to be built. Famous though he had been before, the fame which "Childe Harold's Pilgrimage" brought him was as nothing beside the almost legendary fame which this handsome, brooding nobleman, about whom all sorts of strange stories were whispered, was to build round himself in the years to follow. It was a fame not built entirely on his work, though all his work contributed to it. For whatever he wrote about, Byron's chief subject was always himself. From earliest youth he had an almost unnatural interest in himself; he loved to attract attention and to be the central figure. All his tales, all his dramas, contained characters like himself—proud, aloof, lordly, veiled in mystery and romance.

Byron's Great Satires

To-day we do not read his dramas. Young people sometimes fall under the spell of his romantic tales, just as his own generation did, but it is a fascination which does not last. What are remembered are his two matchless satires, "The Vision of Judgment" and "Don Juan," which are unequalled for force, for cleverness, and for insight into character. The latter poem, a serio-comic epic in sixteen cantos, published anonymously between 1819 and 1824, remains a masterpiece of satire.

"The Vision of Judgment," a much shorter poem, is his finest work. Southey, the Poet Laureate, had written a very bad poem on the death of George III, a poem which was not only bad but also profane. He called it "The Vision of Judgment." Byron replied with his "Vision of Judgment," in which the reception of George III at Heaven's gates is very differently described. This is part of his description of that monarch, in the words of Satan, who is arguing that the late King of England is not fit for Heaven:

> From out the past
> Of ages, since mankind have known the rule
> Of monarchs—from the bloody rolls amassed
> Of sin and slaughter—from the Caesars' school,
> Take the worst pupil; and produce a reign
> More drench'd with gore, more cumber'd with the slain.
>
> He ever warr'd with freedom and the free:
> Nations as men, home subjects, foreign foes
> So that they utter'd the word "Liberty!"
> Found George the Third their worst opponent

The poem consists of an argument between Satan and the angels as to whether King George shall be admitted to Heaven. In the end Southey appears and insists upon reading aloud some of his "Vision of Judgment," and causes such a commotion that in the midst of it all King George seizes the opportunity to slip into Heaven unobserved, and, says Byron:

> . . . . when the tumult dwindled to a calm,
> I left him practising the hundredth psalm.

It is an outrageous poem, a cruel poem, but amazingly clever.

The Greek War.

After leaving England, Byron lived in Switzerland and in Italy. For some years he and Shelley were constant companions. Then came the Greek War of Independence; he knew Greece and loved it, and at once his imagination was aroused. He gave £10,000 to the Greeks and set sail to help them. He was placed in command of a force at Missolonghi; but before he could achieve anything the malignant fever which haunts such low-lying, semi-tropical districts had claimed him as its victim. He died on April 19th, 1824.

It is difficult to judge Byron as a poet. He wrote far too much, he wrote at times very badly; he had almost no imagination, no lyrical or dramatic power. He owed his reputation in his life-time almost entirely to his strange, wild, fascinating personality; that reputation died, in England quickly, on the Continent very slowly. During the nineteenth century he was, for a time, considered a poet of little ability. We are now beginning to see that, in spite of his many faults as a poet, he possessed the most vital gift, intense power of expression, and that as a satirist he must be reckoned among our foremost writers.

Percy Bysshe Shelley was as strange a character as Byron, but beyond comparison a greater poet. It is useless to try to compare the two; they belong to different realms of poetry. If it comes to that, Shelley belongs to a different realm of poetry from anyone else. Swinburne called him "The Sun-treader," and no other name fits him so well. His imagination soars to the heavens, and he possessed a lyrical power such as few others have equalled.

Shelley's Skylark

Not many of us can truthfully say we understand Shelley—he is out and away beyond us most of the time, but all of us can recognize and love his divine gift of song. We can perceive, too, the intense, unearthly reach of his imagination. Thus he addresses the skylark:

Hail to thee, blithe spirit!
Bird thou never wert.

He saw not the bird, the ordinary feathered creature; he saw "a cloud of fire," "an unbodied joy," "a star of Heaven." He confesses "What thou art we know not." It is the song which fills him with rapture, enhanced by the glorious invisibility of the bird in the vast shining blue of heaven. He declares:

From rainbow clouds there flow not
Drops so bright to see,
As from thy presence showers a rain of melody.

Is not that an amazing comparison? Most of us are content to compare sound with sound, or sight with sight, but Shelley marvellously blends the two.

The life of such a man could hardly fail to be full of both radiant happiness and most poignant unhappiness. He could hardly expect to be understood by most of his contemporaries, yet he could not but experience in that mind-world of his own a joy which others could not experience. When we remember that he lived in the thrilling days of the French Revolution and the Revolutionary Wars, when all Europe was waking to a new idea of Liberty, we can dimly imagine how intensely he must have lived and suffered.

He was the son of a stolid, unimaginative baronet, who never understood him. Fortunately he was happier in his mother. At Eton, where he went to school, he was called "Mad Shelley," not without reason; among other weird boyish deeds he tried to raise the devil with an electrical appliance. He was expelled from Oxford University because of a pamphlet he wrote, entitled "The Necessity of Atheism." He sent a copy to the heads of the colleges, and they, taking the matter seriously, quite naturally assumed that such an undergraduate was dangerous.

Then he eloped with a pretty girl called Harriet Westbrook, the daughter of a retired hotel-keeper. This scandalized his father, who forbade him the house. The two lived happily together for some time, though they were extremely poor. But they were not really suited to each other, and soon difficulties arose. Harriet's sister persisted in living with them, to Shelley's disgust, and Harriet herself lost all interest in his plans, which were fantastic in the extreme. He believed himself a thorough anarchist and atheist, and was for ever preparing schemes for reforming society, schemes of the wildest and most unworkable character.

In 1814 Harriet left him. Two years later she drowned herself, and he married Mary Godwin, the daughter of a man who shared many of his anarchistic views.

"Prometheus Unbound"

There is no doubt that Mary was a powerful influence for good in his life. It was only after his marriage with her that his marvellous poetical gift developed. Before then he had written some extraordinarily bad verses as a boy, and had published privately one important poem, "Queen Mab," which is by no means among his best. From 1816 onwards to his tragic death in 1822 a succession of noble and beautiful poems proclaimed him one of the most exalted poets in our history. His grandest production was "Prometheus Unbound" (1820), a drama (not intended for the stage) which tells of the revolt of Prometheus against Jupiter, and which is interspersed with the most beautiful and delicate lyrics. The following is but one of many lovely examples:

My soul is an enchanted boat,
Which, like a sleeping swan doth float
Upon the silver waves of thy sweet singing;
And thine doth like an angel sit
Beside a helm conducting it,
Whilst all the winds with melody are ringing.
It seems to float ever, for ever
Upon that many-winding river,
Between mountains, woods, abysses,
A paradise of wildernesses!
Till like one in slumber bound,
Borne to the ocean, I float down, around,
Into a sea profound of ever-spreading sound.

Can you not from those lines steal a glimpse into Shelley's real life? Not the mere ordinary life of eating, drinking, and sleeping, but the glowing dream life, full of visions of unearthly splendour, in which his spirit really lived?

In the same year, 1820, Shelley wrote those marvellous lyrics, "Arethusa," "The Skylark," "The Sensitive Plant," and "The Hymn of Pan," which every schoolboy or girl knows, or ought to know. The "Ode to the West Wind" had been written in the previous autumn. In this poem we get a cry right out of the misery of Shelley's sensitive heart, misery such as, fortunately, we ordinary human beings never know:

If I were a dead leaf thou mightest bear;
  If I were a swift cloud to fly with thee;
A wave to pant beneath thy power, and share

The impulse of thy strength, only less free
  Than thou, O uncontrollable! If even
I were as in my boyhood, and could be

The comrade of thy wanderings over Heaven
  As then, when to outstrip thy skiey speed,
Scarce seemed a vision; I would ne'er have striven

As thus with thee in prayer in my sore need.
  Oh, lift me as a wave, a leaf, a cloud!
I fall upon the thorns of life! I bleed!

A heavy weight of hours has chained and bowed
One too like thee: tameless, and swift, and proud.

If poets have their moments of rapt, ecstatic enjoyment of life, moments such as ordinary folk cannot know, they have also their moments and their hours of terrible depression, in which life seems too cruel to be bearable. Shelley, whose inner vision was keener than that of most poets, knew to the full both the joy and the pain of life. In "Alastor, or the Spirit of Solitude," the first of his great poems, he describes how a poet, deeply impressed by the wonderful beauty of the world, wanders here and there in search of someone with whom he can share his profound enjoyment of the loveliness of all things. The poet is himself, and he tells how, after visiting the "awful ruins of the days of old":

He lingered, poring on memorials
Of the world's youth, through the long burning day
Gazed on those speechless shapes, nor, when the moon
Filled the mysterious hall with floating shades,
Suspended he that task, but ever gazed
And gazed, till meaning on his vacant mind
Flashed like strong inspiration, and he saw
The thrilling secrets of the birth of time.

That is Shelley's secret: he saw, perhaps more clearly than any other man, right into "the thrilling secrets of the birth of time."

Shelley was accidentally drowned on a yachting expedition off the coast of Italy. When his body was recovered, there was found in his pocket a copy of the poems of John Keats. Some years previously the two had met, and Shelley, the elder, had been very kind to Keats. When the latter died in 1821, Shelley lamented his death and the loss to English poetry in "Adonais," one of the noblest and most perfect elegies ever written. There is much more in the poem than just regret for Keats's death; there is all a poet's passionate longing for the good, the beautiful and the true. There are these memorable lines:

The One remains, the many change and pass;
Heaven's light for ever shines, Earth's shadows fly;
Life, like a dome of many-coloured glass,
Stains the white radiance of Eternity,
Until Death tramples it to fragments . . .

Perhaps Shelley found in the occasion an opportunity to ease his soul of some portion of the intense desire for the perfect that oppressed it, but his tributes to his friend are sincere and beautiful:

He is made one with Nature: there is heard
His voice in all her music, from the moan
Of thunder, to the song of night's sweet bird;

. . . . .

He is a portion of the loveliness
Which once he made more lovely . . .

Shelley recognized the genius of Keats. Though no two poets could be less alike, they were united by at least two firm bonds. They both loved beauty with all their souls, and they both possessed a wonderful gift of melody in words.

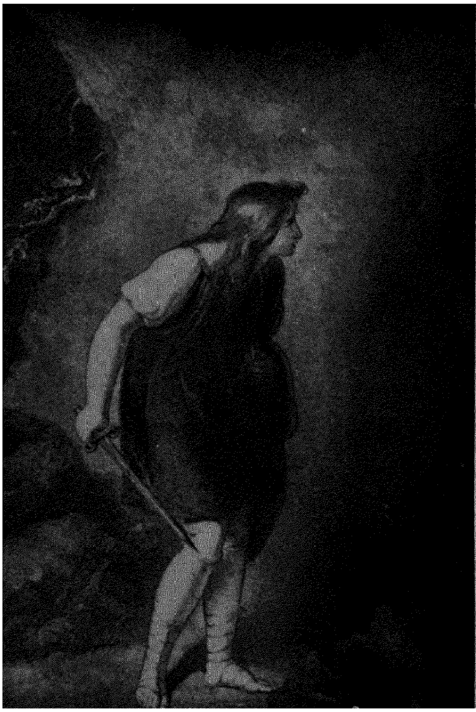
Concerning the life and death of Keats many strange things have been said. Until quite recently there was a firmly-believed tradition that his death was caused by the brutal criticism his poems received, and consequently there grew up an idea of him as a tender, shrinking, sensitive youth. Nothing could be farther from the truth.

He was born in London in 1795, the son of a stable owner. There was nothing in his unromantic boyhood to suggest that he was destined to be a great poet. He went to school at Enfield, and distinguished himself there by his love of fighting; he seems to have been an ordinary, sturdy, jolly boy. In his last year there he read vigorously, and soon he began to write poetry.

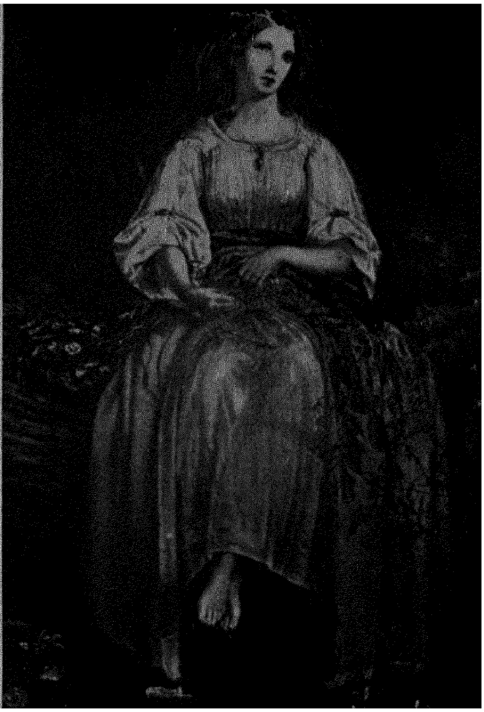
(Continued on page 5233.)

SCENES FROM SHAKESPEARES PLAYS

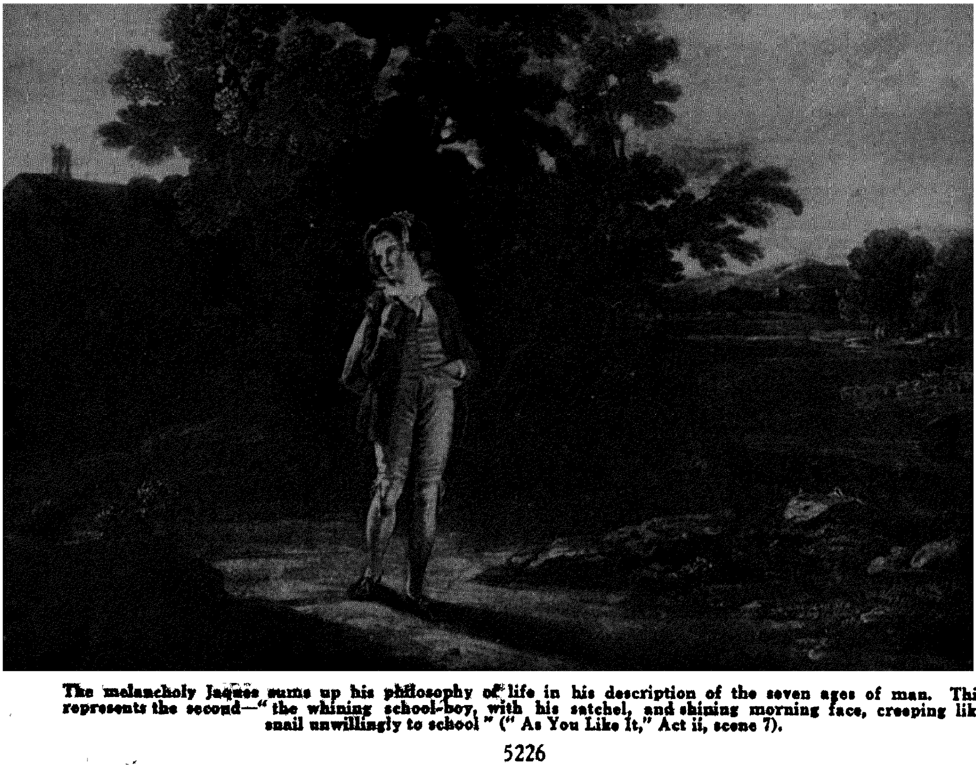
An episode from " The Merry Wives of Windsor " (Act i, scene 1), showing Slender, a foolish, gullible youth in love with Anne Page, being urged by his lady-love and her father to join them at dinner. Page and Slender's uncle, Justice Shallow, are anxious to bring about the marriage.



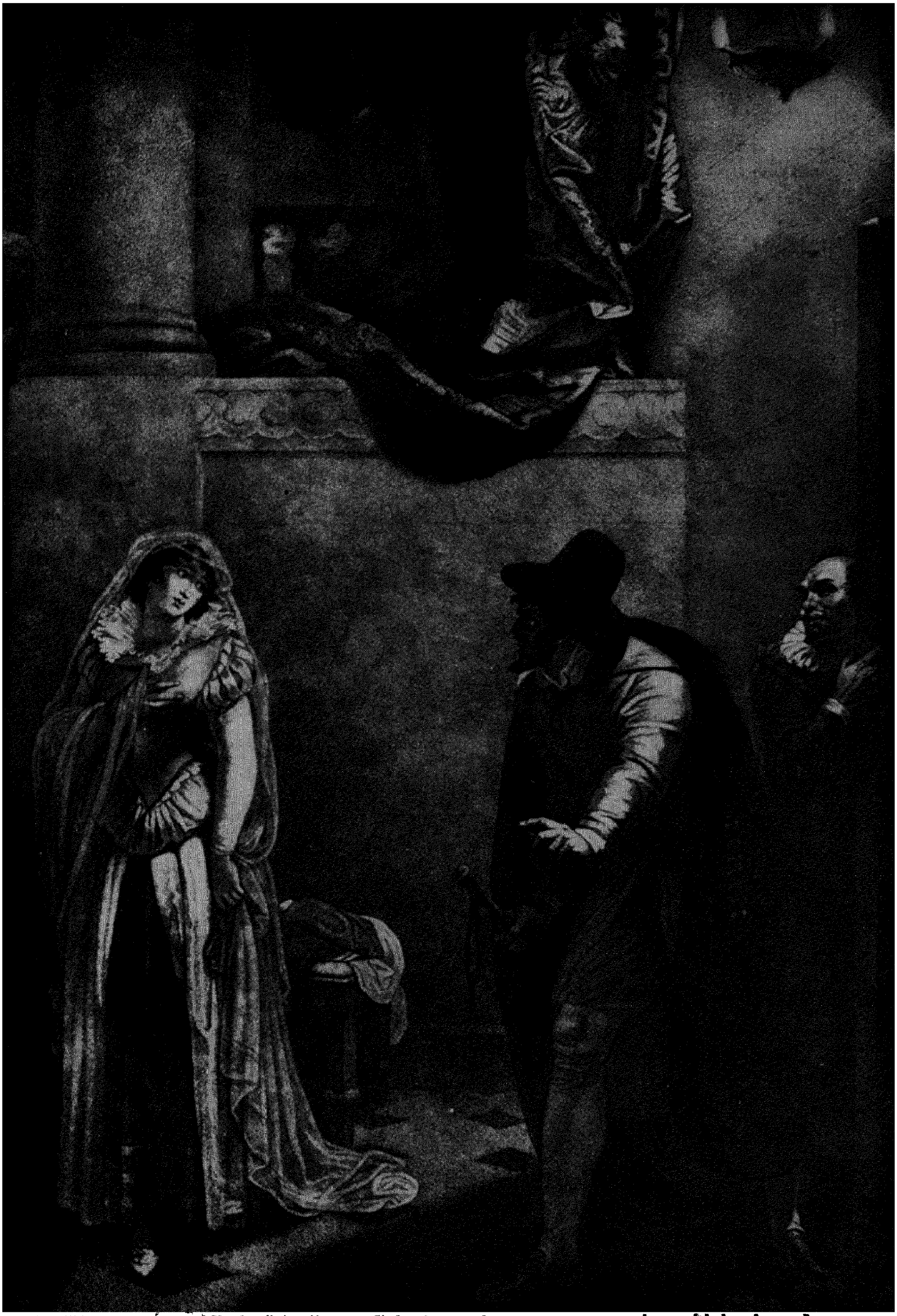
Imogen, daughter of Cymbeline, King of Britain, fleeing from the court in disguise, enters the cave where she finds her long-lost brothers ("Cymbeline," iii, 6).



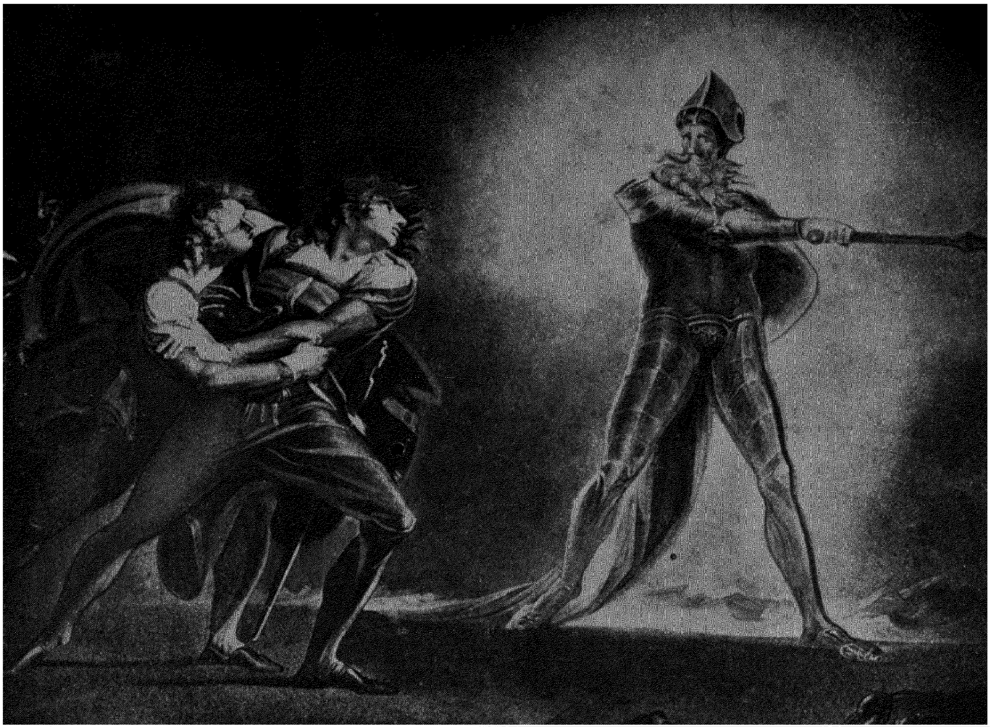
Ophelia, daughter of Polonius, in love with and beloved by Hamlet. Her lover having accidentally killed Polonius, she goes mad and drowns herself.



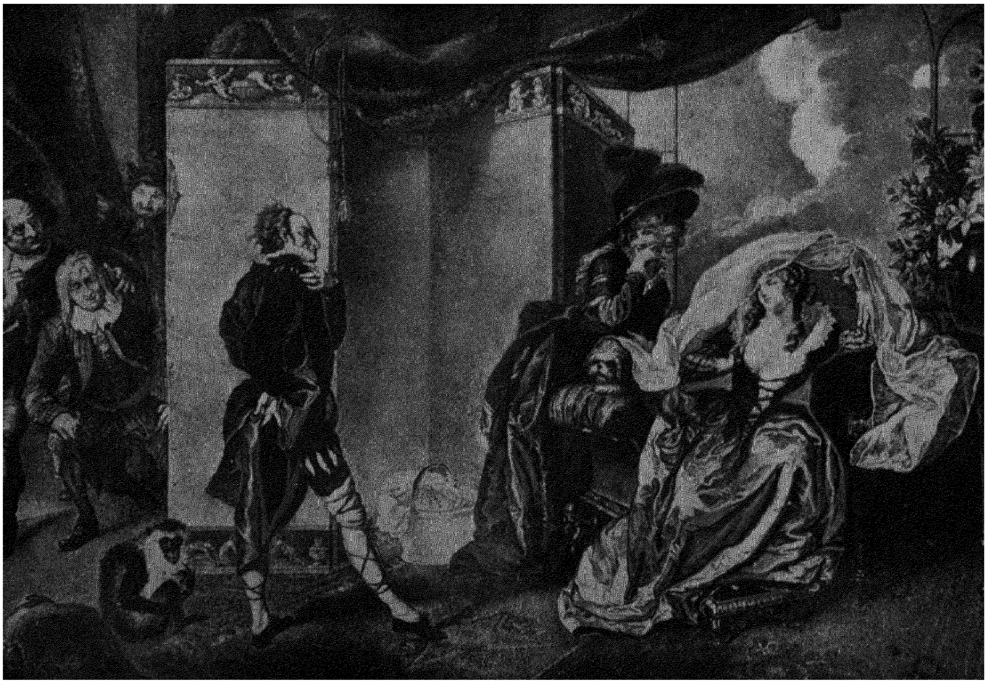
The melancholy Jaques sums up his philosophy of life in his description of the seven ages of man. This represents the second—"the whining school-boy, with his satchel, and shining morning face, creeping like snail unwillingly to school" ("As You Like It," Act ii, scene 7).



Jessica ("The Merchant of Venice," Act ii, scene 5), having made arrangements to elope with her lover, Lorenzo, is bidden by her father, Shylock, the rich Jew, to keep doors and windows shut while he sups with Bassanio, the new master of his old servant, Launcelot Gobbo.



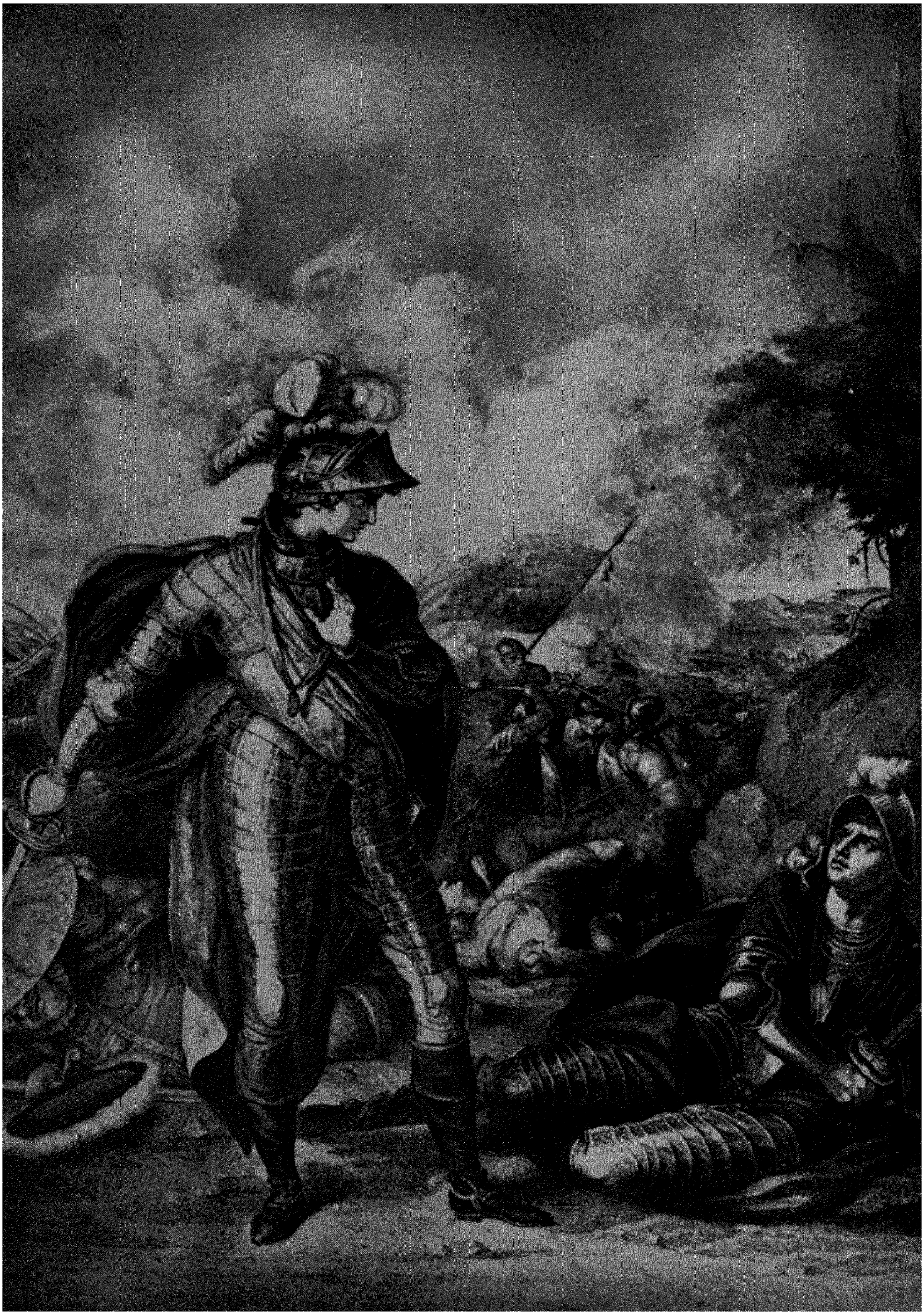
His father's ghost appears to Hamlet before the castle of Elsinore and beckons to him. Horatio, fearing some dreadful consequence, tries to drag his friend back, but Hamlet frees himself and learns from the ghost that his father was poisoned by Claudius (" Hamlet," Act i, scene 4).



Malvolio appears before Olivia smiling and fantastically dressed, in accordance with the terms of a love-letter purporting to come from his mistress, but actually coming from his uncle, Sir Toby Belch, and her woman Maria, who had been offended by the steward's Puritanism (" Twelfth Night," Act iii, scene 4).

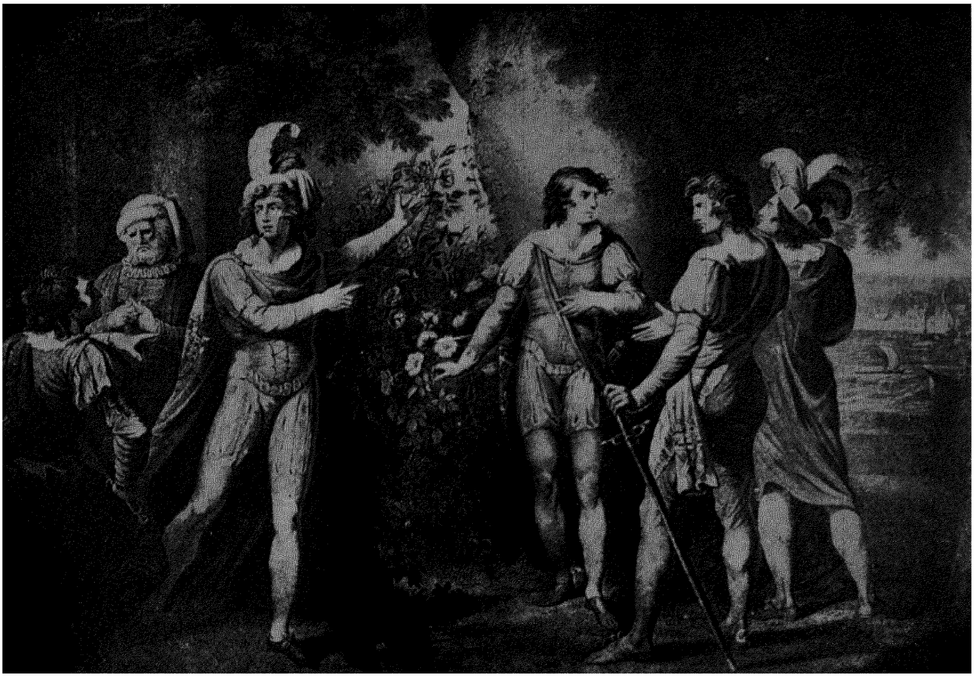
The christening of the Princess Elizabeth. Cranmer, the Archbishop of Canterbury, in a moving speech, pictures to his august audience the future greatness of the future queen. "Many days shall see her, and yet no day without a deed to crown it" ("King Henry the Eighth," Act v, scene 5).

The meeting between Othello and Desdemona near the quay at Cyprus after his victory over the Turks in a sea-fight. Othello, a noble Moor in the military service of Venice and married to Desdemona, has been delayed upon the seas by a violent storm ("Othello," Act ii, scene 1).



Hotspur mortally wounded at the Battle of Shrewsbury by Prince Hal, the future King Henry V (first part of "King Henry IV," Act v, scene 4). The fat knight, Sir John Falstaff, has saved his skin by feigning death, and eventually claims the honour of having killed Hotspur.

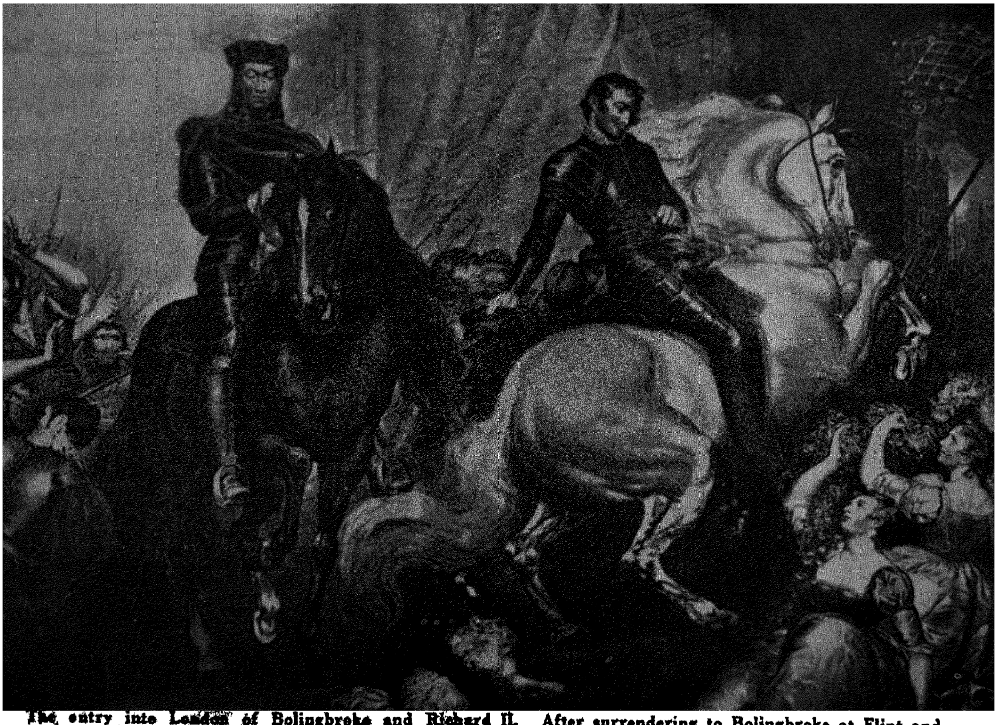
SCENES FROM SHAKESPEARE'S PLAYS



This episode from the first part of "King Henry VI" (Act ii, scene 4) foreshadows the long struggle between the rival houses of York and Lancaster. Plantagenet, afterwards Duke of York, asks those who are on his side to pluck a white rose, Somerset a red.

Volumnia, in the tent of Coriolanus, who, in revenge for slights, had turned against his country and is threatening Rome with a Volscian army, beseeches her son to spare Rome, lest his name should go down "to the ensuing age abhored" (" Coriolanus," Act v. scene 3).

Prospero on his island gives a display of magic before his daughter Miranda and her lover Ferdinand, who turns out to be the son of Alonso, King of Naples ("The Tempest," Act IV, scene 1).



The entry into London of Bolingbroke and Richard II. After surrendering to Bolingbroke at Flint and promising to abdicate, Richard rides to London behind his rival ("King Richard II," Act V, scene 2).

After leaving school, where he had made the friendship of one who was to become a famous Shakespearian scholar, Charles Cowden-Clarke (1787-1877), he was apprenticed to a surgeon. He quarrelled with his employer, and in 1814 the apprenticeship was cancelled. He did not neglect his profession, however, but went to study at Guy's and St. Thomas's hospitals, though all the time he was chiefly interested in poetry. During 1815 he read the translation of Homer by the Elizabethan writer, George Chapman, and the result was that he wrote the following sonnet, the first proof that he was indeed a poet:

Much have I travell'd in the realms of gold,
And many goodly states and kingdoms seen:
Round many western islands have I been
Which bards in fealty to Apollo hold.
Oft of one wide expanse had I been told
That deep-brow'd Homer ruled as his demesne:
Yet did I never breathe its pure serene
Till I heard Chapman speak out loud and bold,
Then felt I like some watcher of the skies
When a new planet swims into his ken;
Or like stout Cortez when with eagle eyes
He star'd at the Pacific—and all his men
Look'd at each other with a mild surmise—
Silent, upon a peak in Darien

Keats's travels, of course, had been in books. he had actually never left London.

His Meeting with Shelley

In 1816 he was introduced to Leigh Hunt, a busy journalist and poet who was to be his friend and adviser during the rest of his short life. In the same year he met Shelley. In 1817 he gave up medicine for literature and published a volume of poems. There is very little in this book to show how good his work was to become. During this year he was in the Isle of Wight working hard at his first long poem, "Endymion," which was published in 1818. It begins with that haunting and much-quoted phrase, "A thing of beauty is a joy for ever."

This was the poem which was so bitterly criticised by the *Quarterly* and *Blackwood's Magazine*. The former said it was impossible to read right through it, and the latter advised the writer to go back to pill-making. No doubt Keats felt these criticisms keenly, but they certainly did not cause his death. His family had a tendency to consumption, and he was already beginning to show signs of the disease. Then he went in June on a walking tour in Scotland, caught cold, and suffered from ulcerated throat. Meanwhile he fell deeply in love with a girl called Fanny Brawne, whose treatment of him caused constant pain and anxiety.

So far he had done nothing remarkable in poetry. "Endymion," full though it is of beautiful passages, deserved something of what the reviewers said about it. Keats is a word painter; he describes in rich, luscious language what he has seen, and in "Endymion" he badly overdid the richness. But in 1819 and 1820 he wrote work which justifies Matthew Arnold's statement that "he is with Shakespeare." There is nothing more remarkable in all the history of our literature than the volume of poetry which this young man produced in about eighteen months. Everyone knows, at least by name, the "Ode to a Nightingale," the "Ode on a Grecian Urn," and the "Ode to Autumn," three poems which represent "the high-water mark of modern English poetry."

A Lover of Nature

There is no difficulty about understanding Keats; the difficulty is to express all that one feels in reading his gorgeous, stately, slow-moving melodious lines. There is no touch of unearthliness about him; he loves the rich, sweet beauty of this world. Read the following verse, and try to imagine yourself in a thick wood on a calm, warm night in June:

I cannot see what flowers are at my feet,
Nor what soft incense hangs upon the boughs,
But, in embalmèd darkness, guess each sweet
Wherewith the seasonable month endows
The grass, the thicket, and the fruit-tree wild;
White hawthorn, and the pastoral eglantine;
Fast fading violets cover'd up in leaves:
  And mid-May's eldest child,
The coming musk-rose, full of dewy wine,
The murmurous haunt of flies on summer eves.

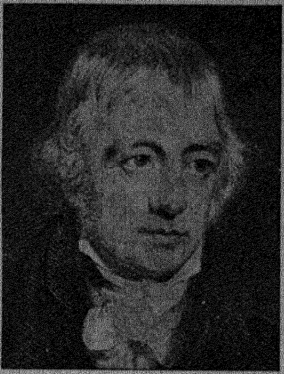
The last line has been said to be the most musical in all poetry.

By his odes alone Keats would rank in the first line of our poets, but he wrote also in this wonderful year the unfinished "Hyperion," an epic of the struggles of Jove against the older gods, Saturn and his fellows; "Lamia," "Isabella," "St. Agnes' Eve"—narrative poems full of beauty—and a tragedy called "Otho the Great," besides shorter poems and sonnets.

His health was failing rapidly; the end came all too soon. In September, 1820, he went to Italy to see what sunshine and warmth could do, but it was of no avail. He died at Rome on February 23, 1821.

LARGE-HEARTED WALTER SCOTT

The Creator of the Historical Novel in English



Sir Walter Scott (1771-1832).

SIR WALTER SCOTT is universally known as the author of the famous "Waverley Novels," and so as the creator of the historical novel in English. He is almost equally well known as the author of a number of brilliantly told tales in verse, the stories of which for the most part centre round that most romantic of all districts in Great Britain, the Border between England and Scotland, the scene of countless feuds and raids, of acts of daring and renown, throughout the Middle Ages and well on into modern times. Yet of all the romances of the Border, that of the life of the chronicler of Border chivalry is itself one of the most interesting and romantic. Not only was Scott one of the master-minds of English literature, he was also one of the largest-hearted and greatest-souled of men.

He was born at Edinburgh in 1771, the son of a lawyer. His father was the first of the line to live in a town, and it was always his son's pride that he was descended from, or connected with, a large number of Border families. From a very early age Walter began to show the true spirit of the Border chieftains. In his day no longer could he go forth and fight or raid his neighbour's land, but to any one who would tell him tales of adventure and romance he would listen entranced for hours.

By the time he was ten he had accumulated a collection of old ballads and stories which filled several volumes. Throughout his boyhood and early manhood he read prodigiously: history, old verse and ballads, early French romances, mediaeval Italian poetry, Scottish family history and genealogy—anything, almost, that was historical and out of the way. But do not imagine that he was a mere bookworm; far from it. In spite of a lame leg and very serious illnesses, he was a leader in sports and pastimes at school, and a jolly companion everywhere.

By no means all his knowledge was gathered from books. Even as a youngster, on every possible occasion he would leave Edinburgh and scour the countryside, eager to pick up from the village folk—ballads, fragments of verse, folk-lore and old stories. As he grew older these rambles grew longer and longer, till they developed into what he called "raids" lasting weeks on end. "During seven successive years," we are told, "Scott made a *raid* into Liddesdale with Mr. Shortreed, sheriff substitute of Roxburghshire, who knew the district well, for his guide; exploring every rivulet to its source, and every ruined peel (castle) from foundation to battlement."

Probably he had no idea at this time that he was preparing himself for a literary career; he was, in fact, studying law and expecting to follow his father's footsteps. "At first," says Mr. Shortreed, "he thought o' little, I dare say, but the queerness and the fun." But, "he was *makin' himsel'* a' the time." Glorious expeditions these must have been. "Eh me!" adds Mr. Shortreed. "Sic an endless fund o' humour and drollery as he then had wi' him! Never ten yards but we were either laughing or roaring or singing. Whenever we stopped, how brawlie he suited himsel' to everybody! He aye did as the lave did; never made himsel' the great man, or took ony airs in the company."

His father did not care much for these wild jaunts, but otherwise he had not greatly to complain of his son, who worked hard at law, was admitted in 1792 a member of the faculty of advocates, and in 1799 was appointed sheriff-depute of Selkirkshire. When we consider with amazement, as we must, the enormous amount of literary work Scott poured out in later years, we have even then to remember that he had in addition quite considerable legal duties.

When Scott first had any definite idea of writing we do not know. There are suggestions that "Waverley" was first attempted, but put aside, when he was very young. But one day he heard repeated two lines of poetry:

Tramp, tramp, across the land they speed;
Splash, splash, across the sea!

and was fired with ambition to write such poetry himself. He began to try, and published one or two minor efforts. Gradually the scheme developed. He was preparing a volume of "Minstrelsy of the Scottish Border," and thought to include in it some work of his own. Two things bothered him . a fit subject and a good metre. The Countess of Dalkeith gave him the former, the legend of the hobgoblins and Gilpin Horner; Sir John Stoddart the latter, by copying for him part of Coleridge's then unpublished poem, "Christabel." The result was, in January, 1805, the publication of "The Lay of the Last Minstrel."

A Wonderful Success

Its success was greater than that of any poem before. Thirty thousand copies were sold, the public delighting in this new, simple verse, this "light-horseman sort of stanza," as the author called it, and in the restless, energetic way the novel and interesting story was told. Prime Ministers read the work; the critics, from the great Jeffrey of the *Edinburgh Review* downwards, praised it. Scott had, in fact, achieved that rarest of all triumphs in literature, set a new fashion and made it immediately popular.

From the moment his success was achieved the troubles of Scott's life, which were ever to pile thicker and thicker upon him, began. They began unobtrusively, as troubles usually do. A friend of his, a printer named James Ballantyne, asked him for a loan. Scott, who had previously lent him money, refused, but offered to put money into his business if he were made a partner. A small matter, but it led directly to that terrible day, some fourteen years later, when the bankruptcy of his publishing firms left him directly responsible for a colossal debt.

This investment postponed also the immediate realization of Scott's dearest dream, which was to live on his own Border domain like a chieftain of old, laird of his estates, respected and loved by friends and tenants alike.

As it was, he threw himself with all his colossal energy into a succession of heavy tasks. In aid of the publishing firm to which he now belonged he edited editions of the works of Dryden and Swift, not to mention other laborious volumes. Meanwhile "Marmion" was being written. When the poem was published in February, 1808, its success was even greater than that of "The Lay of the Last Minstrel." We are told that "The four-beat lines of 'Marmion' took possession of the public like a form of madness . . . people could not help spouting them in solitary places and muttering them as they walked about the streets."

Scott's schemes and projects multiplied. He became more deeply involved in Ballantyne & Company, while to satisfy the clamorous public and his own desire, he wrote swiftly poem after poem. "The Lady of the Lake" appeared in 1810, "The Vision of Don Roderick" in 1811, "Rokeby" in 1812, and "The Bridal of Triermain" in 1813. Immense sums of money poured in as a result of these works, but most of what he made was swallowed up by the needs of the publishing firm, which from the first was mismanaged and far too venturesome. At no time during his life was Scott a good business man, but in 1812 he considered himself rich enough to establish at last his "ancestral home." He bought a property called Abbotsford on the banks of the Tweed, near Melrose, in Roxburgh. The moment he bought it money troubles gathered thick and fast, and in the next year, thanks to the continued failures of Ballantyne and Company's publishing ventures, he was threatened with bankruptcy . but another publishing firm, Constable & Company, came to the rescue.

Financial Difficulties

"For heaven's sake treat me as a man and not as a milch-cow," protested Scott, as demands for more and more money hurried in from his business partners. For a while he was in a bad way. The "light-horseman sort of stanza" had lost its first appeal, and a new star, Byron, was very seriously threatening his popularity. Sales were going down, less money was coming in, yet the claims of Ballantyne and of Abbotsford increased.

Scott was undaunted. Few men could have performed the Herculean labour he was undertaking, yet he solved his problems by undertaking yet another. He turned novelist. He took up the manuscript of "Waverley," begun in earnest shortly after "The Lay of the Last Minstrel," but again laid aside, rapidly completed the story, and it was published in July, 1814, by Constable. Thus did Scott produce the means necessary for the schemes in which he and his partners were involved.

There followed eleven years of unremitting, brilliant and prosperous labour. During this time Scott produced some twenty novels, several considerable poems, and various learned volumes of historical and antiquarian interest. He continued also his work as sheriff and clerk of session. He developed Abbotsford, building additions to the house, buying acre after acre of farm land and plantation, turning the place into a real old-time baronial estate. Here he lived in lavish style, profusely hospitable, his house always full of guests, with whom he walked, talked, rode, fished, and hunted the livelong day. How did he manage it?

The "Great Unknown"

His novel writing was kept a profound secret. "Waverley" was published anonymously, and for years the secret of the "Great Unknown" whose novels delighted so vast a public was well-kept, though there were some who suspected the authorship from the start. Not until 1827 did Scott officially acknowledge that he had written the Waverley novels, though actually his secret had then been no secret for some years.

Few writers have been able to write so quickly as Scott.

It is a wonderful story. There are, it is true, traces of speed in his books, ungrammatical sentences, loosely constructed phrases, slips in style or in facts. His characters are sometimes colourless, his scenes over-dramatic, and his language hackneyed. But when we consider the hold which some of these books still possess, when we remember that "Old Mortality" (1816), "Rob Roy" (1818), "The Heart of Midlothian" (1818), "Ivanhoe" (1819), "Kenilworth" (1821), "The Fortunes of Nigel" (1822), "Quentin Durward" (1823), and "The Talisman" (1825) are but the chief productions of these years, we can but stand agape at the superhuman energy and skill of the man whose novels were literally a spare time employment only.

Towards the end of 1825 mutters of impending disaster began to reach Scott. They were but the forerunners of the great storm which was to sweep away every remnant of his property and to leave him saddled with a load of debt such as few men have ever been called upon to shoulder. Three publishing firms were concerned: Ballantyne, Constable, Hurst and Robinson. Their united failure rendered Scott personally liable for the appalling sum of £130,000.

Scott refused to go bankrupt. He was now a man of fifty-four, who for many years had overworked himself dangerously. At least eight years before he had suffered from severe cramp in the stomach as a result of his labours. To add to his troubles, his wife was lying dangerously ill. Two months later she died.

A Novel written in Two Months

He refused every offer of assistance, and sat down to write as surely man had never written before. He toiled with his pen fourteen hours a day, and wrote "Woodstock" in two months, making £8,000 by it. A voluminous "Life of Napoleon" followed, and the first series of "Tales of a Grandfather." On and on, unceasingly, unfalteringly, he laboured. "The Fair Maid of Perth" appeared in 1828, "Anne of Geierstein" in 1829, in addition to a History of Scotland and some lesser books. He planned a collected edition of his works, and wrote lengthy prefaces for it.

The struggle was too severe even for the robust-hearted Scott. It was, in fact, a match between a man's life and an enormous debt, and the debt won. In 1830 he suffered a paralytic seizure, recovered, and began immediately a new novel, "Count Robert of Paris." Apoplexy attacked him in the same year and his brain almost gave way, but he persisted, and "Castle Dangerous," the last of his books, was ready for the press in the autumn of 1831. The noble giant was beaten to his knees; he could do no more. His mind broke down completely, and he lived out the few months remaining to him under the happy delusions that he had paid off every penny of his liabilities, and that he was once more a free man. Actually he had cleared off about half of his debts.

His doctors finally advised a cruise as the only possible cure, and the British Government offered him the use of a frigate. The offer was accepted, and Scott, who had previously refused a pension and the honour of becoming a member of the Privy Council, sailed to Italy at his country's charge. The voyage was in vain; away from his beloved Scotland he grew restless and homesick, and in July, 1832, he returned to Abbotsford. Two months later he died there, on September 17th.

So ended one of the saddest yet most heroic chapters in our literature.

NOTABLE WRITERS OF HISTORY

Men who Revealed the Lessons of the Past for the Guidance of To-day

Edward Gibbon (1737-1794)

EDWARD GIBBON (1737-1794) is remembered for one book only. But what a book it is! Twenty-three years of patient toil, of exhaustive research, of brilliant and devoted scholarship went to the making of "The Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire," and the result was not unworthy of the labour.

Most histories are quickly out of date, new facts are brought to light, the spade unearths treasures of the past, new opinions as to historical characters and movements are formed, and the history written yesterday has to give place to the one written to-day. We read Hume, Hallam, and Macaulay now because of their purely literary interest, and not to learn our history from them. But Gibbon has never become out of date. Our knowledge of the Roman Empire from 180 A.D. to 1453 is still based on his work. No one has had the industry, the patience, and the enormous range of learning required to perform a second time the colossal task he set himself and triumphantly achieved.

The trivial is not always so unimportant as we are apt to think. The picking up of a book by a boy was the genesis of a literary masterpiece that has been read by five generations.

Gibbon tells us that an accident led him to take an interest in the subject which made him famous. When he was fourteen years of age he paid a visit with his father to a country house in Wiltshire, and one evening while he was wandering about the library he happened upon a volume called "The Continuation of Echard's Roman History." "I was immersed in the passage of the Goths over the Danube," he relates in his "Autobiography," "when the summons of the dinner-bell reluctantly dragged me from my intellectual feast."

The brief passages which he read whetted his mental appetite so much that before he was sixteen he had "exhausted all that could be learned in English of the Arabs and Persians, the Tatars and Turks." He went even farther and made a bold attempt to read books on the subject in French and Latin. The latter is sufficient proof, if additional evidence were required, of the boy's fascination, for at school he had purchased the knowledge of Latin syntax "at the expense of many tears and some blood." For the latter his masters who sought to awaken interest by caning were responsible.

Despite his reading, Gibbon frankly admits that he "arrived at Oxford with a stock of erudition that might have puzzled a doctor, and a degree of ignorance of which a schoolboy would have been ashamed." Later he confessed that "every man who rises above the common level has received two educations: the first from his teachers; the second, more personal and important, from himself." He confided to his Journal that by the end of 1755, after a stay at Lausanne, he had made himself complete master of the French and Latin languages, and had begun to study Greek.

The interest which had aroused his enthusiasm in the Wiltshire library led him to pay a visit to the Eternal City. "It was at Rome," he notes, "on the 15th of October, 1764, as I sat musing amidst the ruins of the Capitol, while the barefooted friars were singing vespers in the temple of Jupiter, that the idea of writing the decline and fall of the city first started to my mind."

It was a task over which any man's heart might have failed. Yet Gibbon's did not. From the moment of the conception of the idea until its completion as a reality twenty years later it was always what chiefly occupied his thoughts. He started work secretly in preparation, hardly daring to think of the hugeness of it all; as he says, he contemplated "from an awful distance" the idea of the book. In spite of other work and of his father's illness and death, he proceeded, reading enormously, making notes, pondering over the design of the structure, persevering steadily even though "at the commencement all was dark and doubtful."

Seven years passed before the actual writing began. Then the difficulties redoubled. A subject so imperial, Gibbon considered, must be treated in adequate language, so he set before himself the ideal of a style that should equal the magnificence of his theme. He wrote, re-wrote, and revised, with the result that "The decline and Fall of the Roman Empire" is told in language that is magnificent and stately, brilliant and brooding, life-like in its relations to its every topic. He himself says :—

> The style of an author should be the image of his mind, but the choice and command of language is the fruit of exercise. Many experiments were made before I could hit the middle tone between a dull chronicle and a rhetorical declamation ; three times did I compose the first chapter, and twice the second and third, before I was tolerably satisfied with their effect. In the remainder of the way I advanced with a more equal and easy pace ; but the fifteenth and sixteenth chapters have been reduced, by three successive revisals, from a large volume to their present size ; and they might still be compressed, without loss of facts or sentiments.

One thousand copies of the first quarto volume were printed, and two other editions were called for on its publication in 1776.

The fifteenth and sixteenth chapters of this volume raised an uproar. They dealt with the early Christians, and were taken by many people as a direct attack upon Christianity. A host of pamphlets and books was published attacking Gibbon. He replied in a "Vindication" which was so effective and overwhelming that, as one writer said, "this single discharge from the ponderous artillery of learning and sarcasm laid prostrate the whole disorderly squadron" of his critics.

Retirement to Switzerland

The second and third volumes, which the author thought "more prolix and less entertaining than the first," appeared in 1781, and shortly afterwards Gibbon, who had been a member of Parliament for several years, retired from public life and from England, and settled at Lausanne, in Switzerland, to finish his great work in peace and quiet. He had spent most of his young manhood on the Continent, so it was to him like returning home. There, on the banks of the beautiful Lake Leman, his mighty task drew to its end :—

> It was on the day, or rather night, of the 27th of June, 1787, between the hours of eleven and twelve, that I wrote the last lines of the last page in a summer-house in my garden. After laying down my pen I took several turns in a *berceau*, or covered walk, of acacias, which commands a prospect of the country, the lake, and the mountains. The air was temperate, the sky was serene, the silver orb of the moon was reflected from the waters, and all nature was silent. I will not dissemble the first emotions of joy on the recovery of my freedom, and, perhaps the establishment of my fame. But my pride was soon humbled, and a sober melancholy was spread over my mind by the idea that I had taken an everlasting leave of an old and agreeable companion, and that whatsoever might be the future fate of my "History," the life of the historian must be shorter and precarious.

Tacitus, the Roman historian, said that meditation and toil were the passports to literary immortality. Gibbon possessed both qualities, but they alone would not have secured his entry into the land of the immortals. He was the apex of the pyramid of historical method erected by a trinity of workers—David Hume, William Robertson, and himself—who sought to reconstruct yesterday in a scientific way by the careful sifting of such evidence as was then available.

Many a battle royal has been fought over the vexed question whether the writer of history should be an artist as well as an historian, or should merely confine his attention to the recording of events and facts without presenting them in the attractive way of the literary stylist. Had Gibbon not been an artist it is safe to say that his work would have been forgotten long since. It would have encumbered the shelves of a few libraries, as dead as the dust gathered on its pages.

The Influence of Voltaire

Influenced by Voltaire (1694-1778), who hated official Christianity because he believed that it fettered reason and the right to think, it is perhaps not surprising that Gibbon was biased and shallow in his treatment of the part which the religion of Jesus had played in the decay of the mighty Roman Empire. Fifty years after the publication of the last volume, a writer in the *Quarterly Review* prefaced an article on Milman's edition of Gibbon with the words, "It was an evil hour for the best interests of mankind when Gibbon undertook to write the history of 'The Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire,'" which in a sentence or two later he stigmatized as "poison . . . without any label on the wrapper." Yet it was none other than Cardinal Newman who avowed, "It is melancholy to say it, but the chief, perhaps the only, English writer who has any claim to be considered an ecclesiastical historian, is Gibbon"

The main limitation of Gibbon's genius was that, to quote Professor G. M. Trevelyan, "he did not perceive that the thoughts of men, as well as the framework of society, differ from age to age. The long centuries of diverse human experience which he chronicled with such passionless equanimity look all much the same in the cold, classical light of his reason."

This negative quality did not prevent him from making a definite attempt to show the relationship of events instead of regarding affairs as merely individual happenings unconnected with others and remote as the North is from the South. Gibbon sought to draw lessons from the past for the use of the present and the future. He showed the continuity of the human story. If Gibbon held that history is "little more than the register of the crimes, follies, and misfortunes of mankind"—a much quoted sentence—he at least sought to make it of practical worth.

His Considered Judgment

"The savage nations of the globe," he writes, "are the common enemies of civilized society; and we may inquire with anxious curiosity whether Europe is still threatened (1780) with a repetition of those calamities which formerly oppressed the arms and institutions of Rome. Perhaps the same reflections will illustrate the fall of that mighty empire and explain the probable causes of our actual security." His considered judgment was that: "Since the first discovery of the arts, war, commerce, and religious zeal have diffused, among the savages of the Old and New World, those inestimable gifts, they have been successively propagated; they can never be lost. We may therefore acquiesce in the pleasing conclusion that every age of the world has increased, and still increases, the real wealth, the happiness, the knowledge, and perhaps the virtue of the human race." This is anything but a pessimistic conclusion, which even the French Revolution, the Napoleonic Wars, and the titanic World Conflict of 1914-18 have failed to negative.

If some of Gibbon's early chapters have been superseded to some extent by the research of more modern investigators, and later knowledge of the Byzantine Empire has corrected his account of this phase of the story, it must not be forgotten that materials are now available which were unknown when Gibbon wrote, and the magnificent unity of his conception has never been questioned. It was still possible for Professor J. B. Bury, as editor of Gibbon, to say in 1914 that the author of "The Decline and Fall" "ranks with Thucydides and Tacitus, and is perhaps the clearest example that brilliancy of style and accuracy of statement are perfectly compatible in an historian."

It is not given to many authors to have their name on the title pages of two books that are assured of immortality. Reference has been made to Gibbon's "Autobiography," a precious fragment, which reveals much of the man and his methods, though not all that we should like to know. It is one of the great personal revelations of all time, devoid of gossip about contemporaries, but a straightforward record that is supremely individual. To the would-be writer it is particularly valuable because it reveals the author's own method of cultivating style.

Egotist he may have been, but Gibbon was a dutiful son and a loyal friend, who could write of his aunt that "without her maternal vigilance I should either have been in my grave or imperfectly lived, a crooked, ricketty monster, a burthen to myself and others." He surrendered much in life that he might span thirteen centuries for others, though his own years when he died numbered only fifty-seven.

The Art of the Historian

Throughout all the ages men have taken the keenest interest in the doings of their fellows, and have recorded those doings for the delight and instruction of others. It is only during the last one hundred and fifty years, however, that history has been regarded as a science, and its writing as an art. Nowadays an historian takes immense care to see that all his facts are correct, and he endeavours to assess them at their proper value. He selects the important from the unimportant, and appreciating that the mind cannot adequately follow vast masses of detail, eliminates the trivial in order that vital points may be dealt with. Moreover, he tries to grasp the meaning of the facts, to show the causes of great wars, revolutions, renaissances, and the effects these have had upon the life of mankind.

Two Frenchmen, Montesquieu (1689-1755) and Voltaire (1694-1788), were the pioneers who taught that the historian must not only relate but explain. Gibbon learnt much from them, but earlier still David Hume (1711-76) had, in part at least, profited by their teaching. His "History of England," published between 1754 and 1761, "was the first attempt in English at a really systematic and scientific history." William Robertson (1721-93), another Scotsman and a friend of Hume's, took infinitely more care over his facts, and, as far as he could, proved them accurate before he used them. Robertson was a diligent and enthusiastic historian who loved his work. His volumes include a "History of Scotland" (1759), a "History of the reign of Charles V" (1769), and a "History of the Discovery and Colonisation of America" (1777).

Two Valuable Lessons

In 1811, a German, Barthold Georg Niebuhr (1776-1831), published a Roman history which taught historians two exceedingly valuable lessons, namely, to judge accurately the value of the writings of people living in the period they were examining, and to enter into the thoughts and feelings of the people whose story they were telling. He thus made the writing of history at once more scientific and more human.

William Mitford (1744-1827) spent twenty-six years over a history of Greece, the chief value of which was that it inspired two far better ones. These were written by Connop Thirlwall (1797-1875) and George Grote (1794-1871). Strangely different fates have befallen these works; Thirlwall's is almost forgotten, while Grote's is still popular. Yet Thirlwall's is in many respects the greater work.

Thomas Arnold (1795-1842), the famous headmaster of Rugby who figures in "Tom Brown's Schooldays," wrote an unfinished history of Rome (1838-43) and some "Introductory Lectures on Modern History" (1842).

Two men, Henry Hallam (1777-1859) and Thomas Babington Macaulay (1800-59), may be justly regarded as pioneers of the modern history school in England. They were quite dissimilar. Hallam wrote like a judge summing up the evidence in a case he is trying. Macaulay, who declared Hallam's "Constitutional History of England from the Accession of Henry VII to the death of George II" (1827) to be "the most impartial book ever written," wrote like a witness desperately anxious to prove his side in the right. His "History of England from the Accession of James II" (1849-61) had one aim in view: to glorify William III and the Whig party.

Macaulay is known to everybody, Hallam to but a few. Partly, of course, this is due to the fact that Macaulay wrote also "The Lays of Ancient Rome" (1842), which are read by every schoolboy and girl, and also a series of brilliant Essays (1843) for the *Edinburgh Review*. But, with all its faults, his "History" is still regarded as a brilliant performance.

James Anthony Froude (1818-94) also set out deliberately to prove his case. In his "History of England from the fall of Wolsey to the Defeat of the Armada" (1856-70), his whole heart is in proving that the English Protestants, especially Henry VIII, were right, and the Roman Catholics wrong.

One of his chief critics was Edward Augustus Freeman (1823-92), a prodigious worker who made his reputation by minute accuracy and a colossal display of knowledge. Freeman was as solid as Froude was brilliant. as a writer he cannot be compared with the latter, but his "History of the Norman Conquest" (1867-79), in five volumes, to which later (1882) he added two further volumes on "The Reign of William Rufus," must still be read by all students of this most important event in English history.

Most lovable, most human of all historians is John Richard Green (1837-83). Beset by illness, he laboured for five years with an energy few healthy folk would have expended to produce a history of the English people. The loving and untiring care he gave to his "Short History of the English People" resulted in what is held by many to be the most readable and enjoyable of all history books.

Other Notable Historians

Many other notable historians figure in the calendar of the nineteenth century. Alexander Kinglake (1809-91), whose beautiful and brilliant book of travel, "Eothen" (1844), is still read, wrote a "History of the Crimean War" (1863-87). W. H. Prescott (1796-1859), an American, devoted himself to a study of Spanish and Spanish-American history, and his "Ferdinand and Isabella" (1836), "The Conquest of Mexico" (1843), and "The Conquest of Peru" (1847) are written in a clear, popular style. William Stubbs (1825-1901), bishop of Oxford, Samuel R. Gardiner (1829-1902), Mandell Creighton (1843-1901), bishop of London, Viscount Bryce (1838-1922), and Cardinal Gasquet (1846-1929) are historians whose work is marked by scholarly ability and intensive knowledge.

THE VICTORIAN NOVELISTS

The Genius of Dickens, Thackeray, Meredith, and Hardy

Charles Dickens (1812-70).

NO English novelist is more universally loved than Charles Dickens. Critics have tried to decry him; they have said that he could not write, that his characters are not true to life, that his plots are poorly constructed, that he is too sentimental, that the England he wrote about never existed, and a host of other disagreeable things. True or otherwise, the all-important fact is that we still go on reading, and enjoying, and laughing over, even crying over, the immortal "Pickwick Papers," "A Christmas Carol," "David Copperfield," "Oliver Twist," "A Tale of Two Cities." and "The Old Curiosity Shop." Why?

One reason is that he is the apostle of Christmas. He is the patron saint of roast turkey and plum pudding, crackers and nuts, carol singing and goodwill. He taught people to observe Yuletide in the right and proper way. Who has not read how the stony-hearted Scrooge in "A Christmas Carol" was moved to provide for Bob Cratchit and his family a Christmas dinner that they would remember for the rest of their lives? Who can forget the description of the Cratchits' meal, and how little Tim sang the carol? Who has not roared with laughter over Mr. Pickwick's game of blind man's buff on Christmas Day?

M. André Maurois tells us that on one occasion he was in a London music-hall when an entertainer who called himself a "Dickens impersonator" appeared on the stage and invited the audience to choose their favourite characters. At once people from all parts of the hall began to shout, "Mr. Pickwick! Sam Weller! Little Nell! Mrs. Gamp! Fagin! Pecksniff!" Dickens is the people's writer. Elderly folk still living will tell how, in the days when his novels were being published in serial form, people used to come into the country towns from miles away on the day when the next instalment was due, and queue up at the newsagent's. To thousands of his readers Dickens was more than a writer; he was their personal friend, who soothed their sorrows, chased away doubts and fears, brought sunshine and pleasant tears into their lives. He wrote his way right into their hearts.

What sort of a man was Dickens? In truth, a strange bundle of contradictions. Charming in manner, kind, overflowing with kindness, generous and tender-hearted, yet irritable, impatient, obstinate, and imperious. As he wrote he would burst into fits of laughter at what he was committing to paper, yet he could complain that a book which was delighting all England was not bringing in enough money.

The man who wrote as no other man ever wrote of cosy, comfortable, happy firesides, of quiet, sociable privacy when the blinds were drawn and the troublesome, bothering outer world was shut out, loved nothing better than to be in the stir and excitement of great gatherings. He revelled in popularity . a crowded meeting rapturously applauding him as he read about the characters he had created was heaven to him.

He knew little of the joy of home life; he and his wife were unhappy together, and after twenty years together they decided to part. One characteristic above all others made him what he was, and that was his restless, untiring energy. He was a raging torrent of energy, for ever pouring out in impetuous flood. He worked himself to death, and he left behind him a volume of writing that only colossal industry and unbounded creative activity could have produced.

Just think for a moment of that numberless host of famous Dickens characters. Think of Oliver Twist, Fagin, Bill Sikes and the Artful Dodger, of David Copperfield, Uriah Heep, and Mr. Micawber, of Mr. Pickwick, Mr. Wardle, Sam Weller (father and son), Mrs. Gamp, Little Nell, Little Dorrit, Sydney Carton, Barnaby Rudge, Pecksniff, Harold Skimpole, Scrooge, Bob Cratchit, the Fat Boy, Mrs. Bardell, Captain Cuttle, Susan Nipper, Major Bagstock—the names pour out, helter-skelter, and yet we have only just begun. Dickens simply could not help creating people. To the end of his life—and he was writing until the day before his death—there was no halt in the breathless succession of brilliant creations.

Are they true to life? No, but do we not wish they were! And do we not feel that they are! Mr. Pickwick in real life would be impossible, Sam Weller is too funny to be true, but they, and scores of others of Dickens's people are more real to us than many of the folk we meet every day. They fit so exactly into the setting the author provides for them; and here the author really is true to life. Dickens was gifted with an uncanny power of observation; he absorbed the details of every place he lived in or visited. He knew London as few men have known it, but to explain his knowledge of the city, and certain particular aspects of its life, it is necessary to understand something of his childhood and early manhood.

The Birthplace of Dickens

His father, a clerk in the Navy pay office, was a thriftless, easy-going man, never able to live on his income. Charles, the second of eight children, was born at Portsea in 1812; when he was nearly three the family moved to London, stayed there about three years. and then moved to Chatham. Till he was nine Charles's boyhood was no doubt quite happy. He learnt to read early, and, finding a small store of books in the attic, devoured "Roderick Random," "Peregrine Pickle," "Humphrey Clinker," "Tom Jones," "The Vicar of Wakefield," "Don Quixote," "Gil Blas" (the masterpiece of the French novelist, Le Sage), and "Robinson Crusoe." He went to school for two years, but no doubt learnt far more from his books at home and from wandering restlessly and inquisitively round the Chatham dockyards.

Then came tragedy. The family moved to London, and soon after his father, whose debts had grown so large as to be unmanageable, was imprisoned in the Marshalsea, the debtors' prison. Poor little Charles, in whose heart had begun to grow the feeling that he was going to be a distinguished man, was condemned, first to working as a servant about the house, and then to a blacking factory, where he tied, trimmed, and labelled pots of boot blacking many hours a day for six shillings a week.

There was no law then, or for many years afterwards, to compel parents to keep children at school till they were fourteen. During the year in which he drudged in the blacking warehouse Charles learnt all about hunger, and cold, and rough living; then it was that he grew so intimately acquainted with debtors' prisons, pawnshops, and the riffraff and very poor of London. We cannot altogether regret this period of his life, for on the memories of it Dickens built "David Copperfield" and many of the finest scenes in other novels, but we can sincerely pity the poor little sensitive and intelligent youngster who had to endure it.

Fortunately the family position improved, and Charles was sent back to school. After that he was taken into a solicitor's office, and spent his leisure reading hungrily at the British Museum, and learning shorthand in order to become a reporter.

He worked like a slave, and realized his ambitions rapidly. At nineteen he was "one of the most rapid and accurate reporters in London." At twenty-one he began as author on his own account. Like many another would-be writer, one evening "with fear and trembling" he dropped "a paper addressed to the old *Monthly Magazine* into a dark letter-box in a dark office up a dark court in Fleet Street." It was the first of the "Sketches by Boz."

The Drawings of "Phiz"

In 1836 Dickens married, and a few days before the wedding appeared the first part of "The Posthumous Papers of the Pickwick Club." It was the fashion in those days to issue series of humorous pictures accompanied by some sort of a story, and Dickens had been asked, as a rising journalist, to write the words for an artist named Seymour. This man committed suicide soon after, and his place was taken by Hablot K. Browne (1815-82), the "Phiz" whose drawings are almost as well known as Dickens's books themselves.

"Pickwick" did not go too well until part five, when Sam Weller appeared. From that moment the author's fame was certain, and the demand for his work became enormous. He accepted fame as his right, and set himself to satisfy his public. "Oliver Twist" was begun before "Pickwick" was finished, and while "Oliver Twist" was still being read in monthly parts, "Barnaby Rudge," "Nicholas Nickleby" and "Memoirs of Joseph Grimaldi" were on the way. In addition to his writings, Dickens was lecturing, attending banquets, travelling, and writing long and boisterously happy letters to his friends. He wrote more in correspondence than many an author writes all his life in books, yet he found time to edit a magazine and to run amateur theatricals.

"The Old Curiosity Shop" began as a series of short essays, but the public demanded a story, so Dickens gave them one, and what was more, gave them a thoroughly intricate plot. In 1842 he went to the United States, received a welcome such as few Englishmen obtained there, offended his American admirers by his outspoken criticism of them, and came home and offended them still more by writing "Martin Chuzzlewit."

His Favourite Book

"A Christmas Carol" was published in 1843, and "The Chimes" in 1844. In 1846 this busy man was for a short while editor of the London *Daily News*, and in the same year he wrote "Dombey and Son." During these years he was constantly travelling, living now in London, now on the Continent. "David Copperfield" began to appear in monthly parts in 1849.

Of this book Dickens wrote, "Of all my books I like this the best; like many fond parents, I have my favourite child, and his name is David Copperfield." Many lovers of his works agree with him in preferring this story to all others he wrote. It contains much of his own life, and particularly a poignant description of the unhappy years of his childhood. It introduces also Mr. Micawber, Betsey Trotwood, Mrs. Gummidge, Uriah Heep, and the Peggotys. There is something more compelling about "David Copperfield" than about any other of his books.

In 1849 Dickens founded a magazine called *Household Words* and wrote for it "Hard Times." Some two years later he completed "Bleak House," and in 1857 "Little Dorrit." The latter was followed by that grim story "A Tale of Two Cities." Then came the beautiful, delicate romance "Great Expectations," the most charming book he ever wrote. Its successor was "Our Mutual Friend," a tale of the muddy banks of the Thames.

During later years Dickens gave himself more and more to readings of his works. These were excessively fatiguing, for he acted the parts of his characters with all the intensity of which he was capable. In 1867 he undertook a strenuous tour to the United States. In March, 1870, he gave up his readings, his friends having long protested that he was ruining his health by them. He had but three months more to live. During this time he was occupied with writing "The Mystery of Edwin Drood." He never finished it; the mystery has remained a mystery ever since, for he left not a note or a hint as to how the story was to end. Many people have attempted its completion, but none is satisfactory.

Dickens never wrote to please himself, he had no notions about his art or his style; he simply aimed at entertaining his readers. He did that and much more; he set a whole nation laughing and enriched their lives; he made them laugh out of existence social evils which statesmen could not move; he gave poor people a new idea of their dignity, and he left such a picture of lower middle-class life in England as will never be forgotten. With perfect security could he, at his death, forbid his friends to raise any monument to his fame, saying, "I rest my claim to the remembrance of my country on my published works."

William Makepeace Thackeray

Dickens was a popular author at twenty-five; to William Makepeace Thackeray (1811-63) success came much more slowly. Even "Vanity Fair," his masterpiece, was not very popular at first; and he was thirty-six when he wrote it.

Some one has stated that Dickens always believed people to be better than they appeared to be, but Thackeray always believed them to be worse. Quite apart from the fact that he wrote about the upper classes of society, and therefore did not appeal to the great mass of people to whom Dickens was a beloved friend, Thackeray's works were written from a point of view that is rather humiliating to us. As a writer has said, "most of his clever people are rogues, and most of his virtuous folk are fools."

Now we always like to be thought good, and, though most of us will not admit it, we like to be thought clever, and so a writer who assumes that we are either dull or wicked does not win his way easily into our hearts. We can read Thackeray to-day with pleasure; he wrote of bygone times, and we do not feel the sting so deeply, but it is easy to see why recognition of his undoubted ability was slow in arriving. Moreover, he had none of Dickens's superhuman energy or thoroughgoing optimism, and for some years after he was compelled to earn his own living he wrote short, easily produced articles and poems, which brought him in sufficient money but little fame, rather than longer works. Until "Vanity Fair" Thackeray never wrote under his own name: he signed his work C. James Yellowplush or Michael Angelo Titmarsh or Fitz-Boodle or Ikey Solomons.

He has many times been called a cynic: his own idea was that he told the truth. The fact is that he was deeply sensitive: his sensitiveness made him see all the pain and unhappiness in life, and his courageous love of truth forbade him to describe things as better than he thought they were. He did what so many sensitive, kind-hearted men have done: he hid his real feelings, kept his sorrows to himself, and instead of complaining that the world was hard and cruel, laughed at it. In all his writings and in all his talk he exposed the follies and the failings of the world he knew, the world of the fashionable and the well-to-do. His creed may be summed up in his own words :—

> I can't help telling the truth as I view it, and describing what I see. To describe it otherwise than it seems to me would be falsehood in that calling in which it has pleased Heaven to place me; treason to that conscience which says that men are weak, that truth must be told, that faults must be owned, that pardon must be prayed for, and that Love reigns supreme over all.

A Native of Calcutta

Thackeray was born in Calcutta. His father died when he was five, and he was sent to England to be educated. After his preparatory schools he went to Charterhouse, to which in his novels he gave the name "Slaughterhouse," though, later, he was to think more kindly of his old school and to give it the gentler name of "Grey Friars." At school he read everything he could lay his hands on, except what the school authorities wanted him to read. Both at Charterhouse and at Cambridge he was considered rather a lazy fellow, who could draw clever caricatures and write witty, sarcastic verses.

Thackeray inherited a comfortable income, but quickly lost it by gambling and trying to start newspapers. When he found he had to earn a living he turned first to art, and went to study in Paris. He gave that up and tried journalism instead, writing for *Fraser's Magazine*, and being one of the first contributors to *Punch*. "The Yellowplush Papers," "The Great Hoggarty Diamond" and "Catherine" are among Thackeray's earlier work, which was not outstandingly popular. However, he made some reputation with a series called "Jeames's Diary," and increased it with "The Snob Papers," later called "The Book of Snobs." Snobs, according to Thackeray, are people "who meanly admire mean things": such people he hated all his life.

An earlier book, "The Memoirs of Barry Lyndon," the story of a good-natured, good-for-nothing gambler, is well worth reading. In 1846 "Vanity Fair," like most novels of the time, began to appear in instalments. By 1848 it was concluded, and the reputation of William Makepeace Thackeray was made. In the Old Testament, Ecclesiastes mournfully wails "Vanity of vanities, all is vanity"; Thackeray's "Vanity Fair" may be said to be a sermon preached from that text. But it is also an excellent story, the story of one Becky Sharp, a clever little girl who, friendless and looked down upon, determines to secure for herself wealth, position, and fame, and who is by no means particular how she obtains them.

The Courage of Becky Sharp

Her efforts are not entirely successful. She has to put up with a stupid husband, and to learn how to live fashionably and extravagantly on credit, but she achieves most of her ends in a way that speaks worlds for her courage and determination. She is a rogue, but a clever, courageous, charming rogue, and the world has loved her ever since.

In "Pendennis" (1848) we get a good deal of Thackeray's own life, while "Henry Esmond" (1852), a romance of the time of Queen Anne, is considered one of the finest historical novels in the language. We have called "Vanity Fair" his masterpiece, and it is certainly the best known and most read of Thackeray's books, but many critics think "Henry Esmond" a better novel. It was followed by "The Newcomes," which is more kindly in tone than the earlier ones, and contains a delightful character in Colonel Newcome, with whose death the book closes.

In 1860 Thackeray became the first editor of *The Cornhill Magazine*. He held the post for two years, and though the work was not entirely to his taste, he made a great success of the magazine. For it he wrote "Lovel the Widower," "The Adventures of Philip," and a series of delightful essays which were afterwards published in book form as "The Roundabout Papers" Previous to joining *The Cornhill* he had written "The Virginians," a sequel to "Henry Esmond," telling of the adventures of Esmond's grand sons

Thackeray's keen love of poking fun showed itself in the delight he took in writing burlesques. Many girls and boys know his "Legend of the Rhine," a jest at the chivalric romances of the Middle Ages, not so many know his comic "sequel" to Scott's "Ivanhoe" called "Rebecca and Rowena"

Like Dickens he went lecturing both in England and America, but his were really lectures, not dramatic recitals. Two sets of lectures, "The English Humorists" and "The Four Georges," were afterwards published Thackeray died quite suddenly, leaving an express command that no biography should be published.

Fame came even more slowly to George Meredith (1828-1909) than it did to Thackeray. Though he was from the first acclaimed by critics as a master, it was not until 1885, when he published "Diana of the Crossways," that he became really popular with the great reading public. From that time onwards to his death fame showered upon him all its rewards, and he was heralded everywhere as Britain's greatest novelist. Since his death his reputation has suffered severely, but in 1928, the centenary of his birth, critics united once more to praise his high qualities.

Meredith was an athlete in body and in mind. He loved walking: in his earlier days fifteen or twenty miles was nothing to him. "Walking is the best of exercises," he would say. "Chest forward, shoulders back—step out from the hips, for half an hour at least—keep the blood spinning, a man should sweat once every day, then he will have a clear brain." He loved the open air, moorland and wide spaces, fir woods and heather-clad commons, boxing and cricket, and hard mental work. The reader of his books, both poetry and prose, must be prepared for real effort. He gave of his best in his writings, in obscurity as in time of fame, and never allowed himself to swerve from his ideals. As he was a man of great mental ability who simply would not talk the language of ordinary men, his best requires considerable concentration on the part of the reader.

We hear much to-day about the psychological novel, which concerns itself but little with the story it professes to tell, and deals almost entirely with the mental processes of the characters. Meredith was a psychological novelist: in "The Egoist" we have the most superb picture of a man wholly interested in himself that has ever been written. The character of Sir Willoughby Patterne is exposed mercilessly, in every detail. It is a magnificent study but psychological novelists are always more difficult to read than the authors of adventure stories or romances, and Meredith is the most bewildering of this type. He is such a mixture of breeziness and artificiality, he leaps from one mood to another, and he expects all his readers to be as clever as he is. From first to last these characteristics mark his work, and as he grew older his style grew even more puzzling. Yet he could write simply if he chose, as is evident in "The Ordeal of Richard Feverel."

Meredith was born at Portsmouth. Till he was sixteen he was educated in Germany. Intended for the law, at twenty-one he joined the staff of the *Daily News*. For many years he was unknown to the public, but he made a few lasting friendships, with Lord Morley among others. He became the literary adviser to a firm of publishers, and it is interesting to know that the manuscript of Thomas Hardy's first novel passed through his hands. Meredith rejected it, but "was the cause of his writing another and a better one."

All the time he was producing original work, both in poetry and prose. In 1851 appeared his first slender volume of energetic verse, in 1859 "The Ordeal of Richard Feverel," his first important novel. Like all his novels, it has a weak and incredible plot: the characters are studied with great care and insight, and speak a clever, epigrammatical language. Other novels that followed were "Evan Harrington" (1861), "Sandra Belloni" (1864), "Rhoda Fleming" (1865), "Vittoria" (1867), "The Adventures of Harry Richmond" (1870), and "Beauchamp's Career" (1874). In 1879 came his undoubted masterpiece, "The Egoist," in which his style, his characterization and his dramatic power are at their height. In 1885, as already noted, he at last caught the public favour with "Diana of the Crossways."

During his later years Meredith lived at Box Hill, in Surrey, where he had an endless stream of visitors. To them, until old age and infirmity made him tire of callers, he talked in his deep, booming voice that echoed down the drive. Endlessly he talked and laughed: he was stone deaf, he could not hear what others said, but he poured out his ideas to them, carelessly, in a conversational style that was as brilliant and clever and artificial as his writings. Here, in a little chalet he had built, he wrote, often long into the night, slowly and laboriously: he could compose in no other way, because his "ideas flowed with the ink." The Order of Merit, that rare and much prized honour, was conferred upon him by the King, and on his eightieth birthday an address of congratulation was sent to him from the whole English literary world.

Thomas Hardy (1840-1928), like Meredith, lived to be the Grand Old Man of English letters, to receive the homage of all writers of the day as the great master of their art, and also the Order of Merit. He also had to wait long for recognition, to toil through obscurity, to battle against opposition and prejudice. Like the genius of Box Hill, he was both poet and novelist, but he kept the two branches of his work apart. Indeed, he may be said to have had two literary careers.

Thomas Hardy's First Novel

Hardy began as a poet. From 1865, when he was twenty-five years old, and an architect, poems by him were published here and there, but they obtained little recognition, so in 1871 he turned to novel writing. "Desperate Remedies," his first attempt, was rather disappointing, but in the next year came a delicate and delightful picture of village life in Wessex called "Under the Greenwood Tree." Critics began to praise him, but fame was slow in coming. He persisted, and during the next fifteen years produced "A Pair of Blue Eyes" (1873), "Far from the Madding Crowd" (1874), "The Hand of Ethelberta" (1876), "The Return of the Native" (1878), "The Trumpet Major" (1880), "A Laodicean" (1881), "Two on a Tower" (1882), "The Mayor of Casterbridge" (1886) and "The Woodlanders" (1887). Then came the two novels which placed his name among those of the greatest novelists in our language, "Tess of the D'Urbervilles" (1891) and "Jude the Obscure" (1894). He wrote but one more novel, "The Well-Beloved" (1897), and then turned to poetry for the remainder of his life. His poetry is dealt with in a later chapter (see p. 5272.)

All Hardy's novels have their scenes in Wessex, which is south-west England, and particularly Dorsetshire. He was born in the latter county, began his career in it, and returned to it. For many years before his death he lived at Max Gate, near Dorchester, in a house he designed himself. Readers of his novels who know the countryside between Bristol and Southampton can recognize almost every place that is mentioned, although they are disguised under fictitious names. Winchester, for instance, is Wintoncester, Stinsford is Mellstock, and Bere Regis is Kingsbere.

His Stern Philosophy.

Hardy knew this beautiful part of the Motherland through and through, and it may be that in days to come his novels will be valued chiefly for their exquisite descriptive passages and their perfect pictures of English country life in the South-West. People are much concerned to-day with his philosophy, which is stern and oftentimes terrible. To him men and women are but playthings of the omnipotent powers that rule the world. Hence it is that almost all his novels are tragedies, and their general effect upon the reader is one of profound gloom. But in time to come we may set aside his philosophy—as it is, few people accept it entirely—and find continual joy in his marvellous presentation of rural England in Victorian times.

Both of Hardy's greatest novels were bitterly attacked when they were published. "Tess of the D'Urbervilles," the tragic story of a country girl who is betrayed by a rich man, and who, do what she will, cannot escape from her past, and in the end murders the man who has ruined her life, raised a storm of criticism. A yet fiercer storm broke out on the appearance of "Jude the Obscure." This latter is the story of a humble peasant who, fired with imagination and ideals, strives desperately to rise to the heights he knows himself capable of, but ever and always is thrust back again to the level from which he started. Both stories are inexpressibly pathetic. A heavy air of complete hopelessness weighs us down as we read them. At times the tragedy becomes unbearable, and yet we are compelled to go on to the bitter end. The hand of the master forces us forward against our will. Hardy never wrote merely to please, but in his work, sombre though it is, we recognize the touch that is genius.

SIX WOMEN AUTHORS

The Brontës, Elizabeth Gaskell, George Eliot, and Jane Austen

Charlotte Brontë (1816-55).

THE nineteenth century produced a host of novelists. Of four we have made some mention: others will be noted in a later chapter; many must be omitted altogether. But no survey of this century, so rich in writers, could be written without mention of two distinguished women novelists, Charlotte Brontë, and Mary Ann Evans, who wrote under the name of George Eliot.

In 1846 was published a book of poems by "Currer, Ellis and Acton Bell." Behind that simple statement lies a whole world of romance and tragedy. Twenty years previously an Irish clergyman, the Rev. Patrick Brontë, had brought his family of six tiny children to the rectory of Haworth, on the Yorkshire moors. During the years that followed two of the children died as the result of hardships at school, and the only boy grew up to be a dissipated man.

The shadow of poverty ever haunted the rectory, but, although ill health dogged them, the three brave daughters of the parson never faltered in their endeavours to drive it away. They acted as governesses, they taught in schools, they planned a school of their own, and they wrote. It was natural that they should turn to authorship; making stories and poems had been their playtime occupation as children.

For years they had no success. They had started to write long before the Poems were published; and those only got into print because the authors paid the expenses of publication. On the same terms two novels, "The Tenant of Wildfell Hall," by Anne Brontë (Acton Bell), and "Wuthering Heights," by Emily Brontë (Ellis Bell), were shortly afterwards published. Meanwhile "The Professor," Charlotte Brontë's attempt, was still being rejected by publisher after publisher.

At last a publisher refused the book in such kindly and considerate terms that the author took fresh hope. He said, moreover, that he would very carefully consider a work in three volumes. No remark could have been more welcome, for Charlotte had been working desperately hard at another novel, which was almost finished. A month or two later, in August, 1847, she sent to her friendly publisher the manuscript of "Jane Eyre."

In October of the same year it was published. In spite of the fact that the name "Currer Bell" was unknown, that Dickens and Thackeray and Tennyson were commanding the attention of thousands of admiring readers, and that literary critics paid only slight attention to the new writer, "Jane Eyre" was bought and read and grew in popularity week by week. The delighted Charlotte could hardly believe her success was real. She continued to keep her identity secret, while public critics eagerly debated who "Currer Bell" might be, and whether the author was man or woman.

Not before the next year did the publisher of "Jane Eyre" know who his successful author was. Soon after that deep sorrow came to afflict the parsonage once more. Within a year Branwell (the brother who had caused so much anxiety and grief to the family), Emily, and Anne were all dead, and Charlotte was left alone with her aged father. Even while she mourned she began her next book, "Shirley," which was published in 1849, and was enthusiastically received.

In 1853 "Villette," which as a work of art is considered her masterpiece, appeared and was equally popular. Charlotte Brontë became known and loved; but she was not long to enjoy the admiration of her readers, for she died in 1855, after a brief married life of a few months.

Those who wish to know more of the heroism of "Currer Bell" and her brave sisters should read "The Life of Charlotte Brontë," by Elizabeth Cleghorn Gaskell (1810-65). Mrs. Gaskell was herself a novelist of distinction. Her "Cranford" (1853), a series of charming sketches of life in a country town, is in its way as much a classic as "Jane Eyre."

"Jane Eyre" is the story of a poor governess, whose employer, Mr. Rochester, is a man of immense strength and ungoverned temper. His character is improbable, but for all that it is magnificently and powerfully drawn.

"A nom de plume," wrote Mary Ann Evans (1819-80), when her first attempts at fiction were being published. "secures all the advantages without the disagreeables of reputation." Accordingly, she became "George Eliot," and such she has remained ever since.

Time is dealing rather harshly with her reputation, which in her lifetime and for years afterwards was very great. Perhaps it is dealing with it too harshly, for, when all criticism has been made, George Eliot is a writer who can tell a good story, who has in Mrs. Poyser, Dinah Morris, Maggie and Tom Tulliver, Silas Marner and Daniel Deronda—to mention but a few—created characters that will never be forgotten, and who shows a warm, loving, sympathetic knowledge of life and its difficulties.

It was not until 1856 that she began to write fiction. Before that she had been for some time sub-editor of *The Westminster Review*, and in that post had written a large number of critical and literary articles. While she was sub-editing she was introduced to George Henry Lewes, himself a writer, and soon to become famous as the author of the best life of Goethe in the English language Lewes, who from henceforth was to be her lifelong friend and companion, urged her to write a novel. Under his guidance, and encouraged by his unfailing sympathy and encouragement, she wrote "The Sad Fortunes of the Rev. Amos Barton." The story was published in *Blackwood's Magazine*, and was followed by "Mr. Gilfil's Love Story" and "Janet's Repentance." These three form the "Scenes from Clerical Life," her first book.

The characters in "Scenes from Clerical Life" George Eliot describes as "these commonplace people." It was with such folk that she was to deal in almost all of her novels.

Many of George Eliot's friends, including Charles Dickens, gave high praise to "Scenes from Clerical Life," but on the whole the stories were not taken much notice of. Directly they were completed, however, their author set to work on "Adam Bede." This story of English country life in the Midlands had a wonderful success, and with its publication in 1859 George Eliot was recognized as being in the front rank of novelists.

Next year came "The Mill on the Floss," the beautiful but tragic story of Maggie and Tom Tulliver. The critics were not too kind to this book, and George Eliot, who was very sensitive to adverse criticism, felt the disappointment keenly. In 1861 she published what many people considered her best book, "Silas Marner," the story of a weaver who lived hermit-like apart from all men, and who found peace for his brooding soul in caring for a little girl he had found one day in his hut.

Next, George Eliot turned to history for a plot, and toiled two years over "Romola" (1863), a tale of the Italian Renaissance. She said of this book that she began it a young woman and finished it an old one. The work is interesting and powerful, but not George Eliot at her best. Nor is "Felix Holt" (1866), a grim tale of the Reform Bill of 1832.

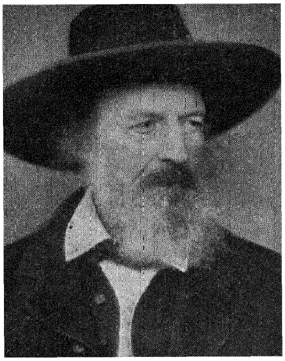
Two years elapsed before George Eliot published "The Spanish Gypsy." Then came "Middlemarch," a wiser, more thoughtful, more profound book than any of the previous ones, and yet not so satisfactory. There is a joy in reading a book which convinces you that the author loved writing it, but of that you are not convinced in "Middlemarch." This quality is also lacking in "Daniel Deronda" (1876), the story of a Jew who was fired with the idea of establishing his race once more in Palestine. Yet both are great books, and the latter has a particular claim to remembrance, for it is the first sympathetic account of the Jews in England.

In 1878 George Henry Lewes died, and George Eliot, bereft of her counsellor, helper, and companion, wrote no more. Two years later she married, but only a few months afterwards, at the age of sixty-one, she died in her London house at Cheyne Walk, Chelsea.

Another famous woman novelist, whose work—largely written at the close of the eighteenth century, though published in the nineteenth—has been said to represent "the fine flower of the expiring eighteenth century," is Jane Austen (1775-1817). She concerned herself wholly with the small perplexities of provincial family life. Her perfectly finished, delicately ironical miniatures of middle-class society include "Pride and Prejudice" (1813), "Sense and Sensibility" (1811), "Northanger Abbey" (1818), "Mansfield Park" (1814), "Emma" (1816), and "Persuasion" (1818).

VELVET AND GRANITE

The "linked sweetness" of Tennyson and the deep thought of Browning



Lord Tennyson (1809-92).

WE have mentioned previously the year 1832 as a convenient one to mark the end of the triumphal burst of romantic poetry that we owe to Burns, Wordsworth, Coleridge, Scott, Byron, Shelley, and Keats. Dates, so far as the rise or decline of a particular phase of literature is concerned, are dangerous things. All that we mean is that by about 1832 the poets whom we have mentioned were either dead or writing little, and that others were taking their places.

In particular, three young writers were publishing their first poems. These three, Alfred Tennyson, Robert Browning, and Elizabeth Barrett, were all breaking away from the regular poetic standards of the day, and following boldly in the footsteps of Keats and of "his deplorable friend, Mr. Shelley" One of them, at least, after the usual years of struggling for recognition, was to achieve a popularity such as has scarcely ever been accorded to any other poet, and to retain that popularity for half a century. Alfred Tennyson won and kept popularity because he seemed to his contemporaries to show in his poems all that was best in the great romantic writers whom now they were beginning to appreciate fully. Even though his fame, as is the way of most reputations, has suffered a little since his death in 1892, we still acknowledge Tennyson a master of metre and melody, a poet who combined sound and sense in an exquisite harmony, and who was a painter of gorgeous word pictures.

He is one of the handsomest and most striking figures in our story. Born at Somersby, in Lincolnshire, in 1809, the fourth of the twelve children of a country parson, he went to school at Louth and was generally unhappy there, read much in his father's well-stocked library, where he was more than happy, and then proceeded to Trinity College, Cambridge. There he did nothing remarkable except win the Chancellor's prize with a poem called "Timbuctoo." He did not even get a degree.

He was known among his friends as a poet of promise. At least one of them, the beloved Arthur Henry Hallam, whose early death in 1833 inspired that wonderful elegy, "In Memoriam," recognized in Tennyson the signs of genius.

Alfred and his brother Charles published at Louth in 1827 a small book of poems. In true boyish fashion the two spent the £20 they received on a triumphant holiday at Mablethorpe. In 1830 came "Poems, chiefly Lyrical," and in 1832 another volume which contained "Oenone," "Mariana," "A Dream of Fair Women," and other poems very remarkable for a youth of twenty-one. Some of the reviews were very harsh; they criticized Tennyson for faulty and unmusical lines. The poet took the criticisms to heart; no one hated disapproval more than he, and for ten years he published nothing. He lived at home, sorrowing for Hallam, and slowly polishing his verses until not a fault in metre remained. Sometimes he would read to his friends from "a little red book" poems he had composed, but they were not published until 1842.

In that year, in a two volume edition, appeared what many people still hold to be his finest work. In it were "Locksley Hall," "Ulysses," "Sir Galahad," "Queen Guinevere," "Sir Lancelot," and the ever memorable "Morte d'Arthur." Immediately he was recognized as the leading poet of the day. Fame was succeeded by misfortune. About this time he lost all his money through the failure of a wood-carving company in which he had invested his small capital. Just in the nick of time the Prime Minister, Sir Robert Peel, gave him a pension of £200. This saved him from actual want, but it was another seven years before he was well enough off to marry Miss Emily Sellwood, to whom he had been engaged since 1836.

The year 1850 marked a turning-point in his career. He married, was made Poet Laureate, and published "In Memoriam." This long and beautiful elegy, the result of his meditations during seventeen years, was very nearly lost to us through Tennyson's chronic absent-mindedness. He left the manuscript lying in a cupboard in some lodgings, but fortunately the landlady had not destroyed the " long, ledger-like book " before a friend, Coventry Patmore, came to recover it. Tennyson had in earlier life lost the manuscript of his 1830 poems, and had had to rewrite the whole from memory and odd scraps of paper containing fragments of them.

" In Memoriam " was published anonymously, and at first rather bewildered people. It had not, indeed, been composed as a single poem : it began as an elegy on the death of Hallam, but through the long years Tennyson added to it poems which were the result of thoughts upon many themes, so that it is hardly to be considered as a work with a connected purpose. Its beautiful and simple metre Tennyson long thought he had invented, but Ben Jonson had used it before him. The following is an example :

By night we linger'd on the lawn,
  For underfoot the herb was dry ;
  And genial warmth ; and o'er the sky
The silvery haze of summer drawn.

He had previously published " The Princess " (1847), the story of a ladies' college presided over by a clever but mutinous princess, who in the end happily marries the hero. Women's education was being much discussed at the time, and Tennyson had a knack of producing at the right moment poems on popular subjects. His next effort, however, " Maud and other poems " (1855), was by no means popular. This series of lyrics of love, despair, hatred, and hope tells the story of a man who kills the brother of the woman he loves and is compelled to flee to France.

Two Lifelong Ambitions

Tennyson had two lifelong ambitions, and in 1859 he began to work to realize one. He wanted to write a great epic poem. Milton, you will remember, had considered, but put aside, the idea of an epic on the story of King Arthur and the Knights of the Round Table ; Tennyson took it up, and began to issue a series of " Idylls of the King." He never succeeded in creating an epic poem, but he produced a group of noble poems in beautiful blank verse.

The " Idylls " have been much criticized ; people have said Tennyson's knights are priggish, nineteenth century gentlemen, and that all he has done has been to produce a poorer, weaker version of Malory's " Morte d'Arthur." The poems have faults, like all other human creations, yet it remains a pure pleasure to read of Elaine and Gareth, of Merlin and Vivien, and the magnificent " Passing of Arthur."

Tennyson's other ambition was to succeed as a dramatist. Between 1875 and his death he wrote five or six plays, scarcely any of which had any success. He had an idea of writing a mighty dramatic series on " the making of England," and " Queen Mary " (1875), " Harold " (1876), and " Becket " (1884) remain as results of this idea. Of these " Harold " was produced in London in 1928 for the first time.

The only long poem of his later years was " Enoch Arden " (1864). This tells the romantic story of a fisherman, who has been reported drowned, returning home to find his wife married to another man and very happy. He goes away and disappears for ever.

Reason of His Popularity

Tennyson was not an original or deep thinker. He said in beautiful, melodious words what everyone thought ; that was why he was so popular. From " The Lady of Shalott " of his earlier days to " Crossing the Bar," written when he was eighty, he is the poet of word music. He was deeply read in English poetry, and knew Shakespeare particularly well. The copy of " Cymbeline " which he was reading on the afternoon of his death was buried with him in Westminster Abbey. From his study of English and classical poets he learnt to perfection the art of " linked sweetness long drawn out." For strength, power, ruggedness we must look to Robert Browning, whose life (1812-1889) almost exactly coincided with his.

We can take our other two poets together, for in 1846 Elizabeth Barrett became Elizabeth Barrett Browning, the wife of Robert Browning. The story of their marriage is a romantic one. Miss Barrett was an invalid, and the daughter of a man who objected to either her or her sisters marrying. In 1844 she published a volume of poems called " Lady Geraldine's Courtship," in which she praised highly Robert Browning's work. Few people praised him in those days, and he was naturally delighted. He was encouraged to write to her : they met, became friends, and fell devotedly in love. There was no chance of the stern father allowing the marriage, so the wedding took place secretly. For a week Mrs. Browning remained at home, and then the two fled to Italy, where they lived until her death in 1861. Their married life was radiantly happy, but Mr. Barrett never forgave his daughter, and she never set foot in his house again.

To-day everyone recognizes that Robert Browning is a poet far superior to his wife, but for long after their marriage she was the better known and more popular. He was referred to as "the man who married Elizabeth Barrett," and even as "that unintelligible man who married the poet."

It was his own fault. If a writer wishes to be popular, he must write in simple, straightforward language. This Browning could not, or would not, do. His mind was tremendously powerful; he was full of ideas—they simply tumbled out of him, and were jotted down on paper. He understood his argument (nearly all his poems are arguments), and if other people could not, so much the worse for them.

A Poet at Twelve Years

Browning began to compose poetry before he could use a pen, and at twelve he had written a book of poems which his father wanted to publish. At fourteen he discovered the works of Shelley and Keats, then almost unknown poets recently dead, and from that moment lived in an ecstasy of happiness. He decided to make poetry his life work; his father agreed, although he had a good safe post ready for him in the Bank of England, and the youthful poet-to-be celebrated the consent by reading through Dr. Johnson's Dictionary.

He began by publishing in 1832 "Pauline: A Fragment of a Confession," a poem full of energy and extravagance in Shelley's wilder style; in it he addressed Shelley as the "Sun-treader," and Keats as the "Star." Three years later came "Paracelsus," a far finer poem, difficult to read, it is true, containing the story of the famous mediaeval physician of that name.

It was obvious from "Paracelsus" that the writer was a born dramatist. Macready, the most famous actor of the day, invited Browning to write a play. Browning accordingly wrote "Strafford" (1837), which was fairly successful. He was to write several more later, including "King Victor and King Charles" (1842), "The Return of the Druses" (1843), "A Blot in the 'Scutcheon" (1843), and "Luria" and "A Soul's Tragedy" (1846). But as a playwright Browning did not succeed: he was too interested in searching out the reasons why his characters did such and such a thing, too fond of out-of-the-way subjects, and of moral problems, to please an audience.

In 1840 came "Sordello," the most difficult of his works. It took Browning a long time to live down the reputation for obscurity this poem made for him. His next, "Pippa Passes" (1841), is delightful, and not at all difficult to understand, but people fought shy of the author of "Sordello." "Pippa Passes" tells the story of a little Italian girl who has one day's holiday in the whole year, and determines to spend that day so as to gain all the pleasure from it she can. She imagines herself in turn to be each of the "Four Happiest Ones" of Asolo, her town. So we get the stories of the "Happiest Ones" (who all turn out to be unhappy) and the story of Pippa. It is in this poem that the lovely little song occurs:

> The year's at the spring;
> The day's at the morn;
> Morning's at seven;
> The hill-side's dew-pearled;
> The lark's on the wing;
> The snail's on the thorn;
> God's in His heaven—
> All's right with the world!

This song of Pippa is quite sufficient to prove that Browning could be simple and a delightful writer of lyrics when he chose.

Poems in Pamphlet Form

"Pippa Passes" was the first of a series of poems and plays to be issued in pamphlet form under the title "Bells and Pomegranates." In number three of the series came "The Pied Piper of Hamelin," which Browning wrote for Willy Macready, the son of the famous actor, when he was ill in bed. In 1845 came "Dramatic Romances and Lyrics," containing, among much other fine work, "Oh to be in England now that April's there," and "How they brought the good news from Ghent to Aix." It gave also an explanation of the queer title "Bells and Pomegranates": it meant a "mixture of music with discoursing, sound with sense, poetry with thought."

In 1855 he published a collection of fifty poems under the title of "Men and Women." These poems are full of the happiness of his married life in beautiful Italy, and they made him popular. From that time on he had no rival but Tennyson in the realm of poetry. Here is an exquisite verse from "One Word More," the last poem, in which he dedicated the series to his dearly beloved wife:

I shall never, in the years remaining,
Paint you pictures, no, nor carve you statues,
Make you music that should all express me;
So it seems. I stand on my attainment.
This of verse alone, one life allows me;
Verse and nothing else have I to give you,
Other height in other lives, God willing—
All the gifts from all the heights, your own, Love.

Two years later was published Mrs. Browning's longest poem, "Aurora Leigh." It is curious that, though husband and wife were so devoted to each other and were both poets, they worked quite independently. Mrs. Browning once told a friend that she had written 4,000 lines of "Aurora Leigh," and her husband had not read a single one of them. He did not even know she had written the lovely "Sonnets from the Portuguese" until, some time after they had been married, she shyly gave him the manuscript.

In her day Elizabeth Barrett Browning was regarded as the inspired prophetess. Her reputation has faded considerably; we find her work hurried, careless, too impassioned. Few read "Aurora Leigh" now. The only poems of hers that are held in remembrance are a few of her shorter, quieter ones, and particularly some of the "Sonnets from the Portuguese," in which is told very beautifully the story of her courtship and marriage.

Browning's most amazing achievement was "The Ring and the Book." No one but he would have thought of the subject, or could have written the poem. In 1698 a young wife, Pompilia, was murdered in Italy by her good-for-nothing husband. That is the plot. The story of the murder, the trial, and the condemnation Browning tells nine times over; the nine different people take altogether twelve books to tell their tales. And, most strange, the poem is a success.

In "Asolando," the last poem he ever wrote, which was published on the day of his death, we find this memorable summing-up of his life. It contains all his philosophy:

One who never turned his back but marched breast
forward,
Never dreamed, though right were worsted, wrong
would triumph,
Held we fall to rise, are baffled to fight better,
Sleep to wake.

Little has been said here so far of the history of the nineteenth century. It is a lengthy and intricate tale that would take far too long, but two points may be noted. The introduction of machinery into industry created an entirely new labouring class which presented immense problems not yet solved, while the researches of Charles Darwin and other scientists, who proved that the world was many thousands of centuries older than had ever been dreamed, seemed for a while to overthrow all that Christianity stood for. The nineteenth century, then, is one of mingled hope, and doubt, and fear. The doubt is expressed in the work of Matthew Arnold (1882-88), son of Dr. Arnold, the famous headmaster of Rugby, an inspector of schools, a distinguished literary critic, and a poet who had much in common with both Tennyson and Browning.

"Rugby Chapel" is full of faith, but "Empedocles on Etna," "The Scholar Gipsy," "Thyrsis" and "Dover Beach" express his more usual attitude, that of scholarly resignation.

Arthur Hugh Clough (1819-61), a lesser poet but a greater thinker, is chiefly remembered for his stirring appeal:

Say not the struggle naught availeth
The labour and the wounds are vain

It is one of the most gallant poems in all literature. Clough was a boy at Rugby under Dr. Arnold and a friend of Matthew Arnold, who wrote on his death the beautiful elegy "Thyrsis."

"The Rubaiyat of Omar Khayyam" was, in a sense, the life work of Edward Fitzgerald (1809-83). He wrote it and rewrote it, polished it and perfected it, and it remains one of the few universally read poems in English. Its popularity, if anything, increases, yet no one paid any attention to it for a long time after it was written.

In histories of literature we read about "schools" of literature. By a "school" is meant a group of authors who possess the same ideals, write in similar fashion, are influenced by the same "master" of poetry, of prose, or of drama. Thus all the writers who imitated Pope may be said to be of the school of Pope, while Tennyson may be called of the school of Keats, because he was deeply influenced by him and copied his rich, elaborate phrasing.

It is impossible to avoid using this term in dealing with the group of writers known as the "Pre-Raphaelites," the chief of whom were Dante Gabriel Rossetti and William Morris. They were definitely apart from the others, and as a body their influence, not only on literature, but also on art and crafts, was immense.

It was in 1848 that Dante Gabriel Rossetti (1828-82) founded the Pre-Raphaelite Brotherhood. There were seven members, five of whom were painters and one a sculptor: among the painters were Millais and Holman Hunt. Their aim was " to reach through art the forgotten world of romance—that world of wonder and mystery and spiritual beauty which the old masters (i.e., before Raphael) knew and could have painted "—had they had all the resources of the modern world at their command. Those resources Rossetti and his friends felt they had, and so they set to work to recreate the Middle Ages in nobler, grander form. Their influence is felt to-day in the revival of the ancient crafts of weaving, pottery, stained-glass window making—in all our love for beautiful antiquity.

Poems of Quality

We are concerned here with their literature. Rossetti did not write a great deal. Two small volumes, " Poems " (1870) and " Ballads and Sonnets " (1881), are his contribution. But quantity is not everything, and the quality of these poems is beyond question. Especially in " The Blessèd Damozel " you will find the whole spirit of the Pre-Raphaelite movement.

William Morris (1834-96) was a much more voluminous writer. He was wealthy, and therefore could devote all his time to his interests. Not only literature and art, but education, politics, and social problems engaged his attention. In 1858 he produced " The Defence of Guenevere," poems which no one outside his circle of friends read. In 1867 came " The Life and Death of Jason," and in 1868-70 " The Earthly Paradise," a collection of twenty-four tales drawn from classical and mediaeval sources. In 1891 came " Poems by the Way." He wrote also many long prose tales in a rhythmical, mediaeval style.

Every reader, when he comes across A. C. Swinburne (1837-1909), is enchanted by the swinging, melodious lines, the irresistible rhythm, the fascinating spell of the golden words. Not to-day, however, can we feel the thrill that swept through readers who were young when "Atalanta in Calydon" (1865) and " Poems and Ballads " (1866) were published. " I only know that I tramped moor and moss, heather and bent, murmuring to myself, and even at times chanting aloud to the astonished sheep, passages from the first volume of ' Poems and Ballads ' and from ' Atalanta in Calydon.' " So one writer has confided to the world, and many another still living could make a similar confession.

The publication of " Atalanta in Calydon " was the first step in the great triumphal march of the Pre-Raphaelites. For several years after that date they swept everything before them. Their success was as short-lived as it was complete, and so was Swinburne's, though he still captivates readers who come to him for the first time. He never developed, but continued all his life to pour forth rapturous, melodious bursts of sound, to to be simply a " music-maker."

Another who put melody before all else was Arthur Edward O'Shaughnessy (1844-81), whose ode beginning

> We are the music makers,
>   We are the dreamers of dreams

is so often quoted.

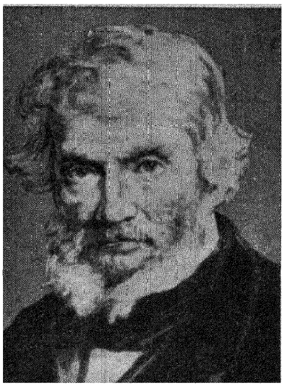
The Old Order Changeth

We are on the threshold of our own day. Both Swinburne and Meredith lived till 1909. Thomas Hardy had secured his position as a poet before they passed away. So had W. B. Yeats, Robert Bridges, W. H. Davies, and many another still with us. There are no dividing lines in literature, yet for ever " the old order changeth, giving place to new," sometimes slowly and almost unnoticed, sometimes swiftly, amid wild enthusiasm and bitter hatred.

Tennyson was of the old order for us: we are to-day far removed from the spirit which inspired his poetry. Browning and Meredith, intellectual poets who valued the matter far more than the manner, are far nearer to us. Pre-Raphaelite literature now seems a dream of the long ago, we have created in the twentieth century new standards and methods. A few remarkable poems, like Rossetti's "The Blessèd Damozel " and " The Hound of Heaven " by Francis Thompson (1859-1907), retain their spell, but for the most part we are pressing on, ever searching for new modes of expression Ours is an age of experiment, of trial, of much glorious achievement and much failure. We must accept both, only thus can literature grow and develop.

FROM CARLYLE TO STEVENSON

The Triumphal March of Prose in the Nineteenth Century



Thomas Carlyle (1795-1881).

THE nineteenth century was an age of literary giants. Some of these giants have in our modern eyes shrunk almost to the size of pygmies. Tennyson, Meredith, Swinburne, George Eliot, Stevenson, even Dickens, have all suffered in reputation; many other writers famous in their day have suffered eclipse, if only temporarily.

Whatever opinion we may form as to the works of Thomas Carlyle (1795-1881) we cannot deny that the story of his life is a grand and inspiring one. There is much in his career to offend, there is much that shows Carlyle in an unfavourable light, and yet, when all has been said, it is the story of a life devoted to great ends. For the man who during many years endured bitter poverty, made worse by illness and physical suffering, rather than swerve or step from the path of his ideals, we can have nothing but profoundest respect.

Carlyle was born at Ecclefechan, in Annandale, the son of a mason. His parents were poor and frugal; in religion they were strict Scottish Calvinists. Their family life was happy, and when the boy did well at Annan Grammar School his father decided to make him a minister. So in 1809 Thomas walked to Edinburgh and entered the university there. Five years later he became a schoolmaster; four years after that he had resigned his post, abandoning also any idea of the ministry.

Then his real struggle began. His family believed in him, but could not help him. He was already suffering agonies from dyspepsia and sleeplessness; he was suffering, too, and perhaps more acutely, from religious doubts. Relief from his spiritual questionings he found at last in the writings of Goethe, the German philosopher; his physical sufferings remained with him all his life, and he met them in a spirit of "indignation and grim-eyed defiance" that does much to explain his reputation for hasty temper.

Carlyle lived after the usual fashion of a struggling author of a hundred years ago; an article here and there, some private tutoring, a good deal of translation. He had made himself a profound German scholar, and he occupied his time translating Goethe's "Wilhelm Meister" and writing a life of Schiller.

He fell in love. The story of his courtship proved his sincerity and his idealism. Miss Welsh at first refused him; then she said she would marry him if he could make enough to live on. Carlyle, deeply though he loved the brilliant, talented girl, refused absolutely to turn to easy and profitable writing. He had a message to deliver to the world, and all his energies, all his abilities, must be concentrated upon that. The marriage was delayed two years. Then Miss Welsh gave in.

She had a little money. After a short residence in Edinburgh they settled at Craigenputtock. Carlyle worked resolutely and indomitably at "Sartor Resartus"; his wife endured as best she could a trying climate, an irritable husband, and the trials of housekeeping on scanty means.

On October 28th, 1830, Carlyle noted in his diary, "Written a strange piece 'On Clothes,' know not what will come of it." This "strange piece," which was refused by all the London magazine editors, was to develop into a strange book, "Sartor Resartus," a philosophy of clothes. "It is a work of genius, dear!" exclaimed his wife when she read it, and with this encouragement, Carlyle set out to London to find a publisher for it. He was unsuccessful. Carlyle returned home defeated and for two years the manuscript remained unpublished. Then *Fraser's Magazine* agreed to publish it as a serial, but would only pay less than ordinary rates for it.

Consolation came from America. English readers hated or were bored by "Sartor Resartus," but an order came from the United States to send a copy of the magazine "so long as there was anything of Carlyle's in it," and in 1835, in Boston, U.S.A., it was first published in book form. Had not this happened, Carlyle might quite likely have given up literature.

As it was, he threw himself with revived energy into his next work, "The French Revolution." He finished the first volume in five months, and then a terrible thing occurred. He sent the manuscript to John Stuart Mill, the famous philosopher, and in his house it was burnt. Carlyle accepted £100 as compensation, and then sat down and rewrote the whole work from memory, after reading novels for a week to get over the shock. Three years of unremitting and persistent toil Carlyle gave to the composition of the work to which he pinned his "desperate hope" that his contemporaries would recognize him as a writer worthy of attention. They did. On the publication of "The French Revolution" they • hailed him not only as a brilliant historian with a daringly original style, but also as a prophet and teacher. For Carlyle was not only a recorder of past events: he showed the lessons that yesterday afforded for to-day and to-morrow.

Both Carlyle and John Ruskin, whose works we are next to discuss, felt from their hearts with Hamlet that "the time is out of joint," and both devoted their lives to trying to remedy the state of affairs. For forty years Carlyle thundered against the follies and wickedness of his age. He thought, as did Ruskin, that Britain was fallen into a shameful money-grubbing and money-spending state, and men's minds were choked with shams and conventions, dishonesty, corruption, and hypocrisy. They could not distinguish truth from falsehood; they had lost all sense of honour and of the dignity of work.

A Study of Cromwell

Carlyle pointed out to them the example of great men in a series of lectures that was published as "Heroes," "Hero Worship," and "The Heroic in History." Then, after a brilliant contrast between twelfth century and nineteenth century life in "Past and Present," he devoted himself for years to a special study of one of his heroes, and in 1845 brought out "Oliver Cromwell's Letters and Speeches." This almost adoring account of the great Puritan is perhaps too enthusiastic, but from the moment of its publication the public had a fairer idea of Cromwell than ever before.

In 1849 Carlyle began a furious attack upon the whole way in which his contemporaries lived. This attack is contained in "Latter-Day Pamphlets" and "The Life of John Sterling," which is the biography of a dear friend of his. Then he turned his attention to Frederick the Great of Prussia, and devoted more than ten years to a great book that should, without untruthfulness, present this monarch as hero. He was not altogether successful; Frederick was not the hero Cromwell was, and in the conflict between love of truth and love of his subject, Carlyle became rather confused. His extraordinary and at times difficult style did not help matters.

Rector of Edinburgh University

In 1865 Edinburgh University chose Carlyle as its Rector, and he delivered there an address which raised him to the height of his popularity. It contained in little all his teaching, all that he had with almost savage and ferocious energy impressed on his readers for thirty years. Get rid of all hypocrisy, all sham, all pretence; seek truth only; that is the substance of his philosophy. A few weeks later his wife, a brave, patient, long-suffering woman who gave up all thoughts of a career of her own to further that of her husband's, and who believed in him when all the world scorned, died suddenly. After that Carlyle wrote little more.

A strange man, this. We can pity Mrs. Carlyle, who had to live with his "biting tongue and crabbed temper." We can pity him, too, tortured by physical suffering and an intense desire to set the world right. This earth can never be a happy place for the man who finds all things wrong, and who is driven by a fury of energy to make all things right. However we may regard his opinions, he never refused to shoulder the burden he found himself loaded with, but struggled under it to the end of his days.

The work of John Ruskin (1819-1900) is as different as possible from that of Thomas Carlyle, yet, as we have said, both had practically the same ideals in view. Carlyle is rugged, granite-like, eccentric, furious, and occasionally almost incoherent in expression; Ruskin, equally sincere, is flowing, poetical, vivid-coloured. The difference in their upbringing will account for much of this.

John Ruskin, a delicate boy and the only child of his parents, was born into a wealthy home, and was trained for greatness almost from the hour of his birth. He could read and write before he was four; every sign of intelligence in him was eagerly cultivated, and he was encouraged to write poetry and to sketch. He had no companions, was taught at home by masters, and was trained most carefully by being brought into contact with influences calculated to develop a love of beauty and art. His parents took him long journeys through beautiful scenery in England and on the Continent, and collected and kept all his early efforts.

In 1837 he went up to Christ Church, Oxford, but a brilliant career was cut short by illness. He had to stay away from the University for a year and a half, which he spent among books and pictures and in journeying to the Alps.

A Long "Letter of five Volumes"

He had, while at Oxford written an article in reply to some criticisms of J. M. W. Turner's paintings. In 1842 he began what was "intended to be a short pamphlet" in defence of Turner, but "as point after point presented itself for demonstration, I found myself compelled to amplify what was at first a letter to the editor of a review, into something very like a treatise on art." In the end "Modern Painters" consisted of five massive volumes, the writing of which took eighteen years (1842-1860).

"What is true greatness in art?" he asked, and arrived at the conclusion that "the greatest picture is that which conveys to the mind of the spectator the greatest number of the greatest ideas." To prove his theory he examined "all the sources of pleasure, or of any other good, to be derived from works of art."

The first volume (published when Ruskin was only twenty-three) was received with almost universal admiration and praise. The book, the *Edinburgh Review* announced, would "work a complete revolution in the world of taste." When the second volume appeared, three years later, people had got accustomed to the newness and strangeness of Ruskin's theory, and so they had time to notice that the author wrote in a vivid and glowing style. "It is usually read for its pretty passages," he complained.

During the years that followed, Ruskin suffered much from ill-health, and had to travel. The immediate results of his journeys on the Continent were two books of architecture, "The Seven Lamps of Architecture" (1849) and "The Stones of Venice" (1851-53). The indirect results were curious and led him directly to the work of the second half of his life. He began to inquire into the lives of the workmen who built the glorious buildings he so admired, and the conditions under which they toiled. His inquiries turned him into an ardent social reformer.

After 1860, when "Modern Painters" was completed, he launched out as a writer on social problems. "Unto this Last" appeared in 1860, in the pages of the *Cornhill Magazine*. Its doctrine of unselfishness and co-operation between man and man was exceedingly unpopular, and the magazine had to stop printing the articles. But Ruskin persisted, and in the year 1862 preached the same doctrine in *Fraser's Magazine*, in essays which were published ten years later as "Munera Pulveris."

All this time he was lecturing busily; nearly all the books of this period of his life—and they are many—are reprints of lectures and series of lectures. They include "Sesame and Lilies" (1865), "The Ethics of the Dust" (1866) and "The Crown of Wild Olive" (1866).

In 1867 he began a series of letters to an admirer of his, Thomas Dixon, a Sunderland workman, in which he discussed all sorts of social, economic and educational problems. These letters, which were published in "Time and Tide by Weare and Tyne" (1872) and "Fors Clavigera" (1871-84), are regarded by many people as his crowning effort. They show his style at its best, and out of them originated a very practical scheme, the Guild of St. George, for mutual help and education and for tackling social problems.

Professor of Fine Art

In 1869 Ruskin had been appointed Professor of Fine Art at Oxford. In his lectures he blended his two loves of art and wholesome living, and discussed, while talking of Greek and Italian painters, the problems of life and character. In 1879 ill-health compelled him to resign his professorship; in 1883 he was called back to the post, but when the university decided to allow vivisection, he resigned once and for all. The rest of his life was spent in the Lake District. In his later days he revised very thoroughly "Modern Painters" and "The Stones of Venice," giving up many of the ideas he had held so firmly in his youth.

Ruskin, like Carlyle, was an enthusiast; he was intensely in earnest about all he took in hand. Whether it was art or social reform about which he was writing or lecturing, he was in deadly earnest. Like Carlyle, too, he had a profound influence upon his times, and that influence was all for good.

Robert Louis Stevenson (1850-1894), or, as he is still affectionately called, "R. L. S.," was neither prophet nor social reformer. He was a writer, a literary artist. From his earliest days he played the "sedulous ape," as he himself described it, to the masters of English style until he had wrought his own into a perfection of grace and harmony.

Glorious Romances

He was himself the most charming of men, and his delightful personality is reflected faithfully in his essays, his poems, and, most of all, in his letters. His reputation, however, will probably rest on none of these, but on his glorious romances, those stories of adventure and excitement that every boy and girl reads, "Treasure Island," "Kidnapped," and "Catriona."

It is right that it should, even though a literature his essays and his letters may be fine, for he brought back into novel writing the pure fresh air of romance. Novelists had become engrossed with writing about real life, often painfully grim and sordid life, with minute accuracy; Stevenson went gaily "over the hills and far away" in search of his plots, and revealed once again to readers the fairyland of romance.

In Stevenson were born two loves, of adventure and of literature. He wanted to write from the time he was six; and he never outgrew his love of adventure. Both his desires were gratified, though the cause was the melancholy one of ill-health. He was a very delicate child, and early developed serious lung trouble. So all thought of the family profession, lighthouse building, had to be given up; it was too strenuous. He turned to law, and was actually called to the Bar, but literature conquered and he never practised as a lawyer.

Ill-health gave him the opportunity for adventure, and he seized his opportunity with both hands. He had to go abroad during the cold months. Instead of remaining stolidly as an invalid in one place, he wandered over the Continent in vagabond fashion, finding adventure wherever he went. The stories of some of these wanderings are told in "An Inland Voyage" (1878) and "Travels with a Donkey" (1879).

For many years he wandered thus, both before and after his marriage in 1880. This in itself provided adventure: the lady to whom he was engaged was living in California, and to get to her, Stevenson crossed the Atlantic as a steerage passenger and America in a train full of emigrants. After his marriage he lived for a time in a mining camp in America, which he described in "The Silverado Squatters."

In spite of illness and constant travelling he accomplished a great deal of writing. Just before a most serious illness in 1884 he published "Treasure Island," which was first called "The Sea Cook," and this made him really popular. His popularity continued and increased with that weird romance, "The Strange Case of Dr. Jekyll and Mr. Hyde." Previously he had published two books of essays, "Virginibus Puerisque" (1881) and "Familiar studies of Men and Books" (1882), and written a collection of fantastic tales called the "New Arabian Nights." A number of delicious little poems appeared in 1885 under the title of "A Child's Garden of Verses."

In 1886 and 1887 he was so ill that he could do little work, and when his father died in the latter year he left England, never to return. He spent some time in the Adirondack Mountains in North America, writing there most of that gallant romance, "The Master of Ballantrae," and that very noble essay "Pulvis et Umbra." Then he gradually moved south and west, till in 1889 he landed in Samoa. From thence he sailed to Sydney, but his health broke down again, and after cruising round the South Seas for nearly a year he returned again to Samoa, which henceforth became his home.

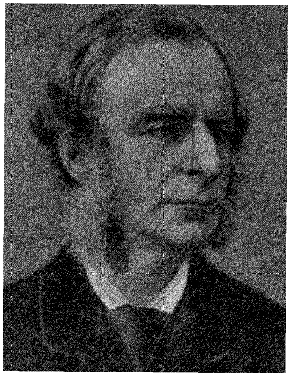
Life in Samoa

He bought some land at Vailima, built himself a big house, and developed a large estate over which he "ruled" in chieftain or kingly style. His servants and labourers loved him, and his life was happy and active. Here were written "Catriona" (1893), which was a sequel to "Kidnapped" (1886), "Island Nights' Entertainments" (1893), and the "Ebb-Tide" (1894), the last-mentioned in collaboration with Mr. Lloyd Osbourne, while other romances were begun.

He died quite suddenly from apoplexy on December 3rd, 1894.

A GALLERY OF STORY-TELLERS

The ever-widening Boundaries of the Modern Novel



Charles Kingsley (1819-75).

YOU will discover, as soon as you read at all deeply in literature's golden story, that the novel has become more and more important during the last two hundred years, until to-day a greater number of this type of book is written than of any other. More and more men and women have come to use the novel as the medium for their ideas, and the definition of a novel has steadily widened until it comprises anything from the wildest of detective or mystery stories to the most serious and complicated sermon.

Two nineteenth century writers who used the novel to effect social reforms were Charles Reade (1814-84) and Charles Kingsley (1819-75). True, the best known works of both have nothing to do with reform of any kind. Reade's "The Cloister and the Hearth" (1861) is an historical romance of the later Middle Ages in Holland and Germany. Kingsley's "Westward Ho!" (1855), containing the gallant adventures of Amyas Leigh on the Spanish Main, his "Hereward the Wake" and his "Hypatia" all have historical plots, and his charmingly told "Heroes" deals with the stories of classical myth, but "Yeast" (1848) and "Alton Locke" (1850) paint in terribly vivid stories the lives of the poorer labourers of the mid-nineteenth century. Kingsley, a vigorous and outspoken clergyman, did great service to the working man by these books. Of his other works, almost everyone knows that delightful little fantasy, "The Water Babies" (1863).

Charles Reade, who began as a playwright and was quite successful in a time when few good plays were written, revealed the cruelties practised in English prisons in "It's never too late to mend" (1856), and in private lunatic asylums in "Hard Cash" (1863). In "Foul Play" (1869) he tells of the wicked habits of shipowners who sent leaky and rotten ships to sea on purpose for them to be shipwrecked, so that insurance money could be claimed.

He always tells a good, straightforward story with plenty of plot, and his books are well worth reading. In order to write his novels he made a huge collection of notes and newspaper cuttings, so that, whatever he was writing about, he could always fill in facts from real life.

Edward Bulwer-Lytton (1803-73), afterwards Lord Lytton, had a tremendous popularity in his day. He wrote very rapidly and could turn his hand to almost any kind of story, but he chiefly fancied himself as a kind of superior, more literary Walter Scott. "The Last Days of Pompeii" (1834), "Rienzi" (1835), and "Harold, the last of the Saxons" (1848) are the best of his historical novels: we do not, however, regard them as being in the same class with Scott's work.

Benjamin Disraeli (1804-81), Lord Beaconsfield, several times Prime Minister of England, found time during the first half of a very busy life to write a large number of novels. Like their author, they are brilliant, witty, and rather over-gorgeous. They deal with fashionable society of the day and the world of politics. The first was "Vivian Grey" (1826), which set every one talking about the clever young author. Among the best of the others are "Contarini Fleming" (1832), "Coningsby" (1844), and "Sybil" (1845).

George Borrow (1803-81) is the apostle of the open air and the open road. When he was quite a youngster he became acquainted with the Romany people, the real gipsies, who have a language and customs of their own, and throughout his life he was their close friend. He shared with them a love of wandering, tramped about the highways and byways of this country, and spent four years in Spain and Morocco as a travelling agent for the British and Foreign Bible Society.

You can read his books either as fact or fiction. They tell the story of his life—with additions. Borrow had a very powerful imagination, and a tale never lost anything in his telling of it. Exactly what is fiction and what is fact in "The Bible in Spain"

(1843), " Lavengro " (1851), " Romany Rye " (1857), and " Wild Wales " (1862), to say nothing of his other books, no one will ever know.

He was a wonderful linguist. It is said that by the time he was thirty he knew eighteen languages, and later in life was master of nearly twice that number. He never underrated his own ability in this respect, and you can read in " Wild Wales " how he, a visitor to the country, constantly set Welsh people right about their own language!

Richard D. Blackmore (1825-1900) and Thomas Hughes (1822-96) are each remembered for a single book, one a romance of the very highest order, and the other a realistic and loving picture of school life in the first half of the nineteenth century. " Lorna Doone " (1869), the story of " girt Jan Ridd " and the beautiful daughter of the Doones, will never be forgotten; its plot is exciting enough, and the reader who cares for more than plot in a story loves the characters and the exquisite descriptions of West Country scenery and farm life. There is no finer picture of life in a great public school than " Tom Brown's Schooldays " (1857). Hughes was a Rugby boy, and a very deep admirer of his old headmaster, Dr. Arnold, who is really the hero of the book.

Samuel Butler (1835-1902) held most unusual and advanced ideas, which frequently got him into trouble. He expressed them freely in " Erewhon " (1872), a kind of modern Utopia (read the title backwards and you will see its meaning), and in " The Way of all Flesh " (1903). The latter book, which criticizes methods of education and ways of bringing up children, is probably one of the finest novels produced in the nineteenth century.

Businesslike Anthony Trollope

Of Anthony Trollope (1815-82) it is said that " he put the writing of books on a level with the practice of any other trade." This businesslike Civil Servant got up early every morning, put his watch on his desk, and wrote so many thousand words each day, timing himself carefully. Altogether he wrote over fifty novels, most of them before he retired in 1867 to devote himself entirely to literature.

It was the fashion until recently to decry Trollope, to say that a man with methodical habits could not write really great books, but we are beginning to realize that, in spite of his " stop-watch " methods, his unvarying regularity, and his fixed habit of regarding novel writing as a trade by which he earned so many pounds, shillings and pence, he really did write some fine stuff. The best of his books are those which tell of the cathedral city of Barchester (Salisbury); perhaps his masterpiece was " Barchester Towers " (1857).

To Wilkie Collins (1824-89) belong two honours: he was the best of the followers of Dickens, and he was the earliest successful writer of detective stories. He specialized in mystery novels. Both " The Woman in White " (1860) and " The Moonstone " (1868) continue to be read.

Tales for Boys and Girls

Mention must also be made of the authors who devoted themselves to writing adventure tales for boys and girls, and whose works have never been equalled since. Probably the reason is that they all wrote about experiences of wild life through which they themselves had passed. R. M. Ballantyne (1825-94), for example, spent six thrilling years on the shores of Hudson Bay in the days when Red Indians really tomahawked the paleface settlers, and when heroic defences of isolated encampments were common. In " The Young Fur Traders " (1856) and other books he has told of North American life in exciting times. Later he turned to other subjects, but he made a point of getting first-hand knowledge. To write one story he spent six weeks in a Cornish tin mine.

G. A. Henty (1832-1902) wrote of war's alarms. He knew all about them: whenever an exciting war was to be found, there was Henty, acting as a special correspondent for some paper or other. The more out-of-the-way the place, the more arduous the campaign, the better Henty was pleased. He saw fighting in Europe, Asia and Africa, and was nearly starved to death in the siege of Paris. Altogether he wrote more than eighty books.

That number, however, seems small compared with the one hundred and thirty which W. H. G. Kingston (1814-80) wrote in thirty years. The sea was his speciality: he had sailed the seas and could write well of adventure afloat, as " Peter the Whaler " (1851) and " The Three Midshipmen " prove.

You would hardly expect that the author of "A Syllabus of Plane Algebraical Geometry" could possibly be the author of "Alice in Wonderland" (1865), "Through the Looking Glass" (1871), and "The Hunting of the Snark" (1876). Yet such is the case. "Lewis Carroll" was in private life Charles Lutwidge Dodgson (1832-98), a learned lecturer on mathematics at Christ Church, Oxford. He loved children, and his love for them produced the most lovable and amusing children's books ever written.

The mighty band of nineteenth century historians is dealt with in another chapter: let us now consider those prose writers who are primarily neither novelists nor historians. Three literary critics of distinction immediately attract our attention: these are Matthew Arnold, whom we have already noticed as a poet, John Addington Symonds (1840-93), and Walter Pater (1839-94).

Arnold wrote much literary criticism, the best of which is to be found in "Essays on Criticism" (1865), and he also wrote largely on theology, politics and education.

Most of Symonds' work was contributed to magazines and reviews, and afterwards collected and published in book form. He was a strong opponent of Ruskin's theories of art, which he disputed in "The Renaissance in Italy" (1875-86).

Walter Pater's individual style is at its best in "Marius the Epicurean" (1885), which happens to be a novel, and he discusses the matter of style in a preface to "Appreciations" (1889). "Studies in the History of the Renaissance" (1873) also gives a good idea of his beautiful and carefully designed word-harmony.

Art for Art's Sake

There was, indeed, a movement in the second half of the nineteenth century towards regarding the manner of the writing as equally important with the matter written about. "Art for art's sake" was the slogan of this movement. Stevenson was much influenced by it, and so too was Oscar Wilde (1856-1900), who wrote poems, novels and plays: among the last-named "Lady Windermere's Fan" (1892) and "The Importance of Being Earnest" (1895) are clever comedies dealing satirically with life in high society.

The nineteenth century was epoch-making in scientific research. Of the great scientists who altered profoundly long-standing ideas as to the origin of life and the history of mankind, at least two, and those two the most important, must be mentioned in any history of literature. Charles Darwin (1809-82), after many years of brilliant and laborious toil, produced in 1859 "The Origin of Species," a book which completely revolutionized science. An earlier book of his, "The Voyage of the Beagle" (1836), describes most interestingly a scientific tour round the world. In 1871 he published "The Descent of Man." As a writer he is never dull, and he arranges his argument in masterly fashion.

Ill-health shadowed Darwin, but he never allowed it to interfere with either his work or his cheerfulness. "It's dogged as does it" was his favourite proverb. Comfortably provided for financially, he was doubly fortunate in a wife who, to use his own words, was "as good as twice refined gold." When, during the arduous labours of composition, he found his sentences becoming involved, he would throw down his pen and exclaim aloud, as though to awaken his faculties, "Now what *do* you want to say?"

An Example of Humility

Darwin was the humblest of men. When seventy learned societies sought to honour themselves by honouring him, he accepted their compliments with gratitude as testimonials to his work rather than to himself. He received the Copley Medal of the Royal Society—the highest reward of the greatest scientific body in the world—and was made a Doctor of Laws by Cambridge. His last written words were these: "As for myself, I believe that I have acted rightly in steadily following and devoting my life to science. I feel no remorse from having committed any great sin, but have often and often regretted that I have not done more direct good to my fellow-creatures."

By a strange coincidence Alfred Russel Wallace (1823-1913) worked out the theory of natural selection, or the struggle for existence, at the same time as Darwin. Their researches were undertaken quite independently. When Wallace sent Darwin an essay on the subject the latter asked the advice of two eminent scientists, who advised that a joint paper should be communicated to the Linnean Society. At first Darwin was inclined to withhold his discoveries in favour of Wallace, but the letter only consented to the suggestion of a joint paper on the understanding that Darwin should complete "The Origin of Species." In honour they preferred one another.

Although Thomas Henry Huxley (1825-95) produced no work equal to "The Origin of Species," his writing is more consciously literary than Darwin's. He lectured a great deal, and many of his lectures were afterwards published in book form. "Lay Sermons and Addresses" (1870) will probably interest the ordinary reader most.

A quiet writer who yet retains the love of a wide circle is Hugh Miller (1302-56). He was a poor man who worked as a stonemason, and afterwards in a bank. As a scientist he is not to be considered beside Darwin and Huxley: what he knew he had taught himself, but he had a passion for geology and wrote of it in "The Old Red Sandstone" (1841) and "The Testimony of the Rocks" (1857). There is much good reading in his books.

A Master of Logic

Neither John Stuart Mill (1806-73) nor Herbert Spencer (1820-1903) aimed at literary fame: they were thinkers and philosophers, students of thought, just as Darwin, Huxley and Alfred Russel Wallace were students of nature. Of Mill's education much might be written: his father trained him almost from his birth to become a master of argument and reasoning. "At eight the boy was deep in Greek, had read great part of Xenophon, Herodotus, and even Plato, and was familiar with most of the current histories of England. At fourteen he was well acquainted with Greek, Latin and English philosophical literature . . ." Needless to say, he suffered all his life as the result of such a forced education, but his father achieved his object: Mill's "System of Logic" (1843) is a most astounding display of clear, hard, close reasoning. Almost equally brilliant and original was the "Principles of Political Economy" (1848).

Herbert Spencer was the friend of Darwin, Huxley, and other leaders of science. To sum up and show the value of the great leap forward on the road of progress which science had made was the task which he set himself, and in 1862 he published "First Principles," which was to be the opening part of a massive work entitled "Synthetic Philosophy." It was impossible that the work should ever be finished, since science always continues to progress Throughout his life he wrote voluminously on all aspects of philosophy.

We have already referred to a goodly number of nineteenth century poets, but for those who care to go farther we may mention a few more. Winthrop Mackworth Praed (1802-39) began to write humorous verse while still an undergraduate at Cambridge, and continued at it throughout his short life. There are still smiles and chuckles to be got from his polished, mocking verses.

Christina Georgina Rossetti (1830-94), younger sister of D. G. Rossetti, shares with Elizabeth Barrett Browning the distinction of being the most important poetess of the nineteenth century. Many of her lyrics are very beautiful, and she wrote some charming children's poems. Her chief work is "Goblin Market" (1862).

One or two little poems by William Allingham (1824-89) will be found in most anthologies: his longer work was not so successful, but who will ever forget:

> Up the airy mountain,
> Down the rushy glen,
> We daren't go a-hunting
> For fear of little men;
> Wee folk, good folk,
> Trooping all together;
> Green jacket, red cap,
> And white owl's feather!

Limericks and Nonsense Verse

So, too, you will often come across poems in the burring Dorsetshire dialect by William Barnes (1801-86). Few people can write poetry successfully in dialect, but many of his are delightful to read. "High Tide on the Coast of Lincolnshire," by Jean Ingelow (1820-97), will also be met. You will probably not meet Edward Lear (1812-88), but his "Book of Nonsense" (1846) is the finest collection of limericks and real nonsense verse in the world.

Francis Turner Palgrave (1824-97) is best known as the editor of the famous "Golden Treasury of English Songs and Lyrics" (1861), but he was himself a poet. Coventry Patmore (1823-96) wrote clearly and pleasantly poetry of a not very high order. What James Thomson (1834-82) might have done had his life been happier we can only guess at, for all he wrote, including "The City of Dreadful Night," is uniformly good.

So we might go on; the list is well-nigh endless. The treasury of English poetry is boundless as the sea: bathe in it freely. If one poet will not serve your purpose, try another: there are poems for every taste.

TO-DAY AND TO-MORROW

Writers who have Gained their Laurels and Others who are Winning Them

H. G. Wells (born 1866).
Photo by Russell, London

WHEN we attempt to make a survey of present-day authors we are at once struck by two facts—their huge number and their high standard. Writing has become a regular and honourable profession, employing many thousands of people. Most of these, it is true, do not pretend to be producing literature, but the great majority turn out clear, straightforward, interesting work, while not a few express distinguished thoughts in distinguished language.

It is quite impossible to attempt to decide who are our best writers of to-day. We can judge the literature of bygone days: we cannot judge our own. Time alone can decide who among the serried ranks of modern authors will be remembered and read fifty, a hundred—or more—years later. It is possible that when in 1978 some one sits down to write a history of English literature the name that will shine brightest in the annals of the first thirty years of the twentieth century will be that of a man or woman who is practically unknown to-day. How many people in 1828 dreamed that the name of John Keats would become one of the most famous in literature?

All we can do is to indicate and to give some account of the writers who appear to us to be the most considerable. In this task it is easy to make a start, for beyond question the two most discussed living authors are Mr. H. G. Wells and Mr. G. Bernard Shaw. Between these two very remarkable men there are certain marked resemblances, and equally marked differences. Each is a prophet: each in his own way is striving to point out to the present generation what he considers to be the stupidities, the follies, the littlenesses of the lives we lead, and how much better those lives might be. Each is unsparing, often brutal, in his criticism of society, yet each is firmly convinced of the dignity of man and the beauty of human life.

There are other resemblances, but these must suffice. As to differences, there are two very obvious ones. Mr. Wells has expressed himself largely in novels, and by his handling of the novel has made a profound difference to that form of literary art. Mr. Shaw, who began as a novelist and journalist, has for over forty years confined himself almost entirely to drama, and by his handling of the drama has wrought a mighty change in that form of literary art. The other difference, though not on the surface, is just as plain to all readers of the works of these two men. Mr. Wells is a teacher: he shows us our life exactly as it is, and then says: "How can you be so stupid? This is what you ought to do." Mr. Shaw, whom the foolishness of men pains deeply (it angers Mr. Wells), conceals his pain, and laughs at us, and makes us laugh at ourselves, and proves to us by the simplest and most logical reasoning how thick-headed and silly we are. There is, of course, much more in the writings of these men than teaching or satire: each is capable of rising to the heights of idealism, of rising beyond scolding or teaching or even preaching to a dignity of lofty expression that is perhaps unequalled in modern literature.

Mr. H. G. Wells, the son of a professional cricketer, was born in 1866. As a boy he went to Midhurst Grammar School, and later to the Royal College of Science. He took his B.Sc. with first-class honours at London University in 1888. He had to earn his living while he was studying, and quickly discovered that his writings were acceptable.

As an eager scientist, he quite naturally gave his work a scientific colouring. But he was more than a scientist: he was an ardent and energetic social reformer, and an acute observer of his fellow-men. So, though he made his mark with scientific romances after the style of Jules Verne, it was not long before there were signs that he was to do more than tell thrilling stories such as "The Time Machine" (1895) and "The Invisible Man" (1897), in which modern scientific discoveries and theories were employed to make ingenious guesses as to future inventions and possibilities. About the beginning of the twentieth century he began to publish books that were social tracts: such were "Anticipations" (1902), "The Discovery of the Future" (1902), "Mankind in the Making" (1903), "A Modern Utopia" (1905), and "New Worlds for Old" (1908). Meanwhile he was developing as a novelist, turning his attention to a more domestic kind of fiction. Even in these books, as everywhere else, he was perpetually occupied with the idea "It's all wrong: what can we do to make things better?"

Many people think that the novels of this period of Mr. Wells's life are the best work he has done and will survive longer than anything else. Certainly "Kipps" (1905), the life story of a draper's assistant who had ambition; "Tono-Bungay" (1909), the story of a little chemist who made and lost a colossal fortune through a patent medicine; and "The History of Mr. Polly" (1910), the man who burnt down his house and disappeared in order to escape from a wife he did not love and the general boredom of life, are novels that contain characters finely drawn, plenty of action, and an accurate picture of certain aspects of early twentieth century society.

A Cupboard for Ideas

From about 1911 Mr. Wells began to treat the novel as a kind of roomy cupboard in which to pack his voluminous ideas. The story grew less, the characters not so important. He would take one aspect of modern society and pour out all his thoughts on that subject. Thus "The New Machiavelli" (1911) is a study of politics, "Mr. Britling sees it through" (1916), of the World War, "Joan and Peter" (1918), of modern education. On one occasion he explained his religious theories in one book, "God the Invisible King" (which is not a novel), and illustrated them in practice in the story called "The Soul of a Bishop."

Later, Mr. Wells became even more comprehensive. He abandoned consideration of aspects of modern life and treated of the whole in one book. "The World of William Clissold" (1925), a huge novel, discusses religion, politics, morality, art, education, life. Then followed "The Open Conspiracy" (1928), "Mr. Blettsworthy on Rampole Island" (1928), "The Autocracy of Mr. Parham" (1930), "The Work, Wealth and Happiness of Mankind" (1932), "The Bulpington of Blup" (1933), "The Shape of Things to Come" (1933), which was afterwards made into a film; and "Experiment in Autobiography" (1934), an account of his own life.

Mention must be made of the "Outline of History" (1920), which electrified historians, but which ordinary people found delightful and stimulating to read. Nine years later, in collaboration with his elder son, Mr. G. P. Wells, and Professor Julian Huxley, he gave "The Science of Life" to the world.

Mr. Bernard Shaw is an Irishman. His is an Irish mind, swifter, keener, more agile than an Anglo-Saxon one. He has always regarded the poor English as rather slow and stupid, and himself as brilliantly clever and wise. He has told us so, over and over again, during the past forty years. In the preface to "Back to Methuselah," his lengthy drama on the evolution of man, he wrote: "My powers are waning: but so much the better for those who found me unbearably brilliant when I was in my prime."

He was born in Dublin in 1856 and started to earn his living as a clerk at fifteen. He came to London in 1876, and wrote four novels, which no publisher would accept, became an ardent socialist and a prominent member of the Fabian Society. In 1885 he began to obtain regular work as a journalist, and wrote his first play, "Widowers' Houses," which deals with the appalling conditions of slum property. For years he worked as a musical, art, and dramatic critic. His articles on plays in the *Saturday Review* from 1895-98 surprised, shocked, and delighted readers. The drama then was certainly feeble and frivolous, and he said so in the most outspoken way.

Attacking old Beliefs

In 1893 Mr. Shaw wrote "The Philanderer" and "Mrs. Warren's Profession." This latter play, because of its unpleasant subject, was not allowed to be performed on the stage for over thirty years. Next year, having pleased the public with "Arms and the Man," he started in earnest to knock down and ridicule many time-honoured beliefs. "Arms and the Man" jeered at and made absurd the idea that war was glorious; "The Man of Destiny" (Napoleon) and "Caesar and Cleopatra" made fun of two famous historical characters; "The Doctor's Dilemma" attacked the medical profession; "Androcles and the Lion" pierced with biting criticism conventional Christianity.

For his plays Mr. Shaw writes elaborate prefaces, and it is always a question as to which is more important, the play or the preface. In the preface you find a complete and beautifully argued statement of the theory: in the play you find that theory put into practice by a number of very serious, very entertaining people who say witty things, do startling and extraordinary ones, and hold ideas which at first sight appear to be utterly ridiculous, but which they at once explain in a way that makes them seem the only sensible ones.

What Mr. Shaw Believes

Mr. Shaw in his earlier days was called an atheist, but no accusation could be farther from the truth. He is deeply concerned with religion, and has explained his religious beliefs very fully in at least two plays, "Man and Superman" (1903) and "Back to Methuselah" (1921). Briefly, he believes God, or the Life Force, as he calls Him, to be imperfect. He is ever striving to become perfect and constantly creating creatures who may help Him. Man is His latest experiment, and is still on trial. If man proves good enough to assist the Divine purpose he will survive: if not, mankind will be destroyed, and God will create some other kind of being. All the cruel, all the wicked things on earth—war, crime, disease, poverty—are the result of man's failures to assist God.

Mr. Shaw has been called more hard names and accused of more faults than any other living writer. The fact is that he always has been, and still is, something of a riddle to us. But we are coming to feel that at least he is far kindlier and gentler, far more loving and full of pity, far more devout than he would have us believe. The man who wrote "Candida" (1894), a beautiful romantic comedy, at the beginning of his career, and "St. Joan" (1923), an idyllic historical romance, when he was nearly seventy; the man who felt the pain and agony of the World War as Mr. Shaw did, is no sneering superman. And, when we survey the whole range of his plays, over thirty in all, we cannot but feel that in addition to all the wit and wisdom that is packed in them there is a passionate love for humanity.

Mr. Shaw has also published a long and brilliantly written book called "The Intelligent Woman's Guide to Socialism and Capitalism" (1928). This volume, which was begun as a letter to his sister-in-law, who asked him what socialism was, contains much more than an account of socialism and capitalism, for it may fairly be said to express what Mr. Shaw thinks of our modern civilization.

It does more; it proposes a remedy for the many evils of our present state. The remedy is that everybody, young and old, hard-working and lazy, clever and stupid, brainworked and handworked, shall have exactly the same income; there shall be no distinction, no person richer than another. The theory is not very popular; critics have risen on all sides to show Mr. Shaw how impossible his Utopia would be. But no one denies his logic or the clearness of his argument. In fact, they say he is too logical!

We have given somewhat lengthy accounts of Mr. Wells and Mr. Shaw because they express more fully than any other writers the spirit of an age that is profoundly dissatisfied with itself and is perpetually seeking for better things. Other writers must be mentioned more briefly than they deserve.

A Writer from India

Rudyard Kipling (1865-1936), who was born at Bombay and lived some years in India, made his reputation as a writer of short stories. "Plain Tales from the Hills" (1887) and "Soldiers Three" (1888) contain many favourites. Indian army life he knew intimately and has described in prose and verse, while every boy and girl loves his "Jungle Books" (1894 and 1895), and that excellent school story, "Stalky & Co." "Kim" (1901) is a delightful tale of an Anglo-Indian boy. With these may be mentioned "Puck of Pook's Hill" (1906). "The Light that Failed" (1891) is a novel, while "The Day's Work" (1908) and "Actions and Reactions" (1909) are volumes of short stories.

Kipling's army verses and patriotic poems had an immense popularity some years back, and his "Recessional" (1897) is still sung on Empire and Armistice Days.

Arnold Bennett (1867-1931) was born in the Pottery district of Staffordshire, and will probably be remembered for his realistic novels of life in that part of the world. "Anna of the Five Towns" (1902), "The Old Wives' Tale" (1908), "Clayhanger" (1910), "Hilda Lessways" (1911), and

"These Twain" (1916), all tell of the grim, hard, sordid life of the pottery district. Later, Mr. Bennett went farther afield, and in addition to a grim story of a London miser, "Riceyman Steps" (1923), and a picture of a wealthy peer, "Lord Raingo" (1926), published many entertaining books on how to live well, how to succeed in life and in writing, and so on.

One of the strangest stories of modern literature is that of Teodor Jozef Konrad Korzeniowski, known to us as Joseph Conrad. Born in Poland, a country that has no coast, he worked his way up as a sailor until he became a master-mariner in the British mercantile marine; entirely ignorant of the English language until he was eighteen, he was forty years later universally recognized as a supreme stylist among English writers.

Haunting Tales of the Sea

Conrad wrote of the sea, and particularly of the sea between India and China, strange, haunting tales in a beautiful, slow-moving, rich and carefully chosen prose. If you want plot and quick action it is useless to read Conrad, but if you can enjoy exquisite description and subtle and piercing character-drawing you will delight in "Lord Jim" (1900), "Youth" (1902), "'Twixt Land and Sea" (1912), "The Rescue" (1920), and others of his books. He died in 1926, leaving an unfinished novel, "Suspense," which has since been published.

John Galsworthy (1867-1933), who also made a reputation as a dramatist, pictured the life of the rich middle-class business people with great skill in "The Forsyte Saga" (1922), which consists of five novels and several short tales and tells the history of the Forsyte family through several generations.

Sir James Barrie, most delightful of playwrights, the creator of the immortal Peter Pan, began as a novelist of Scottish life with "Auld Licht Idylls" (1888), "A Window in Thrums" (1889), "The Little Minister" (1891), and "Sentimental Tommy" (1896).

Compton Mackenzie made a great reputation with "Carnival" (1912) and "Sinister Street" (1914). The Sherlock Holmes stories of Sir Arthur Conan Doyle (1859-1930), the parents of modern detective stories, need no introduction to boys and girls; nor does Edgar Wallace (1875-1932), whose mystery novels and plays were amazingly popular.

Among novelists who pretend to style we cannot omit to mention Mr. E. M. Forster, author of "A Room with a View," "Howards End," "A Passage to India," and other books, and who, according to one critic, is "like an elf making odd comments on this world." The same critic adds: "His very style seems disjointed, careless. It is, however, exquisitely turned for its purpose." The same may be said of the style of D. H. Lawrence (1885-1930), a writer of volcanic energy, turbulent, over-emphatic, and yet intensely gripping.

Mr. Hugh Walpole, who was for some time a schoolmaster, has graphically exposed his horror of that profession in "Mr. Perrin and Mr. Traill" (1911). He has made good use of his knowledge of life in a cathedral city in "The Cathedral" (1922) and "Harmer John" (1926), while his sketches of children in "The Golden Scarecrow" (1915), "Jeremy and Hamlet" (1923), and other books are delightful. A deeper thinker and a more elaborate writer was Charles E. Montague, who died in 1928 at the age of sixty-one. Montague spent his life on the staff of the "Manchester Guardian," for which paper he was chief leader writer for many years. Although well over age, he joined the army as a private at the outbreak of the World War and served as a ranker in the trenches. His experiences caused him to write what are probably his two finest books, "Disenchantment" (1922), which is not a novel, and "Rough Justice" (1926). In his last book, "Right off the Map" (1927), the tragic story of a dispute between two imaginary European countries, Montague maintained the exquisite finish and harmony of style which have always been a delight in his works.

A Fine War Novel

Mr. R. H. Mottram, author of "The Spanish Farm" (1924), "Our Mr. Dormer" (1927), and "The English Miss" (1928), ranks high in popularity; so, too, does Mr. Francis Brett Young, who years ago showed in "The Black Diamond" (1921) that he could tell a fine tale, and who more recently attempted an ambitious picture of English country life in "Portrait of Clare" (1927). Dr. Edward Thompson's "An Indian Day" (1927) and "These Men, Thy Friends" (1927), the latter a magnificent account of the War in Mesopotamia that is almost too true to be called a novel, are distinguished by reason of their life-like characters and the rich, poetical quality of the style.

Of women novelists there are probably more than men, so our task of selection grows more difficult. If we set a limit it must be understood that there are many more who might be mentioned, and that the six are chosen because each is outstanding in a particular type of fiction.

Miss Marjorie Bowen at the age of seventeen wrote "The Viper of Milan," an historical novel which stirred its many readers by its remarkable power of reproducing vividly events of bygone days in Italy. Although Miss Bowen is a deeply read student of history, her romances never suffer from overmuch learning and are always fresh and gripping.

Miss Sheila Kaye-Smith has been called by some critics "the female Hardy." Just as Hardy wove all his stories around Wessex, Miss Kaye-Smith has made East Sussex, the flat, marshy country around the little town of Rye, the scene of her novels. Farmers, their wives, and country labourers are the people of her books; she tells a good, straightforward story, usually a tragedy, and brings these people of the soil very poignantly before her readers. Her first book was "A Tramping Methodist" (1908): then came "Sussex Gorse" (1916) and "Tamarisk Town" (1919). Her later books, "Joanna Godden" (1921), "The End of the House of Alard" (1923), "The George and the Crown" (1925), "Shepherds in Sackcloth" (1930), "Susan Spray" (1931), and "Iron and Smoke" (1929), are sadder stories but full of power.

A Satirist of Modern Society

Miss Rose Macaulay is clever; she satirizes modern society with infinite wit. She has what we call a biting pen and she uses it unsparingly. In "Dangerous Ages" (1921) she shows that all ages from childhood to the grave are dangerous; in "Potterism" (1920) she puts before us a thoroughly ordinary family and shows how stupid they are. "Orphan Island" (1924) is a delicious joke. Miss Macaulay imagines two people wrecked on a desert island early in Queen Victoria's reign. They marry and have children, whom they bring up according to early Victorian ideas; the family grows into a tribe, and is discovered in the twentieth century by some moderns, who are amazed at their laws and habits.

Miss Virginia Woolf is not as popular a writer as the three we have mentioned. She is much more difficult to read, being a psychological novelist of the most modern type, interested not so much in what people do as in what they are, and why they are like they are, and why they do what they do. All this is confusing and wearisome to the reader who likes a good strong plot, but for those who delight in searching people's characters Miss Woolf's novels, especially "Mrs. Dalloway" and "To the Lighthouse," have a peculiar fascination.

Miss Myrtle Johnston's first novel, "Hanging Johnny" (1927), was published when she was eighteen years old. "Hanging Johnny" (1927), the story of Johnny Croghan, an Irish hangman with a dreamy, poetical temperament, who hates the work of executing people and yet who cannot resist the fascination it exerts over him, and who ends by going completely mad, is told with a distinct touch of genius.

Neglected in her Lifetime

It was a statesman, Mr. Stanley Baldwin, who first interested the reading public in the works of Mary Webb—unhappily, only after her death, which occurred in 1927. Mr. Baldwin, in a speech, told how a friend put a book into his bag one Christmas, saying, "Read this in the holiday. I think you will like it." He did like it, so much so that when he got back to London he asked two friends, John Buchan and Sir James Barrie, "Have you ever heard of a woman called Mary Webb? I have just read a book of hers which I think is one of the best books of its kind I have ever read." They both told him "Yes. She is one of about the three best living writers of English to-day, but nobody buys her books."

Mrs. Webb's books began with "The Golden Arrow" (1916), but perhaps the best is "Precious Bane" (1924). In these and others she tells of Shropshire in writing that is "flushed with poetry and humoured with shrewdness," and it is very sad to think that in her lifetime she was neglected, for she was very poor and a little fame would have saved her from much drudgery and hard toil unfitting for a woman of such rare gifts.

Most novelists and many other writers try their hands at short stories. Not all of them are entirely successful, for the writing of short stories is a difficult art. To begin with, it is not easy to say exactly what a short story is. One thing is certain, however; a short story is not a short novel. Joseph Conrad's perfectly written "Typhoon," for example, is a short story (though it is about ten times as long as the average short story), because it concentrates entirely upon one incident, the navigating of a ship through a terrific storm. Every word in the book bears upon that incident, or serves to show why the characters—Captain McWhirr, Jukes, the Chinamen—*must* act as they did. Apart from length, we may say that the short story deals with one event or crisis only, and that everything which does not add to our understanding of that event or crisis must be cut out.

We shall speak in our concluding chapter of that very fine American writer of short stories, O. Henry. In this chapter we will try to illustrate the English short story by reference to the works of two people—a man and a woman—and briefly mention just a few others who have done good work.

Haunters of Harbours

W. W. Jacobs (b. 1863) set out from the start to amuse his readers. He chose as his kingdom the harbour—any harbour in England—and as his characters the lazy, the artful and the simple among the people who frequent such a place: skippers, mates and sailors of small boats, longshoremen, nightwatchmen, and their wives. In his stories, a number of which are now collected in "Many Cargoes" and other books, some cunning fellow usually starts out to get something for nothing, to steal a march on someone less cunning than he is, and usually ends by being completely taken in himself.

Mr. Jacobs is a real artist. Though his popularity has been immense, he has never allowed himself to be rushed into over-rapid production; he has always composed his stories slowly and carefully, so that though some may be funnier than others, each is a rare feast of laughter and delight.

Of the work of Katherine Mansfield (1888-1923) her husband, Mr. John Middleton Murry, says: "I believed in it, published it, and for one brief moment even printed it with my own hands." Yet almost up to the date of her death she could find very few people with sufficient faith even to print her stories. They were not the sort which magazines accepted, and the writer had to suffer for years almost complete neglect.

Ill-health ever hampered her and in the end made it impossible for her to write at all. But more than that, she could only write when inspiration came. "I long and long to write," she says in her "Journal," "and the words just won't come." Yet she has left us five books of stories: "Bliss" (1920), "The Garden Party" (1922), "Something Childish but Very Natural" (1924), "The Dove's Nest" (1923), and "In a German Pension" (1911). She also kept a private diary or journal—begun and dropped more than once—and this, together with various letters and odd scraps of writing, her husband edited as "The Journal of Katherine Mansfield" (1927). Anyone who wishes fully to understand the rare beauty of her stories and to glimpse into the life of one who "was natural and spontaneous as was no other being I (her husband) have ever met," who "loved life—with all its beauty and pain," who "was utterly generous, utterly courageous," who "accepted life completely" and "had the right to accept it. for she had endured in herself all the suffering which life can lavish upon a single soul," must read this exquisite book of self-revelation.

A writer who stands almost by himself is Mr. A. E. Coppard, who has published over sixty short stories in five volumes. Mr. Coppard is a poet; he has published poetry, and he sees life with the poet's eye. His stories are technically perfect and often amazingly clever, but that is not his chief virtue. Far better than his power of producing finished work of finest craftsmanship is his gift of touching everything with serenity and beauty.

Difficulties of the Essayist

What is an essay? It was easy enough to answer that question in the days of Addison and Steele; it was still easy when Charles Lamb, Leigh Hunt, Hazlitt, De Quincey and others delighted crowds of readers with their humour or their shrewdness. But those were days before the growth of the modern newspaper, which allows a writer one column or less in which to say his say. Charles Lamb could take his time over his "Dissertation on Roast Pig," elaborate it, add a bit here, polish up that sentence, alter this phrase, and publish when he liked. The writer to-day who in Lamb's time would have been an essayist is now a journalist, and, if he is at all well known, is in such demand that his work has to be done at almost incredible speed. The surprising thing is that so many men write so well under such conditions.

Mr. G. K. Chesterton (b. 1874) not only writes weekly articles, but has found time to produce plays, poems, novels, essays, and much critical work. So individual is his style and matter that it has added a new adjective to the English language, Chestertonian. He delights in paradoxes—that is, he loves to prove seemingly absurd statements to be not only true but eminently sensible. Mr. Chesterton is full of the joy of life; he enjoys himself hugely, and his happiness radiates through his books. He is the tomboy of modern literature.

Someone once called Mr. Hilaire Belloc (b. 1870) one of the "three cleverest young men in London." He spent his early days in France, and was a driver in the 8th Regiment of French Artillery. He writes on anything; he has actually published a volume of essays "On Nothing" (1908). Travel sketches, poems, nonsense rhymes, history, biography—all seem to come alike to him.

Writing 25,000 *Words a Week*

Sir Edmund Gosse (1849-1928), a distinguished literary critic and essayist, was for many years a very prolific writer. Few men were so well acquainted with the world of books, or could write with such authority and knowledge as he could. His style was always clear, witty and idiomatic. Of his later publications his "Life of Algernon Charles Swinburne" (1917) is the most important. By his side we may place Sir William Robertson Nicoll (1851-1923), who had a truly encyclopaedic knowledge of literature, and whose output was enormous. Sir William, who began life as a minister, and who later founded, and edited for many years *The British Weekly*, at times wrote as much as 25,000 words a week, a colossal feat for anyone, and particularly for a man who, in addition, had crowds of other engagements. George Saintsbury (1845-1933), remarkable for his knowledge of the literature of all ages, wrote "Short History of English Literature" (1898); "A History of Criticism" (1900-04); "The English Novel" (1913) and other works of the same kind.

Mr. John Middleton Murry is a literary critic of exceptional power and insight. His life of Keats is one of the finest studies of that poet.

Among men whose work appears chiefly in newspapers and magazines (though much of it is collected later and published in book form) we may mention Mr. Robert Lynd, Mr. E. V. Lucas, and Mr. James Douglas. Three dramatic critics whose work has often been real literature are William Archer (1856-1924), whose book, "The Old Drama and the New" (1923), was a powerful and acute attempt to prove that modern drama is far superior to the Elizabethan; A. B. Walkley (1855-1927), for many years dramatic critic of *The Times*, and Mr. St. John Ervine.

The British tradition of wit and humour is nobly sustained, among others, by Mr. E. V. Knox (Evoe), Mr. A. P. Herbert, and Mr. F. W. Thomas.

Mr. Max Beerbohm (b. 1872) stands in a class by himself. He is a true essayist, who writes little, but who polishes and refines his work down to the very last comma. A keen satirist, Mr. Beerbohm is also well known as an exceptionally clever caricaturist.

Mrs. Alice Meynell (1849-1922), besides producing poetry of the greatest delicacy and beauty, wrote prose of which Meredith said that it had the "living tremor" in it and left "a sense of stilled singing on the mind."

Vernon Lee (b. 1856), whose real name is Violet Page, a brilliant student of Italian art, history and literature, and of English letters, produces essays that are packed with thought and yet clear in style.

Science and Art in History

The writing of history has now almost become a science, yet there are still writers who can make of it also an art. Among these are Professor G. M. Trevelyan (b. 1876), whose grandmother was a sister of Lord Macaulay. He made his name with three volumes on Garibaldi, the Italian patriot; and his "History of England" (1926) was a great success. Mr. Philip Guedalla (b. 1889) is a very modern historian whose pages flash with witty epigrams. Giles Lytton Strachey (1880-1932) in "Eminent Victorians" (1918), and "Queen Victoria" (1921) set out to show that many nineteenth century personalities had been praised over highly, and he succeeded only too well.

Sir Sidney Lee (1859-1926) was, in his day, the greatest authority in England on Shakespeare, and his life of the dramatist was, in respect of facts, the last word in Shakespearian criticism. With his theory that Shakespeare was a kind of play-merchant who turned out just what was wanted at the moment, many critics disagree.

THE DRAMA OF IDEAS ARRIVES

Rebellion against the Time-honoured Laws of the Theatre

John Galsworthy (1867-1933)
Photo by Raphael

DRAMA is flourishing to-day as it has not flourished since the days of Shakespeare. Not only are there capable dramatists in numbers writing for the professional stage, but there has spread a tremendous wave of enthusiasm for dramatic art, and many amateur societies have a standard of production that is exceedingly high.

You may perhaps have wondered why, in the history of nineteenth century literature, practically nothing was said about the drama. There was none, or at least, not until towards the end. True, Shelley, Byron, Browning, and Tennyson wrote for the stage. So did scores of other people. But the plays have not lived. It was the personality of the actors that kept the theatres open.

To one of the players we must also be grateful for the birth of the revival of drama. Thomas Robertson (1829-71), the son of an actor and brother of Dame Madge Kendal, the famous actress, had a hard life, as a result of which his health was already impaired when success came to him, though he was then still a young man. In 1865 his play, "Society," was produced in London. The critics sneered at it and said it was too true to life (as if a play ever could be!), but people swarmed to see it, and eagerly clamoured for more of the same sort. Robertson set to work and gave them "Ours," "Caste," "Play," "School," "M.P." and "War"—all in six years. They marked the beginning of the end for high-flown romance or pretty-pretty drawing-room comedies. We might consider them artificial to-day, but this was only the beginning.

His two most notable immediate successors, Sir Arthur Pinero (1855-1934) and Henry Arthur Jones (1851-1929), both started as old-time dramatists. Pinero wrote farcical comedies, Jones melodrama. Then they followed Robertson's lead and began to deal with real life, particularly with the darker side of real life. They discussed questions in their plays which were considered daring. Pinero wrote "The Squire" (1881), Jones "Saints and Sinners" (1884), in which he discussed religion and life in a country town. He wrote it "to please himself," but it did not please everyone else. Many people were horrified. But he went on. In 1899 he told society all about its sins in "Judah." In 1893 Pinero wrote "The Second Mrs. Tanqueray," a powerful play about a woman whom society would call wicked.

At this point Mr. George Bernard Shaw entered the fray in real earnest. When "The Second Mrs. Tanqueray" was produced he was G. B. S. of the *Saturday Review*, a dramatic critic, very outspoken in his views, but not taken very seriously. He said such original yet obviously true things, however, that after a while intelligent people began to take him seriously and to pay a great deal of attention to what he said. And he said Pinero and Jones were, for all their supposed "daring," far too conventional and prim. He said also that they were poor playwrights. He threatened to write plays himself to show how it should be done.

He did. He broke every established rule of the theatre, laughed at every tradition, swept aside all the accepted notions of plot, characterization, and dialogue, and, as we know, after years of fierce struggle, secured the coveted position of foremost dramatist in Europe. Everyone then agreed that a play without a strong plot was certain to be a failure. Mr. Shaw disproved this theory by writing a play without a plot at all. There must be plenty of action in a play, said everyone. Rubbish! said Mr. Shaw, and wrote plays in which people simply sat and talked. Thus what we call the Drama of Ideas, the opposite of the Drama of Action, came on to the English stage.

He even ridiculed playwrights for wanting two doors to their rooms, in order to get people on and off the stage, and if he could have written a play without any entrances at all, he certainly would have done so! In fact, he turned all ideas of play-writing upside down. He was supported by William Archer, the critic, and Harley Granville Barker, who contributed "The Voysey Inheritance," "The Madras House," "Waste," and other plays, more conventional in form, perhaps, than Shaw's, but equally unconventional in spirit.

Another rebel against the laws of the theatre was Sir James Barrie (b. 1860). Do not imagine he is anything like Mr. Bernard Shaw; far from it. Sir James Barrie is like Sir James Barrie, and no one else. But he resembles Mr. Shaw in one respect; he has broken all the rules and yet succeeded. "Peter Pan" (1904), the story of the boy who could not grow up, stands by itself as a play; it is play, pantomime, and fairy story all rolled into one, and it grows more popular every year. "Quality Street" (1902) and "Dear Brutus" (1917), to mention but two of his plays which have enchanted grown-ups, cannot be compared with any other plays, yet no one who has seen them will ever forget them.

Barrie makes you laugh and cry at the same time. He holds you by the delicate beauty of his play, brings the smile into your face with his wit and humour, and tugs at your heart and enlists your sympathy because he can show you, even while you laugh, the pity and the sorrow of it all. Take the story of "Dear Brutus," for example. We all have faults and failings, says the dramatist, and we are constantly saying that if only we could start afresh in life we should be ever so much better. So in this play he shows us a set of people who appear to get the chance of starting once again, and how they throw away their chances in exactly the same old silly ways.

Making us Laugh and Cry

If there is no one quite like Barrie, there is at least one playwright who seems endowed with some share of his delicate humour. This is Mr. A. A. Milne, author of "When we were very Young," and much other exquisite verse, who in one play, "Mr. Pim Passes By" (1919), shows the same power to make us laugh and cry at the same moment. Mr. Milne has written other plays, including "The Truth About Blayds" (1921) and "The Dover Road" (1922), but these, though still delightfully humorous, are harder and more realistic than "Mr. Pim."

We have mentioned John Galsworthy as a novelist, but he occupied a very considerable place in the drama of his day. He was terribly in earnest. He wrote plays to show up the injustice, the cruelty and the strife in modern society. His first play, "The Silver Box" (1906), points out that in the police courts there is one law for the rich and influential and another for the poor. "Joy" (1907), "Strife" (1909), "Justice" (1910), and "Loyalties" (1922), discuss problems of social and domestic life. "The Skin Game" (1920) deals with the war profiteer. "The Forest" and "Old English" were both produced in 1924.

Galsworthy at Work

As a general rule a dramatist works out the course his play is to follow before attempting to write it. Galsworthy needed no such framework. When he conceived an idea he started to develop it at once, without thinking of details and how the play was to end. He realized the fleeting, will-o'-the-wisp nature of the children of the brain, and was anxious to materialize them ere they take their departure to the unknown bourne whence they came.

Again, unlike many other literary craftsmen he was not exacting in his requirements as regards environment. Some writers demand a room sacred to themselves, paper of standard size, and a favourite pen. Galsworthy discarded all these adjuncts, and made a study of a railway carriage or a ship's cabin with equal facility, though he confessed to liking "a place in the sun." No dramatist ever gave more attention to style, for he altered, added, cut, and revised until he was satisfied that he had said exactly what he wished to say and made his characters do exactly what he wished them to do. "It is not cant," he avows, "to say that the only things vital in drama, as in every art, are achieved when the maker has fixed his soul on the making of a thing that shall seem fine to himself."

You will find little to amuse you in a play by John Galsworthy. He goes straight to the point and keeps to it all through. The wrong must be righted, and you must see that it must be righted. His method is quite different from Mr. Shaw's. Mr. Shaw overwhelms you with argument and ridicule; his characters talk endlessly and yet always delightfully. For that reason you can read a Shaw play with enjoyment. You cannot read a Galsworthy play, you must see it acted. Then the short, sharp, dialogue, with its swift question and reply, appeals; it does not as you read.

During the past few years a young playwright, Mr. Noel Coward (b. 1899), has made a very great reputation. In "The Young Idea," "Fallen Angels," "Hay Fever," "The Vortex" and "Bitter Sweet," he has shown a dazzling ability in presenting pictures of clever but neurotic Society people.

Comedies and Satires

Good plays have been numerous during the past few years, and they grow still more numerous. It is safe to say that if you go to a theatre to see a new play, the chances are that you will see a good, if not a great, one. Mr. Frederick Lonsdale (b. 1881) writes clever and amusing comedies, such as "Spring Cleaning"; Mr. Somerset Maugham (b. 1874), bitter satires; Mr. Eden Phillpotts (b. 1862), the richest and most delightful of West Country plays. His "The Farmer's Wife" (1917) and "Yellow Sands" (1926)—in the writing of the latter his daughter, Miss Adelaide Eden Phillpotts, collaborated—are hugely funny and exquisitely true to life. The strange thing is that when "The Farmer's Wife" was first produced almost every dramatic critic said it was a bad play and would be a failure. It ran for four years, and is acknowledged as fine comedy as could be desired!

In 1924 Mr. Ashley Dukes produced "A Man with a Load of Mischief," a romantic comedy of the eighteenth century, written in English prose of a rare purity and distinction. Mr. John Drinkwater (b. 1882) has written several historical dramas, including "Abraham Lincoln" (1918), "Mary Stuart" (1922), "Oliver Cromwell" (1923), and "Robert E. Lee" (1923), all powerfully penned in dignified fashion.

"*Little Plays of St. Francis*"

In so short a survey and with such a wealth of material we must of necessity omit many names. We have not yet mentioned Laurence Housman (b. 1867), whose "Little Plays of St. Francis" and other dramas breathe pure and holy religious feeling, Mr. Halcott Glover, whose historical plays act stirringly, Mr. H. M. Harwood, Mr. St. John Ervine, Mr. J. R. Gregson and many others whose reputations are secure and who may hand down their names to future generations. We have said enough, however, to show that no lover of drama need go unsatisfied for lack of mental refreshment.

Now for a short note on one of the most remarkable movements in all dramatic history, that connected with the name of the Abbey Theatre, Dublin. It was twenty-one years old in 1925. In those years there were produced in it 216 plays representing the work of eighty-six authors, of whom seventy-two were Irishmen alive at the time of production. The founders were George Russell (Æ), W. B. Yeats, W. G. and Frank Fay, Lady Gregory and others.

During the earlier years John Millington Synge (1871-1909) was by far the most important discovery made by the founders. A man of delicate health, he wrote only six plays, two of which contain only one act each, but those plays represent little short of genius. Synge lived among and grew to know intimately the Irish peasants in their hard, and often sorrowful life, and in "The Shadow of the Glen" (1903), "Riders to the Sea" (1904), "The Well of the Saints" (1905), and "The Tinker's Wedding" (1907) he wrote of them in a peculiarly melodious and haunting prose. "The Playboy of the Western World" (1907) raised fierce anger in Ireland, but in "Deirdre of the Sorrows" (1910), which remained unfinished, Synge returned to the old familiar stories of Irish legend; this is considered his finest work.

Lady Gregory, besides having much to do with the administration of the theatre in early days, wrote several plays, the best of which are "Spreading the News," "The Rising of the Moon," and "The Image." Lord Dunsany (b. 1878) has written among other dramas a powerful little one act play called "A Night at the Inn." Mr. T. C. Murray is another of the Abbey Theatre playwrights, and so too is Mr. Lennox Robinson (b. 1886), whose "The White-Headed Boy" (1916) is said to be one of the finest of modern dramas. St. John Ervine must be included here, though he is a Northern Irishman. Of his plays perhaps the best known are "Jane Clegg" (1911) and "The First Mrs. Fraser" (1928).

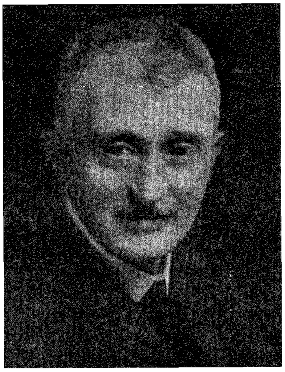
More Irish Plays

Recently the Abbey Theatre found another dramatist who bids fair to equal J. M. Synge. This is Sean O'Casey, author of "The Shadow of a Gunman" (1923), "Juno and the Paycock" (1924), "The Plough and the Stars" (1926), "The Silver Tassie" (1928), and "Within the Gates" (1933). Mr. O'Casey, who was a working craftsman in Dublin, scored a very great success both in Dublin and in London.

THOMAS HARDY'S GREAT EPIC

A Play in Verse dealing with the Wars of Napoleon

IN a recent anthology of modern lyrical poetry no fewer than thirty-five living poets were represented. At least a dozen others whose work was included had died during and since the World War. Among these latter stood the great name of Thomas Hardy.



John Masefield

Hardy, as noted in an earlier chapter, had two distinct literary careers. After making a beginning as a poet, he abandoned poetry and devoted himself for twenty-five years or more to novel writing. Towards the end of that period people began to suggest that his powers were failing, that he was an old man getting past his best. They little knew what was to come!

In 1898 he collected the lyrics he had written at odd times during his earlier life, and published them as "Wessex Poems." Three years later "Poems of the Past and Present" appeared. Few thought them worthy of much attention, though, as the work of an eminent novelist, they were not altogether neglected. The surprise was to come. In 1904 was published Part I of "The Dynasts," a play in verse, which was described as "An Epic-Drama of the War with Napoleon, in three Parts, nineteen Acts, and one hundred and thirty Scenes." People were amazed; the critics confounded. Hardy, far from being past his best, had triumphantly launched out on a second literary career at the age of sixty-four years, with what was to prove the grandest and most consummate achievement of his life. By 1908, when the third and concluding Part was published, it had to be admitted that the work was truly an epic, and among the greatest creations in our literature. To quote from it would give no idea of its magnificent and all-comprehending thought, its acute observation of the ways of men and women, its historical sense, its broad humour. It is a work which must be read as a whole to be appreciated.

He produced no other lengthy work, but numerous collections of shorter poems. In 1909 appeared "Time's Laughing-stocks," in 1914 "Satires of Circumstance," in 1919 "Moments of Vision," in 1922 "Late Lyrics and Earlier," in 1925 "Human Shows." A very beautiful short play in verse, "The Famous Tragedy of the Queen of Cornwall, at Tintagel in Lyonesse," was produced in 1923.

To some, Hardy seems harsh and unmusical, to many he appears gloomy and depressing; not all the poems he wrote were good poetry; but when we consider the volume of his poetry we cannot but agree that the writer was a true poet, and that he added something literary, new and valuable to English poetry.

Robert Bridges (1844-1930) is not a popular poet in the sense that his work is known to a large number of people. For the most part, the work of this "so scholarly a poet, so beautiful a writer of prose," deals with classical subjects, and therefore, though it is reverently admired by the small circle which takes the trouble to appreciate it, many readers pass it by. Yet in his lighter moments, Bridges, whose work is always a model of pure, precise, and melodious poetry, could write as dainty and simple lyrics as anyone.

Bridges published nearly twenty volumes of poems and plays. Some of his best work is to be found in "Shorter Poems" (1890), while "Prometheus" (1883), a "mask in the Greek manner," and "The Return of Ulysses" (1890), a romantic drama in five acts, will give you an idea of the subjects he chose. He was also a distinguished critic of poetry, who published, among others, volumes on Milton's prosody (1893) and on John Keats (1895).

The successor of Robert Bridges as poet laureate was John Masefield (b. 1875); and his early life, if it could be told fully, would provide a tale as packed with adventure, privation and suffering as any a romantic novelist could imagine. Mr. Masefield lived in many countries, working his way from one job to another. For years he served as a sailor before the mast in those sailing ships which still ply round South America.

Fortunately Mr. Masefield has given us accounts, though not in biographical form, of some of his adventures. He has told them in that fine poem entitled "Dauber" (1913), an epic of the sea, which tells how a boy went to sea in a sailing-ship, how his mates jeered at him and bullied him, how he proved in a mighty storm that he was not a coward, as they thought, and how he died. He has given us other glimpses in his exciting, swift-moving novel of South America, "Sard Harker" (1924), which tells of what happened to a sailor who went on shore and was late back for his boat, and in his earlier novels, "Captain Margaret" (1908), "Multitude and Solitude" (1909), "Jim Davis" (1911), "Salt-Water Ballads" (1902), and in many another place. On whatever Mr. Masefield writes the impress of those years of hardship and rough life is stamped indelibly.

A Modern Ballad Maker

There is an abruptness and a directness in his style which marks him off from all other writers of the day. Though he can write English which for purity, beauty, and nervous strength is not to be bettered, he is less the artist than the vigorous teller of tales. He must pour out his story, whether his language is adequate or not. Consequently, in his verse (in which he is at his best) we get rough-and-ready, forcible rhymes lit up by the most exquisite flashes of poetry. Mr. Masefield is the modern ballad maker, and as such has wrought a definite place for himself in our literature that none can dispute.

When in 1911 "The Everlasting Mercy" was published in a magazine, it created a sensation. This poem tells of a night in the life of a drunken wastrel, and relates it in the language of the low-down public-house. The tremendously vital power of the poem and its free use of coarse language amazed and shocked many people. But Masefield went on. Next year he produced "The Widow in the Bye-Street," and the year after "Dauber" and "The Daffodil Fields," all told in the same, realistic language and with the same fiery fervour.

Meanwhile, he had written two plays, the intensely sad "Tragedy of Nan" (1909) and an historic drama, "Pompey the Great" (1910).

He followed up his successes in narrative verse with "Lollingdon Downs" (1917) and "Reynard the Fox" (1919). The latter is an extraordinarily vivid tale which tells of a fox-hunt from the point of view of a fox.

Mr. Masefield has also turned his attention to religious subjects, which he handles in his usual direct and realistic style, and yet with reverence and reserve. His "Trial of Jesus" (1925) offended some people, while others declared the theme could not have been more beautifully or reverently treated. His mystery play entitled "The Coming of Christ" (1928) is an attempt to follow the centuries old tradition of English dramatic allegory. It was performed for the first time on Whit Monday, 1928, in Canterbury Cathedral, with music specially written for the occasion by Gustav Holst.

Another poet who can look back on a restless, early life of suffering and hardship is Mr. W. H. Davies (b. 1870), who emigrated to America, lived there as a tramp, worked as a cattleman on a steamer, and was reduced to peddling and singing in the streets until his first book of poems, "The Soul's Destroyer," was published in 1906.

Mr. Davies writes with a simplicity that is so fresh and natural that it is a delight to meet. He wanders out into the wonderful world of nature and sings happy songs about everything he sees.

The Essence of Phantasy.

The delicate, fairy-woven verses of Mr. Walter De La Mare (b. 1873) appeal to both children and adults alike. The world about which he writes is neither the real world nor fairyland, but a world all his own, which lies somewhere between the two. He seems to have extracted much of the best from the ballad, the folk-tale, the legend and the fairy-story, and blended a delicious mixture that is pure essence of phantasy.

Mr. Walter de la Mare's best-known books of poems are "Songs of Childhood" (1901), "The Listeners and other poems" (1912), "Peacock Pie" (1913), and "Moley and other Poems" (1918). He has also written a very beautiful fairy play, "Crossings" (1921), one or two novels, and a volume of short stories.

The World War robbed us of several poets who might have risen to great heights; it also helped to make the reputation of others. Rupert Brooke (d. 1915), even if his other work fades into oblivion, will always be remembered for his exquisite war sonnets, and particularly for that one which begins:

> If I should die, think only this of me;
> That there's some corner of a foreign field
> That is for ever England . . . .

James Elroy Flecker, who died of consumption at Davos in 1915, was enchanted by the glory and splendour of the East, which inspired many of his "Collected Poems" (1916) and the gorgeous drama "Hassan," which was produced in London in 1923. Charles H. Sorley, who was barely twenty when he was killed in battle, in 1915, would have written great poetry had he lived.

Wilfred Owen was killed in action in 1918. Two years later his "Poems" were published, and the world knew that yet another poet had been done to death in the most destructive of all conflicts. Julian Grenfell (d. 1915) left us, among other poems, "Into Battle," which has been described as the finest song of the War.

Love of the Countryside

The reputation of Edward Thomas (1878-1917), another poet who gave his life for his country, has increased exceedingly since the publication in 1920 of his poems. He was a writer and journalist by profession, but before his death unknown as a poet. It was, indeed, only during the last two years of his life that he poured forth in verse all his knowledge of and passionate love for the English countryside.

Robert Graves, Robert Nicholls, and Siegfried Sassoon all made names for themselves by realistic descriptions of the World War, which happily they survived. When hostilities were over, each turned to other themes. Edward Shanks has been described as "a worker in marble"; his quiet, steady, reserved work gains him fresh admirers every year.

Mr. Edmund Blunden is another who wins his way with quiet, faithful pictures of rural life, though he has published a book of another kind, written in prose but with a poet's pen, "Undertones of War," a reserved yet emotion-filled picture of what the War meant to a sensitive mind. Mr. G. K. Chesterton every now and then puts forth a rollicking poem; Mr. Hilaire Belloc writes delicious lyrics; Sir J. C. Squire writes poems both grave and gay; Mr. John Drinkwater, already mentioned as a dramatist, contributes serious verse; so do Mr. Lascelles Abercrombie and Mr. Gordon Bottomley. Mr. T. Sturge Moore delights with his "slow, vivid, sunlit style." Mr. Alfred Noyes has long been known as poet and critic, his long and most ambitious poem, "The Torch Bearers," being a description of the whole intellectual development of man. One of the latest poets to build a reputation is Mr. Humbert Wolfe, who shows a keenness of vision, a command of language and thought, and not infrequently a biting satire which argue a brilliant future for him.

We cannot close this necessarily incomplete survey without reference to one or two poets who belong or belonged partly to this generation and partly to the last. Mrs. Alice Meynell (d. 1922) enriched our literature with many a poem of rare loveliness. The verse of C. M. Doughty (d. 1926), author of a great travel book entitled "Travels in Arabia," is not so well known as it deserves to be, though almost everyone has heard of "The Cliffs" (1909), "The Clouds" (1912), "The Titans" (1916), and "Mansoul" (1920), all of which are built on the same massive foundations as his "Arabia Deserta." Sir William Watson (1858-1927) ranked among our major poets since the publication in 1890 of "Wordsworth's Grave."

Mr. A. E. Housman (b. 1859), a classical scholar of eminence, published in 1896 a book of lyrics called "The Shropshire Lad." For twenty-six years thereafter he published no more poetry, until in 1922 his "Last Poems" appeared.

One more name, that of Professor Gilbert Murray (b. 1866), cannot be omitted. His beautiful verse translations of Greek classical plays have all the stateliness of the original.

Recreators of Irish Patriotism

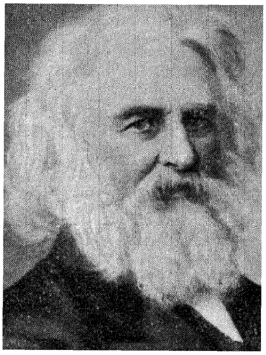
The leaders in the poetic revival in Ireland were William Butler Yeats and George Russell who wrote under the pseudonym Æ. Students both of Irish literature and art of bygone days, they set themselves to reinterpret the old Irish folklore in order to recreate Irish patriotism.

Mr. Yeats's poetry at its best expresses all the longing and pathos, all the unearthly beauty, of Ireland, that land of mystery and idealism. In "The Wind among the Reeds" (1899) are lyrics that enthrall with their loveliness, while his exquisite blank verse dramas, "The Countess Cathleen" (1892) and "The Land of Heart's Desire" (1894), leave an unforgettable memory.

George Russell, who died in 1935, published volumes of poems, a play called "Deirdre," and prose works. A thinker and a mystic, he brooded over the problems of mankind, believing in man's divine origin and his glorious destiny.

ENGLISH LETTERS OVERSEAS

Contributions to our Literature from all the Continents of the World



Henry Wadsworth Longfellow (1807-82).

IN this final chapter it is our pleasant duty to pay a tribute to the contributions to English literature that have come to us from overseas. Britain, that "little body with a mighty heart," is the home of English Literature, but her sons have through the centuries sailed the seas and settled in far-distant lands, so that to-day English is the mother tongue of countries in all five continents of the globe. And where English is the mother tongue, there English literature will flourish and develop. It will be in many ways a new literature, a literature reflecting the life of the people among whom it springs up, but it will have its roots deep in the literature of Shakespeare, of the Authorized Version, of Milton, Bunyan, Wordsworth, and all the great line of native English writers.

The first settlers in what are now called the United States of America were Englishmen, Puritans and members of other religious bodies who could not find in England that freedom to worship as they desired which they felt to be essential. For more than a century the vast majority of the settlers in this western land of promise were British, and, though for long huge swarms of immigrants from every European and many Asiatic and African countries have landed in America and become American citizens, the language of the United States has remained English. It is an English which is rapidly developing marked characteristics of its own; its vocabulary is growing more and more dissimilar from ours, in spite of borrowings on both sides; peculiarly American phrases and rhythms are to be found increasingly in books by American authors; while the spoken language, both as regards pronunciation and vocabulary and form, is still more unlike our home English. Yet in spite of all that, American literature remains essentially English literature, and its contributions, which have never been slight, grow ever more important.

The United States of America declared themselves an independent nation in 1775. A national literature was not slow in following. The first writer to achieve a reputation that spread to Europe was Washington Irving (1783-1859), whose works were much admired by Sir Walter Scott, who did a great deal to make them known. His "Sketch Book" (1820) is now established as a classic, for we can never forget the exquisite tales of Rip Van Winkle and The Legend of Sleepy Hollow which it contains. Other books by Irving are "Bracebridge Hall" (1822), "Tales of a Traveller" (1824), and "The Alhambra" (1832).

Meanwhile James Fenimore Cooper (1789-1851) was establishing for himself a colossal popularity. He attacked many subjects, and wrote far too much for most of his work to remain permanently interesting, but his tales of Red Indian life, the best of which are "The Last of the Mohicans" (1826), "The Pathfinder" (1840), and "The Deerslayer" (1841), delight generation after generation of boys and girls. He knew well the life he described, for he had been brought up on the banks of Lake Otsego, New York State, on an estate still not settled and in danger of attack from the red men.

Henry Wadsworth Longfellow (1807-82) and Walt Whitman (1819-92) are the two most conspicuous American poets of the nineteenth century. They were in every way utterly different from each other. Longfellow, who began to publish poetry at the age of fourteen, was a professor of modern languages, first at Bowdoin College and then at Harvard, until 1854, after which he devoted himself entirely to poetry. Whitman was in succession a printer, school teacher, journalist and publisher, and was a middle aged man before he attracted any public attention.

"The Song of Hiawatha" (1855), the poem through which the name of Longfellow has become a household word with us, illustrates perfectly the features of his poetry. For subjects he turned to the past, to the myths and legends of the American Indians, to stories of early settler days, as in "Evangeline" (1847) and "The Courtship of Miles Standish" (1858), or to the ordinary events of everyday, as in " Tales of a Wayside Inn " (1863) and " Household Poems " (1865). He told his tales in fluent, melodious verse, rhythmical and pleasing, but erring a little towards monotony.

There was nothing monotonous about Walt Whitman. In the same year as " Hiawatha " was published he startled and shocked everyone with " Leaves of Grass." People had every reason to be amazed and upset. To begin with, Whitman's poetry disobeyed all rules ; he wrote in what we now call free verse, which throws aside all the ordinary traditions of poetical metre, rhythm, accent and rhyme. Here is a very short song as an example :

Lumbermen in their winter camp, day-break in the woods, stripes of snow
On the limbs of trees, the occasional snapping,
The glad clear sound of one's voice, the merry song, the natural life of the woods,
The strong day's work,
The blazing fire at night, the sweet taste of supper, the talk, the bed of hemlock,
Boughs, and the bear-skin

His subjects were as different from the ordinary as his manner of writing. This great, big, good-natured, slow-moving, jolly man was the poet of the future, as Longfellow was the poet of the past. He is the prophet of democracy, " the rule of the people, by the people, for the people " as an American president avowed. A carpenter's son, he belonged to the so-called common people, lived and worked with them, and poured out rhapsodies on the glory of living, of working, of being manly, pure, self-esteeming and honourably proud. We call Whitman's poetry elemental, because of its absorption with real things and because he takes in all natural beauty, hills, woodlands, sunshine, clouds, and rain as though no life could be considered without them.

A Fighter against Oppression

John Greenleaf Whittier (1807-92) in his quiet way helped to effect a revolution in American life, for he worked hard for thirty-seven years to secure the abolition of slavery, and only ceased his efforts when victory was gained. The son of Quakers, and himself a devout member of the Society of Friends, he was brought up on the Bible, " The Pilgrim's Progress," and " The Friends' Journal," and early began to write. He is not a great poet, unless we think of him as a writer of ballads, but his verse was always sincere and pious and it was very powerful in advocating the cause to which he devoted himself.

A novelist who shows the serious side of America is Nathaniel Hawthorne (1804-64). His stories are stern tales, often with unpleasing subjects. " The Scarlet Letter " (1850), the book which secured his reputation, is the story of the sufferings of a young mother who is mercilessly cast out from the dour Puritan community in which she was living, and condemned to wear a scarlet A on the bosom of her frock because of her sin.

In Ralph Waldo Emerson (1803-82) America found its first considerable philosopher. After being a school teacher and a Unitarian minister, Emerson developed into a travelling lecturer, and most of his published works consist of collections of his lectures, or of rewritings of them in the form of essays.

Emerson's Essays

Emerson's lectures cover every phase of life, from Nature to " The Young American Scholar." He would think of a subject, then wait for ideas to gather round it. Whenever an idea came, he put it down in a notebook. He never argued his subjects, and so in his essays you do not get connected logic, but brilliantly expressed and inspired sentences. For this reason he is a most comforting author to dip into—for whatever mood you are in you can find something that goes straight to your heart—but a difficult one to read straight through.

He was poet as well as essayist and lecturer. " I am born a poet," he said, and though he could never handle metre over well, he uttered much in verse that is beautiful and penetrating.

A philosopher in lighter vein was Oliver Wendell Holmes (1809-94), whose books, half novels and half collections of sketches, " The Autocrat of the Breakfast Table " (1858), and " The Poet at the Breakfast Table " (1872), have become known the wide world over. Each consists of a series of sketches in prose and verse, connected by a slender plot.

With Francis Bret Harte (1839-1902) there begins that brilliant succession of American short story writers which has continued down to to-day. In this department of literature we can freely admit that American has beaten us. The American short story has a neatness, a swiftness and sureness in the telling which our own writers, except in a few instances, have been unable to achieve.

Bret Harte led an adventurous early life in California, being in turn teacher, miner, printer, express messenger, secretary of the San Francisco mint, and editor; and his tales, such as "The Luck of Roaring Camp" (1868), "The Outcasts of Poker Flat" (1869), and "How Santa Claus came to Simpson's Bar," tell in rollicking, humorous style of that land of beautiful scenery, mining camps, and Chinese labourers.

When he was seventeen Samuel Langhorne Clemens (1835-1910) became a pilot on the Mississippi river, and found there the pen-name under which he is now universally known. As the boats sailed up or down the pilots took soundings, and sang out "By the mark one, by the mark twain." In 1861 the Civil War broke out, and young Clemens, who had previously been a journeyman printer, found his occupation gone. He tried being a miner, and also began to supply articles and stories for local newspapers under the name of Mark Twain.

In 1867 a San Francisco newspaper gave him money enough to join a pleasure party that was sailing for Europe and the Mediterranean. The result of the trip was that inimitably funny book, "The Innocents Abroad" (1869), which immediately made him widely popular. From that time onwards he was recognized as the prince of humorists. a reputation which was increased by two masterpieces of boy life, "The Adventures of Tom Sawyer" (1875) and "Huckleberry Finn" (1884).

A Master of the Short Story

The story of Mark Twain brings us down almost to the present day. Another writer who died in the same year must claim our attention before we glance at living authors. This is William Sydney Porter (1862-1910), known to all the world as O. Henry, and perhaps the most perfect master of the short story the world has ever known.

O. Henry was a bank clerk. In 1896 he was accused of having defrauded the bank, and sentenced to five years' imprisonment. He was probably innocent, but no one knows the truth of the affair. However, before he was committed he had several stories accepted by important magazines, and in prison he gave himself steadily to short story writing.

After being in jail for three years and three months he was released, his sentence being shortened on account of good behaviour, and for the remaining eight years of his life he lived very quietly, and almost unknown, in New York. During this time he produced a large number of short stories, which were eagerly read all over the world. Many of these have been collected into book form. A few of the titles are "Cabbages and Kings" (1904), "The Gentle Grafter" (1908), "The Voice of the City" (1908), "Options" (1909), and "Rolling Stones" (1912).

O. Henry caught every phase of American life and pinned it down: his stories are exquisite miniatures. There is no one like him, and he cannot be imitated.

An American who became British

Perhaps, too, we may include here Henry James (1843-1916), who was born and brought up in America, but who from 1871 onwards lived in Europe, and became a naturalized British citizen. He is not a novelist to be read easily. He builds his books elaborately and slowly out of the thoughts and feelings, and the reason for the thoughts and feelings, of his sensitive, self-examining characters. His style, like his subject matter, is involved, elaborate, and demands persistent concentration. He and O. Henry stand at the opposite poles of literature.

Several modern American authors have big reputations in England. Of the novelists Sinclair Lewis, whose "Main Street" and "Babbitt" are vivid pictures of American life, is the best known, but Mr. Joseph Hergesheimer is always welcome, and so is Mr. Booth Tarkington. Miss Susan Glaspell's plays and novels, including "The Temple," "The Inheritors," and "Brook Evans" have made a deep impression, as has Mr. Theodore Dreiser's "An American Tragedy." A playwright of force and power is Mr. Eugene O'Neill, who, in plays like "The Hairy Ape," brings out all the bustle, restlessness and noise in American life. Among poets may be mentioned Mr. T. S. Eliot—difficult to read, but an artist and a philosopher—Mr. Vachel Lindsay, Mr. Arlington Robinson and Miss Emily Dickinson.

Australian literature may be said to be in its infancy, since it is less than one hundred years old. Yet it is a sturdy infancy, and only distance prevents it from being better known in England. Such men as Rolf Boldrewood (d. 1915) and C. J. Dennis prove that Australia has good novelists, while Henry Lawson (d. 1922) was a master of the short story as well as being a capable poet.

South Africa has two literatures, one in Taal, the South African form of Dutch, and one in English. Of writers in English the names of Gertrude Page, Perceval Gibbon, and Sarah Gertrude Millin, author of that remarkable book, " God's Step-children " (1924), are well known in this country. Among poets Francis Cary Slater holds a high place ; his work is through and through that of a South African. On the other hand, Arthur Shearly Cripps, a missionary in Mashonaland, is both English and African in his verse ; he has also written some charming stories of life in the Dark Continent.

When in 1925 Mr. Francis Cary Slater compiled a " Centenary Book of South African Verse " he was able to include poems by sixty-eight different writers, most of whom were living at the time.

Canada has also two literatures. You will remember that we captured the country from the French, and no doubt you know that in parts, notably in Quebec province, French has always remained the native tongue.

Making Two Reputations

Novels began to be written in Canada as long ago as 1832, when John Richardson (1796-1852) published " Waconsta," a thrilling story of the war of 1812. He has had many successors, including Sir Gilbert Parker, Ralph Connor (The Rev. Charles W. Gordon), Mr. Ernest Thompson Seton and Mr. Charles Roberts. Mrs. L. Adams Beck is one of those rare people who have made two distinct reputations as a novelist ; under her own name she publishes thrilling tales of the East, while as E. Barrington she is equally popular as an historical novelist.

In earlier days many men wrote accounts of the hard, dangerous life in Canada, and of the brave deeds performed while the country was being settled. These books were written not as literature, but as plain statements of fact. The really great history of Canada in settler days was written by an American, Francis Parkman (1823-93), who published in 1865 the first volume of a massive book, " France and England in the New World."

The life of Parkman is in itself a romance of undeterred courage and persistence. He was delicate from a child, and had to spend much of his time in the open air. Before he was twenty he had decided to write a history of the war between the English and French in Canada, and with that idea in mind he travelled hundreds of miles through forest and wilderness, and lived for months among the American Indians. His health broke down so badly that at one time, after he had begun his writing, he was so exhausted that he could hardly average more than six lines a day, and could not keep his eyes open except in a darkened room. So he invented a machine by the aid of which he could write with his eyes shut, and had books and notes read to him.

Senator Henry Cabot Lodge pays a glowing tribute to the indomitable will of the great historian. As a boy he remembered Parkman urging himself forward with the aid of two sticks and then stopping suddenly to lean against a house or a railing as though to recover his spent energy. When he arrived at manhood, " intellect, force, character, breeding, distinction. were all there in his strongly marked features, and, despite all he had passed through, so powerful had been his will that he had no expression of suffering nor in the least the look of an invalid."

Thomas Chandler Haliburton (1796-1865) ranks with Mark Twain and Charles Dickens as a humorist. He is the creator of Sam Slick, whose laughable doings are told in " The Clockmaker " (1837) and other books. In our own time Stephen Leacock, who in ordinary life is a learned professor, has provided delicious humour in such books as " Nonsense Novels," " Literary Lapses," and " Winnowed Wisdom."

Archibald Lampman (1861-91) in his short life produced poetry all but supreme in harmony and grace. Bliss Carman (1861-1929) excelled in sweeping ballad measure, and his later work, including " April Airs " (1916) and " Far Horizons " (1925), show increased power.

Literature's Unending Story

Though we must end Literature's Golden Story it is not finished. Even as we write the treasure-house of thought is being added to. Day by day the secrets that dwell in men's hearts are being revealed in precious phrase for all to read and to understand. Generation follows generation, each eager to grasp and hold aloft and carry in the race the flaming torch of knowledge. That torch burns bright to-day. All over the world, wherever English is spoken, there has been during the past twenty years or so a renaissance, a rebirth, of literature, a new gleam of splendour.

Though life be short and art immortal, yet it is only out of the mortality which is life that the immortality of art can grow.

LITERATURE'S GOLDEN STORY: CONTENTS AND INDEX

CONTENTS

Page
Introduction 5099
The Long Road to Canterbury: From Duke William of Normandy to Geoffrey Chaucer, the Father of English Poetry 5106
The Coming of King Arthur: Exploits Related by Poet and Romancer in England and in France .. 5110
Building for the Golden Age: The Gradual Rise of English Drama and how it was Helped by the Church 5121
Literature for Every Home: What We Owe to William Caxton, England's First Printer. 5127
The Glorious Renaissance: The New Learning that was Based on the Old Classics 5129
Spenser, the Poet's Poet: The Author of "The Faerie Queene," an Unfinished Masterpiece .. 5135
Forerunners of Shakespeare: Paving the Way for the Coming of the Master Dramatist of all Time .. 5139
Literature's Master-Mind: William Shakespeare, the Greatest Writer the World has Known 5142
Busy Elizabethan Writers: Playwrights, Translators, Pamphleteers, Chroniclers, and Historians .. 5148
The Fading of Romance: "Rare Ben Jonson," Francis Bacon, and John Donne 5152
The Greatest Book of All: The Exquisite Prose of the Authorized Version of the Bible 5157
Cavalier and Roundhead: Simpler and Shorter Poems and More Elaborate Verse 5159
The Blind Man Who Saw Much: The Story of "Paradise Lost" and of "Paradise Regained".. 5163
Bedford's Inspired Tinker: John Bunyan's Great Message to the World 5168
The Age of Rhyme and Reason: A Change Comes Over English Literature 5178
Three Famous Characters: Sir Roger de Coverley, Robinson Crusoe, and Lemuel Gulliver 5185
The Age of Alexander Pope: The Prodigious Work of a Writer with a Frail Body and an Unyielding Will 5191
Page
Johnson and His Dictionary: The Struggles and Triumphs of the Great Cham of English Literature 5195
Some of Johnson's Friends: Oliver Goldsmith, Richard Brinsley Sheridan, and Edmund Burke.. 5199
The Progress of the Novel: The Childhood of the Youngest Member of the English Literary Family .. 5204
The Revival of Romance: Poetry Frees Itself from the Bonds which had Held It 5208
Scotland's National Poet: And His English Contemporaries, Cowper, Crabbe, and Blake 5212
Wordsworth and Coleridge: The Part They Played in Reforming the Artificial Language of Poetry .. 5217
Poets of Youth and Beauty: The Troubled Careers of Byron, Shelley, and Keats 5221
Large-hearted Walter Scott: The Creator of the Historical Novel in English 5234
Notable Writers of History: Men who Revealed the Lessons of the Past for the Guidance of To-day 5237
The Victorian Novelists: The Genius of Dickens, Thackeray, Meredith, and Hardy 5241
Six Women Authors: The Brontes, Elizabeth Gaskell, George Eliot, and Jane Austen 5247
Velvet and Granite: The "Linked Sweetness" of Tennyson and the Deep Thought of Browning .. 5249
From Carlyle to Stevenson: The Triumphal March of Prose in the Nineteenth Century 5254
A Gallery of Story-tellers: The Ever-widening Boundaries of the Modern Novel 5258
To-day and To-morrow: Writers Who have Gained Their Laurels, and Others Who are Winning Them 5262
The Drama of Ideas Arrives: Rebellion Against the Time-honoured Laws of the Theatre .. 5269
Thomas Hardy's Great Epic: A Play in Verse Dealing with the Wars of Napoleon 5272
English Letters Overseas: Contributions to Our Literature from All the Continents of the World 5275

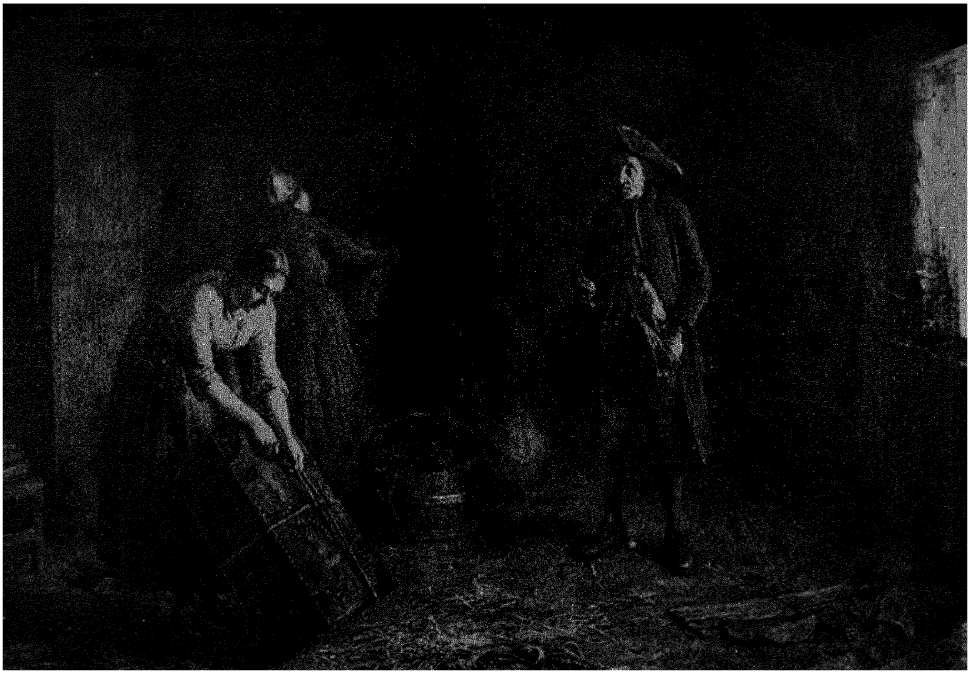
INDEX

(The italic figures indicate pictures)

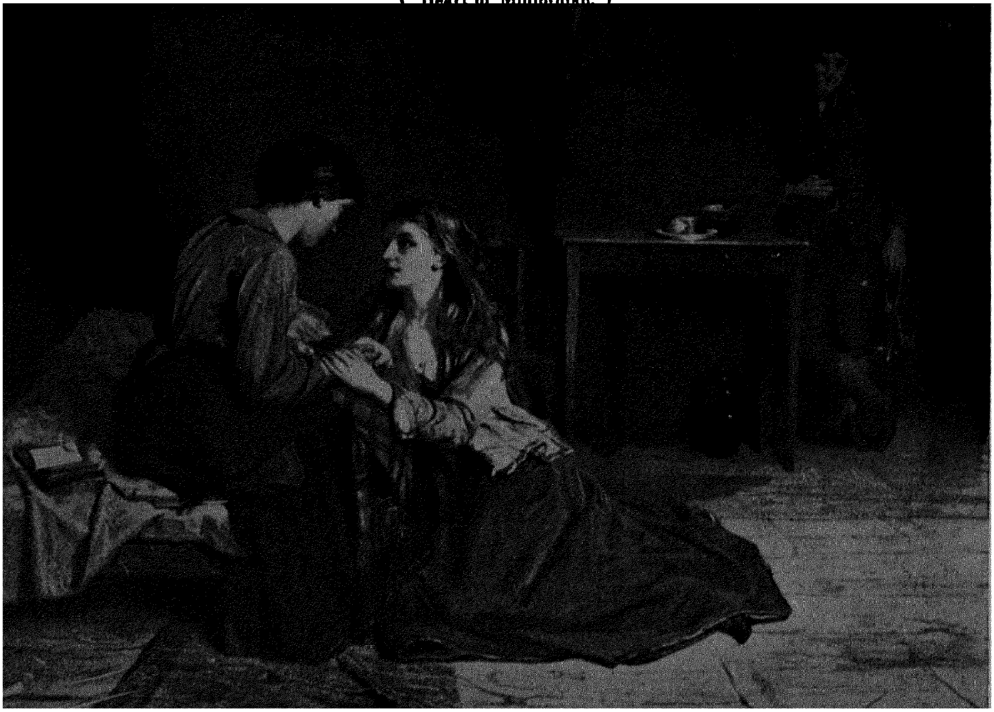
Abbey Theatre, Dublin, 5271
Abbotsford, *5175*, 5235
Abercrombie, Lascelles, 5274
"Absalom and Achitophel," 5182
"Adam Bede," 5248
Addison, Joseph, 5186, 5187, 5188, 5192, 5193, 5267
"Adonais," 5221
"Advancement of Learning," 5155
Æ. *See* Russell, George
Aelfric, 5105
"Alastor," 5224
Alcuin, 5103
Aldhelm, 5103
Alfred the Great, 5103
"Alice in Wonderland," 5260
allegory, 5123, 5168
Allingham, William, 5261
"Alton Locke," 5258
"Amelia," Fielding's, 5206
American literature, 5275, 5277
"Anatomy of Melancholy," 5161
"Ancient Mariner," 5217
"Androcles and the Lion," 5263
"Anglo-Saxon Chronicle," 5101, 5104
"Anna of the Five Towns," 5264
"Antiquary," *5286*
"Antony and Cleopatra," 5146
Arbuthnot, John, 5194
"Arcadia," 5149, 5151
Archer, William, 5268, 5270
"Areopagitica," 5160, 5166
Ariosto, 5150
Aristotle, 5139
"Arms and the Man," 5263
Arnold, Matthew, 5252, 5260
Arnold, Thomas, 5240
Arthurian legend, 5106, 5107, 5110, 5250
Ascham, Roger, 5131, 5136
"Asolando," 5252
Asser, 5104
"Astraea Redux," 5181
"As You Like It," 5143, 5146, 5151, *5226*
"Atalanta in Calydon," 5253
"Auld Lang Syne," 5216
"Auld Licht Idylls," 5265
"Aurora Leigh," 5252
Austen, Jane, 5248; home *5169*
Austin, Lady, 5212
Australian literature, 5277
Authorized Version, 5131, 5149, 5157, 5158
"Autobiography," Gibbon's, 5239
"Autocrat of the Breakfast Table," 5276
"Babbitt," 5277
"Back to Methuselah," 5263, 5264
Bacon Francis, 5131, *5152*, 5155
Baldwin, Stanley, 5266
Bale, John, 5123, 5139
ballads, 5107, 5125
Ballantyne, publisher, 5235
Ballantyne, R. M., 5259
"Barchester Towers," 5259
Barclay, Alexander, 5124
bard, 5100, 5101
Barker, H. Granville, 5270
Barnes, Barnabe, 5149
Barnes, William, 5261
Barrett, Elizabeth. *See* Browning, Elizabeth Barrett.
Barrie, Sir James, 5265, 5270
Barrington, E. *See* Beck, Mrs L. Adams
"Barry Lindon," 5244
"Battle of Agincourt," 5150
"Battle of Brunanburh," 5104, 5105
"Battle of Maldon," 5105
"Battle of Otterburne," 5125 5210
"Battle of the Books," 5189
Baxter, Richard, 5161
Beauclerk, Topham, 5199
Beaumont, Francis, 5154
Beck, Mrs. L. Adams, 5278
Beckford, William, 5207
Bede, Venerable, 5102, 5157
Beerbohm, Max, 5268
"Beggar's Opera," 5194
"Bell, Acton." *See* Bronte, Anne.
"Bell, Currer." *See* Brontë, Charlotte.
"Bell, Ellis." *See* Bronte, Emily.
Belloc, Hilaire, 5268, 5274
Bennett, Arnold, *5100*, 5264
Bentley, Richard, 5192
"Beowulf," 5101
Berners, Lord, 5131
bestiaria. *See* natural histories, early.
"Bevis of Southampton," 5107
Bible, English, 5131, 5157, 5158
"Bible in Spain," 5258
Bishops' Bible, 5157, 5158
Blackmore, R. D., 5259
Blake, William, 5211, 5214
"Blessed Damozel," 5253
Blind Harry, 5125
Blunden, Edmund, 5274
Boccaccio, 5108
Boldrewood, Rolf, 5277
Bolingbroke, Henry St. John, Viscount, 5194
"Book of Nonsense," 5261
Borrow, George, 5258
Boswell, James, *5114*, 5198, 5199
Bottomley, Gordon, 5274
Bowen, Marjorie, 5266
Brawne, Fanny, 5233
"Bride of Abydos," 5221
"Bride of Lammermoor," 5233
Bridges, Robert, *5272*, 5272
"British Weekly," 5268
Brontë, Anne, 5247
Brontë, Branwell, 5247
Brontë, Charlotte, *5247*, 5247
Brontë, Emily, 5247
Brooke, Rupert, 5133, 5273
Browne, Hablot K., 5242
Browne, Sir Thomas, 5161
Browning, Elizabeth Barrett, 5249, 5250-52
Browning, Robert, 5249, 5250-5252, 5253
"Brut," 5106, 5111
Bryce, Viscount, 5240
Buckhurst, Lord. *See* Sackville, Thomas.
Bulwer-Lytton, 5258
Bunyan, John, 5157, *5168*, 5168; birthplace, *5174*
Burke, Edmund, 5199, 5202
Burns, Robert, *5118*, 5211, *5212*, 5215
Burton, Robert, 5161
Butler, Samuel ("Erewhon"), 5259

Butler, Samuel ("Hudibras"), 5183
Byron, Lord, *5118*, *5120*, *5221*, 5221; home in Venice, *5175*
"Cabbages and Kings," 5277
Caedmon, 5102
"Caesar and Cleopatra," 5263
Canadian literature, 5278
"Candida," 5264
"Canterbury Tales," 5109, 5128
"Captain Singleton," 5188
Carlyle, Thomas, *5254*, 5251
Carman, Bliss, 5278
"Carnival," 5265
Carroll, Lewis, 5260
"Caste," 5260
"Castle of Indolence," 5191
"Castle of Otranto," 5207
"Catiline," 5152, 5153
"Catriona," 5257
Caxton, William, 5112, 5121, *5127*, *5127*
Chalfont St. Giles Milton's house, *5171*
Chapman, George, 5154, 5233
"characters," 5162, 5187
Charlemagne, 5103, 5106
Chatterton, Thomas, 5099, 5210
Chaucer, Geoffrey *5106*, 5108, 5136
Chesterfield, Philip Stanhope, Earl of, 5196
Chester plays, 5122
Chesterton, G. K., 5268, 5274
Chettle, Henry, 5140
"Chevy Chase," 5125, 5210
"Childe Harold," 5221
"Child's Garden of Verses," 5257
Chrétien de Troyes, 5112
"Christabel," 5218
chronicle plays, 5123, 5139
chronicles, early, 5106
Cibber, Colley, 5193
"City of Dreadful Night," 5261
"Clarissa," 5205
Clarke, Charles Cowden, 5233
"Clayhanger," 5264
Clemens, S. L. *See* Twain, Mark.
"Cloister and the Hearth," 5258
Clough, A. H., 5252
Coleridge, S. T., 5217-5220
Collins, Wilkie, 5259
Collins, William, 5209, 5210
comedy, early, 5130
"Comedy of Errors," 5144
"Coming of Christ," 5107
"Compleat Angler," 5183
"Comus," 5165
"Confessio Amantis," 5124
Congreve, William, 5183
"Coningsby," 5250
Connor, Ralph, 5278
"Conquest of Peru," 5276
Conrad, Joseph, 5265, 5267
Constable, Henry, 5149
Constable, publisher, 5235
Cooper, James Fenimore, 5275
Copland, Robert, 5128
Coppard, A. E., 5267
"Coriolanus," 5146, 5153, *5231*
"Cornhill Magazine," 5211
"Corsair," 5221
"Cottar's Saturday Night," 5216
"Countess Cathleen," 5274
"Courtship of Miles Standish," 5275
Coventry plays, 5122
Coverdale, Miles, 5131, 5158
Coverley, Sir Roger de, 5185, 5186, 5187, 5188
Coward, Noel, 5270
Cowden Clarke, Charles. *See* Clarke, Charles Cowden.
Cowley, Abraham, 5180
Cowper, William, 5211, 5212-5214
Crabbe, George, 5211, 5213
"Cranford," 5247
Cranmer, Thomas, 5131
Crashaw, Richard, 5160
Creighton, Mandell, 5240
Cripps, Arthur Shearly, 5278
"Critic," 5202
criticism, 5181, 5268
Cromwell, Henry, 5192
"Crown of Wild Olive," 5256
"Cymbeline," 5144, 5147, *5226*
Cynewulf, 5105
"Dangerous Ages," 5266
Daniel, Samuel, 5149, 5150
"Daniel Deronda," 5248
Dante, 5108
Darwin, Charles, 5252, 5260
"Dauber," 5273
D'Avenant, Sir William, 5180, 5181
Davies, W. H., 5215, 5273
"Dear Brutus," 5270
"Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire," 5237
"Deerslayer," 5275
Defoe, Daniel, 5151, 5186, 5187, 5204
"Deirdre of the Sorrows," 5271
Dekker, Thomas, 5151, 5154
De La Mare, Walter, 5273
Democritus Junior. *See* Burton, Robert.
Denham, Sir John, 5180
Dennis, C. J., 5277
De Quincey, Thomas, 5267
"Deserted Village," 5201
"Diana of the Crossways," 5245
Dickens, Charles, *5116*, *5241*, 5241-5243; homes, *5170*
Dickinson, Emily, 5277
"Disenchantment," 5265
Disraeli, Benjamin, 5258
"Dr. Faustus," 5141
"Dr. Jekyll and Mr. Hyde," 5257
"Doctor's Dilemma," 5263
Dodgson, C. L. *See* Carrol, Lewis
Dodsley, Robert, 5190
"Don Juan," 5221, *5222*
Donne, John, 5156
Dorchester, Thomas Hardy's home, *5176*
Douai Bible, 5158
Doughty, C. M., 5274
Douglas, Gawain, 5125
Douglas, James, 5268
Doyle, Sir A. Conan, 5265
drama, 5269-5271; early, 5121-5123, 5139; Elizabethan, 5140-5147, 5152-5155; Restoration 5179, 5181, 5182
"Drapier's Letters," 5190
Drayton, Michael, 5149, 5150
Dreiser, Theodore, 5277
"Drink to me only with thine eyes," 5149
Drinkwater, John, 5271, 5274
Dryden, John, 5112, *5177*, *5178*, 5180, 5181
Du Bartas, 5150
"Duchess of Malfi," 5155
Dukes, Ashley, 5270
Dunbar, William, 5125
"Dunciad," 5192, 5193
Dunsany, Lord, 5271
"Dynasts," 5272
Earle, John, 5162
"Earthly Paradise," 5253
Edial Hall, *5176*
"Edward II," Marlowe's, 5141
"Egoist," 5245
"Elegy," Gray's, 5209
Eliot, George, 5248
Eliot, T. S., 5277
Ellwood, Thomas, 5167
Elstow, Bunyan's birthplace, *5174*
Emerson, R. W., 5276
"Eminent Victorians," 5268
"Emma," 5248
"Endymion," 5233
Enfield, Charles Lamb's home, *5174*
"English Bards and Scotch Reviewers," 5221
"Enoch Arden," 5250
"Eothen," 5240
Erasmus, 5130
"Erewhon," 5259
Ervine, St. John, 5268, 5271
essay, 5267
"Essay of Dramatick Poesie," 5181
"Essay on Criticism," 5192
"Essay on Man," 5193
"Essays," Bacon's, 5155
Etheredge, George, 5183
"Ethics of the Dust," 5256
"Euphues," 5134, 5148, 5151
euphuism, 5148
"Evangeline," 5275
Evans, Mary Ann. *See* Eliot, George.
Evelyn, John, 5184
"Everlasting Mercy," 5273
"Everyman," 5123
"Every Man in His Humour," 5152
Evoe. *See* Knox, E. V.
"Excursion," 5219
Exeter Book, 5105
"Faerie Queene," 511- 5124, 5135, 5136, 5137
Fairfax, Edward, 5150
"Far from the Madding Crowd," 5246
"Farmer's Wife," 5270
Farquhar, George, 5183
Farringford, *5172*
Fay, Frank, 5271
Fay, W. G., 5271
"Ferrex and Porrex," 5140
fiction, 5186; early, 5151. *See also* novel, short story
Fielding, Henry, 5205
"Fingal," 5211
"First Principles," 5261
Fisher, John, 5126
Fitzgerald, Edward, 5252
Flecker, J. E., 5274
Fletcher, Giles, 5149
Fletcher, John, 5147, 5154
Fletcher, Phineas, 5149
Florio, John 5150
Ford, John, 5154
"Fors Clavigera," 5256
Forster, E. M., 5265
"Forsyte Saga," 5265
Freeman, E. A., 5240
"French Revolution," Carlyle's, 5255
Froissart, Jean, 5131
Froude, J. A., 5240
Fuller, Thomas, 5162
Gad's Hill, *5170*
Galahad, *5110*
Galsworthy, John, 5265, 5270
"Game and Playe of Chesse," 5128
"Gammer Gurton's Needle," 5140
"Garden of Cyrus," 5161
Gardiner, Samuel R., 5240
Garrick, David, 5195, 5199
Gascoigne, George, 5134
Gaskell, Mrs., 5247
Gasquet, Cardinal, 5240
"Gawayne and the Grene Knight," 5107, 5108
Gay, John, 5194
Geneva Bible, 5158
"Gentle Shepherd," 5194
Geoffrey of Monmouth, 5110
"Giaour," 5221
Gibbon, Edward, 5199, *5237*, 5237-5239
Gibbon, Perceval, 5278
Glaspell, Susan, 5277
Glover, Halcott, 5271
"Goblin Market," 5261
"Golden Arrow," 5266
"Golden Legend," 5128
"Golden Treasury," 5261
Golding, Richard Arthur, 5150
Goldsmith, Oliver, 5199-5202
"Good Natur'd Man," 5201
"Gorboduc," 5140
Gordon, Charles W. *See* Connor, Ralph.
Gosse, Sir Edmund, 5268
Gosson, Stephen, 5149
Gower, John, 5123
Grail, Holy, 5111
Graves Robert, 5274
Gray, Thomas, *5208* 5209; haunt, *5109*
Great Bible, 5157, 5158
"Grecian Urn," ode, 5233
Green, J. R., 5240
Greene, Robert, 5140, 5142, 5151
Gregory, Lady, 5271
Gregson, J. R., 5271
Grenfell, Julian, 5274
Greville, Sir Fulke, 5149
Grey of Wilton, Lord, 5137
"Groatsworth of Wit," 5142, 5150
Grote, George, 5240
Guedalla, Philip, 5268
"Gulliver's Travels," 5155, 5156, 5189, 5190
"Guy Mannering," *5285*
"Guy of Warwick," 5107
Haliburton, T. C., 5278
Hall, Joseph, 5160
Hallam, Arthur Henry, 5249
Hallam, Henry, 5240
"Hamlet," 5143, 5146, *5228*
"Hard Cash," 5258
Hardy, Thomas, 5246, 5272; home, *5176*
Harrington, Sir John, 5150
"Harry Richmond," 5245
Harte, F. Bret, 5276
Harvey, Gabriel, 5136, 5137 5150
Harwood H. M., 5271
"Hassan," 5274
Hathaway, Anne, 5142
Hawes, Stephen, 5124
Hawthorne, Nathaniel, 5276
Hazlitt, William, 5267
"Heart of Midlothian," *5232*
Henry, O., 5277
"Henry IV," 5145, *5230*
"Henry V," 5146, 5151, *5230*
"Henry VI," 5144, 5151, *5231*
"Henry VIII," 5147, *5229*
"Henry Esmond," 5244
Henryson, Robert, 5125
Henry the Minstrel. *See* Blind Harry.
Henty, G. A., 5259
Herbert, A. P., 5268
Herbert, George, 5156
"Hereward the Wake," 5258
Hergesheimer, Joseph, 5277
"Hero Worship," 5255
Herrick, Robert, 5159, 5180
Hesketh, Lady, 5213
Heylyn, Peter, 5162
Heywood, John, 5123
Heywood, Thomas, 5154
"Hiawatha," 5275
Hilda, St., 5101, 5102
"Hind and the Panther," 5182
history, 5237, 5238-5240, 5268
Hoccleve. *See* Occleve, Thomas.
Holinshed, Raphael, 5151
Holland, Philemon, 5150
Hollingshead. *See* Holinshed.
Holmes, Oliver Wendell, 5276
Holmes, Sherlock, 5265
"Holy Dying," 5161
"Holy Living," 5161
"Holy War," 5177
Homer, Chapman's, 5154
"Horn," 5107
"Hound of Heaven," 5253
"Hours of Idleness," 5221
"Household Words," 5243
Housman, A. E., 5274
Housman, Laurence, 5271
"Huckleberry Finn," 5277
"Hudibras," 5183
Hughes, Thomas, 5259
Hume, David, 5238, 5239
"Humphrey Clinker," 5207
Hunt, Holman, 5253

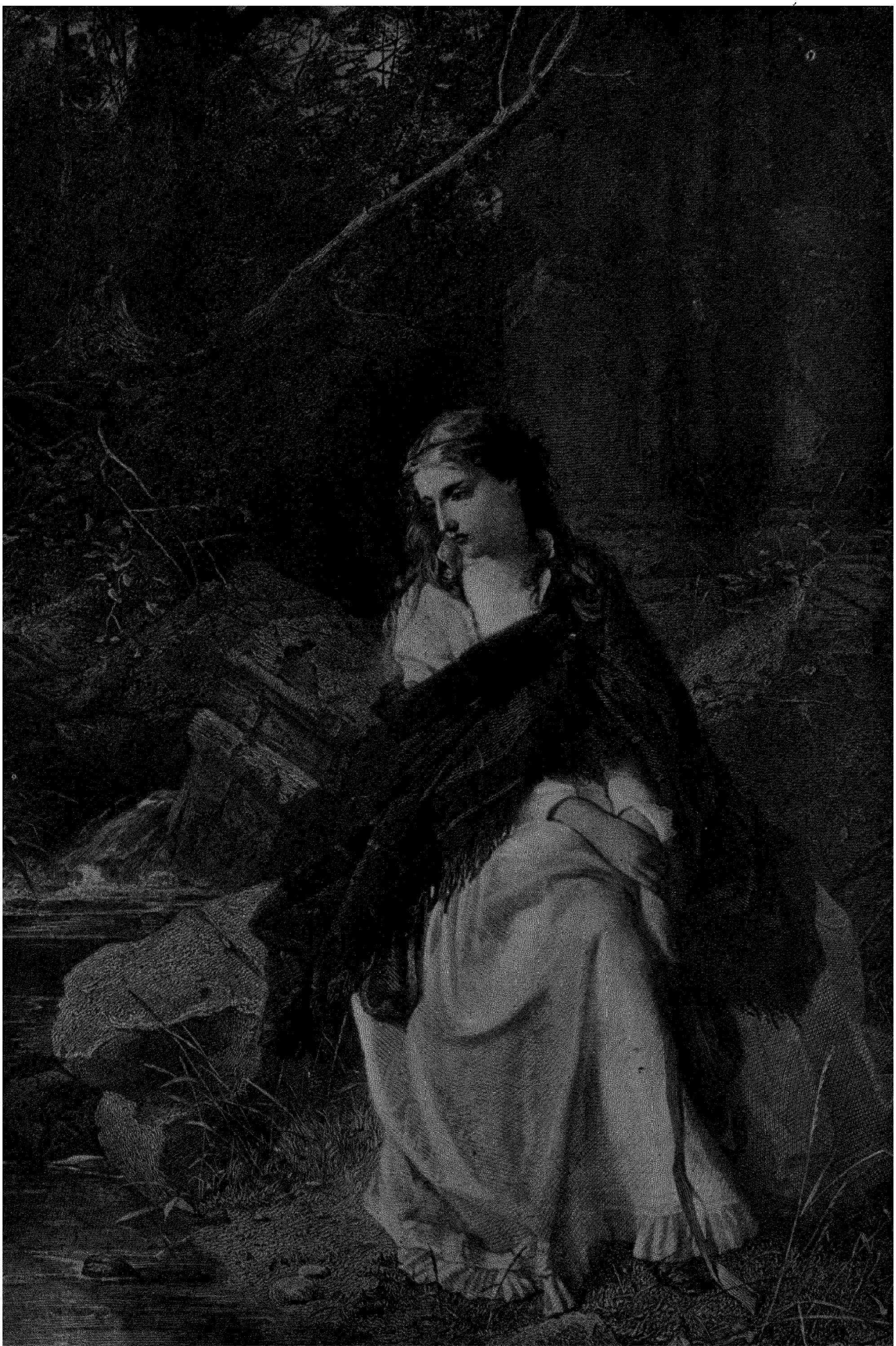
The Lady of the Lake, Ellen Douglas, whom FitzJames (James V in disguise) meets on the shores of Loch Katrine where he has lost his way after a stag hunt in the Trossachs. The daughter of an old favourite of the King, she has become an outlaw.



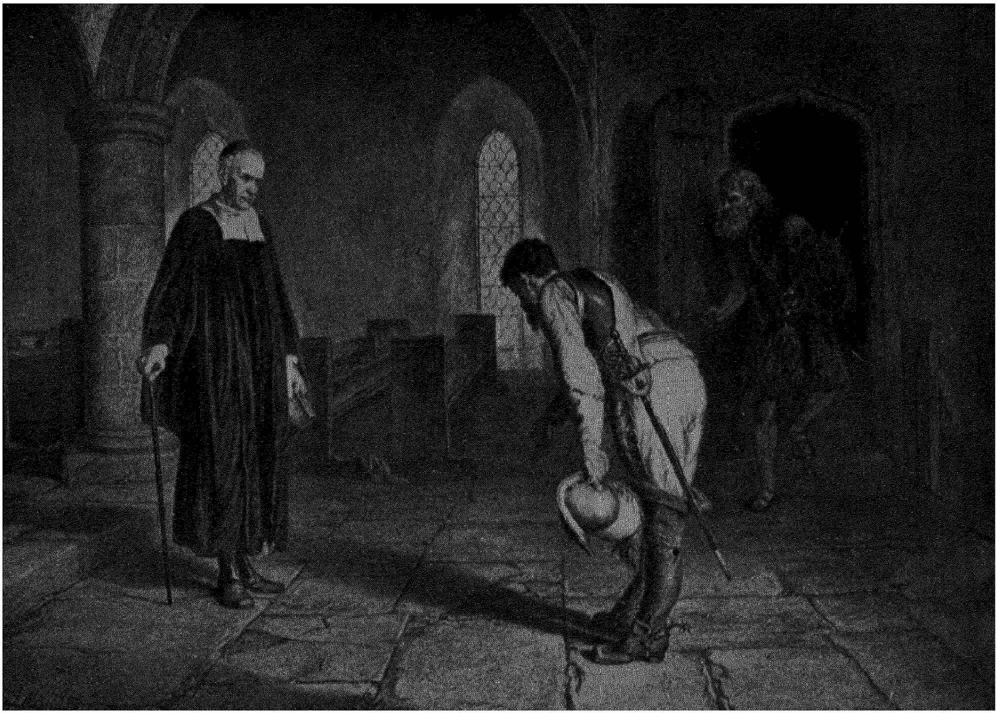
Wearing an old laced hat of his father's and carrying an empty tobacco-pipe, the Laird of Dumbiedikes every day, year in and year out, came to Davie Deans' cottage at Woodend to feast his eyes silently on Jeanie. ("Heart of Midlothian.")



Jeanie Deans, the daughter of Davie Deans, the Cameronian and cow-feeder of St. Leonard's Crags, pays a visit to her beautiful half-sister Effie, who has been put in prison on a false charge of having murdered her child and has been found guilty. ("Heart of Midlothian.")



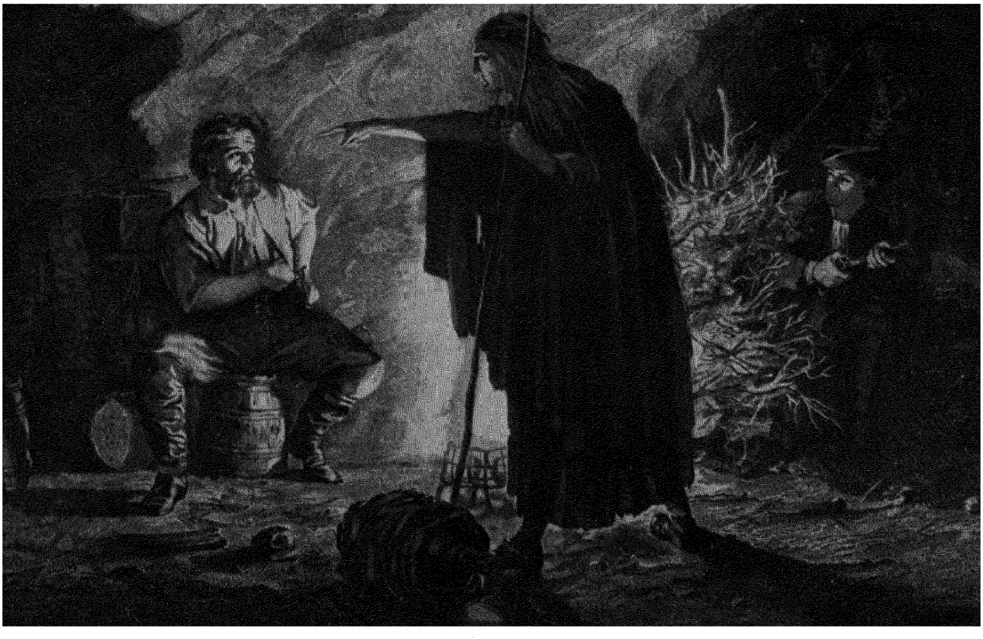
Lucy Ashton at the Mermaiden's Fountain. So beautiful did she appear to the eyes of Edgar Ravenswood, that instead of bidding her farewell, as he had intended, he "gave his faith to her for ever, and received her troth in return" ("The Bride of Lammermoor," chapter xx).



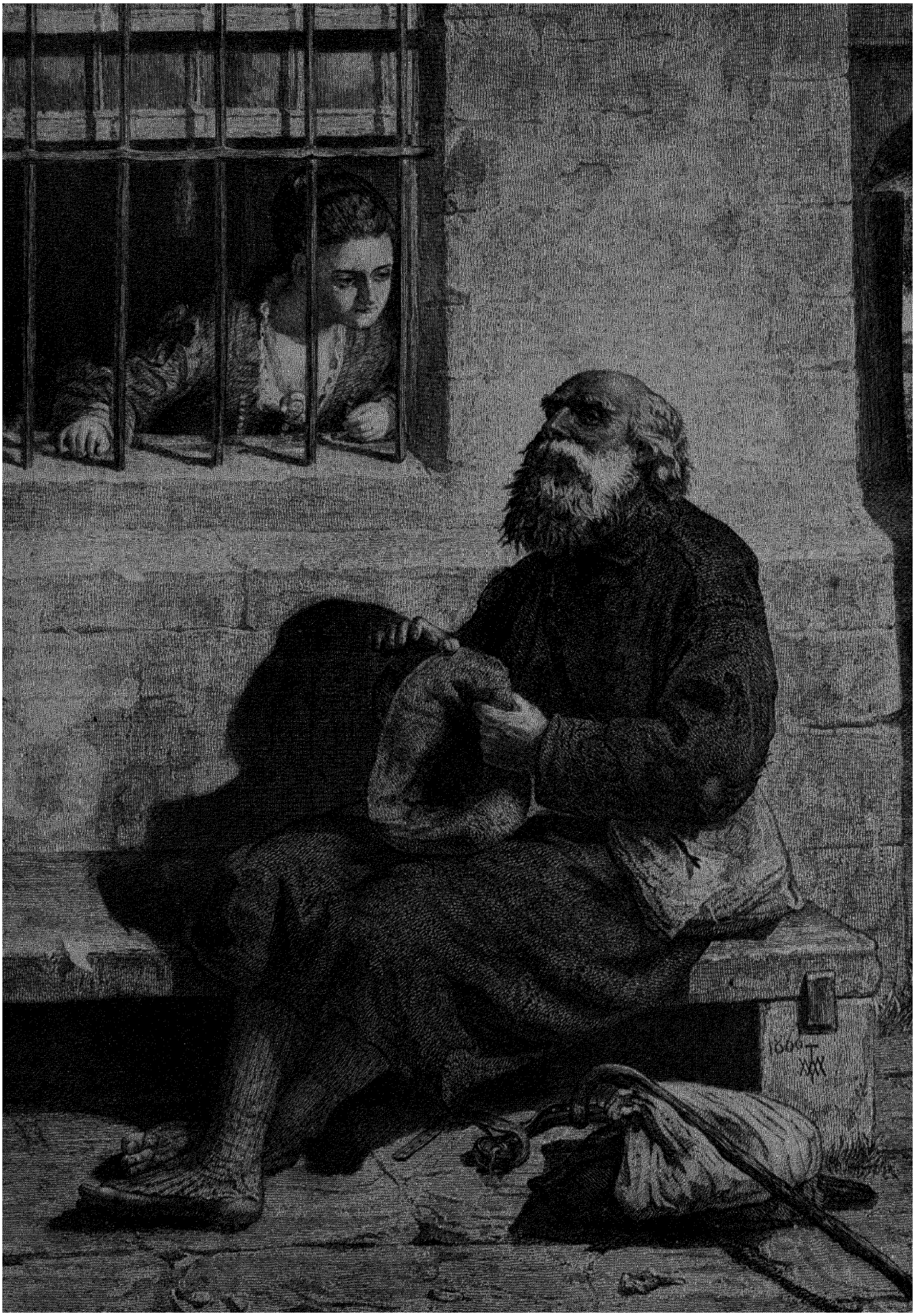
Dugald Dalgetty, a soldier of fortune, and Ranald MacEagh encounter the clergyman whose discourse they have just heard. By flattering the preacher, Dalgetty obtains help in making good his escape. (" Legend of Montrose ")

Frank Osbaldistone finds a man's glove on the library table. Declaring it belonged to her grandfather, Diana Vernon produces what purports to be the fellow. But they both belong to the right hand. (" Rob Roy.")

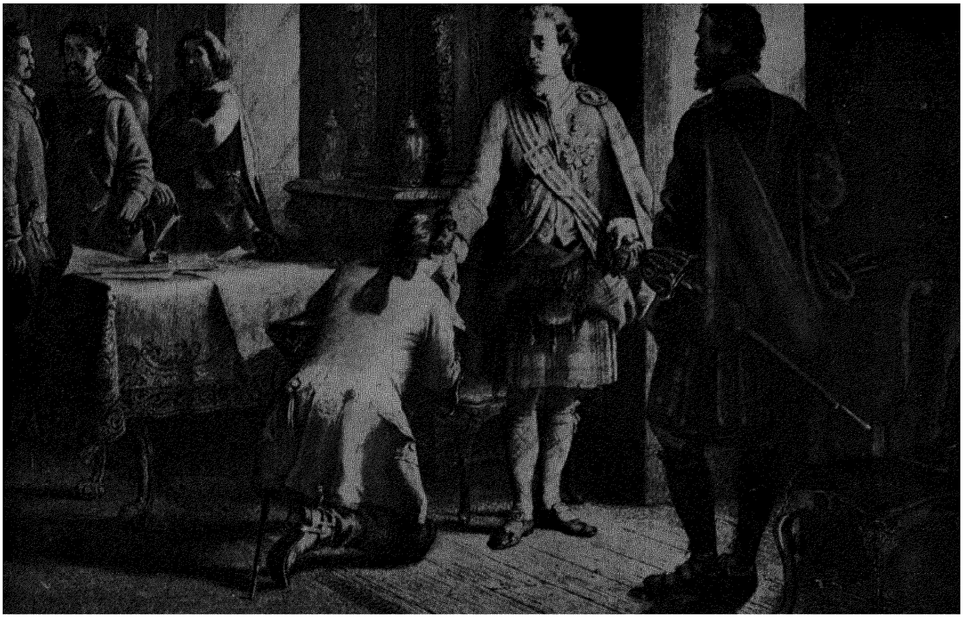
Darsie Latimer, having been saved from the quicksands, sups with his preserver. His host asks Cristal Nixon and old Mabel Moffat to say grace, but they refuse. The girl whom Darsie had first seen at the cottage door



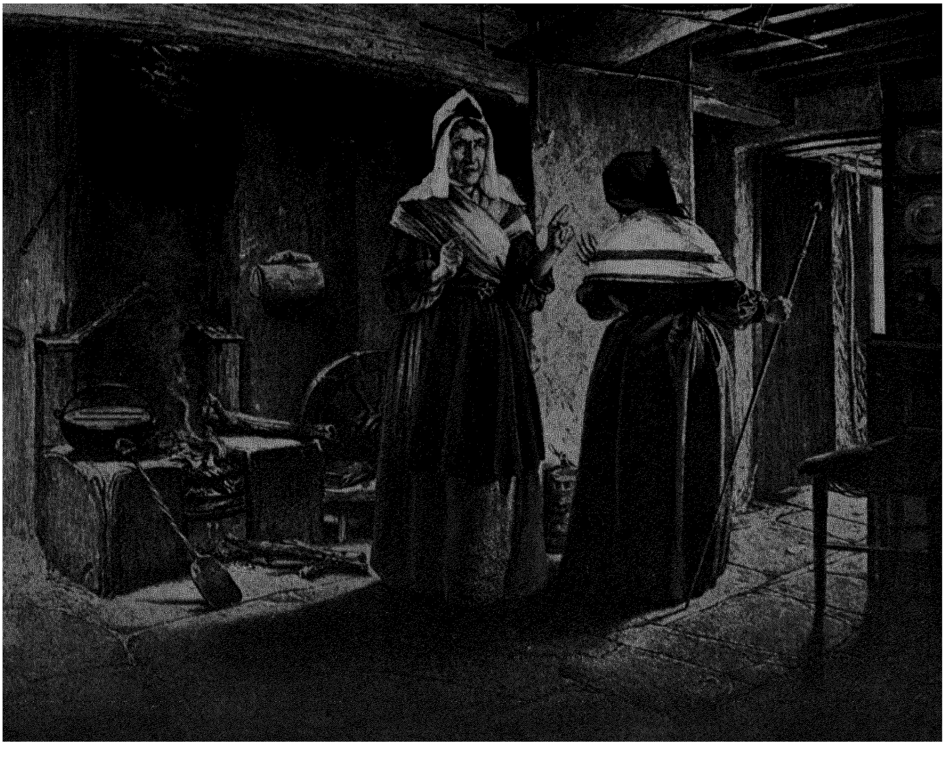
The capture of Dirk Hatteraick. Meg Merrilies, having heaped some flax together, drops a firebrand on it and gives the signal to Bertram and Dinmont, who had been joined by Hazlewood. “Because the Hour's come, and the Man,” she cried in a firm, steady voice. (“Guy Mannering.”)



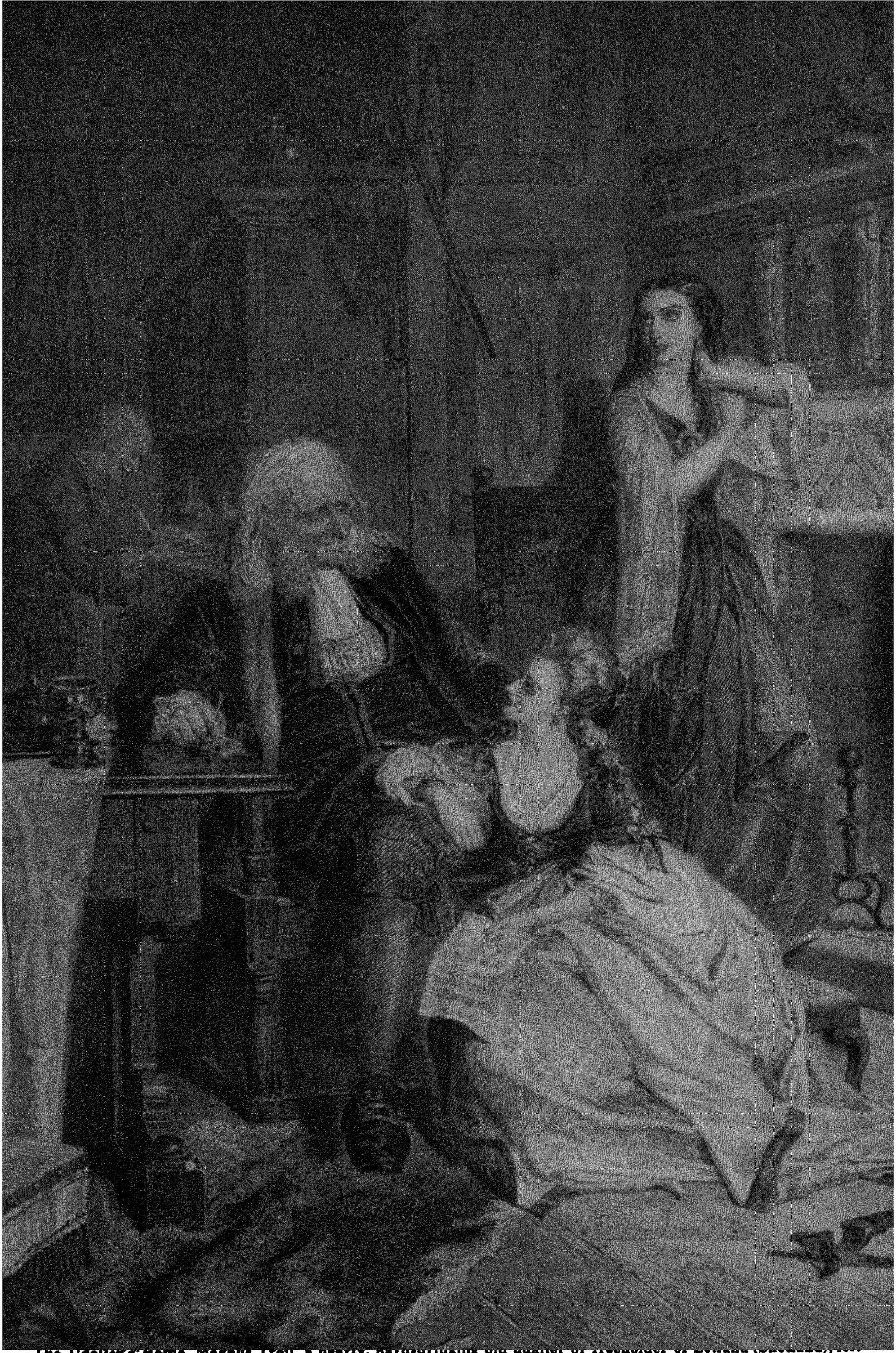
The interview between Miss Wardour and Edie Ochiltree at the grated window of the flagged parlour. Having thanked the beggar for his services, she makes various offers of reward, only to be met with refusals and, in the end, a word of advice ("The Antiquary," chapter xii).



Fergus MacIvor introduces Edward Waverley to the Young Chevalier at Holyrood. "I beg your pardon for interrupting you, my dear MacIvor," said Charles Edward, interrupting him; "but no master of ceremonies is necessary to present a Waverley to a Stuart." ("Waverley.")



Lady Margaret Bellenden, armed on this solemn occasion with an immense gold-headed staff, visits Mause Headrigg and upbraids the old servant for not allowing her son Cuddie to take part in the wappenschaw. ("Old Mortality.")



The Udaller's Home, Magnus Troil, a hearty, hard-drinking old udaller or freeholder of Zetland (Shetland), left a widower after but five years of happy married life, enjoys the warmth and comfort of his fireside with his beautiful daughters, Minna and Brenda ("The Pirate," chapter ii).

Hunt, Leigh, 5233, 5267
"Hunting of the Snark" 5260
Huxley, Julian, 5263
Huxley, T. H., 5261
"Hymn of Pan," 5224
"Hypatia," 5258
"Hyperion," 5233
"Idylls of the King," 5250
"Iliad," Pope's, 5192
"Il Penseroso," 5164
"Importance of Being Earnest," 5260
Ingelow, Jean, 5261
"Inland Voyage," 5257
"In Memoriam," 5249, 5250
"Innocents Abroad," 5277
"Instauratio Magna," 5155
interludes, 5123, 5139
"Into Battle," 5274
Irving, Washington, 5275
"It's Never too Late to Mend," 5258
Jacobs, W. W., 5267
James, Henry, 5277
James I of Scotland, 5125
"Jane Eyre," 5247, 5248
"Jew of Malta," 5141
"Joan and Peter," 5263
"Joanna Godden," 5266
"John Gilpin," 5213
Johnson, Samuel, *5114*, *5195*, 5195-5200, 5209; Edial Hall, *5170*
Johnston, Myrtle, 5266
Jones, Henry Arthur, 5269
Jones, Sir William, 5199
Jonson, Ben, 5143, 5149 5152
"Joseph Andrews," 5205
journalism, early, 5187
"Journal of the Plague Year," 5188
"Journal to Stella," 5189
"Jude the Obscure," 5246
"Julius Caesar," 5146, 5153
"Jungle Books," 5264
"Juno and the Paycock," 5271
Kaye-Smith, Sheila, 5266
Keats, John, *5118*, 5154, 5224
Kid, Thomas. *See* Kyd, Thomas.
"Kidnapped," 5257
"Kim," 5264
"Kingis Quhair," 5125
"King John," 5145
Kinglake, Alexander, 5240
"King Lear," 5146, 5151
Kingsley, Charles, *5258*, 5258
Kingston, W. H. G., 5259
Kipling, Rudyard, 5264
"Kipps," 5263
"Knight of the Burning Pestle," 5151
Knolles, Richard, 5151
Knox, E. V., 5268
"Kubla Khan," 5218
Kyd, Thomas, 5140
"Kynge Johan," 5123, 5139
"Lady of Shalott," 5112
"Lady of the Lake," 5235, *5281*
"Lady Windermere's Fan," 5260
"L'Allegro," 5164
Lamb, Charles, 5267; home, *5174*
Lampman, Archibald, 5278
"Land of Heart's Desire," 5274
Langland, William, 5107
Langton, Bennet, 5199
"Last Days of Pompeii," 5258
"Last of the Mohicans," 5275
Latimer, Hugh, 5126
"Latter-Day Pamphlets," 5255
"Lavengro," 5259
Lawes, Henry, 5165
Lawrence, D. H., 5265
Lawson, Henry, 5277
Layamon, 5106, 5111
"Lay of the Last Minstrel," 5235
"Lays of Ancient Rome," 5240
Leacock, Stephen, 5278
Lear, Edward, 5261
"Leaves of Grass," 5276
"Lectures on Shakespeare" Coleridge's, 5219
Lee, Sir Sidney, 5268
Lee, Vernon, 5268
"Legend of Good Women," 5109
"Legend of Montrose," *5264*
"Legend of Sleepy Hollow" 5275
Lewes, George Henry, 5248
Lewis, M. G. ("Monk"), 5207
Lewis, Sinclair, 5277
Leland, John, 5151
"Life of Johnson," Boswell's, 5198
Lindsay, Vachel, 5277
Literary Club, 5198, 5199
"Little Minister," 5265
"Lives of the Poets," 5198
"Locksley Hall," 5249
Lodge, Thomas, 5140, 5149, 5151
Lollards, 5121
"Lollingdon Downs," 5273
Longfellow, H. W., *5275*, 5275
Lonsdale, Frederick, 5270
"Lord Jim," 5265
"Lord Raingo," 5265
"Lorna Doone," 5259
"Loss of the Royal George," 5213
Lovelace, Richard, 5159
"Love's Labour's Lost," 5144
Lucas, E. V., 5268
"Luck of Roaring Camp," *5277*
"Lucrece," 5142
Luther, Martin, 5130
"Lycidas," 5165
Lydgate, John, 5124
Lyly, John, 5134, 5148, 5151
Lynd, Robert, 5265
"Lyrical Ballads," 5217, 5218
lyrics, Caroline, 5159; Elizabethan, 5149
Lytton, Lord. *See* Bulwer Lytton.
Macaulay, Lord, *5119*, 5240
Macaulay, Rose, 5266
"Macbeth," 5146, 5151
"Mac Flecknoe," 5182
Mackenzie, Compton, 5265
Macpherson, James, 5211
"Maid's Tragedy," 5151
"Main Street," 5277
Malory, Sir Thomas, 5107, 5112
"Man and Superman," 5264
Mandeville, Sir John, 5126
"Mankind in the Making," 5263
Manning, Robert, 5106
Mansfield, Katherine, 5267
"Mansfield Park," 5248
"Man with a Load of Mischief," 5270
"Many Cargoes," 5267
Map, Walter, 5112
"Marius the Epicurean," 5260
Marlowe, Christopher, 5140, 5145
"Marmion," 5235
Marprelate tracts, 5150
Marvell, Andrew, 5159, 5160
Masefield, John *5272*
masques, 5152, 5165
Massinger, Philip, 5151
"Master of Ballentrae," 5257
Matthew's Bible, 5158
"Maud," 5250
Maugham, Somerset, 5270
"Men and Women," 5251
"Merchant of Venice," 5145, *5247*
Meredith, George, 5245, 5253
Meres, Francis, 5143
Mermaid Tavern, 5153
"Merry Wives of Windsor," 5143, 5146, *5225*
metaphysical poetry, 5156, 5160
Meynell, Alice, 5268, 5274
Middle English, 5106
"Middlemarch," 5248
Middleton, Thomas, 5154
"Midsummer Night's Dream," 5145
Mill, John Stuart, 5255, 5261
Millais, Sir John, 5253
Miller, Hugh, 5261
Millin, Sarah Gertrude, 5278
"Mill on the Floss," 5248
Milne, A. A., 5270
Milton, John, 5101, 5112, *5113*, 5124, 5133, 5150, 5159, 5160, 5163-5165, 5250; home, *5171*
Minot, Laurence, 5107
miracle plays, 5122, 5139
"Mirror for Magistrates," 5134
"Mrs. Warren's Profession," 5263
"Mr. Britling Sees it Through," 5263
Mitford, William, 5240
"Modern Painters," 5256
"Moll Flanders," 5188
Montagu, Lady Mary Wortley, 5194
Montague, C. E., 5265
Montaigne, 5150
Montesquieu, 5239
Moore, T. Sturge, 5274
moralities, 5122, 5125, 5139
More, Sir Thomas, *5129*, 5130
Morris, William, 5253
"Morte d'Arthur," Malory's 5107, 5112, 5128 Tennyson's, 5249
Mottram, R. H., 5265
"Much Ado About Nothing" 5143, 5146
Mulcaster, Richard, 5135
Munday, Anthony, 5140
"Munera Pulveris," 5256
Murray, Gilbert, 5274
Murray, T. C., 5271
Murry, John Middleton, 5267 5268
Murry, Mrs. J. M. *See* Mansfield, Katherine.
mystery plays, 5122, 5139
Nash, Thomas, 5140, 5150, 5151, 5156
Nashe, Thomas *See* Nash, Thomas.
natural histories, early, 5125
Nennius, 5110
"Newcomes," 5244
"New Machiavelli," 5263
newspapers, early, 5187
Newton, John, 5212
"New Way to Pay Old Debts," 5154
Nicholls, Robert, 5274
Nicoll, Sir W. Robertson, 5268
Niebuhr, B. G., 5240
"Nightingale," ode, 5233
"Night Thoughts," 5194
North, Sir Thomas, 5134
"Northanger Abbey," 5248
Norton, Thomas, 5140
novel, 5151, 5204, 5207, 5234, 5258
"Novum Organum," 5155
Noyes, Alfred, 5274
"Nut Brown Maid," 5125
O'Casey, Sean, 5271
Occleve, Thomas, 5124
Old English, 5105, 5106
"Old Mortality," 5237
"Old Red Sandstone," 5261
"Old Wives' Tale," 5264
Olney, 5212
"Omar Khayyam," 5252
O'Neill, Eugene, 5277
Ophelia, 5226
"Ordeal of Richard Feverel," 5245
"Origin of Species," 5260
"Orlando Furioso," 5150
O'Shaughnessy, A. E., 5253
Ossian, 5211
"Othello," 5146, *5229*
Otway, Thomas, 5183
"Ours," 5269
"Outline of History," 5263
Overbury, Sir Thomas, 5162
Owen, Wilfred, 5274
Page, Gertrude, 5278
Page, Violet. *See* Lee, Vernon.
Palgrave, F. T., 5261
"Pamela," 5205
pamphlets, 5150, 5187
"Paracelsus," 5251
"Paradise Lost," 5166
"Paradise Regained," 5167
Parker, Sir Gilbert, 5278
Parkman, Francis, 5278
pastorals, 5124, 5136
Pater, Walter, 5260
"Pathfinder," 5275
Patmore, Coventry, 5261
Peacock, Reginald, 5126
"Pearl," 5108
Peele, George, 5140
"Pendennis," 5244
Pepys, Samuel, 5184
Percy, Thomas, 5125, 5210
"Persuasion," 5248
"Peter Pan," 5265, 5270
Petrarch, 5133
"Philanderer," 5263
Philips, Ambrose, 5194
Philips, Edward, 5166
Phillpotts, Eden, 5270
"Phiz." *See* Browne, Hablot K.
"Pied Piper of Hamelin," 5251
"Piers the Plowman," 5108
"Pilgrim's Progress," 5168, 5177
Pindaric ode, 5180
Pinero, Sir Arthur, 5269
"Pippa Passes," 5251
"Pirate," 5238
"Plain Tales from the Hills," 5264
Plautus, 5139
"Playboy of the Western World," 5271
play cycles, 5122
Plegmund, 5104
"Plough and the Stars," 5271
Plutarch's "Lives," 5134
"Poet at the Breakfast Table," 5276
"Poly-Olbion," 5150
Pope, Alexander, *5117*, 5175-5178, *5191*, 5191-5194
Porter, William Sydney. *See* Henry, O.
"Potterism," 5266
Praed, W. Mackworth, 5261
Prayer, Book of Common, 5131
"Prelude," 5219
Pre-Raphaelites, 5252
Prescott, W. H., 5240
"Pride and Prejudice," 5248
"Princess," 5250
printing, beginning of, 5127
Prior, Matthew, 5194
"Prometheus," 5272
"Prometheus Unbound," 5223
"Pulvis et Umbra," 5257
"Punch," 5244
Puritans, 5153, 5159, 5165 5166, 5178, 5179
Purvey, John, 5157
"Quality Street," 5270
Quarles, Francis, 5160
"Queen Mab," 5223
Radcliffe, Ann, 5207
Raleigh, Sir Walter, 5137
"Ralph Roister Doister" 5139
"Rambler," 5197
Ramsay, Allan, 5194
"Rape of the Lock," 5193
"Rasselas," 5197
Reade, Charles, 5258
"Recessional," 5264

“Recuyell of the Historyes of Troye,” 5127
“Redgauntlet,” *5285*
Reformation, 5130
“Religio Medici,” 5161
“Reliques of English Poetry,” 5125, 5210
Renaissance, 5121, 5129
“Return of Ulysses,” 5272
Revised Version, 5158
“Reynard the Fox,” Mansfield’s, 5273
Reynolds, Sir Joshua, 5199
rhyme royal, 5125
“Riceyman Steps,” 5265
Rich, Barnabe, 5151
“Richard II,” 5145, *5232*
“Richard III,” 5145
Richardson, John, 5278
Richardson, Samuel, 5204-5206
“Rienzi,” 5258
“Right off the Map,” 5265
“Ring and the Book,” 5252
Rip van Winkle, 5275
“Rivals,” 5202
Roberts, Charles, 5278
Robertson, Thomas, 5269
Robertson, William, 5238, 5240
Robinson, Arlington, 5277
Robinson, Lennox, 5271
“Robinson Crusoe,” 5185, 5186, 5187, 5204
“Rob Roy,” *5284*
“Roderick Random,” 5206
Rogers, John, 5158
romances, early, 5106
“Roman de la Rose,” 5108, 5123
Romantic revival, 5208-5211, 5217-5220
“Romany Rye,” 5259
“Romeo and Juliet,” 5143, 5145
“Romola,” 5248
“Rosalynde,” 5151
Rossetti, Christina, 5261
Rossetti, D. G., 5253
“Rough Justice,” 5265
Rowley poems, 5211
Roye, John, 5158
“Rule Britannia,” 5194
Ruskin, John, *5115*, 5255-5257
Russell, George, 5271, 5274
Sackville, Thomas, 5134, *5139*, 5140
“St. Agnes’ Eve,” 5233
“St. Joan,” 5264
Saintsbury, George, 5268
“Saints’ Everlasting Rest,” 5161
“Salt-Water Ballads,” 5273
“Samson Agonistes,” 5167
“Sartor Resartus,” 5254
Sassoon, Siegfried, 5274
satire, 5182, 5183; early, 5124
Savage, Richard, 5198
“Scarlet Letter,” 5276
“Scenes from Clerical Life,” 5248
“Scholemaster,” Ascham’s, 5132
“School for Scandal,” 5202
“Science of Life,” 5263
Scott, Sir Walter, *5117*, 5210, *5234*, 5234-5236; Abbotsford, *5175*; novels, *5281-5288*.
Scriblerus Club 5194
“Seasons,” 5194
“Second Mrs. Tanqueray,” 5269
“Sejanus,” 5152, 5153
Selkirk, Alexander, 5187
Seneca, 5139
“Sense and Sensibility,” 5248
“Sensitive Plant,” 5224
“Sentimental Journey,” 5207
“Sentimental Tommy,” 5265
“Sesame and Lilies,” 5256
Seton, Ernest Thompson, 5278
“Seven Lamps of Architecture,” 5256
Shadwell, Thomas, 5182, 5183
Shakespeare, William, 5101, *5114*, 5133, 5139, *5142* 5143-5147, 5148, 5149, 5151, 5152, 5153; birthplace, *5173*; plays, *5225-5232*
Shanks, Edward, 5274
Shaw, G. Bernard, 5262, 5263, 5269, 5270
Shelley, Mary, 5223
Shelley, P. B., 5223
“Shepheardes Calender,” 5134, 5136
Sheridan, Richard Brinsley, 5202
“She Stoops to Conquer,” 5201
“Ship of Fools,” 5124
“Shirley,” 5247
“Short History of the English People,” 5240
short story, 5266, 5276
“Shropshire Lad,” 5274
Sidney, Sir Philip, 5133, 5136, *5148*, 5148, 5151
“Silas Marner,” 5248
“Silver Tassie,” 5271
“Sinister Street,” 5265
“Sir Charles Grandison,” 5206
“Sir Patrick Spens,” 5125
Skelton, John, 5124
Skeltonics, 5124
“Sketch Book,” Washington Irving’s, 5275
“Sketches by Boz,” 5242
“Skin Game,” 5270
“Skylark,” ode, 5224
Slater, Francis Cary, 5278
Slick, Sam. 5278
Smart, Christopher, 5211
Smollett, Tobias, 5206
“Soldiers Three,” 5264
Somersby, rectory, *5172*
“Songs of Innocence,” 5214
“Song to David,” 5211
sonnet, 5133, 5149, 5220, 5273
sonnet cycle, 5149
“Sonnets from the Portuguese,” 5252
“Sordello,” 5251
Sorley, Charles H., 5274
South African literature, 5278
Southey, Robert, 5219
“Spectator,” 5188
Spencer, Herbert, 5261
Spenser, Edmund, 5112, 5124, 5126, 5133, 5134, *5135*, 5135-5138, 5149
Squire, J. C., 5274
“Stalky & Co.,” 5264
Steele, Sir Richard, 5186, 5187, 5188, 5192, 5267
Sterne, Laurence, *5118*, 5207
Stevenson, R. L., *5120*, 5257, 5260
Steventon, parsonage *5169*
Stoke Poges, churchyard, *5166*
“Stones of Venice,” 5256
Stow, John, 5151
Strachey, Giles Lytton, 5268
Stratford-on-Avon, Shakespeare’s birthplace, *5173*
“Strife,” 5270
Stubbs, William, 5240
Suckling, Sir John, 5159
“Sumer is i-cumen in,” 5107
Surrey, Henry Howard, Earl of, 5132, 5133
“Survey of London,” Stow’s 5151
“Suspense,” 5265
“Sussex Gorse,” 5266
Swift, Jonathan, 5186, 5189, 5191, 5192
Swinburne, A. C., 5253
Sylvester, Joshua, 5150
Symonds, John Addington, 5260
Synge, J. M., 5271
“Synthetic Philosophy,” 5261
“Tale of a Tub,” 5189
“Tales of a Grandfather,” 5236
“Tamarisk Town,” 5266
“Tamburlaine,” 5141
“Taming of the Shrew,” 5145
“Tam o’ Shanter,” 5216
Tarkington, Booth, 5277
“Task” 5213
Tasso, 5150
“Tatler,” 5188
Taylor, Jeremy, 5160
“Tempest,” 5143, 5144, 5147, *5232*
Tennyson, Lord, 5112, *5249*, 5249, 5253; birthplace, *5172*, home, *5172*
Tennyson, Charles, 5249
Terence, 5139
“Tess of the D’Urbervilles,” 5246
Thackeray, W. M., *5119*, 5243-5245
Theobald, Lewis, 5193
“These Men, Thy Friends,” 5265
“These Twain,” 5264
Thirlwall, Connop, 5240
Thomas, Edward, 5274
Thomas, F. W., 5268
Thompson, Edward, 5265
Thompson, Francis, 5253
Thomson, James (“City of Dreadful Night”), 5261
Thomson, James (“Seasons”), 5194
“Through the Looking Glass,” 5260
“Thyrsis,” 5252
“Time Machine,” 5262
“Time’s Laughing-stocks” 5272
“Timon of Athens,” 5147
“Tintern Abbey,” 5217
“Titus Andronicus,” 5145
“To Althea, from Prison” 5159
“Tom Brown’s Schooldays” 5259
“Tom Jones,” 5205
“Tom Sawyer,” 5277
“Tono-Bungay,” 5263
Tottel, Richard, 5133
Towneley plays, 5122
“Toxophilus,” 5132
tragedy, early, 5140
“Traveller,” 5200
“Travels with a Donkey,” 5257
travel tales, early, 5126
“Treasure Island,” 5257
Trevelyan, G. M., 5268
“Tristram Shandy,” 5207
Trollope, Anthony, 5259
Tunstall, Cuthbert, 5157
Twain, Mark, 5277
“Twelfth Night,” 5140, 5144, 5146, *5228*
“Two Gentlemen of Verona,” 5145
“Two Noble Kinsmen,” 5147
Tyndale, William, 5131, *5157*, 5157
“Typhoon,” 5267
Udall, Nicholas, 5139
“University Wits,” 5140
“Unto this Last,” 5256
Unwin, William, 5212
“Urn Burial,” 5161
Ussher, James, 5160
“Utopia,” 5130, 5131
Uvedale. *See* Udall.
Vanbrugh, Sir John, 5183
“Vanity Fair,” 5243
“Vathek,” 5207
Vaughan, Henry, 5160
Venice, Byron’s home, *5175*
“Venice Preserved,” 5183
“Venus and Adonis,” 5142
“Vicar of Wakefield,” 5200, 5207
“Villette,” 5247
“Viper of Milan,” 5266
Virgil, Dryden’s, 5182
“Virginians,” 5245
“Vision of Judgment,” Byron’s, 5221, 5222. Southey’s, 5222
“Vivian Grey,” 5258
“Volpone,” 5152
Voltaire, 5238
“Voysey Inheritance,” 5270
Wace, 5111
Walkley, A. B., 5268
Wallace, A. Russel. 5260
Wallace, Edgar, 5265
Waller, Edmund, 5180
Walpole, Horace, 5207, 5211
Walpole, Hugh, 5265
Walsh, William, 5192
Walton, Izaak, 5183
“Water Babies,” 5258
Watson, Sir William, 5274
Watson, Thomas, 5149
“Waverley,” 5234, 5235, *5287*
Waverley novels, 5236, *5282-5288*
“Way of all Flesh,” 5259
Webb, Mary, 5266
Webster, John, 5143, 5154
Wells, G. P., 5263
Wells, H. G., *5262*, 5262
“Wessex Poems,” 5272
“Westminster Bridge,” 5220
“Westward Ho!” 5258
“West Wind,” 5224
Whetstone, George, 5151
“White-Headed Boy,” 5271
Whitman, Walt, 5275, 5276
Whittier, J. G., 5276
Wiclif, John, *5121*, 5121, 5126, 5157
“Widowers’ Houses,” 5263
Wilde, Oscar, 5260
William of Malmesbury, 5110
William of Newburgh, 5110
Wilson, Thomas, 5132
Winchilsea, Lady, 5194
“Wind among the Reeds,” 5274
“Window in Thrums,” 5265
“Winter’s Tale,” 5144, 5147, 5151
Wither, George, 5160
Wolfe, Humbert, 5274
“Woman in White,” 5259
“Woman Killed with Kindness,” 5154
Woolf, Virginia, 5266
Wordsworth, Dorothy, 5218
Wordsworth, William, 5133, *5217*, 5217-5220
“Wordsworth’s Grave,” 5274
“World of William Clissold,” 5263
“Worthies,” Fuller’s, 5162
Wulfstan, 5105
“Wuthering Heights,” 5247
Wyat, Sir Thomas, 5132, 5133
Wycherley William, 5182, 5192
Wycliffe, John. *See* Wiclif, John.
Wynkyn de Worde, 5128
“Yeast,” 5258
Yeats, W. B., 5271, 5274
York plays, 5122
Young, Edward, 5194
Young, Francis Brett, 5265

CONTENTS, COLOUR PLATES AND PICTURE INDEX

CONTENTS

Page
Romance in the Dictionary .. i
Some Famous Books of Words .. iii
How We Got Our Alphabet .. vii
The Wonderful Story of the English Language .. xxi
English Grammar Made Easy .. xxix
Key to Correct Pronunciation .. lxiv
List of Abbreviations .. lxiv
Dictionary .. 1
Prefixes and Combining Forms .. 4637
Suffixes and Their Meanings .. 4645
Common Abbreviations .. 4655
The Word Finder .. 4665
Studies in the Use of Words .. 4990
Words Often Misspelt .. 5050
Words Often Mispronounced .. 5065
Foreign Words and Phrases .. 5077
Irregular Genders and Plurals .. 5092
Correct Style and Title .. 5096
How to Write Letters .. 5097
Literature's Golden Story .. 5099

COLOUR PLATES

(Note.—The page number refers to that opposite which the Plate is to be found.)

Page
Gifts of Other Lands to the English Language .. Frontispiece
Annuals : Annuals that Help to Make the Glory of the Garden .. 164
Astronomy : Some Wonders of the Heavens with which Astronomy Deals .. 260
Beaks : The Many Kinds of Beaks that Nature has Given to Birds .. 366
Bridge : Seven Notable Triumphs of the Bridge Builders .. 516
Butterflies : Beautiful British Butterflies that Add to the Joy of Summer .. 564
Dolomites : A Mountain Range Named in Honour of a Great French Geologist .. 633
Children : Children of Many Lands in National Costume .. 722
Colours : Some of the Colours of the British Army 818
Costume : Eight Centuries of English Costume .. 938
Crustacea : Creatures of the Water which Wear Armour .. 1004
Deciduous : Trees, Birds, and Beasts that Shed or Change Some of Their Clothes .. 1072
Eggs : The Rich Variety of Colour in the Eggs of British Birds .. 1305
Evolution : Seven Chapters in the Evolution of the Ship .. 1484
Fish : Fish of Many Kinds that Live in Sea or River 1624
Frieze : Friezes that have Enriched Architecture in Ancient and Modern Times .. 1738
Gem : Gems of Loveliness from Mother Earth's Jewel-Case .. 1810
Grass : Some of the Four Thousand Members of the Grass Family .. 1896
Hats : Head Coverings Gathered from Many Countries .. 1977
Hoods : Hoods that Mark Degrees at Some Famous Universities .. 2066
Page
Insect : Marvels of Insect Life from Home and from Distant Climes .. 2250
Lamps : Lamps and Lanterns Through the Ages .. 2442
Medals : Medals Awarded for Valour and General Service .. 2536
Locomotive : Locomotives of Early Times and of To-day .. 2574
Mosaic : Mosaics of Quiet Beauty and Glittering Brilliance .. 2649
Nest : Some of the Many Kinds of Nests Built by Birds and Animals .. 2920
Orchid : Orchids of Various Shapes and Brilliant Colours .. 3038
Peer : Robes and Coronets Worn by Members of the Peerage .. 3178
Phenomenon : Natural Phenomena that Puzzled Our Forefathers .. 3228
Plumage : Birds of Beautiful and Brilliant Plumage 3304
Porcelain : Examples of Chinese, Japanese, and English Porcelain .. 3321
Quadruped : Quadrupeds of Europe, Asia, and Africa .. 3498
Reptile : Types of Reptiles and Amphibians .. 3644
Rose : Roses Rich in Beauty and Colour .. 3720
Screen : Screens Architectural, Ecclesiastical, Decorative, and Domestic .. 3824
Signal : Signals Used on Land and at Sea .. 3942
Songster : Feathered Songsters that Flood the Air with Melody .. 3993
Swimmer : Some Fine Swimmers among the Lower Animals .. 4192
Toy : Toys that Amused Children of Long Ago .. 4330
Tree : How to Know Trees by the Leaves They Bear .. 4350
Venetian : Graceful Gondolas and Stately Buildings on a Venetian Waterway .. 4466
Wing : Wings of Birds and Other Flying Creatures 4580

PICTURE INDEX

A, letter, x
aardvark, 1
Aaron's rod, 2
abacus, 2
abandonment, 3
abatement, 4
abbey, 5, 559, 697, 927, 2317, 2779, 3595,
abbot, 6
abdication, 7
aberration, 8
abjure, 9
ablaze, 10
aboard, 11
aboriginal, Australian, 12, 477 933, 1470, 4876
above, 13
abreast, 14
abrupt, 15
absorb, 17
abundance, 19
abutment, 20
abyss, 20
Abyssinian, 21, 3572
acanthus, 22
acauline, 23
accelerator, 24
accentor, 25
accession, 26
accident, 27
accipiter, 28
acclaim, 28
acclimatization, 29
accolade, 30, 2411
accordion, 31
accounts, 3518
accouplement, 32
accoutrements, 33
accumulator, 34
ace, flying, 35
acephalous, 35
acetylene, 36
achievement, 37
Achilles, 38
acicular, 38
acinus, 39
acotyledon, 4729
acoustic, 40
acoustics, 41
acrobat, 42, 4285
Acropolis, 43
acting, 44, 1609, 3760
action, 45
actor, 44, 826, 1696, 2556, 2644, 2856, 4260
actress, 46, 3295
aculeus, 47
acute, 48
adaptable, 49
adaptation, *facing* 1072
adder, 50, *facing* 3644
Addison, Joseph, 1462
address, 51
adhere, 52
adieu, 53
adjective, xxxiii, xxxv, xxxvi, xlix
adjudge, 54
adjustment, 54
adjutant-bird, 55, *facing* 366
admiral, 56, 57, 752
Admiral butterfly, 58, *facing* 564, 1145
Admiralty, 57
admiration, 58
admix, 59
adnate, 4729
adobe, 59
adornment, 60
adrift, 2879
Adullam, Cave of, 3941
aduncate, 4945
advance, 61
adventitious, 62
adventurer, 63
adverb, xlvii, xlviii, xlix, l
adversary, 64
advertising, 1416; sign, 3942
advocate, 65
adze, 65
Aeneas, 3616
aeolian harp, 66
aepyornis, 66
aerial, 68
aerial plant, 67
aerial roots, 62
aerial ropeway, 67
aerial torpedo, 70
aerobomb, 68
aero-engine, 69
aeronautics, 70
aeroplane, xxxv, 68, 69, 70, 71, 72, 73, 93, 135, 392, 469, 794, 968, 1082, 1107, 1298, 1406, 1407, 1442, 1670, 1704, 1821, 1969, 2262, 2589, 2717, 2949, 3072, 3557, 3950, 3986, 3990, 4285, 4438, 4554, 4581, 4606
aeroplane carrier, 968, 2144
aeroplane engine, 1408
Aesculapius, 2111, 3242
aestivation, 74
affection, 75
affix, 76

affliction, 77
afforestation, 78
afire, 79
aflame, 79
afloat, 79
African, 80
African elephant, *facing* 3496
African explorer, 1510, 1612, 2238, 3483
African marigold, 80
Afridi, 81, 466
aga, 81
agaric, 82
age, 83
age (geology), 232, 281, 297, 624, 713, 2904, 2017
"Age of Innocence, The" 1818
agent, 84
agglomerate, 85
agile, 86
agistment, 87
aglet, 88
Agnus Dei, 89
agouti, 90
agriculture, 91, 402, 1633, 1764, 1953, 2097, 2140, 2216, 2450, 2474, 2569, 2907, 3303, 3408, 3564, 4121, 4552
Agrippa, 1441
ai, 92
aigrette, 93, 1355
aiguille, 1013, 1076
aiguillettes, 68
aileron, 93
aim, 94
Aino, 2044
air, 95
air-brake, 96
aircraft. *See* aeroplane, airship, etc.
aircraft carrier. *See* aeroplane carrier.
Air Force Cross, *facing* 2536
Air Force Medal, *facing* 2536
air-liner, 794, 1670, 3557
airman. *See* aviator.
air-pump, 97
air-raider, 1406, 1407
air-scout, 443
airship, 73, 93, 98, 413, 890, 1189, 3072, 3375, 4457, 4630
aisle, 99
ait, 4873
Akbar, Mogul emperor, 1390
alabaster, 100
alar, 4729
alarm, 100
albatross, 101
Albert I, King of the Belgians, 1424
Albert Memorial frieze, 1738
albert watch-chain, 102
albino, 102, 1945
albumen, 103
alchemist, 103
Alderney cattle, 104
alert, 105
Alexander the Great, 537
Alexandra, Queen, 1465
Alfonso XIII, King of Spain, 2924
Alfred the Great, 2401
alfresco, 106
algae, 106
Algerine warrior, 107
Alhambra, palace, 107, 3332, 3572,
"Alice in Wonderland," 44
alight, 108
alinement, 109
aliped, 4945
alkali, 110
Allah, 111
allegory, 112, 3433
"Alleluia," painting, 1959
Allenby, Field-Marshal Viscount, 3288
alley, skittle, 113
alligator, 114, 160, 1114, *facing* 3644
alligator pear, 294
alligator tortoise, 114
allotment, 115
allotropy, 115
All Souls' Day, 116
ally, 117
almond, 118, 2358, 2972
alms, 1573, 3062
aloft, 119
alone, 120
alp, 121
alpenhorn, 3546
alphabet, vii-xx; Braille 500; monogram, 2820; Morse, 1268
Alpine, 121, 1013, 1076, 1843, 2172, 3207
Alsatian dog, 270, 2341, 2388
Alsatian woman, 122
altar, 123, 692, 3649
alteration, 124
altiscope, 125
alto-relievo, 2037
alveoli, 126
Amanulla Khan, Amir of Afghanistan, 1428
amaryllis, 127,
amass, 128
Amazon parrot, 3138, *facing* 3304
ambassador, 129
amber, 130
ambo, 131
Ambrose, Saint, 1738
ambulance, air, 131; Red Cross, 3585
ambuscade, 132
Amenhotep III, 817
amenity, 133
Amen-Ra, 1865
ament, 662
American Indians. *See* Indians, North American, Indians, South American
amethyst, *facing* 1810
amice, 134
amidst, 135
ammonite, 136, 1712, 2741
ammunition, 136
amoeba, 137
amour, 138
amphibia, 139, *facing* 3614, 4945
amphioxus, 140
amphipoda, 140
amphitheatre, 141, 753
amphora, 141, 1158
ampulla, 142, 3003,
amulet, 142
Amundsen, Captain Roald, 171, 3215, 3832
amusement, 143
anabas, 144
anadromous, 145
anaglyph, 146
analyst, 147
ananas, 3265
anarchist, 148, 3847
anatomy, 149, 473
ancestor, 150
anchor, 151, 2829
anchor buoy, 551
anchor chain, 3513
Ancona cockerel, 1048
andiron, 152
Andromeda, 153
anemometer, 153
anemone, 4083
aneroid, 154
angel, 188, 737, 982, 1209, 1480, 1648, 3036, 3109, 3619, 4052
angel (coin), 155
angel-fish, 155
angiocarpous, 156
angle, 156
angler, 156, 1647
angler-fish, 157
Angles, xxi
angles, geometrical, 156
angling, 156, 2446
Anglo-Saxon, 4147
Anglo-Saxon Chronicle, 739
angora goat, 158
angora rabbit 3524
angustifoliate, 159
animal, 160, 161; extinct, 624, 1181, 1185, 1372, 1485, 1858, 2127, 2655, 2699, 2723, 2727, 2825, 2904, 3462, 3959, 3961, 4262, 4388
animalcule, 162
animate, 162
ankle, 163
anniversary, 164
annual (plant), *facing* 164, *facing* 1896
annular, 165
anoint, 166
anomaly, 167
anopheles, 168
ansae, 168
Anson, Baron, 56
ant, 169, 4255
Antarctic, 171 1135, 4407; explorer, 171, 1135, 3215
ant-bear, 170
ant-eater, 170, 3110, 4127
antechamber, 172
antelope, 173, 1358, 1982, 2408, 2888, 3753, 3787, 4369, 4019
antennae, 173, 2729
ante-room, 111
anther, 174, 1587, 1663, 4107
ant-hill, 2039
anthozoa, 175
anthropoid, 4945
anthropology, 176
anti-aircraft, 177
anticlimax, 178
antimacassar, 179
antique, 180
antirrhinum, 181, 3994
antiseptic, 181
anti-submarine, 182
antler, 183, 1924
Antony, Mark, 1475, 4367
Anubis baboon, 2341
anvil, 183, 435
aorta, 184
ape, 185, 252, 302, 725, 2341, 2660, 3035, 3191, 4113, 4289,
apetalous, 4729
apex, 186
Aphrodite, 146
apiarian, 187
Apis, 187
Apocalypse, 188
apod, 188
Apollo, 146
apophthegm, 189
apostle, 190
apotheosis, 191
apparatus, 192
apparition, 192
appear, 193
append, 194
apple, xxxvi, 195, 254, 1857; tree, 2536
appliance, 196
apportion, 197
apprentice, 198
approach, 198
appropriate, 199
apricot, 200
apron, 201, 435, 1020
apse, 201
apteroid, 202
apteryx, 202
aquamarine, *facing* 1810
aquarium, 203
aqueduct, 204, 4801
Aquinas, Saint Thomas, 191
Arab, 204, 205, 552, 1294, 1396, 2584, 4018, 4873
Arabian camel, 1297
arachnid, 205
Araucanians, 206
araucaria, 206
Arawaks, 207
Arc, Joan of. *See* Joan of Arc.
arch, 209, 2835, 3006, 198, 4366; keystone, 2392
archaeologist, 4022
archangel, 210, 2755
archbishop, 211, 166
archer, 94, 211, 2344, 4230
Archimedean. 212
archipelago, 4873
architect, 1285
architecture, 213
arc-lamp, 208
Arctic, 214, 281, 1506, 4011, explorer, 3647
Arctic fox, 215
Arctic hare, 215
Arctic skua, 3966
arduous, 216
arena, 217, 753
argali, 218
argand burner, 219
argonaut, 219
Argus pheasant, 220
Ariadne, 2427
arid, 220
Aries, 221
aristocrats, 3451
Aristotle, 2267, 4093
Arizona poison lizard, *facing* 3644
Ark, Noah's, 222, 2940
arm, 504
Armada, Spanish, 1677, 1967, 3269, 4318
armadillo, 224, 1858; foot. 1683
arm-chair, 1205, 1763
armillary sphere, 224
arm-in-arm, 1972, 2547
Armistice Day, 164, 1496
armlet, 504
armorial bearings, 476
armour, 33, 225, 226, 227, 400, 1380, 1447, 1481, 1628, 1675, 1979, 2270, 2441, 3000, 3360, 4160
armoured car, 227
armoured creature, 227, *facing* 1004
armoured ship, 361
armoured tank, 226
armoured train, 227
armour-plate, 644
arms, 223; presenting, 680
Army, British. *See* British Army.
army chaplain, 698
Arouet, Francois M. *See* Voltaire.
arrange, 229
arrest, 148, 230
arrive, 231
arrow, 94, 207, 232, 560
arrow-head, 232
arrowroot, 232
arsenal, 233
art, 234, 235, 1490, 2557, gallery, 1630
Artemis, 146
artesian bore, 4801
artesian well, 236
arthropoda, 237
Arthur, King of Britain, 1483
artifice, 238
artificial pearls, 1537
artificial sunlight, 239
artillery, 239, 360, 656, 907, 2292
artist, 240, 877, 894, 1287, 1797, 3096, 3806
arum, wild, 1, 4034
asbestos, 241
ascend, 242
ascertain, 243
ash, fruit, 244; leaf, 244, 2481, *facing* 4350, 4731; mountain, 2852
Ashburton Shield competitors. 3434
ashlar-work, 245
ashore, 825
aslant, 245
asp, 246
aspen, 246
asphalt, 247, 3276
ass, 586, 797, 1279, 3389
Asiatic wild, 248, 3017
Tibetan wild, 2393
assagai, 223, 248, 502
Assamese butterfly, 4214
assault, 249, 359
assembly, 250
assiduous, 251
assist, 252

Association football. *See* football.
assortment, 254
Assuan dam, 1655, 3983
Assyrian sculpture, 255, 2515
aster, 256
asteroid, 256
astonishment, 257
astride, 258
astrolabe, 259
astrologer, 259
astronomer, 8, 894, 4430
astronomy, 153, 260, 261, *facing* 260, 1445, 2906, 4243
asunder, 262
atelier, 263
Athanasian, 264
Athena, 264; temple, 3142
Athenaeum, 264
athlete, 265, 2872
athletic sports, 105, 265, 427, 573, 707, 843, 972, 1352, 2036, 2585, 2673, 2680, 3485, 3486, 3617, 4091, 4460, 4490
atlas moth, 266
atoll, 267
atomizer, 268
attach, 269
attack, 270
attention, 271
attire, *facing* 938
attitude, 272, 4602
attraction, 273
aubergine, 274
auction, 274
audience, 63, 275, 856, 1201, 2362, 3295,
audience chamber, 144
audition, 276
auditorium, 856
augment, 277
august, 278
Augustine, Saint, 279
Augustinian, 279
Augustus Caesar, 278
auk, 279, 3558
aurelia, 280
aureole, 280
auricula, 281
Aurignacian, 281
aurora borealis, 281
auscultation, 282
Australian love-bird, 54
Australoid, 283
author, 284, 3443
authority, 286, 1559
autochthon, 287
autograph, 287
automatic coupler, 954
automatic lightship, 2530
automatic piano, 288
automobile, 289
auto-wheel, 290
autumn, 2726
avalanche, 290
aventail, 291
avenue, 198, 292, 3213
aviary, 293
aviator, 69, 392, 1298, 2589, 3454
avocado, 294
avocet, 294
award, 295
away, 296
awl, 297
awn, 4729
awning, 297, 4297
axe, 297, 1129
axis, 214
axle, 298, 527
axolotl, 298
aye-aye, 299
azalea, 299
Aztec, 300

B

B, letter, x
Baal, 301
babacoote, 2212
babiroussa, 302
baboon, 302, 2341, 2660, 4113
baby, liv, 965, 1006, 1011, 1055, 1418, 1563, 3195, 3988, 4166, 4189
Babylonian, 303, 1034
baby show, 4283
Bacchus, Temple of, 3041
Bach, Johann Sebastian, 2844, 3657
bacillus, 304
back, 305
back-hand stroke, 305
backwater, 4873
backwoods, 306
Bacon, Francis (Baron Verulam), 1462
Bacon, Roger, 4014
bacteria, 307
bacteriologist, 307
Bactrian camel, 1297
Baden-Powell, Sir Robert, 2495
badge, arm, 504; British Army, 620, 816, 1813, 2414, 3847, 3882; British Navy, 57, 620, 1108, 1872, 1938, 2481, 3213, 3913, 4105, 4114, 4322, 4584; coachman, 795, French Revolution, 795; Ulster, 342
badger, 308, 557
baffy, 308
bag, corn, 1369
bag, game hunter's, 309
bagatelle board, 310
Baggara, 4873
bagpipes, 310, 1309, 2397
Bahawalpur, Maharajah of, 1320
bail, cricket, 311
bailey, castle, 311, 650
bake, 312
bakehouse oven, 312
baker, 549
Balaklava charge, 2315
Balaklava helmet, 313
balalaika, 315
balance, Justice with, 1381, Roman, 313, 3798, spring, 313, weighing, 313
balcony, 314, 2770
bald-coot, 315
baldric, 315
bale, 316, 851, 3977
balistraria, 316
ball, 2367
ballast, 316
ball-bearing, section of, 317
ball games, xxxii, 318
ballista, 320
ballistic, 4729
balloon, xxxv, 242, 320, 321 786, 1138, 1233, 1504
balloon foresail, 321
balloon-jumping, 321
ballot-box, 3325, 3841
balsa, 322
balsam, 4729
Baltic Sea, 1935
baltimore, 323
Baltimore hangnest *facing* 2920
balustrade, 323
bamboo, 323
banana, 324
band, conveying, 325, heraldic, 332
bandeau, 325
banded chatterer, *facing* 3304
banderol, 325
bandolier, 326
bandsman, 901, 371, 1034, 1302
bandy, 326
bangle, 327
banjo, 327
bank, lake, 328
Bank of England, 1714
banker, sculptor's, 329
Banks's ribbon-fish, 3688
banner, 330
banquet, 898
bantam, 331
Banting, Dr. Frederick Grant, 1202
Bantu, 331
banyan tree, 62
baptism, 1724
Baptist, St. John, 3695, 3380
baptistery, 332; pulpit, 3470
bar, heraldic, 332
bar, House of Commons, 333
Bara, Joseph, 3160
Barbary sheep, 335
barbed wire, 334, 3777, 4584
barbel, 335
bar-bell, 333, 4131
barber, 4316
barber's pole, 335
barbette, 336
barbican, 336, 650
bard, 337
barge, 338, 339, 2532; sailing, 3559, 3602, 4065, 4152, sweep of, 4190; towing, 4328; Roman, 4421; vang, 4152
bark, 607
bark, cinchona, 3516
barley, 310, 4729
barnacle, 52, *facing* 1004
barn owl, 341, *facing* 360, 2926, 4581, 4625
Baroda, Gaikwar of, 1773
barograph, 341
barometer, 154, 342
baron, 2633, *facing* 3178, coronet, 342, *facing* 3178; robes, *facing* 3178
baroness, coronet, *facing* 3178
baronet, coat of arms, 342
barque, 343, 611
barquentine, 345
barracks, 4558
barrage, 344, 4001
barrel, wooden, 1208, 2565
barricade, 345
Barrie, Sir James, 284
barrier, 4874; ticket, 3150
barrow, Swedish, 346
bars, music, 1531; prison, 2105
barter, 347
basalt columns, 666
bascule, 348
base, aerial mast, 3280
baseball, 349; catcher, 3416
bashi-bazouk, 350
basilica, 351, 2403, 3095
basin, fountain, 706
basket, 229, 630, 1625, 3316; making, 478
Basque children, 352
bas-relief, 146, 3003, 3768
bass (fish), 353
basset, 353
bassoon, 353
bass-viol, 1785
Bastille, 354
bastion, 650
Basuto warriors, 502
bat (mammal), 160, 355, 1673, *facing* 4580, 4945, wing-membrane, 3155
bat, cricket, 356
bateau, 356
bateleur eagle, 1239
bath, 49, 357
Bath, Order of the, 3040
bather, 95, 1224,
bathing, 1113; accessory, 1224
baton, conductor's, 358; relay race, 3617
batter, 1802
battering-ram, 359
battery (artillery), 360, 1403, 3002, 4327
battery, electric, 34, 673, 1784
batting (cricket), 2260
battle-cruiser, 361
battledore, 362, 3935
battlement, 362
battle-ship, 227, 525, 1631, 1644, 4526; conning-tower, 853; fire-control tower, 602; picket-boat, 3249; stern walk, 4515, top, 4318
bauble, 362
bawley, 363
bay, 363, 3391
bayonet, 223, 364
bay-window, 363
bazaar, 472
beach, 365
beacon, 366
Beaconsfield, Earl of, 3624
beadle, 367
bead money, 1023
beads, 2, 149
bead snake, *facing* 3614
beagle, 367
beak, bird's, 55, *facing* 366, 4945
beaker, 367
beam, 4946
beam-ends, 368
beam-engine, 368
beam trawler, 4348
bean, 368, 798
bear, 2731; black, 287; brown, 369; polar, 369, 3308, *facing* 4192, 4564, 4950
beard, 2644, 4729
bearing-rein, 370
bearskin, 370
beat, 371
"Beata Beatrix," 3392
Beaumont, Francis, 3296
beauty, 372
beauty-parlour, 2663
beaver, 373, 1859, 3299
becalm, 373
becket, 374
Becket, Thomas, 4488
Becky Sharp, 2248
bed, 1, xliv, 374, 2638, 2932
Bede (the Venerable Bede) 2297
bedeck, 375
bedeguar, 375
Bedouin, 376, 2520, 2945
bee, 377, 1297, 2482, 3852, 4534, foot, 2683; hind leg, 3182, hive, 187, 376; keeper, 187, pollen-basket, 3326, smoker, 376, swarming, 4188, 4410
beech tree, 1070, 1081, fruit, 156; growth, 1507, leaf, 2481, 4731
Beefeater, 377, 1130, 1420, *facing* 1977, 3853
bee hawk-moth, *facing* 2250
bee orchis, 378
beet, 378, seed, 2943, 3854
Beethoven, Ludwig van, 847
beetle, 160, 379, 1205, 1575, 1619, 1871, 2029, 2073, *facing* 2250, 2341, 2533, 3005, 3803, 3965, 4078, antennae, 2729; spiracle of larva 4051. *See also specific names.*
beg, 380
beggar, 1573, 3062
begonia, 381, 2010, 4425
begrime, 381
behind, 382
Beja girl, 383
belaying-pin, 383
belfry, 384, 386
Belgian, 1098
bell, 386, 1965, 1986, 2202 3948; electric, wet-cell 673
belladonna, 387
bell-buoy, 3632
bell-flower, 387
bell-founding, 385
bell heather, 1451
bellows, 103, 388
bell-punch, 388
bell-ringers, 386
bell-ropes, 386
bell-tower, 386, 598
below, 389
belt, cartridge, 325
beluga, 390
bema, 390
ben, 4874
Benbow, Admiral John, 56
bench, 4874
bench, House of Common 391, 836
bend, 392
beneath, 392
benediction, 861, 1256

benefactor, 393
Bengali natives, 394
Ben Lomond, 4874
Bennett, Arnold, 3443
benthal, 395
Benthamism, 395
benthonic fish, 395
Berber, 396
“ **Berengaria** ” (ocean liner), 1248
beret, 397
Berlin, carriage, 397
Bermuda, 958
berry, 398, *facing* 4350
bersagliere, 399
berth, sleeping, 399
beseech, 400
besieging-troops, 359
Bessemer converter, 401, 4097, 4802
bestow, 402
betel, 403
Bethlehem, crib, 982; market-place, 2681; star, 1335, well of the Three Wise Men, 4546
betony, 404
betrayal, 3199
betrothal, 405
“ **Bettina** ” (painting), 2523
bevel-square, 405
Beverley Minster, 1881
bewail, 406
beyond, 407
Bhil women, 408
Bible, 409, 410, 649, 4473
bibliophile, 411
bicycle, xxxiii, 290, 412, 3175, 3200, 4223; racing, 4332; tight-rope riding, 42
bifid, 4729
biga, 414
Big Ben, 86
big-end, 413
bilabiate, 4729
bilge-keel, 415
bill (tongue of land), 416
bill (of bird), 294, *facing* 366, 2441
billet, 2280
bill-hook, 2068
billiards, 318, 417; slate for table, 3970
billy-boy, 417
bin, 418
binding, 419
bindweed, 419, 3422
binnacle, 419
biocellate, 4946
biology, 420
biplane, 73, 421, 1442. *See also* aeroplane,
birch-bark canoe, 607
birch-tree, *facing* 1072, 4199, leaf, *facing* 4350
bird, 55, 202, *facing* 366, 422, 423, 1079, 2153, 2187, 3499, 3606, *facing* 3993; eggs, 66, 103, 202, *facing* 1305, 1353, 1354, 2195, 3078, 3779, 4559; extinct, 279, 801, 1251, 2028; eye, 1529; talons, 1683
bird-cage, liii
bird-eating spider, 160, 648
bird of paradise, 3122, *facing* 3304; beak, *facing* 366
bird's-eye view, 13, 601, 616, 1247, 2419, 2779, 4140, 4599
bird's-nest, 424, 432, 433, 562, 596, *facing* 1305, 1330, 1905, 2792, 2921, *facing* 2920, 4187, 4522, 4565, 4594, 4607, 4619
bird-study, 2900
bird-trap, 1932
bird whistle, 4563
biretta, 425
“ **Birkenhead** ” (troopship), 1444
birth, 425
birthday party, xlvii
Bisharin warrior, 4036
bishop, 201, 426, 647, 803, 1102, 2475, 3358, 3618
Bisley, rifle shooting, 686, 1619, 3434, 4062,
Bismarck, Prince Otto von, 3878
bison, 426, 1698
bit, horse's, 427
bite, 427
bitter-apple, 428
bittersweet, 2934
bivalve, 35, 2810, 4451
bivouac, 429
bizarre, 429
black and white goose, 1874
black and white lemur, 664
black beetle, 432
blackberry, blossom, 501; fruit, 39; prickles, 47
blackbird, 432; mountain, 3068; *facing* 3993
black buck, 173, 433, *facing* 3498
blackcap, 433
black dung-beetle, 1265
Black Feet Indians, 430
Black Forest, peasant woman, 1824
black-headed bunting, 3592
black-headed gull, *facing* 2920
black hellebore, 2724
Black Hole of Calcutta, 431
Black Orpington, 3051
Black Prince, 1311
Black Rod, 431
blacksmith, 435
blackthorn, 435
Blackwall hitch, 2415
Black Watch, officer, 436
bladder-wort, 436
bladder-wrack, 1604
blade, kinds, 437
Blake, Admiral, 56
blameless, 3242
Blanc, Mont, 1670
blanket, tossing in, 438
blarney-stone, 438
blasting, 4, 439
blazer, 440
bleach, 441
Blenheim spaniel, 442
blenny, 442
blessing, 1256
blimp, 443
blind, 1573, 3033; Braille alphabet, 500
blindfold, 1509
blind-worm, 444
blinkers, 444
blizzard, 445, 1135
block, butcher's, 562
block, process, 3419
block, pulley, 3478, 4132, 4560
block, traffic, 446
blockade, 447
block-ship, 448
blood, 1958
Blood, Colonel, 1068
blood-hound, 449, 2219, 2957, 4184, 4406
blood-stone, *facing* 1810
bloom, daffodil, 450
blossom, 118, 435, 715, 1659, 3134
blow, 451
blow-fly, 455
blow-hole, 452
blow-pipe (weapon), 452
blow-pipe, glass blower's, 1846
blow-pipe, oxyhydrogen, 3081
Blücher, Field-Marshal von, 3630
bluebell, 454, 1916, 3247
blue-bird, 454
blue-bottle, 455
blue-coat boy, 455
blue ensign, 455
blue gum tree, 456
blue hawk, 2017
blue hen pigeon, 3256
bluejacket (sailor), 453, 1938, 4428
blue lizard, 2566
Blue Peter, 454
blue shark, 456
blue tit, 4305
blunderbuss, 228, 457
boa-constrictor, 458, 3964
boar, 459, 4237
board, 459
board, chess, 717
boat, 356, 417, 524, 619, 642, 655, 658, 774, 792, 915, 862, 1023, 1056, *facing* 1484, 1759, 1915, 2385, 2462, 2729, 3021, 3070, 3086, 3087, 3091, 3162, 3771, 3801, 3831, 3960, 3963, 3976, 3984, 4048, 4178, 4192, 4297, 4334, 4348, 4360, *facing* 4466, 4532, 4554, 4556, 4557, 4614, 4618, 4636; bow, 493; bumkin, 548; centre-board, 678; gudgeons, 1929; gunwale, 1939, helm, 2012; horse, 2078, keel, 2385; knees, 2410, out-rigger, 3065, poppets, 3341, sheer, 3910, stern, 4344; strakes, 4122, thole pins, 4279; thwarts, 4201, tiller, 4297; transom, 4314; tumble-home, 4381, yoke, 4023. *See also specific names.*
boatful, 460
boat-hook, 2068
boating, 1498
boatman, 535, 507
boat race, 963, 3468
bobbin, 534
bob-sleigh, 461
bob-tailed sheep-dog, 3910
body-guard, 462
Boehme, Jacob, 4271
Boer, 3011
bog, 2833
bog-bean, 2229
bog-moss, 463
bog-pimpernel, 463
bog plant, 1898
Bohemian, 464
boiler, 465, 1998 uptake, 4439
boiling-pans, 2337
bold, 466
Bolingbroke (Henry IV), 1121
boll, cotton, 467
boll-weevil, 1521
Bolshevist, 468
bolt-rope, 468
bomb, 68, 469, 3623
bombardier beetle, 379
bombardment, 470, 644
bomber, 1407
Bombyx, 471
Bonaparte, Napoleon. *See* Napoleon I.
bon-bon, 471
bondage, 472
bone arrow-heads, 232
bones, 163, 473, 3531
Bonheur, Rosa, 3090
bonnet, *facing* 1077
bonnet, motor-car, 474
bonnet, sail, 474
Bonnie Prince Charlie. *See* Charles Edward.
book, 192, 475, 1139, 2074, 3829
bookbinding, 419, 2963
book-plate, 476
boom, 476
boomerang, 477
boot, 478, 479, 3923
booty, 480, 752
border, 4874
Border terrier, 1047
bore (drill), 481, 2128
bore, tidal, 482
Bornean pitta, *facing* 3304
Borotra, Jean, 305
borzoi, 483
boss, 484
Boswell, James, 2291, 2556
Botanic Gardens, Batavia, 3102; Rio de Janeiro, 291; Kew, 485; Los Angeles, 3288
botanist, 2548
Botticelli, 2635
bottle, *facing* 3321
bottle-feeding, 1574, 4155
bottle-screw, 486
bottle-tree, 486
bottom, sea, 487
bouffant, 488
boulder, 488
boulevard, 489
bound, 489
boundary stone, 490
bounds, beating the, 1097
“ **Bounty** ” (ship), 2879
bouquet, 490, 515, 866
Bourbon, Louis de, 2870
Bourges Cathedral, 1533
bourse, 491
bow (boat), 493
bow (curtsy), 492, 1026
bow (dress), 492
bow (violin), 492
bow (weapon), 94, 207, 211, 492, 560
bower-bird, 493
bowfin, 493
bowl, 688, *facing* 3321
bowline, 2415
bowling, 494
bowling-green, 494
bowls, 318, 494, 3189
bowmen, 211, 1675
bowsprit, 493, 1789, 2690, 3539
bow-window, 492
box, 1273, 2746, *facing* 3321
box (plant), 4732
box, horse, 495
box, paddle, 3087
box, telephone, 495
box, theatre, 495
box-hook, 2068
boxing, 496
box-kite, 496
boy, 1, xxxii, 17, 474, 505, 889, 976, 1227, 1320, 1393, 2033, 2305, 2312, 2405, 2406, 2497, 2569, 2587, 2859, 3584, 3591, 3638, 3645, 3998, 4554, 4567
Boy Scout, xlviii, 250, 295, 438, 497, 1097, 1117, *facing* 3942
brace, 497
bracelet, 1490, 2348
brachycephalic, 498
bracket, 498
bract, 1435, 4729, 4732, 4733
brad, 2889
bradawl, 499
Bradley, James, 8
Bradmore Tower, 4413
Brahmin, 499
brail, 500
Braille, 500
brake, 96, 708
brake (vehicle), 501
bramble, blossom, 501; fruit, 39; prickles, 47
brandish, 502
branks, 503
brassard, 504
brass foundry, 1762
brass inkpot, 1490
brassy, 504
brattice, 504
brave, 505
brazier, 506
Brazilian, 2326
brazil nut, 2972
breaching-tower, 507
bread, 507, 3987
break, 508
break-down gang, railway, 509
breaker ball, 1004
breakwater, 510, 2809, 2825, 4805; lighthouse, 3001
breastplate, 511
breech, 512
brent-goose, 513
Breton, 2781, 3069, 4189
brevifoliate, 4730
breviped, 4946
brevipennate, 4946
briar, 4730
bribery, 891
brick, xiii, 514

bride, 515, 866, 2686, 4196
bridegroom, 515, 866, 2686, 4196
bridesmaid, 515
bridge, 20, 516, 517, *facing* 516, 518, 581, 610, 659 1014, 1409, 1555, 3066, 3635, 3666, 3856, 4258, 4345, 4355, 4877
bridle, 33, 609
bridle-bridge, 518
Bridport, Viscount, 56
brig, 519
brigand, 466
brigantine, 519
brilliant, 520
brimstone butterfly, 521
bring, 521
brink, 522
Britannia, 523
Britannia tubular bridge Menai Strait, *facing* 516
British Army, 33, 109, 125, 225, 226, 228, 239, 334, 360, 370, 371, 429, 436, 479, 533, 559, 578, 588, 620, 638, 698, 701, 729, 819, *facing* 818, 825, 833, 852, 934, 1066, 1085, 1104, 1188, 1221, 1228, 1242, 1243, 1294, 1302, 1399, 1402, 1405, 1406, 1407, 1412, 1426, 1700, 1726, 1943, 2025, 2181, 2224, 2280, 2287, 2318, 2513, 2625, 2667, 2948, 3002, 3015, 3064, 3213, 3318, 3356, 3583, 3585, 3594, 3636, 3678, 3755, 3766, 3821, 3861, 3939, 4015, 4181, 4225, 4353, 4412, 4451, 4585
British Broadcasting Corporation (B.B.C.), 41, 68, 276, 3280, 3530
British Empire, Order of the, 3040
British Legion 3085
British merchant service, 124 455, 831, 1845, 4337
British Navy, 30, 56, 57 182, 227, 361, 443, 448, 453, 459, 470, 505, 525, 609, 619, 620, 767, 853, 871, 878, 902, 909, 955, 968, 1002, 1082, 1120, 1195, 1329, 1371, 1479, 1626, 1631, 1644, 1938, 2100, 2423, 2903, 3068, 3205, 3249, 3269, 3772, 3898, 4146, 4428, 4318, 4515, 4521, 4526
British War medal, 1914-18, *facing* 2536
Britons, ancient, 906, 3386
Brixham trawler, 4348
broad, 524
broadcasting, 68, 2198, 3530, 4195, 4343
Broadland, 524
broadside, 525
broch, 526
brochate, 4946
broken, 527
brome grass, *facing* 1896
Brontë, Charlotte, 284, 2962
bronze, 528, 606, 1490
Bronze Age, 529, 3103
bronze-modena pigeon, 3256
brooch, 530, 1490, 1596, 2839
brook, 530
Brooke, Rajah, 63, 4175
broom, butcher's, 531
"Brotherhood of Man The," 3847
brougham, 637
Brown Bess, 532
brown rat, 4472
Bruce, James, 1202, 3572
Brummell, Beau, 1065
brunt, 533
brush, 534, 724, 4310
Brussels lace, 534
brute, 535
Brutus, Lucius Junius, 4309
bubble, 536
buccaneer, 1606
buccina, 537
Bucephalus, 537
Buchanan, George 2045
buck-bean, 2229
bucket, 538
Buckingham Palace 1261 4875
buckjumper, 537
buckle, 538
bud, 74, 539
Buddha, 539, 2141, 4602
Buddhist, 540
budgerigar, 540
buffalo 4948, Cape, *facing* 3498
buffer, 541
buff ermine moth, 1885
buff-tip moth, 4581
bug, *facing* 2250
bugle, 542
bugler, 497, 1956
building, 543, 2188, 3436, 3926
bulbul, 544
Bulgarian, 1540
bulkhead, 545
bull, 2293, 4951, feet, 1683
bulldog, 545
bullfinch, 1612
bullhead, 545
bullion, 546, 2235
bullock, 960, 1286, 1510, 3070, 3080, 3408, 3706, 4284
bullock carriage, 4629
bullock wagon, 1124, 1286 1776, 3080
bull-terrier, 545
bull-trout, 3897
bully (hockey), 547
bulrush, 547, 3592
bulwarks, 1056
bumble-bee, hind leg, 3182
bumkin, 548
bump (bounds), 1097
bump (race), 548
bun, 549
bunker, 550
Bunsen burner, 550
bunting (bird), 3592, 4619
bunting (flags), 1002
Bunyan, John, xxvii, 2858
buoy, 551, 1259, 3632
buoyancy, 1224
bur, 552
burden, 552, 911
burgee, 553
burgher, 400, 554
burgomaster, 554
burgonet, 2012
burial, 559
burial place, 654
Burke, Edmund, 2556
burlesque, 555
Burman, 556, 1984
burn, 10, 79, 868, 2178, 4583
burnet-moth, *facing* 2250, *facing* 4580
burnishing, 1537
Burns, Robert, 957
burnt-offering, 556
burrow, 557
burst, 558
bury, 559
bush, Australian, 2339
bushman, 560
bust, 528, 561, 579, 763, 2021, 2223, 2267, 2748, 2751, 4290
bustard, 561
butcher, 562
butcher-bird, 562 : egg, *facing* 1305
butcher's-broom, 531
butt, 563
butter, 564, 973, 1515, 3154
buttercup, 564, 3005, 4730 ; leaf, 2481
butterfly, 58, 160, 521, *facing* 564, 572, 593, 596, 829, 1145, 1579, 1742, 1903, 2031, *facing* 2250, 2503, 2769, 3091, 3207, 3208, 3474, 3481, 3698, 4214, *facing* 4580, 4946, 4952, chrysalis, 740, 3127 ; evolution, 1145 ; setting, 3891 ; wing-membranes, 3155. *See also specific names.*
butterfly-net, 2069
butterwort, 566, 4736
button, 566, 3723, 4611
buttonhole, 515
button-piercing machine, 3369
buttress, 567, 1881
buzzard, 568
bygone, 1852
bystander, 569
Byzantine, 570

C

C, letter, x
Caaba, 571
cab, hansom, 1971
cabbage, 3208
cabbage-butterfly, 572, 3208
cabbage-rose, 572
caber, 573
cabin, 3894
cabin lamp, 2442
Cabinet, 1206
cable, 574, 1077
cable, ship's, 2829
cable-way, 4802
Cabot, John, 1202
cacao, 575, 798, 4430
cactus, 576, 577, 4734, prickles, 47
Cade, Jack, 2263
cadet, 578, 1412, 1619, 3143, 3434, 3898, 4454
Caesar, Julius, 579, 1471 2465
café, 580
cage, mine, 580
Cairn terrier, 581
caisson, 581
cake, xlvii, 582, 1090
calamity, 583
calash, 583
calceolaria, 584
Calcutta, Black Hole of, 434
Caledonian Canal, 585
calender (devotee), 586
calf, 586, 2986, 4875
Californian poppy, 1458
caliph, 587
call, 588
callipers, 589
calm, 590
calpac, 591
Calpurnia, 1692
caltrop, 4730
calumet, 591
calyx, 1435, 1663, 4730
cam, 592
Camberwell beauty butterfly, 593
camel, 120, 316, 593, 623, 1096, 1232, 1279, 1297, 1512, 2095, 2681, 2915, 3022, 3526, 4045, 4597
Camel Corps, 1320
camellia, 594
cameo, 594, 1810, 2348, 3020
camera, 595, 1609 ; distortion, 1235
camouflage, 124, 596, 597
campanile, 896
campanula, 387, 599
campanulate, 4730
camp furniture, 598
camphor-tree, 599
camping, 250, 622
campion, 599, 2618
Canadian goose, 1874
canal, 585, 600, 601, 2320, 2573, 2574, 3602, 4419, *facing* 4466
canary, 601, *facing* 3993
canary grass, *facing* 1896
"Canberra" (cruiser), 3919
can buoy, 551
candelabrum, 602
candle, 603
candle snuffers, 4001
candlestick, 602, 3224, 3403
candlestick lamp, *facing* 2442
candytuft, 936
cane, sugar, 604, 3289, 4158, 4159
canephorus, 604
cangue, 604
cannibal, 605
canning (fruit), 3397
Canning, Lord, 3441
cannon, 606, 1709, 2549
cannon-ball, 606
canoe, 535, 607, 966, 3065, 3416
canopy, 166, 608
canteen, 609
canter, 609
Canterbury bell, 4730
Canterbury Cathedral, 661
"Canterbury Tales," 1736
cantilever bridge, 610, 4877
canvas, artist's, 240
canvas, ship's, 611
canvassing, 2290
canyon, 522, 612, 1083
cap, 397, 612, 1020, 1386
capacity, 613
caparison, 614
cape, 614
Cape buffalo, *facing* 3498
Cape of Good Hope, 1134, 2382
capital (column), 22, 615, 1266, 2308, 3041
Capitol (Rome), 617
Capitol (Washington, U.S.A.), 616, 2496
capitulum, 4730
caprification, 618
capsize, 619
capstan, 619
cap-stone, 613
capsule, 4730
captain, 620
capuchin monkey, 621
capybara, 621
car, allegorical, 569
car, floral, 1078
caracal, 622, 1080
carapace, 4947
caravan, 622, 623, 1605, 1838
carbine, 223
carbon, 115, 1069
Carboniferous Age, 624
carbon paper, 2064
carburettor, 625
cardinal, 627, 1210
carding-engine, 626
card-table, 1213
care, 628
careful, 629
Carib, 630
caricature, 630
carillon, 631
Carlyle, Thomas, 284
carnation, 632
Carnegie, Andrew, 1245 1815
carnival, 633, 1073
carnivore, 4947
carol, 634
carp, 635
carpel, 4730
carpenter, 635, 2355
carpenter's tools, 297, 405, 499, 728, 3286, 4317
carpentry, 2840
Carpet, Holy, 2058
carpet-weaving, 636
carrack, 636
carriage, 397 637, 2448, 4629
carrier, mechanical, 325
carrier, native, 1510
carrier-pigeon, 638
carrion crow, 638
carrot, 227
carry, 639
cart, 907, 3355, 3937, 4314
cart-horse, 1917
Carthusian, 640
carting, 2608
cartoon, 641, 4244
cartridge, 136
cartridge-belt, 326
caruncle, 4948
carvel-built, 642

carving, 146, 642, 1007, 1339, 1490, 2327, 3109, 3619, 4610
caryatid, 642
cascade, 643, 1662
casemate, 644
cashmere shawl, 645
cash register, 3608
casino, 646
cask, 1208, 4094
casket, 646, 3621
casque, bird's, 646
cassock, 647
cassowary, 646
cast (mould), 385
cast (reflection), 648
cast (spider's skin), 646
cast, wax, 4534
castanets, 649
castaway, 649
caste, 2041
castle, 311, 650, 651, 709, 3459, 3683, 4802
Castor and Pollux (lightning), 652
casualty, 2181
cat, lii, 622, 653, 1820, 2169, 2187, 2522, 2593, 3886, 4406, 4554, 4571
catacomb, 654
catamaran, 655, 966
catapult, 656
cataract, 656
catastrophe, 657
catch, 658
catcher (baseball), 349, 3416
catchment, 4875
catenary, 659
caterpillar, 596, 660, 1115, 1904, 2458; damage, 3208; nest, 2921
caterpillar (tractor), 660
cat-fish, 660
cathedral, 661, 896, 1533, 1613, 1745, 1879, 1881, 2184, 2094, 3066, 3209, 3253, 3377, 3649, 3662, 3671, 3938, 4329, 4339, 4589, 4598
Catherine of Alexandria, Saint, 1648
Catiline, 662
catkin, 662
cat's-cradle, 3488
cat's-ear, 4733
cat's-eye, *facing* 1810
cat's paw knot, 2415
cattle, 563, 663, 2021, 2162, 2345, 3381, 4125, 4878
Cattle Arab, 4873
cattle-ranch, 3542
catwhisker, 664
Caucasian, 664
caudal, 664
cauldron, 2632
cause, 665
causeway, 666
caution, 666
cavalier, 667, 2361, 2650
cavalry, 33, 107, 701, 1085, 1243, 1502, 1675, 2318, 3076
cave, 668, 3941, 4081
cave-dweller, 2127, 3093
cave-man, 969
cavern, 1919
cavity, 669
cavy, 669
cayman, 670
Cecilia, Saint, 2727
cedar, 670
ceiling, 671, 1552, 2432
celebrity, 811
Celestial (Chinese), 672. *See also* China.
celestial phenomena, *facing* 260
cell (room), 672
cell, wax, 126, 823
cell, wet, 673
cellar, 673
Cellini, Benvenuto, 3383
celt (implement), 674, 3103
cement-mixing machine, 2800
Cemophosa coccinea, *facing* 3644
Cenotaph, Whitehall, 164, 674
census, 675
cent, American, 675
centaurea, *facing* 164
centenary, 676
centipede, 677
centre-board, 678
cephalopod, 679
ceramics, 141, 679, 725, 1193, 1212 *facing* 3321, 3349, 4057, 1384, 4540, 4574
ceremony, 26, 680, 691, 1029, 1841, 2304
ceroplastics, 681
Cervantes (Miguel de Cervantes Saavedra), 1738, 3137
cervical, 682
Cetacea, 390, 452, 683, 880, 1610, 1891, 2118, 4044
chafer beetle, 379
chaffinch, 684, egg, *facing* 1305
chafing-dish, 684
chafing-gear, 684
chain, 685, 4196
chain-plate, 685
chain-pump, 685
chair, 686, 836, 1042, 1562, 1826, 4445, 4568
chalet, 121, 687, 2084
chalice, 688
chalk, 1822
chalk (drawing), 688
chalk hill blue butterfly, *facing* 564
challenge, 689, 1084
chamber, 836
chamberlain, 2362
chameleon, 690, 1519, 2566, *facing* 3644, eye, 1529
chameleon fish, 690
chamois leather, 2486
champion, 691, 2485, 2527
champion heifer, 3722
championship, 1017
Champs Elysees, 198
chancel, 692
Chancellor, Lord, 693
chandelier, 694, 2519
change, 695
channel, 1801, 1802
Channel Islands, 1988
chantry, 3671
chaos, 696
chapel, 650, 697, 1264, 2562, 4548
chapel-de-fer, 2012
chaplain, 698, 1303
chapter-house, 699
char-à-bancs, 699, 2215, 2847
characters, in Chaucer, 1736; in Dickens, 1161, 1301, 1925, 2117, 2131, 2216, 3173, 3626; in "Don Quixote," 555, 3715; in Scott, 2106, 3519; in Shakespeare, 1523, 3207, 4023, 4309; theatrical, 700, 1283, 4309
charcoal, 700
charge, cavalry, 701, 1085
charger (horse), 2851
chariot, viii, 414, 702, 1490
charioteer (fish), *facing* 1624
chariot race, 753, 3497
charity, 703, 2253
Charlemagne, 4603
Charles I, King of England, 166, 2401
Charles II, King of England, 2445
Charles Edward (Bonnie Prince Charlie), 854, 2333
charm, 704
charter, 705
Chartism, 706
chase (hunting), 1156, 2215, 2894, 3258
chase, paper, 707
chassis, 708
chasuble, 708
chateau, 709
Chatham, William Pitt, Earl of, 2460
chatterer, banded, *facing* 3304
Chaucer, Geoffrey, xxv, 1738
chauffeur, 710
cheat, 1213
cheer, 711
cheese (skittles), 113
cheese-press, 712
cheese-vat, 712
cheetah, 713
chef, 910, 1379
Chellean, 713
Chelsea Pensioner, 1737, 3189, 4010
chemist, 103, 714, 879; shop, 3211; sign, 1112
Chequers, 953
cherry, 715, 1659; blossom, 1555
cherry-laurel, leaf of, 2470
cherub, 716
chess, 717, 2701
"Chester" (battleship), 505
chestnut, 539, 718, *facing* 1072, 2481, *facing* 4350
chest of drawers, 1288
Chevy Chase frieze, *facing* 1738
Cheviot ram, 718
chevron (heraldry), 719
chick, 425, 720
Chicken. *See* fowl.
chicken-coop, 889
chicory, 721
chief, 205, 591, 721, 1414, 1984, 3586, 3955
chief engineer, 3007
Chief Scout, 2495, 4591
chieftain, 1601
children, ii, viii, xxx, xxxi, xxxii, xxxiii, xxxv, xxxvi, xxxvii, xxxviii, xxxix, xl, xli, xlii, xliii, xliv, xlv, xlvii, xlviii, xlix, l, lii, liii, liv, lxi, 14, 27, 28, 143, 199, 229, 252, 392, 490, 536, 628, 636, 703, 711, 716, 722, *facing* 722, 726, 733, 777, 903, 1021, 1215, 1246, 1278, 1383, 1392, 1553, 1563, 1568, 1574, 1713, 2142, 2253, 2604, 2613, 2615, 2694, 2698, 2787, 2912, 2970, 3053, 3170 3178, 3290, 3359, 3511, 3514, 3524, 3675, 3688, 3691, 3816, 3925, 4278, 4350, 4410, 4493
Chile, inhabitants, 206
Chile pine, 1732
chilli, 723
chimaera (fish), 723
chimney, factory, 1548, 2168, 4076; cowls, 962, glass, 219
chimney-sweep, 724
chimpanzee, 185, 725, 4289
china. *See* ceramics.
China, coin, 1023; flower boat, 966; Great Wall, 4516; inhabitants, 478, 604, 672, 1098, 1470, 1570, 2419, 2736, 2815, 2990, 3131, 3255, 3841, 4509, junk, 966, 2370; lamp, *facing* 2442; lantern, xxxviii, 1570; mandarin, 3851; ring-making, 3738; vehicle, 3142
chinchilla, 726
Chinese. *See* China
Chinook, 726
chipmunk, 727
Chippendale, 686, 2784
chisel, 728
Chiton, 4949
chivalry, 729
chocolate, 1055
choice, 730
choir, 1960, 3209
chop, 732
chopsticks, 733
choristers, 731, 1959, 2727
chorus, 734
chough, Cornish, 735
chow-chow, 735
christening, 2890
Christ. *See* Jesus Christ.
Christians, early, 736, 1142, 3756
Christmas, 737
Christmas, Father, 1015, 1816, 3342, 3781
Christmas pudding, 1092, 1509, 2214
Christmas rose, 2011, 2724
Christ's Hospital scholar, 455
chromosphere, 738
Chronicle, Anglo-Saxon, 739
chronometer, 775, 884
chrysalis, 740, 1145
chrysanthemum, *facing* 164, 740
chub, 741
church, 351, 692, 742, 1527, 2463, 2902, 2954, 3714, 3846, 4098
churchyard, 1901
churn, 564, 743, 2765
chute, 1902
cicada, 743, *facing* 4580
cider, 744, 3398
cigarette-making machine, 745
cinchona, 3516
Cinderella, 746, 3115
cinerary urn, 747
Cingalese, 747, 1948, 4321
Cingalese dragon-fly, *facing* 2250
Circassian, 748
Circe, 2999
circle, family, 133
circle, magic, 2632
circuitous, 749
circular saw, 750
circumgyrate, 751
circumnavigate, 752
circus, 753
cirro-cumulus, 754
citadel, 755
civet-cat, 756
civic ceremony, 26, 3771
civil engineering, 757
civilization, Aztec, 300
Civil War, American, 2817, 3445; English, 3511
claim, 758
clam, 759, 3692
clamp, bench, 759
clan, 760
clap, 761
Clarendon, Edward Hyde, Earl of, 2134
clarinet, 762
class (school), 2149
classic, 763
clavichord, 764
claw, 308, 765
clay, 2409
clay doll, 4330
clean, 766
clear, 767
clearing, 4875
clearwing moth, 2503
cleat, 768
cleaver, 562
cleek, 768
clef, 353, 768, 1531
clematis, 769; seeds, 1222
Clemenceau, Georges, 3576
Cleopatra's Needle, 2909
clerestory window, 769
clever, 770
clew, 771
clew-garnet, 771
clew-piece, 771
clew-rope, 771
click beetle, 379
Clifden blue butterfly, *facing* 564
Clifden nonpareil moth, 2951
cliff, 15, 771, 1822, 2899
climb, 772
climbing perch, 144
cling, 773
clinker-built, 774
Clio, 774
clip (cartridges), 136
clipper (ship), 774, *facing* 1484

clippers, 4596
cloche, 91
clock, 775, 776, 1892, 4299
clog (shoe), 777
cloisonné, 777
cloister, 778, 1058, 1059
close-hauled, 778
cloth-cutting machine, 779
clothes, 780, 781
clothes-hook, 2068
cloud, 754, 782, 3014, 4506; measuring machine, 2918
clouded yellow butterfly, *facing* 564, *facing* 4580
clove-hitch, 2047, 2415
cloven, 783
clover, 783
Clovis, King of the Franks, 1724
clown, 711, 784, 2368
club, Indian, 2366
club-moss, 785
cluster, 786, 888
Clyde, Firth of, 2837
coach, horse-drawn, 397, 787, 1497, 3115; motor, 699
coach-horn, 2072
coachman, 787
coal-cutting machine, 789
coal elevator, 1574
coal mine, 216, 504, 580, 788, 789, 855, 4082
coal-screen, 788
coal-seam, 789
coal-truck, 1574
coamings, 790
coast, 2822
coaster, 790
coast-guard, 790
coat, Joseph's, 3435
coat-buttons, 4611
coati, 791
coat of arms, 791
cob, Indian corn, 921
Cobham, Sir Alan, 2282
coble, 792
cob nut, 791
cobra, 160, 792, *facing* 3644
cobweb, 793
cockade, 795
cockatoo, *facing* 366, *facing* 3304
cockchafer, 796, *facing* 2250, 4051
cockerel, 4948
cocker spaniel, 3670
cock-horse, 796
cockle woman, 797
cock of the rock, *facing* 3304
cockpit, 794
cockroach, 432, 1353, 2749
cock's foot, *facing* 1896
cocoa, 575, 798
coco-nut, 798, 2972
Coconut Island, Hawaii, 267
cocoon, 471, 798, 1118, 4046
cod, 799
code, Morse, 1268
coelenterate, 800
coeval, 801
coffee, 802
coffee-pot, 3197
coffin, 803, 1995, 3098
cog-wheel, 804, 3266
coherer, 805
coif, 805
coiffure, 806, 2754
coil, 806
coin, American, 675; Arabian, 1023; British, 155, 807, 1448, 1659, 1916, 1934, 1956, 2941, 3916; Greek, 807; Italian, 2553; Japanese, 3869; Roman, 807; Spanish, 3217
cold, 808
cold storage, 2716
collaborate, 809
collapse, 810
collection, 811, 2700
collector, 811
colleen, 812
Colleoni, Bartolommeo, 234
collie, 813, 2216, 2299, 2342, 2485
collier squirrel, 4951
Collingwood, Admiral, 56
collision, 813, 2148, 2200, 3077, 3906
collocate, 814
Colobus, 815
colonel, 1188; badge, 816
colonist, 3567
colonnade, 816
Colosoma inquisitor (beetle), 379
colossal, 817, 2141
Colosseum, 818
colour, 215, 1885
colour plates, words from other lands, Frontispiece; annuals, *facing* 164; astronomy, *facing* 260; beaks, *facing* 366; bridges, *facing* 516; butterflies, *facing* 564; Dolomites, *facing* 633; children, *facing* 722; regimental colours, *facing* 818; English costume, *facing* 938; Crustacea, *facing* 1004; deciduous, *facing* 1072; eggs, *facing* 1305; ships, *facing* 1484; fish, *facing* 1624; friezes, *facing* 1738; gems, *facing* 1810; grass, *facing* 1896; hats, *facing* 1977; university hoods, *facing* 2066; insects, *facing* 2250; lamps and lanterns, *facing* 2442; medals, *facing* 2536; locomotives, *facing* 2574; mosaics, *facing* 2649; nests, *facing* 2920; orchids, *facing* 3038; robes and coronets, *facing* 3178; natural phenomena, *facing* 3228; plumage, *facing* 3304; porcelain, *facing* 3321; quadrupeds, *facing* 3498; reptiles and amphibians, *facing* 3644; roses, *facing* 3720; screens, *facing* 3824; signals, *facing* 3942; song birds, *facing* 3993; swimming animals, *facing* 4192; toys, *facing* 4330; trees, *facing* 4350; Venetian canal, *facing* 4466; wings, *facing* 4580
colours, regimental, 109, 164, *facing* 818, 819, 970, 1514
colt, 820
colt's-foot, 4732
Columbine, 820
Columbus, Christopher, 1202, 2136, 3285, 4418; flagship, *facing* 1484
column, architectural and memorial, 615, 821, 919, 3023, 3260, 4070
column, natural, 666
comb, 822, 4310
comb (honey), 823
comb, cockerel's 4948
combat, 217
combination lamp, 2442
combustion, 824
come, 825
comedian, 784, 878
comedy, 826
comet, 193, *facing* 260
comet aster, 256
comfort, 827
comfrey, 1663
comic, 828
comic opera, 3272
comma, lxi
comma butterfly, *facing* 564, 829
commander, 829, 2473
commensal, 830
commerce, 831
commerce-destroyer, 832
commissariat, 833
commissionaire, 834
commodore, 835
common (land), 4536
common blue butterfly, *facing* 564
common box (plant), 4732
common buzzard, 568
common clearwing moth, 2503
common fritillary (plant), 1742
common kite (bird), 2407
common pheasant, 3228
Commons, House of, 333, 391, 836, 1067, 1226, 1375, 1690, bar, 333; Chartist petition, 706; division lobby, 2570; mace, 333, 1374
common spruce, 4066
common tern, *facing* 4580
common tiger moth, 2503
commotion, 837
communicate, 838
community singing, 839
Como, Lake, 1036
companion, 840
companion-hatch, 841
companionship, 2169
compass, 419, 841
compass-card, 842
compasses, 842
compete, 843
compile, 844
complete, 845
complicated, 846
compose, 847
composer, musical, 847, 1192, 1401, 1421, 2167, 2258, 2524, 3379, 3648, 3657, 3808, 4200, 4511. *See also specific names*
composing machine, 2824
composite, 848
compositor, 3892
composure, 849
compound (enclosure), 850
compress, 851
comrade, 852
Comte, Auguste, 3352
conceal, 854
concern, 855
concert, 856
conch, 857
concoct, 858
concrescence, 859
concrete, 860, 1044
Condé diamond, 1155
condemn, 861
condition, 862
condor, 863, 4222
conductor, musical, 358, 839; omnibus, 388
conduit, 864
cone, pine, 864, 4732
confectioner, 1090
Confederate (American Civil War), 865
confetti, 866
confine, 867
conflagration, 10, 868, 2178
confluence, 869
Confucius, 870
congener, 871
conger eel, 872, *facing* 1624
congratulate, 873
congregate, 873
Congress, 2601
conic, 874
conical buoy, 551
conifer, 874
conjecture, 874
conjunction, li, lii
conjurer, 876, 940, 2631
Connaught, Prince Arthur of, 4542
connecting-rod, 24, 413
conning-tower, 853
connoisseur, 877, 1205
conqueror, 878, 880, 929
conquest, 879
conquistador, 880
consecrated, 881
conservancy, 882
conservatory, 883
consist, 884
console, 885
console, organ, 2670
conspicuous, 886
conspiracy, 858, 887
conspirator, 858, 887
constable, 887, 4037
Constantinople, mosque, 2842; palace apartment, 1240; obelisk, 2979
constellation. 888
construct, 889, 890
consul, 891, 2264
consult, 891
consume, 892
contain, 893
contemplation, 975
contemporary, 894
content, 895
contiguous, 896
continuous, 897
contortionist, 898
contraband, 899
contraposition, 900
contrast, 901
control, 902
control board, 2262
convalescent, 903, 2299
Convallaria, 904
convention, 905
converse 1465
convert, 906
converter, 4802
conveyance, 907
conveyer, 907, 908
convict, 2930, 3500
convolvulus, 419, 3422
convolvulus hawk-moth, 2503
convoy, 443, 909
cony, 910
cook, 910, 3106
Cook, Captain James, 257, 1202
Coolidge, Calvin, 3004
coolie, 911
cooper, 4094
coot, 315, 912
cope (ecclesiastical), 426
co-pilot, 4544
copper articles, 1490
copper butterfly, *facing* 564
copper mine, 913
copy, 914
copying machine, 3114
coracle, 915
coral, 915, 2559, 2758, 3331
coral island, 267, 916
Cordilleras, 917
cordon, 918
core, 919
coreopsis, *facing* 164
Corinthian order, 919
Corinthian potter, 920
cork, 920
cormorant, 921, 4415
corn, grains, 1889; grinding, 2001; Indian, 921, 2642; machinery, 1661
corn bin, 418
corn-crake, 922; egg, *facing* 1305
Corneille, Pierre, 1738, 3296
corner, 923
cornet, 923
corn flower, 923, 4162
cornice, 924, 1738
Cornish chough, 735
corn snake, *facing* 3644
cornuted, 925
Cornwell, John Travers, 505
corolla, 1663
corona (sun), 925
coronal, 926
coronate, 926
coronation, 166, 927, 999, 1172; ampulla, 142; chair, 680
coronet, 342, 928, *facing* 3178
corporal, 1766
corporation, 929
corpulent, 930
corpuscle, 1950
corral, 931
correspondence, 1163
corridor, 654, 932
corroboree, 933
cortège, 934
Cortes (parliament), 935
Cortes, Hernando, 880
corymbiate, 936
Cosgrave, William Thomas, 2496, 3958
cosmos, 937
cosmos (plant), *facing* 164
Cossack, 938, 2459, 3535
costermonger [illegible]

costume, Algerian, 142, 1054, 2377; Alsatian, 122; Anglo-Saxon, 2227, 4147; Arab, 204; Araucanian Indian, 206; Basque, 352, 478; Bedouin, 2945; Belgian, 1098; Breton, 780, 2781; Burmese, 556; Caucasian, 664; Cavalier, 315, 667; children, *facing* 722; Chinese, 150, 672, 4509; Christ's Hospital, 455; Circassian, 748; clown; 2368; Columbine, 820; Cossack, 478; costermonger, 938; court fool, 362; cowboy, 537; Croatian, 988; Cypriot, 1037; Czech, 464, 1038; Dalmatian, 1043; Danish, 1049; Dutch, 2897; Egyptian, 275; English, xxiii, *facing* 938, 984, 986, 1025, 1158, 1192, 1193, 1210, 1213, 1271, 1557, 1559, 2134, 2256, 2272, 2665, 2806, 3589, 4177; Eskimo, 199, 478, 1459; Estonian, 1466; fancy-dress, 1262, 1553, 2547, 4370; Flemish, 1645; French, 1231, 1733; German, 1824; Greek, 1767; Harlequin, 1977; Himalayan, 2040; Irish, 812; Italian, 2325; Japanese, 2338, 3786; Kalmuck, 2379; Lappish, 478, 965, 2114; Latvian, 2507; Lithuanian, 2560; Magyar, 2096; night-watchman, 2934; North American Indian, 134; Norwegian, 780, 2956; Persian, 564, 3211; pierrot, 820, 3254; Polish, 1776; Portuguese, 780; Praetorian guard, 3370; Puritan, 939; Rumanian, 780; Russian, 3971; Scottish, 59, 760, 1046; Siamese, 3786; Siberian, 3936; Spanish, 1912, 2102, 3872; Swedish, 781, 3801; Swiss, 780; Taulipang Indian, 199; Tigris boatman, 507; town-crier, 984; Turkish, 1256, 2068; Viking, 2955; Welsh, 4547; West African devil-dancer, 1147. *See also* uniform, etc.
cot, baby's, 49; hospital, 940
cottage, 687, 941, 2311
cotton, 467, 942, 1521
cotton fibre, 1595
cotton-gin, 941
cotton-grass, 2852
couch, 943
cougar, 944, 3471
council, 945, 2419
count, 946
countenance, 947
counter, ship's, 948
counteract, 949
countermine, 950
counterpart, 951
countersink, 952
counting, xxxix
counting-frame, 2
countrified, 952
country-dancing, 4547
country-house, 953
coupé, 954
couple, 2686
coupler, 954
coupling-link, 3899
courage, 955
"Courageous" (aircraft carrier), 2144, 3001
course, 956
court, 956, 1421, 2958, 3332, 3627; dress, 1754; fool, 362; poet, 2156
courtier, 894, 2958
courtship, 957
courtyard, 311, 2788
cove, 958
cover, 841, 959
Coverdale, Miles, 4342
cow, 2649, 2861, 3927, 4144
cowboy, 537, 960, 1804, 3074
cow-catcher, 961
cow-herd, 3546
cowl, 962
Cowper, William, 2113
cowry, 962, 3574
cowslip, 4720
coxswain, 45, 963
coyote, 1576, 4591
crab, 160, 830, 964, *facing* 1004, 4948, 4952
crab-apple, 964, 4735
crab nebula, *facing* 260
crab-pot, 963
crack, 1627
cracker (bon-bon), 471
cradle, 965
craft (boats), **966**
crag, 967
cramped, 4302
crane, v, 19, 269, 509, 510, 968, 1248, 2184, 3351, 4183,
crane (bird), 968, 980, 1105
crane-fly, 2251, 4948, 4949
crane's-bill, 1823, 4730
craniognomy, 969
crank, 969
crape, 970
crate, 1207, 2052, 3450
crater, v, 971
crawfish, 237, 972
crawl, 972
crayfish, 973
crayon, 1287
cream, 973
cream-separator, 974
creation, 975
creek, 4870
creel, 976
creeper, 977
creole, 978
crescent, 979
cresset, 980, *facing* 2442
crest, 980
"Crested Eagle" (boat), 460
crested pigeon, 3256
crested screamer, 3825
crevasse, 981
crew, 1503, 3468, 3731
crib, 982
cricket, 305, 318, 494, 658, 983, 2046, 2186, 2261, 2492, 2592, 2742, 3060, 3743, 4569; bails, 311; bat, 356, 437; stumps, 311; wood for bats, 3844
crier, 984
crime, 985
Crimean War, 2318, 3588, medal, *facing* 2536; veterans, 4010
criminal, 985
crinoid, 986, 1571
crinoline, 986
critic, 987
Croat, 988
crocodile, 160, 989, 2855
crocus, 4129
Croesus, 990
crofter, 990, 2216
cromlech, 613
Cromwell, Oliver, 1025, 1536, 2272, 2811; troops, 3545, 4450
crook, 991
Crookes, Sir William, 4446
croquet, 318, 992
crosier, 992
cross, 186, 994, 1234, 1601, 1881, 2790, 4234
crossbill, *facing* 366
crossbow, 211, 996
cross-country runners, 1981, 3744
cross-fertilization, 995
crossing, 993
cross-jack, 996
cross-road, 2288, 2784
cross-trees, 996
crouch, 997
crow, 594, 638, 998, 2067, 2366
crowd, 918, 2171, 2706
crowfoot, 998
crown, 523, 999, 1000, 1306, 1430, 1826, 2401, 3603, 3622, 4292
crowned pigeon, 926
Crown jewels, British, *facing* 1810
crow's-nest, 998
crucible, 1001
crucifix, 123, 992,
cruiser, 1002, 1626, 2903, 3919
Crusader, 249, 1003
crush, 1004
crusher, 2938
crustacean, 160, 227, 237, 964, 972, 973, *facing* 1004, 1005
crutch, 1005
crwth, 4489
cry, 1006
crypt, 654, 1006
crystal, 1007, 1008
Crystal Palace, 1848
cub, 1008, 2550, 3090
cube, 1009
cuckoo, 1010, 2297, 2417
cuckoo-pint, 2
cucumber, 1010, 1222
cuddle, 1011
cuddy, 1011
cuirass, 1012
cuirassier, 1012, 1085
culminate, 1013
culture, intensive, 91'
culvert, 1014, 4802
cumber, 1015
Cunarder, 892, 1016, 1179
cuneiform, 1034
cup, 688, 1017, 3948, 4423
cup-and-ball, 1017
cupboard, 3934
Cupid, 138, 1018
Cup of Tantalus, 3559
cupola, 1018
curassow, 1019
curative, 1020
cure, 1021
Curie, Marie, 1202
curious, 1022
currach, 1023
currant, 398
currency, 675, 807, 1022
current, 3525
curricle, 1024
Cursor, Lucius Papirius, 2264
curtail, 1025
Curtana, 3603
curtsy, 492, 1026
Cuscus, 1027
cusp, 1028
custom, 1028
custom-house, 899, 1495
cut-glass, 17, 1069
Cuthbert, Saint, 3214
cutlass, 223, 1030
cutter, 1029
cutting, 1029
cutting machine, 3114
cuttle-fish, 219, 859, 4074, 4252
cutty pipe, 1031
cyclamen, 1032
cycle, 4223
cyclist, 3084, 3175
cyclone, 1033
cygnet, 1034
cylinder, Babylonian, 1034
cymbals, 1034
"Cymbeline," scene from, 2657
cynic, 1035
cypress, 1036
Cypriote, 1037
Cyprus, toys, *facing* 4330; vase, 4458
Czech, 1038
Czecho-Slovak, 3981

D

D, letter, **xi**
dab, 1039
dace, 1040
dachshund, 1040
daddy-long-legs, 2251, 4948
daffodil, 450, 1041, 1811, 3431
dag, 3274
dagger, 1041
dahabeeyah, 1041
dahlia, 848, 1041
dainty, 1042
dairymaid, 564, 974
dairyman, 973
dais, 1042
daisy 848, 2677, 3080
dak-runner, 3355, 3652, 4801, 4803, 4807
Dalmatian, 1043
Dalmatian dog, 1043
dam, 344, 757, 1044, 1655, 3652, 4801, 4803, 4807
damascene, 1045
damask, 1045
Damien, Father, 3864
Dan buoy, 551
dance, 933, 1046, 1679 1717
dance band, 41
dancer, 134,
dandelion, 1047, 2481
Dandie Dinmont, 1047
dandy, 1065, 2757
dandy (boat), 1047
Dane, Great, 1253
Danes, 3353
danger, 1048
danger-signal, 666
Daniel (prophet), 1108
Danish, 1049
Dante, 1063, 1738, 2323
Danzig, 4551
Daphne, 2754
daring, 1050
darken, 1051
dark green fritillary butterfly *facing* 564
dark lantern, *facing* 2442
Darling, Grace, 1953, 3030 4312
dart, 1052
darter, 1052, *facing* 419.
Darwin, Charles, 3812
dash, 1053
dasyure, 1054
date, 1054
date-plum, 3212
daub, 1055
David (the Psalmist), 3230, 3458
davit, 1056
dawn, 1057, 1199, 2837
daylight, 1058
day lily, 2536
day-nursery, 1884, 2970
dazzle, 1059
dead-eye, 1060
dead-light, 1061
deadly nightshade, 2835
dead-nettle, 1080, 4729
dean (valley), 1062
dear, 1063
death, 1575
death-bed, 1401
death-mask, 1063
death's-head moth, 1064, 1529, *facing* 2250
debonair, 1065
debris, 696
debtor's chair, 1562
debus, 1066
debut, 1067
decamp, 1068
Decandria, 1069
decanter, 1069
decapod, 4948
decarbonize, 1069
decay, 1070
deception, 1071
deciduous, 1072, *facing* 1072
decipher, 1073
deck, 53, 767, 1074
deck quoits, 3521
Declaration of American Independence, 1075, 2201
declivity, 1076
decode, 1077
decomposite, 4731
decorate, 1078
decorated (architecture), 209, 3333

decoration (honour), 295, 1351, *facing* 2536
decoration, ceiling, 671 ; street, 1589
decoy, 1079
decrescent, 1080
decumbent, 1081
decurrent, 1081
deed, 1082
deep, 1083
deep-sea fish, 395, 3236, 3688 , ground, 1945
deep-sea sounding apparatus, 4025
deer, viii, 1084, 1908, 3570, 3711, 3773, 4520 ; eye, 1529
deerhound, 4376
deer-stalker, 1835
defeat, 1085
defence, 1085
defend, 1087
defile (pollute), 1088
deflect, 1089
Defoe, Daniel, 284
deft, 1090
degrade, 1091
degree, University, *facing* 2066
degust, 1092
deity, 146, 187, 528, 774, 1093, 1156, 1637, 1865, 2009, 2737, 2919, 2988, 3003, 3292, 4268, 4290, 4631
delay, 1094
delegation, 706
delf, 1095
delicate, 1096
delight, 1096
delimit, 1097
deliver, 1098, 1099
delivery (lawn-tennis), 1100
delphinium, 1101
demand, 1102
demeanour, 1103
Demeter, 2988
demobilize, 1104
demoiselle (bird), 1105
demolish, 508
demon, 1106
demonstrate, 1107
Demosthenes, 1107
Demosthenic, 1107
den, 1108
dendriform, 1109
dene, 1110
denizen, 1111
Denmark, King of, 2924
denote, 1112
dense, 1113
dental, 1114
dentist's tweezers, 4390
denude, 1115
deny, 1116
depart, 1117
depend, 1118
depict, 1119
deploy, 1120
depose, 1121
deposit, 1122
depreciation, 1123
depress, 1124
depressed, 1948
depth-bomb, 182, 1125
depth-charge. *See* depth-bomb.
derail, 1126
derelict, 1127
derrick, 1128, 4803
dervish, 1129, 4519
descend, 1129
describe, 1130
desert, 120, 623, 1131, 3701, 4012, 4420
design, 1132
desk, xix, xlii
desman, 1133
desolation, 1134
desperate, 1135
despond, 1136
destitute, 1137
destroy, 1138
destroyer, 3068
detach, 1139
detect, 1140
detective, 1140
detector, 664, 805
determination, 1141
detestable, 1142
detonator, 1143
detritus, 1144
development, 1145
device, heraldic, 719, 1380
devil (totem poles), 1146
devil, Tasmanian, 1146
devil-dancer, 1147
devil-fish, 1534
devil's bit, 4730
Devonian, 1148
devotee, 586
devotions, 1149, 1630, 1645
devout, 1149
dew, 1150
dewberry, 1150
dewdrop, 1150
dhole, 4571
dhow, 1151
diabolo, 1152
diadem, 1153
diagram, 71, 96, 208
diaheliotropic, 4731
dial, 775, 776, 841, 1154, 2121
diamond, 115, 1155, *facing* 1810, 2417, 3940
Diamond Jubilee, 2362
diamond mine, 4806 , fence, 3401
Diana, 1156, 3292
dianthus, *facing* 164
diapason, 1157
diary, 1158
diatom, 1159
diatribe, 1160
dice, 1160
Dickens, Charles, 285 ; character from, 1161, 1301, 1925, 2117, 2131, 2216, 3173, 3626
dicotyledon, 4731
dictaphone, 1162
dictate, 1162, 1163, 2227
dictionary, ii, 1163
didactyl, 4948
Didelphyidae, 1164
Dido, 3616
die, 951
Die-hards, 1165
diet, 1166
difference, 1167
differential gear, 1168
difficult, 1169
dig, 1170
digest, 1171
digit, 4948
dignitary, 1172
dik-dik, 1173
dike, 1173, 2602
dilemma, 1174
diligence (vehicle), 1175
dimension, 1176
diminutive, 1177
dimorphic, 1178
dinghy, 1180
dingo, 1180
dining-room, 1179
dinosaur, 1181 ; footprint, 1686
diodon, 1182
Diogenes, 1035
Dionysus, 528, 1490
dip, 1184
dip, sheep, 1183
diplodocus, 1185
Dipnoi, 1186
dipping-needle, 1184
dipteran, 4948
diptych, 1187, 2327
director, 1188
dirigible, 1189, 1532
dirk, 1190
disabled, 1190, 1539
disaffect, 1191
disagreement, 1192
disappoint, 1193
disarm, 1194
disarticulate, 4731
disaster, 1195
disburse, 1196
discharge, 1197
disciple, 586, 3163, 3232, 3279, 3380, 3449, 3695
discobolus, 1198
disconsolate, 1199, 2190
discontinue, 1200
discourtesy, 1201
discover, 1203
discoverer, 714, 1202, 1511. *See also* explorer
discreet, 1204
discriminate, 1205
discuss, 1206
discus-thrower, 1198
disembark, 825, 1207
disencumber, 1208
disentangle, 1209
disfavour, 1210
disguise, 1211
dish, 684, 1212, 1490, *facing* 3321
dishonest, 1213
disinfect, 1214
dislike, 1215
dismantle, 1216
dismiss, 1217
dismissal, 1210
disorder, 1218
disparity, 1219
dispatch-rider, 1220, 1221
dispensary, 1249
disperse, 1222
display, 1223, 3925
disport, 1224
dispute, 1225
Disraeli, Benjamin, 1067, 2757
disrepair, 1226
disrespect, 1227
dissected, 4731
disseminate, 1228
dissimilar, 1229
dissoluble, 1230
distaff, 1231
distance, 1232
distend, 1233
distil, 1337
distinguish, 1234
Distinguished Conduct Medal, 1234
Distinguished Flying Cross, 1234, *facing* 2536
Distinguished Flying Medal, *facing* 2536
Distinguished Service Cross, 1234, *facing* 2536
Distinguished Service Medal, 1234
Distinguished Service Order, 1234, *facing* 2536
distort, 1235
distribute, 1236
disturbance, 837
disuse, 1237
ditch, 650, 1238
diurnal, 1239
divan, 1240
dive, 3200, 4304
diver, 76, 1241, 1861
diver (bird), 1241
diversion, 1242
divest, 1243
dividers, 842
divine service, 164, 698, 4010
diving-beetle, 1241
diving-suit, 76, 227
divining-rod, 1244
division-lobby, 2570
divulge, 1245
dobbin, 1246
dock, 893, 1247, 1248, 3472, 4380, 4803
doctor, 282, 1249, 3390
Doctor of Laws, 2704
document, 194, 1073, 1250, 3646
dodder, 1251
dodo, 1251
dog, ii, 87, 380, 440, 581, 689, 735, 813, 991, 1006, 1043, 1047, 1087, 1098, 1252, 1253, 1964, 2091, 2216, 2219, 2246, 2253, 2299, 2341, 2342, 2367, 2388, 2433, 2453, 2464, 2480, 2485, 2617, 2698, 2881, 2926, 2957, 3153, 3180, 3317, 3334, 3466, 3643, 3670, 3703, 3732, 3760, 3774, 3842, 3893, 3910, 4030, 4133, 4144, 4184, 4257, 4376, 4405, 4406, 4434, 4554, 4561, 4571, 4624. *See also specific names.*
dog cart, 907, 3355
dog-fish, 1254, *facing* 1624
dog sleigh, 1252, 1598
dog-violet, 1254
dog-wood, 1254
doge, 1255
doily, 1255
dole, 1256
Dolet, Etienne, 1566
doll, lii, 180, 730, 1042, 1257, 1856, 2537, 2679, 4330, *facing* 4330
doll factory, 1257
doll's-house, 180, 1258, 2406, 3849
dolman, 1258
dolmen, 613
Dolomites, *facing* 633, 1259
dolphin (buoy), 1259
dolphin-striker, 2690
dome, 755, 1260
Domesday Book, 1592
domicile, 1261
domino, 1262
donjon, 1263
donkey, 248, 586, 797, 938, 984, 1279, 2393, 3017, 3389, 4261
Don Quixote, 555, 3715
door, 544, 1264
door-knocker, 9, 2413
door-screen, 1850
doorway, 1420, 1881
dor, 1265
Doric (architecture), 821, 1266, 1519, *facing* 1738
dormer, 1266
dormouse, 1267, 4016 ; nest, *facing* 2920
D'Orsay, Count, 1687
dory (boat), 1267
Dory, John, 1267
dot and dash, 1268
dotterel, 1269
double, 1270
doublet, 1271
doubt, 1271
doughty, 1272
douse, 1273
dove, 1273
dove-tail, 1273
down, 1275
downfall, 1276
Downing Street, London, 2914
downland, 1274
downpour, 1277
downs, 4876
doze, 1278
Dracaena, 1279
draft, 2201
drag, 1280
dragon, 1281, 2886
dragon-boat, 1281
dragonet, *facing* 1624
dragon-fly, 1281, *facing* 2250 ; larva, 2458
dragon tree, 1279
dragoon, 1282
drain, 1238
Drake, Sir Francis, 2411
drama, 46, 700, 826, 1283, 1696, 2885, 3295
dramatist, 3296
draped, 2145
draught, 1284
draught-horse, 3196
draughts, 1284
draughtswoman, 1285
draw, 1286
drawbridge, 650, 1287
drawer, 1288
drawing, 688, 1287, 1913, 2354, 3895
dread, 1288
" Dreadnaughte " (Elizabethan battleship), 1371
dream, 1289

dreary, 1290
dredger, 1290, 2249, 4803
dress, *facing* 938, 1291, 2806, 3553. *See also* costume *and* head-dress.
dress, diving, 76
dressing-table, 1292
dress-maker, 2702
Dreyfus, Captain Alfred, 1091
drift, 1292
drifter, 1293
drift-net, 1293
drill, mechanical, 1294, 2944, 3311, 3769, 4804
drill, lifeboat, 3075 ; physical, 1294
drink, 1295
Drinkwater, John, 3296
drive, 1296
driver, 710, 969
driver-ant, 1296
drogue, 1297
dromedary, 1297
drone, 1297
drop, 1298
dropwort, 4731
droshky, 1299
drought, 1300
drudge, 746, 1301
drum, 371, 1302, 4245
drum-head, 1303
drummer, 371, 1302
Druse, 1304
dry, 1305
dry dock, 4803
dual, 1306
duchess, 1307
duck, 477, 1079, 1308, 1653, 2305, 2651, 2883, 3263, 3312, 3805, 3820, 3912, 3929, *facing* 4192, 4235, *facing* 4580, 4916. *See also specific names.*
duck-billed platypus, 1308
duel, 64, 227, 1192, 1309, 3503, 3628
duet, 1310
dugong, 1310
dug-out, *facing* 1484, 3386
duiker, 1310
duke, 646, 1311
dulcimer, 1312
Duma, 1312
dumb-bell, 1313
dummy, 1313
dump, 1314
dunce, 1315
dune, 4876
dungaree, 1316
dung-beetle, 1265
dunlin, 1317
Dunmow flitch, 1651
duplicate, 1318
durable, 1319
durbar, 1201, 1320
Durham Cathedral, 1777 , reredos, 4173
durian, 1321
dust-cart, 4303
Dutch, 1322
duty, 1325
dwarf, 1177, 1324
Dyak, 1325
dyeing tank, 2206
dyer's broom, 1906
dynamite, 1326
dynamo, 1327, 4804
dynamometer, 192
dynasty, 1326

E

E, letter, xi
E (submarine), 1329
eager, 1330
eagle, 161, 423, 1239, 1330, 3402, 4499, 4945 ; eye, 1529 ; talons, 1683
eagle-owl, 3079
ear, 1111, 1331
Earhart, Amelia, 2294
earing, 1331
earl, *facing* 3173
Early English (architecture), 209, 1332, 1879
Early Stone Age flint, 1650
ear-rings, 1331
earth, 919, 2119, 2372, 3680, 4270
earthenware, 679, 920, 1095, 1193, 1541, 2215, 2374, 2409, 2778, 3363, 3463
earth-pillar, 1333
earthquake, 657, 1334, 1740 ; recording apparatus, 3858
earthworm, 2741, 4600
ease, 1334
easel, 240, 877, 1492, 3096
East, 472, 1555
East, Three Wise Men from the, 1335, 2898
Easter, 1336, 3664
Easter lily, 2536
eau-de-Cologne, 1337
eaves, 687, 1338
eavesdropper, 2248
ebb, 1338
eburnean, 1339
eccentric, 1340
Ecgfrith (king of Northumbria), 3214
echidna, 1341
echinid, 1341
echinoderm, 160, 1341, 4440
eclipse, 165, 738, 925, 1342, *facing* 3228
economy, 1343
ecstasy, 1344
edacious, 1345
Eddystone lighthouse, 2529
edelweiss, 1346, 1803
edible, 1347
edible frog, 139, *facing* 4192, 4945
edible fungus, 2874
Edison, Thomas Alva, 393, 1217, 2198
educate, 1348
Edward III, King of England, 400
Edward IV, King of England, 2285
Edward VI, King of England, 2401
Edward VII, King of England, 1465, 2401
eel, 188, 872, 1349 ; larva, 2458
efficient, 1350
effigy, 1106, 1313, 1351, 1942, 2606
egg, bird's, 66, 103, 202, *facing* 1305, 1353, 1354, 2195, 3078, 3779, 4559 ; house-fly's, 2056 ; moth's, 1353 ; tortoise's, 1353
egg-and-spoon race, 1352
egg-case, 1353
egg-cluster, 1353
egg-plant, 274
egg-stand, 889
egret, 422, 1355
Egypt, architecture, 2035, 2118, 2770, 3260, 3347, 3439, 3489, 4045 ; art, 100, *facing* 1739 ; Assuan dam, 1655, 3983 ; coin, 4217 ; deities, 187, 1093 ; Flight into, 3389 ; hieroglyphics, ix ; inhabitants, 1279, 1355, 1577, 3865 , mummies, 803, 1377, 2867 ; scenes, 275, 702, 1024, 1232, 1450, 2182, 3581, 3700, 3888, 4284 ; seventh plague, 3283 ; ship, *facing* 1484 ; statues, 817, 1328, 1865, 2009, 3226, 4267 ; toy, *facing* 4330
Egyptian goose, 1874
Egyptian privet, 2018
eider duck, *facing* 365, 1356
Eiffel Tower, 4137 ; model, 1379
eight (rowing), 3468
eisteddfod, 337, 1356
elaborate, 1357
eland, 1358
elder, 1359, 4413 ; leaf, 3268
election, 1360
elector, 3325
electrical engineer, 846
electric battery, 1784
electric cutter, 789
electric discharge, 652, 1361, 1366, 2263
electric elevator, 1369
electric feeder, 1574
electric magnet, 273, 1004, 2634,
electric oven, 910
electric power-station, 3367
electric train, 1362
electric wire fuse, 1763
electro-motor, 1363
electro-plate, 1364
elegant, 1365
elemental, 1366
elephant, 83, 614, 770, 931, 1111, 1122, 1367, 2087, 2369, *facing* 3498, 3977, 4295 ; Chinese character, viii ; ears, 1331 ; foot, 1683 ; head, 4375
elephant beetle, 379
elephant hawk-moth, *facing* 2250
elephantine tortoise, 227
elephant-seal, 1368
elevate, 1369
elevator, 613, 1369, 3690
elf, 1370
Elgin Marbles, 1370
Elijah, 3036
Elizabeth (queen of England), xxvi, 894
Elizabeth, Princess, [illegible]410
Elizabethan doublet, 1271
Elizabethan frieze, *facing* 173[illegible]
Elizabethan warship, 1371
elk, 1372, 1375
elk's-horn fern, 1372
elm, 1373 ; leaves, *facing* 4350
eloquence, 1374
elude, 1375
Ely Cathedral, 1329 , central lantern, 2994
emancipation, 1376
embalm, 1377
embankment, 4802
embarrass, 1378
embassy, 891
embellish, 1379
emblazon, 1380
emblem, 523, 1381, 1559
emboss, 1382
embrace, 1383
embrasure, 1383
embroider, 1384
embryo, 539
emerald, *facing* 1810
emerald skink, *facing* 3644
emerge, 1385
émeute, 1386
emigrant, 1387, 3870, 4514
emit, 1388
emotion, 1389
emperor, 1390
emperor moth, 1390
empire, 523, 1391, 4176
emplacement, 1391
empty, 1392
emu, 202
emulate, 1393
enable, 1394
enamel, 777, 1395, 3621, 4365
enameller, 1395
encampment, 430, 1396, 4240
enchant, 1397, 2999
enchantress, 2632, 2999
enclose, 1398
encourage, 1399
encroach, 1400
end, 1401, 1402
endeavour, 1403
endocarp, 1404
endure, 1405
enfilade, 1406
Engadine, 651
engage, 1407
engine, 1408. *See also* locomotive.
engine-driver, 3610
engineer, 32, 54, 846, 3007, 4272
engineering, 196, 273, 481, 516, 757, 1014, 1409
engine-room, 465, 3007
engine-room mechanician, badge, 1408
engrave, 1410
engraving, 4590
enigma, 1411
enjoy, 1412
enmesh, 1413
enormous, 1414
enrage, 1415
enrol, 4505
ensemble, 1416
ensign, 1184, 1417
ensign, blue, 455 ; white, 1644, 1956
enswathe, 1418
entablature, 1418
entanglement, 1419
enter, 1420
entertain, 1421
entertainer, 784
entertainment, 876, 898
entice, 1427
entombment, 1423
entourage, 1424
entrance, 1425
entreat, 1692
entrench, 1426
entrenching tool, 1426
entry, 880, 1427
enunciate, 1428
envelope, 3890
environment, adaptation to, 215
envoy, 1429
enwreathe, 1430
Eoanthropus, 1431
Eohippus, 1485, 3427
eolith, 1431
epaulet, 57, 1432
epergne, 1432
ephemera, 1433, 2711
ephod, 1434
epic, 1434
epicalyx, 1435
epicure, 3874
epicycloid, 1436
epiglottis, 1437
epigraph, 1437
epiphyte, 1438
episode, 1439
episperm, 4731
epistle, 1440
epitaph, 1441
epoch, 1447
equal, 1443
equanimity, 1444
equatorial, 1445
equestrian, 234
equestrienne, 258, 609
equilibrist, 1446
equip, 1447
equivalent, 1448
Erasmian, 1449
Erasmus, Desiderius, 1449
Erechtheum, 642
erect, 1450
erica, 1451
ermine, 1452
ermine moth, little, 2503
erode, 1453
Eros, 146
erosion, 15
erupt, 1454
eruption, v, 1454
escalade, 1455
escalator, 1456 ; notice, 2960
escape, 1457
escapement, 1457
eschscholtzia, 1458
escort, 462, 1510
escutcheon, 1458
Eskimo, 1459, 2101, 2133, 2384, 2647, 4875
Eskimo canoe, 607
esparto, 1460
espy, 1461
essayist, 1462, 3240
essential, 1463
establish, 1464
esteem, 1465
Estonian, 1466
estuary, 1467
etching, 1468
ethereal, 1469
ethnology, 1470

Eton College, 3463
Etonian, 1471, 1565, 4527
Etruscan bucket, 538
Etruscan sarcophagus, 1472
eucalyptus, 455, 1473
Euclid, 1474
eugenic, 1474
eulogy, 1475
euphonium, 1476
euphorbia, 1476
eurhythmics, 1477
Euterpe, 1478
evacuation, 1479
evangelist, 1395, 1480
eve, 1481
“Evening Hour, The,” 371
evening primrose, 1482
eventide, 3902
Everest, Mount, 3655
Everglades, 1483
everlasting flower, 1483
evil, 1484
evolution, (horse), 1485
evolution (shipping), *facing* 1484
evolution (skating), 1486
ewe, 3909
ewer, 1486
exact, 1487
examine, 1488
Excalibur, 1489
excavate, 1490, 1491
excel, 1492
excerpt, 739
excess, 1493
exchange, telephone, 1494, 2234; wiring, 846
excise, 1495
excitement, 1497
exclusive, 1497
excursion, 501, 711, 1498
excursionist, 501, 711, 1498
excuse, 1499
execution, 1500
exemplar, 1501
exercise, 1502
Exeter Book, 4504
Exeter Cathedral, 4339
exhaust, 1503
exhibit, 3273
exhibition, 1504
exile, 1505
existence, 1506
Exmouth, Edward, First Viscount, 56
exostosis, 1507
exotic, 1508
expect, 1509
expedition, 808, 1510
experiment, 1511
expert, 681, 3273
explain, 1512
explode, 1513
exploit, 865, 1514
explorer, 171, 1202, 1203, 1510, 1612, 2137, 2238, 3215, 3647
explosion, 4, 1125, 1326, 1513
explosive, 469
export, 1515
express, 1516
expression, 947, 1517
exquisite, 1518
extant, 1519
extend, 1519
exterior, 1520
exterminate, 1521
extinct animals, 279, 624, 1181, 1185, 1251, 1372, 1686, 2125, 2127, 2699, 2723, 2825, 2904, 3299, 3300, 3462, 4262, 4388
extinguish, 1522
extort, 1523
extractor, 1524
extreme, 1525
extrude, 1526
ex-voto, 1527
eye, 1528, 1529, 1530; Chinese character, viii
eye-beetle, 1530
eye-bolt, 1529
eyebright, 1530
eye-hook, 2068
eyelet, 1530
eyelet-hole, 1530
eyepiece, 1530
eye-splice, 1529
eye-spot, 1528
Eyre, Edward, John, 1202

F

F, letter, xii
F (music), 1531
fabric, 1532
façade, 1533, 1613, 3714
face, 1534, 1549
face-guard, 1531
facial expression, 1517
facing, 1535
faction, 1536
factitious, 1537
factory, 1464, 1538, 2337, 2869; chimney, 381, 1548, 2168
faculty, 1539
faggot, 1540
Fahrenheit, 1541
faience, 1541
fail, 1542
fair, 751, 1291
fair-lead, 1543
fairway, 1543
fairy, 1544
fairy-rings, 1544
fairy-story, 1397
Faith, 1545
fakir, 1546
falcon, 1547, 1643, 2067, 3198, 4444
falconer, 1547, 4444
faldstool, 1547
fall, 1548
falls, 695, 4323
false, 1549
family, 133, 736, 1550
“Family at Dinner, The,” 3357
famous, 1551
fan, 1096, 1552
fancy-dress, 1553
fanfare, 1554
fang, 1554
fanlight, 1552
fantastic, 9
fan-tracery, 1552
Faraday, Michael, 1202, 2488, 2963
Far East, 1555
farewell, 53, 1557
farm girls, 1727, 3553
farmer, 3408, 3137
Far North, 214, 1555, 1598
farrier, 1558, 3056
Far South, 171
farthingale, 1559
Far West, 1556
fasces, 1559
Fascist, 1560
fasciation, 4731
fast, 1561, 1562
Fastnet lighthouse, 2520
fat-faced, 1563
father, 1499, 1564
Father Christmas, *See* Christmas, Father.
fatigue, 1565
faubourg, 1566
fauna, 1567
Faust, 2991
favour, 1568
Fawkes, Guy, 858
fawn, 1908
fear, 1569
feast, 1570
feather, 1571
feather-star, 1571
federal, 1572
feeble, 1573
feeder, 1574
feeding, 1574
feign, 1575
fell, 1548, 1576
fell (skin), 1576
fellah, 1577
felucca, 1578
female, 1579
fen, 1580
fence, 3053, 3401
fencing, 1534, 1711, 2611
fencing-mask, 1534
fender, 1581
fennec, 1582
feretory, 1583
fern, 1372, 1584, 4061
ferret, 1585
ferry, 1586
ferry-bridge, 1586
fertile, 1587
fertilization, 1587
fescue-grass, 1588
fesse, 1588
festival, 633, 1621, 2710
festoon, 1589
fetish, 1590
fetter, 1591
feud, 3639
feudal, 1592
fez, 1593
fiasco, 1594
fibre, 1595
fibula (bone), 1595
fibula (brooch), 1596
fichu, 3048
fidelity, 1597
field (hunt), 1680
field (ice), 1598
field-day, 578
fieldfare, 1600
field-game, 1599
field-kitchen, 833, 1599, 2580
field madder, 2628
field-marshal, 1350, *facing* 2536, 2619, 3288, 3676, 3771
field-mouse, 1600, 2854
field telescope, 4062
field wireless, 2625
fiery cross, 1601
fiery-tailed sun bird, *facing* 3304
fife, 1601
fight, 1603
fighting crab, *facing* 1004
fig-marigold, 1602
fig tree, 1115; fruit, 618
figure (skating), 1604
figure-head, 1604
figwort weevil, 596
Fijian, 324
Fijian canoe, 3065
filbert, 2972
file (formation), 1605
filibuster, 1606
Filipino, 1607
fill, 1608
fillet (head-dress), 278
fillet, metal, 1608
film (kinema), 1609; acting, 2142, 2856; studio, 1609
film-developing machine, 1609
filming, 1609, 2233, 2856
filtering, 2998
fin, 4950
final, 1611
fin-back, 1610
finch, 1612
find, 1612
fine, 1613
fine arts. *See* art.
finger-bowl, 1614
finger-post, 1614
finger-print, 2129
finger-ring, 3697
finial, 1615
finish, 14, 1615
finishing-shop, 233
fin-keel, 1610
fiord, 1616
fir, 3894, 4066
fire, 10, 79, 868, 1635, 2178
fire-alarm, 1617
fire-arm, 223, 228, 457, 532, 3222, 3274, 3680
fire-ball, 2231
fire-drill, 2079, 4169
fire-engine, 1167, 1618
fire-escape, 1167
fire-extinguisher, 1522
fire-fish, *facing* 1624
fire-fly, 1619, 3236
fire-hose, 2079, 4169
firelight, 133
fireman, xlii, 1522, 1617, 3710, 3741, 4169; locomotive, 665
fire ranger, 3543
fireside, 3625
fire-temple, 1620
fire-walking, 1621
firework, 1223, 1357, 1942, 3492
firing, 1619
firm, 1622
first-aid, 1623, 3763
firth, 4877
fish, 144, 145, 155, 157, 203, 335, 353, 395, 442, 456, 493, 635, 641, 658, 660, 690, 723, 741, 799, 872, 1267, 1293, 1529, 1624, *facing* 1624, 1660, 1712, 1963, 2922, 3220, 3236, 3326, 3366, 3557, 3688, 3704, 3735, 3762, 3897, 3899, 3960, 3987, 4009, 4106, 4231, 4248, 4371, 4382, 4383, 4384, 4565, 4591, 4605, 4949. 4950. *See also specific names.*
fish (nautical), 1626
fisherman, 478, 521, 1413, 1625, 1741, 2054, 2626, 2729
fisherman's bend, 2415
fishery, 1626
fish-hook, 2068
fishing, 1625, 4876
fishing-boat, 590, 1626, 4348, 4618, 4636
fishing-ground, 1945
fishing-line, 4048
fishing-net, 966, 2922, 3857, 4337
fishing-rod, 1647, 2446
fish-wife, 1625
fissure, 1627
fist, 1628
fives, 1629
fix, 1630
flag, 119, 454, 455, 553, 1074, 1112, 1631, 1652, 1956, 3272, 3281, 3943, 4088, 4146, 4425
flag (plant), 1632, 2310
flageolet, 1632
flagon, 1633
flagship, Christopher Columbus's, *facing* 1484
flail, 1633
flake (platform), 1624
flame, 1635
flamingo, 29, *facing* 366, 1636, 3718
flare, 1394
flash, 1637
flash (bow), 1638
flashing lantern, 1637, 2442
flask, 1638
flat-boat, 1639
flat-fish, 1660, 3557, 3960, 4009, 4384
flaunt, 1640
flautist, 1668
flax, 1641
fleck, 1642
fledgeless, 1643
fledgeling, 1010
fleece, 718, 1643, 2739
fleet (ships), 878, 1644
Fleming, 1645
Flemish glass-ware, 1847
fleshing, 1646
fleur-de-lis, 1646
flexible, 1647
flight, 1648
fling, 1649
flint, 232, 281, 713, 1431, 1650
flint-lock, 457
flip-flap, 1650
flipper, 2063
flitch, Dunmow, 1651
float, 1293, 1652
float-boards, 1653
floating dock, 893, 1248, 4380
flock, 1653, 3153, 3914
floe, 1654
flood, 862, 1493, 1654, 2298, 4075
flood-gate, 1655
floor, 1656
Flora, 1637

floral decoration, 1078, 1379
Florence Cathedral, 896
Florentine, 1658, 2004
floriferous, 1659
florin, 1659
flounder, 1660
flour, 1256; grinding, 1661
flow, 1662
flower, *facing* 164, 662, 740, 848, 904, 923, 926, 936, 995, 1483, 1664, 3533; anthers, 1587, 4107; section, 1663; seeds, 3854. *See also specific names.*
flower boat, 966
flower pecker, *facing* 2920
flue, 465
fluent, 1665
flume, 1666
flush, 1667
flustra, 4635
flute, 1668
flutter, 1669
fly, 1670
fly (insect), 455, 1171, 1433, 1529, 1671, 1853, 2251, 2428, 2711, 3277; eggs, 1353; metamorphosis, 2056; tongue, 4315. *See also specific names.*
fly-agaric, 1671
fly-catcher, 4948
flyer, 1672
flying animals, 1673
flying-boat, 2282
flying-fish, *facing* 1624, 1673
flying-fox, 1673, 4581
flying-lizard, 3155
flying-machine, 70, 98, 1442. *See also* aeroplane.
flying-phalanger, 1673
"Flying Scotsman," 2487, 4249
flying-squirrel, 1673, 3155, 4075
foal, 248, 1674, 1962, 2077, 2974
fob, 1674
Foch, Ferdinand, 3018
foe, 1675
fog, 1051
fog flare, 1394
fog-horn, 1676
fogman, 1143
fog-signal, 1676
foil, 1677
foils, 1534, 1711, 2611
fold, 1678
foliage, *facing* 1072
folk-dance, 1679
follow 1680
fond, 1681
font, 1682
Fontainebleau, Palace of, 7
foot, 163, 783, 1683, 4302 4539
football, Association, 45, 251, 318, 1089, 1330, 1611, 1684, 1725, 1992, 2171, 2791, 2865, 3792, 3817; Association Cup, 253; Rugby, 318, 1684, 1968, 2394, 3029, 3148, 3738, 3830, 4212, 4414; Rugby international cap, 612; Shrove Tuesday, 2802
footman, 1024, 2565
foot-muff, 1685
footprint, 1686
foot-race, 265
foot-rope, 1685
footwear, 3923
fop, 1065, 1687, 2757
Foraminifera, 1822
foray, 3639
forbear, 1688
force, 1689
forcibly, 1690
ford, 1691
Ford, Henry, 3045
foreboding, 1692
forecastle, 1693
Foreign Legion, 1694
foreland, 1695
fore-limb, mole's, 4948
foremost, 1696
forerunner, 501
foresail, 321
foreshore, 1697
forest, 920, 1698, 2595, 4875
forestay, 1698
foretop, 1699
forewarn, 1700
forge, 1701
forget-me-not. 1701
fork, 1702
forlorn, 1702
form, 1703
formation, 1704
formidable, 1705
"Formidable" (battleship), 955
forsaken, 1706
Forth Bridge *facing* 516, 1409
fortify, 1707
fortitude, 1708
fortress, 211, 359 650, 755, 1709, 3540
forum, 1710
forward, 1711
foss, 650
fossa (animal), 1711
fossil 136, 801, 1712 2711 2743, 3220, 4362
foster-mother, 1010
found, 1714
foundation-stone, 2475
founder, 870, 1564, 2748, 2751
Foundling Hospital, 734
foundry, 1713
fountain, 766. 1423, 1551, 1715, 4278
Fountains Abbey, 5
four-in-hand, 787, 1716
four-poster, 374
foursome reel, 1717
fowl, 1718, 2342, 2495, 3051. 3310
fox, 215, *facing* 1072, 1253, 1582, 1719, 2792, *facing* 3498, 3917
foxglove, 1719, 2997
foxhound, 54, 1720, 2793
foxtail grass, *facing* 1896
fox-terrier, 1087, 1720, 1964, 3703, 4133
fraction coin, 1023
Fragaria, 1721
frame, 1722
framework, 708, 890
Francis I, King of France, 3383
Franciscan, 1723
Francis of Assisi, Saint 1723
francolin, 1723
Franco-Prussian War, 345, 3578
Frank, 1724
Franklin, Sir John, 1202
frantic, 1725
fraternize, 1726
fraulein, 1727
freak, 1728, 2277
Frederick the Great, 2785, 3657
free, 1730
free city, 1729
freesia, 1731
freeze, 1731
freight-train, 1732
French, 1733
French partridge, 3587
French Revolution, 354, 1191, 1840, 2093, 2102, 2259, 3160, 3430, 3451, 4258, 4496
French window, 1733
fresco, 1734, 2720, 4052
fretsaw, 1735
fretwork, 1735
Freud, Sigmund, 3460
friar, 1736
friction-reducing device, 317
Friday (in "Robinson Crusoe"), 649
friend, 1737
frieze, 146, 1738, *facing* 1738
frigate, 1739
frigate-bird, 1739
fright, 1740
frilled lizard, 1086, 2566, *facing* 3644
Frisian, 1741
fritillary (plant), 1742
fritillary butterfly, *facing* 564, 1742
frock, 1743
frog, 139, 1743, 1744, 2458, *facing* 3644, *facing* 4192, 4213, 4352, 4945
frond, 1584
front, 1745
frontiersman, 1746
frost, 1747
frugal, 1748
fruit, 1347, 1749, 2364. *See also specific names*
fruit-bat, 4581
fruit canning, 3395
fruit picking, 1740
fruit-tree, 4063
frustrate, 1750
Fry, Elizabeth, 2941, 3500
fuchsia, 995, 1751
fugitive, 1752, 3031
Fujiyama, 3244
Fulah, 1753
full dress, 1754
fulmar, 1755
Fulton, Robert, 2301
fumarole, 1756
fun, 1757
function, 1758
funeral, 934, 1106, 1995, 3698
funeral pyre, 990
funerary, 1759
fungus, 82, 1544, 1671, 1759, 2762, 2874, 2981
funnel, 1760, 3351
fur coat 1452, 1761
furnace, 465, 1762, 1799 1846
furniture. 686, 1763, 2775 *See also specific names.*
furrow, 1764, 4121
furze, 1763
fuse, 1765
fusilier, 1766
fustanella, 1767
futtock-shrouds, 1768

G

G, letter, xii
G (music), 1769
gable, 1615, 1770, 3717
gadwall, 1770
gaff, angler's, 1772
gaff, ship's, 1772 2311
gag, 503
Gaikwar, 1773
gaillardia, 1664
gaiter, 1774
galago, 1774
Galahad, 1103
gale, 1775
Galician, 1776
Galilee, 3487
Galilee (porch), 1777
gall, 375, 1777,
galleon, 1778
gallery, 836, 1779
galley, 1780; prow, 3155, rostrum, 3722
galliass, 1780
Galli-Curci, Amelita, 3405
gallinule, 2830
galliot, 1781
Gallipoli campaign. 360, 470, 1479
gallop, 1782
Galloper lightship, 2530
galosh, 1783
Galsworthy, John, 3298
Galton, Sir Francis, 1471
Galvani, Luigi, 1783
galvanic battery, 1781
galvanometer, 1784
gamba, 1785
gambade, 1785
gambol, 1786
game, 1787, 3918. *See also specific names of games.*
gamekeeper, 1788
games, Olympic, 265
gammoning, 1789
gamopetalous, 4732
gang, 1789
Gangetic, 1790
gangway, 11, 825, 1791
gannet, 1791
gap, 1792
garboard, 1793
Garda Lake, 2438
garden, 1555, 1793, 2726, 3709, 4320
garden annuals, *facing* 164
garden city, 2218
gardener, 883, 1236, 4129
gardening shears, 3908
garfish, 1794
gargoyle, 1795
garland, 1621
garlic, 1796
garnet, *facing* 1810
garret, 1797
Garrick, David, 2556, 3295
Garter (order), 1798, 3040
Garter King-of-Arms, 1798
gas, 1233, 1799, 4436
gas buoy, 551
gas-mask. 1399, 1800, 2692, 3376
gasometer, 1801
gasteropod, 1801
gate, 1319, 1802, 3279
gather, 1803
gathering, 760
Gatun Locks, 4805
gaucho, 1804
gauge, 1804
gauntlet, 1805
gaur, 1806
gazelle, 1807, 2073, 4065
gear, 684, 804, 1168, 1808
gecko, *facing* 3644
geisha, 1809, 2980, 3786
gem, 1810, *facing* 1810
geminate, 1811
gendarme, 1812
general (officer), 1754, 1813, 2495, 3105; badge, 1813
generator, 1814
generous, 1815
genial, 1816
Genoese, 1817
gentian, 4732
gentle, 1818
gentleman-at-arms, 1819
genus, 1820
geography, 1821
geology, 1822
George, Saint 455, 1281, 2886
George I King of England, 3807
George III, King of England. 630
George IV, King of England, 886
George V, King of England, 28, 30, 297, 559, 1201, 2401, 3677, 4176; half-crown, 1950
Georgian frieze, *facing* 1738
geranium, wild, 1823
German, 1194, 1419, 1727, 1824
germinate, 1825
Gersoppa falls, 4324
gestatorial chair, 1826
gesture, 1827
geyser, 1454, 1828
geyser (heating apparatus), 1828
ghost, 1829, 1987
giant, 1830
giant salamander, *facing* 3645
Giant's Causeway, 666
giant tree-frog, *facing* 3644
gibbon, 1831, 2455
Gibbon, Edward, 284
Gibraltar, 1391, 1622
gig (vehicle), 1832
gig, ship's, 1832
gigantic, 1833
Gila monster, 1834
gill, 1834
gillie, 1835
gimlet, 1835
gin, 1836
ginger, 1837
gingili, 3889
ginkgo, 1837

Giotto's tower, 598
gipsy, 1838, 2399, 2946
giraffe, 682, 1207, 3450, 4422, 4625
girder, 54, 1409, 3702, 4457
girdle, 1839
girdle ornament, 2548
Girdler lightship, 2530
girl, xxxiii, 2299, 2302, 2357, 2412, 2534, 2860, 2980, 3400, 4135
Girl Guide, 1303
Gironde, 1840
girth, 1840
girth-band, 1841
give, 1841
glacier, 772, 981, 1076, 1842 2925; detritus, 1144
glade, 3359
gladiator, 217, 1843
gladiolus, 1844
Gladstone. William Ewart, 1374
glare, 1845
glass, 3108
glass-blower. 1846
glass-making, 1713, 1846
glass-ware, 1847
Glastonbury Abbey 2317
glaze, 1193
glazier, 1848
gleaner, 234
glen. 1062, 4877
glengarry, 1849
glider, 1849
glimpse, 1850
globe, terrestrial, 1851
globe-fish, 1851
globe lamp, 2442
Globe Theatre, 2804
glomerule, 4732
glorious, 1853
glory, 1852
Glossina, 1854
Gloucester, Richard Duke of, 3141
Gloucester Cathedral, 3209, 3253
glove, 1855
glow-worm, 1855
gloxinia, 1856
glue, 1856
glut, 1857
Glyphipteryx, *facing* 2250
glyptodon. 1858
gnat, 1859
gnaw, 1859
gnomon 1860
gnu, 1860
go, 1861
goal, 1089, 1862
goat, 1863, 2388 2654, 2652, 3062
goat-moth, 1863
goatsucker, swallow-tailed *facing* 3304
Gobelin tapestry. 1864
goblet, 688, 1490
goby. *facing* 1624
god, 1865, 2737, 4290; offering, 3003. *See also specific names.*
goddess, 774, 2111, 2988, 4268
godetia, *facing* 165
Goethe, 1430
goggles, 1866
going, 1866
gold, 1867, 2744
gold-beater, 1868
golden eagle, 1330
golden-eyed lily, 2536
Golden Fleece, 1869
Golden Horn, 570
golden oriole, 3048
golden pheasant, 3228
golden plover, 3304
golden rose, 1870
golden tree-frog, 1743
goldfinch, *facing* 3993, *facing* 4580
gold-fish, *facing* 1624, 1869
gold-fronted green bulbul. 544
gold lace, 57, 1868
gold-leaf, 1722
gold-mine, 1170, 1867. 2774
gold-seeker, 3855
goldsmith, 3383
Goldsmith, Oliver, 2291, 2556
gold-tail moth. 2844
golf, 1870
golf-club, 309, 504, 648, 768, 1296, 1914, 2928
golf-course, 1280, 1543
golfer, 550, 648, 1296, 1870, 1914
Goliath, 3230
Goliath beetle, 379, 1871
gondola, 1871, *facing* 4466
gong, 1700, 1872
good conduct badge, 1872
Good Shepherd, 280, 1873, 2745
good shooting badge, 1872
goosander, foot, 4539
goose, 1874, 1910
goose barnacle, *facing* 1004
gooseberry, 398
goose-foot, 4729
goose-neck, 1875
goose-winged, 1875
gopher, 1875
Gordon, Charles George, 2950
gore, 1876
gorge, 612, 1876, 3378
gorget, 1877
gorilla, 1878; skeleton, 473; skull, 969
gorse, 1765; leaves, 38
Gosse, Sir Edmund, 987
gossips'-bridle, 503
Gothic architecture, 1879, 1881, 3006, 3717
gouge, 599, 1880
gourd, 1882
governor (mechanical), 18[illegible].
grab, 1883
Gracchus, Tiberius and Caius 1681
grace, 1884
gradation, 1885
gradient, 1886
graff, 650
grafting, 1887
"Graf Zeppelin" (airship), 3072, 3375
Grail, 1888
grain, 1889, 2819
grain elevator, 61[illegible]
gramophone, 1890
grampus, 1890
granary, 3447
grandeur, 1893
grandfather, 1891
grandfather's clock 1892
grandmother, 1891
grandparent, 1891
grand piano, 734
grandstand, 1892, 959
Grand Vizier, 4498
granny-knot, 1894
grant, 705, 1894
granule, 1895
grape, 398, 4580
grape-fruit, 1895, 4429
grape-hyacinth, 2871
grape-vine, 1896
grapnel, 4804
grapple-plant, 1897
grass, 437, *facing* 1896; esparto, 1460; fescue 1588; marram, 2685
grasshopper, 596, 1898
grass of Parnassus, 1898
grass-snake, 1898, egg-cluster, 1353
grate, 1899
grater, nutmeg, 1899
grating, 1900
gratitude, 1900
grave, 1901
grave-mound, 346
grayling, 1903
grazing, 87, 663, 4876
grease-band. 1904
greasy pole, 1904
great American egret, 422
great bird of paradise, *facing* 3304
great bustard, 561
great-coat, 970
great crested grebe, 1905
Great Dane, 1253
"Great Harry" (ship), 1229
Great Karroo, 1134, 2382
Great Pyramid, 3439
Great Saint Bernard Hospice, 2079
Great Sphinx, 4045
great water newt, 139
grebe, 1905
Greece, art, 146, 2154, 4458; deities, 528, 774, 2988, 4268, 4631; doll, *facing* 4330; inhabitant, 1767; scenes, 265, 898, 919, 2894, 3136, 4206
greenfinch, 1906
green linnet, 1906
green lizard, *facing* 3644
green plover, 2455
green turtle, *facing* 3644
greenweed, 1906
green whip-snake, *facing* 3644
greet, 1907
gregarious, 1908
grenade, 136, 1909
Grey, Lady Elizabeth, 2285
Grey, Lady Jane, 3622
greyhound, 1910, 2881, 3732
greyhound racing, 2589
grey kangaroo, 4945
grey lag, 1910
grey wagtail, 4512
gridiron, 1911
grief, 1911
griffin, stage, 44
grille, 1912
grim. 1913
grinding machinery, 1661
grindstone, 1914
grip, 1914
gripe, 1915
grisaille, 1915
groat, 1916
grocer, 3154
groin (architectural), 1917
groom 1917
Grote, George, 2045
grotesque, 1918
grotto, 1919
ground, 1920
ground-dove 1273
group, 1921
grouse, *facing* 1072, *facing* 1305, 1922
grove, 1837, 1922
grovel, 1923
growth, 1507 1924
grub, 1777, 3127
grumbler, 1925
guacharo, 1926
guan, 1926
guanaco, 1927
guard, 546, 1927, 3116
guardian angel, 1928
guard of honour 4086
guardsman, 1393, 2691
Guards Memorial, 1323, 2674, 4435
Guards officer, 970
gudgeon, 1929
guelder rose, 1929
guereza, 1929
guide. 1931
Guildhall, London, 1428
guile, 1932
guillemot, 1933
guillotine, 849
guinea, 1934
guinea-fowl, 1934
guinea-pig 1934
guitar, 1934
gules, 1935
gulf, 1935
gull, 108, 1225, 1669, 1935, 2753, *facing* 2920. *See also specific names.*
gum, 1691, 1936
gun, 177, 233, 336, 470, 502, 505, 767, 1002, 1216, 1937, 3042, 3772, 4375; breech, 512; emplacement 1391; tompion, 4313
gun-layer's badge, 1938
gun-running, 1938
gunner, 336, 1402, 2292
gunnery officer. 1699
gunwale, 1939
Gurkha, 1939
gurnard, *facing* 1624, 3587
gusher, 1940, 3221
gut, 1941
Gutenberg, Johann, 2164
guy, 1313, 1942, 2606
gymnastic, 1502, 1943, 3123, 4015
gymnocarpous. 4732
gyroscope. 1944

H

H, letter, xii
haaf, 1945
Haakon VII King of Norway. 2924
habit, riding, 1946
habitant. 1947
hackery, 1948
hackney, 1949
haddock, 1949
Hadrian's Wall, 1707
haematocyte. 1950
haggis, 1951
Haig, Field-Marshal Earl. 1350, 2619, 3676, 3771
hail, 1953
hailstone, 1952
hair, 1954
hair-dressing, 80
hairy brome grass, *facing* 1896
hairy-nosed wombat 4592
hake, 1954
halberd, 223, 1955
half-crown, 1956
half-hitch, 2047
half-mast, 1956
half-tone, 1957
halibut, 1958
hall, 691, 1958, 2118
Hall. Joseph. Bishop of Norwich, 805
Hallelujah, 1959
hall-mark, 1959
hallow, 1960
halo, 280, 1961, 2629. lunar, 1961; solar, 925
halter, 1962
halyard, 1962
Hambourg, Mark, 3245
Hamlet, 2197
hammer, 196. 1963, 2105, 2707, 4128
hammer, throwing the, 1649
hammer-head (shark), 1963 4193
hammock. 1334, 1964
Hampden. John. 2272
hamper, 1964
Hampstead Heath, 4433
Hampton Court, 1425, 2975, 3570; vine, 1896
hamster, 1965
hand, 1966; radiograph 3531
hand-bag, 1965, 3667
handbell, 1965
handcuff, 1966
Handel, George Frederick 1192
hand-glass, 2338
handicraft, 1967 3845
handle, 1968
hand-loom, 2060, 2588
hand-mill, 3510
hand-press, 1410
hand-spike, 1966
handy billy, 1969
hang, 1969
hangar, 1970
hangnest, *facing* 2920
hank, 1970
hansom cab, 1971
happy, 1972
Hapsburg, 2022
harbour, 1729, 1873; 1973, 1988
hardship, 1975
hardwood, 1974
Hardy, Thomas, 284; funeral, 1995
hare, 215, 1976; footprints, 1686
harebell, 599. 1976

harlequin, 1977
harlequin beetle, 379
harmonic, 1978
harmonium, 1978
harness (armour), 1979
harness-cask, 1979
harp, 66, 337, 1980
Harpokrates, 2009
harpoon, 1980
harpsichord, 1421, 1980
harrier, 1981
hartebeest, 1982
harvest, 234, 1587, 1633, 1983, 2450, 2907, 4284, 4552; offerings, 2569
harvest, herring, 19
harvest mouse, 1982
hat, 441, *facing* 1977, 1984; making, 1985. *See also* head-dress.
hatch, 841, 1985
haul, 574, 1986, 2922
haunt, 1987
"Haunted Path, The," 3157
Hausa, 1987, 4609
haven, 1988
Havergal, Frances Ridley, 2113
haversack, 1989
havoc, 1334
Hawaiian atoll, 267
Hawaiian flume, 1666
Hawaiian god of war, 4400
Hawaiian natives, 1989
hawk, 28, 1989, 2017, 2390, 4023, 4033, *facing* 4580
hawk-moth, 995, 1990, *facing* 2251, 2503, *facing* 4581
Hawke, Admiral, 56
hawker, 1568, 1817, 3019
hawser, 1990
hawthorn, 1990, 2481
haystack, 1493
hazardous, 1991
hazel-nut, 1825, 2972
head-dress, 425, 591, *facing* 1977
heading (football), 1992
headland, 4878
headless, 4613
head-man, 1993
heal, 1994
health, goddess of, 2111
hearse, 1995
heart, 184, 1996
hearth-stone, 1997
heartsease, 1997
heat, 1998; recorder, 3490, 4273
heath, 1451, 4730
heather, 1150, 1451, 1990
heath fritillary butterfly, *facing* 564
heavy, 2000
Heber, Reginald, 2113
Hebrew, 1470
Hebridean, 2001, 3870
Hector, 2002, 3144
hedgehog, 1086, 2003
hedgehog fungus, 1759
hedge-sparrow, 25
heed, 2004
heel, 2005
heifer, 3722
height, 2006
helianthus, 2007
helicopter, 2008
heliograph, 2008
heliolatry, 2009
heliotropism, 2010
hellebore, 2011, 2724
helleborine, 4729
helm, 2012
helmet, 76, 225, 291, 313, 511, 528, 1382, 1617, 1628, 1877, 2012, 2643, 3360, 4007, 4494
help, 2013
Helvetian, 2014
hemlock, 2016
hemp, 1595, 2016
hem-stitch, 2015
henbane, 2017
hen-harrier, 2017
Henley regatta, 3604
henna, 2018
Henry VII, King of England, 3895
Henry VIII, King of England, 488, 1210, 2314
Henry IV King of France, 3605
Heraclitus, 2748
herald, 26, 1356, 2019
herald-moth, 2019
heraldry, 332, 476, 719, 791, 980, 1380, 1588, 1935, 3541
Hercules, 2020
Hercules beetle, 379
herd, 2021
heredity, 2022
Hereford cattle, 586
heritable, 2023
Hermes, 763; winged sandal, 4217
hermit, 2021
hermit-crab, 830, *facing* 1004
hero, 38, 2025, 3144
heron, 424, 2026, 4069
herring, 19, 2027, 3899
Herschel, Sir William 4431
herse, 2027
hesperornis, 2028
Heteromera, 2029
Heteroptera, 2030
hew, 216
hexapod, 2031
hibernate, 2032, 4016, 4527
hidden, 2033
hierarch, 2034
hieroglyphics, ix, 2035
high-dive, 1364
high-hurdles, 2036
highland, 2038
Highland cattle, 2021
Highland gathering, 760
Highland reel, 1046, 1717
Highland sports, 573, 1649, 3486
high relief, 2037
hill, viii, 1874
hill, ant, 2039
hilt, 2039
Himalayan, 2040
hind (red deer), 1908
Hindu, 1113 1470, 2041, 2637
hingeless lamp-shell, 4919
hip-roof, 3717
hippocampus 2042, *facing* 4192
hippopotamus, 535, 2043, 3742, 3498; jaws, 2341
hippopotamus goddess, 1093
hirsute, 2044
"His Darkest Hour," 2071
hispid lizard, 2566
historian, 284, 2045
hit, 2046
hitch, 2047, 2415, 3910
hive, 376, 2047
hoar-frost, 1747, 2048
hoatzin, 2049
hobby-horse, 796, 2050
hockey, 318, 547, 1951, 2051; ice, 326
hod, 2051
hoe, 2051
hog, 302
hoist, 2052
hold, 2053
holiday, 1053, 2054, 2209
holly, 47, 1178, 2055
hollyhock, 2055
Holometabola, 2056
holster, 2057
Holy Carpet, 2058
Holy Cross Mountain, 2057
Holy Family, 3389
holystone, 2058
Holy Trinity Church, Stratford-on-Avon, 692
home, 2059
homeland, 1387
homelyn, 2061
Homer, 1738, 2061
home-spun, 2060
homologous, 2063
Homo Rhodesiensis, 2062
hone, 2064
honeycomb, 126, 823, 2064, 4188
honey extractor, 1524
honeysuckle, 995, 2065
honour, 2066
hood, falcon's, 2067
hood motor-car, 2067
hood, university, *facing* 2066
Hood, Admiral, 56
hooded crow, 2067
hoof, 783, 1683, 1897
hook, 2068
hookah, 1037, 2068
hoop, 2069
Hoover, Herbert Charles, 3396, 4566
hope, 112, 2070
hopeless, 1199, 2071
hop-garden, 4109
hopper (barge), 2069
horn, 433, 2073, 4946
horn (music), 2072, 2074, 2098
hornbill, *facing* 366, 2073
horn-blower, 2072
horn-book, 2074
horn dance, 1679
horned lizard, 2566
horned puff-adder, 3466
hornet, 2075, *facing* 2250
horn of peace, 1356
horse, 45, 205, 258, 495, 501, 609, 820, 871, 1050, 1406, 1542, 1558, 1782, 1946, 2077, 2268, 2444, 2480, 2517, 3056, 3252, 3413, 3663, 3953, 4287, 4358, 4368; armour, 33, 1311, 1979; bearing-rein, 370; buck-jumping, 537; draught, 1246, 1280, 2608, 3196; evolution, 1485; plough, 4121; points, 2076, police, 902, 4180; race, 3525; skeleton, 149; wild, 3499, 4571
horse, boat's, 2078
horse, sea, *See* hippocampus.
horse-box, 495
horse-breaking, 537
horse-chestnut, *facing* 1072, *facing* 4350, 4731
horse-fly, 995
horse-mackerel (*Caranx trachurus*), 2078
hose, 2079
hospice, 2079
hospital, 1941, 2080, 2995 tinfoil and silver paper, 1343; visitors, 703, 4468, 4493
hospital nurse, 2555, 2606
hospital ship, 447
hot-house, 2081
Hottentot, 2082
hound, 353, 1907, 2053, 2097, 2388, 2793. *See also specific names.*
hours, book of, 192
hour-glass, 2083
house, 687, 709, 953, 2084, 2298, 3867
house-boat, 2085
housebreaker, 508
house-fly, 1353, 2056; tongue, 4315
House of Commons, etc. *See* Commons, House of, etc.
house-sparrow, 2086
house-spider, 4950
housing, 2218
Howard, John, 3229
howdah, 2087
Howe, Richard Earl, 56
howitzer, 360
huckleberry, 2088
hug, 2089
Huguenot, 2147
huia, 2090
hulk, 2090
humane, 2091
humble, 2092
Humboldt's woolly monkey, 2818
Hume, David, 2045
humiliation, 2093
humming-bird, 995, 1295, 2094, *facing* 2920, *facing* 3304
humming-bird hawk-moth, *facing* 4580
humming-top, 2094
hummock, 4877
hump, 2095
Hungarian, 2096, 3080
hunt, 2097
Hunt, Holman, 2880
hunter, 535, 1571, 4236
hunting-horn, 2098
hunting-sword, 2039
hurdle, 45, 843, 1991, 2036, 4490
hurdling. *See* hurdle.
hurdy-gurdy, 2098
hurl, 2099
hurricane-lamp, 466
hush boat, 2100
Husky, 2101
Huss, John, 2833
hut, 1219, 2102
hutch, 2102
hyacinth, 454, 2103
Hyde Park Corner, London, *facing* 3824
Hyderabad, Nizam of, 2939
hydrangea, 2104
hydraulic hammer, 2105
hydraulic mangle, 2544
hydraulic press, 4804
hydro-electric, 2106
hydrogen "bombs," 2118
hydroglider, 2107
hydromyd, 2108
hydroplane, 2109
hydrovane, 2110
hyena, 2111
Hygeia, 2111
hygienic, 4303
hygroscopic, 2112
Hymenoptera, 4949
hymnist, 2113
Hyperborean, 2114
Hyperoödon, 2115
hypnotic, 2116
hypocrite, 2117
hypostyle, 2118
hypothesis, 2119
hypsography, 2120

I

I, letter, xiii
I (Roman numeral), 2121
ibex, 2122
ibis, 2122
ice, 695, 1204, 1486, 1625, 1731, 3563, 4408, 4877
ice-axe, 3655
iceberg, 189, 1230, 2123, 3607, 4875
ice-breaker (steamer), 2123
ice-field, 808, 1598
ice-floe, 171, 1555
ice-hook, 2068
ice-jumping, 2368
Iceland poppy, 2124
ice pick, 3799
ice-sailing, 2123
ice-skating, 1580, 1604
ichneumon-fly, 2124, *facing* 2251
ichthyosaurus, 2125
icicle, 2126
iconography, 2127
idea, 2128
identify, 2129
ideograph, viii-xx, 2130
idiosyncrasy, 2131
idyll, 2132
igloo, 2133
ignominious, 2134
iguana, 2135, *facing* 3644
iguanodon, 2135
ill, 2136
illiberal, 2137
illiterate, 2138
illuminate, 2139
illumination, 520
illumination (manuscript), 2139, 2239
illustrate, 2140
image, 2141
imbricate, 4949

imitate, 2142
immeasurable, 2143
immense, 2144
immerse, 2145
immolate, 2146
immortelle, 1483
immunity, 2147
imp, 1370
impact, 2148
impart, 2149
impassioned, 2150
impatient, 2151
impel, 2152
impennate, 2153
imperative mood, xiv
imperfect, 2154
impersonation, 2155
impetuous, 2156
impi, 2157
implement, 2158
implore, 2159
import, 2160
impose, 2161
impound, 2162
impregnable, 2163
impression, 2164
imprison, 2165
improvement, 2166
improvise, 2167
impure, 2168
in, 2169
inaccurate, 2170
inadequate, 2171
inanimate, 2172
inapproachable, 2173
inarticulate, 4949
inattention, 2174
inaugural, 2175
incandescent electric lamp, 393
Inca remains, 2176
incantation, 2177
incendiary, 2178
incense-boat, 2179
incessant, 2180
incident, 2181
incise, 2182
inclement, 2183
incline, 2184
incombustible, 2185
incommode, 2186
incompatible, 2187
inconformity, 2188
incongruous, 2189
inconsolable, 2190
inconvenient, 2191
incorrupt, 2192
increase, 2195
incriminate, 2194
incubate, 2195
incubous, 4732
incur, 2196
indecision, 2197
indefatigable, 2198
indefensible, 2199
indent, 2200
independence, 1572, 2201
index-finger, 2202
India, 407, 1113, 2369, 4323, 4432; architecture, 209, 1850, 3552, 3659, 3932, 4170; art, 1390, 1490, 2242; Durbar, 3421; fauna, 83, 544, 614, 2087, 2369, 2503, *facing* 3641, 3909, 4235, 4295; inhabitants, 327, 347, 394, 408, 499, 639, 966, 2041, 2203, 2803, 2877, 2939, 3062, 3355, 3363, 3467, 3538, 3993, 4215, 4245, 4528; vehicles, 4314, 4629
Indian corn, cob, 921
Indian Mutiny, 480, 1272, 3441, 4432; medal, *facing* 2536
Indians, North American, xvii, 134, 430, 726, 1470, 2808, 3061, 3118, 3371, 3586, 3651, 3955, 4072, 4240, 4347, 4562; canoe, 607; picture-writing, xv; tomahawk, 4312; totem, 4325
Indians, South American, 206, 452
indicate, 2204
indigenous, 2205
indigo-plant, 2206
indigo tank, 2206
indirect, 2207
indispensable, 2208
indistinct, 2209
indomitable, 2211
Indonesian, 2210
indri, 2212
induction coil, 2213
indulge, 2214
indurate, 2215
indusium, 4732
industrious, 2216
inelegant, 2217
inequality, 2218
inert, 2219
inexhaustible, 2220
inexperience, 2221
inextinguishable, 2222
infamous, 2223
infantry, 61, 117, 228, 334, 533, 698, 701, 1066, 1194, 1399, 1426, 1427, 1700, 1726, 2025, 2224, 2513, 2667, 3002, 3015, 3635, 3636, 3729, 3755, 3766, 4181, 4412, 4353. *See also* British Army.
inferior, 2225
infest, 2226
infirm, 2227
inflated, 2228
inflorescence 2229
influence, 2230
inform, 2231
infrequent, 2233
infundibuliform, 4732
infuriate, 2233
ingenious, 2234
ingot, 1343, 2235, 4300
ingot mould, 2551
inhale, 2236
inherit, 2237
inhospitable, 2238
initial, 410, 2139, 2239
injector, 2240
ink, 2241
inkpot, 1490
inkstand, 2242
inlay, 2242
inn 1468
innavigable, 2243
innocence, 1518, 2244
innovate, 2245
inobservant, 2246
inpouring, 2247
inquisitive. 2248
insanitary, 2249
insatiable, 2250
inscribe, 2374
inscription, 2250
insect, 618, 2056, 2124 *facing* 2250, 2251, 2428, 2434, 2452, 2533, 2669, 3052, 3474, 4292; larvae, 2458; pest, 268, 4063. *See also specific names.*
insectivorous plant, 1171
inseparable, 2252
insert, 2253
inside, 2254
insignia, 1798
insolate, 2255
insolvent, 2256
inspect, 2257, 3143
inspire, 2258
instantaneous, 2259
instinct, 2260
instruct 1107, 2261
instrument board, 2262
insulator, 2263
insult, 2264
insurgent, 2265
intaglio, 2266
intellect, 2267
intelligence, 2268
intelligence department, 2269
intensive culture, 3382
intent, 2270
interblend 2271
intercept, 2272
interchange, 2275
intercrop. 2274
interdigital, 4949
interest, 2275
interfere, 2276
intergrow, 2277
interior, 2278
interjection, liv
interlink, 2279
interlude 2280
intermediary, 2281
internal, 2282
international cap (Rugby football), 612
international skating, 2283
interoceanic, 2284
interpose, 2285
interpret, 2286
interrogate, 2287
intersect. 2288
intertwine, 2289
interview, 2290
intimate, 2291
into, 2292
intractable 2293
intrepid, 2294
introduce, 2290, 2295
intrude, 2296
intuition, 2297
inundate, 2298
invalid, 2299
invasion, 2300
invention, 2301
inventor, 286, 393, 809, 1217, 1245, 1268, 2164, 2195, 3239
invert, 2302
investigate, 899
investiture, 956, 2305
invincible, 2304
invite, 2305
invoke, 2306
involucre, 4732
inwrought, 2307
Ionian, 2308
Ionic capital, 615, 2308
ipecacuanha, 2309
iris, 1632, 2310
Irish, 328, 2311
Irish elk, 1372
Irish Guards, 1758
Irish terrier, 1257
iron, 2312
irons, ship in, 2311
Ironside, 1536
ironwork, 2307
ironworks, 2312
irradiate, 2313
irreconcilable, 2314
irregular, 2315
irremediable, 2316
irreparable, 2317
irresistible, 2318
irrigate, 2319
irrigation, 212, 2320
Irving, Sir Henry, 1696
Isaac (patriarch) 2161
Isaiah, 3438
island, 372, 590, 916, 2322, 4873
island (street), 2321
isle, 2322
isolate, 2323
Israelite, 1702, 3230, 3888
issue, 2324
Italian, 2224, 2325
Italian coin, 2553
Italian dragoon. 1282
itinerant, 2326
ivory, 1187, 1339, 1490, 2327, 2328, 3109, 4388, 4610
ivy, 5, 1237, 2481
ixia, 2328

J

Jabiru, 2329
jacana, 2330
jack (fruit) 2332
jack (tool), 2331
jackdaw, 2331
jack-stay, 2331
Jacob (patriarch), 2161, 3435
Jacobite, 2333; frieze, *facing* 1738
Jacob's ladder, 2334
Jacob's ladder (plant). *See* Solomon's seal.
Jacquard loom, 2334
jaguar, 2335
jail, 2927, 4523
jailer, 3130
Jain temple, 2336, 3659
jam, 2337
James, Henry, 4139
James, Saint, 3166
James I, King of England, 2194, 2401
James II, King of England, 1923
James IV, King of Scotland, 1481
Japan, coin, 3869
Japanese, custom, 1028, 1841; inhabitants, 1470, 1841, 2310, 2338, 3094, 3134, 3294, 3368, 3973, 4126, 4465, 4602
Japanese long-tailed fowl, 1718
jar, 141, 679, *facing* 3321, 4441
jardinière, 2339
jarrah, 2339
jasmine, 2340
jasper, 2340
Javanese butterfly, *facing* 2250
javelin, 2099
jaw, 2341
jaws, ship's, 2341
jealous, 2342
jelly-fish, 280, 2343
Jenner, Edward, 1511
jeopardy, 2344
Jephthah, 2146
jerboa, 2344
Jeremiah (prophet), 2720
Jerome, Saint, 3751
jersey (garment), 3468
Jersey cattle, 2345
Jerusalem, 249, 406, 1018, 2905, 3615
jester, 172, 362, 2346
Jesus Christ, 260, 641, 1423, 1961, 1994, 2281, 2504, 2591, 2629, 2782, 2834, 2869, 3109, 3199, 3389, 3479, 3547, 3615, 3814, 3828, 3884; emblem in Middle Temple, 89
jetty, 2347, 2809
Jew, 1434, 1470, 2823, 3140; scroll of the law, 3829
jewel, 60, 1000, 2348
jewel-case, 2407
jeweller's vice, 4480
Jewish Sabbath lamp, *facing* 2442
jib (sail), 2349
jigger-mast, 2349
jig-saw puzzle, 3638
jingle, 2350
jinricksha, 2351
Joan of Arc, 700, 1344, 3000, 3076
jockey, 2352
jocular, 2354
John, King of England, 1894, 2401, 2633, 2961; in pageant, 3089
John, Saint, 190
John Bull, 2354
John Dory, 1267
Johnson, Samuel, iii, 2291, 2556
joiner, 2355
joinery, 2356, 2840
joint (joinery), 2356
jolly, 2357
jolly-boat, 2358
jonquil, 2358
Jonson, Ben, 3296
Jordan almond, 2358
Joseph, Saint, 3389
Josephine, Empress, 999
Joseph of Arimathea, 906
joss, 2359
joust, 2360
jovial, 2361
jubilation, 1496
jubilee, 2362
Judas Iscariot, 3199, 4157
Jude, Saint, 3166
judge, 1651, 2363, 4570
judging, 2364

Judgment, The Last, 2869
Judgment of Solomon, 3073
jug, 528, 1490, 2365, 3224
Juggernaut, 2365
juggling, 2366
Julian, Roman emperor, 594
Julius Caesar, *See* Caesar, Julius.
jump, 1243, 2367
jumper, 2368
jumper-stay, 2368
jumping shrew, 3931
jungle, 2369, 2514
jungle-fowl, 1718
junk, 966, 2370
Juno, 2371
Jupiter (deity), 4290
Jupiter (planet), *facing* 260, 2372
jurist, 2373
juryman, ticket of, 2374
jury-mast, 2374
justice, 1381, 4268, 4426
Justice, Palais de, Brussels, 3432
Justice, Royal Courts of, London, 2375
Justinian, 2373
jut, 2376
Jutes, xxi

K

K, letter, xiv
Kabul to Kandahar Star, *facing* 2530
Kabyle, 2377
Kafir, 2378, 2419
Kalmuck, 2379
kampong, 2380
Kandyan, 1984
kangaroo, 2205, 4517, 4945
kangaroo-rat, 2381
karoo, 1134, 2382
kauri, 2383
kayak, 2384
kea, 2384
Kean, Edmund, 1283, 4300
kedge, 2384
keel, 678, 2385
keep, 650, 1237, 2386
keeper, 197
kelp, 2387
Kempenfelt, Richard, 56
Kenilworth Castle, 1237
kennel, 689, 2388
kennels, 2388
Kent, Edward Augustus, Duke of, 1688
kerchief, 2389
kestrel, 2390, *facing* 4580; egg, *facing* 1305
ketch, 2391
kettle, 2391
kettledrum, 1302
key, 680, 2392
keyboard, 631, 2670
keystone, 2392
khan, 2393
kiang, 2393
kick, 2394
kid, 2395
kidney-vetch, 2395
kill, 2396
Killarney, 328
killer-whale, 683
kilt, 310, 701, 760, 1302, 1399, 1649, 1717, 2287, 2397, 2437
kimono, 3786
kin, 2398
kindergarten, 4330
kindle, 2399
kinematograph, 162, 393, 1609, 2400, 2856, 3167, 4218, 4285. *See also* film, filming.
king, 28, 30, 166, 275, 488, 559, 705, 927, 929, 990, 1121, 1172, 1201, 1210, 1306, 1386, 1424, 1429, 1440, 1481, 1569, 1724, 1894, 1921, 1923, 2022, 2194, 2401, 2445, 2633, 2924, 2958, 2961, 3089, 3383, 3509. *See also specific names.*
King Charles's spaniel, 2402
king-cup, 2678
king eider duck, *facing* 365
kingfisher, *facing* 367, 422, 2402, *facing* 3304
King Henry VII's chapel, 697
king penguin, 4046
King's chair, 1042
King's Champion, 691
King's College, London, *facing* 2061
Kingsley, Charles, 2045
King's Prize (shooting), 686
King's South African Medal, *facing* 2530
king tody, *facing* 3304
kinkajou, 2403
kiosk, 1240, 2404
Kipling, Rudyard, 284
kiss, 438, 2156 2405, 3053
kitchen, 2406
kite, xxxv, 2406
kite (bird), 2407
kite-balloon, 2407
kitten, 2407
kiwi, 202
klipspringer, 2408
knead, 2409
knee, boat's, 2410
knee-cap, 3156
knickerbockers, 3634
knife, 223, 437
knight, 1380, 1447, 1979, 2360, 2411
knighthood, 272
Knight of the Round Table, 1103, 1489
knit, 2412, 3400
knobkerrie, 223, 502
knock, 2413
knocker, door, 9, 2413
knoll, 2414
knot, 2415, 3592
Knox, John, 1160, 3568, 3627
koala, 2416
koel, 2417
Koh-i-noor, 2417
koodoo. *See* kudu.
Koran, 2418
Korean devil post, 1146
Kosciusko, Tadeusz, 2518
kotow, 2419
kraal, 2419
Kroo, 2420
Kruger, Paul, 3011
kudu, 4949
Ku-Klux-Klan, 2421
kyle, 2422
kymograph, 2422

L

L (submarine), 2423
L, letter, xiv
label, 2424
laboratory 147, 714, 1361, 2425
labour, 2426
labourer, 2426, 3248, 3276
Labrador retriever, 3670
laburnum, 4733
labyrinth, 2427
lace, 534, 1037, 2428
Lacerta, 2429
lace-wing, 1353, 2428
lackey moth caterpillar, 2921
lacquer, 2430
lacrosse, 2431
lacunar, 2432
ladder, 1969, 2334, 2433
ladle, 2433
Lady-altar, 2434
lady-bird, *facing* 2250, 2434, 3474
Lady-chapel, 2334
lady's-mantle, 4734
lady's-slipper, 2435
lagoon, 2436
laird, 2437
lake, 110, 328, 372, 1036, 2120, 2208, 2438, 2596, 2852, 3282, 3326, 3597, 4005
lake-village, 3386
lama, 2439
lamb, 1786, 2440, 2745, 4155
Lamb, Charles, 1462
Lamb of God, 89
lamelliform, 2441
lament, 2441
lammergeyer, 2442
lamp, 271, 393, 528, 1490, 2442, *facing* 2442, 2451, 2609, 3123; wick, 17
lamprey, 2443; nest, *facing* 2920
lamp-shell, 4949
lance, 33, 223, 227, 2444
lancelet, 140,
lancer, badge of, 2444
lancet-window, 2445
landau, 2448
lande, 2448
landing, 257, 2445
landing-net, 2446
landrail, 922
landscape, 2449
Landseer, Sir Edwin, 4144
landslide, 2447
lane, 941, 4515
Lang, Matheson, 3140
language, *frontispiece*, Vol. I, xxi, xxiii, xxvi, xxvii
languid, 2450
lantern, xxxviii, 680, 1570, 1637, 2442, *facing* 2442, 2451, 2934
lantern-fly, 2452
lanyard, 2452
Lao-Tsze, 3231
lap-dog, 2453
lapel, 2453
Laplander, 498, 1219, 1470, 2114, 2454, 3613
lapwing, 2455
lar (gibbon), 2455
larch, *facing* 1072; leaf, *facing* 4350
large, 2456
lariat, 960, 2457
larkspur, *facing* 164
larva, 596, 2056, 2458, 4051
lash, 2459
lashing, 2459
lass, 59, 812
lasso. *See* lariat.
last (final), 2460
last, shoemaker's, 2461
"Last Judgment, The," 2869
"Last Supper, The," 2591
lateen, 1151, 2462
Lateran, 2463
latex, 1526
lathe, 356, 2464
lather, 2464
Latin, 2465
lattice, 2466
Latvian, 2467
laugh, 2361, 2468
laughing jackass, 2331
launch, 2469, 2890, 3978, 4535
laundry, 4608
laurel, 1430; leaf, 2470, 2481
lava, 2470, 3555
lavender, 2471
law, 2472, 3523, 3829, 4268
law-breaker, 230
Law Courts, London, 2375
lawless, 2473
lawn-mower, 2474
lawn-tennis, 45, 305, 959, 1100, 1787, 1914, 1972, 2474, 2558, 3887 3901, 4250, 4404
layering, 2477
lay figure, 2477
laying, 2475, 2476
lazy, 2478
lead (guide), 2480
lead, sounding, 2479
leading hand, 3415
leading-seaman, badge of, 2481
lead-mine, 2479
lead-pencil, 1398, 4084
leaf, 22, 47, 159, 1373, 2010, 2053, 2470, 2481, 2539, 2754, 2770, 3212, 3268, 3361, 3507, 3871, 3873, 4061, *facing* 4350, 4456; eaten by insect, 2482; embryo, 539. *See also specific names.*
leaf-bud, 3385
leaf butterfly, 2769
leaf-cutter bee, 2482
leaf-insect, 596, *facing* 2250, 3052
leafless, 2829, 3533
leaf-roller, 4542
lean (slope), 2483, 3969
leap, 1969, 2484
leash, 2485
leather, 478, 2486
leather-backed turtle, 4387
leave, 2487
leave-taking, 1557
lectern, 2488
lecturer, 2489
ledge, 2489
lee-board, 2490
leech (of sail), 2490
leek, 2490
left (direction), 2491
left (not taken), 2492
leg, crab's, 4948
leg (cricket), 2492
legacy, 2493
legation, 2494
legend, 1489, 2494
leghorn (fowl), 2495
Legion, British, 3085, 3678
Legion of Honour, 2495
legislate, 2496
legume, 4733
leisure, 2497
Lemnian, 2132
lemon, 2498, 2499
lemur, 299, 664, 1567, 2212, 2499, 3406, 4232
lens, 271, 1528, 2500
Lent, 2501
Leo X, Pope, 4636
leopard, 713, 1042, 2502, 3999; eye, 1529; skin, 3964
leper, 1994, 2504
Lepidoptera, 2503. *See also* butterfly, moth, *and specific names.*
Lepidus (triumvir), 4367
leprosy, 2504
lesser periwinkle, 3206
lesser redpoll, 3587
lesson, 2505
Lesueur's water lizard, 2566
let, 2506
Lett, 2507
letter (epistle), 1891, 2508
letter (of alphabet), x-xx
Levantine, 2509
level, 2510
level crossing, 993
lever, 2510, 3943
leviathan, 2511
levy, 2512
Lewis gun, 2513
Leyden jar, 2513
liana, 2514
libation, 2515
liberator, 2516
Liberian, 2420
liberty, 2517, 2518, 3445; statue, 2006
library, 814, 2519, 3561, 3629
Libyan, 2520
lichen, 23, 2521
Lichfield Cathedral, 1881
lich-gate, 2521
lick, 2522
lied, 2524
lieutenant, 2525
life-belt, 1288, 2525
life-boat, 660, 2211, 2526, 3030, 3075, 4119, 4524
life-buoy, 2526
Life Guard, 479, 1323, 1554
life-line, 1197, 2526
life-saving, 1197, 2526
lift, 2527, 2528
light, refraction, 3600
light, ship's, 2528
lighter, 338, 2532
lighthouse, 366, 838, 1953, 2529, 3001, 3203, 3453, *facing* 3942, 4363; lenses of lamp, 271
lighting, 2609

lightning, 652, 1366, 2532, *facing* 3228, 4202
light railway, 2531
lightship, 2530
ligniperdous, 2533
lignivorous, 2533
like, 2534
lilac, 2535
lily, 127, 904, 1742, 2536, 3876
lily of the valley, 904
limb, 2063, 2537
lime (tree), 2539
limestone, 668
limewash, 2538
limousine, 2540
limpet, 1801, 2541, *facing* 1004
Lincoln, Abraham, 2516, 3445
Lincoln Cathedral, 1332, 1613
Lind, Jenny, 3952
Lindbergh, Colonel, 2949
line, 2547
line-drawing, 2543
linen, 2544
liner (ship), 231, 260, 827, 892, 1033, 1179, 1229, 1248, *facing* 1484, 1787, 2000, 2511, 2545, 3439, 4161, 4340, 4380; engine-room, 3007; life-boats, 3075; propellers, 3437; rudder, 3071; scuttles, 3833; signals, *facing* 3914; siren, 3956
liner, air, 794, 1670, 3557
ling (heather), 1999
lingula, 2546
link, 2547
Linnaean, 2548
Linnaeus, 2548
linnet, 1906, 2548, *facing* 3993; egg, *facing* 1305
linstock, 2549
lion, 160, 702, 1415, 1820, 2233, 2550, 2642, 2731, 2942, 3090, 3704, 3756, 4038, 4618; heraldic, 3541, porcelain, *facing* 3321; sculpture, 1437, 2515
lioness. *See* lion.
lip, 2022
liquefy, 2551
liquid air, 2552
lira, 2553
L'Isle, Rouget de, 2258
list, 2554
listen, 2554
Lister, Lord, 181
Listerian, 2555
Liszt, Franz, 2167
literary, xix, xxvi, xxvii, 2556
literature, xxvi, xxvii, 284, 2557
lithe, 2558
lithogenous, 2559
Lithuanian, 1698, 2560
litter, 1088, 2561, 4133
litter (couch), 3094
little, 2562
little ermine moth, 2503
little owl, 160
live, 2563
lively, 2564
Liverpool Cathedral, 37
livery, 787, 2565, 3088
living picture, 1305
Livingstone, David, 1202, 1612, 2230, 2794
lizard, 444, 1056, 1185, 1834, 2429, 2566, 2723, *facing* 3644, 4136, 4455, 4497; wax cast, 4534. *See also specific names.*
llama, 2567
Lloyd George, David, 1665
Lloyd's, 40
Lloyd's medal, 2718
loach, 2567
load, 72, 316, 552, 2568, 3276, 3302
loaf, 2569
lobby, 2570
lobster, 227, 972, 973, *facing* 1004, 1005, 2571; claw, 2937
lobworm, 2571
loch, 2672
lock (water enclosure), 1498, 2573, 2574, 4805
Locke, John, 1462
locomotive, 413, 509, 676, 1516, 1732, 2240, 2487, 2542, 2531, 2575, *facing* 2574, 3152, 3538, 3610, *facing* 3942, 4096, 4183, 4249
locust, 1115, 2226, 2576, 2762, 4581
locust (plant), leaf, 3268
lodge (wigwam), 2577
log, ship's, 2578
loganberry, 2579
log-fire, 250
logistics, 2580
log jam, 1292
log-ship, 2578
loiter, 2581
Lomond, Loch, 4874
London, 3192. *See also names of particular localities.*
London, Bishop of. *See* Winnington-Ingram, A. F.,
London, Recorder of, 1428
London Bridge, *facing* 516, 517
London cries, 984, 3411
London Stone, 2582
lonely, 2583
long, 2584
long-bow, 1675
long-eared owl, 3079
longevity, 2586
long-fingered frog, 1744
long-lump, 2585
long ship, xxi
Longstone lighthouse, 2529
long-tailed field-mouse, 2854
long-tailed fowl, 1718
long-tailed palm civet, 3101
look, 2587
loom, 636, 2334, 2588, 3946
loop, looping the, 2589
loophole, 316
loose, 2586
loosestrife, 2590
Lord, 2591
Lord Chancellor, 693
Lord Mayor, 2593, 2017
Lord Mayor's Show, 569
Lord's (cricket ground), 2592
Lords, House of, 2460, 3598, Black Rod, 431; Speaker, 693
Lords of the Congregation, 1160
loris, 1567, 2594
lorry, 27, 527, 1094, 2594, 4149
lost, 2492, 2595
lotus, 2596
loud-speaker, 874
Louis XIV, King of France, 2958
Louis XVI, King of France, 1386
Louis XVII. King of France, 1569
lounge, 2597
love-bird, 540, 2600
love-in-a-mist, 2599
lovely lady. *See* belladonna.
lover, 2147
love-song, 3411
lower, 1056, 3075
Lower House, 2601
Lower Manhattan Island, 1461
lowland, 2602
loyalist, 3410
lubber's hole, 2603
luck, 2604
lucrative, 2605
ludicrous, 2606
lug, 2607
luggage, 1495
lugger, 2607, 3539
lug-sail, 2607
lumber (timber), 2608, 4341
luminous, 280, 841, 2609, 3236
lump, 3276
lunar halo, 1961
lunch, 2610
lunge, 2611
lung-fish, 2611
lupine, 2612
lure, 2613
lurk, 2614
lusty, 2615
Luther, Martin, 2616
Lutheran, 2616
luxury, 2617
lychnis, 2618
lying, 2523
lying-in-state, 2619, 3676
lynx, 653, 2620
lyre, 2557, 2620
Lyte, Henry Francis, 2113

M

M, letter, xiv
Macacus, 2621
macaque (Macacus), 2621
macaroni, 1305, 2622
Macaulay, Lord, 2045
macaw, 2623
Macbeth, 3295
MacDonald, Margaret, 2730
mace (staff), 26, 333, 367 1374, 1428
mace (spice), 2624
machine, 91, 566, 745, 779, 789, 941, 942, 1142, 1609, 1646, 1661, 1678, 1761, 2331, 2474, 2702, 2800, 2805, 2824, 2907, 3038 3114, 3117, 3237, 3238, 3239, 3369, 3395, 3398, 3473, 3719, 3723, 3824, 3896, 4049, 4084, 4293, 4382. *See also specific types of machine.*
machine-gun, 2625, 2709
mackerel, 2626
macropterous, 2627
Madagascar lemur, 299, 2212
Madden, Sir Charles, 57
madden, 2628
Madonna, 999, 2629, 2834, 3547
Mafeking, 2630
maffick, 2630
Magadi, lake, 110, 4005
Magdalene, Saint Mary, 2936
Magellan, Ferdinand, 1203
Magenta frog, *facing* 3644
magic, 2631
magic circle, 2632
magistrate, 1255, 3641, 3707
Magna Charta, 1894, 2633, pageant, 3089
magnet, 273, 1004, 2634
Magnificat, 2635
magnolia, 485, 2636
magpie, 2637
magpie moth, 4952
Magyar, 2096
Maharajah, 60, 1320, 2637
mahogany, 1074
mahout, 83, 614
maid, 1020, 1174, 2291, 2638
maidenhair, 1721
maidenhair tree, 1837
maiden speech, 1067
Maid of Orleans. *See* Joan of Arc.
mail (armour), xxiii, 700, 2639
mail (post), 1652, 2508, 2640, 4340
mail shell, 4919
main, 2641
mainsail, 3801
Maison Carrée, Nîmes, 3313
maize, 921, 2642
Majesty, 2642
make, 2643
make-up, 2644
Malacca, 2645
malagasy, 2646
Malamute, 2647
Malay, canoe, 3416; inhabitants, 2210, 2648; raft, 3534; scenes, 1321, 2514; weapons, 223
Malay tapir, *facing* 3498
male, 1579
malformation, 2649
malignant, 2650
mallard, *facing* 1072, 2651
mallet, 2652, 4128
mallow, 2652, 3721
malt, 2653
Maltese, 2654
mammoth, 2127, 2655, 2904; skeleton, 4388
man, 1209, 3010; early types, 176, 1367, 1431, 2062, 2917, 3093, 3258; Piltdown skull, 3966; skeleton, 473
manacle, 2657
man-at-arms, 2639
manatee, 2658, *facing* 4192
Manchester docks, 1247
mandarin, xx, 2659
mandible, 2341
mandolin, 2660
mandrill, 2660
mangabey, 2661
manger, 2667
mangle, 2544, 4608
mangrove, 2289
manicure, 2663
manifold, 2664
manikin, 2665
manipulate, 2666
mankind, 1470 *See also* man
man-like, 4915
manning, 583
manœuvre, 2667
manœuvres, army, 578, 1188, 2625, 3821 navy, 1120, 1644
man-of-war, 525, 619, 2656; model, 914
manor, 2668
mansion, 709, 953
mantilla, 3872
mantis, 237, 2031, 2669
manual (organ), 2670
manuscript, xix, 1250, 2671
Manx shearwater, 3908
map, 875, 2672
maple leaf, 2481, *facing* 4350
Maplin lighthouse, 2529
Marat, Jean Paul, 2826
Marathon, 2672
marble, 539, 1850
marbled white butterfly, *facing* 564
march, 2674
Marconi, Guglielmo, 286
marconigram, 2675
mare, 2077, 2676, 2974
Margate, 143
marguerite, 2677
marigold, African, 80; marsh, 2678
marine. *See* British Merchant Service.
marine animals, 175, 4601. *See also specific names.*
marionette, 2679, 4468
mark, 2680
Mark, Saint, 2841
market, 1035, 1321 2681
market-cross, 1881
market-gardening, 91
market-hall, 384
markhor, 2682
marksman, 686, 3434; badge, 1872
marline-spike, 2683
marline-spike hitch, 2415
marmoset, 3985
marmot, 2032, 2684
marram, 2685
marriage, 2686
marrow, vegetable, 2569, 4461, 4736
Mars (planet), *facing* 260
Marseillaise, 2258
marsh, 1483, 2448, 2687
marsh marigold, 2678
marsupial, 1027, 1054, 1164, 1673, 2205, 4517, 4592
martello, 2688
marten, 2689, 3180, 3752
martingale, ship's, 2690
martyr, 3449, 3756
Marvell, Andrew, 840
marvel of Peru, 4733

Marx, Karl, 4004
Mary, mother of Jesus. *See* Madonna.
Mary, Queen of England, 28, 1026; doll's-house, 1258
Mary, Queen of Scots, 1389, 1500, 3568
mascot, 2691
mash-vat, 2653
mask, actor's, 826, 1919; African, 1147, 1549; fencing, 64, 1534; gas and smoke, 36, 2692
mason, 1226, 2693, 4598
masquerade, 2694
masquerader. 1262, 2350, 2694
mass-bathing, 1113
mass-meeting, 2695
Mass vestment, 134
mast (of ship), 2349, 2374, 2696, 2800, 4318; tabernacle, 4208; tops, 4318
mast, wireless, 3280
Master, Old, 2697. *See also specific names.*
master of hounds, 1907
mast-head, 119; lamp, 2442
mastiff, 2698
mastodon, 2699, 4262
match-box, 2700
match-making machine, 3237
mate (chess), 2701
material, 2701
maternity, 2703
mathematician, 3193
matrix, 2704
matron, 2705
matter, 2706
Matterhorn, 4167
Matthew, Saint, 1480
maul (hammer), 2707
maulstick, 240
mausoleum, 2708
Maxim, Sir Hiram, 2709
Maxim gun, 2709
may-blossom, 1990
May-day, 2710
May-fly, 83, 1433, 2711
May-queen, 375, 2710
meadow, 3514
meadow crane's-bill, 4730
meadow foxtail, *facing* 1896
meadow-pipit, 1010, 2712
meadow-saffron, 3759
meadow-sweet, 2713
meal, 106, 733, 833, 1748, 2610, 3250
meandering, 2714
measure, 2715, 4087
measuring instrument. 589, 3450
meat, 562, 2716, 3770
Mecca pilgrimage, 2058
Mecca shrine, 571
mechanic, 2717, 3007
mechanical doll, 2679
mechanical elevator, 3690
mechanical reaper, 91
medal, 1234, *facing* 2536, 2718
medallion, 1281, *facing* 2649
mediaeval, 211, 311, 650
Medici, Cosimo de, 561
Medici, Giovanni de (Pope Leo X), 4636
Medici, Lorenzo de, 4277
medicine, god of, 3242
medicine-man, 2719. *See also* witch-doctor.
meditation, 2720
medlar, 2721
Medusa, 2722
meet, 1680, 1907
meeting, 1206, 1612, 2695, 3630
megalosaurus, 2723
megaphone, 2960
melampod, 2724
melancholy, 2725
melilot, 2726
mellow, 2726
melody, 2727
melon, 2728, 4154
member, 2729
memento, 2729, 3290
memorial, 674, 1132, 2730, 3324, 3771, 4210, 4435
menagerie, 2731
Menai Strait, bridge, *facing* 516
Mendelssohn, Jakob Ludwig Felix, 3808
mendicant, 2732
mental, 2733
mental (of the chin), 2734
mercantile marine, 2735; medal, *facing* 2537. *See also* British Merchant Service.
merchantable, 2736
Mercury (god), 2737, 3219
Mercury (planet), 2225
mere (lake), 2738
merganser, *facing* 4192
meridian, 2739
merino sheep, 2739
merlin, 2740
merosome, 2741
merry-go-round, 2741, 3727
mesh, 2742
Mesohippus, 1485
Mesozoic, 2743, 3300
message, 2744
Messiah, 2745
Messina earthquake, 1740
metal-work, 2037, 2179, 2307, 2413, 2746
metamorphosis, 2747
metaphysics, 2748
metathorax, 2749
Metazoa, 2749
meteoric, 2750
meteorite, 2232
meteorological instrument 153, 341, 342
meteorological station, 4092
Methodism, 2751
meticulous, 2752
metronome, 2753
mew (bird), 2753
Mexican, 2754
mezereon, 2754
Michael, Saint, 2755
Michaelmas, 2755
Michelangelo, 975
micrometer, 2756
microphone, 40, 2757
microscope, 1488, 1530, 2757
microzoic, 2758
Middle Ages. *See* mediaeval.
midge, 2759, 4735
midnight sun, 2760
mignonette, 2761
migratory, 873, 2762
milch goat, 2654
mildew, 2762
milfoil, 2763
military, 2764
Military Cross, *facing* 2536
military funeral, 3698. *See also* Army, gun, war, etc.
milk, boy, 2654; cart, 1098, 4405; churns, 2765
mill, 2766. *See also* windmill.
mill engine, 4096
millepede, 2766
miller's thumb (fish), 545
milling, 2767
Milton, John, 284, 840, 2768
Miltonic, 2768
mimesis, 596, 2769
mimicry, protective. *See* mimesis.
mimosa, 2770
minaret, 111, 2770, 2842, 3067
mind, 2771
mine, brattice, 504; cage, 580; coal, 216, 504, 580, 788, 789, 855, 4082; compound, 850; copper, 913; diamond, 4806; gold, 2774; nickel, 2930; pithead, 855; tin, 2772
mine-layer, 2773
miner, 216, 504, 580, 3658; rescue party, 3376. *See also* mine.
mineral, 2774. *See also* mine *and specific names.*
miner's lamp, 216, *facing* 2442
miniature, 2775
minim, 2776
minister, 2776
mink, 2777
minnow, 2778
Minoan, 2778
minster, 213, 1881, 2779
minstrel, 1489
Mint, 1608, 2767, 2780, 2814, 3699
minuet, 2781
miracle, 641, 1994, 2782
mirage, *facing* 3228
mire, 2783
mirror, 2784, 4310
Mirror Lake, 3597
misanthropy, 2785
mischief, 2786
misdeed, 2787
mise en scène, 2788
miser, 2137
misericord, 2789
misfortune, 2790
misjudge, 2791
misname, 2792
miss, 2793
missal, 2794
missel. *See* mistle-thrush.
mission, 2794
missionary, 906, 1612, 2794
missive, 2795
mist, 2796
mistle-thrush, breast plumage, 1275; egg, *facing* 1305
mistletoe, 67, 2405, 2797
mite, 2798
mitre, 166, 426, 992, 2799
"Mitre" tavern, 2291
mixer, 2800
mixing-bowl, 4458
mizen, 2800
Moabite stone, 2801
moat, 650, 1287, 2801
mob, 2802
mock sun, 3132
mode, 2803
model, 914, 1063, 1119, 1379, 1703, 1967, 2804
modeller, 1703, 2804
modern, 2805
"Modesty and Vanity," 4453
modish, 2806
Mogul, 1390
mohair, 158
Mohammedan, 587, 1149, 2418, 2807
Mohawk, 2808
mole (animal), 2809; forelimb, 4948; jaws, 2341
mole (breakwater), 448, 510, 2809, 2825, 4805
mole-cricket, eggs, 1353
Molière, 1738, 2958
mollusc, 35, 759, 857, 962, 2810, 2876, 4451, 4555
momentous, 2811
monachal, 2812
Monaco. *See* Monte Carlo.
monal, 2813
Mona Lisa, 1411
monastery, xix, 778, 2813
money, 675, 807, 962, 1023, 2814, 3574
money-changer, 2814, 3479
moneywort, 977
monger, 2815
Mongolian, 2815; wild horse, 4571
mongoose, 557, 2816
monial, 2816
monitor (ironclad), 2817
monitor (lizard) 2817, 4455
monk, xix, 217, 640, 1723, 2353, 2446, 2812, 3633
monkey, xliii, 621, 815, 1011, 2621, 2661, 2818, 3062, 3406, 3418, 3591, 3682, 3764, 4047, 4475
monkey-eating eagle, 4945
monkey-puzzle, 2818
monkshood, 2818
Monmouth, Duke of, 1923
monocarp, 2819
monochlamydeous, 4733
monochrome, 1915
monocotyledon, 2819
monogram, 2820
monolith, 2821
monoplane, 69, 2822, 2949
monorail, 1944
monotheist, 2823
monotype, 2824
monsoon, 2825
monster, 2825
monstrance, 2826
Montagnard, 2826
Montaigne, Michel de, 1462 3240
Mont Blanc, 1670
Monte Carlo, 646, 3656, 3726
Monte Rosa, 3207
monument, 674, 821, 1437, 2516, 2801, 2827, 3210, 3879
moon, *facing* 260, 979, 2173, 2828, 3860, 4270; halo, 1961
moon-god, 303
moonlight, 1338, 2829
Moor, 2238, 2830
moor, 3381
moor-hen, 2830
mooring buoy, 551
moorings, 2829
Moorish, 107, 209, 932, 2835, 3332, 3572
moose, 1059, 2831, 3299, *facing* 4192; statue, 1504
mop-head, 2831
moral, 2832
morass, 2833
Moravian, 2833
morbidezza, 2834
morel (plant), 2835
Moresque. *See* Moorish.
morion, 2836
morning, 2837
Morocco, Foreign Legion, 1694; fortress, 1709; sultan, 3667
morris, 2050, 2838
morse (brooch), 2839
morse. *See* walrus.
Morse, Samuel, 1268
mortar (building), 2840
mortar (cannon), 136
mortar (pounding), 2839
mortar-board (cap), 731
mortise, 2840
mosaic, 932, 1656, *facing* 2649, 2841
moschatel, 2842
Moses, 547, 975
Moslem *See* Mohammedan.
mosque, 1018, 2254, 2770, 2842, 2905, 3067
mosquito, 168, 2843
moss, 785, 2843, 3301
motet, 2844
moth, 266, 471, 995, 1064, 1390, 1528, *facing* 2250, 2503, 2844, 2951, 3035, 3168, *facing* 4580, 4581, 4950, 4952; caterpillar, 660; colour variation, 1885; eggs, 1353; eye, 1529. *See also* caterpillar *and specific names.*
mother, 75, 279, 2089, 2252, 2299, 2441, 2845, 3118, 3141, 3195, 4168
Mother Carey's chicken, 3220
motive, 2846
motor-boat, 2847, 4554
motor-bus, 1066, 2320
motor-car, 629, 710, 954, 1125, 1276, 1522, 1653, 1969, 2191, 2540, 2607, 2666, 2783, 3077, 3921, 4042, 4285, 4311, 4393; accelerator, 24; cam-shaft, 592; carburettor, 625; early, 289, 2846; model, 474; toy, xl
motor-caravan, 622
motor-coach, 699, 2847; dining saloon, 2245
motor-cycle, 1169, 1221, 1561, 1866, 1886, 1991, 2259, 2483, 2848, 2968, 3084, 3728, 4575

motor-hearse, 1995
motor life-boat, 2526
motor-lorry, 2594
motor-sign, 1112
motor-van, 4585
motor-vessel, 2568, 2848
motto, 476, 791
mouflon, 925, 2849
mould (cast), 385, 2849
mould (fungus), 2850
moulding, 924, 3006
mound, 2850, 4876
mound (emblem), 2851
mount (horse), 2850
mountain, 48, 58, 67, 407, *facing* 633, 663, 907, 917, 971, 981, 1013, 1076, 1259, 1405, 1616, 1670, 1756, 1821, 1842, 1893, 2057, 2760, 2852, 2896, 3244, 3282, 3431, 3454, 3543, 3846, 3860, 4092, 4141, 4164, 4167, 4209, 4392, 4407, 4448, 4531, 4874. *See also specific names.*
mountain ash, 2852
mountaineer, 20, 772, 1931, 2013, 2853, 3655, 3799, 4407
mountain elm, 4612
mountain witch ground-dove, 1273
mourner, 3609
mouse, xliii, 1982, 2854
Mouse lightship, 2530
mousing, 2854
mouth, 2855
movie-tone, 2856, 4218
mowing-machine, 2857
Mozambique, natives of, 4174
Mozart, Wolfgang Amadeus, 1401, 1421, 3379, 3648, 4200
mud-fish, 493, 1186, 2859
mudlark, 2859
mud oven, 3785
muezzin, 111, 2860
muff, 2860
muffle, cow's, 2861
mulberry, 2862
mule, 1037, 1689, 1691, 2862, 3085, 3183, 3800
mule, spinning, 2863
Mulholland dam, 3652
mull, 4878
mullet, *facing* 1624, 2864
multiple reaping machine, 2907
multitude, 2865
mummer, 2866
mummy, 803, 2867
munitions, 2868
mural, 2868
murder, 2870
Muscari, 2871
muscular, 2872
Muse, 774, 1478, 4264
museum, 2959, 3961
mushroom, 2874
music, 768, 1531, 1769, 1978, 2776
musical instrument, 31, 310, 313, 327, 353, 371, 537, 542, 734, 762, 764, 923, 1157, 1302, 1324, 1607, 2670, 2983, 2989, 3026, 3755, 3796, 3885, 4156, 4356, 4368, 4374, 4451, 4489, 4614, 4633. *See also specific names.*
musician, 255, 847, 856, 1192, 1401, 1421, 1607, 2167, 2258, 2524, 3379, 3648, 3657, 3808, 4150, 4200, 4370, 4511. *See also specific names.*
musket, 223, 532
musketeer, 2875
musk-ox, 2875
musk-rat, 2876
musquash. *See* musk-rat.
mussel, 2876, 4451
Mussolini, Benito, 1560
Mussulman. *See* Mohammedan.
mute, 2878
mutiny, 2473, 2879
mutual, 2880
muzzle, 2881
Mycenaean tomb, 2882
myriad, 2883
myrobalan, 2884
myrtle, 2884
mystery play, 2885
myth, 2886

N

N, letter, xv
nabob, 2887
nagor, 2888
nail, 2889
name, 2890
name-stamping machine, 4084
Nansen, Fritdjof, 3647
nap, 2891
Napoleon I, 7, 178, 999, 1505, 2892; caricature, 630; funeral, 3614; Lloyd's policy, 3323
narcissus, 2893, 3328
narghile, 1037
narrate, 2894
narwhal, 2895
nasturtium, 2895
national, 2896
native, 2897
Nativity, 982, 2898
natural phenomena, *facing* 3228
naturalist, 2899
nature study, 2900
nautch-girl, 2901
nautilus, 219; shell, 2901
Naval General Service Medal, 1915, *facing* 2536
Naval Reserve flag, 455
nave, 881, 2902, 3253, 4588
navy. *See* British Navy.
Neanderthaloid, 2904
Near East, 2905
nebula, 153, *facing* 260, 2906
necessary, 2907
necklace, 2908, 2348
nectarine, 2909
needle (monument), 2909
needlework, 2910
negative, 2911
neglect, 2912
negress, 102
negro, 451, 1376, 2831, 2913, 4154
negroid, 4609
neighbourhood, 2914
Nelson, Horatio, Viscount, 56, 1501; book-plate, 476; flagship, 2744, 4027; Trafalgar signal, 2744
"Nelson" (battleship), 227
nemesia, *facing* 164
Nemesis, 2915
neo-Catholic, 2916
Neolithic, 2917
nephoscope, 2918
Neptune, 2919; monument, 958; temple, 1519
nereid, 4613
Nero, Roman emperor, 1484, 2223
nervous system, 2920
nest, animal's, 2921, *facing* 2920, 4016; insect's, 169, 2921. *See also* bird's-nest.
nestling, 424, 432, 596, 1330, 2926, 4522
net, 477, 1209; fishing, 1413, 2922, 3058; lawn-tennis, 3901
net-ball, 318
Netherlands, Queen of the, 2924
nettle, 2923, 4110
neutral, 2924
névé, 2925
new-fledged, 2926
Newfoundland (dog), 2926
Newgate (prison), 2927, 2941
newspaper, folding machine, 1678; issuing department, 2324
newt, 139, 2927
Newton, Sir Isaac, 1202, 2928, 4281
Newtonian, 2928
New Zealand, geyser, 1454, 1829; scene, 4501; settlers, 732; tobogganing, 3582
Niagara, 695
niche, 2929
Nichols, Beverley, 3426
nickel, 2930
nicotiana, *facing* 164
niello, 2931
Nigeria, fetish, 1590; inhabitants, 1984, 2273, 3574, 4403, 4539, 4609
night, 2933
nightcap, 2932
nightingale, 2934, *facing* 3993
Nightingale, Florence, 1403; memorial service, 4010
nightjar, egg, *facing* 1305
nightshade, 387, 2833, 2934
night-watchman, 2934
Nile, river, 535, 656
Nilometer, 2935
nimbus, 2936. *See also* halo.
1914 Star, *facing* 2536
nipper, 2937
nitrate, 2938
Nizam, 2939
Noachian, 2940
Noah's Ark, 222, 2940
noble, 2941
noble (coin), 2941
noctuid, 4950
nocturnal, 2942
nodular, 2943
noise, 2944
nomad, 2945, 2946
nominate, 2947
nonchalant, 2950
non-combatant, 2948
nonpareil, 2951
non-stop, 2949
nonsuch, 2952
non-venomous, 3494
noon, 2953
Nore lightship, 2530
"Norge" (airship), 98
Norman (architecture), 209, 2954
Norse, 2955
North Cape, Norway, 614
North Foreland lighthouse, 4363
North Goodwin lightship, 2530
North Pole. *See* Arctic.
Northumberland Fusilier, 1766
Northumbria, 3353
"North-West Passage," 3577
Norway, king, 2924; scenes, 590, 614, 1616, 1893; women, 2956
Norwich, Bishop of, 805
nose, 2957
notable, 2958
note, 2959
notice, 2960
notorious, 2961
Notre-Dame Cathedral, 393, 4589
noun, xxix-xxxii
novel, 2962
novelist, 4130 4611
novice, 2963
noxious, 2964
Nubian, 383
nucivorous, 2965
nugget, 1867, 2966
nullah, 2967
number, 2968
number (grammar), xxxix, l
numeral, 500, 2121
nun, 2969
Nungesser, Captain, 35
nurse, 1818, 2606, 2970, 3174, 4008, 4389
nursery, 188, 2970
nut, 791, 2972
Nuthall, Betty, 325
nut-hatch, 2965
nutmeg, 2624, 2973
nutting, 2971
nuzzle, 2974

O

O, letter, xv
oak, 1072, 2975; flower, 4735; leaf, *facing* 4350
oak-apple, 1777
oar, 437, 2976. *See also* rowing.
oasis, 2977
oats, *facing* 1896, 2977
Oates, Titus, 3260
oath, 2512, 2978
obelisk, 1450, 2909, 2979
obi, 2980
object-lesson, 1512, 2275, 2981
oblique, 2982
oblong, 2983
oboe, 2983
obscure, 2984
observation, 3215
observation car, 2407
observatory, 1342, 1445, 2985, 4243, 4299
obsolete, 691
obstacle race, 427, 972, 2986
obstinate, 2986
obstruction, 2987
obtruncate, 2988
obverse, 155. *See also* coin.
ocarina, 2989
occidentalized, 2990
occult, 2991
ocean, 2992
ocean telegraph cable, 574
ocellus, 4950
ocelot, 2993
octagonal, 2994
Octavian, 4367
octocentenary, 2995
octopus, 679, 2996
oculist, 1488
oddity, 2997
odour, 2998
Odyssey, 2999
of, 3000
off, 3001
offender, 3133
offensive, 3002
offering, 1370. 1527. 2569, 3003,
office, 3004
officer, 436, 620
Officers' Training Corps, 578, 1412, 4454
offshoot, 3005
ogee, 3006
ogival, 3006
oil, 3007
oil-beetle, 3008
oil-can, 17
oil-field, 1128, 3007, 3221
oil-painting, 240. *See also* art; old master.
oilskins, 3008
oil tank, 1513
oil-well, 1940, 3007
okapi, 3009
old, 3010
Old Master, 554, 1411, 2361, 2591, 2697, 3502, 3682, 3737
Old Parr, 2586
oligarch, 3011
olives, 3012
olive tree, 3288;
Olympic Games, 265, 3013
ominous, 3014
omnibus, 2166, 3015
on, 3016
onager, 3017
onerous, 3018
onion, 3019
onyx, 2348, 3020
oomiak, 3021
opal, *facing* 1810
open, 3022
open-air, 3785
open-air school, 1348
open-air treatment, 1021
opening, 3023
opera, 3272
opera-glasses, 3024
opera-house, 3024
operating-theatre, 2555
operator, wireless, 3025
ophicleide, 3026

ophthalmoscope, 3027
opium, 3028
opossum, 1164, 3029, 3225
opponent, 3029
opportunely, 3030
oppression, 3031
optical illusion, 1071
optic nerve, 1528
optimates, 3032
optophone, 3033
oracle, 2306
orange, 1749, 3034
orange-seller, 4304
orange tip butterfly, *facing* 564, 596
orange-underwing moth, 3035
orang-utan, 185, 252, 3035, 3191, 4945
orator, 51, 1107, 1827
oratorio, 3036
orb, 3037, 3603
Orcadian, 3037
orchard, 1659, 1857, 4063
orchestra. 856
orchestrion, 3038
orchid, 378, 1438, 1508, 2435, 2819, 3039, *facing* 3038
orchis, 378
Order (decoration), 1234, 1869, 3040. *See also* badge, medal.
order (architecture), 3041 *See also* architecture.
ordnance, 233, 606, 1709, 3042
ore, 3043
organ, 3044, 4339 . console, 2670 ; pipes, 1157, 1324, 4500
organ-grinder, 2621
organizer, 3045
oriel, 3046
Orient. *See* East.
oriflamme, 3047
original, 3047, 3231
oriole, 3048
ornament, architectural, 22, 1615 ; book, 3099 ; personal, 2348, 3049. *See also* bracelet, etc.
Ornithoptera poseidon, 1579
“ Orphans,” 2912
Orphean, 3050
Orpington. (fowl), 3051
orrery, 3051
Orta, lake, 372, 2433
Orthoptera, 3052
osculation, 3053
osier, 3054
osprey, 3055
ostler, 3056
ostrich, 167, 1353, 3057, 3995
ostrich-feather fan, 1096
otter, 160, 3059, *facing* 4192
otter, trawl, 3058
Otter Rock lightship, 2530
out (cricket), 3060
outcaste, 3062
outdoor, 3061. *See also* open-air.
outfit, 376
outhaul, 3063
outing, 711
outlaw, 3063
outpost, 81
outrage, 3064
outrigger, 3065. *See also under* rowing.
outskirts, 3066
outstanding, 3067
outwit, 3068
ouzel, 3068
ovary, 1663
oven, 910, 1193, 1395, 2215, 3069, 3785
overall, 1317
overboard, 2091, 3070
overhand knot, 2415
overhang, 3071
overhead, 3072
over-mantel, 3073
overpower, 3074
overside, 3075
overthrown, 3076
overturn, 3077
ovum 3078
owl, 160, 424, 3070, 4581, 4625 ; head, 341, *facing* 366
owlet, 424, 2926
ox, 1510, 3706 ; ploughing, 3408, 4623 ; threshing, 4284
ox-cart, 1124, 1286, 1776, 3080, 4629
ox-eye daisy, 2677, 3080
oxy-acetylene, 36
oxyhydrogen, 3081
oyster 35, 2810
oyster-catcher, 3082

P

P, letter, xvi
paca, 3083
pace, 3084
pack, 3085
packet-boat, 3086
pack-horse, 518, 808
pack-ice, 1654
packman, 2815
pack-mule, 1037, 1691, 3085
paddle-boat, 1016, 1639, 3087, 4059
paddle-wheel, 1639
paddling, 365. 302
Paderewski, Ignace Jan, 3576
page, hotel, 3088
page, manuscript, 1250
pageant. 1455, 2694, 3089, 4253
pagoda, 556, 3089
paint, 241, 2185
painted lady butterfly, *facing* 564, 3091
painter, 240, 3090
painter, boat's, 3091
painting, oil, 234. *See also* art ; Old Master.
palace, 7, 107, 721, 932, 1312, 1261, 1551, 2178, 2237, 3092, 3246, 4151 , arch, 2835 ; court, 3332 , library 2519 ; recess, 3572
Palace of Peace, 1815
Palaeolithic, 3093
Palais de Justice, Brussels, 3432
palankeen, 3094
Palatine, 3095
palea, 4733
pale clouded yellow butterfly, *facing* 564
Palestine, inhabitants, 3510 , scenes, 2813, 3941, 3951, 4546
palette, 240, 1119, 3096
palisade, 931, 3097
Palissy, Bernard, 1193
pall, 3098
pallet, 3099
pallium, 3099
palm (tree), 292, 916, 2501, 2972, 3100
palm, sail maker's, 3101
palm-civet, 3101
palmer, 1003
palmyra, 3102
palstave, 3103
pampas, 4878 , grass, 3104
Pan, 3105
panache, 3105
Panama Canal, 439. 600, 2219 2284, 2573, 4419
Panama hat, 441
pancake, 3106, 3822
panda, 3107
pane, 3108
panel, 1395, 2307, 3109
pangolin, 596, 3110
pannier, 3111
pansy, 1997, 3112
pantaloon, 3113
pantograph, 3114 ; polar, 3114
pantomime, 3115, characters, 1918, 3113
Papal Guard, 3116
paper, carbon, 2664
paper-chase, 707
paper-making, 3117
paper-mill, 3117
papilionaceous, 4734
Papilio ulysses, *facing* 4580
papoose, 3118
pappus. 4733
Papuan. 3118, 3488
papyrus, ix, 3119
parable, 3120
parachute, 1129, 1298, 1594, 3121,
paradise, 3122. *See also* bird of paradise.
paradise-fish, 3122
“ Paradise Lost,” 1434
paraffin-lamp, 3123
parakeet, 540, 3124
parallel bars, 1943, 3125
parapet, 3126, 4387
parasite, 2798, 3127
parasitic flower, 3533
parasol, 986, 3128
paravane, 3129
parbuckle, 3129
parcel, 128
parcelling, 3129
pardon, 3130
parent, 3133
parhelion, 3132
Paris, buildings, 411, 491, 3024, 3384, 3721, 3869, 3879, 3938, 4246, 4427 ; funeral of Napoleon I, 3614 ; monuments, 198, 4137 ; open spaces, 198, 1566, 3024 ; suburbs, 1566, 4152 ; underground, 4151
parish, 3133
park, 3134
Park, Mungo, 2238
Parliament, Anglo-Saxon, 4147 ; British, 2947, 3023, 3135 , Egyptian, 605 , Latvian, 2467 , Spanish, 935, 3135 *See also* Commons, House of ; Lords, House of.
Parnassus, 3136
parody, 3137
parquet, 3138
parrel, 3138
parrot, 2169, 3138, *facing* 3304
parrot-fish, 3139
Parsee, 1620, 2203, 3139
parsnip, 1728
part, 3140, 3141
Parthenon, 43, 146, 1266, 3142
particular, 3143
parting, 3141, 3144
partridge, 3145, 3587
parvis, 3146
pasha, 4198
pasque-flower, 3147
pass, mountain, 3147
passage (geography), 3577
passenger-pigeon, 3149
passimeter, 3150
passion-flower, 3151
past, 3152
Pasteur, Louis, 879
pastor (bird), 3153
pastoral, 2790, 3153, 4125, 4470
pastoral play, 2613
pasture, 663. *See also* pastoral.
patient, hospital, 940, 1818
pat, 3154
patagium, 3155
patella, 3156
paten, 3156
patera, 3157
path, 3157
pathetic, 3158
patience, 3159
Patrick, Saint, 3161
patriot, 2518
patriotically, 3160
patron, 3161
pattamar, 3162
Paul, Saint, 1440, 2832, 3163
Paul I, Tsar of Russia, 2518
Paulinism, 3163
Paul Pry, 3457
pavement-artist, 3164
pavilion, 1504
pawl, 3165, 3551
pax, 2931, 3166
pea, 3167
Peace Conference, Paris, 3576
peach, 3168, 3202
peach-blossom moth, 2503
peacock, 3168
peacock butterfly, 160, *facing* 564
peacock moth, 3168
peacock pheasant, 1640
peafowl, 1718
peak, mountain, 48, 58, 121, 782
peak (of sail), 3169
pea-nut, 2972
pear, 2849, 3169
pearl, 1537 *facing* 1810,
pearl-buttons, 3170
pearl diver, 2584
pearl necklace, 2908
pearly nautilus, 2901
Peary, Commander Robert E., 214
peasant, 116, 402, 1038, 1043, 1049, 1633, 1733, 2096, 2311, 2389, 2560, 3350
peat, 3171
pebble, 3172
peccary, 3172
Pecksniff, 3173
pectoral, 4950
peculiar, 3174
pedal, 24, 3175
pedestal, 3176
pedestrian, 2174, 3730
pedlar, 2815, 3177
peep, 3178
peer, *facing* 3178
peewit, 2455
Pegasus, 3179
pekan, 3180
Pekinese, 3180, 4554
pelargonium, 3181
pelican, *facing* 366, 423, 3181, 4130
pellet, 3182
pen (enclosure), 3183
pen (writing), 254, 285, 3184
pen-and-ink sketch, 2543
pencil, 1398
pendant, 1490, 2348, 3185
pendulum, 3186
penguin, 389, 422, 2153, 3187, 4946
peninsula, 4879
Peninsular and Oriental steamer, *facing* 1484
Peninsular War, 1165, 1533, 1927, 3590 ; pageant, 1455
pennant, 3188
pennon, 325
penny, 1448
Penshurst Place, 1958, 3251
pensile weaver bird, *facing* 2925
pension, 3189
pensive, 3190
pentadactyl, 3191
pentateuch, 3192
penthouse, 3717
peony, 3193
pepper, 3194
peppermint, 3194
Pepys, Samuel, 1158
perambulator, 3195
perch (fish), 144, 1624, *facing* 1624, 3196
percheron, 3196
percolator, 3197
percussion-cap, 3197
peregrine falcon, 3198
perennial, 3490, 4601
perfidy, 3199
performer, 784, 876, 3200, 4587
perfume, 2998, 3201, 3668,
perianth, 4734
pericarp, 3202
peridot, *facing* 1810
peril, 3203
peripatetic, 3204
periscope, 3205
periwig, 3206
periwinkle, 3206
permanent, 3207
permanent way, 4806

pernicious, 3208
perpendicular (architecture), 209, 213, 3209
perpetuate, 3210
Persephone, 2988
Persia, architecture, 209, *facing* 1738; glass-ware, 1847; inhabitants, 564, 586, 3211; poppy field, 3028
Persian lynx, 622, 1086
persimmon, 3212
perspective, 3213
persuade, 3214
pertinacious, 3215
Peru, inhabitants, 3216, 3408; meteorological station, 4092
peseta, 3217
peso, 3217
pestilence, 3218
pestle, 2838
pet (animal), xxxvii, 791, 1215, 1249, 2453, 3062, 3524, 4554
petal, 4734
petalless. *See* apetalous.
petard, 3219
petasus, 3219
Peter, Saint, 190, 1116, 3279
petrel, 1755, 3220
petrify, 3220. *See also* fossil.
petroleum, 3221, 1940
petrol filling-station, 1608
petronel, 3222
petticoat, 1559
petty officer, 2468; badge, 3223
petunia, *facing* 164, 3223
pewter, 3224
phaeton, 3224
phalanger, 3225
phalarope, 3225
Pharaoh, 1377, 3226
pharos, 2529, 3227
pheasant, 220, 1640, 3228
phenomenon, *facing* 260, 888, 2906, *facing* 3228
philanthropist, 1815
philanthropy, 3229
Philip II, King of Spain, 1429
Philip IV, King of Spain, 2022
Philippa, Queen, 400
Philippine sunbird, *facing* 2920
Philippine tree-dweller, 4351
Philistine, 3230
Phillpotts, Eden, 3296
philosopher, 2748, 3231, 3232, 3352, 3493, 3565
phlox, *facing* 164, 3233
phonograph, 3234
phonography, 3235
phosphorescence, 3236
phosphorus, 3237
phosphorus-bomb, 469
photograph, 1057, 1235, 1561, 2259, 3623, 3835
photographic apparatus, 595, 1342
photographic negative, 2911
photography, 2505
photomaton, 3238
photosculpture, 3239
phraseology, 3240
phrenology, 3241
physical training, 1294, 1943, 3243, 4015
physician, 3242
physiography, 3244
pianist, 2280, 3245
piano, 288, 734, 2280, 3245
piazza, 3246
Piccadilly Circus, 1496
pick (tool), 216, 3248, 3799
picket-boat, 3249
picking, 942, 3247
picnic, 106, 2610, 3250
Pictish, 526
picture-gallery, 2257, 3251
picture-hanging, 1630
picture-play, 3424. *See also* kinematograph.
picture-word, viii
picture writing, ix, xv, 2035, 2130
piebald, 3252
Pied Piper, 2613
pier, liii, 262, 2376, 3253
pierrette, 1262, 3120
pierrot, 1977, 3254, 3120
pig, 2250, 2468, 3174, 3255
pigeon, 638, 926, 1422, 1730, 2260, 2296, 3256, 3698, 4594
pigeon post, 638
pigtail, 3255
pike (fish), 3257, 160
pike (weapon), 223, 2549
pikeman, 3257
Pike's Peak, 58
pilchard, 3257
pile, 3258
pilgrim, 1564, 2058, 2170, 3259
Pilgrim Fathers, 1564, 3259
pillar, 2929, 2982, 3260
pillory, 3260
pilot, 11, 3261
pilot-fish, 3261
Piltdown man, 176
pimpernel, 3262
pin, 534, 2889,
pincers, 3264, 4948
Pindar, 3264
Pindaric, 3264
pine (tree), 2818, 3244, 3265; needles, 2481
pineapple, 3265
pine marten, 2689
ping-pong, 3266
pinion, 3266
pink-footed goose, 1874
pinnacle, 1226, 1615, 1881, 2172, 3267
pinnate, 3268
pintail duck, 3263
pintle, 3268
pioneer, 1487, 3269
pipe, opium, 672; organ, 1157, 1324; sewer, 3780; tobacco, 498, 591, 750, 1031, 3270; water, 84, 864
pipe-fish, *facing* 1024, 3270
pipe-lines, 84
piper, 2397
piper-major, 310
pipistrelle, 355, *facing* 4580, 1945
pipit, 3271, *facing* 3993
pirate, 1606, 3272
pirate flag, 3272
"Pirates of Penzance, The," 3272
Pisa, leaning tower, 245, 2982
piscatory, 3273. *See also* angling.
pistil, 1663
pistol, 223, 3222, 3274, 3680
piston, 1340, 3275
pitch (throw), 3276
pitch lake, 247
pitcher, 408
pitcher-plant, 1171, 3277, 4736
piteous, 3278
pit-head, 855
pith-helmet, 4007
Pitman, Sir Isaac, 3235
Pitt, William. See Chatham, Earl of.
pitta, *facing* 3304
pity, 3279
Pius XI, Pope, 627, 1826, 3337
pivot, 3280
Pixley, John, 3092
place, 3281
place (open space), 1566, 3024
placid, 3782
plague, 3278, 3283
plaice, 3284
plain, 3284
plan, 3285
planchette, 3286
plane (tool), 3286
plane (tree), 3286; leaf, *facing* 4350
planet, 168, 256, *facing* 260, 2372
planetarium, 3287. *See also* orrery.
planing, 2355
plant (vegetable). *See under specific names.*
plant. *See* machinery.
plantation, 802, 1895, 3289, 4158
plantigrade, 4950
planting, 3288
plaque, 3290
plaquette, 3290
plaster, 3291
plate, 4574. *See also* ceramics.
plateau (salver), 3292
plate-glass, 4495
platform, 260, 390, 1042
platinum, 3293
platypus. *See* duck-billed platypus.
play (game), xxxi, 3294
play, pastoral, 2613. *See also* drama.
player. *See* actor; actress.
playroom, 827
playwright, 3296
plead, 3297
pleasure, 1517
pleasure-boat, 460, 1498
pleasure-ground, 3298
Pleistocene, 3299
plesiosaurus, 3300
pleurocarpous, 3301
plicate, 4734
Plimsoll mark, 3302
plot, 858
plough, agricultural, 91, 1764, 2097, 3303, 3408, 4121, 4623; snow, 3303
plover, 2455, *facing* 2920, 3304; egg, *facing* 1305
plum, 1404, 2884, 3305
plumage, 220, *facing* 3304. *See also* plume.
plumb, 3305
plume, 502, 3105, 3306. *See also* plumage.
plumose, 3307
plumule, 368
plunge, 3308
pluteus, 3309
Plymouth Rock (fowl), 3310
pneumatic, 288, 3311
poa grass, *facing* 1896
pochard, 3312
pod, 3167, 3871, 4733
podium, 3313
poesy, 3314
poet, 840, 2004, 2156, 3264
poetry, 1478
pogo, 3315
pointed (architecture), 3006
pointer, 3317
points, horse's, 2076
points, tramway, 3316
poise, 3317
poison-fang, 1554
poison frog, *facing* 3644
poison-gas, 1800, 3318
poker-work, 3491
polar, 3319. *See also* Arctic; Antarctic.
polar bear, 189, 1506, 1555, *facing* 4192, 4634
polariscope, 3320
polar pantograph, 3114
pole, barber's, 335
poleaxe, 3321
polecat, 3321
pole-jumping, 265, 4460
police, 837; American, 3322; Egyptian, 3322; English, 230, 628, 887, 1140, 1750, 2606, 3178, 4564; French, 3322; Serbian, 148; Spanish, 3322; Turkish 4627
police dog, 270
police whistle, 4563
policy, 3323
polish, 2500, 3324
poll (election), 3325
pollack, 3326
pollan, 3326
pollen, 174, 3182, 3326, 4735
polo, 318, 3327; water, 1862
polyanthus, 3328
polygonum, 3329
Polynesia, 3330
polyp, 3331
polystyle, 3332
polytechnic, 3333
pomegranate, 3334
Pomeranian (dog), 380, 3331
pomiferous, 4735
Pompeii, relics, 1491, 2451, 3335; scenes, 1360, 3500
Pompeian, 3335
Pompey's pillar, 3260
pond, 2687, 3336
Pontiff, 3337. *See also* Pope.
pontoon, 3338
pontoon-bridge, 3338, 3635
pony, 1962, 2497, 3111, 3327, 3915, 3922
poop, 3339
pop-gun, 3340
Pope, 975, 1826, 3337, 4636; official residence, 4459. *See also specific names.*
pope (fish), 3340
poplar lady-bird, *facing* 2250
poppet, 3341
poppy, 1190, 1458, 2124, 3028, 3085, 3341, 4730
popular, 3342
porcelain, 725, 1212, *facing* 3321. *See also* ceramics.
porcelain coin, 1023
porcelain moth, *facing* 2250
porch, 3343
porcupine, 3343
porcupine globe-fish, 1182
Porifera, 3344
porpoise, 3345
port, 3345
port quarter, 3505
portal, 1533, 3347
portcullis, 2027
porter, 1208, 3317, 3660
port-hole, 1061, 3346
Portia, 1523
portico, 612, 3348
Portland vase, 3349
Porto Rico, scene, 1895
portrait, 554, 1119, 1365, 2361, 2867, 3737
Port Sunlight, 1464
Portuguese, 3350
Poseidon, 146
Positive Philosophy, 3352
possession, 3353
post, mooring, 1259
post, pigeon, 638
postage stamp, 2983
post-chaise, 3354
poster, 588, 3356
Post-impressionism, 3357
postman, l, 1098, 1252, 2795, 3204, 3355
postponement, 3358
posture, 3359
pot (helmet), 3360
potato, 1530, 2319, 3361, 4204, 4378, 4736
Potsdam, 2237
potter, 2409, 3362
Potteries, The, 381
pottery, 679, 920, 1095, 1193, 2215, 2778, 3363, 3463. *See also* ceramics.
pottery oven, 1193, 2215
poultry, 331, 1718, 2495, 3051. *See also specific names.*
pound (enclosure), 3364
pour, 3365
pout, 3366
pouter pigeon, 3256
powder-horn, 3366
power-station, 84, 3367
Poynter, Sir E. J., 240
practice, 3368
practising, 3369
praetorian guard, 3370
Prague, Town Hall, 3429
prairie, 3061, 3371
prairie-dog, 3371
prairie wolf, 4591
prawn, *facing* 1004, 3372
prayer, 111, 120, 3675,
prayer-desk, 1547
prayer-wheel, 3373
praying mantis, 237, 2031, 2669

preach, 3374
precarious, 3375
precaution, 1214, 3376
precincts, 3377
precipitous, 15, 771, 1833, 3378
precocious, 3379
precursor, 3380
predicament, 3381
predict, 3382
pre-eminent, 3383
prefecture, 3384
prefloration, 3385
prefoliation, 3385
prehensile, 1164
prehistoric, 176, 624, 1181, 1185, 1367, 1372, 1431, 2825, 3093, 3258, 3299, 3386. *See also* Stone-Age, etc.
prehistoric animals. *See* extinct animals.
prelate, 3387
premier, 3388
premonition, 3389
preparation, 3390
preponderate, 3391
preposition, liii
Pre-Raphaelite, 3392
presbyterianism, 3393
present, 3394
presentation, 490, 646, 1017, 3394
present-giving, 1841
preserve, 1354, 3395
president, 2496, 2601, 3004, 3011, 3396, 3958, 4566
press, cheese, 712; cider, 3398; hydraulic, 4804; printing, 3397
press-gang, 1789
pressure, 3398
pretend, 3399
Pretender, The Young, 854, 2333
pretty, 3400
prevent, 3401
prey, 3402
pricket, 3403
prickle, 47
prickly, 552,
prickly pear, 3403
priest, 425, 540, 3404
prima donna, 3405
primates, 3406
prime minister, 3388
prime mover, 3407
primitive landscape, 624, 3299
primitive man, 176, 1367, 1431, 2062, 2917, 3093, 3258, 3386, 3966
primitive plough, 3408
primitive weapons, 232. *See also* flint, etc.
primrose, 1482, 3409
prince, 309, 854, 2333, 2764, 3297, 4533
princess, 1042, 2886, 3410
print, 984, 1677, 2911, 3411, 3992,
printing, 198, 410, 1957, 3419
printing-frame, photographic, 3412
printing-press, 1410, 1678, 2164, 3397
priory, 3412
prison, 672, 2165, 2941, 3229
prison reformer, 3229
prisoner, 1591, 2165, 2287, 3130, 3413
privateer, 3414
privet, 2018, 2481
privet hawk-moth caterpillar, 2458
prize, 3415; naval, 3416
proa, 3416
probe, 3417
proboscis, 2503, 3418
proboscis monkey, 3418
process, 3419
procession, 691, 706, 1583, 3023, 3420
proclaim, 3421
proclamation, xxiii, 26, 3421
procumbent, 3422
Prodigal Son, The, 1499, 3637
prodigious, 3423
prodigy, 3379
producer, 3424
professor, 3425, 3460
profile, 3426
progenitor, 3427
progress, 70, 676, 3428
project, 3429
projectile, 2868, 3913
proletarian, 3420
prolific, 3431
promenade, 3432, 3725
prominent, 3432
promise, 3433
prone, 3434
pronoun, xxxvi, xxxvii, xxxviii, xxxix
proof, 3435
proof sheet, 1163
prop, 3436
propaganda, 1228
propel, 3437
propeller, 69, 1176, 3437
prophet, 2720, 3036, 3438
proportion, 3439
propose, 3440
proprietary, 3441
propulsive, 3442
prose, 3443
prospector, 758, 3444
protagonist, 3445
protect, 3446
protective coloration, 215, 596. *See also* camouflage.
protective mimicry, 596
protectorate, 3447
Proteus (animal), 3448
Protohippus, 1485
protomartyr, 3449
protractor, 3450
protrude, 3450
proud, 3451
Provençal 3452
provide, 3453
provisions, 892, 3453, 3454
prow, 3455
prudence, 3456
pruning, 3930
pruning shears, 3908
pry, 3457
psalmist, 3458
pseudo-Gothic, 3459
psychoanalysis, 3460
ptarmigan, *facing* 1072, 3461; egg, *facing* 1305
pterodactyl, 3462
public school, 3463
public school cadets, 1412, 3434
public speaker, 51
Puck, 3464
Pueblo Indians, 3465
puff-adder, 3466, *facing* 3644
puffin, *facing* 366, 3466
pug-dog, 3466
puggree, 3467
pulka, 3467
pull, 3468
pulley, 446, 3469, 3908, 4560
Pullman, aeroplane, 72
pullover, 3468
pulpit, 3470, 4010
puma, 944, 347
pump, 685, 1608, 3472; engine, 368
pumpkin, 3437, 3472
punch, 946, 3473
Punch and Judy, 143
punching machine, 3473
punch ladle, 2433
punctuation, lxi
punctum, 3474
punt, 2976, 3250, 3437, 3475
pupa, 169, 2056, 3476.
puppet, 2679, 3477
puppy, 380, 1964, 2342
purchase (leverage), 3478
purge, 1336, 3479,
Puritan, 1174, 2272, 3480
purple emperor butterfly, *facing* 564, 2031, 2503, 3481
purple loosestrife, 2590
purse, 3482
pursue, 3483
purvey, 3484
Pusey, Dr. E. B., 2916
push-ball, 318, 3485
puss-moth caterpillar, 660
put, 3486
puteal, 3487
putting the weight, 3486
puzzle, 3488
Pym, John, 2272
pyramid, 1232, 3439, 3489
pyrethrum, 3490
pyrheliometer, 3490
pyrography, 3491
pyrotechnic, 1223, 1357, 3492
Pythagoras, 1738, 3493
Pythagorean, 3493
python, 2872, 3494
pyx, 3494

Q

Q, letter, xvi
quack, 3495
quadrant, 3496
quadriga, 3497
quadruped, 3498, *facing* 3498
quagga, 3499
Quaife, W. G., 305
quail, 3499
Quakeress, 3500
quaking grass, *facing* 1896
quant, 3501
quantity, 3502
quarrel, 2276, 3503
quarry, 1997, 2821, 3504, 4372
quarter, ship's, 3505
quarter-deck, 3505
quartering, heraldic, 476
quartermaster, 3505
quartet, 3506
quassia, 3507
quay, 3091, 3508, 3836
Quebec Bridge, 54
queen, 28, 375, 400, 894, 945, 1026, 1258, 1389, 1428, 1465, 1500, 2093, 2362, 2411, 2978, 3509, 3568, 3605
queen bee, 377
"Queen Elizabeth" (battleship), 470, 4526
Queen Mary's doll's-house, 1258, 2406, 3849
Queen of Spain butterfly, *facing* 564
queen wasp, 4527
quern, 3510
query, 3511
quetzal, 3512
quicksand, 3513
quietude, 3514
quill pen, 254, 285, 3515
quince, 3515
quinine, 3516
quintain, 3517
quipu, 3518
quit, 3519
qui vive, 3520
quoit, 3521
quotation, 3522

R

R, letter, xvi
R33 (airship), 73
R100 (airship), 1189
rabbi, 3523
rabbit, xxxvii, 557, 910, 2102, 2456, 3524
rabbit-drive, 2193
rabbit-hutch, 2102
race, 3525, 3526. *See also* athletic sports; rowing.
race (current), 3525
race-horse, 3525
rack, 3527
rack-railway, 3527
racket, lawn tennis, 1914
rackets, squash, 3528
racoon, 3529
radiant, 3529
radiate, 3530
radiated tortoise 4947
radicle, 368
radiograph, 3531
radiolarian, 162
radium, 3532
Rafflesia, 3533
raft, 322, 3534
rag doll, 4330
rage, 1415
raid, 468, 3535
rail (bird), 3537
rail, altar, 692
railway, 260, 1200, 1463, 3968, 4345, 4386, 4478; accident, 509, 3906; centenary exhibits, 676; elevated, 1369; guard, 296; light, 110, 2531; signal, *facing* 3942; signal-box, 3943; surveying, 1487; underground, 4151, 4416
rain, 277, 1277, 2186
rainbow, *facing* 3228, 4014
rainbow trout, *facing* 1624
rainbow wrasse, 4605
rain-cloud, 3014
rainfall, 1525
rain-gauge, 3537
rajah, 63, 3441, 3538, 4175
rake (of mast), 3539
rake, gardening, 3538
ram (sheep), 718, 2739
ram, warship's, 3540
rambler rose, *facing* 3720
Rameses II, King of Egypt, 702, 1328
rampant (heraldry), 3541
rampart, 3541
Ramsay, Sir William, 714
ranch, 960, 3542
range, 3543
range, mountain, *facing* 632, 917. *See also* mountain.
range, rifle. *See also* Bisley.
range-finder, 1699, 3544
ranger, 882, 3543
rank, xx, 21
ransack, 3545
ranz-des-vaches, 3546
Raphaelism, 3547
rapier, 223, 3547
raree-show, 3548
rasp, 3549
raspberry, 3549
rat, 1225, 4472, 4502
rata, 3550
rat-catcher 2270, 2964
ratchet, 3551
ratel, 3552
rath, 3552
rational dress, 3553
ratline, 3554
Ratti, Cardinal. 627
rattle, 3555
rattlesnake, 1554, *facing* 3614
ravage, 3555
raven, 3556
ravine, 612, 2057, 4879
ray (fish), 3557
ray (of searchlight), 3557
razor, 3558
razor-bill, 3558
reach, 3559
reach (of river), 3559
reading, i, ii, 500, 2145, 2418, 3560
Reading, Rufus Daniel Isaacs Marquess of, 4481
reading-desk, 131
reading-room, 411, 3561
realism, 3562
realm, 3563
reaper, 3564
reaper, mechanical, 91
reason, 3565
Réaumur, René de, 3566
rebellion, 3567, 3679, 4438
rebuke, 3568
recapture, 3569
receive, 3570
reception, 2362
reception-room, 3571
recess, 3572
recipient, 3572
reckoning, 3574
reclaim, 3575
recognize, 3576
recollect, 3577
reconcile, 3578
reconnaissance, 3579
reconstruct, 3580

record, historical, 739; seismographic, 3858
Recorder of London, 1428
recover, 3581
recreative, 3582
recruit, 3583
recumbent, 3584
red, 3587
red, heraldic, 1935
red-admiral butterfly, 58, *facing* 564
redan, 3588
red-breasted merganser, *facing* 4192
red-crested pochard, 3312
Red Cross, 131, 2948, 3585
red deer, 1084, 1908, 4078
red gurnard, 3587
Red Indian, 3586. *See also* Indians, North American.
redingote, 3589
red-legged partridge, 3587
red mullet, *facing* 1624, 2864
redoubtable, 3590
redpoll, lesser, 3587
redshank, 3587, *facing* 4580
red-throated diver, 1241
reduction, 3591
redwing, 3587
reed, *facing* 1896
reed-bunting, 3592
reed-mace, 3592
reef-band, 3593
reef-knot, 3592
reef-point, 3593
reel, 527, 3593
reel, Highland, 1046, 1717
re-embark, 3594
refectory, 3595
refine, 3596
reflection, 648, 1483, 2600, 3597
reform, 3598
Reformation, 3599
refraction, 3600
refuge, 3601
refuge, street, 2321
refugee, 657, 1124, 1740, 3601, 3031
refuse, 3602, 4303
regalia, 1068, 3603
regatta, 2152, 3604
regency, 3605
regent bird, 3606
region, 3607. *See also* Arctic, Antarctic.
register, cash, 3608
regret, 3609
regulate, 3610
rehearse, 3648
Reichstag, 1166, 3611
Reign of Terror, The, 4258
rein, 370, 3612
reindeer, 783, 3467, 3613
reinter, 3614
rejoice, 3615
relate, 3616
relay race, 3617
release, 3618
relic, 2582, 3915
relief, 146, 255, 826, 1370, 1738, 1953, 2037, 2515, 3619, 3784
religious, 698, 1583, 3620
reliquary, 3621
reluctance, 3622
remarkable, 3623
Rembrandt, 2697
remembrance, 3624, 4605
reminiscence, 3625
remiss, 3626
remonstrance, 3627
remorse, 3628
Renaissance, 209, 896, 2004, 2084, 3629
rendezvous, 3630
renew, 3631
renovate, 3632
renunciation, 3633
repair, 3634
repass, 3635
repel, 3636
repent, 3637
repiece, 3638
replenish, 3639
report, 3640
repoussé, 3641
representation, 3642
Representatives, House of, 2601
reprimand, 3643
reproduce, 3644
reprove, 3645
reptile, 114, 792, 989, 1181, 2125, 2135, 3300, 3462, 3494, *facing* 3644
repudiate, 3646
"Repulse" (battleship), 361, 525
reputation, 3647
requiem, 3648
reredos, 3649, 4173
rescue, 2025, 2091, 2344, 3650, 3658, 4119
reservation, 3651
reservoir, 2247, 3652
resin, 3653
resist, 3654
resolute, 3655
resort, 3656
respect, 3657
respirator, 36, 2236, 3658
resplendent, 3659
resplendent trogon, *facing* 3304
rest, 3660
restaurant, 3661
restore, 3662, 4417
restrain, 3663
resurrection, 3664
retainers, 3665
retard, 3666
reticule, 3667
retina, 1528
retinue, 3667
retort, 3668
retreat, 178, 1927, 3669
retribution, 2915
retrieve, 3670
retriever, 3670
retrochoir, 3671
return, 3672
reunion, 4347
reunited, 3672
revenge, 2150
revenue-cutter, 3674
reverent, 3675
reverse, 155, 3676
review, 371, 3677
revisit, 3678
revolt, 3679
revolve, 3680
revolver, 223, 3680. *See also* pistol.
Reynolds, Sir Joshua, 2556
rhea, 3681
Rheims Cathedral, 3662
rheostat, 3682
rhesus monkey, 3682
Rhine, River, 3683
rhinoceros, 1574, 1703, 2073, 2873, 3483, 3684, 4137, 4625, 4952
rhinoceros-bird, 3684
Rhodes, Cecil John, 1351
rhododendron, 3685
Rhône, River, 2322
rhönrad, 3685
rhubarb, 3686
rib, 3687
ribbon, 3688; medal, *facing* 2536
ribbon-fish, 3688
ribbon-grass, *facing* 1896
rice, 3689, 4582
Richard II, King of England, 1121, 2401; pageant scene, 2694
Richelieu, Cardinal, 2776
rick, 3690
rider, 3691
Riderhood, Rogue, 2217
ridge, 3692
riding, 258. *See also* horse.
riding-bitts, 3691
riding-habit, 1946
Rienzi, Cola di, 2150
rifle, 223, 3693
rifle-range, 1619, 3434
rifle-shooting, 3434. *See also* Bisley.
rig, xxi, 338, 343, 356, 363, 417, 519, 611, 774, 1047, 2152, 2374, 2391, 2607, 2800, 4318, 4319. *See also* boat, ship, etc.
rigging, 119
right, 3694
righteous, 3695
rill, 3696
ring, 3697
ring-bolt, 3698
ring-dove, 3698 4594
ringed plover, *facing* 2920
ringing coins, 3699
ringlet butterfly, 3698
ring-money, 3698
ring-ouzel, 3068
riot, 3700
Rip Van Winkle, 1211
ripple, 3701
risk, 3702
rival, 3703
river, 13, 145, 156, 277, 516, *facing* 516, 517, 518, 869, 966, 1467, 1647, 2207, 2322, 2714, 3683, 3734, 4140, 4873, 4875. *See also under specific names.*
river craft, 966. *See also* barge, boat, ship, etc.
rivet, 3704
rivulet, 1062
roach, 3704
road, 749, 860, 1029, 1792, 2288, 2514, 2944, 3749, *facing* 4350, 4392
roar, 3705
roast, 3706
robe, 211, 693, *facing* 3178, 3707
Roberts of Kandahar, Earl, 1272
Robespierre, Maximilien, 2192
robin, 3707, *facing* 3993; egg, *facing* 1305
Robinson Crusoe, 649, 4306
robin's pincushion, 375
Rob Roy, 1309, 3063
Rob Roy canoe, 607
rock, 85, 488, 1453, 1920, 3016, 3654, 3708, 3904
rock-climbing, 2013, 2853, 3655, 3799. *See also* mountaineer.
rock-dove, 3708
rock-dwelling, 3093
rocket, 1197, 3710
rock-garden, 1793, 3709
rocking-horse, *facing* 4330
rocking-stone, 3709
rock lobster, 972
rock-pigeon, 3708
Rocky Mountains, 1833, 2896, 3378, 4448
rodent, 4491, 4951. *See also under specific names.*
rodeo, 2293
Rodney, Admiral Baron, 56
"Rodney" (battleship), 4521
roedeer, 3711
Rogue Riderhood, 2217
roll, 3712
roll-call, 1471
roller (bird), 3713
roller, lawn, 3712
roller-skate, 3713
Roman amphitheatre, 141
Roman aqueduct, 204
Roman arch, 209
Roman bridge, 1300
Roman chariot, 414, 753
Roman deity, 1156, 1637, 2737, 2919, 4290
Romanesque (architecture), 332, 3714
Roman pharos, 2529
Roman pottery lamp, *facing* 2442
Roman wall, 1707, 3390
romantic, 405, 957, 3715,
Rome (ancient), architecture, 1484, 1710, 2463, 3095, 4263, 4366; Circus Maximus, 753; inhabitants, 1681, 2851, 3032, 3874; soldiers, 1116
Rome (modern), The Capitol, 617; St. Peter's, 1260, 1551, 3146; Vatican, 4458
Romney, George, 1492
Röntgen, W. K., 1202
rood-screen, 3716, *facing* 3824
roof, 3253, 3662, 3717
roof-garden, 2970
roof of the world, 2563
rook, 3717
roost, 3718
root, 62, 232, 2289
rope, 684, 768, 771, 806, 3719, 3887, 3910, 4122, 4276, 4560
rope handle, 374
rope-maker's mallet, 2652
rope-making machine, 3719
rope-splicing, 4036
ropeway, 4806
rope yarns, 4185
rosary, 3720
rose, 229, 665, 995, 2412, 2762, *facing* 3720
rosebud, 3385
rose-coloured pastor, 3153
rose gall, 375
rose of Sharon, 3721
Rosetta Stone, 2286
rosette, 3722
rose-window, 3721
rostrum, 3722
rosy feather-star, 1571
rotary, 3723
rotor-ship, 3724
Rotten Row London, 609, 3691
Rouen Cathedral, 1745
rough, 3725
roulette, 3726
roundabout, 3727
roundel, 3728
rounding, 3728
Round Table, 1489
Rousseau (island), 2322
rout, 3729
route, 3730
row, 3731
rowan, 2852, 3268
rowing, 45, 548, 963, 1270, 1503, 3468, 3731
rowing-boat, 3065. *See also* boat.
rowing machine, 3369
rowlock, 1005, 3731
Royal Automobile Club scout, 1623
royal badge of France, 1646
Royal Mint. *See* Mint.
"Royal Oak" (battleship), 1644
royal python, 3494
Royal Red Cross Medal, *facing* 2536
rub, 3732
rubber, 1526, 3733
Rubens, Peter Paul, 894
Rubicon, 3734
ruby, *facing* 1810
rudd, 3735
rudder, 3071, 3268, 3736
ruff, 554, 1271, 3737
ruffe, 3340
rug, 3738
Rugby football. *See* football.
ruin, 5, 818, 1266, 1710, 2316, 2317, 3412, 3459, 3739, 4077
ruler, 2924, 3740. *See also* king; queen; maharajah; rajah, etc.
rules, 27
Rumanian, 1514
ruminant, 4216, 4951. *See also under specific names.*
rummage, 3741
Rump Parliament, 1536
run, 3742
runner, 3744. *See also* athletic sports.
run out, 3743
rural, 3745
ruse, 3746
rush, 3747
rushlight, 3746
Ruskin, John, 2880, 3747

Ruskinian, 3747
Russia, architecture, 1312; inhabitants, 938, 2389, 3293, 3748, 3971; revolution, 468; scene, 3284; soldiers, 1391
Russian wolf-hound, 483
rustic, 3749
rut, 3749
Ruthene, 3750
rye, 3750

S

S. (Saint), 3751. *See also under* Saint.
S, letter, xvii
sable, 3752
sable antelope 3753
sabot, 3753
Sabra, Princess, 2886
sabre, 479, 3753
sac, 4735
sack (pillage), 3755
sackbut, 3755
sack-race, 3754
sacred bull, 187
sacred ibis, 2122
sacred mountain, 3244
sacrifice, 3756
sacristan, 1336
saddle, 1840, 3757
saddleback pig, 3255
safe, 3758
safety-lamp, 3759
safety strap, 1055
saffron, 3759
sagacious, 3760
sage (wise man), iii. *See also* Johnson, Samuel.
Sahara, 120, 220, 3701, 4012
sail, 468, 474, 500, 771, 956, 996, 1151, 1273, 1331, 1841, 1875, 1876, 2123, 2228, 2349, 2462, 2490, 2607, 3063, 3160, 3593, 3761, 3911, 3977, 4031, 4050, 4071, 4095, 4134, 4319, 4347
sail-fish, 3762
sailing-ship, 338, 343, 356, 363, 417, 519, 611, 774, 778, 794, 1047, 1063, 1127, *facing* 1484, 1610, 1698, 1845, 1967, 2005, 2152, 2228, 2349, 2368, 2391, 2426, 2490, 2607, 2696, 2796, 2800, 2837, 2905, 2953, 3065, 3086, 3339, 3414, 3416, 3532, 3539, 3559, 3674, 3761, 3811, 3933, 3967, 3979, 4050, 4071, 4095, 4111, 4134, 4295, 4318, 4319, 4524, 4551, 4614, 4617
sailor, 453, 998, 1030, 1031, 1634, 1938, 1964, 2091, 4247, 4428
Saint, 191, 279, 1480, 1583, 1648, 2199, 2727, 2755, 2834, 2886, 3000, 3040, 3076, 3161, 3163, 3166, 3279, 3374, 3380, 3449, 3695, 3751. *See also under individual names.*
Saint Albans, Bishop of, 3387
Saint Albans, Viscount (Francis Bacon), 1462
Saint Bartholomew's Hospital, London, 2995
Saint Bernard (dog), 2617
Saint Edward's staff, 3603
Saint Elmo's fire, 651
Saint George's Chapel, Windsor, 330
Saint John Ambulance Association, 3762
Saint Kilda sheep, 3909
Saint Mark's mosaic, 2841
Saint Nicholas spoon, 4060
Saint Paul's Cathedral, London, 123, 186, 2184, 2796, 2911
Saint Peter's, Rome, 1260, 1551, 3146
Saint Trills, Chapel of, 2562
Saint Vincent, Admiral, the Earl of. 56
saker, 3763
saki, 3764
Salamanca, Spain, 3066
salamander, 298, *facing* 3644, 3764
sale, 3765
salient, 3766
Salih Pasha, 4498
Salisbury Cathedral, England, 234, 1879
sallet, 2012
salmon, 145, 3767, 4542
salon, 3768
salt, 3769, 3770
salt-cellar, 3769
salute, 2764
saluting, 3771
salver, 3292, 3772
salvia, *facing* 164
salvo, 3772
Sam Browne (belt), 3773
sambur, 3773
Samoan, 3330
Samoyed, 534, 3774
sampan, 3774
sampler, 3775
Samson, 3123
sanatorium, 4436
Sancho Panza, 555, 3715
sanctuary, 3776
sanctuary knocker, 9
sand, 120, 1110, 1131. *See also* Sahara.
sandal, 3778, 4217
sand-bag, 3777
sandbank, 4205
sand-bar, 4879
sand dune, 4876
sand-glass, 2578
sand-grouse, 3777
sand-martin, *facing* 2920
sandpiper, 3779
Sandham, Andrew, 2261
Sandhurst, 2764
sands, 2209, 2564. *See also* sand.
San Giulio, island, 372
sanitary, 3780
San Marino, 2303
Santa Claus. *See* Christmas, Father.
sap (tunnel), 3782
sapodilla, 1936
sapphire, *facing* 1811
sar, 3783
sarcophagus, 803, 1472, 3784
Sardanapalus, 2515
Sardinian, 3785
sardonyx, 594, 1810, *facing* 1810, 2348
sargo, 3783
sarong, 3786
sash, 3786
sassaby, 3787
Satan, 1434, 2755
satellite, 2173, 2828
satin-bird, 3788
satinwood, 1292
saturate, 3789
Saturn, 168, *facing* 260, 3790
sauce-boat, 3790
sauce tureen, 4384
Saumarez, Admiral Baron de, 56
sausage, 3791
savanna, 4880
save, 3792
saving, 3793
saw, 3794
saw-fish, 3794
saw-fly, 3795
Saxon arch, 209
Saxon church, 3795
Saxons, xxi, 3374
saxophone, 3796
Say and Sele, Lord, 2265
scabbard, 3797
scabious, *facing* 164, 3797
scaffold, 1500
scale (climb), 1455, 3799
scales (weighing), 1443, 3798
scales, ant-eater's, 4127
Scamandra polychroma, *facing* 4580
scamper, 3800
scandalize, 3801
Scandinavian, 3801. *See also* Norwegian, Swedish, Danish, etc.
scapegoat, 3802
scarab beetle, 379, 3803
scarecrow, 3804
scarf, 2303
scarlet pimpernel, 3262
scaup, 3805
scavenger, 55, 1667
scenery, theatrical, 3806
scenes (theatre), 382
scent bottle, *facing* 3321
scent sprayer, 268
sceptre, 523, 2693, 3603, 3807
scherzo, 3808
schloss, 3809
school, 635, 1348, 2478, 2910, 3810
schoolboy, 1053, 2079, 2275, 2478, 4567
schoolgirl, 2547
schoolmaster, 2149, 2478, 4361
schooner, 3539, 3811, 4319
Schubert, Franz, 2524
scientist, 1530, 3812
scimitar, 3812
scissors, 3813
scoff, 3814
scolds' bridle, 503
sconce, 3815
scoop, 3815
scooter, 3816
score, 3817
scorpion, 47, 130, 3818, 4560
scorpion-fly, 3818
Scotch elm, 4612
Scotch fir, cone, 4732
scotchman, 3819
Scotch pine, 3819
scoter, 3820
Scotland, scenes, 1647, 2038, 2437, 2572, 2714, 4123; shipyard, 3919; sports: *See* Highland sports.
Scots Greys, 701, 1085
Scott, Captain Robert Falcon, 171, 1135; monument, 3210
Scott, Elizabeth, 1285
Scott, Sir Giles Gilbert, 37
Scott, Sir Walter, 251, 1550
Scottish, 760
Scottish chieftain, 1601
Scottish folk-dance, 1717
Scottish harp, 1980
Scottish judges, 2363
Scottish laird, 2437
Scottish magistrate, 3641, 3707
scourge, 3821
scout, xlviii, 1623, 3821, 4038, 4454
scout (aeroplane), 1407
scout (military), 3579
scramble, 3822
scraper, 3823
scrap metal, 1314
scratch-cat, 3824
screamer, crested, 3825
screen, altar, 123, 3649. coal, 788; door, 1850; folding, 2258; smoke, 902; various types, *facing* 3824
screw, 486, 3826
screw-driver, 3826
screw-propeller, 3826
scribe, xi, 2138, 3827,
scriptorium, xix
scriptural, 3828
scroll (book), 3829
scroll, Ionic, 2308
scrubbing-board, 2647
scrummage, 3830
scud, 3830
sculling, 3831. *See also* rowing.
sculptor, 329, 642, 975
sculpture, 138, 146, 234, 235, 264, 414, 554, 562, 604, 642, 763, 774, 826, 845, 975, 1018, 1107, 1156, 1198, 1209, 1344, 1414, 1566, 1637, 1657, 1738, 2002, 2021, 2061, 2083, 2223, 2267, 2371, 2441, 2465, 2733, 2737, 2748, 2872, 2988, 3073, 3242, 3564, 3832, 4611, 4613, 4631. *See also* statue.
scupper, 3832
scuttle, 3833
scythe, 3834
sea, 95, 510, 1338, 1392, 2000, 2220, 3236, 3650, 3654, 3708, 3835, 4119
sea-anchor, 1297
sea-anemone, 175, 3838
sea-bed, 487
sea-bindweed, 3422
sea-bird, 3966. *See also under specific names.*
sea-cow, 2658
sea-cucumber, 3839
sea-eagle, 422, 3840
sea-elephant, 1368, 3563, 3837
sea-fan, 3839
sea-god, 2919
sea-gull, 596, 1225, 1669, 3840, 4247
sea-horse, *facing* 1624, 2042, *facing* 4192
seal, 194, 2704, 3841, 3890
seal (mammal), 160, 1368, 3840
seal hunter, 4875
sea-lily, 986
sea-lion, *facing* 4192
Sea Lord, 57
Sealyham terrier, 3842
seam (coal), 216, 789
sea mat, 4635
sea-mouse, 3839
sea-needle, 1794
sea-nymph, 4613
sea-parrot, *facing* 366, 3466,
seaplane, 1652, 2294, 2903, 3346, 3837
seaport, 3836
search, 3841
searchlight, 177, 886, 1845, 2300, 3429, 3557
sea-serpent, 3838
sea-shell, 857, 962
seashore, 262
seaside, xlix, 143, 364, 2054
season, 3844
seat, 3845
sea-trout, 3897
Seattle, U.S.A., 1556
sea-urchin, 1341, 4440
sea-wall, 1400, 3725
seaweed, 106, 1109, 2387, 3839, 4604
seclude, 3846
second-lieutenant, badge, 3847
secret, 3393, 3457, 3847
secretaire, 3848
secretary, 1163
secretary-bird, 422, 3848
section, 919, 1663, 3078, 3849
secure, 3850
sedan chair, 3851
sedge-warbler, 3851, *facing* 3993
sedulous, 3852
see, 3853
seed, plant, 3854, 4733; sowing, 402, 1294, 2140
seed capsule, 3889
seed dispersion, 1222, 3868
seedling, 78, 368, 1825
seed-vessel, 467, 3202, 4733
seek, 3855
see-saw, 1757
segment, 3856
seine, 3857
seismograph, 3858
select, 3859
selenograph, 3860
self-command, 3861
self-defence, 1086, 3862
self-educated, 3863
self-renunciation, 3864
sell, 3865
Selsey Bill, 416
selvagee, 3866
semaphore, 3866

semicolon, lxi
semi-detached, 3867
semination, 3868
Seminole, 3651
sen, 3869
senate, 3869
send-off, 3870
senna, 3871
señorita, 3872
sensitive plant, 3873
sensual, 3874
sentry, 453, 1261, 3875, 4117
sentry-box, 1812
sepal, 1663, 3876, 4734
separate, 3876
sepoy, 3467
seps, 3877
septuagenarian, 3878
sepulchral, 3879
sequoia, 3880
serenade, 3881
sergeant, badge, 3882
serin, 3883
Sermon on the Mount, 3884
serpent (musical instrument), 3885
serum, 3886
serval, 3886
serve (lawn tennis), 3887
service. *See* divine service
service medals, 1234
services. *See* British Army, British Navy, etc.
service tree leaf, 2481
servile, 3888
serving, 3887
serving-maid, 1020, 1174, 2291
sesame, 3889
sessile, 4730
Sessions House, London, 2927
set-square, 3893
setter (dog), 3893
settler, 732, 3894
settlement, 306
Seven Sisters Falls, Norway, 1616
seventh, 3895
Severus, Lucius Septimus, 1707
Seville Cathedral, Spain, 3377
sewer-pipe, 3780
sewin, 3897
sewing, 1631, 2015, 2702, 3896
sewing-machine, 2702, 3896
sextant, 3897, 3898, 4472
shackle, 3899
Shackleton, Sir Ernest, 171
shad, 3899
shadoof, 3899
shaft, 2506, 3900
Shakespeare, William, xxvi; burial place, 2902; characters and scenes, 930, 1378, 1523, 2155, 2551, 2657, 3205, 3207, 4023, 4309
shampoo, 2464
shamrock, 3391, 3903
Shan chief, 3903
shanny, 442
shape, 3904
share-out, 1196
shark, 456, 1963, 2396, 3835, 3905, *facing* 4192, 4282
sharpshooter, 399
Shaw, George Bernard, 3296
shawl, 645, 3907
shearing, 4596
shears, 3813, 3908
shearwater, 3908
sheaf, 1983, 2812
sheave, 3908
sheep, 87, 718, 924, 1183, 2021, 2183, 2738, 2840, 3153, 3364, 3402, 3909, 3914, 4155, 4876
sheep-dip, 1183
sheep-dog, 87, 813, 991, 3153, 3910, 3914
sheep-fold, 2933
sheepshank, 2415, 3910
sheer (of boat), 3910
sheers (for hoisting), 3911
sheet (sail), 3911
sheik. 1304, 3911
sheldrake, 3912
shell (projectile), 1763, 2868, 2869, 3913
shell, sea, 857
shell-fish, 160, 237, 759, 765, 830, 859, 964, 972, 973, *facing* 1004. *See also specific names.*
shepherd, 87, 737, 982, 991, 3151, 3914
shepherd and shepherdess, *facing* 3321
shepherdess, 2771, 2933
Sheridan, Richard Brinsley, 3296
Shetland Islands, 526
Shetland pony, 1962, 3915
shield, 484, 528, 1311, 1382, 3144, 3641, 3915; heraldic, 332, 476, 1588
shillelagh, 223
shilling, 3916. *See also* coin.
shine, 3917
shinty, 3918
ship, xxi, 3, 11, 79, 420, 448, 460, 544, 565, 611, 651, 685, 790, 831, 832, 841, 860, 878, 948, 1056, 1184, 1229, 1284, *facing* 1484, 1509, 1527, 1967, 2100, 2139, 2160, 2200, 2212, 2311, 2368, 2469, 2554, 2890, 3261, 3319, 3453, 3509, 3724, 3736, 3830, 3832, 3942, 3954, 3978, 4011, 4079, 4090, 4103, 4119, 4214, 4318, 4360, 4396, 4429, 4485, 4535, 4538, 4551, 4556, 4557. *See also* boat; liner, sailing-ship; steamer, etc
shipbuilding, 3919
ship's anchor chain, 3543
ship's compass, 419
ship's side-light 2442
shipworm, 2128
shipwreck, 3, 79, 368, 447, 487, 583, 619, 955, 1127, 1195, 1444, 1920, 2905, 3016, 3030, 3650, 3954, 4119, 4396
shipyard, 3473, 3919
shirt, 3920
shock-absorber, 3921
shoe, 777, 2461, 3753, 3923
shoe-bill, *facing* 366, 422
shoe-buckle, 538
shoeing, 234, 1558, 3922
shoemaker's last, 2461
shofar, 3924
shooting, 1619, 3434, 4062 *See also* Bisley.
shop, 3211, 3562
shopping, 3925
shop window, 1416, 4579
shore (prop), 3854, 3926
shorthorn, 3927
shoulder, 3928
shovel, 2479
shoveller (bird), 3929
show (point out), 3930
show, Lord Mayor's, 569; Punch and Judy, 143
shrapnel helmet, 225
shrew, 3931,
shrike, 562
shrimp, 140; *facing* 1004
shrimping, 392
shrimp trawler, 4348
shrine, 150, 571, 1583, 3932
shrouds, ship's, 3554, 3933
Shrove Tuesday custom, 2802
shut, 3934
shuttlecock, 362, 3935
Siamese butterfly, *facing* 2250
Siamese coin, 1023
Siamese girl, 3786
Siberia, inhabitants, 3293, 3936
Siberian crab-apple, 4735
Sicily, inhabitants, 3633, 3937, 4266; scene, 2470, 3555, 3793
Siddons, Sarah, 3295
side, 3938
sideboard, 1763
side-car, 2483, 2848, 4223
side-drum, 1302
side-light, ship's, *facing* 2442
side-saddle, 3757
siege, 211
siege engine, 359, 507
siege-gun, 3939
Siena, Italy, 1430
Siena Cathedral, Italy, 1682
sieve, 3940
sightseer, 3941
sign, 666, 1112, 1122, 2491, 3694, 3942
signal, 838, 2204, 2744, *facing* 3942, 3943
signal-box, 993, 2510, 3943
signature, 194, 3646,
signet ring, 3697
signing, 705
Sikh, 480, 3944, 4383
silhouette, 3945
silk fibre, 1595
silk moth, 471, 1528
silkworm, 3946
silo, 3947
silt, 4880
silver, 234, 546, 1017, 1608, 1633, 1959, 2235, 2780, 2966, 3948
Silver Cross, 295
silver eel, 188
silver fox, 3947
silver paper, 1313
silver-point, 1913
silver-washed fritillary butterfly, 1742
silver Y moth, 2503
simian, 185. *See also* ape.
simplicity, 3949
simulate, 3950
Sinai, Mount, 3951
sing, 3952
single-stick, 3953
sing-song, 250
Sioux, 3955
siphon, 3955
siren, 3956
sisal, 2255
siskin, 3957
sister, 2398
sitting, 3958
Sivatherium, 3959
sixpence, 1448
six-spotted burnet-moth, *facing* 4580
skaffie, 3960
skate (fish), 3960; egg-case. 1353
skating, 1205, 1486, 1580, 1604, 2283, 2368
skeleton, 149, 163, 473, 1205, 2873, 3961, 4388
skep (hive), 2047
ski, 1782
ski-jumping, 1672, 3962
skid, 3963
skiff, 3963
skin, xvii, 966, 1576, 2486, 3964, 4346
skink, *facing* 3644
skipjack, 3965
skittle, 113
skittle-alley, 113
skittle cheese, 113
skua, 3966
skull, 969, 2734, 3494, 3966
skylark, *facing* 3993
skylight, 3967
skysail, 3967
skyscraper, 543, 1219, 1461, 3702
slag, 1000, 3968
slant, 3969
slate, 3970
slate quarry, 3504
Slav, 3971
slave, 472, 1376
sledge, 3972
sleep, 3973
sleeve, 488, 620, 2525
sleigh, 3355, 3974
slender loris, 1567, 2591
slide, 3975
sliding-seat, 3976
sling, 3230, 3977
slip-box, 2589
slipper-plant, 584
slipway, 3978
sloe, 435
sloop, 3979
slope, 4802
sloth, 92, 3980, 4952
Slovak, 3981
slow-match, 3982
slow-worm, 444
slug, 3982; eggs, 1353
sluice, 3983, 4807
slum, 2218
smack, (boat), 1915, 3984
small, 3985
small copper butterfly, *facing* 564
smash, 813, 3986
Smeaton, John, 3203, 4068
smell, 2151, 3987
smelt (fish), 3987
smile, 1411, 3988
smith, 183
smoke, 591, 3989, 3990
smoke-helmet, 2236
smoke-mask, 2692
smoke-screen, 902, 3990
smoke-stack, 381
smoking-room, 2515
Smollett, Tobias, 3206
smooth-haired terrier, 2342
smooth-snake, 3991
smuggler, 3992
snail, 2413; eyes, 1529
snake, 50, 246, 792, 3494, *facing* 3644, 3991, 3993
snake-charmer, 3993
snake's-head lily, 1742
snapdragon, 181, 3994, 4731
snapping turtle, 3994
snapshot, 3996
snatch, 3995
snatch-block, 3995
sneeze, 3996
snipe, 3997
snout weevil 379
snow, 1094, 1141, 1540, 1603, 1686, 2183, 2786, 3354, 3381, 3402, 3563, 3972, 3974, 3975, 4261, 4593
snowball, 1603, 2786, 3998
snow-drift, 1276, 1375, 2191, 2987
snowflake, 3990
snow-hut, 1459
snow-leopard, 2502, 3999
snow-mountain, 48
snow-plough, 1463, 2984, 3303, 4000,
snow-shoes, 1141
snowy egret, 1355
snuffers, 4001
soap, 4002
soap-bubbles, 536
soap-making, 1464
Sobranje, 4003
socialist, 4004
Socrates, 3232
soda-lake, 110, 4005
sofa, 1763, 4006
solar eclipse, 165, 738, 925, 1342
solar flames, *facing* 260
solar hypothesis, 2119
solar rays, 4008
sola topi, 4007
solder, 4009
soldering-iron, 4009
soldier, 33, 100, 350, 429, 559, 1012, 1191, 1218, 1242, 1289, 1294, 1403, 1909, 2182, 2264, 2513, 2580, 3015, 3085, 3189, 3324, 3373, 3676, 3913, 4086. *See also* British Army.
sole (fish), 4009
solemn, 4010
solid, 4011
solitary, 4012
solitude, 2172
Solomon Islander, 605, 966, 1310, 2306
Solomon's seal, 4013
solve, 4014
somersault, 4015
somnolent, 4016

son, 1499, 3637
song-bird, 433, 601, *facing* 3993
song-thrush, *facing* 1305, 2921, *facing* 3993
sonneteer, 4017
soothsayer, 4018
Sophocles, 4019
sorcerer, 4020
sorrel, 4021
sort, 128, 2508, 4022
soubrette, 4023
sound (channel), 4024
sounding apparatus, 4025
sounding-board, 40
souslik, 4026
South Africa, inhabitants, 560, 1170
South African gazelle, 4065
South American coin, 3217
South American giant frog, *facing* 3644
South American lung-fish, 2611
Southern Nigerian, 1984. *See also* Nigeria, inhabitants.
South Polar exploration, 171, 1135, 3215. *See also* Antarctic.
South Sea Company, 2256
souvenir, 4027
sovereign, 2362. *See also* king; queen; ruler, etc.
sovereign (coin), 1867
Soviet troops, 468
sower, 402, 2140, 3120
soya-bean, 4028
spade guinea, 1934
spaghetti, 4029
Spain, architecture, 99, 935, 3066, 3348, 3572; king, 2924; Peninsular War, 1165, 1455, 1533, 1927, 3590; queen, 1153, 3509; scenes, 314, 3066, 3377, 3623, 3881
spaniel, 442, 1215, 2402, 3670, 4030
Spanish Armada, 1967, 3269
Spanish burton. 4031
Spanish coin, 3217
Spanish fort, 1216
spanker, (sail), 4031
spar, 1626
spark, electric, 4032. *See also* electric discharge.
sparrow-hawk, 28, 4033; egg, *facing* 1305
spat (gaiter), 4034
spathe, 4034
spawn, 4035
"Speak! Speak!" 1987
speaker, 51. *See also* Commons, House of.
spear, 223, 3144, 4036
spearhead, 528
special constable, 4037
specimen, 4038
spectacles, 4039
spectroscope, 4040
spectrum, 4041
speed, 4042
Spencer, Herbert, 4043
sperm-whale, 4044
sphinx, 4045
spider, 160, 205, 648, 4229, 4950; egg cocoon, 1118, 4046; eye, 1529; nest, 1264, 2921, 4229
spider-crab, *facing* 1004
spider-monkey, 4047
spiller (fishing-line), 4048
spinal column, 4474
spinnaker, 2228, 4050
spinning-jenny, 4049
spinning-machine, 2863, 4049
spinning-wheel, 234, 1231, 1947, 2311, 3037
spinous, 4735
spinstress, 234, 1947, 2311
spiny lobster, 972
spiracle, 4051
spiral nebula, 153, *facing* 260, 2906
spirit-level, 2510, 3305
spiritual, 4052
spit (land), 1873
spit (skewer), 4053
Spitsbergen, 2313, 2760, 3319
splash, 4054
spleenwort, 4055
splice, 4056
Spode-ware, 4057
sponge, 17, 2749, 3344, 4058
sponson, 4059
spoon, anointing, 3603; Saint Nicholas, 4060
spoonbill, *facing* 366, 4060
spoonbill duck, 3929
spore, 4061
sport. *See* athletic sports, cricket, football, etc.
sporting dog, 2246, 3317, 3893, 4030
sports wear, 1416
spotted salamander, *facing* 3644, 3764
spotted woodpecker, 4594
spotting, 4062
sprat, 1413
spray (insect), 268, 1521, 4063
spray (sea), 3654
sprig, 2535
spring, 4064
springbok, 4065
spring-trap, 1836
sprint, 105, 1615
sprit, 4065
spruce (tree), 4066; leaf, *facing* 4350
spur, 3603
spurge, 1476, 4067
spurge hawk-moth, 995
spur-winged goose, 1874
spy, 2269, 4068
squacco, 4068
square, 4070
square coin, 1023
square-rigged ship, 4071
square sail, 956, 3593, 4071
squash rackets, 3528
squaw, 4072
squeegee, 4073
squid, 4074
squirrel, *facing* 2920, 2965, 4951
stable, 2662, 4082
stack (pile), 3844
stack, chimney, 1548
stadium, Rome, 4077; Wembley, 1611
staff, 3603
Stafford House, London, 2493
Staffordshire ware, 4384
stag, 183, *facing* 1072, 1084, 2038, 3945, 4078, 4946
stag-beetle, 379, *facing* 2250, 4078; mandibles, 2341
stage, 46. *See also* drama.
stage, landing, 4079
stage-coach, 1717
stained-glass, 4080
stained-glass furnace, 1846
stairway, moving, 1456
staith, 4080
stalactite, 668, 1919, 4081
stalagmite, 1919
stalk-eye, 4952
stalk-eyed fly, 1529
stall, horse, 4082
stall, trader's, 1658
stamen, 1663, 4083
stamp (die), 951
stamping machine, 4084
stamp mill, 4807
stanchion, 4085
standard (engineering), 4802
standard (flag), 1272, 4086
standard measures, 2715, 4087
stand-pipe, 4150
Stanley, Sir H. M., 1612, 2794
star, 153, *facing* 260, 888, 2143, 2906
starboard, 2528, 3505
starch, 1895
starfish, 160, 4089
starling, 4090
star-nosed mole, 2809
starred tortoise, *facing* 3644
Stars and Stripes, 4088
start, 4091
Start lighthouse, England, 366
State carriage, 1497
State trumpeters, 2019. *See also* trumpeter.
State umbrella, 3903
station, meteorological, 4092
statue, 264, 528, 537, 539, 642, 774, 817, 886, 975, 1018, 1156, 1198, 1209, 1328, 1344, 1414, 1478, 1566, 1723, 1865, 2002, 2009, 2111, 2141, 2371, 2465, 2737, 2755, 2919, 2929, 2988, 3624, 4093, 4264, 4267, 4277, 4611, 4613, 4631. *See also* sculpture.
statuette, 1843
stave, 4094
stay (rope), 4095
stay-sail, 4095
steam-engine, 4096
steamer, 4059, 4337. *See also* boat; liner; ship, etc.
steam-hammer, 196, 1701
steam life-boat, 2526
steam-navvy, 4808
steam trawler, 4348
steam tug, 1581
steam whistle, 4563
steed, 3179. *See also* horse.
steel, 36, 401, 1701, 2551, 4097, 4804
steel bridge, 3856. *See also* bridge.
Steele, Sir Richard, 1462
steel works, 2168
steelyard, 313, 562
steeple, 4098
steeplechase, 4054
steeplejack, 773
steer (ox), 960, 3074
steering-gear, 2012, 3496, 3505, 3736, 4554
steersman, 3339
stele, 4099
stem, ship's, 4099
stemless flower, 3533
step, 4101
"Step, The," 4100
Stephen, Saint, 2199, 3449
Stephenson, George, 3863
stereoscope, 4102
sterilize, 4103
stern, ship's, 4103
stethoscope, 282, 3399, 4104
Stevenson, Robert Louis, 284
steward, badge, 4105
stick-insect, *facing* 2250, 4105; egg, 1353
stickleback, *facing* 1624, 4106
stigma, 1587, 1663, 4107
still, 4108
still life, 1347
stilts, 1099, 2448, 4109
sting, bee's, 47; scorpion's, 47
stinging hairs, nettle's, 4110
stirrup, horseman's, 4111
stirrups, ship's, 4111
stitchwort, 4603
stoat, *facing* 1072, 1452
stock (plant), *facing* 164
Stock Exchange, London, 2605
stocking, 4113
stocks (punishment frame), 761, 4112
stocks (timbers), 3919
stokehold, 824
stoker, 824; badge, 4114
stolid, 947
stone (gem), *facing* 1810, 3020
Stone Age, 232, 281, 297, 674, 713, 2904, 2917
stonechat, 4115, 4553
stone-mason, 1226, 4598
stoning, 2199
stook, 4116
stool, 3845
stop, 4117
store, 613, 673, 2868
stork, *facing* 366, 422, 4118
storm, 4119
storm-petrel, 3220
stove, 4120
stowaway, 2033
straight, 4121
Straits Settlements, scene, 403, 2645
strake, 4122
strand (rope), 4122
strata, 2489, 4172
stratagem, 1457
strath, 2714, 4123
Strathcona, Lord, 1141
strawberry, 1721, 4124
stream, 976, 2853, 3902, 4125
streamer, 53
street lamp, 2609
street refuge, 2321
street trader, 984, 1568
strength, 4126
stretcher, 131
striated, 4127
strike (hit), 4128
string, 4129
stringed instrument. *See* musical instrument, *also specific names.*
strive, 4130
strong, 2527, 4126, 4131
stronghold, 526
strop (nautical), 4132
struggle, 1506, 4133
stud, 4134
studding sail, 4134
student, 1271, 3700
studio, 240, 263, 975, 2116, 3090, 3096
study, 4135
study (room), 1205, 3751
stump, 3894
stump-tailed lizard, 4136
stunt, 392, 3950
stupendous, 4137
sturgeon, *facing* 1624, 4138
style, 4139
Styrian, 4140
subapennine, 4141
subdue, 4142
sub-editor, 4143
subject, 4144
Sublime Porte, 4145
submarine, 487, 1329, 1845, 2110, 2301, 2423, 3068, 3205, 3338, 3417, 4146
submarine cable, 574
submarine photograph, 3835
submit, 4147
subpolar, 4148
subside, 4149
substitute, 4150
subterranean, 4151
suburb, 4152
subway, 4153
succulent, 4154
suck, 4155
Sudanese, 383, 4156
sudd, 2243
suffer, 4157
sugar, 1379
sugar basin, 17
sugar-cane, 604, 3289, 4158, 4159
sugar-mill, 4159
sugar-refining, 3596
suit (armour), 4160
suite, 4161
sulphur butterfly, 2503
sultan, 63, 3667
sultan (flower), 4162
Sumatra, scene, 2380
summer-house, 4163
summit, 1013, 4164
summon, 333
sun, 2119 2760, *facing* 3228; chromosphere, 738; corona *facing* 260, 925; midnight, 2313; mock, 3132. *See also* eclipse *and* solar.
sun-bath, 2390
sun-bird, *facing* 2920, *facing* 3304
sundew, 4492
sun-dial, 647, 1154
sun-fish, 4165
sunflower, 926
sun-god, 1865, 2009
sunlight, 3529; artificial, 239
sunshade, 4166, 4344
sunspot, *facing* 3228
superb, 4167

superb plume bird of paradise, *facing* 3304
super-ethical, 4168
superintend, 4169
superlative, 4170
supermarine, 1652
superstitious, 4171
superstrata, 4172
" Supper, The Last," 2591, 4173
supply, 4174
suppress, 4175
supreme, 4176
Suraj-ud-Dowlah, 2887
surcoat, 4177
surf, 655, 2220. *See also* sea.
surf-boat, 322, 4178
suricate, 4179
surprise, 4180
surrender, 4181
Surrey, Henry Howard, Earl of, 4017
survey, 1487, 1821, 4182
survivor, 1402, 3640
suspend, 4183
" Suspense," 4184
" Sussex " (cruiser), 2903
Sussex Downs, 1274
Sussex Weald, 4536
Suvla, 1479
Svengali, 2116
swab, 4185
Swahili, 4186
swallow, 424, 873
swallow-tail (butterfly), *facing* 564, 2503, 4952
swallow-tailed goatsucker, *facing* 3304
swamp, 2289
swan, 1034, 1087, 3250, 4187
swarm, 4188
swathe, 1418, 4189
swearing-in, 2421
sweater, 3468
Sweden, legation, 2494; peasants, 3801; scene, 4024
sweep (oar), 4190
sweep chimney, 724
sweet, 4191
sweet-briar, *facing* 3721
sweet chestnut, leaf, *facing* 4350
" Sweethearts and Wives," 3672
sweetmeat vendor, 394, 4191
sweet pea, 1069, 3167, 4734
sweet sultan, 4162
sweet vernal grass, *facing* 1896
swift, 2627, *facing* 2920, 4192
Swift, Jonathan, 284
swifter, 4192
swim, 2221, 4193
swimmer, 1966, *facing* 4192, 4193
swimming-bath, 357, 2221
swing, xli, 4194
Swiss, 2014, 2501, 3546
Swiss chalet, 687, 2084
switch-board, 4195
Switzerland, avalanche, 290; frozen lake, 1782; Langwies viaduct, 4478; postman, 1252; President, 2924; rack-railway, 3527; scenes, 48, 651, 749, 782, 2322, 2852, 3147, 3207, 3546, 4167, 4470; ski-jumping, 1672, 3962
swivel, 4196
swoop, 423
sword, 26, 223, 436, 1428, 4196; English regalia, 3603
sword-fish, 4197
sword-lily, 1844
Sword of Justice, 1381
sycamore, leaf, 2481, *facing* 4350
Sydney harbour, 1873
syllabary, 4198
sylvan, 530, 4199
symbol, 221, 1381
symbolic figures, 2557
symphony, 4200
synagogue, 2823, 4201
synchronism, 4202
syndic, 4203
synthetic, 4204
Syria, inhabitant, 4191; scenes, 301, 2821, 3041, 3739
Syrian beetle, 1575
Syrian mallow, 3721
Syrtis, 4205
systyle, 4206

T

T, letter, xvii
tabard, 1380, 4206
tabernacle, 2327
tabernacle (socket), 4208
table, xxvii, 1763
Table Mountain, 4209
tablet, 1034, 2327, 3490, 4210
tabouret, 4211
tack (nail), 2889
tackle (Rugby football), 4212
tackle, hoisting, 3453, 4031, 4212
tadpole, 2458, 4213
taffrail, 4214
tagetes, *facing* 164
Tahiti, scene, 2436
tail, 664, 1164, 4214
tailor, 4215
tailor-bird, *facing* 2920
tailors' shears, 3813, 3908
Taj Mahal, 4170
takin, 4216
talaria, 4217
talent, 4217
taliped, 4952
talk, 4218
talking film apparatus, 4218
tally, 4219
talon, 1683, 4220
tamarin, 4221
tambour, 4221
tambourine, 4221
tame, 4222
tam-o'-shanter, 59
tandem, 4223
Tanganyika Territory, colonist, 1574
tangent, 4224
tangerine, 4224
tank, military, 226, 4225
tankard, *facing* 3321, 4225
tantalus (bird), 4226
" Tantalus, The Cup of," 3559
tap, 4227
tape, 1615
tapestry, 1864, 4228
tapir, 3299, *facing* 3498, foot, 1683
tarantula, 4229
target, 94, 1052, 4230
tarpon, 3850, 4231
tarsier, 4232
Tasmania, natives, 257
Tasmanian devil, 1146
Tasmanian wolf, 4233
taste, 4234
Tatar, 591
tau cross, 4235
tavern, 2291, 4236
tawny owl, 3079
taxidermy, 279, 1122, 4237, 4369
tea blending, 2271
teacher, 2149, 4361
tea-garden, 4586
teal, 4238
team, bob-sleigh, 461; camel, 4597; horse, 1175; ox, 1286, 3408, 4623. *See also* athletic sports *and* football.
tea-plant, 4237
teapot, 725
tease, 4239
teasel, 4733
teepee, 2577, 4240
telegraph, *facing* 3942, 4241
telegraph cable, 574
telephone, 2234, 3045, 3047, 4242, 4442
telephone-box, 495
telephone cable, 574
telephone exchange, 1494
telescope, 214, 261, 1445, 4062, 4243; lens, 2500
television, 4244
Tell, William, 2344, 2494
Telugu, 4245
temple, Athenian, 919; Confucian, 870; Egyptian, 2118; Indian rock, 3552; Jain, 2336, 3659; Japanese, 1837; of Bacchus, 3041; of Neptune, 1519; of Solomon (model), 2952; Parisian, 4246
Temple, Christ in the, 3479
tempt, 4247
tench, 4248
tender, 2542, 4340. *See also* locomotive.
tendril, 4736
tennis. *See* lawn-tennis.
tent, 430, 1396, 2577
tentacle, 800, 859, 2343, 4252
tent-pegging, 4251
tercentenary, 4253
terminal, 4254
terminus, 541
termite, 4255
tern, 4255, *facing* 4580
ternate kingfisher, *facing* 3304
terrace, 4874
" Terra Nova " (ship), 171
terrapin, 4256
terrier, 581, 1047, 1087, 1964, 2342, 3703, 3842, 4133, 4257, 4624
Terror, Reign of, 4258
Terry, Ellen, 2155
test, 243, 4227, 4259
testudo, 4260
tether, 4261
tetrapod, 4262
tetrastyle, 4263
Thackeray, William Makepeace, 284
Thalia, 4264
Thames, River, 13, 348
Thames Embankment 1137, 3917, 4549
thatch, 4265
theatre, 382, 3477, 4266; model, 2804. *See also* drama.
theatrical, 1211
Theban statuary, 4267
Themis, 4268
theodolite, 4182, 4269
theory, 4270
Theresa, Saint, 1583
theosophy, 4271
thermite, 4272
thermograph, 4273
thermometer, 1511
thermometer-screen, 4274
Theseum, 1418
Theseus, 2427
thick-knee (bird), 4275
thimble (ring), 4276
thimble (sewing), 4276
" Thinker, The," 4277
thirst, 4278
thistle, 1081, 4279, 4730; leaf, 2481
Thistle, Order of the, 3040
thistle-down, 1275
thole, 4279
thorax, 3687
thorn-apple, 4280
Thothmes III, 3226
thought, 4281
" Thought " (sculpture), 235
thrasher (shark), 4282
three, 4283
three-toed seps, 3877
three-toed sloth, 92
thresh, 1633, 4284
thresher-shark. *See under* thrasher.
thrill, 4285
throne, 608, 4286
throw, 4287
thrum, 4288
thrush, 2413, *facing* 3993, 4288
thumb, 4289
thunder, Roman god of, 4290
Thusnelda, 4142
thwart, 4291
thyme, 4291
tiara, 4292
Tiberius, Emperor, 4142, 4397
Tibetan altar lamp, *facing* 2442
Tibetan lama, 2439
Tibetan saint, 1007
Tibetan wild ass, 2393
tick, 4292
ticket, 388, 2374
ticket-issuing machine, 4293
ticket-punch, 388, 946, 3473
tidal wave, 482
tiddler, 2587
tide, 4294
tidings, 737
tie, 4295
tier, 4295
tiger, 309, 653, 1008, 1705, 2484, 2614, 2915, *facing* 3498, 4296, 4947; cub, 1008; forefeet, 1683
tiger-beetle, jaws, 2341
tiger-moth, 4952
tight-rope, 42
Tigris, River, 2207
Tigris boatmen, 507
tiller, 4297
tilt (awning), 4297
tilting furnace, 1762
tilting helm, 2012
tilting the bucket, 3365
timber, 732, 1292, 1974, 2608, 3844, 4298, 4541
timber-hitch, 2415
timber-yard, 4298
time, 4299
time-ball, 4299
time-piece. *See* clock *and* watch.
timpano, 1302
tin, 4300
tinder-box, 4301
tinfoil, 1343, 4300
tin mine, 2772
tin whistle, 4563
tinners' shears, 3908
tiny, 4302
tip, 4302
tire, 97
tired, 4304
tit, *facing* 366, 4305; egg, *facing* 1305
" Titanic " (liner), 583
titbit, 3022
Titicaca, Lake, 2120
titlark, 2712
title-page, 4306
titmouse. *See* tit.
toad, 139, *facing* 3644, 4307; eye, 1529
toadstool, 82, 1370, 1544, 1671, 4307
tobacco-pipe, 591, 1031, 3989
tobacco plant. 4308, 4732; flower, *facing* 164, 1990
toboggan, xlviii, 461, 3582, 3975
Toby jug, 4308
tody, *facing* 3304
tody-tyrant, *facing* 2920
toe, 4948
toga, 4309
toggle, 4309
toilet implements, 4310
toll-gate, 4311
tomahawk, 223, 4312
tomb, 2882, 2929, 3581, 4312
tombstone, 1441
tompion, 4313
tom-tom, 4313
tonga, 4314
tongue (of house-fly), 4315
tonsorial, 4316
tool, 952, 3549. *See also* carpenters' tools.
tooth (of python), 3494
tooth-brush, 1294
top, humming, 2094
top, peg, 4319
top, ship's, 4318
topaz, *facing* 1810
top-hat, 983, 1446, 2990
topiary, 4320
topmast, 4318

topping-lift, 4319
topsail, 4319
torch, 36
torch dancers, 4321
torpedo, 70, 4322; British Navy badges, 4322
torrent, 4323
Torrington, Admiral Viscount, 56
tortoise, viii, 114, 227, *facing* 3644, 4256, 4324, 4947; foot; 1683. *See also* turtle.
tortoiseshell butterfly, *facing* 564
tossing in blanket, 438
tossing the caber, 573
totem, 4325
toucan, *facing* 366, 422, 4326
tourmaline, *facing* 1810
tournament, 4327
tow, 4328
tower, 526, 650, 661, 1881, 2954, 4329
tower, breaching, 507
tower, conning, 853
tower, fire-control, 902
Tower Bridge, London, 13, 348, *facing* 516
Tower of London, 680, 1420, 1457, 2163, 2250, 2801, 3853, 4545
towing-path, 1246, 4294
town-crier, 984
toxophilite, 94
toy, 474, 1009, 1125, 2456, 2989, 3177, 3925, 4330, *facing* 4330
tracery, 1028, 4331
track, bicycle racing, 4332
traction-engine, 2007
tractor, 91, 660, 4328, 4333
trade, 4334
trader, 2273
Trafalgar Square, London, 766, 1051, 1422, 2066, 2716, 4070
traffic, 2666
traffic-block, 446
traffic sign, 3694
tragopan, 4335
train, dress, 4336
train, railway, 260, 509, 1362, 1463, 2470, 2531, 3152, 3536, 4806; air-brake, 96; sleeping berth, 399. *See also* locomotive.
train-bearer, 515
train-ferry, 1586
training ship, 119
tram-car, 1126; testing wheel, 4227
trammel, 4337
tramp steamer, 4337
tranquil, 4338
transept, 4339
transfer, 4340
transit, 4341
Translation of Saint Mark (mosaic), 2841
translator, 409, 2227, 4342
transmit, 4343
transom, boat's, 4344
transparent, 4344
transport, 4345
trap, 4346
trap-door, 1264
trapper, 1571, 4346
traveller (mechanism), 4347
travelling dispensary, 1249
trawl, 3058, 4348
trawler, 182, 231, 1706, 3016, 3058, 4348
treadmill, 4349
treat, 4350
treatment, 1021, 4350
treaty, 194, 3646
tree, 324, 455, 456, 575, 670, 798, 874, 1036, 1070, *facing* 1072, 1373, 1576, 1659, 1792, 1837, 1904, 2818, 2829, 3244, 3286, 3288, 3516, 3880, 4199, 4351, 4430, 4436, 4541, 4574, 4612, 4621; leaves, *facing* 4350
Tree, Sir Herbert, 1211
tree-climbing, liii
tree-dweller, 4351
tree-frog, 1743, *facing* 3644, 4352
treenail, 4352
tree pipit, 3271, *facing* 3993
tree-planting, 3288
tree trunk, 2158
trench, 125, 852, 1426, 1700, 1909, 4353
Trench, Archbishop, iv
trench-mortar, 136, 4354
trestle-bridge, 4355
Trevelyan, George Macaulay, 3425
trial by jury, 4588
triangle, geometric, 4356
triangle, orchestral, 4356
tribe, 4357
tribesman, 81
trick, 380, 2268, 4358
tricycle, 3591, 4359
trierarch, 4360
trigonometry, 4361
Trilby, 2116
trilobite, 4362
Trinidad, scene, 247, 575
tripe merchant, 1658
triplane, 72
triple, 4292, 4364
triptych, 1339, 4365
trireme, 4360
Tristram, Sir, 1489
triumphal arch, 198, 4366
triumvir, 4367
trivet, 4367
trogon, *facing* 3305
Troides paradiseus (butterfly), *facing* 4580
troika, 4368
Trojan, 238
trombone, 4368
trooper, 2619
trooping the colour, 109
troops. *See* British Army *and* soldier.
troopship, 825, 1444, 1557
trophy, 253, 4369
tropics, scene, 3607
troubadour, 4370
trough, 2250
trout, *facing* 1624, 3897, *facing* 4192, 4371
trowel, 4371
truck, 3276, 3660, 4372
truck, mast, 4372
truffle, 4373
trumpet, 537, 3924, 4374
trumpeter, 451, 1554, 2019, 3861, 4374
trunk, elephant's, 4375
trunk, travelling, 2424
trunk, tree, 2158
trunk-fish, *facing* 1624
trunnion, 4375
trust, 4376
tsar, 2518
tsetse, 1853, *facing* 4580; head, 4377
tuatera, 2566
tub, 2312
tube, Crookes, 4378
tuber, 3361, 4378
tube railway, 2960, 4416
Tudor architecture, 209, 4379
tug, 231, 1581, 1990, 4380
tug-of-war, 2641
tulip, 4380
tumble-home, 4381
tumbrel, 849, 4381
tungsten, 4382
tuning-fork, 1702
Tunis, minaret, 3067; natives, 205, 3896
tunnel, 481; shaft, 3900; shield, 2128
tunny, 4383
turban, 60, 3467, 4383
turbine, 4096, 4808
turbot, 4384
tureen, 4384
Turk, 81, 350, 1037, 1256, 3484
turkey, 3859, 4385
Turkish divan, 1240
turn-table, 4386
turquoise, *facing* 1810
turret, 709, 3541, 4387
turtle, 160, *facing* 3644, 3994, 4387; head, 1385
tusk, 2328, 4388
Tut-ankh-Amen, 275, 803
tutti-man, 4389
Twain, Mark, 1465
tweezer, 4390
twig, 1353
twin, 4391
twist, 4392
two-seater motor-car, 4393
two-spotted lady-bird, 2434
tympanum, 4394
Tyndale, William, 409
type, 198, 3892; Braille, 500
typewriter, 2664, 4395
typhoid bacilli, 304
typhoon, 4396
typist, 2664
tyrant, 4397
Tyrolese, inhabitants, 4398; scenes, 3679, 3846, 3876, 4438

U

U, letter, xviii
U-boat, 4399
Uganda, king, 2092; village, 3447
ugly, 4400
Uhlan, 1419
Uintatherium, 2825
ulster, 4401
ultra-violet, 4402
umbrella, 21, 540, 2189, 3903, 4403, 4636
umpire, 4404
unalarmed, 4410
unarm, 4411
unattended, 4405
uncertain, 4412
uncommon, 4418
unconverted, 4414
under, 4415
undergraduate, 1270
underground railway, 4416. *See also* tube railway.
underprop, 4417
undertake, 4418
undertaking, 4419
undisturbed, 4406
undulate, 4420
unearth, 4421. *See also* excavate.
unfold, 450
ungainly, 4422
ungulate, 4952
unhappy, 947, 1517
uniaxial, 4736
unicorn, 4423
uniform, 296, 388; court, 129, 2362, military, 100, 109, 228, 350, 399, 436, 479, 511, 620, 1012, 1091, 1165, 1191, 1282, 1350, 1813, 3018, 3257, 4533; naval, 30, 57, 88, 453, 620, 835; Papal, 3116; Yeoman of the Guard, 377, 4424
uninhabitable, 4407
Union Jack, 4146, 4425
unisexual, 4425
unite, 4426
univalve, 4952
university, 4427; hoods, *facing* 2066
unknown, 4428
Unknown Warrior, 559, 4428
unload, 4429
unmannerly, 1227
unpicked, 4430
unravel, 4431
unrestored, 4432
unsafe, 4408
unsightly, 4435
unspoiled, 4409
untie, 4434
unveil, 4435
upas-tree, 4436
upheaval, 4437
upland, 2382, 4876
uprising, 4438
upside-down, 2302, 4439
uptake, 4439
urchin, 4440
Uriel, 1434
urn, 747, 4441
useful, 4442
utensil, 1491, 4443
utilitarian, 395
Uzbeg, 4444

V

V, letter, xviii
vacant, 4445
vaccinator, 1511
vacuum-tube, 4378, 4446
vagrant, 4447
vale, 4448
“Vale of Rest, The,” 1901
valerian, 4449
valley, *facing* 516, 1134, 1833, 2896, 4448, 4877
valour, 4450
valve, 4451. *See also* bivalve.
valve, steam, 4451
valve, wireless, 900
valve-horn, 4451
vane, 1112, 4452
vang, 4452
vanity, 4453
vantage, 4454
Varanus, 4455
variegate, 4456
variegated frog, *facing* 3644
varnish, 4457
vasculum, 4736
vase, viii, 142, 528, 777, 1490, 2242, 2340, *facing* 3321, 3349, 4310, 4458
vat, 673, 712, 2780, 2207
Vatican, 1551, 4459
vault (cellar), 654, 673
vault (leap), 4460
vaulting, 1552, 1881
vaulting-horse, 3243
vegetable, 2274, 2325; hawker, 2326; seeds, 3854
vegetable marrow, 2569, 4461, 4736
vehicle, 289, 699, 3442, 4314. *See also* carriage, cart, motor-car.
veil, 1355, 4462
velocipede, 4463
velvet, 4464
vendor, 1568, 1570, 2326, 3019, 3484, 3865, 4191, 4304
Venetian, 3644
Venetian canal, *facing* 4466
Venetian galley, 3455
Venetian glass, 1847, 4466
Venetian piazza, 3246
ventilation, 504
ventilator, 4467
ventriloquist, 4468
Venus's flower-basket, 4058
verb, xl, xli, xlii, xliii, xliv
verbena, *facing* 164, 4469
verdure, 4470
vermicelli, 4471
vermin, 4472
vernal grass, *facing* 1896
vernier, 4472
version, 4473
vertebral, 4474
Verulam, Baron (Francis Bacon), 1402
vervet, 4475
“Vestal Virgin, The,” 4476
vestment, 134, 708
Vesuvius. Mount, 85, 363, 2222, 4477
veteran, 4010. *See also* Chelsea Pensioner.
veterinary, 282, 1249
viaduct, *facing* 516, 4478
vicarage, 4479
vice, 4480
vice-admiral, sleeve, 57
viceroy, 4481
victim, 447, 657
victor, 686, 2159, 3628
Victoria, Queen of England, 2230, 2362, 2978, 3421, 3740
“Victoria” (ship), 1195

Victoria Cross, *facing* 2536
Victoria Embankment, 4549
Victoria Falls, 2180
Victoria plum, 3305
Victoria regia, 4482
"**Victory**" (Nelson's flagship), 2744, 4027
Victory Medal 1914-19, *facing* 2536
Victory of Samothrace (model), 117
vicuña, 4483
view, 4484
Vigée-Lebrun, Madame, 75
"**Vigil, The**," 272
vignette, 4484
Viking, 2955, 2059
Viking ship, *facing* 1484; model, 4485
village, 3050
village chief, 3911
village head-man, 1993
Vimy Ridge, 3678
vine, 398, 883, 4486
vinery, 1896
vineyard, 4486
viol, 4489
viola (flower), 4487
violence, 4488
violin, 2727, 4489; bow, 492
violoncello, 4489
viper, 50, *facing* 3644
Virgil, 1738
Virginia creeper, 2481
Virginia eagle-owl, 3079
Virgin Mary, 1469, 2434, 2635, 2898, 3389
virile, 4490
viscacha, 4491
viscid, 4492
visit, 4493
visor, 225, 4494
vista, 2852
vitreous, 4495
vituperate, 4496
viviparous, 4497
vizier, 4498
vociferous sea-eagle, 422, 4499
voice, 4500
"**Voices of the Night**," 2942
volcano, v, 85, 363, 971, 2222, 4092 4477, 4501
volcanoes of moon, 2828
vole, 4502
Voltaire, 4503
voltmeter, 4503
volume, 4504
volunteer, 4037, 4505
vortex, 4506
vote, 3325
votive offering, 1527
"**Vulcan, The Forge of**," 4507
vulture, 765, 863, 4223, 4508; head and beak, *facing* 366

W

W, letter, xix
wad, 4509
wading, 4510
wading bird, 2329
waffle-iron, 4510
Wagner, Richard, 4511
Wagner, Siegfried, 358
Wagnerian, 4511
wagon, 527, 1287, 3080
wagtail, grey, 4512
Wahabi, 4512
Wailing Place, 406
waiter, 4513
wake, 4514
Waldrom, Trumpeter, 3861
Wales. *See* Welsh.
Wales, Prince of, 309, 2764; wax model, 4533
walk, 4515
walk, stern, 4515
walker, 2174, 3730
wall, 507, 1626, 2176, 4516; inscription, 2250
wall, Roman, 1707, 3390
wall, sea, 1400
wallaby, 4517
wall arcading, 1881
wallflower, 4516, 4731
wall-game, 4527
wall-picture, 2127
walnut, 2972, 4518
Walpole, Sir Robert, 3388
walrus, 1506, 2838, 4518
Waltham Cross, 1881
Walton, Izaak, 284
wand, 358, 431
wandering, 2945, 2946, 4519
Wandering Jew, 3140
wapiti, 4520
warbler, *facing* 3993, 4522; egg, *facing* 1305
ward, 2080, 4008
warder, 377, 4523
war-dress, 502
war drum, 1302
ware. *See* ceramics; earthenware; pottery.
warfare, 125. *See also* British Army; British Navy.
war-galley, 4360
war god, 4400
war-horse, 33, 537
warning, 666, 1617
warning colours, 4952
War of American Independence, 1752, 3567
warp, 4524
war-paint, 134
warrant-officer, 4525
warrior, 1510, 1913, 3306; Algerian, 107; Basuto, 502; Bisharin, 4036; Zulu, 248, 2157
warship, 361, 469, 470, 619, 636, 878, 1120, 3772, 4521, 4803; deck, 767; fire-control tower, 902; model, 914. *See also* British Navy.
"**Warspite**" (training-ship), 1509
wart-hog, 4946
war-wagon, 3309
wash, 1300, 4526, 4584
Washington, George, 2175, 3131
wash-mill, 514
wash-tub, 2647
wasp, *facing* 2250, 2747, 4527, *facing* 4580, 4949; grubs, 3127; nest, 2921
waste, 220
waste paper, 851
watch (timepiece), 884
watch, officer of the, 3339
watch-chain, 102
watch escapement, 1457
watchman, 2934
watch-tower, 967
water, 1087, 4108, 4528, 4801, 4803
water beetle, 379
water-bird, 3825
water-boatman, 2030
water-bug, *facing* 2250
water-carrier, 408, 4528
water-clock, 4529
watercress, 4529
water-crowfoot, 3696
water diviner, 1214
water dropwort, 4731
waterfall, 145, 613, 695, 1616, 1893, 2180, 4148
waterfowl, 2305
water-hen, 2830
water-jar, 679
water-lily, 2053, 2536, 2596, 3876, 4482
water lizard, 2566
Waterloo, battle, 1085
Waterloo, battlefield, 2851
Waterloo, courtyard at Hougoumont, 2788
Waterloo, Lion Monument, 2850
Waterloo, meeting of Wellington and Blucher, 3630
Waterloo Medal, *facing* 2536
water-main, 2476
watermark, 4530
water-pipe, 558, 864
water plant, 4035. *See also specific names.*
water-polo, 1862
water power, 84
waterproof, 4564
water raising, 2320, 3899
water-rat, 2108, 4502
watershed, 4531
water shrew, 3931
waterspout, *facing* 3228, 4506
water-supply, 2208
water taster, 4234
water tower, 4808
water-vole, 4502
water weeds, 2243
water-wheel, 1653
Watts, Isaac, 2113
wave, 482, 897, 1127, 1775, 2220, 2992
wave (signal), 4532
wax, 4534
wax candle, 603
wax cast, 4534
wax impression, 3890
wax model, 4533
waxworks, 1921
way, 4535
weald, 4536
weapon, 223, 232. *See also specific names.*
weasel, 596, 4537
weather-cloth, 4538
weather-vane, 4451
weave, 636, 645, 2060, 2588, 3946, 4464, 4539
weaver-bird, nest, *facing* 2920, 2921
weaving-machine, 2331
web, spider's, 793
webbed foot, 4539, 4949
Webster, Noah, iv
wedding, 515, 2686
wedding-cake, 4196
wedge, 4128
Wedgwood, 4540
weed, seeds, 3854
weed, water, 2243
weep, 77
weeping-willow, 4541
weevil, 596, 4542
weigh, 2328, 4542
weight-lifting, 2527, 4126, 4131
weir, 1662, 4543
weka, 3537
welcome, 4544
well, 2905, 3487, 3718, 4546
Wellington, Duke of, 2851, 3630; monument, 2827
Wellington boots, 1392
well-known, 4545
Welsh cockle-woman, 797
Welsh country-dancing, 1517
Welsh eisteddfod, 337, 1356
Welsh poppy, 4730
Welsh scenery, 2208, 4042
Wesley, Charles, 2113
Wesley, John, 2751
Wesleyan, 4548
Wesley's Chapel, City Road, 4548
Wesley's room, Lincoln College, Oxford, 3631
West African baboon, 2660
West African monkey, 2661
West Indian natives, 247, 575, 3289, 4158
Westminster Abbey, 559, 697, 927, 1059, 2779
Westminster Hall, 691
Westminster School, pancake, 3822
wet, 4549
"**W hair-streak**" **butterfly**, 2503
whale, 390, 452, 683, 1610, 1891, 2115, 4044, 4550
Whale, constellation, 888
whale-headed stork, *facing* 366, 422
whaler, 1074, 4551
wharf, 2160, 2735, 4080, 4551
wheat, 1587, 2569, 2819, 3080, 3502, 4552
wheat-ear, 4553
wheat seed, 4729
wheat starch, 1895
Wheatstone's spectrum analysis apparatus, 4041.
wheel, aeroplane, 4554
wheel, motor-car, 954, 2331
wheel, paddle, 3087
wheel, potter's, 3362
wheel, railway carriage, 243
wheel, spinning, 234, 1231, 3037
wheel, steering, 708, 3505, 4554
wheel, tram-car, 4227
wheelbarrow, 3248, 4554
wheel-testing, 243, 4227
whelk, 4555
wherry, 4556, 4557
whidah, 4557
while, 4558
whimbrel, 4559
whin, 1765
whinchat, 422
whip (rope), 4560
whippet, 4561
whipping (twine), 4560
whipping-post, 4561
whip scorpion, 4560
whip-snake, *facing* 3644
whip-tailed iguana, *facing* 3644
whirl, 4562
whirlwind, 4506, 4576
whistle, 4563
whistle buoy, 551
white, 4564
white admiral butterfly, 1145
white ant, 4255; nest, 2921
white - booted racket - tailed humming-bird, *facing* 3304
white butterfly, 3208
white - collared mangabey, 2661
white ensign, 1956
white-flowered lychnis, 2618
white-handed gibbon, 185
white helleborine, 4729
white letter butterfly, 2503
White Mountains, New Hampshire, U.S.A., 3282
White Nile, 535
white peacock, 3168
white stork, 4118
white-tail, 4553
whitethorn, 1990
whitethroat, 4565
white willow, 4574
whiting, 4565
whiting-pout, 3366
Whittington, Sir Richard. 2593
whole, 4566
whoop, 4567
whortleberry, 4568
wick, 603
wicker, 639, 4568; preparing, 3054
wicket-keeper, 4569. *See also* cricket.
widgeon, *facing* 4580
widow, 1900, 3158
wig, 65, 284, 4570
wigwam, xvii, 430, 2577
wild, 4571
wild bull, 4951
wild cat, 4571
wild dog, 4571
wild duck, 477, 1079, 2651, 2883
wild elephant, 931, 1111, 2369, *facing* 3498, 4295
wilderness, 4572
wild-fowling, 1079
wild hog, 302
wild horse, 3499, 4571
wild hyacinth, 454
wild oats, *facing* 1896
wild pansy, 1997
wild sheep, 2849
wild thyme, 4291
Wilhelmina, Queen of the Netherlands, 2924
will, 4573
Willett, William 3407
William Morris design, 4228
William of Orange, 1306
William the Conqueror, 929, 2401
willow, 4541, 4574; **catkin**, 662

willow-herb, 159
willow-pattern, 4574
willow-wren, egg, *facing* 1305
Wilson dam, 1044
Wimbledon tennis courts, 959. *See also* lawn-tennis.
win, 4575
winch, 4576
Winchester cadets, 578
Winchester Cathedral, 3649, 3671
wind, 4576
wind-dispersed seeds, 1222
winding-tackle, 4578
wind-instrument. *See* musical instrument.
windlass, 4578
wind-measuring instrument, 153
windmill, 156, 524, 601, 4577
window, bay, 363; clerestory, 769; Decorated Gothic, 3333; dormer, 1266; fanlight, 1552; French, 1733; Gothic, 1881, 4331; lancet, 2445; mullioned, 2816; oriel, 3046; painted, 1545, 1708, 3456; shop, 1416, 4579; stained glass, 692, 2434, 3209, 4080
Windsor Castle, 2023; throne room, 4286
wine, 4580
wine-cellar, 673
wine jar, *facing* 3321
wing, *facing* 4580, 4581, 4735
wing-compasses, 842
wing-footed, 4945
wing-membrane, 3155
winking owl, 3079
Winnington-Ingram, Arthur, Bishop of London, 3358, 3387
winnow, 4582
winter coat, fox's, 215
winter scenes, 1662, 1932, 2048, 4583, 4593. *See also* snow.
wintergreen, 1557
winter sports, 461; wear, 1416. *See also* skating; ski-jumping; toboggan.
wire, barbed, 334, 4584
wire-haired terrier, 1964
wireless, 68, 133, 226, 286, 664, 2080, 2757, 3025, 4343, 4585; badge, 4584; control-board, 2262; pivot of mast, 3280; police lorry, 2594; rheostat, 3682; switchboard, 4195; terminal, 4254
wireless-cabin, 3025, 4585
wireworm, 379, 4584
Wise Men, the Three, 1335
wistaria, 4586
witan, 4147, 4588
witch-doctor, 1549, 2177, 2719, 4587
witch-elm, 4612
witenagemot, 4147, 4588
within, 4589
wizard, 4590
wolf, 1253
wolf, prairie, 4591
wolf-cub (Boy Scout), 4591
Wolfe, General, birthplace, 4479
wolf-fish, 4591
wolfhound, 483, 2691
wolfsbane, 2818
Wolsey, Cardinal, 1210, 2314
wolverine, 1345
woman, 77, 503, 1439, 2583, 2891, 2894, 3048, 3413
woman baker, 312
woman organist, 2670
wombat, 4592
wood, 4593
wood-ant, 169
woodbine, 2065
wood-destroying beetle, 2533
wood-drilling machine, 2805
wood engraver, 1318
woodland, 530, 1278, 4199
wood-louse, 2598, 4595
wood-mouse, 1600
woodpecker, 4594
wood-pigeon, 3698, 4594
woodruff, 4594
wood silk fibre, 1595
woodsman, 1576
wood-sorrel, 4595
wood spurge, 4067
wood-wasp, *facing* 2250
wood-wind instrument, 353. *See also* musical instrument.
woody nightshade, 2934
wool, 1286, 1643, 2311, 4596, 4597
work, 4598
workman, 4804
works (factory), 637, 4599. *See also* factory.
workshop, 535, 1532
worm, earth, 4600; marine, 4601
wormwood, 4601
worship, 4602. *See also* divine service.
wort, 4603
worthy, 4603
wrack, 4604
wrasse, *facing* 1624, 4605
wreath, 164, 2066, 4605
wreck, 362, 619, 1127, 1706, 3016, 4396, 4606
wreckage, 696
wreck buoy, 551
wren, 4607
wrestling, 2872, 4607
Wright biplane, 1442
wringer, 4608
write, 4609, 4610
writing, viii—xx
writing-desk, xix
writing instruments, Chinese, 4610
writing-tablet, 1034, 2327, 4610
wrong, 4611
wych-elm, 4612
Wyclif, John, xxv

X

X, letter, xix
Xanthian, 4613
xebec, 4614
X-ray, discoverer, 1202
xylophone, 4614

Y

Y, letter, xx
yacht, 778, 1610, 2152, 2228, 4050, 4524, 4615; model, 1063, 3761
yak, 2563, 4616
yard, ship's, 2528, 4617
yard-arm, 2528
Yarmouth fishermen, 521
yarn, 4617
yashmak, 157, 4617
yawl, 4618
yawn, 4618
yellow-billed duck, 1308
yellow-hammer, 4619; egg, *facing* 1305
yellow jasmine, 2340
yellow pine, 2689
Yeoman of the Guard, 377, 4424, 4620
yew, 4621; leaf, *facing* 4350
yield, 4622
yoke, ox, 4623
yoke, steering, 4623
York, Albert, Duke of, 646
York, Elizabeth, Duchess of, 490, 1307, 1758, 3394
York, Princess Elizabeth of, 3410
York Minster, 213
Yorkshire, scenes, 1662, 2855
Yorkshire terrier, 4624
Yosemite Valley, California, 1833, 2896, 3378
young, 4625
Ypres, Cloth Hall, 2316
yucca, 4626
Yugo-Slavia, inhabitants, 116, 988, 1043
Yung Cheng, **ware**, **725**

Z

Z, letter, xx
zaptieh, 4627
zebra, 871, *facing* 3498, 4628; hoofs, 1683
zebu, 4628
Zeebrugge, 418, 4805
zenana, 4629
Zeppelin, 2300, 3072, 4630; sheds, 1082
Zeus, 4631
zinnia, 4632
zither, 4633
Zodiac, sign, 221
zodiacal light, *facing* 3228
zoetrope, 4633
Zoological Gardens, London, 293, 369, 1096, 1512, 3995, 4634
zoophraxiscope, 2400
zoophyte, 4635
zucchetta, 4636
Zulu, natives, 248, 1470, 2157, 4636; sailing-boat, 4636